

# TREATISE ON INVERTEBRATE PALEONTOLOGY

*Prepared under Sponsorship of  
The Geological Society of America, Inc.*

*The Paleontological Society    The Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists  
The Palaeontographical Society    The Palaeontological Association*

Directed and Edited by  
RAYMOND C. MOORE

Revisions and Supplements Directed and Edited by  
CURT TEICHERT

## Part R ARTHROPODA 4

By H. K. BROOKS, F. M. CARPENTER, M. F. GLAESSNER, GERHARD HAHN, R. R. HESSLER, R. L. HOFFMAN, L. B. HOLTHUIS, R. B. MANNING, S. M. MANTON, LAVON McCORMICK, R. C. MOORE, W. A. NEWMAN, A. R. PALMER, W. D. I. ROLFE, PAUL TASCH, †T. H. WITHERS, and V. A. ZULLO

VOLUME 1

THE GEOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA, INC.  
and  
THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

1969

© 1969 BY THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS  
AND  
THE GEOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA, INC.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

Library of Congress Catalogue Card  
Number: 53-12913

Text Composed by  
THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS PRINTING SERVICE  
Lawrence, Kansas

Illustrations and Offset Lithography  
THE MERIDEN GRAVURE COMPANY  
Meriden, Connecticut

Binding  
RUSSELL RUTTER COMPANY  
New York City

Published 1969

Distributed by The Geological Society of America, Inc., P.O. Box 1719, Boulder, Colo., 80302, to which all communications should be addressed.

The *Treatise on Invertebrate Paleontology* has been made possible by (1) grants of funds from The Geological Society of America through the bequest of Richard Alexander Fullerton Penrose, Jr., for preparation of illustrations and partial defrayment of organizational expense and the United States National Science Foundation, in December, 1959, January, 1966, and October, 1967, for completion of the *Treatise* project; (2) contribution of the knowledge and labor of specialists throughout the world, working in cooperation under sponsorship of The Geological Society of America, The Paleontological Society, The Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists, The Palaeontographical Society, and The Palaeontological Association; and (3) acceptance by The University of Kansas of publication without cost to the Societies concerned and without any financial gain to the University.

# TREATISE ON INVERTEBRATE PALEONTOLOGY

Directed and Edited by **RAYMOND C. MOORE**  
and (for supplements and revisions) **CURT TEICHERT**

Assistants: **LAVON McCORMICK**, **ROGER B. WILLIAMS**

Advisers: **R. C. BECKER**, **EDWIN B. ECKEL** (The Geological Society of America), **BERNHARD KUMMEL**, **J. WYATT DURHAM** (The Paleontological Society), **N. D. NEWELL**, **R. M. JEFFORDS** (The Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists), **R. V. MELVILLE**, **W. T. DEAN** (The Palaeontographical Society), **M. R. HOUSE**, **C. H. HOLLAND** (The Palaeontological Association).

---

## PARTS

Parts of the *Treatise* are distinguished by assigned letters with a view to indicating their systematic sequence while allowing publication of units in whatever order each may be made ready for the press. The volumes are cloth-bound with title in gold on the cover. Copies are available on orders sent to the Publication Sales Department, The Geological Society of America, P.O. Box 1719, Boulder, Colorado 80302. The prices quoted very incompletely cover costs of producing and distributing the several volumes, but on receipt of payment the Society will ship copies without additional charge to any address in the world. Special discounts are available to members of sponsoring societies under arrangements made by appropriate officers of these societies, to whom inquiries should be addressed.

## VOLUMES ALREADY PUBLISHED

(Previous to 1969)

- Part C. PROTISTA 2 (Sarcodina, chiefly "Thecamoebians" and Foraminiferida), xxxi+900 p., 5311 fig., 1964.  
Part D. PROTISTA 3 (chiefly Radiolaria, Tintinnina), xii+195 p., 1050 fig., 1954.  
Part E. ARCHAEOCYATHA, PORIFERA, xviii+122 p., 728 fig., 1955.  
Part F. COELENTERATA, xvii+498 p., 2700 fig., 1956.  
Part G. BRYOZOA, xii+253 p., 2000 fig., 1953.  
Part H. BRACHIOPODA, xxxii+927 p., 5198 fig., 1965.  
Part I. MOLLUSCA 1 (Mollusca General Features, Scaphopoda, Amphineura, Monoplacophora, Gastropoda General Features, Archaeogastropoda, mainly Paleozoic Caenogastropoda and Opisthobranchia), xxiii+351 p., 1732 fig., 1960.  
Part K. MOLLUSCA 3 (Cephalopoda General Features, Endoceratoidea, Actinoceratoidea, Nautiloidea, Bactritoidea), xxviii+519 p., 2382 fig., 1964.  
Part L. MOLLUSCA 4 (Ammonoidea), xxii+490 p., 3800 fig., 1957.  
Part O. ARTHROPODA 1 (Arthropoda General Features, Protarthropoda, Euarthropoda General Features, Trilobitomorpha), xix+560 p., 2880 fig., 1959.  
Part P. ARTHROPODA 2 (Chelicerata, Pycnogonida, Palaeoisopus), xvii+181 p., 565 fig., 1955.  
Part Q. ARTHROPODA 3 (Crustacea, Ostracoda), xxiii+442 p., 3476 fig., 1961.  
Part S. ECHINODERMATA 1 (Echinodermata General Features, Homalozoa, Crinozoa, exclusive of Crinoidea), xxx+650 p., 2868 fig., 1967 [1968].  
Part U. ECHINODERMATA 3 (Asterozoans, Echinozoans), xxx+695 p., 3485 fig., 1966.  
Part V. GRAPTOLITHINA, xvii+101 p., 358 fig., 1955.  
Part W. MISCELLANEA (Conodonts, Conoidal Shells of Uncertain Affinities, Worms, Trace Fossils, Problematica), xxv+259 p., 1058 fig., 1962.

## THIS VOLUME

- Part R. ARTHROPODA 4 (Crustacea exclusive of Ostracoda, Myriapoda, Hexapoda), xxxvi+651 p., 1762 fig., 1969.

## VOLUMES IN PREPARATION (1969)

Part A. INTRODUCTION.

Part B. PROTISTA 1 (Chryomonadida, Coccolithophorida, Charophyta, Diatomacea, etc.).

Part J. MOLLUSCA 2 (Gastropoda, Streptoneura exclusive of Archaeogastropoda, Euthyneura).

Part M. MOLLUSCA 5 (Coleoidea).

Part N. MOLLUSCA 6 (Bivalvia).

Part T. ECHINODERMATA 2 (Crinoidea).

Part X. ADDENDA, INDEX.

Part E (revision). Archaeocyatha, Porifera.

Part F (supplement). Coelenterata (Anthozoa Rugosa).

Part G (revision). Bryozoa.

Part L (revision). Ammonoidea.

Part V (revision). Graptolithina.

## CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

[Arranged by countries and institutions; an alphabetical list follows. An asterisk preceding name indicates author working on revision of or supplement to a published *Treatise* volume.]

### AUSTRALIA

South Australia Geological Survey (Adelaide)

N. H. Ludbrook

University of Adelaide

M. F. Glaessner

University of Queensland (Brisbane)

Dorothy Hill

### AUSTRIA

Universität Wien (Paläontologisches Institut)

Adolph Papp

### BELGIUM

Université de Liège

Georges Ubaghs

Université de Louvain

Marius Lecompte

### CANADA

Geological Survey of Canada (Ottawa)

J. A. Jeletzky, A. W. Norris, G. W. Sinclair

Institute of Sedimentary & Petroleum Geology (Geological Survey of Canada, Calgary)

D. J. McLaren

National Museum (Ottawa)

A. H. Clarke, Jr.

University of British Columbia (Vancouver)

V. J. Okulitch

### DENMARK

Universitet København

Chr. Poulsen

### FRANCE

Unattached

André Chavan (Seyssel, Ain)

Université de Paris (Sorbonne)

Colette Dechaseaux

### GERMANY

Bergakademie Freiberg (Geologisches Institut)

A. H. Müller

Freie Universität Berlin

Gerhard Hahn

Hamburg Staatsinstitut

Walter Häntzschel

Natur-Museum und Forschungs-Institut

Senckenberg (Frankfurt)

Herta Schmidt, Wolfgang Struve

Unattached

Hertha Sieverts-Doreck (Stuttgart-Möhringen)

Universität Bonn

H. K. Erben, K. J. Müller

Universität Münster

Helmut Hölder

Universität Tübingen

\*Jürgen Kullman, O. H. Schindewolf

Universität Würzburg

Klaus Sdzuy

## ITALY

Università Modena  
Eugenia Montanaro Gallitelli

## JAPAN

Tohoku University (Sendai)  
Kotora Hatai  
University of Tokyo  
Tetsuro Hanai

## LIBYA

Esso Standard Libya Inc. (Tripoli)  
L. A. Smith

## NETHERLANDS

Rijksmuseum van Natuurlijke Historie  
(Leiden)  
H. Boschma, L. B. Holthuis  
Vrije Universiteit Amsterdam  
A. Breimer

## NEW ZEALAND

Auckland Institute and Museum  
A. W. B. Powell  
Dominion Museum (Wellington)  
R. K. Dell  
New Zealand Geological Survey (Lower  
Hutt)  
C. A. Fleming, J. Marwick

## NORWAY

Universitet Oslo  
Gunnar Henningsmoen, T. Soot-Ryen,  
Leif Størmer

## POLAND

Pánstwowe Wydawnictwo Naukowe  
(Warszawa)  
Gertruda Biernat, Adolf Riedel

## SWEDEN

Naturhistoriska Museet Goteborg  
Bengt Hubendick  
Rijksmuseum Stockholm  
Valdar Jaanusson  
Universitet Lund  
Gerhard Regnéll  
Universitet Stockholm  
Ivar Hessland, \*Sten Schager  
Universitet Uppsala  
R. A. Reymont

## SWITZERLAND

Universität Basel  
Manfred Reichel

## UNITED KINGDOM

British Museum (Natural History)  
(London)  
Leslie Bairstow, \*P. L. Cook, Isabella  
Gordon, \*M. K. Howarth, S. M.  
Manton, N. J. Morris, C. P. Nuttall  
British Petroleum Company (Middlesex)  
F. E. Eames  
Geological Survey of Great Britain  
(London)  
Raymond Casey, R. V. Melville  
Imperial College of Science and Technology  
(London)  
D. V. Ager  
Iraq Petroleum Company (London)  
G. F. Elliott  
Oxford University Museum  
\*M. R. House  
Queen's University of Belfast  
Margaret Jope, \*R. E. H. Reid, \*Ronald  
Tavener-Smith, Alwyn Williams, A.  
D. Wright  
Unattached  
Dennis Curry (Middlesex), R. P. Tripp  
(Sevenoaks, Kent), C. J. Stubblefield  
(London), C. W. Wright (London)  
University of Birmingham  
L. J. Wills  
University of Cambridge  
O. M. B. Bulman, M. J. S. Rudwick,  
H. B. Whittington  
University College London  
\*J. H. Callomon, \*D. T. Donovan  
University of Durham  
\*G. P. Larwood  
University of Glasgow  
W. D. I. Rolfe, John Weir, C. M. Yonge  
University of Hull  
E. R. Trueman  
University of Leicester  
P. C. Sylvester-Bradley  
University of Reading  
H. L. Hawkins  
University of Wales  
F. H. T. Rhodes

## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Academy of Natural Sciences of  
Philadelphia (Pennsylvania)  
A. A. Olsson, Robert Robertson  
American Museum of Natural History  
(New York)  
R. L. Batten, W. K. Emerson, L. H.  
Hyman, N. D. Newell

- Armed Forces Institute of Pathology**  
(Washington, D.C.)  
\*R. J. Cuffey
- California Academy of Sciences**  
(San Francisco)  
G. D. Hanna, L. G. Hertlein, A. G. Smith,  
V. A. Zullo
- California Institute of Technology**  
(Pasadena)  
A. J. Boucot, J. G. Johnson, H. A.  
Lowenstam
- Carnegie Museum**  
(Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania)  
Juan Parodiz
- Chevron Oil Field Research Company**  
(La Habra, California)  
A. R. Loeblich, Jr.
- Continental Oil Company**  
(Ponca City, Oklahoma)  
J. A. Eyer
- Cornell University** (Ithaca, New York)  
W. S. Cole, J. W. Wells
- Esso Production Research Company**  
(Houston, Texas)  
H. H. Beaver, R. M. Jeffords, S. A. Levin-  
son, Joan Stough, J. F. Van Sant
- Field Museum of Natural History**  
(Chicago)  
Fritz Haas, G. A. Solem
- Florida Geological Survey** (Tallahassee)  
H. S. Puri
- Florida State University** (Tallahassee)  
W. H. Heard
- Harvard University**  
(Cambridge, Massachusetts)  
Kenneth Boss, F. M. Carpenter, W. J.  
Clench, H. B. Fell, Bernhard Kum-  
mel, R. D. Staton, Ruth Turner
- Illinois State Geological Survey** (Urbana)  
M. L. Thompson
- Indiana Geological Survey** (Bloomington)  
R. H. Shaver
- Johns Hopkins University**  
(Baltimore, Maryland)  
Franco Rasetti
- Kent State University** (Kent, Ohio)  
A. H. Coogan
- Louisiana State University** (Baton Rouge)  
W. A. van den Bold, H. V. Howe, B. F.  
Perkins, H. B. Stenzel
- New Mexico Institute Mining & Geology**  
(Socorro)  
Christina Lochman-Balk
- New York State Museum** (Albany)  
D. W. Fisher
- Ohio State University** (Columbus)  
Aurèle La Rocque, W. C. Sweet
- Oklahoma Geological Survey** (Norman)  
T. W. Amsden, R. O. Fay
- Oregon State University** (Corvallis)  
Joel Hedgpeth
- Paleontological Research Institute**  
(Ithaca, New York)  
K. V. W. Palmer
- Princeton University**  
(Princeton, New Jersey)  
A. G. Fischer, B. F. Howell
- Queens College of the City of New York**  
(Flushing)  
\*R. M. Finks
- Radford College** (Radford, Virginia)  
R. L. Hoffman
- St. Mary's College of California** (St. Mary's)  
A. S. Campbell
- San Diego Natural History Museum**  
(San Diego, California)  
George Radwin
- San Francisco State College**  
(San Francisco, California)  
Y. T. Mandra
- Shell Development Company**  
(Houston, Texas)  
John Wainwright
- Sinclair Oil & Gas Company**  
(Tulsa, Oklahoma)  
A. L. Bowsher
- Smithsonian Institution** (Washington, D.C.)  
R. H. Benson, \*R. S. Boardman, \*A. H.  
Cheetham, G. A. Copoer, T. G. Gib-  
son, E. G. Kauffman, P. M. Kier,  
R. B. Manning, David Pawson, John  
Pojeta, H. A. Rehder
- Southern Illinois University** (Carbondale)  
\*John Utgaard
- Stanford University** (Stanford, California)  
Eugene Coan, A. Myra Keen
- State Geological Survey of Kansas**  
(Lawrence)  
D. E. Nodine Zeller
- State University of Iowa** (Iowa City)  
W. M. Furnish, B. F. Glenister, H. L.  
Strimple
- State University of New York**  
(Stony Brook)  
A. R. Palmer
- Tulane University**  
(New Orleans, Louisiana)  
Emily Vokes, H. E. Vokes
- Unattached**  
R. Wright Barker (Bellaire, Texas), H.

J. Harrington (Houston, Texas)  
**United States Geological Survey**  
 (Washington, D.C.)  
 J. M. Berdan, R. C. Douglass, Mackenzie  
 Gordon, Jr., R. E. Grant, \*O. L.  
 Karklins, K. E. Lohman, N. F. Sohl,  
 I. G. Sohn, E. L. Yochelson; Dwight  
 Taylor (Menlo Park, Calif.)  
**University of California (Berkeley)**  
 J. W. Durham, C. D. Wagner  
**University of California (Los Angeles)**  
 N. G. Lane, W. P. Popenoe, Helen Tap-  
 pan  
**University of California (San Diego, La  
 Jolla)**  
 M. N. Bramlette, A. R. Loeblich III, W.  
 A. Newman  
**University of Chicago (Illinois)**  
 J. M. Weller  
**University of Cincinnati (Ohio)**  
 K. E. Caster, \*O. B. Nye  
**University of Florida (Gainesville)**  
 H. K. Brooks, F. G. Thompson  
**University of Illinois (Urbana)**  
 H. W. Scott  
**University of Kansas (Lawrence)**  
 A. B. Leonard, Lavon McCormick, R. C.  
 Moore, A. J. Rowell, Curt Teichert,  
 R. H. Thompson  
**University of Massachusetts (Amherst)**  
 C. W. Pitrat  
**University of Miami (Florida)**  
 F. M. Bayer, Donald Moore

**University of Michigan (Ann Arbor)**  
 J. B. Burch, R. V. Kesling, D. B. Macurda,  
 C. P. Morgan, E. C. Stumm  
**University of Minnesota (Minneapolis)**  
 F. M. Swain  
**University of Missouri (Columbia)**  
 R. E. Peck  
**University of Missouri (Rolla)**  
 Harriet Exline, D. L. Frizzell  
**University of Oklahoma (Norman)**  
 C. C. Branson  
**Western Reserve University**  
 (Cleveland, Ohio)  
 F. G. Stehli  
**Wichita State University (Kansas)**  
 Paul Tasch  
**Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution**  
 (Woods Hole, Massachusetts)  
 R. R. Hessler  
**Yale University (New Haven, Connecticut)**  
 A. L. McAlester

#### DECEASED

W. J. Arkell, R. S. Bassler, L. R. Cox, L. M.  
 Davies, Julia Gardner, W. H. Hass, J. B.  
 Knight, M. W. de Laubenfels, A. K. Miller,  
 H. M. Muir-Wood, Alexander Petrunke-  
 vitch, Emma Richter, Rudolf Richter, W. K.  
 Spencer, M. A. Stainbrook, L. W. Stephen-  
 son, O. W. Tiegs, Johannes Wanner, T. H.  
 Withers, Arthur Wrigley

#### *Alphabetical List*

Ager, D. V., London (Imperial College)  
 Amsden, T. W., Norman, Okla. (Oklahoma Geol.  
 Survey)  
 Arkell, W. J., (deceased)  
 Bairstow, Leslie, London (British Museum Nat.  
 History)  
 Barker, R. W., Bellaire, Tex. (unattached)  
 Bassler, R. S. (deceased)  
 Batten, R. L., New York (American Museum Nat.  
 History)  
 Bayer, F. M., Miami, Fla. (Inst. Marine Sci., Univ.  
 Miami)  
 Beaver, H. H., Begles, France (Esso Prod. Research  
 Co.)  
 Benson, R. H., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian  
 Inst.)  
 Berdan, J. M., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol.  
 Survey)  
 Biernat, Gertruda, Warszawa, Pologne (Pánstwowe  
 Wydawnictwo Naukowe)

\*Boardman, R. S., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian  
 Inst.)  
 Bold, W. A. van den, Baton Rouge, La. (Louisiana  
 State Univ.)  
 Boschma, H., Leiden, Netherlands (Rijksmuseum  
 van Natuurlijke Historie)  
 Boss, Kenneth, Cambridge, Mass. (Harvard Univ.)  
 Boucot, A. J., Pasadena, Calif. (Calif. Inst. Tech-  
 nology)  
 Bowsher, A. L., Tulsa, Okla. (Sinclair Oil & Gas  
 Co.)  
 Bramlette, M. N., La Jolla, Calif. (Scripps Inst.  
 Oceanography)  
 Branson, C. C., Norman, Okla. (Univ. Oklahoma)  
 Breimer, A., Amsterdam, Netherlands (Inst.  
 Aardwetensch. Vrije Univ.)  
 Brooks, H. K., Gainesville, Fla. (Univ. Florida)  
 Bulman, O. M. B., Cambridge, Eng. (Univ. Cam-  
 bridge)  
 Burch, J. B., Ann Arbor, Mich. (Univ. Michigan)

- \*Callomon, J. H., London (Univ. College)
- Campbell, A. S., St. Mary's, Calif. (St. Mary's College)
- Carpenter, F. M., Cambridge, Mass. (Harvard Univ.)
- Casey, Raymond, London (Geol. Survey Great Britain)
- Caster, K. E., Cincinnati, Ohio (Univ. Cincinnati)
- Chavan, André, Seyssel (Ain), France (unattached)
- \*Cheetham, A. H., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)
- Clarke, A. H., Jr., Ottawa, Ontario, Canada (Nat. Museum)
- Clench, W. J., Cambridge, Mass. (Harvard Univ.)
- Coan, Eugene, Stanford, Calif. (Stanford Univ.)
- Cole, W. S., Ithaca, N.Y. (Cornell Univ.)
- Coogan, H. A., Kent, Ohio (Kent State Univ.)
- \*Cook, P. L., London (British Museum Nat. History)
- Cooper, G. A., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)
- Cox, L. R. (deceased)
- \*Cuffey, R. J., Washington, D.C. (Armed Forces Inst. Pathology)
- Curry, Dennis, Middlesex, Eng. (unattached)
- Davies, L. M. (deceased)
- Dechaseaux, Colette, Paris (Laboratoire de Paléont. à la Sorbonne)
- Dell, R. K., Wellington, N. Z. (Dominion Museum)
- \*Donovan, D. T., London, Eng. (Univ. College)
- Douglass, R. C., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol. Survey)
- Durham, J. W., Berkeley, Calif. (Univ. California)
- Eames, F. E., Middlesex, Eng. (British Petroleum Co.)
- Elliott, G. F., London (Iraq Petroleum Co.)
- Emerson, W. K., New York (American Museum Nat. History)
- Erben, H. K., Bonn, W. Germany (Univ. Bonn)
- Exline, Harriet, Rolla, Mo. (Univ. Missouri)
- Eyer, J. A., Ponca City, Okla. (Continental Oil Co.)
- Fay, R. O., Norman, Okla. (Oklahoma Geol. Survey)
- Fell, H. B., Cambridge, Mass. (Harvard Univ.)
- \*Finks, R. M., Flushing, N. Y. (Queens College)
- Fischer, A. G., Princeton, N. J., (Princeton Univ.)
- Fisher, D. W., Albany, N. Y. (New York State Museum)
- Fleming, C. A., Lower Hutt, N. Z. (New Zealand Geol. Survey)
- Frizzell, D. L., Rolla, Mo. (Univ. Missouri)
- Furnish, W. M., Iowa City, Iowa (State Univ. Iowa)
- Gardner, Julia (deceased)
- Gibson, T. G., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)
- Glaessner, M. F., Adelaide, S. Australia (Univ. Adelaide)
- Glenister, B. F., Iowa City, Iowa (State Univ. Iowa)
- Gordon, Isabella, London (British Museum Nat. History)
- Gordon, Mackenzie, Jr., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol. Survey)
- Grant, R. E., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol. Survey)
- Haas, Fritz, Chicago, Ill. (Field Museum Nat. History)
- Hahn, Gerhard, Berlin (Freie Univ.)
- Hanai, Tetsuro, Tokyo (Univ. Tokyo)
- Hanna, G. D., San Francisco, Calif. (California Acad. Sci.)
- Häntzschel, Walter, Hamburg, Germany (Geol. Staatsinst.)
- Harrington, H. J., Houston, Tex. (unattached)
- Hass, W. H. (deceased)
- Hatai, Kotori, Sendai, Japan (Tohoku Univ.)
- Hawkins, H. L., Reading, Eng. (Reading Univ.)
- Heard, W. H., Tallahassee, Fla. (Florida State Univ.)
- Hedgpeth, J. W., Newport, Ore. (Oregon State Univ.)
- Henningsmoen, Gunnar, Oslo, Norway (Univ. Oslo)
- Hertlein, L. G., San Francisco, Calif. (California Acad. Sci.)
- Hessland, Ivar, Stockholm, Sweden (Univ. Stockholm)
- Hessler, R. R., Woods Hole, Mass. (Woods Hole Oceanogr. Inst.)
- Hill, Dorothy, Brisbane, Australia (Univ. Queensland)
- Hölder, Helmut, Münster, Germany (Univ. Münster)
- Hoffman, R. L., Radford, Va. (Radford College)
- Holthuis, L. B., Leiden, Netherlands (Rijksmuseum van Natuurlijke Historie)
- \*House, M. R., Oxford, Eng. (Univ. Museum)
- \*Howarth, M. K., London (British Museum Nat. History)
- Howe, H. V., Baton Rouge, La. (Louisiana State Univ.)
- Howell, B. F., Princeton, N. J. (Princeton Univ.)
- Hubendick, Bengt, Goteborg, Sweden (Naturhistoriska Museet)
- Hyman, L. H., New York (American Museum Nat. History)
- Jaanusson, Valdar, Stockholm (Rijksmuseum)
- Jeffords, R. M., Houston, Tex. (Esso Prod. Research Co.)
- Jeletzky, J. A., Ottawa, Ontario, Canada (Geol. Survey Canada)
- Johnson, J. G., Pasadena, Calif. (California Inst. Technology)
- Jope, Margaret, Belfast, N. Ireland (Queen's Univ. of Belfast)
- \*Karklins, O. L., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol. Survey)
- Kauffman, E. G., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)
- Keen, A. Myra, Stanford, Calif. (Stanford Univ.)
- Kesling, R. V., Ann Arbor, Mich. (Univ. Michigan)

- Kier, P. M., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)  
 Knight, J. B. (deceased)  
 \*Kullman, Jürgen, Tübingen, W. Germany (Univ. Tübingen)  
 Kummel, Bernhard, Cambridge, Mass. (Harvard Univ.)  
 Lane, N. G., Los Angeles, Calif. (Univ. California)  
 La Rocque, Aurèle, Columbus, Ohio (Ohio State Univ.)  
 \*Larwood, G. P., Durham, Eng. (Univ. Durham)  
 Laubenfels, M. W. de (deceased)  
 Lecompte, Marius, Louvain, Belgium (Univ. Louvain)  
 Leonard, A. B., Lawrence, Kans. (Univ. Kansas)  
 Levinson, S. A., Houston, Tex. (Esso Prod. Research Co.)  
 Lochman-Balk, Christina, Socorro, N. Mex. (New Mexico Inst. Mining & Technology)  
 Loeblich, A. R., Jr., La Habra, Calif. (Chevron Oil Field Research Co.)  
 Loeblich, A. R., III, La Jolla, Calif. (Scripps Inst. Oceanography)  
 Lohman, K. E., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol. Survey)  
 Lowenstam, H. A., Pasadena, Calif. (California Inst. Technology)  
 Ludbrook, N. H., Adelaide, S. Australia (South Australia Geol. Survey)  
 McAlester, A. L., New Haven, Conn. (Yale Univ.)  
 McCormick, Lavon, Lawrence, Kans. (Univ. Kansas)  
 McLaren, D. J., Calgary, Alberta, Canada (Inst. Sed. & Petrol. Geology)  
 Macurda, D. B., Ann Arbor, Mich. (Univ. Michigan)  
 Mandra, Y. T., San Francisco, Calif. (San Francisco State College)  
 Manning, R. B., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)  
 Manton, S. M., London (British Museum Nat. History)  
 Marwick, J., Lower Hutt, N. Z. (New Zealand Geol. Survey)  
 Melville, R. V., London (Geol. Survey Great Britain)  
 Miller, A. K. (deceased)  
 Montanaro Gallitelli, Eugenia, Modena, Italy (Univ. Modena)  
 Moore, Donald, Miami, Fla. (Univ. Miami, Inst. Marine Sci.)  
 Moore, R. C., Lawrence, Kans. (Univ. Kansas)  
 Morgan, C. P., Ann Arbor, Mich. (Univ. Michigan)  
 Morris, N. J., London (British Museum Nat. History)  
 Müller, A. H., Freiberg, Germany (Geol. Inst. Bergakad.)  
 Müller, K. J., Bonn, Germany (Univ. Bonn)  
 Muir-Wood, H. M. (deceased)  
 Newell, N. D., New York (American Museum Nat. History)  
 Newman, W. A., La Jolla, Calif. (Scripps Inst. Oceanography)  
 Norris, A. W., Ottawa, Ontario, Canada (Geol. Survey of Canada)  
 Nuttall, C. P., London (British Museum Nat. History)  
 \*Nye, O. B., Cincinnati, Ohio (Univ. Cincinnati)  
 Okulitch, V. J., Vancouver, Canada (Univ. British Columbia)  
 Olsson, A. A., Coral Gables, Fla. (Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia)  
 Palmer, A. R., Stony Brook, Long Island, N. Y. (State Univ. New York)  
 Palmer, K. V. W., Ithaca, N. Y. (Paleont. Research Inst.)  
 Papp, Adolph, Wien, Austria (Univ. Wien)  
 Parodiz, Juan, Pittsburgh, Pa. (Carnegie Museum)  
 Pawson, David, Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)  
 Peck, R. E., Columbia, Mo. (Univ. Missouri)  
 Perkins, B. F., Baton Rouge, La. (Louisiana State Univ.)  
 Petrunkevitch, Alexander (deceased)  
 Pitrat, C. W., Amherst, Mass. (Univ. Massachusetts)  
 Pojeta, John, Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)  
 Popenoe, W. P., Los Angeles, Calif. (Univ. Calif.)  
 Poulsen, Chr., København (Univ. København)  
 Powell, A. W. B., Auckland, N. Z. (Auckland Inst. & Museum)  
 Puri, H. S., Tallahassee, Fla. (Florida Geol. Survey)  
 Radwin, George, San Diego, Calif. (San Diego Nat. History Museum)  
 Rasetti, Franco, Baltimore, Md. (Johns Hopkins Univ.)  
 Regnéll, Gerhard, Lund, Sweden (Univ. Lund)  
 Rehder, H. A., Washington, D.C. (Smithsonian Inst.)  
 Reichel, Manfred, Basel, Switzerland (Univ. Basel)  
 \*Reid, R. E. H., Belfast, N. Ireland (Queen's Univ. of Belfast)  
 Reyment, R. A., Uppsala, Sweden (Univ. Uppsala)  
 Rhodes, F. H. T., Swansea, Wales (Univ. Wales)  
 Richter, Emma (deceased)  
 Richter, Rudolf (deceased)  
 Riedel, Adolf, Warszawa, Pologne (Pánstwowe Wydawnictwo Naukowe)  
 Robertson, Robert, Philadelphia, Pa. (Acad. Nat. Sci.)  
 Rolfe, W. D. I., Glasgow, Scotland (Univ. Glasgow)  
 Rowell, A. J., Lawrence, Kans. (Univ. Kansas)  
 Rudick, M. J. S., Cambridge, Eng. (Univ. Cambridge)  
 \*Schager, Sten, Stockholm (Univ. Stockholm)  
 Schindewolf, O. H., Tübingen, Germany (Univ. Tübingen)  
 Schmidt, Herta, Frankfurt, Germany (Natur Museum u. Forsch.-Inst. Senckenberg)  
 Scott, H. W., Urbana, Ill. (Univ. Illinois)  
 Sdzuy, Klaus, Würzburg, Germany (Univ. Würzburg)

- Shaver, R. H., Bloomington, Ind. (Indiana Geol. Survey & Univ. Indiana)
- Sieverts-Doreck, Hertha, Stuttgart-Möhringen, Germany (unattached)
- Sinclair, G. W., Ottawa, Ontario, Canada (Geol. Survey Canada)
- Smith, A. G., San Francisco, Calif. (California Acad. Sci.)
- Smith, L. A., Tripoli, Libya (Esso Standard Libya Inc.)
- Sohl, N. F., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol. Survey)
- Sohn, I. G., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol. Survey)
- Solem, G. A., Chicago, Ill. (Field Museum Nat. History)
- Soot-Ryen, T., Oslo (Univ. Oslo)
- Spencer, W. K. (deceased)
- Stainbrook, M. A. (deceased)
- Staton, R. D., Cambridge, Mass. (Harvard Univ.)
- Stehli, F. G., Cleveland, Ohio (Western Reserve Univ.)
- Stenzel, H. B., Baton Rouge, La. (Louisiana State Univ.)
- Stephenson, L. W. (deceased)
- Størmer, Leif, Oslo (Univ. Oslo)
- Stough, Joan, Houston, Tex. (Esso Prod. Research Co.)
- Strimple, H. L., Iowa City, Iowa (State Univ. Iowa)
- Struve, Wolfgang, Frankfurt, Germany (Natur-Museum u. Forsch.-Inst. Senckenberg)
- Stubblefield, C. J., London (unattached)
- Stumm, E. C., Ann Arbor, Mich. (Univ. Michigan)
- Swain, F. M., Minneapolis, Minn. (Univ. Minnesota)
- Sweet, W. C., Columbus, Ohio (Ohio State Univ.)
- Sylvester-Bradley, P. C., Leicester, Eng. (Univ. Leicester)
- Tappen, Helen, Los Angeles, Calif. (Univ. California)
- Tasch, Paul, Wichita, Kans. (Wichita State Univ.)
- \*Tavener-Smith, Ronald, Belfast, N. Ireland (Queen's Univ. of Belfast)
- Taylor, Dwight, Menlo Park, Calif. (U.S. Geol. Survey)
- Teichert, Curt, Lawrence, Kans. (Univ. Kansas)
- Thompson, F. G., Gainesville, Fla. (Univ. Florida)
- Thompson, M. L., Urbana, Ill. (Illinois State Geol. Survey)
- Thompson, R. H., Lawrence, Kans. (Univ. Kansas)
- Tiegs, O. W. (deceased)
- Tripp, R. P., Sevenoaks, Kent, Eng. (unattached)
- Trueman, E. R., Hull, Eng. (Univ. Hull)
- Turner, Ruth, Cambridge, Mass. (Harvard Univ.)
- Ubaghs, Georges, Liège (Univ. Liège)
- Utgaard, John, Carbondale, Ill. (Southern Illinois Univ.)
- Van Sant, J. F., Houston, Tex. (Esso Prod. Research Co.)
- Vokes, Emily, New Orleans, La. (Tulane Univ.)
- Vokes, H. E., New Orleans, La. (Tulane Univ.)
- Wagner, C. D., Berkeley, Calif. (Univ. California)
- Wainwright, John, Houston, Tex. (Shell Development Co.)
- Wanner, Johannes (deceased)
- Weir, John, Tayport, Fife, Scotland (Univ. Glasgow)
- Weller, J. M., Chicago, Ill. (Univ. Chicago)
- Wells, J. W., Ithaca, N. Y. (Cornell Univ.)
- Whittington, H. B., Cambridge, Eng. (Univ. Cambridge)
- Williams, Alwyn, Belfast, N. Ireland (Queen's Univ. of Belfast)
- Wills, L. J., Birmingham, Eng. (Univ. Birmingham)
- Withers, T. H. (deceased)
- Wright, A. D., Belfast, N. Ireland (Queen's Univ. of Belfast)
- Wright, C. W., London (unattached)
- Wrigley, Arthur (deceased)
- Yochelson, E. L., Washington, D.C. (U.S. Geol. Survey)
- Yonge, C. M., Glasgow, Scotland (Univ. Glasgow)
- Zeller, D. E. Nodine, Lawrence, Kans. (State Geol. Survey Kansas)
- Zullo, V. A., San Francisco, Calif. (California Acad. Sci.)

## EDITORIAL PREFACE

The aim of the *Treatise on Invertebrate Paleontology*, as originally conceived and consistently pursued, is to present the most comprehensive and authoritative, yet compact statement of knowledge concerning invertebrate fossil groups that can be formulated by collaboration of competent specialists in seeking to organize what has been learned of this subject up to the mid-point of the present century. Such work has value in providing a most useful summary of the collective results of multitudinous investigations and thus should constitute an in-

dispensable text and reference book for all persons who wish to know about remains of invertebrate organisms preserved in rocks of the earth's crust. This applies to neozoologists as well as paleozoologists and to beginners in study of fossils as well as to thoroughly trained, long-experienced professional workers, including teachers, stratigraphical geologists, and individuals engaged in research on fossil invertebrates. The making of a reasonably complete inventory of present knowledge of invertebrate paleontology may be expected to yield

needed foundation for future research and it is hoped that the *Treatise* will serve this end.

The *Treatise* is divided into parts which bear index letters, each except the initial and concluding ones being defined to include designated groups of invertebrates. The chief purpose of this arrangement is to provide for independence of the several parts as regards date of publication, because it is judged desirable to print and distribute each segment as soon as possible after it is ready for press. Pages in each part bear the assigned index letter joined with numbers beginning with 1 and running consecutively to the end of the part.

The outline of subjects to be treated in connection with each large group of invertebrates includes (1) description of morphological features, with special reference to hard parts, (2) ontogeny, (3) classification, (4) geological distribution, (5) evolutionary trends and phylogeny, and (6) systematic description of genera, subgenera, and higher taxonomic units. In general, paleoecological aspects of study are omitted or little emphasized because comprehensive treatment of this subject is given in the *Treatise on Marine Ecology and Paleocology* (H. S. LADD, Editor, Geological Society of America, Memoir 67, 1957), prepared under auspices of a committee of the United States National Research Council. A selected list of references is furnished in each part of the *Treatise*.

Features of style in the taxonomic portions of this work have been fixed by the Editor with aid furnished by advice from representatives of the societies which have undertaken to sponsor the *Treatise*. It is the Editor's responsibility to consult with authors and co-ordinate their work, seeing that manuscript properly incorporates features of adopted style. Especially he has been called on to formulate policies in respect to many questions of nomenclature and procedure. The subject of family and subfamily names is reviewed briefly in a following section of this preface, and features of *Treatise* style in generic descriptions are explained.

A generous grant of \$35,000 has been made by the Geological Society of America for the purpose of preparing *Treatise* illustrations. Administration of expenditures has been in charge of the Editor and most

of the work by photographers and artists has been done under his direction at the University of Kansas, but sizable parts of this program have also been carried forward in Washington and London.

In December, 1959, the National Science Foundation of the United States, through its Division of Biological and Medical Sciences and the Program Director for Systematic Biology, made a grant in the amount of \$210,000 for the purpose of aiding the completion of yet-unpublished volumes of the *Treatise*. Payment of this sum was provided to be made in installments distributed over a five-year period, with administration of disbursements handled by the University of Kansas. An additional grant (No. GB 4544) of \$102,800 was made by the National Science Foundation in January, 1966, for the two-year period 1966-67, and this was extended for the calendar year 1968 by payment of \$25,700 in October, 1967. Expenditures planned are primarily for needed assistance to authors and may be arranged through approved institutions located anywhere. Important help for the Director-Editor of the *Treatise* has been made available from the grant, but no part of his stipend has come from it. Grateful acknowledgment to the Foundation is expressed on behalf of the societies sponsoring the *Treatise*, the University of Kansas, and innumerable individuals benefited by the *Treatise* project.

## ZOOLOGICAL NAMES

Many questions arise in connection with zoological names, especially including those that relate to their acceptability and to alterations of some which may be allowed or demanded. Procedure in obtaining answers to these questions is guided and to a large extent governed by regulations published (1961) in the *International Code of Zoological Nomenclature* (hereinafter cited simply as the *Code*). The prime object of the *Code* is to promote stability and universality in the scientific names of animals, ensuring also that each name is distinct and unique while avoiding restrictions on freedom of taxonomic thought or action. Priority is a basic principle, but under specified conditions its application can be modified. This is all well and good, yet nomenclatural tasks confronting the zoological

taxonomist are formidable. They warrant the complaint of some that zoology, including paleozoology, is the study of animals rather than of names applied to them.

Several ensuing pages are devoted to aspects of zoological nomenclature that are judged to have chief importance in relation to procedures adopted in the *Treatise*. Terminology is explained, and examples of style employed in the nomenclatural parts of systematic descriptions are given.

### TAXA GROUPS

Each taxonomic unit (taxon, pl., taxa) of the animal and protistan kingdoms belongs to some one or another rank in the adopted hierarchy of classificatory divisions. In part, this hierarchy is defined by the *Code* to include a species-group of taxa, a genus-group, and a family-group. Units of lower rank than subspecies are excluded from zoological nomenclature and those higher than superfamily of the family-group are not regulated by the *Code*. It is natural and convenient to discuss nomenclatural matters in general terms first and then to consider each of the taxa groups separately. Especially important is provision that within each taxa group classificatory units are coordinate (equal in rank), whereas units of different taxa groups are not coordinate.

### FORMS OF NAMES

All zoological names are divisible into groups based on their form (spelling). The first-published form (or forms) of a name is defined as original spelling (*Code*, Art. 32) and any later-published form (or forms) of the same name is designated as subsequent spelling (Art. 33). Obviously, original and subsequent spellings of a given name may or may not be identical and this affects consideration of their correctness. Further, examination of original spellings of names shows that by no means all can be distinguished as correct. Some are incorrect, and the same is true of subsequent spellings.

#### *Original Spellings*

If the first-published form of a name is consistent and unambiguous, being identical wherever it appears, the original spelling is defined as correct unless it contravenes

some stipulation of the *Code* (Arts. 26-31), unless the original publication contains clear evidence of an inadvertent error, in the sense of the *Code*, or among names belonging to the family-group, unless correction of the termination or the stem of the type-genus is required. An unambiguous original spelling that fails to meet these requirements is defined as incorrect.

If a name is spelled in more than one way in the original publication, the form adopted by the first reviser is accepted as the correct original spelling, provided that it complies with mandatory stipulations of the *Code* (Arts. 26-31), including its provision for automatic emendations of minor sort.

Incorrect original spellings are any that fail to satisfy requirements of the *Code*, or that represent an inadvertent error, or that are one of multiple original spellings not adopted by a first reviser. These have no separate status in zoological nomenclature and therefore cannot enter into homonymy or be used as replacement names. They call for correction wherever found. For example, a name originally published with a diacritic mark, apostrophe, diaeresis, or hyphen requires correction by deleting such features and uniting parts of the name originally separated by them, except that deletion of an umlaut from a vowel is accompanied by inserting "e" after the vowel.

#### *Subsequent Spellings*

If a name classed as a subsequent spelling is identical with an original spelling, it is distinguishable as correct or incorrect on the same criteria that apply to the original spelling. This means that a subsequent spelling identical with a correct original spelling is also correct, and one identical with an incorrect original spelling is also incorrect. In the latter case, both original and subsequent spellings require correction wherever found (authorship and date of the original incorrect spelling being retained).

If a subsequent spelling differs from an original spelling in any way, even by the omission, addition, or alteration of a single letter, the subsequent spelling must be defined as a different name (except that such changes as altered terminations of adjectival specific names to obtain agreement in

gender with associated generic names, of family-group names to denote assigned taxonomic rank, and corrections for originally used diacritic marks, hyphens, and the like are excluded from spelling changes conceived to produce a different name).

Altered subsequent spellings other than the exceptions noted may be either intentional or unintentional. If demonstrably intentional, the change is designated as an emendation. Emendations are divisible into those classed as justifiable and those comprising all others classed as unjustifiable. Justifiable emendations are corrections of incorrect original spellings, and these take the authorship and date of the original spellings. Unjustifiable emendations are names having their own status in nomenclature, with author and date of their publication; they are junior objective synonyms of the name in its original form.

Subsequent spellings that differ in any way from original spellings, other than previously noted exceptions, and that are not classifiable as emendations are defined as incorrect subsequent spellings. They have no status in nomenclature, do not enter into homonymy, and cannot be used as replacement names.

## AVAILABLE AND UNAVAILABLE NAMES

### *Available Names*

An available zoological name is any that conforms to all mandatory provisions of the *Code*. Such names are classifiable in groups which are usefully recognized in the *Treatise*, though not explicitly differentiated in the *Code*. They are as follows:

1) So-called "*inviolable names*" include all available names that are not subject to any sort of alteration from their originally published form. They comprise correct original spellings and commonly include correct subsequent spellings, but include no names classed as emendations. Here belong most genus-group names (including those for collective groups), some of which differ in spelling from others by only a single letter.

2) Names may be termed "*perfect names*" if, as originally published (with or without duplication by subsequent authors), they meet all mandatory requirements, needing no correction of any kind, but

nevertheless are legally alterable in such ways as changing the termination (e.g., many species-group names, family-group names, suprafamilial names). This group does not include emended incorrect original spellings (e.g., *Oepikina*, replacement of *Öpikina*).

3) "*Imperfect names*" are available names that as originally published (with or without duplication by subsequent authors) contain mandatorily emendable defects. Incorrect original spellings are imperfect names. Examples of emended imperfect names are: among species-group names, *guerini* (not *Guérini*), *obrienae* (not *O'Brienae*), *terranovae* (not *terra-novae*), *nunezi* (not *Nuñezi*), *Spironema rectum* (not *Spironema recta*, because generic name is neuter, not feminine); among genus-group names, *Broeggeria* (not *Bröggeria*), *Obrienia* (not *O'Brienia*), *Maccookites* (not *McCookites*); among family-group names, *Oepikidae* (not *Öpikidae*), *Spironematiidae* (not *Spironemidae*, incorrect stem), *Athyrididae* (not *Athyridae*, incorrect stem). The use of "variety" for named divisions of fossil species, according to common practice of some paleontologists, gives rise to imperfect names, which generally are emendable (*Code*, Art. 45e) by omitting this term so as to indicate the status of this taxon as a subspecies.

4) "*Vain names*" are available names consisting of unjustified intentional emendations of previously published names. The emendations are unjustified because they are not demonstrable as corrections of incorrect original spellings as defined by the *Code* (Art. 32,c). Vain names have status in nomenclature under their own authorship and date. They constitute junior objective synonyms of names in their original form. Examples are: among species-group names, *genae* (published as replacement of original unexplained masculine, *geni*, which now is not alterable), *ohioae* (invalid change from original *ohioensis*); among genus-group names, *Graphiodactylus* (invalid change from original *Graphiodactyllis*); among family-group names, *Graphiodactylidae* (based on junior objective synonym having invalid vain name).

5) An important group of available zoological names can be distinguished as "*transferred names*." These comprise au-

thorized sorts of altered names in which the change depends on transfer from one taxonomic rank to another, or possibly on transfers in taxonomic assignment of subgenera, species, or subspecies. Most commonly the transfer calls for a change in termination of the name so as to comply with stipulations of the *Code* on endings of family-group taxa and agreement in gender of specific names with associated generic names. Transferred names may be derived from any of the preceding groups except the first. Examples are: among species-group names, *Spirifer ambiguus* (masc.) to *Composita ambigua* (fem.), *Neochonetes transversalis* to *N. granulifer transversalis* or vice versa; among genus-group names, *Schizoculina* to *Oculina* (*Schizoculina*) or vice versa; among family-group names, Orthidae to Orthinae or vice versa, or superfamily Orthacea derived from Orthidae or Orthinae; among suprafamilial taxa (not governed by the *Code*), order Orthida to suborder Orthina or vice versa. The authorship and date of transferred names are not affected by the transfers, but the author responsible for the transfer and the date of his action may appropriately be recorded in such works as the *Treatise*.

6) Improved or "corrected names" include both mandatory and allowable emendations of imperfect names and of suprafamilial names, which are not subject to regulation as to name form. Examples of corrected imperfect names are given with the discussion of group 3. Change from the originally published ordinal name Endoceroidea (TEICHERT, 1933) to the presently recognized Endocerida illustrates a "corrected" suprafamilial name. Group 6 names differ from those in group 5 in not being dependent on transfers in taxonomic rank or assignment, but some names are classifiable in both groups.

7) "Substitute names" are available names expressly proposed as replacements for invalid zoological names, such as junior homonyms. These may be classifiable also as belonging in groups 1, 2, or 3. The glossary appended to the *Code* refers to these as "new names" (*nomina nova*) but they are better designated as substitute names, since their newness is temporary and relative. The first-published substitute name

that complies with the definition here given takes precedence over any other. An example is *Marieita* LOEBLICH & TAPPAN, 1964, as substitute for *Reichelina* MARIE, 1955 (*non* ERK, 1942).

8) "Conserved names" include a relatively small number of species-group, genus-group, and family-group names which have come to be classed as available and valid by action of the International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature exercising its plenary powers to this end or ruling to conserve a junior synonym in place of a rejected "forgotten" name (*nomen oblitum*) (Art. 23,b). Currently, such names are entered on appropriate "Official Lists," which are published from time to time.

It is useful for convenience and brevity of distinction in recording these groups of available zoological names to employ Latin designations in the pattern of *nomen nudum* (abbr., *nom. nud.*) and others. Thus we may recognize the preceding numbered groups as follows: 1) *nomina inviolata* (sing., *nomen inviolatum*, abbr., *nom. inviol.*), 2) *nomina perfecta* (*nomen perfectum*, *nom. perf.*), 3) *nomina imperfecta* (*nomen imperfectum*, *nom. imperf.*), 4) *nomina vana* (*nomen vanum*, *nom. van.*), 5) *nomina translata* (*nomen translatum*, *nom. transl.*), 6) *nomina correctata* (*nomen correctum*, *nom. correct.*), 7) *nomina substituta* (*nomen substitutum*, *nom. subst.*), 8) *nomina conservata* (*nomen conservatum*, *nom. conserv.*).

Additional to the groups differentiated above, the *Code* (Art. 17) specifies that a zoological name is not prevented from availability a) by becoming a junior synonym, for under various conditions this may be re-employed, b) for a species-group name by finding that original description of the taxon relates to more than a single taxonomic entity or to parts of animals belonging to two or more such entities, c) for species-group names by determining that it first was combined with an invalid or unavailable genus-group name, d) by being based only on part of an animal, sex of a species, ontogenetic stage, or one form of a polymorphic species, e) by being originally proposed for an organism not considered to be an animal but now so regarded, f) by incorrect original spelling which is correctable under the *Code*, g) by anonymous publica-

tion before 1951, h) by conditional proposal before 1961, i) by designation as a variety or form before 1961, j) by concluding that a name is inappropriate (Art. 18), or k) for a specific name by observing that it is tautonymous (Art. 18).

It is worthy of mention that names published for collective groups (see later discussion under "Genus-Group Names") are authorized by the *Code* (Art. 42c) for use in zoological nomenclature and therefore may be construed to be available names which are treated for convenience exactly as if they were generic names.

#### *Unavailable Names*

All zoological names which fail to comply with mandatory provisions of the *Code* are unavailable names and have no status in zoological nomenclature. None can be used under authorship and date of their original publication as a replacement name (*nom. subst.*) and none preoccupies for purposes of the Law of Homonymy. Names identical in spelling with some, but not all, unavailable names can be classed as available if and when they are published in conformance to stipulations of the *Code* and they are then assigned authorship and take date of the accepted publication. Different groups of unavailable names can be discriminated, as follows.

9) "*Naked names*" include all those that fail to satisfy provisions stipulated in Article 11 of the *Code*, which states general requirements of availability, and in addition, if published before 1931, that were unaccompanied by a description, definition, or indication (Arts. 12, 16), and if published after 1930, that lacked accompanying statement of characters purporting to serve for differentiation of the taxon, or definite bibliographic reference to such a statement, or that were not proposed expressly as replacement (*nom. subst.*) of a pre-existing available name (Art. 13,a). Examples of "naked names" are: among species-group taxa, *Valvulina mixta* PARKER & JONES, 1865 (= *Cribrobulimina mixta* CUSHMAN, 1927, available and valid); among genus-group taxa, *Orbitolinopsis* SILVESTRI, 1932 (= *Orbitolinopsis* HENSON, 1948, available but classed as invalid junior synonym of *Orbitolina* D'ORBIGNY, 1850); among family-group taxa, Acquilateralidae D'ORBIGNY,

1846 (lacking type-genus), Hélicostègues D'ORBIGNY, 1826 (vernacular not latinized by later authors, Art. 11,e,iii), Poteriocrinidae AUSTIN & AUSTIN, 1843 (=fam. Poteriocrinoidea AUSTIN & AUSTIN, 1842) (neither 1843 or 1842 names complying with Art. 11,e, which states that "a family-group name must, when first published, be based on the name then valid for a contained genus," such valid name in the case of this family being *Poteriocrinites* MILLER, 1821).

10) "*Denied names*" include all those that are defined by the *Code* (Art. 32,c) as incorrect original spellings. Examples are: Specific names, *nova-zelandica*, *mülleri*, *10-brachiatus*; generic names, *M'Coyia*, *Størmerella*, *Römerina*, *Westgärdia*; family name, Růžičkinidae. Uncorrected "imperfect names" are "denied names" and unavailable, whereas corrected "imperfect names" are available.

11) "*Impermissible names*" include all those employed for alleged genus-group taxa other than genus and subgenus (Art. 42,a) (e.g., supraspecific divisions of subgenera), and all those published after 1930 that are unaccompanied by definite fixation of a type species (Art. 13,b). Examples of impermissible names are: *Martellispirifer* GATINAUD, 1949, and *Mirtellispirifer* GATINAUD, 1949, indicated respectively as a section and subsection of the subgenus *Cyrtospirifer*; *Fusarchaias* REICHEL, 1949, without definitely fixed type species (= *Fusarchaias* REICHEL, 1952, with *F. bermudezi* designated as type species).

12) "*Null names*" include all those that are defined by the *Code* (Art. 33,b) as incorrect subsequent spellings, which are any changes of original spelling not demonstrably intentional. Such names are found in all ranks of taxa.

13) "*Forgotten names*" are defined (Art. 23,b) as senior synonyms that have remained unused in primary zoological literature for more than 50 years. Such names are not to be used unless so directed by ICZN.

Latin designations for the discussed groups of unavailable zoological names are as follows: 9) *nomina nuda* (sing., *nomen nudum*, abbr., *nom. nud.*), 10) *nomina negata* (*nomen negatum*, *nom. neg.*), 11) *nomina vetita* (*nomen vetitum*, *nom. vet.*), 12) *nomina nulla* (*nomen nullum*, *nom.*

null.), 13) *nomina oblita* (*nomen oblitum*, *nom. oblit.*).

## VALID AND INVALID NAMES

Important distinctions relate to valid and available names, on one hand, and to invalid and unavailable names, on the other. Whereas determination of availability is based entirely on objective considerations guided by Articles of the *Code*, conclusions as to validity of zoological names partly may be subjective. A valid name is the correct one for a given taxon, which may have two or more available names but only a single correct name, generally the oldest. Obviously, no valid name can also be an unavailable name, but invalid names may include both available and unavailable names. Any name for a given taxon other than the valid name is an invalid name.

A sort of nomenclatorial no-man's-land is encountered in considering the status of some zoological names, such as "*doubtful names*," "*names under inquiry*," and "*forgotten names*." Latin designations of these are *nomina dubia*, *nomina inquirenda*, and *nomina oblita*, respectively. Each of these groups may include both available and unavailable names, but the latter can well be ignored. Names considered to possess availability conduce to uncertainty and instability, which ordinarily can be removed only by appealed action of ICZN. Because few zoologists care to bother in seeking such remedy, the "wastebasket" names persist.

## SUMMARY OF NAME GROUPS

Partly because only in such publications as the *Treatise* is special attention to groups of zoological names called for and partly because new designations are now introduced as means of recording distinctions explicitly as well as compactly, a summary may be useful. In the following tabulation valid groups of names are indicated in bold-face type, whereas invalid ones are printed in italics.

### DEFINITIONS OF NAME GROUPS

**nomen conservatum** (*nom. conserv.*). Name unacceptable under regulations of the *Code* which is made valid, either with original or altered spelling, through procedures specified by the *Code* or by action of ICZN exercising its plenary powers.

**nomen correctum** (*nom. correct.*). Name with intentionally altered spelling of sort required or

allowable by the *Code* but not dependent on transfer from one taxonomic rank to another ("improved name"). (See *Code*, Arts. 26-b, 27, 29, 30-a-3, 31, 32-c-i, 33-a; in addition change of endings for suprafamilial taxa not regulated by the *Code*.)

**nomen imperfectum** (*nom. imperf.*). Name that as originally published (with or without subsequent identical spelling) meets all mandatory requirements of the *Code* but contains defect needing correction ("imperfect name"). (See *Code*, Arts. 26-b, 27, 29, 32-c, 33-a.)

**nomen inviolatum** (*nom. inviol.*). Name that as originally published meets all mandatory requirements of the *Code* and also is not correctable or alterable in any way ("inviolate name").

*nomen negatum* (*nom. neg.*). Name that as originally published (with or without subsequent identical spelling) constitutes invalid original spelling, and although possibly meeting all other mandatory requirements of the *Code*, cannot be used and has no separate status in nomenclature ("denied name"). It is to be corrected wherever found.

*nomen nudum* (*nom. nud.*). Name that as originally published (with or without subsequent identical spelling) fails to meet mandatory requirements of the *Code* and having no status in nomenclature, is not correctable to establish original authorship and date ("naked name").

*nomen nullum* (*nom. null.*). Name consisting of an unintentional alteration in form (spelling) of a previously published name (either available name, as *nom. inviol.*, *nom. perf.*, *nom. imperf.*, *nom. transl.*; or unavailable name, as *nom. neg.*, *nom. nud.*, *nom. van.*, or another *nom. null.*) ("null name").

*nomen oblitum* (*nom. oblit.*). Name of senior synonym unused in primary zoological literature in more than 50 years, not to be used unless so directed by ICZN ("forgotten name").

**nomen perfectum** (*nom. perf.*). Name that as originally published meets all mandatory requirements of the *Code* and needs no correction of any kind but which nevertheless is validly alterable by change of ending ("perfect name").

**nomen substitutum** (*nom. subst.*). Replacement name published as substitute for an invalid name, such as a junior homonym (equivalent to "new name").

**nomen translatum** (*nom. transl.*). Name that is derived by valid emendation of a previously published name as result of transfer from one taxonomic rank to another within the group to which it belongs ("transferred name").

*nomen vanum* (*nom. van.*). Name consisting of an invalid intentional change in form (spelling) from a previously published name, such invalid emendation having status in nomenclature as a junior objective synonym ("vain name").

*nomen vetitum* (*nom. vet.*). Name of genus-group taxon not authorized by the *Code* or, if first published after 1930, without definitely fixed type species ("impermissible name").

Except as specified otherwise, zoological names accepted in the *Treatise* may be understood to be classifiable either as *nom-*

*ina inviolata* or *nomina perfecta* (omitting from notice *nomina correctata* among specific names) and these are not discriminated. Names which are not accepted for one reason or another include junior homonyms, senior synonyms classifiable as *nomina negata* or *nomina nuda*, and numerous junior synonyms which include both objective (*nomina vana*) and subjective types; rejected names are classified as completely as possible.

## NAME CHANGES IN RELATION TO TAXA GROUPS

### SPECIES-GROUP NAMES

Detailed consideration of valid emendation of specific and subspecific names is unnecessary here because it is well understood and relatively inconsequential. When the form of adjectival specific names is changed to obtain agreement with the gender of a generic name in transferring a species from one genus to another, it is never needful to label the changed name as a *nom. transl.* Likewise, transliteration of a letter accompanied by a diacritical mark in manner now called for by the *Code* (as in changing originally published *bröggeri* to *broeggeri*) or elimination of a hyphen (as in changing originally published *cornuoryx* to *cornuoryx*) does not require "*nom. correct.*" with it.

### GENUS-GROUP NAMES

So rare are conditions warranting change of the originally published valid form of generic and subgeneric names that lengthy discussion may be omitted. Only elimination of diacritical marks of some names in this category seems to furnish basis for valid emendation. It is true that many changes of generic and subgeneric names have been published, but virtually all of these are either *nomina vana* or *nomina nulla*. Various names which formerly were classed as homonyms are not now, for two names that differ only by a single letter (or in original publication by presence or absence of a diacritical mark) are construed to be entirely distinct.

A category of genus-group taxa and names for them calls for special notice. This comprises assemblages of identifiable species which cannot with any certainty be placed in a known genus. Such assemblages

are recognized by the *Code* as valid zoological entities called **collective groups**, with names for them "treated as generic names in the meaning of the *Code*" (Art. 42c). They differ from genera in that collective groups require no type species. Particularly for dealing with fossil assemblages of dissociated skeletal remains of echinoderms (chiefly crinoids) procedures based on definition of collective groups must find place in the *Treatise*. Names for these will uniformly be labeled as applied to collective groups with accompanying abbreviation "*coll. coll.*" (for Latin *collectio collectiva*, collective group or assemblage), thus distinguishing them from names for genera. An example is *Pentagonopentagonalis* YELTYSHEVA, 1955 (*coll. coll.*), no type species. The species *P. bilobatus* YELTSHEVA, 1960, is available as the type species of *Obuticrinus* YELTSHEVA in YELTSHEVA & STUKALINA, 1963, in accordance with its original designation as such by these authors.

Examples in use of classificatory designations for genus-group names as previously given are the following, which also illustrate designation of type species as explained later.

- Kurnatiophyllum** THOMPSON, 1875 [*\*K. concentricum*; SD GREGORY, 1917] [= *Kumatiophyllum* THOMPSON, 1876 (*nom. null.*); *Cymatiophyllum* THOMPSON, 1901 (*nom. van.*); *Cymatiophyllum* LANG, SMITH & THOMAS, 1940 (*nom. van.*)].
- Stichophyma** POMEL, 1872 [*\*Manon turbinatum* RÖMER, 1841; SD RAUFF, 1893] [= *Styphophyma* VOSMAER, 1885 (*nom. null.*); *Sticophyma* MORET, 1924 (*nom. null.*)].
- Stratophyllum** SMYTH, 1933 [*\*S. tenue*] [= *Ethmoplax* SMYTH, 1939 (*nom. van. pro Stratophyllum*); *Stratiphyllum* LANG, SMITH & THOMAS, 1940 (*nom. van. pro Stratophyllum* SMYTH) (non *Stratiphyllum* SCHEFFEN, 1933)].
- Placotelia** OPLIGER, 1907 [*\*Porostoma marconi* FROMENTEL, 1859; SD DELAUBENFELS, herein] [= *Plakotelia* OPLIGER, 1907 (*nom. neg.*)].
- Walcottella** DELAUBENFELS, 1955 [*nom. subst., pro Rhopalicus* SCHRAMM, 1936 (non FÖRSTER, 1856)].
- Cyrtograptus** CARRUTHERS, 1867 [*nom. correct.* LAPWORTH, 1873 (*pro Cyrtograptus* CARRUTHERS, (1867), *nom. conserv.* proposed BULMAN, 1955 (ICZN pend.)].
- Pentagonopentagonalis** YELTSHEVA, 1955 (*coll. coll.*), for species based on crinoid-stem parts [no type species] (ICZN pend.).

### FAMILY-GROUP NAMES; USE OF "NOM. TRANSL."

The *Code* specifies the endings only for

subfamily (-inae) and family (-idae) but all family-group taxa are defined as coordinate, signifying that for purposes of priority a name published for a taxon in any category and based on a particular type genus shall date from its original publication for a taxon in any category, retaining this priority (and authorship) when the taxon is treated as belonging to a lower or higher category. By exclusion of -inae and -idae, respectively reserved for subfamily and family, the endings of names used for tribes and superfamilies must be unspecified different letter combinations. These, if introduced subsequent to designation of a subfamily or family based on the same nominate genus, are *nomina translata*, as is also a subfamily that is elevated to family rank or a family reduced to subfamily rank. In the *Treatise* it is desirable to distinguish the valid alteration comprised in the changed ending of each transferred family-group name by the abbreviation “*nom. transl.*” and record of the author and date belonging to this alteration. This is particularly important in the case of superfamilies, for it is the author who introduced this taxon that one wishes to know about rather than the author of the superfamily as defined by the *Code*, for the latter is merely the individual who first defined some lower-rank family-group taxon that contains the nominate genus of the superfamily. The publication of the author containing introduction of the superfamily *nomen translatum* is likely to furnish the information on taxonomic considerations that support definition of the unit.

Examples of the use of “*nom. transl.*” are the following.

**Subfamily STYLININAE d'Orbigny, 1851**

[*nom. transl.* EDWARDS & HAIME, 1857 (*ex* Stylinidae D'ORBIGNY, 1851)]

**Superfamily ARCHAEOCTONOIDEA**

**Petrunkevitch, 1949**

[*nom. transl.* PETRUNKEVITCH, 1955 (*ex* Archaeoctionidae PETRUNKEVITCH, 1949)]

**Superfamily CRIOCERATITACEAE Hyatt, 1900**

[*nom. transl.* WRIGHT, 1952 (*ex* Cricoceratitidae HYATT, 1900)]

**FAMILY-GROUP NAMES; USE OF “NOM. CORRECT.”**

Valid name changes classed as *nomina correcta* do not depend on transfer from one category of family-group units to another but most commonly involve correction of

the stem of the nominate genus; in addition, they include somewhat arbitrarily chosen modification of ending for names of tribe or superfamily. Examples of the use of “*nom. correct.*” are the following.

**Family STREPTELASMATIDAE Nicholson, 1889**

[*nom. correct.* WEDEKIND, 1927 (*pro* Streptelasmidae NICHOLSON, 1889, *nom. imperf.*)]

**Family PALAEOSCORPIIDAE Lehmann, 1944**

[*nom. correct.* PETRUNKEVITCH, 1955 (*pro* Palaeoscorpionidae LEHMANN, 1944, *nom. imperf.*)]

**Family AGLASPIDIDAE Miller, 1877**

[*nom. correct.* STØRMEER, 1959 (*pro* Aglaspidae MILLER, 1877, *nom. imperf.*)]

**Superfamily AGARICIICAE Gray, 1847**

[*nom. correct.* WELLS, 1956 (*pro* Agaricioidae VAUGHAN & WELLS, 1943, *nom. transl. ex* Agariciidae GRAY, 1847)]

**FAMILY-GROUP NAMES; USE OF “NOM. CONSERV.”**

It may happen that long-used family-group names are invalid under strict application of the *Code*. In order to retain the otherwise invalid name, appeal to ICZN is needful. Examples of use of *nom. conserv.* in this connection, as cited in the *Treatise*, are the following.

**Family ARIETTIDAE Hyatt, 1874**

[*nom. correct.* HAUG, 1885 (*pro* Arietidae HYATT, 1875) *nom. conserv.* proposed ARKELL, 1955 (ICZN pend.)]

**Family STEPHANOCERATIDAE Neumayr, 1875**

[*nom. correct.* FISCHER, 1882 (*pro* Stephanoceratinen NEUMAYR, 1875, invalid vernacular name), *nom. conserv.* proposed ARKELL, 1955 (ICZN pend.)]

**FAMILY-GROUP NAMES; REPLACEMENTS**

Family-group names are formed by adding letter combinations (prescribed for family and subfamily but not now for others) to the stem of the name belonging to genus (nominate genus) first chosen as type of the assemblage. The type genus need not be the oldest in terms of receiving its name and definition, but it must be the first-published as name-giver to a family-group taxon among all those included. Once fixed, the family-group name remains tied to the nominate genus even if its name is changed by reason of status as a junior homonym or junior synonym, either objective or subjective. Seemingly, the *Code* (Art. 39) requires replacement of a family-group name only in the event that the nominate genus is found to be a junior homonym, and then a substitute family-group name is accepted if it is formed from the oldest available substitute name for the

nominate genus. Authorship and date attributed to the replacement family-group name are determined by first publication of the changed family group-name, but for purposes of the Law of Priority, they take the date of the replaced name. Numerous long-used family-group names are incorrect in being *nomina nuda*, since they fail to satisfy criteria of availability (Art. 11,e). These also demand replacement by valid names.

The aim of family-group nomenclature is greatest possible stability and uniformity, just as in case of other zoological names. Experience indicates the wisdom of sustaining family-group names based on junior subjective synonyms if they have priority of publication, for opinions of different workers as to the synonymy of generic names founded on different type species may not agree and opinions of the same worker may alter from time to time. The retention similarly of first-published family-group names which are found to be based on junior objective synonyms is less clearly desirable, especially if a replacement name derived from the senior objective synonym has been recognized very long and widely. To displace a much-used family-group name based on the senior objective synonym by disinterring a forgotten and virtually unused family-group name based on a junior objective synonym because the latter happens to have priority of publication is unsettling.

Replacement of a family-group name may be needed if the former nominate genus is transferred to another family-group. Then the first-published name-giver of a family-group assemblage in the remnant taxon is to be recognized in forming a replacement name.

#### FAMILY-GROUP NAMES; AUTHORSHIP AND DATE

All family-group taxa having names based on the same type genus are attributed to the author who first published the name for any of these assemblages, whether tribe, subfamily, or family (superfamily being almost inevitably a later-conceived taxon). Accordingly, if a family is divided into subfamilies or a subfamily into tribes, the name of no such subfamily or tribe can antedate the family name. Also, every family containing differentiated subfamilies must have a nominate (*sensu stricto*) sub-

family, which is based on the same type genus as that for the family, and the author and date set down for the nominate subfamily invariably are identical with those of the family, without reference to whether the author of the family or some subsequent author introduced subdivisions.

Changes in the form of family-group names of the sort constituting *nomina correctae*, as previously discussed, do not affect authorship and date of the taxon concerned, but in publications such as the *Treatise* it is desirable to record the authorship and date of the correction.

#### SUPRAFAMILIAL TAXA

International rules of zoological nomenclature as given in the *Code* (1961) are limited to stipulations affecting lower-rank categories (infrasubspecies to superfamily). Suprafamilial categories (suborder to phylum) are either unmentioned or explicitly placed outside of the application of zoological rules. The *Copenhagen Decisions on Zoological Nomenclature* (1953, Arts. 59-69) proposed to adopt rules for naming suborders and higher taxonomic divisions up to and including phylum, with provision for designating a type genus for each, hopefully in such manner as not to interfere with the taxonomic freedom of workers. Procedures for applying the Law of Priority and Law of Homonymy to suprafamilial taxa were outlined and for dealing with the names for such units and their authorship, with assigned dates, when they should be transferred on taxonomic grounds from one rank to another. The adoption of terminations of names, different for each category but uniform within each, was recommended.

The Colloquium on zoological nomenclature which met in London during the week just before the XVth International Congress of Zoology convened in 1958 thoroughly discussed the proposals for regulating suprafamilial nomenclature, as well as many others advocated for inclusion in the new *Code* or recommended for exclusion from it. A decision which was supported by a wide majority of the participants in the Colloquium was against the establishment of rules for naming taxa above family-group rank, mainly because it was judged that such regulation would unwisely tie the hands of taxonomists. For

example, if a class or order was defined by some author at a given date, using chosen morphologic characters (e.g., gills of pelecypods), this should not be allowed to freeze nomenclature, taking precedence over another later-proposed class or order distinguished by different characters (e.g., hinge-teeth of pelecypods). Even the fixing of type genera for suprafamilial taxa might have small value, if any, hindering taxonomic work rather than aiding it. At all events, no legal basis for establishing such types and for naming these taxa has yet been provided.

The considerations just stated do not prevent the Editor of the *Treatise* from making "rules" for dealing with suprafamilial groups of animals described and illustrated in this publication. At least a degree of uniform policy is thought to be needed, especially for the guidance of *Treatise*-contributing authors. This policy should accord with recognized general practice among zoologists, but where general practice is indeterminate or nonexistent our own procedure in suprafamilial nomenclature needs to be specified as clearly as possible. This pertains especially to decisions about names themselves, about citation of authors and dates, and about treatment of suprafamilial taxa which on taxonomic grounds are changed from their originally assigned rank. Accordingly, a few "rules" expressing *Treatise* policy are given here, some with examples of their application.

1) The name of any suprafamilial taxon must be a Latin or latinized uninominal noun of plural form, or treated as such, a) with a capital initial letter, b) without diacritical mark, apostrophe, diaeresis, or hyphen, and c) if component consisting of a numeral, numerical adjective, or adverb is used, this must be written in full (e.g., Stethostomata, Trionychi, Septemchitonina, Scorpiones, Subselliflorae). No uniformity in choice of ending for taxa of a given rank is demanded (e.g., orders named Gorgonacea, Milleporina, Rugosa, Scleractinia, Stromatoporoidea, Phalangida).

2) Names of suprafamilial taxa may be constructed in almost any way, a) intended to indicate morphological attributes (e.g., Lamellibranchiata, Cyclostomata, Toxoglossa), b) based on the stem of an included genus (e.g., Bellerophontina, Nau-

tilida, Fungiina), or c) arbitrary combinations of letters, (e.g., Yuania), but none of these can be allowed to end in -idae or -inae, reserved for family-group taxa. A class or subclass (e.g., Nautiloidea), order (e.g., Nautilida), or suborder (e.g., Nautilina) named from the stem of an included genus may be presumed to have that genus (e.g., *Nautilus*) as its objective type. No suprafamilial name identical in form to that of a genus or to another published suprafamilial name should be employed (e.g., order Decapoda Latreille, 1803, crustaceans, and order Decapoda Leach, 1818, cephalopods; suborder Chonetoidea Muir-Wood, 1955, and genus *Chonetoidea* Jones, 1928). Worthy of notice is the classificatory and nomenclatural distinction between suprafamilial and family-group taxa which respectively are named from the same type genus, since one is not considered to be transferable to the other (e.g., suborder Bellerophontina Ulrich & Scofield, 1897; superfamily Bellerophontacea M'Coy, 1851; family Bellerophontidae M'Coy, 1851). Family-group names and suprafamilial names are not coordinate.

3) The Laws of Priority and Homonymy lack any force of international agreement as applied to suprafamilial names, yet in the interest of nomenclatural stability and the avoidance of confusion these laws are widely accepted by zoologists above the family-group level wherever they do not infringe on taxonomic freedom and long-established usage.

4) Authors who accept priority as a determinant in nomenclature of a suprafamilial taxon may change its assigned rank at will, with or without modifying the terminal letters of the name, but such change(s) cannot rationally be judged to alter the authorship and date of the taxon as published originally. a) A name revised from its previously published rank is a "transferred name" (*nom. transl.*), as illustrated in the following.

**Order CORYNEXOCHIDA Kobayashi, 1935**

[*nom. transl.* MOORE, 1955 (ex suborder Corynexochida KOBAYASHI, 1935)]

b) A name revised from its previously published form merely by adoption of a different termination, without changing taxonomic rank, is an "altered name" (*nom. correct.*). Examples follow.

**Order DISPARIDA Moore & Laudon, 1943**

[*nom. correct.* MOORE, 1952 (*pro order Disparata MOORE & LAUDON, 1943*)]

**Suborder AGNOSTINA Salter, 1864**

[*nom. correct.* HARRINGTON & LEANZA, 1957 (*pro suborder Agnostini SALTER, 1864*)]

c) A suprafamilial name revised from its previously published rank with accompanying change of termination (which may or may not be intended to signalize the change of rank) is construed to be primarily a *nom. transl.* (compare change of ending for family-group taxa -idae to -inae, or vice versa, and to superfamily) but if desired it could be recorded as *nom. transl. et correct.*

**Order ORTHIDA Schuchert & Cooper, 1931**

[*nom. transl.* MOORE, 1952 (*ex suborder Orthoidea SCHUCHERT & COOPER, 1931*)]

5) The authorship and date of nominate subordinate and superordinate taxa among suprafamilial taxa are considered in the *Treatise* to be identical since each actually or potentially has the same type. Examples are given below.

**Subclass ENDOCERATOIDEA Teichert, 1933**

[*nom. transl.* TEICHERT, 1964 (*ex superorder Endoceratoidea SHIMANSKIY & ZHURAVLEVA, 1961, nom. transl. ex order Endoceroidea TEICHERT, 1933*)]

**Order ENDOCERIDA Teichert, 1933**

[*nom. correct.* TEICHERT, 1964 (*pro order Endoceroidea TEICHERT, 1933*)]

**Suborder ENDOCERINA Teichert, 1933**

[*nom. correct.* TEICHERT, 1964 (*pro suborder Endoceracea SCHINDEWOLF, 1935, nom. transl. ex order Endoceroidea TEICHERT, 1933*)]

6) A suprafamilial taxon may or may not contain a family-group taxon or taxa having the same type genus, and if it does, the respective suprafamilial and family-group taxa may or may not be nominate (having names with the same stem). The zoological *Code* (Art. 61) affirms that "each taxon [of any rank] has, actually or potentially, its type." Taxa above the family-group level which may be designated as having the same type genus (such designations not being stipulated or recognized by any articles of the zoological *Code*) are considered to have identical authorship and date if the stem of names employed is the same (illustrated in preceding paragraph), but otherwise their authorship and date are accepted as various. Examples showing both suprafamilial and familial taxa in a group of spiders follow.

**Class ARACHNIDA Lamarck, 1801**

[*nom. correct.* NEWPORT, 1830 (*pro class—not family—Arachnidae LAMARCK, 1801*) (type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757, validated ICZN, 1948)]

**Subclass CAULOGASTRA Pocock, 1893**

[type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757]

**Superorder LABELLATA Petrunkevitch, 1949**

[type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757]

**Order ARANEIDA Clerck, 1757**

[*nom. correct.* DALLAS, 1864 (*pro Araneidea BLACKWALL, 1861, pro Araneides LATREILLE, 1801, pro Aranei CLERCK, 1757, validated ICZN, 1948*) (type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757)]

**Suborder DIPNEUMONINA Latreille, 1817**

[*nom. correct.* PETRUNKEVITCH, 1955 (*pro Dipneumones LATREILLE, 1817*) (type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757)]

**Division TRIONYCHI Petrunkevitch, 1933**

[type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757]

**Superfamily ARANEOIDEA Leach, 1815**

[*nom. transl.* PETRUNKEVITCH, 1955 (*ex Araneides LEACH, 1815*) (type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757)]

**Family ARANEIDAE Leach, 1815**

[*nom. correct.* PETRUNKEVITCH, 1955 (*pro Araneidae LEACH, 1819, pro Araneides LEACH, 1815*) (type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757)]

**Subfamily ARANEINAE Leach, 1815**

[*nom. transl.* SIMON, 1892 (*ex Araneidae LEACH, 1815*) (type, *Araneus* CLERCK, 1757)]

**TAXONOMIC EMENDATION**

Emendation has two measurably distinct aspects as regards zoological nomenclature. These embrace 1) alteration of a name itself in various ways for various reasons, as has been reviewed, and 2) alteration or taxonomic scope or concept in application of a given zoological name, whatever its hierarchical rank. The latter type of emendation primarily concerns classification and inherently is not associated with change of name, whereas the other type introduces change of name without necessary expansion, restriction, or other modification in applying the name. Little attention generally has been paid to this distinction in spite of its significance.

Most zoologists, including paleozoologists, who have signified emendation of zoological names refer to what they consider a material change in application of the name such as may be expressed by an importantly altered diagnosis of the assemblage covered by the name. The abbreviation "*emend.*" then may accompany the name, with statement of the author and date of the emendation. On the other hand, a multitude of workers concerned with systematic zoology think that publication of "*emend.*" with a

zoological name is valueless, because more or less alteration of taxonomic sort is introduced whenever a subspecies, species, genus, or other assemblage of animals is incorporated under or removed from the coverage of a given zoological name. Inevitably associated with such classificatory expansions and restrictions is some degree of emendation affecting diagnosis. Granting this, still it is true that now and then somewhat radical revisions are put forward, generally with published statement of reasons for changing the application of a name. To erect a signpost at such points of most significant change is worthwhile, both as aid to subsequent workers in taking account of the altered nomenclatural usage and as indication that not-to-be-overlooked discussion may be found at a particular place in the literature. Authors of contributions to the *Treatise* are encouraged to include records of all specially noteworthy emendations of this nature, using the abbreviation "emend." with the name to which it refers and citing the author and date of the emendation.

In Part G (Bryozoa) and Part D (Protista 3) of the *Treatise*, the abbreviation "emend." is employed to record various sorts of name emendations, thus conflicting with usage of "emend." for change in taxonomic application of a name without alteration of the name itself. This is objectionable. In Part E (Archaeocyatha, Porifera) and later-issued divisions of the *Treatise*, use of "emend." is restricted to its customary sense, that is, significant alteration in taxonomic scope of a name such as calls for noteworthy modifications of a diagnosis. Other means of designating emendations that relate to form of a name are introduced.

## STYLE IN GENERIC DESCRIPTIONS

### CITATION OF TYPE SPECIES

The name of the type species of each genus and subgenus is given next following the generic name with its accompanying author and date, or after entries needed for definition of the name if it is involved in homonymy. The originally published combination of generic and trivial names for this species is cited, accompanied by an asterisk (\*), with notation of the author and date of original publication. An exception in this procedure is made, however, if

the species was first published in the same paper and by the same author as that con- of the generic name followed by the trivial taining definition of the genus which it serves as type; in such case, the initial letter name is given without repeating the name of the author and date, for this saves needed space. Examples of these two sorts of citations are as follows:

*Diplotrypa* NICHOLSON, 1879 [\**Favosites petropoli- tanus* PANDER, 1830].

*Chainodictyon* FOERSTE, 1887 [\**C. laxum*].

If the cited type species is a junior synonym of some other species, the name of this latter also is given, as follows:

*Acervularia* SCHWEIGGER, 1819 [\**A. ballica* (= \**Madrepora ananas* LINNÉ, 1758)].

It is judged desirable to record the manner of establishing the type species, whether by original designation or by subsequent designation.

*Fixation of type species originally.* The type species of a genus or subgenus, according to provisions of the *Code*, may be fixed in various ways originally (that is, in the publication containing first proposal of the generic name) or it may be fixed in specified ways subsequent to the original publication. Fixation of the type species of a genus or subgenus in an original publication is stipulated by the *Code* (Art. 68) in order of precedence as 1) *original designation* (in the *Treatise* indicated as OD) when the type species is explicitly stated or (before 1931) indicated by "n. gen., n. sp." (or its equivalent) applied to a single species included in a new genus, 2) defined by use of *typus* or *typicus* for one of the species included in a new genus (adequately indicated in the *Treatise* by the specific name), 3) established by *monotypy* if a new genus or subgenus includes only one originally included species which is neither OD nor TYP (in the *Treatise* indicated as M), and 4) fixed by *tautonymy* if the genus-group name is identical to an included species name not indicated as type belonging to one of the three preceding categories (indicated in the *Treatise* as T).

*Fixation of type species subsequently.* The type species of many genera are not determinable from the publication in which the generic name was introduced and therefore

such genera can acquire a type species only by some manner of subsequent designation. Most commonly this is established by publishing a statement naming as type species one of the species originally included in the genus, and in the *Treatise* fixation of the type species in this manner is indicated by the letters "SD" accompanied by the name of the subsequent author (who may be the same person as the original author) and the date of publishing the subsequent designation. Some genera, as first described and named, included no mentioned species and these necessarily lack a type species until a date subsequent to that of the original publication when one or more species are assigned to such a genus. If only a single species is thus assigned, it automatically becomes the type species and in the *Treatise* this subsequent monotypy is indicated by the letters "SM." Of course, the first publication containing assignment of species to the genus which originally lacked any included species is the one concerned in fixation of the type species, and if this named two or more species as belonging to the genus but did not designate a type species, then a later "SD" designation is necessary. Examples of the use of "SD" and "SM" as employed in the *Treatise* follow.

**Hexagonaria** GÜRICH, 1896 [*\*Cyathophyllum hexagonum* GOLDFUSS, 1826; SD LANG, SMITH & THOMAS, 1940].

**Muriceides** STUDER, 1887 [*\*M. fragilis* WRIGHT & STUDER, 1889; SM WRIGHT & STUDER, 1889].

Another mode of fixing the type species of a genus that may be construed as a special sort of subsequent designation is action of the International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature using its plenary powers. Definition in this way may set aside application of the *Code* so as to arrive at a decision considered to be in the best interest of continuity and stability of zoological nomenclature. When made, it is binding and commonly is cited in the *Treatise* by the letters "ICZN," accompanied by the date of announced decision and (generally) reference to the appropriate numbered Opinion.

Worthy of repetition is the lack of requirement of a type species for definition of collective groups (*coll. coll.*), but when differentiated and named these are treated for convenience as genera in the meaning of the *Code* (Art. 42c).

Most generic names are distinct from all others and are indicated without ambiguity by citing their originally published spelling accompanied by name of the author and date of first publication. If the same generic name has been applied to 2 or more distinct taxonomic units, however, it is necessary to differentiate such homonyms, and this calls for distinction between junior homonyms and senior homonyms. Because a junior homonym is invalid, it must be replaced by some other name. For example, *Callopora* HALL, 1851, introduced for Paleozoic trepostome bryozoans, is invalid because GRAY in 1848 published the same name for Cretaceous-to-Recent cheilostome bryozoans, and BASSLER in 1911 introduced the new name *Hallopora* to replace HALL's homonym. The *Treatise* style of entry is:

**Hallopora** BASSLER, 1911, *nom. subst.* [*pro Callopora* HALL, 1851 (*non* GRAY, 1848)].

In like manner, a needed replacement generic name may be introduced in the *Treatise* (even though first publication of generic names otherwise in this work is avoided). The requirement that an exact bibliographic reference must be given for the replaced name commonly can be met in the *Treatise* by citing a publication recorded in the list of references, using its assigned index number, as shown in the following example.

**Mysterium** DE LAUBENFELS, *nom. subst.* [*pro Mysterium* SCHRAMMEN, 1936 (ref. 40, p. 60) (*non* ROGER, 1862)] [*\*Mysterium porosum* SCHRAMMEN, 1936].

For some replaced homonyms, a footnote reference to the literature is necessary. A senior homonym is valid, and in so far as the *Treatise* is concerned, such names are handled according to whether the junior homonym belongs to the same major taxonomic division (class or phylum) as the senior homonym or to some other; in the former instance, the author and date of the junior homonym are cited as:

**Diplophyllum** HALL, 1851 [*non* SOSHKINA, 1939] [*\*D. caespitosum*].

Otherwise, no mention of the existence of a junior homonym generally is made.

*Synonymic homonyms.* An author sometimes publishes a generic name in two or

more papers of different date, each of which indicates that the name is new. This is a bothersome source of errors for later workers who are unaware that a supposed first publication which they have in hand is not actually the original one. Although the names were separately published, they are identical and therefore definable as homonyms; at the same time they are absolute synonyms. For the guidance of all concerned, it seems desirable to record such names as synonymic homonyms and in the *Treatise* the junior one of these is indicated by the abbreviation "jr. syn. hom."

Identical family-group names not infrequently are published as new names by different authors, the author of the later-introduced name being ignorant of previous publication(s) by one or more other workers. In spite of differences in taxonomic concepts as indicated by diagnoses and grouping of genera and possibly in assigned rank, these family-group taxa are nomenclatural homonyms, based on the same type genus, and they are also synonyms. Wherever encountered, such synonymic homonyms are distinguished in the *Treatise* as in dealing with generic names.

#### SYNONYMS

Citation of synonyms is given next following record of the type species and if two or more synonyms of differing date are recognized, these are arranged in chronological order. Objective synonyms are indicated by accompanying designation

"(obj.)," others being understood to constitute subjective synonyms. Examples showing *Treatise* style in listing synonyms follow.

*Calapoecia* BILLINGS, 1865 [\**C. anticostiensis*; SD LINDSTRÖM, 1883] [= *Columnopora* NICHOLSON, 1874; *Houghtonia* ROMINGER, 1876].

*Staurocyclia* HAECKEL, 1882 [\**S. cruciata* HAECKEL, 1887] [= *Coccostaurus* HAECKEL, 1882 (obj.); *Phacostaurus* HAECKEL, 1887 (obj.)].

A synonym which also constitutes a homonym is recorded as follows:

*Lyopora* NICHOLSON & ETHERIDGE, 1878 [\**Palaeopora? favosa* M'COY, 1850] [= *Liopora* LANG, SMITH & THOMAS, 1940 (*non* GIRTY, 1915)].

Some junior synonyms of either objective or subjective sort may take precedence desirably over senior synonyms wherever uniformity and continuity of nomenclature are served by retaining a widely used but technically rejectable name for a generic assemblage. This requires action of ICZN using its plenary powers to set aside the unwanted name and validate the wanted one, with placement of the concerned names on appropriate official lists. In the *Treatise* citation of such a conserved generic name is given in the manner shown by the following example.

*Tetragraptus* SALTER, 1863 [*nom. correct.* HALL, 1865 (*pro Tetragraptus* SALTER, 1863), *nom. conserv.* proposed BULMAN, 1955, ICZN pend.] [\**Fucoides serra* BRONGNIART, 1828 (= *Graptolithus bryonoides* HALL, 1858)].

## ABBREVIATIONS

Abbreviations used in this division of the *Treatise* are explained in the following alphabetically arranged list.

### *Abbreviations*

Abhandl., <i>Abhandlung</i> (en)	approx., approximately	Bajoc., Bajocian
Abt., <i>Abteilung</i>	Apt., Aptian	Barton., Bartonian
aff., <i>affinis</i> (related to)	Aquit., Aquitanian	B.C., British Columbia
Afr., Africa, -an	Arbeit., <i>Arbeiten</i>	Bd., <i>Band</i>
Ala., Alabama	Arch., Archipelago, Archives,	Beil., <i>Beilage</i>
Alb., Albanian	<i>Archivos</i>	Belg., <i>Belgique</i> , Belgium
Alg., Algeria	Ark., Arkansas	Bk., Book
Alleghen., Alleghenian	Arg., Argentina	Boh., Bohemia
Am., America, -n	art., article	Bol., <i>Boletim</i> , <i>Boletín</i>
Anis., Anisian	AsiaM., Asia Minor	Boll., <i>Bolletino</i>
Ann., <i>Annales</i> , <i>Annales</i> , Annual	Atl., Atlantic	Br.I., British Isles
ant., anterior	auctt., <i>auctorum</i> (of authors)	Brit., Britain, British
Antarct., Antarctic	Aus., Austria	Bull., Bulletin
append., appendix	Auvers., Auversian	Burdigal., Burdigalian

- C., Centigrade, Central  
ca., *circa*  
Calif., California  
Cam., Cambrian  
Can., Canada  
Canad., Canadian  
Carb., Carboniferous  
Carib., Caribbean  
Cenoman., Cenomanian  
cf., *confer* (compare)  
Chester., Chesteran  
circ., circular  
cm., centimeter  
Co., County  
Coblentz., Coblentzian  
Coll., Collections(s)  
coll. coll., *collectio collectiva*  
(collective group)  
Colo., Colorado  
commun., communication  
Comun., *Comunicaciones*  
Coniac., Coniacian  
Conn., Connecticut  
cont'd., continued  
Contrib., Contribution(s)  
cosmop., cosmopolitan  
Couvin., Couvinian  
Cret., Cretaceous  
Czech., Czechoslovakia
- Dan., Danian  
D.C., District of Columbia  
Del., Delaware  
Denkschr., *Denkschrift(en)*  
Denm., Denmark  
Dev., Devonian  
Dinant., Dinantian  
Distr., District  
Ditton., Dittonian  
div., division  
dors., dorsal
- E., East  
ed., editor  
edit., edition  
e.g., *exempli gratia* (for  
example)  
emend., *emendatus(-a)*  
Eng., England  
enl., enlarged  
Eoc., Eocene  
Equat., Equatorial  
err., *errore* (by error)  
est., estimated  
Est., Estonia  
et al., *et alii* (and others,  
persons)  
etc., *et cetera* (and others,  
objects)  
Eu., Europe  
ext., exterior  
Extr., Extract, *Extrait*
- F., Formation  
fam., family  
Famenn., Famennian  
fasc., fascicle, *fascicule*  
fig., figure(s)  
Fla., Florida  
Förhandl., Förhandlinger  
Forhandl., Forhandlinger  
Fr., *Français, -e*, France, French  
Frasn., Frasnian
- G.Brit., Great Britain  
Gedinn., Gedinnian  
gen., genus  
Geol., Geological, *Geologische*,  
Geology, etc.  
Ger., German, Germany  
Givet., Givetian  
Gr., Great, Group  
Greenl., Greenland
- Handl., *Handlingar*  
Hauteriv., Hauterivian  
Helvet., Helvetian  
hom., homonym  
Hung., *Hungarica*, Hungary
- I., Isle(s)  
ICZN, International Commission  
of Zoological Nomenclature  
i.e., *id est* (that it)  
Ill., Illinois  
illus., illustrated, -ions  
incl., inclined, including  
Ind.O., Indian Ocean  
int., interior  
Ire., Ireland  
Is., Island(s)
- Jahrb., *Jahrbuch*  
Jahrg., *Jahrgang*  
Jan., January  
Jour., Journal  
jr., junior  
Jur., Jurassic
- Kans., Kansas  
Kazakh., Kazakhstan  
Kazan., Kazanian  
Kimmeridg., Kimmeridgian  
Ky., Kentucky
- L., Lower  
La., Louisiana  
lat., lateral  
Lattorf., Lattorfian  
Lias., Liassic  
Lief., *Lieferung*  
litt., letters  
long., longitudinal  
Ls., Limestone  
Ltd., Limited  
Lutet., Lutetian  
LV, left valve
- m., meter  
M., Middle  
M, monotypy  
Maastricht., Maastrichtian  
Madag., Madagascar  
mag., magnification  
Mass., Massachusetts  
Medd., *Meddelanden*,  
*Meddelelser*  
Meded., *Mededeelingen*  
Medit., Mediterranean  
Mem., Memoir(s), *Memoria*,  
*Memorie*  
Mém., *Mémoire(s)*  
Mex., Mexico  
Mio., Miocene  
Miss., Mississippi, Mississippian  
mm., millimeter(s)  
mod., modified  
Mon., Monograph, *Monographia*,  
*Monographie*  
Monatsber., *Monatsberichte*  
Monatsh., *Monatshefte*  
Mont., Montana  
Mt., Mount, Mountain  
Mts., Mtns., Mountains
- n., new  
N., North  
N.Am., North America(n)  
Namur., Namurian  
Nat., Natural  
N.Car., North Carolina  
N.Dak., North Dakota  
NE., Northeast  
Neocom., Neocomian  
Neth., Netherlands  
Nev., Nevada  
N.J., New Jersey  
no., number  
nom. conserv., *nomen conserva-*  
*tum* (conserved name)  
nom. correct., *nomen correctum*  
(corrected or intentionally  
altered name)  
nom. dub., *nomen dubium*  
(doubtful name)  
nom. imperf., *nomen imperfec-*  
*tum* (imperfect name)  
nom. neg., *nomen negatum*  
(denied name)  
nom. nov., *nomen novum* (new  
name)  
nom. nud., *nomen nudum*  
(naked name)  
nom. null., *nomen nullum* (null,  
void name)  
nom. oblit., *nomen oblitum*  
(forgotten name)  
nom. subst., *nomen substitutum*  
(substitute name)

**nom. transl.**, *nomen translatum*  
 (transferred name)  
**nom. van.**, *nomen vanum* (vain,  
 void name)  
**nom. vet.**, *nomen vetitum*  
 (impermissible name)  
**Nomencl.**, Nomenclature  
**Notizbl.**, Notizblatt  
**Nouv.**, *Nouvelle*  
**Nov.**, November  
**NW.**, Northwest  
**N.Y.**, New York  
**N.Z.**, New Zealand  
  
**O.**, Ocean  
**obj.**, objective  
**OD**, original designation  
**Okla.**, Oklahoma  
**Oligo.**, Oligocene  
**Op.**, Opinion  
**Ord.**, Ordovician  
**orig.**, original  
**Ore.**, Oregon  
  
**p.**, page(s)  
**Pa.**, Pennsylvania  
**Pac.**, Pacific  
**Paleoc.**, Paleocene  
**Palest.**, Palestine  
**pend.**, pending  
**Penn.**, Pennsylvanian  
**Perm.**, Permian  
**Permocarb.**, Permocarboriferous  
**Permotrias.**, Permotriassic  
**pers.**, personal  
**Philip.**, Philippines  
**Philos.**, Philosophical  
**Piacenz.**, Piacenzian  
**pl.**, plate(s), plural  
**Pleist.**, Pleistocene  
**Plio.**, Pliocene  
**Pol.**, Poland  
**Port.**, Portugal  
**post.**, posterior  
**Precam.**, Precambrian  
**Proc.**, Proceedings  
**Prof.**, Professional  
**pt.**, part(s)

**publ.**, *publicato*  
**publ.**, publication, published  
  
**Quart.**, Quarterly  
**Que.**, Quebec  
**Qzt.**, Quartzite  
  
**Rec.**, Recent, Record(s)  
**reconstr.**, reconstructed, -ion  
**Rept.**, Report  
**rev.**, revised  
**Rev.**, Review, *Revista*, *Revue*  
**Rhaet.**, Rhaetian  
**RV**, right valve  
  
**S.**, Sea, South  
**S.Am.**, South America  
**Santon.**, Santonian  
**Scot.**, Scotland  
**SD**, subsequent designation  
**S.Dak.**, South Dakota  
**SE.**, Southeast  
**sec.**, section(s)  
**Senon.**, Senonian  
**ser.**, serial, series, etc.  
**Sh.**, Shale  
**Sib.**, Siberia  
**Siegen.**, Siegenian  
**Sil.**, Silurian  
**sing.**, singular  
**Sitzungsber.**, *Sitzungsberichte*  
**Skrift.**, *Skrift(er)*  
**s.l.**, *sensu lato* (in the wide  
 sense, broadly defined)  
**SM**, subsequent monotypy  
**sp.**, species (spp., plural)  
**spec.**, special, specimen  
**Spitz.**, Spitzbergen  
**sq.**, square  
**sr.**, senior  
**s.s.**, *sensu stricto* (in the strict  
 sense, narrowly defined)  
**Staffs.**, Staffordshire  
**Stephan.**, Stephanian  
**subfam.**, subfamily  
**subj.**, subjective  
**Subrec.**, Subrecent  
**superfam.**, superfamily  
**suppl.**, supplement

**SW.**, Southwest  
**Swed.**, Sweden  
**Switz.**, Switzerland  
**syn.**, synonym  
  
**t.**, *tome*  
**T**, tautonymy  
**Tartar.**, Tartarian  
**Tasm.**, Tasmania  
**temp.**, temperate  
**Tenn.**, Tennessee  
**Terr.**, Territory, -ies  
**Tert.**, Tertiary  
**Tex.**, Texas  
**Tithon.**, Tithonian  
**Trans.**, Transactions  
**transl.**, translated, -ion  
**transv.**, transverse  
**Trias.**, Triassic  
**trop.**, tropical  
**Turon.**, Turonian  
  
**U.**, Upper  
**undet.**, undetermined  
**Univ.**, *Universidad*, *Università*,  
*Universität*, *Université*,  
*Universitets*, University  
**U.S.**, United States  
**USA**, United States of America  
**USSR**, Union of Soviet Socialist  
 Republics  
  
**v.**, volume(s)  
**var.**, variety  
**Verhandl.**, *Verhandlungen*  
**viz.**, *videlicet*, namely  
  
**W.**, West  
**Wash.**, Washington  
**Weald.**, Wealdian  
**Westphal.**, Westphalian  
**Wis.**, Wisconsin  
  
**Ypres.**, Ypresian  
**Yugosl.**, Yugoslavia  
  
**Z.**, Zone  
**Zeitschr.**, *Zeitschrift*  
**Zool.**, Zoological, *Zoologie*,  
*Zoologisch*, Zoology

## REFERENCES TO LITERATURE

Each part of the *Treatise* is accompanied by a selected list of references to paleontological literature consisting primarily of recent and comprehensive monographs available but also including some older works recognized as outstanding in importance. The purpose of giving these references is to aid users of the *Treatise* in finding detailed descriptions and illustra-

tions of morphological features of fossil groups, discussions of classifications and distribution, and especially citations of more or less voluminous literature. Generally speaking, publications listed in the *Treatise* are not original sources of information concerning taxonomic units of various rank but they tell the student where he may find them; otherwise it is necessary to turn to

such aids as the *Zoological Record* or NEAVE's *Nomenclator Zoologicus*. References given in the *Treatise* are arranged alphabetically by authors and accompanied by index numbers which serve the purpose of permitting citation most concisely in various parts of the text; these citations of listed papers are enclosed invariably in parentheses and, except in Part C, are distinguishable from dates because the index numbers comprise no more than 3 digits. The systematic descriptions given in Part C are accompanied by a reference list containing more than 2,000 entries; the index numbers for them are marked by an asterisk.

The following is a statement of the full names of serial publications which are cited in abbreviated form in the *Treatise* lists of references. The information thus provided should be useful in library research work. The list is alphabetized according to the serial titles which were employed at the time of original publication. Those follow-

ing it in brackets are those under which the publication may be found currently in the *Union List of Serials*, the United States Library of Congress listing, and most library card catalogues. The names of serials published in Cyrillic are transliterated; in the reference lists these titles, which may be abbreviated, are accompanied by transliterated authors' names and titles, with English translation of the title. The place of publication is added (if not included in the serial title).

The method of transliterating Cyrillic letters that is adopted as "official" in the *Treatise* is the so-called Anglo-American method given by the Geographical Society of London. It follows that names of some Russian authors in transliterated form derived in this way differ from other forms, possibly including one used by the author himself. In *Treatise* reference lists the alternative (unaccepted) form is given enclosed by square brackets (e.g., Chernyshev [Tschernyschew], T.N.).

#### *List of Serial Publications*

- Academia Brasileira de Ciências, Anães. Rio de Janeiro.
- Académie Roumaine, Bulletin de la Section Scientifique. Bucharest.
- Académie Royale de Belgique, Classe des Sciences, Bulletins, Mémoires. Bruxelles.
- Académie des Sciences de Paris, Comptes Rendus, Mémoires. Paris.
- Académie des Sciences de l'URSS, Comptes Rendus; Institut Paléontologique, Travaux; Institut Paléozoologique, Travaux [Akademiya Nauk SSSR, Doklady]. Leningrad.
- Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, Journals; Proceedings.
- [R.] Accademia Pontaniana, Atti. Napoli.
- Acta Adriatica Instituti Biologico-oceanographici. Split, Yugoslavia.
- Acta Geologica Hispanica. Barcelona.
- Acta Litterarum ac Scientiarum R. Universitatis Hungarica Francisco-Josephina, Sectio Scientiarum Naturalium. Szeged.
- Acta Zoologica. Stockholm.
- Akademie der Wissenschaften und der Literatur zu Mainz, mathematisch - naturwissenschaftlichen Klasse, Abhandlungen. Wiesbaden.
- Akademie der Wissenschaften zu München, mathematische-physikalische Klasse, Sitzungsberichte; Denkschriften.
- [K.] Akademie der Wissenschaften St. Petersburg [Akademiya Nauk SSSR, Leningrad.]
- [K.] Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Wien, mathematische-naturwissenschaftliche Klasse, Denkschriften; Sitzungberichte.
- Akademiya Nauk SSSR, Doklady. Moskva.
- Akademiya Nauk SSSR, Institut Geologicheskikh Nauk, Trudy (Geologicheskaya Seriya). Moskva.
- Akademiya Nauk SSSR, Institut Paleontologicheskikh, Trudy (Paleontologicheskaya Seriya); Paleontologicheskii Zhurnal; Zoologicheskii Zhurnal.
- Akademiya Nauk Ukranskoi SSR, Institut Geologicheskikh Nauk, Trudy (Stratigrifiy i Paleontologiy Seriya). Kiev.
- Allan Hancock Atlantic Expedition, Report. Los Angeles.
- American Association for the Advancement of Sciences, Proceedings; Publications. Washington, D.C.
- American Association of Petroleum Geologists, Bulletins. Tulsa, Oklahoma.
- American Geologist. Minneapolis, Minn.
- American Journal of Science. New Haven, Conn.
- American Microscopical Society, Transactions. Lancaster, Pa.
- American Midland Naturalist. Notre Dame, Ind.
- American Museum of Natural History, Novitates; Memoires; Bulletins. New York.
- American Naturalist. Lancaster, Pa.
- Anatomical Record. Philadelphia.
- Annales de la Faculté des Sciences de l'Université de Dakar.
- Annales des Mines (Bureau de Recherches Géologiques, Géophysiques et Minières). Paris.

- Annales de Paléontologie. Paris.  
 Annals of Philosophy. London.  
 Annales des Sciences Géologiques. Paris.  
 Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Zoologie. Paris.  
 Annales de la Société Géologique de Belgique. Liège.  
 Annales de la Société Géologique du Nord. Lille.  
 Annals and Magazine of Natural History. London.  
 Annotationes Zoologicae Japonenses. Tokyo.  
 Arbeiten der Biologischen (Hydrobiologischen) Station zu Kossino.  
 Arbeiten der Nord-Kaukasischen Assoziation Wissenschaftlicher Institute. Rostov.  
 Arbeiten aus den Zoologischen Instituten Zootomischen Würzburg.  
 Arbeiten aus den Zoologischen Instituten der Universität Wien und der Zoologische Station in Triest. Wien.  
 Archiv für Hydrobiologie (und Planktonkunde). Stuttgart.  
 Archiv für Mathematik og Naturvidenskab. Kristiania.  
 Archiv für Naturgeschichte. Berlin, Leipzig.  
 Archiv Naturwissenschaftliche Landesdurchforschung von Böhmen. Praha.  
 Archives de Zoologie, Expérimentale et Générale, Paris.  
 Arkiv för Zoologi. Uppsala.  
 Australian Museum, Memoirs; Records. Sydney.  
 [K.] Bayerische Akademie der Wissenschaften, mathematisch-physikalische Klasse, Abhandlungen; Sitzungsberichte. München.  
 Bayerische Staatssammlung für Paläontologie und Historische Geologie, Mitteilungen. München.  
 Beiträge zur Petrefacten-Kunde. Bayreuth.  
 Bernice Pauahi Bishop Museum, Bulletin. Honolulu.  
 Biological Bulletin. Woods Hole.  
 Biological Reviews (see Cambridge Philosophical Society). Cambridge, Eng.  
 Bollettino di Zoologia, pubblicato dall'Unione Zoologica Italiana. Napoli.  
 Boston Society of Natural History, Memoirs; Occasional Papers; Proceedings.  
 Brazil, Divisão de Geologia e Mineralogia, Notas Preliminares e Estudos (Departamento Nacional da Produção Mineral). Rio de Janeiro.  
 British Antarctic Survey, Bulletins; Falkland Islands Dependencies Scientific Bureau, Scientific Reports. London.  
 British Museum (Natural History), Bulletins. London.  
 Buffalo Society of Natural Science, Bulletin.  
 Bulletin of American Paleontology. Ithaca, N.Y.  
 Bulletin Biologique de la France et de la Belgique. Paris.  
 Bulletin des Sciences Naturelles et de Géologie. Paris.  
 Bulletin of Zoological Nomenclature. London.  
 Cahiers de Biologie Marine. Paris.  
 California, University of, Publications in Zoology. Berkeley.  
 California, University of, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, Bulletin, Technical Series. La Jolla.  
 Cambridge Philosophical Society, Biological Reviews and Biological Proceedings. Cambridge, Eng.  
 Canada, Geological Survey of, Department of Mines and Resources, Mines and Geology Branch, Bulletins; Memoirs; Museum Bulletins; Victoria Memorial Museum Bulletins. Ottawa.  
 Canadian Journal of Research. Ottawa.  
 Canadian Naturalist and Geologist. Montreal, Canada.  
 Carnegie Institution of Washington, Papers; Publications. Washington, D.C.  
 Carnegie Museum, Annals; Memoirs. Pittsburgh, Pa.  
 Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, Groupe Français des Argiles, Bulletin. Paris.  
 Challenger, Report on the Scientific Results of the Exploring Voyage of HMS Challenger, Zoology. Edinburgh.  
 Comité Géologique, Mémoires. St. Petersburg.  
 Connecticut Academy of Arts and Sciences, Memoirs; Transactions. New Haven.  
 Conseil Permanent International pour l'Exploration de la Mer, Journals. Copenhagen.  
 Crustaceana. Leiden.  
 Dansk Geologisk Forening, Meddelelser. København.  
 Decheniana. Verhandlungen des Naturhistorischen Vereins der Preussischen Rheinlande und Westfalens. Bonn.  
 Deutsche Geologische Gesellschaft, Zeitschrift. Berlin, Hannover.  
 Deutsche Zoologische Gesellschaft Wien, Verhandlungen.  
 Discovery. London.  
 "Discovery" Reports, Cambridge, Eng.  
 Dusenja; publicatio periodica de scientia naturali. Curitiba, Paraná, Brasil.  
 Eclogae Geologicae Helvetiae (see Schweizerische Geologische Gesellschaft). Basel.  
 Egyetem. Acta Universitatis Szegediensis, Sectio Scientiarum Naturalium. Szeged. (See Acta litterarum ac scientiarum R. Universitatis Hungaricae Franciscus-Josephina.)  
 Entomologist's Monthly Magazine. London.  
 Eos, Revista Española de Entomología. Museo Nacional de Ciencias Naturales. Madrid.  
 Ergebnisse der im Atlantischen Ozean Planktonexpedition der Humboldt-Stiftung. Kiel.  
 Evolution. Lancaster, Pa.  
 Ezhegodnik Vsesoyuznogo Paleontologicheskogo Obshchestva. Moskva.  
 Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey, Scientific Reports. London. [See British Antarctic Survey.]  
 Fauna und Flora des Golfes von Neapel (see Stazione Zoologica di Napoli). Berlin.  
 Faune de France. Paris.  
 Fieldiana, Geology. Chicago.  
 Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Journals. Ottawa.

- Florida Academy of Sciences, Quarterly Journal. Gainesville.
- Földtani Közlöny (Magyaroni Földtani Társulat Folyóirata). Budapest. (Zeitschrift der Ungarischen Geologischen Gesellschaft.)
- Fortschritte der Geologie und Palaeontologie. Berlin.
- Fortschritte der Geologie von Rheinland und Westfalens. Krefeld.
- Geologica Hungarica. Series Geologica; Series Palaeontologica. Budapest.
- Geological Magazine. London, Hertford.
- Geological Society of America, Bulletins; Memoirs; Special Papers. New York.
- Geological Society of China, Bulletins. Peking.
- Geological Society of London; Memoirs; Proceedings; Quarterly Journals; Transactions.
- Geological Survey of [see under name of country, state, or province].
- Geologicheskogo Komiteta, Trudy (*see* Comité Geologique Mémoires. St. Petersburg). Leningrad.
- Géologie des Pays Catalans. Association pour l'Etude Géologique de la Méditerranée Occidentale. Barcelona.
- Geologie (Zeitschrift für das Gesamtgebiet der Geologie und Mineralogie sowie der angewandten Geophysik). Berlin.
- Geologisch-palaeontologische Institut der Universität Greifswald, Abhandlungen. [K.K.] Geologische Bundesanstalt Wien, Abhandlungen; Jahrbuch; Verhandlungen.
- Geologische Rundschau Internationale Zeitschrift für Allgemeine Geologie (Geologischen Vereinigung). Stuttgart.
- Geologists' Association, Proceedings. London.
- Gesellschaft Naturforschender Freunde Berlin, Magazin; Sitzungsberichte.
- Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, mathematisch-physikalische Klasse, Abhandlungen; Nachrichten.
- Gewässer und Abwässer. Dusseldorf.
- Giornale di Scienze Naturali ed Economiche di Palermo.
- Glückauf, Berg- und Hüttenmännische Zeitschrift. Essen.
- Göteborgs K. Vetenskaps- och vitterhets Samhälle Handlingar. Gothenburg.
- Great Britain, Geological Survey of, Palaeontology, Bulletins; Memoirs. London.
- Harvard University, Museum of Comparative Zoology, Breviora; Bulletins; Memoirs; Special Publications. Cambridge, Mass.
- Hokkaido University, Journal of the Faculty of Science. Sapporo.
- Hydrobiologia, Acta Hydrobiologica, Limnologica, et Protistologica. s'Gravenhage.
- Illinois State Geological Survey, Bulletins; Memoirs; Monographs; Reports of Investigations. Urbana.
- Imperial Academy [of Japan], Proceedings. Tokyo.
- Indian Museum, Memoirs; Records. Calcutta.
- Institut. Paris. Ser. 1, Sciences mathématiques, physiques et naturelles. Ser. 2, Sciences historiques archéologiques et philosophiques.
- Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, Bulletins, Catalogues. Paris; Dakar, Senegal.
- Institut Océanographique de Monaco, Annales; Bulletins.
- Instituto Geológico y Minero de España, Boletín; Memorias; Notas y Comunicaciones. Madrid.
- International de l'Académie des Sciences de Bohême. Bulletins. London.
- Internationale Revue der gesamten Hydrobiologie und Hydrographie. Leipzig.
- Istituto Italiano di Idrobiologia Dott. Marco de Marchi, Memorie. Pallanza, Italy.
- Japan, Geological Society of, Journals. Tokyo.
- Japanese Journal of Geology and Geography (Science Council of Japan). Tokyo.
- Johns Hopkins University Circulars. Baltimore.
- Journal of Experimental Biology. Cambridge, Eng.
- Journal of General Biology. Moscow.
- Journal of Geology. Chicago.
- Journal of Marine Zoology and Microscopy. Jersey.
- Journal of Morphology. Philadelphia.
- Journal of Paleontology. Tulsa, Okla.
- Journal de Physique, de Chimie, d'Histoire Naturelle Élémentaires. Paris.
- Kansas Academy of Science, Transactions. Topeka, Kans.
- Kyoto Imperial University, Memoirs of the College of Science.
- Lavoura. Sociedade Nacional de Agricultura, Boletim. Rio de Janeiro.
- Linnean Society of London (Zoology), Journals; Proceedings; Transactions.
- Linnean Society of New South Wales, Proceedings. Sydney.
- Lund Universitet, Årsskrift.
- Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, Journals. Cambridge, Eng.
- Marine Science of the Gulf and Caribbean, Bulletins. Miami, Fla.
- Maryland Geological Survey. Baltimore.
- Matematikai és Természettudományi Értésítő. Budapest.
- Matematikai és Természettudományi Közlemények, vonatkozólag a hazai viszonyokra. Budapest.
- Mathematische und Naturwissenschaftliche Berichte aus Ungarn. Leipzig.
- Michigan, University of, Museum of Geology, Contributions; Museum of Paleontology, Contributions. Ann Arbor.
- Micropaleontology. American Museum of Natural History. New York.
- Ministère des Travaux Publics, Mémoires. Paris.
- Missouri, University of, School of Mines and Metallurgy, Bulletins; Technical Series. Rolla, Mo.
- Mitteilungen der Geologische Landesanstalt von Elsass-Lothringen. Strasbourg.
- Mitteilungen aus dem Mineralogisch-geologischen (Staats) Institut in Hamburg.
- Mitteilungen des Naturwissenschaftlichen Vereins für Steiermark. Graz.

- Monitore Zoologico Italiano. Firenze.
- Morphologisches Jahrbuch. Leipzig.
- Moskovskoe Obshchestvo Ispytatelei Prirody, Byulletin. Moskva.
- Musée du Congo Belge, Annales. Sciences Géologiques; Sciences Zoologiques. Tervueren.
- Musée Royal d'Histoire Naturelle de Belgique, Annales; Bulletins; Mémoires (continued as Institut Royal des Sciences Naturelles de Belgique). Bruxelles.
- Museo de Historia Natural de Mendoza, Revista.
- Museo Libico Storia Naturale, Annali. Tripoli.
- Museo Nacional de Buenos Aires, Anales; Comunicaciones.
- Museu Goeldi (Museu Paraense) de Historia Natural e Ethnographia, Boletim. Pará, Brazil.
- Museu Nacional de Rio de Janeiro, Boletim.
- Museum Godeffroy, Journal. Hamburg.
- Muséum d'Histoire Naturelle, Annales; Nouvelles Archives. Paris.
- Muséum (National) d'Histoire Naturelle, Bulletin; Mémoire; Sciences de la Terre. Paris.
- National Academy of Sciences, Memoirs; Proceedings. Washington, D.C.
- Natur und Museum. Senckenbergische Naturforschende Gesellschaft. Frankfurt.
- Nature. London.
- Nature. Paris.
- Naturhistorischer verein der Preussischen Rheinlande und Westfalens, Sitzungsberichte; Verhandlungen (see Decheniana). Bonn.
- [K.K.] Naturhistorisches Hofmuseums, Annalen. Wien.
- Naturwissenschaftliche Gesellschaft Isis, Dresden, Sitzungsberichte.
- Nautilus. Philadelphia, Boston.
- Nedra Arktiki. Moscow.
- Netherlands, Geologische Stichting, Mededeelingen, Serie C (Uitkomsten van nieuwe geologisch-palaeontologische onderzoekingen van den ondergrond van Nederland). Maastricht.
- Neues Jahrbuch für Geologie und Paläontologie (Before 1950, Neues Jahrbuch für Mineralogie, Geologie, und Paläontologie), Abhandlungen; Beilage-Bände; Monatshefte. Stuttgart.
- Neues Jahrbuch für Mineralogie (Before 1950, Neues Jahrbuch für Mineralogie, Geologie, und Paläontologie), Abhandlungen; Beilage-Bände; Monatshefte. Stuttgart.
- New Jersey State Museum, Annual Report. Trenton, N.J.
- New Mexico State Bureau of Mines and Mineral Resources, Bulletins; Circulars; Memoirs. Socorro, N.Mex.
- New York Academy of Science, Annals.
- New York State Geological Survey, Natural History of New York; Palaeontology of New York, Annual Reports. Albany.
- New York State Museum of Natural History, Annual Reports; Bulletins. Albany.
- New Zealand Department of Scientific and Industrial Research, Bulletins. Wellington.
- New Zealand Geological Survey, Palaeontological Bulletins. Wellington.
- Niedersächsischer Geologischer Vereins, Jahresbericht. Hannover.
- Norsk Geologisk Tidsskrift (Norsk Geologisk Forening). Oslo.
- [K.] Norske Videnskabernes Selskabs Matematisk-naturvidenskapelig Klasse, Forhandling; Skrifter. Trondheim, Oslo.
- Norske Videnskaps-Akademi i Oslo, Skrifter.
- North Carolina Geological Survey, Report. Raleigh.
- Nova Acta Leopoldina, Neue Folge. (Kaiser Leopoldina-Carolina Deutsch Akademie der Naturforscher, Abhandlungen.) Halle.
- Nova Acta Regiae Societatis Scientiarum Upsalensis. Uppsala.
- Ohio, Geological Survey of, Bulletins; Reports. Columbus, Ohio.
- Osnovy Paleontologii Spravochnik Dlya Paleontologov i Geologov SSSR. Yu. A. Orlov, ed. Akademiya Nauk SSSR. Moskva.
- Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, mathematisch - naturwissenschaftliche Klasse, Denkschriften; Sitzungsberichte. Wien.
- Österreichische Botanische Zeitschrift. Wien.
- Palaeobiologica. Wien.
- Palaeontographia Italica. Pisa.
- Palaeontographica. Stuttgart, Kassel.
- Palaeontographical Society, Memoirs; Monographs. London.
- Palaeontological Society of Japan, Transactions & Proceedings. Tokyo.
- Palaeontologische Mitteilungen aus dem Museum des Königlich Bayerischen Staates. München.
- Paläontologische Zeitschrift. Berlin, Stuttgart.
- Palaeontology (Palaeontological Association). London.
- Paleontologicheskii Zhurnal (see Akad. Nauk SSSR). Moskva.
- Philomathic Journal and Literary Review. London.
- [K.] Preussische Geologische Landesanstalt, Abhandlungen; Jahrbuch. Berlin.
- Quarterly Journal of Microscopical Science, Memoirs. London.
- Quarterly Review of Biology. Baltimore, Md.
- Queensland Museum, Memoirs. Brisbane.
- Ray Society Publications. London.
- Records of the Queen Victoria Museum. Launceston.
- Revista de Biología Tropical. San José.
- Revista del Museo de La Plata.
- Revue d'Entomologie de l'URSS. Leningrad.
- Rivista Italiana di Paleontologia. Parma, Milano.
- Royal Irish Academy, Proceedings. Dublin.
- Royal Society of Canada, Proceedings and Transactions. Ottawa.
- Royal Society of Edinburgh, Memoirs; Proceedings; Transactions.
- Royal Society of London, Philosophical Transactions; Proceedings.
- Royal Society of New Zealand, Proceedings; Transactions. Wellington.

- Royal Society of Tasmania, Papers and Proceedings. Melbourne.
- Royal Society of Victoria, Proceedings. Melbourne.
- Schweizerische Geologische Gesellschaft. Basel. Science. New York.
- Scientia. Bologna.
- Scientific Reports, John Murray Expedition, 1933-34. London.
- Scottish Journal of Geology. Edinburgh.
- Scottish Natural History, Annals. Edinburgh.
- Scripps Institute of Oceanography. See University of California.
- Senckenbergiana Lethaea\* (Senckenbergische Naturforschende Gesellschaft Wissenschaftliche Mitteilungen) [\*"Lethaea" added to title, 1954]. Frankfurt.
- Senckenbergische Naturforschende Gesellschaft. Frankfurt.
- Service de la Carte Géologique d'Alsace et de Lorraine, Mémoires. Strasbourg.
- Service des Mines de Cameroun, Bulletin. Paris.
- Serviço Geológico e Mineralógico do Brazil, Ministério da Agricultura, Industria e Commercio, Boletim; Monographias. Rio de Janeiro.
- Seto Marine Biological Laboratory, Publications (Kyoto University). Sirahama.
- Siboga Expedition, Monographs. Leiden.
- Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections. Washington, D.C.
- Sociedad de Historia y Geografía de Cuyo, Revista. Mendoza, Arg.
- Società Geologica Italiana, Bolletini; Memorie. Rome.
- Società Italiana di Scienze Naturali, Atti; Memorie. Milano.
- Societatis Regiae Scientiarum Gottingensis, Commentationis.
- Société Entomologique de France, Annales. Paris.
- Société Géologique de France, Comptes Rendus des Séances; Bulletin; Notes et Mémoires; Paris.
- Société Géologique du Nord, Annales; Mémoires. Lille.
- Société d'Histoire Naturelle d'Autun, Bulletin.
- Société d'Histoire Naturelle de Paris, Mémoires.
- Société d'Histoire Naturelle de Toulouse, Bulletin.
- Société Impériale des Naturalistes de Moscou, Bulletin (see Moskovskoe Obschestvo Ispytatelei Prirody).
- Société des Naturalistes de Leningrad, Section de Géologie et de Minéralogie, Trudy. Leningrad, Moskva.
- Société Philomathique de Paris, Bulletin.
- Société des Sciences Naturelles du Maroc, Bulletins; Mémoires. Rabat.
- Société des Sciences Naturelles de Tunisie, Bulletin. Tunis.
- Société Vaudoise des Sciences Naturelles Bulletin, Mémoires. Lausanne, Switz.
- Société Zoologique de France, Bulletin; Mémoires. Paris.
- Society for British Entomology, Transactions. Southampton.
- Society for Experimental Biology, Symposia. Cambridge, Eng.
- South African Museum, Annals. Capetown.
- Station Zoologique de Wimereux, Travaux. Paris.
- Stazione Zoologica di Napoli, Monografia.
- [K.] Svenska Vetenskapsakademien, Arkiv för Mineralogi och Geologi; Arkiv för Zoologi; Handlingar. Stockholm.
- Sveriges Geologiska Undersökning, Afhandlingar; Årsbok. Stockholm.
- Systematic Zoology. Lawrence, Kans.
- Tartu Rukliku Ülikooli Toimetused, Uchenye Zapiski.
- Tartu Ülikooli Geoloogia-Instituudi Toimetused [Acta et Commentationes Universitatis Tartuens (Dorpatensis)].
- Természetráji Füzetek. Budapest.
- Texas Journal of Science. San Marcos.
- Texas, University of, Bulletins; Publications. Austin.
- Tierreich. Berlin.
- Tijdschrift voor Entomologie. 's Gravenhage, Amsterdam.
- Tokyo, University of, Faculty of Science, Journals. (From 1887-1925, Tokyo Imperial University, College of Science.)
- Tulane Studies in Geology. New Orleans.
- Umschau. Übersicht über die Fortschritte u. Bewegungen auf d. Gesamtgebiete d. Wissenschaft, Technik, Literature u. Kunst. Frankfurt, Leipzig.
- United States Fish Commission, Bulletins. Washington, D.C.
- United States Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories, Annual Reports. Washington, D.C.
- United States Geological Survey, Annual Reports; Bulletins; Monographs; Professional Papers. Washington, D.C.
- United States National Museum, Bulletins; Proceedings. Washington, D.C.
- Universität Rostock, Wissenschaftliche Zeitschrift, mathematische-naturwissenschaftliche Reihe, Jahrgang.
- University of Missouri Studies. Columbia, Mo.
- Ústředního Ústavu Geologického, Rozpravy; Sborník; Věstník. Praha.
- Victorian Naturalist; the Journal and Magazine of the Field Naturalists' Club of Victoria. Melbourne.
- Videnskabelige Meddelelser fra Dansk Naturhistorisk Forening. København.
- Videnskabs-Selskabet i Kristiania, Forhandlingar; Skrifter. Oslo.
- Vsesoyuznyi Nauchno-Issledovatel'skii Geologicheskii Institut, Trudy (VSEGEI). Moskva.
- Wagner Free Institute of Science of Philadelphia, Bulletins.
- Washington Academy of Sciences, Journals, Proceedings. Washington, D.C.
- Washington, University of, Publications in Biology. Seattle.
- Washington, University of, Publications in Oceanography. Seattle.
- Wichita, University of, Bulletins; University Studies.

Wissenschaftliche Ergebnisse der Deutschen Tiefsee-Expedition auf dem Dampfer "Valdivia," 1898-99. Jena.  
 Zeitschrift für die Gesamte Naturwissenschaft. Braunschweig.  
 Zeitschrift für Geschiefbeforschung. Berlin.  
 Zeitschrift für Hydrologie, Hydrographie, Hydrobiologie, Fischereiwissenschaft. Aarau.  
 Zeitschrift für Induktive Abstammungs- und Vererbungslehre. Berlin.  
 Zeitschrift für Mineralogie. Berlin.  
 Zeitschrift für Naturwissenschaften. Halle.  
 Zentralblatt für Mineralogie (Before 1950, Neues Jahrbuch für Mineralogie, Geologie und Paläontologie). Stuttgart.  
 Zoological Journal. London.

Zoological Society of London, Proceedings.  
 Zoologicheskii Zhurnal. Moskva.  
 [K.K.] Zoologisch-botanischen Gesellschaft in Wien, Verhandlungen.  
 Zoologische Annalen. Würzburg.  
 Zoologische Jahrbücher, Abteilung 1—Systematik (Ökologie), Geographie und Biologie; Abteilung 2—Anatomie und Ontogenie. Jena.  
 Zoologische Jahrbücher, Supplementen. Jena.  
 Zoologische Verhandelingen. Rijksmuseum van Natuurlijke Historie te Leiden.  
 Zoologischer Anzeiger. Leipzig.  
 Zoologiska Bidrag från Uppsala. Uppsala, Stockholm.  
 Zoologist. London.

## SOURCES OF ILLUSTRATIONS

At the end of figure captions an index number is given to supply record of the author of illustrations used in the *Treatise*, reference being made either (1) to publications cited in reference lists or (2) to the

names of authors with or without indication of individual publications concerned. Previously unpublished illustrations are marked by the letter "n" (signifying "new") with the name of the author.

## STRATIGRAPHIC DIVISIONS

Classification of rocks forming the geologic column as commonly cited in the *Treatise* in terms of units defined by concepts of time is reasonably uniform and firm throughout most of the world as regards major divisions (e.g., series, systems, and rocks representing eras) but it is variable and unfirm as regards smaller divisions (e.g., substages, stages, and subseries),

which are provincial in application. Users of the *Treatise* have suggested the desirability of publishing reference lists showing the stratigraphic arrangement of at least the most commonly cited divisions. Accordingly, a tabulation of European and North American units, which broadly is applicable also to other continents, is given here.

### *Generally Recognized Divisions of Geologic Column*

EUROPE

**ROCKS OF CENOZOIC ERA**  
**NEOGENE SYSTEM<sup>1</sup>**  
 Pleistocene Series (including Recent)  
 Pliocene Series  
 Miocene Series

**PALEOGENE SYSTEM**  
 Oligocene Series  
 Eocene Series  
 Paleocene Series

**ROCKS OF MESOZOIC ERA**  
**CRETACEOUS SYSTEM**  
 Upper Cretaceous Series  
 Maastrichtian Stage<sup>2</sup>  
 Campanian Stage<sup>2</sup>  
 Santonian Stage<sup>2</sup>  
 Coniacian Stage<sup>2</sup>

NORTH AMERICA

**ROCKS OF CENOZOIC ERA**  
**NEOGENE SYSTEM<sup>1</sup>**  
 Pleistocene Series (including Recent)  
 Pliocene Series  
 Miocene Series

**PALEOGENE SYSTEM**  
 Oligocene Series  
 Eocene Series  
 Paleocene Series

**ROCKS OF MESOZOIC ERA**  
**CRETACEOUS SYSTEM**  
 Gulfian Series (Upper Cretaceous)  
 Navarroan Stage  
 Tayloran Stage  
 Austinian Stage

Turonian Stage  
Cenomanian Stage

**Lower Cretaceous Series**

Albian Stage

Aptian Stage

Barremian Stage<sup>3</sup>

Hauterivian Stage<sup>3</sup>

Valanginian Stage<sup>3</sup>

Berriasian Stage<sup>3</sup>

**JURASSIC SYSTEM**

**Upper Jurassic Series**

Portlandian Stage<sup>4</sup>

Kimmeridgian Stage

Oxfordian Stage

**Middle Jurassic Series**

Callovian Stage (or Upper Jurassic)

Bajocian Stage

Bathonian Stage

**Lower Jurassic Series (Liassic)**

Toarcian Stage

Pliensbachian Stage

Sinemurian Stage

Hettangian Stage

**TRIASSIC SYSTEM**

**Upper Triassic Series**

Rhaetian Stage<sup>5</sup>

Norian Stage

Carnian Stage

**Middle Triassic Series**

Ladinian Stage

Anisian Stage (Virgilorian)

**Lower Triassic Series**

Scythian Stage (Werfenian)

**ROCKS OF PALEOZOIC ERA**

**PERMIAN SYSTEM**

**Upper Permian Series**

Tartarian Stage<sup>9</sup>

Kazanian Stage<sup>7</sup>

Kungurian Stage

**Lower Permian Series**

Artinskian Stage<sup>8</sup>

Sakmarian Stage

Asselian Stage

**CARBONIFEROUS SYSTEM**

**Upper Carboniferous Series**

Stephanian Stage

Woodbinian (Tuscaloosan) Stage  
**Comanchean Series (Lower Cretaceous)**

Washitan Stage

Fredericksburgian Stage

Trinitian Stage

**Coahuilan Series (Lower Cretaceous)**

Nuevoleonian Stage

Durangoan Stage

**JURASSIC SYSTEM**

**Upper Jurassic Series**

Portlandian Stage

Kimmeridgian Stage

Oxfordian Stage

**Middle Jurassic Series**

Callovian Stage (or Upper Jurassic)

Bathonian Stage

Bajocian Stage

**Lower Jurassic Series (Liassic)**

Toarcian Stage

Pliensbachian Stage

Sinemurian Stage

Hettangian Stage

**TRIASSIC SYSTEM**

**Upper Triassic Series**

(Not recognized)

Norian Stage

Carnian Stage

**Middle Triassic Series**

Ladinian Stage

Anisian Stage

**Lower Triassic Series**

Scythian Stage

**ROCKS OF PALEOZOIC ERA**

**PERMIAN SYSTEM**

**Upper Permian Series**

Ochoan Stage

Guadalupian Stage

**Lower Permian Series**

Leonardian Stage

Wolfcampian Stage

**PENNSYLVANIAN SYSTEM**

**Kawvian Series (Upper**

**Pennsylvanian)**

Virgilian Stage

Missourian Stage

Westphalian Stage

**Oklan Series (Middle Pennsylvanian)**  
Desmoinesian Stage  
Bendian Stage  
**Ardian Series (Lower Pennsylvanian)**  
Morrowan Stage

Namurian Stage

**MISSISSIPPIAN SYSTEM**

**Tennessean Series (Upper Mississippian)**  
Chesteran Stage

**Lower Carboniferous Series**

Visean Stage

Meramecian Stage  
**Waverlyan Series (Lower Mississippian)**  
Osagian Stage  
Kinderhookian Stage

Tournaisian Stage  
Strunian Stage

**DEVONIAN SYSTEM**

**DEVONIAN SYSTEM**

**Upper Devonian Series**

Famennian Stage

**Chautauquan Series (Upper Devonian)**

Conewangoan Stage  
Cassadagan Stage

Frasnian Stage

**Senecan Series (Upper Devonian)**

Chemungian Stage  
Fingerlakesian Stage

**Middle Devonian Series**

Givetian Stage

**Erian Series (Middle Devonian)**

Taghanican Stage  
Tioughniogan Stage  
Cazenovian Stage

Couvinian Stage

**Lower Devonian Series**

Emsian Stage  
Siegenian Stage  
Gedinnian Stage

**Ulsterian Series (Lower Devonian)**

Onesquethawan Stage  
Deerparkian Stage  
Helderbergian Stage

**SILURIAN SYSTEM**

**SILURIAN SYSTEM**

Ludlow Stage

**Cayugan Series**  
Includes age equivalents of middle and upper Ludlow (in New York)

Wenlock Stage

**Niagaran Series**  
Includes age equivalents of upper Llandovery, Wenlock, and lower Ludlow (in New York)

Llandovery Stage

**Medinan Series**  
Includes age equivalents of lower and middle Llandovery (in New York)

**ORDOVICIAN SYSTEM**

**ORDOVICIAN SYSTEM**

Ashgill Stage

**Cincinnatian Series (Upper Ordovician)**

Richmondian Stage  
Maysvillian Stage  
Edenian Stage

Caradoc Stage

**Champlainian Series (Middle Ordovician)**

Mohawkian Stage

Llandeilo Stage  
Llanvirn Stage

Arenig Stage  
Tremadoc Stage<sup>9</sup>

**CAMBRIAN SYSTEM**

Upper Cambrian Series

Middle Cambrian Series  
Lower Cambrian Series

**EOCAMBRIAN SYSTEM**  
**ROCKS OF PRECAMBRIAN AGE**

Trentonian Substage  
Blackriveran Substage  
Chazyan Stage

Canadian Series (Lower Ordovician)

**CAMBRIAN SYSTEM**

Croixian Series (Upper Cambrian)

Trempealeuan Stage  
Franconian Stage  
Dresbachian Stage

Albertan Series (Middle Cambrian)  
Waucoban Series (Lower Cambrian)

**EOCAMBRIAN SYSTEM**  
**ROCKS OF PRECAMBRIAN AGE**

RAYMOND C. MOORE

---

<sup>1</sup> Considered by some to exclude post-Pliocene deposits.

<sup>2</sup> Classed as division of Senonian Subseries.

<sup>3</sup> Classed as division of Neocomian Subseries.

<sup>4</sup> Includes Purbeckian deposits.

<sup>5</sup> Interpreted as lowermost Jurassic in some areas.

<sup>6</sup> Includes some Lower Triassic and equivalent to upper Thuringian (Zechstein) deposits.

<sup>7</sup> Equivalent to lower Thuringian (Zechstein) deposits.

<sup>8</sup> Equivalent to upper Autunian and part of Rotliegend deposits.

<sup>9</sup> Classed as uppermost Cambrian by some geologists.

PART R

ARTHROPODA 4

CRUSTACEA (EXCEPT OSTRACODA)

MYRIAPODA—HEXAPODA

By H. K. BROOKS, F. M. CARPENTER, M. F. GLAESSNER, GERHARD HAHN, R. R. HESSLER, R. L. HOFFMAN, L. B. HOLTHUIS, R. B. MANNING, S. M. MANTON, LAVON McCORMICK, R. C. MOORE, W. A. NEWMAN, A. R. PALMER, W. D. I. ROLFE, PAUL TASCH, †T. H. WITHERS, and V. A. ZULLO

VOLUME 1

CONTENTS

[Volume 1, p. i-xxxvi, R1-R398; Volume 2, p. R399-R651; Volume 3 (to follow)]

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION (R. C. Moore) .....	R2
CLASSIFICATION OF ARTHROPODA (S. M. Manton) .....	R3
EVOLUTION AND AFFINITIES OF ONYCHOPHORA, MYRIAPODA, HEXAPODA, AND CRUSTACEA (S. M. Manton) .....	R15
GENERAL FEATURES OF CRUSTACEA (R. C. Moore and Lavon McCormick) .....	R57
CEPHALOCARIDA (R. R. Hessler) .....	R120
BRANCHIOPODA (Paul Tasch) .....	R128
MYSTACOCARIDA (R. R. Hessler) .....	R192
OSTRACODA (R. C. Moore) .....	R195
EUTHYCARCINOIDEA (R. C. Moore) .....	R196
COPEPODA (A. R. Palmer) .....	R200
BRANCHIURA (R. R. Hessler) .....	R203
CIRRIPIEDIA (W. A. Newman, V. A. Zullo, and †T. H. Withers) .....	R206
MALACOSTRACA (H. K. Brooks, M. F. Glaessner, Gerhard Hahn, R. R. Hessler, L. B. Holthuis, R. B. Manning, R. C. Moore, and W. D. I. Rolfe) .....	R295
CYCLOIDEA (M. F. Glaessner) .....	R567
BOSTRICHOPODIDA (Gerhard Hahn) .....	R570
MYRIAPODA, exclusive of Insecta (R. L. Hoffman) .....	R572
ARTHROPLEURIDA (W. D. I. Rolfe) .....	R607
ARTHROPODA INCERTAE SEDIS (W. D. I. Rolfe) .....	R620
ADDENDUM TO DECAPODA (M. F. Glaessner) .....	R626
ADDENDUM TO CIRRIPIEDIA (W. A. Newman and V. A. Zullo) .....	R628
ADDENDUM TO CYCLOIDEA (M. F. Glaessner) .....	R629
INDEX .....	R631
HEXAPODA (F. M. Carpenter) (Volume 3) .....	R653

## INTRODUCTION

By RAYMOND C. MOORE

[The University of Kansas]

This unit of the *Treatise* to which the letter R was assigned in original plans has been exceptionally slow in taking form and more difficult than any other yet published to organize. For example, the first major sections of systematic descriptions and illustrations were received from O. W. TIEGS and T. H. WITHERS in 1954. After editorial work had been approved by the authors, the materials were placed in files as Part R "nest eggs." Prior to 1960, F. M. CARPENTER, M. F. GLAESSNER, and PAUL TASCH had accepted Part R assignments, and in the period 1961-65 the list of contributing authors was enlarged to include H. K. BROOKS, ISABELLA GORDON, GERHARD HAHN, R. R. HESSLER, R. L. HOFFMAN, L. B. HOLTHUIS, R. B. MANNING, S. M. MANTON, W. A. NEWMAN, A. R. PALMER, W. D. I. ROLFE, and V. A. ZULLO.

Completed first drafts of sections, varying considerably in length, or revisions of previously submitted typescripts and figures were received by me as follows: 1956—TASCH; 1960—TASCH; 1961—HESSLER, ROLFE, TASCH; 1962—CARPENTER, HESSLER, MANTON, PALMER, ROLFE, TASCH; 1963—CARPENTER, GLAESSNER, HESSLER, HOLTHUIS & MANNING, MANTON, ROLFE, TASCH; 1964—BROOKS, CARPENTER, GLAESSNER, HESSLER, ROLFE; 1965—CARPENTER, GLAESSNER, HAHN, HOFFMAN, HOLTHUIS & MANNING, PALMER, ROLFE; 1966—CARPENTER, GLAESSNER, MANTON, NEWMAN & ZULLO, ROLFE; 1967—CARPENTER, HAHN, NEWMAN & ZULLO.

With expectation that unfinished portions of Part R would be ready for the press within a few months at most, type-setting was begun in June, 1965, and continued steadily through November of that year. Then, owing to the unavailability of awaited typescripts, it was necessary to halt press work until June, 1967, only to shut down again in less than three weeks' time. The final stage of type-setting was delayed until February, 1968. This record amply demonstrates the arduousness of coordi-

nating the labors of numerous specialists, each of whom is needed to round out a taxonomic "package" in manner aimed at maximum comprehensiveness and authoritativeness. I am very grateful to all of the *Treatise* contributors who have conscientiously worked to meet our objectives by able completion of their accepted assignments, but from the viewpoint of all concerned—participating authors and an anticipated host of persons who will be benefited by use of this and other *Treatise* units—I deprecate the slowness in accomplishing publication.

I call special attention to the two chapters of general scope next following this short introduction. They have been contributed by SIDNIE M. MANTON in response to invitations extended by me, that on classification of Arthropoda after she and other *Treatise* authors concerned with arthropodan groups had criticized (1965, *in litt.*) the so-called subphylum assemblage named Mandibulata or Antennata as quite outmoded and therefore unacceptable in classification. The breadth and thoroughness of Dr. MANTON's many years of investigations on most important morphological features of virtually all main divisions of living arthropods, coupled with studies of their anatomy, physiology, interrelationships, and evidence bearing on their evolutionary changes and phylogeny, especially qualify her for a comprehensive appraisal of the phylum—granting that groups known only as fossils have received little first-hand attention from her. For these, judicious dependence on the work of paleontologists has been requisite.

MANTON's discussion of the problems of arthropodan major classification in the light of multitudinous factual observations which have been accumulated points to the need for emending the outline of main divisions of the Arthropoda given in *Treatise* Part O (1959, p. O15-O16). This is now given in her chapter (p. R13) and adopted as a guide for arranging most of the sections of systematic descriptions.

Comparison of the chapter on *Introduction to Classification of Arthropoda* with the next one on *Evolution and Affinities of Onychophora, Myriapoda, Hexapoda, and Crustacea*, written earlier, shows how one complements the other in stressing important common features of main groups as contrasted with equally important differences.

The chapter on *General Features of Crustacea* by MOORE & McCORMICK is substitute for one which ISABELLA GORDON had agreed and expected to prepare, but which circumstances prevented her from submitting. Invitations to other crustacean specialists were declined. Such a chapter by GORDON may yet be offered for later *Treatise* publication in a supplement or revision of Part R.

Authorship of systematic descriptions of crustaceans, myriapods, and insects is indi-

cated with each division. Mostly it was arranged several years ago. On the basis of counsel received from *Treatise* advisers and on my own responsibility, the contributions received in 1954 from WITHERS on Cirripedia and from TIEGS on Myriapoda have been considerably revised by others, including changes of illustrations. Late submissions (June, 1966) were valuable self-originated sections by ROLFE on Arthropleurida and Arthropoda Incertae Sedis and by HAHN on Bostrichopodida.

A departure from previous practice in publication of *Treatise* units is made in issuing two volumes of Part R, here given, in advance of a third one containing text and illustrations for fossil insects. This is a comparatively large section which is not yet ready for the press. The index for Part R is divided accordingly.

## INTRODUCTION TO CLASSIFICATION OF ARTHROPODA

By S. M. MANTON

[British Museum (Natural History), London]

[Chapter submitted January, 1966]

Different parts of this *Treatise* refer to a variety of classifications, either of the Arthropoda as a whole, or of parts of this vast assemblage of animals. Fossil remains do not demonstrate either the origin of the Arthropoda or of its classes. When the fossil record provides no decisive evidence of interrelationships, classifications can be, at best, only working hypotheses. But such hypotheses must conform to the ever-growing body of evidence relating to past history of living animals which stems from all available sources. Classifications should be based upon facts and not upon speculations. The practical necessities of taxonomic and other work makes subdivision or classification of arthropods an imperative requirement. It is not surprising that some of the imperfectly known fossil arthropodan remains cannot be referred with certainty to any modern group and others appear to

be decidedly unlike animals in any extant class.

A classification of arthropods should be based upon phylogeny, but in the absence of sufficient fossil evidence, taxonomic groupings must rest largely upon the comparative anatomy of living species, on embryology, and life histories, and probably to some extent also on biochemistry and biophysics. The available evidence concerning the extinct arthropods is more limited and much less detailed. A very large measure of convergence is shown by the morphology and physiology of living arthropods whose past histories, it is inferred, must have been fundamentally different. An appreciation of such convergences is of immense importance in the elucidation of arthropodan relationships. No simple scheme of classification which ignores convergence can provide a basis

for the reconstruction of past history and relationships of arthropods. A review was given by TIEGS & MANTON (25) of theories of arthropod phylogeny and classification which had been advanced prior to 1958. In recent years important new factual evidence concerning these matters has been obtained. This introduction for *Treatise* Part R is intended to be a brief summary of the present position of arthropod classification based upon older considerations and newer factual evidence.

Abundant evidence concerning the evolution and relationships of living arthropods, at first unexpected, has been provided by an increasing body of studies of functional anatomy and of the habits of life with which the morphology is intimately associated, a line of work not easy to apply to fossil materials. Vast arrays of complex anatomy, such as those shown by crustacean limbs or the trunk skeletomusculature of myriapods, takes on a new and ordered meaning. An understanding of the manner of working of different morphological systems, together with the circumstances under which they work, lead to two advances in our appreciation of arthropodan evolution. Firstly, the different morphologies which characterize many of the larger groups of living arthropods have been shown to be related to habits of life which are not adaptations to particular environmental niches. Evolutionary advances in morphology and physiology can enable an animal to live better both in the same and in a variety of environmental circumstances. The end terms of evolution within a particular order or other category, on the contrary, often form adaptive radiations to particular niches, and these adaptations, superimposed upon the more basic characters of each group, have less far-reaching evolutionary significance in that they do not give rise to new forms of evolutionary significance (p. R21). Secondly, when the functional advantages, or the mode of action, of various morphological set-ups are known, any postulated evolution from one to another which entails a functionally impossible intermediate or one which negates the functional advantages already achieved, at once becomes apparent. The

factual matters brought forward by this type of work are of basic and essential importance in any attempt to arrive at a natural classification of the Arthropoda. These lines of work are as yet in their infancy, and for their successful development the comparative approach is essential. Detailed study of one animal alone gives few clues, but a knowledge of the functional assets of animals showing very different and closely similar habits at once becomes revealing as to the possible manners in which their evolution can have proceeded.

The Arthropoda have in common a metameric segmented body with a differentiated anterior end which forms either a localized head or the anterior part of a cephalothorax or prosoma, according to the class. They possess serially repeated limbs along a trunk; an ostiate heart and a hemocoelic body cavity; and a cuticle, which even when thin and flexible, is constructed in a definite arthropod manner. Growth is intermittent, owing to periodic ecdysis of the cuticle. The features which link the arthropods together are thus few in number. The conspicuous sclerites on the body and limbs of most arthropods are not necessarily basic arthropodan features (see below). Many arthropods have a cuticle which is little sclerotized and bends easily. Many sclerites are not associated in any way with muscles and perform protective and other functions (1, 15). Muscles insert upon subcutaneous sheets of connective tissue, on basement membranes and on internal tendon systems far removed from the body surface. Muscles frequently pull on arthropodial membranes (13, 14, 15). Muscles are attached to sclerites only indirectly by tonofibrils traversing ectodermal cells from the subectodermal connective tissues. Extreme sclerotization, coupled with the formation of elaborate joints, lever-like apodemes, etc., represent arthropodan advances which are far less basic than the hemocoel, although found among the earliest recognizable arthropodan remains.

The head end is formed ontogenetically in a manner unlike that in other phyla. Ventrolaterally the anterior segmental mesodermal somites (which form most of the internal tissues of the adult) and the

corresponding ectodermal areas, many of which bear limb rudiments, grow forward relative to the mouth. The oral aperture with the unsegmented rudiment forming the upper lip (labrum), shifts backwards, as shown diagrammatically in Figure A. Some of the anterior limb rudiments are thereby carried to a preoral level, while the mouth becomes subterminal and ventrally directed, unless other specializations ensue. A preoral cavity is frequently formed by these shifts, and into it the mouth parts crush, grind, or bite the food. The mouth does not shift out of one segment and into another (23; 25, p. 269). It is the lateral parts of the segments which bend forward around the mouth. The anterior segments are not even roughly cylindrical in shape, as are those of the trunk. The dorsal tissue of much of the head is formed by unsegmented acron, tissue which has persisted from the embryonic or developmental stage previous to that in which segmentation is initiated (Fig. A). The figure by WEBER, reproduced in the *Treatise* Part O (Fig. 6) is a purely theoretical concept. The varying amounts of yolk in arthropodan eggs determines the early distance (large in Fig. A) between the unsegmented dorsal blastoderm and the ventral segment rudiments at the future anterior end of the body. Comparative embryology of the more primitive members of the larger arthropod groups does not substantiate WEBER's theoretical concept, accepted by STØRMER in the *Treatise*.

The limbs which become preoral in position tend to become sensory or trophic, in whole or in part, and perform other functions according to the group. Limbs just behind the mouth are usually specialized for feeding to some extent, and the unsegmented acron provides eyes of various kinds.<sup>1</sup>

The major classes of arthropods each have characteristic head structure which alone is sufficient to separate one class from another. The differentiating characters comprise: 1) number of segments which have shifted to a preoral position, one in the Onychophora, two in the Chelicerata,

and three in Crustacea, Myriapoda, and Hexapoda; 2) number and nature of preoral limbs—prehensile chelicerae characterize the Chelicerata (Merostomata, Arachnida), two pairs of antennae occur in Crustacea, and one pair in the Onychophora, Myriapoda and Hexapoda; 3) presence or absence of mandibular appendages just behind the mouth and nature of these limbs—the mandibles in Crustacea are formed by the leg base and those of the Onychophora, Myriapoda, and Hexapoda by a whole limb which bites with the tip and not with the base; 4) number of paired postoral limbs used in feeding; the Chelicerata usually employ one or more pairs of gnathobases for chewing or cutting and use a movement (and associated morphology) quite unlike that operating the crustacean gnathobases. The Crustacea, Myriapoda, and Hexapoda show two pairs of limbs largely or entirely devoted to feeding (maxillules, maxillae) and further limbs may be used in part, or entirely, for such purposes in Crustacea and certain Myriapoda. Cephalic segmentation and limb equipment in fossil arthropods is seldom known with certainty. We do not know whether trilobite antennules correspond with the antennules or antennae of Crustacea, and the four following biramous limbs of some trilobites may be common to the class and may correspond with the post-antennular head appendages of Crustacea. The many middle Cambrian merostome-like arthropods cannot be assigned with certainty to Crustacea, Trilobita, or Merostomata on their imperfectly known cephalic features (17, 19, 21). There is every probability that many extinct Arthropoda, such as *Sidneya* (19), do not belong to any of the well-known classes.

The arthropodan trunk region may or may not be divisible into definite tagmata, but these regions when clearly defined are characteristic of only certain classes and orders. The tagmata shown by the Arthropoda are well known and need not be enumerated here.

In some arthropods all trunk segments are laid down embryologically before hatching, and in others only a few segments are so formed, additional segments being added progressively during early life. The details

<sup>1</sup> The table in *Treatise* Part O (p. O11) suggesting homologies of anterior segments in arthropods is not in accord with factual knowledge (see footnote, Part R, p. R42).

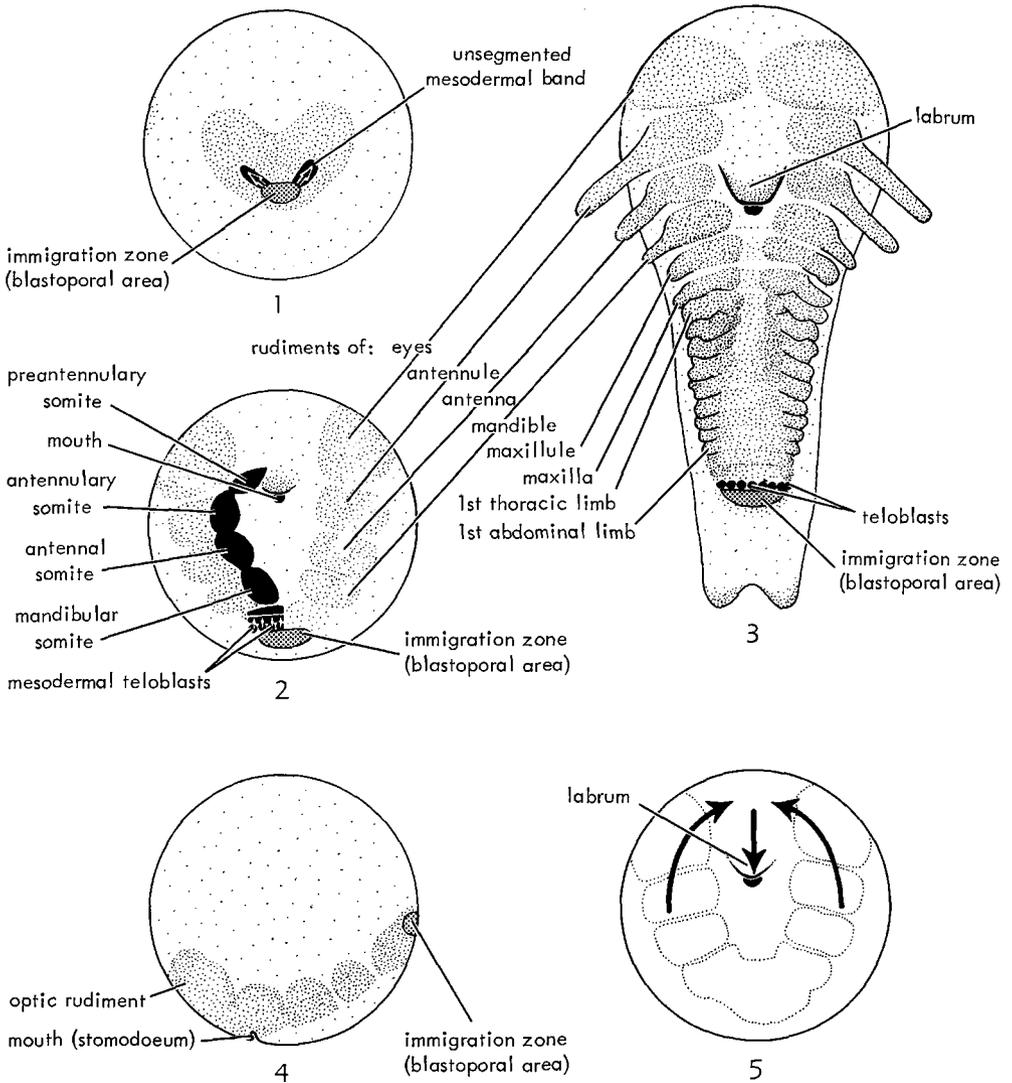


FIG. A. Diagrams illustrating manner in which a head is formed during development in an arthropod, the example being a mysid crustacean.

1-5. Progressive stages shown in (1-3) in ventral view, (4) in side view and (5) diagram of (2) showing directions in which tissues shift as they grow.

The unsegmented embryo becomes segmented only ventrally at the head end (4), the dorsal surface being unsegmented. The head is formed by elaborations from this unsegmented anterodorsal tissue (acron), forming eyes, etc., and the preantennulary,

antennulary, and antennal segments bend forward relative to the backgrowth of the labrum and oral aperture (2,3). Stippling shows concentrations of outer ectoderm to form the optic rudiment, segmental rudiments, and upper lip (labrum). White stipple on black shows forward migration of mesoderm from its site of origin in (1) to form the mesodermal somites in (2). The immigration zone, or blastoporal area, forms mesoderm and endoderm.

whereby segments are formed differs from class to class (4, 4a, 7, 22, 23, 24).

A characteristic of great evolutionary and classificatory significance concerns the

limbs. Simple uniramous limbs characterize the Onychophora-Myriapoda-Hexapoda assemblage. Biramous limbs of two contrasting types occur in the primarily

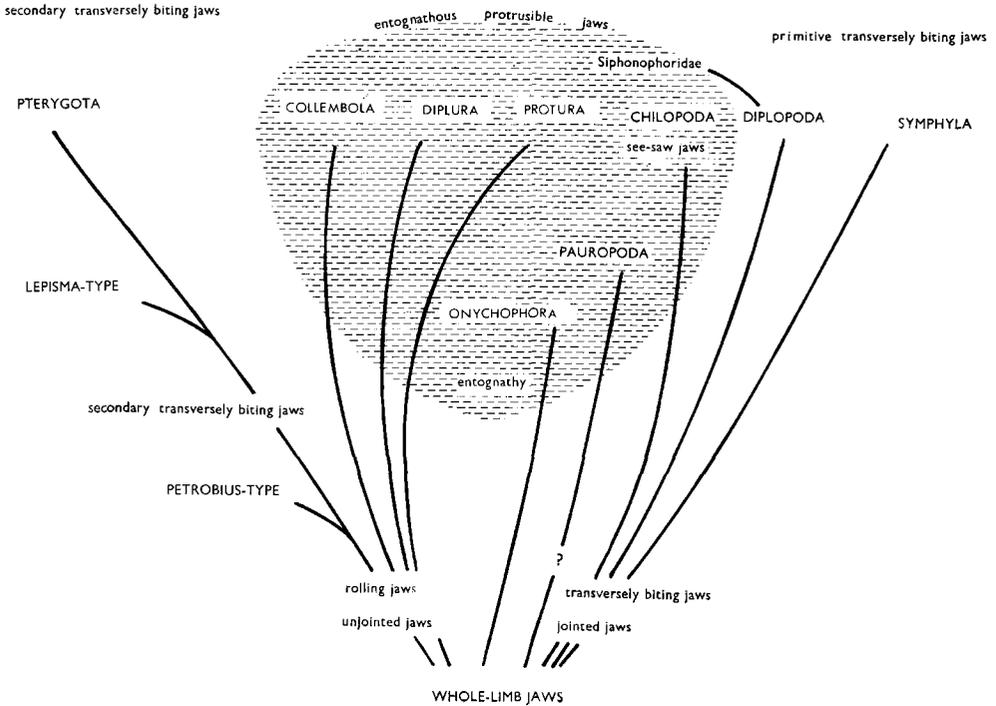


FIG. B. Diagram showing conclusions reached concerning interrelationships and evolution of jaw mechanisms in classes Onychophora, Myriapoda, and Hexapoda, based upon detailed study of structure and mode of action of mandibles throughout the Arthropoda (14).

Two independent lines of evolution are shown, utilizing an unjointed (left side) and jointed (right side) whole-limb mandible. The shaded area indicates independent evolution of entognathy and protrusible mandibles in seven groups. The left-hand branching line is not intended to mean more than the derivation of the mandible of the

Pterygota whose ancestors may have passed through stages in which the mandible resembled those of *Lepisma* and *Petrobius* in certain essentials. The lower convergence of the lines denoting the several Apterygota is not meant to imply a common ancestry, but only a closer affinity between the hexapods than between them and any myriapod.

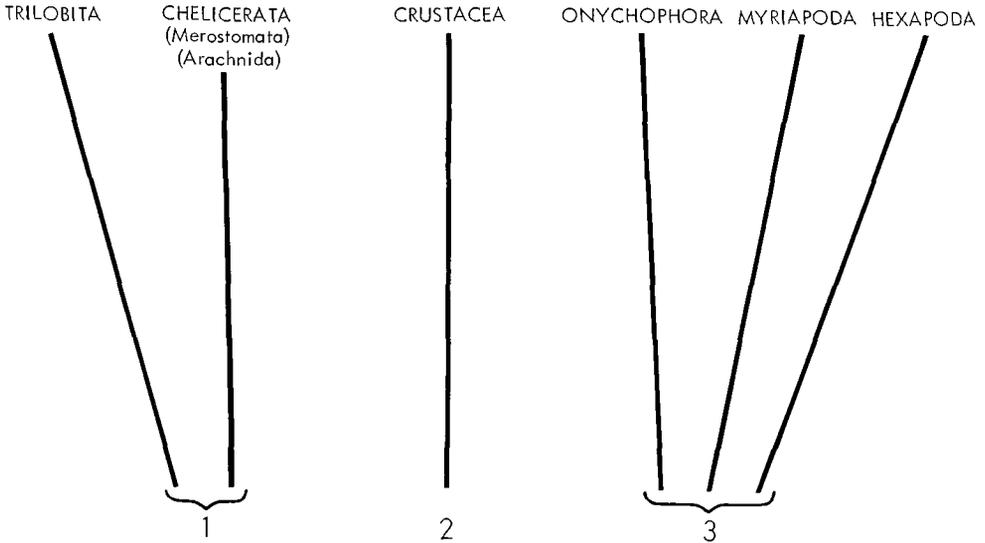
aquatic groups (Fig. B); a limb with the exopod arising distally on the protopod occurs in Crustacea, but in the Trilobita the outer ramus arises proximally on the protopod, so corresponding with the exites on the protopod of Crustacea which are situated proximal to the exopod. Reconstructions from sections of the trilobite *Olenoides* (20) show flattened respiratory filaments on the outer ramus, quite unlike the exopod setae of Crustacea so often used in swimming (25). A uniramous trunk limb in many Crustacea results from the progressive reduction of the exopod and is used for walking and not swimming. A corresponding reduction of the outer ramus is presumed to have occurred also in the Chelicerata, only a few biramous limbs remaining, such

as the branchial and sixth prosomal limbs of *Limulus*. There is no indication of a biramous limb in the Onychophora, Myriapoda, or Hexapoda. The fossil record does not in any way bridge the gap between these three limb types; they all may have evolved independently from the limbs of soft-bodied ancestors. Regrettably little information of a precise nature is available concerning limb structure in fossil arthropods, and great care is needed before a limb can be assigned either to the crustacean or to the trilobite type or to something different.

The outstanding convergences among arthropods, which should be faced in any attempt at a natural classification, concern: 1) **biramous limbs**, which differ basically in

structure, at least in Crustacea and Trilobita, and which are insufficiently known in most fossil Arthropoda; 2) **mandibles**, which are entirely different in derivation in Crustacea and in the Onychophora-Myriapoda-Hexapoda assemblage (14)—even in the latter group the myriapod whole limb segmented mandible, utilizing a basic adductor-abductor movement, contrasts fundamentally with the hexapod whole-limb unsegmented mandible; the basic movement of this latter mandible is a promotor-remotor roll giving a good grinding action and some cutting, and a transition from this, to mandibles which cut much more strongly in the transverse plane, takes place by morphological changes which are parallel to those Crustacea which also acquire trans-

verse biting from a primitive rolling mandible (p. R25, 14); 3) **entognathy**, or boxing in of the mandibles, and in some forms of other mouth parts also, confers proximal freedom on the mandible which permits protractor and retractor movements, additional to the basic promotor-remotor roll giving grinding and cutting—entognathy has been evolved independently many times (Fig. B) and the possession of this general feature, with details differing in the several groups (15), is not indicative of close affinity, as has at times been suggested; 4) **compound eyes** do not appear to be basic in all classes—trilobite compound eyes lacked the refinements present in Hexapoda and in Crustacea which possess compound eyes, for such eyes appear to have



(1) The form of limbs and tagmata of the body perhaps suggests distant affinity between the Chelicerata and Trilobita and a lack of affinity between these classes and the other Arthropoda.

(2) The basic form of the biramous limbs and gnathobasic mandibles of Crustacea are so unlike the corresponding limbs of other Arthropoda as to preclude close affinity between them.

(3) The Onychophora, Myriapoda, and Hexapoda have similar uniramous limbs and all bite with the tips, not bases, of the mandibles. Also, similarities in the embryonic development of these groups contrast with chelicerate and crustacean developments. The three groups probably have had a roughly common origin, but the construction and mode of action of the segmented mandibles of the Myriapoda are so unlike those of the unsegmented hexapod mandibles as to indicate that the Hexapoda have not descended from any one class of the Myriapoda.

FIG. C. Diagram illustrating three major subdivisions of the Arthropoda between which there are no known connecting links.

been evolved independently in the latter classes; the eye structure in some crustacean orders and in Hexapoda, although closely similar, is not identical. Physiological requirements for this type of vision do not permit wide deviation from the most suitable mechanism, which consequently appears to have been a parallel evolution in the two groups; 5) **tracheal systems** used in air-breathing have evolved independently in Onychophora, Myriapoda, and Hexapoda, in Arachnida and certain Crustacea—the fine, almost unbranched tracheae of the Onychophora are not unique, as has often been supposed; similar tracheae are found in certain Chilopoda (*Craterostigmus*) where extensive changes in hydrostatic pressure occur in the hemocoel in association with various specialized abilities as in Onychophora (15); 6) **uric acid excretion** and the conservation of water in the excretory processes in land forms is achieved by Malpighian tubules in Arachnida and in Myriapoda and Hexapoda; uric acid secretion is done very simply by the mid-gut in Onychophora, but the presence of Malpighian tubules is not necessarily indicative of a uricotelic metabolism such as occurs in pterygote insects (BENNETT & MANTON, 1962); 7) **progoneate condition** of the Symphyla and Pauropoda has been shown by TREGS (23, 24) to be secondary and probably related to anamorphosis. Further convergences could be noted, and see below for cuticular sclerotization.

No simple monophyletic scheme of arthropod classification can account for the distribution and morphology of the above features. Some measure of polyphyletic evolution within the group seems inescapable. At least three major groupings can be made, as shown diagrammatically in Figure C and distinguishable on tagmata and on the basic structure of the jaws and trunk limbs. This grouping is endorsed by STÖRMER (21) who can find no bridging of the gaps between them.

The Onychophora are not separable from the other classes of Arthropoda by any characteristics of fundamental importance. There is no sound evidence to justify the view that this class should be excluded from the Arthropoda. Onychophoran structure and embryology are basically

arthropodan in great detail, and onychophoran peculiarities of structure and development are related to habits of life which are of survival value (5, 6, 7, 10a; MANTON, 1959). Moreover, the Onychophora share many important features with the myriapod classes in contrast to all other Arthropoda (MANTON, 1964; 15, 23, 24). The views to the contrary concerning the Onychophora and classification and phylogeny of the Arthropoda in general, recently put forward by SHAROV (18), are not considered to be valid. They do not accord with the known evidence, they conflict with easily ascertainable new facts and rest on speculative bases. The principle advocated by SHAROV that arthropod structure can only be understood by reference to the origin of the Articulata is hardly commendable since this province is unknown. A classification of the Arthropoda is not advanced by assertions that the group arose from the Ctenophora via annelids akin to the highly specialized Spintheridae. Such statements are unprovable. A reply to many of the points by SHAROV is given by MANTON (16 and 1967) and ANDERSON, 1966, together with the presentation of new data.

The factual evidence provided by the jaws is summarized in Figure D, and it divides the Arthropoda into the same three groups, separated by the heavy vertical lines, as in Figure C. The gnathobases, used for cutting and squeezing, in the Chelicerata are fundamentally different in skeletomuscular action from those of Crustacea, and the one could not have given rise to the other. The primitive rolling movement of the jaws of Crustacea and Hexapoda, described in another chapter (p. R49), must have arisen from the promotor-remotor swing of a walking or swimming limb, the actual mandibles in the two groups being quite different in derivation. Biting in the transverse plane is a secondary acquisition in many Crustacea and Hexapoda (shaded area), but is a primitive movement for the gnathobasic limbs of the Chelicerata and mandibles of Myriapoda. However, the limb structure in Chelicerata and Myriapoda is quite different.

The similarity in the structure and movement of the mandibles in the myria-

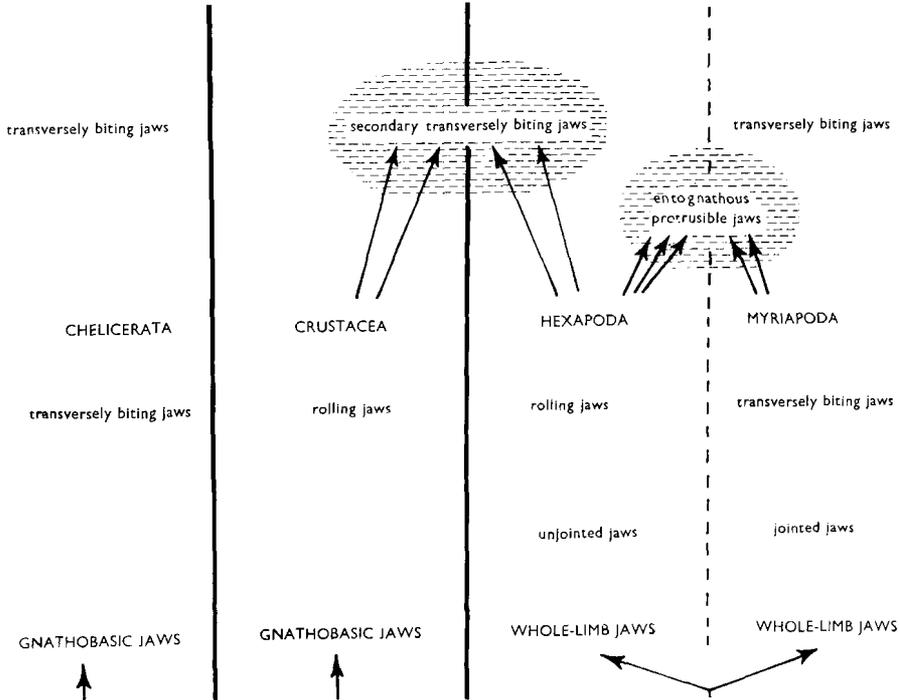


FIG. D. Diagram showing distribution of jaw types among Chelicerata, Crustacea, Hexapoda, and Myriapoda.

The heavy vertical lines indicate an entire absence of common ancestry of the jaw types, and the interrupted vertical line indicates the separate evolutions of jaw mechanisms in the classes Myriapoda

and Hexapoda, although both are based on a whole-limb mandible. The shaded areas indicate convergently acquired biting in the transverse plane and convergently acquired entognathous (as in Fig. B).

pod classes, irrespective of the presence (Chilopoda, Pauropoda) or absence (Diplopoda, Symphyla) of entognathous is of great importance (Fig. D, right side). In all, the abductor mechanism of the mandible is provided in whole or in part by the mechanical action of a swinging anterior tentorial apodeme (3, 14). No hexapod has a jointed mandible working in the myriapod manner. The hexapod anterior tentorial apodeme is rigid and is never concerned directly with causing mandibular movements. No myriapod either possesses or requires a posterior tentorial apodeme such as is present in all hexapods. Even the superficially similar maxilla 1 and maxilla 2 of Symphyla and hexapods contrast in their skeletomusculature and modes of action (14). TIEGS (23, 24) showed that the progoneate condition of Symphyla and Pauropoda is secondary and probably related to anamorphosis. There is a com-

munity in structure of the leg and of the coxa-body joint in all myriapods, which contrasts decisively with those of hexapods and the one could not have given rise to the other (16). Further, the myriapod type of coxa-body joint and its obligatory movements are not at all suitable for transition to a hexapodous state. The evolution of the myriapod type of leg base commits these animals to a multilegged condition. An opposite type of leg base in an early multilegged animal would have the potentiality of supplying the mechanical features necessary for the evolution of pterygote limbs. And it is only this type of leg base that is suitable for the further evolution of flight. The swinging pleurite, so essential to the classes of fletcher myriapods, and the associated leg base musculature, is not in the least appropriate for a further evolution of flight muscles. These are the principal reasons for the reinstatement of

the once discredited Myriapoda as a natural group (14, 16). And they are the reasons for the destruction of the dream, so dear to entomologists, concerning a supposed close affinity between Symphyla and certain hexapoda. The marked differences in head and trunk anatomy between the several classes of myriapods has been shown to be associated in considerable detail with divergent habits of life (9, 10, 13, 14, 15, 16), and all could have evolved in parallel from a similar basic stock, although no one class could have given rise to any other.

The possession of only three pairs of legs borne on a thorax is functionally advantageous in that it permits the use of long legs, capable of taking a long stride, with a wide range of gait patterns, as is impossible to myriapods which possess long and many legs (MANTON, 1952b; 8, 16). The advantages of walking or running on only three pairs of legs have been acquired independently by many classes, notably certain Arachnida and Crustacea (8). It would therefore be conceivable that the six-legged state of the hexapod classes might also have been independent and parallel evolutions. Certain it is that the gulfs between the various hexapod groups are deep. But the discovery of the decisive differences between the morphology and modes of action of the head endoskeleton, the jaws and the trunk limbs of all Myriapoda, on the one hand, and of the several groups of pterygote and apterygote Hexapoda, on the other, indicates that the hexapods are indeed more akin to one another than to any other classes of arthropods. This does not mean that the hexapods had a common origin, or that the hexapodous state was acquired only once in their past history. All it suggests is that the hexapods may have had several origins from an ancestral stock of animals which was quite distinct from the ancestral myriapods. The same conclusion is indicated by a modern assessment of entognathy based upon accurate facts of morphology and function. These facts clearly demonstrate the fundamental differences between the several classes of entognathous Apterygota and the probability that their entognathy has been convergently acquired from a known basic condition, just as the entognathy of certain Crustacea and

Myriapoda has been independently acquired (14).

Thus the evidence available to date suggests that the component classes of the Myriapoda and of the Hexapoda are more closely related to one another, within each of the two assemblages, than to any other Arthropoda, and that none of the hexapod classes has a claim to close relationship with any myriapod class. The common segment number shown by some hexapods and Symphyla and the possession of a labiate maxilla 2 in both are convergent similarities which do not outweigh the fundamental differences between the two groups.

The Merostomata clearly comprise the Xiphosura and the Eurypterida as major groups, and other probable merostome taxa have become extinct and are insufficiently known (19). There is evidence suggesting the derivation of the Arachnida from aquatic chelicerates, but whether the transition to land occurred once or several times is unknown (25, p. 304-307). There is no decisive evidence concerning the interrelationships of the several orders of either the Arachnida or Crustacea. The distinctions between the component orders of the Crustacea and of the Arachnida are just as profound as are those between the four myriapod classes and the several hexapod classes. But the reality of the Crustacea, Arachnida, Myriapoda, and Hexapoda as major groups seems clear.

Finally, reference must be made to the concept of grades in arthropod evolution. Such terms were first applied by TIEGS (24) to the Onychophora-Myriapoda-Hexapoda assemblage. The Monognatha (Onychophora) use one pair of postoral gnathal limbs, the Dignatha (Pauropoda and probably Diplopoda) use two pairs, the diploped gnathochilarium probably representing but one pair of limbs, and the Trignatha (Symphyla and Hexapoda) use three pairs. These terms do not now indicate taxonomic groupings of affinity.<sup>1</sup> They show, on the contrary, levels of organization reached independently by various classes (Fig. E). The

<sup>1</sup> The up-to-date use of the terms denoting grades in Myriapoda and Hexapoda is not appreciated in the article on the Myriapoda, where it is implied that the grades have a taxonomic sense (*Treatise*, p. R575).

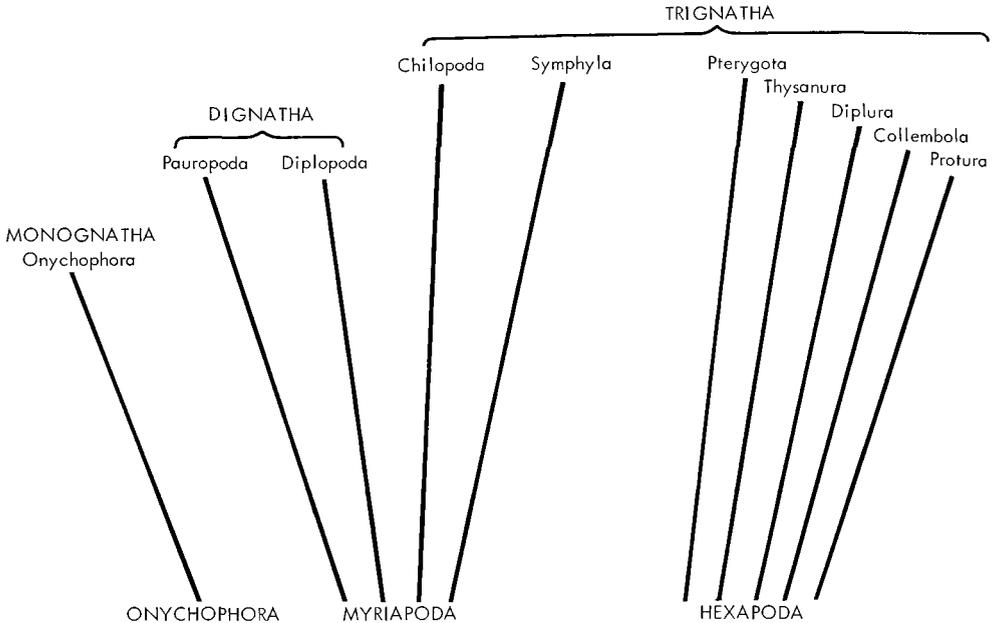


FIG. E. Diagram illustrating significance of grades in relation to taxonomy of Onychophora, Myriapoda, and Hexapoda.

The grades Monognatha, Dignatha, and Trignatha represent stages of advancement reached independently by various classes and do not represent taxa denoting close affinity. Positions of the

two groups of converging lines show the related myriapod and related hexapod classes which have each evolved in parallel. For further description see text.

trignathy of the Symphyla does not separate this class from the other Myriapoda with which they have fundamental resemblances in the mandible, head endoskeleton, and structure of limbs and joints. Further, there is no reason to suppose that these grades have been acquired progressively. In any one phylogeny a monognathous state need not have preceded dignathy and the latter need not have come before a trignathous condition. These three states probably evolved directly from animals with undiversified limbs, as have the three or the one pair of maxillipeds in the eucaridan and pericaridan Crustacea. The absence of a dignathous hexapod or a monognathous myriapod probably means that no such animals ever existed. Similarly the term "Mandibulata" represents a grade of organization, of great functional importance, reached independently and by different means in Crustacea and terrestrial myriapods and hexapods.

The above outline of arthropodan classification is based rigidly upon factual evi-

dence available in 1966, and no speculations are offered concerning the ultimate origins of the groups of arthropods set out in the figures. But one further point may be made. The Arthropoda as a whole appear to be polyphyletic at least to the extent of the three main groups shown in Figure C, but there were probably more independent taxa which are now extinct. The basic unity of the Onychophora-Myriapoda-Hexapoda assemblage has been demonstrated by TIEGS (23, 24, etc.) but this does not imply just one ancestor for all. The probability that the Onychophora are primitively soft-bodied, lacking surface sclerites, but not the ability for high levels of sclerotization, follows from the demonstration of the functional assets of onychophoran anatomy (MANTON, 1950; 10a). It is thus possible that the evolution of an armor of surface sclerites may have occurred more than once during the evolution of arthropods, taking place independently in the sea and on land, and that this most conspicuous characteristic of the phylum should be added to the

list given above of major features which have arisen by convergence.

The popular mode of classification of the Arthropoda into graded hierarchies which correspond from one major group to another probably has little reality. CALMAN (2a) drew attention to the much larger series of units needed in the classification of some groups than of others. Within one major assemblage it matters little whether the hierarchies run from superclass to class and subclass or from class to subclass and order, or some other series of labels. It is a meaningless task to force one system of labeling onto all groups.

The main groups of the Arthropoda, on the evidence available to date, can be listed as shown below. Some doubt may be expressed as to the validity of the rank of class indicated for the Cephalocarida, Mystacocarida, and Branchiura among the Crustacea; these three groups may not be as separate from the Branchiopoda and Copepoda as the title of class suggests. Very little is known concerning the status of the Pentastomida and Tardigrada. Further subdivision of the listed classes is often long. For example, there is no general agreement concerning the existence of a few major groupings within the Arachnida and it is necessary to give 16 subclasses of the Arachnida if division is undertaken.

### Main Divisions of Arthropoda

- ARTHROPODA (*phylum*) . ?*Precam.*, *Cam.-Rec.*
- Trilobitomorpha (*superclass*) . *Cam.-Perm.*
- Trilobitoidea (*class*) . *Cam.-Dev.*
- Trilobita (*class*) . *Cam.-Perm.*
- Chelicerata (*superclass*) . *Cam.-Rec.*
- Merostomata (*class*) . *Cam.-Rec.*
- Arachnida (*class*) . *Sil.-Rec.*
- Pycnogonida (*superclass*) . *Dev.-Rec.*
- Crustacea (*superclass*) . *Cam.-Rec.*
- Cephalocarida (*class*) . *Rec.*
- Branchiopoda (*class*) . *L.Dev.-Rec.*
- Mystacocarida (*class*) . *Rec.*
- Ostracoda (*class*) . *L.Cam.-Rec.*
- Euthycarinoidea (*class*) . *Trias.*
- Copepoda (*class*) . *Mio.-Rec.*
- Branchiura (*class*) . *Rec.*
- Cirripedia (*class*) . *U.Sil.-Rec.*
- Malacostraca (*class*) . *L.Cam.-Rec.*
- Onychophora (*superclass*) . ?*Precam.*, *Cam.-Rec.*
- Myriapoda (*superclass*) . *U.Sil.-Rec.*
- Archipolypoda (*class*) . *U.Sil.-U.Carb.(Penn.)*.
- Diplopoda (*class*) . *U.Carb.(Penn.)-Rec.*
- Pauropoda (*class*) . *Rec.*
- Chilopoda (*class*) . *Cret.-Rec.*
- Symphyla (*class*) . *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Hexapoda (*superclass*) . *U.Carb.(Penn.)-Rec.*
- Protura (*class*) . *Rec.*
- Collembola (*class*) . *Rec.*
- Diplura (*class*) . *Rec.*
- Thysanura (*class*) . *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Insecta (*class*) . *U.Carb.(Penn.)-Rec.*
- Pentastomida (*superclass*) . *Rec.*
- Tardigrada (*superclass*) . *Rec.*

## REFERENCES

### Bekker, E. G.

- (1) 1949, 1. *K evolyutsii narzhnogo skeleta i muskulatury Tracheata (Atelocerata)*. 2. *Pleyrapnyy i sternalnyy skelet i muskulatura Chilopoda epimorpha*: *Zool. Zhurn.*, v. 28, p. 39-58, 10 fig. [1. *Contribution to the knowledge of the evolution of the external skeleton and musculature of Tracheata (Atelocerata)*. 2. *Pleural and sternal skeleton and musculature of Chilopoda epimorpha*.]

### Bennett, D. S., & Manton, S. M.

- (2) 1962, *Arthropod segmental organs and Malpighian tubules, with particular reference to their function in the Chilopoda*: *Ann. & Mag. Nat. History*, ser. 11, v. 5, p. 545-556.

### Calman, W. T.

- (2a) 1949, *The classification of animals*: 54 p., Methuen (London).

### Fechter, H.

- (3) 1961, *Anatomie und Funktion der Kopfmskulatur von *Cylindroiulus teutonicus* (Pocock)*: *Zool. Jahrb. Anat.*, v. 79, p. 479-582, 16 text fig.

### Manton, S. M.

- (4) 1928, *On the embryology of the mysid crustacean *Hemimysis lamornae**: *Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans.*, ser. B, v. 216, p. 363-463, pl. 21-25, text fig. 1-32.
- (4a) 1934, *On the embryology of the crustacean, *Nebalia bipes**: Same, v. 223, p. 168-238, pl. 20-26, 17 text fig.
- (5) 1937, *The feeding, digestion, excretion and food storage of *Peripatopsis**: Same, ser. B, v. 227, p. 411-464, 3 pl., 14 text fig.
- (6) 1938, *Studies in the Onychophora, IV. The passage of spermatozoa into the ovary in*

- Peripatopsis* and the early development of the ova: Same, ser. B, v. 228, p. 421-441, 2 pl., 7 text fig.
- (7) 1949, *Studies on the Onychophora, VII. The early embryonic stages of Peripatopsis, and some general considerations concerning the morphology and phylogeny of the Arthropoda*: Same, ser. B, v. 233, p. 483-580, pl. 31-41, 7 text fig.
- (7a) 1950, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms. Part 1. The locomotion of Peripatus*: Linnean Soc. (Zool.), Jour., v. 41, p. 529-570, 4 pl., 9 text fig.
- (8) 1952a, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms. Part 2, General introduction to the locomotory mechanisms of the Arthropoda*: Linnean Soc. (Zool.), Jour., v. 42, p. 93-117, 5 text fig.
- (8a) 1952b, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms. Part 3. The locomotion of the Chilopoda and Pauropoda*: Same, Jour., v. 42, p. 118-166, 6 pl., 12 text fig.
- (9) 1954, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms. Part 4. The structure, habits and evolution of the Diplopoda*: Same, v. 42, p. 229-368, 4 pl., 8 text fig.
- (10) 1956, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms. Part 5. The structure habits and evolution of the Pselaphognatha (Diplopoda)*: Same, v. 43, p. 153-187, 1 pl., 8 text fig.
- (10a) 1958a, *Habits of life and evolution of body design in Arthropoda*: Same, Jour., v. 44, 58-72, 2 pl., 1 text fig.
- (11) 1958b, *Hydrostatic pressure and leg extension in arthropods, with special reference to arachnids*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 13, v. 1, p. 161-182, 1 pl., 5 text fig.
- (11a) 1959, *Functional morphology and taxonomic problems of Arthropoda*: Syst. Assoc., Pub. 3, p. 23-32.
- (12) 1960, *Concerning head development in the arthropods*: Biol. Reviews, v. 35, p. 265-282, 3 text fig.
- (13) 1961, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms. Part 7. Functional requirements and body design in Colobognatha (Diplopoda), together with a comparative account of diplopod burrowing techniques, trunk musculature and segmentation*: Linnean Soc. (Zool.), Jour., v. 44, p. 383-461, 3 pl., 35 text fig.
- (14) 1964, *Mandibular mechanisms and the evolution of arthropods*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, v. 247, p. 1-183, 66 fig., 1 pl.
- (15) 1965, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms. Part 8. Functional requirements and body design in Chilopoda, together with a comparative account of their skeleto-muscular systems and an appendix on a comparison between burrowing forces of annelids and chilopods and its bearing upon the evolution of the arthropodan haemocoel*: Linnean Soc. (Zool.), Jour., v. 46, p. 251-484, 7 pl., 99 text fig.
- (16) 1966, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms. Part 9. Functional requirements and body design in Symphyla and Pauropoda and the relationships between Myriapoda and insects*: Same, v. 46, p. 103-141, 1 pl., 10 text fig.
- Raymond, P.E.**
- (17) 1944, *Late Paleozoic xiphosurans*: Harvard Museum Comp. Zoology, Bull. 94, p. 473-508, 2 pl., 11 text fig.
- Sharov, A. G.**
- (18) 1965, *Proiskhozhdeniye i osnovnyye etapy evolyutsii chlenistonogikh (Arthropoda). 1. Ot annelid k chlenistonogim. 2. Proiskhozhdeiye i filogeneticheskiye vzaimootnosheniya osnovnykh grupp chlenistonogikh*: Zool. Zhurn., v. 44, p. 803-817, 963-979, 18 text fig. [Origin and main stages of the arthropod evolution. 1. From annelids to arthropods. 2. Origin and phylogenetic relationships of principal groups of arthropods.]
- Simonetta, A. M.**
- (19) 1962-64, *Note sugli Arthropodi non Trilobiti della Burgess Shale, Cambriano Medio della Columbia Britannica (Canada). 1. Il Genere Marella Walcott, 1912, 2. Generi Sidneya ed Amiella Walcott, 1911, 3. Generi Molaria, Habelia, Emeraldella, Parahabelia (Nov.), Emeraldoides (Nov.)*: Monit. Zool. Ital., v. 69, p. 172-185, 4 pl., 2 text fig.; v. 70, p. 97-108, 6 pl., 2 text fig.; v. 72, p. 215-231, 10 pl., 6 text fig.
- Størmer, Leif**
- (20) 1939, *Studies on trilobite morphology I*: Norsk. Geol. Tidsskrift, v. 19, p. 143-273, 12 pl., 35 text fig.
- (21) 1944, *On the relationships and phylogeny of fossil and Recent Arachnomorpha*: Norske Vidensk.-Akad., Skrift. 1944, no. 5, p. 1-158, 30 text fig.
- Stubblefield, C. J.**
- (22) 1926, *Notes on the development of a trilobite, Shumardia pusilla (Sars)*: Linnean Soc. (Zool.), Jour., v. 36, p. 345-372, 3 pl.
- Tiegs, O. W.**
- (23) 1940, *The embryology and affinities of the Symphyla, based on a study of Hanseniella agilis*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 82, p. 1-225, 9 pl., 41 text fig.

- (24) 1947, *The development and affinities of the Pauropoda, based on a study of Pauropus sylvaticus*: Same, v. 88, p. 165-336, 10 pl., 29 text fig. ———, & Manton, S. M.
- (25) 1958, *The evolution of the Arthropoda*: Biol. Reviews, v. 33, p. 255-337, 48 text fig.

## EVOLUTION AND AFFINITIES OF ONYCHOPHORA, MYRIAPODA, HEXAPODA, AND CRUSTACEA

By S. M. MANTON

[British Museum (Natural History), London]

[Chapter submitted December, 1962; revised January, 1963]

### CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R15
EARLY ARTHROPOD EVOLUTION AND CONVERGENCE .....	R16
HABITS CORRELATED WITH EVOLUTION OF LARGE TAXONOMIC UNITS .....	R37
EVOLUTION AND RELATIONSHIPS OF ONYCHOPHORA .....	R39
EVOLUTION AND RELATIONSHIPS OF MYRIAPODA AND HEXAPODA .....	R42
Pauropoda .....	R43
Diplopoda .....	R43
Chilopoda .....	R44
Symphyla .....	R48
Hexapoda .....	R49
EVOLUTION AND RELATIONSHIPS OF CRUSTACEA .....	R51
REFERENCES .....	R54

### INTRODUCTION

The elucidation of phylogenetic relationships within the Arthropoda is essentially speculative, since the fossil record is non-committal. Apart from the general thesis that the arthropod phylum has sprung from metamerically segmented coelomates, there are few points relating to its ancestry on which general agreement has been reached; indeed, it is uncertain whether the great arthropod assemblage is a "natural" group or whether it comprises more than one line of descent derived independently from segmented coelomates. Theories of arthropod evolution have been many and have formed the basis of various classifications which have been put forward since the time of CUVIER. A survey of these theories, associated with the names of VON SIEBOLD,

HAECKEL, MOSELEY, KENNEL, BALFOUR, SEDGWICK, LANKESTER, WOODWARD, PACKARD, HANDLIRSCH, SNODGRASS, TIEGS, and others, has been given by TIEGS & MANTON (67) and will not be repeated here. It is pertinent now to consider the present position of our understanding of this subject, furthered by recent work in the fields of comparative embryology and of comparative functional morphology. The latter studies, in particular, have thrown a wealth of light upon the functional significance of conspicuous characters which are diagnostic of classes and of orders. Such knowledge shows the detailed relationships between habits of life and body design, and gives sure guides as to the modes of evolution of many of these characteristics. The appli-

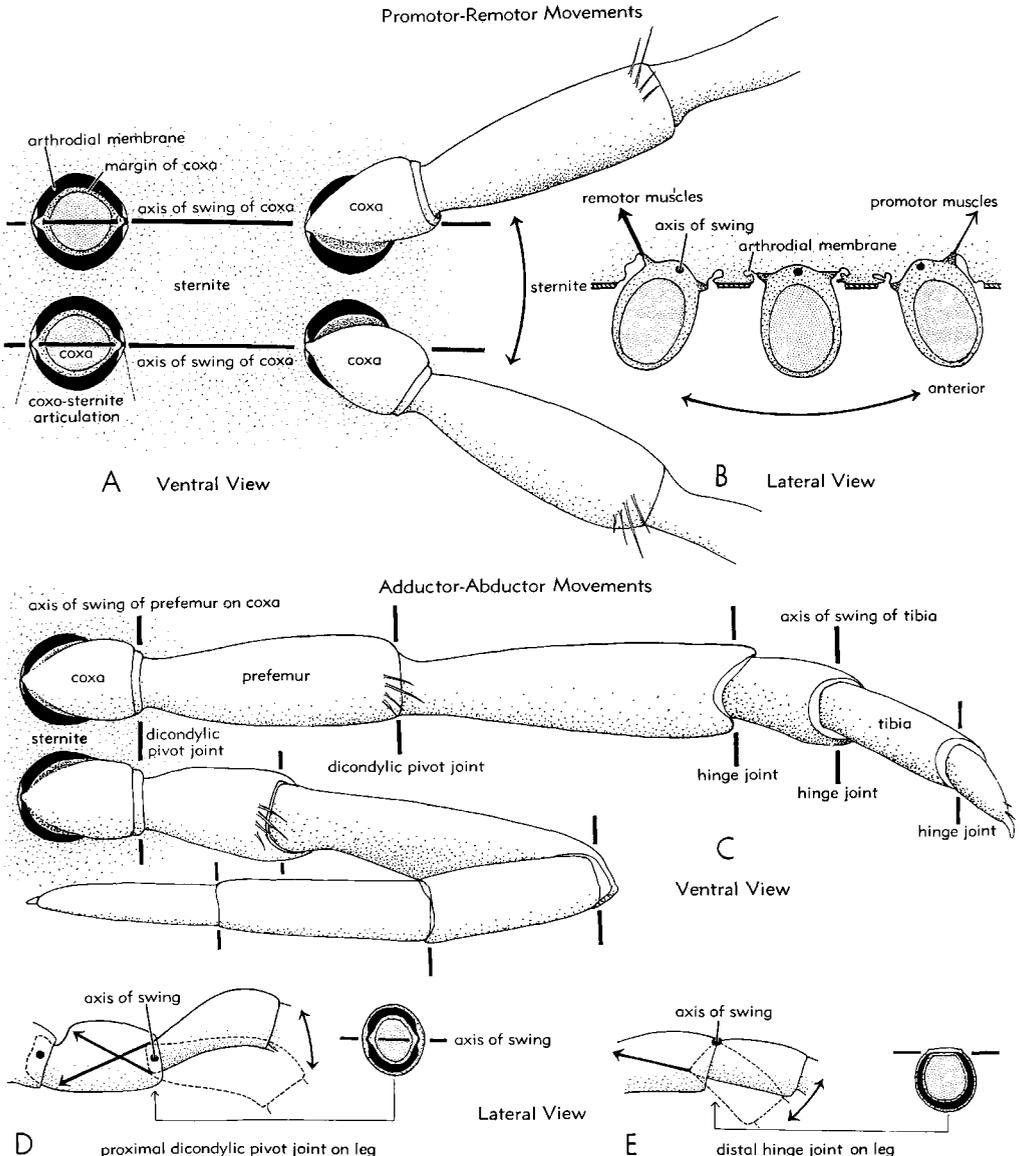


FIG. 1. Diagrams showing the two basic movements employed by many arthropodan limbs, exemplified by *Polydesmus* (Diplopoda). One or other of these movements are also used by the several types of mandibles. [Arthroial membrane at the coxa-body joint is indicated in black.]

A. Ventral view of two successive pairs of legs, those on one side of the body being cut short close to the coxo-sternite articulation. The axis of swing, passing through the dicondylic coxo-sternite articulation, is shown by a heavy line. The legs on the right show the forward and backward positions resulting from the promotor-remotor swing of the coxa about its axis of movement on the body.

B. Lateral view of three successive coxae cut short near the coxo-sternite articulation to show the promotor-remotor swing about the axis (indicated by a black dot).

C. Ventral view of two successive legs in positions of abduction (away from) and adduction (toward) their fellows, which are not drawn. The coxae cannot participate in this movement. The

(Continued on facing page.)

cation of this approach to the vast assemblage of arthropods is in its infancy, but a rewarding start has been made.

Extant arthropods fall readily into at least the following distinct groups: Chelicerata, Crustacea, Onychophora, Pauropoda, Diplopoda, Chilopoda, Symphyla, Apterygota, Pterygota, Pycnogonida, and Tardigrada. The fossil record displays the long history of the Trilobita, which were the dominant arthropods of the early Paleozoic seas, becoming extinct in the Permian. Many bewildering aquatic arthropods from the Cambrian to Devonian do not fall clearly into any of the above categories. Regrettably, as yet the structure of these animals is insufficiently known for a full assessment. The name of TRIGGS will be remembered for his major contribution in establishing the unity of the Onychophora, Myriapoda (Pauropoda, Diplopoda, Chilopoda, Symphyla), and Insecta, based pri-

marily upon embryology (28, 30, 32, 61, 62, 66) and on adult form. The Chelicerata and Crustacea stand in marked contrast both to the land stem and to each other.

The differences between the structure of the head or anterior end of the body in the major groups of arthropods are alone sufficient to separate the classes. A functional consideration of the requirements at the anterior end of the body, and of the ways of meeting these needs, is particularly revealing as to the modes of head evolution. The primary anterior requirements of a bilaterally symmetrical forwardly moving animal concern the sensory equipment and the feeding organs, particularly the mandibles in the classes that possess them. Differing habits of life are associated with the evolution of the very different trunk morphologies which are diagnostic of classes and of orders.

## EARLY ARTHROPOD EVOLUTION AND CONVERGENCE

The Arthropoda are bound together by very few essential characteristics: (1) metameric segmentation, coupled with modifications at the anterior end which are different from those of annelids;<sup>1</sup> (2) usually many paired limbs (Fig. 1, 2), which are different from those of annelids; (3) an ostiate heart and hemocoelic body cavity; and (4) a surface cuticle usually sclerotized into more or less rigid sclerites separated by flexible intersegmental arthrodistal mem-

<sup>1</sup>The work of ANDERSON (1) has shown that the composition of the externally simple head end of the polychaete *Scoloplos* is far from simple and its embryonic development does not follow the lines shown by simple arthropods.

branes at the joints on the body and limbs. Sometimes functional advantages associated with particular habits of life result from sclerotization remaining thin, giving an absence of sclerites or scutes, as in Onychophora, some insects, and the thorax and abdomen of barnacles, etc. In others, a fusion together of the sclerites of one or of several segments provides strength and rigidity.

Metamerically segmented muscles in arthropods with or without sclerites facilitate precise local actions in controlling body shape or limb movements, or both. Many

FIG. 1. (Continued from facing page.)

axes of swing of the leg joints distal to the coxa are shown by heavy lines, the two proximal joints being dicondylic pivot joints and the three distal joints being hinge joints. The tarsal claw is hinged to the tarsus in the same plane as the other hinge joints.

D. Proximal dicondylic pivot joint on a leg showing two positions of the distal segment; the antagonistic muscles are indicated by arrows within the leg segment. A diagrammatic transverse section through the joint at the level indi-

cated shows the lateral points of locally strengthened cuticle on the two leg segments united by very short arthrodistal membrane.

E. Distal hinge joint on the leg showing two positions of the distal segment, the single flexor muscle (adductor, or depressor) being indicated by an arrow within the leg segment. A diagrammatic transverse section through the joint at the level indicated shows the dorsal point of close union between strengthened cuticle of the two leg segments which forms the hinge.

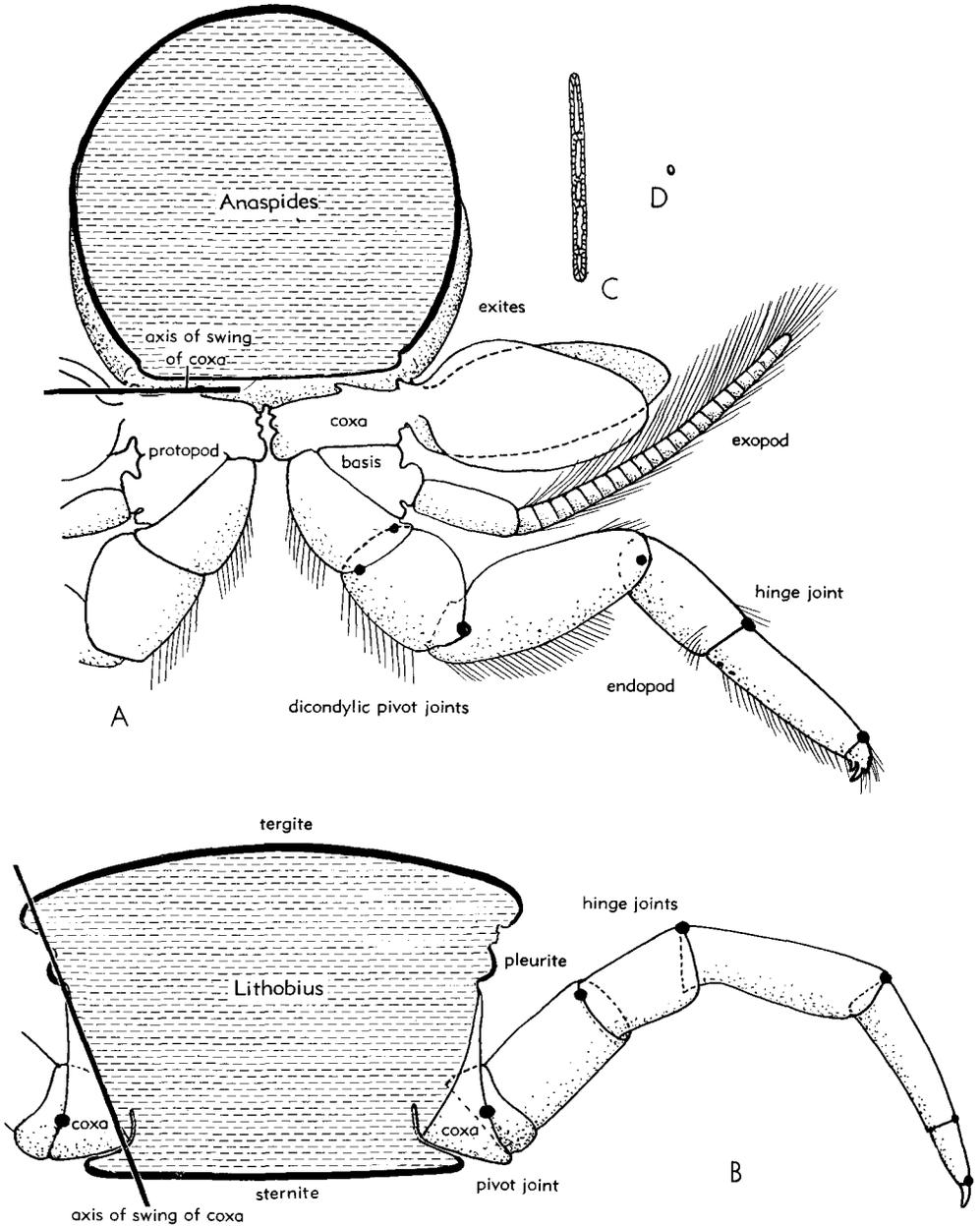


FIG. 2. Typical biramous and uniramous limbs and two types of coxa-body articulation.

- A. Posterior transverse view of 6th thoracic leg of *Anaspides tasmaniae*.
- B. Anterior transverse view of middle thoracic leg of *Lithobius forficatus*. A heavy line, horizontal in the crustacean and dorsoventral in the centipede, indicates the axis of swing of the coxa on the body; intermediate positions of the coxa-body axis of swing can be found among other arthro-

pods. The crustacean coxa bears exites (also termed epipods and epipodites) laterally, and endites are present on the mesial side of certain mouth parts and on the more anterior thoracic limbs (see Fig. 13). The centipede coxa is simple. The crustacean protopod consists of two segments, the coxa and the basis, and bears two rami, the

(Continued on facing page.)

segmentally placed limbs make possible strong or speedy movements and give the potentiality of structural and functional differentiation along the series which is so characteristic of the more specialized Arthropoda.

The possession of a thick laminated sclerotized cuticle is not restricted to the Arthropoda. Nematodes also have such a cuticle, which is differentiated internally to a greater extent than in most Arthropoda (6, 24), and molting also takes place. The high degree of internal cuticular differentiation in nematodes is probably correlated with the maintenance of body shape and suitable flexibility under conditions of high hydrostatic pressure in the body cavity. But the absence of metameric segmentation in nematodes is coupled with the absence of joints. All arthropodan cuticles show regions where the sclerotization or calcification, or both, is minimal, so forming the flexible arthroal membranes.

Surface sclerites do not necessarily carry muscles (see the pleural sclerites of epimorphic centipedes). The primary function of sclerites appears to be protective, and in burrowing forms they provide an armor used in pushing against the substratum (*Limulus*, Diplopoda, and geophilomorph centipedes). The possession of striated muscles inserted onto subectodermal connective tissue or basement membrane below the inner face or near to the edges of sclerites (the latter position, used by many muscles of Diplopoda, is not necessarily the more primitive) permits rapid or strong movements used in walking or swimming. Joint formation between sclerites may be

elaborate and can lead to economy in certain muscles by the use of hard parts to direct movements, so permitting more musculature to be available for other purposes (38); and the sclerites themselves may be heavy, extensive, and strongly protective. On land a high degree of surface sclerotization and surface lipoids render the sclerites very hydrofuge. Thereby, internal moisture is conserved and, much more important, osmotic uptake of fresh water, rain, and dew is hindered, the latter being the greater hazard in a terrestrial habitat. PANTIN (46) has shown how the great danger to land planarians and land nemertines is osmotic uptake of water, and in consequence, these animals are found in damp niches in comparatively dry country, not in wet habitats where at first sight easier living might be anticipated.

The functional advantage of hemocoel evolution is little understood and seldom considered, apart from its physiological aspects, although the presence of the hemocoel is always regarded as an important arthropodan attribute. LANKESTER (27) suggested that a swelling of vascular spaces, or "phloebedesis," may have promoted local changes in shape in a soft-bodied arthropodan ancestor in a more advantageous manner than can be accomplished by an animal with a coelomic body cavity. The probable truth of this idea is supported by the discovery that a burrowing geophilomorph centipede can exert some four times as much force against the substratum from its armored body surface as can an annelid worm of similar size (41 and MANTON, 43a). Striated muscles far from the site of application of the thrust, as well as

FIG. 2. (Continued from facing page.)

endopod and exopod. In the centipede the limb distal to the coxa forms a single ramus, the telopod, as in all other myriapods and in hexapods. The positions of the close articulations between the leg segments are shown by heavy dots; pivot joints allow movement in two directions about the articulation and are served by antagonistic pairs of muscles (Fig. 1,D); hinge joints allow movement in one direction about the articulation and are usually served by flexor muscles only (Fig. 1,E), hydrostatic pressure and proximal depressor muscles supplying the antagonistic

force producing leg extension (Fig. 1,A; 1,E). Both types of articulation may be dicondylic or may be formed by one principal articulation. In life, the exites of *Anaspides* are forwardly directed. Only in fast-running centipedes is the tarsus divided into two segments as shown here; the distal tarsal segment possesses no muscles of its own.

C. Transverse section through an exite showing its flat shape and internal vascular spaces.

D. Transverse section through a seta from the exopod.

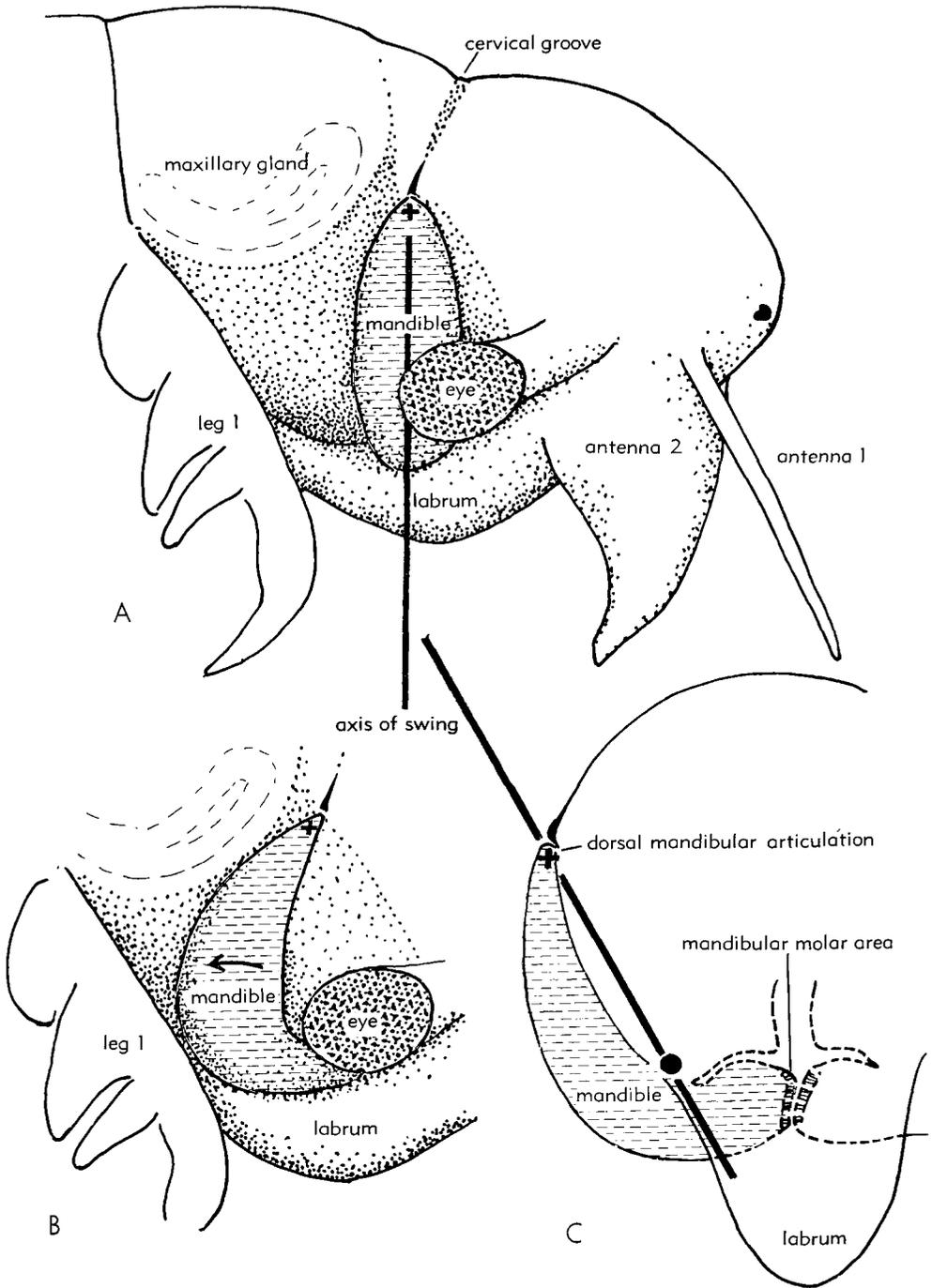


FIG. 3. A gnathobasic mandible.

A,B. Lateral views of the head of the crustacean *Chirocephalus diaphanus* showing the mandibular movements and their relationship to those of the coxa of a walking leg (Fig. 2,B). The move-

ments provide a crushing or grinding mechanism, but no strong cutting in the transverse plane, and are characteristic of the less specialized mod-  
(Continued on facing page.)

local musculature, maintain high hydrostatic pressure in the hemocoel, and assist in providing a strong local heave, which moreover can be repeated again and again. An annelid, such as *Arenicola*, cannot repeat its maximum effort without a bursting of capillaries and leakage of coelomic fluid. It is possible that the evolution of this basic attribute of all arthropods, the hemocoel, occurred along with a habit of shallow grubbing into the pre-Cambrian sea floor. Such a habit represents the simplest of escape reactions, and the evolution of a better or easier way of burrowing may have had great survival value at the dawn of arthropod evolution. It may be significant that a similar habit is envisaged for the primitive Mollusca, the hemocoel of which may have arisen in association with similar functional advantages. Later, with the acquisition of arthropodan protective armor, facilitating both shallow burrowing and surface living, the original advantage of a hemocoel largely seems to have disappeared. However, it persists in part in the frequent use of blood pressure for the extension of legs where all the musculature of the distal segments is flexor in function (14, 38, 39). Sometimes blood pressure causes leg extension in jumping, when both legs of a pair push in the same phase, as in jumping spiders (47).

Thus, evolution of the arthropodan hemocoel may have preceded the evolution of surface sclerites. It is also possible that the acquisition of surface sclerites on the trunk may have preceded those on the legs, since the force exerted by the surface of the trunk of an annelid or arthropod when burrowing is usually not generated by segmental limbs. Whether the wormlike *Anomalocaris* from the Cambrian, which has so intrigued SNODGRASS (personal communication) and which perhaps shows seg-

mental sclerites but no leg segmentation, represents or is derived from such a stage of arthropodan evolution is uncertain. Regrettably, the fossil remains, although numerous, all lack the head end.

The Arthropoda exhibit a wealth of structural specialization suiting particular ways of life and favoring survival in particular niches. The hermit crabs inhabiting gastropod shells and the gall-forming crab *Hapalocarcinus*, living on the coral *Seriato-pora*, are typical examples. The most important of the evolutionary advances of the Arthropoda, however, did not result in adaptation to particular niches, but, on the contrary, adaptation of an animal to better living in the same or in a variety of habitats. A large decaying log in South Africa or South America may harbor Onychophora, Diplopoda, Chilopoda, Symphyla, insects, arachnids, etc. The environment is roughly the same for all but the basic habits of the animals differ, and it is these habits which are associated with the trunk characters of the several groups (see below).

Where specialization of all kinds is abundant and varied, as it is within the Arthropoda, there is possibility of unlimited convergence. And, when the distinctive arthropodan characters are so few, the possibility must be faced that even these may have arisen more than once. There has been a reluctance to recognize some of the outstanding cases of convergence, although others have been readily accepted as such. There is no denying the parallel evolution of tracheae serving aerial respiration which has taken place at least four or five times. The histology or mode of embryonic origin of tracheae or both of these are not the same in land isopods, arachnids, Onychophora, and myriapods. Similarly, malpighian tubules have arisen independently and by different means in certain Arachnida and

FIG. 3. (Continued from facing page.)

ern Crustacea. A cross marks the dorsal articulation of the mandible with a small sclerite in the cervical groove.  
C. Transverse view of head of the same showing the manner in which the mandible swings about a dorsoventral axis (cf. Fig. 2,B), the ventral end of the axis (black spot) not being firm. At the end of the promotor swing (A) the mandibles

are set transversely to the body (see also Fig. 5,C, left-hand diagrams). At the end of the remotor swing (B) the lateral parts of the mandible, moving in the direction of the arrow, are backwardly directed while the molar areas are forwardly directed. The eye and trunk limb 1 are in the same position in both diagrams.

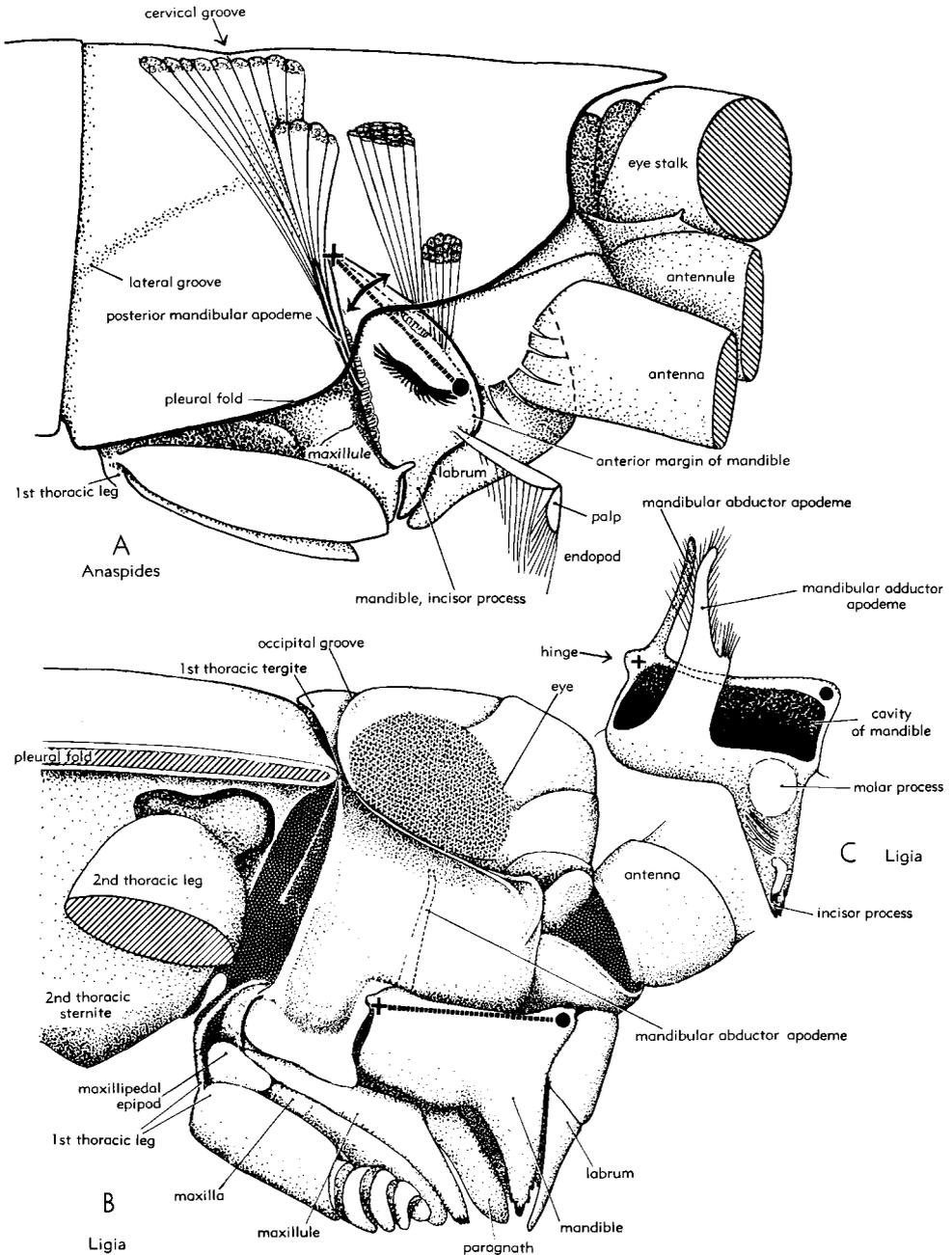


FIG. 4. Gnathobasic mandibles.

A,B. Lateral views of the heads of *Anaspides* and *Ligia* showing one mode of obtaining strong transverse biting from the simple promotor-remotor swing of a grinding mandible such as that of *Chirocephalus* (Fig. 3). Other and quite different methods of achieving transverse biting oc-

cur among some of the more specialized Crustacea. The mandibles in A and B consist of a massive gnathobasic portion with a distal palp (endopod) in *Anaspides*. The axis of mandibular movement is marked by a dotted line be-  
(Continued on facing page.)

in Myriapoda-Insecta. These tubules often serve to eliminate dry or semidry urate excretion in place of the ammonotelic excretion by segmental organs existing in aquatic Crustacea, but the recent discovery that malpighian tubules of the centipede *Lithobius* excrete some 70 per cent of the total nitrogen as ammonia and only 8 per cent as uric acid (5) indicates how little we know of the full significance of the parallel evolution of these tubules.

That the compound eye of arthropods represents a "unique mechanism," the only practicable manner of meeting a common need, seems now inescapable. The compound eye appears to have evolved independently within the Crustacea and Insecta. Only some Crustacea possess a compound eye (Branchiopoda, Branchiura, Malacostraca) and their eyes are not exactly similar. Crustacea which lack the compound eye (Copepoda) do not appear to have secondarily lost these organs. A compound eye would not be expected to occur in the earliest ancestral Crustacea, although such eyes were possessed by the Trilobita and probably the Merostomata. Only the more advanced members of the Myriapoda (Scutigermorpha) possess, with the hexapods, a compound eye, and again it is improbable that Onychophora and Myriapoda equipped with simpler eyes are anything but primitively so, although species living in darkness may be blind by secondary loss of eyes.

Until recently, the possession of a mandible has sometimes been regarded as a common feature linking the Myriapoda, Crustacea, and Insecta. Indeed, the conviction that all mandibles situated on the third head segment are directly homologous and indicate common inheritance has been strong enough for the erection of a taxo-

nomic category, the Mandibulata. However, a functional, anatomical and developmental study of jaw mechanisms throughout the major groups of living arthropods shows that mandibles also have been independently acquired (43). A proximal endite or gnathobase is present on one or on many pairs of legs in Crustacea and Chelicerata and serves for manipulation or direction of food. The crustacean mandibular segment usually carries a very large pair of gnathobases, which, with the proximal part of the leg, forms a massive pair of mandibles; the distal part of the leg is reduced to a biramous or uniramous palp and may be entirely absent (Fig. 3-6). The jaws of the Onychophora, Myriapoda, and Insecta, on the contrary, develop from a whole limb, the distal part of the biting edge representing the limb tip (Fig. 8-11). The onychophoran jaw is very short, bearing a larger pair of terminal claws than do the walking legs (Fig. 9,B). The jaws of myriapods and hexapods are often longer than those of Onychophora, and, as in Crustacea, may extend up the "cheeks."

The onychophoran jaws slice antero-posteriorly, the pair moving in opposite phase essentially like the walking legs (Fig. 9,B). The movements of gnathobases or jaws of other arthropods are derivatives of one or other of two types of movement characteristic of ambulatory limbs, (1) the promotor-remotor swing of the coxa on the body about a more or less transversely placed axis, and (2) direct adductor-abductor movements in the transverse plane such as shown by a pair of telopods (Fig. 1, 2). Direct biting in the transverse plane is usually not a primitive arthropodan attribute owing to the difficulty of providing an abductor mechanism which will part mandibles so large that they form the most

FIG. 4. (Continued from facing page.)

tween the cross and spot, corresponding with the points similarly marked on Fig. 3. The pre-axial part of the mandible is progressively reduced as the dorsal articulation (cross) becomes more posterior in position (Fig. 5, right-hand side). An incisor process, situated far from the axis, gives effective transverse biting in *Anaspides* (Fig. 6), combined with some grinding by the molar areas, as a result of the promotor-remotor swing. In

*Ligia* the promotor-remotor swing becomes a strong direct biting movement in the transverse plane and only a little grinding by the edges of the molar process is possible. A firm antero-posterior hinge forms the axis of movement in *Ligia*.

C. Mandible of *Ligia* (devoid of muscles) viewed from the sagittal plane, the esophagus passing directly upward above the molar process.

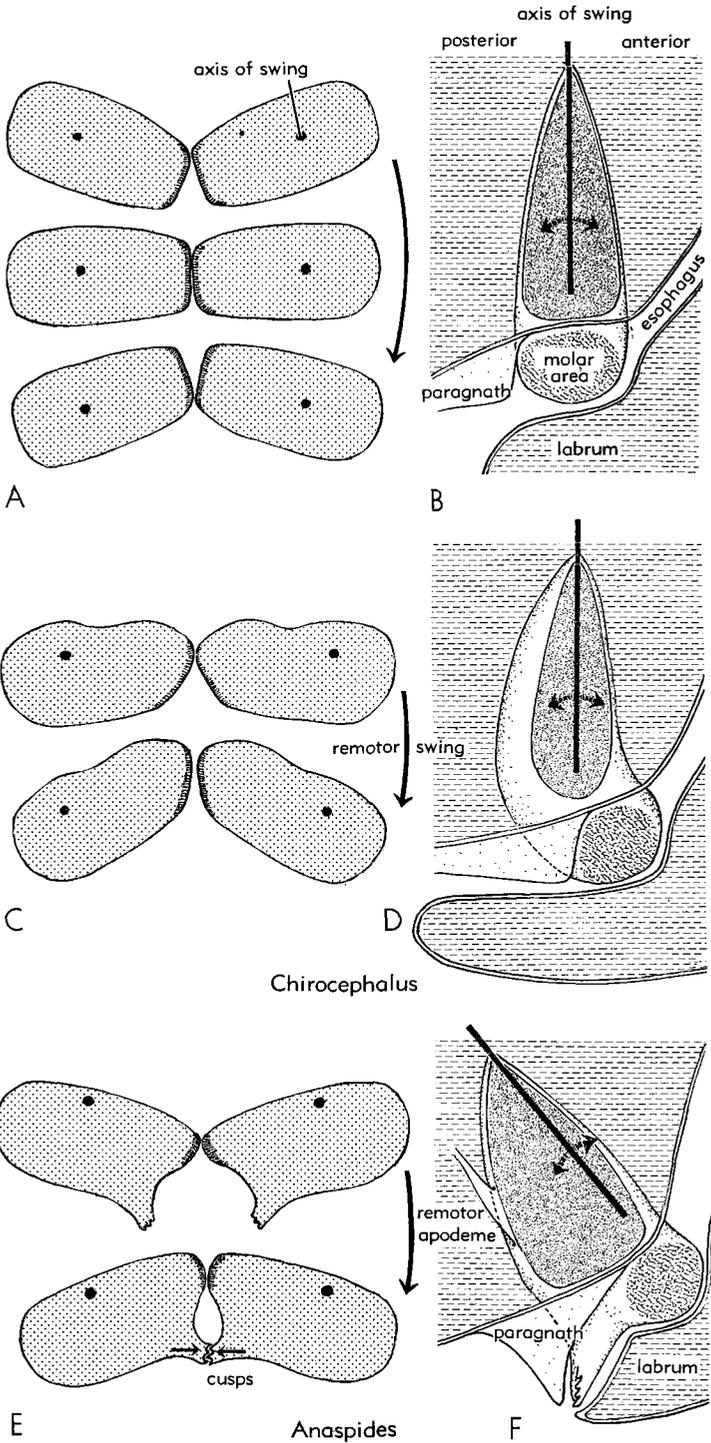


FIG. 5. Gnathobasic mandibles.

(Continued on facing page.)

lateral parts of the head. In Crustacea (gnathobasic mandible) and in the hexapods (whole-limb mandible) the more primitive living forms show a promotor-remotor swing of the mandible about an axis on which the lateral end slopes upward toward the dorsal head extremity (Fig. 3, 4, *A*, 5, *A*). Frequently a firm dorsal articulation is seen, but the mandible does not swing toward the middle line from this point to any great extent.

When the axis of the promotor-remotor swing slopes neither forward nor backward, the molar faces of the mandibles roll across one another on the promotor, as well as the remotor swing of the mandible, and there is very little direct abduction (many Branchiopoda and the thysanuran *Petrobius*) (Fig. 3, 5, *A, B*). The strong remotor movements roll the molar processes forward and together at the same time as the lateral bulge of the mandibles rolls backward. Adduction of incisor processes and grinding by molar processes both take place on the remotor roll as a consequence of the shape of the mandible and a backward-upward slope of the axis of swing (e.g., *Anaspides*, *Mysis*, etc.); abduction of the incisor processes and a parting of the molar processes occur on the promotor swing of the mandible as a whole (Fig. 4, *A*, 5, 6). Biting by incisor processes and grinding by molar processes are implemented by massive remotor musculature, inserted on to the head

wall and on to a transverse mandibular tendon; the promotor muscles insert on the same sites but are much weaker.

The farther back the dorsal end of the axis of swing is situated, the greater is the adductor-abductor movement of the incisor processes and the less is the grinding movement of the molar areas. When the position of the axis approaches the horizontal, as in isopods, some Thysanura, and pterygote insects, the preaxial part of the mandible becomes much reduced and the axis forms a strong hinge line (Fig. 4, *B*, 8, *B-D*). Variety in mandibular movements is lost, grinding is impossible, but very much stronger adductor movements through a wide angle take place. The disappearance of the transverse mandibular tendon permits the wide gape, and direct adductor and abductor muscles, often pulling on very well-formed tendons and apodemes set at advantageous angles, result in a large mandible which can cut very strongly in the transverse plane. This end term in the evolution of mandibles has been reached independently many times from different initial conditions and by different means. For example, the nature of the mandible and the principles of its movement in the woodlouse and the crab are the same, but the details are entirely different and transverse biting has been convergently acquired. Also, it happens that mandibles of unlike nature in Crustacea and in Thysanura-

FIG. 5. (Continued from facing page.)

Diagrams showing the movements of simple crustacean mandibles that provide grinding only or grinding combined with some biting. Figures on the right show the median aspect of each mandible as seen in the left half of the body (muscles omitted and mandible drawn as if body is transparent, mechanical tint indicating the open concavity of the mandible that in life is filled by muscles). Figures on the left show frontal sections across the mandibles at successive moments during the remotor roll (axis of movement shown by black spots corresponding to heavy lines in right-hand figures, with arrows indicating direction of movements about the axis).

*A, B*. An ideally simple crustacean mandible which serves only for grinding. The axis is vertical (as in *Chirocephalus*, Fig. 3) and the symmetrical promotor-remotor swing about this axis rolls the molar areas across each other. The mandibles of

*Daphnia* and of many other Cladocera closely approach this type.

*C, D*. Mandible of *Chirocephalus diaphanus* showing a forwardly bent molar lobe with range of the promotor-remotor swing enabling the mandibles not only to grind food but to push it forward toward the esophagus.

*E, F*. Mandible of *Anaspides tasmaniae* showing an oblique axis of swing placed near the anterior border of the mandible and a cusped incisor process lying far from this axis of swing. The promotor-remotor movement causes grinding by the molar areas and also biting by the incisor processes in approximately the transverse plane (see also Fig. 6). The above are the principal movements of these mandibles, but the looseness of the ventral end of the axis of movement permits other small movements to occur at times.

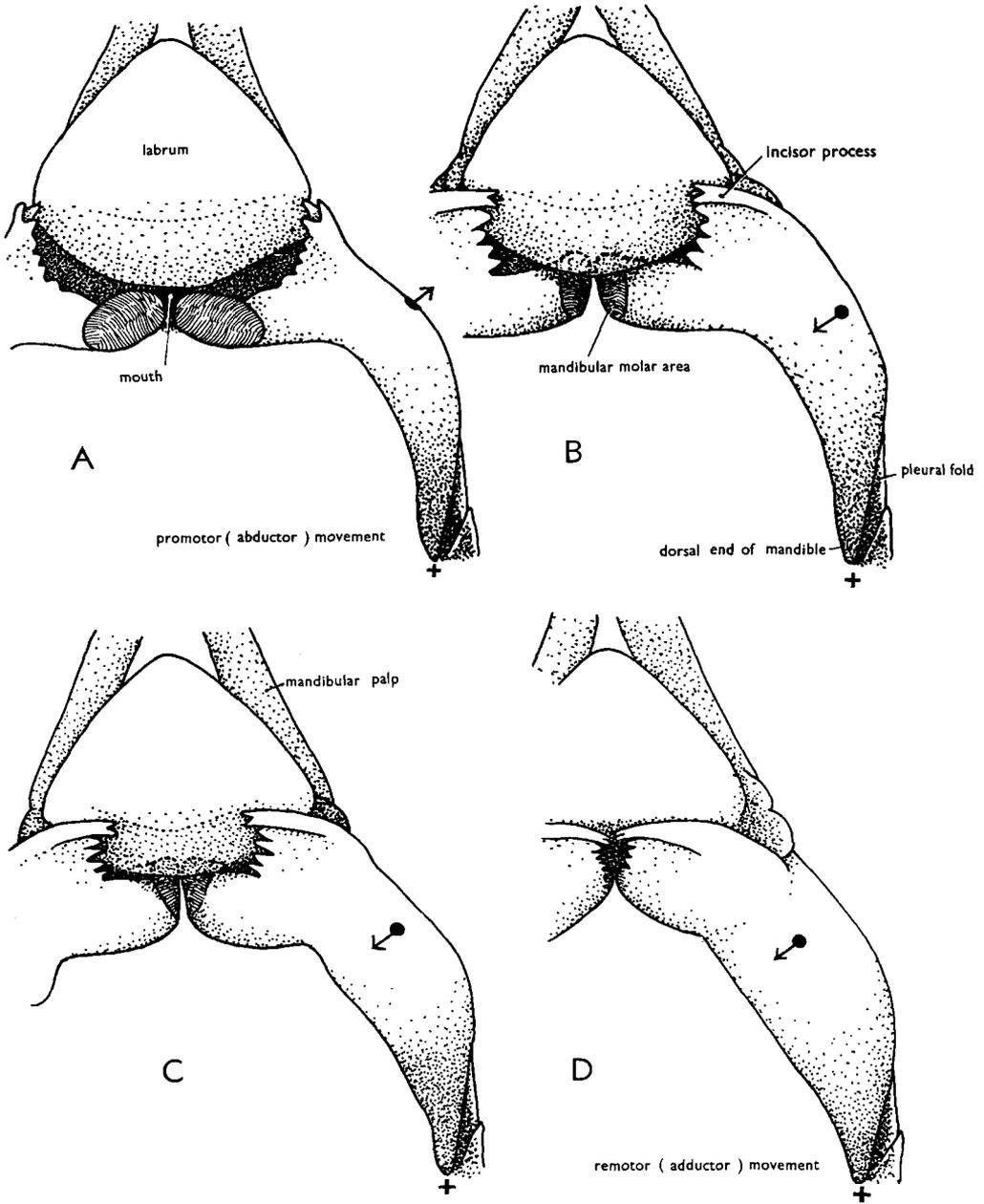


FIG. 6. Gnathobasic mandible.

Ventral views of the mandibles of *Anaspides tasmaniae* to show grinding by the molar processes and biting in the transverse plane by the incisor processes, both due to the shape of the mandible and the oblique position of the axis of movement. —A shows the extreme end of a promotor swing (a little more extreme than in life), which opens a space between the molar lobes and parts the incisor processes as far as the labral margins. —

B,C,D show the remotor (backward) roll of the lateral part of the mandibles, the black spot moving in the direction of the arrow, which brings the incisor processes together, moving along a hollow in the labrum. A further displacement of the axis of movement results in a predominantly biting mandible such as that of *Ligia* (Fig. 4,B). Other small movements occur at times.

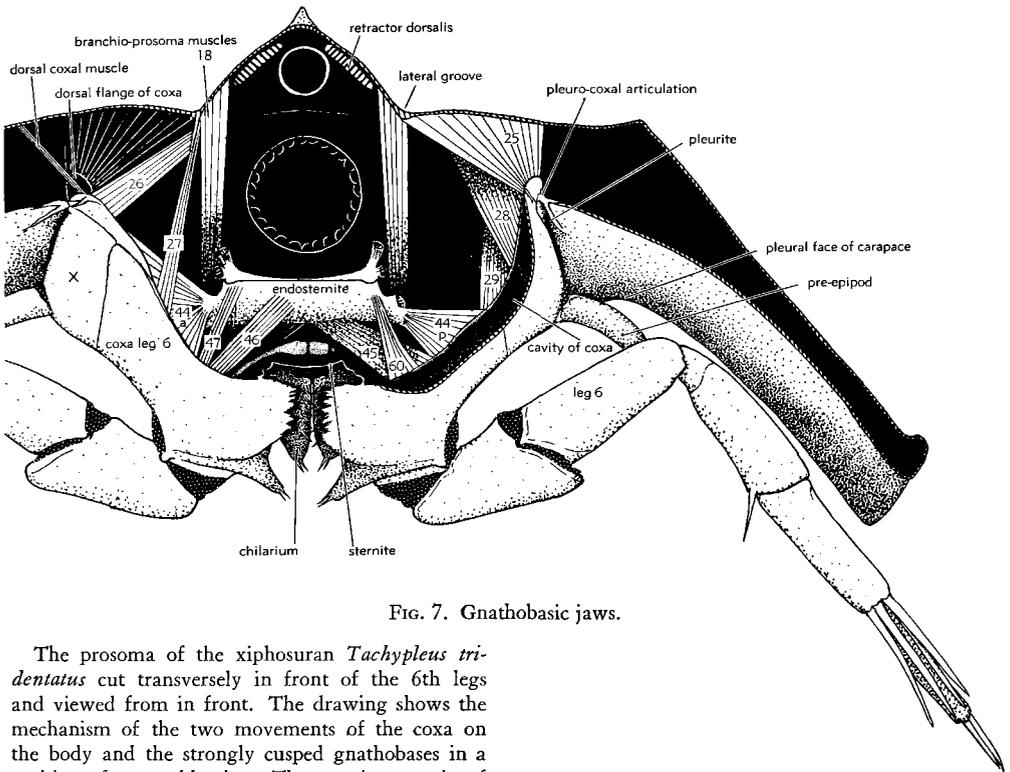


FIG. 7. Gnathobasic jaws.

The prosoma of the xiphosuran *Tachypleus tridentatus* cut transversely in front of the 6th legs and viewed from in front. The drawing shows the mechanism of the two movements of the coxa on the body and the strongly cusped gnathobases in a position of near adduction. The anterior margin of the 6th coxa is cut away on the right in order to display the posterior margin. The tight pleuro-coxal articulation is marked. Elsewhere there is ample arthroal membrane between coxa and body. Adductor-abductor movements in the transverse plane about the pleuro-coxal articulation cause direct biting by the gnathobasic cusps. Adductor muscles 44a, 46, 44p, and 45 are opposed by abductors 25 and 26 pulling on short levers dorsal to the pleurocoxal articulation. The walking movement takes place at right angles to the biting movement and is a promotor-remotor swing about a dorsoventral axis (cf. Fig. 2,B). Promotor muscles 27 and remotors 28 and 29 are probably aided by the dorsal parts of muscles 44a and 44p (muscles

28, 47, and 60 have other functions). The area X has been claimed to represent part of a precoxal segment but the evidence is considered to have doubtful validity, since the structures in question are directly related to the adductor-abductor mechanism and may not have a segmental significance (43a). The pre-epipod arises from this region and serves to keep sand away from the branchial filaments during the digging movements of the 6th telopods. The pre-epipod corresponds in position of origin with the outer ramus of the trilobite limb (see Fig. 12) and with the proximal exite of the crustacean *Anaspides* (Fig. 2,A) and of *Chirocephalus* (see Fig. 13,C).

Pterygota have independently evolved very similar solutions to the problem of obtaining strongly cutting mandibles (Fig. 4,B, 8,D).

Two groups of arthropods (Myriapoda, Xiphosura), have achieved transverse biting without a preliminary promotor-remotor swing, and they have done so quite independently. The segmented mandibles of the Myriapoda essentially adduct like a pair of gripping telopods (Fig. 1,C). Their mus-

culature is entirely or largely adductor in effect and there is little or no abductor mechanism appertaining to the mandibles themselves. In Chilopoda, Diplopoda, and Symphyla the tentorium is not a rigid endoskeletal system, as in the Pterygota, but has the form of internal bars which swing from the cranium. A downward-forward movement of the tentorium presses on the mandibles and causes abduction of the gnathal lobes. This mechanism is seen in its sim-

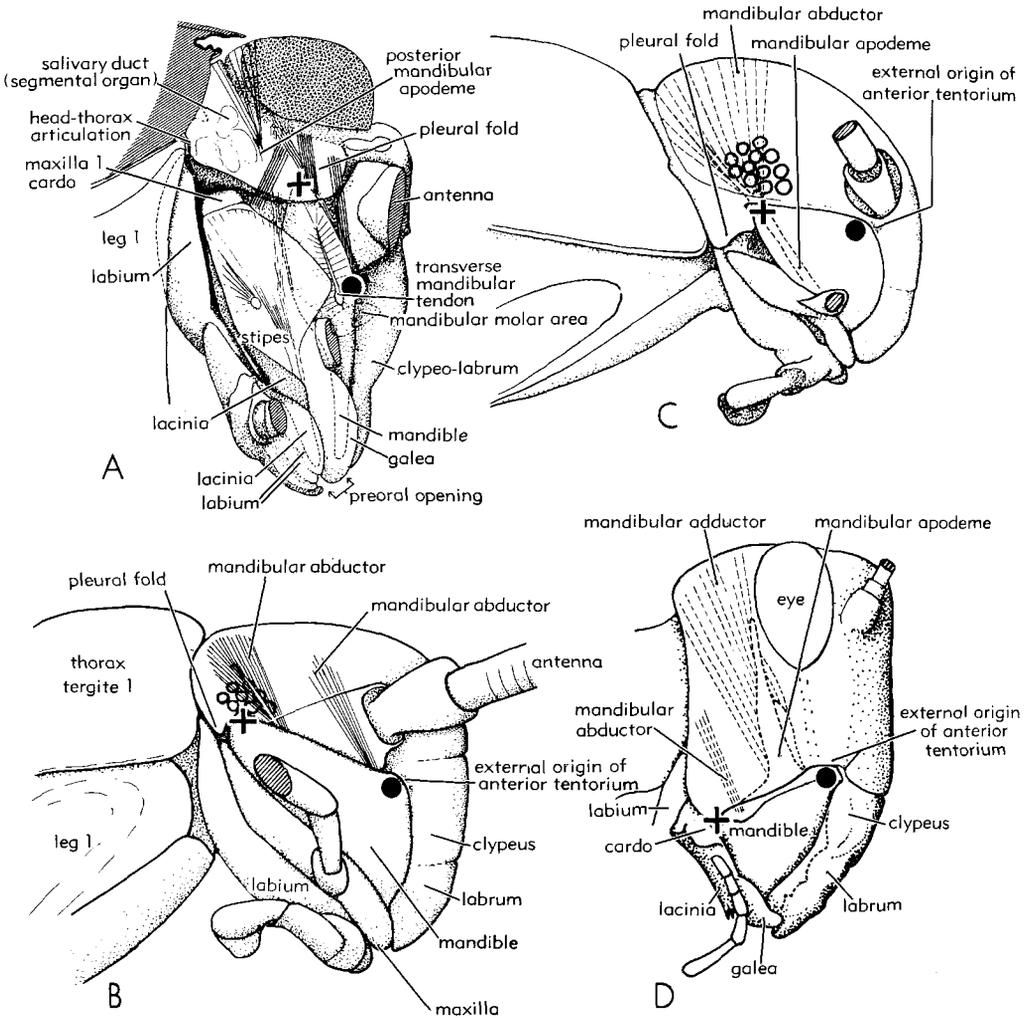


FIG. 8. Unsegmented whole-limb mandibles.

Side views of the heads of the thysanurans (A) *Petrobius brevistylis*, (B) *Ctenolepisma longicaudata*, and (C) *Thermobia domestica* and (D) of the migratory locust. The series shows a mode of obtaining strong transverse biting similar to that seen in the crustaceans *Anaspides* and *Ligia* (Fig. 3-6), but the mandible is formed from a whole limb and not from a gnathobase. The axis of movement passes through the cross and black spot of the diagrams.

In *Petrobius* (A) a tight articulation lies at the cross, and promotor-remotor movements cause grinding by the molar areas as in the branchiopod Crustacea (Fig. 3, 5). Scraping of the food surface by the distal points of the mandibles loosens particles which are then sucked up a food channel, owing to the boxing in of the mandible by the other mouth parts and superlinguae. No biting is possible.

In *Ctenolepisma* (B), as in *Anaspides*, the dorsal articulation of the mandible is displaced posteriorly, the pre-axial part of the mandible is reduced, and a firm hinge (between the cross and black spot) forms the axis of movement. There are no molar areas and strong transverse cutting and scraping by the distal mandibular cusps are now possible. The gape is small because many of the mandibular muscles still arise from the internal face of the mandible.

In *Thermobia* (C) the axis of movement is more horizontal and approaches the condition of *Ligia* (Fig. 4,B), but for the same reason the gape is small.

In the locust (D) the dorsal articulation of the mandible (cross) lies a little below the black spot. Strong articulations lie at these points and the pre-axial part of the mandible is small. The absence

(Continued on facing page.)

plest form in the Diplopoda (Fig. 11). The base of the mandible is strongly articulated with the head by an anteroposterior hinge line permitting adductor-abductor movements only. Very strong biting in the transverse plane is used by the diplopods in eating the large quantities of humus, leaf mold, decaying timber, etc., of low food value on which they feed. The symphylian mandible is more complex, being linked to the head by a single point of close union. This articulation allows a little promotor-remotor swing of the mandible to be combined with greater direct adductor-abductor movements, and some remotor mandibular muscles contribute to the biting effect. An additional extraneous abductor mechanism is provided by maxilla 1 which assists the tentorium in pushing the mandibles apart. The Chilopoda possess an even more elaborate mandibular mechanism in which, in contrast to the Diplopoda, proximal freedom and mobility in many directions of the mandible on the head is a conspicuous feature. This freedom is associated with the development of entognathy (see below) and is not primitive. The tentorial muscles again provide an abductor mechanism.

The segmented mandible of the myriapod classes represents an entire limb, as does the unsegmented mandible of the hexapods, but the principles and detail of the mechanisms of movement are entirely different in the two groups, and the one could not have given rise to the other. These groups show quite independent lines of jaw evolution, although based upon the use of a whole limb. An understanding of these jaw mechanisms makes the symphylian theory of insect origin untenable. The jaw and head evolution of the myriapod classes, although sharing a common basis, must have evolved independently. The mandibles of each class are much too specialized along their own lines to have been able to give

rise to the types shown by the other myriapod classes.

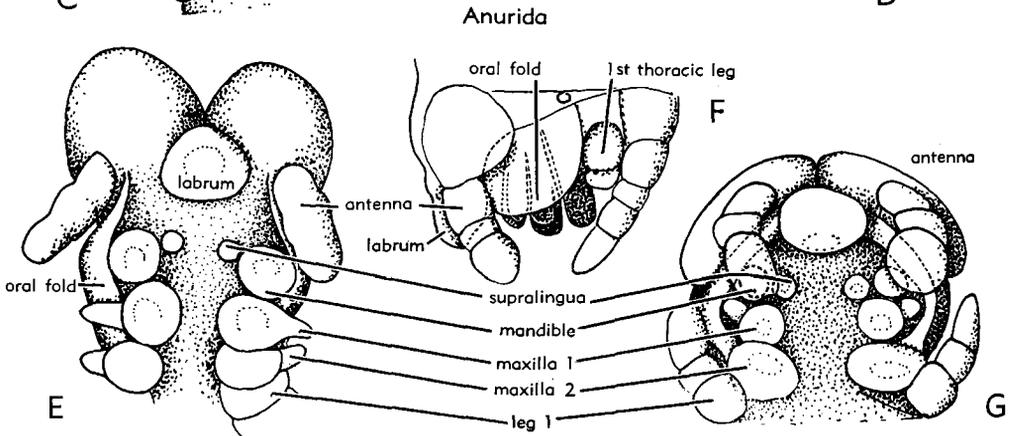
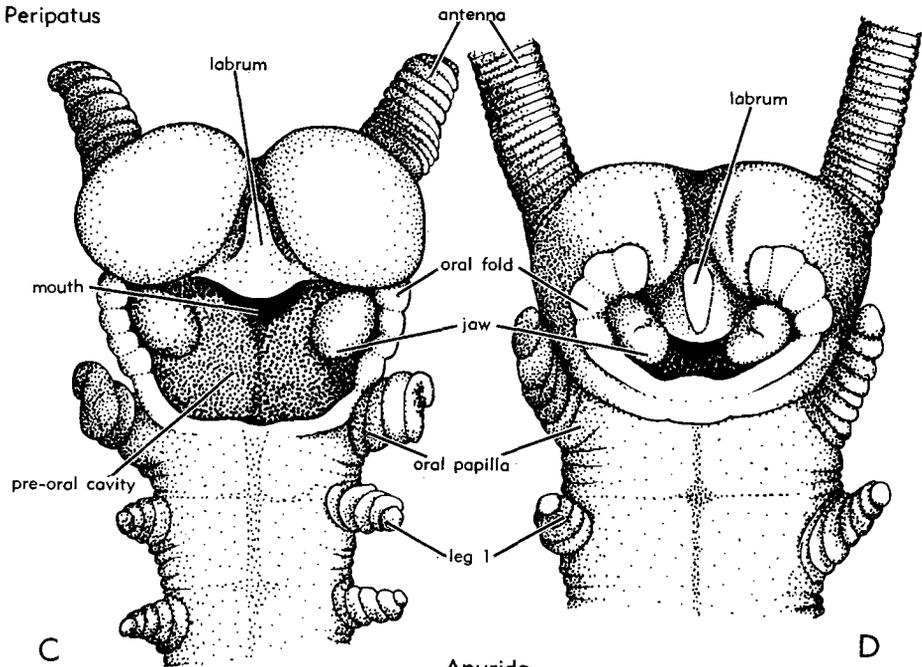
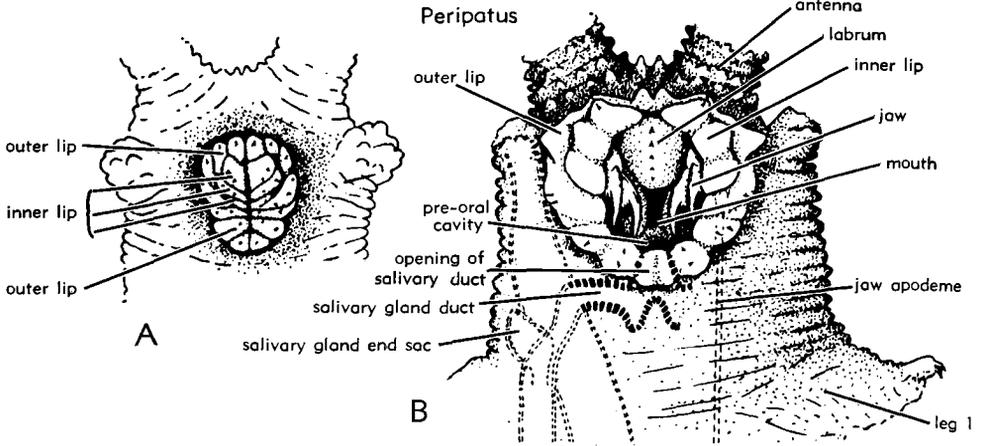
*Limulus* also bites in the transverse plane, the gnathobases of prosomal limbs 3 to 5 chewing food by direct transverse biting, the phase difference between each pair being about half a cycle. The massive cusped gnathobases of legs 6 are used as "nut-crackers" to break the shells of lamelli-branches and cut up tough molluscan tissue (Fig. 7). The endopodites of these legs are used for walking and digging. The coxae are very wide at their attachment to the body, flattened anteroposteriorly and spread far up the flanks of the animal.

The basic walking movement in *Limulus* is the usual arthropodan promotor-remotor swing of the coxa on the body, implemented by extrinsic muscles pulling on the anterior and posterior margins of the coxa (Fig. 7, muscles 27, 28, 29). The biting movement takes place at right angles to this and is alternative to it. The dorso-lateral coxal extremity forms a ball-and-socket joint with the pleurite. In front and behind this joint, two short cuticular expansions extend dorsally from the coxa and bear very stout but short abductor muscles (Fig. 7, muscles 25, 26). These levers, working at poor mechanical advantage, can pull the extreme dorsal part of the coxa inward a little and this results in much greater outward movement of the gnathobases. Massive adductor muscles pass from the coxa to the endosternite (Fig. 7, muscles 44a, 44p, 45, 46), a structure comparable with the partially fused transverse segmental tendons of postoral segments in Crustacea (30, 43a). No crustacean mandible or gnathobase has been found to possess a dorsal lever system causing direct abduction. Since the gnathobases of *Limulus* and crustaceans bite in such fundamentally different ways it seems unlikely that their limb evolution can have followed a common path.

FIG. 8. (Continued from facing page.)

of muscles arising from the internal face of the mandible and the mechanically advantageous disposition of the mandibular adductor and abductor muscles permit the use both of a wide gape and of a very large cutting edge which bites strongly in

the transverse plane. This end term in jaw evolution parallels that of the crustacean *Ligia*, in general principles, but all the details are different, as is the nature of the jaw itself. [For further details see MANTON (43a).]



The survey which has recently been made of arthropodan jaw mechanisms (43) has disclosed yet another parallel evolution, that of entognathy or the formation of a pouch around the mandible so that only the tip can be protruded. Maxilla 1 sometimes is found to be lodged in the same pouch (Fig. 10). This character, in the absence of full morphological and functional details, has been put forward as one of taxonomic value (68) indicating close affinity between animals possessing it (Diplura, Collembola, Protura). But the jaws of Onychophora (Fig. 9) and the mandibles of Chilopoda are essentially entognathous and the mandibles of the Pauropoda also are functionally so, the boxing in being differently accomplished. Many parasitic Crustacea with stylet-like mandibles are entognathous, but no information is available as to how their stylets move. The principal advantage of the entognathous condition resides in the great freedom which is permissible at the mandibular union with the head, so that the mandible can become protrusible and very mobile; in many it shows rapid rotator and counter-rotator movements. The different ways in which mandibular protraction is achieved in Diplura and Collembola (and other differences) suggest that entognathy in these two groups has been independently acquired. Both could readily have been derived from an archi-*Petrobius*-like thysanuran state by enlargement of the small pleural fold, seen in *Petrobius* (Fig. 8,A), to form the side walls of the gnathal pouch. The preoral gnathal space of the Onychophora is developed embryologically in a very similar manner by the enlargement of lateral "oral" folds (Fig. 9,C-G).

The last important case of probable convergence which should be considered in any discussion of arthropodan interrelationships concerns the trunk limbs themselves. A biramous limb occurs in Trilobita, Mero-stomata, Chelicerata, and Crustacea (Fig. 2,A, 12, 13). No onychophoran, myriapod, or hexapod shows a trace of a true biramous condition in the leg; the walking legs of these animals represent the whole limb (Fig. 1, 2,B, 9,B; see Fig. 15, 16). The walking legs of Crustacea, trilobites, and *Limulus* (Fig. 2,A, 7, 12) are formed by the endopodite only, an exopodite being present or absent. This limb difference, combined with the jaw difference between the Crustacea and the myriapod-insect stem, is important and an indication of a fundamental lack of affinity between these groups.

STØRMER (59, 60) and others have stressed the differences between the proximal exite or pre-epipod of the trilobite limb and the more distal single exopod of the crustacean limb. The Crustacea protopod may possess one or two proximal exites as well as the distal exopod, as in *Anaspides* (Fig. 2,A), but among the vast and varied assemblage of crustacean limbs none show a proximal exite or pre-epipod possessing a comb of respiratory plates as on the trilobite pre-epipod or the outer part of the branchial limbs of *Limulus*. The 6th prosomal limb of *Limulus* possesses a nonbranchial pre-epipod or exite (Fig. 7) resembling the pre-epipod of the trilobites and the proximal exite of *Anaspides* (Fig. 2,A), but not the crustacean exopod. These fundamentally different leg patterns suggest independence in their evolution.

Fig. 9. Form and development of gnathal pouch in arthropods (*on facing page*).

A,B. Ventral views of the oral region of *Peripatopsis sedgwicki* showing (in A) the round lip (outer and inner lips) closed over the jaws and pre-oral cavity, and (in B) the position of the mouth behind the labrum with jaw blades (two to each jaw) slicing widely from front to back at sides of the mouth (jaw apodemes indicated by dotted lines). The circular lip is composed of inner-lip and outer-lip folds.

C,D. Oral views of embryos of *Peripatus edwardsii* (younger one in C, and older one in D, redrawn

from Kennel, 1886). Paired oral folds at sides of the jaws in young embryos (C) unite with each other behind the jaws in older embryos (D) so as to enclose the pre-oral cavity, later joining also in front of the labrum.

E-G. Oral views of embryos of the collembolan *Anurida maritima* showing oral folds in early stage (E, redrawn from Folsom, 1900) lateral to both mandibles and maxillules but at later stage (F, lateral, G, ventral) with labrum and labium (maxillae) united to form walls of the gnathal pouch.

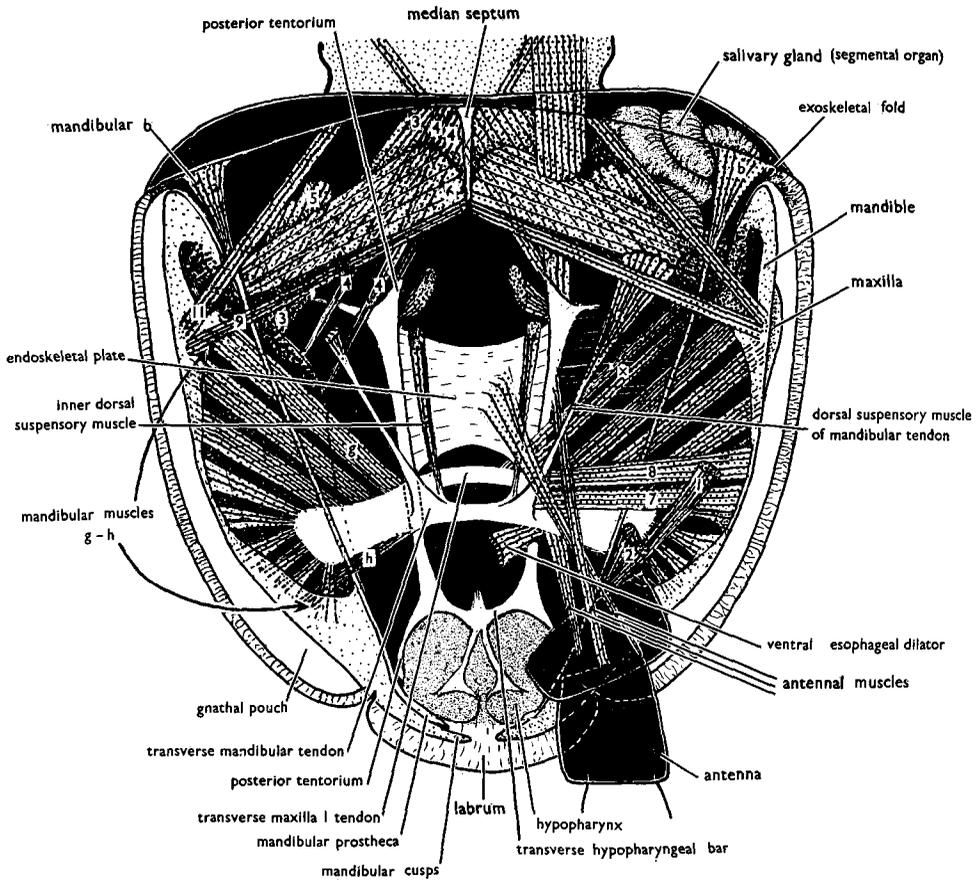


Fig. 10. Unsegmented whole-limb entognathous mandible.

Anterodorsal reconstruction of the head of the dipluran *Campodea staphylinus*, drawn as a transparent object, to show the entognathous mandible enclosed in a gnathal pouch. The antenna is omitted on the left. The mandible is not articulated with the head but is attached by loose arthrodial

membrane and moves against cuticular bearings which permit a great variety of movements, including protraction and retraction. A promotor-remotor rolling movement about the long axis of the mandible essentially resembles that of *Petrobius*.

The positions of origin (Fig. 2) and the movements of arthropodan coxae are various, both being bound up with the leg mechanisms. Evolution along one path of coxal advancement may be just as effective a one-way street as are some of the types of mandibles or the basic forms of the trunk. There does not appear to be adequate support for the view (56, 58) that arthropod limbs are primitively pleural in position and basically associated with or articulated with pleural sclerites, as in insects. A ventral or ventrolateral origin of the legs exists in Onychophora, Diplopoda,

and Crustacea, the legs arising on or against the sternite unless the leg base is so wide, as in some Branchiopoda, as to need no particular articulation and to leave no space for a sternite. The flanks of Diplopoda and Crustacea are well armored in contrast to those of *Limulus*, Arachnida, Chilopoda, and Symphyla. In the latter classes the legs are set in flexible pleuron, except at one point, and the coxae perform multiple movements. Here there is a ventral point of close union between the coxa and some major sclerite, usually the sternite, but with a pleurite in insects. There is no justifi-

cation for explaining away these differences in leg insertion by feats of terminology, such as calling the diplopod sternite a pleurite (58).

The reconstruction in the transverse plane of trilobite limbs (59) shows a wide base to the coxa, as in *Limulus* (Fig. 7, 12), and there must have been ample flexible cuticle around most of the coxa-body union. One would like to know whether the trilobite coxal insertions were really as ventrally directed as suggested by the reconstructions. Enrolment was possible at least to some trilobites, and this implies considerable ventral flexibility in association with the stiff dorsal cuticle. Possibly ventrally directed coxae and an approximation of the body proper to a half cylindrical shape facilitated enrolment, as in modern arthropods (36, 41). But it is also possible that dorsoventral flattening of a trilobite occurred after death, producing the apparently ventrally directed fossil coxae which in life may not have been unlike those of the prosomal limbs of *Limulus*. Thus it is clear that the Crustacea contrast with the Xiphosura and Trilobita in the pattern of their biramous limbs; and that the Crustacea contrast with the Xiphosura, and perhaps with the Trilobita also in the absence of the flexible pleuron which allows the various types of coxal movements seen in *Limulus*.

In view of basic differences in the types of coxal insertions and of outer ramus, and the complete absence of this ramus in the Onychophora-Myriapoda-Insecta group, the general similarities in some details of a leg and of a walking endopod are likely to be explicable on a basis of similar functional needs (Fig. 2). No evidence supports the suggestion (58) that a particular number of leg segments existed in an archiarthropodan leg, and that present numbers in the various groups have arisen by reduction or multiplication of leg segments from this archetype.<sup>1</sup> It is more probable that a single ancestral type of leg never existed. The more we are able to comprehend the mechanics of leg movement and the variety

of ways in which legs are used, the clearer it becomes that segment number, type of jointing, position of a "knee," etc., are intimately bound up with function (38). But there are differences, such as the coxa-body articulations of myriapods and insects, which indicate a fundamental and early divergence of two groups along independent and mutually exclusive evolutionary lines.

In myriapods the principal proximal coxal articulation is ventral and with the sternite, but in insects it is lateral and with a pleurite, the latter being firmly fixed to both tergite and sternite. In all myriapods a promotor-remotor swing of the coxa on the body takes place, as in Crustacea, but in Symphyla, Chilopoda, and Pauropoda mechanical usefulness results from a simultaneous rock of the coxa about its sternal articulation, so that the dorsal surface of the leg becomes a little anterior during the propulsive backstroke, rocking in the opposite direction on the recovery forward swing. Mobile pleurites and special musculature causes this movement. In insects such a rocking movement is impossible because of the rigidity of the pleurite to which the coxa is articulated. The myriapod type of coxal movement carries with it the suitability and usefulness of a series of hinge joints between the more distal leg segments, each joint lacking extensor muscles. The insect type of coxal articulation permits far more varied movements of the coxa on the body than in myriapods, promotor-remotor, adductor-abductor and twisting about the pleurite, but a series of pivot joints worked by antagonistic pairs of muscles is needed all along the leg. No myriapod leg could be considered as a mechanically suitable forerunner of insect legs. In the pursuit of speedy running in myriapods many specializations have occurred in leg and joint construction: long intrinsic and extrinsic muscles give large displacements of the segments they move; leg joints are weak but allow wide angles of flexure; and mobile pleurites support the leg base in progressive measure as leg length and speed of running increases, culminating in *Scutigera*. In strongly burrowing centipedes four pleurites encircle the coxa and support the strong slow leg move-

<sup>1</sup> There are, however, examples of arthropods in which certain leg segments have divided and others which have fused in association with known functional needs. The tarsus of fast-running Diplopoda (*Lysiopetaloides*) and Chilopoda (some *Scolopendromorpha* and *Anamorpha*) has divided into two or more segments, and the trochanter in certain myriapods has fused with the next distal or proximal segment (38).

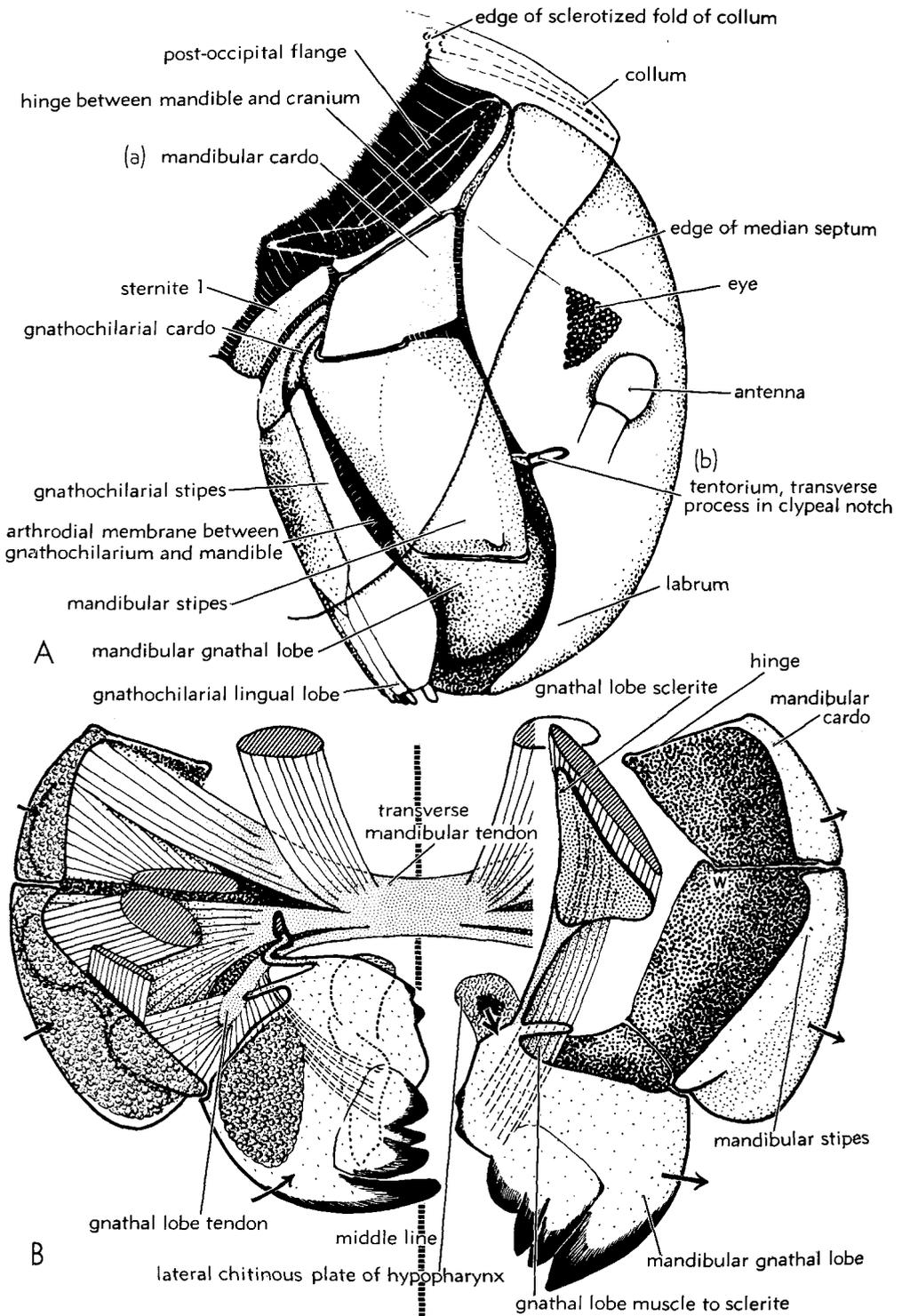


FIG. 11. Three-segmented whole-limb mandible of a trilobiform diplopod (*Poratophilus punctatus*).

ments, another advancement of pleurite evolution. The myriapod type of leg is suitable for a many-legged animal, and an end term in respect of speedy running appears already to have been reached. This type of leg does not have the potentiality of leading to few pairs of relatively larger, stronger, longer legs as in insects. And myriapod extrinsic and leg-base muscles are not suitable for evolution into flight muscles, as are the comparably placed muscles in insects (44).

The brief references made here to mandibular mechanisms and to limb movements in living arthropods need amplification for their full comprehension (38, 43, 43a, 44, and future publications). It is clear that all available data concerning details of joints, possible axes of movement, etc., in fossil forms, besides the morphology of leg rami, respiratory filaments, etc., will be most valuable in building up a fuller picture of arthropod evolution and interrelationships.

In view of the strong probability of a parallel evolution of uniramous legs and of more than one type of biramous leg, as well as several types of jaws and compound eyes, and a variety of respiratory and excretory organs, we may ask, what surety have we that surface sclerites and a hemocoel have been evolved once only in metamericly segmented animals? It must be remembered that Mollusca also have a hemocoel, that the Annelida comprise animals (e.g., *Hermione*) which can stand up on very leglike parapodia and walk without any ventral contact with the ground; the mechanism of movement, however, is annelidan and not arthropodan in that to a considerable extent the annelids use the motive

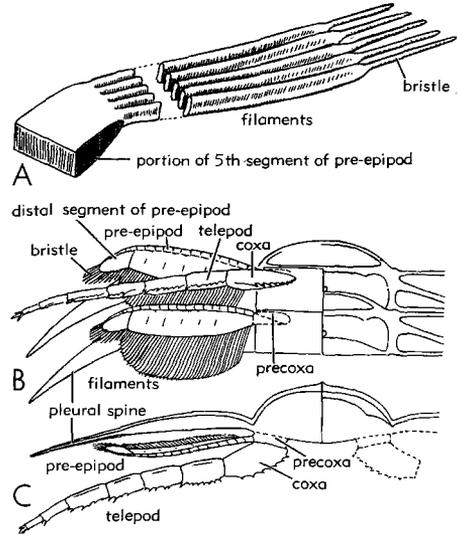


FIG. 12. Limbs of trilobites.

A. Diagrammatic reconstruction of the filaments of the outer branch of a limb of *Ceraurus pleurixanthemus* (Ordovician).

B, C. Reconstruction of limbs of *Olenoides* [*Neolenus*] *serratus* (Middle Cambrian) (after 59).

force of trunk muscles in walking, and an acicular mechanism provides essential parapodial length changes during stepping. The Annelida, as well as Arthropoda, possess a surface cuticle, and the arthropodan cuticles do not fall into a simple unified scheme in their fine structure and chemical composition. It will be shown below how the absence of surface sclerites in the Onychophora is bound up with the manner of survival of these animals and does not constitute a reason for regarding the group as subarthropodan in status. It should also be

FIG. 11. (Continued from facing page.)

This mandible, which bites directly in the transverse plane, cannot have been derived from one that utilizes a promotor-remotor swing such as is seen in hexapods (cf. Fig. 8, 10).

A. Lateral view of head with the antenna cut short and the collum drawn as if it were transparent. The mandibular cardo (*a*) articulates with the head along the marked hinge line. The tentorium (*b*), which provides the abductor force used to part the mandibles, swings from the clypeal notch.

B. Anterior view of isolated mandibles showing

musculature and articulations. All mandibular muscles are adductor in function. On the left the mandible is in a position of maximum adduction. On the right most of the muscles have been removed to display the three mandibular segments, and the gnathal lobe is in a position of extreme abduction. The contrasting positions of the lateral hypopharyngeal scutes on either side are shown. The heavy arrow on the right indicates the direction of thrust by the anterior tentorial apodeme against the gnathal lobe which abducts the mandibles.

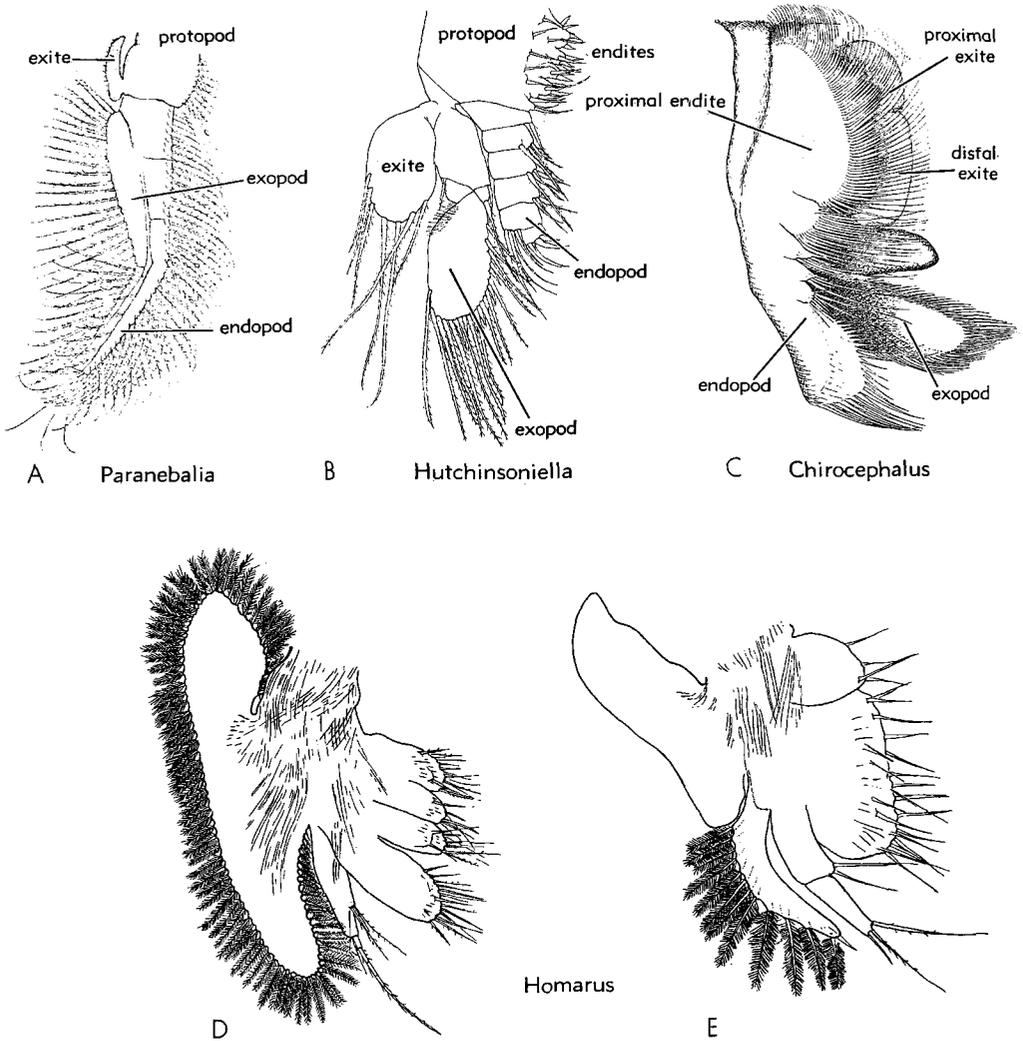


FIG. 13. Crustacean limbs which possess most of the basic parts—protopod, endopod, exopod, endites, and exites.

A. Fifth thoracic leg of *Paranebalia longipes* (after Calman, 1909).

B. Fifth thoracic leg of *Hutchinsoniella macracantha* (after 50).

C. Median view of trunk limb of *Chirocephalus diaphanus* in its natural position with backwardly directed exites and endites (after 8).

D. Second maxilla of first larva of *Homarus americanus* (after Herrick, 1895).

E. First maxilliped of first larva of *Homarus americanus* (after Herrick, 1895).

The limbs shown in C-E are markedly flattened (phyllopodia).

The limb of *Anaspides tasmaniae* (Fig. 2,A) is a typical stenopodium and also possesses most of the basic parts. Many stenopodia are reduced to the protopod and a walking endopod, thus superficially resembling the uniramous limbs of myriapods and hexapods (Fig. 2,B).

noted how clearly the polyphyletic origin of mammals (26) and of reptiles has been demonstrated by the fossil record. Quite independently, a number of separate lines of

vertebrates have reached these grades of organization. The threshold of a new grade depends on definitions and is essentially arbitrary. It would be surprising indeed to

find no polyphyly in the origin of so vast and varied a group as the Arthropoda.

Many questions remain to be answered. As yet, we can give no precise functional interpretation of the formation of the arthropodan procephalon. A preoral cavity is more marked in most myriapods and hexapods than in Crustacea, and is formed by ventrolateral bending of anterior segmental components relative to the mouth, so that three segments become apparently preoral. The preoral cavity surrounding the mouth usually opens subterminally. At first sight, this similarity in head composi-

tion, in spite of the disparity in number of sensory limbs (antennules and antennae), appears so striking as to preclude explanation by convergence. But with the evidence concerning eyes, limbs, jaws, etc., before us, together with present ignorance of the factors which have led to head formation, the matter of segmentation of the procephalon must await further functional study. Meanwhile, the possession of three preoral segments cannot be taken as sound evidence of affinity between Crustacea and the land types.

## HABITS CORRELATED WITH EVOLUTION OF LARGE TAXONOMIC UNITS

Specializations which fit animals to live in particular ecological niches are easily recognized, but this type of structural modification has usually not led to the evolution of classes or orders. Structural features which facilitate habits of life, such as running, pushing or squeezing through cracks, have hitherto been little appreciated and are of great importance. Recent work (34, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43a, 44 and future publications) on the locomotory mechanisms and other habits of terrestrial arthropods has shown how conspicuous characters, which are diagnostic of classes and of orders, are correlated with some all-important habit or habits. These may be one or two of many habits exhibited by the animal, and if exercised frequently are easily recognized (e.g., diplopod bulldozer-like burrowing and characteristic feeding), but if the habit becomes of selective value only occasionally it may be less easy to apprehend. For example, the amazing structure of the Pselaphognatha is bound up with the ability to live, molt, and reproduce on the ceilings of small crevices, even on glass-smooth rock, together with an ability to run fast, which takes these tiny creatures out to alga-covered surfaces for feeding and back again to the same hiding place. These animals can survive in this manner under adverse conditions which would exterminate them from the many less favorable habitats they adopt when survival pressure permits.

Characters such as overall shape of the animal, number of segments, details of the skeleton and joints on the body and legs, form of the sclerites, together with their reduction or multiplication in number, detail of the musculature, formation of a thorax, etc., are correlated with habits such as (1) the diplopod ability to burrow by bulldozer-like pushing, the motive force being supplied by the legs; (2) the geophilomorph centipede habit of burrowing by an earthworm-like technique, the body surface applying the thrust; (3) the fast running and carnivorous habits of Chilopoda; the Scolopendromorpha and Lithobiomorpha strongly adapted for crevice living and catching and eating prey in confined places no deeper than the tergite-sternite span, while the Scutigermorpha show end terms in structural modifications of trunk and legs which permit these fleetest of all centipedes to lead a more open life, catching flies, etc.; (4) the symphylan habit of seeking shelter deeply in soil, litter, or logs, but without pushing, the great flexibility of the body permitting sufficient twisting and turning for these little creatures to pass through small channels without extreme deformation; (5) the onychophoran habit of seeking refuge by extreme body deformation, again without pushing, so passing through narrow crevices which give access to larger cavities in decaying logs, under stones, etc., into which sizable

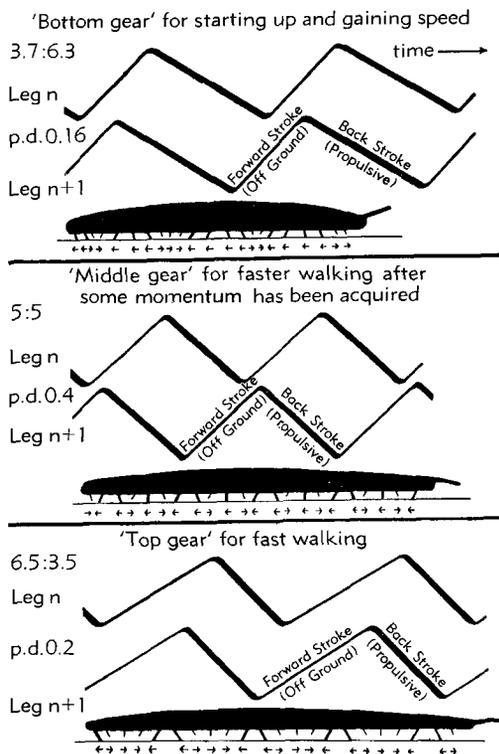


FIG. 14. Diagrammatic representation of the gaits most frequently employed by the Onychophora, *Peripatopsis*; intermediates between the gaits shown are also used. For each gait the movements relative to the body of two successive legs are shown by thin and thick lines in respect of time. Legs executing the propulsive backstroke are indicated by heavy lines and those in the recovery swing by thin lines; arrows below each leg show the direction of movement. The durations of the forward and backward strokes are as (3.7:6.3), (5:5), and (6.5:3.5) in A, B, and C, respectively, *p.d.* indicating the phase difference between successive legs (see legend to Fig. 15). A further advancement of the type of gait shown in A has led to the gaits and diagnostic trunk features of the Diplopoda (Fig. 15, A-C); an exploitation of the type of gait shown in B has led to the gaits of the epimorphic Chilopoda and the associated trunk characters (Fig. 15, D-F); the type of gait shown in C has been elaborated by the anamorphic Chilopoda again in association with the evolution of conspicuous trunk morphology. The type of gait shown in B is seen also in the slower gaits of the Pauropoda and in the faster gaits of Symphyla, but with an improvement in the stepping made possible by the presence of pointed sclerotized limb tips. The utilization of the latter type of gait by the ancestors of hexapods has avoided the morphological specializations referred to above and paved the way for hexapod evolution.

predators cannot follow; (6) the habit of hexapods in running on three pairs of legs and of arachnids in running on three or four pairs represents a way of achieving speedy movement which does not limit the choice and variety of practicable gaits, as is imposed on some centipedes and isopods by the evolution of many pairs of long legs. [This list could be lengthened but it suffices to indicate the type of habits that are important in the evolution of the structural features which are diagnostic of large terrestrial taxonomic groups, features which facilitate the attainment of the various proficiencies.] There are also interesting secondary habit reversals, such as lysiopetaloid-diplopods which have given up the ability to push strongly and have achieved a measure of fleetness and carnivorous feeding. Here, chilopod-like modifications of structure are superimposed upon the basic diplopodan anatomy of these animals, but they are neither primitive diplopods nor related to centipedes.

When the relationship between structure and habits is understood it is possible to assess the significance of much hitherto meaningless body structure. Real affinity can be distinguished from convergence, and one can decide with surety which end of a morphological series is the less advanced. There has been much doubt and controversy about such matters in the Myriapoda. The Scutigermorpha, for example, in the absence of any functional understanding of the conspicuous characteristics of their trunk and limbs, have been considered to be the most primitive and not the most advanced of all centipedes. No doubt now arises as to the trunk and limbs of *Scutigera* being end terms in centipede advancement correlated with speedy running. Only the heads lacks the extreme flattening seen in burrowing and crevice-living centipedes, and these specializations are not needed by the Scutigermorpha. The eyes of these animals are fittingly the most advanced of all Myriapoda, as are the mandibles (43a).

Similarly, opinions have been divided as to the probable primitive length of body in myriapods. In the absence of a functional appraisal of these features, some persons have suggested that short bodies, and others that long bodies, are the more primitive. An

analysis of locomotory mechanisms (5, 34, 36) shows that a moderate or small number of trunk segments favors speedy running; many segments, forceful burrowing. As with a machine, even loading contributes to smooth running, and an even load on each leg of *Lithobius* during its propulsive backstroke can be achieved during the fastest gaits if 13 pairs of legs are employed; a smaller or a larger number leads to uneven loading. The early instar with 8 pairs of legs cannot employ so speedy a pattern of gait as can the adult if the mechanical advantage of even loading is maintained. Mechanical advantages are associated with the presence of 14 pairs of ambulatory limbs in *Lithobius*, the 14th pair being ambula-

tory only during slow running, and on occasion provide a gripping posterior hold-fast. The functionally optimum number of trunk segments is bound up with other matters also, such as the potentialities of muscle physiology.

This brief outline roughly indicates the scope of morphological interpretation of trunk characters which has so far been reached, and, as with the jaw mechanisms, reference must be made to the full accounts for details. The bearing of this type of investigation on elucidation of the evolution and affinities of some of the major classes of arthropods may now be considered.

## EVOLUTION AND RELATIONSHIPS OF ONYCHOPHORA

The Onychophora, which frequent damp environments in logs, crevices, under stones, etc., mainly in the southern hemisphere, have variously been interpreted as primitive, intermediate between annelids and arthropods, and even nonarthropodan. A reasoned argument for alignment of the Onychophora with the progenitors of myriapods has been given by TIEGS (66). An arthropodan heart, hemocoel, and cuticle are present, confirming their arthropodan status. A simple head, comprising three segments, is followed by a trunk not demarcated into regions and bearing many pairs of uniramous limbs. A simple alimentary canal performs excretory functions, as well as digestion and storage, and segmental organs are well developed, those on the third segment forming the enormous salivary glands which correspond with the premandibular salivary glands of Pauropoda and Symphyla.

Onychophoran embryonic development is of myriapodan type, not of crustacean or chelicerate type. Coelomic sacs are strongly developed, with large initial cavities, and the long series of coelomoducts even includes those of the antennal somites. The penultimate coelomoduct forms a genital duct directly comparable to the primitive opisthogoneate ducts of myriapods. The progoneate myriapods appear to be secondarily so (62, 65, 66). The teloblastic

manner of laying down the embryonic trunk, which characterizes the Malacostraca with long embryonic developments (MANTON, 28, 30, and the many subsequent workers on other species), is entirely absent in Onychophora, Myriapoda, and Insecta.

In *Peripatopsis capensis*, among the Onychophora, and in *Pauropus silvaticus*, among the Myriapoda, a recognizable gastrula is present. In *P. balfouri* the blastopore is virtual and the primitive endodermal cells degenerate, never forming an epithelium. In *P. sedgwicki* and in *P. moseleyi* these cells are never formed, the apparent blastula being really a gastrula devoid of endoderm, the definitive adult endoderm arising later and in another manner (32). TIEGS (62, 66) has pointed out essentially the same sort of series in the Myriapoda-Hexapoda. In *Pauropus* only one, or at most two, primitive endodermal cells lie within the gastrula epithelium, and give rise to the endoderm. The symphylian gastrula is composed of a superficial blastoderm covering a mass of yolk cells, a large proportion of which degenerate but some form the mid-gut. In most myriapods and insects the primitive endoderm disappears and the "blastoderm stage" is a postgastrula, not a blastula stage as had commonly been believed. It is remarkable to find such close correspondence in gastrula modifications

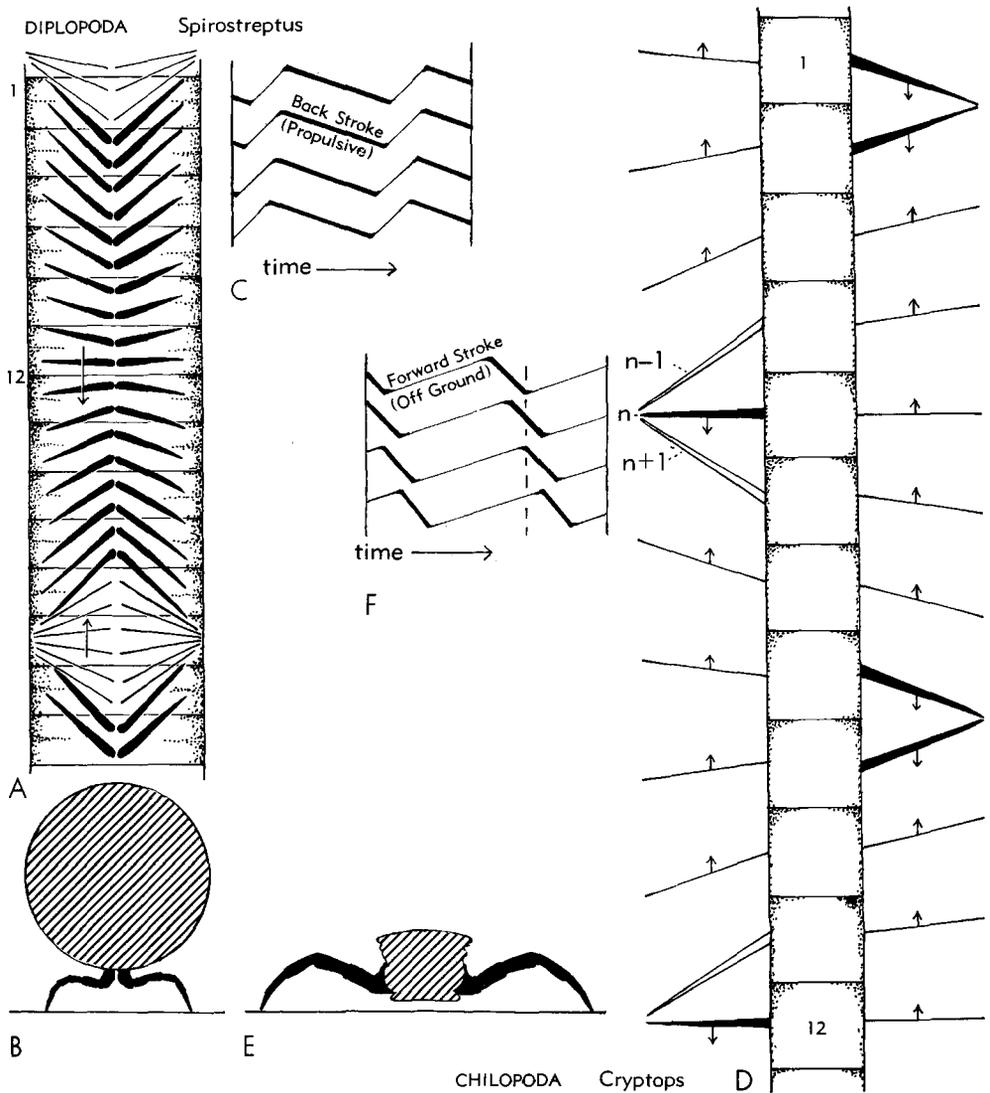


FIG. 15. Diagrams representing types of gait used in pursuance of the contrasting habits of Diplopoda and Chilopoda, together with some of the characteristic trunk morphology of these two classes which is correlated with the execution of these gaits.

The segment volumes of the diplopod (A, B) and of the chilopod (D, E) are similar and the figures show the very different shapes of the segments and the position of origin of the legs. The 12 trunk segments of the chilopod (D) correspond with the 6 marked diplosegments, each with two pairs of legs of the diplopod (A).

In C the movements of four successive legs illustrate one of the slow strong gaits of a diplopod which are used in burrowing, and F shows a fast gait of an epimorphic chilopod used in running. The forward swing of a leg is indicated by a thin

line and the propulsive backstroke by a thick line, as in Fig. 14. The relative durations of the forward and backward strokes are (2.5:7.5) in C and (7.5:2.5) in F. The phase difference between successive legs, expressed as that proportion of a pace by which leg n+1 is in advance of leg n, is 0.042 in C and 0.857 in F. Thus many legs are in the propulsive phase at one moment in the diplopod (A), resulting in strong pushing, and few legs are in contact with the ground at one moment in the chilopod (D), resulting in speed. Limb tips n-1

(Continued on facing page.)

proceeding in parallel manner within the Onychophora and the Myriapoda-Insecta, in contrast to the Crustacea.

Lastly, the nerve ganglia of Onychophora develop in association with "ventral organs," as they do in myriapods but in no other arthropod. These embryonic features provide very strong evidence of onychophoran-myriapodan affinity, which, although outside the scope of paleontology, should be generally recognized.

The superficial similarity between the mid-Cambrian *Aysheaia* and extant Onychophora is very great and appears to indicate antiquity of the onychophoran stem. Whether *Aysheaia* was sea-living or littoral is uncertain. If this type of animal "has set in train the evolution of the great terrestrial groups of myriapods and insects . . . it will have been one of the most momentous events in the whole Palaeozoic age" (66).<sup>1</sup> Further data concerning this important matter emerge from a study of habits.

*Peripatopsis* can pass through a hole in a card which is but one-ninth of the transverse sectional area of the resting animal. Slowly, by locally deforming the body and one leg at a time, the animal voluntarily traverses such a space, and Onychophora habitually squeeze through narrow passages before coming to rest (39a, 43a). The advantages of gaining protection from predators in this manner appears to have been over-riding, and the whole morphology, slow movements, and primitive undifferentiated gaits (Fig. 14) are associated with it. Correlated features are (1) the furrowed cuticle, which consequently can expand in all directions, though the surface layer of sclerotization is

unstretchable; (2) the velvety appearance, due to the presence of papillae bearing sensory spines; (3) the fibrous subcutaneous connective tissue "skeleton" on to which the muscles are inserted, expandable in all directions though its fibers are probably unstretchable (cf. coelenterate mesogloea); (4) the lack of surface sclerites, although the capacity to form sclerotized plates is present (see jaw blades, claws, and long jaw apodeme extending through several segments figured by MANTON, 31); (5) the primitive jaws, made very effective by entognathy, with ability to cut a hole in a sizable arthropod, so that the contents can be sucked out or portions cut up and swallowed (31); (6) unstriated muscle fibers capable of great length changes, such as are impossible to striated but more quickly moving fibers, and the slow movements which keep changes in hydrostatic pressure minimal, as in Actiniaria (2, 3); (7) the defensive weapons in the form of slime ejection from oral papillae, the slime setting at once and entangling a predator at a distance of some inches; (8) the gaits employed in walking are amazingly primitive (33, 34, 42, and a future publication), but an animal depending for its survival on the habits already described has no need of speedy running or strong pushing, etc.; (9) Onychophora do not need acute vision for their crevice-living and walking abroad at night, or (10) an ability to hinder water loss from their innumerable spiracles supplying unbranched tracheae, a ureotetic metabolism effecting considerable conservation of water (31). Dry places do not easily provide food and are no attraction. (11) The extremely hydrofuge cuticular surface serves to keep water out. (12) Internal fertilization, with oviparity in some species and a variety of very efficient modes of viviparous development, constitute reproductive advances which are second to none among the Arthropoda.

<sup>1</sup> TREGS' (66) admirable discussion of this subject contains erroneous references to and deductions from the embryology of Onychophora because a modern account (32) was not then available to him and he based his remarks upon the work of the last century.

FIG. 15. (Continued from facing page.)

and  $n+1$  in *D* are stationary; these legs are being lifted up and put down respectively at the moment shown by the vertical dotted line in *F*. Legs of a pair are in similar phase in *A* and in opposite phase in *D*. The pace duration of the chilopod can be very much less than that of the diplopod. The

diplopod gait is a derivative of the type shown in Fig. 14, *A*, and the epimorphic chilopod gait is a derivative of the type shown in Fig. 14, *B*. For further description see text and the original accounts (33, 34, 35, 36, 43a, etc.).

A functional account can thus be given of all the major features of the Onychophora. The head segmentation stands at a lower level of advancement than that of all myriapods, hexapods, and crustaceans, and possibly indicates a very early adoption of the over-riding habit of life. Archiarthropods of this general type, but with less specialized heads (appendages and preoral cavity), could have become pauropods, diplopods, chilopods, symphylans, and

hexapods by progressive evolution of the head and the pursuit of other habits of life, but no community exists with arthropods possessing biramous legs and gnathobasic jaws. An independence of early arthropods with uniramous limbs from other lines with biramous limbs is probable, and the acquisition of such limbs probably preceded the development of sclerites in the onychophoran-like line or lines which led to the dominant land types.

## EVOLUTION AND RELATIONSHIPS OF MYRIAPODA AND HEXAPODA

These groups have in common a three-segmented procephalon with antennae borne on the second segment and in some species evanescent limb rudiments on the third or premandibular segment. This entails the formation of an antenna on the second segment, instead of a jaw, as seen in the Onychophora. Many examples of a shift of the segmental origin of jawlike or grasping organs in Arthropoda can be cited, and an early separation of the onychophoran and myriapodan types of procephalon might not be extraordinary in a related stock of terrestrial arthropods. Some crustaceans bite with a mandible-like antennal gnathobase and not with the mandible (e.g., nauplius of *Thalestris rodameniae*); male claspers arise on the antennal or on the first and second thoracic segment in Branchiopoda. A two-jointed gripping claw is present on the antenna in the naupliar stages and on the maxilliped in the copepodites and adult of the harpacticid *Thisbe*, both claws being exactly similar in shape and size.

The sclerotized head capsule presumably arose by the incorporation of the three-segmented procephalon with two (*Dignatha*, comprising Pauropoda and perhaps Diplopoda) or three (*Trignatha*, comprising Chilopoda, Symphyla, and hexapods) trunk segments, the limbs of these segments serving feeding purposes.<sup>1</sup> A preoral cavity

is formed by a bending of segments and not by a progressive backward shift of the mouth out of one segment into the next. This cavity primarily conserves fluid and digestive juices around the mandible, and around other mouth parts in some arthropods.

All myriapod and hexapod classes typically possess a partial or complete armor of sclerites. The evolution of sclerites has permitted the formation of more quickly moving striated muscle fibers, and an abundance of joints is needed for speedier ways of life and a differentiation of habits. The initial function of sclerites was probably protective and useful in pushing against the substratum, but, as in present-day Geophilomorpha and some Scolopendromorpha, the sclerites probably did not form an inflexible armor. The presence of tiny cones of sclerotization set in the flexible unsclerotized endocuticle of the margins of certain sclerites (6) enables these sclerites to change shape considerably by rolling the margins inward to various extents. This capacity is much specialized in present-day epimorphic centipedes, but a less perfect version may have been a first step in habit divergence from seeking shelter by body deformability without pushing (as in Onychophora) to shallow burrowing by actively pressing on the

<sup>1</sup> The table showing arthropod segmentation given in *Treatise Part O, Arthropoda I*, p. O11, and the accompanying account of arthropod segmentation needs emendation. The embryology of no chelicerate shows more than one precheliceral segment (see DAWYDOFF, 15, and the original accounts). The fallacy of interpreting an arthropod head

as composed of a series of modified cylindrical segmental components has been considered (40). Much of the dorsal part of the head has no primary segmental origin because it is derived from unsegmented blastoderm taken over from an unsegmented ontogenetic stage. The diagrams in text-fig. 7A-C of *Treatise Part O*, have no reality in living arthropods. The reference to the concept of primary and secondary segmentation (put forward originally by IVANOV, 25), does not represent the views of embryologists in general on this subject (32).

soil. Once sclerites were present, unlimited possibilities in habit divergence were opened up, culminating in the ability to lead an exposed life in dry places and to fly.

## PAUROPODA

TIEGS' (66) studies of *Pauropus* led him to regard it as "a dwarfed, simplified, but also in some respects very specialized, survivor of a primitive stock of myriapods, in which only two segments have been added to the procephalon; and it is probable that when their development is better known, the diplopods also will be found to be members of this group. . . . The presence of a limbless collum segment in Diplopoda and Pauropoda even suggests a community of origin for these two groups."

Both the feeding arrangements and the locomotory mechanism of *Pauropus* are specialized. The elimination of alternate tergites gives stability to the body and limbs in executing fast gaits. A similar tendency is seen progressively in the Chilopoda (35, 43a). The limbless collum segment with its great dorsal shield in the Diplopoda is correlated both with bulldozer-like burrowing and with the ability to enroll in a spiral. *Pauropus* is much too wide to roll up and too small to push effectively. If its ancestors had been larger, less fleet, and less specialized, it might be possible to guess from the general morphology of fossil finds the original usefulness of the collum in this class. The mobile, protrusible entognathous jaws and the tentorium (hypopharyngeal apophysis) are clearly specialized along lines of their own, although giving the same general advantages of entognathy seen in other groups (43, 43a).

## DIPLOPODA

The longitudinally incompressible strongly calcified armor and the formation of diplosegments are the most conspicuous features of this group, together with the usual smooth strong outlines of the head and the manner in which the antennae can be tucked away. Both these and a host of other details are correlated with the ability to burrow by strong head-on pushing

using the motive force of the legs (36, 37, 39, 42). Many legs provide a strong anterior thrust on the soil (See Fig. 15,A,C), but a very long body must be firmly held by intersegmental musculature and in any curvature dictated by the soil contents, in order that the force exerted by the legs may be transmitted to the head end. A shortening and deepening of segments will mitigate the evil, but much greater shortening and deepening can be effected if segments are fused together in pairs because the space needed by every other joint is eliminated. Propulsive legs cannot project far without causing interference in soil burrowing, and their mid-ventral origin gives maximum protection by the flanks, in contrast to chilopod legs which arise laterally and are fully exposed (see Fig. 15,B,E). The parallel-sided Iuliformia probably show the closest approach to an ancestral diplopodan method of burrowing, but there are many divergencies. An anteriorly tapered body and the long laterally projecting legs of the Polydesmoidea favor the splitting open of layers of decaying leaves. The thrust is exerted by the whole dorsal surface and a progressive forward movement of the wedge-shaped front end widens the crevice. Such animals cannot burrow into compact material.

It seems probable that diplosegments and a burrowing habit may have evolved before the perfection of an ability to enroll. The manner of formation of diplosegments is uniform, but the modifications facilitating enrollment at the anterior end are very different in the various orders (36, 42) suggesting independent acquisition. The modifications include the limblessness of the collum segment, its large tergite extending no more than halfway down the flanks. The three following segments carry only one pair of legs and commonly possess free sternites; these segments are less deep than the main part of the body and have a variety of muscular specializations, and permit space being found for the intucked head on enrolment and a spreading out of the legs on walking. The exactly cylindrical shape of the body or joints is associated with spiraling, for the segments need to twist on one another as the animal walks away

from the spiral position (a total rotation of 90 degrees may be needed). Further specializations for enrolment into a sphere and not a spiral are shown by the short-bodied Oniscomorpha; their capacity for burrowing is poor, since they possess fewer limbs. As yet, the diplopod fossil material does not show clearly whether the anterior segments had only one pair of legs, but the general form of the anterior segments in fresh finds of early diplopodan fossils may indicate whether enrolment was practiced or not. There is nothing in common functionally between the three single-legged segments of a diplopod and the thorax of a hexapod; the two are in no way comparable, as has sometimes been supposed.

The Colobognatha have, on quite inadequate grounds, been regarded as the most primitive of living diplopods. In fact, they show a perfection of "wedge"-burrowing carried further than by the Nematophora (42). A propulsive thrust for burrowing is enhanced by the utilization of trunk as well as limb musculature. *Dolistenus savii* can exert a pushing force some three times greater than that of any other diplopod of comparable size which has so far been recorded. The segmental sclerites can telescope into one another, unlike the longitudinally incompressible Iuliformia and Polydesmoidea. Segments of progressively larger diameter at the anterior end are dragged forward by the trunk muscles, so widening a crevice. That this represents a secondary and not a primitive condition is shown by the very great muscular changes which make this habit possible. The progressive development of suctorial feeding within the Colobognatha entails profound modifications of mandible and tentorium and represents a major divergence from the feeding apparatus of typical diplopods.

It is probable that in myriapods several sclerites per segment preceded a welding of the sclerites into a rigid whole (cf. Crustacea; see below). The latter condition facilitates strong burrowing. But the usual presence of free sternites and frequently free pleurites also in the Colobognatha cannot, in their present form, be regarded as primitive. These sclerites are invisible or hardly visible in side view, and they contribute to the reduction of the body to a dorsal half

cylinder with a flat ventral surface. This shape facilitates enrolment; the transverse axis of movement between the tergal arches is maintained at the ventral diameter of the cylinder, so eliminating a need for considerable ventral compression on enrolment. The axis of movement is sometimes maintained in this position by sternites which overlap from behind forward and pleurites which overlap in the reverse direction (36, 42). These features suggest specialization and are not at all like the probably primitively free pleurites of the Permian *Pleuroiulus* (17). Some Colobognatha (e.g., *Siphonophora hartii*) are even capable of enrolment in the lateral plane upon the ceilings of hides, an ability not found in other orders, and certainly not primitive.

The strong slow movements of diplopod legs when moving against a resistance show, at any one moment, very many legs in the slow propulsive backstroke and few legs performing a rapid recovery forward swing. This type of gait is a direct derivative of the onychophoran "bottom gear" gaits, and the greater the number of simultaneously pushing legs, the greater will be the total momentary output of force (Fig. 14, 15).

Reference has already been made to the diplopod mandibular mechanism composed of a very strong three-segmented mandible biting in the transverse plane (Fig. 11), and a mobile tentorium providing the abductor force. Such a mandible could have been derived from a simple whole-limb mandible, presumably characteristic of early unknown terrestrial arthropods.

Thus the primary habits of life which have acted as determinants of the evolution of diplopod characteristics relate to strong pushing, protective enrolment, and the eating of large quantities of vegetable matter of low food value.

## CHILOPODA

Centipedes possess a trignathan grade of head development and the evolution of their outstanding features is associated with carnivorous feeding and more speedy running than practiced by Diplopoda and Onychophora. Primitive fossil chilopods, should they be discovered showing more detail than those recorded by SCUDDER (53),

would be expected to possess a moderate number of segments (perhaps 25-35), each segment armored by a principal and an intercalary tergite and sternite and a few pleural sclerites set in ample flexible lateral body cuticle. No further tergite heteronomy would be expected. Moderate powers of burrowing would have been exercised by the body, locally becoming alternately thicker and thinner, the dorsal and ventral surfaces pressing on the soil. The legs would be short and freely projecting from a lateral origin; the coxae would be wide and short.

Among living centipedes well-formed intercalary sclerites are present in Geophilomorpha and the less advanced of the Scolopendromorpha. Here the intercalary and principal sclerites slide over one another dorsally and also become convex on body, shortening under the influence of the stout longitudinal trunk musculature. A thickening of a few segments travels tailward, the segments in front of the thickened zone, which is stationary to the ground, becoming thin and advancing forward. Speedy running is accomplished by swinging of the legs through a wide angle and the utilization of fast patterns of gait in which the duration of the propulsive backstroke may be only one hundredth of a second (*Cryptops*) and few legs (1 in 10 to 1 in 20) are in the propulsive phase at any one moment.

An early parting of the ways of centipedes in two directions has led to (1) the perfection of an earthworm-like burrowing technique (Geophilomorpha), and (2) speedy running, and at night a more surface-living habit (Scolopendromorpha and Lithobiomorpha), culminating in the very fleet Scutigermorpha, which hunt flies by day. Worm burrows, soil cracks, and stones, particularly in warm countries, provide deep shelter for inexpert burrowers that can run. The requirements for these two habits are in many ways opposed. For burrowing, short wide segments and many of them, a pavement of pleural armor, and short legs are required, the legs on the anterior third of the body being stouter than the rest. Extrinsic leg muscles are not bulky, but the dorsal, lateral, and ventral longitudinal muscles need and use all the space they can obtain. For speedy running a flexible

pleuron with isolated sclerites is required so that the coxa can swing tangentially to the surface about a ventral fulcrum. The coxae need to be short but dorsoventrally deep and well emarginated posteriorly. These coxal modifications, found also in Pauropoda and Symphyla, are bound up with fast movements.

Acceleration is obtained in Scolopendromorpha by the use of gaits with progressively fewer legs in contact with the ground at any one moment, until a minimum of two to three points of support on each side of the body is reached, legs of a pair being used in opposite phase (Fig. 16,D). During slow running, when the points of support along each side are close together and more numerous, the body can be held straight, but as the points of support become farther apart, the body tends to undulate in a horizontal plane. Such undulations are undesirable for mechanical reasons, and devices providing a progressive measure of control are found in the fleet members of the Scolopendromorpha and in the Anamorpha. Intercalary tergites become smaller, less mobile and disappear, tergites become alternately long and short, the short ones finally being so small as to be invisible in dorsal view (Scutigermorpha); extrinsic leg muscles and dorsoventral and oblique trunk muscles shift their insertions from the short to the long tergites, and the dorsal musculature becomes heteronomous. Each long tergite becomes strongly tied by muscles, directly and indirectly to five successive sternites. These features progressively reduce the mobility of the joint between the anterior end of each long tergite and the posterior end of the short tergite in front during fast running. The most stable part of the body lies at the seventh and eighth tergites, both of which are long, and fused together in Scutigermorpha. The head and antennae of *Peripatus*, centipedes and some diplopods are alternately turned from side to side as the animal walks, the antennae touching the ground and sensing a path wide enough to take the leg track. In fast-running centipedes these movements start the anterior body undulations which are damped out or reduced at the seventh or eighth tergite region. *Scutigera* possesses

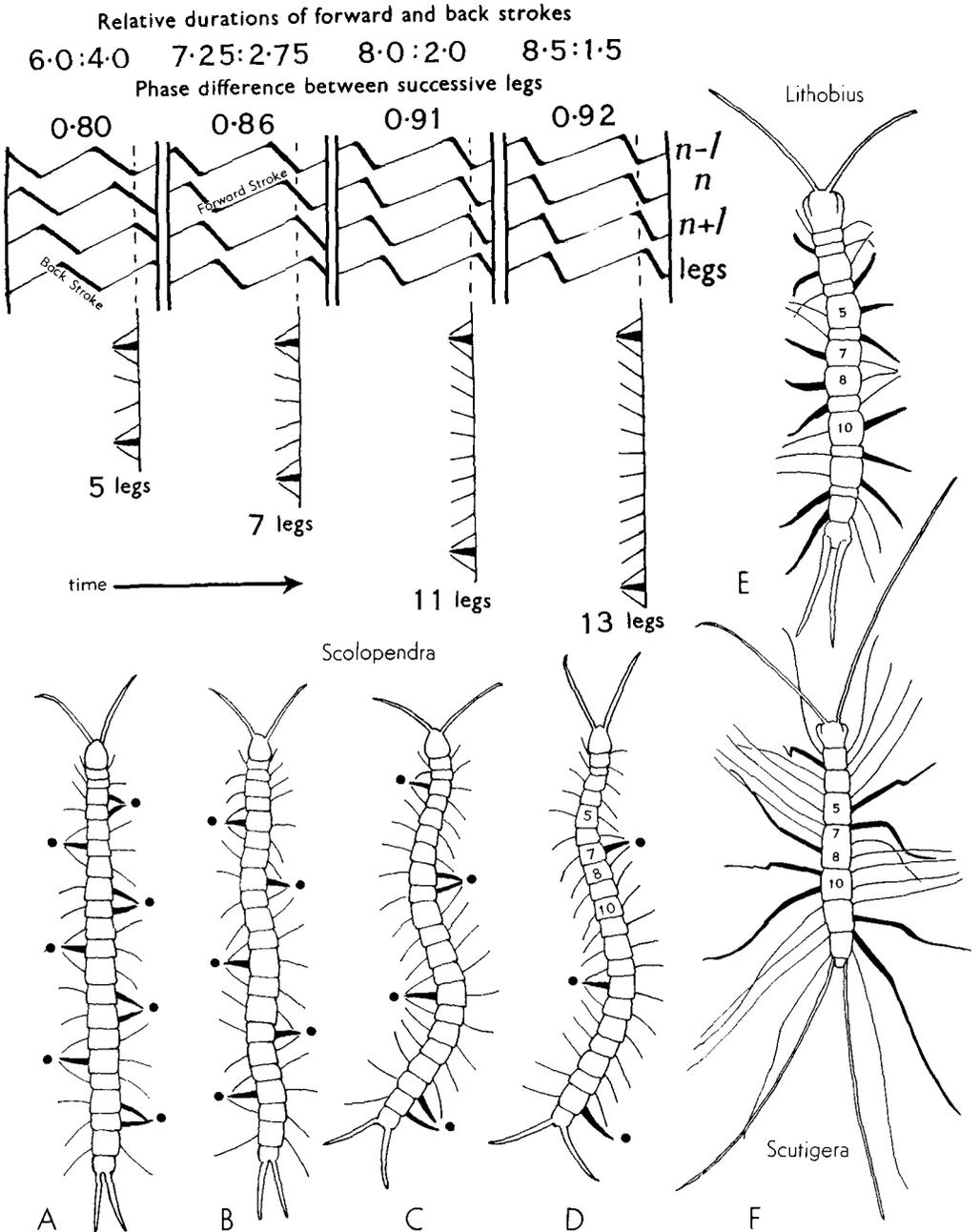


FIG. 16. Data illustrating some of the correlations between the habit of fast running of centipedes and their trunk morphology.

The lower diagrams (A-D) are tracings of photographs of *Scolopendra cingulata* running progressively faster. Legs with their tips in contact with the ground and performing the propulsive back-stroke are shown in heavy lines; legs off the ground performing the recovery forward swing are shown

by thin lines. The points of support of the body against the ground are indicated by black spots. The distances between the black spots show the stride lengths. Legs 1 and 21 are not used in fast running.

(Continued on facing page.)

the longest and most elaborate of centipede legs, each operated by 33 extrinsic muscles as compared with 13 pairs in a geophilomorph and two in a iulid. If the antiundulation mechanism here were less perfect, undulations would make the use of a large angle of swing by so many long legs set close together quite impossible and slower speeds would result. Sclerite perfection has, in fact, led to an economy in longitudinal trunk musculature, so making space for the abundance of extrinsic leg muscles. These locomotory perfections, together with the greater control of water loss by the formation of only eight median respiratory openings, the utilization of the blood for the transport of respiratory gases, and the compound eyes have made possible the more open habits of Scutigermorpha. Centipedes do not run fast all the time, they run their fastest with reluctance, but it is the ability to make a supremely speedy effort occasionally which secures a meal or escape from a predator and is of selective value.

The specialized poison claws, the ento-

gnathous whole limb, but segmented, mandibles and the first and second maxillae suit flesh-eating but not the cutting up and swallowing of hard parts. The extreme head-flattening in all but the Scutigermorpha is related to hunting and manipulating food in narrow places. This type of head evolution is entirely opposed to that of the Diplopoda, although both could have come from a common archimyriapodan type, and both use the mobility of the tentorium to obtain mandibular abduction.

Thus, the Chilopoda clearly represent an evolutionary line parallel to that of the Diplopoda, neither being the more primitive nor specialized in similar ways. Chilopodan evolution shows a dichotomy in life cycle, the Epimorpha hatching with many segments and the Anamorpha with few; but these groups differ also in their basic manner of hunting and in the use and structure of their poison claws and mandibles. Both have gone in for speed but in rather different manners, and they have solved their common antiundulation

FIG. 16. (Continued from facing page.)

Above are shown the gaits employed by the animals drawn below. The movements of four successive legs are given from left to right (arrow), the forward swing being indicated by a thin line and the propulsive backstroke by a thick line. The vertical dotted lines show the moment in time when leg  $n-1$  and  $n+1$  converging on to the same footprint as they are picked up and put down respectively. The phase difference between successive legs is defined in the legend to Fig. 15.

As the faster patterns of gait are employed (*A-D*) so the relative duration of the backstroke decreases, and it is obligatory for the phase difference between successive legs to increase simultaneously (in order that the body always be supported over the common footprint and very long stretches of unsupported body be avoided). The points of support of the body on each side become farther apart in *A-D*, the metachronal waves comprising 5, 7, 11, and 13 legs respectively. Body undulations are absent in *A*, and are present in progressive measure in *B-D*; in *D* the animal is supported by three points in all.

The body length and segment number allow slight, but advantageous, anterior and posterior fanning out of the fields of movement of the legs;

a shorter body could not accommodate the fastest gaits of *F*; the lateral origin of the legs and their length ensure a wide angle of swing and a long stride; the alternate-sized tergites, and the successive long tergites corresponding with legs 7 and 8, by their morphology and muscular connections, provide a measure of control of the deleterious body undulations.

Figures *E* and *F* are tracings of photographs of *Lithobius forficatus* and *Scutigera coleoptrata*, respectively, running fast (conventions as in *A-D*). Compared with *Scolopendra* (*D*), the legs of *Lithobius* and *Scutigera* are progressively longer, yet the undulations of the body are progressively smaller, owing to the increase in heteronomy of tergite lengths. The short tergites 2, 4, 6, 9, 11, and 13 are minute and covered by the long tergites in *Scutigera*, where 7 and 8 are fused at the zone of maximum stability. *Scutigera* is the fleetest of all centipedes and a lack of control of body undulations would make speedy running by long legs an impossibility. The exact number of trunk segments, tergite shapes, and leg lengths in these anamorphic centipedes are correlated with fast-running habits, but the gaits employed differ from those of *Scolopendra* (for further details see MANTON, 35, 43a).

needs in the same way but to different degrees. The Epimorpha alone have perfected the primitive method of burrowing (Geophilomorpha), and without doubt the Scutigermorpha represent the most advanced of all Chilopoda (43a).

## SYMPHYLA

This small class of myriapods is of great interest because it appears to resemble the hexapods more closely than does any other myriapodan class. The Symphyla possess 14 trunk segments as in some insects (62, 65), with cerci on the 13th (62) as in *Campodea* (69). The trignathian head bears a labiate second maxilla, the progoneate condition secondarily superseding the primitive opisthgoneate state, probably as a consequence of anamorphic development. Many curious resemblances exist, such as the presence of a similar embryonic dorsal organ in Symphyla, Collembola, and *Campodea*. A range of gaits such as seen in Symphyla could have given rise to those of hexapods simply by reduction of leg number. The gaits of diplopods, chilopods, and pauropods are much too specialized along their own lines to form a basis for hexapod movements. The easy conclusion that Symphyla stand nearer to the insects than any other group of myriapods is not, however, substantiated by a further understanding of the head and trunk.

The mobile anterior tentorium of Symphyla resembles that of the myriapods and does not resemble that of insects where a posterior as well as an anterior tentorial apodeme is present (43). The two-segmented mandible, performing direct adductor-abductor movements, contrasts with that of the hexapods and could not have been a forerunner of the latter. As in other myriapods, an abductor mechanism extraneous to the mandible is present. This is partly provided by the swinging tentorium, in principle, but not in details resembling other myriapods, and in part by maxilla I in a unique manner. The adult head segmental organ lies on the maxilla I segment in Symphyla, whereas it is labial in Thysanura. The coxa is of the myriapod type and unlike that of insects. These facts

are not reconcilable with a supposed symphylan origin of insects.

The outstanding habits of the Symphyla are an ability to penetrate deeply into soil, decaying logs, etc., and to dart about on an exposed surface, changing direction repeatedly and sharply. Symphyla cannot push their way into soil, neither can they deform their bodies in the manner of the Onychophora, but they are adept at twisting and turning, so utilizing minute spaces. This habit is made possible by: the presence of intercalary tergites all along the body, as well as divided ones on segments 4, 6 and 8, giving added flexibility to the middle part of the body; by the flexible chilopod-like pleura; and by the ventral surface being capable of longitudinal folding like a concertina. The gaits employed are of the chilopod type, but form the slower end of this series, and speed is obtained by very short pace durations. The ability to change direction, and suddenly run in the opposite or another direction, may be of survival value against small arachnid predators which cannot turn so easily. The trunk anatomy, including musculature, and antennal movements are bound up with these habits (44).

One can but conclude that the hexapods and Symphyla cannot have shared an immediate common ancestor,<sup>1</sup> even an archisymphylan (21), perhaps lacking the progoneate condition and possessing eyes, would be clearly a myriapodan line parallel to those of Diplopoda and Chilopoda, with the same basic type of myriapodan anatomy but modified for different habits. A similarity in sensory organs of Tomosvary in Diplopoda, Symphyla, and Collembola is probably related to needs, but the function of these organs is not yet clearly known.

## HEXAPODA

Six-legged arthropods with a thorax more or less demarcated from the abdomen, and often with a much more elaborate exoskeleton, possess some functional advantages for certain habits over most myriapods. A re-

<sup>1</sup> This view is contrary to that expressed by TREGS & MANTON (67) when the relevant data concerning mandibles, tentorium, and trunk (43, 43a) were not available.

duction in leg number permits longer legs, these can give longer strides which contribute to faster running, suitable for more open habits; the three pairs of legs are always fanned out so that their fields of movement overlap little or not at all (34). Changes in speed can be effected by wide changes in pattern of gait, besides changes in pace duration. Walking or running on six legs has been evolved many times in unrelated classes. It is seen in some prawns and spider crabs, *Galeodes* and sometimes in spiders. Thus, the possibility of a hexapodous state having arisen more than once in the radiation of terrestrial groups persisting today as the myriapods and hexapods cannot be set aside, and the mere possession of three pairs of legs is not in itself sufficient justification for a supposed unity of pterygote and apterygote insects.

Insect ancestry has often been discussed (CALMAN, 1936; IMMS, 21, 22, 23; TIEGS & MANTON, 67). WILLE (70) has listed the resemblances and differences between the various hexapods and considered the implications. But adequate knowledge of existing jaw and tentorial systems in hexapods and myriapods has only just become available, and these data, together with an appreciation of the functional significance of entognathy and its probable parallel evolution, give clear pointers to affinities (43).

In considering the tentorium and mandibles it is necessary to make reference to the more generalized types found in the larger hexapod groups, since the extreme and varied specializations existing among some insects are not primitive and not relevant to the general question. The remarks which follow without further qualification apply to the more generalized known examples. The hexapod mandible is primitively a whole limb and unsegmented (as in Thysanura, e.g., *Petrobius*). Its movement is a basic promotor-remotor swing about a more or less dorsoventral axis, as in Crustacea, but presumably independently acquired. Dorsal close articulation exists, and some freedom about the axis of swing is conferred by the absence of a ventral or anterior articulation. This is useful as it is in the more primitive Crustacea performing the same basic movement. A primary effect

of this movement is grinding by molar areas, as in *Petrobius*. The Thysanura and Pterygota show a series of mandibles (not phylogenetically connected) indicating the course of evolution which has led to strong biting in the transverse plane as seen in a cockroach or locust. The course is similar to that employed by the Peracarida culminating in the Isopoda. A backward shift of the dorsal end of the axis of swing, and a reduction in the preaxial part of the mandible leads to a more or less horizontal hinge between two principal condyles. Molar grinding becomes impossible, strong cutting by the distal edge increases, and a wide angle of swing is obtained by dissolution of the transverse mandibular tendon. Muscle modifications lead ultimately to a very simple but strong system of adductor and abductor muscles, tendons, and apodemes which work a very large mandible with relatively enormous cutting surfaces. These are parallel evolutions to certain Crustacea, and the details are different.

The mandible of *Petrobius*, although in some ways strongly suggestive of what the archihexapodan mandible may have been like, is itself specialized for a particular mode of feeding. The mandible is not exposed, as drawn in the textbooks. It is shut in, working in an enclosed space formed by the overlapping lateral parts of the labium, galea, labrum, and superlingua. The scratching activities of the tips of the mandibles and laciniae within enclosed spaces allow particles and salivary juice to be sucked up. There is no biting by the pair of mandibles. The hydraulic efficiency round the oral cone of *Petrobius* may not have been present in the thysanuran ancestors where the mandible may have been less long and thin.

The mandibles of the other apterygote classes may have had a common or similar origin with that of the Thysanura, but thereafter their evolution has been totally opposed, precluding any supposed origin of the Pterygota from an apterygote group other than the Thysanura. An enlargement of the small pleural fold of *Petrobius* could have led to the entognathous condition of the Collembola and Diplura. The development of entognathy permits of the

evolution of proximal freedom and protrusibility of the mandible, and is an entirely opposite trend to that seen in the Thysanura (Machilidae)-Pterygota group. The rotator-counter-rotator movements of the mandible in Collembola and Diplura has resulted in certain general similarities in musculature, but the many differences in detail suggest that entognathy has been independently acquired in these two classes. Anterior and posterior tentorial apodemes are present in Collembola, but they possess some mobility and are modified to suit mandibular protrusibility and entognathy. Posterior tentorial apodemes are present alone in Diplura (for functional and spacial reasons), while the Myriapoda all possess an anterior pair of tentorial apodemes only. The trend in tentorial evolution in the Thysanura-Pterygota line is one of progressive fusion, rigidity and massiveness. This is associated with transversely biting mandibles moving from a rigid hinge line and with strongly moving maxillae, an entirely opposite trend to that of the entognathous classes.

A functional and anatomical study of the head region does not support a phylogenetic unity of entognathous apterygotes<sup>1</sup> (68). It is more probable that entognathy, and all that goes with it, the details far exceeding those mentioned above (43), have been evolved several times within the Hexapoda. The Collembola and Diplura may have had a common origin in an archithysanuran stem, but thereafter their evolution has been independent and convergent in some ways. The Protura are clearly specialized minute crawlers into soil, litter, and crevices. The antennae presumably are secondarily absent, and the entognathous stylet-like mandibles and the tentorium are highly specialized. The prothoracic legs are used for intermittent hauling by movements requiring no lateral "elbow room." The meso- and metathoracic legs are together ambulatory, performing cart horselike walking gaits. These characters cannot be primitive in spite of the presence of an apparently primitive number of 14 abdominal trunk segments.

That the apterygote and pterygote groups all share the same type of mandible with

the same movements and also show basically similar anterior and posterior tentorial apodemes (43) and a similar type of coxa-body articulation suggests that the pterygotes and apterygotes may have had a common origin. Their many-legged ancestors probably used the simple range of gaits found also in the Symphyla. These gaits are directly related to those of the Onychophora and avoid the specializations displayed by the Diplopoda and Chilopoda and the faster gaits of the Pauropoda. Whether the number of 14 trunk segments of Symphyla, the Permian *Monura* (55), and Protura, a number also recognizable in the Pterygota, is related to locomotion has not yet been ascertained. Since chilopod segment numbers, particularly in the Anamorpha, are so closely related to locomotory needs, possibly a similar number of trunk segments in some hexapods and in Symphyla may be the result of convergence, but the details are not yet ascertained. Such a number does not suit the jumping mechanism of the Collembola, in which a smaller number of segments is more favorable; this small number was already established in the Middle Devonian (52).

At what stage the hexapodous state appeared is uncertain. There are not many ways of using only three pairs of legs (MANTON, future publication), so that the same usage may have been independently acquired. The less specialized Pterygota, and *Petrobius* under some circumstances, exhibit the same type of leg movements, but different methods are employed by some other apterygotes. Thus, there seems to be as strong an indication of distant unity between the hexapod groups as there is between the several myriapod groups, but the former cannot have arisen from the primitive members of any extant class of myriapods. Such a conclusion is not surprising. Had a modern group possessed the genetic potentiality of giving rise to the most dominant of present-day land arthropods, some of its members would not be expected to remain arrested at imperfect stages of such a momentous evolutionary advance. Rather must we endorse the view of SEDGWICK (1909), who considered the present myria-

<sup>1</sup> As suggested by TUXEN.

pod and insect fauna to represent the isolated descendants of a once widespread early radiation of terrestrial arthropods.

The recent work by SHAROV (54, 55) on the Lower Permian *Monura* shows animals which are close to the Thysanura, but more primitive in some respects. In *Dasyleptus* we have the 14 thoracic and abdominal segments but forming an even series with a large 14th segment, and nine pairs of short abdominal limbs following the three thor-

acic legs. The head capsule of *Dasyleptus* shows separate tergite rudiments of the mandibular to labial segments, and large maxillary palps are present much as in *Petrobius*. SHAROV (54) has shown that the nymphs and life cycle of various Lower Permian insects were more primitive than those of modern Hemimetabola. On all counts we can agree with SHAROV in looking to this type of animal as the forerunner of the winged insects.

## EVOLUTION AND RELATIONSHIPS OF CRUSTACEA

Little can be added with certainty to the many previous considerations of phylogeny of the crustacean subclasses. We have no direct or indirect conclusive evidence concerning interrelationships of the Branchiopoda, Copepoda, Cirripedia, Ostracoda, and Malacostraca. The Leptostraca, although possessing a caudal furca in the adult, are clearly malacostracan in limb construction, feeding mechanism (7, 10), abdominal segmentation, and embryonic development (28, 30). Leptostraca retain the seventh abdominal segment in the adult, seven being the apparently primitive number for the Malacostraca (28, 29, 30). Leptostraca can no longer be regarded as a possible link between the Malacostraca and the "lower" Crustacea. A modern tendency to add taxonomic units to the existing system, in order to accommodate the newer finds as Mystacocarida, Cephalocarida, and additional taxa within the Malacostraca, has not given trustworthy indications of the relationships of the larger crustacean groups. The Cephalocarida show certain primitive features, such as the leglike second maxilla in series with undifferentiated trunk limbs each showing a generalized form (49, 50). Food collection of suspended material by many limbs without true filtration is probably another primitive attribute. The common pattern of maxilla 2 and the trunk limbs of *Hutchinsoniella* is as generalized as can be found among living Crustacea, but there are other examples (Fig. 13A,B). Limbs roughly of this form

could have given rise to the various types of phyllopodium and stenopodium (Fig. 2, 13C,D); but a consideration of the modes of evolution of crustacean limbs put forward by CANNON (7, 8, 10, 11, 13, etc.) based on observation and detailed functional analysis are far more plausible than the theoretical suggestions of SANDERS (50).

Almost every class of Crustacea contains members which swim and others which crawl over the substratum. But we cannot as yet associate the more obvious of the diagnostic features of each class (apart from Cirripedia and Ostracoda) with particular habits or functions, and therefore we cannot appreciate the needs for these characters or the circumstances of their evolution. The ever-growing body of information concerning suspension and other feeding (summarized by TIEGS & MANTON, 67) serves to emphasize how different are the mechanisms in the several classes. Similar principles may be used, but the details are so unlike as to preclude the filter- and suspension-feeding mechanisms of any one class from having had the capacity to give rise to that of any other (see in particular the work of CANNON, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, etc.). Similarly the ability to tackle large food is correlated with the same general changes and specializations in mouth parts and anterior trunk limbs, but the details differ from group to group. Further comparative anatomical studies have produced no clear picture, although there are certain discoveries, such as the life cycle

of *Hutchinsoniella*, which may help to bridge the gaps between Malacostraca and other classes. Since we have no primitive Ostracoda, Cirripedia, or Branchiura alive today, we are left with a consideration of Branchiopoda, Copepoda, Malacostraca, and the small new groups.

With no clear evidence concerning the interrelationships of the main crustacean classes, a consideration of the possible morphology of ancestral types of Crustacea becomes very speculative. It appears necessary at the present time to reaffirm the fallacy of considering a nauplius larva to represent a modified adult crustacean ancestor, as has recently been claimed (50, 51). GARSTANG (18), DE BEER (4) and others have given ample reasons for regarding the nauplius as representing only the larva of ancestral Crustacea. Metamerically segmented wormlike coelomates with short-bodied larvae may have given rise to arthropods, but it is unjustifiable to suppose that such an ancestor shortened its adult body to naupliar dimensions, elongated the adult again to the lengths found in the less advanced of modern Crustacea, and then embarked upon the shortening and posterior modifications seen in the most advanced of living species.

Presumably Crustacea arose from coelomate ancestors, at first as more open living bottom-dwellers whose exoskeleton gave better protection. Little differentiation into separate sclerites would be expected on each segment. A walking habit may have preceded a swimming one, although the possession of a biramous leg may have favored swimming as an alternative method of progression at an early stage. There have doubtless been many habit reversals and changes in the ways of life of Crustacea, and often it is not clear which habits are the secondary ones within a class. On functional grounds it is difficult to see how the differentiation of the malacostracan thorax and abdomen could have taken place in other than predominantly bottom-living animals. A reduction in leg number and an increase in length of endopodite would give the locomotory advantage of a walking thorax. A persistence of abdominal limbs may initially have been of service in

swimming, and might have disappeared had the Malacostraca remained entirely bottom-living, as have the posterior limbs of arachnids and hexapods. Thereafter, there may have been several parallel evolutions of the shrimplike form and pelagic habit, each with a perfection of filtratory feeding. The latter cannot be an absolutely primitive method of food collection. Something less localized than a single pair of maxillary filters probably preceded it and may have been practiced on the bottom. CANNON (7, 8, 10) has suggested how a maxillary filtering mechanism may have arisen initially to assist a primitive trunk-limb-feeding mechanism. Perfection of the former in the Leptostraca and other Malacostraca would then allow many changes to take place in the form and usage of the carapace and trunk limbs. If the caridoid facies is a parallel evolution in Peracarida, Syncarida, and Eucarida, although comprising in many ways the more primitive living types in these divisions, the more specialized adaptive radiations within each division need not be regarded as having been derived from pelagic filter-feeding ancestors. The benthic forms may have come directly from the bottom-living stocks which also gave rise to the pelagic mysids, syncarids, euphausiids, and penaeids within the several divisions. The benthic adaptive radiations have also led to secondary pelagic types such as swimming crabs and secondary filter-feeders such as *Porcellana* (45), *Haustoriüs* (16), and *Nebaliopsis* (10). The Branchiopoda and Copepoda also show habit reversals, but the direction of interpreting the series is not always clear. A further functional study of pelagic and bottom-living members of these groups would be most welcome.

Some apparently simple conditions, when properly investigated, are seen to be anything but simple or primitive. The coupler of *Calanus*, one of the most primitive copepods, linking each pair of thoracic swimming legs, is characteristic of the subclass. The structure of the coupler is highly complex and related to an elaborate sternal system of sclerites. The coupler enables these legs to swing through a large angle—some 105 degrees (48)—thus facilitating the (al-

most synchronous) backstroke of these legs which gives the sudden copepod dart through the water. A complex system such as the coupler ranks as a very great and unique specialization which could not have been present in primitive types.

What has already been said about the fundamental difference between the mandibles of crustaceans and hexapods, the differences in head endoskeleton, sense organs, and sensory limbs, the differences in embryonic development and the persistence of segmental organs on different segments, suggests that there can be no close relationship between Crustacea and the Onychophora-Myriapoda-Insecta stem, and that there is no such taxon as the "Mandibulata." This conclusion implies a parallel evolution here of two types of limbs and mandibles, and a parallel development of exoskeleton, if, as seems probable, the early onychophoran line lacked surface sclerites.

The structure of the biramous crustacean limb and the contrasting manner in which the gnathobases of Crustacea and of *Limulus* are formed and used, the pleural origin of the limbs in chelicerates and their basically ventral origin in Crustacea (Fig. 2-4, 7, 12, 13) suggests a wide gap between Crustacea, Merostomata, and Trilobita. The head shields and limbs of the Merostomata and Trilobita have more in common than either has with the heads and limbs of Crustacea.

In considering the possible mode of evolution of the arthropodan armor, the chilopodan disposition of sclerites has sometimes been taken as representing a common primitive stage (SNODGRASS, 56, 58; STØRMEYER, p. O11, Vol. O, Arthropoda 1, and various modern textbooks). The probability of this is far from clear. Chilopoda need a flexible lateral body wall both for their technique in burrowing and for their coxal movements. A diplopod and a crustacean, by contrast, need a rigid lateral body wall, no

matter whether this is provided by fused pleurites or by a pleural extension of the tergal arch. The diplopod and crustacean types of skeleton need not have passed through a chilopod-like evolutionary stage.

The more we appreciate the functional significance of structure, the clearer can we see how evolution can have proceeded, and the better will we be able to interpret structure in fossil arthropods where no direct study of function can be made. Even the details whereby tight enrolment is achieved by living animals, together with an appreciation of the mechanical difficulties which have had to be faced, is one of many examples of data derived from living animals which may be very useful to paleontologists.

Thus, as far as the evidence at present available goes, a supposed polyphyletic evolution of Arthropoda seems inescapable in the sense that the Onychophora-Myriapoda-Insecta and the Crustacea have evolved independently from each other and from the Merostomata and Trilobita. But the evidence does not indicate the state of advancement reached at the dawn of differentiation of these great groups. We should, however, be less dogmatic in upholding a supposed annelidan origin of the Arthropoda, if the term Annelida implies the Polychaeta, Oligochaeta, Hirudinea, and Archannelida.

A metamericly segmented coelomate is as far as can justifiably be envisaged, a grade of animal perhaps very different from any modern annelid. Spiral cleavage characterizes the less yolky embryos of both annelids and molluscs, the cell lineages being extraordinarily similar in the two phyla, but arthropods show little of these features. As yet we know too little about the Tardigrada to decide whether they are more closely related to the Onychophora than to any other class, and the affinities of the Pycnogonida are also debatable (19, 20).

## REFERENCES

**Anderson, D. T.**

- (1) 1959, *The embryology of the polychaete Scoloplos armiger*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 100, p. 89-166, text-fig. 1-22.

**Batham, E. J., & Pantin, C. F. A.**

- (2) 1950, *Muscular and hydrostatic action in the sea-anemone Metridium senile (L.)*: Jour. Exper. Biology, v. 227, p. 264-289, pl. 1, text-fig. 1-9.
- (3) 1951, *The organisation of the muscular system of Metridium senile*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 92, p. 27-54, pl. 1-2, text-fig. 1-12.

**Beer, G. R. de**

- (4) 1930, *Embryology and evolution*: viii+116 p., 7 text-fig. (Oxford).

**Bennett, D. S., & Manton, S. M.**

- (5) 1963, *Arthropod segmental organs and malpighian tubules, with particular reference to their junction in the Chilopoda*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History (in press).

**Blower, J. G.**

- (6) 1951, *A comparative study of the chilopod and diplopod cuticle*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 92, p. 141-161, 5 fig.

**Cannon, H. G.**

- (7) 1927, *On the feeding mechanism of Nebalia bipes*: Royal Soc. Edinburgh, Trans., v. 55, p. 355-369, text-fig. 1-7.
- (8) 1928, *On the feeding mechanism of the fairy shrimp, Chirocephalus diaphanus Prevost*: Same, v. 55, p. 807-822, text-fig. 1-6.
- (9) 1928, *On the feeding mechanism of the copepods Calanus finmarchicus and Diaptomus gracilis*: Jour. Exper. Biology, v. 6, p. 131.
- (10) 1931, *Nebaliacea*: Discovery Repts., v. 3, p. 199-222, pl. 1, text-fig. 1-7.
- (11) 1933, *On the feeding mechanism of the Branchiopoda*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, v. 222, p. 267-352, text-fig. 1-32.
- (12) 1933, *On the feeding mechanism of certain marine ostracods*: Royal Soc. Edinburgh, Trans., v. 57, p. 739-764, text-fig. 1-11.
- (13) 1946, *Nebaliopsis typica*: Discovery Repts., v. 23, p. 213-222, 1 pl.
- (14) 1947, *On the anatomy of the pedunculate barnacle Lithotrya*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, v. 233, p. 89-136, text-fig. 1-17.

**Dawydoff, C.**

- (15) 1928, *Traité d'embryologie comparée des Invertébrés*: xiv+930 p., 509 text-fig. (Paris).

**Dennell, R.**

- (16) 1933, *The habits and feeding mechanism of the Amphipod Haustorius arenarius Slabber*: Linnean Soc. London (Zoology), Jour., v. 38, p. 363-388.

**Fritsch [Frič], Anton**

- (17) 1899, *Fauna der Gasköhle und der Kalksteine der Perm-formation*: Böhmens, 4 (Praha).

**Garstang, Walter**

- (18) 1922, *The theory of recapitulation: a critical restatement of the biogenetic law*: Linnean Soc. London (Zoology), Jour., v. 25, p. 81-101.

**Hedgpeth, J. W.**

- (19) 1947, *On the evolutionary significance of the Pycnogonida*: Smithsonian Misc. Coll., 106, no. 18, publ. 3866, 53 p., illus.
- (20) 1954, *On the phylogeny of the Pycnogonida*: Acta Zool., v. 35, p. 193.

**Imms, A. D.**

- (21) 1936, *The ancestry of insects*: Soc. Brit. Entomology, Trans., v. 3, p. 1-32, 11 fig.
- (22) 1939, *On the antennal musculature in insects and other arthropods*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 81, p. 273-320, 25 text-fig.
- (23) 1947, *The phylogeny of insects*: Tijdschr. Entomologie, v. 88 (1945), p. 63-66.

**Inglis, W. G.**

- (24) 1964, *The structure of nematode cuticle*: Zool. Soc. London, Proc., v. 143, p. 465-502, 43 text-fig.

**Ivanov, P. P.**

- (25) 1944, *Primary and secondary metamerism of the body*: Jour. Gen. Biology, v. 5, p. 61-95. [Russian with English summary.]

**Kermack, K. A., & Mussett, F.**

- (26) 1959, *The first mammals*: Discovery, v. 20, p. 144-150.

**Lankester, E. R.**

- (27) 1904, *The structure and classification of the Arthropoda*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 47, p. 523-582.

**Manton, S. M.**

- (28) 1928, *On the embryology of the mysid crustacean, Hemimysis lamornae*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, v. 216, p. 363-463, 5 pl., 32 text-fig.
- (29) 1928, *On some points in the anatomy and habits of the lophogastrid Crustacea*: Royal Soc. Edinburgh, Trans., v. 55, p. 103-119, 3 pl.

- (30) 1934, *On the embryology of the crustacean, Nebalia bipes*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, v. 223, p. 168-238, 7 pl., 17 text-fig.
- (31) 1937, *The feeding, digestion, excretion and food storage of Peripatopsis*: Same, ser. B, v. 227, p. 411-464, 14 text-fig., 3 pl.
- (32) 1949, *Studies on the Onychophora. VII. The early embryonic stages of Peripatopsis, and some general considerations concerning the morphology and phylogeny of the Arthropoda*: Same, ser. B, v. 233, p. 483-580, 11 pl., 7 text-fig.
- (33) 1950, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms, Pt. 1. The locomotion of Peripatus*: Linnean Soc. London (Zoology), Jour., v. 41, p. 529-570, 39 text-fig., 4 pl.
- (34) 1952, *Pt. 2. General introduction to the locomotory mechanisms of the Arthropoda*: Same, v. 42, p. 93-117, 5 text-fig.
- (35) 1952, *Pt. 3. The locomotion of the Chilopoda and Pauropoda*: Same, v. 42, p. 118-166, 12 text-fig., 6 pl.
- (36) 1954, *Pt. 4. The structure, habits and evolution of the Diplopoda*: Same, v. 42, p. 299-368, 4 pl., 8 text-fig.
- (37) 1956, *Pt. 5. The structure, habits and evolution of the Pselaphognatha (Diplopoda)*: Same, v. 43, p. 153-187, 8 text-fig., 1 pl.
- (38) 1958, *Pt. 6. Habits and evolution of the Lysipetaloidea (Diplopoda), some principles of the leg design in Diplopoda and Chilopoda, and limb structure in Diplopoda*: Same, v. 43, p. 487-556, 21 text-fig., 1 pl.
- (39) 1958, *Hydrostatic pressure and leg extension in arthropods, with special reference to arachnids*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 13, v. 1, p. 161-182, 5 text-fig., 1 pl.
- (39a) 1958, *Habits of life and evolution of body design in Arthropoda*: Linnean Soc. London (Zool.), Jour., v. 44, p. 58-72, 2 pl., 1 text-fig.
- (40) 1960, *Concerning head development in the arthropods*: Biol. Reviews, v. 35, p. 265-282, 3 text-fig.
- (41) 1961, *Experimental zoology and problems of arthropod evolution, in The Cell and the Organism*: RAMSAY & WIGGLESWORTH (Eds.), p. 234-255, 1 text-fig., 2 pl. (Cambridge).
- (42) 1961, *Pt. 7. Functional requirements and body design in Colobognatha (Diplopoda), together with a comparative account of diplopod burrowing techniques, trunk musculature and segmentation*: Linnean Soc. London (Zoology), Jour., v. 44, p. 383-461, 35 text-fig., 3 pl.
- (43) 1964, *Mandibular mechanisms and the evolution of arthropods*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, v. 247, p. 1-183, pl. 1, text-fig. 1-66.
- (43a) 1965, Pt. 8. *Functional requirements and body design in Chilopoda, together with a comparative account of their skeleto-muscular systems and an Appendix on a comparison between burrowing forces of annelids and chilopods and its bearing upon the evolution of the arthropodan haemocoel*: Linnean Soc. London (Zool.), Jour., v. 46, p. 251-483, 7 pl., 99 text-fig.
- (44) 1966, Pt. 9. *Functional requirements and body design in Symphyla and Pauropoda and the relationships between Myriapoda and insects*: Same, v. 46, p. 103-141, 1 pl., 10 text fig.
- Nicol, E. A. T.**
- (45) 1932, *The feeding habits of the Galatheidea*: Marine Biol. Assoc., United Kingdom, Jour., v. 18, p. 87-106, 7 text-fig.
- Pantin, C. F. A.**
- (46) 1947, *The nephridia of Geonemertes dendyi*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 88, p. 15-25.
- Parry, D. A., & Brown, H. J.**
- (47) 1959, *The jumping mechanism of salticid spiders*: Jour. Exper. Biology, v. 36, p. 654-664, 2 text-fig., 2 pl.
- Perryman, J.**
- (48) 1961, *The functional morphology of the skeleto-muscular system of the larval and adult stages of the copepod crustacean Calanus, together with an account of the changes undergone by this system during larval development*: Thesis, University of London, p. 1-83, 28 text-fig.
- Sanders, H. L.**
- (49) 1955, *The Cephalocarida, a new subclass of Crustacea from Long Island Sound*: Natl. Acad. Sci., Proc., v. 41, p. 61-66, 2 text-fig.
- (50) 1957, *The Cephalocarida and crustacean phylogeny*: Syst. Zoology, v. 6, p. 112-129, 9 text-fig.
- (51) 1959, *The significance of the Cephalocarida in crustacean phylogeny*: 15th Internat'l. Zool. Congress, London, Proc., 1958, 337-340, 2 text-fig.
- Scourfield, D. J.**
- (52) 1940, *The oldest known fossil insect (Rhyniella praecursor Hirst and Maulik)—further details from additional specimens*: Linnean Soc. London, Proc., v. 152, 113-130, 10 text-fig.
- Scudder, S. H.**
- (53) 1890, *New Carboniferous Myriapoda from Illinois*: Boston Soc. Nat. History, Mem., v. 4, p. 417-442, illus.
- Sharov, A. G.**
- (54) 1957, *Peculiar Palaeozoic wingless insects of a new order, the Monura (Insecta aptery-*

- gota): Acad. Sci. URSS, Comptes Rendus, v. 115, p. 795-798, 2 text-fig., 1 pl.
- (55) 1957, *Types of insect metamorphosis and their relationship*: Rev. Entomologie URSS, v. 36, p. 569-576, 3 text-fig.
- Snodgrass, R. E.**
- (56) 1929, *The thoracic mechanism of a grasshopper, and its antecedents*: Smithsonian Misc. Coll., v. 82, pt. 2, p. 1-111, 54 fig.
- (57) 1952, *A textbook of arthropod anatomy*: viii+363 p., 88 text-fig., Comstock (New York).
- (58) 1958, *The evolution of arthropod mechanisms*: Smithsonian Misc. Coll., v. 138, p. 1-77, 23 text-fig.
- Størmer, Leif**
- (59) 1939, *Studies on trilobite morphology I*: Norsk. Geol. Tidsskrift, v. 19, 143 p.
- (60) 1944, *On the relationships and phylogeny of fossil and recent Arachnomorpha: a comparative study on Arachnida, Xiphosura, Eurypterida, Trilobita, and other fossil Arthropoda*: Norske Vidensk.-Akad. Oslo, Skrift. 1944, v. 1, no. 5, 158 p., 30 text-fig.
- Tiegs, O. W.**
- (61) 1938, *The embryonic development of Calandra oryzae*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 80, p. 159-284, 19 text-fig., 6 pl.
- (62) 1940, *The embryology and affinities of the Symphyla, based on a study of Hanseniella agilis*: Same, v. 82, p. 1-225, 41 text-fig., 9 pl.
- (63) 1942, *The "dorsal organ" of collembolan embryos*: Same, v. 83, p. 153-169, 4 text-fig., 1 pl.
- (64) 1942, *The "dorsal organ" of the embryo of Campodea*: Same, v. 84, p. 35-47, 3 text-fig., 1 pl.
- (65) 1945, *The post-embryonic development of Hanseniella agilis (Symphyla)*: Same, v. 85, p. 191-328, 29 text-fig., 6 pl.
- (66) 1947, *The development affinities of the Pauropoda, based on a study of Pauropus silvaticus*: Same, v. 88, p. 165-336, 29 text-fig., 10 pl.
- , & Manton, S. M.
- (67) 1958, *The evolution of the Arthropoda*: Biol. Reviews, v. 33, p. 255-337, 18 text-fig.
- Tuxen, S. L.**
- (68) 1959, *The phylogenetic significance of entognathy in entognathous apterygotes*: Smithsonian Misc. Coll., v. 137, p. 379-416, 22 text-fig.
- Uzel, H.**
- (69) 1898, *Studien über die Entwicklung der apterygoten Insecten*: p. 1-58, 6 pl. (Berlin).
- Wille, A.**
- (70) 1960, *The phylogeny and relationships between the insect orders*: Rev. Biol. Trop., v. 8, p. 93-123.

## GENERAL FEATURES OF CRUSTACEA

By RAYMOND C. MOORE and LAVON McCORMICK

[The University of Kansas]

[For assistance of various sorts, acknowledgment and appreciation are expressed to Dr. T. E. BOWMAN, Smithsonian Institution; Dr. H. K. BROOKS, University of Florida; Prof. M. F. GLAESSNER, University of Adelaide; Dr. ISABELLA GORDON, British Museum (Natural History); Dr. R. R. HESSLER, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution; Dr. L. B. HOLTHUIS, Leiden, Rijksmuseum; Dr. W. A. NEWMAN, Scripps Oceanographic Institution; Dr. W. D. I. ROLFE, Hunterian Museum, University of Glasgow; and Dr. PAUL TASCH, Wichita State University. Suggestions and corrections offered by them have contributed materially to improvements of the chapter and have added to its reliability.]

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R57
DIVERSITY OF GROUPS .....	R60
GENERAL MORPHOLOGY .....	R79
Head Region .....	R81
Thorax and Abdomen .....	R81
Appendages .....	R83
Internal Features .....	R84
Dimorphism .....	R89
Glossary of Morphological Terms .....	R89
ONTOGENY .....	R103
Eggs and Larval Stages .....	R103
Molting and Growth .....	R105
Adults and Life Duration .....	R105
AUTOTOMY AND REGENERATION .....	R107
ADAPTATION .....	R107
Modes of Life .....	R107
Commensalism and Parasitism .....	R111
CLASSIFICATION .....	R111
Outline of Treatise Classification of Crustacea .....	R112
REFERENCES .....	R116

## INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this chapter is to scan the general nature of crustaceans, mainly based on extant forms. Such a survey is desirable as an approach to detailed descriptions of the numerous major and minor crustacean groups, with emphasis on their fossil records, which follow. Though intended to be generalized and comprehensive, the initial review must be confined to relatively small space and cannot be allowed to duplicate discussions given at greater length by authors of systematic chapters included in this volume. Various generalizations may be expressed at known risk of ignoring exceptions (though hopefully none very im-

portant). Examples of morphological and other features are chosen on the basis of judgment that they are representative and illustrative, thus lending some degree of specificity to general statements.

The Crustacea are prevailing aquatic arthropods distinguished basically from others by the presence of two pairs of antennary appendages on the head, for in other groups only a single pair of these structures is found or none at all. Behind the region of the antennae are three head somites which bear appendages functioning as jaws (mandibles) and for handling food (maxillules, maxillae). These components

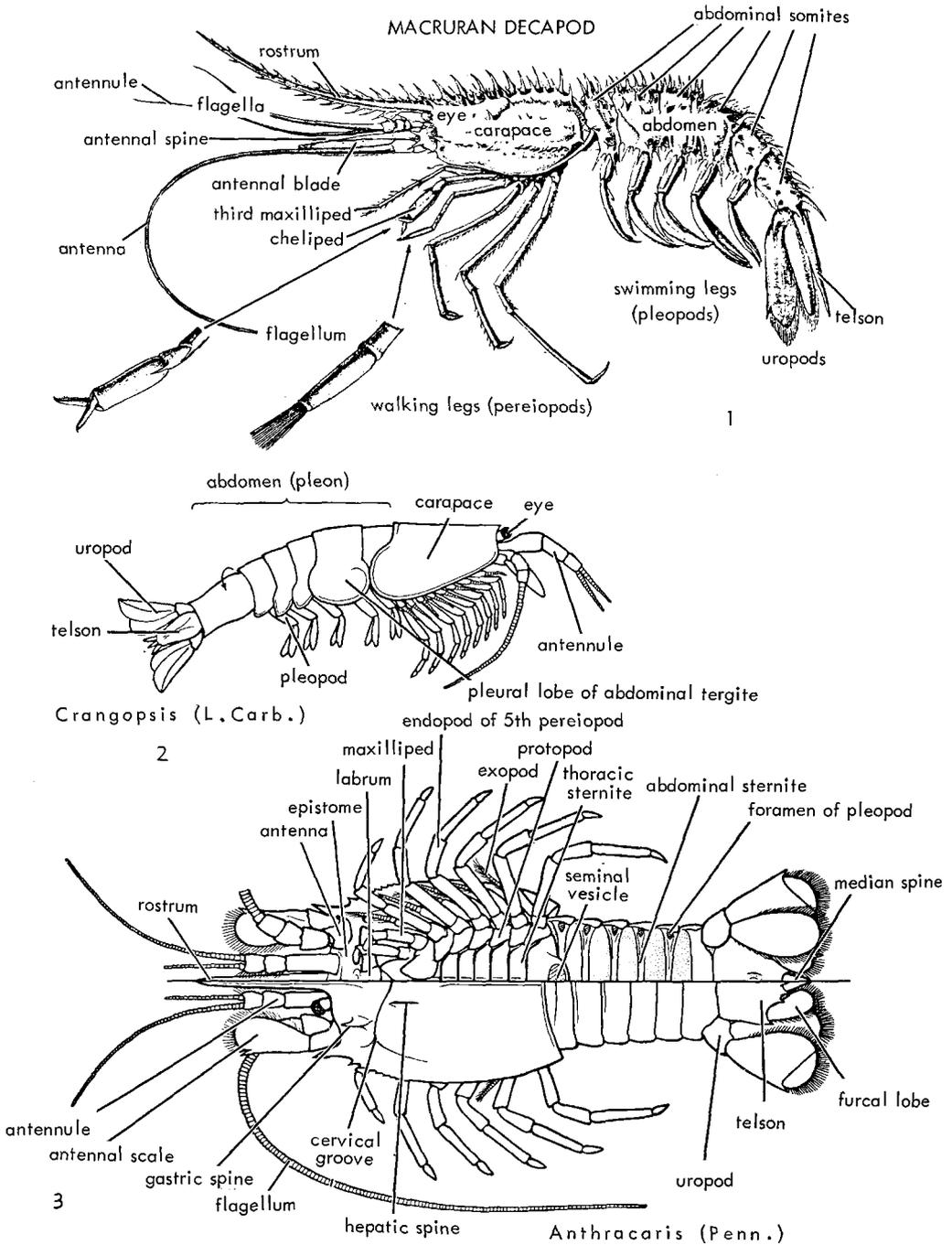


FIG. 17. Malacostracan crustaceans showing features of exoskeleton enclosing body and variously differentiated appendages.

1. Spinose living caridean, *Psalidopus spiniventris*, from Indian Ocean with unusually elongate rostrum projecting forward from carapace which covers head and thorax, with six abdominal

somites. Appendages of the cephalothoracic region include antennules, antennae, a visible maxilliped, and dissimilar sorts of pereiopods, among which the frontmost pair is unusual in

of the head region are reasonably consistent and diagnostic, whereas other parts of the body may vary considerably. Generally, parts of the crustacean body behind the head are differentiated in two major groups or tagmata of somites, anterior ones forming a **thorax** and posterior ones an **abdomen** (Fig. 17).

An **exoskeleton** consisting of hardened cuticle (L., *crusta*, hard shell) covers the soft parts of most crustaceans, including their appendages, and it even lines front and rear parts of the alimentary canal. This external integument is generally chitinoid but may be chitinous (Branchiopoda). Almost universally it is strengthened by calcareous deposits, sufficiently in some to develop extreme rigidity. Commonly, parts of the exoskeleton covering the body include in the anterior region a unified dorsal shield (**carapace**) with lateral extensions over the sides or developed as a hinged bivalve structure, and jointed segments covering rear parts of the body. The jointed appendages are encased in exoskeletal covers.

The vast majority of crustaceans are marine, ranging from near-shore shallow waters to the open ocean, where their distribution ranges from the surface to abyssal depths. Many are free-swimmers but some are planktonic floaters; others crawl about on the bottom or burrow in sediment, and a few (barnacles) live in fixed locations after attaining the adult stage. These sessile forms may be attached to almost any foreign object, including the shells of other marine invertebrates. Crustaceans also have invaded fresh waters of the land where they are found in streams, lakes, ponds, swamps, and even hot springs. A few have become air-breathers and thus adapted to terrestrial habitats (generally moist) far inland.

Only insects exceed crustaceans in numbers of individuals—at least this is generally considered to be so. Actually, crustaceans may considerably surpass insects in aggregate numbers, in view of the incredibly large populations of tiny marine copepods (“insects of the sea”) and ostracodes with ocean habitat, for the oceans are vastly greater in spatial extent than all land areas combined. Additional are similarly stupendous hordes of branchiopods and other crustaceans of continental waters and less abundant air-breathing terrestrial forms. Crustaceans do not remotely compete with insects in variety, however, since the estimated number of known species of crustaceans (40,000) (GRUNER & HOLTHUIS, 1967, p. iii, iv) is only 1/25 (0.04) of the approximate total of described species of insects (900,000) (Ross, 1965, p. 45) (nearly 1,000,000) (Wigglesworth, 1964, p. 1).

In comparing crustaceans with other main divisions (superclasses) of the Arthropoda some far-reaching resemblances are easily discernible, foremost of which are the jointed nature of nearly all body appendages, encasement of soft parts prevailing by an exoskeleton, division of the body into a series of more or less similar parts (somites) following one another in succession longitudinally but highly variable in number and distinctness (Table 1), and generally by well-developed articulations between segments of appendages and exoskeletal coverings of contiguous somites. As known to almost everyone, the name of the whole arthropod assemblage, signifying jointed foot, indicates a common denominator, though it must be admitted that some representatives hardly seem to qualify for membership.

FIG. 17. (Continued from facing page.)

- having chelae with two movable fingers, and the second in bearing terminal brushes for work as cleaners of skeletal parts. The abdomen carries five pairs of biramous swimming appendages and a tail fan composed of uropods and telson. (Mod. from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on Zoology*, by permission A. & C. Black, publ.)
2. Side view (reconstr.) of eocaridacean eocarid, *Crangopsis socialis* (SALTER), from Lower Carboniferous of Scotland,  $\times 3$ . The head and

thorax are concealed by a carapace unmarked by projections or grooves. Beneath the stalked eyes are robust antennules and antennae. The pereopods and pleopods are all biramous and very similar to one another within each group. Tail fan well developed (Brooks, 1962).

3. Ventral (upper part of figure) and dorsal (lower part) views of exoskeleton of pygocephalomorph eocarid, *Anthracaris gracilis* (MEEK & WORTHEN), from Pennsylvanian of Illinois,  $\times 1.7$ . The abdominal somites lack pleopods (Brooks, 1962).

Only a few distinguishing differences in arthropodan superclasses can be enumerated here. 1) Whereas crustaceans are characterized by biramous limbs and possession of two pairs of antennary appendages in front of the mouth, only trilobitomorpha also have biramous limbs and no non-crustacean arthropods are known to have more than a single pair of antennae. 2) Chelicerates are distinguished by the presence of one or more pairs of preoral pincer-bearing appendages (cheliceræ). Many crustaceans also possess chelate limbs, but invariably these are located posteriorly. Chelicerates lack antennae. 3) Onychophores and myriapods are elongate wormlike arthropods characterized by very numerous almost identical somites. Both have a single pair of antennae, and both lack biramous limbs, thus differing from crustaceans. 4) Hexapods possess one pair of antennae and six pairs of uniramous limbs. Many of them differ from all other arthropods in having wings and thus in being able to fly. 5) Pycnogonids (sea spiders) and the primitive aberrant ill-known Tardigrada and Pentastomida are so unlike Crustacea as to need no statement of distinctions.

As recorded by MANTON (p. R5), diagnostic distinctions among the main groups of arthropods relate to the number of paired postoral limbs used in feeding and the manner in which these operate. Crustaceans correspond to myriapods and hexapods in having the first three pairs of these limbs

(mandibles, maxillules, maxillae) largely or entirely employed for feeding, and additional limbs may be used similarly in Crustacea and certain Myriapoda. Crustaceans have gnathobasic jaws, biting with bases of the mandibles, whereas all myriapods and hexapods bite with the tips of the mandibles. In Trilobitomorpha homologous limbs are biramous appendages which appear to have served no function for aid in feeding. Chelicerates generally utilize the gnathobases of one or more pairs of postoral limbs for cutting and chewing food, but in manner quite unlike that of operating the crustacean gnathobases.

Observations of the habitats of arthropodan groups are worthy of mention in comparing crustaceans with other superclasses. Trilobitomorpha and Pycnogonida are exclusively marine. Crustacea are prevalently marine but include a minority of fresh-, brackish-, and hypersaline-water forms, as well as a few air-breathing terrestrial species. Hexapoda are overwhelmingly terrestrial arthropods, including fliers and burrowers, but some are fresh-water aquatic and a small number are adapted for life in the sea. Chelicerates are found in all environments, except the air. Myriapods and onychophores are mainly terrestrial, but taking account of the fossil record, some kinds appear to have been aquatic. Pentastomids and tardigrades, of insignificant importance, may not belong to Arthropoda.

## DIVERSITY OF GROUPS

### GENERAL STATEMENT

Antecedent to consideration of appropriate subjects of general scope relating to the Crustacea—comparative morphology of the body, nature and function of appendages, features of internal anatomy, various physiological systems, modes of reproduction, ontogenetic development, life habits, ecologic adaptations, distribution in time and space, and classification—it is desirable to survey briefly main attributes of the several distinct groups that are recognized. These are enumerated in a pre-

ceding chapter by MANTON in her tabulation of main divisions of Arthropoda (p. R13). The groups are considered in the order there given, which is followed also in the arrangement of systematic descriptions in subsequent pages of this volume.

Nineteenth-century students of the Crustacea prevalently divided them into two major assemblages, respectively named Entomostraca (insect-shelled) and Malacostraca (soft-shelled). From several viewpoints both are misnomers.

In the first group little more than average diminutive size and considerable range

TABLE 1. *Somites of Some Crustacean Groups and Appendages Borne by Them.*  
 [Somites are serially numbered from front to back (limbless eye-bearing anterior one of head region omitted). Data from Borradaile, *The Invertebrata* (4th edit.), 1963, and other sources.]

somite	CEPHALOCARIDA - Hutchinsoniella		NOTOSTRACA - Triops		MYSTACOCARIDA - Derocheilocaris		OSTRACODA - Cythere		COPEPODA - Cyclops		CIRRIPEDIA - Lepus		EOCRARIDA - Nebalia		SYNCARIDA - Eocaris		MYSIDACEA - Palaeoecaris		CUMACEA - Mysis		TANAIDACEA - Diastylis		ISOPODA - Ligidium		AMPHIPODA - Gammarus		DECAPODA - Astacus	
2	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	a	
3	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	
4	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	
5	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	?	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	mx	
6	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	?	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	Mx	
7	th	th	Mxp	th	Mxp	c ♀	th	Mxp	th	Mxp	th	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	Mxp	
8	th	th	th	th	th	c	th	Mxp	th	th	th	Mxp	th*	th	th*	th	th*	th	th*	th	th*	th	th*	th	th*	th	th*	
9	th	th	th	th	g ♂♀	th	c	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	
10	th	th	th	th ♂♀	th	c	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th*	
11	th	th	th	f f	th	c	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	
12	th ♂♀	th	0	th(g)	c ♂	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	th ♀	
13	th	th	0	g ♂♀	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	th	
14	th	th	0	0	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	th ♂	
15	g	th	0	0	p	p	p	p	p	0	p	p	p	p	0	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	
16	0	th	0	0	p	p	p	p	p	0	p	p	p	0	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	
17	0	th ♂♀	T	0	p	p	p	p	p	0	p	p	p	0	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	
18	0	p	f f	f f	p	p	p	p	p	0	p	p	p	u	p	p	u	p	u	p	u	p	u	p	u	p	p	
19	0	p			p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	u	p	p	u	p	u	p	u	p	u	p	u	p	p	
20	0	p			p	p	p	p	p	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	
21	0	p			0	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	(1)	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	
22	0	p			f f	f f	f f	f f	(1)																			
23	0	p			f f																							
24	0	p																										
25	0	p																										
26	T	p																										
27	f f	p																										
28		p																										
29		p																										
30		p																										
31		p																										
32		p																										
33		p																										
34		p																										
35 to 39		0																										
(variable)		T																										
		f f																										

EXPLANATION

- a = antennules
- A = antennae
- m = mandibles
- mx = maxillules
- Mx = maxillae
- Mxp = maxillipeds (thoracopods)
- th = thoracopods
- p = pleopods (or natatory limbs)
- u = uropods
- c = cirri (thoracopods of Cirripedia)
- 0 = limbless somite
- g = genital appendage
- T = telson (not true somite)
- f f = caudal furca
- ♂ = male genital aperture
- ♀ = female genital aperture
- \* = chelate or subchelate

(1) Note. Abdominal somites of female commonly lacking pleopods, those of male having variable number.

in form, besides the segmented body and generally similar appendages, remotely suggest the insects. The entomostracans, which include the branchiopods, ostracodes, copepods, and a few other kinds of crustaceans, collectively display characteristics less specialized or highly developed than those observed in the malacostracans and hence they have been considered to be low-rank divisions of Crustacea. Including extinct forms,

their diversity furnishes basis for present-day differentiation of them into eight independent classes (or subclasses as ranked by many zoologists).

Oppositely, the Malacostraca remain as a morphologically somewhat closely related assemblage having more complex structures and more advanced specializations than in other crustaceans, but except at times of molting they cannot qualify for designation

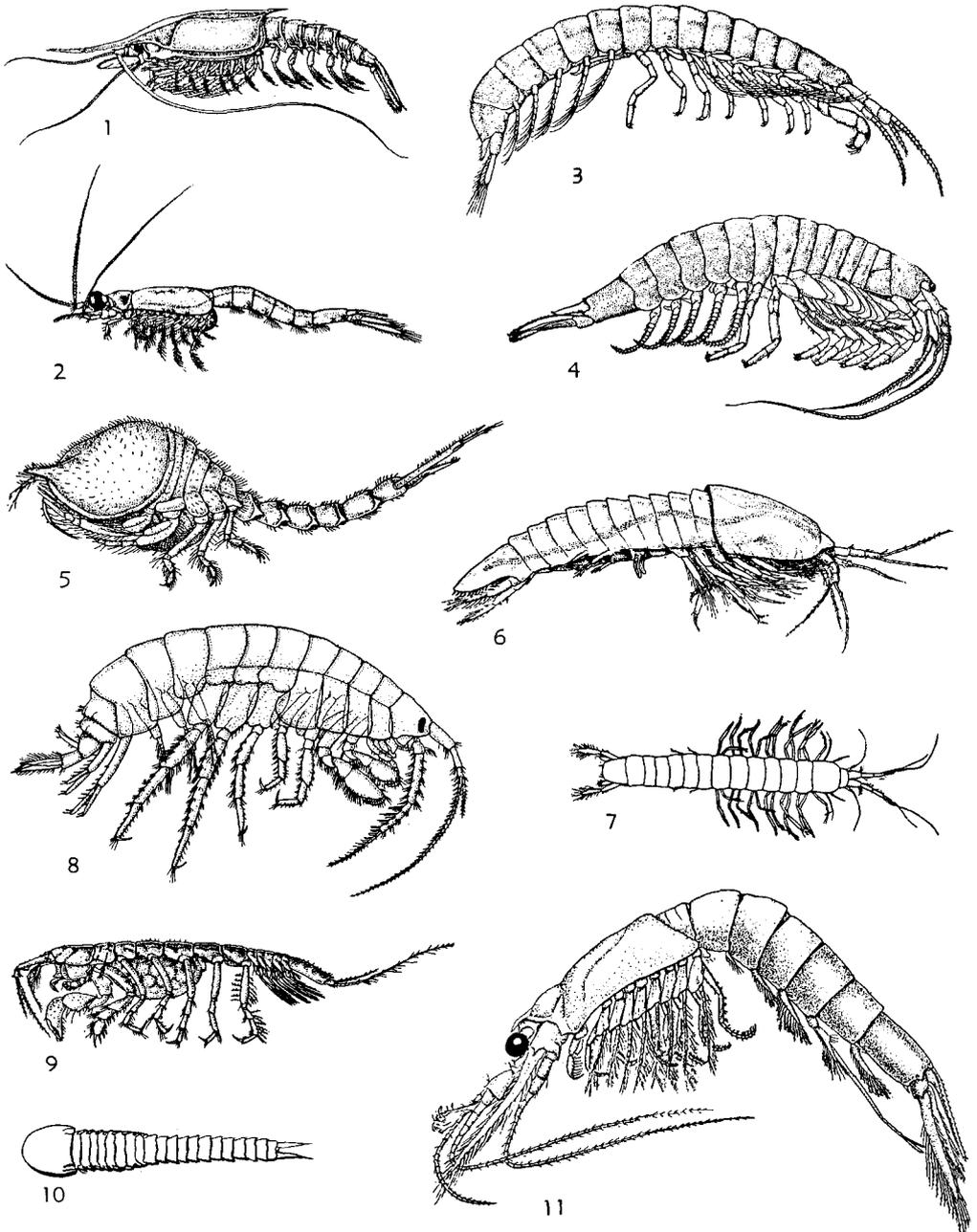


FIG. 18. Types of crustaceans illustrating diversity of groups, all extant.

1-2, 11. Mysidacean peracarids (Malacostraca).—1. *Gnathopausia zoea*, marine form from Atlantic off east coast of North America, characterized by possession of branched gills on some thoracopods,  $\times 0.3$ .—2. *Mysis relicta*, fresh-water form lacking gills, from North American Great Lakes,  $\times 2$ .—11. *Neomysis integer*, marine

form with smooth somites behind carapace, male from English Channel,  $\times 3.7$ . 3-4. Syncarids (Malacostraca), fresh-water.—3. *Koonunga cursor*, female from small stream near Melbourne, Australia,  $\times 7$ .—4. *Anaspides tasmaniae*, mountain shrimp from pool 3,500 feet above sea level in Tasmania, male,  $\times 2$ .

as soft-shelled. Many develop rock-hard exoskeletons or at least have a tough cuticle covering the body somites and appendages. The host of decapods, including lobsters, crabs, shrimps, and the like, together with less well-known groups (amphipods, isopods, mysidaceans, and others) belong to the Malacostraca.

### SIZE AND MODE OF LIFE

Adult crustaceans range in size from less than 0.25 mm. (0.01 inch), measured as maximum length or width, to a "wing spread" of outstretched appendages amounting to 12 feet (3.6 m.) in the giant spider crab (*Macrocheira kaempferi*) of Japan. If account is taken of the hugely preponderant number of diminutive crustaceans, as compared with species having maximum dimensions of 25 mm. (1 inch) or more, a conservative estimate indicates that the average size of all crustaceans cannot exceed 1 mm. Further, if weight is given to the uncountable trillions of tiny copepods, ostracodes, and branchiopods having adult sizes of 0.5 mm. or less to 1 mm. the grand average must be in the neighborhood of 0.7 mm. This is a relevant guess for the crustacean world as a whole, emphasizing the quantitative importance of diminutive forms which are unrivaled as direct or indirect food sources for most aquatic animal life, but otherwise it is unrealistic to compute averages of the many different kinds of crustaceans in terms of size.

Consideration of the mode of life and ecologic adaptations of different groups of crustaceans is reserved for a subsequent

section of this chapter. Here it is sufficient to note that the vast majority of these arthropods live in the sea, that they are most abundant in shallow waters of neritic belts and surface or near-surface waters of open oceans, that a few range to abyssal depths, and that crustaceans of land areas are predominantly aquatic forms found in fresh-water bodies or in saline lakes and ponds, as well as coastal lagoons. The temperature of crustacean-inhabited waters on land ranges from hot springs and spring-fed pools to icy cold, and levels at which crustaceans have been collected reach from more than 30,000 feet below sea level to at least 12,000 feet above sea level. A modest number of crustaceans are air-breathers which have acquired ability to travel about on land (e.g., numerous isopods, some amphipods), generally seeking out moist environments.

### CEPHALOCARIDS

Cephalocarids are diminutive crustaceans (length of adults 2 to 3.7 mm.) which live as burrowers in fine sediment distributed from slightly below low-tide level to 1,000 feet or more below sea level (SCHMITT, 1965, p. 42). They are blind and colorless. Since only four species are known, differentiation of them as a separate class may seem surprising. This is based on their extremely primitive nature, which precludes placement of them in any already-recognized crustacean group. Behind a horseshoe-shaped cephalon formed by five fused somites (in addition to an embryonic, partly hypothetical preantennary first somite with

FIG. 18. (Continued from facing page.)

5. Cumacean peracarid (Malacostraca); *Diastylis goodsiri*, female from Arctic Ocean showing head and thorax sharply marked off from abdomen,  $\times 3$ .
- 6-7. Thermosbaenacean peracarids (Malacostraca). —6. *Thermosbaena mirabilis*, male from hot-water pool in Tunisia,  $\times 20$ . —7. *Monodella halophila*, male from subterranean pool in Yugoslavia,  $\times 13$ .
8. Amphipod peracarid (Malacostraca); *Gammarus locusta*, fresh-water form from northern Europe, male,  $\times 3$ .
9. Tanaidacean peracarid (Malacostraca); *Apseudes spinosus*, female from North Atlantic,  $\times 7.5$ .
10. Cephalocarid; *Hutchinsoniella macracantha*, primitive shallow-water marine crustacean from Long Island Sound, showing rounded cephalon and subequal body somites,  $\times 11$ . [1-5, 8-9, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission A. & C. Black, publ.; 6, from T. Monod in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, by permission Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft, publ.; 7, 10 11, from T. Monod, H. L. Sanders, and K. Lang in *Encyclopedia of Science and Technology*, by permission, McGraw-Hill, publ., copyright 1960.]

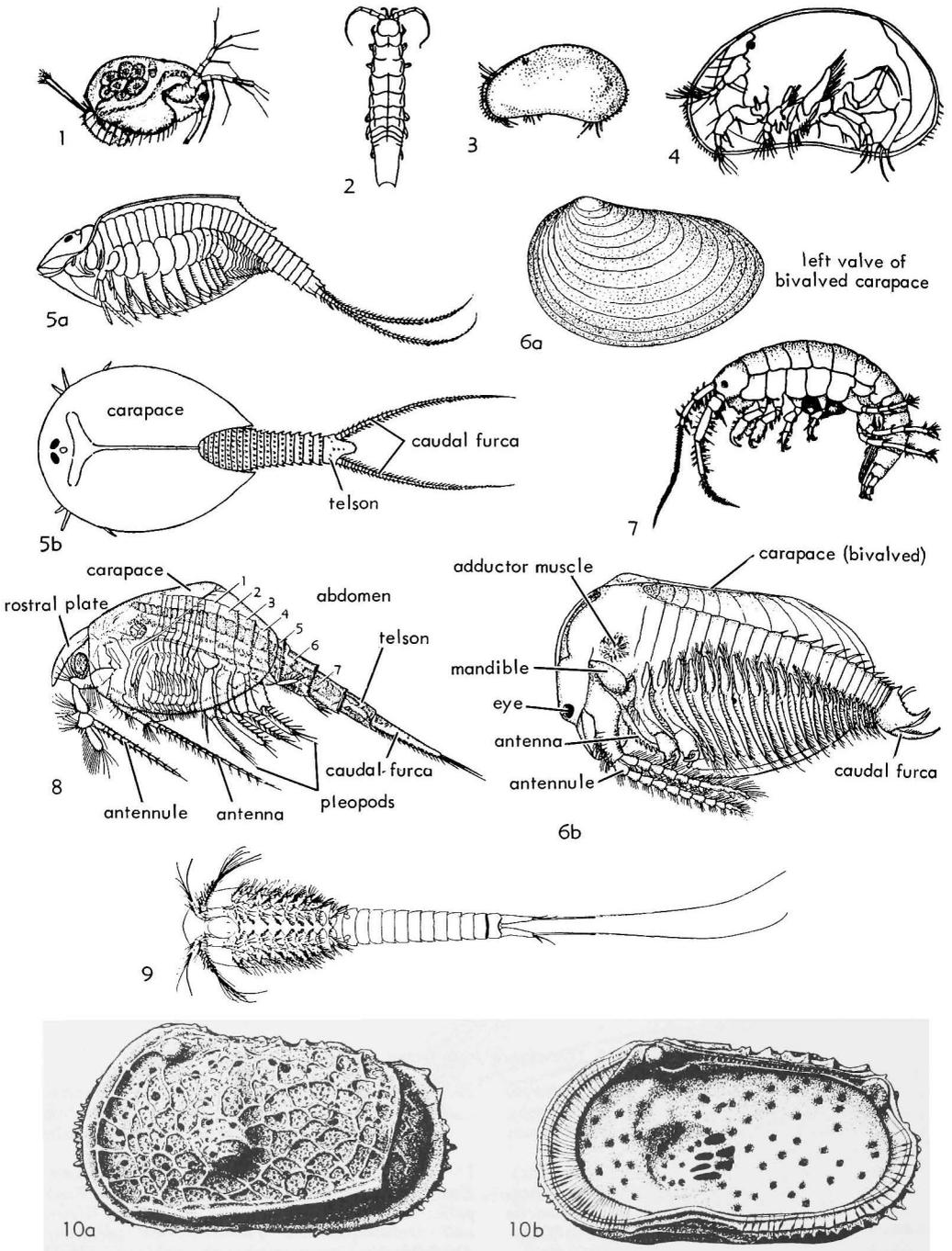


FIG. 19. Types of crustaceans illustrating diversity of groups, all extant.

1, 5-6. Branchiopoda.—1. Cladoceran, *Maerothrix rosea*, fresh-water, USA, enl.—5. Notostracan, *Lepidurus glacialis*, fresh-water, northern Eu-

rope; 5a,b, lateral with left part of carapace removed, and dorsal views,  $\times 1.7$ .—6. Conchostracan, *Cyzicus obliquus*, fresh-water, northern

eye rudiments—Fig. A of MANTON) are eight thoracic somites and 12 abdominal ones, each identical in all essential features to others (Fig. 18,10; 19,9) (Table 1). The maxillules and maxillae are nearly the same in structural pattern as the thoracic limbs (thoracopods), which display nearly complete lack of serial specialization. Simplicity of the digestive tube, ladder-like ventral nerve cord, and homology of musculature from somite to somite mark the cephalocarids as uniquely generalized crustaceans, interpretable as approaching morphological attributes of ancestors of the Crustacea.

### BRANCHIOPODS

Next to the cephalocarids, branchiopods are considered to be the most primitive living crustaceans, marked by morphological similarities of their numerous somites and multifilamentous limbs, and (commonly but not exclusively) by their filter-feeding mode of obtaining nourishment (Fig. 19,1,5-6). They swim about freely, mainly in continental waters ranging from fresh to hypersaline. Branchiopods (gill-feet), also known as phyllopods (leaf-feet), use their limbs for locomotion in swimming, for respiration, and for sieving water to extract food particles. They are mostly tiny, with length of adults 3 mm. or less, but in some groups (e.g., Notostraca) 15 to 30 mm. and exceptionally up to 90 mm. (LINDER, 1952). The head bears compound eyes, generally reduced and unsegmented antennules, biramous antennae, which may be relatively

large or reduced to rudiments, mandibles usually lacking palps, maxillules and maxillae varying reduced in most. Thoracic and abdominal somites are highly variable in number but commonly are numerous. The front part of the body usually is protected by a carapace (Fig. 19,5b-6a), but anostracan branchiopods lack this covering. Paired limbs range from as few as four pairs (Cladocera) to 70 (Notostraca) (Table 1). In all branchiopods the posterior part of the abdomen is limbless, and posterior somites of the thorax also may lack limbs. A caudal furca is present in nearly all forms, and the multiarticulate rami of this may be very long (Fig. 19,5a,b).

### MYSTACOCARIDS

Mystacocarids resemble cephalocarids in small size (length of adult 0.5 mm.), colorless subcylindrical slender body composed of similar somites, mode of life interstitial in near-shore sediment, and in being represented by only three known species. They also are primitive but have fewer and more specialized cephalic and thoracic appendages than the cephalocarids, in some respects suggesting those of copepods. The three known species all live in the interstitial environment of sand beaches.

### OSTRACODES

Ostracodes are ubiquitous, mainly marine crustaceans which are characterized mainly by their few somites (distinctly less numerous than in other classes, Table 1) and by

FIG. 19. (Continued from facing page.)

- Europe; 6a, left valve of female, enl.; 6b, side view of male with left valve removed, enl.
2. Isopod peracarid (Malacostraca); *Pentidotea resicata*, intertidal marine, off California, dorsal view,  $\times 0.6$ .
  - 3-4, 10. Ostracoda.—3-4. *Cylindroleberis* sp., fresh-water, northern Europe; 3, left valve exterior, enl.; 4, left side of animal with left valve removed, female, enl.—10. *Australicythere polylyca*, shallow-water marine form of southwestern Pacific, hemicytherid podocopid; 10a,b, left valve exterior and right valve interior, latter showing subcentral adductor muscle scars (clustered elongate black areas),  $\times 53$ .
  7. Amphipod peracarid (Malacostraca); *Amphipod* sp., intertidal marine form, Pacific off California coast,  $\times 0.7$ .
  8. Leptostracan phyllocarid (Malacostraca); *Nebalia bipes*, marine, left side of female from north Atlantic, with carapace shown as though transparent,  $\times 6$ .
  9. Cephalocarid, *Hutchinsoniella macracantha*, from Long Island Sound, ventral side showing thoracic appendages and caudal furca with very elongate rami,  $\times 14$ .
- [1-4, 7, from S. F. Light *et al.*, *Intertidal invertebrates of the central California coast*, by permission, University of California Press; 5-6, 8, from W.T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 9, from H. L. Sanders, 1963; 10, from R. H. Benson, 1966.]

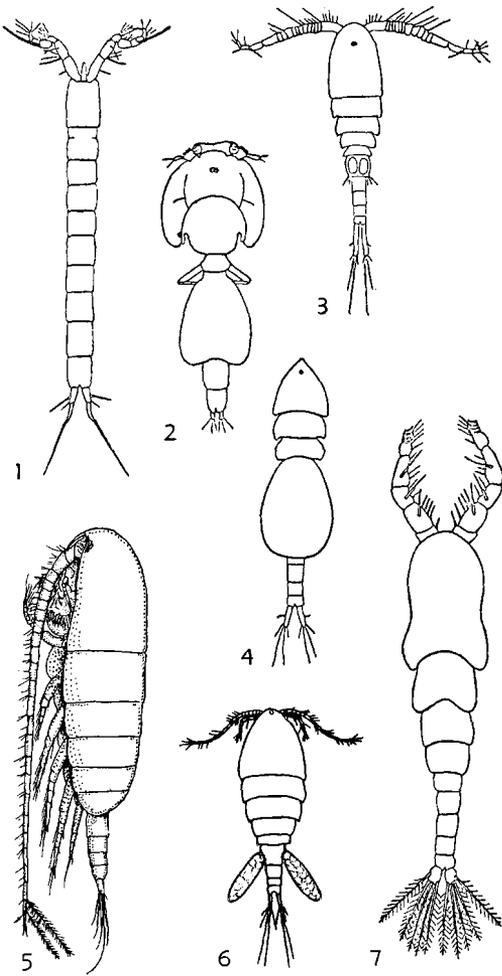


FIG. 20. Types of copepod crustaceans, all extant and chiefly marine.

1. Harpacticoid, *Evansula incerta*, characterized by elongate slender body, male,  $\times 53$ .
2. Caligoid, *Caligus mirabilis*, widely distributed external parasite on fishes,  $\times 33$ .
- 3, 6. Cyclopoids, *Cyclops bicuspidatus* and *Cyclops* sp., representing diminutive one-eyed fresh-water and marine group important as food source for fishes and other animals,  $\times 33$ ,  $\times 20$ .
4. Notodelphyoid, *Notodelphys agilis*, belonging to estuarine and marine environments, generally found in body cavity of sedentary tunicates,  $\times 10$ .
5. Calanoid, *Calanus finmarchicus*, among largest and most abundant pelagic copepods, this form characteristic of boreal waters, side view of female,  $\times 11$ .
7. Monstrilloid, *Monstrilla dudica*, diminutive planktonic copepod, free-swimming as adult but with immature form parasitic on marine invertebrates,  $\times 10$ .

enclosure of the head, entire body, and most of the appendages within a bivalved carapace (Fig. 19,3,4,10). Their extremely long geologic record (L.Cam.-Rec.) is rivaled only by the bivalved primitive malacostracans known as Phyllocarida. Ostracodes are much smaller than phyllocarids, having average length of adults barely more than 1 mm. (maximum 34 mm.) as compared with an average of approximately 10 mm. in modern phyllocarids (maximum 40 mm.) and nearly 200 mm. in some fossil forms. Both in ostracodes and most phyllocarids the carapace is hinged along the dorsal margin of the valves (Fig. 19,10). More than 1,000 genera of ostracodes have been described, among which extant ones only slightly exceed 10 percent.

The head region of ostracodes bears well-developed eyes, antennules, antennae, mandibles, maxillules, and maxillae. Two or three pairs of thoracic limbs are present and the posterior extremity of the abdomen is modified as a bilobed furca. The arrangement of antennary, mandibular, and adductor muscle scars on valve interiors and nature of the dorsal hingement are important for classification (Fig. 19,10b), as in different groups are other morphological features of the carapace (radial and pore canals, duplicature, surface ornament).

Ostracodes are mostly swimmers and they thrive on almost any kind of food. Some subsist by sucking juices of marine plants, some by feeding largely on diatoms. Copepods and other small organisms may be consumed in considerable quantities, and many ostracodes are scavengers which feed on any available dead tissue.

## EUTHYCARCINOIDS

Interesting but numerically insignificant crustaceans known only as fossils (Trias.) from central Europe and Australia are named euthycarcinoids. In peculiar manner

[1-4, 7, from Wilson, 1932; 5, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*; by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 6, from S. F. Light *et al.*, *Intertidal invertebrates of the central California coast*, by permission, University of California Press.]

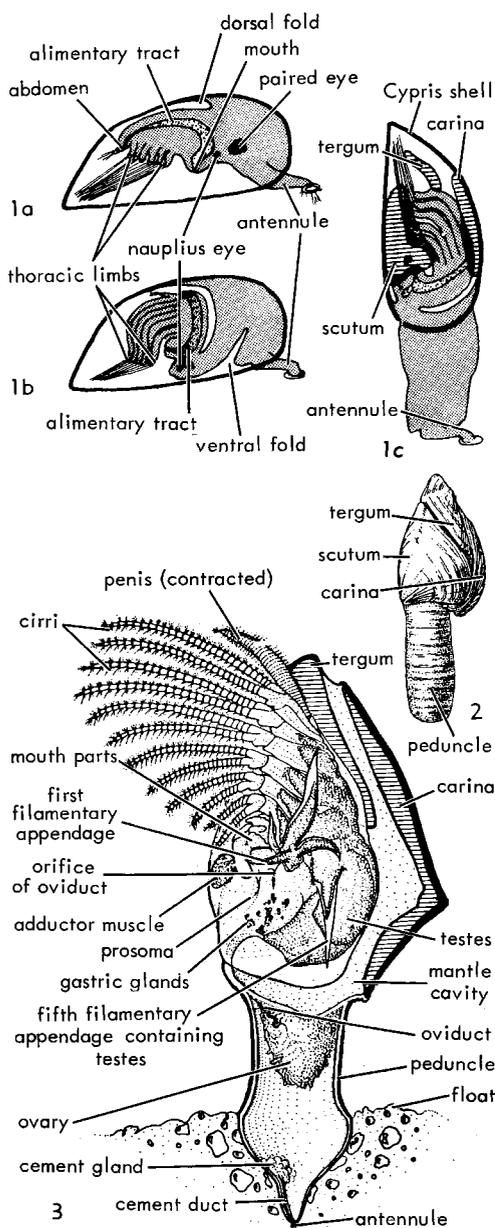


FIG. 21. Types of extant crustaceans—cirripeds.

1. *Lepas* sp., immature stages proving crustacean nature of cirripeds; 1a,b, free-swimming cypris larvae, much enl.; 1c, initial attached stage, much enl.
2. *Lepas anatifera*, goose-neck barnacle from North Sea showing stout, moderately flexible stalk,  $\times 1$ .
3. *Lepas fascicularis*, lepadomorph thoracican barnacle from north Atlantic, with calcareous plates on right side of body removed to show enclosed

they appear to combine some characteristics of merostome chelicerates and diplopod myriapods, both of which are distantly related at best to crustaceans. Even so, the euthycarcinoids are thought to have closest affinities with the Crustacea.

Moderately large arthropods (average length of adults 40 mm., maximum 65 mm.), somites of the head region are fused together. Preoral appendages identified as antennules and antennae are crustacean attributes. The first thoracic somite, attached to the head, bears appendages considered to have functioned as maxillipeds. Pairs of thoracopods borne by 11 somites of the thorax behind the first one are uniramous, multijointed, and equipped with long setae adapted for swimming. The five abdominal somites are limbless, the posterior one being followed by a long *Limulus*-like telson.

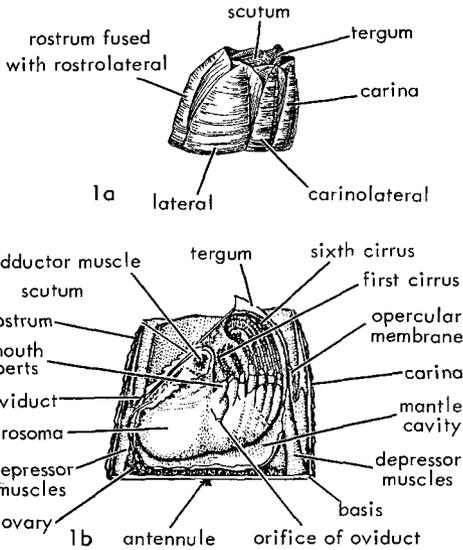
### COPEPODS

Much the most abundant of all marine animals are crustaceans belonging to the class Copepoda (Table 1, Fig. 20). A majority are benthonic free-swimmers, or planktonic floaters, but very numerous kinds are parasites as adults which infest fishes, such mammals as whales, and many invertebrates, including other crustaceans. Free-living copepods usually range in size from less than 0.5 mm. to about 10 mm. in length. One of the largest parasitic forms (*Penella*) may be more than 300 mm. long, with trailing egg sacs approximately equal in length (overall some 2 feet).

Copepods lack compound eyes and have no carapace. Typically, they possess long antennules and short antennae, six pairs of thoracic limbs, and a limbless abdomen. The thoracopods are biramous, except for the first pair which invariably is uniramous and the last pair which also may be uniramous.

---

body and thoracic appendages (cirri),  $\times 1.8$ . [1-2, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 3, from D. P. Henry in *Encyclopedia of science and technology*, by permission, McGraw-Hill, publ., copyright 1960.]



Many copepods inhabit fresh waters, and it happens that the only known fossils occur in Miocene lake deposits. Despite what must have been vast numbers of marine Cenozoic forms, probable Mesozoic, and possible Paleozoic copepods, such representatives of the class are lacking in the paleontological record.

**BRANCHIURANS**

Branchiurans, unknown as fossils, are ectoparasites on marine and fresh-water fishes—hence are called fish lice. They have a disc-shaped cephalothorax 5 to 25 mm. in diameter with dorsal compound eyes and ventral suckorial cups for attachment to the host in some. The limbless abdomen lacks somite divisions.

**CIRRIPEDS**

The cirripeds are a varied group of highly modified crustaceans characterized by permanent fixation of adults, lacking compound eyes except in larval stages. In the order named Thoracica, which includes the barnacles and which alone is represented by fossils, the body, with head end downward, is enclosed by movable or somewhat firmly united calcareous plates (Fig. 21, 22). Six pairs of upwardly directed biramous thoracic limbs (called cirri) function in producing water currents by back-and-forth and inward-drawing movements which serve for gathering food particles carried to the mouth (Table 1). Abdominal somites are lacking.

Some barnacles attach themselves to the shells of sea turtles or to flippers, flukes, and jaws of whales (Fig. 22,2), as well as to

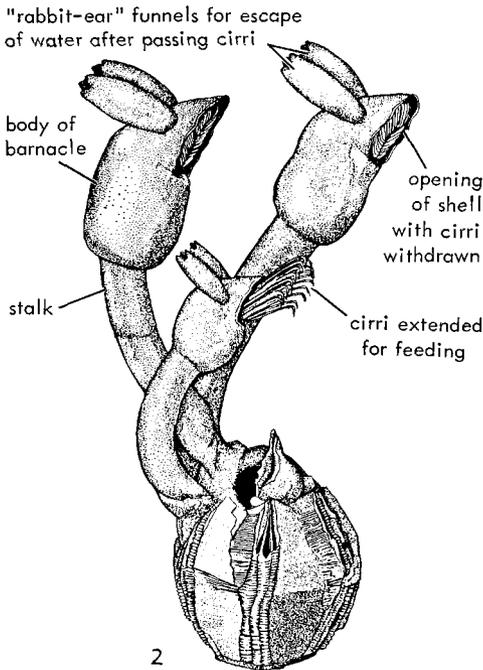


FIG. 22. Types of extant crustaceans—cirripeds.

1. *Balanus hameri*, balanomorph thoracican barnacle from north Atlantic; 1a, side view of calcareous shell showing component valves, X1; 1b, same with part of shell removed to show body of cirriped within it, X2.
2. Whale barnacles, which live attached to whales and are carried about by these hosts, illustrating a commensal rather than parasitic association;

subglobular acorn barnacle (*Coronula diadema*) below and three rabbit-eared goose-neck barnacles (*Conchoderma auritum*) fastened to the acorn barnacle, ears oriented toward tail of swimming whale, X0.7.

[1a, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 1b, from D. P. Henry in *Encyclopedia of science and technology*, by permission, McGraw-Hill, publ., copyright 1960; 2, from MacGinitie & MacGinitie, *Natural history of marine animals*, by permission, McGraw-Hill, publ., copyright 1949.]

some other marine animals, different kinds of barnacles showing high specificity not only in choosing particular hosts but in their location on the host. Because the uninvited crustacean travelers which are carried about in this manner do not derive nourishment from their host or seem to harm it in any way, these barnacles are not true external parasites but simply are benefitted by their life-long free ride in presumably food-rich waters.

Other groups of cirripeds are distinguished by lack of skeletal covers, some by less than six pairs of thoracopods, or none at all, and some by extreme adaptation for parasitic mode of life (e.g., *Sacculina*, which lacks an alimentary tract and has no appendages).

### MALACOSTRACANS

Most highly developed, greatly varied, and generally considered most representative of the Crustacea are groups brought together in the class Malacostraca. Collectively, these are distinguished by the possession of compound eyes which in many are borne on stalks near front of the head, by a thorax composed of eight somites which typically is covered by a carapace (Fig. 17) (Table 1), and by an abdomen of six or seven somites, most of which generally bear pairs of appendages. Malacostracans vary widely in shape and size, ranging from diminutive forms only 2 or 3 mm. in length to the giant Japanese crab with 3.6 m. spread of its front limbs. They live in all sorts of environments, but chiefly in shallow seas not far from coasts. Relatively numerous as fossils, although much less so than ostracodes, their paleontologic record equals that of the ostracodes in extending probably from Lower Cambrian to Recent.

### PHYLLOCARIDS

The phyllocarid malacostracans are characterized by the presence of a proportionally large bivalved carapace which may be hinged along the dorsal margin as in ostracodes or may lack such hingement. The carapace is not fused to any of the

thoracic somites. Eyes are stalked. The thoracic limbs are all alike, consisting of biramous, usually foliaceous ventral appendages of the somites. The abdomen, which is relatively slender, has seven somites, with pleopods borne by all except the hindmost one. A telson with caudal furca is present (Table 1, Fig. 19,8). Leptostracans, which are the only extant phyllocarids, mostly do not exceed a length of 12 mm. in adults but some more than three times as large are known. Archaeostracans (L.Ord.-U. Trias.) may attain a length of 75 cm. Modern phyllocarids are chiefly inhabitants of shallow seas, but they range to a depth of at least 2,500 m.

### EOCARIDS

Exclusive of the phyllocarids, all malacostracans are grouped together in the subclass Eumalacostraca, and of these the oldest and only division not represented by living forms comprises the Eocarida. Eocarids are caridoid (shrimplike) crustaceans with a moderately large carapace which is not fused to the thoracic somites (Fig. 17,2,3). It bears a single transverse groove. The thoracic limbs are biramous and closely similar to one another, with protopod consisting of a single segment. Diagnostic features are furcal lobes and a median articulated spine on the telson attached to the sixth abdominal somite (Table 1).

### SYNCARIDS

The syncarids are mainly characterized by entire lack of a carapace, evidence from fossils, which include moderately common late Paleozoic and some Mesozoic forms, indicating that absence of this body cover is a primary feature, rather than secondary, as in certain isopods, amphipods, and cumaceans (Fig. 18,3,4). In different genera the eyes are stalked, sessile, or absent. The pereopods are biramous and none are chelate or subchelate. A seminal receptacle may be present but no egg-carrying structures (oostegites) on appendages. Although modern syncarids are fresh-water crustaceans (excepting a single brackish-water species at mouth of the Amazon), Brooks (*Treatise*,

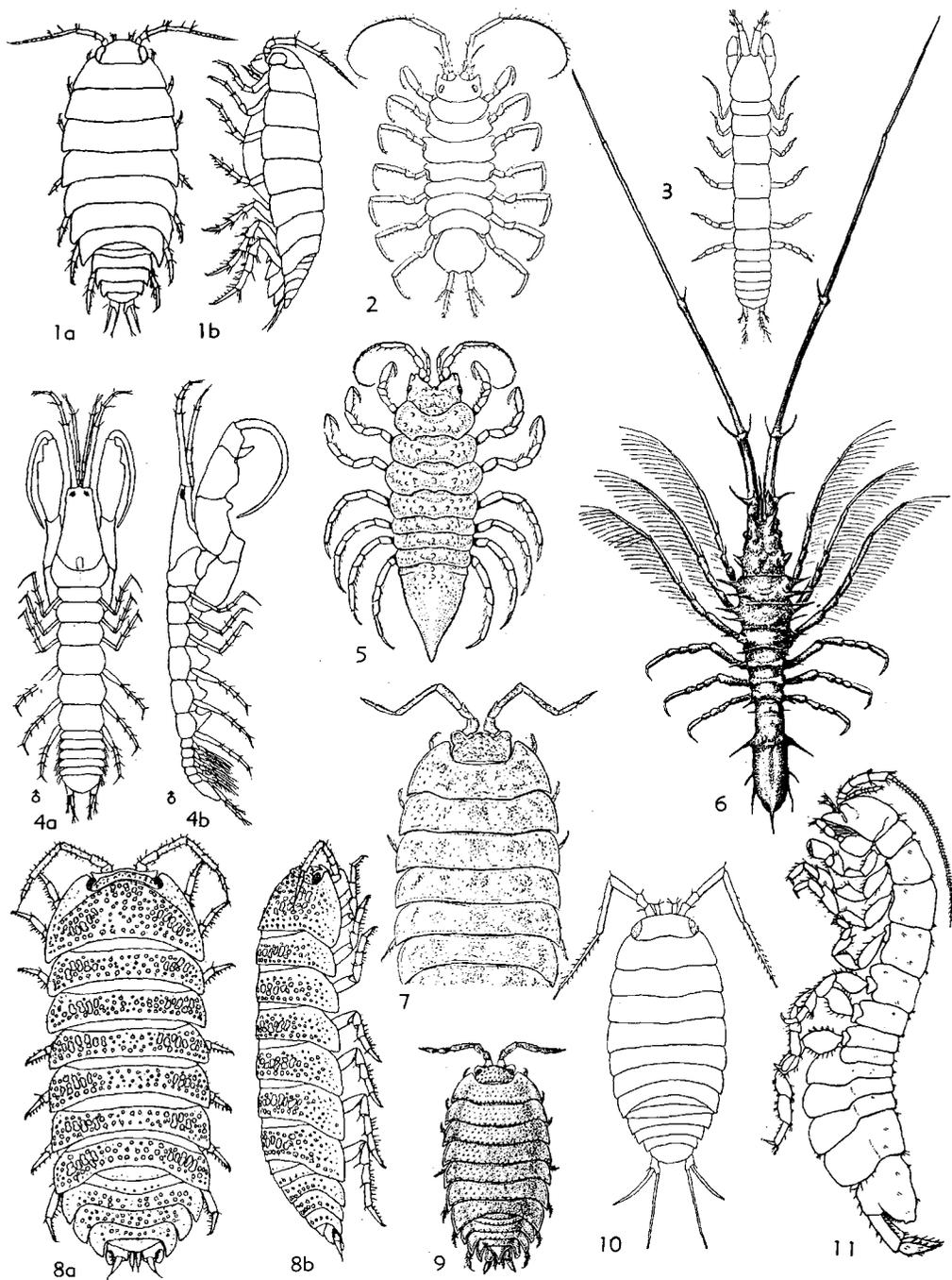


FIG. 23. Types of crustaceans illustrating diversity of groups, all extant—isopod and tanaidacean peracarids (Malacostraca).

1, 7-10. Oniscoid terrestrial isopods.—1. *Ligidium hypnorum*, inhabiting damp forests, northwestern Europe; 1a,b, dorsal and side views of female,  $\times 4$ .—7. *Porcellio spinicornis*, female

from New York,  $\times 3$ .—8. *Scleropactes zeteki*, female from Panama; 8a,b, dorsal and side views,  $\times 3.5$ .—9. *Porcellio scaber*, female from northern Europe,  $\times 2$ .—10. *Ligidium*

p. R352) judges that nearly all Paleozoic forms undoubtedly were marine. The relatively indistinct differentiation of thorax and abdomen found in this group is a primitive character possessed by no other malacostracan.

## PERACARIDS

A very large assemblage of malacostracans which includes most kinds not classed as decapods or stomatopods is placed in the superorder Peracarida. The most important peracarid groups are amphipods (nearly 4,000 extant species), isopods (approximately 3,000 Recent species) cumaceans (700 modern forms), mysidaceans (more than 500 extant species), and tanaidaceans (at least 350 living species). In addition, each of the mentioned divisions is represented by fossils, oldest of which are Permian isopods, cumaceans, and tanaidaceans (ignoring the order Anthracocaridacea, two Mississippian genera, tentatively classed as peracarids).

The chief common characteristics of the Peracarida are invariable fusion of the first thoracic somite to the cephalon, carapace (when present) never fused to more than four thoracic somites, peduncles of antennae typically three-segmented, mandibles with movable structure termed the lacinia mobilis in all but parasitic and highly specialized forms, first pair of thoracopods modified as maxillipeds, eggs and young nearly always carried in a marsupium formed by oostegites (Fig. 18,1,2). Comparative information on somites of peracarids and their appendages is given in Table 1. Peracarid eyes may be stalked or sessile, but at least two small

subterranean species of minor groups (Spelaeogriphacea, Thermosbaenacea, Fig. 6-7) are blind, as are several burrowing or cave-dwelling isopods and amphipods.

A majority of peracarid species are marine shallow-water crustaceans, but many descend to abyssal depths. Isopods, amphipods, and tanaidaceans are both marine and non-marine, mysidaceans and cumaceans predominantly marine, and remaining minor peracarid groups restricted to continental waters.

## MYSIDACEANS

Mysidaceans, because of their shrimplike form and possession of a well-developed carapace for protection of the head and thorax, are interpreted to be more generalized, and hence more primitive than other peracarid crustaceans. Commonly, adults range in length from 12 to 20 mm. (maximum 200 mm.). They have movable stalked eyes, biramous antennules, and antennae with scalelike exopods. The first one, two, or three (rarely four) thoracic somites are fused to the cephalon and appendages of the first one or two are modified to function as maxillipeds (Table 1, Fig. 18,1,2,11). Ramified gills occur at the base of thoracopods in some and abdominal limbs may function as swimming organs (pleopods). A well-defined tail fan is formed by a pair of uropods and median telson. The mysidaceans are widely distributed, essentially pelagic animals which commonly migrate vertically during day and night, but they also live on the sea bottom and even burrow into it temporarily. A very few are found in fresh waters. They

FIG. 23. (Continued from facing page.)

1. *longicaudatum*, female from eastern USA,  $\times 3$ .
2. Asellote marine isopod, *Janira alta*, from east coast of USA, dorsal view,  $\times 3.3$ .
3. Marine tanaidacean, *Heterotanais limicola*, dorsal view of female from Massachusetts Bay,  $\times 14$ .
4. Fresh-water tanaidacean, *Nototanais beebei*, taken from stomach of catfish in British Guiana; 4a,b, dorsal and side views,  $\times 25$ .
- 5-6. Valviferan marine isopods.—5. *Synidotea muricata*, from near-shore off Arctic coast of

- Alaska,  $\times 11.7$ .—6. *Arcturus purpureus*, female from north Atlantic at depth of 900 m.,  $\times 2.5$ .
  11. Phreatoicid fresh-water isopod, *Phreatoicus assimilis*, amphipod-like female from northern Europe,  $\times 5$ .
- [1, 4, 8 from Van Name, 1936; 2-3, 5-7, 10 from Richardson, 1905; 9, 11 from W. T. Calman in Lankester, *Treatise on Zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.]

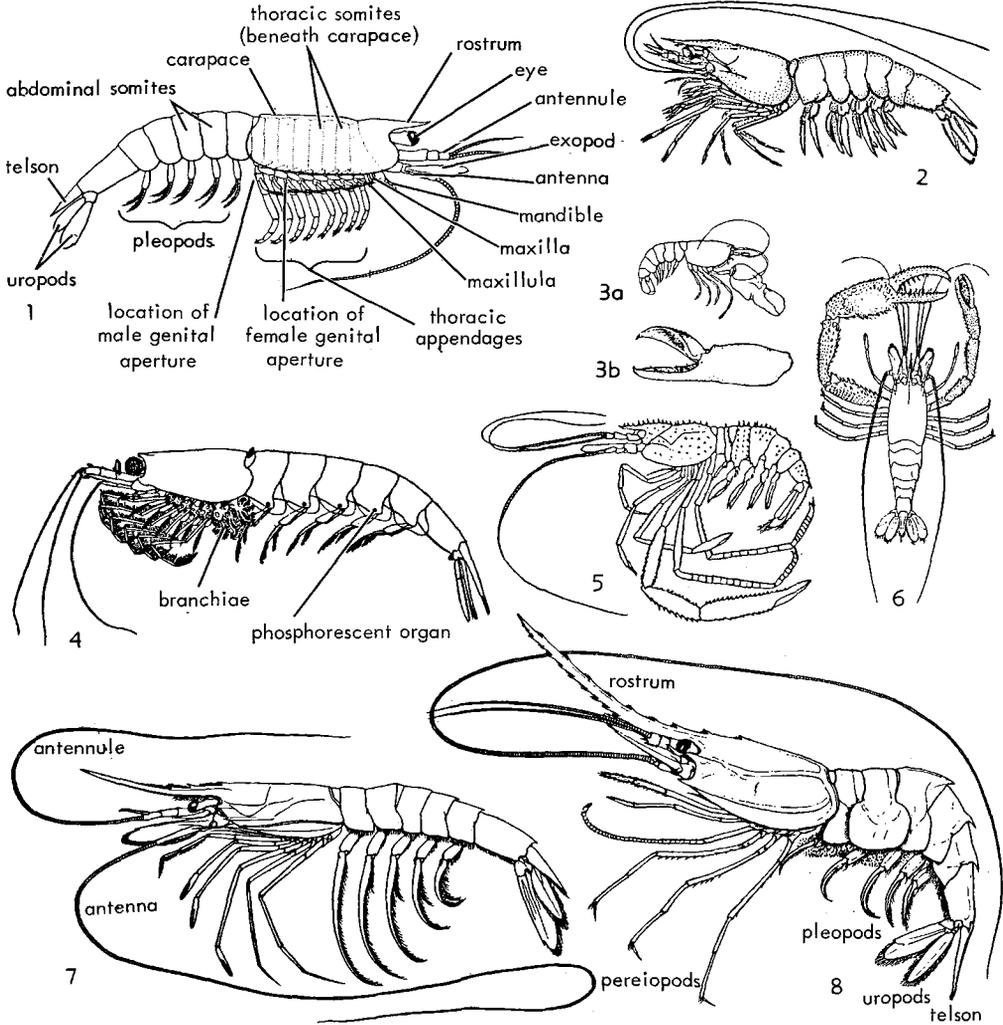


FIG. 24. Types of crustaceans illustrating diversity of groups, all extant eucarid Malacostraca.

1. Generalized macruran decapod showing morphological elements of exoskeleton, and "caridoid facies."
2. Penaeid prawn, *Penaeus setiferus*, jumbo shrimp abundant in warm-waters of Gulf of Mexico,  $\times 0.25$ .
3. Snapping shrimp, *Alpheus heterochelis*, provided with over-developed first pair of pereopods capable of making loud popping noises; 3a, side view,  $\times 0.5$ ; 3b, distal part of cheliped,  $\times 1.3$ .
4. Euphausiid, *Meganctiphanes norvegica*, wide-ranging pelagic crustacean characterized by phosphorescent organs on abdominal pleura and large light-sensitive eyes,  $\times 0.8$ . Euphausiids are a main food source for whales.
5. Stenopodid shrimp, *Stenopus hispidus*, distinguished by prominence of third pair of chelate pereopods,  $\times 0.6$ .
6. Tropical fresh-water prawn, *Macrobrachium faustum*, characterized by exceptionally long chelate second pereopods and in some species large size (to length of 30 cm. or more),  $\times 0.3$ .
7. Deep-sea penaeid prawn, *Aristeus coruscans*, with very elongate antennules and antennae, glands at base of latter emitting phosphorescence,  $\times 0.3$ .
8. Caridean prawn, *Heterocarpus alphonssi*, marked by prominent spinose rostrum, first pereopods developed as prominent maxillipeds, third pair with multiarticulate distal parts, and humped abdomen,  $\times 0.7$ .

[1, 7-8, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 2-3; 5-6, from F. A. Chace in *Encyclopedia of science and technology*, by permission, McGraw-Hill, publ., copyright 1960; 4, from Watase in Borradaile & Potts, *The Invertebrata* (4th edit., 1963), by permission, Cambridge University, publ.]

are mostly carnivorous predators and scavengers, but also are filter-feeders and plant-eaters. Chiefly Recent, a few fossil forms are known from Triassic and Jurassic formations.

## CUMACEANS

A well-developed carapace covers the anterior part of the thorax and projects in front of the head of cumaceans. It is fused to at least the first three thoracomeres, in some also to the fourth, and rarely to fifth and sixth somites. Laterally expanded parts of the carapace provide gill chambers. Eyes are sessile (when present) and usually joined together as a single median sight organ. The antennules may be biramous, the antennae without exopods, and the first three thoracopods are modified as maxillipeds (Table 1, Fig. 18,5). The slender abdomen is sharply set off from the thorax, its somites limbless in females but some of them bearing pleopods in males. A pair of slender spikelike uropods and telson, which may be absent, do not form a tail fan.

Cumaceans mostly range in length of adults from 1 to 12 mm., but a few of them reach a length of 35 mm. They are marine, near-coast to abyssal bottom-dwellers which burrow in mud or sand with the front of the carapace protruding. A few brackish- and fresh-water species are known. Their stratigraphic range is Upper Permian to Recent.

## TANAIDACEANS

The body of tanaidaceans is cylindrical or somewhat depressed and nearly uniform in width throughout. It is diminutive, for very few adults are more than 10 mm. long, not counting forward and backward projecting appendages. As a group, these peracarids are distinguished by shortness of their carapace, which extends from the head over only two thoracic somites (Fig. 18,9). It is fused to these somites and lacks lateral expansions such as those of cumaceans but provides very small gill chambers. If eyes are present, they are located on short immovable stalks. The first pair of thoracopods are developed as maxillipeds; the second

ones are chelate, generally with large chelipeds. Although the abdomen is abbreviated, its somites are distinct;<sup>1</sup> pleopods may be present or absent and the pair of terminal filiform uropods does not form a tail fan (Table 1).

Tanaidaceans are almost exclusively sea-bottom-dwellers inhabiting burrows. They are distributed from strand lines to depths of 6,000 m. A few forms are found in brackish waters. The group ranges from Permian to Recent.

## ISOPODS

In isopods a carapace has disappeared, so that the head with its sessile eyes and all somites are exposed. Body shapes are many, but nearly all are depressed. Limbs of the first thoracic somite (or rarely first two) function as maxillipeds and those of the remaining seven are nonchelate uniramous pereopods (Table 1, Fig. 19,2). Most isopods do not have the equal legs called for by their name. Commonly the pereopods are divided into groups, the first three being directed forward, the fourth one sideward, and the fifth to seventh backward (Fig. 23,1,9) or they may display a different arrangement (Fig. 23,2-6,8,11). Also, these groups tend to be specialized in different ways. The coxopodites of the thoracic limbs may be fused with the pleura so that in females the plates (oostegites) which form a brood pouch appear to arise from the sterna. Appendages of the abdominal somites of isopods are pleopods with broad platelike endopodites and exopodites adapted both for swimming and respiration. Pleopods may develop air-breathing pseudotracheae in terrestrial forms. A feature of some isopods is ability to roll up their body into a ball with only the dorsal side of the somites exposed, the ventral side and appendages being tucked neatly inside.

Isopods are both predatory and scavengers with biting mouth parts. Some feed on wood and sea weeds. A few kinds infest fishes and other crustaceans as parasites.

Typical isopods range in length from 1 to 20 mm. Greatest size is attained by

<sup>1</sup> Last somite (6th) is fused with telson, as in isopods.

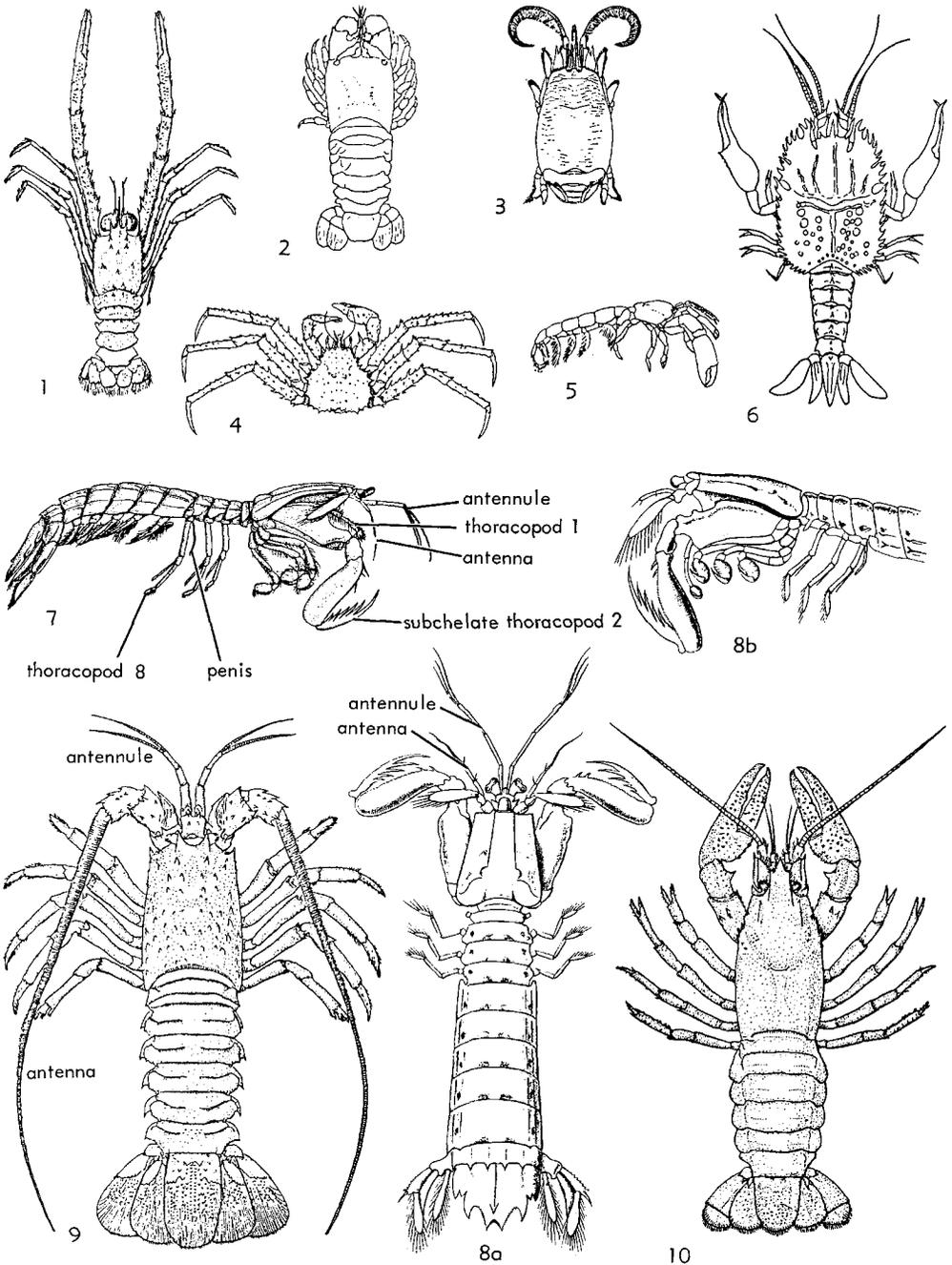


FIG. 25. Types of crustaceans illustrating diversity of groups, all extant Malacostraca.

1-2, 5-6, 9-10. Lobster-like decapods.—1. Galatheid anomuran, *Munida evermanni*, marine form with long slender chelipeds, symmetrical abdomen with broad tail fan used for swift

backward swimming,  $\times 0.7$ .—2. Shovel-nosed Spanish lobster, *Scyllaridia aequinoctialis*, marked by absence of rostrum and chelae, stoutly armored,  $\times 0.15$ .—5. Mud shrimp, *Cal-*

an abyssal isopod (*Bathynomus*), some individuals of which range from 200 to 300 mm. in length.

The recorded geologic range of isopod peracarids is Triassic to Recent.

## AMPHIPODS

The amphipods, commonly called sandhoppers on beaches and scuds in aquatic environments, correspond to isopods in lacking a carapace and in having unstalked sessile eyes. They are medium-sized crustaceans (adult length 3 to 12 mm., maximum 140 mm.) which prevailingly differ from isopods in the laterally compressed form of their body, rather than dorsoventral flattening. The first and second thoracic somites are fused to the cephalon<sup>1</sup> (Fig. 18,8; 19,7). The thoracic limbs lack exopodites, the first pair being modified as maxillipeds, the second and third pairs usually chelate or subchelate and prehensile, and others having more than one form (Table 1). In general, amphipods are poor walkers. The abdominal appendages generally consist of three pairs of multiarticulate pleopods next behind the thorax and others resembling uropods not developed as a fan tail.<sup>2</sup> The last three pairs of abdominal limbs are used by sandhoppers to kick the ground in jumping.

Amphipods are most abundant in marine environments, ranging from the shore line

<sup>1</sup> In Caprellidea, but only first thoracic somite in Gammaridea.

<sup>2</sup> Except in Hyperidea, for example.

to abyssal depths. Approximately 15 percent of described species inhabit fresh waters of continents and islands distributed from virtual sea level to an altitude of at least 4,000 m. Some 80 species are air-breathing forms. Excluding some Devonian tracks and trails doubtfully attributed to amphipods, the geologic distribution of amphipods is recorded from Eocene to Recent.

## EUCARIDS

Malacostracans with the carapace fused dorsally to all somites of the thorax are classified as eucarids, chief kinds of which are the familiar shrimps, prawns, crayfishes, lobsters, and crabs belonging to the Decapoda (Fig. 17,1; 24,1-8; 25,1-6,9-10; 26,1-12; 27,1). Eucarids differ from the peracarids in lacking brood pouches formed by oostegites in females and absence of the movable structure called lacinia mobilis on the mandible, as well as in more obvious morphological distinctions. All eucarids have stalked eyes. Besides the decapods, crustaceans designated as euphausiaceans are included in this assemblage.

## EUPHAUSIACEANS

Euphausiaceans are medium-sized (adult length 20 to 30 mm., maximum 90 mm.) shrimplike forms (Fig. 24,4), not very numerous as to species (about 85 in two families) but abundant enough in all oceans to furnish the major food of whales, one of which may gulp down two or three tons

FIG. 25. (Continued from facing page.)

- liamidea laevicauda*, thin-shelled burrower with large chelate first pereopods,  $\times 0.3$ .—6. Blind, deep-sea eryonid decapod, *Polycheles crucifer*, with relatively thin shell, carapace laterally widened and dorsally flattened,  $\times 1.1$ .—9. Commercially important spiny lobster or langouste, *Panulirus interruptus*, heavily armored decapods lacking rostrum and chelae,  $\times 0.12$ .—10. Fresh-water crayfish, *Orconectes limosus*, with firm shell, large chelipeds, and short rostrum,  $\times 0.8$ .
- 3-4. Anomura.—3. Mole crab, *Emerita talpoida*, shallow-sea mud-burrower marked by elongate oval carapace and short nonchelate limbs,  $\times 0.9$ .—4. Free-moving king crab, *Lithodes maja*, relative of hermit crabs with asymmetrically ar-

- ranged abdominal plates in females, living on well off-shore sea bottoms,  $\times 0.6$ .
- 7-8. Stomatopods, characterized by powerful raptorial subchelae of second pereopods, posterior thoracic somites resembling those of elongate abdomen.—7. *Squilla mantis*, side view of male,  $\times 0.7$ .—8. *Squilla desmaresti*; 8a,b, dorsal and side views of male,  $\times 0.8$ .
- [1-6, 9-10, from F. A. Chace in *Encyclopedia of science and technology*, by permission, McGraw-Hill, publ., copyright 1960; 7, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 8, from A. Gerstaecker in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, by permission, Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft, publ.]

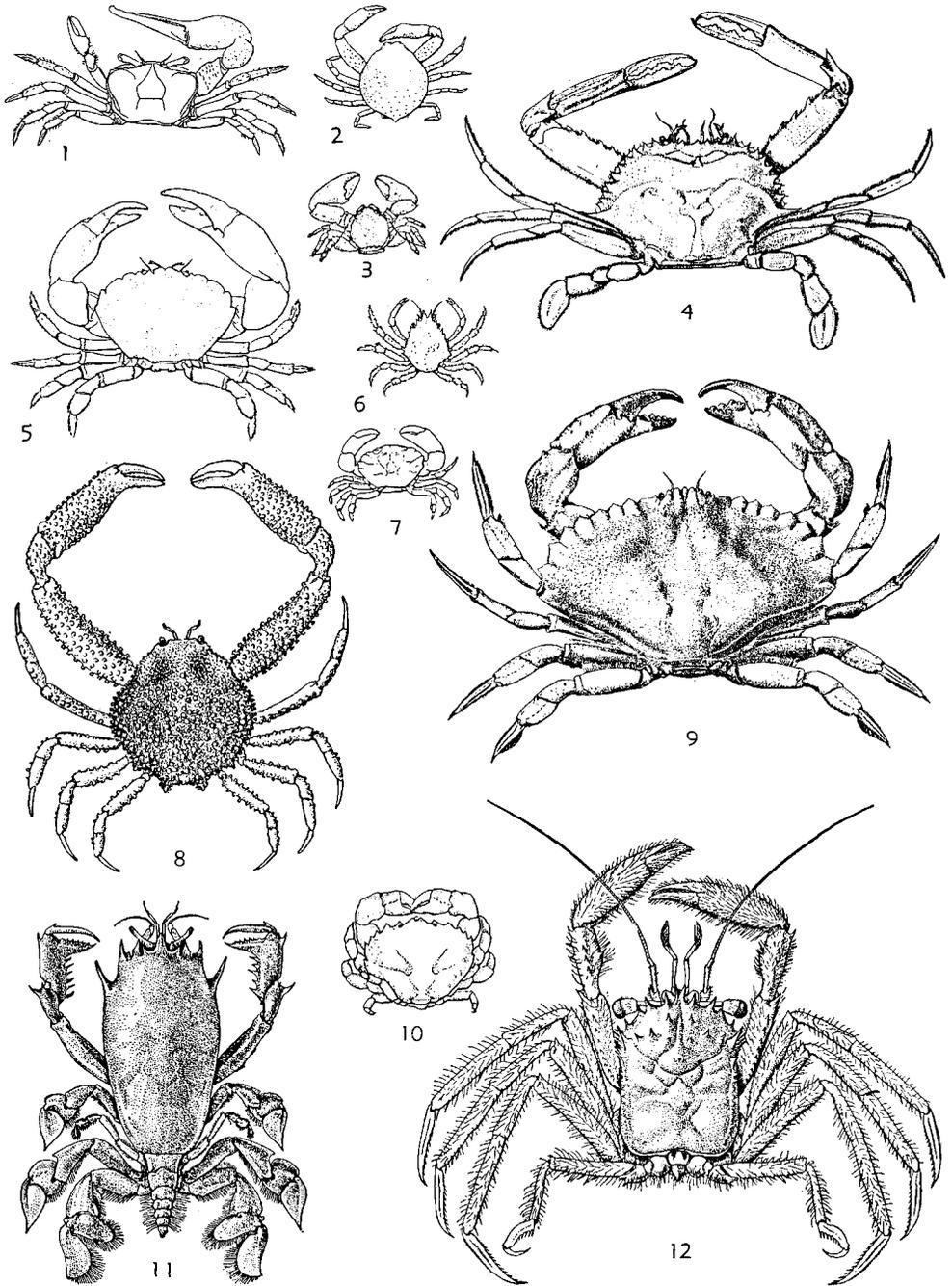


FIG. 26. Types of crustaceans illustrating diversity of groups, all extant eucarid Malacostraca (decapods—crabs).

- 1. Fiddler crab, *Uca pugilator*, inhabitant of sandy sea shores distinguished by strongly disparate chelipeds,  $\times 0.6$ .
- 2. Purse crab, *Persephona punctata*, oxystomate form characterized by ovoid carapace,  $\times 0.2$ .
- 3. Porcellanid crab, *Petrolisthes tridentatus*, so-

of them for a meal. They also furnish food for seals, penguins, petrels and other creatures of the sea far from land. Euphausiaceans are found in neritic belts but most of them are pelagic, living at depths to more than 2,000 m. in daytime and near the ocean surface at night. This pronounced diurnal migration and the possession of phosphorescent organs are distinctive attributes of this and some other groups.

The carapace of euphausiaceans usually bears a transverse cervical furrow and extends forward in a short rostrum. Laterally it does not form branchial chambers, and thus the feather-like gills of the biramous swimming thoracopods are plainly visible from the side. Anatomical features that differentiate euphausiaceans from decapods are small size of the maxillary exopodite (scaphognathite) and lack of maxilliped adaptation of any anterior thoracopods, Pleopods of the moderately elongate abdomen are biramous; the terminal somite bears a small tail fan.

The euphausiaceans are filter-feeders, living on planktonic diatoms and other microorganisms or they are raptorial carnivores. Before reaching adult size, they pass through numerous larval stages, one or two years being required for this development.

No undoubted fossil euphausiacean has been discovered.

## DECAPODS

The decapod eucarids are so named because limbs of the thorax behind anterior

ones modified to form maxillipeds consist of five pairs. The maxillipeds comprise three limb-pairs (Table 1) and in front of them the large exopod (scaphognathite) borne by the maxilla is a distinguishing decapod character. The ten legs behind the maxillipeds are uniramous appendages adapted for locomotion, either crawling or swimming, except that in many decapods (e.g., lobsters, crayfishes, crabs) the first pair of limbs bear chelae which are incapable of aiding locomotion (Fig. 17,1; 24,2-8; 25,1-6, 9-10; 26,1-12). Uncommonly, other limbs may be similarly modified (e.g., rear-most two pairs in hermit crabs) (see Fig. 37,1). In relatively elongate (macrurous) decapods (Fig. 17,1), any of the five rear pairs of thoracopods may be chelate (Fig. 24,2-3, 5-8; 25,5-6,10; 28,13); the anterior five somites of their extended abdomen bear pairs of biramous pleopods and the sixth (terminal) one supports laterally widened uropods and a telson which together make a tail fan (Fig. 17,1; 28,13). So-called brachyurous (short-tailed) types, represented by a host of crabs and some other forms, commonly have a cephalothorax which is dorsoventrally flattened, longitudinally shortened, and laterally widened. Their abdomen is much reduced, typically lacking a fan tail (Fig. 26).

Decapods include marine forms, many of them pelagic (not only shrimplike macrurous types but swimming crabs), species most commonly found in brackish waters, abundant inhabitants of fresh-waters, and not a few terrestrial air-breathers. Some are

FIG. 26. (Continued from facing page.)

4. Marine swimming crab, *Portunus xantusii*, with hind pair of pereopods paddle-like,  $\times 0.5$ .
  5. Stone crab, *Menippe mercenaria*, edible form with stout chelae, found along sea shores,  $\times 0.13$ .
  6. Spider crab, *Mithrax acuticornis*, slow-moving shallow-water marine form, known also as decorator crab because of habit of attaching seaweeds and sessile invertebrates to dorsal side of its carapace for concealment,  $\times 0.3$ .
  7. Mud crab, *Eurypanopeus abbreviatus*, small shore crab resembling stone crabs,  $\times 0.5$ .
  8. Oxystomatous crab, *Randallia agaricias*, with triangular mouth frame extended forward over epistome,  $\times 1.3$ .
  9. Cancroid crab, *Cancer productus*, relatively large commercially important marine form,  $\times 0.3$ .
  10. Dromiid crab, *Dromia erythropus*, with hind-most pereopods modified for holding sponges, tunicates, or bivalves over carapace for concealment,  $\times 0.13$ .
  11. Raninoid crab, *Raninoides louisianensis*, primitive burrower with narrow extended abdomen and most limbs modified for digging,  $\times 0.7$ .
  12. Homolid crab, *Homola barbata*, with subrectangular carapace,  $\times 0.7$ .
- [1-3, 5-7, 10, from F. A. Chace in *Encyclopedia of science and technology*, by permission, McGraw-Hill, publ., copyright 1960; 4, from MacGinitie & MacGinitie, *Natural history of marine animals*, by permission, McGraw-Hill, publ., copyright 1949; 8-9, 11-12, from Rathbun, 1925, 1930, 1937.]

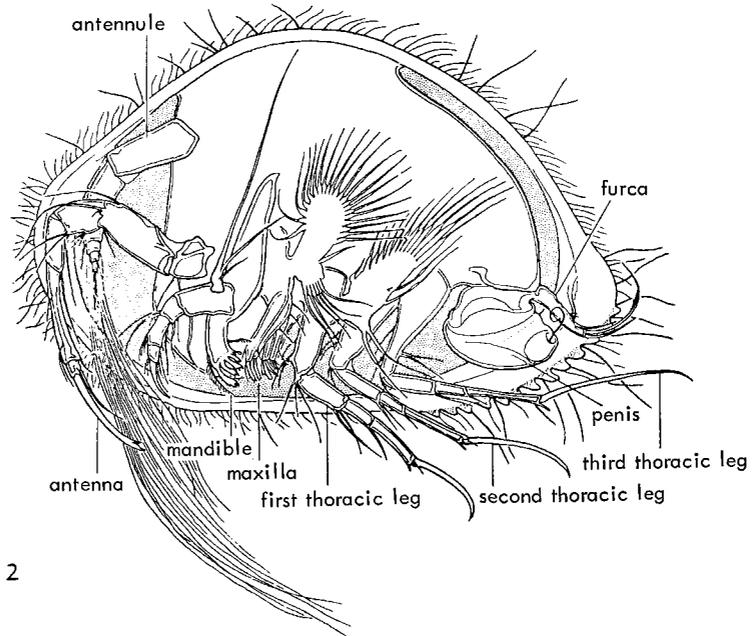
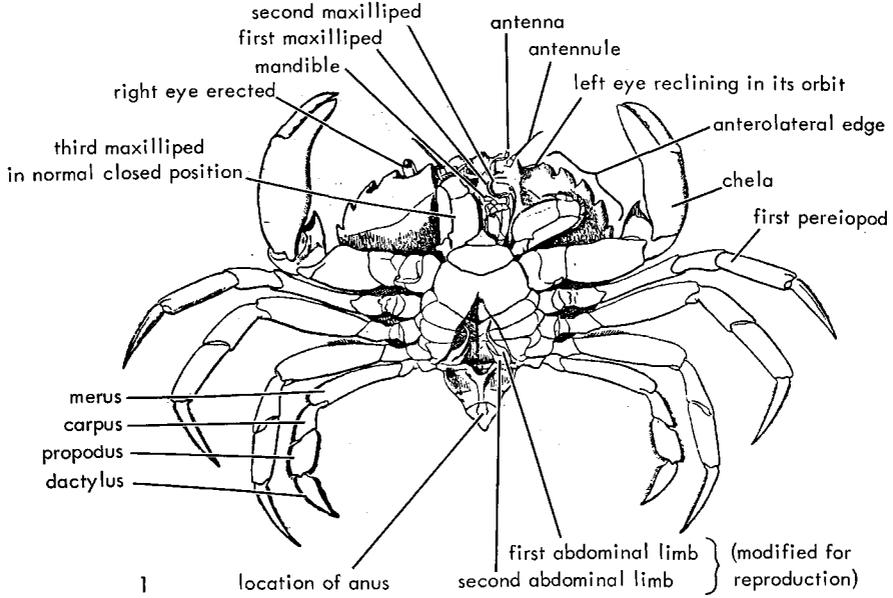


FIG. 27. Morphology of Crustacea—appendages.

1. Ventral view of shore crab, *Carcinus maenas*, showing diversely formed limbs, including abdominal ones modified for reproduction, visible only by turning abdomen backward from normal tucked in position,  $\times 1$ .
2. Side view of marine podocopid ostracode, *Bairdia frequens*, with left valve removed to show appendages of male, mostly concealed within carapace,  $\times 65$ . [1, from Shipley & MacBride in Borradaile & Potts, *The Invertebrata* (4th edit., 1961), by permission, Cambridge University Press, publ.; 2, from Kesling, 1961, *Treatise on invertebrate paleontology*, Part Q.]

burrowers and some can climb trees. True crabs (about 4,500 Recent species) slightly outnumber all other decapods combined. The known geologic distribution of decapods ranges from Permian to Recent.

Morphological features of this very important group of crustaceans are described and illustrated in detail in the chapter on decapods by GLAESSNER (p. R401). For comparison with other assemblages which are surveyed briefly here as introduction to systematic treatment of the various divisions of Crustacea, it is sufficient to provide selected illustrations, including some with labeled parts of the exoskeleton (Fig. 27,1).

### HOPLOCARIDS

The Hoplocarida are comparable to the Eucarida in containing crustaceans of larger than average size and in being highly developed in morphological features. Extant hoplocarids, all of which are known as stomatopods, range in length of adults from approximately 20 mm. to more than 300 mm. (1 foot); two kinds of late Paleozoic hoplocarids, called palaeostomatopods, have lengths of 3 and 13 mm. Stomatopods include fewer than 200 described species, as against more than 8,600 species of modern eucarids.

Stomatopods have an elongate, narrow body like that of a flattened caterpillar. Their shallow carapace is formed by fusion of the cephalic cover with that of the anterior three thoracic somites. Head somites bearing the large stalked and movable eyes

and the antennulae are free, being visible in front of the carapace. Four thoracic somites behind the carapace also are exposed, as are the six abdominal ones, last of which bears a tail fan composed of uropods and a telson (Fig. 25,7-8).

Mouth parts consist of strongly calcified mandibles, small flattened maxillules, and much larger maxillae which are also flattened plates. Anterior thoracopods are not modified as maxillipeds. Instead, the first pair are slender hairy appendages, probably used for cleaning. The second thoracic legs are very strong and heavy raptorial weapons with distal claws turned back like blades of a penknife (subchelae) (Fig. 25,7-8; 29,1). This claw and limb closely resemble the distinctive corresponding structures of a praying mantis, and accordingly, the stomatopods commonly are called mantis shrimps. In several species the claws and apposed penultimate limb segment are provided with fixed and movable sharp spines, on which prey caught by the claws is impaled and easily held. The next three pairs of thoracopods are shorter and more slender than the second pair; they also are tipped with raptorial claws used for cutting up food and carrying it to the mouth. The last three thoracic limbs are walking legs which lack subchelae. The first five abdominal somites bear pairs of pleopods (Fig. 25,7).

All known kinds of stomatopods, except for representatives of four genera found in Jurassic and Cretaceous rocks, live in present-day seas.

### GENERAL MORPHOLOGY

The body of crustaceans is composed of a linear succession of divisions termed **somites** (or metamerer), each of which generally is somewhat depressed or compressed, rather than circular in transverse section (Fig. 17). Their number varies widely (Table 1), as does also fusion together of different groups. The dorsal part of the exoskeleton surrounding a somite

is called **tergum** (or tergite), the ventral part **sternum** (or sternite), and the part on either side **pleuron** (or epimere). The pleura may be extended downward to protect appendages borne by the somites. More or less distinctive groups of somites having characters that differ from one another commonly are defined as separate **tagmata** (or regions). These comprise the **head** (or

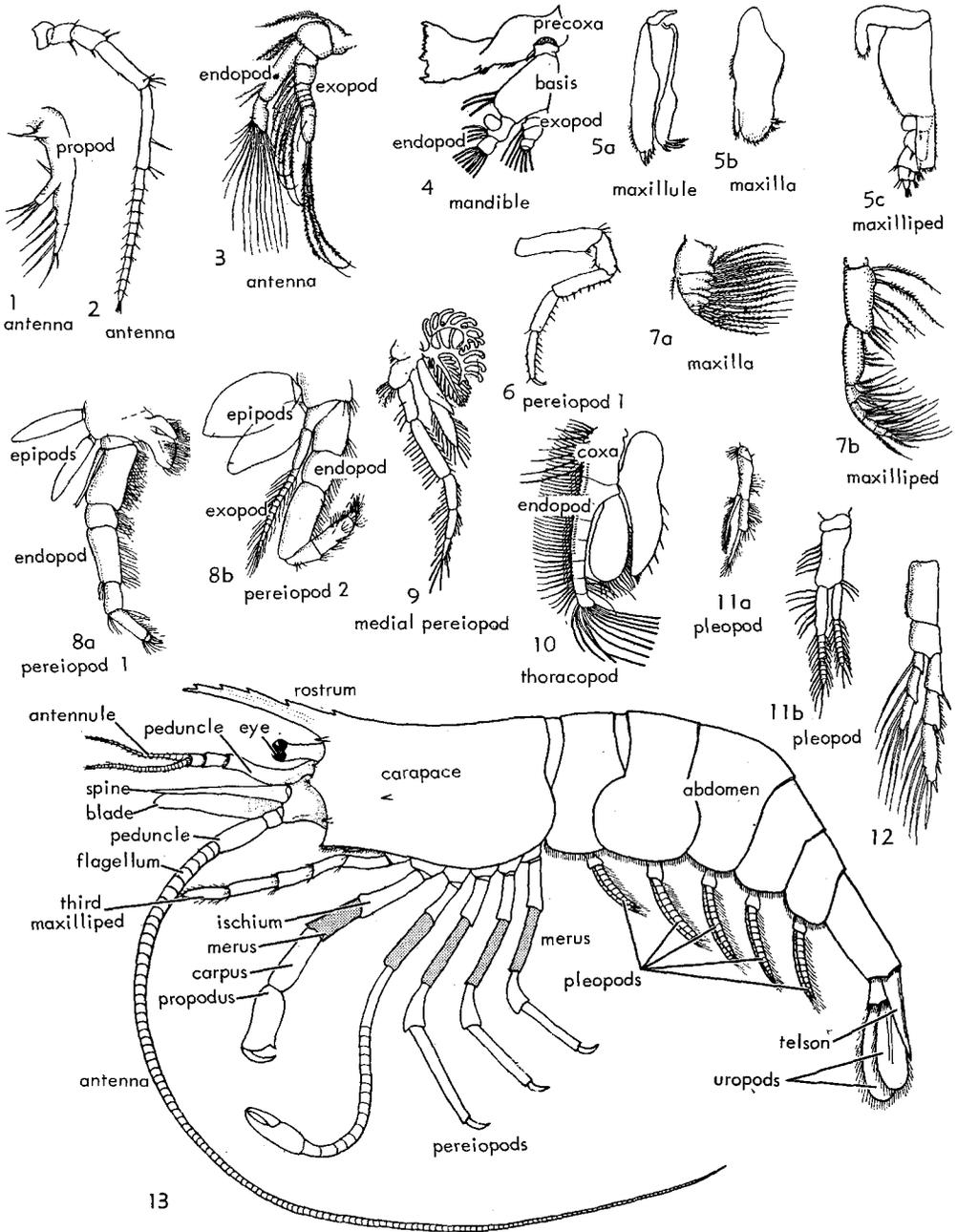


FIG. 28. Morphology of Crustacea—appendages.

1. Limb (antenna) of second pair of naupliar appendages of branchiopod *Triops* (notostracan), enl.  
 2, 5-6. Appendages of terrestrial isopod, *Ligidium hypnorum*, enl.—2, 5. Tactile (antenna) and food-working (maxillule, maxilla, maxilliped) appendages of head region.—6. Walking limb (pereiopod).  
 3-4, 7, 12. Head and thoracic appendages of copepod, *Calanus* sp., enl.—3. Sensory biramous head appendage (antenna).—4, 7. Food-working head appendages (mandible,

cephalon), **thorax** (or pereion), and **abdomen** (or pleon), or the first two may be united as a **cephalothorax**. Tergites fused together may form a **carapace** of variable size and shape, in some crustaceans (e.g., ostracodes, phyllocarids) having the form of a hinged or hingeless bivalve shell.

## HEAD REGION

The simplest sort of head region in crustaceans is seen in the characteristic larva of the group, known as the **nauplius** (see Fig. 35,1a). It consists of fused somites which bear three pairs of appendages, two (antennules, antennae) in front of the mouth and one (mandibles) behind it. A single compound median eye is located anteriorly. In more advanced stages two additional somites with appendages termed maxillules and maxillae become coalesced with the one carrying the pair of mandibles. Thus, counting the embryonic frontmost somite (**acron**) with eye or eye lobes but no appendages, the crustacean head region comprises basically three preoral and three postoral somites, the one with maxillae being rearmost. In several crustacean groups (e.g., copepods, isopods, amphipods, decapods), however, anterior trunk somites become joined to the head and their appendages, differentiated as maxillipeds, aid in feeding (Fig. 28,5c,7b) (Table 1). The separation of head from thorax is then indistinct, or at least quite arbitrary. Because the maxilliped-bearing somites usually show features of transition to those behind them and because the skin fold forming the carapace first arises from the maxillary somite, the true head of crustaceans is held to exclude somites behind the maxillae-bearing one.

A furrow (mandibular groove) immediately behind the mandibles persists in some crustaceans (e.g., *Chirocephalus*, *Triops*—branchiopods, *Mysis*—malacostracan), setting off the three somites with appendages of the nauplius head from those bearing maxillules and maxillae. Another furrow delimits the head and thorax in some forms. A median forward-projecting part of the carapace in many crustaceans is termed the **rostrum** (Fig. 17,1).

## THORAX AND ABDOMEN

Unlike somites of the head region which generally are similar in nature, containing the principal sense organs and structures used in feeding, somites of the thorax and abdomen are dissimilar in various ways and degrees (Fig. 17-20, 23-27). Commonly those of the thorax bear limbs, whereas abdominal somites carry a different sort of limbs or are limbless. The boundary between thoracic and abdominal regions may be sharply marked by changes in shape of the somites and their appendages, or it may be difficult to define consistently and clearly. Generally, the thorax is considered to extend backward to include the somite bearing the male genital aperture (Table 1). The number of combined postcephalic somites ranges from one or two in the limbless stump of some ostracodes to more than 60 in some branchiopods. The terminal somite of the abdomen very commonly bears a spikelike telson and associated with this may be a pair of caudal rami forming the so-called **caudal furca**. Also, in eumalacostracans appendages (uropods) expanded in leaf-shaped manner constitute part of a tail fan, useful as rudder and as propelling organ for backward swimming.

FIG. 28. (Continued from facing page.)

- maxilla, maxilliped).—12. Swimming appendage of thorax (thoracopod).
8. Thoracic appendages (pereopods) of freshwater syncarid malacostracan, *Anaspides tasmaniae*, enl.
  9. Pereiopod of marine euphausiacean (Malacostraca), enl.
  10. Thoracic limb of marine leptostracan, *Nebalia bipes* (Malacostraca), enl.
  11. Swimming appendages of crayfish, *Astacus*, enl.
  13. Side view of caridean prawn, *Pandalus* (marine malacostracan) showing skeletal morphology, especially varied nature of appendages borne by head region, thorax, and abdomen, approx.  $\times 1$ . [1, 3, 7-8, 12, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 4, 9-11, from Borradaile & Potts, *The Invertebrata* (4th edit., 1963), by permission, Cambridge University Press, publ.; 2, 5-6, from Van Name, 1936; 13, from Schmitt, 1921.]

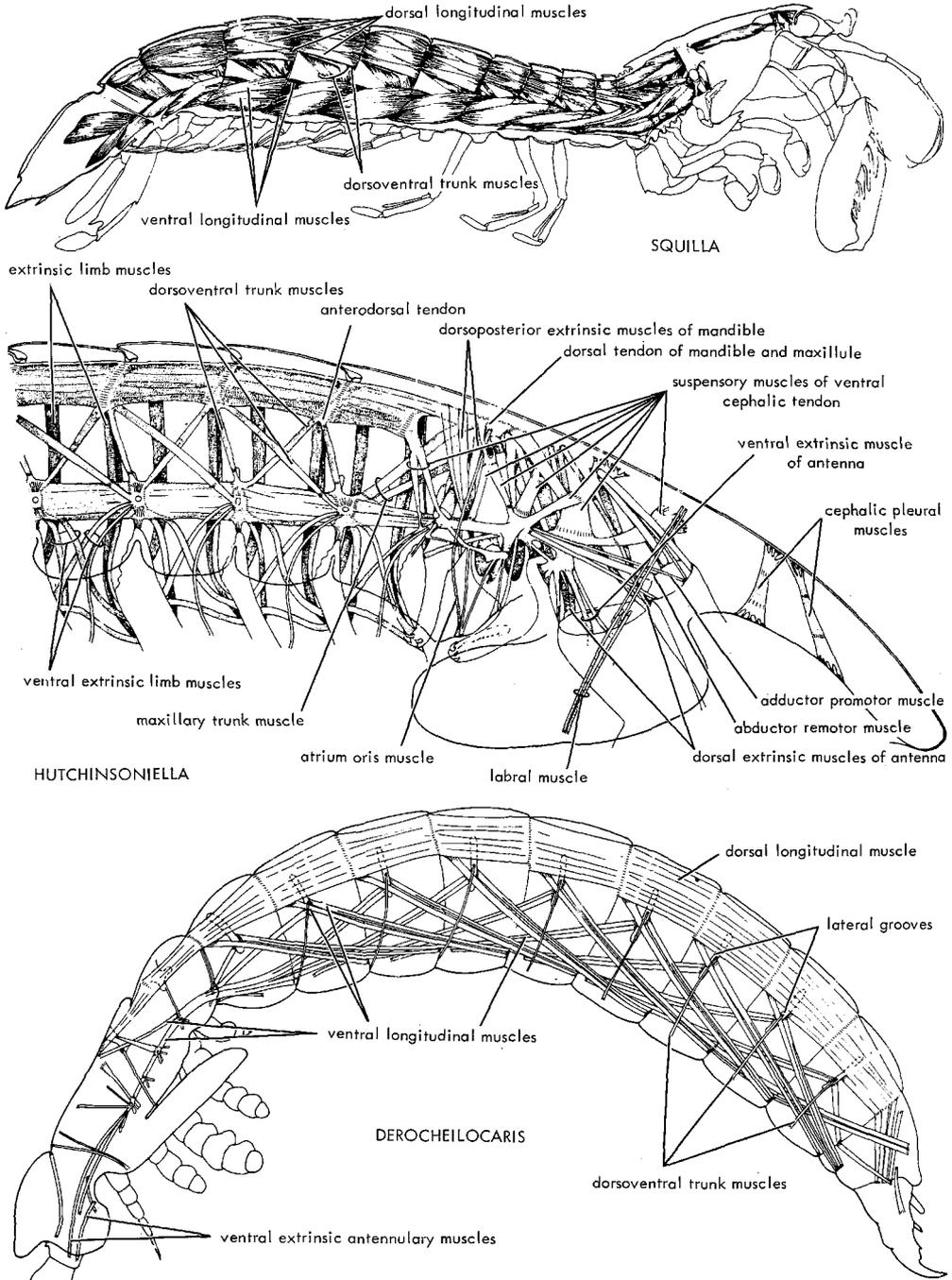


FIG. 29. Morphology of Crustacea—muscle systems in advanced and relatively simple, primitive examples (from Hessler, 1964).

1. Stomatopod malacostracan, *Squilla empusa*, medial view of left side showing trunk musculature, approx.  $\times 1$ .
2. Cephalocarid, *Hutchinioniella macracantha*, left half of cephalon and anterior part of thorax viewed from mid-line showing trunk musculature, approx.  $\times 1$ .

## APPENDAGES

The paired appendages of crustaceans typically are biramous, with outer (**exopod**) and inner (**endopod**) branches joined to a common stem (**protopod**), but some (e.g., antennules of many but not all forms) may be uniramous (Fig. 17, 28). Prevaillingly, the appendages are relatively slender and these represent the type named **stenopodium**, which commonly is well jointed, with few or numerous segments. Broader and flatter limbs, such as characterize the thorax and abdomen of many branchiopods, have a thin cuticle which allows movement without need for joints; this type is called **phyllopodium**. Outward from the body the segments of well-jointed appendages are differentiated as **coxa**, **basis**, **ischium**, **merus**, **carpus**, **propodus**, and **dactylus**, or where very numerous and similar to one another (e.g., antennules, antennae, exopods of swimming appendages) they are not separately indicated (Fig. 27,1; 28,13). The endopods of crustacean limbs may be generalized in form, but mostly they are modified to serve a wide variety of functions. Among these are sensory perception, locomotion, respiration, prehension and comminution of food, sex recognition and attraction, reproduction, incubation of eggs and larvae, self-protection, and nearly all others that pertain to successful existence. Thus, the possession and use of appendages are prime requisites of crustaceans.

Names given to crustacean appendages depend to some extent on their form and function, but mostly take account also of their location. In the head region, from the front backward, the paired appendages are the sensory antennules and antennae (Fig. 17; 28,1-3,13), followed behind the mouth by the food-working mandibles, maxillules, and maxillae (Fig. 17; 28,4-5,7a). The food-handling work of the three last-mentioned pairs is done by their proximal segments

(**gnathobases**). Appendages of the thoracic region are collectively designated as **pereiopods** and **thoracopods** (Fig. 17; 27,1; 28, 6, 8-10, 13). The anterior thoracopods in some crustaceans (termed **maxillipeds**) aid in feeding (Fig. 28,5c,7b,13). Abdominal appendages are called **pleopods** or rearmost ones **uropods**. The abdominal limbs chiefly serve functions of locomotion, especially in swimming. In many crustaceans pleopods are lacking. Also a **telson** may form a spike-like rear extremity.

Pereiopods are adapted for walking, crawling, or swimming and may be variously modified for digging, grasping or shearing prey, and for brood-carrying. Those bearing pincer-like claws (**chelae**) are **chelipeds** or **gnathopods**; their chelae range from small to very large and powerful (e.g., numerous lobsters, crabs, other decapods) (Fig. 26; 27,1). In stomatopods, the most distal segment of front thoracopods is reflexed so as to bear against the one preceding it and this type of limb is called subchelate; the **subchelae** of the second thoracopods are enlarged spinose structures which resemble the stout raptorial limbs of a praying mantis and serve the same function (Fig. 25,7-8). Among peracarid malacostracans, leaflike pereiopod elements (**oostegites**) of females are used for protection of eggs and larvae. Exceptionally modified thoracopods are the biramous **cirri** of thoracican cirripeds (Fig. 21,3; 22,1b).

Typical pleopods of most malacostracans are biramous swimming appendages formed by subequal exopod and endopod extending from the protopod extremity. The two branches of each pleopod may be coupled together by tiny hooks (retinacula) to form a more efficient oarlike structure. In some groups of crustaceans (e.g., isopods, stomatopods) the pleopods are altered to function as gills. Terminal ones (uropods) of many crustaceans are shaped and arranged

FIG. 29. (Continued from facing page.)

ture and proximal part of extrinsic limb musculature, much enl.  
3. Mystacocarid, *Derocheilocaris typicus*, medial

view of right half of body showing trunk musculature and origins of few cephalic extrinsic limb muscles, much enl.

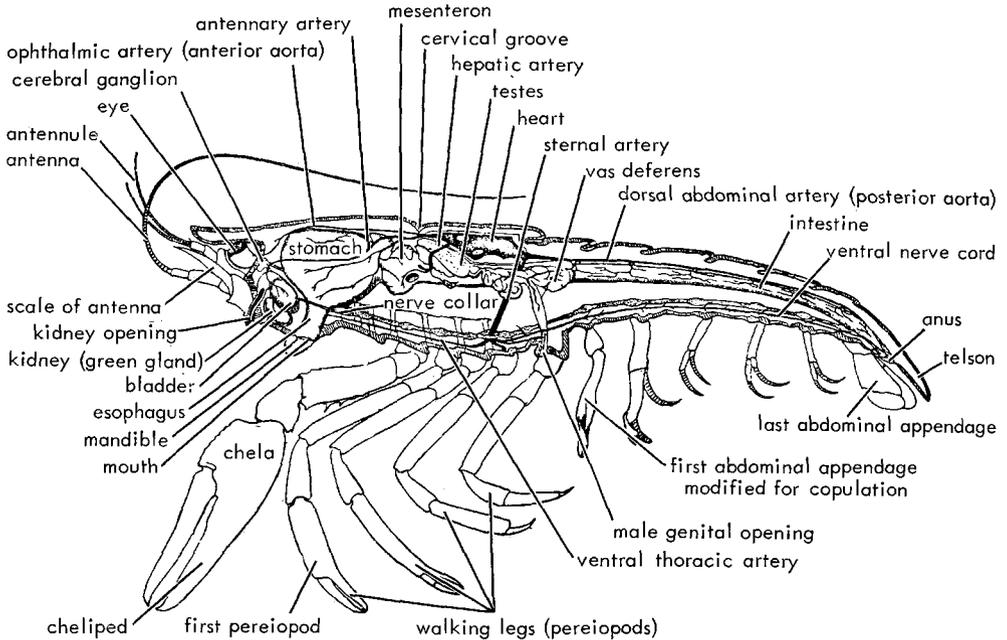


FIG. 30. Morphology of Crustacea. Median longitudinal section of crayfish, *Astacus astacus*, with appendages attached to right side of head and body. Internally, placement and some divisions of digestive and nervous systems are shown. [From Shipley & MacBride in Borradaile & Potts, *The Invertebrata* (4th edit., 1963), by permission, Cambridge University Press, publ.]

as parts of a powerful tail fan for steering and backward swimming. Also a very common structure at end of the abdomen is a caudal furca.

## INTERNAL FEATURES

Internal features of crustaceans which call for notice include some aspects of the inner side of their exoskeleton, but chiefly concern soft parts such as their musculature and digestive, circulatory, respiratory, nervous, glandular, and reproductive systems. These vary widely in nature and complexity, functioning in ways dictated by organization of the body, diversity of habit, and adaptations to environment developed in each group.

### MUSCULATURE

Movements of the body for walking, crawling, burrowing, and swimming, for feeding, for breathing, and for copulating are controlled by many sorts of muscles,

some oriented longitudinally and others transversely or obliquely in relation to somites and to segments of appendages. Individual muscles may be relatively long or short and weak or powerful. Commonly they are attached to ingrowths of cuticle termed **apodemes** or directly to the inner surface of the hardened integument of the body. Even in primitive forms such as cephalocarids, mystacocarids (Fig. 29) and branchiopods their number and complexity are great. In ostracodes, the pattern of muscle scars on the valve interiors (Fig. 19, 10*b*) is found to be helpful in classification. Commonly, crustacean muscles are supplied with only a few nerve fibers, some of which serve to stimulate and others to inhibit contraction.

### DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

The digestive system of crustaceans varies considerably in different groups, ranging from a simple, straight alimentary canal extending from mouth to anus without per-

ceptible differentiation into regions, to complex types in which parts of the tract are distended into a foregut, a midgut, and a hindgut (Fig. 30; 31,1).

The front part of the **foregut**, or **stomodeum**, is esophageal in nature, whereas the strongly muscled and generally enlarged rear part comprises a **stomach** or gizzard. This may be lined with small teeth to form a gastric mill that serves for mastication of food. Bristles may be present to strain particles of food.

The **midgut** or mesenteron is a digestive and absorptive region, lined with tubules of cells which secrete digestive enzymes or serve for absorption of digestive products. At its anterior end are paired digestive glands, which may branch to form a "liver."

At its posterior extremity the midgut opens into an intestine or **hindgut** (also called **proctodeum**). The hindgut, which may be absent, passes waste material along for ejection at the anus. With few exceptions, the anal opening is located on the rearmost somite of the abdomen, on the underside of the telson.

The alimentary canal is absent throughout the life of the cirriped group known as Rhizocephala and it may be undeveloped in other parasitic forms. The food of these parasites is absorbed through the skin.

### CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

The circulatory system of crustaceans generally consists of one or more branching arteries that conduct blood from the heart, which lies in a pericardial blood sinus, to the various organs (Fig. 30; 31,1,3; 32). The blood, a pale fluid bearing leucocytes in most forms but containing hemoglobin in some branchiopods, percolates from arteries through the tissues and collects in hemocoelic sinuses. Primitive branchiopods (Anostraca) and also peracarid malacostracans have an elongate heart and blood flows through a single, short artery. The heart is absent in Cirripedia and many copepods and ostracodes and the blood circulates by movements of the body and the alimentary canal. In higher Crustacea (decapods) the blood flows from the general hemocoel of the body ventrally into sternal and lateral sinuses and vents to the gills for oxygenna-

tion (Fig. 30; 31,3; 32). Carbon dioxide is exchanged for oxygen in the gills and nitrogenous wastes are removed in excretory organs. The blood returns through venous channels to reenter the polygonal heart through openings termed ostia.

### RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Respiration in smaller crustaceans is effected through the general surface of the body. The process may be supplemented in forms with stronger cuticle by differentiation of appendages or lining of the carapace to form **gills** or **branchiae** (Fig. 32). Limbs of branchiopods serve in respiration as well as for other functions. Epipods are branched and folded in Malacostraca to form gills. The euphausiaceans have branchiae on all thoracopods, which are progressively larger and more complex from front to rear. The inflated carapace of some peracarids (Cumacea) is due to large lateral **branchial chambers**, each containing a large epipod composed of a complex gill and an exhalant siphon. Branchial chambers are also seen in decapods, in the thoracic region and protected by extension of the carapace (Fig. 31,3; 32). The gills may be differentiated by their points of origin as podobranchs, arthrobranchs, and pleurobranchs.

Isopods respire through rami of the abdominal limbs, but when they become terrestrial the integument takes the form of branching tubules resembling tracheae. Some land crabs also have special adaptations for air breathing in the form of vascular papillae on the lining of the gill chamber.

### NERVOUS SYSTEM

The nervous system in primitive crustaceans consists of a mass of antennal ganglia behind the mouth united by nerve cords passing around the esophagus. These connect with a widely separated ladder-like chain of nerve cords extending longitudinally, passing through all of the somites, and connected crosswise by short commissures (Fig. 31,5). In other groups varying degrees of complexity are seen. The two halves of the ladder coalesce into a ventral chain,

with a ganglionic mass above the esophagus comprising a “brain” from which nerves extend to the eyes and antennae (Fig. 31,

1,4). In the decapods additional centers are developed in the brain and a subesophageal ganglion at the front end of the ventral

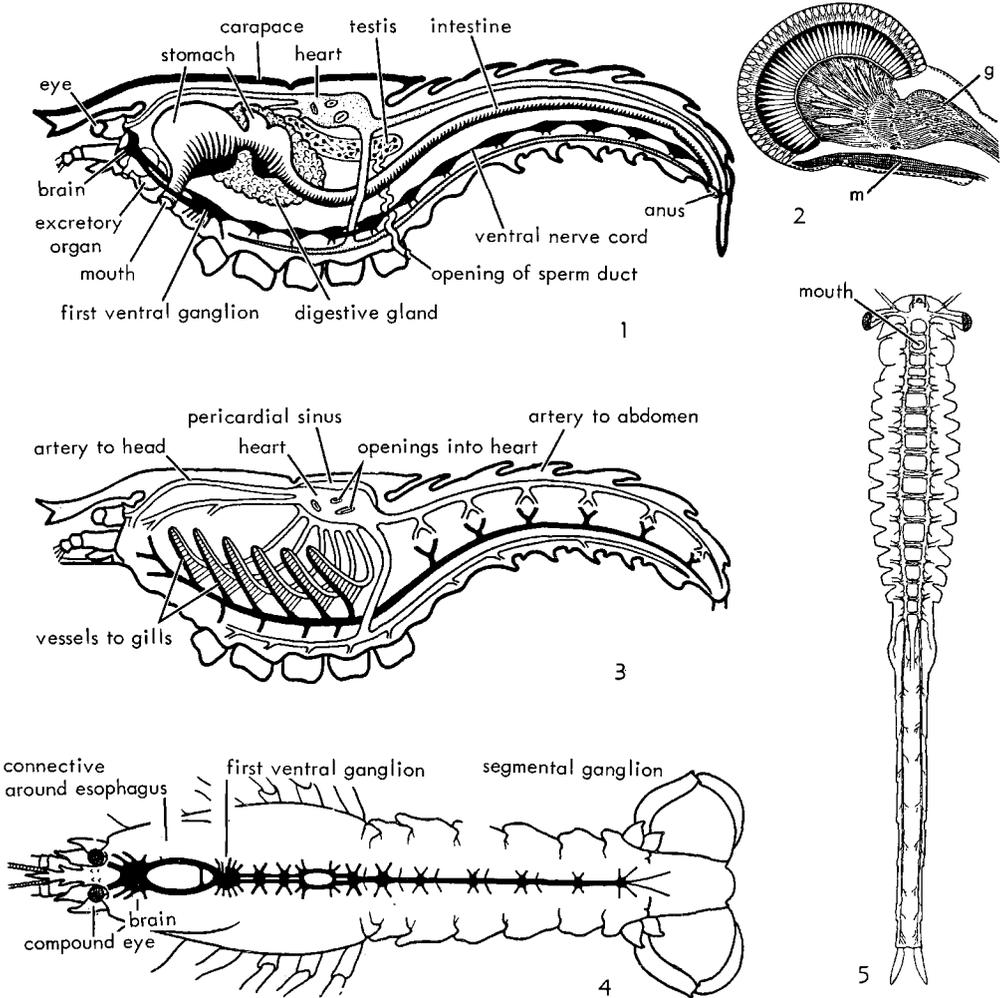


FIG. 31. Morphology of Crustacea—digestive, nervous, and circulatory systems.

1. Internal anatomy of lobster, *Homarus*, shown in diagrammatic median longitudinal section. Digestive system not segmented but divided into anterior esophageal region, stomach surrounded by digestive glands, and intestine. Nervous system clearly segmental, located on ventral side of alimentary canal.
2. Horizontal medial section of eye and ocular stalk of anostracan branchiopod, *Branchinecta paludosa*, showing visual cells (ommatidia) joined to optic ganglia (*g*) of eyestalk, muscle (*m*) controlling movement of stalk, below, much enl.
3. Diagram of circulatory system of lobster showing main blood channels. Blood returning from

tissues passes through gills before returning to heart.

4. Nervous system of lobster diagrammatically represented from dorsal side, with nerve ring around esophagus and gangliated double nerve cord running near ventral mid-line of body.
5. Ladder-like nervous system of anostracan branchiopod, *Branchinecta paludosa*, transverse commissures in thoracic region but lacking in abdominal part of body.

[1, 3-4, from Ralph Buchsbaum, *Animals without backbones*, by permission, The University of Chicago Press, publ., copyright 1948; 2, 5, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.]

nerve cord innervates the oral appendages, green glands, esophagus, and muscles of the front part of the thorax.

Sense organs are of several kinds and may be well developed. Many crustaceans possess an unpaired median eye comparable to that of the nauplius larva, or they have a pair of compound eyes. The median eye functions as the only organ of vision in copepods (Fig. 20), but is vestigial in various primitive crustaceans or may persist in advanced types accompanying the compound eyes. The median eye is divided into three pigmented masses filled with retinal cells meeting nerve fibers at their outer ends. Compound eyes are sessile or set on movable peduncles and consist of a number of visual units (ommatidia) each surrounded by pigment and all covered by a cornea, which is a transparent region of the cuticle usually divided into lenslike facets (Fig. 31,2). Eyes are reduced or not developed in some deep-sea decapods, some syncarids, and other blind crustaceans.

In addition to the sense of sight, the sense of touch and perhaps of taste and other sensations are transmitted by hair-like setae on the antennae and antennules and other parts of the body. The setae are hollow chitinous shafts containing nerves which transmit sensations to the nervous system. Olfactory setae sensitive to chemical stimuli perform a function similar to smelling and are responsible for leading lobsters into the bait traps. For the sense of balance there is an organ, the **statocyst**, located at the base of each antennule of many crustaceans to enable them to orient themselves with respect to the force of gravity. It consists of a pit with hair-lined walls which usually contains sand grains and other minute foreign bodies that enable the statocyst to function for equilibration. Also, statocysts occur in the uropods of various mysids.

### GLANDULAR SYSTEMS

Excretory organs of Crustacea include two pairs of glands at the bases of the antennae and maxillae, opening forward (Fig. 31,1). The two usually are not functional at the same time, the **antennal glands** commonly functioning in the larval stage,

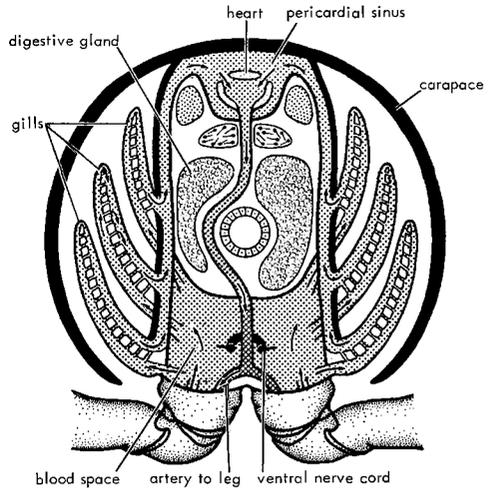


FIG. 32. Morphology of Crustacea. Transverse section through thorax of lobster, *Homarus*, showing relations of gill chambers to other organs and path of blood circulating through some main channels. [From Ralph Buchsbaum, *Animals without backbones*, by permission, The University of Chicago Press, publ., copyright 1948.]

whereas the **maxillary glands** operate in the adult. Each type has an end sac and ectodermal ducts leading to the exterior. In adult ostracodes, however, they lack openings. The antennal gland is known as the green gland in the Malacostraca and is well developed, being commonly dilated into a bladder or extended into diverticula. In other crustacean groups various additional glands may be excretory, for example, the caeca of the midgut in barnacles and ectodermal glands at bases of thoracic limbs in leptostracans (e.g., *Nebalia*, Fig. 19,8).

In addition to these and the digestive glands already mentioned, are various types of **dermal glands**. Some of these in the vicinity of the mouth secrete a mucous substance which binds together small food particles to aid in swallowing them. Others on the surface of the body and limbs of amphipods secrete a protective covering. A gelatinous secretion produced by some freshwater copepods is resistant to desiccation.

**Cement glands** secrete substances serving in Cirripedia for attachment of the animals to supporting surfaces or, in some other crustaceans, for agglutination of sediment in building tubular burrows. The cypris larvae of cirripeds have cement glands

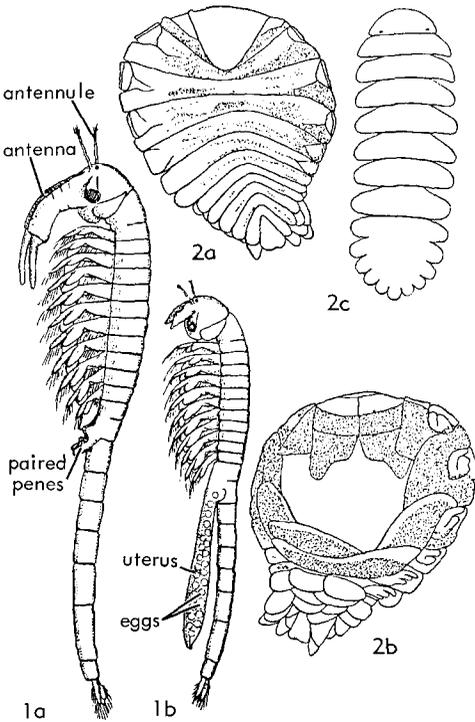


FIG. 33. Morphology of Crustacea—sexual dimorphism.

1. Anostracan branchiopod, *Branchinecta paludosa*; side views of male (1a) and female (1b) showing differences both in form and size. Ordinarily dimorphic males are smaller than females, but here the reverse is true,  $\times 2.7$ .
2. Epicaridean fresh-water isopod, *Probopyrus floridensis*, which lives parasitically on gills of other crustaceans; 2a,b, dorsal and ventral sides of female, showing asymmetry and width subequal to length,  $\times 8$ ; 2c, dorsal side of male, which is much smaller than female, long-bodied, and symmetrical,  $\times 27$ .

[1, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 2, from Richardson, 1905.]

located at ends of antennules opening through discs, by which they become attached to fixed objects. In the Lepadomorpha secretions of cement glands form vesicular balls which serve to keep the barnacles afloat.

Many pelagic crustaceans, such as the euphausiaceans (Malacostraca) have dermal glands (photophores) that secrete a phosphorescent or luminous substance (Fig. 24, 4). In Decapoda and Mysidacea the secretion may come from the excretory organs

or from other locations on the body and limbs. The light emitted in this way, which is brilliant blue-green in euphausiaceans, may be used to attract prey, for illumination of surroundings, or for protection of a group.

Another gland is the sinus gland located in the eyestalks, which has been found to store hormones controlling the molting cycle, formation and development of eggs within the ovary, and color changes.

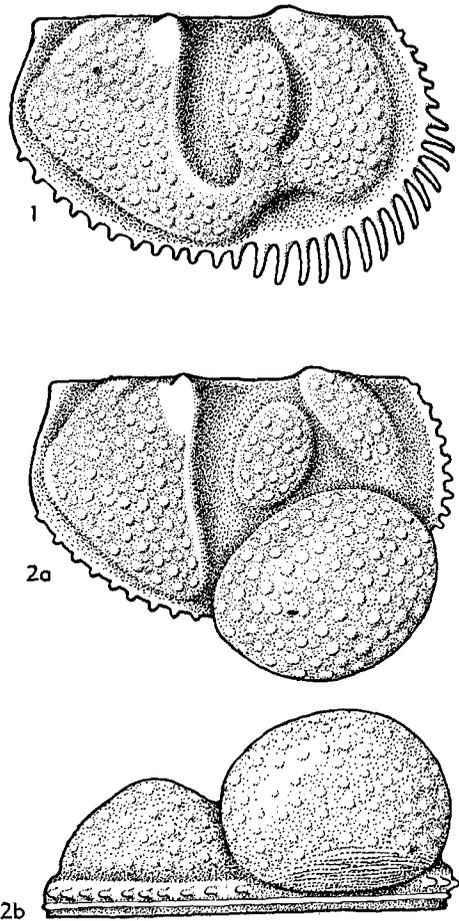


FIG. 34. Sexual dimorphism in Crustacea exhibited by carapaces of male ostracode (1) and female (2a,b) specimens of *Beyrichia kjaeri* HENNINGSMOEN, from Upper Silurian of Norway; 1, 2a, side views of right valves; 2b, ventral view of right valve;  $\times 22$  (Kesling, 1957). The female valves are chiefly distinguished by the expanded brood pouch developed in the anteroventral region.

## REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

The sexes of most crustaceans are separate, although some cirripeds, parasitic isopods, and certain other forms are hermaphroditic. Parthenogenesis occurs in various lower crustaceans. The reproductive system generally consists of internal tubular gonads, ovaries or testes, placed in the thorax dorsally and laterally from the digestive canal. Paired reproductive ducts of both sexes commonly pass laterally and ventrally to separate openings on specific thoracic appendages (Table 1). In most groups the male tends to be smaller than the female, even extremely minute in some parasitic forms. During copulation of various decapods and other crustaceans **spermatophores** (packets of sperm bound together by mucous secretion) are emitted from the male genitalia and transferred to a pouch-like cavity of the female termed the **seminal receptacle** or **vesicle** (Fig. 17,3). This is connected internally to the oviducts with a median aperture opening to the exterior of the thorax, although in some forms it may be external and temporary. Its function is merely to hold the immobile sperm until time of fertilization, when eggs are emitted by the female. After extrusion, the eggs are carried in some manner for a time by many crustaceans in a brood pouch, adhering to the body, or attached to appendages under the abdomen.

## DIMORPHISM

Sexual dimorphism is a common attribute of crustaceans but by no means universal. It is prevalent in such branchiopod groups

as conchostracans, cladocerans, and anostracans (Fig. 33,1), marked by differences in size and shape of males and females, as well as in the nature of some appendages. Commonly males are smaller than females, but the reverse may be true (e.g., anostracan *Branchinecta*, which also has antennae much larger than those of females, Fig. 33,1). In epicaridean isopods, as illustrative of strong dimorphism in another group, the females are greatly modified in shape and symmetry from the smaller males (Fig. 33,2a-c); in some of these crustaceans the females are so specialized as to be little more than formless sacs containing eggs.

Well-developed sexual dimorphism characterizes the bivalved carapace of numerous genera of ostracodes, especially in such marine fossil groups as Ordovician-to-Permian palaeocopids (Fig. 34). In a host of copepods dimorphism is marked by differences in body shape and nature of the appendages, very evident in some but less so in others. As a rule, advanced types of crustaceans, as represented by the highly diverse malacostracans, display modest distinctions between males and females, rather than accentuated ones, and these relate more to the nature of appendages than to body size and shape.

Extreme dimorphism is found in some parasitic crustaceans, for example, rhizocephalan cirripeds with relatively huge sac-like females which carry hyperparasitic larval males (e.g., *Peltogaster*, see Fig. 39,1). A curious effect of parasitism is seen in crabs infested by rhizocephalans, for the male crabs "degenerate" into female-like forms and females revert to juvenile types with loss of their gonads.

## GLOSSARY OF MORPHOLOGICAL TERMS

The exceptional variety and complexity of morphological features displayed by crustaceans have led to an unusually large number of morphological terms. The following list does not undertake to be exhaustive, but it brings together for convenient reference essentially all terms used in the *Treatise* for exoskeletal features and provides also numerous synonyms. In general, the usage preferred by *Treatise* authors

is indicated by terms which are accompanied by definitions, alternative designations lacking such definitions but providing a cross reference (e.g. abdominal limb. See pleopod, uropod.).

Acknowledgment is made to *Treatise* authors who have given special help in preparation of the glossary: M. F. GLAESSNER, R. R. HESSLER, L. B. HOLTHUIS, W. A. NEWMAN, W. D. I. ROLFE, and PAUL TASCH.

- abdomen.** Trunk tagma following thorax and including telson; somites either without limbs or (in Malacostraca) bearing pleopods or uropods or both; in crabs bent sharply forward under thorax and much wider in females than in males; *syn.*, pleon. See also metasome, urosome.
- abdominal limb.** See pleopod, uropod.
- abdominal process.** Finger-like projection (one to several) on dorsal surface of cladoceran abdomen; may help to retain eggs in brood chamber.
- abdominal somite.** Any single division of body behind thorax; *syn.*, pleomere, pleonite.
- abreptor.** Postabdomen of cladocerans, bent forward from junction with body and terminating in 2 claws with spines and teeth on their concave sides.
- acanthopod.** In Cirripedia (Thoracica), appendage where rami of cirrus have setae along lesser curvature much reduced; setae of greater curvature arranged in transverse row, as strong sharp spines at each articulation (cf., ctenopod, lasiopod).
- acron.** Anteriormost part of body carrying eyes, not considered to be true cephalic somite; *syn.*, ophthalmic somite, presegmental region. [Some authors recognize as protocephalon anterior part of head bearing eyes and antennules, thus interpreting cephalon as composed of only 4 somites.]
- adductor muscle** (of carapace). Muscle attached to carapace for pulling it to body (thorax) or connecting halves of bivalve shell (e.g., Conchostraca, Ostracoda, Leptostraca) or valves of cirriped capitulum for closure of them. In Cirripedia, any transverse muscles, particularly that of maxillary segment, for closure of aperture; in Thoracica, adductor (adductor scutorum) acts upon scutal plates or valves.
- adductor pit.** In cirripeds, depression on interior of scutum for attachment of adductor muscle, located between adductor ridge and occludent margin.
- adductor ridge.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), linear elevation on interior of scutum between adductor pit and tergal margin.
- aesthetasc.** See esthetasc.
- aesthete.** See esthetasc.
- afferent channels.** Openings through which water passes to gills, in brachyuran crabs generally located in front of bases of chelipeds.
- ala** (pl., *alae*). One of pair of posteriorly directed cephalic-shield extensions; in cirripeds (Balanomorpha), triangular lateral part of compartment plate delimited from paries, which is overlapped by adjacent compartment plate with or without radius.
- aliform apophyses.** Incurved anterior and posterior extremities of growth lines (e.g., Conchostraca, characteristic of *Ipsilon*).
- ambulatory leg.** See pereopod.
- anal spines.** Single row of spines on either side of cladoceran postabdomen (e.g., Sididae, Holopedidae, Daphniidae). [In addition, some cladocerans possess lateral spines (e.g., Macrothricidae, Chydoridae).]
- antenna** (pl., *antennae*). One of pair of anterior appendages of head region placed morphologically next behind antennule, uniramous in some crustaceans but biramous in all nauplii and in adults of most classes; may be extremely long and composed of multitudinous small segments or reduced to mere rudiment or lacking; *syn.*, second antenna.
- antennal carina.** See carapace carina, a.
- antennal gland.** See green gland.
- antennal groove.** See carapace groove, a.
- antennal region.** See carapace region, a.
- antennal scale.** See scaphocerite.
- antennal spine.** See carapace spine, a.
- antennula.** See antennule.
- antennular scale.** See stylocerite.
- antennule.** One pair of morphologically frontmost appendages of head region, usually filiform and multiarticulate, uniramous except in Malacostraca where it is generally biramous or even triramous; may be larger or smaller than morphologically next following appendages named antennae; *syn.*, antennula, first antenna.
- anterior tubercle.** Swelling or small protuberance in anterior region of carapace of Archaeostraca; polygenetic, includes the "optic tubercle" of some authors.
- anterolateral region.** See carapace region, b.
- aperture.** Posteroventral opening into cirriped mantle cavity.
- apex.** Upper angle of scutum or tergum of cirripeds.
- apicobasal ridge or furrow.** In cirripeds longitudinal feature which divides tergal slip (tergum) from rest of valve.
- apodeme.** Infold of exoskeleton serving for attachment of muscles.
- appendix interna.** Medial projection stemming from pleopodal endopods, serving to unite members of each pair of pleopods; *syn.*, stylamblys.
- appendix masculina.** Complex median process of endopod of second pleopods of male Caridea and some isopods; serves in copulation.
- arm.** Merus of cheliped (obsolete term).
- arthrobranch.** Gill of decapods attached to articular membrane between limb and body; *syn.*, arthrobranchia.
- arthrobranchia** (pl., *arthrobranchiae*). See arthrobranch.
- arthrophragm.** See endophragm.
- article.** Individual element of crustacean appendage; *syn.*, joint, segment.
- articular furrow.** In cirripeds, groove on tergal margin of scutum or scutal margin of tergum forming part of articulation between these plates.
- articular ridge.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), linear elevation on tergal margin of scutum or scutal margin of tergum close to articular furrow and with it forming articulation between these plates.
- atrium oris.** Preoral cavity, bounded ventrally by posteriorly directed labrum, dorsally by ventral surface of cephalon just behind mouth, and laterally by paragnaths and mandibles.

- attractor epimeralis muscle.** Important muscle in many decapods, inserted along line of branchio-cardiac groove in carapace.
- basal margin.** In cirripeds, lower edge of scutum or tergum or other plate.
- basicarinal angle.** Intersection of basal and carinal margins of cirriped tergum.
- basicerite.** Second segment of antennal peduncle (in Caridea bearing scaphocerite).
- basilateral angle.** In cirripeds, intersection of lateral and tergal margins of scutum; *syn.*, basitergal angle.
- basiocludent angle.** Intersection of basal and occludent margins of cirriped scutum.
- basiophthalmite.** Proximal segment of eyestalk, articulating with distal segment (podophthalmite) which bears corneal surface of eye.
- basipod (ite).** *See* basis.
- basis (pl., bases).** Limb segment adjoining coxa on its distal side and commonly bearing endopod and exopod; *syn.*, basipod(ite); in nonpedunculate cirripeds comprises basal calcareous or membranous plate which furnishes anchorage to foreign body or substrate.
- basiscutal angle.** Intersection of basal and scutal margins of cirriped tergum.
- basitergal angle.** Intersection of basal and tergal margins of cirriped scutum.
- beaked apex.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), upper angle of tergum produced into long narrow point.
- biformes.** Carapaces reflecting sexual dimorphism (e.g., Conchostraca), marked by differing valve proportions for each sex of same species (DADAY); a given species may have carapaces that are "biformes."
- biramous.** Two-branched; crustacean limb in which basis bears both exopod and endopod.
- blood rooms.** Network of anastomosing cavities in body of conchostracans which provide for circulation of blood (SARS).
- body chamber.** In cirripeds, interior of shell containing soft parts of animal.
- body of mandible.** *See* mandible body.
- body ring.** Combined tergite and sternite of single somite, bearing legs or legless (as used by some specialists on Notostraca, not equivalent to somite).
- body somite.** Generally refers to unit division of thorax + abdomen in contrast to cephalic somite.
- branchia (pl., branchiae).** Thin-walled finger-like or leaflike structure extending outward from limb or secondarily from side of body, functioning for respiration; *syn.*, gill. [Special types are termed arthrobranchs, pleurobranchs, and podobranchs, depending on their place of attachment, and dendrobranchs, phyllobranchs, mastigobranchs, and trichobranchs, depending on their shape. In Cirripedia (Balanomorpha) pair of leaflike fleshy extensions of mantle lining, within mantle cavity, presumed to be respiratory in function.]
- branchial carina.** *See* carapace carina, b.
- branchial cavity.** *See* branchial chamber.
- branchial chamber.** Space between body and wall of carapace enclosing branchiae; *syn.*, gill chamber.
- branchial glands.** Masses of connective-tissue cells surrounding venous channels in branchiae and devoid of ducts.
- branchial region.** *See* carapace region, c.
- branchiocardiac carina.** *See* carapace carina, c.
- branchiocardiac groove.** *See* carapace groove, b.
- branchiostegal area.** Part of carapace extending laterally and downward over branchiae.
- branchiostegal spine.** *See* carapace spine, b.
- branchiostegite.** Part of carapace extending over top and side of branchial chamber.
- buccal cavity.** Hollow space on ventral side of body containing mouth parts, in Malacostraca bounded by epistome in front and free edges of carapace on sides.
- buccal frame.** Structure of brachyuran decapods enclosing mouth parts, its sides formed by free anterolateral edges of carapace, its front delimited by epistome, and commonly closed by operculiform third maxillipeds.
- calceolus (pl., calceoli).** Complex sensory filaments on antennules of some amphipods.
- calyptopis stage.** Third larval stage in euphausiaceans, characterized by differentiation of abdomen and appearance of compound eyes.
- capitulum.** In pedunculate cirripeds portion of carapace enclosing trophic structures, commonly armored by calcareous plates.
- carapace.** Cuticular, varyingly calcified structure comprising cephalic shield and fold of integument arising from posterior border of maxillary somite extending over trunk, usually covering it laterally as well as dorsally; commonly fused to one or more thoracic somites and in many forms having mid-dorsal hinge.
- carapace adductor muscle.** *See* adductor muscle.
- carapace angles.** In Leaiidae (Conchostraca), angle made by straight dorsal margin with anterior rib ( $\alpha$ ) and with posterior rib ( $\beta$ ); these angles may have utility in tracing evolutionary development and in stratigraphic zonation.
- carapace carina.** Narrow ridge variously located on surface of decapod carapace—named types:
- antennal.** Narrow ridge extending backward from antennal spine.
  - branchial.** Narrow ridge extending backward from orbit over branchial region.
  - branchiocardiac.** Narrow ridge marking off branchial from cardiac regions of carapace.
  - gastroorbital.** Narrow ridge extending backward from supraorbital spine.
  - lateral.** Narrow ridge on side margin of carapace.
  - orbital.** Narrow ridge on margin of orbit.
  - posterior.** Transverse narrow ridge in front of carapace marginal groove.

- h) **postorbital**. Narrow ridge slightly behind orbital margin and parallel to it.
- i) **postrostral**. Narrow ridge behind rostrum extending along dorsal mid-line of carapace.
- j) **rostral**. Longitudinal narrow ridge continuous with lateral margin of rostrum.
- k) **subhepatic**. Narrow ridge extending backward from branchiostegal spine.
- l) **submedian**. Narrow ridge on either side of postrostral carina and parallel to it; may join rostral carina.
- m) **supraorbital**. See gastoorbital carina.
- carapace costae**. Closely spaced radial ridges, grading from fine to coarse, that become obsolete near umbo and do not cross it (=radial lirae, radial riblets, accessory ribs) (e.g., Conchostraca, especially Estheriellidae, in which valves generally have more than 5 costae).
- carapace costellae**. Fine radial ridges that run from ventral margin to and across umbo, and are usually numerous on any given valve (e.g., Conchostraca).
- carapace groove**. Furrow on surface of decapod, generally dorsal—named types:
- a) **antennal**. Furrow on carapace extending backward from vicinity of antennal spine.
- b) **branchiocardiac**. Oblique furrow approximately in middle of posterior half of each side of carapace, separating branchial and cardiac regions and reaching dorsomedian part of carapace well behind cervical or postcervical grooves; may be longitudinal, connecting cervical and postcervical grooves, or extending backward from submedian point on postcervical groove.
- c) **cervical**. Transverse furrow in median part of carapace between gastric and cardiac regions, curving forward toward antennal spine.
- d) **gastoorbital**. Short longitudinal furrow branching from cervical groove at level of orbit and running toward it.
- e) **hepatic**. Short longitudinal furrow connecting cervical with postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves, more or less continuing antennal groove.
- f) **inferior**. Transverse furrow extending from junction of hepatic and cervical grooves toward side margin of carapace, more or less continuous with cervical groove.
- g) **marginal**. Furrow close to posterior edge of carapace and parallel to it.
- h) **postcephalic**. One of three transverse furrows on carapace of many fossil decapods.
- i) **postcervical**. Furrow located behind cervical groove and parallel to it, dividing cardiac region into two parts.
- j) **submedian**. Longitudinal furrow in submedian dorsal part of carapace closely adjacent to postrostral carina.
- carapace growth line**. Peripheral margin of successive membranes added to shell during each molt (e.g., Conchostraca).

**carapace horn**. Anterodorsal termination of carapace valves in some Archaeostraca; may be indurated (e.g., *Ceratiocaris*) or produced into long processes (e.g., *Caryocaris*).

**carapace lirae**. Raised, linear, fine concentric ridges parallel to growth lines and occupying an interspace e.g., Conchostraca).

**carapace region or area**. Differentiated portion of decapod carapace surface distinguished in descriptions and used in classification—named types:

a) **antennal**. Anterior marginal part of carapace bordering orbital region laterally and also touching hepatic, pterygostomial, and, in some forms, frontal region.

b) **anterolateral**. Lateral part of carapace bordering subhepatic or hepatic regions.

c) **branchial**. Lateral part of carapace behind pterygostomial region and overlying branchiae, divided by some authors into epibranchial, mesobranchial, and metabranchial subregions.

d) **cardiac**. Median part of carapace behind cervical groove or suture, between urogastric and intestinal areas.

e) **frontal**. Anteromedian part of carapace including rostrum and area behind it.

f) **gastric**. Median part of carapace in front of cervical groove and behind frontal region; divided by some authors into epigastric, mesogastric, metagastric, protogastric, and urogastric subregions.

g) **hepatic**. Part of carapace which may touch antennal, cardiac, and pterygostomial regions.

h) **intestinal**. Short transverse part of carapace behind cardiac region, designated by some as posterior cardiac lobe.

i) **jugal**. See pterygostomial region.

j) **orbital**. Part of carapace behind eyes, bordered by frontal and antennal regions.

k) **pterygostomial**. Anterolateral part of carapace on ventral surface located on opposite sides of buccal cavity.

l) **subhepatic**. Part of carapace below hepatic region and extending below lateral edge of latter.

**carapace spine**. Sharp projection of carapace important for classification—chief types:

a) **antennal**. Spine on front margin of carapace slightly below orbit.

b) **branchiostegal**. Spine on front margin of carapace or slightly behind it about halfway between antennal and pterygostomial spines.

c) **hepatic**. Spine in hepatic region of carapace below lower branch of cervical groove and behind it.

d) **infraorbital**. Spine on lower angle of orbit.

e) **postorbital**. Spine at moderate distance behind middle of orbit.

f) **postrostral**. Dorsomedian spine immediately behind rostrum.

g) **pterygostomial**. Spine on anterolateral angle of carapace.

- h) **suborbital**. Spine at moderate distance below middle of orbit and slightly beneath it.
- i) **supraorbital**. Spine at moderate distance obliquely behind and above orbit (may be placed on postorbital carina).
- carapace tooth**. Small sharp spinous projection in varied locations—named types:
- a) **cardiac**. Tooth on mid-line of carapace just behind cervical groove.
- b) **gastric**. Tooth on mid-line of carapace just in front of cervical groove.
- c) **lateral**. Tooth placed on lateral margin of carapace (includes anterolateral, mediolateral, posterolateral teeth).
- d) **orbital**. Tooth on orbital margin.
- e) **posterior**. Tooth on mid-line of carapace just in front of posterior margin between it and marginal groove.
- f) **pregastric**. Tooth on mid-line of carapace between gastric tooth and rostrum.
- g) **rostral**. Tooth on rostrum; may be single (e.g., scyllarid palinurans) or multiple and classified as upper, lower, or lateral (e.g., nephropid astacideans and natantian crabs).
- cardiac notch or incision**. Indentation on posterior margin of carapace (e.g., some Alpheidae).
- cardiac region**. See carapace region, d.
- cardiac tooth**. See carapace tooth, a.
- cardo**. Basal segment of maxillula articulating with head.
- caridean lobe**. External rounded projection on basal part of exopod of first maxilliped (e.g., Caridea).
- caridoid facies**. Aspect of primitive Eumalacostraca distinguished by enclosure of thorax by carapace, movably stalked eyes, biramous antennules, scaphocerite-bearing antennae, thoracopods with natatory exopods, elongate abdomen ventrally flexed and powerfully muscled, and caudal fan.
- carina**. Any keel-like structure, as on dorsum of pleon of some amphipods; in cirripeds, single compartment plate at end of shell where cirri are protruded, or adjacent to tergum, possessing alae only. See carapace carina.
- carinal**. In cirripeds (Thoracica), toward or adjacent to compartment plate termed carina.
- carinal latus**. See latus (carinal), a.
- carinal margin**. In cirripeds (Thoracica), edge of tergum adjacent to carina, occluding with carinal margin of opposed tergum.
- carinate**. Conchostracan valve bearing rib(s), chiefly applicable to Leaiidae.
- carinolateral**. Compartment plate of cirripeds located on either side of carina, with radii on cardinal side and alae on rostral side; *syn.*, latus (cardinal).
- carpocerite**. Distal (5th) segment of antennal peduncle.
- carpopod (ite)**. See carpus.
- carpus**. Segment of limb located next distally from merus and joined to propodus proximally; *syn.*, carpopod(ite), wrist.
- caudal appendage**. In cirripeds, one of terminal, multiarticulate or uniarticulate, uniramous paired appendages, homologous with caudal furca of other crustaceans.
- caudal fan**. Combination of laterally expanded uropods and telson turned backward to form powerful swimming structure or means of steering and balancing; *syn.*, tail fan, rhipidura.
- caudal filament**. See caudal ramus.
- caudal furca**. Pair of caudal rami.
- caudal ramus**. Single appendage of terminal abdominal somite paired with another to form caudal furca, both articulated with telson; usually rodlike or bladeliike but may be filamentous and multi-articular (caudal filament); *syn.*, cercus, cercopod, caudal style, stilet.
- caudal style**. See caudal ramus.
- cement gland**. Special concentrations of cells in dermal cover of cirripeds which function for secreting calcareous substance of valves; possibly equivalent to dermal glands of other crustaceans.
- cephalic flexure**. Forward or even upward deflection of anterior sterna of some decapods.
- cephalic shield**. Chitinous, more or less calcified covering structure of head region formed of fused tergites of cephalic somites commonly having pleura.
- cephalic somite**. Unit division of head region, generally recognized as one of five such parts which bear distinctive paired appendages (antennules, antennae, mandibles, maxillules, maxillae) in addition to "precephalic" acron bearing eyes.
- cephalomere**. Cephalic somite.
- cephalon**. Most anterior tagma, bearing eyes, mouth, 2 pairs of antennae, and 3 pairs of mouth-part appendages (e.g., Branchiopoda, Ostracoda, Leptostraca, *Bathynella*); *syn.*, head.
- cephalosome**. Head region when this includes only somites bearing maxillipeds or gnathopods, or both.
- cephalothorax**. Anterior part of body composed of united cephalic and thoracic somites, latter comprising not only those with appendages modified as mouth parts or for food capture but others with relatively unmodified appendages, all forming a fused complex.
- [Note. The most common definition of cephalothorax seems to be "unit resulting from fusion of one or more thoracic segments to cephalon." This seems too all-inclusive, for it can be applied to the very common situation in which only the first thoracic segment (because its limb is a maxilliped) is fused to the cephalon. A unit of this sort is not well fitted to the concept of cephalothorax. Fusion of thoracic segments to the cephalon seems to follow 2 patterns: (1) not all thoracic segments become fused, and the limbs of those that do become modified as mouth parts or for food capture (coepods, peracarids, stomatopods); (2) all thoracic segments become fused, including those which bear relatively unmodified locomotory appendages (eucarids). Gnathothorax is proposed as a term applicable to case 1 and cephalothorax is appropriate for designation of case 2. HESSLER & ROLFE]

- cercopod.** See caudal ramus.
- cercus** (pl., **cerci**). See caudal ramus.
- cervical furrow.** See cervical groove.
- cervical groove.** See carapace groove, c.
- cervical notch or incision.** Strong indentation of carapace at level of cervical groove (e.g., scyllarid palinurans).
- cervical sinus.** Rounded to angular indentation at front of cladoceran carapace along dorsal edge, exposing rear part of head.
- cervical suture.** See cervical groove.
- chela.** Pincer-like distal part of limb consisting of opposed movable, and immovable fingers.
- chelate.** Bearing chela (chelae).
- cheliped.** Any thoracopod bearing chela.
- cincinnulus** (pl., **cincinnuli**). See retinaculum.
- cirrus** (pl., **cirri**). Multiarticulate food-gathering appendage of "thoracic" region of cirriped, normally one of six pairs, each with 2 long hairy rami curled toward mouth.
- clasper.** Appendage, including antenna, that serves for attachment in copulation or as organ for fixation in parasites.
- clypeus.** Part of head carrying labrum; plate on anterior medial part of head formed by fusion of basal segments of antennae (e.g., *Branchipus*, also Hexapoda).
- colleteric gland.** In Cirripedia (Rhizocephala), a single or paired saclike gland in female or hermaphrodite, producing viscoid material binding eggs together.
- comb collar.** In Cirripedia (Acrothoracica), retractable membranous collar supporting row of numerous uniform setae at superior angle of aperture.
- compartment.** See compartment plate.
- compartment plate.** In sessile cirripeds (Verrucomorpha, Balanomorpha), rigid articulated skeletal element (valve) forming part of shell wall; *syn.*, mural plate.
- compound eye.** Array of contiguous ommatidia having common optic nerve trunk; paired.
- compound rostrum.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), projection formed by fusion of rostrrolateral plates, forming compound compartment overlapping latera, and on which radii may develop (cf. rostrum).
- conchostracan carapace interspace.** Area between any 2 growth lines of conchostracan carapace; synonyms used interchangeably include *intervals*, growth zone, growth band.
- conchostracan carapace interval.** Space between any 2 ribs, costae, or costellae on conchostracan carapace.
- conchostracan carapace ribs.** Strong radial ridges radiating from and across umbo of conchostracan carapace, with intervals of variable width between any pair and commonly nodose at intersections of growth lines; may be partial or embryonic in expression; synonyms include longitudinal striae, carinae, radials, diagonal ridges, radial costae, and keels. [Characterize Leaiidae, never exceeding 5 in number on any given leaian valve; ribs also occur in *Protomonocarina* and *Limnadiopsileiaia*.]
- copepodid.** Postnaupliar developmental stages of copepods.
- cormopod(ite).** See thoracopod(ite).
- cormus.** See thorax.
- cornea.** Transparent cuticle covering ommatidia of compound eye.
- corpus mandibulae.** See mandible body.
- coxa.** Segment of limb directly attached to sternite of body (except rarely in forms having distinguishable precoxal segment); *syn.*, coxopod(ite).
- coxal plate.** Lateral expansion of pereopod coxa joined broadly to lateral margins of tergites.
- coxepipod(ite).** Coxal exite.
- coxite.** See protopod(ite).
- coxopod(ite).** See coxa.
- ctenopod.** In cirripeds, appendage where rami of cirrus have setae arranged in linear series along lesser curvature, like a comb (cf. acanthopod; lasiopod).
- cycladiformes.** Conchostracan carapaces having dorsal margin of valves forming obtuse angle with posterior margin (DADAY).
- cyclops stage.** Post-metanaupliar stage in ontogeny of some copepods.
- cypris stage.** Ostracode-like larval stage (e.g., Cirripedia).
- cyrtopia stage.** Fifth larval stage in euphausiaceans in which antennae no longer serve for locomotion.
- dactyl.** See dactylus.
- dactylopod(ite).** See dactylus.
- dactylus.** Distalmost segment of limb; *syn.*, dactylopod(ite).
- deflexed front.** Broadly downturned front marginal part of carapace in some decapods.
- dendrobranch.** Type of gill having tubes divided into arborescent bundles.
- denticle.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), primary or secondary toothlet on sutural edge of radius of compartment plate or opposed buttress of adjoining plate, serving to strengthen articulation of plates.
- depressor muscle.** In Cirripedia (Balanomorpha), muscle inserted at basicarinal angle of tergum, for which depressor muscle crests are usually developed.
- depressor muscle crests.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), elevated denticles on interior of tergum near basicarinal angle for attachment of depressor muscles (crests may extend apically).
- depressor muscle, lateral.** In Cirripedia (Balanomorpha), muscle inserted on basitergal angle of scutum, for which lateral depressor muscle pit, depression or crests may develop.
- dermal gland.** Single cell or concentration of cells in epidermis of body and limbs, traversed by canals and communicating with surface by fine ducts, their functions various and possibly corresponding to cement glands of cirripeds.
- deutocerebrum.** See mesocerebrum.

- diaeresis.** Transverse groove on posterior part of exopod (rarely also endopod) of uropod appendage, in some forms dividing exopod into 2 movably connected parts.
- distal.** Direction away from central part of body; opposite of proximal.
- dorsal organ.** Thickened glandular area of hypoderm of dorsal surface just behind head in various branchiopods, isopods, amphipods, mysidaceans, tanaidaceans, and syncarids, its function obscure.
- dorsal plate.** Spindle-shaped division of carapace in some astacidean decapods (Erymidae) intercalated in median suture; may be related to dorsal organ.
- dorsoventralis posterior.** Important muscle in crayfish and other decapods connecting head apodemes with internal surface of carapace just behind cervical groove.
- doublure.** Reflexed ventral continuation of carapace integument.
- effluent channels.** Passageways through which water moves away from gills and out of branchial region.
- endite.** Inwardly (medially) directed lobe of pre-coxa, coxa, basis, or ischium.
- endognath.** Endopod (inner and principal branch) of maxilliped.
- endophragm.** Wall formed by union of apposed apodemes forming part of endoskeleton of some decapods; *syn.*, arthrophragm.
- endophragmal skeleton.** Complex internal skeletal structure formed by fusion of apodemes in decapods providing framework for muscle attachment, generally not strongly calcified.
- endopleurite.** Lateral apodeme of endoskeleton in decapods.
- endopod (ite).** Innermost ramus of limb arising from protopod basis; in the Eumalacostraca typically composed of 5 segments (ischium, merus, carpus, propodus, dactylus).
- endoskeleton.** Internal hard parts of some decapods consisting mainly of endophragms.
- endosternite.** Mesodermal tendonous plate below anterior part of alimentary canal (e.g., Notostraca); also firm calcareous plate between nerve cord and alimentary canal in anterior part of thorax in some crabs.
- endostome.** Palate-like part of buccal frame in some brachyuran decapods; *syn.*, palate.
- ephippium** (pl., **ephippia**). Semielliptical part of dorsal region in each valve of cladoceran branchiopods altered to form encasement for eggs, shed as unit and constructed in manner that facilitates ultimate hatching after desiccation (especially characteristic of Daphniidae).
- epibranchial lobe or area.** Anterior part of branchial region of decapod (brachyuran) carapace.
- epibranchial space.** Part of gill chamber above (external to) gills.
- epigastric lobe or area.** Anterior extension of gastric region of decapod (brachyuran) carapace.
- epimeral fold.** Steep fold of endopleurites in some decapods connected with branchiostegite to form branchial chamber.
- epimere.** Lateral downfold of tergite; *syn.*, epimeron, pleurepimere, pleurite, pleuron (pl., pleura), pleura (pl., pleurae), tergal fold.
- epimeron** (pl., **epimera**). *See* epimere.
- epipod (ite).** Laterally directed ramus (exite) of coxa; may be present or absent.
- episternum.** Posterolateral projection of various sterna of decapods.
- epistome.** Plate of varying shape between labrum and bases of antennae in brachyuran decapods, also defined as sternum of antennal somite.
- esophagus.** Anterior part of alimentary canal between pharynx or mouth and stomach or stomodeum; *syn.*, oesophagus.
- esthetasc.** Sensory seta covered by delicate cuticle projecting from most antennules and antennae; *syn.*, olfactory hair, esthete.
- esthete.* *See* esthetasc.
- exhalant passage.** Canal in front of gill chamber containing scaphognathite which functions for driving water outward, leads to large anterior opening.
- exite.** Laterally directed ramus of protopodal segment of limb (e.g., Notostraca).
- exognath.** Exopod (outer and secondary branch) of maxilliped.
- exopod (ite).** Outer ramus of limb arising from protopod basis; may contain variable number of segments or be much reduced or lacking.
- exoskeleton.** Entire horny (in part chitinous) more or less calcified outer covering of crustacean body and its appendages.
- eye.** Visual organ, in Crustacea either compound or naupliar (simple).
- eyestalk.** Peduncle movably articulated with head, carrying eye at its distal extremity, may be divided into 2 or 3 segments and may be retractable; *syn.*, ocular peduncle.
- filamentary appendage.** Membranous process developed on body in many cirripeds (Ascothoracica, Lepodomorpha) commonly on bases of cirri; may contain branches of testes; presumed to be respiratory in function.
- filter chamber.** Space beneath thorax (e.g., phyllocarids) enclosed by ventral body wall and rhythmically moved thoracopods which functions for food-gathering from currents sucked into it.
- fingers.** Scissor-like blades of claw end of cheliped, one finger movable and other immovable (fixed); very exceptionally (*Psalidopus*) both fingers are movable.
- first antenna.** *See* antennule.
- first maxilla.** *See* maxillule.
- fixed finger.** Immovable distal part of propodus of chela; *syn.*, pollex, thumb.
- flabellum.** Thin distal exite of branchiopod gnathobase with setose margin.
- flagellum** (pl., **flagella**). Slender, multiarticulate distal part of antennule, antenna or exopod.

- foregut.** See stomodaeum.
- frena.** Tegumentary folds holding eggs (Cirripedia).
- front.** Part of crab carapace between orbits.
- frontal appendage.** One pair of filaments arising in many Anostraca from bases of antennae but independent of them; may be ramified.
- frontal band.** Glandular organ of adhesion in frontal region of various parasitic copepods serving for attachment to host fishes.
- frontal organs.** Sensory cells or setae on front surface of heads of some branchiopods, copepods, and decapods.
- frontal plate.** Modified rostrum of brachyuran decapods which bears downward projecting process between antennules that unites with epistome.
- frontal region.** See carapace region, e.
- frontolateral horn.** One of pair of tubular frontolateral extensions of cuticle of cirriped nauplii (except Ascothoracica), apparently perforate at tips and provided with mass of gland cells at bases.
- furca.** See caudal furca.
- furcal ramus.** Branch of caudal furca.
- furcilia stage.** Fourth larval stage in euphausiaceans, marked by movable compound eyes that project beyond edge of carapace.
- galea.** Outer distal hoodlike lobe of 2nd segment of maxillule; adjacent to inner spiny lobe (lacinia).
- gastric groove.** Longitudinal furrow on either side of median carina on stomatopod carapace.
- gastric mill.** Apparatus of varying complexity in stomodeum which serves to break up food; consists of framework of movably articulated ossicles developed as thickened and calcified part of stomodeal lining, most highly specialized in decapods.
- gastric region.** See carapace region, f.
- gastric tooth.** See carapace tooth, b.
- gastrolith.** Discoid calcareous nodule common in stomodeum of some decapods
- gastroorbital carina.** See carapace carina, d.
- gastroorbital groove.** See carapace groove, d.
- genital region.** See urogastric lobe or area.
- gill.** See branchia.
- gill chamber.** See branchial chamber.
- glaucothoe stage.** Ontogenetic stage in larval development of pagurid decapods.
- gnathal lobe.** Masticatory endite of mandible; *syn.*, masticatory process.
- gnathobase.** Endite which through medial contact with opposite member of its pair serves for comminution of food; may also serve in food transport.
- gnathopod.** Chelate or subchelate, prehensile maxilliped (e.g., Amphipoda); also used for first two prehensile pereopods of amphipods whether chelate or subchelate.
- gnathothorax.** Tagma resulting from fusion of gnathal somites (mandibular, two maxillary) with one or more thoracic somites, limbs of which are modified to act as mouth parts. See cephalothorax.
- gonad.** Hollow reproductive organ in either sex, cavity communicating with pair of efferent ducts (pair in some parasitic isopods).
- gonapophysis.** Median process arising from base of first or second pleopods of male syncarids.
- gonopod.** Modified male pleopod serving for transmittal of spermatophores to female.
- gonopore.** Outlet for genital products, generally placed constantly in different crustaceans; *syn.*, sexual pore.
- green gland.** One of pair of complex excretory glands located in antenna on front of head of decapod (e.g., crayfish); *syn.*, antennal gland.
- groove.** See carapace groove.
- haft organ.** Pear- to wedge-shaped appendage of some branchiopods (e.g., *Limnadopsis*) attached to mid-dorsal surface of head at narrower end; *syn.*, frontal organ, affixing organ.
- head.** See cephalon.
- head apodeme.** Fused endopleurite and endosternite forming place for muscle attachment at anterior end of skeleton in Astacidea.
- hemocoel.** Lacunar system extending throughout much of body, filled by blood.
- hemocyanin.** Copper-containing respiratory pigment in blood of malacostracans.
- hemoglobin.** Oxygen-carrying protein coloring substance of red plasma in blood, found in some crustaceans (e.g., Ostracoda), may be colored or colorless in conchostracans, present also in blood of anostracans, cladocerans, notostracans, some harpacticid and parasitic copepods, branchiurans, and some parasite cirripeds.
- hepatic caeca.** Pouchlike diverticula generally connected with mesenteron, serving functions of liver; see hepatopancreas.
- hepatic groove.** See carapace groove, e.
- hepatic region.** See carapace region, g.
- hepatic spine.** See carapace spine, c.
- hepatopancreas.** Digestive gland consisting of ramified tubules spread through cephalothorax performing functions of both liver and pancreas.
- heterochelate.** Chelae of left and right chelipeds differing in shape and size.
- hindgut.** See proctodeum.
- hinge line.** Mid-dorsal line of junction of two valves composing carapace, permitting movement between them (e.g., Conchostraca, Ostracoda, Phyllocarida).
- hinge nodes.** Localized thickened parts of right-valve hinge of phyllocarids, somewhat elongate in line of hinge and serving to strengthen it.
- hypobranchial space.** Part of gill chamber below gills.
- hypopharynx.** See metastoma.
- hypostoma.** See metastoma.
- hypostome.** See metastoma.
- imbricate plates.** See lower latera.
- incisor process.** Biting portion of gnathal lobe of mandible; *syn.*, pars incisiva.
- inferior groove.** See carapace groove, f.
- inframedian lateral.** See latus (inframedian), b.
- inframedian latus.** Valve of some cirriped shells located below upper latus.

- infraorbital spine.** See carapace spine, d.
- inner lamina.** In cirripeds, innershell layer of compartmental plate separated from outer lamina by parietal tubes.
- interantennular septum.** Plate in some malacostracans that separates one antennular cavity from other; *syn.*, proepistome.
- interlaminar figure.** In Cirripedia (Balanomorpha), simple or arborescent lines seen running between epicuticle of outer lamina through longitudinal septa into inner lamina, when paries is sectioned parallel to base.
- intestinal region.** See carapace region, h.
- intestine.** Elongate slender posterior part of alimentary canal, in some crustaceans partly corresponding to mesenteron and invariably to part of proctodeum.
- intraparies (pl., intraparietes).** Secondary lateral margin of carina in some cirripeds (Lepadomorpha).
- ischiocerite.** Third segment of antennal peduncle.
- ischiopod (ite).** See ischium.
- ischium.** Third limb segment distal from body articulating with basis and comprising first segment of endopod; *syn.*, ischiopod (ite).
- joint.** Articulation (most commonly applicable to movable connection of individual segment of appendage with neighbors or body but relates also to movable connection of body parts); loosely and undesirably employed as synonym of segment.
- jugal region.** See carapace region, i.
- kentrogon.** In Cirripedia (Rhizocephala), dedifferentiated cells of female or hermaphrodite cyprid larva, at time they are being extruded through cyprid first antenna into host crustacean; or of male cyprid, being extruded into mantle cavity of female.
- knee.** Point of most pronounced flexure of endopod.
- labium.** See metastoma.
- labrum.** Unpaired outgrowth arising just in front of mouth and more or less covering it; *syn.*, upper lip.
- lacinia.** Inner distal spiny lobe of 2nd segment of maxillule, adjacent to outer hoodlike lobe (galea).
- lacinia mobilis.** Small, generally toothed process articulated with incisor process of mandible.
- lappet.** Downhanging lateral part of carapace.
- lasiopod.** In Cirripedia (Lepadomorpha), appendage where rami of cirrus have setae arranged in groups along lesser curvature; like brushes (cf. ctenopod; acanthopod).
- latera.** See latus.
- lateral.** Plate of cirriped shell between carinolateral and rostrum; *syn.*, latus.
- lateral bar.** In Cirripedia (Acrothoracica), pair of chitinous thickenings (best developed in Cryptophialidae) running from chitinous apertural thickenings medially down each side of mantle sac.
- lateral carina.** See carapace carina, e.
- lateral depressor pit.** In cirripeds, small hollow near basitergal angle of scutum for attachment of lateral depressor muscle.
- lateral gastrocardiac markings.** Insertions of attractor epimeralis muscle in most Brachyura, in which the branchiocardiac groove has disappeared.
- lateral margin.** Differentiated edge of carapace in some advanced macrurans and many brachyurans.
- lateral tooth.** See carapace tooth, c.
- latus (pl., latera).** In cirripeds (Lepadomorpha), any of paired plates forming part of shell, not including carina and rostrum or opercular plates (scutum, tergum); *syn.*, lateral. Includes following different types:
- carinal.** Plate located on either side of carina, with radii on carinal side and alae on rostral side; corresponds to carinolateral in Balanomorpha.
  - inframedian.** Plate beneath median latera in some cirripeds (e.g., *Arcoscalpellum*).
  - lower.** Plate in some cirripeds (e.g., *Zeugmatolepas*) near basis; *syn.*, imbricate plate(s).
  - median.** One of series of plates between carina and rostrum which may be disposed in whorls (e.g., *Scillaelepas*).
  - rostral.** Plate located on either side of rostrum, with radii on both rostral and carinal sides; corresponds to rostrolateral in Balanomorpha.
  - upper.** Plate between carinal and rostral latera just below opercular valves (e.g., scalpellids).
- limnadiiformes.** Conchostracan carapaces exhibiting recurvature of posterior margin near dorsal line, characteristic of several of the Limnadioidea; pseudorecurvature observed in some laeiids.
- linea (pl., lineae).** Linear marking on carapace.
- linea anomurica.** Longitudinal groove or uncalcified line on carapace of many anomuran decapods.
- linea branchiostegalis.** Longitudinal groove or uncalcified line extending backward from front margin of carapace slightly above branchiostegal spine and reaching to or beyond hepatic spine (e.g., palaemonid carideans).
- linea dromica.** Feature on carapace of dromiid crabs comparable to linea thalassinica; *syn.*, linea dromiida.
- linea dromiida.** See linea dromica.
- linea homolica.** Feature similar to linea thalassinica and possibly equivalent to it.
- linea lateralis.** Longitudinal groove or uncalcified line extending backward from front margin of carapace below orbit, in some forms to rear extremity of carapace (e.g., some peneiids).
- linea thalassinica.** Longitudinal groove or uncalcified line on dorsal part of carapace extending from anterior margin below antennal spine across entire length of carapace to its posterior edge (most thalassinoid decapods).
- longitudinal septum.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), wall of tubes disposed normal to inner and outer laminae of compartment plate and separating them; *syn.*, parietal septum.
- lower lateral.** Valve in shell of some cirripeds; see latus (lower), c.
- lower lip.** See metastoma.

- male-cell receptacle.** In Cirripedia (Rhizocephala), pocket or pair of pockets within mantle cavity of female into which dedifferentiated cells of male cyprid migrate and differentiate into "testes."
- manca.** Young of some Peracarida (e.g., Isopoda, Tanaidacea, Cumacea) in which last thoracopod is lacking.
- mancoïd stage.** Postlarval leptostracan that differs from adult in having rudimentary 4th pleopod.
- mandible.** One of third pair of cephalic appendages used to masticate food.
- mandible body.** Inflated base (coxa) of mandible providing for attachment of mandibular muscles; *syn.*, body of mandible, corpus mandibulae.
- mandibular foramen.** Relatively large opening in body of mandible for passage of transverse adductor muscle.
- mandibular palp.** Distal articulated part of mandible that functions as aid in feeding or cleaning.
- mantle.** Fleishy structure of cirripeds strengthened by five calcified plates (carina, terga, scuta).
- mantle cavity.** Space in cirripeds occupied by body, opening by posteroventral aperture.
- manus.** Broad proximal part of cheliped propodus (i.e., this propodus minus fixed finger); *syn.*, palm.
- marginal groove.** See carapace groove, g.
- marsepium.** Brood pouch.
- masticatory process.** See gnathal lobe.
- mastigobranch.** Slender respiratory process at base of epipod(ite); *syn.*, mastigobranchia (pl., mastigobranchiae).
- mastigopus stage.** Larval stage in ontogeny of some decapods equivalent to permanent adult form of *Leucifer* (penaeid).
- maxilla** (pl., **maxillae**). Appendage next behind maxillule serving functions in feeding and respiration; *syn.*, second maxilla.
- maxillary gland.** Excretory organ located in maxillary segment, having its duct opening on maxilla; *syn.*, shell gland.
- maxilliped.** Anterior thoracic limb (one, two, or three) modified to act as mouth part, its body segment usually fused to cephalon.
- maxillipede.** See maxilliped.
- maxillipes** (pl., **maxillipedes**). See maxilliped.
- maxillule.** Cephalic appendages next behind mandible, serving as mouth part; *syn.*, first maxilla, maxillula. In cirripeds, also termed inner maxilla.
- median articulated spine.** Projection of telson in eocarids, seemingly not homologous with skeletal structure of any extant crustacean.
- median dorsal plate.** Elongate plate separating carapace valves posterodorsally (Phyllocarida Rhinocarina).
- median eye.** Sessile unpaired eye of nauplius larva which persists in some adults; *syn.*, naupliar eye.
- median lateral.** See latus (median), d.
- megalopa stage.** First postlarval stage in ontogeny of crabs, not developed in macruran decapods or other crustaceans; *syn.*, megalops stage.
- megalops stage.** See megalopa stage.
- meropod(ite).** See merus.
- merus.** Fourth limb segment distally from body, its proximal extremity articulating with ischium; usually forms first long segment of cheliped and pereopod; *syn.*, meropod(ite).
- mesenteron.** Mid-portion of alimentary tract of endodermal origin with surface commonly increased by pouchlike extensions which serve as digestive glands and aid absorption of partly digested food; *syn.*, midgut.
- mesobranchial lobe or area.** Intermediate part of branchial region of decapod (brachyuran) carapace.
- mesocerebrum.** Ganglion of antennular somite; *syn.*, deutocerebrum.
- mesogastric lobe or area.** Medial division of gastric region of decapod (brachyuran) carapace, generally pentagonal in outline with long narrow forward prolongation.
- mesosome.** Collective term for all free thoracic somites behind head.
- mesosternum.** Median plate arising from sternum in many brachyurans.
- metabranchial lobe or area.** Posterior part of branchial region of decapod (brachyuran) carapace.
- metacerebrum.** Ganglion of antennular somite; *syn.*, tritocerebrum.
- metagastric lobe or area.** Posterior division of gastric region of decapod (brachyuran) carapace; may be ill-defined or undifferentiated.
- metanauplius.** Postnaupliar larva with same general body and limb morphology as nauplius, but having additional limbs.
- metasoma.** See metasome.
- metasome.** In copepods, part of prosome consisting of free thoracic somites in front of major articulation; in amphipods first three abdominal somites bearing unmodified pleopods.
- metastoma.** Lower lip behind mandibles, usually cleft into pair of lobes termed paragnatha; *syn.*, hypostoma, hypostome, hypopharynx, labium, lower lip, paragnath.
- metazoea.** Last stage of zoea larva in Brachyura.
- metopon.** Entire preoral area in decapods, including parts of mandibular somite.
- midgut.** See mesenteron.
- molar process.** Grinding portion of gnathal lobe of mandible; *syn.*, pars molaris.
- movable finger.** Dactylus of chela.
- mucro** (pl., **mucrones**). Spine on inferoposteal angle of carapace in some Cladocera.
- mysis stage.** Post-cypris larval stage in ontogeny of most crustaceans, characterized by presence of biramous limbs on all thoracic somites; *syn.*, schizopod larva.
- naupliar eye.** Unpaired median eye found in naupliar larval stages and commonly in more mature stages as well; *syn.*, median eye.
- nauplius** (pl., **nauplii**). Early larval stage having only antennules, antennae, and mandibles.

- neck organ.** *See* nuchal organ.
- nephropore.** Elevated outlet of antennal gland, located on coxa of antenna.
- notum.** Posterior part of dorsal region of macruran decapod carapace.
- nuchal organ.** Sense organ on upper side of head in many branchiopods; *syn.*, neck organ.
- occipital notch.** Angulated indentation at rear of head in some conchostracans.
- occludent margin.** In cirripeds, margin of scutum and tergum forming aperture and occluding with comparable margins of opposed scutum.
- occludent teeth.** In cirripeds, small projections on occludent scutal margin formed by extensions of external growth ridges that interdigitate with similar teeth on margin of opposed scutum.
- ocellus (pl., ocelli).** Unpaired median eye, common in some branchiopods (e.g., Notostraca) and copepods (e.g., Cyclopoida) but otherwise uncommon.
- ocular bulla.** Knob on inner surface of carapace connecting lower and upper orbital margins with basal segment of antenna, serving for protection of eye.
- ocular papilla.** Anterior projection on eyestalk of some mysidaceans.
- ocular peduncle.** *See* eyestalk.
- oesophagus.** *See* esophagus.
- olfactory hair.** Sensory seta covered by delicate cuticle projecting from most antennules and antennae; *syn.*, aesthetasc, esthetasc, aesthete, esthete.
- ommatidium (pl., ommatidia).** Cylindrical or prismatic visual constituent of compound eye covered by transparent cuticle (cornea).
- oostegite.** Inner medially directed lamella arising from coxa of pereopod in females participating in formation of mid-ventral marsupium.
- oostegopod.** Appendage of genital somite in some branchiopods modified as brood pouch.
- opercular valve.** Movable plate in orifice of cirriped shell, one of pairs of scuta and terga joined to sheath by opercular membrane.
- operculum.** In cirripeds, terga, scuta and associated membranes (Balanomorpha), or tergum and scutum of one side (Verrucomorpha), forming apparatus guarding aperture.
- ophthalmic somite.** *See* acron.
- optic lobe.** Ganglion of brain for nervation of eye.
- orbit.** Circular opening in front part of some decapod carapaces enclosing eyestalk.
- orbital carina.** *See* carapace carina, f.
- orbital hiatus.** Gap in orbital margin of carapace at its lower (inner) angle.
- orbital region.** *See* carapace region, j.
- orbital tooth.** *See* carapace tooth, d.
- orifice.** Opening in upper part of cirriped shell containing opercular valves.
- ostium (pl., ostia).** Valve of heart.
- oviduct.** In females passageway from ovary to uterus and leading to genital aperture.
- ovigerous frena (pl., frenae).** In Cirripedia (certain Lepadomorpha), fleshy ridge or flap on interior mantle surface, adhering to and holding egg masses (ovigerous lamellae) in place.
- ovigerous lamella.** In Cirripedia, eggs adhering in one or more lamellae, within mantle cavity and in certain Lepadomorpha, held in position by ovigerous frenae.
- palate.** *See* endostome.
- palm.** *See* manus.
- palp.** Reduced distal portion of limb, usually only one of its rami, but may comprise both rami plus basis; usually consists of distal 2 or 3 segments following merus.
- palp foramen.** Small circular opening in body of mandible communicating with mandibular palp.
- palpus (pl., palpi).** Oval setose mandibular endopod of cirripeds, attached directly to mandible (Acrothoracica) or to lateral margin of labrum (Thoracica).
- paracopulatory organ.** Specialized endopod of pleopod in some Isopoda serving accessory function in copulation.
- paragnath.** *See* metastoma.
- paries (pl., parietes).** Median triangular part of cirriped compartment plate, with lower edge attached to basis and adjoined laterally by margins of carinal tectum.
- parietal plate.** One of different kinds of shell elements forming calcareous wall surrounding body of cirripeds.
- parietal septum.** In cirripeds, same as longitudinal septum.
- parietal tube.** One of myriad porelike canals in longitudinal septum of balanomorph cirripeds, disposed normal to inner and outer laminae of compartment plate and separating them; *syn.*, parietal pore, longitudinal pore, longitudinal tube.
- pars ampullaris.** Bottle-shaped diverticulum on entrance of caeca into pyloric chamber of stomach in syncarids.
- pars incisiva.** *See* incisor process.
- pars molaris.** *See* molar process.
- parva stage.** First postlarval stage in ontogeny of Caridea.
- peduncle.** Basal portion of certain appendages; also fleshy part of body in some cirripeds (Lepadomorpha), between capitulum and attachment to substrate with or without armor of chitinous or calcareous beads, scales, or filaments.
- penicillus (pl., penicilli).** Tuft of fine hairs resembling small brush.
- penis (pl., penes).** Male copulatory organ. [May be exceptionally long in some cirripeds.]
- peraeopod.** *See* pereopod.
- percion.** Anterior portion of trunk, usually provided with locomotory appendages; differs from thorax in excluding somite of maxillipeds; *syn.*, pereon.
- percionite.** Thoracic somite; *syn.*, pereonite.

- pereiopod.** Locomotory thoracopod; *syn.*, peraeopod, pereopod, ambulatory leg, walking leg.
- pereon.** *See* pereion.
- pereopod.** *See* pereiopod.
- pericardium.** Blood sinus surrounding heart and communicating with it by pair of ostia in each somite except terminal one, may run entire length of trunk above gut.
- peritrophic membrane.** Chitinous sheath secreted around feces (e.g., some Ostracoda).
- petasma.** Abdominal appendage modified as gonapophysis in males of some eucarids, syncarids, and stomatopods.
- pharynx.** Part of alimentary tract next to mouth and adjoining esophagus.
- photophore.** Luminous organ generally located on eyestalk, limbs or abdomen of various crustaceans.
- phyllobranch.** Gill with leaflike filaments; *syn.*, phyllobranchia.
- phyllobranchia** (pl., **phyllobranchiae**). *See* phyllobranch.
- phyllopodium** (pl., **phyllopodia**). Leaflike thoracic appendage of some crustaceans (e.g., Branchiopoda) including maxillulae and maxillae of Decapoda.
- phyllosoma stage.** Early schizopod larval stage in ontogeny of palinurid and scyllarid lobsters.
- pleomere.** *See* abdominal somite.
- pleon.** Abdomen of crustacean.
- pleonite.** *See* abdominal somite.
- pleopod.** Limb of any of first five abdominal somites in Eumalacostrica (six in Phyllocarida), in many crustaceans adapted for swimming; *syn.*, swimmeret.
- pleotelson.** Structure formed by fusion of one or more abdominal somites with telson, as in most isopods.
- pleura** (pl., **pleurae**). *See* epimere.
- pleural lobe.** *See* epimere.
- pleural suture.** Line of splitting apart of carapace in molting, corresponding to linea dromica, and present in all brachyurans.
- pleurepimere.** *See* epimere.
- pleurite.** *See* epimere.
- pleurobranch.** Gill of decapods attached directly to body wall; *syn.*, pleurobranchia.
- pleurobranchia** (pl., **pleurobranchiae**). *See* pleurobranch.
- pleuron** (pl., **pleura**). *See* epimere.
- pleuropod.** *See* precoxa.
- podobranch.** Gill placed on epipods of thoracopods; *syn.*, podobranchia.
- podobranchia** (pl., **podobranchiae**). *See* podobranch.
- podomere.** Individual segment of limb; *not syn.* joint.
- podophthalmite.** One of 2 segments of eyestalk, articulating with basophthalmite proximally and bearing corneal surface of eye distally.
- pollex.** *See* fixed finger.
- postabdomen.** *See* telson.
- postcephalic groove.** *See* carapace groove, h.
- postcervical groove.** *See* carapace groove, i.
- postcervical notch or incision.** Strong indentation of carapace at level of postcervical groove (e.g., scyllarid palinurans).
- posterior cardiac lobe.** *See* intestinal carapace region.
- posterior carina.** *See* carapace carina, g.
- posterior gastric pit.** One of 2 small depressions near mid-line of dorsal exterior of decapod carapace marking insertion point of stomach muscle.
- posterior tooth.** *See* carapace tooth, e.
- postlarval stage.** Ontogenetic stage reached after completion of all nauplius-to-zoea or megalopa metamorphoses, marked by initial appearance of adult characters.
- postorbital carina.** *See* carapace carina, h.
- postorbital spine.** *See* carapace spine, e.
- postrostral carina.** *See* carapace carina, i.
- postrostral spine.** *See* carapace spine, f.
- postsegmental region.** Telson.
- precoxa.** Limb segment proximal to coxa, present only in certain subclasses; *syn.*, pleuropod.
- pregastric tooth.** *See* carapace tooth, f.
- pre-epipod (ite).** Secondary ramus of coxa directed outward (e.g., *Chirocephalus*).
- presegmental region.** *See* acron.
- prezoea stage.** Just-hatched larva still covered by embryonic cuticle.
- primary denticle.** *See* denticle; primary denticle disposed normal to suture edges of compartment plate.
- primordial valve.** Chitinous plate in Cirripedia (Lepadomorpha and Verrucomorpha) having a distinctive honeycomb appearance, developing at incipient umbones of terga, scuta and carina, during metamorphosis.
- proctodaeum.** *See* proctodeum.
- proctodeum.** Posterior part of alimentary canal lined with cuticle of ectodermal origin that is continuous with anus; *syn.*, hindgut, proctodaeum.
- procpistome.** *See* interantennular septum.
- prosarthema.** Scale implanted on inner margin of basal segment of antennular peduncle in Penaeidae.
- prosoma.** *See* prosome.
- prosome.** Anterior region of body, commonly limited behind by major articulation. In cirripeds, large saclike body in position of "head" in front of (and rostral from) thoracic limbs, supporting trophi and commonly first cirri.
- protocephalon.** *See* acron.
- protocerebrum.** Ganglion of first (preantennular) somite.
- protogastric lobe or area.** Anterolateral division of gastric region of decapod (brachyuran) carapace.
- protopod (ite).** Proximal portion of limb, consisting of precoxa, coxa, and basis, fused together in some forms; its distal edge generally bearing endo-

- pod(ite) and exopod(ite); *syn.*, coxite, sym-pod(ite).
- protozoa stage.** Larval stage in ontogeny of some decapods preceding zoea stage.
- proventriculus.** Elaborated anterior part of alimentary canal in some crustaceans (e.g., Isopoda) adapted for pressing juices from food and straining out solid particles.
- proximal.** Direction toward center of body; opposite of distal.
- pseudepipod(ite).** Lateral ramus arising from proximal portion of exopod or from basis just proximal to exopod.
- pseudorostrum.** Anterior portion of gnathothorax in Cumacea, formed by pair of anterolateral parts of cephalic shield grown forward so as to meet medially in front of true rostrum.
- pseudotrachea.** Respiratory structure developed in pleopods of some Isopoda for air-breathing; they consist of small ramified tubules inside limb opening outward in slitlike apertures and filled with air.
- pterygostome.** *See* pterygostomial region.
- pterygostomial region.** *See* carapace region, k.
- pterygostomial spine.** *See* carapace spine, g.
- radius (pl., radii).** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), lateral part of compartment plate adjoining paries, marked off from it by change in direction of growth lines and by depressed exterior surface; overlaps ala of adjoining compartment plate.
- ramus.** Branch of limb or other appendage (e.g., caudal furca).
- raptorial claw.** Generally strong, curved and toothed dactylus suited for catching prey (e.g., *Squilla*).
- receptaculum seminalis.** *See* seminal receptacle.
- retinaculum (pl., retinacula).** Small hook at tip of appendices internae (e.g., Caridea), one of many serving to join left and right pleopods together; *syn.*, cincinnulus.
- rostral angle.** In cirripeds angle of plate directed toward rostrum.
- rostral carina.** *See* carapace carina, j.
- rostral plate.** Anteriorly projecting, unpaired, movably articulated, median extension of carapace (e.g., Phyllocarida); *see* rostrum, compound rostrum.
- rostral tooth.** *See* carapace tooth, g.
- rostrrolateral.** In cirripeds, one of pair of compartment plates lying between and overlapping rostrum and laterals, having radii on both rostral and cardinal sides and tending to fuse with rostrum; *see* latus (rostral), e.
- rostrum.** Anteriorly projecting, unpaired, usually rigid median extension of carapace between eyes or eyestalks; in cirripeds (Thoracica) unpaired valve between laterals and opposite carinal at basiscutal end of capitulum, simple and provided with alae in lower balanomorphs but compound and overlapping laterals in higher balanomorphs; *see* compound rostrum.
- saw bristles.** Row of heavy setae on gnathal lobe of mandible between molar and incisor processes in many Eumalacostraca, especially Peracarida.
- scale.** In cirripeds (Lepadomorpha), platelet on side of peduncle. *See* scaphocerite.
- scaphocerite.** Exopod(ite) of antenna in Eumalacostraca; *syn.*, scale. [Similar structure occurs on antennules of Leptostraca.]
- scaphognath(ite).** Exopod comprising boat-shaped extension of maxilla opposite endopod.
- schizopod larva.** Ontogenetic stage characterized by presence of biramous limbs on all thoracic somites; *syn.*, mysis stage.
- scutal margin.** In cirripeds, articular edge of tergum adjoining scutum, or edge of any other plate abutting scutum.
- scutum (pl., scuta).** Valve of cirriped shell opposite carina and adjacent to peduncle in some forms (Lepadomorpha) or opercular in others (Balanomorpha).
- second antenna.** *See* antenna.
- second maxilla.** *See* maxilla.
- secondary denticle.** *See* denticle; secondary denticle located on primary one and disposed normal to it.
- segment.** Individual component of crustacean limb connected by movable articulation with adjoining segments; *syn.*, podomere (not equivalent to somite, though used by some authors in this sense). (*not* joint.)
- seminal receptacle.** Diverticulum of oviduct or external pouch (some pygocephalomorph eocarids, isopod peracarids, and decapods) for storing spermatozoa delivered by male; *syn.*, receptaculum seminalis.
- seminal vesicle.** Sac in male independent of testes for storage of spermatozoa (e.g., some anostracans, Chirocephalidae); *syn.*, vesicula seminalis.
- serration.** Irregular saw-toothed outline on dorsal edges of some conchostracan valves where growth bands do not end on same hinge line; may have various expression from strongly serrate (e.g., Paleolimnadiopsidae) to subdued serrate (e.g., extant Caenestheriellia) and pseudoserrate (e.g., some extant *Cyzicus*).
- seta (pl., setae).** Hairlike process of cuticle with which it is articulated; in cirripeds, bristle or spine on trophi and cirri.
- sexual pore.** *See* gonopore.
- sheath.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), thickened upper part of internal shell wall and alae forming cylindrical collar to which opercular membrane is attached.
- shell.** In cirripeds, general term for hard parts of balanomorphs including compartment plates, basis (if calcareous), and opercular valves.
- shell fold.** Portion of carapace behind cephalic shield.
- shell gland.** *See* maxillary gland.
- skeletal duplicature.** Outer chitinous body cover of conchostracans shed during ecdysis, individual duplicatures being very thin whitish translucent

- layer resembling entire animal when floating in water; may occur also in notostracans and cladocerans.
- somite.** Division of body (head, thorax, abdomen) with exoskeleton comprising body-ring that is generally divisible into dorsal (tergite) and ventral (sternite) portions.
- spermatheca.** Pouch in oviduct of females for reception and retention of spermatozoa.
- spermatophore.** Packet of spermatozoa for transfer from male to female.
- spur.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), dependent projection on basal margin of tergum.
- spur fasciole.* See spur furrow.
- spur furrow.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha), groove on outer surface of tergum extending to apex in line with spur; *syn.*, spur fasciole.
- squama.** See scaphocerite.
- statocyst.** Diminutive organ providing sense of balance, present in most crustaceans.
- stenopodium.** Elongate limb composed of rodlike segments.
- sternal canal.** Internal skeletal structure of some crabs formed by meeting of sternal apodemes of opposite sides above nerve cord; may be developed as firm plate (endosternite) in anterior part of thorax.
- sternal plastron.** See sternum.
- sternal process.** Projection from mid-section of sternite of mysidaceans and pygocephalomorph eocarids, unknown as to function.
- sternite.** Sclerotized ventral surface of single body somite.
- sternum (pl., sterna).** Sternites of all body somites taken together, and abdomen; ventral segmented floor of thorax; *syn.*, sternal plastron.
- stipe.** Stemlike part of limb bearing squamate or other-shaped exopod (e.g., various eocarids).
- stomodaeum.** See stomodeum.
- stomodeum.** Anterior part of alimentary tract, ectodermal in origin and lined with cuticle continuous with mouth; includes esophagus and dilated part corresponding to stomach, and may contain so-called gastric mill of varying complexity for trituration of food; *syn.*, foregut; stomodaeum.
- stridulating organ.** Structure in which two parts of exoskeleton are rubbed together in order to produce sound, one part consisting of ridge or tuberculate or cross-ridged surface which is apposed to another part usually having single transverse ridge or tubercle.
- stylamblys.** See appendix interna.
- style.** See telson.
- stylet.** See caudal ramus.
- stylocerite.** Rounded or spiniform process on outer part of proximal segment of antennular peduncle in some decapods (e.g., natantian decapods); *syn.*, antennular scale.
- subbranchial region.** Ventrally placed part of brachyuran carapace corresponding in position to branchial region of dorsal part of carapace.
- subcarina.** In cirripeds (e.g., scalpellids), small unpaired plate below carina.
- subchela.** Distal extremity of limb developed as prehensile structure by folding back of dactylus against propodus or broadened part of it (e.g., Stomatopoda); may comprise propodus folded back against carpus; *syn.*, gnathopod.
- subchelate.** Provided with subchela.
- subesophageal ganglion.** Nerve plexus below esophagus in head of malacostracans.
- subhepatic carina.** See carapace carina, k.
- subhepatic region.** See carapace region, l.
- submedian carina.** See carapace carina, l.
- submedian groove.** See carapace groove, j.
- suborbital region.** Narrow area bordering lower margin of orbit; may be ill-defined or indistinguishable.
- suborbital spine.** See carapace spine, h.
- subrostrum.** In cirripeds (e.g., scalpellids), small unpaired plate below rostrum.
- suctorial structures.** Mouth parts of ectoparasites modified for piercing body wall of host and for sucking out body fluids.
- supra-anal plate.** Portion of notostracan telson, usually tongue-shaped but may be spatulate to round; produced backward on dorsal side as a plate.
- supra-esophageal ganglion.** Nerve plexus above esophagus in head of malacostracans.
- supraorbital carina.** See carapace carina, m.
- supraorbital spine.** See carapace spine, i.
- sutural edge.** In cirripeds, margin of compartment plate along suture.
- suture.** In cirripeds (Balanomorpha, Verrucomorpha), line or seam at juncture of two compartment plates; also articulation line between joints.
- swimmeret.** See pleopod.
- sympod (ite).** See protopod (ite).
- syncerebrum.** See supra-esophageal ganglion.
- tagma (pl., tagmata).** Major division of body (e.g., head, thorax, abdomen), each composed of varying number of somites.
- tail fan.** See caudal fan.
- tectum.** Central part of carina in cirripeds (Lepadomorpha).
- telopod.** Part of limb distal to coxa.
- telson.** Last somite of body, bearing anus and commonly caudal furca or pair of cerci, growth zone for postcephalic somites located at its anterior edge; *syn.*, postabdomen, style (Archaeostraca).
- telson head.** Enlarged part of telson in Archaeostraca, with which furcal rami articulate.
- tergal fold.** See epimere.
- tergal margin.** In cirripeds (Thoracica), edge of scutum adjacent to tergum or edge of any plate abutting tergum.
- tergite.** Sclerotized dorsal surface of single body somite.

- tergolateral margin.** Angular inner edge of scutum in cirriped shells having upper laterals.
- tergum** (pl., *terga*). Dorsal part of exoskeleton comprising tergites of all body somites taken together; also valve of cirriped shell adjacent to carina and generally opercular.
- terminal claw spines.** Toothlike projections of varying size at concave end of postabdomen in cladocerans, having taxonomic value; few large *basal* spines near base of claw, minute *denticles* along greater part of claw, and spines of intermediate size grouped as *comb*, all serving for riddance of foreign particles and parasites.
- thelycum.** External pocket on ventral side of thorax in penaeid females which functions as seminal receptacle (*receptaculum seminalis*).
- thoracic limb.** Any limb attached to somite of thorax; *syn.*, thoracopod.
- thoracomere.** Somite of thorax.
- thoracopod (ite).** Limb attached to any thoracic somite; *syn.*, thoracic limb. [Maxillipeds and pereopods are thoracopods.]
- thorax.** Tagma between cephalon and abdomen comprising anterior portion of trunk, last somite bearing most posterior genital pore or just anterior to this pore-bearing somite and nearly always limb-bearing; *syn.*, *cormus* (not precise equivalent of pereion).
- thumb.** *See* fixed finger.
- transverse septum.** Thin wall of cirripeds normal to longitudinal septum and parallel to basis, dividing parietal tubes into series of cells.
- trichobranch.** Gill of filamentous structure with hairlike projections from axis (e.g., crayfish); *syn.*, trichobranchia.
- trichobranchia** (pl., *trichobranchiae*). *See* trichobranch.
- tritocerebrum.** *See* metacerebrum.
- trophi.** Mouth parts of cirripeds, including labrum, mandibles, maxillules, maxillae, palpi, and in some, first pair of cirri.
- trunk.** Postcephalic portion of body; *syn.*, thorax.
- umbo.** Apical portion of either valve of bivalved crustaceans (e.g., Conchostraca, Phyllocarida); in cirripeds, central point on plate from which successive growth increments extend.
- umbonal spine.** Hollow, minute to large spinose projection of conchostracan carapace that may involve entire umbo; may be curved, looped, or represented as node or nipple. [Larval condition characteristic in Verteiidae.]
- upcurved growth lines.** Upwardly bent growth lines covering tear in conchostracan shell-margin at site of injury.
- upper lateral.** Plate of some cirriped shells; *see* *latus* (upper), f.
- upper lip.** *See* labrum.
- urogastric lobe or area.** Posterior division of gastric region of decapod (brachyuran) carapace; sometimes called genital region.
- uropod (ite).** Limb of sixth abdominal segment of Eumalacostraca, generally fanlike but may be reduced or modified.
- urosoma.** *See* urosome.
- urosome.** In copepods, part of body behind major articulation marking posterior boundary of prosome; in amphipods, last three abdominal somites bearing modified appendages.
- valve.** Lateral part of divided carapace commonly joined to opposite part by hingement along dorsal mid-line (e.g., Ostracoda, Conchostraca, Leptostraca).
- vas deferens.** Duct in males for passage of spermatozoa from testis to penis.
- ventral nerve chain.** Ganglia or connectives on somites joined by single or double nerve cord running longitudinally beneath alimentary canal.
- ventral platform.** Part of archaeostracan telson head embracing proximal extremities of furcal rami.
- vertex.** Top part of head (cephalon).
- vesicula seminalis.** *See* seminal vesicle.
- walking leg.** *See* pereopod.
- wrist.** *See* carpus.
- zoea stage.** Larval stage in ontogeny of various malacostracans but unknown in some.

## ONTOGENY

### EGGS AND LARVAL STAGES

Crustaceans hatch from eggs which in some groups (e.g., commonly in various branchiopods, ostracodes, cirripeds, isopods) are produced parthogenetically but generally by sexual fertilization. These may be released in extraordinary numbers directly into water surrounding females or carried in brood pouches until ready for hatching, but (except in very few) without releasing viviparous young. In some branchiopods

(e.g., Cladocera) the brood pouch is located dorsally between the carapace valves. Among malacostracans, the Peracarida carry eggs in a brood pouch formed by overlapping plates (*oostegites*) borne by the bases of some of the thoracic limbs, and in Decapoda the eggs are attached to abdominal appendages of females.

A common denominator in the ontogeny of crustaceans is the larval stage of development known as the **nauplius** (Fig.

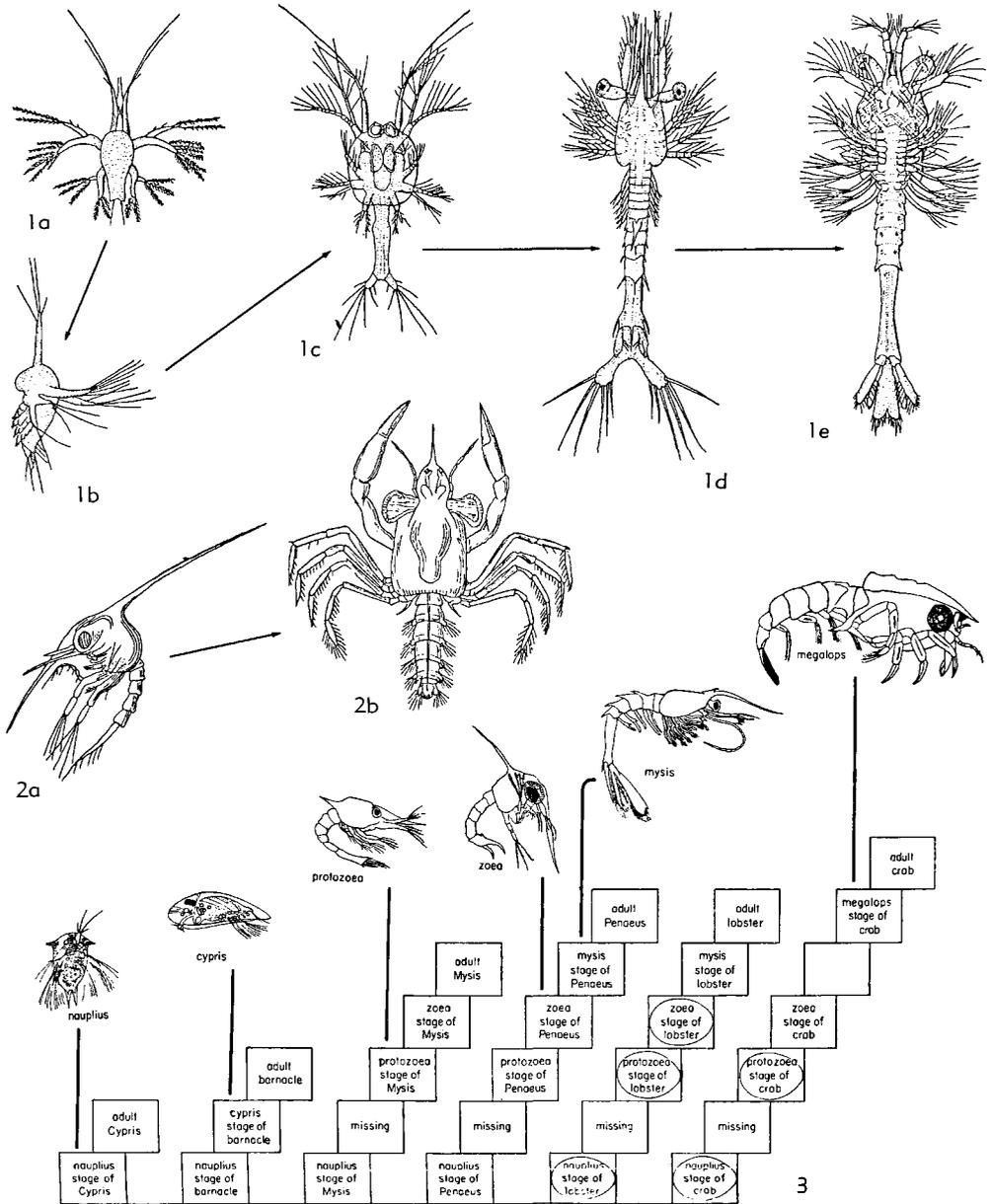


FIG. 35. Ontogeny of Crustacea (stages in ovals confined to eggs, others free-living).  
 [For megalops, read megalopa.]

1. Larval stages of penaeid prawns (eucarid Malacostraca); 1a, nauplius,  $\times 53$ ; 1b, metanauplius,  $\times 47$ ; 1c, zoea,  $\times 25$ ; 1d, metazoea,  $\times 23$ ; 1e, mysis,  $\times 14$ .
2. Larval stages of crabs (decapod Malacostraca); 2a, zoea, characterized by elongate cephalic spines,  $\times 23$ ; 2b, megalopa stage of swimming crab, *Ovalipes*,  $\times 11.7$ .
3. Recapitulation of larval stages in several crustacean groups (not to scale).  
 [1-2, from F. A. Chace in *Encyclopedia of science and technology*, by permission, McGraw-Hill Book Company, copyright, 1960; 3, mod. from MacGinitie & MacGinitie, *Natural history of marine animals*, by permission, McGraw-Hill Book Company, copyright 1949.]

35,1a), which prevails widely as the first larval stage after hatching, or if not so, is suppressed within the egg (SCHMITT, 1965, p. 35). The nauplius is a very minute, unsegmented, egg-shaped fore-runner of one or more successive larval stages or of next-following adult forms (e.g., cypris stage, Fig. 35). It is broadest in front, where a median eye provides vision. Behind this are three pairs of appendages—uniramous antennules, biramous antennae, and biramous mandibles. The mouth, covered by a large labrum, leads directly to a slender alimentary canal in which foregut, midgut, and hindgut are recognizable. In branchiopods and ostracods transformation of the nauplius into juveniles and adults is gradual, with addition of somite after somite in successive molts by intercalation in front of the terminal somite (telson) of the abdomen. Immature instars may be numerous. Early stages in this process which differ perceptibly from the initial nauplius but which have not yet attained adult form are called metanauplii (Fig. 35,1b).

Recognition of the cirripeds as crustaceans is affirmed by their ontogeny, in which a free-swimming cyprid larval stage is particularly significant (Fig. 21,1a-c; 35,3; see Fig. 39,2a,b).

In the various crustacean classes post-naupliar larval stages named cypris, protozoa, zoea, mysis, and megalopa are recognized (Fig. 35), as well as several additional special ones. These differ vastly from one another in appearance and correspondingly in their morphological features, but tend generally to approach adults of their group. Most of the larval forms swim freely at or near the water surface. The commonly setose nature of their appendages and development of spinous processes, which in some are remarkably extended, undoubtedly serve as aids in flotation. Literally dozens of molts may occur during larval life, and still others after maturity is attained. Larval metamorphoses are entirely suppressed in crayfishes and river crabs, but this is not true of most other fresh-water crustaceans. A few marine crabs are known to be hatched with near-adult form, being thus decided exceptions to the rule.

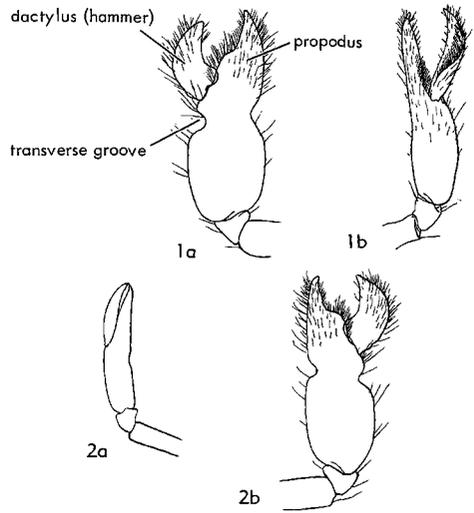


FIG. 36. Regeneration of appendages in Crustacea, illustrated by snapping shrimp, *Alpheus heterochaelis*, in this instance accompanied by reversal in placement of larger and smaller front chelipeds,  $\times 2.3$  (mod. from Wilson, 1903).—1a,b. Chelipeds of left-handed male from North Carolina coast.—2a,b. Left and right chelipeds immediately after molting, small left one regenerated on stump of original larger cheliped with hammer-like dactylus and grooved propodus.

## MOLTING AND GROWTH

A characteristic feature of crustaceans is molting of the exoskeleton effected by periodic resorption of some of the materials of the old skeleton and secretion of a thin new integument beneath it. The old skeleton, with lining of the front and rear ends of the alimentary canal is then (usually but not invariably) shed or molted. At the same time, by addition of water, the soft parts swell to a distinctly larger size beneath the thin elastic flexible new skeleton which later quickly hardens to form a relatively rigid cover. The molting process is termed **ecdysis**.

## ADULTS AND LIFE DURATION

Adulthood is distinguished by qualitative stability of morphological features, for changes at times of molting become re-

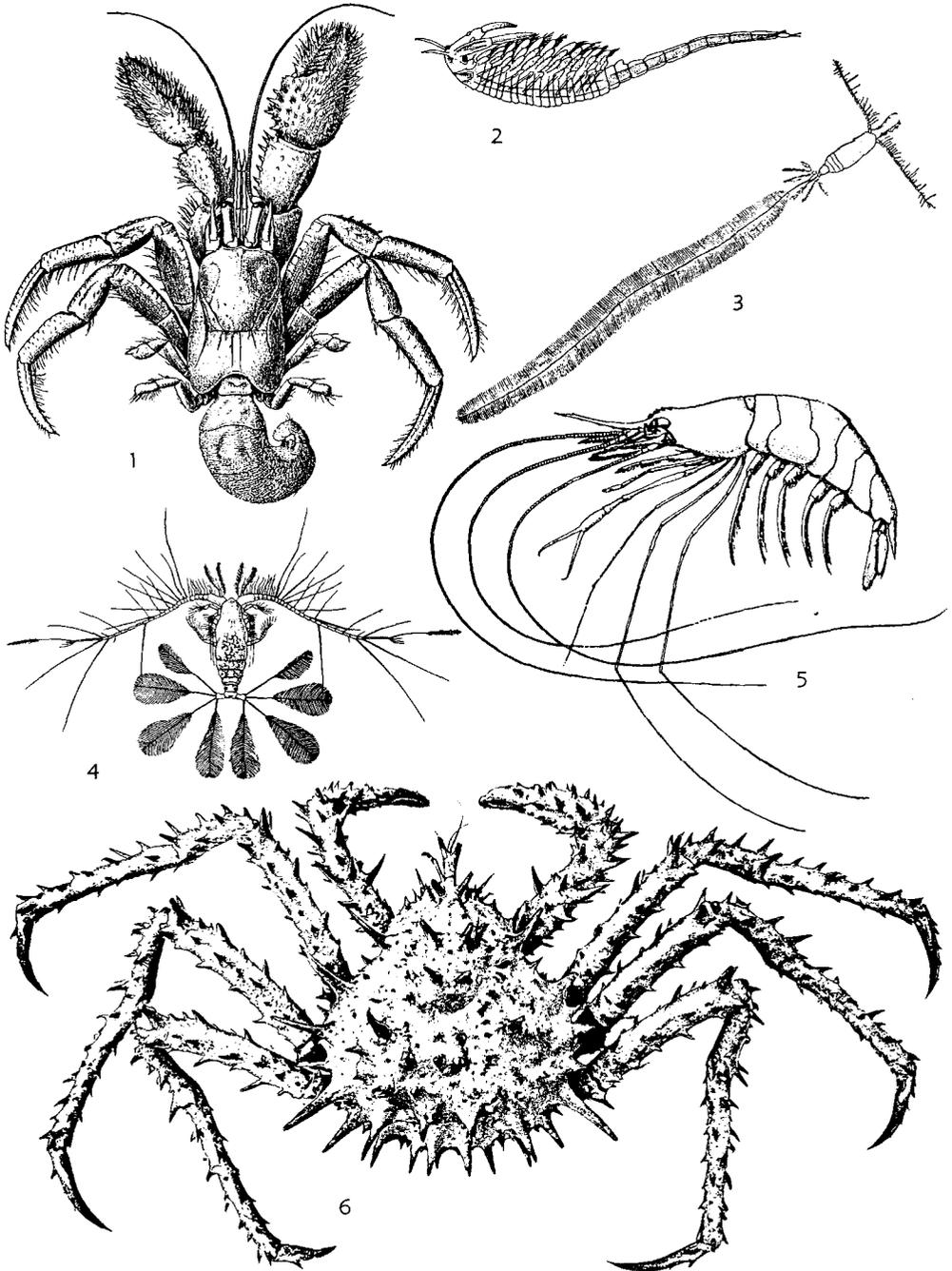


FIG. 37. Adaptation of Crustacea to diverse habitats and modes of life.

1. Dorsal view of hermit crab, *Pagurus setosus*, removed from snail shell which protects soft, asymmetrically twisted abdomen and into which most of crab's body can be withdrawn,  $\times 0.7$ . This species lives along the Pacific

coast of North America from Alaska to California at depths of 100 to 500 m. Other hermit crabs inhabit beaches above tidewater and range considerably in size.

2. Brine shrimp, *Artemia*, an anostracan branchio-

stricted to mere growth in size. No longer are external and internal structures modified significantly and no additions of somites or their appendages appear. Many species seem not to grow beyond an approximate limit in size, whereas others continue to increase in dimensions and bulk throughout life.

The duration of adult existence of most crustaceans is quite unknown. It may be measured in days or weeks in the case of some branchiopods but certainly in years for many balanomorph cirripeds and mala-

costracans. SCHMITT (1965, p. 110-111) has reported that the average life span of some crabs is three years and of others approximately 12 years. He estimated that probably the longest-lived among modern crustaceans are giant American lobsters (*Homarus americanus*) off the New England coast, for which a 35-pound individual was judged to be about 50 years old. The largest yet-caught specimen, with body length of two feet and weight of 44.5 pounds, on similar basis would be approximately 65 years old, an ancient patriarch.

## AUTOTOMY AND REGENERATION

Appendages which are lost are regenerated during subsequent molting stages. Anostracan branchiopods such as *Artemia* have this ability to a marked degree, and it has been shown that regeneration is more rapid in salt water than in fresh water. Injured valves of conchostracans may show deformation in growth lines at points of repair.

Autotomy, or breaking-off of injured limbs, is demonstrated by decapods and various other crustaceans. The injured appendage is dropped at a preformed break-

ing plane by means of a reflex muscle action. A blood clot forms at the breaking plane, then a bud, which grows into a new limb, appears beneath the scar. The resulting regenerated limb may differ from the original; asymmetry of chelae may be reversed when the larger chela is lost, the regenerated one becoming a small cutting chela and the uninjured one assuming the crushing abilities (Fig. 36). When the eye stalk of a living lobster or prawn is removed, it may be replaced by an antenna. This is heteromorphic regeneration.

## ADAPTATION

### MODES OF LIFE

Crustaceans are generally aquatic animals, both marine and fresh-water, although they inhabit many diverse environments. Some live on land, in rock crevices,

earth burrows or in trees, and some are parasites living on or within nearly every kind of animal, including other crustaceans. Body structures and appendages are adapted according to requirements of their habits and habitats.

FIG. 37. (Continued from facing page.)

- pod adapted to existence in hypersaline lakes and lagoons, where populations may be extremely large,  $\times 3.3$ .
- 3-4. Open-ocean planktonic copepods with setose appendages which aid in flotation.—3. *Calocalanus* sp.,  $\times 10$ .—4. *C. pavo*,  $\times 11$ .
5. Caridean prawn, *Palaemon tenuipes*, a decapod malacostracan adapted for living in brackish-water lagoons and estuaries, with very elongate and slender pereopods supplementing antennules and antennae as feelers,  $\times 0.7$ .
6. Female pagurid crab, *Paralithodes rathbuni*, from sea bottom off California coast at depth

of 400 m. These crabs, relatives of hermit crabs, have abandoned use of mollusk shells for housing and with stout carapace of their own move about freely, females retaining asymmetry of ventral abdominal plates,  $\times 0.5$ .

[1, 6, from Schmitt, 1921; 2-3, from MacGinitie & MacGinitie, *Natural history of marine animals*, by permission, McGraw-Hill Book Company, copyright 1949; 4, from W. T. Calman in E. R. Lankester, *Treatise on zoology*, by permission, A. & C. Black, publ.; 5, from W. Buddenbrock in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, by permission, Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft, publ.]

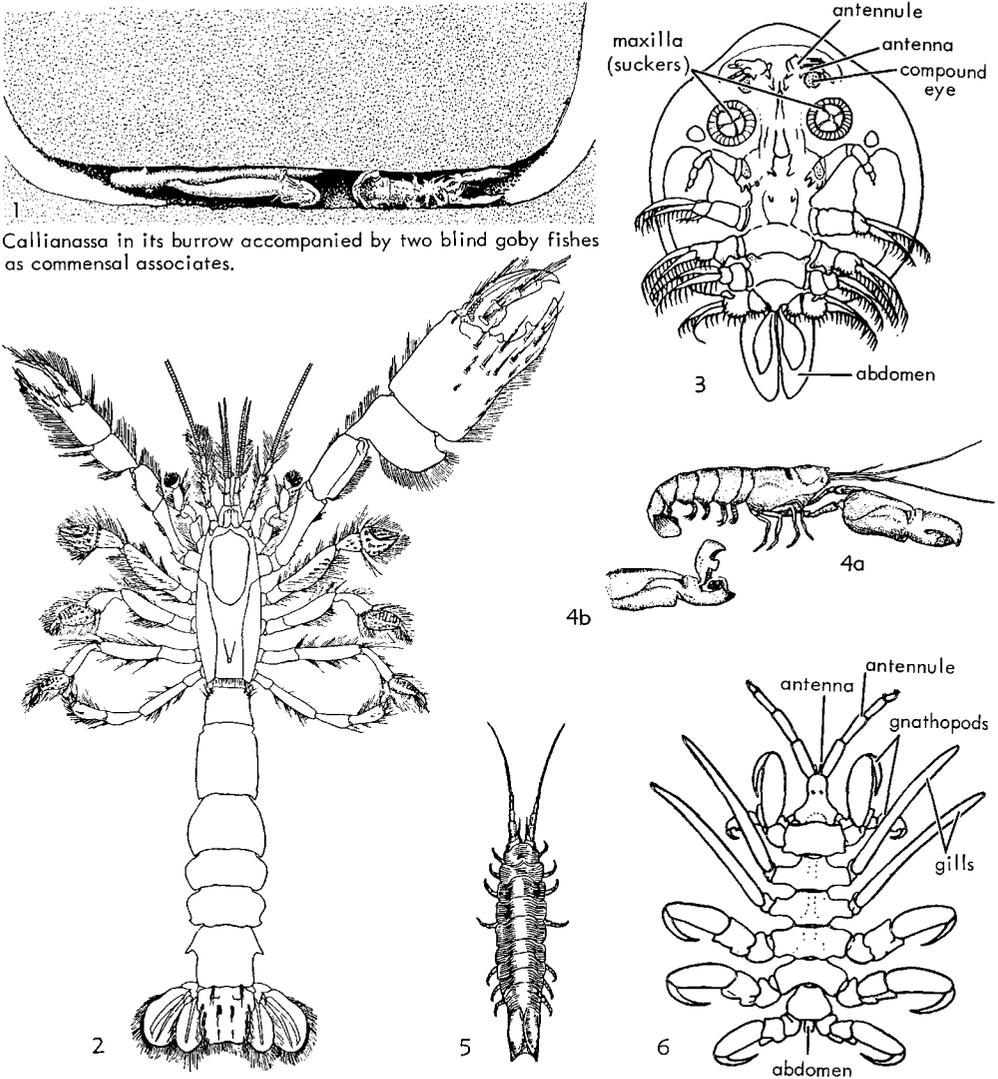


FIG. 38. Adaptation of Crustacea, including commensalism and parasitism.

- 1-2. Burrow-building shrimplike decapod, *Callinassa*, which is adapted to existence in shallow-sea mud bottoms and in gravelly beaches.—1. Longitudinal section of *Callinassa*-made permanent burrow in southern California beach sand, occupied by male (*C. affinis*) in feeding position and accompanied by pair of small commensal fishes. In this association a pair of shrimps invariably are hosts to a pair of fishes, each pair proportional to the other in size (small shrimps with small fishes and larger shrimps with larger fishes).—2. Dorsal view of female *C. goniophthalmus* from sea bottom off California coast at depth of 500 m.,  $\times 0.7$ .
3. Branchiuran fish louse, *Argulus japonicus*, common ectoparasite on goldfishes; ventral view of female, enl.
4. Pistol shrimp, *Alpheus californiensis*, a beach dweller; 4a, side view of entire shrimp,  $\times 0.7$ ; 4b, cocked claw of cheliped,  $\times 0.7$ .
5. Marine isopod, *Pentidotea resecata*, which lives on stems of seaweeds, orienting its slender body along the stem and closely resembling the weed in color, thus gaining protection by inconspicuousness,  $\times 0.7$ .
6. Caprellidean amphipod, *Paracyamus boopis*, so-called whale louse, because ectoparasitic on whales; dorsal view of male,  $\times 4$ .
- [1, 4-5, from MacGinitie & MacGinitie, *Natural history of marine animals*, by permission, McGraw-Hill Book Company, publ., copyright 1949; 2, from Schmitt, 1921; 3, 6, from S. F. Light *et al.*, *Intertidal invertebrates of central California coast*, by permission, University of California Press, publ.]

The endopods of thoracic and abdominal limbs are modified to perform various functions: locomotion, respiration, food-gathering, cleansing, defense, reproduction, and sensory perception. The planktonic types of crustaceans have long feathered setae and antennae enabling them to float (Fig. 37, 3-4). If an animal is predatory, the chelae (or subchelae in stomatopods) of one or more thoracic limb pairs are specialized and enlarged for capturing and tearing food (Fig. 25, 26, 30). Burrowers have slender bodies to aid in burrowing and slipping into crevices (Fig. 38,1-2).

Deep-sea forms usually are blind or nearly so, but free-swimmers living near the surface have well-developed eyes and other sense organs. Certain types have phosphorescent or luminous organs called photophores which emit light and may be used for illumination in searching for food and detecting enemies. Those that have become terrestrial have special organs for respiration; the vascular lining of the carapace performs this function in land crabs, whereas in wood lice (Isopoda) breathing is accomplished through invaginations of the abdominal limb integuments.

Parasitic and commensal forms have prehensile devices for attachment, structures modified for piercing skin of the host, and sucking organs, and may lose appendages for locomotion (Fig. 38,3).

Cephalocarida and Mystacocarida are exclusively benthonic marine crustaceans living from the intertidal zone to depths of 300 meters. They are diminutive deposit-feeders, living in the loose, organic-rich sediment of the subtidal zone and are unable to swim.

Most Branchiopoda inhabit fresh to brackish and slightly alkaline water in lakes and temporary ponds among weedy vegetation, although *Artemia* is found in salt lakes and briny pools (Fig. 37,2). *Triops* survives periods of desiccation; in fact, the eggs normally require a drying-out period prior to hatching. Branchiopods swim, crawl, or burrow in muddy substrates, feeding on algae and diatoms. Notostracan branchiopods occur commonly in temporary lakes and ponds and even alkaline pools, crawling on bottom and feeding on detritus including parts of larger organisms. Eggs

in mud distributed by birds and in dried mud may be viable even after 15 years. Transported hermaphroditic populations possibly explain geographic distribution of species.

Copepoda are prevalent in all open-ocean areas, as well as fresh-water environments (Fig. 20); many forms are pelagic, but most are benthonic (Fig. 37,3,4). Cyclopoid and harpacticoid species may construct cysts for survival during anaerobic periods. Ostracoda thrive in virtually all kinds of aquatic environments, ranging from streams, lakes, temporary ponds, and brackish estuaries or lagoons to shallow seas and intermediate and abyssal depths in oceans. In the fossil record a preponderant majority of ostracode species consist of shallow marine bottom-dwellers.

Cirripedia are marine animals except for a few which live in brackish water. They attach themselves to rocks, seaweed, hulls of ships and floating objects, some forms exhibiting parasitism on larger animals, and some are commensal with fishes and whales (Fig. 21, 22).

Among Malacostraca the numerous varied groups exhibit adaptations to many different environments and modes of life. The Phyllocarida are predominantly marine, Leptostraca being strong swimmers but also adapted for burrowing in the mud in shallow coastal waters (Fig. 19,8). Phyllocarids are found in depths ranging to 6,000 meters, although some (e.g., *Caryocaris*) are planktonic; most are bottom-dwellers. Eocarids (Fig. 17,2-3) were marine scavengers probably living in coastal lagoons and swamps. Extant Syncarida inhabit fresh water (Fig. 18,3-4), although many fossil species were marine. They are nektonic to benthonic, microphagous to carnivorous, as shown by variations in development of eyes and maxillipeds. Most groups of Peracarida are predominantly marine, occurring at all depths; many are benthonic detritus-feeders burrowing and building tubes in the substrate.

Dominantly pelagic malacostracans include the carnivorous or detritus-feeding Mysidacea (Fig. 18,1-2,11) and Euphausiacea (Fig. 24,4), which are main food sources of many marine fishes and whales. The Cumacea (Fig. 18,5) and Tanaidacea (Fig.

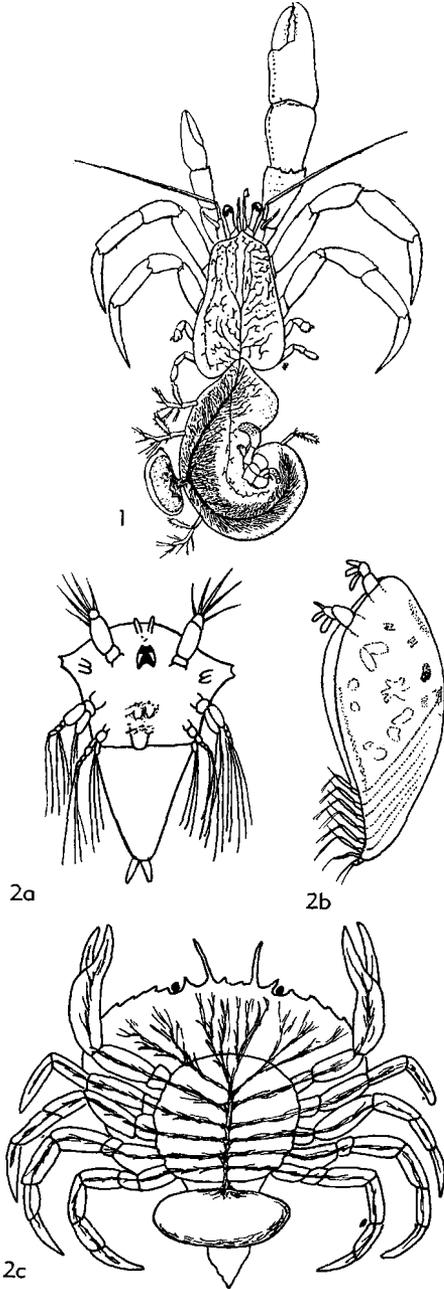


FIG. 39. Crustacean parasites illustrated by rhizocephalan cirripeds preying on crabs.—1. *Pelto-gaster pagurus* (rhizocephalan) on hermit crab, *Pagurus bernhardus*, saclike body of parasite containing viscera and eggs visible on left side of crab's twisted naked abdomen, with food-gathering roots permeating its host's abdomen and thorax,  $\times 0.7$  (from Paul Krüger in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, by permission, Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft, publ.).—2. *Sac-*

18,9) are mainly crawlers and burrowers in shallow sea-bottom mud, but many range to abyssal depths. A majority of the Isopoda (Fig. 19,2; 23,1-11) and Amphipoda (Fig. 19,7) also are marine (e.g., *Limnoria*, a ubiquitous isopod wood-borer) and found at most depths. Both of these groups include fresh-water and terrestrial members, however. Some degenerate isopods infest other crustaceans as parasites (Fig. 33, 2) and are vicious enemies of fishes; likewise, amphipods include such ectoparasites as the whale louse *Paracymus* (Fig. 38,6). Ability to live in the water of hot springs and in underground waters is a feature of the Thermosbaenacea. Mimicry and concealment are illustrated by such isopods as the slender-bodied *Idotea* (Fig. 38,5), which orient themselves parallel to seaweed stems and assume coloration identical with them.

Only the Isopoda rival the Decapoda in variety of effective adaptation to living habits and habitats. Decapods may be strong swimmers (Fig. 17,1; 24,2,5-8; 25,1-2,6; 26,4) and many are able to burrow swiftly to moderate depths in sea-bottom or fresh-water sediment (Fig. 25,3-5; 26,1,5,7,11) or on land, along streams, or on shores (e.g., *Callinassa*, Fig. 38,1-2). Numerous crabs can scuttle over the earth surface and robber crabs are adept at climbing trees. The hermit crabs (Fig. 37,1) are peculiarly specialized for using empty snail shells for protection, with the naked abdomen twisted into coils of the shell interior. Fiddler crabs (Fig. 36,1-2) and pistol shrimps (Fig. 38,4) are examples of unusual adaptations, the first for effective burrowing and the second seemingly for offensive-defensive protection. Long persistence of acquired adaptive characters is illustrated by the stout-shelled lithodid crabs (Fig. 37,6), which have abandoned an ancestral mode of life like that of hermit crabs and become suited to a free existence, while retaining asymmetry of the abdomen inherited from shell-inhabiting predecessors.

*culina carcini*; 2a,b, nauplius stage (dorsal) and cypris stage (lateral) larvae, much enl; 2c, ventral view of crab with attached adult female rhizocephalan distinguished by saclike body and roots penetrating interior and appendages of crab,  $\times 0.7$  (from Stempel).

## COMMENSALISM AND PARASITISM

Only one genus of Branchiopoda, the cladoceran *Anchistropus*, is known to be parasitic (on *Hydra*). Certain ostracodes are parasitic on fishes and other crustaceans. Caligoid copepods are parasitic or commensal on fish, attached by the head, the mouth being modified for sucking and hooklike mandibles adapted to pierce the skin of the host. Lernaepodoid copepods, the so-called fish maggots, are ectoparasites, which as larvae bury themselves in the walls of the mouth cavity or gill chamber of salmon and other fishes to feed on body fluids. Some copepods embed themselves in the eyes or other organs of fishes, hard-shelled mollusks, nudibranchs, and in other crustaceans, and may live their entire life cycle on or within the host. Those that live on marine annelid worms have degenerated to become limbless, being attached by a tubular branched structure within the host. Branchiuran argulids are external parasites which fasten themselves by means of powerful discs; their antennae are equipped with hooks and spines to further grip the surface of fishes (Fig. 38,3).

Cirripedia contain several parasitic orders,

the Acrothoracica being content to occupy shells of other barnacles, corals, snails, clams and other animals after boring into them. The Ascothoracica are external or internal parasites of echinoderms or coelenterates obtaining sustenance from the body of the host. The highly parasitic Rhizocephala are world-wide in distribution (Fig. 39). They infest other crustaceans, principally Decapoda, and have no appendages or typical crustacean features, but consist of a thin-walled sac enclosing a visceral mass containing reproductive organs. They penetrate the abdomen of the host by means of a threadlike root which branches in all directions to absorb nourishment (Fig. 39, 1,2c). The crustacean nature of these parasites is affirmed by their larval development which passes through nauplius and cypris stages (Fig. 39,2a,b). The larvae hatch out and settle on another decapod host, where the life cycle is repeated.

Epicaridean isopods (Fig. 33,2) are ectoparasitic on other crustaceans (copepods, ostracodes, mysidaceans, euphausiaceans, isopods, amphipods, parasitic cirripeds, and decapods). Caprellidean amphipods (Cyamididae) are ectoparasites on whales (Fig. 38,6). Decapods are commensal with mollusks, sponges, echinoderms, and ascidians.

## CLASSIFICATION

In older classification, as previously noted, all crustaceans were divided into groups termed Entomostraca and Malacostraca. The first included a heterogeneous assemblage of mostly small forms now included in classes (or subclasses) named Cephalocarida, Branchiopoda, Ostracoda, Copepoda, Branchiura, Euthycarcinoida, Mystacocarida, and Cirripedia. The category of crustaceans consisting of so-called entomostracans has long been abandoned. The Malacostraca, on the other hand, persist in classification. They contain most of the larger crustaceans with a thorax of eight somites and an abdomen containing seven or eight somites. A majority of the higher crustaceans grouped in the Malacostraca are medium-sized to large marine forms.

The development of crustacean classification, with notice of the numerous divergent arrangements advocated by authors, is not outlined in this chapter. Instead, it is judged sufficient to summarize here the classification adopted in the *Treatise* with statement of the stratigraphic occurrence of suprageneric taxa and record of numbers of genera and subgenera contained in them as given by *Treatise* authors.

It should be explained that a very large number of extant genus-group taxa unknown as fossils are not included in systematic descriptions of *Treatise* chapters on crustacean groups and these necessarily are omitted from tabulation. The magnitude of such omissions can be indicated by very incomplete information on numbers of extant genera of the Mysidacea and Isopoda.

TATTERSALL & TATTERSALL (1951) have described 40 genera of British mysidaceans and TATTERSALL (1951) has recorded genera of the same group known from North America, the latter including numerous forms found also in Britain, as well as 24 additional genera. The total of 64 genera is only part of the mysidacean fauna of the world. The *Treatise* contains no description and illustration of an extant mysidacean. Including fossil forms, the *Treatise* lists 29 genera of isopods (Trias.-Rec.), only a few of which are represented by living species from any part of the world. By way of contrast, RICHARDSON (1905) described 128 genera of North American isopods and VAN NAME (1936) added 72 genera to the isopod fauna of the same continent. Many of these 190 forms are fresh-water and terrestrial.

### OUTLINE OF TREATISE CLASSIFICATION OF CRUSTACEA

An outline of classification of crustaceans adopted in the *Treatise* is given in the following tabulation, which shows suprageneric taxa down to subfamily rank, accompanied by records of geologic occurrence and numbers of included genera. The last-mentioned data provide information on numbers of subgenera additional to nominotypical ones which are differentiated in some family groups, as well as numbers of doubtfully recognized genera. For example, the notation "(41+?20;3)" indicates recognition of 41 genera, 20 doubtfully recognized genera, and 3 subgenera other than nominotypical ones.

Totals include only genus-group taxa for which systematic descriptions are given in the *Treatise*. Suprageneric taxa recorded as ranging to the Recent contain an unspecified number (generally large) of additional Recent genera not listed in the *Treatise*.

Treatment of the Crustacea as a superclass and its main divisions as classes has been discussed adequately by MANTON in a preceding chapter (p. R3). Here it is desirable merely to add that complexity of the taxonomic hierarchy above the genus-group rank in the Malacostraca, for ex-

ample, furnishes intrinsic justification for recognizing categories designated as superorders within a subclass, infraorders within a suborder, and sections within an infraorder. Either family or superfamily may be the next lower-rank assemblage within an order, suborder, infraorder, or section.

### Main Divisions of Crustacea Exclusive of Ostracoda

- Crustacea (*superclass*) (833+?20;46). *Cam.-Rec.*
- Cephalocarida (*class*) (2). *Rec.*
- Brachypoda (*order*) (2). *Rec.*
- Hutchinsoniellidae (1). *Rec.*
- Lightiellidae (1). *Rec.*
- Branchiopoda (*class*) (99+?20;3). *L.Dev.-Rec.*
- Calmanostraca (*subclass*) (10). *L.Dev.-Rec.*
- Notostraca (*order*) (2). *U.Carb.-Rec.*
- Triopsidae (2). *U.Carb.-Rec.*
- Kazacharthra (*order*) (7). *L.Jur.*
- Ketmeniidae (7). *L.Jur.*
- Acercostraca (*order*) (1). *L.Dev.*
- Vachonisiidae (1). *L.Dev.*
- Diplostraca (*subclass*) (75+?20;3). *L.Dev.-Rec.*
- Conchostraca (*order*) (56+?20;3). *L.Dev.-Rec.*
- Laeviscaudata (*suborder*) (1). *L.Cret.-Rec.*
- Lynceidae (1). *L.Cret.-Rec.*
- Spinicaudata (*suborder*) (55+?20;3). *L.Dev.-Rec.*
- Limnadioidea (*superfamily*) (7+?5). *Carb.-Rec.*
- Limnadiidae (5+?5). *Carb.-Rec.*
- Limnadiinae (2). *Rec.*
- Estheriinae (3+?5). *Carb.-L.Cret.*
- Cyclestheriidae (1). *Rec.*
- Leptestheriidae (1). *Rec.*
- Cyzicoidea (*superfamily*) (18+?11;2). *L.Dev.-Rec.*
- Cyzicidae (6+?9;2). *L.Dev.-Rec.*
- Asmussiidae (12+?2). *L.Dev.-U.Cret.*
- Asmussiinae (9). *L.Dev.-U.Cret.*
- Torgalykiinae (3+?2). *Dev.-U.Jur.*
- Estherielloidea (*superfamily*) (4+?1;1). *U.Carb.-L.Cret.*
- Estheriellidae (4+?1;1). *U.Carb.-L.Cret.*
- Estheriellinae (3;1). *U.Carb.-L.Cret.*
- Monoleiolphinae (1+?1). *Penn.-L.Cret.*
- Leaioidea (*superfamily*) (13). *M.Dev.-L.Cret.*
- Leaidae (13). *M.Dev.-L.Cret.*
- Verteioidea (*superfamily*) (13+?3). *L.Carb.-Rec.*
- Verteiiidae (6). *L.Carb.-U.Trias.*
- Limnadopsidae (3+?2). *L.Carb.-Rec.*
- Pemphilimnadiopsidae (1). *Penn.*
- Ipsiloniidae (3+?1). *Dev.-L.Cret.*
- Cladocera (*order*) (19). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Eucladocera (*suborder*) (18). *Oligo.-Rec.*

- Sidoidea (*superfamily*) (1). *Rec.*  
 Sididae (1). *Rec.*  
 Daphnioidea (*superfamily*) (15). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Daphniidae (1). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Chydoridae (13). *Rec.*  
 Chydorinae (12). *Rec.*  
 Eurycercinae (1). *Rec.*  
 Bosminidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Polyphemoidea (*superfamily*) (2). *Rec.*  
 Polyphemidae (2). *Rec.*  
 Haplopoda (*suborder*) (1). *Rec.*  
 Leptodoridae (1). *Rec.*  
 Sarsostraca (*subclass*) (14). *L.Dev.-Rec.*  
 Anostraca (*order*) (13). *L.Dev.-Rec.*  
 Artemiidae (1). *Pleist.-Rec.*  
 Branchipodidae (4). *?U.Carb., ?Eoc., Rec.*  
 Branchinectidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Chirocephalidae (2). *Rec.*  
 Polyartemiidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Streptocephalidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Thamnocephalidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Gilsonicarididae (1). *L.Dev.*  
 Uncertain family (1). *U.Carb.*  
 Lipostraca (*order*) (1). *M.Dev.*  
 Lepidocarididae (1). *M.Dev.*  
 Mystacocarida (*class*) (1). *Rec.*  
 Mystacocaridida (*order*) (1). *Rec.*  
 Derocheilocarididae (1). *Rec.*  
 Euthycarinoidea (*class*) (2). *L.Trias.-M.Trias.*  
 Euthycarcinida (*order*) (2). *L.Trias.-M.Trias.*  
 Euthycarcinidae (2). *L.Trias.-M.Trias.*  
 Copepoda (*class*) (2). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Calanoida (*order*). *Rec.*  
 Cyclopoida (*order*) (1). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Genus undetermined (1). *Mio.*  
 Harpacticoida (*order*) (1). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Chetodidae (1). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Caligoida (*order*). *Rec.*  
 Notodelphyoida (*order*). *Rec.*  
 Lernaepodoida (*order*). *Rec.*  
 Monstrilloida (*order*). *Rec.*  
 Branchiura (*class*) (4). *Rec.*  
 Arguloida (*order*) (4). *Rec.*  
 Argulidae (4). *Rec.*  
 Cirripedia (*class*) (107;29). *U.Sil.-Rec.*  
 Acrothoracica (*order*) (12). *Carb.-Rec.*  
 Pygophora (*suborder*) (7). *Rec.*  
 Lithoglyptidae (6). *Rec.*  
 Cryptophialidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Apygophora (*suborder*) (1). *Carb.-Rec.*  
 Trypetesidae (1). *Carb.-Rec.*  
 Suborder uncertain (4). *Trias.-Plio.*  
 Rodgerellidae (1). *M.Jur.-L.Plio.*  
 Zapfelliidae (3). *Trias.-Plio.*  
 Rhizocephala (*order*) (11). *Rec.*  
 Kentrogonida (*suborder*) (5). *Rec.*  
 Peltogastridae (1). *Rec.*  
 Sacculinidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Lernaediscidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Clistosaccidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Sylonidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Akentrogonida (*suborder*) (5). *Rec.*  
 Uncertain affinities (1). *Rec.*  
 Ascothoracica (*order*) (12). *Cret.-Rec.*  
 Synagogidae (3). *Rec.*  
 Lauridae (3). *Rec.*  
 Petrarciidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Dendrogastridae (3). *Rec.*  
 Uncertain family (2). *U.Cret.*  
 Thoracica (*order*) (72;29). *U.Sil.-Rec.*  
 Lepadomorpha (*suborder*) (38;9). *U.Sil.-Rec.*  
 Cyprilepadidae (1). *U.Sil.*  
 Praelepadidae (1). *M.Carb.*  
 Scalpellidae (17;3). *U.Trias.(Rhaet.)-Rec.*  
 Heteralepadidae (2). *Rec.*  
 Iblidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Koleolepadidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Lepadidae (4;2). *?U.Trias., M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Malacolepadidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Oxyneaspidae (1). *M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Poecilasmataidae (3;4). *U.Eoc.(Barton.)-Rec.*  
 Stramentidae (3). *Cret.(Alb.-Senon.).*  
 Uncertain family (3). *Rec.*  
 Verrucomorpha (*suborder*) (3;4). *U.Cret.*  
 (?*Cenoman.-U.Senon.*)-*Rec.*  
 Verrucidae (3;4). *U.Cret.(?Cenoman.-*  
*U.Senon.)-Rec.*  
 Brachylepadomorpha (*suborder*) (2). *U.Jur.*  
 (*Tithon.*)-*U.Mio.(Helvet.).*  
 Brachylepadidae (2). *U.Jur.(Tithon.)-U.Mio.*  
 (*Helvet.*).  
 Balanomorpha (*suborder*) (29;16). *U.Cret.*  
 (*U.Senon.*)-*Rec.*  
 Chthamaliidae (9;2). *U.Cret.(U.Senon.)-Rec.*  
 Balanidae (20;14). *M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Balaninae (9;11). *M.Eoc.(Avers.)-Rec.*  
 Tetrachitinae (1;2). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Cheloniibiinae (1). *L.Mio.-Rec.*  
 Coronulinae (8;1). *U.Mio.-Rec.*  
 Emersoniinae (1). *U.Eoc.*  
 Malacostraca (*class*) (586;14). *L.Cam.-Rec.*  
 Phyllocarida (*subclass*) (52). *L.Cam.-Rec.*  
 Leptostraca (*order*) (4). *U.Perm.-Rec.*  
 Nebaliidae (4). *U.Perm.-Rec.*  
 Hymenostroaca (*order*) (1). *?L.Cam., M.Cam.-*  
*L.Ord.*  
 Hymenocarididae (1). *?L.Cam., M.Cam.-*  
*L.Ord.*  
 Archaeostraca (*order*) (22). *L.Ord.-U.Trias.*  
 Ceratiocarina (*suborder*) (15). *L.Ord.-U.Trias.*  
 Ceratiocarididae (4). *L.Ord.-L.Dev., ?Carb.,*  
*?U.Perm.*  
 Austriocarididae (2). *M.Dev.-U.Trias.*  
 Echinocarididae (5). *L.Dev.-L.Miss.*  
 Echinocaridinae (3). *L.Dev.-L.Miss.*  
 Montecaridinae (2). *?L.Dev., M.Dev.-U.Dev.*  
 Pephricarididae (1). *U.Dev.*  
 Aristozoidae (3). *?M.Ord., U.Sil.-M.Dev.*  
 Rhinocarina (*suborder*) (7). *?Sil., L.Dev.-*  
*M.Penn., ?U.Perm.*  
 Rhinocarididae (6). *?Sil., L.Dev.-M.Penn.,*  
*?U.Perm.*

- Ohiocarididae (1). *U.Dev.*  
 Uncertain order and family (25). *L.Cam.-L.Carb., L.Perm.*  
*Nonphyllocarid and uncertain genera formerly attributed to Phyllocarida*  
 Forms referred to order Discinocarina (3). *L.Cam.-U.Trias., ?L.Jur.*  
 Discinocarididae (1). *M.Ord.-U.Trias., ?L.Jur.*  
 Peltocarididae (2). *?L.Cam.-?M.Cam., ?L.Ord., U.Ord.-U.Sil., ?U.Perm.*  
 Uncertain genera (19). *M.Cam.-U.Trias.*  
 Eumalacostraca (*subclass*) (534;14). *M.Dev.-Rec.*  
 Eocarida (*superorder*) (14). *M.Dev.-Perm.*  
 Eocaridacea (*order*) (6). *M.Dev.-Penn.*  
 Eocarididae (2). *M.Dev.*  
 Palaeopalaemonidae (1). *U.Dev.-L.Miss.*  
 Anthracophausiidae (3). *Miss.-Penn.*  
 Pygocephalomorpha (*order*). (8). *Miss.-Perm.*  
 Teallicarididae (2). *L.Carb.*  
 Pygocephalidae (4). *Miss.-Penn.*  
 Notocarididae (2). *Perm.*  
 Syncarida (*superorder*) (20). *U.Miss.-Rec.*  
 Palaeocaridacea (*order*) (6). *U.Miss.-Perm.*  
 Palaeocarididae (3). *U.Miss.-Perm.*  
 Uronectidae (1). *L.Perm.*  
 Acanthotelsonidae (1). *Penn.*  
 Pleurocarididae (1). *Penn.*  
 Anaspidacea (*order*) (5). *Trias.-Rec.*  
 Anaspididae (3). *Trias.-Rec.*  
 Koonungidae (2). *Rec.*  
 Bathynellacea (*order*) (5). *Rec.*  
 Bathynellidae (5). *Rec.*  
 Stygozaridacea (*order*) (3). *Perm.-Rec.*  
 Stygozarididae (2). *Rec.*  
 Clarkecarididae (1). *Perm.*  
 Uncertain order and family (1). *Trias.*  
 Peracarida (*superorder*) (47). *Perm.-Rec.*  
 Mysidacea (*order*) (5). *Trias.-Rec.*  
 Lophogastrida (*suborder*) (1). *Rec.*  
 Mysida (*suborder*) (2). *Trias.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain family (2). *Trias-U.Jur.*  
 Uncertain suborder and family (3). *M.Jur.*  
 Thermosbaenacea (*order*) (2). *Rec.*  
 Thermosbaenidae (2). *Rec.*  
 Spelaeogriphacea (*order*). *Rec.*  
 Cumacea (*order*) (1). *U.Perm.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain family (1). *M.Jur.*  
 Tanaidacea (*order*) (2). *Perm.-Rec.*  
 Monokonophora (*suborder*) (1). *Perm.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain family (1). *U.Perm.-M.Jur.*  
 Dikonophora (*suborder*). *Rec.*  
 Uncertain suborder and family (1). *L.Jur.*  
 Isopoda (*order*) (29). *Trias.-Rec.*  
 Gnathiidea (*suborder*). *Rec.*  
 Anthuridea (*suborder*). *Rec.*  
 Flabellifera (*suborder*) (15). *Trias.-Rec.*  
 Cirolanidae (1). *?Mio., Rec.*  
 Sphaeromatidae (10). *Trias.-Rec.*  
 Sphaeromatidae Hemibranchiatae group (2). *?Mio., Rec.*  
 Uncertain group (8). *Trias.-Pleist.*  
 Archaeoniscidae (1). *Jur.*  
 Serolidae. *Rec.*  
 Uncertain family (3). *M.Trias.-Plio.*  
 Valvifera (*suborder*) (2). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Idoteidae (2). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Mesidoteinae (2). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Asellota (*suborder*). *Rec.*  
 Oniscoidea (*suborder*) (6). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Trichoniscidae (1). *U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Trichoniscinae (1). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Oniscidae (1). *U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Oniscinae (1). *U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Porcellionidae (2). *U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Armadillidiidae (2). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Phreatoicida (*suborder*) (3). *Perm.-Rec.*  
 Amphispodidae (1). *Trias.-Rec.*  
 Palaeophreatoicidae (2). *Perm.*  
 Epicaridea (*suborder*). *?U.Jur., Rec.*  
 Uncertain suborder (1). *Jur.-Cret.*  
 Urdidae (1). *Jur.-Cret.*  
 Doubtful genera (2). *Jur.*  
 Amphipoda (*order*) (6). *U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Gammaridea (*suborder*) (6). *U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Gammaridae (6). *U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Caprellidea (*suborder*). *Rec.*  
 Caprellidae. *Rec.*  
 Cyamidae. *Rec.*  
 Hyperiidea (*suborder*). *Rec.*  
 Ingolfiellidea (*suborder*). *Rec.*  
 Uncertain suborder. *Dev.*  
 Anthracocaridacea (*order*) (2). *Miss.*  
 Anthracocarididae (2). *Miss.*  
 Eucarida (*superorder*) (421;14). *Permotrias.-Rec.*  
 Euphausiacea (*order*) (4). *Rec.*  
 Benth euphausiidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Euphausiidae (3). *Rec.*  
 Decapoda (*order*) (417;14). *Permotrias.-Rec.*  
 Dendrobranchiata (*suborder*) (15). *Permotrias.-Rec.*  
 Penaeidea (*infraorder*) (15). *Permotrias.-Rec.*  
 Penaeoidea (*superfamily*) (14). *Permotrias.-Rec.*  
 Penaeidae (12). *Permotrias.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain family (2). *U.Cret.*  
 Sergestoidea (*superfamily*) (1). *Rec.*  
 Sergestidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Pleocyemata (*suborder*) (396;14). *Permotrias.-Rec.*  
 Stenopodidea (*infraorder*) (1). *Rec.*  
 Stenopodidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Uncinidea (*infraorder*) (1). *L.Jur.*  
 Uncinidae (1). *L.Jur.*  
 Caridea (*infraorder*) (14). *M.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Atyidae (2). *Tert.-Rec.*  
 Oplophoridae (2). *?U.Jur., ?U.Cret., Rec.*  
 Palaemonidae (5). *Tert.-Rec.*  
 Udorellidae (1). *U.Jur.*  
 Uncertain family (4). *M.Jur.-U.Cret.*  
 Astacidea (*infraorder*) (31,2). *Permotrias.-Rec.*  
 Erymidae (11;1). *Permotrias.-U.Cret., ?Paleoc.*

- Erymiinae (5;1). *L.Jur.-U.Cret., ?Paleoc.*  
 Clytiopsinae (6). *?Permotrias., L.Trias.-U.Trias.*  
 Platychelidae (2). *U.Trias.*  
 Nephropidae (13;1). *M.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Nephropinae (4). *U.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Homarinae (3;1). *Cret.-Rec.*  
 Neophoberinae (3). *M.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain subfamily (3). *?M.Jur., U.Jur.-U.Cret.*  
 Astacidae (2). *U.Jur. or L.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Parastacidae (2). *Pleist.-Rec.*  
 Austroastacidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Palinura (*infraorder*) (37;2). *?L.Trias., M.Trias.-Rec.*  
 Glypheoidea (*superfamily*) (11;1). *?L.Trias., M.Trias.-L.Tert.*  
 Glypheidae (4;1). *?L.Trias., M.Trias.-L.Tert.*  
 Mecochiridae (5). *M.Trias.-U.Cret.*  
 Pemphicidae (2). *M.Trias.*  
 Eryonoidea (*superfamily*) (11). *U.Trias.-Rec.*  
 Tetrachelidae (1). *U.Trias.*  
 Coleiidae (2). *L.Jur.-L.Cret.*  
 Eryonidae (4). *L.Jur.-L.Cret.*  
 Polychelidae (4). *M.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Palinuroidea (*superfamily*) (15;1). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Palinuridae (9;1). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Cancrinidae (1). *U.Jur.*  
 Scyllaridae (5). *L.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Anomura (*infraorder*) (43). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Thalassinioidea (*superfamily*) (12). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Thalassinidae (1). *?Pleist., Rec.*  
 Axiidae (5). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Laomediidae (2). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Callianassidae (4). *U.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Callianassinae (2). *U.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Protocallianassinae (1). *?L.Cret., U.Cret.-Paleoc.*  
 Upogebiinae (1). *U.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Paguroidea (*superfamily*) (16). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Pylochelidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Paguridae (12). *Jur.-Rec.*  
 Pagurinae (2). *L.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Diogeninae (6). *U.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain subfamily (4). *Jur., ?L.Cret.-?U.Cret.*  
 Coenobitidae (1). *?L.Mio., Rec.*  
 Lithodidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Lomidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Galatheaidea (*superfamily*) (12). *M.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Galatheidae (9). *M.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Galatheinae (4). *L.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Munidopsinae (1). *Rec.*  
 Uncertain subfamily (4). *M.Jur.-U.Cret.*  
 Aegliidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Porcellanidae (2). *U.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Hippoidea (*superfamily*) (3). *Tert.-Rec.*  
 Albuneidae (2). *Tert.-Rec.*  
 Hippidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Brachyura (*infraorder*) (269;10). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Dromioidea (*section*) (41;2). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Dromioidea (*superfamily*) (33;2). *L.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Eocarcinidae (1). *L.Jur.*  
 Prosopidae (13;2). *M.Jur.-Cret., Rec.*  
 Prosopinae (4). *M.Jur.-L.Cret.*  
 Pithonotinae (7;2). *M.Jur.-U.Cret.*  
 Homolodromiinae (2). *Rec.*  
 Dromiidae (3). *Paleoc.-Rec.*  
 Dynomenidae (10). *U.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain family (6). *U.Jur.-U.Cret., ?Paleoc.*  
 Homoloidea (*superfamily*) (5). *U.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Homolidae (5). *U.Jur.-Rec.*  
 Dakoticancroidea (*superfamily*) (3). *U.Cret.*  
 Dakoticancridae (3). *U.Cret.*  
 Oxystomata (*section*) (59;2). *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*  
 Dorippoidea (*superfamily*) (8). *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*  
 Dorippidae (8). *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*  
 Dorippinae (3). *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*  
 Tymolinae (5). *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*  
 Calappoidea (*superfamily*) (34). *L.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Calappidae (19). *L.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Calappinae (15). *L.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Matutinae (4). *?L.Cret., M.Tert.-Rec.*  
 Leucosiidae (15). *?L.Eoc., M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Raninoidea (*superfamily*) (17;2). *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*  
 Raninidae (17;2). *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*  
 Oxyrhyncha (*section*) (30;2). *?U.Cret., Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Majidae (24). *?U.Cret., Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Majinae (6). *?U.Cret., Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Micromaiinae (3). *Eoc.-Oligo.*  
 Inachinae (6). *U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Pisinac (6). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Acanthonychinae (3). *Phio-Rec.*  
 Parthenopidae (5;2). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Parthenopinae (4;2). *M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Eumedoninae (1). *Rec.*  
 Uncertain family (1). *Mio.*  
 Cancridea (*section*) (9). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Corystidae (1). *Rec.*  
 Atelecyclidae (4). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Cancridae (4). *M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Cancrinae (3). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Lobocarcininae (1). *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*  
 Brachyryhyncha (*section*) (118;4). *Cret.-Rec.*  
 Portunoidea (*superfamily*) (22;2). *U.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Portunidae (17;2). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Portuninae (6;2). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Macropipinae (2). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Carcininae (4). *L.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Psammocarcininae (3). *L.Eoc.-L.Oligo.*  
 Podophthalminae (2). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Carcineretidae (5). *U.Cret.*  
 Xanthoidea (*superfamily*) (85;2). *U.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Xanthidae (46). *U.Cret.-Rec.*  
 Potamidae (1). *U.Tert.-Rec.*  
 Geryonidae (4;2). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Goneplacidae (21). *?U.Cret., Paleoc.-Rec.*  
 Goneplacinae (3). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Carcinoplacinae (11). *Paleoc.-Rec.*

- Prionoplacinae (3). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Hexapodinae (3). ?*U.Cret., Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain subfamily (1). *Mio.*  
 Pinnotheridae (3). *Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Grapsidae (8). *M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Grapsinae (2). *Oligo.-Rec.*  
 Varuninae (3). ?*M.Eoc., U.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Sesarminae (1). *U.Oligo. or L.Mio.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain subfamily (2). *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc., ?Oligo.*  
 Gecarcinidae (2). *Plio.-Rec.*  
 Ocyppoidea (*superfamily*) (7). *M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Ocypodidae (6). *M.Eoc., Mio.-Rec.*  
 Ocypodinae (2). *Plio.-Rec.*  
 Macrophthalminae (2). *Mio.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain subfamily (2). *M.Eoc., L.Mio.*  
 Retroplumidae (1). *M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
 Uncertain superfamily (4). ?*L.Cret.-U.Cret., ?M.Eoc., Rec.*  
 Palicidae (4). ?*L.Cret.-?U.Cret., ?M.Eoc., Rec.*  
 Brachyura of uncertain status (12)  
 Decapoda of uncertain status (4).  
 Genera questionably assigned to Decapoda (2)  
 Hoplocarida (*superorder*) (32). *L.Carb.-Rec.*  
 Palaeostomatopoda (*order*) (2). *L.Carb.(Miss.)-U.Carb.*  
 Perimecturidae (2). *L.Carb.(Miss.)-U.Carb.*  
 Stomatopoda (*order*) (30). *Jur.-Rec.*  
 Sculdidae (4). *Jur.-Rec.*  
 Squillidae (26). *Cret.-Rec.*  
 Superfamily Cycloidea (*uncertain class and order*) (7). *L.Carb.-U.Trias.*  
 Cyclidae (3). *L.Carb.-U.Trias.*  
 Hemitrochiscidae (3). *Perm.-Trias.*  
 Mesoprosopidae (1). *Trias.*  
 Bostrichopoda (*order, class uncertain*) (1). *L.Carb.*

## REFERENCES

- All references to McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia are from *McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia of science and technology*, 1960, 14 vol., McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc. (New York, London). Articles in H. G. BRONN are from *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, 1866-19...., C. F. Winter and Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft (Leipzig), and those from WILLY KÜKENTHAL and THILO KRUMBACH are from *Handbuch der Zoologie, eine Naturgeschichte der Stämme des Tierreiches*, 1926-27, DeGruyter (Leipzig).
- Ballough, W. S.**  
 (1) 1950, *Practical invertebrate anatomy*: 436 p., illus., Macmillan (London).
- Bals, Heinrich**  
 (2) 1927, *Decapoda Latreille 1802=Zehnfüßer*: in Kükenenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 840-1038, text fig. 903-1119; *Stomatopoda Latreille, Heuschreckenkrebsse, Maulfüßer*, Same, p. 1039-1074, text fig. 1120-1171.  
 (3) 1940-57, *Decapoda*: in H. G. Bronn, etc., v. 5, div. (Abt.) 1, fasc. 7; (1940), Lief. 1, p. 1-160, fig. 1-203; (1941), Lief. 2, p. 161-320, fig. 207-360; (1944), Lief. 3, p. 321-480, fig. 361-516; (1944), Lief. 4, p. 481-576, fig. 317-612; (1944), Lief. 5, p. 577-669, fig. 613-740; (1955), fasc. 7, Lief. 10, p. 1285-1367, fig. 1043-1069; (1956), Lief. 11, p. 1369-1504, fig. 1070-1130; (1957), Lief. 12, p. 1505-1672, fig. 1131-1199; (1957), Lief. 13, p. 1673-1770, fig. 1200-1212.
- (4) 1958, *Stomatopoda*: in H. G. Bronn, etc., v. 5, div. 1, fasc. 6, pt. (Teil) 2, p. 1-173, fig. 1-114.
- Barnard, J. L.**  
 (5) 1960, *Amphipoda*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 1, p. 339-341; *Gammaridea* [Amphipoda], Same, v. 6, p. 35-37.
- Boden, B. P.**  
 (6) 1960, *Euphausiacea* [Eucarida]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 5, p. 108.
- Borradaile, L. A., & Potts, F. A.**  
 (7) 1963, *The Invertebrata*: 4th edit., 820 p., 523 fig., Univ. Press (Cambridge, Eng.).
- Bowman, T. E.**  
 (8) 1960, *Peracarida*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 10, p. 1-2; *Hyperiidea* [Amphipoda], Same, v. 6, p. 586; *Flabellifera* [Isopoda], Same, v. 5, p. 290-291.
- Brehm, Vincenz**  
 (9) 1927, *Copepoda*: in Kükenenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 435-496, text fig. 378-454; *Branchiura*, Same, p. 497-502, text fig. 455-462.
- Broch, Hjalmar**  
 (10) 1927, *Cirripedia*: in Kükenenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 503-552, text fig. 463-519.
- Bronn, H. G.**  
 (11) 1866-19...., *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*: v. 5, Crustacea, C. F. Winter (Leipzig & Heidelberg) and Akad. Verlag. (Leipzig).

**Brown, F. A., Jr. (ed.)**

- (12) 1950, *Selected invertebrate types*: 597 p., illus., Wiley (New York).

**Buchsbaum, Ralph**

- (13) 1948, *Animals without backbones*: (rev. ed.), 405 p., illus., Univ. Chicago Press (Chicago).

**Buddenbrock, W. von**

- (14) 1945, *Decapoda*: in H. G. Bronn, etc., v. 5, div. (Abt.) 1, fasc. 7, Lief. 7, p. 863-1006, fig. 842-922; (1948), Lief. 8, p. 1007-1150, fig. 923-1005; (1954), Lief. 9, p. 1151-1283, fig. 1006-1042.

**Calman, W. T.**

- (15) 1909, *Crustacea*: in E. R. Lankester (ed.), *Treatise on zoology*, pt. 7, fasc. 3, 346 p., 194 fig., Adam & Chas. Black (London).
- (16) 1937, *Crustacea*: *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, 14th edit., v. 6, p. 799-805, *Encyclopaedia Britannica Co.* (London, New York, Chicago, Toronto).

**Carter, G. S.**

- (17) 1948, *A general zoology of the invertebrates*: (rev. ed.), 509 p., illus., Macmillan (London).

**Chace, F. A.**

- (18) 1960, *Decapoda*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 4, p. 24-34.

**Chappuis, P. A.**

- (19) 1927, *Anaspidacea*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 593-606, text fig. 576-591.

**Curtin, C. B.**

- (20) 1960, *Arguloida* [Branchiura]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 1, p. 531; *Lipostraca* [Branchiopoda], Same, v. 7, p. 535; *Thermosbaenacea* [Peracarida], Same, v. 13, p. 592.

**Davis, C. C.**

- (21) 1960, *Monstrilloida* [Copepoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 8, p. 585-586.

**Dougherty, E. C.**

- (22) 1960, *Caprellidea* [Amphipoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 2, p. 447-448.

**Fleminger, Abraham**

- (23) 1960, *Branchiura*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 2, p. 319-320; *Lernaeopodoida* [Copepoda], Same, v. 7, p. 476; *Notodelphyoida* [Copepoda], v. 9, p. 169-170.

**Gerstaecker, Adolf**

- (24) 1890-96, *Gliederfüssler Arthropoda*: in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, v. 5, div. (Abt.) 2, Lief. 28, p. 753-800; (1891), Lief. 29-31, p. 801-816, pl. 69-76; (1892), Lief. 32-34, p. 817-896, pl. 77-82; (1893), Lief. 35-37, p. 897-960, pl. 83-88; (1894), Lief. 38-40, p. 961-976, pl. 89-96; (1895), Lief. 41-43, p. 977-1024,

pl. 97-102; (1895), Lief. 44-46, p. 1025-1056, pl. 103-108.

**———, & Ortmann, A. E.**

- (25) 1882-89, *Crustacea* (Zweite Hälfte: *Malacostraca*): in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*; Die Klassen und Ordnungen der Arthropoden, v. 5, div. (Abt.) 2, Lief. 1-3, p. 1-96, pl. 1-8; (1882, Gerstaecker), Lief. 4-6, p. 97-192, pl. 9-16; (1882, Gerstaecker), Lief. 7-8, p. 193-240, pl. 17-22; (1883, Gerstaecker), Lief. 9-10, p. 241-304, pl. 23-28; (1884, Gerstaecker), Lief. 11-12, p. 305-352, pl. 29-36; (1884, Gerstaecker), Lief. 13-15, p. 353-416, pl. 37-48; (1886, Gerstaecker), Lief. 16-17, p. 417-512; (1888, Gerstaecker), Lief. 18-19, p. 513-592, pl. 49-50; (1889, Gerstaecker), Lief. 20, p. 593-608, pl. 51-53; (1889, Gerstaecker), Lief. 21-22, p. 609-672, pl. 54-56; (1889, Gerstaecker), Lief. 23-24, p. 673-688, pl. 57-62; (1889, Gerstaecker), Lief. 25-27, p. 689-752, pl. 63-68.

**Gordon, Isabella**

- (26) 1960, *Eucarida*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 5, p. 96-97; *Leptostraca* [Phyllocarida], Same, v. 7, p. 476; *Malacostraca*, Same, v. 8, p. 75-77; *Nebaliacea*, Same, v. 9, p. 22-23; *Phyllocarida*, Same, v. 10, p. 202; *Spelaeogriphacea* [Peracarida], Same, v. 12, p. 601.

**Handlirsch, Anton**

- (27) 1926, *Arthropoda*=*Gliederfüsser*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 211-276, text fig. 182-215.

**Harding, J. P.**

- (28) 1960, *Cladocera*[*Branchiopoda*]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 3, p. 150-151.

**Harmer, S. F., & Shipley, A. E. (eds.)**

- (29) 1895-1909, *The Cambridge natural history*: v. 1-6, Macmillan (London). [*Crustacea*, by Geoffrey Smith & W. F. R. Weldon, v. 4 (1909), p. 1-217.

**Hatch, M. H.**

- (30) 1947, *The Chelifera and Isopoda of Washington and adjacent regions*: Univ. Washington Publ. Biology, v. 10, no. 5, p. 155-274, pl. 1-18.

**Henry, D. P.**

- (31) 1940, *The Cirripedia of Puget Sound, with a key to the species*: Univ. Washington Publ. Oceanography, v. 4, p. 1-48, illus.
- (32) 1942, *Studies on the sessile Cirripedia of the Pacific Coast of North America*: Same, v. 4, p. 95-134, illus.
- (33) 1960, *Acrothoracica* [Cirripedia]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 1, p. 51-52; *Apoda*, Same, v. 1, p. 491; *Ascothoracica*, Same, v. 1, p. 575; *Cirripedia*, Same, v. 3, p. 145-146; *Thoracica*, Same, v. 13, p. 608-609.

**Hessler, R. R.**

- (34) 1964, *The Cephalocarida*: Connecticut Acad. Arts & Sci., Mem., v. 16, p. 1-97, text fig. 1-47.

**Heymons, Richard**

- (35) 1926, *Pentastomida*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 69-131, text fig. 69-119.

**Holthuis, L. B.**

- (36) 1960, *Hoplocarida*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 6, p. 479; *Stomatopoda*, Same, v. 13, p. 150-151.

- (36a) 1967, *Stomatopoda I, Family Lysiosquillidae et Bathysquillidae*: in H. E. Gruner & L. B. Holthuis (ed.), *Crustaceorum Catalogus*, pt. 1, i-v+28 p., W. Junk (den Haag).

**Jakobi, H. J.**

- (37) 1960, *Anaspidacea* [Syncarida]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 1, p. 396; *Bathynellacea* [Syncarida], Same, v. 2, p. 109; *Eumalacostraca*, Same, v. 5, p. 102-105; *Syncarida*, Same, v. 13, p. 367.

**Johnson, M. W.**

- (38) 1960, *Calanoida* [Copepoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 2, p. 392-393; *Copepoda*, Same, v. 3, p. 462-463.

**Jones, N. S.**

- (39) 1960, *Cumacea* [Peracarida]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 3, p. 622.

**Korschelt, Eugen**

- (40) 1944, *Decapoda*: H. G. Bronn, etc., v. 5, div. 1, fasc. 7, Lief. 6, p. 671-861, fig. 741-841.

**Krüger, Paul**

- (41) 1940, *Ascothoracida*: in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, v. 5, div. (Abt.) 1, fasc. (Buch) 3, pt. (Teil) 4, p. 1-46, fig. 1-45.
- (42) 1940, *Cirripedia*: in H. G. Bronn, same, v. 5, div. 1, fasc. 3, pt. 3, p. 1-112, fig. 1-114; p. 113-272, fig. 115-263; p. 273-432, fig. 264-358; p. 433-560, fig. 359-391.

**Kükenthal, Willy, &****Krumbach, Thilo (eds.)**

- (43) 1926-27, *Handbuch der Zoologie, eine Naturgeschichte der Stämme des Tierreiches*: v. 3, no. 1, xvi + 1158 p., 1172 text fig., De Gruyter (Leipzig). (Tardigrada, Pentastomida, Myzostomida, Arthropoda, Allgemeines, Crustacea.)

**Lang, K. G. H.**

- (44) 1960, *Harpacticoida* [Copepoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 6, p. 343-344; *Tanaidacea*, Same, v. 13, p. 388.

**Light, S. F.**

- (45) 1954, *Intertidal invertebrates of the central California coast* (revised edit. by R. I. Smith, F. A. Pitelka, D. P. Abbott, & F. M. Wees-

ner): 446 p., 138 fig., Univ. Calif. Press (Berkeley & Los Angeles, Calif.).

**Linder, Folke**

- (46) 1952, *Contributions to the morphology and taxonomy of the Branchiopoda Notostraca, with special references to North American species*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 102, p. 1-69, illus.
- (47) 1960, *Anostraca* [Branchiopoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 1, p. 435; *Branchiopoda*, Same, v. 2, p. 319; *Conchostraca*, Same, v. 3, p. 362; *Notostraca*, Same, v. 9, p. 170-171.

**MacGinitie, G. E., & MacGinitie, Nettie**

- (48) 1949, *Natural history of marine animals*: 473 p., 282 fig., McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc. (New York, London, Toronto).

**Menzies, R. J.**

- (49) 1960, *Asellota* [Isopoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 1, p. 575; *Isopoda*, Same, v. 7, p. 283-284.

**Monod, Theodore**

- (50) 1940, *Thermosbaenacea*: in H. G. Bronn, etc., v. 5, div. (Abt.) 1, fasc. (Buch) 4, pt. (Teil) 4, p. 1-24, fig. 1-32.
- (51) 1960, *Gnathiidea* [Isopoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 6, p. 225; *Panarida*, Same, v. 9, p. 527-529.

**Müller, G. W.**

- (52) 1927, *Ostracoda Muschelkrabbe*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 399-434, text fig. 341-377.

**Naylor, Ernest**

- (53) 1960, *Valvifera* [Isopoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 14, p. 264-265.

**Ortmann, A. E.**

- (54) 1898-1901, *Gliederfüßler Arthropoda*: in H. G. Bronn, etc., v. 5, div. (Abt.) 2, Lief. 47-49, p. 1057-1120, pl. 109-111; (1898), Lief. 50-52, p. 1121-1168, pl. 112-116; (1899), Lief. 53-56, p. 1169-1232, pl. 117-122; (1900), Lief. 57-59, p. 1233-1280, pl. 123-125; (1901), Lief. 60-62, p. 1281-1319, pl. 126-128.

**Parker, T. J., & Haswell, W. A.**

- (55) 1940, *Textbook of zoology*: 6th edit., v. 1, 770 p., 733 fig., (Crustacea, sec. 8), Macmillan (London).

**Pennak, R. W.**

- (56) 1960, *Mystacocarida*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 8, p. 685.

**Pilsbry, H. A.**

- (57) 1907, *The barnacles (Cirripedia) contained in the collections of the United States National Museum*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Bull. 60, 122 p., 36 fig., 11 pl.

- (58) 1916, *The sessile barnacles (Cirripedia) contained in the collections of the United States National Museum, including a monograph of the American species*: Same, Bull. 93, 366 p.
- Rathbun, M. J.**
- (59) 1917, *The grapsoid crabs of America*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Bull. 97, 444 p., illus.
- (60) 1925, *The spider crabs of America*: Same, Bull. 129, 613 p.
- (61) 1930, *The cancrivora crabs of America of the families Euryalidae, Portunidae, Atelecyclidae, Cancridae, and Xanthidae*: Same, Bull. 152, 609 p., 85 fig., 230 pl.
- (62) 1937, *The oxystomatous and allied crabs of America*: Same, Bull. 166, 278 p., illus.
- Reibisch, J.**
- (63) 1927, *Amphipoda=Flohkrebse*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 767-808, text fig. 809-860.
- Reischman, P. G.**
- (64) 1960, *Rhizocephala* [Cirripedia]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 11, p. 547.
- Richardson, Harriet**
- (65) 1905, *Monograph on the isopods of North America*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Bull. 54, 727 p., 740 fig.
- Richters, Ferdinand**
- (66) 1926, *Tardigrada*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 1-68, text fig. 1-68.
- Ross, H. H.**
- (67) 1965, *Textbook of entomology*; edit. 3, 539 p., Wiley & Sons (New York).
- Sanders, H. L.**
- (68) 1960, *Cephalocarida*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 2, p. 643.
- Sars, G. O.**
- (69) 1893-1919 [1895-1921], *An account of the Crustacea of Norway*: v. 1, pt. 1, Amphipoda, viii+711 p. (1893)[1895]; pt. 2, plates, 240 pl.+suppl. pl. 1-8 (1895); v. 2, Isopoda, x+270 p., 100 pl., suppl. pl. 1-4 (1896)[1899]; v. 3, Cumacea, x+115 p., 72 pl. (1899)[1900]; v. 4, Copepoda, Calanoida, xiii+225 p., 102 pl., suppl. pl. 1-4 (1901)[1903]; v. 5, pt. 1, Copepoda, Harpacticoida, xiv+449 p. (1903)[1911]; pt. 2, plates, 230 pl.+suppl. pl. 1-54 (1911); v. 6, Copepoda, Cyclopoida, xiii+172 p., 188 pl. (1913)[1918]; v. 7, Copepoda, Supplement, 121 p.+76 pl. (1919)[1921], Alb. Cammermeyers Forlag and Bergen Museum (Christiania and Copenhagen).
- Schmitt, W. L.**
- (70) 1921, *The marine decapod Crustacea of California*: Univ. Calif. Publ. Zoology, p. 23, p. 1-470, 165 text fig., pl. 1-50.
- (71) 1935, *Mud shrimps of Atlantic Coast of North America*: Smithsonian Misc. Coll., v. 93, 21 p., 4 pl.
- (72) 1940, *The stomatopods of the West Coast of America*: Allan Hancock Pacific Exped., v. 5, p. 129-225, illus.
- (73) 1960, *Crustacea*: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 3, p. 562-569.
- (74) 1965, *Crustaceans*: 204 p., 75 fig., Univ. Michigan Press (Ann Arbor).
- Sheppard, E. M.**
- (75) 1960, *Phreatoicidea* [Isopoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 10, p. 197.
- Shiino, S. M.**
- (76) 1960, *Calligoida* [Copepoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 2, p. 417-418.
- Stummer-Traunfels, Rudolf von**
- (77) 1926, *Myzostomida*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 132-210, text fig. 120-181.
- Tattersall, O. S.**
- (78) 1960, *Mysidacea* [Peracarida]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 8, p. 683-685.
- Tattersall, W. M.**
- (79) 1951, *A review of the Mysidacea of the United States National Museum*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Bull. 201, 292 p., 103 fig.
- , & **Tattersall, O. S.**
- (80) 1951, *The British Mysidacea*: 460 p., 118 text fig., Ray Society (London).
- Thiele, Johannes**
- (81) 1927, *Leptostraca*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 567-592, text fig. 537-575.
- Van Name, W. G.**
- (82) 1936, *The American land and fresh-water isopod Crustacea*: Am. Museum Nat. History, Bull., v. 71, 535 p., 312 fig.
- Wagler, Erich**
- (83) 1927, *Branchiopoda, Phyllopoda=Kiemensüssler*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 305-398, text fig. 243-340.
- Wigglesworth, V. B.**
- (84) 1964, *The life of insects*: 360 p., Weidenfeld & Nicolson (London).
- Wilson, C. B.**
- (85) 1932, *The copepods of the Woods Hole region, Massachusetts*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Bull. 158, 635 p., illus.
- Yeatman, H. C.**
- (86) 1960, *Cyclopoida* [Copepoda]: McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia, v. 3, p. 642.
- Yonge, C. M.**
- (87) 1949, *The sea shore*: 311 p., illus., Collins (London).

## Zimmer, Carl

- (88) 1927, *Crustacea=Krebse*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, v. 3, no. 1, p. 277-304, text fig. 216-242; *Crustacea Malacostraca*, Same, v. 3, no. 1, p. 553-566, text fig. 520-536; *Mysidacea*, Same, v. 3, no. 1, p. 607-650, *Cumacea*, Same, v. 3, no. 1, p. 651-682, text fig. 646-692; *Tanaidacea*, Same, v. 3, no. 1, p. 683-696, text fig. 693-718; *Isopoda*, Same, v. 3, no. 1, p. 697-766, text fig. 719-808; *Thermosbaena mirabilis Monod*: Same, v. 3, no. 1, p. 809-811, text fig. 861-62; *Euphausiacea*, Same, v. no. 3, no. 1, p. 812-839, text fig. 863-902.
- (89) 1941, *Cumacea*: in H. G. Bronn, etc., v. 5, div. (Abt.) 1, fasc. (Buch) 4, pt. (Teil) 5, p. 1-222, fig. 1-266.

## CEPHALOCARIDA

By ROBERT R. HESSLER

[Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution]

[Chapter submitted January, 1962]

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
MORPHOLOGY .....	R120
MODE OF LIFE .....	R125
EVOLUTIONARY SIGNIFICANCE .....	R126
SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R127
REFERENCES .....	R128

## MORPHOLOGY

## GENERAL FEATURES

The body (Fig. 40) consists of a horse-shoe-shaped cephalon, an eight-somite thorax, and a 12-somite abdomen (including the telson). Both the cephalon and thorax bear flat pleura, which are directed somewhat backward on the thoracic somites. On the cephalon the pleural lobes are continuous with each other anteriorly. Pleural lobes are reduced to posteriorly directed spines on the abdominal somites.

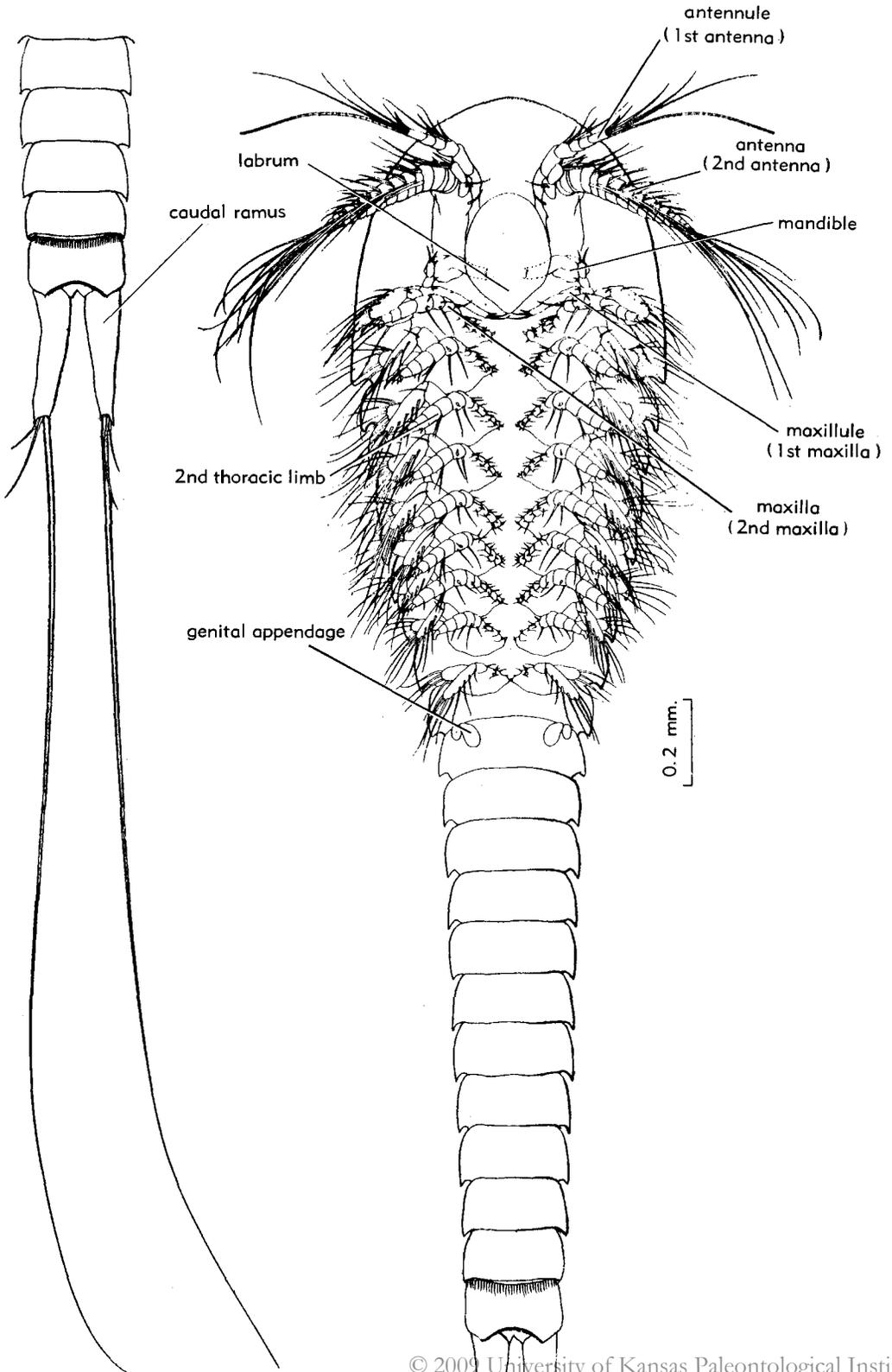
On the middle of the ventral surface of the cephalon is a conspicuous **labrum** which projects distinctly ventrally and posteriorly past the mouth, forming the floor of the

**atrium oris**. There are five pairs of cephalic appendages: two pairs of antennae, a pair of mandibles, and two pairs of maxillae (Fig. 40).

Each thoracic somite bears a limb, except in *Lightiella*, where they are absent on the eighth. The first abdominal somite has a pair of reduced limbs which form genital appendages. The telson bears a well-developed caudal furca. The other abdominal somites lack appendages.

(On facing page.)

FIG. 40. Morphology of adult cephalocarid, *Hutchinsoniella macracantha* SANDERS, ventral view, showing striking similarity of maxillae and all thoracic limbs,  $\times 64$  (9).



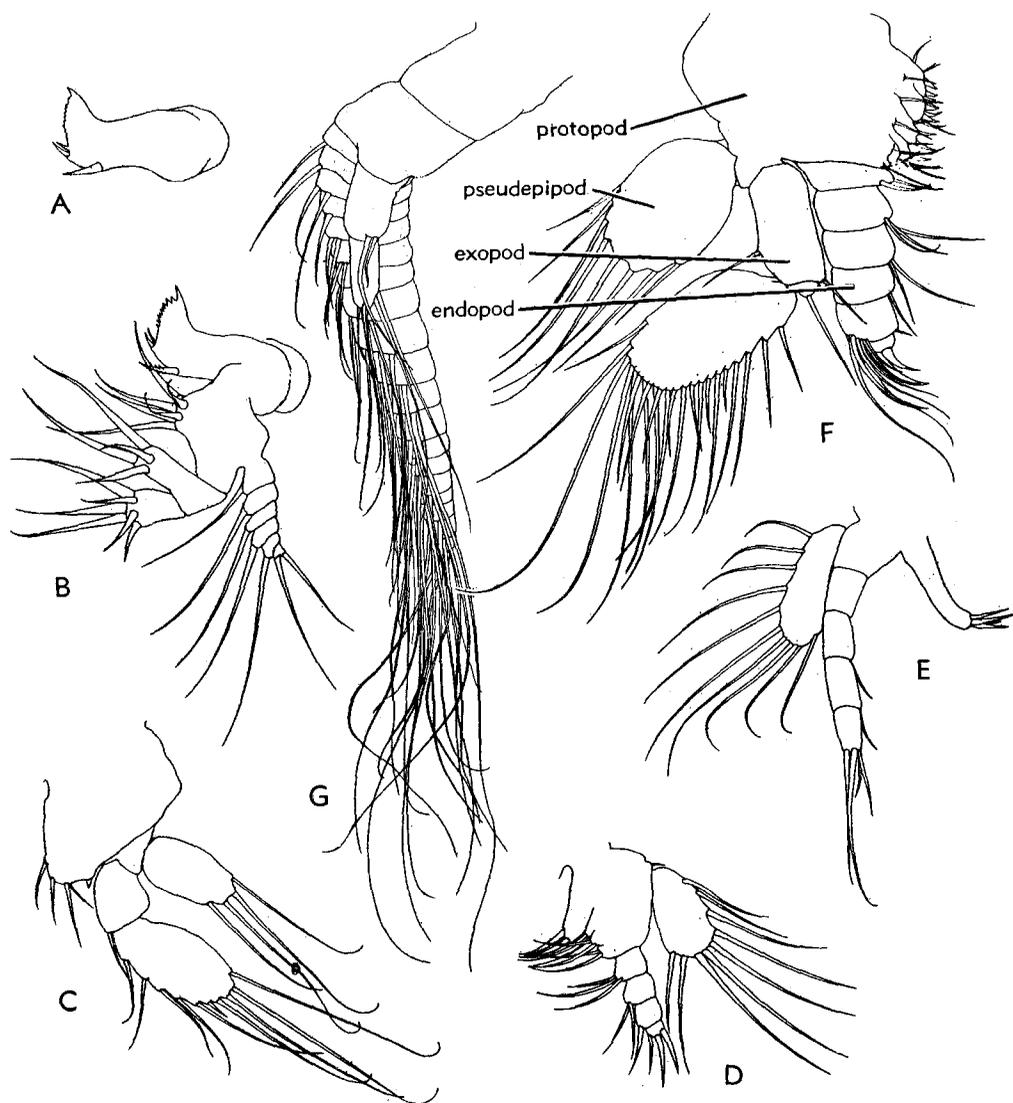


FIG. 41. Limbs of *Hutchinsoniella macracantha*.—A. Adult left mandible, ventral view.—B. Left mandible of stage 4 larva, ventral view.—C. Left 8th thoracic limb of adult, anterior view.—D. Left maxillule of stage 4 larva, anterior view.—E. Adult right maxillule, anterior view.—F. Adult right 4th thoracic limb, anterior view.—G. Adult right antenna, medial view. All figures of adults (A, C, E-G)  $\times 150$ ; those of larvae (B, D)  $\times 170$  (A, B, D, 9; C, E-G, Hessler, n).

### APPENDAGES

The maxillae (2nd maxillae) and first seven thoracopods are alike except for details (Fig. 41,F). A foliaceous protopod bears three rami distally—a slightly flattened ambulatory endopod with five or six segments, and a three-segmented exopod, which gives rise to a single-segmented

pseudepipod from its basal segment. SANDERS (9) considers the exopod to have four segments. However, the penultimate one is poorly developed and is more probably part of the segment proximal to it. The protopod bears six movable, medial endites (five on the maxilla) and an ill-defined transverse furrow by which the distal half

of the protopod may bend somewhat with relation to the proximal half. The medial edge of the endopod is continuous with the median endites of the protopod. Both bear rows of setae, the orientation and morphology of which vary depending on their task in the capture and transport of food particles toward the mouth. Terminally the endopod bears three claws, except on the 7th thoracopod. SANDERS (8) considered the medial claw to be the terminal segment and called it a dactylus. However, no muscles extend to this claw and therefore it cannot properly be considered a limb segment. The basal segment of the exopod is broadly joined to the protopod. The 2nd segment of the exopod is rodlike, with a few distal setae. Both the distal exopodal segment and the pseudopod are paddle-like and have a distal fringe of setae.

The 8th thoracic limb (Fig. 41,C), when present, is basically like the preceding except that the endopod is missing.

The adult maxillule (Fig. 41,E) differs from the basic pattern of the thoracic limbs in that the pseudopod is missing, the exopod is unjointed, the anteriorly oriented endopod is four-segmented, and the much-reduced protopod bears only a single endite, which forms a long, anteriorly curved finger. The larval maxillule (Fig. 41,D) is much more similar to the basic thoracic plan. The endopod curves posteriorly, and four normally developed endites occur on the proportionately larger protopod.

The adult mandible (Fig. 41,A) is a palpless, masticatory process. However, the morphology of the palp-bearing larval mandible (Fig. 41,B) is clearly based on the pattern of the thoracic limbs. Here the masticatory process is seen to be an endite of the coxa. The palp consists of the basis bearing a single endite, a two-segmented endopod, and a six-segmented exopod. The basic difference from the thoracic limbs is that the exopod is multisegmented.

The antennae (Fig. 41,G) are also interpretable in terms of the basic limb pattern. The protopod consists of coxa and basis. A two-segmented endopod and 19-segmented exopod are observed, the ventral surface of the latter being richly supplied with long setae. On the larval antenna the basis has a single endite, and a long nau-

pliar process arises from the coxa. The naupliar process is homologous to the masticatory process of the mandible, the single endite of the maxillule, and the basal endite of the subsequent limbs.

The antennules have six segments and are uniramous. Each bears a long, multi-articular, sensory flagellum on its distal end.

### INTERNAL ANATOMY

The digestive tract is a simple tube which ascends anteriorly from the mouth and then bends posteriorly to traverse the entire trunk. A pair of simple, glandular diverticula located in the cephalon open posteriorly into the anterior end of the mesenteron.

The excretory organ of the later larval stages and adult is a noncoiled maxillary gland with an external pore located on the posterior surface of the base of the maxilla. Antennary glands are present in the larva, and possibly in the adult as well.

The paired tracts of the ventral nerve cord form a simple ladder, as in the Branchiopoda, but with much shorter commissures. In each somite are large ganglia. The ganglia of the mandibular and two maxillary somites are somewhat coalesced.

Movement of the trunk is effected by paired dorsal and ventral longitudinal muscles, which run the length of the body, attaching at each intersomitic boundary, and by paired intrasomitic dorsoventral muscles. Each limb, except for the antennules and antennae, is moved by body-limb muscles having four origins; anterior and posterior dorsolateral origins, and anterior and posterior ventromedial origins. Intrinsic limb muscles move the rami and endites.

The heart extends the length of the thorax, with paired ostia in each somite.

*Hutchinsoniella* is hermaphroditic. Both the testes and ovaries are paired, finger-like organs located in the abdomen. The vas deferens opens on the protopod of the 6th thoracic limb; the oviduct opens on the genital appendages of the 1st abdominal somite. Only two large yolky eggs can be carried at a time, one on each genital appendage.

### DEVELOPMENT

Development is gradual. The first free-living stage is a benthonic metanauplius

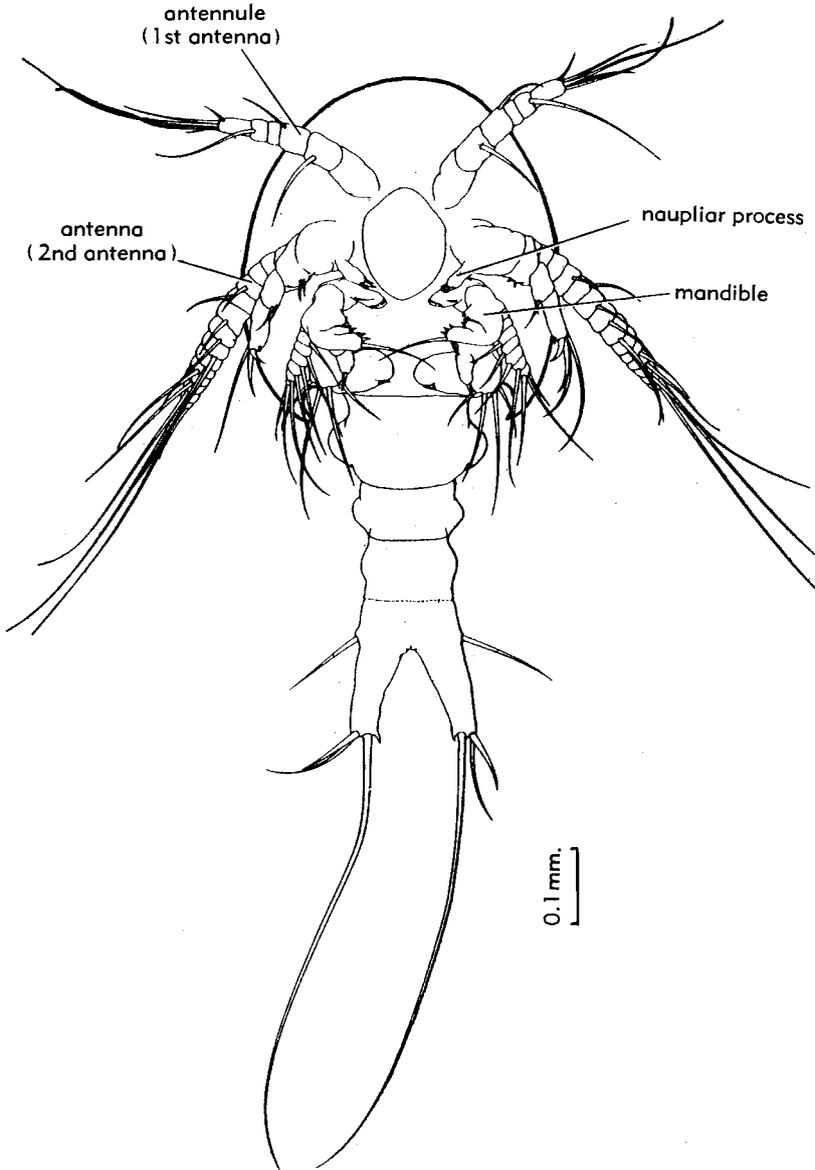


FIG. 42. Stage-1 larva (metanauplius) of *Hutchinsoniella macracantha*, ventral view,  $\times 95$  (9).

(Fig. 42) having well-developed antennules and antennae and mandibles, and rudimentary maxillules and maxillae. Three postcephalic somites are seen in *Hutchinsoniella* but eight in *Lightiella incisa*. The dorsal carapace is of the same form as that of the adult. From this stage on, both somites and limbs are added gradually. The limbs first appear in a rudimentary form,

and require about three instars to attain functional maturity.

The antennae, mandibles, and maxillules undergo correlated metamorphic change from larval to adult morphology. This change occurs after the 13th stage in *Hutchinsoniella* and marks the end of the larval period and the naupliar mode of feeding. At this time the naupliar process of the

antennae disappears. The palp disappears from the mandible, having undergone some previous reduction. The maxillules rotate anteriorly so that their endopods become directed forward. All protopodial endites of the maxillules disappear except for the basal endite, which appeared in the eighth larval stage and gradually became longer throughout the rest of the larval period. The antennules and limbs behind the maxillules undergo no change once they have developed.

The pleura of limbless larval thoracic somites are like those of the adult abdomen. Each thoracic somite develops adult thoracic pleura only as its limbs develop.

## MODE OF LIFE

### ENVIRONMENT

The known Cephalocarida are wholly benthonic marine crustaceans occurring from the intertidal zone to depths of 300 m. *Hutchinsoniella macracantha* SANDERS (7) is a nonselective deposit-feeder living in the loose, organic-rich zone on the surface of subtidal silt-clay sediments. *Lightiella serendipita* JONES (6) has been found subtidally on silty sands. *Lightiella incisa* GOODING (4) was found associated with the fine sediments trapped by the roots of *Thalassia* (turtle grass).

### FEEDING

The method of feeding is known only for *Hutchinsoniella* (8). Feeding results from a metachronal anteroposterior beating of its limbs. The motion is initiated posteriorly and passes forward from limb to limb in a smooth wave.

The two pairs of antennae sweep backward with an oarlike motion. Their setae, particularly the numerous large setae on the ventral surface of the antennae, sweep food and detritus posteriorly and medially into the region of the thoracic limbs.

In the cycle of movement of the thoracic limbs and maxillae, the volume of the space between the limb and one behind it increases and decreases. The three rami of the limb alternately fold backward against the following limb and extend forward again. This action acts as a valve, rhythmically

closing off the interlimb space laterally and ventrally, and then opening again. The thoracic pleura serve to block flow of water dorsolaterally. As the volume of the interlimb space increases on the forestroke, the valves are closed, resulting in a current of water that enters the median space between the paired rows of limbs from below, and proceeds into the interlimb space. The valves are open as the interlimb space decreases on the backstroke, allowing the water to flow out laterally and ventrolaterally. Food and detritus carried by the inflowing current is trapped by the spines and setae on the median surface of the endopods and endites of the protopods. Interdigitation of these setae with other setae on the median edge of the following limb brushes this material loose and concentrates it dorsally along the ventral surface of the thorax between the two rows of limbs (i.e., in the food groove). The endites of the protopods move this food forward toward the posterior end of the labrum. Here the long endites of the maxillules push the food into the atrium oris, where it is broken down by the mandibles and swallowed. All these actions occur simultaneously within the metachronal cycle, so that the feeding process is continuous.

During early larval life, thoracic limbs are insufficient to sustain the kind of feeding employed by the adult. Instead, food is swept toward the body by the antennules and antennae and exopods of the mandibles. It is concentrated at the posterior end of the labrum by means of setae on the antennae and endopods of the mandibles. From here it is passed to the molar processes of the mandibles by endites of the maxillules and naupliar processes of the antennae.

As thoracic limbs are added, the adult mode of feeding becomes increasingly effective, until finally at the 14th stage it becomes the sole method of food collection. Up until that time both methods of feeding function simultaneously.

### LOCOMOTION

*Hutchinsoniella* cannot swim. It moves along the bottom by means of the same

metachronal movement by which feeding takes place. Forward movement results from the backward thrust of the distal claws of the thoracic endopods on the substrate, the paddle-like action of the thoracic exopods and pseudopods, and the oarlike action of the two pairs of antennae.

## EVOLUTIONARY SIGNIFICANCE

Although the Cephalocarida are represented by few species and are unknown in the fossil record, they are of extreme interest because of their central position in the evolution of the Crustacea. Cephalocarids are the most primitive known crustaceans, as judged by their high degree of serial homology and the generalized nature of their morphology. Furthermore, where the cephalocarids show similarities to members of other classes, it is to the most primitive members that the resemblance is closest (SANDERS, 8, 9; HESSLER, 5).

In no other known crustacean is there less serial specialization of the limbs. Except for reduction or loss of the last thoracic limb, all thoracopods are alike. Whereas in the Copepoda, Mystacocarida, and most of the Malacostraca, the first thoracopods are modified as mouth parts, here they are totally unmodified, and even the maxillae conform precisely to the thoracic-limb pattern, a condition unique to the Cephalocarida. In addition, the pattern expressed by the thoracic limbs is easily seen in all of the more anterior adult or larval cephalic appendages except the antennules. In contrast to the Branchiopoda, often considered quite primitive, there is little reduction of the two pairs of maxillae and the antennules. The cephalocarid antennae stand in contrast to those of the Notostraca, where they are reduced, and to those of the Anostraca, which are modified as a copulatory structure.

With exception of the adult mandibles and maxillules, all limbs share equally in trophic and locomotory functions. There is no modification for copulation other than slight alteration of the distal setae of the endopod of the seventh thoracic limb for clasping.

The skeletomuscular system displays the same high degree of serial homology seen in the external morphology. The muscles of the maxillae and thoracic limbs are alike, and the pattern found in the maxillules and mandibles are easily derived from that of more posterior appendages. The extrinsic limb muscles and the serially repetitious ventral longitudinal muscles of the trunk take origin from transverse, endoskeletal bars which are the same in all thoracic somites. The complex ventral cephalic tendon which gives rise to all the ventral extrinsic limb muscles of the head is clearly derived from the fusion of three transverse bars.

The heart and the ventral nerve cord also repeat the same form from somite to somite.

The simple cephalocarid development, in which both limbs and somites are added gradually, stands in contrast to that of other Crustacea, wherein limbs and somites are added in blocks.

The Cephalocarida are not only primitive, but probably stand near to the protocrustacean stock; it is possible to derive the limbs of all classes of crustaceans from a cephalocarid type of limb. With *Lepidocaris* as an intermediate, the thoracic limbs of living branchiopods result from the loss of the endopod and shifting of the exopod and pseudopod. (This conclusion is in great contrast to the classically held notion of the composition of the branchiopod limb.) The thoracic limbs of copepods may have a similar origin. The head appendages of calanoid Copepoda, Mystacocarida, cladocopan Ostracoda, and larval Cirripedia bear strong similarity to those of larval Cephalocarida. The appendages of adult Eumalacostraca bear little resemblance to those of the Entomostraca. However, during early larval stages of euphausiids and pennacids the appendages show close similarity to those of the cephalocarids. During later development of these groups, the cephalocarid-like larval limbs are altered through secondary replacement of parts or profound modification, to form the typical, adult, malacostracan appendages. Thus the adult morphology of these forms is clearly secondary. The form of the leptostracan thoracic limb is quite similar to that of the cephalocarid.

Many parts of the cephalocarid musculature and its skeletal support are generalized in form. For example, the pattern of trunk muscles in the various crustacean classes is diverse, yet in all they can be derived easily from the generalized condition found in the Cephalocarida. The basic processes involved in these changes are loss of connection of muscles with the body wall and endoskeleton, or shifting of the position of these origins, commonly to form spiraled muscular bundles. Even the complex caridoid musculature in the abdomen of the Eumalacostraca can be derived from a cephalocarid-like condition. The caridoid musculature is found in the basic members of the Syncarida, Eucarida, and Peracarida, that is, in all Eumalacostraca except the Hoplocarida. The latter group, which is thought to have branched off early in eumalacostracan evolution, has an abdominal musculature like that of the caridoid facies, but simpler in form and reflecting an earlier grade of evolutionary development. The hoplocarid condition can in turn be derived from a cephalocarid-like musculature, such as is found in the most primitive malacostracans, the Leptostraca.

CANNON (3), in a detailed study of the feeding mechanisms of the Branchiopoda, postulated the ancestral type from which the various branchiopod feeding types could be derived. This theoretical ancestor corresponds closely to the actual condition in the Cephalocarida. In the cephalocarids the food groove is not invaginated into the trunk as in the Anostraca and Diplostraca. There is no specialization among the protopodial endites such as occurs in all Branchiopoda. The enditic setae are relatively unspecialized, suited only for the retention of coarse particles, not a highly developed filter bed, as in the Diplostraca and Anostraca.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Class CEPHALOCARIDA Sanders, 1955

Body consisting of cephalon, thorax with eight somites, and abdomen with 12 somites; cephalon and thorax with well-developed pleura. Labrum projecting strongly back-

ward to form atrium oris. Telson bearing caudal furca. Thoracic limbs and maxillae all similar, mixopodial; foliaceous protopods bearing several endites; multisegmented, ambulatory endopods; jointed paddle-like exopods; unjointed, paddle-like pseudopods. Eighth thoracic limb reduced or absent. Maxillules reduced but of thoracic limb type. Mandibles palpless in adults, but with biramous palp in larvae. Antennae biramous, with large, multisegmented exopods. Antennules uniramous. Total size of adult about three to four mm. *Rec.*

Extant representatives of the Cephalocarida are found on the northeastern and western coasts of North America, in the Caribbean, in the Pacific off Japan, and in the South Pacific (N. Caledonia) (Delamare Deboutteville, personal communication).

*Tesnusocaris goldrichi* BROOKS is the only known fossil crustacean included in the Cephalocarida (2). Later BIRSHTEYN (1) made this species the basis for a new cephalocarid order, named Enantiopoda. This species should be rejected from the Cephalocarida. The two pairs of maxillae are too greatly reduced, being reminiscent of the Branchiopoda in this respect. The entire structure of the thoracic limbs is so different as hardly to allow comparison with the cephalocarid condition.

## Order BRACHYPODA Birshteyn, 1960

Characters of subclass. *Rec.*

BIRSHTEYN mistakenly included the maxillae with the thoracic limbs. That they are truly maxillae is shown by the presence of openings for the maxillary glands.

### Family HUTCHINSONIELLIDAE Sanders, 1955

Characters of type genus. *Rec.*

*Hutchinsoniella* SANDERS, 1955, p. 61 [*\*H. macracantha*; OD]. Eighth thoracic somite with limb and well-developed pleura. Basal segment of endopods of thoracic limbs clearly defined from protopods. Ventral comb on abdominal somite preceding telson. *Rec.*, NE.N.Am.—FIG. 40-42. *\*H. macracantha*; 40, ventral view of adult showing morphological features,  $\times 64$  (9); 41, A, C,

*E-G*, limbs of adult,  $\times 150$  (*A,9; C, E-G*, Hessler, n); 41,*B,D*, limbs of larva,  $\times 170$  (8); 42, stage-1 metanauplius,  $\times 95$  (9).

### Family LIGHTIELLIDAE Jones, 1961

Characters of type genus. *Rec.*

*Lightiella* JONES, 1961, p. 32 [\**L. serendipita*; OD]. Eighth thoracic somite without limb, and with pleura weakly developed or absent. Basal segment of endopods of thoracic limbs not defined from protopods or defined only posteriorly. No ventral comb on abdominal somite preceding telson. *Rec.*, W.N.Am.-Carib.

## REFERENCES

- Birshteyn, J. A.**  
 (1) 1960, *Podklass Cephalocarida*: Chlenistongie, Trilobitoobraznie i Rakoobraznie, N. E. CHERNYSHEVA (ed.) in *Osnovy Paleontologii*, YU. A. ORLOV (ed.), p. 421-422, text-fig. 1240-1241 (Moskva). [*Subclass Cephalocarida*.]
- Brooks, H. K.**  
 (2) 1955, *A crustacean from the Tesnus Formation (Pennsylvanian) of Texas*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 29, p. 852-856, pl. 85-86, 2 text-fig.
- Cannon, H. G.**  
 (3) 1933, *On the feeding mechanisms of the Branchiopoda*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, v. 222, p. 267-352, 32 text-fig.
- Gooding, R. U.**  
 (4) 1963, *Lightiella incisa, sp. nov. (Cephalocarida) from the West Indies*: Crustaceana, v. 5, p. 293-314, text-fig. 1-26.
- Hessler, R. R.**  
 (5) 1964, *The Cephalocarida: Comparative skeletomusculature*: Connecticut Acad. Arts & Sci., Mem., v. 16, 96 p., 47 text-fig.
- Jones, M. L.**  
 (6) 1961, *Lightiella serendipita gen. nov., sp. nov., a cephalocarid from San Francisco Bay, California*: Crustaceana, v. 3, p. 31-46, 19 text-fig.
- Sanders, H. L.**  
 (7) 1955, *The Cephalocarida, a new subclass of Crustacea from Long Island Sound*: Natl. Acad. Sci., Proc., v. 41, p. 61-66, 2 text-fig.  
 (8) 1957, *The Cephalocarida and crustacean phylogeny*: Systematic Zoology, v. 6, p. 112-129, 9 text-fig.  
 (9) 1963, *The Cephalocarida. I. Functional morphology, larval development, comparative external anatomy*: Connecticut Acad. Arts & Sci., Mem., v. 15, 80 p., 38 text-fig.

## BRANCHIOPODA

By PAUL TASCH

[Wichita State University]

[Chapter submitted June, 1956; revised 1961, 1963]

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R129
BRANCHIOPOD TAXONOMY .....	R130
SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R131
Class Branchiopoda Latreille, 1817 .....	R131
Subclass Calmanostraca Tasch, new subclass .....	R131

Order Notostraca Sars, 1867—Anatomy—Reproduction—Species variation— Ecology—Geologic occurrence .....	R131
Order Kazacharthra Novozhilov, 1957—Anatomy—Geologic occurrence .....	R137
Order Acercostraca Lehmann, 1955—Anatomy—Inferred evolutionary relationships .....	R140
Subclass Diplostraca Gerstaecker, 1866 .....	R141
Order Conchostraca Sars, 1867—Anatomy—Carapace—Soft parts preserved with fossil valves—Ontogeny—Ecology and paleoecology .....	R141
Suborder Laeviscaudata Linder, 1945 .....	R149
Suborder Spinicaudata Linder, 1945 .....	R149
Superfamily Limnadioidea Baird, 1849 .....	R149
Superfamily Cyzicidoidea Stebbing, 1910 .....	R151
Superfamily Estherielloidea Kobayashi, 1954 .....	R157
Superfamily Leαιοidea Raymond, 1946 .....	R157
Superfamily Vertexioidea Kobayashi, 1954 .....	R160
Order Cladocera Latreille, 1829—Anatomy—Carapace—Ontogeny— Reproduction—Dimorphism—Cyclomorphosis—Ecology— Stratigraphical and biological value .....	R163
Suborder Eucladocera Eriksson, 1934 .....	R170
Superfamily Sidoidea G. O. Sars, 1888 .....	R170
Superfamily Daphnioidea Strauss, 1820 .....	R171
Superfamily Polyphemoidea Baird, 1845 .....	R175
Suborder Haplopoda Sars, 1865 .....	R176
Subclass Sarsostraca Tasch, new subclass .....	R176
Order Anostraca Sars, 1867—Anatomy—Ecology—Geologic occurrence .....	R176
Order Lipostraca Scourfield, 1926—Anatomy—Geologic occurrence .....	R183
REFERENCES .....	R185

## INTRODUCTION

The phyllopod crustaceans (exclusive of the malacostracan phyllocarids) have been classified until recently in five orders; Notostraca, or tadpole shrimps; Conchostraca, or clam shrimps; Cladocera, or water fleas; Anostraca, or fairy shrimps; and Lipostraca, known only as fossils. In general, all are characterized by the nature of their swimming appendages, which are flattened, leaf-like, and lobate (83). Two additional orders—Kazacharthra and Acercostraca—now are known from the fossil record, both with affinities to the Notostraca.

Besides presence of a head and trunk, gross morphological features of the better-

known branchiopod orders can be summed up briefly as follows (83, p. 4; 107, p. 324). Anostraca are characterized by a cylindrical body. Notostraca typically have a dorsoventrally depressed shieldlike carapace that covers most of the body. Conchostraca have a body enclosed by a bivalved carapace that is laterally compressed. Cladocera have an obscurely segmented laterally compressed body, covered by a folded carapace, and possess a postabdomen. All mentioned orders have a telson and caudal rami except the Cladocera, which have a postabdomen and claws. Like the Anostraca, the Lipostraca lack a carapace. A considerable range

in size, as indicated by length, is seen within the orders: Anostraca, 7 to 100 mm.; Notostraca, 10 to 58 mm.; Conchostraca, 2 to 16 mm.; Cladocera, 0.2 to 18 mm.; Lipostraca, adults about 3 mm. (107).

Examination of the five branchiopod orders having a carapace calls attention to certain similarities. Equivalents of the shieldlike carapace of notostracans, kazacharthrans, and acercostracans occur in conchostracans and cladocerans at one stage or another. Thus, Sars (122) showed that in the later larval stage of *Limnadia lenticularis* (conchostracan) a hood-shaped carapace occurs. It consists of two symmetrical halves without any distinct division and bears a notostracan-like posterior emargination. A line of weakness is thus marked off on the carapace and a dorsal break occurs in postlarval development that separates the carapace into two distinct valves. In the Cladocera, too, the carapace is a single folded piece (107, p. 350). Although it presents a bivalved appearance, separation into two distinct valves does not occur.

Close relationships between cladocerans and conchostracans, as noted subsequently, is indicated by the presence on cladoceran shells of the kind of surface markings (ornamentation) that is so characteristic of conchostracans. These consist of reticulations, striations, and other types of ornament (19). The morphology, anatomy, and other aspects of each order will be discussed separately, and therefore elaboration of these topics is deferred.

### BRANCHIOPOD TAXONOMY

LINDER (70) has presented convincing evidence and argument in support of a regrouping of the Branchiopoda according to affinities found to exist between the orders. His proposed arrangement, which divides the Conchostraca into two "tribes" named Laeviscaudata and Spinicaudata, here designated as suborders, and which isolates the Anostraca and Lipostraca in a separate series equivalent to a superorder, is followed in the *Treatise*. Modifications introduced here include placing cyzicid-like fossil forms in the Spinicaudata and adding two fossil orders.

An alternate grouping used by PENNAK (107), which is stated to be accepted by the majority of carcinologists, recognizes two "divisions" ("superorders" of F. LINDER) of the subclass Branchiopoda; these are named the Eubranchiopoda and the Oligobranchiopoda. The Cladocera are placed in the latter division, whereas the Anostraca, Notostraca, and Conchostraca are assigned to the former. This grouping fails to take account of the fossil orders and, further, it is insensitive to sharp distinctions that separate the Anostraca from all other branchiopod orders.

A superior arrangement in three superorders which expand LINDER's grouping has been proposed by BROOKS (17, 19). The superorder Diplostraca GERSTAECKER, 1866 (= *Onchyura* ERIKSSON, 1934) was erected to embrace the orders Conchostraca and Cladocera. BROOKS pointed out that the "close similarity between the structure of adult Cladocera and the larvae of certain conchostracans strongly suggests that the Cladocera are neotenic (paedomorphic) derivatives of some early conchostracan." He also noted that "the fossil Lipostraca are very much more like the Anostraca than they are like the other orders." Accordingly, he proposed that a superorder (unnamed by him) should be defined to embrace the last two-mentioned orders (equal to LINDER's Series B) and that the Notostraca alone should constitute a third superorder. The two recently discovered fossil orders, Kazacharthra and Acercostraca, would have to be associated with the Notostraca in such a superorder. In my opinion this indicates the basic soundness of LINDER's grouping and does not accord with the classification used by PENNAK.

An outline of classification of the branchiopod crustaceans adopted in the *Treatise* is given in the tabulation on pages R112-113, which shows suprageneric taxa down to subfamily rank, accompanied by records of geologic occurrence and numbers of included genera. The last-mentioned data provide information on numbers of subgenera additional to nominotypical ones which are differentiated in some family groups, as well as numbers of doubtfully recognized genera.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

Class BRANCHIOPODA  
Latreille, 1817

[=order Branchiopoda LATREILLE, 1817, p. 59; 1829, p. 149; order Phyllopoða LATREILLE, 1825, p. 301] [*emend.* G. O. SARS, 1867; raised to subclass, CALMAN, 1909] [Assignment of taxonomic rank in this section is a responsibility of the editor and is based on consistency with other major divisions of the Crustacea]

Crustacea in which carapace may form dorsal shield or bivalve shell, or may be entirely absent; number of trunk somites varying greatly; posterior part of trunk without limbs and usually ending in caudal furca; antennules generally reduced and unsegmented; mandibles lacking palp or with only vestige of one; maxillae reduced or absent; trunk limbs, which vary greatly in number, generally of uniform structure, rarely pediform, generally foliaceous and lobed; position of genital apertures varies greatly; paired eyes rarely absent; development usually with metamorphosis; young hatched in nauplius or metanauplius stage (21). *L.Dev.-Rec.*

Subclass CALMANOSTRACA  
Tasch, new subclass

Carapace broad shieldlike, with or without telson-furca development. *L.Dev.-Rec.*

## Order NOTOSTRACA Sars, 1867

[*nom. transl.* CALMAN, 1909 (*ex suborder* Notostraca Sars, 1867)] [=tribe Monostraca GERSTAECKER, 1866; tribe Notohylla STEBBING, 1902]

[For specific technical advice on notostracans I am indebted to DR. JAMES E. LYNCH, of the University of Washington, and to DR. ALAN LONGHURST, of Bedford College, University of London. MR. WILHELM BOCK, of the Philadelphia Academy of Natural Sciences, and PROF. B. F. HOWELL, Princeton University, provided some needed literature.]

Body elongate, more or less covered dorsally by broad, shieldlike (univalve) carapace, attached anteriorly to head, tapering backward and ending in long, caudal furca; posterior somites varying in number lack legs (apodous). Two sessile compound eyes occur close together on dorsal surface of head, with minute obscure ocellus in front of them. Antennae greatly reduced or absent. Body appendages (legs), 35 to 71 pairs, of which 29 to 52 are postgenital; first pair with endites filiform, commonly very long. Rami of caudal furca very long, multiarticulate. Genital ducts open on 11th

somite. Ova retained in capsular ovisac formed by 11th pair of trunk limbs. No special prehensile organs occur in males. Young hatched in the metanauplius stage (7, 71, 74). *U.Carb.-Rec.*

## ANATOMY

The appendages of notostracans, like those of other branchiopods, appear to be leaflike. Due to this feature, the name Phyllopoða (leaf feet) was originally given to the entire group (LATREILLE, 1803).

Tadpole shrimps have a shieldlike, arched carapace (Fig. 43,1; 44,2). This "univalve" ends in a posterior emargination (notch or sinus) that may or may not be denticulate. On its outer surface, the carapace bears sessile compound eyes, a median eye, and a dorsal, nuchal organ (71, pl. 7, figs. 3-6; 74, fig. 4) (Fig. 43,1b). Also visible on the surface is a cervical groove. Behind the groove, a carina extends along the mid-dorsal line to the posterior emargination. The arched carina may bear short spines along its length. In flattened specimens these appear as a ladder-like series of flattened spines. Behind the cervical groove, coiled tubes of the shell gland extend diagonally on either side of the carina. These glands serve as excretory organs and empty at the base of the maxillae. They can be seen through the dorsal surface of the carapace and may be preserved as internal casts (e.g., *Triops beedei*, Fig. 43,2).

Exclusive of the terminal telson, notostracans have 25 to 44 body somites (or body rings) (71). These rings may bear more than two pairs of legs each and toward the rear some bear ten or more pairs. All body rings are of comparable length. The thorax consists of the first 11 rings, the remainder constituting the abdomen.

In all species of the genus *Triops* the supra-anal plate is absent, excepting *T. cancriformis*, in which it is rudimentary (74). In species of *Lepidurus* it is invariably present and prominent.

The notostracan telson is heavily chitinized.<sup>1</sup> This can account for its occurrence as a fossil in the sparse record of the order.

<sup>1</sup> A. G. RICHARDS (1951, Table 2) indicates that *Triops* gives a positive test for chitin in its body wall (see footnote, p. R168).

It is difficult to determine a "normal" adult size in notostracans because of the wide range of variations within species. The usual adult size for all species of *Triops* is between 15 and 30 mm. for carapace

length. A "giant" species has been reported from Siberia. Large individuals up to 40 mm. in carapace length are also known elsewhere. In general, species of *Lepidurus* tend to be smaller than those of *Triops*. The growth of the carapace is isometric in *Triops*, that is, the ratio of carapace length to total body length remains constant during growth (74, p. 6, fig. 1).

## REPRODUCTION

Notostracan populations in which males are absent have generally been referred to as parthenogenetic (72). Recent cytological work, however, raises questions as to the validity of this assumption. LONGHURST (72, 74) confirmed earlier findings of H. M. BERNARD, that in *Triops cancriformis* and some species of *Lepidurus*, the gonads are ovotestes. Thus, the assumed parthenogenetic females are actually hermaphrodites, self-fertilizing, and hence capable of laying viable eggs in the absence of males (74, fig. 12). This finding is confirmed by chromosome number counts (74, table 2, fig. 14).

The role of hermaphroditism in the distribution of notostracans is discussed below. Note may be made that this reproductive mechanism is rare in Crustacea (72). Other notostracan species appear to be characterized by an invariable bisexuality.

In the female, the limbs of the genital somite (11th thoracic ring) are modified to form brood pouches for carrying eggs ("oostegopods" of PEARSE). Notostracans, like other phyllopods, after leaving the eggs, pass through a free-swimming larval stage. As a newly hatched metanauplius, *Triops cancriformis* has an oval body in which one can discern the beginnings of five trunk somites.

## SPECIES VARIATION

Many notostracan species are cosmopolitan and exhibit a wide range of variation. For example, all North American and some South American forms of the living *Triops* have recently been assigned to a single species (71). A similar tendency lumps together different species of *Lepidurus*. Study of LINDER's monograph (71) of North American notostracans indicates that considerable variation will be encountered

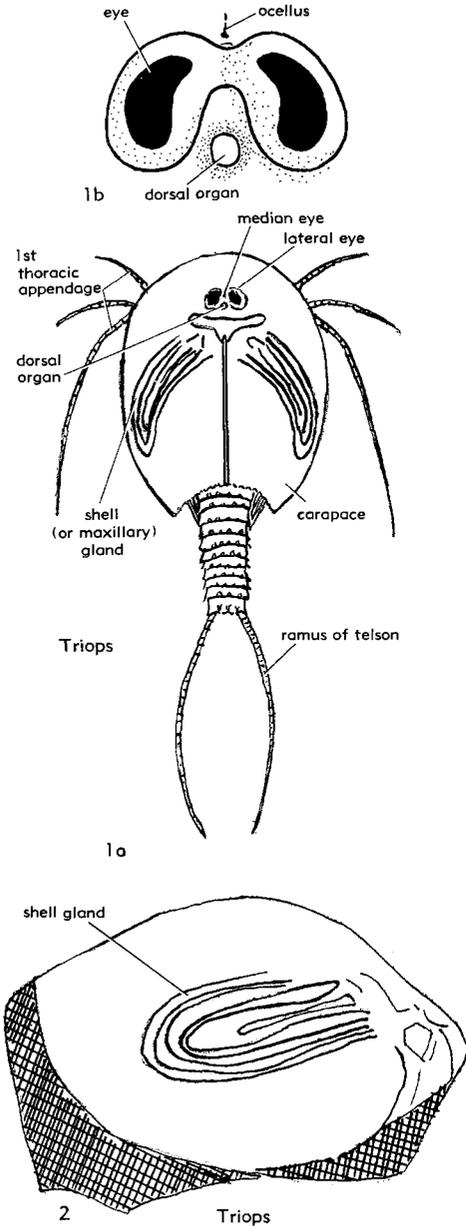


FIG. 43. Morphological features of living and fossil notostracans.—1. *Triops cancriformis* (SCHAEFFER); 1a, complete individual seen through carapace, enlarged (15); 1b, detail of eye region, enlarged (74).—2. *T. beedei* (RUEDEMANN), shell gland and cervical fold on half of carapace,  $\times 3.5$  (170a).

in the following characteristics (both in fossil and living forms): number of body rings, total number of legs on a particular ring, number of leg-bearing abdominal rings, number of legless abdominal rings, form of the supra-anal plate, and spines on dorsal side of the supra-anal plate.

LONGHURST systematically considered every character previously employed to separate species of *Triops* and found that the most important diagnostic character of this genus is armature of the telson (74, p. 18-23, fig. 5). The only other valid characters recognized by him were: presence or absence of the maxillae, arrangement of the eyes, and nature of the dorsal organ. He ruled out as invalid characters that can be correlated with number of body somites or sex of an individual.

*Lepidurus apus* has a larger geographic range than any other known notostracan, for it is found in Europe, exclusive of Britain, North Africa, Palestine, Asia Minor, Russia, North and South America, New Zealand, and Australia (74, p. 50). Despite this cosmopolitan distribution, very little morphological variation has been observed in its entire range. LONGHURST recognized five geographic races of this species.

A remarkable homogeneity in almost all characters seems to mark species of *Triops* regardless of geographic distribution. Even in a character like protein specificity, determined by spectrographic study of the blood, little individual variation has been found to exist between apparently different populations (74, p. 29-30, table 1).

### ECOLOGY

Much confusion in the literature relates to the ecology of notostracans. Most recent work indicates that the ecological differences between *Triops* and *Lepidurus* are "slight" (74). Between species of *Triops* almost no difference is found, although in some places (e.g., western Australia) this does not hold. Only *L. arcticus*, from the circumpolar Arctic region, differs from all other notostracans.

### HABITAT

Species of *Triops* are known from temporary and brackish waters all over the world. *T. cancriiformis*

does not extend beyond 60°N (74, p. 42). The annual precipitation appears to affect the distribution of two species of *Triops* in North Africa, *T. cancriiformis* being found in steppe and substeppe areas where the annual rainfall is 300 mm. (steppe) or 300 to 500 mm. (substeppe), whereas *T. granarius* is found only in substeppe regions. Species of *Triops* (e.g., *T. longicaudatus*) are also known from rice fields in California and Japan, where they uproot rice seedlings.

A recent collaborator of mine, Dr. J. R. ZIMMERMAN (formerly of Wichita State University), conducted a survey of Kansas-Oklahoma ponds in the general area of the Leonardian clam-shrimp-bearing beds. During the summers of 1958 through 1960 he sampled some 500 ponds and in only two found living *Triops cancriiformis*—one observed in the summer of 1958 (Seward County, Kansas), and the other in the summer of 1960 (Sumner County, Kansas). In both occurrences he reported that notostracan ponds—some 180 miles apart—were clear, with soft mud bottoms, and not more than one foot deep. Only in Seward County were conchostracans co-inhabitants with *Triops*.

*Triops* has been found in large temporary lakes, as well as in persistent saline lakes of the Tibetan Plateau (74, p. 35). In general, species prefer temporary waters that dry out with some regularity. The eggs normally require a period of desiccation to hatch out, although exceptionally *Triops* eggs hatch without prior desiccation.

The clearest picture of the "slight" ecological difference between *Triops* and *Lepidurus* derives from study of their distribution in western Australia (74). Here, *Lepidurus* is restricted to the southwestern coastal belt, which enjoys a regular winter rain. On the contrary, *Triops* is confined to the arid interior, where rainfall is slight or absent.

In North America, *Lepidurus* is known from temporary alkaline pools. *L. lynchi* occurs in muddy lake water 2 feet deep. *L. arcticus* predominates in shallow lakes of melted snow and ice and is reported to show remarkable growth in a few weeks. Eggs of this species from Iceland were observed to hatch after desiccation. This contradicts earlier reports by BRAUER and others that *Lepidurus* eggs cannot withstand desiccation. In Europe, *Lepidurus* species are often found in peat bogs and moors that are always under a cover of clear water (7). Humic acids and noxious gases are apparently so diluted or dispersed that they do not interfere with normal egg development.

### TEMPERATURE AND pH

In Algeria it was observed that *Triops cancriiformis* tolerates a pH range of 7.4 to 7.6 and a temperature range of 14° to 19°C. *Lepidurus lubbocki* (= *L. apus*) had a pH range of 6.4 to 6.6 and a temperature range of 10.5° to 18°C. (GAUTHIER, in 83). While the temperature ranges

overlap, it is apparent that in Algerian pools, *L. apus* is more readily able to survive under lower pH conditions.

MATHIAS subjected *Triops cancriformis* to a temperature of 80°C. while dry and to 42°C. while in contact with water, without observable adverse effects (83). This bears out LONGHURST's report (72) that the Notostraca grown by him in the laboratory under variable conditions of temperature, food, and vessel size, all remained "remarkably uniform" morphologically (74).

#### FOOD

Members of both genera are detritus-feeders and stir up the bottom detritus with the tips of their thoracic limbs prior to filtering it. Besides consuming microscopic organisms, they have been known to gnaw on the living and dead bodies of larger organisms, such as earthworms, mollusks, and even dead tadpoles. They will also tackle frogs' eggs. TRUSHEIM has reported evidence of cannibalism in fossil forms of *Triops* (149).

#### LOCOMOTION, HABIT, AND POPULATION DENSITY

Individuals of both genera have a choice of varying modes of locomotion. They can crawl, swim, or clamber. A good deal of the time tadpole shrimps creep or burrow superficially in the soft substrate of their respective habitats. This comes about because they inhabit temporary water basins. During drought periods they can burrow or bury themselves in the bottom mud. In such muds their numbers may be very great. In a shallow, dried depression about 20 feet in diameter in Nebraska, PEARSE estimated that almost a half-bushel of dead *Triops* bodies were spread over the bottom. Considering their average size of 15 to 30 mm., this denotes a high population density. Equivalent populations are known from the fossil record. TRUSHEIM found literally thousands of *Triops* fragments in thin beds of Middle Keuper (Triassic) age (148).

These dried Recent muds often contain a varied fauna capable of being awakened to life by the addition of water. The material LONGHURST studied came from dried muds from phyllopod pools all over the world. While many of the samples received by him contained no viable eggs, quite a number did (74). An example is on record of one sample of dry mud from East Africa that yielded active larvae when wetted, although it had been kept dry for 15 years.

#### DISTRIBUTION

Still another effect arises from the drought-resistant habit. Muds of desiccated narrow, shallow temporary basins can adhere to the feet of birds that visit them to feed on notostracans and other fauna (e.g., starlings, gulls, Arctic terns, 74, p.

39), or they can be blown great distances by winds or carried by other means. LONGHURST has referred to this as "passive distribution." In this way one can easily account for the cosmopolitan distribution of many notostracan species.

Coupled with "passive distribution" is another notostracan attribute, namely, the occurrence of hermaphroditic populations. Thus, hermaphrodites that were probably passively transported are credited with the postglacial extension of the range of *Triops cancriformis*. This reproductive mechanism may also explain the westward extension of *T. longicaudatus* across the Pacific (74, p. 40). This seems to be indicated since no males have been reported from Pacific notostracan populations.

#### GEOLOGIC OCCURRENCE

Fossil notostracans are closely similar to living forms and represent a stagnant group, in an evolutionary sense (73). Thus, *Lepidurus stormbergensis*, from the Triassic of South Africa, is very close to the Pleistocene *L. arcticus* and living representatives of this species (8, 50). CHERNYSHEV's Lower Cretaceous notostracans from Turkestan are slight variants of *Lepidurus* species (25).

Although the fossil record of *Triops* (= *Apus*) is more extensive than that of *Lepidurus*, most fossil material parallels living forms. TRUSHEIM's remarkable collection from a thin green shale and sandstone zone (Middle Keuper) astonished him by the near-identity of fossils when compared with the living *T. cancriformis* (149). He was so intrigued by notostracans that he raised living forms in an aquarium for a year to study their life cycle and habits and his study provides the most complete information available on the fossil record of *Triops* (148, 149). By the nature of preservation and the condition of detachment of carapace and body parts, TRUSHEIM inferred that fossil *Triops* had a predilection for cannibalism (148, p. 200).

SCHIMPER's species *Triops antiquus*, from the Bunter Sandstone (L.Trias.) is identical with living *Triops*, as SOERGEL's species from Keuper (U.Trias.) beds appears to be. SOERGEL originally assigned his material to SCHIMPER's *Apudites*, suggesting that, like SCHIMPER's species, it too belongs to *T. cancriformis*. RUEDEMANN's *T. beedei*, from Permian rocks of Oklahoma, is also most likely assignable to living *Triops*, although this cannot be proved from a mere

shell gland. This leaves only one fossil species at present that eludes definite assignment to living *Triops*; it is GOLDENBERG's *T. ornatus*, from the Stephanian (U.Carb.) of Germany. GUTHÖRL removed this species, which had been placed with cladocerans, to the notostracans. LONGHURST (personal communication, June 1, 1955) could not place GUTHÖRL's specimens of *T. ornatus* in a modern species because available illustrations were inadequate. In view of the known identity to living forms of other *Triops* fossils, it is quite likely that *T. ornatus* will be found to be a synonym for *T. cancriformis*.

### Family TRIOPSIDAE Keilhack, 1910

[=Apodidae BURMEISTER, 1834; Lynceitidae COPELAND, 1957]

Shell shieldlike; abdomen formed of more than 15 rings; terminal spine of last ring long, movable, and articulated. *U. Carb.-Rec.*

**Triops** SHRANK, 1803 [*\*Apus cancriformis* SCHAEFFER, 1756, p. 131; OD] [=*Apus* SCHAEFFER, 1756 (pre-Linnaean) (*non Apus* CUVIER, 1798, *pro Apus* SCOPOLI, 1777; *nec Apus* SCHOCH, 1868); *Thriops* GHIGI, 1921; *Lynceites* GOLDENBERG, 1870]. Carapace smaller than that of *Lepidurus*, leaving more somites exposed; no telsonic supra-anal plate; first pair of legs with very long endites; commonly more than 8 apodal somites. *U.Carb.-Rec.*, cosmop. [Fossil species include the following forms: (1) *T. ornatus* (GOLDENBERG), represented by impressions of broadly oval dorsal shield (4 by 4.5 mm.), weakly arched, with elevated keel (49), U.Carb.(Stephan.), Ger.; (2) *T. beedei* (RUEDEMANN), with shell gland visible on interior of carapace, 6 urinary tubes represented by pair of concentric furrows (median and outer longitudinal), and cervical fold (115), Perm., USA(Okla.); (3) *\*T. cancriformis*, =*Triops cancriformis minor* (TRUSHEIM), represented by some 400 carapace fragments, without marks of body parts, 70 carapace-and-body fragments, 30 fragments of abdomen with impressions of furcal setae, eggs, carapace margins, not distinguishable from Recent *T. cancriformis*, U.Trias.(M.Keuper), Ger.; (4) *\*T. cancriformis*, =*Apudites* sp. SOERGEL, L.Trias.(Bunter), Ger.; (5) *\*T. cancriformis*, =*Apudites antiquus* SCHIMPER, with compound and median eyes visible on carapace and paired caudal filaments; L.Trias.(Bunter), Ger. (Vogesian Mts.)].—FIG. 43,1. *\*T. cancriformis*, Rec., Eng.; 1a, dorsal view,  $\times 1.3$  (15); 1b, detail of eyes, dorsal organ, and ocellus, enlarged (74).—FIG. 43,2. *T. beedei* (RUEDEMANN), Perm.,

USA(Okla.); shell gland and cervical fold on half of carapace,  $\times 3.5$  (170a).

**Lepidurus** LEACH, 1819 (p. 539) [*\*Apus productus* BOSCH, 1802; OD] [=*Bilobus* SIDOROV, 1924; *Prolepidurus* CHERNYSHEV, 1940]. Carapace very large, leaving only few somites exposed; last somite (telson) produced as thin, flat, supra-anal plate between caudal filaments. First pair of legs with comparatively short endites; never more than 8 apodal somites. *Trias.-Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 44,7. *L. lynchi* LINDER, Rec., USA; telson, body rings and supra-anal plate,  $\times 8.5$  (71).—FIG. 44,2. *L. apus* (LINNÉ), Rec., cosmop.; dorsal view,  $\times 1.5$  (74). [Fossil species include the following forms.] —FIG. 44,8. *L. stormbergensis* HAUGHTON, distinguished by pointed or well-rounded supra-anal plate with well-marked mediadorsal keel (50), Trias.(Stormberg Series), S.Afr.; supra-anal plate and caudal filaments,  $\times 4$  (50).—FIG. 44,5,6. *L. arcticus* (PALLAS), characterized by very small supra-anal plate (74); 5, Pleist.; ?♀ telson and supra-anal plate from Isle of Man,  $\times 50$  (162); 6a,b, Pleist.-Rec., Eng., and circumpolar, Rec. ♀ and ♂ telson and supra-anal plate,  $\times 50$  (74). —FIG. 44,1. *L. daja* CHERNYSHEV, with wide, tongue-shaped supra-anal plate (25), L.Cret., Turkestan (Kelmensk Mts.); supra-anal plate and caudal filaments,  $\times 2$  (25).—FIG. 44,3. *L. schewijia* CHERNYSHEV, with supra-anal plate larger than telson and constricted in anterior part while enlarged near middle (25), L.Cret., Turkestan (Kelmensk Mts.); supra-anal plate and caudal filaments,  $\times 1.5$  (25).—FIG. 44,4. *L. kuenga* CHERNYSHEV, with very small telson and acutely triangular supra-anal plate equal in length to telson (25), L.Cret., Turkestan (Kelmensk Mts.); supra-anal plate and telson,  $\times 6$  (25).

### Order KAZACHARTHRA Novozhilov, 1957

Six pairs of crustacean-type appendages. Cephalothorax more or less semicircular, incurved at front and rear, or with elongated leaf form, with or without spines on margins; two ocular tubercles bear paired contiguous eyes. Abdomen with two longitudinal rows of spines on dorsal and ventral surfaces; lateral margins of somites with pleura or spines; segmentation visible also on ventral anterior portion of abdomen; number of abdominal somites variable, ranging from 32 to 40. Telson oval or more or less round, with spines on lateral margins and dorsal and ventral surfaces, with or without cerci. Antennae unknown (97). *L. Jur. (Lias.)*.

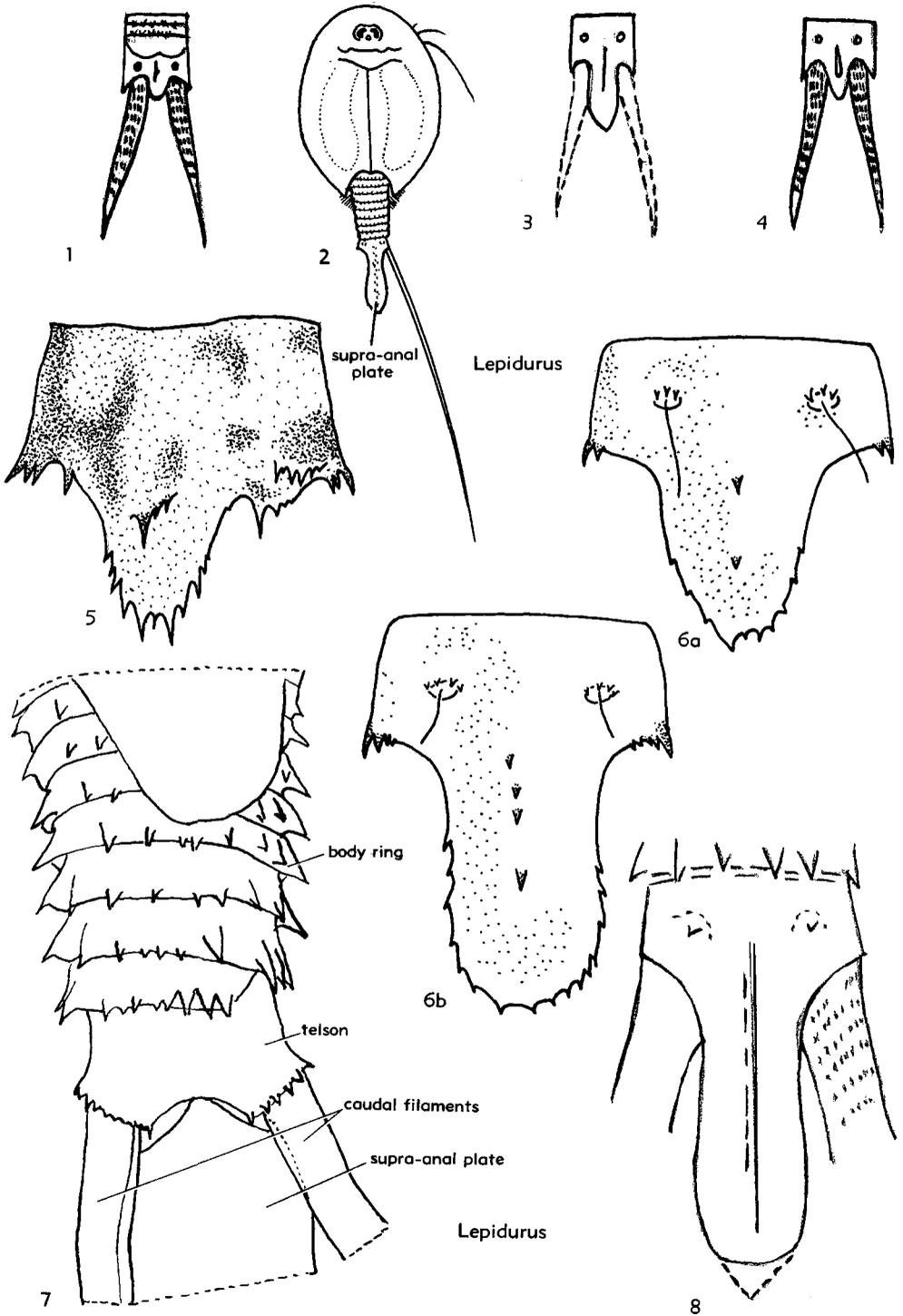


FIG. 44. (Continued on facing page.)

## ANATOMY

NOVOZHILOV (100, p. 266) has observed that in ventral view, the mouth parts of *Almatium*, a genus classed by him in the order Kazacharthra, are of the same type as in true notostracans—that is, they have the general form of a horseshoe that reaches the posterior margin of the cephalothorax. Study of published photographs shows (100, pl. 7, fig. 4) the presence on one specimen of a labrum, antennule, and three somites apparently displaced anteriorly, somites which could correspond to the paragnathum, maxillule, and maxilla of notostracans; another figure (100, pl. 7, fig. 5) shows a labrum, antennule, and ?mandible, which are notostracan-type mouth parts.

For the appendages, NOVOZHILOV (100, fig. 2) provided a line drawing, which indicates that these possess three branches (proepipodite, epipodite, exopodite) in addition to several endites. The number of short appendages attached to the anterior portion on the ventral face of the abdomen is fewer than found in notostracans. In the Kazacharthra NOVOZHILOV has noted that the segmentation of the anterior part of the abdomen is complete on two sides—dorsal and ventral. Genera of the Kazacharthra are also distinguished by structure of the telson, which, though possessing cerci, lacks a terminal segment. In certain genera (*Panacanthocaris*) the telson has a complex structure.

D. G. SHAROV (cited 100, p. 266), who helped in collecting materials from the Sajkan Mountains, is of the opinion that two features—cerci on the telson and similarity of appendages—warrants assignment of the kazacharthrans with notostracans. NOVOZHILOV explained that he rejected the “presence of cerci” as a character having

taxonomic importance, since they occur in many arthropod orders, as well as in the Trilobitomorpha. As for swimming appendages, notostracan resemblances lose taxonomic importance in NOVOZHILOV'S view because the Kazacharthra lack the greater number of short appendages found in notostracans.

It is certainly clear that in shield characteristics, mouth parts, appendage structure, and some abdominal features, the Kazacharthra rather closely resemble notostracans. Only additional material and further study can determine if the smaller number of short appendages and variable characteristics of the telson merit assignment of ordinal rank.

As yet, evidence on which the order is based has not been adequately analyzed by specialists in the study of crustacean evolution. Hence, the order is simply reported here for completeness.

## GEOLOGIC OCCURRENCE

Specimens of the Kazacharthra are so far known only from the Ketmen and Sajkan Mountains of southeastern and northeastern Kazakhstan. *Ketmenia gusevi* CHERNYSHEV (1940) was originally based on poorly preserved fossils, but a fortunate discovery in 1957 by L. F. BELZHANKIN yielded abundant new and better-preserved specimens which permitted NOVOZHILOV (100) to distinguish a new genus (*Almatium*), with the above-named species as type. According to NOVOZHILOV, *Almatium* is based on more than 200 cephalothoraxes, dozens of abdomens (some with telson attached), as well as isolated body parts (e.g., labra, mandibles, appendages). In addition, parts of several new genera were more

(Continued from facing page.)

FIG. 44. Morphological features of living and fossil notostracans.—1. *Lepidurus daja* CHERNYSHEV, showing wide, tongue-shaped supra-anal plate and caudal filaments,  $\times 2$  (25).—2. *L. apus* (LINNÉ), showing eye region, dorsal shield with shell glands outlined, body rings, supra-anal plate and caudal filament,  $\times 1.5$  (74).—3. *L. schewijai* CHERNYSHEV, with supra-anal plate larger than telson and constricted in anterior part while enlarged near middle,  $\times 1.5$  (25).—4. *L. kuenga* CHERNYSHEV, with very small telson and acutely triangular supra-anal plate equal in length to telson,  $\times 6$  (25).—5. *L. arcticus* (PALLAS), characterized by very small supra-anal plate,  $\times 50$  (74).—6. *L. arcticus* (PALLAS), 6a,b, ♀ and ♂ telson and supra-anal plate,  $\times 50$  (74).—7. *L. lynchi* LINDER, showing telson, body rings and supra-anal plate (spines omitted on caudal filament),  $\times 8.5$  (71).—8. *L. stormbergensis* HAUGHTON, characterized by pointed or well-rounded supra-anal plate with well-marked mediadorsal keel,  $\times 4$  (50).

recently made available. The finding of abundant fossil remains of any branchiopod is always of great interest and where a new order seems to be indicated, such discoveries are noteworthy for the light they may shed on branchiopod evolution and ultimately on crustacean evolution also.

The lithology of the Jurassic beds yielding specimens of the Kazacharthra is sketchily given by SCHULTZ (cited 97, 1957) for the Kyzyl-Tam ravine section, in which Bed 3, bearing the crustacean fauna, occurs 120 m. above the base. It overlies a bed of alternating red and gray-yellow shale with beds of sandstone, conglomerates, and disseminated and bedded carbon containing a Lower Jurassic flora associated with coleopteran elytra, a deformed conchostracan valve, and a new species of cockroach. Bed 3 itself is a gray to yellow-gray slaty clay containing gypsum. Whether the crustacean fauna is found in large wheel-shaped concretions or in the slaty clay is not clearly stated.

No branchiopod occurrences have been reported from the American Jurassic, although an interesting specimen from the Sundance beds (L.Jur.) of southwestern Wyoming was recently sent to me. It is poorly preserved, but seems to be closer to conchostracans in shell morphology and surface features than to any other group.

The Kazakhstan section mentioned above includes (in argillites) an insect-bearing bed below a crustacean horizon, together with carbonized material, plant fossils, and other organic remains. This lithic-biotic evidence may be taken, together with the Sundance material, as a provocative indication. American Jurassic deposits probably contain and would yield branchiopod faunas if workers undertook to search for them. In and above carbonized beds seem to be promising places in the light of the evidence from Kazakhstan.<sup>1</sup>

#### Family KETMENIIDAE Novozhilov, 1957

[=Paratriopsidae CHERNYSHEV, 1940, invalid name (25)]

Large flat shield, rounded, rectilinear or concave in front, with or without spines on margins. Elongated abdomen com-

posed of three longitudinal divisions of movable somites, which have equal or nearly equal length; dorsal median part of somites separated from lateral parts by pairs of spines forming two longitudinal series; somites approximately 42, of which six are covered by shield and remainder project beyond shield. Telson of single angular, rounded or nearly rectangular somite, notched at its posterior margin, or with lateral margins curved in truncated ellipse (97). *L.Jur.*(*Lias.*).

**Ketmenia** CHERNYSHEV, 1940 [\**K. schultzi*; OD]. Anterior margin of shield rectilinear or slightly recurved; posterior margin largely concave; spines developed on posterior lateral margins. Flattened, subtriangular bulge with equal sides on median portion of shield. Large, flat telson shaped like truncated ellipse, with spines on lateral margin and on posterior margins of dorsal and ventral surfaces (25). *L.Jur.*(*Lias.*), USSR(SE.Kazakh.). —FIG. 45,5. \**K. schultzi*, Ketmen Mts.; 5a, elongated abdomen and telson,  $\times 2$  (25, 97); 5b, shield,  $\times 1.25$  (25, 97).

**Almatium** NOVOZHILOV, 1957 [\**Ketmenia gusevi* CHERNYSHEV, 1940; OD]. Cephalothoracic shield more or less rounded, with concave posterior margin, all sides without spines; projecting ocular, rounded, anterior, with paired eyes adjoining. Appendages short, not projecting beyond limits of shield. Abdomen composed of 32 to 40 somites, with more or less long cerci (97). *L.Jur.*(*Lias.*), SE. Kazakh. (Ketmen Mts.)-NE. Kazakh. (Sajkan Mts.). —FIG. 45,1. \**A. gusevi* (CHERNYSHEV), Ketmen Mts.; shield,  $\times 0.8$  (97).

**Iliella** CHERNYSHEV, 1940 [\**I. spinosa*; OD]. Shield concave in front and rear, with spines along entire circumference; contour of shield in form of figure 8; raised mandibulars located in rear portion of shield; ocular tubercles, even and odd, in upper sector of shield (25). *L.Jur.*(*Lias.*), USSR(SE.Kazakh.). —FIG. 46,2. \**I. spinosa*, Ketmen Mts.; shield,  $\times 2$  (25, 97).

**Jeanrogerium** NOVOZHILOV, 1959 [\**J. sornayi*; OD]. Cephalothoracic shield oval, flattened, without spines on margins, or with short, small spines on posterior margin; appendages longer than cephalothoracic shield; 2 branches of somites projecting from cephalothorax. Somites of abdomen without spines on margin, at least in young individuals; number of somites 18+?15+8. Telson more or less rectangular, with long cerci (100). *L.Jur.*(*Lias.*), USSR(SE.Kazakh.). —FIG. 45,3. \**J. sornayi*, Ketmen Mts.; complete individual (reconstr.),  $\times 2$  (100).

**Kungeja** NOVOZHILOV, 1957 [\**K. tchakabaevi*; OD]. Shield helmet-shaped, with posterolateral growth diverging from sides; anterior margin rectilinear,

<sup>1</sup> Since this was written *Cyzicus* (*Lioestheria*) sp. have been reported from the American Jurassic and Cretaceous.

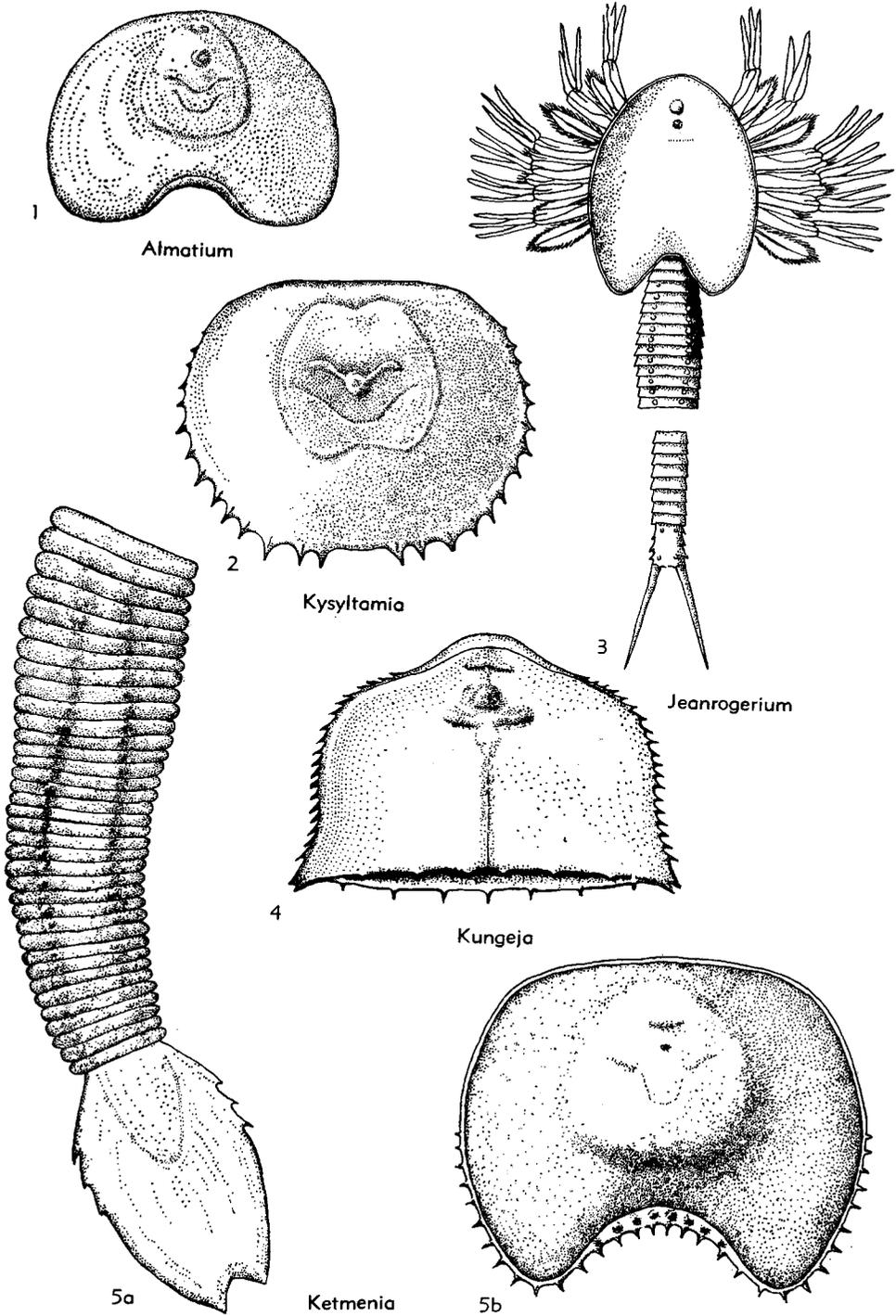


FIG. 45. Kctmeniidae (p. R138, R140).

limited by furrow or groove; spines on lateral and posterior margins; transverse equal ocular tubercles and rounded odd tubercle on rise of carapace; no flattened bulge in middle of shield (97). *L.Jur. (Lias.)*, USSR (SE.Kazakh.).—FIG. 45, A. \**K. tchakabaevi*, Ketmen Mts.; shield,  $\times 1.1$  (97).

*Kysyltamia* NOVOZHILOV, 1957 [\**K. tchiliensis*; OD]. Shield irregularly oval, without concavity of posterior margin; lateral margin and posterior margins with spines. Unique ocular tubercle between mandibular rise (97). *L.Jur. (Lias.)*, USSR (SE.Kazakh.).—FIG. 45, 2. \**K. tchiliensis*, Ketmen Mts.; shield,  $\times 1.1$  (97).

*Panacanthocaris* NOVOZHILOV, 1957 [\**P. ketmenia*; OD]. Shield oval, with large shallow concavity on front margin, narrow on back margin, spines of different lengths on all perimeters but absent in posterior concavity; much of middle part of shield near anterior margin occupied by an ovate flattened bulge; odd ocular tubercles and raised mandibulars located in upper middle part of shield. Abdomen incompletely known. Telson large, divided into large winglike portions and bearing spines (97). *L.Jur. (Lias.)*, USSR (SE.Kazakh.).—FIG. 46, 1. \**P. ketmenia*, Ketmen Mts.; complete individual (reconstr.),  $\times 1.1$  (97).

## Order ACERCOSTRACA Lehmann, 1955

Dorsal carapace present; pair of sessile eyes; small antennae; 5 pairs of articulated thoracic appendages and numerous post-genital abdominal appendages. Like *Triops* but lacking postabdominal telson-furca development (66). *L.Dev.*

### ANATOMY

LEHMANN'S (1955) order Acercostraca closely resembles the notostracans, in general, and *Triops* in particular, in having a dorsal carapace, a pair of sessile eyes, small antennae, and about 50 pairs of appendages. Members of this assemblage lack the characteristic notostracan telson and furca, however (55).

X rays of fossil acercostracans have revealed the intestinal tract and anus, as well as some dorsal features of the carapace, such as the sessile eyes.

The Acercostraca, lacking telson and furca, have soft-part anatomy totally confined to the carapace. It is of interest that NOVOZHILOV'S Kazacharthra also closely resemble the notostracans, differing from

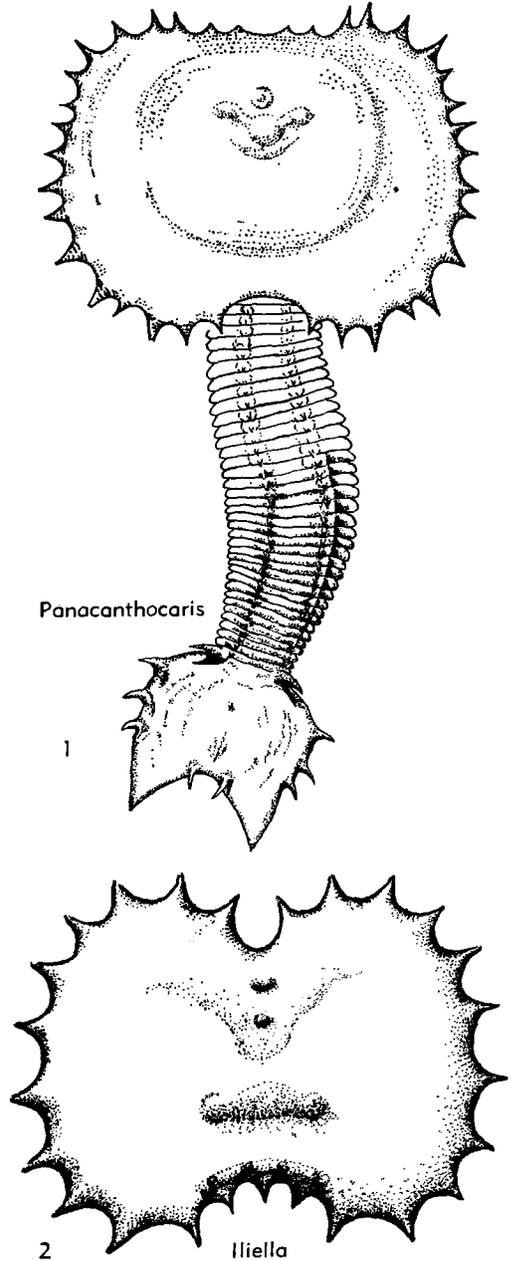


FIG. 46. Ketmeniidae (p. R138, R140).

them in having fewer appendages and variable telson features. The Acercostraca apparently first appeared in Early Devonian time, whereas the oldest known representatives of the Kazacharthra occur in Lower Jurassic deposits.

### INFERRED EVOLUTIONARY RELATIONSHIPS

Fossil notostracans are distributed from the Carboniferous to Permian and Triassic, in each of which systems *Triops* species are recorded. It thus appears that LEHMANN's order, derived from a still older type, may have given rise to the *Triops* line in Carboniferous time. An alternative possibility is that *Triops* descended from a pre-Carboniferous ancestral type and from this same ancestor, a side line branched off leading to the Acercostraca. The Kazacharthra then might be a Mesozoic offshoot of the *Triops* line.

The relative stability of living notostracan forms, classifiable in only two genera (*Triops*, *Lepidurus*), indicates that one branch of the *Triops* stock has been conservative in speciation from at least Carboniferous times onward.

#### Family VACHONISIIDAE Tasch, new family

Characters of order. *L.Dev.*

*Vachonisia* LEHMANN,<sup>1</sup> 1956, *nom. subst.* [*pro Vachonia* LEHMANN, August, 1955 (*non Vachonia* ABALOS, March, 1955)] [*\*Vachonia rogeri*; OD]. Shield broadly expanded, *Triops*-like, with median anterior notch and gently convex posterior margin, apparently covering entire body. Single pair of very small antennae; 5 pairs of thoracic appendages; about 50 pairs of postgenital abdominal appendages (66). *L.Dev.*(*U.Coblentz.*), Ger.—FIG. 47,1. *\*V. rogeri*, Hunsrück Shale; 1a,b, ventral side, dorsal side shown by X-ray, ×9.4 (66).

#### Subclass DIPLOSTRACA Gerstaecker, 1866

[*nom. transl.* TASCH, *herein* (*ex superorder Diplostraca* BROOKS, 1959, *nom. transl. ex subsection Diplostraca—of suborder Branchiopoda—GERSTAECKER, 1866, p. 1029*)] [= *Onchyrura* ERIKSSON, 1934] [*emend.* BROOKS, 1959, and TASCH, *herein*]

Bivalve carapace (single piece in cladocerans), laterally compressed, enclosing body and appendages, abdomen with end (together with postabdomen in cladocerans) bent ventrally forward. Antennules uniramous, small, tactile; antennae powerful swimming appendages. *L.Dev.-Rec.*

<sup>1</sup> Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 30, p. 225, 1956.

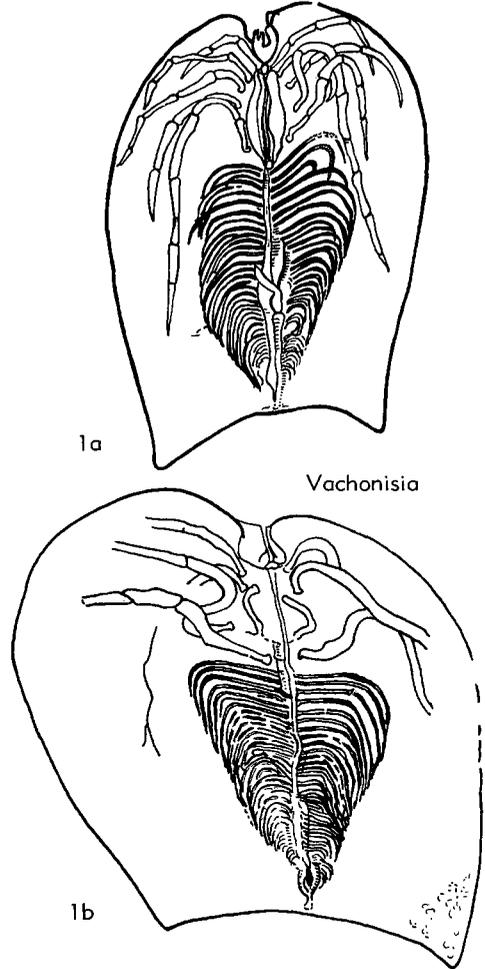


FIG. 47. Vachonisiidae (p. R141).

#### Order CONCHOSTRACA Sars, 1867<sup>2</sup>

[*nom. transl.* CALMAN, 1909 (*ex suborder Conchostraca* SARS, 1867)] [=tribe *Holostraca* GERSTAECKER, 1866; *Phyllopoda conchiformia* SIMON, 1866; *Conchophylla* STEBBING, 1902]

<sup>2</sup> Completion of the conchostracan section of the Branchiopoda chapter was greatly expedited by two Sigma Xi research grants-in-aid. A Wichita State University research grant facilitated preparation of the plates.

RAYMOND's type material was studied at the Museum of Comparative Zoology at Harvard College. Types on deposit at the New York State Museum and the Geological Survey of Canada were loaned for study.

Messrs. E. S. BELT and W. BOCK and Drs. ADA SWINEFORD and E. G. WILLIAMS contributed material from the Upper Mississippian of Nova Scotia, Triassic of Pennsylvania, Permian of Kansas, and Pennsylvanian of Pennsylvania. Prof. Dr. ZDANEK SPINAR kindly sent representative specimens from the Carboniferous of Czechoslovakia. Data on South American conchostracans were graciously supplied by Prof. Dr. JOSUÉ CARMARGO MENDES.

Dr. M. T. COPELAND provided data on Canadian conchostracans and supplied excellent photographs and descriptions

Body enclosed within translucent bivalve shell, ending posteriorly in clawlike furca (with single exception); front of head produced downward, forming frontal process or rostrum; paired compound eyes sessile, more or less confluent; ocellus placed below compound eyes. Antennules short or long, variable from unjointed to multijointed; antennae natatory, biramous, much larger than antennules; trunk limbs (legs) variable, 10 to 32 pairs, of which 1 to 16 are postgenital; rami of caudal furca short, clawlike. Genital ducts opening on 11th segment; ova retained within shell, attached to 9th to 15th pair of legs. Young usually hatched in nauplius stage (120). *L.Dev.-Rec.*

### ANATOMY

Conchostracans, or clam shrimps, have a short, laterally compressed body enclosed between two lateral valves that constitute the carapace. The head is located anteriorly, somewhat beyond the umbonal region, and bears sessile paired compound eyes and a well-developed ocellus. The front of the head is produced downward so as to form a rostral process or beak. Posteriorly, the telson is distinguished by two flattened, upwardly curved processes or claws. Two pairs of antennae are present, the antennules being small and simple, whereas the antennae are modified into powerful biramous swimming organs. During mating, males of *Cyzicus* (= *Isaura*) *cycladoides* have been observed (83) to use the antennae as aid in seizing the female carapace. I have noted multiple uses of these antennae in aquarium-reared conchostracans in my laboratory.

The antennae are employed as an aid in burrowing, as well as in escaping from bottom muds in which the clam shrimp has

burrowed. They are also used to clamber up aquarium walls. When individuals rise nearly to water surface, anterior side up, the antennae are looped and act as a propellant. Sometimes they serve to aid in floating, when, in particular, clam shrimps graze on surface microplankton.

Trunk legs (swimming legs) vary from 10 to 32 pairs, of which from 1 to 16 are postgenital. Although phyllopod trunk appendages display a basic plan—that is, biramous, flat, translucent, lobed, and setose legs with a series of small lobes (endites) along the median margin—modifications of the plan occur in both male and female conchostracans. In males the initial one or two pairs of legs are hooked and prehensile. GRAVIER & MATHIAS (83) observed that during mating the male appears to use these robust hooks in maintaining steady attachment to the female (see Fig. 50, *1a, b*).

Repeated observations and experiments on aquarium populations during mating have convinced me that the mating attachment is not readily disturbed. The mating pair, with the male shell in a position perpendicular to the female shell, moved as a single unit when touched by a brush or when a passing individual clam shrimp collided with them. There also appears to be some competition for females. Individual males were seen on several occasions unsuccessfully attempting to seize copulating females with their prehensile legs. Such incidents cause the mating pair to migrate from the area.

In females, the elongated flabella, consisting of as many as three pairs of posterior legs, appears to serve the function of retaining eggs in position (85, 107).

### CARAPACE

#### COMPOSITION

The composition of the carapace of *Limnadia lenticularis* may be taken as indicative of other conchostracan carapaces. SARS (122) found that it is composed of two distinct parts, an exterior chitinous coating that seems to consist of several layers, and an interior membranous lining that is continuous with the integument of the body. A similar composition has been reported for *Caenestheriella davidi* (58, p. 9). More recent researches on living clam shrimps have added further details (35).

of recently collected specimens from Devonian rocks of the Canadian Arctic.

Other individuals who assisted with references, literature, specimens, or discussion and advice on pertinent problems include: Mme. SIMONE DEFRETIN, Mr. H. W. DRESSER, Dr. M. K. ELIAS, Mr. C. F. KILFOYLE, Prof. TEIICHI KOBAYASHI, Dr. S. A. LEVINSON, Dr. N. NOVOSHILOV, Dr. JEAN ROGER, Dr. C. J. STUBBLEFIELD, Dr. H. B. WHITTINGTON, and Dr. J. L. WILSON. Dr. K. E. CASTER communicated personal observations on conchostracan-xiphosuran associations on Brazilian coastal salt flats. Dr. G. FRYER generously supplied requested information on the habitat of living central African conchostracans. The late Dr. N. T. MATTOX helped me to decipher the taxonomy of *Cyzicus* and provided other valuable data on the ornamentation of living forms. Others who supplied data on and specimens of living conchostracans include Dr. LOUIS KÖRNICKER, Mr. BERNARD L. SHAFFER, and Dr. J. R. ZIMMERMAN.

A diverticle which separates the two cuticular layers of the valve is bounded by two epidermal layers, one above, and one below it. The surface ornament of conchostracan valves originates in the epidermal cells of the uppermost of these layers. Thus, certain adjacent epidermal cells give rise to fibers (cuticular prisms?) which either radiate in the corresponding cuticle or are sunk in the tissue itself. The latter fibers (prisms?) may unite and form a series of resistant pillars rooted in the external cuticle. Thus, a moderate relief is determined and its reflection on the exterior of the valve constitutes the valve ornamentation. Such pillars may be isolated, associated in a polygonal network, or appear as radial rows. In turn, they appear on the exterior of the valve as polygonal, reticulate, or radial. Punctate ornamentation may be accounted for by pore-canals penetrating cuticular fibers (prisms?).<sup>1</sup>

SARS (122) further noted that in *Limnadia* the two distinct carapace parts are connected by numerous cross bars. These, he found, were partially visible externally as small irregular opaque spots.

There can be little doubt, then, that surface ornamentation reflects epidermal-cell-generated fibers (prisms?) and their condition of merger or isolation, and the further condition of creation of relief on the inner side of the external cuticle. One wonders, since the same kind of fiber (prism?) enters into so many different types of ornamentation, whether the vagaries entering into determination of thickness of fiber bundles (prisms?) merits generic or familial taxonomic status. Insight leading to a plausible answer to this question is considered in discussion of "Ornamentation." Here it suffices to indicate that the epidermal cells can generate pore-penetrated fibers (prisms?) that yield punctate ornamentation and later in the same individual, fibers (prisms?) of radial type. This capacity for variable expression precludes fiber (prism?) arrangements themselves as more than secondarily useful taxonomic indicators.

I have studied six specimens of *Caenestheriella belfragei* from a large sample taken by a colleague from a pond near Liberal, Kansas. Thickness of valves in this sample measured along freshly broken edges varied from 0.06 to 0.08 mm. Individual layers, of which the exterior coating was composed, numbered six or seven, which indicates an average thickness of each layer ranging from 0.008 to 0.013 mm. While some variation may be expected in these figures for other genera and species, they are likely to be of the right magnitude.

In life, the corneous conchostracan carapace is never strongly calcified (83, p. 4).

The shells of living conchostracans are semi-transparent to translucent and colored light amber,

brown to brownish-red, or yellow. I have observed valves change to a deeper red-brown color prior to the animals' demise. This is due to changes in the color of the unoxygenated blood in the valve which in life serves a respiratory function.

### GROWTH LINES

All above-mentioned species have carapaces with lines that reflect successive moltings. That is to say, during ecdysis, in addition to the casting off of a chitinous inner skeletal duplicature, a line of growth is added peripherally to each valve. Only the Lynceidae lack growth lines. In mature individuals of *Caenestheriella gynecia*, lines of growth are variable (15 to 26), with an average of about 20. In *Limnadia lenticularis* adults, growth lines are also variable (11 to 15, according to SARS; 5 to 16, according to DADAY); in mature individuals of *Eulimnadia stoningtonensis*, 10 growth lines are reported. Because number of growth lines is important in studies of fossil conchostracans, variation found in living species of *Limnadia* is of interest (30, t. 8, p. 151-175). Growth lines vary from three in *L. nipponica* females, to 45 in *L. grobbeni* females. In the latter species males have ten fewer growth lines. Sexual difference in number of growth lines is well shown by *L. stanleyani*, in which males have ten growth lines and females 13 to as many as three times the maximum male number, even though the carapaces of both sexes are very similar in size.

It has been suggested (58, p. 42, 141) that for estherian conchostracans, low temperature retards carapace growth and is reflected in a smaller number of growth lines. Species reported from tundra regions are all small. In a temperate region, MATTOX (86) found that living individuals of *Caenestheriella gynecia* collected during June of one year showed an average length of 10.6 mm. and 18 growth lines, whereas in July five years later similar individuals averaged 7.3 mm. in length and had 16 growth lines. This difference in growth rate was attributed to a greater precipitation in the earlier year, since more rainfall is reflected in larger or more permanent pools and increased food supply. It is helpful to keep factors of this sort in mind when studying fossil populations that show wide ranges in size and number of growth lines for the same overall shell size.

### ORNAMENTATION

Living conchostracans, with few exceptions, display a variety of types of carapace sculpture. KOBAYASHI (58, fig. 1, table 1), based on data of DADAY (30), classified these into some 20 types and noted that in a few forms female sculpture differs from that of males. He deduced a morphological series that may or may not correspond to any actual evolutionary or ontogenetic sequence but which is given here since it sums up the main

<sup>1</sup> Cf. M. NOVIKOFF, 1905, *Zeitschr. wissensch. Zoöl.*, v. 78, p. 569-571, pl. 21, fig. 19, 26, 27, 31.

kinds of sculpture: (1) appearance of spots or striae, (2) enlargement of spots, (3) appearance and disappearance of grooves, (4) change of grooves from radial to dendritic, and (5) change of pattern from polygonal to reticulate.

As already noted for *Eulimnadia stoningtonensis*, the larval carapace is minutely punctate and this is retained in the adult. Various estherians studied by BAIRD (5) are reported to show minute raised clots or punctuation on carapace interspaces. SARS (122, p. 119) noted that even in smooth and unornamented *Lynceus brachyurus*, under high magnification, the external lamella of the shells displays regularly rounded meshes or hollows.

NOVOZHILOV has founded his entire system of classification of fossil conchostracan valves (95, 98, 99) on fine shell sculpture of the type mentioned above. In so doing, he follows the lead of BAIRD, who originally tried to classify living clam shrimps on whether their valves were "dotted or punctate on the surface" or "longitudinally striated on their surface" (5). These efforts, based on living forms, have been rejected by all workers. No presently acceptable biological classification is based on valve sculpture. In fact, MATTOX (87) has eloquently spoken out against use of this feature for fossil clam-shrimp valves as well. He simply demonstrated that the same valve in numerous instances has both of BAIRD's types of sculpture. JONES (53) and others have shown—without addressing themselves to this particular debate but rather in the course of describing new material—that numerous species of the same genus may have as many as three different types of ornamentation. DEFRETIN (35) more recently has indicated that, while some species may be separable on the basis of shell sculpture, many are not, and thus classifications so predicated lead to blind alleys.

We may conclude that a wide spectrum of variation occurs in the above-noted valve-sculpture patterns within the same individual valve belonging to a given species, as well as within different species of the same genus. In brief, this characteristic cuts across specific, generic, and sexual lines. For conchostracan fossils, ornamentation can at best provide secondary evidence for distinguishing species and possibly subgenera. More rarely it may also serve in the same population to distinguish male and female shells. All evidence available is opposed to use of shell ornamentation for discriminating genera and families of fossil or living conchostracans.

#### ATTACHMENT OF CARAPACE TO BODY AND ORIENTATION

The mode of attachment of conchostracan shells to the body can be exemplified by living *Limnadia lenticularis*. SARS (122, p. 86, pl. 14) reported that the shell is attached to the body above by a narrow ligament, and a little below this, to each side by

a strong adductor muscle, the insertion of which on the interior surface of each valve appears as a well-defined circular area in the foremost part of the valve. The ligamental attachment is anterodorsal and within the upper umbonal area. *Cyzicus morsei* shows a similar mode and location of shell attachment.

Fossil carapaces with subcentral beaks indicate that ligamental attachment of these forms was mediadorsal.

Dorsal and ventral sides, right and left valves, anterior and posterior locations on fossil conchostracan carapaces can readily be determined. Most often fossils cannot be removed from the bedding plane and orientation of the several valves must be achieved by inspection.

In exterior view, the umbo or umbonal beak occurs on the dorsal side. Since the conchostracan body is attached to the umbonal area on the interior, and behind the head region, the anterior location is always headward. If the umbonal region on a given valve is to the right, it is a right valve; if to the left, it is a left valve.

Both valves of fossil estherians in some occurrences are preserved on the same bedding plane. In such cases, direction and strength of bottom currents may be estimated by measuring the displacement and direction of displacement of the two valves along the dorsal margin (61, p. 5-6, fig. 2). Such displacement is generally negligible, owing to weakness of currents which might be expected from the nature of water bodies in which conchostracans are found.

Where fossil valves are found only with umbones and dorsal margins visible on a bedding plane, the individuals represented by such valves evidently died while burrowing in the bottom mud. Most conchostracan valves settle to the bottom and come to rest on their right or left sides, with the convex portion outward.

#### DIMORPHISM

The male and female shells of many conchostracans differ in shape. Thus, SPENCER & HALL (132) reported that female shells are narrower than those of males in species of *Limnadopsis*. KOBAYASHI & KUSUMI (61) measured carapaces of six genera (*Eulimnadia*, *Caenestheriella*, *Caenestheria*, *Leptestheria*, *Lynceus*, *Eocyclus*) of living estherians on deposit at a hydrobiological station at Otsa, Japan, finding that the carapace outline commonly is different in male and female shells of the same species. In a sample of 15 male and 15 female carapaces of *Eocyclus mongolianus* UENO plotted on a curve (61, fig. 9), I observed that a zone of overlap on the graph for length ranges from 10.7 mm. to 11.2 mm. In this zone, male and female carapaces were the same in size, whereas on either side of this zone only larger male shells are recorded, or in the opposite direction, only smaller female shells. As for height,

the range in height of the male carapace falls within the broader range for females.

The interpretation given above differs from that of the cited authors who concluded that "the female is shorter than the male in *E. mongolianus*." Yet study of their graph suggests that dimorphism is expressed gradationally. This becomes an important consideration in dealing with fossil material, since dimorphism has been reported frequently (13, 58).

When considering dimorphism, it is useful to bear in mind the proportion of males to females found in natural populations of living conchostracans. SPANDL (131, fig. 10) indicated that for *Leptestheria dahalacensis* (RÜPPEL) males predominate in warm countries and constitute as much as 75 per cent of the population, whereas elsewhere males may constitute as little as 10 per cent of the population. JOLY (52) found 24 males in a population containing 30 individuals of *Isaura* (= *Cyzicus*) *cycladoides* in Toulouse, France, while other workers reported (83) three males for every female of this same species. In Breslau, Germany, SIEBORD (83) found in a population of 1,364 individuals almost 2.5 times the number of females compared with males of *Cyzicus tetracerus* (KRYNICKI) and SIMON (83) reported a marked predominance of males in populations of *Caenestheriella gubernatur* KLUNZINGER in Egypt.

MATTOX (86) has noted that in the genus *Caenestheriella* all American species are described on the basis of male and female specimens, though his new species from Ohio, *C. gynecia*, consisted only of female individuals.

#### INJURY AND REPAIR

Injury to the growing edge of conchostracan valves has been observed in living and fossil specimens (144). Successive growth lines posterior to the injured site curve upward to fill the gap in the valve created by the injury. New morphological structures may thus be formed in the process of healing the injury. Such structures have been observed and include a sinus or downwarp in the upcurve growth-line zone and one or more scallops on the peripheral margin between any two repaired zones on the same valve. This capacity for shell repair has continued unchanged from at least Permian (probably from Devonian) time to the present.

Individual valves with unique structures must be examined for injury-repair zones. Only when this kind of explanation of the unique feature has been excluded, can taxonomic recognition be made.

#### SOFT PARTS PRESERVED WITH FOSSIL VALVES

Very few instances of partial soft-part preservation of conchostracans have been

recorded. Of these, only two (33, 158) have provided excellent anatomical data. The rarity of such finds is confirmed by my own experience in tracing conchostracan-bearing beds of the Wellington and Ninnescah Formations (Lower Permian) in the Kansas region. Although literally thousands of fossil clam shrimps have been collected from almost 1,000 feet of these deposits and from numerous zones, not one example was found where partial soft-part preservation could be seen.

WRIGHT's genus *Limnesteria* (158) was erected on soft-part anatomy found associated with valves. Her material included second antennae, mandible, trunk, telson, and appendages, from which she was able to show that the first pair of trunk limbs in males were modified as claspers. MATTOX (87), in reviewing her evidence, concluded that her interpretation of the appendages was erroneous in that two pairs of trunk limbs had been modified as claspers. This last factor affected classification of *Limnesteria*, and MATTOX proposed that it be placed in the Cyzicidae instead of Lynceidae. However, no cyzicids are known with valves bearing a large umbo surrounded by few growth lines, a condition that characterizes the valves of *Limnesteria*. The genus should be assigned to the Limnadiidae, in which family valves of this type are common. The fact that specialists such as WRIGHT and MATTOX differ in interpreting the appendages of *Limnesteria* indicates to me that any such interpretation in itself is inconclusive. MATTOX also noted that the antennae and telson are very similar to those of modern estheriids, denoting in his opinion a close relationship of the Carboniferous forms with living species.

DECHASEAUX (33) studied the soft-parts preserved in valves of "*Estheria*" (= *Cornia*) *cebennsis*, observing mandibles, fragments of the biramous antenna, impression of the ocellus and interior of the digestive tube, and the caudal furca. Some strings of eggs were also found fossilized with the valves. As compared with modern estheriids, she concluded that the Carboniferous specimen had larger and fewer eggs, a characteristic head profile, more or less elongate appendages, shorter antennae, and a longer caudal furca. She further observed that the

eggs of Triassic clam shrimps are smaller and more numerous in given individuals, attributing this change to natural selection.

The examples cited make it obvious that those rarely fossilized soft parts of clam shrimps provide an insight into anatomical similarities with living forms and show significant differences too. Unfortunately, the rarity itself prevents paleontologists working with fossil clam shrimps from relating their material directly to living forms described on the basis of soft-part anatomy.

Modification and specialization of appendages appears to have been achieved in the conchostracans by Carboniferous time. Since the fossil record of this group at present extends back to the Devonian, we can surmise that many of the evolutionary trends inferred from fossil valves in younger beds date back at least to Devonian time.<sup>1</sup>

## ONTOGENY

### GENERAL FEATURES

Several studies on the life cycles of living conchostracans are available (SARS, 122; BERRY, 9; MATTOX, 86; and others). The reported investigations deal with three distinct genera, *Limnadia*, *Eulimnadia*, and *Caenestheriella*. A resumé of essential findings is helpful to paleontologists in understanding the probable rate and mode of growth of the animals represented by fossil conchostracan carapaces.

The body length at time of hatching of the nauplii is 0.25 mm. for *Limnadia lenticularis* and 0.37 mm. for *Caenestheriella gynecia*. Comparative figures are lacking for *Eulimnadia stoningtonensis*, although we know that the end of the first 24 hours it attains a body length of 0.75 mm. At hatching, no shell is discernible in any of these species.

In *Limnadia*, the earliest rudiments of a shell and the first appearance of the six foremost legs—all encased in larval skin—occur at a body length of 0.65 mm. At 96 hours after hatching, *Caenestheriella gynecia* has a body length of 1.1 mm. and a shell of 1.5 mm. in length. *Eulimnadia stoningtonensis*

starts to develop its carapace on the third day. The carapace is minutely punctate, suggesting that punctation of the adult carapace, at least in some genera, is a larval characteristic.

### CONCHOSTRACAN EGGS

An excellent literature is now available on experimental studies of conchostracan eggs. Studies make clear that conchostracan eggs when kept dry, moist, or frozen, can hatch and all at approximately the same time (85). KELLEY (57) noted a variation in number of eggs produced by females according to age of individuals. He also observed that once egg production begins, as few as 15 to 20 eggs may be shed at each ecdysis. MATTOX & VELARDO (1950) reported that for *Caenestheriella gynecia*, the egg masses were attached to the exopodite of the tenth swimming appendage in groups of 35 to 120. During ecdysis, the cuticle (or skeleton) is cast off and with it the attached egg masses. KELLEY found that if feeding conditions are satisfactory, ecdysis occurs every second or third day but diminishes toward the end of life.

These experimental data are of interest to paleontologists since fossil clam shrimp eggs have been reported (33, 53, 58). It also has important bearing on such items as population density, number of generations per season, temperature of the water, and other related factors pertaining to clam-shrimp-bearing beds in the rock column. In turn, these sorts of data can help in elucidating paleoecology.

My study of the eggs of *Cyzicus mexicanus* was directed toward obtaining details of special interest to a paleontologist. Since conchostracan eggs, when fossilized, are found in association with clam-shrimp valves, it is useful to know how, in the living condition, these eggs are placed in the valves. Egg masses were found to lie below the dorsal margin behind the umbo in a tilelike pavement of white-brownish spheres about 0.1 mm. in diameter. They were separated by a darker mucoid-type matrix so that no two eggs were in contact.

A count of four layers of eggs in a rectangle 3.3 mm. long by 3 mm. wide was recorded for each valve. A few eggs were observed that stretched in a stringlike arrangement beyond the roughly rectangular or ovate egg mass. Under high power, the eggs were found to have a thin, fibrous, translucent pellicle or outer sheath and an inner dense yolk. Measurements of several eggs yielded an average diameter of 0.13 mm.

### ECOLOGY AND PALEOECOLOGY

A chief habitat of living conchostracans is small, temporary, alkaline, inland ponds. These are generally no larger than an acre

<sup>1</sup> Cf. P. TASCH, 1963, *Evolution of the Branchiopoda*: Harvard Univ., Museum Comp. Zoology, Spec. Publ. 1963, Chapter XI.

in extent (107) and mostly much smaller. Flood-plain pools (Missouri River, for example), roadside ditches, puddles in cultivated fields, and almost any shallow depression filled with water are more often than not likely to have a brood of conchostracans (144, 146, 147). They have also been reported from spring water (102), along margins of certain large lakes (e.g., Africa) and on coastal salt flats (e.g., Brazil).

The pH of waters inhabited by clam shrimps ranges from 7 to 9.

Some living species are known from both fresh and brackish water (*les eaux saumâtres*) environments. These include *Cyzicus* (= *Isaura*) *cycladoides* JOLY, *Cyzicus* (= *Isaura*) *jonesi* (BAIRD), *Lynceus rotundus* THIELE, and *Leptestheria vieligera* THIELE (83, p. 8).

Conchostracans are found in temporary pools at all altitudes and are cosmopolitan in distribution. The latter fact can be explained by the properties of the resting egg, which can withstand long desiccation of the pools so as subsequently to become dispersed by wind or water. This, in turn, can explain the world-wide distribution of fossil estheriid conchostracans.

According to PENNAK (107, p. 338), with rare exceptions, a pond never contains more than one species of a particular genus at a time. Collections from some 500 ponds in Kansas and Oklahoma by one of my colleagues revealed the presence of only a single conchostracan species (*Cyzicus mexicanus*). This contrasts with fossil occurrences of distinct species of the same genus obtained from the same horizon (and hence presumably in life, occupants of the same water body or closely adjacent water bodies). A possible explanation, if we grant that lumping might reduce the number of distinguished fossil species, could be that in succeeding years a given pond of the geologic past was inhabited by different species. The increment of sediment during a geologically negligible period of time would be undetectable in the rock record, so that different species would occur apparently on the same time plane though actually having existed in different years.

In this regard, it should be stressed that several living conchostracan genera commonly occur side by side in the same pool, as in Australia (132, p. 458), in which species of *Limnadopsis*, *Lynceus*, and *Cyzicus* occur together. Fossil leaïd and estheriid valves are not uncommon on the same bedding plane in both Pennsylvanian and Permian beds sampled by me and others. Several distinct genera bearing spines on the initial (or larval) valve were found together on the same bedding planes in the Wellington Formation of Kansas (142). Also, different phyllopod orders are

not uncommon in the same body of water. GAUTHIER (83, p. 11), for example, has reported the notostracan *Triops* (= *Apus*), the anostracan *Sveptocephalus*, and the conchostracan *Leptestheria*, in the same Algerian pond.

A variety of nonmarine and marine forms are found in association with conchostracan fossils. These include *Unio*, *Anodonta*, *Trigonia*, *Gervillia*, *Spirorbis*, *Anthracomya*, *Lingula*, and *Limulus*. An association with ammonoids has also been reported (98, p. 57). Estheriid valves have been found in coelocanth coprolites or in beds containing coelocanth remains. They have been reported in typical marine strata bearing trilobites and in association with insects and plants. The fossil notostracan *Triops* has been found in the same beds as *Cyzicus* and *Leaia*.

My study of Wellington deposits (Lower Permian) in Kansas and Oklahoma has revealed that faunal and floral associates included xiphosurans, ostracodes, eurypterids (143, 146, 147), numerous insect orders (including many extinct orders) (147), fresh- and brackish-water mollusks (clams and snails), fish, and a considerable number of plant fossils in some places, largely consisting of carbonized wood, seed coats, leaves, and charophytes. Fishes are represented in some deposits by teeth attached to jaws, scales, and fragments of other parts. Segmented worms are represented by burrows. A microflora of pollen and spores has also been found (147).<sup>1</sup>

It may be observed that test tubes placed in some modern ponds bearing clam shrimps have yielded samples of copepods, cladocerans, numerous protozoans, and algae, as well as numerous water beetles and insect larvae. Some or all of these are present before, during, or after the occupancy of clam shrimps. The most abundant large crustacean in most modern ponds sampled by the writer and colleagues is the crayfish. Snails and more infrequently clams are prominent faunal associates of living clam shrimps.

Association with marine forms has led one investigator (58, p. 52) to speculate as to whether estherians did not originally

<sup>1</sup> Other palynomorphs and protists have since been reported and include hystrichosphaerids and dinoflagellates (Tasch, P., 1962, Internat. Palynology Conf., Tucson, Ariz., abstracts).

live in a shallow sea. Several other explanations that eliminate need to postulate a unique event might explain such occur-

rences: (1) existence of temporary pools close to ancient fluctuating shore lines or lagoons and invasion of the sea over such

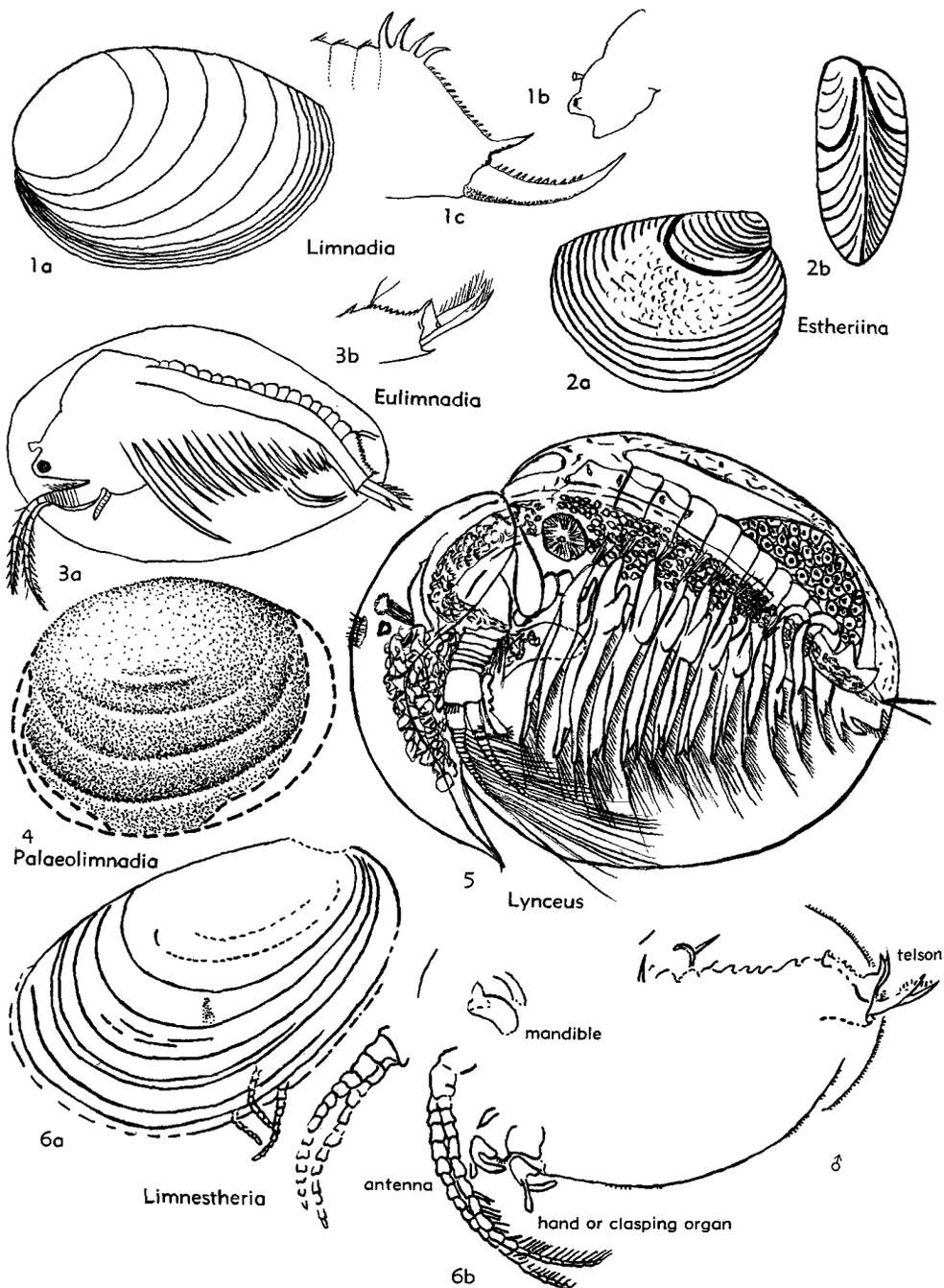


FIG. 48. Lynceidae (5); Limnadiidae (Limnadiinae) (1,3), (Estheriinae) (2,4,6) (p. R149-R150).

an area, mixing the faunas, and (2) dispersal of estheriid eggs to near-shore marine or estuarine area.

The close proximity of shales and marls containing fossil estheriids to fossiliferous marine beds or beds bearing casts of salt crystals favors the first explanation, whereas the second is supported by extensive distribution of estheriids. A third possibility could be torrential flooding that covered pools so as to form a widespread sheet of water which then ran off to the sea, mingling the faunas. Flooding of modern rivers definitely accounts for the distribution of some living clam-shrimp species (57).

As noted above, living conchostracans can withstand brackish water and it is in zones of brackish-water deposits that the mixture of the fresh-water and marine forms in question probably occurred. A good fossil example is the genus *Limnetheria* of the Kilkenny Coal Measures of Ireland. Here, the almost black carbonaceous shales containing the conchostracan fauna grade downward into the so-called "fleck-rock" which grades laterally eastward into marine (goniatite) shales. An ancient delta is suggested by these relationships and the conchostracan fauna is thought to have lived in an estuarine environment (158).<sup>1</sup>

### Suborder LAEVISSCAUDATA Linder, 1945

[=*nom. transl.* TASCH, herein (*ex* "tribe" Laeviscaudata LINDER, 1945)]

Shell more or less globular, without umbones, with very few lines of growth or lacking them; connection between 2 halves in groove; terminal claws rudimentary without dorsolateral spines (70). *L.Cret.-Rec.*

### Family LYNCEIDAE Stebbing, 1902 (1896)

[Lynceidae STEBBING, 1902 (March), based on *Lynceus* LINNÉ, 1785, having "won general acceptance, is to be maintained in the interests of stability" (Zool. Code, 1961, Art. 40,a), cited with its own author and date, but it "takes the date of the rejected name of which it is to be considered the senior synonym" (Art. 40,b), thus replacing Limnetidae SARS, 1896, based on *Limnetis* LOVÉN, 1846] [=superfamily Lynceoidae STEBBING, 1902 (*nom. transl.* NOVOZHILOV, 1960); Lynceidae SAYCE, 1902 (August), p. 257; Paleolynceiinae TASCH, 1956 (*nom. nud.*)].

<sup>1</sup> Present evidence suggests transition from an original marine to a fresh water environment during the Carboniferous. With regard to conchostracans several such events, occurring in pulses, may have taken place at different times (cf. P. TASCH, 1963 (Harvard Univ., Museum Comp. Zoology, Spec. Publ. chapter XI).

Valves lacking growth lines; head not entirely covered by carapace. Antennules 2-segmented; only the first pair of post-cephalic limbs prehensile in males. *L.Cret.-Rec.*

*Lynceus* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785 [\**L. brachyurus*; OD] [= *Limnetis* LOVÉN, 1846 (75)]. Head beak-shaped in profile; rostrum broad in male, pointed in female; flagella of antennae 16-segmented; claw of claspers regularly and smoothly curved, sickle-shaped. *L.Cret.-Rec.*, N.Am.(Can.-USA)-Eu.-Asia. —FIG. 48,5. \**L. brachyurus*, USA (Ill.); ♀ left valve cut away to show head, trunk, appendages, egg masses, ×25 (107). [Fossil species: *L. stschukini* CHERNYSHEV, 1940, = *Paleolynceus* TASCH, 1956 (*nom. nud.*), *L.Cret.*, USSR (Transbaikal) (25).]

### Suborder SPINICAUDATA Linder, 1945

[*nom. transl.* TASCH, herein (*ex* "tribe" Spinicaudata LINDER, 1945)]

Laterally compressed, with or without umbones and with many lines of growth; connection between halves elevated; telson with dorsolateral spines and with large terminal claws (70). *L.Dev.-Rec.*

### Superfamily LIMNADIOIDEA Baird, 1849

[*nom. transl.* TASCH, herein (*ex* Limnadiadae BAIRD, 1849)]

Valves characterized by prominent umbo. *Carb.-Rec.*

The carapaces of several genera of the Limnadioidea exhibit well-marked curvature of the posterior margin near the dorsal line, thus producing a distinctive outline. Branchiopod bivalves of this type are designated as *limnadiiformes*. Such recurvature is observed in some other superfamilies (e.g., Leaiioidea, Vertexioidea) of the Spinicaudata and may result in a spinous projection above the dorsal margin of the carapace (e.g., *Keratetheria*, *Ipsiloniidae*).

### Family LIMNADIIDAE Baird, 1849

[*nom. correct.* TASCH, herein (*pro* Limnadiadae BAIRD, 1849, p. 86, *nom. imperf.*, Zool. Code, 1961, Art. 29)] [=Limnadiidae BURMEISTER, 1843, (*nom. null.*)]

Carapace broadly oval, compressed, with variable number of concentric growth lines around prominent umbo, mid-dorsal surface of head bearing pedunculate, pyriform frontal organ. *Carb.-Rec.*

## Subfamily LIMNADIINAE Baird, 1849

[*nom. transl.* TASCH, herein (*ex* Limnadiadae BAIRD, 1849, *nom. imperf.*)]

Characterized by distinctive frontal organ.

*Rec.*

**Limnadia** BRONGNIART, 1820 [*\*Monoculus lenticularis* LINNÉ, 1761; OD]. Shell broad, ovate; antennules shorter than scape of antennae, flagella of antennae with 12 to 14 segments; 22 pairs of legs. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 48,1. *\*L. lenticularis* (LINNÉ); Mass. (Woods Hole); 1a, left valve, enlarged; 1b, pyriform frontal organ on dorsal surface of head,  $\times 4$  (87); 1c, telson and cercopods, enlarged (129).

**Eulimnadia** PACKARD, 1874 [*\*E. agassizii*; OD]. Carapace narrow, ovate; growth lines ranging from 1 to 12; conspicuous ventral spine on telson at base of terminal spines (cercopods); 18 pairs of legs; antennules variable in length, flagella of antennae with 9 segments. *Rec.*, USA-W.Indies-Mexico.—FIG. 48,3. *\*E. agassizii*, USA (Mass.); 3a, left valve cut away to show soft-part anatomy,  $\times 6$ ; 3b, telson, enlarged (102).

## Subfamily ESTHERIININAE Kobayashi, 1954

[=Estheriinae KOBAYASHI, 1954 (*nom. transl.* NOVOZHILOV, 1957, *ex* Estheriinae KOBAYASHI, 1954); Paleolimnadiinae TASCH, 1956]

Valves with large prominent umbo resembling living *Limnadia*. Presence and morphology of frontal organ. unknown. *Carb.-L.Cret.*

**Estheriina** JONES, 1897 [*\*E. bresiliensis*; OD] [= *Sinoestheria* CHANG, 1957]. Valves more convex for limited area in umbonal region (neanic stages) than lower down in ventral region; growth lines sharp and widely spaced on convex portion but more numerous and closer together on flat marginal area. *L.Cret.* (*Bahian*), Brazil.—FIG. 48,2. *\*E. bresiliensis*; 2a, right valve,  $\times 6$ ; 2b, ventral view,  $\times 5$  (54).

**Bilimnadia** NOVOZHILOV, 1957 [*\*Estheria anabarensis* (NOVOZHILOV), 1946; OD] [Inadequately documented; doubtful]. *M.Trias.*, SW.Asia.

**Leptolimnadia** NOVOZHILOV, 1954 [*\*L. rhombiformis*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *L.Cret.*, NE.Asia (Sib.-Mongolia).

**Limnesteria** WRIGHT, 1920 [*\*L. ardra*; OD]. Carapace oval, punctate, about 10 growth lines surrounding large, smooth, umbonal area. Antennae, trunk limbs, telson of estherian type; first one (158) or two (87) pairs of trunk limbs modified as claspers in males. *Carb.* (*Kilkenny Coal Measures*), Eire.—FIG. 48,6. *\*L. ardra*, Ardra; 6a, right valve,  $\times 7$ ; 6b, male with modified hooked appendages,  $\times 10$  (158).

**Notocrypta** NOVOZHILOV, 1954 [*\*N. altissima*; OD] [Inadequately documented; doubtful]. *U.Cret.*, NE.Asia (Mongolia).

**Palaolimnadia** RAYMOND, 1946 [*\*Estheria wianamattensis* MITCHELL, 1927; OD] [= *Palaolimnadia*

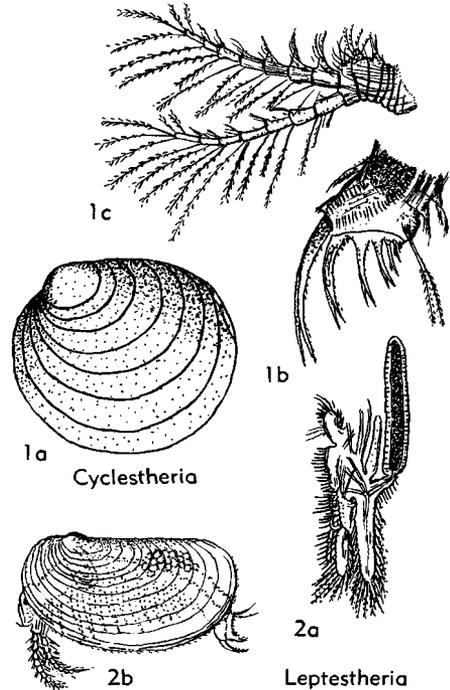


FIG. 49. Cyclestheriidae (1); Leptestheriidae (2) (p. R150-R151).

TASCH, 1956]. Relatively long oval carapace, large smooth umbonal region, and few growth lines. *Trias.* (*Wianamatta Series*), Australia (New S. Wales).—FIG. 48,4. *\*P. wianamattensis* (MITCHELL); left valve,  $\times 21$  (111).

**Pseudolimnadia** NOVOZHILOV, 1954 [*\*P. remota*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful]. *L. Cret.*, NE.Asia (Sib.-Mongolia).

**Trigonlimnadia** NOVOZHILOV, 1954 [*\*T. trigonoides*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *L.Cret.*, NE.Asia (Mongolia).

## Family CYCLESTHERIIDAE Sars, 1899

Shell subspherical, with distinct umbonal region. Head strongly compressed anteriorly; surrounded by thin crest, rounded in front. Eyes united in single organ removed from anterior edge of head. Antennules simple cylindrical, neither articulate nor lobular; antennae stout with upper branch and part of scape bearing strong recurved spines; 16 pairs of legs with only first pair prehensile in males. *Rec.*

**Cyclestheria** SARS, 1887 [*\*Estheria hislopi* BAIRD, 1859; OD]. Characters of family. Caudal plate with dorsal spines strongly developed (121). *Rec.*, Australia-India-E.Afr.-Brazil?—FIG. 49,1. *\*C.*

*hislopi* (BAIRD), India; *1a*, left valve, enl.; *1b*, caudal plate from right side, enl.; *1c*, right antenna from inner side, enl. (121).

### Family LEPTESTHERIIDAE Daday, 1923

Rostrum at anteroventral extremity armed with conspicuous spine. *Rec.*

*Leptestheria* SARS, 1898 [*\*L. siliqua*; OD]. Shell much compressed, oblong, umbones very small. Upper lappets of exopodites on 10th and 11th pairs of branchial legs in female transformed to thick, sausage-shaped appendages for support of egg-mass (124). *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am.-S.Am.-Afr.—FIG. 49,2. *\*L. siliqua*, S.Afr. (Capetown); *2a*, legs of 10th pair showing peculiarly transformed upper lappet of exopodite, enlarged; *2b*, egg-bearing female,  $\times 12$  (124).

### Superfamily CYZICOIDEA Stebbing, 1910

[*nom. transl.* NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (*ex* Cyzicidae STEBBING, 1910)]

Lacking serrate dorsal margin or radial ribs on valves, or large umbonal area. *L. Dev.-Rec.*

### Family CYZICIDAE Stebbing, 1910

[=*emend.* BARNARD, 1929] [=Esteriidae SARS, 1900; Caenestheriellidae DADAY, 1913; Lioestheriidae RAYMOND, 1946; Isauridae BOCK, 1953; Bairdetheriidae NOVOZHILOV, 1954; Eocyziinae (subfamily) *nom. transl.* NOVOZHILOV, 1954 (*ex* *Eocyzius* DADAY, 1915); Aquilonoglyptidae NOVOZHILOV, 1958; Kontikiidae NOVOZHILOV, 1958]

Rostrum apex without spine. Shell thin, pellucid, laterally compressed, outline variable from ovate and elliptical to subrectangular, with numerous growth lines. Ornamentation distinct and variable, ranging from polygonal pattern in interspaces to longitudinal striae that may anastomose. *L. Dev.-Rec.*

*Cyzicus* AUDOUIN, 1837 [*\*Limnadia tetracera* KRYNICKI, 1830, p. 176; OD]. Rostrum of male broadly spatulate in profile; rostrum of female terminating acutely; flagella of antennae with 16 to 22 segments (2). *L. Dev.-Rec.*, cosmop.

**C. (*Cyzicus*)** [=*Estheria* RUEPPELL, 1837 (*non* ROBINEAU-DESVOIDY, 1930); *Isaura* JOLY, 1841, (p. 1068).] Rostrum and segmentation of flagella of antennae as in genus. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 50,1a,b. **C. (*C.*) *cycladoides*** (JOLY), Eu.(Fr.); *1a*, mating pair,  $\times 4$  (83); *1b*, right valve with appendages,  $\times 3$  (52).—FIG. 50,1c. **\*C. (*C.*) *tetracera*** (KRYNICKI), USSR; telson and cercopods, enl. (129).—FIG. 50,1d. **C. (*C.*) *mexi-***

**canus** (CLAUS), USA; section through entire animal (front part of thorax), enl. (102).

**C. (*Euestheria*)** DEPÉRET & MAZERAN, 1912 [*\*Posidonia minuta* VON ZEITEN, 1833, p. 453; SD RAYMOND, 1946, p. 238] [=*Estheria* (*Euestheria*) DEPÉRET & MAZERAN, 1912; *Palae-estheria* DADAY, 1915; *Estherites* KOBAYASHI & HUZITA, 1941; *Bairdetheria* RAYMOND, 1946; *Estheriellites*, *Howellisaura* BOCK, 1953; *Indo-estheria*, *Palaeoorthothemos*, *Paleoleptestheria*, *Pseudoasmussia*, *Rossoestheria*, *Trigonestheria*, *Trigononorassaia* NOVOZHILOV, 1954; *Concherisma* NOVOZHILOV, 1956; *Aquilonoglypta* NOVOZHILOV, 1958; *Sphaerorthothemos* NOVOZHILOV, 1960]. Carapace generally ovate but with wide variation in shape, size, and ornamentation. Characterized by pattern of minute polygons in spaces between growth lines. *L.Dev.-U.Cret.*, cosmop. (36).—FIG. 50,4. **\*C. (*E.*) *minuta*** (VON ZEITEN), U.Trias., G.Brit.; *4a*, left valve,  $\times 5$ ; *4b*, detail of polygonal ornamentation,  $\times 45$  (111).

**C. (*Lioestheria*)** DEPÉRET & MAZERAN, 1912 [*\*Estheria* (*Lioestheria*) *lallyensis* DEPÉRET & MAZERAN, 1912, p. 167; OD] [=*Estheria* (*Lioestheria*) DEPÉRET & MAZERAN, 1912; *Estheria* (*Diaplexa*), *Estheria* (*Diaphora*), *Estheria* (*Polygrapta*) NOVOZHILOV, 1946; *Pseudestheria*, *Lioestheria* (DEPÉRET & MAZERAN), 1912; *Baird-estheria* RAYMOND, 1946; *Liograpta*, *Brachygrapta*, *Rhombograpta*, *Pseudopolygrapta* NOVOZHILOV, 1954; *Sphaerograpta* NOVOZHILOV, 1958]. Carapace variable in size and shape, though generally ovate; numerous extremely close-set, irregular, and fine concentric growth lines; intervals with fine sculpture, dominantly punctate and granulate—latter commonly expressed as hachure-type markings (longitudinal striae); polygonal mosaic sculpture of *C. (*Euestheria*)* completely absent, irregular, or feebly expressed. *L.Dev.-L.Cret.*, cosmop. (36).—FIG. 50,6a. **C. (*L.*) *raaschi*** (RAYMOND), Perm.(Leonard.), USA (Okla.); numerous costellae with narrow, minutely punctate, intervals between them,  $\times 12$  (111).—FIG. 50,6b,c. **C. (*L.*) *sibirica*** (NOVOZHILOV), Perm.(Tartar.), USSR (Lower Toungouska River); *6b*, right valve,  $\times 8$ ; *6c*, detail, long. striae,  $\times 64$  (98).

**Caenestheria** DADAY, 1913 [*\*Estheria sarsii* SAYCE, 1902; SD TASCH, herein (based on first named nominal species in Hungarian edition, 1913)]. Occipital angle (notch) of head is brief in both sexes, more or less broadly rounded. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 50,2. **\*C. *sarsii*** (SAYCE), Australia; *2a*, right valve, male; *2b*, male, head, enl. (30).

**Caenestheriella** DADAY, 1913 [*\*C. variabilis*; SD RAYMOND, 1946, p. 225] [=*Opsipolygrapta* NOVOZHILOV, 1954]. Rostrum extended, compressed, and acutely terminated in both sexes, and with conspicuous, deeply cleft occipital notch. *Rec.*,

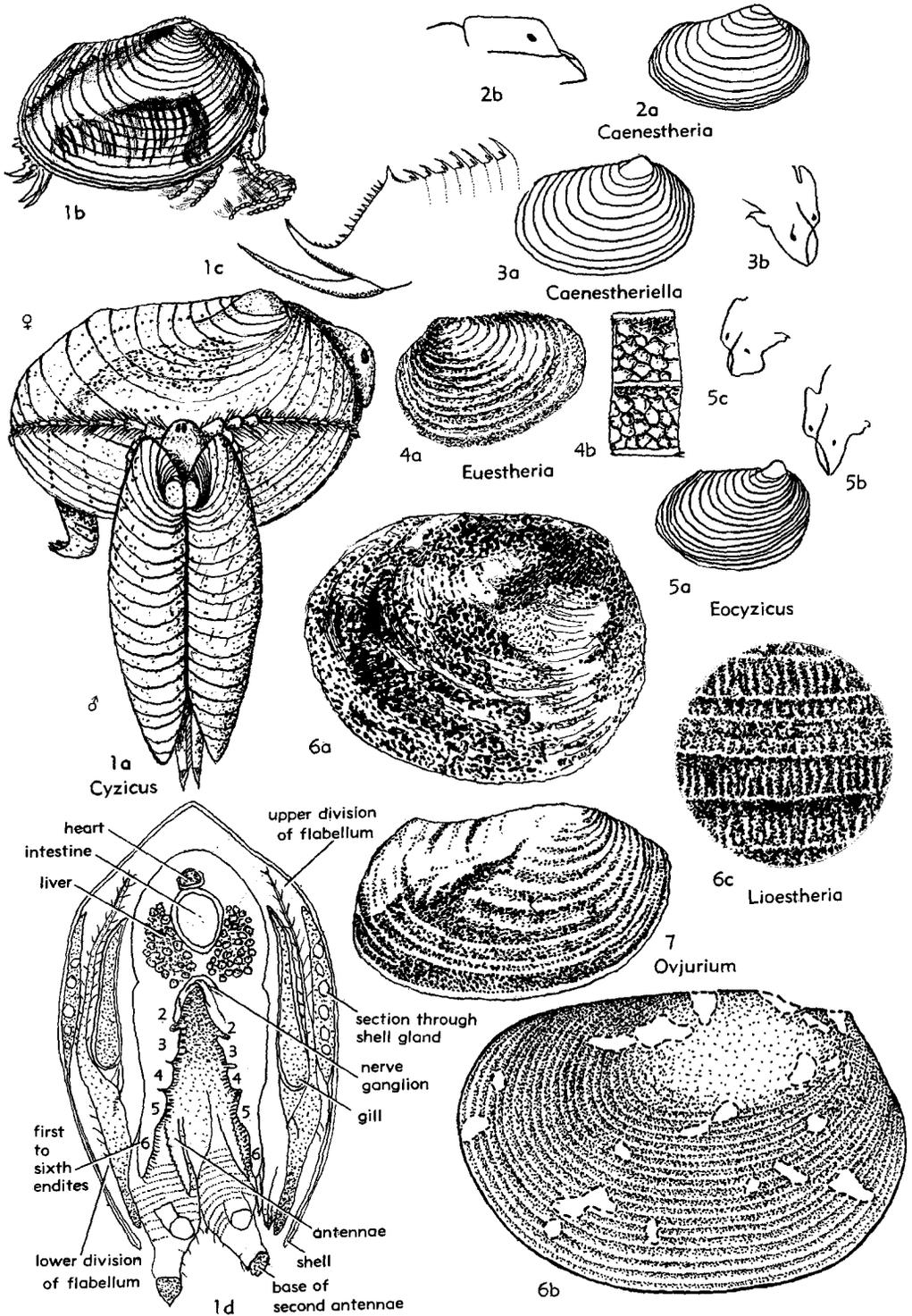


FIG. 50. Cyzicidae (p. R151, R153).

cosmop.—FIG. 50,3. \**C. variabilis*, Hung.; 3a, male, right valve; 3b, female, head showing rostrum and occipital notch, enl. (30, 31).

**Eocyclus** DADAY, 1913 [\**Estheria digueti* JULES RICHARD, 1895, p. 103; SD TASCH, herein (based on first-named nominal species in Hungarian edition, 1913)]. Rostrum of female terminating acutely but male rostrum spatuliform in side view; occipital notch shallow and rounded. *Rec.*, N.Am.-Australia - India - E. Afr. - ?Brazil. — FIG. 50,5. \**Eocyclus digueti* (RICHARD), USA (Calif.); 5a, male or female valve; enlarged; 5b, female rostrum; 5c, male rostrum, enl. (30).

**Kontikia** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**Estheria wianamattensis* MITCHELL, 1926; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *U.Trias.*, Australia.

**Ovjurium** NOVOZHILOV & VARENTSOV, 1956 (p. 672) [\**O. ubsanuri*; OD]. Characterized by elongate valves with parallel anterior and posterior margins; length of valves equal to height; irregular alveolar ornamentation. *M.Dev.(Givet.)*, DANSSR (Tuva). — FIG. 50,7. \**O. ubsanuri*, Touva; right valve,  $\times 9$  (165).

**Ragozinia** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**Estheria evenkensis* LYUTKEVICH, 1938 (= *R. leonidi* NOVOZHILOV, 1958; OD)]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.]

**Rossokontikia** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**R. tikhomirovi*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *U. Dev.(Frasn.)*, USSR (Povolzhya).

**Sedovia** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**S. fecunda*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *M.Trias. (Anis.)*, ArcticO. (Laptevikh Sea).

**Sinokontikia** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**S. youngi*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *M.Trias. (Anis.)*, S. China.

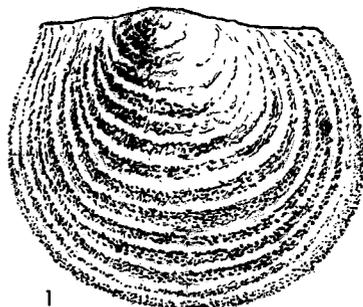
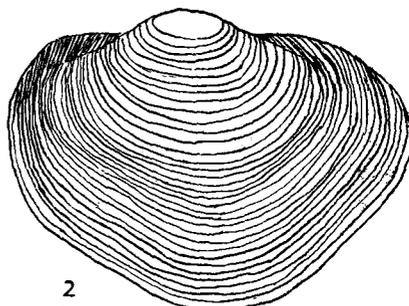
**Tigjanium** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**T. dorofeevi*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *M.Trias. (Anis.)*, ArcticO. (Laptevikh Sea).

**Turfanograptia** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**T. chowmincheni*; OD]. Longitudinal striae in intervals and short, curved spines about 0.05 mm. apart on ventral margin of each interval. [Similar spines in some living conchostracans are more closely spaced.] *L.Cret.(Tougoulouk Ser.)*, W.China (Sin-Kiang, Tourfan Basin). — FIG. 51,3. \**T. chowmincheni*; 3a, left valve,  $\times 10$ ; 3b, detail showing curved spines,  $\times 120$  (99).

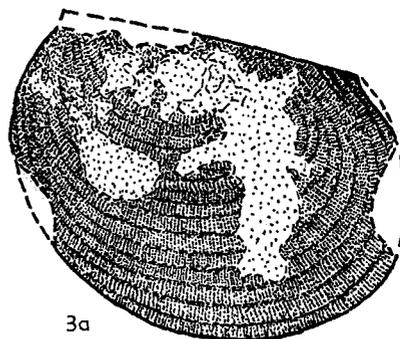
**Ubsanuria** NOVOZHILOV & VARENTSOV, 1956 [\**Trigonostheria kyzylensis* NOVOZHILOV, 1954; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *M.Dev. (Givet.)*, USSR (Tuvinsk).

**Ujgurokontikia** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**U. chaoi*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *U.Jur.*, S. China.

**Vilegenia** NOVOZHILOV, 1953 [\**D. tuberculata* NOVOZHILOV, 1946; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *M.Trias.(Anis.)*, ArcticO. (Laptevikh Sea).

1  
Asmussia2  
Beligum

3b



3a

Turfanograptia

FIG. 51. Cyziciidae (3); Asmussiidae (Asmussiinae) (1,2) (p. R153-R154).

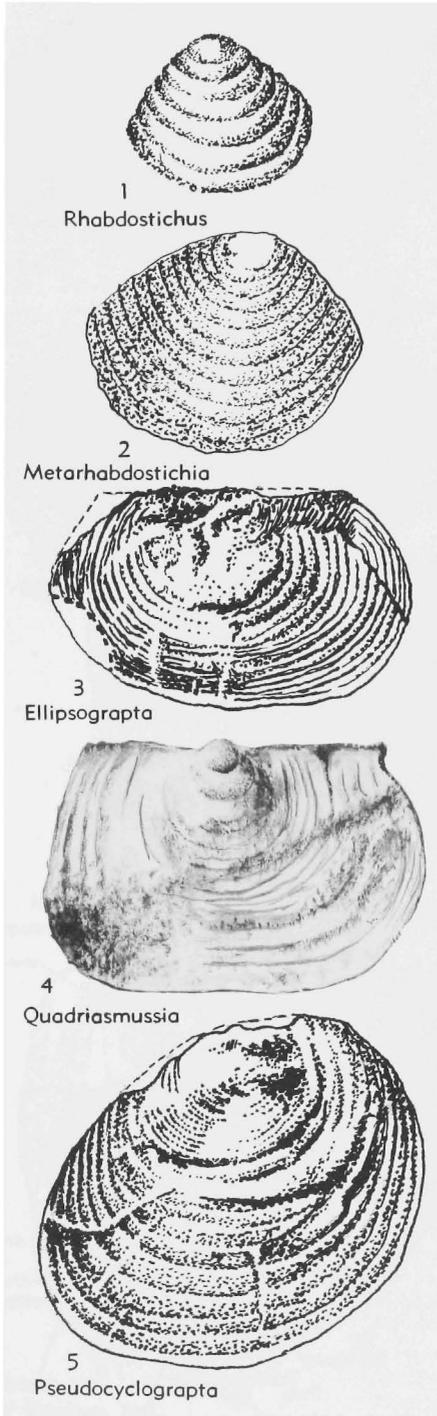


FIG. 52. Asmussiidae (Asmussiinae) (p. R154-R155).

### Family ASMUSIIDAE Kobayashi, 1954

[*nom. transl.* NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (*ex Asmussiinae* KOBAYASHI, 1954)] [Rhabdostichidae RUSCONI, 1946; Cyclestherioidinae KOBAYASHI, 1954; Asmussidae TASCH, 1956 (*syn. homonym*); Glyptoasmussiidae NOVOZHILOV, 1957]

All members of family characterized by generally straight hinge line; carapace shape and beak position variable; ornamentation ranging from hachure-type to alveolar. *L.Dev.-U.Cret.*

#### Subfamily ASMUSIINAE Kobayashi, 1954

[=*emend.* TASCH, herein] [=Asmussiinae NOVOZHILOV, 1954 (*synhomonym*); Loxomegaglyptinae NOVOZHILOV, 1958]

Subcentral beaks generally rising slightly above dorsal margin; carapace outline varying from subovate to subcircular or subquadrate. *L.Dev.-U.Cret.*

**Asmussia** PACTH, 1849 [*\*A. membranacea*; OD] [=Posidonomya PACTH, 1852 (*non* BRONN, 1834); *Estheria* JONES, 1856 (*non* ROBINEAU-DESVOIDY, 1830; *nec* RUEPPEL, 1837); *Erisopsis*, *Orthothemos* RAYMOND, 1946; *Loxomicroglypta* NOVOZHILOV & VARENTSOV, 1946; *Cyclograpta* NOVOZHILOV, 1954; *Levenkia* NOVOZHILOV, 1955; *Glyptoasmussia* NOVOZHILOV & VARENTSOV, 1956; *Loxopolygrapta*, *Loxomegaglypta* NOVOZHILOV, 1958]. Carapace subovate, hinge line straight, beak subcentral, number of concentric growth lines variable, ranging from 13 to 30 or more; interspaces bearing reticulate pattern. *L.Dev.-U.Cret.*, Eu. (G. Brit.-USSR)-Asia (China)-N. Am. (USA). — FIG. 51,1. *\*A. membranacea*, Dev., Livonia; left valve,  $\times 12$  (53).

**Beligum** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [*\*B. doroshkoi*; OD]. Irregularly subovate valves showing dual curvature, that is, of both anterior and posterior ventral portions; beak median, umbo rising above dorsal margin. *U.Dev. (Frasn.)*, USSR (Khakassie, Bereck River). — FIG. 51,2. *\*B. doroshkoi*; left valve,  $\times 7$  (98).

**Ellipsograpta** CHANG, 1957 [*\*E. elliptica*; OD]. Carapace elliptical, dorsal margin straight; both anterior and posterior margins well rounded; umbo subcentral; ornament of hachure-type or of small radially aligned tubercles. *M.Cret.* or *U.Cret.*, China (NW. Heilungkiang). — FIG. 52,3. *\*E. elliptica*, Nenkang Sh.; left valve,  $\times 10$  (23).

**Metarhabdostichia** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [*\*M. tverdoklebovi* (= *Estheria meta* NOVOZHILOV, 1946); OD]. Like *Rhabdostichus* but with valves 10 to 15 times larger. *L.Trias.*, USSR (Tigran River, Sea of Laptev). — FIG. 52,2. *\*M. tverdoklebovi*; right valve,  $\times 10$  (98).

**Pseudocyclograpta** CHANG, 1957 [*\*P. convexa*; OD]. Carapace subcircular, with straight or slightly arched dorsal margin and central or subcentral umbo, chiefly characterized by swollen umbonal region, bearing more numerous growth lines than rest of valve; ornament of hachure type. *M.Cret.*

or *U.Cret.*, China(Nengkiang).—FIG. 52,5. \**P. convexa*, Nenkiang Sh.; right valve,  $\times 9$  (23).

**Quadrasmussia** KOBAYASHI, 1954 (*emend.* TASCH, 1955) [\**Estheria hercynica* KUMMEROW, 1939; OD]. Carapace subquadrate, expanded ventrally, hinge line straight; prominent convex umbonal area (neanic stage) tapering to subrounded beak, whole area resembling complete valve of *Rhabdostichus pulex* in number of growth lines, shape and size; adult portion of valve gently undulating to flat. *L.Carb.(Culm)*, Eu.(Ger.).—FIG. 52,4. \**Q. hercynica* (KUMMEROW), Harz Mtns.; left valve,  $\times 12$  (62).

**Rhabdostichus** RAYMOND, 1946 (*emend.* TASCH, 1955) [\**Estheria pulex* CLARKE, 1882; OD] [= *Estheria* CLARKE, 1882 (*non* ROBINEAU-DESVOIDY, 1830; *nec* RUEPPELL, 1837; *nec* JONES, 1856); *Cyclestherioides* RAYMOND, 1946; *Brachysteria* NOVOZHILOV, 1954; *Ausmusiella* NOVOZHILOV, 1955; *Cyclotunguzites* NOVOZHILOV, 1958]. Carapace subovate to subcircular, with rounded subcentral umbonal beak and few, relatively widely spaced concentric growth lines. [One or more species of this genus (e.g., *R. pulex*) may represent the neanic stage of other members of the family, as suggested by unusually small size and general characteristics.] *L.Dev.-M.Cret.*, N.Am.(USA)-S.Am.-USSR.—FIG. 52,1. \**R. pulex* (CLARKE), M.Dev.(Hamilton), USA(N.Y.); left valve,  $\times 48$  (26).

**Ulugkemia** NOVOZHILOV, 1955 [\**Estheria(?) sinuata* LYUTKEVICH, 1929; OD] [= *Rhodendorffium* NOVOZHILOV, 1955; *Tshuvashium* NOVOZHILOV, 1958]. Carapace with concavity at anterior, posterior or ventral margins of valves; ornamentation finely alveolar. *M.Dev.(U.Givet.)*, N.Asia(USSR).—FIG. 53,3. *U. sinuata* (LYUTKEVICH), Sib.; left valve,  $\times 6$  (78).

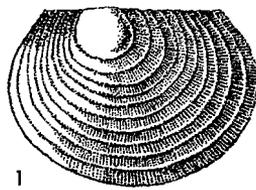
**Wetlugites** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**W. pronus*; OD]. Lower portion of valve semioovate, upper portion trapezoidal; dorsal margin straight; initial valve with berry-shaped projection above dorsal margin which is anteroterminal in position; ornament alveolar. *L.Trias.*, USSR(Viatka Valley).—FIG. 53,5. \**W. pronus*, right valve,  $\times 15$  (98).

#### Subfamily TORGALYKIINAE Tasch, 1961

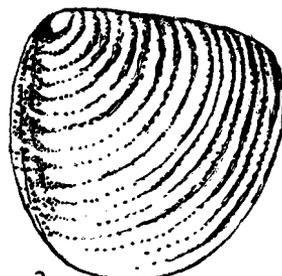
Beaks terminal or nearly terminal, not rising above dorsal margin; valve shape variable. *Dev.-U.Jur.*

**Torgalykia** NOVOZHILOV, 1955 [\**T. ovjurenensis*; OD]. Valves rounded, irregular; beak terminal. *Dev.*, USSR(Touva Region).—FIG. 53,4. \**T. ovjurenensis*, Torgalyk River; left valve,  $\times 6$  (164).

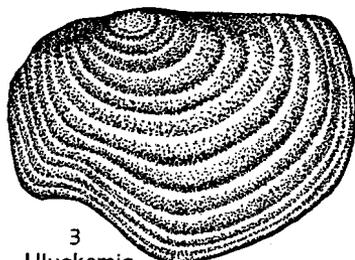
**Eremograpta** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**Cyclograpta (s.s.) insperata* NOVOZHILOV, 1954; OD]. Shape of valves in form of pouch or almost rounded. *U.Jur.*, E.Asia(Mongolia).—FIG. 53,1. \**E. insperata* (NOVOZHILOV); left valve,  $\times 2$  (95).



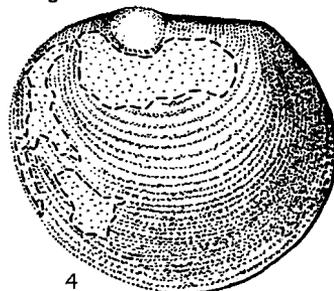
1  
Eremograpta



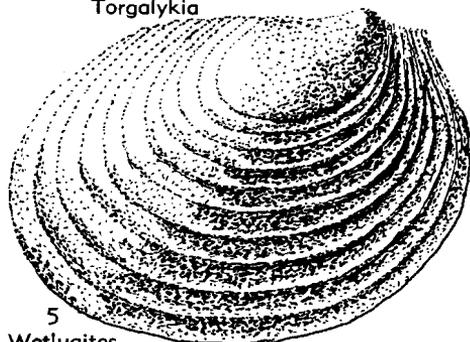
2  
Sphaerestheria



3  
Ulugkemia



4  
Torgalykia



5  
Wetlugites

FIG. 53. Asmusiidae (Asmusiinae) (3,5), (Torgalykiinae) (1,2,4) (p. R155-R156).

**Estheridium** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [*\*E. parvum*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *U. Perm. (Tatar.)*, Sib. (Lower Tunguska).  
**Sphaerestheria** NOVOZHILOV, 1954 [*\*Estheria kor-eana* OZAWA & WATANABE, 1923; OD]. Dis-

tinguished by roundly trigonal configuration of valves; ornament unknown. *U. Trias. (Rhaet.)-L. Jur. (Lias.)*, Korea (Kyonguito).—FIG. 53, 2. *\*S. kor-eana* (OZAWA & WATANABE); left valve,  $\times 6$  (166).

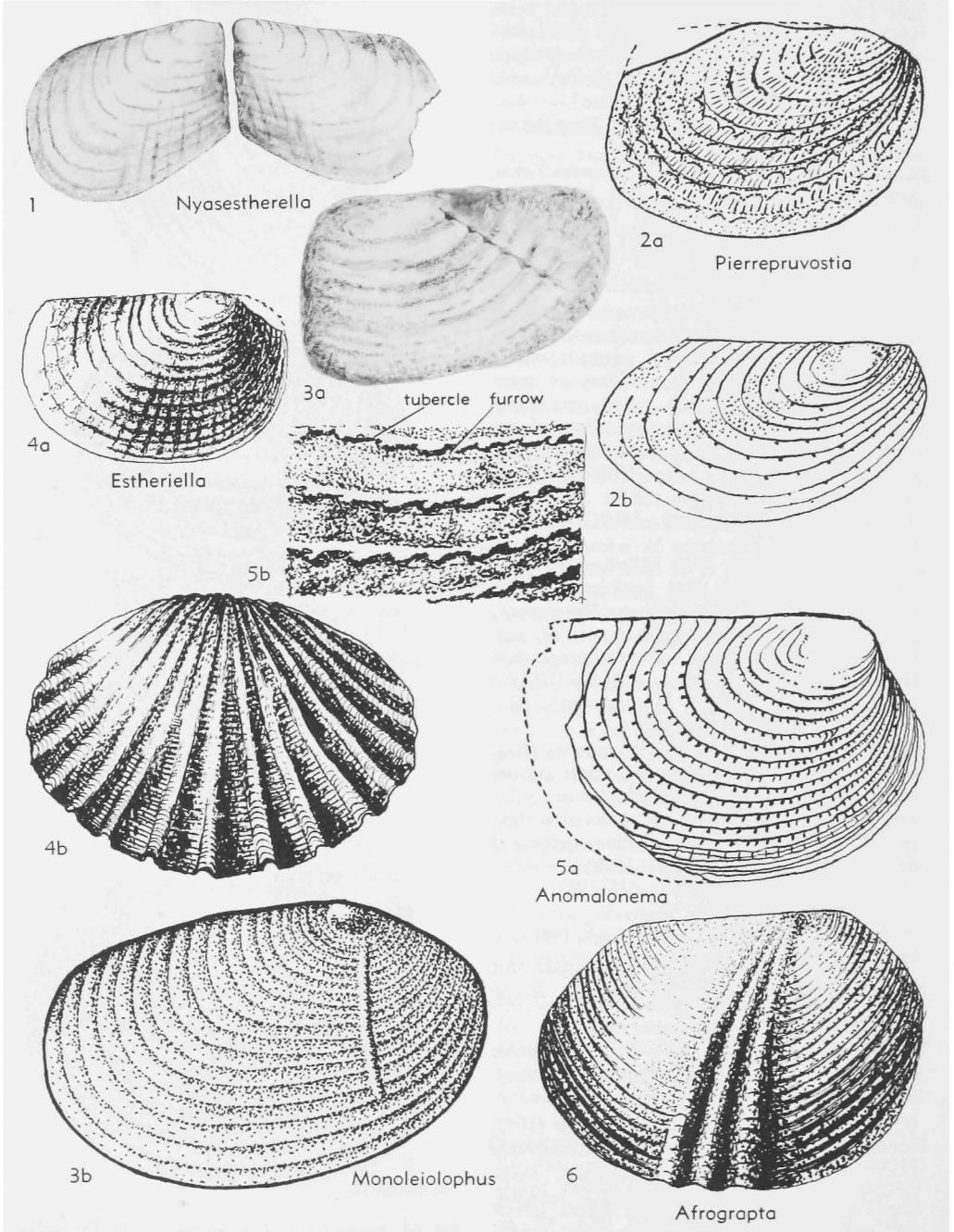


FIG. 54. Estheriellidae (Estheriellinae) (1,2,4,5), (Monoleiolphinae) (3,6) (p. R157).

Taimyrites NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [\**T. strachovi*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *L.Trias.*, Sib. (Taimyr).

## Superfamily ESTHERIELLOIDEA Kobayashi, 1954

[=*nom. transl.* TASCH, herein (ex Estheriellidae KOBAYASHI, 1954)]

Valves bearing variable number of interrupted or continuous radial costae that do not cross umbo. *U.Carb.-L.Cret.*

## Family ESTHERIELLIDAE Kobayashi, 1954

[*non* Estheriellidae KOBAYASHI, 1953, 58, p. 138, *lapsus calami*?] [=Afrograptidae NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (99); Teixeiraiana NOVOZHILOV, 1958]

Carapace bearing variable number of radial costae which, in general, become obsolete near umbo. *U.Carb.-L.Cret.*

### Subfamily ESTHERIELLINAE Kobayashi, 1954

[*nom. transl.* TASCH, herein (ex Estheriellidae KOBAYASHI, 1954) [=Anomalonematinae NOVOZHILOV, 1958]]

Carapace bearing five or more costae. *U.Carb.-L.Cret.*

Estheriella WEISS, 1875 [\**Posidonomya nodocostata* GIEBEL, 1857 (=Estheriella costata WEISS, 1875; OD) [=Congestheriella, Mesoleaia KOBAYASHI, 1954; Pteriograptia NOVOZHILOV, 1954; Tancrediella, Pseudoestheriella NOVOZHILOV, 1956; Angolestheriella, Camerunograptia NOVOZHILOV, 1958]]. Carapace suboval to subelliptical, with several (usually 7 to 12) nodose radiating costae, weak on anterior and posterior sides. *L.Trias.* (Bunter), Ger. (Sachsen); *L.Cret.* (Weald.), W.Afr.—FIG. 54, 4a. \**E. nodocostata* (GIEBEL), Durrenberg; right valve,  $\times 10$  (53).—FIG. 54, 4b. *E. camerouni* DEFRETIN, *L.Cret.*, N.Cameroun; valve showing details of radiating costae,  $\times 75$  (35).

Anomalonema RAYMOND, 1946 [\**Estheriella reumauxi* PRUVOST, 1911; OD]. Valves with or without posterodorsal recurvature but always characterized by interrupted radial costae. *U.Carb.* (Penn.), Eu.-N.Am.

A. (Anomalonema). Valves with posterodorsal recurvature, beak terminal; individual growth lines presenting scalloped appearance of low relief on ventral side owing to numerous small tubercles that represent interrupted very fine costae; in anteroventral region crowding of growth lines leads to visual illusion of continuous costae (109). *U.Carb.* (Westphal.), Eu. (NE. Fr.)-G.Brit. (Kent-Lancashire coal fields, *Anthriconauta phillipsi-tenuis* Zone).—FIG. 54, 5. \**A. (A.) reumauxi* (PRUVOST), Fr.; 5a, right valve,  $\times 9$  (109); 5b, detail of ornament,  $\times 35$  (110).

A. (Pierrepruvostia). [\**Pierrepruvostia defretinae* NOVOZHILOV, 1958; OD] [=Estheriella reumauxi PRUVOST, 1919, fig. 34, non 35; Anomalonema (Pierrepruvostia) defretinae TASCH, 1960]. Lacking posterodorsal recurvature; beak not terminal; subovate; otherwise like *A. (A.) reumauxi* (109). *U.Carb.* (Penn.), Eu. (NE. Fr.)-N.Am. (NE. USA).—FIG. 54, 2a. \**A. (P.) defretinae* (NOVOZHILOV); right valve,  $\times 10$  (110).—FIG. 54, 2b. *A. (P.) williamsi* TASCH, Alleghen., USA (Pa.); right valve,  $\times 7$  (140).

Nyasestheriella KOBAYASHI, 1954 (*emend.* TASCH, 1955) [\**Estheriella nyasana* NEWTON, 1910; OD]. Carapace extremely small, obliquely subquadrate, with anterior margin straight, truncated, umbones anteroterminal, 12 equidistant concentric lines crossed by numerous obscure radial riblets (costae); fine pits and granules covering thin test. *Perm.-Carb.* (Karoo), Nyasaland.—FIG. 54, 1. \**N. nyasana* (NEWTON), N. rana; paired valves,  $\times 30$  (93).

### Subfamily MONOLEIOLOPHINAE Novozhilov, 1954

[=Karagandiinae TASCH, 1961] [=*emend.* TASCH, 1961]

Carapace with one to four radial costae. *Penn.-L.Cret.*

Monoleiolphus RAYMOND, 1946 (*emend.* TASCH, 1955) [\**Monoleiolphus unicostatus* RAYMOND, 1946 (*non* REED, 1929) (=M. conemaughensis KOBAYASHI, 1954); OD] [=Monoleaia MIROSCHNICHENKO, 1956; Monoleiopholus TASCH, 1956 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace with single posterior nodose costa which reaches posterior ventral margin but fades anteriorly and does not reach beak. *Penn.* (Conemaugh), USA (Pa.).—FIG. 54, 3a. \**M. unicostatus*; left valve,  $\times 7.5$  (111).—FIG. 54, 3b. *M. karagandica* (MIROSCHNICHENKO), *U. Carb.* (U. Namur.), USSR (Karaganda Basin); left valve,  $\times 14$  (91).

Afrograpta NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (99) [\**Estheriella (Dadaydedeesia) tricostata* DEFRETIN, 1953; OD]. Carapace with 3 radial ribs in medial sector. *L. Cret.* (Wealden), Afr.—FIG. 54, 6. \**A. tricostata* (DEFRETIN), N. Cameroun, right valve,  $\times 7.5$  (35).

## Superfamily LEAIOIDEA Raymond, 1946

[*nom. transl.* NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (ex Leaiaidae RAYMOND, 1946)]

Valves bearing up to five radial ribs that cross umbo. *M.Dev.-L.Cret.*

### Family LEAIIIDAE Raymond, 1946

[*nam. correct.* NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (*pro* Leaiaidae RAYMOND, 1946, p. 280)] [=Hemicycloleaiinae, Cycloleaiidae, Lioleaiinae NOVOZHILOV, 1952; Amphikoliidae NOVOZHILOV, 1953; Praeleaiinae, Igorvarentsoviinae, Rostroleaiinae NOVOZHILOV, 1956]

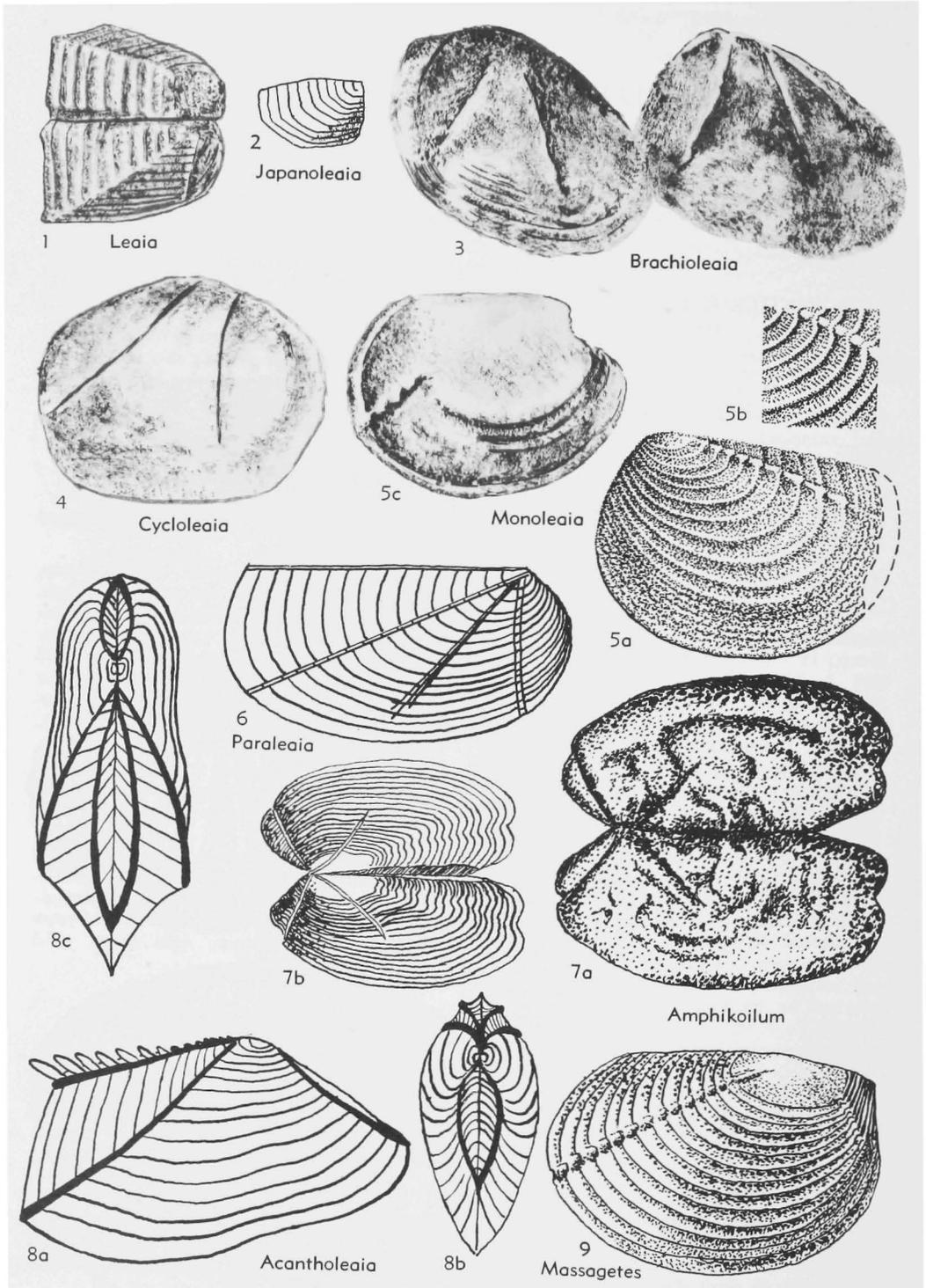


FIG. 55. Leaiidae (p. R159).

Carapace with one or more (up to 5) radial ribs, carinae or flat, diagonal edges which diverge from umbo and have concave areas between them; carina may be nodose. *M.Dev.-L.Cret.*

**Leaia** JONES, 1862 [*\*Cypricardia leidy* LEA, 1855, p. 341; OD] [= *Hemicycloleia* RAYMOND, 1946; *Dolicholeia*, *Leaianella*, *Kaltanleia*, *Gonioleia*, *Liroleia* NOVOZHILOV, 1952; *Mimoleia*, *Australoleia*, *Siberoleia* NOVOZHILOV, 1954; *Eoleia* KOBAYASHI, 1954; *Igorvarentsovia*, *Falsirostria*, *Granirostria*, *Brachiorrhynchia*, *Tataroleia* NOVOZHILOV, 1956]. Carapace outline variable from quadrate to semicircular; valves bearing 2 radial hollow ribs, indistinct in some species, and 3rd rib may be present where dorsal margin thickens, *Miss.(L.Carb.)-U.Perm.*, cosmop.—FIG. 55,1. *\*L. leidy* (LEA), *Miss.(Chester.)*, USA (Pa.); paired valves,  $\times 5$  (53).

**Acantholeia** ALMEIDA, 1950 [*\*A. regoi*; OD]. Carapace suboval; valves tricarinate, with series of spines which issue obliquely from subdorsal carina at points where growth lines intersect carina and diminish in size toward umbonal region; median sector very wide. *U.Perm.*, S.Am.(Brazil).—FIG. 55,8. *\*A. regoi*, Estrada Nova Gr., São Paulo; *8a*, right valve, lateral view; *8b,c*, both valves, anterior and dorsal views, all  $\times 15$  (1).

**Amphikoilum** NOVOZHILOV, 1953 [*\*A. ermakorum*; OD]. Bicarinate, undulant valves with elevated anterior carina that proceeds from just below or at dorsal margin, crosses umbo, and reaches anterior sector of ventral margin; another thinner, posterior carina in groove proceeds at acute angle from anterior carina, ending high above ventral margin at about 9th growth line; anterior cavity in front of anterior carina, posterior cavity also present, both carinae confined to anterior third of valves. *L.Carb.(Dinant.)*, USSR (Kemerovovskaya Oblast, E. of Novosibirsk).—FIG. 55,7. *\*A. ermakorum*, Ostrog Series, Barzasski Region; *7a*, both valves,  $\times 14$ ; *7b*, carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 11$  (96).

**Brachioleia** NOVOZHILOV, 1952 [*\*Leaia quadriradiata* MITCHELL, 1925; OD] [= *Quadrileia* KOBAYASHI, 1954]. Carapace outline suboval to subsemicircular; valves with 2 typical leaian radials and 2 additional, unequal, weak, short marginal radials located anteriorly and posteriorly near margin. *U.Perm.*, Australia (New S. Wales).—FIG. 55,3. *\*B. quadriradiata* (MITCHELL); two right valves,  $\times 10$  (92).

**Cycloleia** NOVOZHILOV, 1952 [*\*Leaia discoidea* MITCHELL, 1925; OD] [= *Symmetroleia* NOVOZHILOV, 1952; *Discoleia* KOBAYASHI, 1954 (obj.); *Kargalia* NOVOZHILOV, 1956]. Shape discoidal; valves with two unequal radial ribs originating from blunt umbo, far apart distally. *L.Perm.-U.Perm.*, Australia (New S. Wales)-Eurasia (Urals).

—FIG. 55,4. *\*C. discoidea* (MITCHELL), New S. Wales; right valve,  $\times 6$  (92).

**Japanoleia** NOVOZHILOV, 1952 [*\*Estheria rectangula* YOKAHAMA, 1894; OD] [= *Pseudoleia* KOBAYASHI, 1953]. Carapace subquadrate; valves with two flat diagonal edges that (expressed as carinae or radial ribs in other members of family) proceed from umbo, one to posteroventral angle and other to middle part of ventral margin. *L.Cret.(Neocom.)*, Japan.—FIG. 55,2. *\*J. rectangula* (YOKAHAMA), Yuasa; right valve,  $\times 5$  (159).

**Massagetes** NOVOZHILOV, 1954 [*\*M. karagandensis*; OD]. Valves subovate, characterized by thin anterior carina that proceeds from lower portion of umbo and terminates at about 9th growth line and by thickened posterior carina that proceeds higher up on umbo and forms acute angle with anterior carina, posterior carina extending to ventral margin. *U.Carb.(Stephan., Tentek Series)*, SW.Asia (Kazakhstan).—FIG. 55,9. *\*M. karagandensis*, Karagand Dist.; right valve,  $\times 13$  (96).

**Monoleia** TASCH, 1956 [*\*Leaia uncostata* REED, 1929; OD] [= *Jaxartus* NOVOZHILOV, 1954; *Inkus* NOVOZHILOV, 1956; *Monoleia* MIROSHNICHENKO, 1956 (jr. homonym?, month of publication uncertain)]. Carapace subovate, valves with single imbricate or nodose radial extending from umbo to rounded posterior ventral margin. *U.Carb.-U.Perm.*, SW. Asia (Kazakhstan)-S. Am. (Brazil).—FIG. 55,5a,b. *\*M. uncostata* (REED), U.Perm., Brazil; *5a*, left valve,  $\times 9$ ; *5b*, detail of ornamentation,  $\times 9$  (112).—FIG. 55,5c. *M. monocarinata* (LYUTKEVICH), 1956 [= *Leaia monocarinata* LYUTKEVICH, 1941], U.Perm. (Tartarian), USSR; right valve,  $\times 20$  (80).

**Paraleia** RAYMOND, 1946 [*\*P. klieveri* (= *Leaia leidy* var. *klieveri* GOLDENBERG, 1873); OD] [= *Troisleia* MIROSHNICHENKO, 1956; *Teiichium* NOVOZHILOV, 1956]. Narrow and short radial groove, furrow (*Furche*) or accessory radial in wide median section between 2 typical leaian radials. *U.Carb.(Stephan.)*, Eu. (W.Ger.).—FIG. 55,6. *\*P. klieveri*, right valve,  $\times 10$  (49).

**Praeleia** LYUTKEVICH, 1929 [*\*P. quadricarinata*; OD] [= *Liroleia* NOVOZHILOV, 1952; *Metaleia* KOBAYASHI, 1953]. Carapace elongate-oval; valves bearing four or five radials that fan out from umbo; no radial or dorsal margin. *M.Dev.*, Eu. (Est.); *L.Trias.*, USSR (Sib.).—FIG. 56,1a. *\*P. quadricarinata*, M.Dev., confluence of Ruia and Pliusa Rivers; left valve,  $\times 4$  (78).—FIG. 56,1b. *P. triasiana* CHERNYSHEV, L.Trias., Kuznetsk Basin; right valve,  $\times 8$  (24).

**Pteroleia** COPELAND, 1962 [*\*P. canadensis*; OD]. Multiribbed, rostrate carapace with dorsal marginal rib or keel around which growth lines are recurved sinuously. *M.Dev.-U.Dev.*, Canad. Arctic.—FIG. 56,2. *\*P. canadensis*, Can. (Melville Is.); left valve, 4-ribbed specimen,  $\times 4$  (29).

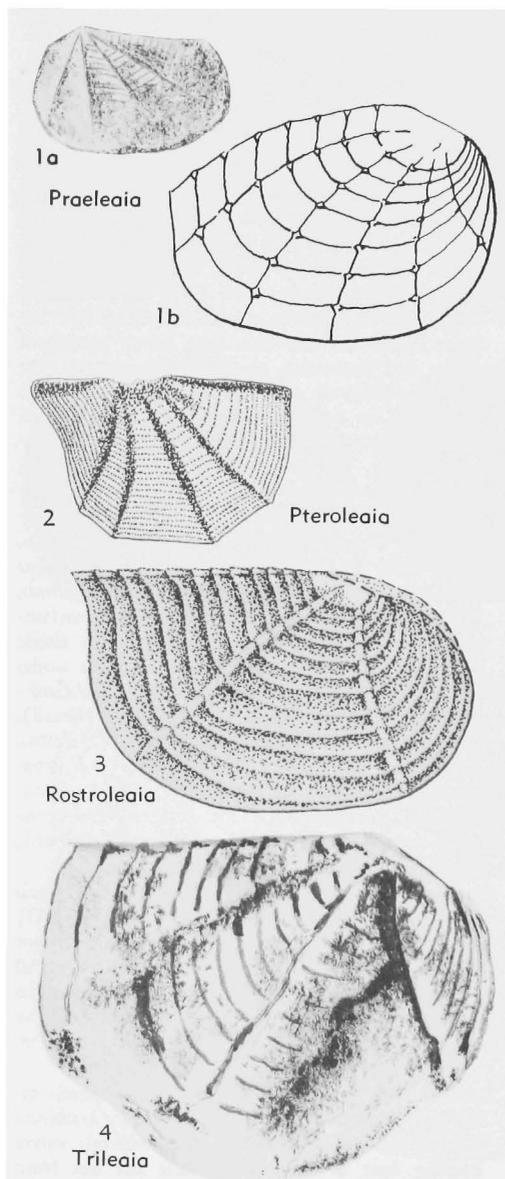


FIG. 56. Leaiidae (p. R159-R160).

**Rostroleaia** NOVOZHILOV, 1952 [*\*R. martynovae*; OD]. Elongated pod-shaped valves bearing 2 carinae; posterodorsal sector limnadiiform, this feature being expressed in some species by sharply pointed termination of dorsal margin. *U.Perm.* (Kazan.), USSR (Urals).—FIG. 56,3. *\*R. martynovae*, Nikolaevsk Gorge; right valve,  $\times 8$  (96).  
**Trileaia** KOBAYASHI, 1954 [*\*Leaia belmontensis* MITCHELL, 1925; OD]. Carapace outline semi-

circular to subelliptical; valves with three distinct carinae in addition to thickened straight dorsal margin. *U.Perm.*, Australia (New S. Wales).—FIG. 56,4. *\*T. belmontensis* (MITCHELL); right valve,  $\times 11$  (92).

### Superfamily VERTEXIOIDEA Kobayashi, 1954

[*nom. transl.* TASCH, herein (*ex* Vertexiinae KOBAYASHI, 1954) [=Limnadiopseioidea NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (superfam.) (name not based on first-published family-group taxon included in superfamily)]

Carapace with posterior or anteroposterior recurvature of growth lines, or growth lines ending in one or several spinous apophyses, with or without spine or tubercle on initial valve or may bear single rib; also, may be characterized only by single rib and posterodorsal recurvature of growth lines. *L.Carb.-Rec.*

### Family VERTEXIIDAE Kobayashi, 1954

[*nom. transl.* NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (*ex* Vertexiinae KOBAYASHI, 1954)]

Carapace bearing spine or tubercle on each larval valve; serrated margin also occurs where extremities of zones of growth do not all terminate at dorsal margin, and extremities then may be expressed as spinous apophyses. Ornament variable, from irregular alveoli to punctate. *L.Carb.-U. Trias.*

**Vertexia** LYUTKEVICH, 1941 [*\*V. tauricornis*; OD]. Carapace subovate, beak (of larval valve) developed as hollow spine with broad base; spinous apophyses terminate extremities of growth bands; last apophysis a broad-based spine. Sculpture punctate. *U.Perm.* (Tatar.), Eu. (USSR).—FIG. 57,1. *\*V. tauricornis*, Fileyskoe beds, N.Dvina Valley; 1a, lat. view,  $\times 21$ ; 1b, lat. view with two spines,  $\times 10$ ; 1c, umbonal view,  $\times 11$  (80).

**Cornia** LYUTKEVICH, 1937 [*\*C. papillaria* LYUTKEVICH, 1937, p. 63; OD, *non* *C. melliculum* LYUTKEVICH, 1937, p. 64 (*nom. nud.*, incorrectly designated as genotype); *non* *C. melliculum* LYUTKEVICH, 1941, p. 36, not "one of the originally included nominal species"—ICZN Code (1961) Art. 69,a] [= *Pemphicyclus* RAYMOND, 1946]. Valve shape varying from subovate to subrectangular, beak position subcentral to anterior; small spine or tubercle rising from center of initial valve; sculpture punctate. *U.Carb.* (Westphal.)-*U.Perm.* (Tatar.), USSR (Sib.)-N. Am. (USA).—FIG. 58,1a. *C. papillaria*, *U.Perm.* (Tatar.), Kuznetsk Basin; two valves,  $\times 17$  (79).—FIG. 58, 1b. *C. laminata* (RAYMOND), *L.Perm.* (Leonard.), USA (Kans.-Okla.); right valve,  $\times 24$  (142).

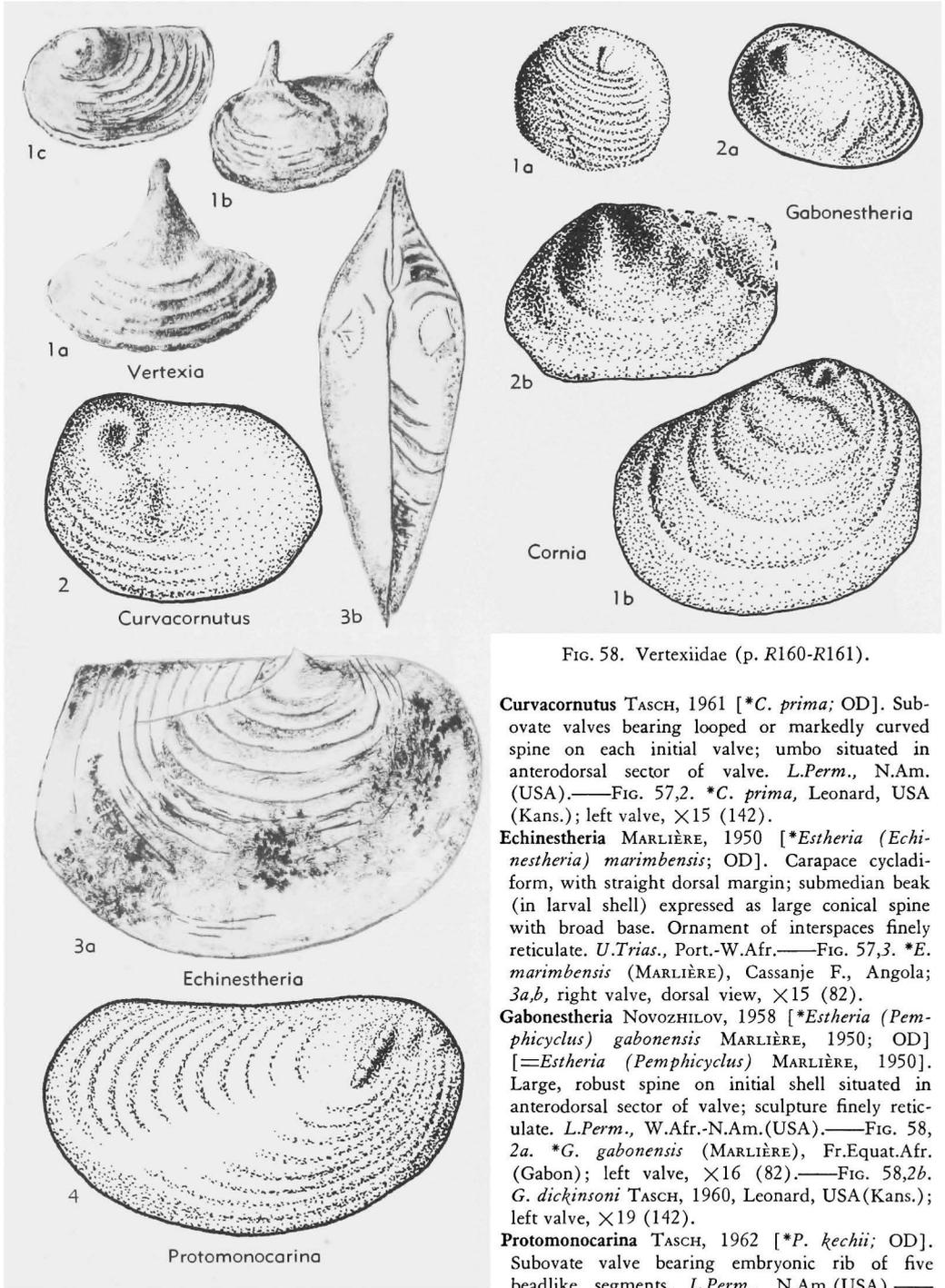


FIG. 57. Vertexiidae (p. R160-R161).

FIG. 58. Vertexiidae (p. R160-R161).

**Curvacornutus** TASCH, 1961 [*\*C. prima*; OD]. Subovate valves bearing looped or markedly curved spine on each initial valve; umbo situated in anterodorsal sector of valve. *L.Perm.*, N.Am. (USA).—FIG. 57,2. *\*C. prima*, Leonard, USA (Kans.); left valve,  $\times 15$  (142).

**Echinestheria** MARLIÈRE, 1950 [*\*Estheria (Echinestheria) marimbensis*; OD]. Carapace cycladiform, with straight dorsal margin; submedian beak (in larval shell) expressed as large conical spine with broad base. Ornament of interspaces finely reticulate. *U.Trias.*, Port.-W.Afr.—FIG. 57,3. *\*E. marimbensis* (MARLIÈRE), Cassanje F., Angola; 3a,b, right valve, dorsal view,  $\times 15$  (82).

**Gabonestheria** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [*\*Estheria (Pempficyclus) gabonensis* MARLIÈRE, 1950; OD] [= *Estheria (Pempficyclus)* MARLIÈRE, 1950]. Large, robust spine on initial shell situated in anterodorsal sector of valve; sculpture finely reticulate. *L.Perm.*, W.Afr.-N.Am.(USA).—FIG. 58, 2a. *\*G. gabonensis* (MARLIÈRE), Fr.Equat.Afr. (Gabon); left valve,  $\times 16$  (82).—FIG. 58,2b. *G. dickinsoni* TASCH, 1960, Leonard, USA(Kans.); left valve,  $\times 19$  (142).

**Protomonocarina** TASCH, 1962 [*\*P. kechii*; OD]. Subovate valve bearing embryonic rib of five beadlike segments. *L.Perm.*, N.Am.(USA).—FIG. 57,4. *\*P. kechii*, Leonard, USA(Kans.); right valve,  $\times 18$  (145).

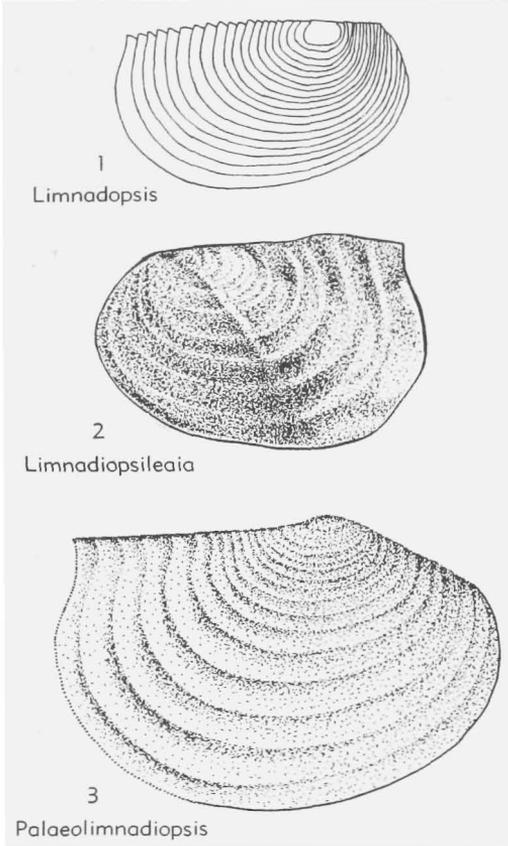


FIG. 59. Limnadiopsidae (p. R162).

### Family LIMNADOPSIDAE<sup>1</sup> Tasch, new family

[=Limnadiopseidae NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (*recte* Limnadiopsidae) (name based on *Limnadiopsis* DADAY, 1925, *nom. neg.*)]

Posterodorsal margin recurved, dorsal margin varying from subdued serrate (hence, almost straight) to markedly serrate, with spinous apophyses at end of growth bands. Soft parts unknown in fossilized state. *L. Carb.-Rec.*

**Limnadopsis** SPENCER & HALL, 1896 [*\*L. brunneus*; SD RAYMOND, 1946 (p. 269)] [= *Limnadiopsis* DADAY, 1925, p. 177 (*nom. null.*); *Limnadiopsium*, *Limnadiopseites* NOVOZHILOV, 1958]. Cara-

<sup>1</sup> Note to R. C. MOORE from Professor L. W. GRENSTED at request of W. E. CHINA, ICZN: "The generic ending *-opsis* makes it genitive  $\delta\chi\epsilon\omega\varsigma$ , *opseos*, and this (as the accent shows) is treated as a dissyllable. The stem therefore is not *-opse* (or Ionic, *-opsi*) but *-ops*. Pocciliopsinae and Macropsidae are therefore quite correct."

pace ovate to subovate, compressed, narrower in male than female; union between halves of carapace extending along whole length of dorsal line and rising into much-compressed spined keel (strongly to moderately serrate condition); lines of growth continued on dorsal keel into backwardly directed spines, posterior edges of which are formed by lines of growth, spines decreasing in size from behind forward; beaks well marked. Antennules much smaller than antennae, 26 to 32 pairs of feet. Haft organ present. *Rec., C. Australia* (N.W.Terr.).—FIG. 59,1. *\*L. brunneus*, Port Darwin; right valve,  $\times 4.9$  (132).

**Belgolimnadiopsis** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [*\*Estheria* (*Euestheria*) *stockmansii* MALLIEUX, 1939]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *L.Dev.*, Eu. (Belg.).

**Limnadiopsileia** TASCH, 1962 [*\*L. noblensis*; OD]. Valves resembling *Palaeolimnadiopsis* but bearing single anterior rib. *L.Perm.* (Leonard.), N.Am. (USA).—FIG. 59,2. *\*L. noblensis*, Wellington F., USA (Okla.); left valve,  $\times 3.2$  (145).

**Palaeolimnadiopsis** RAYMOND, 1946 (*emend.* TASCH, 1960) [*\*P. carpenteri*; OD] [= *Macrolimnadiopsis* BEURLEN, 1954; *Paleolimnadiopsis* TASCH, 1956 (*nom. null.*)]. Well-defined terminal beak rising above straight dorsal margin (subdued serrate); growth lines closely spaced and numerous on beak, fewer and more widely spaced on rest of valve. *L. Carb.-Cret.*, N.Am. (USA)-S.Am.-Eu. (USSR).—FIG. 59,3. *\*P. carpenteri*, L.Perm. (Leonard.), USA (Okla.); right valve,  $\times 2.4$  (111).

**Rossolimnadiopsis** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [*\*Rossolimnadiopsis marlieri*; OD]. [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *U.Perm.* (Kazan.), USSR (Vladimirskaya Oblast).

### Family PEMPHILIMNADIOPSIDAE Tasch, 1961

Carapace bearing a tubercle-type spine on initial valve and posterior recurvature of growth lines in adult portions of valves. *Penn.*

**Pemphilimnadiopsis** TASCH, 1961 [*\*Estheria ortonii* CLARKE, 1900; OD]. Initial valve with node-like hollow spine, last few growth lines recurved near dorsal margin; relatively large umbo on generally small valve. Resembles *Cornia* but differs in having posterior recurvature. *Penn.*, USA (Ohio).—FIG. 60,1. *\*P. ortonii* (CLARKE), Cone-maugh, Carrollton; left valve,  $\times 11.3$  (141).

### Family IPSILONIIDAE Novozhilov, 1958

[*emend.* TASCH, herein] [= *Keratetheridae* NOVOZHILOV, 1958]

Carapace variable in shape, dorsal margin terminating in aliform apophyses formed by

incurvature of anterior or posterior extremities of growth lines, or both of these. Ornament alveolar. *Dev.-L.Cret.*

**Ipsilon** NOVOZHILOV, 1953 [*\*I. auriculata*; OD]. Both ends of dorsal margin winged, valves having form of Greek small letter epsilon. *Dev.*, Eu. (USSR).—FIG. 60,3. *\*I. auriculata*, Koura Region (N. of Caucasus Mtns.); right valve,  $\times 8.1$  (98).

**Aculestheria** CARDOSA, 1963 [*\*A. novoijilovi* CARDOSA, 1963; OD]. Like *Ipsilon* but valves broader from anterior to posterior and less elongate dorsal to ventral; apophyses subequal, posterior one being more pronounced. *L.Cret.(Wealden)*, Bahia Series, Brazil.

**Keratestheria** CHERNYSHV, 1948 [*\*K. rugosa*; OD]. Slight incurvature anteriorly below dorsal margin; incurvature of last few growth lines posteriorly forming spine-type projections above dorsal margin with apex directed away from umbonal area. *M.Jur.*, USSR (Sib.).—FIG. 60,2. *\*K. rugosa*, Chitinskaya Oblast (E. of Lake Baikal); right valve,  $\times 4$  (161).

**Sajania** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 [*\*Ipsilon kashtagensis* NOVOZHILOV & VARENTSOV, ?unpubl.]; *Sajania kashtagensis* NOVOZHILOV, 1958, p. 110, fig. 17 (98). [Inadequately documented; doubtful.] *M. Dev.*, USSR (Sib.), Tuvinskaya Aut. Oblast (SW. of Lake Baikal).

### REJECTED GENERIC NAMES

**Bileia** KOBAYASHI, 1954 (127), *nom. dub.*

**Palermisca** NOVOZHILOV, 1956 (128), jr. subj. syn. of *Dadaydeesia*.

**Dadaydeesia** RAYMOND, 1946 (104), pelecypod.

**Estheriopsis** RUSCONI, 1947, probably pelecypod.

**Teixeirium** NOVOZHILOV, 1958, probably pelecypod.

**Fernandoalmeidium** NOVOZHILOV, 1958, *nom. dub.*

**Innocentium** NOVOZHILOV, 1957, inadequately documented.

**Eoamussia** SOOT-RYEN, 1960, probably pelecypod.<sup>1</sup>

### REJECTED SUBFAMILY NAMES

**Fernandoalmeidiinae** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (see *Fernandoalmeidium*).

**Teixeiriinae** NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (see *Teixeirium*).

## Order CLADOCERA Latreille, 1829

[=suborder Cladocera Sars, 1865] [*nom. transl.* CALMAN, 1909 (ex Cladocera LATREILLE, 1829)]

<sup>1</sup> If any conchostracans are found in Ord.-Sil. strata, they are likely to be marine. SOOT-RYEN's figured material (Norsk Geol. Tidss., 1960, Bd. 40, pl. 1, fig. 4), however, is closer to a pelecypod-type of organization and lacks definitive conchostracan characters. Homeomorphy between pelecypods and conchostracans is not uncommon. An alleged, but unnamed, Silurian conchostracan genus (ADAMAZAK, 1961, Acta Paleont. Polonica, VI(1): 29-104, pl. 7) is a likely homeomorph of ostracodes in the suborder Eridocncha.

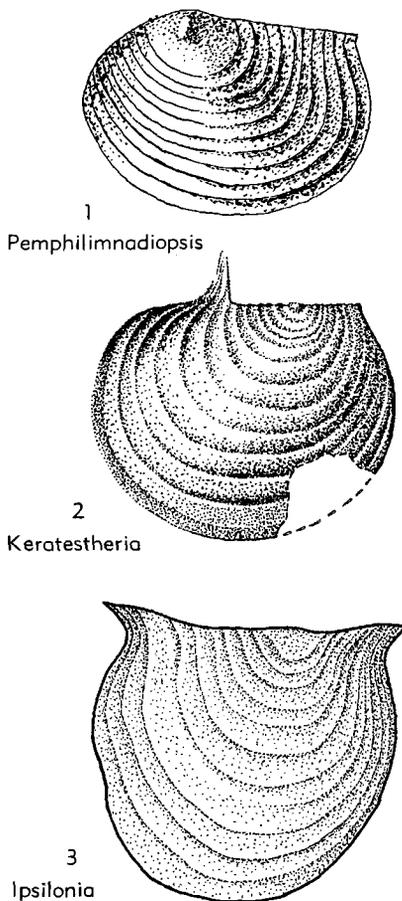


FIG. 60. Pemphilimnadiopsidae (1); Ipsiloniidae (2,3) (p. R162-R163).

[Dr. J. L. BROOKS of the Osborn Zoological Laboratory, Yale University, kindly provided, in advance of publication, the first few pages of his chapter on taxonomy of the Cladocera for a revised edition of WARD & WHIPPLE'S "Fresh Water Biology." In addition, he provided some valuable references to the literature and technical advice on specific questions. Dr. J. G. MACKIN, of the Department of Oceanography, Texas Agricultural and Mechanical College, kindly aided with references to the literature. Dr. F. M. SWAIN, of the University of Minnesota, confirmed his find of calcified cladoceran fossils. Dr. D. G. FREY, of Indiana University, generously provided some of his publications on cladocerans and discussed with me various aspects of known cladoceran subfossils. Illustrations for this chapter were financed by a Wichita State University Research Grant.]

Carapace univalved, generally enclosing body but leaving head free, reduced in some forms and serving only as a brood sac; paired eyes sessile, coalesced. Antennae biramous (with single exception), natatory; trunk limbs four to six pairs, none of which are postgenital; furcal rami clawlike. De-

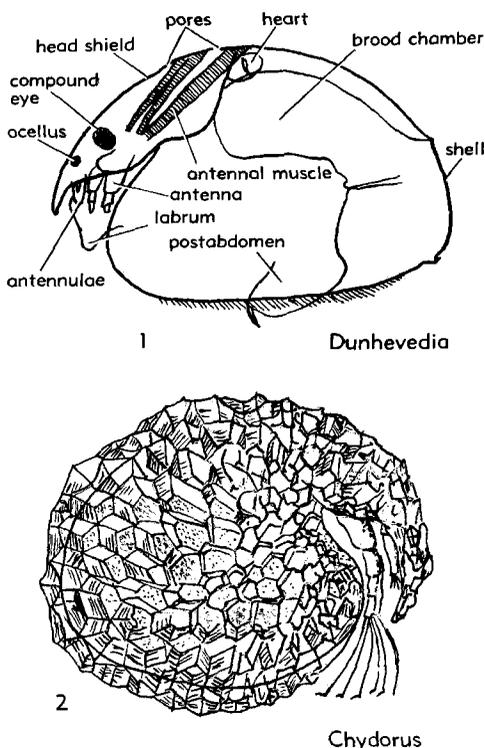


FIG. 61. Anatomical features of cladocerans.—1. *Dunhevedia crassa*, lateral view showing head pores and other anatomy, enlarged (42).—2. *Chydorus faviformis*, male, shell covered with deep polygonal cells, enlarged (42).

velopment embryonic, rarely with metamorphosis. *Oligo-Rec*.

### ANATOMY

The Cladocera, or water fleas, have a body composed of a few somites, exhibiting only obscure segmentation. The head is free of the apparently bivalved shell that covers the body and limbs. Actually, the carapace is a single piece, its point of juncture with the body being marked by a cervical sinus or notch (21, 107). The front of the head is produced downward to form a beaklike rostral process, as in conchostracans. Adult cladocerans possess only four head appendages (antennules, antennae, mandibles, maxillules), but embryos have distinct rudimentary maxillae also. In adults of most other fresh-water crustaceans, however, maxillae are well developed (107).

FREY (42) observed that head pores apparently occur in all Cladocera, at least during embryonic growth or in early instars. He described two series of minute head pores on or near the mid-line of species belonging to genera of the Chydoridae. The number and symmetry of such pores, he noted, were indicators of relationships at generic and suprageneric levels, and thus he was able to employ this known but little used structural feature of the shield to distinguish subfossils from the Schleinsee and Wallensen (41, Table 1) in Germany, as well as exuvia of Recent forms (Fig. 61, 1).

The antennules perform a sensory function, although in males of some species they serve as clasping organs for holding the female. They are usually very small, unsegmented, and attached to the rear of the rostral process. In contrast, the antennae are large biramous swimming appendages, as in conchostracans. Like the head from which they rise, they are free of the shell and are the chief organs of locomotion.

The mouth parts of the head consist of mandibles and maxillules. The mandibles are formed of single sclerotized pieces, the opposite faces of which are toothed and ridged to form a grinding surface for food. The maxillules, located just behind the mandibles, are small pointed appendages that bear curved setae. These structures serve as a pair of "hands" to pass food to the grinding surface of the mandibles (21). The head also bears large compound-lensed eyes that operate by three muscles on each side. They are capable of rotation.

Trunk appendages are usually five in number. They are leaflike in form, bearing numerous hairs and long setae. The structure of the feet differs in different families but serves the general function of creating water currents through the valves for respiratory and nutritional ends. Modifications for other functions can be seen in the Daphniidae and other families. Here the first pair of feet are prehensile. The hooks and spines serve to anchor the cladocerans to weeds, among which they live, or are used for prehension of food, such as algae. In the genus *Leptodora* the foliaceous character of the limbs is lost, for they are modified to serve in seizing and holding prey (21).

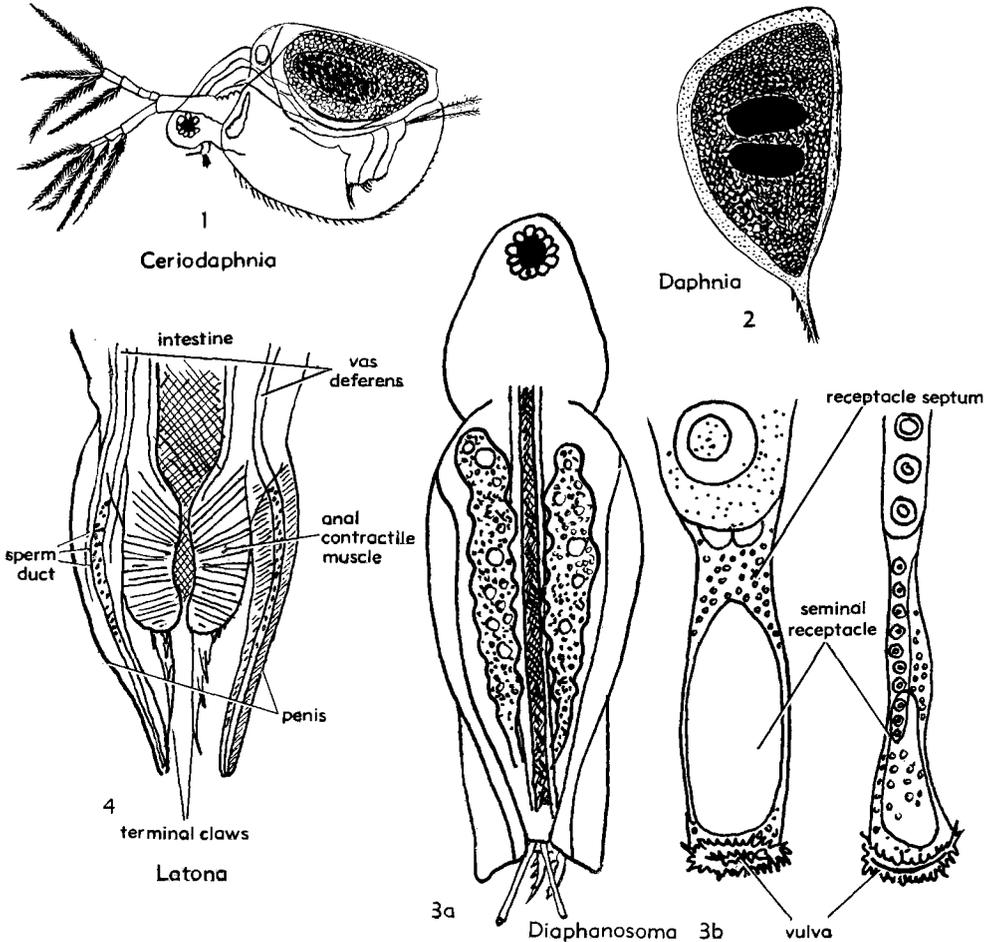


FIG. 62. Anatomical features of cladocerans.—1. *Ceriodaphnia megops*, adult female with ephippial eggs,  $\times 42$  (150).—2. *Daphnia pulex*, a separated ephippium containing eggs, enlarged (12).—3. *Diaphanosoma brachyurus*; 3a, showing disposition of ovaries; 3b, two views of the posterior part of the ovary, enl. (105).—4. *Latona setifera*, male genitalia, enl. (105).

## CARAPACE

### FORM AND STRUCTURE

For paleontologists the shell of cladocerans holds chief interest because it is commonly preserved wholly or partially in postglacial deposits. Furthermore, it bears close analogies to the conchostracan carapace, particularly in ornament. Although the cladoceran shell comprises a single piece, as previously noted, it is bent along the back in a manner that gives a bivalved appearance. In side view, different cladoceran shells are variable in shape, ranging from nearly square to oval and subcircular.

Forms like *Daphnia* have a single posterior dorsal spine that prolongs the junction of the carapace halves (12, fig. 1064, p. 695). In *Scapholeberis* a spine projects from the junction of straight posterior and ventral margins (12, fig. 1076, p. 699). The shell is actually a duplicature of the skin and has a very delicate inner layer and a tougher outer wall.

A remarkable adaptation of the shell is seen in the Chydoridae and Daphniidae (12, p. 357, 684) (Fig. 62,1,2). After the fertilized egg enters the brood chamber, the walls thicken and darken to form an ephippium. During molting in species of

Daphniidae, the semielliptical portion of the dorsal region of each half of the carapace (ephippium) separates from the rest, whereas in the Chydoridae this part does not separate and the eggs remain enclosed in the carapace.

PENNAK (107, p. 357) has observed that the separated ephippia (Fig. 62, 2) may sink to the bottom or float on the surface. Where they do not sink, the ephippia may be blown ashore and accumulate in diminutive windrows. One might anticipate future finds of such windrows in the fossil record.

The ephippial development is apparently an adaptation to withstand drying and freezing conditions. Especially in small ponds, drying up during summer months is common. The ephippia and their contained eggs can withstand such adverse conditions. When the basins fill again in early autumn, ephippial eggs give rise to parthenogenetic females.

GROSCHOPF (47, p. 32) has reported fossil ephippia of *Daphnia* in addition to other cladoceran remains, in samples from borings through postglacial lake deposits. SCOURFIELD (128) also found fossil ephippia belonging to *Bosmina* and several species of *Alona* in postglacial sediments. FREY (41) found numerous ephippia in lake deposits (Wallensen) of Germany.

#### ORNAMENTATION

Shell markings, or ornament, in cladocerans are quite varied. In *Ceriodaphnia acanthina* the carapace is strongly reticulated (12, fig. 1080, 1081) and reveal, under high power, a series of irregular polygons with short spinules emerging at points of contact of any two polygon sides (see Fig. 62, 1). *Streblocerus pygmaeus* also has a reticulated carapace. The reticulations of this form, however, make scalelike ridges, which give the dorsal margin a serrate appearance. Many other genera exhibit reticulation, but the most remarkable development of this condition is to be found in the carapace of certain species of *Chydorus*, in which the shell is covered by very distinctive deep polygonal cells (Fig. 61, 2) (see Fig. 64, 6c).

Numerous genera have carapaces bearing longitudinal striations. These generally

run from front to back in an almost parallel series of straight or arcuate lines (12, figs. 1119, 1127, 1130). Some species, like *Chydorus piger*, have oblique striae on the lower portion of the shell, whereas the dorsal anterior part lacks striae and is smooth. Many reticulated shells may also bear fine striae (12, figs. 1143, 1165), as in *Alonella excisa*. Still others may have both longitudinal and oblique striae, as in *Pleuroxus truncatus*. Forms like *Euryalona occidentalis* (12, fig. 1124) bear a series of obscure concentric lines that parallel the ventral margin.

#### ONTOGENY

During growth, cladocerans undergo molting, although this is variously expressed in different genera and species. *Moina macrocopa* has two juvenile instars, whereas species of *Daphnia* vary from three (*D. longispina*) to as many as five (*D. pulex*). The next later instar represents the adolescent stage, occurring between the last juvenile and first adult stages. Adult cladocerans shed successive instars. These are more variable in number than the juvenile instars, so that *D. pulex* has 18 to 25 and *D. longispina* 10 to 19.

Accompanying final development of each adult instar, the young are released from the brood chamber to the outside (107). BIRGE (12, p. 681) observed that no free-swimming larval forms are known among cladocerans. It should be noted, however, that *Leptodora* is an exception to the general rule. Upon release from the brood chamber, the young are well grown, hatching out in a form closely resembling that of their parents. This event is followed by molting in most genera, i.e., casting off the old skin. Exceptions are found in *Ilyocryptus* and *Monospilus* (12, figs. 1110, 1168). In these genera a new and larger shell appears beneath the old one, which is not cast off. Next follows an observable increase in size and release of a new clutch of eggs to the brood chamber. In still other cladocerans, such as *Polyphemus* and *Leptodora*, the shell is reduced to an egg case.

#### REPRODUCTION

Reproduction may be sexual or asexual (parthenogenetic). According to BIRGE (12), species that live in open waters of lakes reproduce chiefly by asexual means. Males of any species are rarely seen and are invariably outnumbered by females.

## DIMORPHISM

Dimorphism is expressed in the smaller size of males, which, however, have larger antennules and modified abdomens. Their first feet commonly bear a stout hook for clasping females during copulation (21, 107).

## CYCLOMORPHOSIS

A problem such as occurs in study of species of the genus *Daphnia* might well confuse paleontologists. Finding fossil forms of radically variant morphology, one would generally conclude that distinct species should be erected to embrace each morphological type. Yet, cyclomorphosis, or seasonal changes in morphology, is found to alter drastically the appearance of individuals belonging to a single given species of *Daphnia*. Thus, the normal round head of the species in winter becomes a bizarre helmet by midsummer, and reversion to the "normal" head type begins in early autumn (107, fig. 226, p. 360; 118, pl. 21, fig. 223). Cyclomorphic changes also involve variations in size of the eye and posterior spine length (107). The cause or causes of this phenomenon are still baffling. COKER and others suggest that the more prominent helmet-type heads are produced by high temperatures. Genetic factors and turbulent conditions are also credited with a causative role (107).

Specialists on living cladocerans generally recognize that *Daphnia pulex* and *D. longispina* are two highly variable species. The endless numbers of intergrades representing these two species can be accounted for by cyclomorphosis and are not regarded as meriting separate nomenclatural designations.

## ECOLOGY

### HABITAT

Cladocerans live in fresh to brackish and slightly alkaline waters of all types (12, 107). They are found associated with the marginal vegetation of rivers, in the weedy margins of lakes and swamps, in shallow, silty, and muddy ponds, in both permanent pools and temporary rain-water pools. Some species are common in the shallow ditches of rice paddies (150).

A few marine genera are known; for example, UÉNO has reported the genus *Penilia* from the Pacific Coast of Japan. American and South American marine genera include *Evadne* and *Podon* (14, 107). In addition, a few species are restricted to or frequently found in acid or bog waters. *Acantholeberis curvirostris* is abundant in sphagnum bogs of Maine, Wisconsin, and Louisiana. *Streblocerus serricaudatus*, found in weedy pools and lake margins in North America, occurs in weedy bog ponds in the Kyoto region of Japan.

Although various species most frequently live among weeds and feed on algae, bottom-dwellers are known. The latter include *Ilyocryptus* and *Monosilus*. The former lives in mud (12).

### SALINITY, pH, TEMPERATURE

Most cladocerans are found in waters with a pH range of 6.5 to 8.5. Very few species are limited in distribution by temperature (105). Most species are eurythermal (107).

The amount of calcium and magnesium in solution plays an important role in the life of some cladocerans. *Holopedium* is apparently confined to calcium-poor waters. Magnesium appears to inhibit reproduction in various species of *Daphnia* (107).

### PREDATORS AND FOOD

Cladocerans, together with copepods, play an important role in the food chain of waters which they inhabit. Insect larvae consume cladocerans and in turn are eaten by larger fishes. Certain fish feed directly on cladocerans. In Japan some species of *Moina*, *Daphnia*, and other genera are known as "mijinko," used by pisciculturists as food for goldfish fry (150).

BRIGE has pointed out that cladocerans have definite food preferences (12). Diatoms, for example, are preferred to blue-green algae. Some forms of algae are favored over others. Both of these are generally plentiful in the ecological niches that cladocerans fill.

### FAUNAL AND FLORAL ASSOCIATES

FREY (41) lists the following microfossil associates found with fossil cladocerans in a German glacial lake: Protozoa rhizopods (*Assulina*, *Nebella*); Porifera (*Spongilla*, spicules, gemmules); Turbellaria (*Gyratrix*, *Otomesostoma*, *Dendrocoelum*, *Polycelis*, *Planaria*); Bryozoa (*Plumatella*, *Cristatella*, statoblasts); Oligochaeta (cocoon); Ostracoda; Tendipedidae (midges); Hydrocarina (*Notaspis*); water mites.

In test tubes planted in a Sedgwick County (Kansas) pond, I have found cladocerans, copepods, insect larvae, and varied protozoans. Blue-green algae, diatoms and other flora, as well as various fishes, have been reported in modern cladoceran-stocked ponds.

## STRATIGRAPHICAL AND BIOLOGICAL VALUE

### SUBFOSSIL GROUPS

Published references to subfossil (Recent) cladocerans are few. Investigations generally have not been directed primarily to search for cladocerans but rather to determining the nature of animal and plant remains contained in successive layers of lake deposits. Essentially, work has been restricted to that done by limnologists. Recently, SWAIN, a geologist, made an extensive limnological study, giving emphasis to types of data which have greatest interest to geology (135). MESSIATZEV and associates have studied the bottom sediments of three very large lakes near Moscow (90) and have figured species of cladocerans found buried in them (e.g., *Bosmina*, *Alona*, *Pleuroxus*, *Chydorus*, *Graptoleberis*, *Acroporus*, *Alonella*, *Peracantha*, *Eurycercus*, *Sida*, ?*Daphnia*).

LUNDQUIST (76) has reported *Lynceus* (= *Alona*) and other *Cladoceren* from postglacial bottom deposits. In similar deposits of the Grossen Plöner Sees, Ostholstein, GROSCHOPF (47), whose primary concern was a pollen analysis of the bottom sediments, found ephippia of *Daphnia* sp. Shells, antennae, mandibles, and other remains of *Daphnia*, *Bosmina*, and other cladocerans have been found in deep cores of pelagic "gyttja." CONGER (28), primarily interested in diatoms occurring in sediments of Crystal Lake, Wisconsin, merely mentioned crustacean remains also obtained, presumably cladocerans.

An excellent description of "fossil species" of cladocerans was published by AUSTIN in a study of Connecticut lake sediments (3). This reports the occurrence of *Bosmina* remains, postabdomens of *Leydigia*, carapaces of *Chydorus*, and abdomens of *Eurycercus*.

SCOURFIELD (128) has studied cores of bottom deposits of Lake Windermere, England. The cores consisted mainly of dark brown organic deposits resting on pink laminated glacial clay. Overlying the organic deposit was a semiliquid ooze that was not considered to be part of the core. Cladoceran remains were generally empty valves and head shields, detached abdomens,

mandibles, claws, setae, etc. Most common were remains of the planktonic genus *Bosmina*. Three other planktonic genera included *Daphnia*, *Bythotrephes*, and *Leptodora*. All other forms belonged to the littoral Chydoridae, including *Eurycercus*, *Camptocercus*, *Alonopsis*, *Graptoleberis*, *Alona*, *Rhynchotalona*, *Alonella*, *Paracantha*, *Chydorus*, and *Anchistrophus*.

FREY (41, table 4) has listed species and subspecies of Chydoridae in seven major studies of European lake sediments. In addition to work by MESSIATZEV (90) and SCOURFIELD (128), already mentioned, papers by ROSSOLIMO (114), ZEMP (160), and FREY (40, 41) are cited. Still other reports on subfossil cladocerans include publications by POULSEN (Denmark) (108), BREHM, KRASSKE, and KREGER (Austria) (16). FREY (41) has culled data from the works of five other investigators: TIDELSKI (Germany), NIPKOW (Switzerland), GAMS (Austria), SCOURFIELD (Ponder's End, England), and DEEVEY (New Zealand). Noticeably absent from the literature are reports on subfossil cladocerans from Canada, Central and South America, Africa, Australia, and Asia.

A recent study of lake deposits in Minnesota has indicated that cores from Burnside Lake, at a depth up to 5 inches below the bottom, consist of "silty clay, abundant pollen, diatoms, cladocerans" (135, p. 621). In the coarse fractions of copropel from Prior and Minnetonka Lakes, some 18 percent of the fraction consist of sclerotized exoskeletons of arthropods, mainly cladocerans. Also it was noted that cladocerans, along with planktonic diatoms and testate protozoans, are abundant in the upper parts of the cores. Cladocerans are not very common in the lower parts of the cores. It will be valuable to have all cladoceran fragments from such samples identified, as in various studies mentioned above.

All cladocerans reported in the above-mentioned studies are subfossils, being found preserved but not fossilized, sclerotized<sup>1</sup> but not calcified. Faunas preserved

<sup>1</sup> A. G. RICHARDS (1951, *The integument of arthropods*, Univ. Minnesota Press, p. 48) indicates that the body wall of *Daphnia* and *Leptodora* gives a positive test for chitin. Where such evidence exists, we may speak of "chitinous" rather than "sclerotized."

in postglacial deposits make it obvious that the depositional and faunal history of such lakes can be unraveled by coring at several stations along a traverse (41, figs. 1, 2). Since all subfossil genera and species have living representatives in the waters of present-day lakes, important biological data can be derived. Thus, SCOURFIELD (128) has indicated that morphologically the species of *Bosmina* in cores studied by him, when compared to species now living in lake waters, "probably does point to a less evolved condition." More systematic work in such directions can provide valuable data on cladoceran, and hence on branchiopod, evolution.

From the point of view of geology and paleontology, students of the Pleistocene, especially, may derive new data relating to glacial lakes and postglacial sedimentation, climatic changes, and the like through systematic study of cladocerans and related forms found in cores. Cladocerans can be of value as stratigraphic markers for correlating equivalent horizons of lake deposits both within a region and in neighboring or distantly separated regions. This will probably be found true when, instead of generalized reports that merely record the presence of remains found in cores, generic and specific identifications of the material are given.

Some genera of cladocerans have been reported from marine environments (14, 107, 150) and it is altogether possible that certain Recent and older lagoonal or other sediments may contain remains of these or related genera.

FREY (41) has pointed out two assumptions used by him in identifying fossil cladocerans from a late glacial lake (Wal-lensen, northern Germany). First, he assumed "no major shift in the zoogeography of the Cladocera, aside from a northward readjustment with the retreat of the glaciers and the amelioration of climate." Second, he assumed that no extensive morphological changes had occurred in cladoceran species during the last 11,000 years or so. On this basis, he found it possible to make seemingly useful comparisons of subfossil cladocerans with species occurring in Europe at the present time.

#### POPULATION STUDIES

BROOKS (18) has discussed an interesting difference in the reproductive biology of *Daphnia middendorffiana*, pointing out that high-latitude populations produce viable resting eggs in the absence of males, whereas low-latitude populations produce males and require that resting eggs be fertilized. This last is thought to be the "more primitive" condition. BROOKS surmised that the expansion of this species from low latitudes to the Arctic of North America, Greenland, and Siberia probably occurred in relatively recent times. He further commented on the "nearly identical appearance" of *D. middendorffiana* populations wherever they occur. Thus, the difference in reproductive biology lacks morphological analogues and since it is a "secondary condition" may be regarded as a "temporary clone" not justifying nomenclatural recognition (88).

The chief differences discernible in cladoceran populations may be regarded as minor variations (geographic clines). On the other hand, present evidence indicates that major variation in cladoceran populations probably dates back to the older Tertiary. It is hoped that future fossil finds will document this speculation.

#### GEOLOGIC OCCURRENCE AND ORIGIN

BROOKS (18) has suggested that forms such as *Daphnia retrocurva* and *D. dubis*, inhabitants of large deep glacial lakes, originated "sometime during the Pleistocene." His suggestion is based on present geographical and ecological distribution, coupled with morphological distinctness of observed forms. On the other hand, *D. laevis*, a southern species inhabiting shallow pools, and *D. parvula*, inhabiting small lakes, denote a "relatively old" origination. This thesis is sustained, according to BROOKS, by the fact that *D. laevis* is morphologically similar to species restricted to Africa south of the Sahara, whereas *D. parvula*, widely distributed in South America and North America, is judged to be older than *D. retrocurva*.

FREY (41) has observed that the mentioned seven major studies of cladocerans collected from European glacial lake sediments include, among other families, 43 species and subspecies of central European chydorids listed by WAGLER. BROOKS (18) thought that *Daphnia thorata* may have lived in extinct glacial lakes such as Lakes Lahontan and Bonneville, as well as in contemporary lakes of the time, judging from their present distribution.

Noting the "close similarity between the structures of adult Cladocera and larvae of certain conchostracans" [*Cyclestheria* (121)], BROOKS (17, 19) was persuaded that "the Cladocera are (or may be) neotenic (paedomorphic) derivatives of some early conchostracan." As already discussed, Permian collections from the Kansas-Oklahoma region or other parts of the world have not yet yielded any cladoceran remains. My experiments with living cladocerans allowed freshly caught specimens to dry on pond muds. Even after thorough desiccation, the general morphology of the carapace could be deciphered. Hence, in ancient lacustrine sediments also, one could expect that, in some instances in Permian fresh-water sediments, cladocerans would have been found by now, if present. While tracing Leonardian conchostracan-bearing beds in Kansas and Oklahoma, I have hunted thoroughly for cladoceran remains in the sediments. None were found. We may thus, at present, place cladoceran origination in the Mesozoic or possibly early Cenozoic time. [As noted subsequently, Miocene cladocerans have been discovered.]

Evidence for the missing link at the point of conchostracan-cladoceran separation should be sought in fluvatile and lacustrine sediments of Upper Cretaceous-pre-Oligocene age. Association with post-Cretaceous or younger fossil clam shrimps is one possibility. Another may be found in organic shales of Mesozoic-Tertiary age. Living *Cyclestheria hislopi* (BAIRD) is the most likely candidate for the type transitional conchostracan. Postulates such as this have been made for various ancestral and transitional types among fossil vertebrates. These types were sought for and occasionally field search has been rewarded. It is time for invertebrate paleontologists to pursue such germinal suppositions. The possibility is very real that fossilized cladoceran remains, impressions, and the like, may be found in Tertiary lacustrine or near-shore marine sediments.<sup>1</sup>

### Suborder EUCLADOCERA Eriksson, 1934

Body and legs enclosed in small univalved carapace (less than 6 mm. in length)

<sup>1</sup> After this had been written, it was gratifying to learn that Dr. F. M. SWAIN (oral communication) has collected calcified cladoceran ephippia from Miocene lacustrine sediments in Nevada. Subsequently two important preliminary reports have become available: (1) D. G. FREY, 1960, "Cladocera from the Eemian Interglacial of Denmark," Paleont. Soc. program (Denver), abstract, p. 100, recording 25 species of chydorids; and (2) K. A. DICKINSON & F. M. SWAIN, 1961, "Ostracoda and Cladocera of the Late Tertiary Humboldt Formation, Northeastern Nevada," Soc. Econ. Paleont. Mineral. program (Denver) abstract, p. 91, recording three calcified ephippia assigned to a new genus, *Daphnia*, n.sp., and *D.* sp., which were illustrated and described in the oral presentation of the paper.

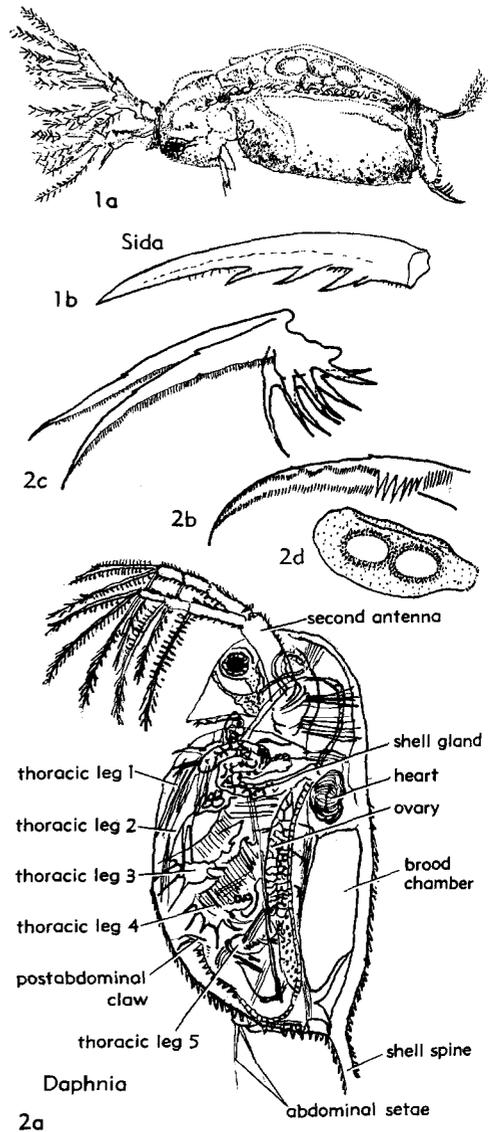


FIG. 63. Sididae (1); Daphniidae (2) (p. R171).

bent along back and appearing bivalved, legs usually flattened branchial appendages (17, 19). *Oligo-Rec.*

### Superfamily SIDOIDEA G. O. Sars, 1888

[nom. transl. BROOKS, 1959 (ex Sididae G. O. Sars, 1888)]  
[="tribe" Ctenopoda Sars, 1865]

Six pairs of legs, all foliaceous and all similar except last (19). *Rec.*

## Family SIDIDAE G. O. Sars, 1888

Carapace of usual eucladoceran type, without gelatinous mantle; feet entirely covered by shell. Antennae biramous in female, rami flattened, dorsal ones with numerous setae, both lateral and terminal. *Rec.*

*Sida* STRAUSS, 1820 [*\*Daphnia crystallina* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785; OD]. Dorsal ramus of antennae 3-jointed; rostrum pointed; shell elongate with rounded ends. *Rec.*, Eu.(Eng.-USSR)-N.Am.—FIG. 63,1. *\*S. crystallina* (MÜLLER); *1a*, entire individual (USA), lat. view,  $\times 12$  (12); *1b*, subfossil (USSR, Moscow, postabdominal claw, enl. (90). [Other subfossils are known from USA (Conn.) (3).]

Superfamily DAPHNIOIDEA  
Strauss, 1820

[*nom. transl.* TASCH, herein (ex Daphnides STRAUSS, 1820, *nom. imperf.*)] [=“tribe” Anomopoda Sars, 1865; superfamily Chydoroidea STEBBING, 1902 (*nom. transl.* BROOKS, 1959 (ex Chydoridae STEBBING, 1902))]

Legs five or six pairs, first and second pairs more or less prehensile, with cylindrical joints, others foliaceous (19). *Oligo-Rec.*

## Family DAPHNIIDAE Strauss, 1820

[*nom. correct.* TASCH, herein (pro Daphnides STRAUSS, 1820, *nom. imperf.*) Zool. Code (1961), Art. II,e,iii] [=Daphnidae BAIRD, 1850; Daphniidae F. LEYDIG, 1860 (*nom. imperf.*)]

Body oval, head rounded, dorsal ramus of antenna three-segmented; ventral ramus four-segmented; postabdomen distinctly set off from body, usually compressed and bearing anal spines; claws invariably denticulate; may be pectinate; typical ephippium formed. *Oligo-Rec.*

*Daphnia* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785 [*\*Monoculus pulex* DE GEER, 1778; OD]. Carapace with sharp caudal spine extending from upper posterior angle, no cervical sinus; surface with polygonal usually rhomboid markings (12). *Oligo-Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 63,2*a,b*. *\*D. pulex* (DE GEER), *Rec.*, USA; *2a*, ♀, configuration of valve and gross anatomy, enl. (12); *2b*, subfossil (Conn.), *D. pulex*-type claw, enl. (41). [Other subfossils are known from Ger.(Schleinsee, Grossen Plöner Sees, 41, 47) and USSR(Moscow, 90).]—FIG. 63,2*c*. *D. longispina* (MÜLLER); subfossil from Aus.(Längsee), *D. longispina*-type claw and postabdominal teeth, enl. (41). [Other subfossils are known from Switz.(Zürichsee, 41), USSR(lakes near Moscow), Eng.(Lake Windermere), fossils from Mio. lake deposits (Humboldt F.) of NE. Nevada.].—FIG. 63,2*d*. *D. fossilis* HEYDEN, *Oligo.*(Braunkohle), W.Ger.; fossil ephippia bear-

ing two ephippial eggs (0.2-0.4 mm. diameter), enl. (170b). [See also Fig. 62,2.]

## Family CHYDORIDAE Stebbing, 1902

Fornices extended and covering antennules in whole or part, and uniting with rostrum to form beak that projects in front of antennules (19). *Rec.*

## Subfamily CHYDORINAE Stebbing, 1902

Anus on dorsal side of postabdomen with postanal portion bearing denticles; no hepatic caeca. Two summer eggs and ephippial egg. Male with strong hook on first legs (19). *Rec.*

*Chydorus* LEACH, 1843 [*\*Lynceus sphaericus* O. F. MÜLLER; OD]. Postabdomen ordinarily short, with prominent preanal angle; shape spherical or ovate; rostrum long and acute (19). *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 64,6*a,b*. *\*C. sphaericus* (MÜLLER), cosmop.; *6a*, entire individual, lat. view,  $\times 120$  (12); *6b*, subfossil from Ger.(Wallensen); shell fragment, enl. (41). [Other subfossils are known from Eng. (Arctic bed at Ponder's End, Lake Windermere, 41, 128), USSR (small lakes and bogs near Moscow, 90, 114), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Denm. (Naestved, 108), Aus. (Schwarzsee, Langsee, 16, 40).]—FIG. 64,6*c*. *C. faviformis* BIRGE, subfossil from USA(Conn.); carapace,  $\times 90$  (3).—FIG. 64,6*d*. *C. piger* Sars, USA (Maine); carapace,  $\times 100$  (12). [Subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128), USSR (lakes and bogs near Moscow, 90), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Ger. (Wallensen, 41).]—FIG. 64,6*e*. *C. globosus* BAIRD, USA; carapace, enl. (12). [Subfossils are known from USSR (Moscow, 90).] [See also Fig. 61,2.]

*Acroperus* BAIRD, 1843 [*\*A. harpae*; OD]. Crest on head and back, carapace subquadrate, obliquely striated, inferoposteal angle rounded or acute, usually with teeth, postabdomen broad, without marginal denticles (19). *Rec.*, Eu.(Eng.-USSR)-N.Am.—FIG. 64,3. *\*A. harpae*, USA; *3a*, entire individual, lat. view,  $\times 20$  (12); *3b,c*, subfossil from Ger.(Wallensen), showing shell and posterior ventral angle, both enl. (41). [Other subfossils are known from Eng. (Arctic bed at Ponder's End, 41), USSR (small lakes and bogs near Moscow, 90), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Aus. (Schwarzsee, Längsee, 16, 40).]

*Alona* BAIRD, 1843 [*\*Lynceus quadrangularis* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785; OD]. Shell subquadrate, surface with longitudinal striae (19). *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 64,1*a,b*. *\*A. quadrangularis* (MÜLLER); *1a*, postabdomen from USA, enlarged (12); *1b*, subfossil from USSR(Moscow), postabdomen, enl. (90). [Other subfossils are known from USSR (lakes and bogs near Moscow, 114), N.Ger. (small

morainal basins and Wallensen brown coal pit, 41), USA(Conn., Linsley Pond, 3), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Aus. (Längsee, 40).]—FIG. 64,1c. *A. guttata* Sars; postabdomen and claw, enl. (12). [Subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128), USSR (lakes and bogs near

Moscow, 114), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Aus. (Schwarzsee, Längsee, 16, 40), Ger. (Wallensen, 41).]—FIG. 64,1d. *A. affinis* (LEYDIG); subfossil, from USA(Conn.), postabdomen and claw,  $\times 100$  (3). [Other subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere, 127), Denm. (Naestved,

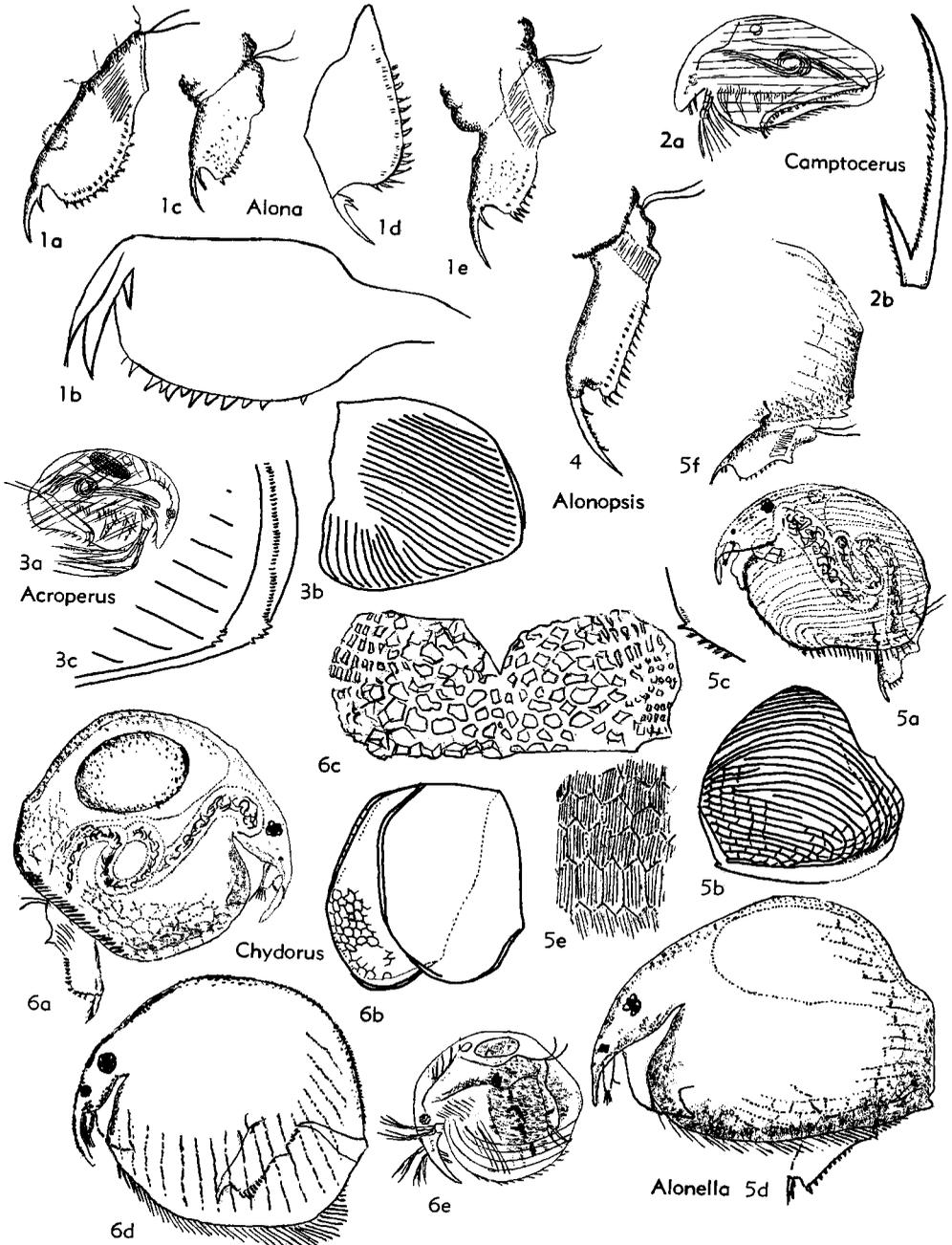


FIG. 64. Chydoridae (Chydorinae) (p. R171-R173).

- 108), Aus. (Schwarzsee, Längsee, 16, 40), Ger. (Wallensen, 41).]—FIG. 64,1c. *A. costata* Sars; postabdomen from USA, enl. (12). [Subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128).]
- Alonella** Sars, 1862 [*\*A. pygmaea*; OD]. Postabdomen large, preanal angle ordinarily prominent (12). *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 64,5a-c. *A. nana* (BAIRD); 5a, subfossil from Eng. (Lake Windermere) entire individual, lat. view,  $\times 150$  (128); 5b,c, subfossil from Ger. (Wallensen); shell and posteroventral angle, both enl. (41). [Other subfossils are known from Aus. (Längsee, 40), USSR (small lakes and bogs near Moscow, 90, 114).]—FIG. 64,5d,e. *A. excisa* (FISCHER); 5d, entire individual from USA, lat. view,  $\times 150$ ; 5e, detail of valve markings, enl. (12). [Subfossils are known from USSR (small lakes near Moscow, 90), Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128), Aus. (Schwarzsee, Längsee, 16, 40), N.Z. (Pyramid Lake, 41).]—FIG. 64,5f. *A. exigua* (LILLJEBORG); specimen from USA, post. part of shell and postabdomen,  $\times 50$  (12). [Subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128), Aus. (Längsee, 40), Ger. (Wallensen, 41).]
- Alonopsis** Sars, 1862 [*\*Alona elongata* Sars, 1861; OD]. Carapace not tumid, postabdomen broad (12). *Rec.*, Eu.(Eng.-USSR)-N.Am.—FIG. 64, 4. *\*A. elongata* (Sars); specimen from USA, postabdomen,  $\times 120$  (12). [Subfossils are known from USSR (lakes and bogs near Moscow, 106), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128), Ger. (Wallensen, Up. Alleröd, 41), Aus. (Längsee, 40).]
- Anchistrophus** Sars, 1862 [*\*A. emarginatus*; OD]. Carapace with conspicuous projection on anteroventral margin (12). *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am. Subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128).
- Camptocerus** BAIRD, 1843 [*\*Lynceus macrourus* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785; OD]. Ovoid shape; crest on head or back; carapace with angles rounded and small teeth at inferoposteal angle; surface longitudinally striated (12). *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am.-Australia.—FIG. 64,2a. *\*C. macrourus* (MÜLLER); entire individual from USA, lat. view,  $\times 50$  (12).—FIG. 64,2b. *C. rectirostris* SCHOEDLER; subfossil from Ger. (Wallensen), female claw, enl. (41). [Other subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128), USSR (small lakes near Moscow, 90), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Denm. (Naestved, 108), Aus. (Längsee, 40).]
- Graptoleberis** Sars, 1863 [*\*Lynceus testudinaria* FISCHER, 1848; OD]. Rostrum broad, semicircular, posterior margin of carapace with 2 strong teeth at inferoposteal angle; shell and head with conspicuous reticulation (12). *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am.-S. Am.—FIG. 65,5. *\*G. testudinaria* (FISCHER); 5a, entire individual from USA, lat. view,  $\times 100$  (12); 5b, subfossil from USSR (Moscow); portion of carapace, enl. (90). [Other subfossils are known from Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128); Aust. (Längsee, 40), Ger. (Wallensen, 41).]
- Leydigia** KURZ, 1874 [*\*Lynceus quadrangularis* LEYDIG, 1860; OD]. Postabdomen with numerous clusters of large spines; carapace without markings. *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am.—FIG. 65,4a. *\*L. quadrangularis* (LEYDIG); postabdomen of specimen from USA,  $\times 100$  (12).—FIG. 65,4b. *L. acantherooides* (FISCHER); entire individual from USA (La.) showing longitudinally striated carapace,  $\times 80$  (12).
- Percantha** BAIRD, 1843 [*\*Lynceus truncata* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785; OD]. Oval carapace with lower extremity slightly curved backward and like upper extremity of anterior margin beset with strong hooked spines (12). *Rec.*, Eu.(Eng.-USSR)-N.Am. (Can.)-C.Asia.—FIG. 65,1. *\*P. truncata* (MÜLLER); 1a, entire individual from Eng., lat. view, enl. (4); 1b, subfossil from Ger. (Wallensen), caudal margin of shell, enlarged (41). [Other subfossils are known from USSR (Moscow, near small lakes and bogs, 90, 114), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Aus. (Längsee, 40).]
- Pleuroxus** BAIRD, 1843 [*\*Lynceus trigonellus* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785; OD]. Inferoposteal angle with 2 or 3 small teeth, commonly minute or may be absent; dorsal margin of postabdomen slightly convex, broader behind anus, apex rounded; 14 to 16 marginal denticles (12). *Rec.*, Eu.(Eng.-USSR)-N.Am.-S.Am.-C.Asia.—FIG. 65,2. *\*P. trigonellus* (MÜLLER); 2a, entire individual from USA, lat. view enl. (12); 2b,c, subfossil from Ger. (Wallensen), postabdomen, shell, enl. (41).
- Rhynchotalona** NORMAN, 1903 [*\*Alona falcata* Sars, 1861; OD]. Postabdomen stout, thick, bent at anus, truncate at apex, with two to four stout marginal denticles near apex and lateral series of very fine spinules in continuous row almost to anus (12). *Rec.*, Eu.(Eng.-USSR)-Afr.-N.Am.—FIG. 65,3. *\*R. falcata* (Sars); entire individual from USA, lat. view,  $\times 100$  (12). [Subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere, 128).]

## Subfamily EURYCERCINAE Kurz, 1874

Anus terminal; two hepatic caeca (63).  
*Rec.*

- Eurycercus** BAIRD, 1843 [*\*Lynceus lamellatus* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785; OD]. [*non Eurycercus* BLYTH, 1844; *nec* Busch, 1851]. Postabdomen very large, flattened, quadrangular, dorsal margin with more than 100 sawlike teeth; claws on spiniferous projection with 2 basal spines, and denticulate (12). *Rec.*, Eu.(Eng.-USSR)-N.Am.—FIG. 65,6. *\*E. lamellatus* (MÜLLER); 6a, entire individual from USA, lat. view,  $\times 17$ ; 6b, postabdomen,  $\times 50$  (12). [Subfossils are known from USSR (lakes and bogs near Moscow, 90, 114), N.Ger. (small ground moraine basins, 41), USA(Conn., 3); Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Denm. (Naestved, 108); Ger. (Wallensen, 41), Aus. (Längsee, 40).]

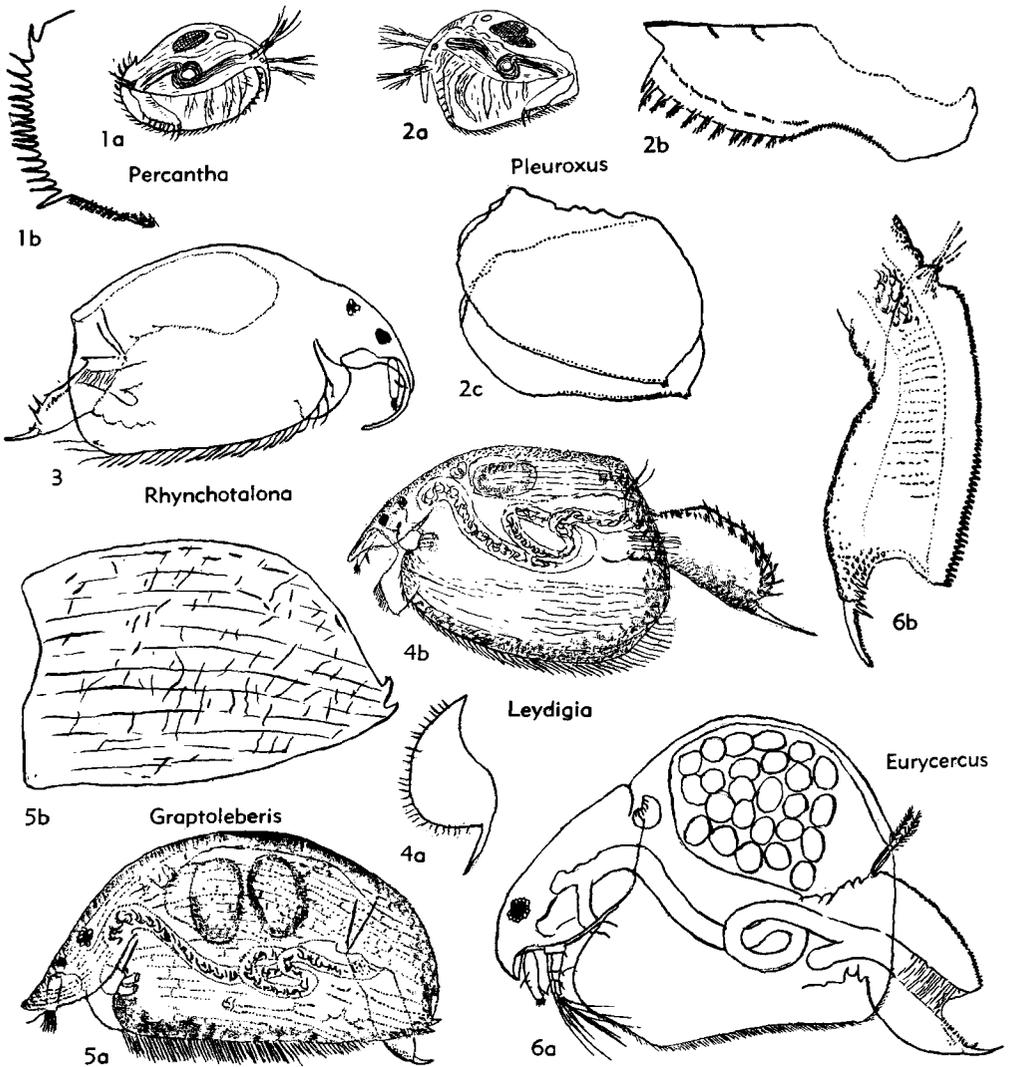


FIG. 65. Chydoridae (Chydorinae) (1-5), (Eurycercinae) (6) (p. R173).

**Family BOSMINIDAE Sars, 1863**

Carapace small, rarely greater than 0.5 mm.; six pairs of legs; body short, high, commonly oval or round; carapace covering entire body. *Rec.*

**Bosmina** BAIRD, 1845 [\**Lynceus longirostris* O. F. MÜLLER, 1785; OD]. Antennules of female approximately parallel to each other, curving backward, fixed to head; carapace thin, inferoposterial angle with spine (=mucro); postabdomen subquadrate; claws set in cylindrical process; female with short, blunt rostrum, smaller than male (12). *Rec.*, Eu.-Asia M.-Afr.-N. Am.-S. Am.—FIG. 66,

4a,b. \**B. longirostris* (MÜLLER); 4a, entire individual, lat. view,  $\times 100$ ; 4b, postabdomen, enl. (12). [Subfossils are known from USSR (small lakes and bogs near Moscow, 90, 114), Ger. (Wallensen, 41), Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160), Aus. (Schwarzee, Längsee, 16, 40).]—FIG. 66,4c. *B. longirostris cornuta* JURINE; subfossil from USSR (Moscow), mucrones of shell, enl. (90). [Other subfossils are known from Switz. (Wauwiler See, 160).]—FIG. 66,4d,e. *B. longispina* LEYDIG; 4d, subfossil from USA (Conn.), claws, enl.; 4e, claws of living form, USA, enl. (12).—FIG. 66,4f,g. *B. coregoni* BAIRD; 4f, subfossil from Aus. (Längsee), claws, enl. (40); 4g, subfossil from USA (Conn.),

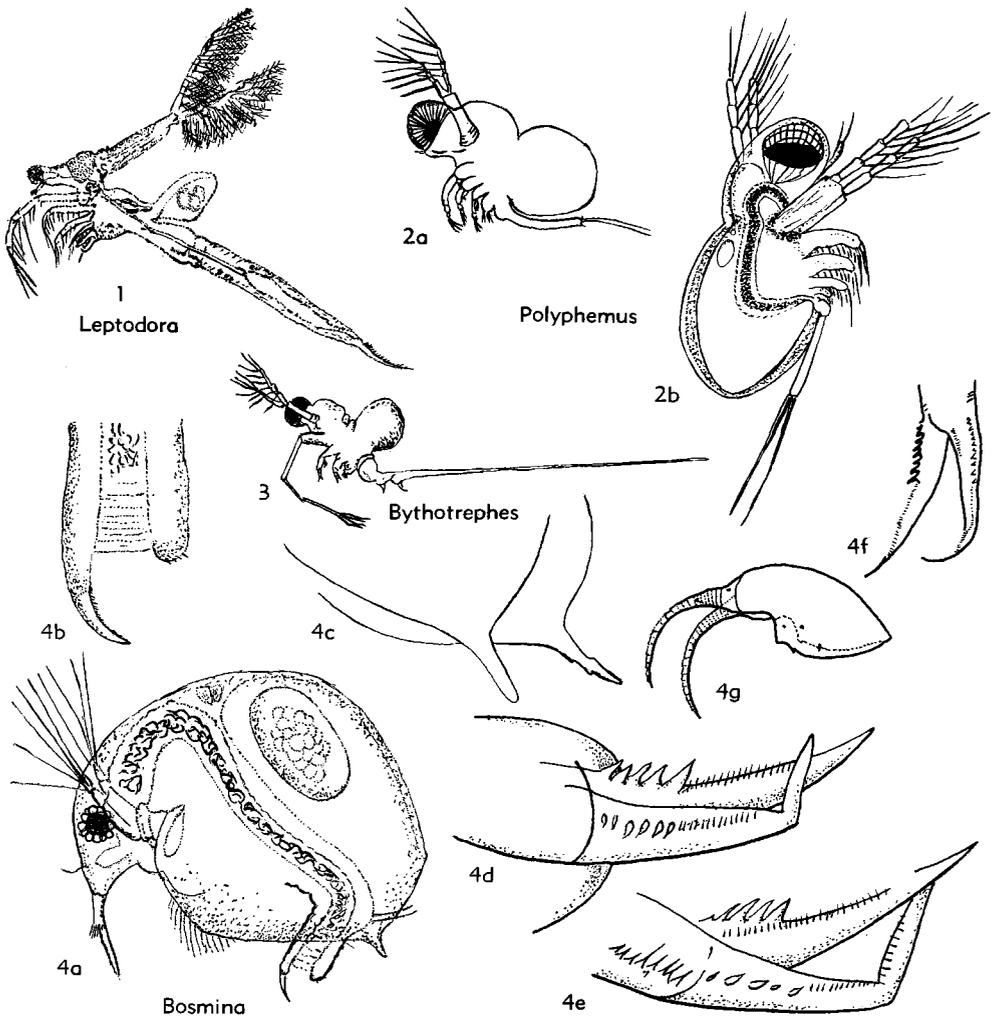


FIG. 66. Bosminidae (4); Polyphemidae (2,3); Leptodoridae (1) (p. R174-R176).

head shield and rostrum, enl. (3). [Other subfossils are known from USSR (small lakes and bogs near Moscow, 90, 114), Aus. (Lunzer Untersee, Lünnersee, 41). In addition, subfossils from Eng. (Lake Windermere) and USSR (Moscow) are assigned to *B. obtusirostris* Sars.]

**Superfamily POLYPHEMOIDEA  
Baird, 1845**

[*nom. transl.* BROOKS, 1959 (ex Polyphemidae BAIRD, 1845)]  
[=tribe Onchyopoda Sars, 1865]

Four pairs of jointed appendages with subcylindrical joints (19). *Rec.*

**Family POLYPHEMIDAE Baird, 1845**

Carapace not enclosing legs and abdomen, being converted into large globular brood sac (12). *Rec.*

**Polyphemus** O. F. MÜLLER, 1785 [\**Monoculus pediculus* LINNÉ, 1761; SD]. Four pairs of legs not covered by shell; shell only extends to brood pouch. Head separated from thorax through a long notch. Setae of the root (base) of swimming antennae, pinnate. Postabdomen drawn out backward in cylindrical process. *Rec.*, cosmop.—  
FIG. 66,2a. *P.* sp., showing carapace (dorsal posterior bulge) modified to serve as brood sac, enl.

(12).—FIG. 66,2b. \**P. pediculus* (LINNÉ), Eng.; entire individual, enl. (4).

**Bythotrephes** LEYDIG, 1860 [\**B. longimanus*; OD]. Body resembling that of *Polyphemus*; huge eye in front of head; brood sac not overhanging caudal process as in *Polyphemus*, hence better defined; extreme elongation of slender caudal process is a distinctive character (12). *Rec.*, Eu.—FIG. 66,3. \**B. longimanus*; entire individual, lat. view, enl. (167). [Subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere), mandibles, detached terminal seta of first pair of legs (128) (cf. *Polyphemus*, Fig. 66,2a).]

### Suborder HAPLOPODA Sars, 1865

Largest of cladocerans (to 18 mm.) with carapace reduced to small brood sac. Legs not flattened but with cylindrical joints; without branchial appendages (19). *Rec.*

#### Family LEPTODORIDAE Lilljeborg, 1900

Head elongated, slender, eye filling its anterior end; body with four somites, first part bearing six legs and dorsal brood sac (i.e., shell reduced to an egg case); abdomen with three somites, ending in two short claws; mandibles long, slender, pointed, with three spines near apex (19, 67). *Rec.*

**Leptodora** LILLJEBORG, 1900 [\**Polyphemus kindtii* Focke, 1844; OD]. Characters of family. [Brooks (17) has observed that "in some ways *Leptodora* is more like an aberrant conchostracan than a derivative of the Eucladocera."]. *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am.-C.Asia.—FIG. 66,1. \**L. kindtii* (Focke); entire individual from USA showing appendages and carapace reduced to egg case,  $\times 3$  (12). [Subfossils are known from Eng. (Lake Windermere), consisting of characteristic mandibles (128).]

### Subclass SARSOSTRACA Tasch, new subclass

Body elongate, lacking carapace, with 11 to 19 pairs of trunk limbs which are either typically branchiopod or modified, and ending posteriorly in single or double furcae; furcal rami unsegmented. *L.Dev.-Rec.*

### Order ANOSTRACA Sars, 1867<sup>1</sup>

[*nom. transl.* CALMAN, 1909 (ex suborder Anostraca Sars, 1867)] [=Phyllopoda LATREILLE, 1802; tribe Gymnota GERSTAECKER, 1866; Phyllopoda pisciformis E. SIMON, 1886; suborder Phyllopoda anostraca Sars, 1867; tribe Gymnophylla STEBBING, 1902]

Body elongate, without carapace, ending posteriorly in caudal furca; posterior somites without legs (apodous); paired compound eyes pedunculate, small median sessile ocellus in front. Antennules short and slender; antennae large and prehensile in males, reduced in females; trunk limbs (swimming legs) 11 to 19 pairs, none postgenital; rami of caudal furca unsegmented. Genital ducts opening on first two apodous segments which are more or less fused; paired everisible penes in male; ova retained in ovisac formed of united oviducts; young hatched in metanauplius state (21). *L.Dev.-Rec.*

### ANATOMY

The Anostraca, or fairy shrimps, lack a shell, as indicated by the name of the order, and have an elongate body composed of distinct somites. The head bears stalked compound eyes, antennules, and antennae. The antennae of males are greatly enlarged and specialized for clasping females during copulation (Fig. 67,1a,b).

The thoracic somites bear 11 to 19 pairs of swimming legs. The four to nine abdominal somites are limbless (Fig. 67,2), the anterior two being coalesced to form the genital somite. The most posterior somite is the telson, which bears two terminal, platelike, plumose cercopods (caudal rami, furcal rami) (21, 69).

Some interesting variations from the general pattern are observed within the anostracans. The American genus *Thamnocephalus*, for example, is reminiscent of the notostracan *Lepidurus* in that the telson is produced as a thin plate above the anal opening (supra-anal plate in *Lepidurus*) (102).

Each thoracic somite bears a pair of very similar foliaceous appendages (exclusive of the less-developed last pair). These are biramous, lobed, and setose. The functions of food-gathering, movement, and respiration are served by these versatile appendages. The components of each appendage include (1) one or two pre-epipodites which

<sup>1</sup> Technical advice and literature were provided by Prof. R. W. DEXTER, of Kent State University (Ohio), and Prof. J. E. LYNCH, College of Fisheries, University of Washington. Dr. A. R. PALMER, of the U. S. Geological Survey, kindly provided photographs of his Mojave Desert anostracans and literature concerning them. Illustrations for this chapter were financed by a Wichita State University Research Award.

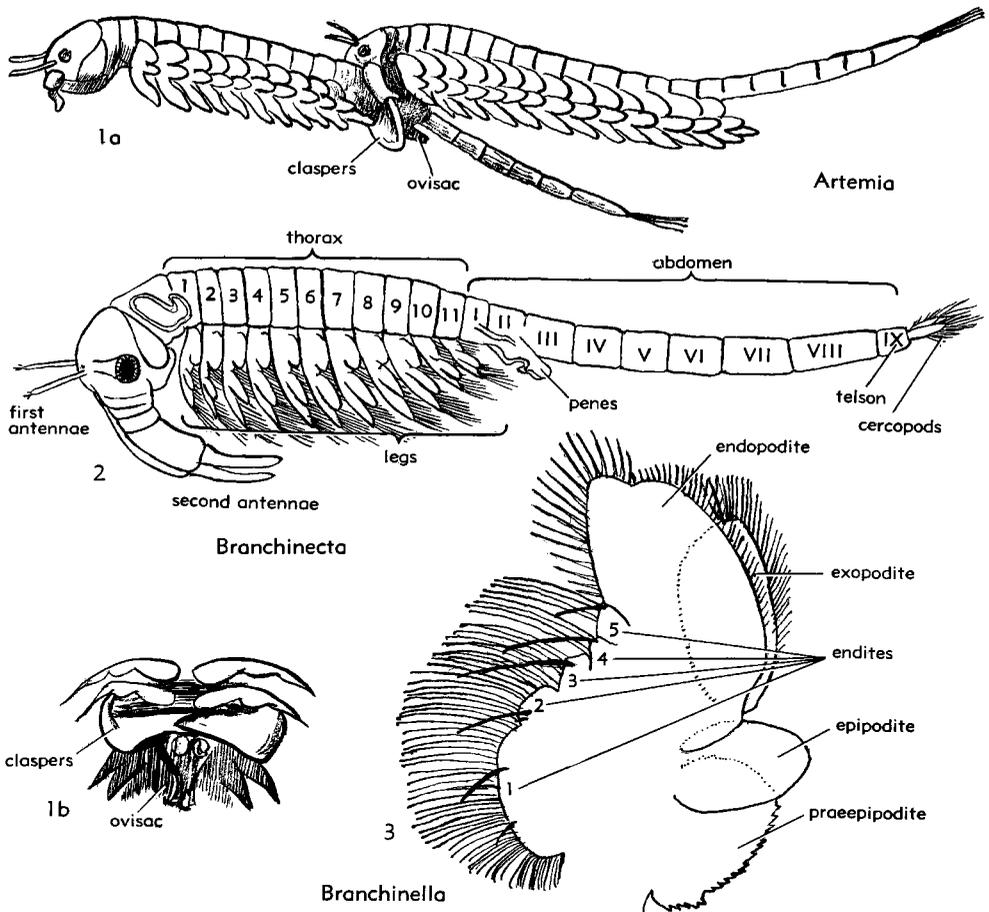


FIG. 67. Morphological characteristics of anostracans.—1. *Artemia salina*, Great Salt Lake; 1a, a pair of swimming individuals, male clasping mate with claspers in front of ovisac,  $\times 6$  (102); 1b, detail of 1a, view from beneath of male claspers and ovisac,  $\times 30$  (102).—2. *Branchinecta paludosa*, male, terminology after LINDER (69).—3. *Branchinella compacta*, male, eighth leg from the front, anterior setae sharply marked; terminology after LINDER,  $\times 15$  (69).

exhibit variable fusion (lateral view); (2) a spineless epipodite at the base, and an exopodite and an endopodite distally; and (3) along the medial margin, five setae and filament-bearing endites (37) (Fig. 67,3).

The sexes are separate (Fig. 67,1a; 68,3a). Eggs are retained in the uterine portion of the oviduct of females (21), the young being hatched in the metanauplius stage. Parthenogenesis is also known (e.g., *Artemia*) (83). Where both sexes are represented, females outnumber males as much as two to one. Males of *Artemia*, for example, are commonly completely absent from communities of parthenogenetic fe-

males (83, p. 37-39). DEXTER (37) has observed that males are "not as uncommon as is generally believed" and may outnumber females in a given population.

Although anostracans lack a carapace, they possess a tissue system that CALMAN (21) considered almost equivalent to an endoskeleton. A marked development of structures to which muscles can be attached includes trabeculae and plates of connective tissue. The external cuticle, by contrast, is almost membranous.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A. G. RICHARDS (1951, p. 48) indicates that the body wall of *Artemia* gives a positive test for chitin. See footnote 1, p. R000).

Among living anostracans, anatomical features of taxonomic value are (1) unique characteristics of the antennae at the species level; (2) frontal appendage between the antennae; (3) position and structure of the two penes of males at the familial level (37).

## ECOLOGY

### SALINITY AND pH

Anostracans generally live in small, temporary, alkaline water pools (83). DEXTER (37) has noted that the most usual habitat is in rain pools and temporary ponds formed from melting snow and ice.

One anostracan species (*Branchinecta shantzi*) is known from Alpine lakes (37). The brine shrimp (*Artemia salina*, Fig. 67,1a), is an exception to the general rule, since it inhabits inland saline water bodies such as the Great Salt Lake (102). Recently, LYNCH (77) described a new anostracan species (*Branchinecta campestris*) found associated with *Artemia salina* in several ponds in Grant County, Washington. He noted that the new species was adapted to life in water "of so high a content of dissolved salts that only *Artemia salina* can develop abundantly in the same habitat." Other anostracans display this salinity tolerance also. For example, laboratory experiments indicate that although adults of *Branchipus stagnalis* rapidly succumb in sea water, they can survive a half month in water containing 1 to 5 grams of NaCl per liter (83, p. 9). Thus, we may conclude that certain anostracans can become adapted to an inland or a marine coastal, brackish-water environment. No marine species of Anostraca are presently known, however.

Small quantities of ammonium salts were found necessary for normal growth of *Branchipus stagnalis*, and this species, as well as *Chirocephalus diaphanus*, were able to live in waters containing up to 0.5 gram per liter of gypsum. This indicates that organic decay in bottom sediments or small amounts of evaporites in solution are not inimical to anostracan survival.

Experiments with *Artemia* eggs (TASCH, 1954, unpublished) have shown that small quantities of phosphates, ferric oxides, and ferrous oxides added to brine solutions inhibited normal hatching. The egg cases were observed to break and the yolk to extrude but no hatching occurred as in normal brine solutions.

Different anostracan species can withstand differing ranges of pH: *Chirocephalus* (6.4 to 7.8), *Branchipus* (7.2 to 7.6), *Streptocephalus* (7.4 to 7.6), although the usual range reported is between 7 and 7.5.

## TEMPERATURE

Anostracan genera and species vary in their temperature tolerance. A species of *Branchinecta* from the Antarctic was collected under a layer of ice. Laboratory experiments show that *Branchipus stagnalis* can withstand a range of 17° to 41° C. even when the temperature varies rapidly (83). The most favorable temperature reported is between 15° and 20° C. *Branchipus* becomes inert at 0° C.

## FAUNAL ASSOCIATES AND PREDATORS

Three of the branchiopod orders may occur together in the same pool. The anostracan genus *Thamnocephalus* was reported to have occurred in the same Ellis County (Kansas) pool in which the notostracan *Triops longicaudatus* and the conchostracans *Leptestheria compleximanus* and *Cyzicus mexicanus* were also found (102). Species of *Triops* are almost always found with the anostracan *Branchipus stagnalis* in certain localities, and *Lepidurus* species almost always occur with *Chirocephalus diaphanus* and conchostracan young.

Since natural predators of anostracans include frog tadpoles, salamanders, ostracodes (*Cypris*, *Cyclocypris*), and various insect larvae, one might anticipate that future finds will be made in the fossil record of such predator-prey assemblages. A recent fossil discovery discussed below is an augury of others to come. MATTHIAS observed an egg of *Chirocephalus* that had passed through the digestive tube of a frog and voided in its feces, yet developed into a normal nauplius (83, p. 78).

## FOOD

The food of anostracans is mainly plankton. Included in their diet, as reported by several observers, are: infusoria, rotifers, diatoms, and algae (83).

## REGENERATION

A remarkable crustacean attribute is the capacity to regenerate torn or lost appendages and body parts. Anostracans such as *Artemia salina* show this capacity to a marked degree, although it should be noted that only 1 or 2 per cent of injured individuals show partial or total regeneration (83, p. 70). Experiments indicate that *Artemia* will show more rapid regeneration in saline water than in fresh water. Other anostracans have demonstrated this regenerative capacity. *Chirocephalus diaphanus*, for example, regenerated severed furca in three or four days.

## GEOLOGIC OCCURRENCE

Although the fossil record of anostracans seems to be sparse, published discoveries are of great interest. The Eocene

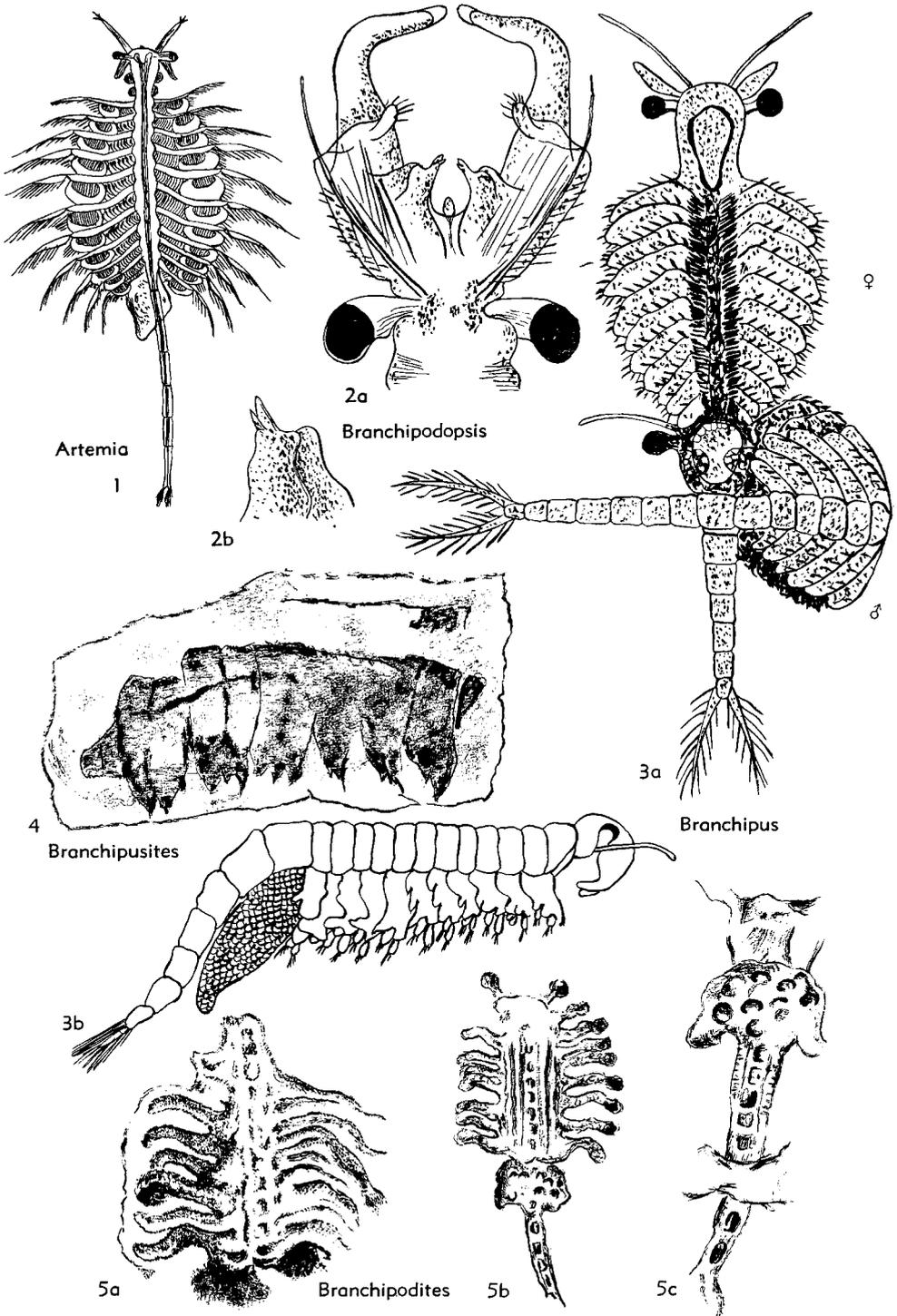


FIG. 68. Artemiidae (1); Branchipodidae (2-5) (p. R181).

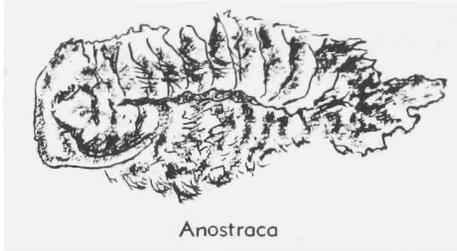


FIG. 69. Fossil anostracan from ?middle Miocene lake deposits in Mojave Desert, California,  $\times$ ? (170c).

fresh-water argillaceous limestone from the Isle of Wight has yielded, in association with plant remains and an insect fauna, an undoubted *Branchipus*-like anostracan (*Branchipodites*, Fig. 68,5). The plant remains included palm leaves (*Flabellaria*), seeds of a water lily (*Nelumbium*), leaves of rushes, and remains of other aquatic plants. The insect fauna included representatives of the orders Coleoptera, Hymenoptera, Lepidoptera, Diptera, Neuroptera, Orthoptera, and Hemiptera, and the class Arachnida. Of the neuropterids, caddis flies were represented by the well-known genus, *Phryganea* (156). Experiments performed by MATHIAS showed definitely that larval *Phryganea* preys on anostracans (83). It is not surprising, then, to find such a predator-prey association in the fossil record.

In 1954 another remarkable arthropod fauna represented by silicified fossils has been reported in calcareous nodules of lacustrine deposits of ?middle Miocene age in the Mojave Desert, California (103, 104). The nodules were associated with borate beds (cf. discussion on evaporites above) and occurred in brown, paper-thin shales, laminated siltstones, and thin limestone beds. A large part (35 percent) of the fauna consisted of fairy shrimps (Fig. 69). The insect fauna was represented by the orders Ephemera (mayfly nymphs), Odonata (dragonfly nymphs), Thysanoptera (thrips), Hemiptera (true bugs), Coleoptera (beetle larvae), Diptera (midge larvae, pupae, and adults), and the class Arachnida (cf. Isle of Wight Eocene insect fauna).

Since genital organs were not found to be preserved in the Mojave Desert silicified

fossil anostracans (released from the nodules by formic acid treatment), no assignment of the 150 specimens has been made. The best specimen in the collection was preserved in an undetermined organic material—all the rest were silicified (A. R. Palmer, 1956, personal communication). One may observe that the insect fauna here too, may include anostracan predators. Among the 150 specimens of the Mojave Desert anostracans, the overall body length was found to be 4 to 5 mm. Parts preserved and recognizable in the head region included antennae, mandibles, maxillules, and maxillae. Typical anostracan legs were also observed (Fig. 69) (104).

The oldest yet-discovered fossil anostracan is *Gilsonicaris*, from the Lower Devonian of Germany (151). Its elongate segmented body and the cephalon bear closest affinities to the anostracans. VAN STRAELEN concluded that it is very close to *Branchipodites vectensis* in all characters except the larger number of trunk segments in *Gilsonicaris*. VAN STRAELEN assigned the genus to a new family, Gilsonicaridae (*recte* Gilsonicarididae). This family is here included in systematic descriptions for completeness, but it should be realized that anostracan assignments at the familial level have little meaning in the absence of preserved genitalia.

Other fossils considered to represent anostracans are doubtful. GOLDENBERG found a *Branchipus*-like impression with only swimming legs and portions of the trunk preserved in Stephanian deposits of West Germany (45). The same deposits yielded a variety of arthropod crustaceans and estheriid conchostracans. WOODWARD found an anostracan-like fossil (*Rochdalia*) in the middle Coal Measures of England (157).

The recent discovery of Miocene cladocerans, noted previously, indicates the probable existence of branchiopod faunas yet to be found in Tertiary nonmarine beds. Anostracan fossils should be sought in any Tertiary formation yielding insect fossils, since likelihood of an insect predator-anostracan prey association exists.

The presence of the brine shrimp *Artemia salina* in Aftonian interglacial deposits (Pleistocene) of the Great Salt Lake is in-

licated by fecal pellets found in a recently obtained core (at Saltair). The oldest initial occurrence of these shrimps in the Salt Lake area is about 600,000 years before the present, as estimated by me from published core-log data (39). One may anticipate future discovery of fossil brine shrimps in interglacial sediments at different localities. It is likely that they would be preserved as impressions.

### Family ARTEMIIDAE Grochowski, 1896

Thoracic somites 11; penes proceeding ventrally close to each other, rigid and apical parts without spines, no sharply defined vesiculae seminales. Single pre-epipodite on each leg; rami of caudal furca variably fused with last abdominal somite or freely movable; ovisac subglobular or cylindrical. Head of males without frontal process; antennae of males biarticulate, not fused or only slightly so at base (46, 69). *Pleist.-Rec.*

**Artemia** LEACH, 1819 [*\*Cancer salina* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Postgenital region with eight somites; distal segment of male claspings antennae compressed and blade-shaped. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 68,1. *\*A. salina* (LINNÉ), USA (Conn.); ventral view,  $\times 6.5$  (102). [See also Fig. 67,1.]

### Family BRANCHIPODIDAE Simon, 1886

[=restricted DADAY, 1910 (30); *emend.* LINDER, 1941 (69)]

Like *Artemiidae* in number of somites and genital organs except that apical parts of penes bear several spines. Basal segments of antennae in males coalescing medially in so-called clypeus (Fig. 68,2*b*) (69, 129). ?*U.Carb.*, ?*Eoc.*, *Rec.*

**Branchipus** SHÄFFER, 1776 [*\*Cancer stagnalis* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Penis without basal process; apical segment or copulatory part of penis elongate, cylindrical, and on both lateral sides serrate-denticulate; ovisac short, oval-shaped, sharply rounded at posterior apex, forming prominent tubercle above in middle. *Rec.*, Eu.-Asia-Afr.—FIG. 68,3. *\*B. stagnalis* (LINNÉ); 3*a*, copulating pair (Fr.), enl. (83); 3*b*, female (Ger.), lat. view showing ovisac,  $\times 16$  (45).

**Branchipodopsis** G. O. SARS, 1898 [*\*B. hodgsoni*; OD]. Digitiform, short, plainly sensory outgrowth from distal parts of clypeus (69, 123). *Rec.*, Asia-Afr. (arid regions).—FIG. 68,2. *\*B. hodgsoni*, S.Afr.; 2*a*, head of male, dorsal view, enl.; 2*b*, lat. dorsal view of clypeus, enl. (30).

?**Branchipodites** WOODWARD, 1877 [*\*B. vectensis*; OD]. Males with large clasping antennae, females with small antennae and egg pouches; female trunk with 8 pairs of legs; abdominal somites narrow, elongated. Eyes stalked. *Eoc.*, Eng.—FIG. 68,5. *\*B. vectensis*, Bembridge Ls. (fresh-water), Isle of Wight; 5*a*, thorax and paired legs,  $\times 11$ ; 5*b*, female with egg pouch, eight pairs of legs, and stalked eyes,  $\times 14$ ; 5*c*, ventral view of egg-pouch containing eggs, and abdominal somites,  $\times 19$  (156).

?**Branchipusites** GOLDENBERG, 1873 [*\*B. anthracinus*; OD]. Preserved eight trunk somites with lateral appendages that resemble lamellar branchial feet of *Branchipus*. *U.Carb.* (Stephan.), W.Ger.—FIG. 68,4. *\*B. anthracinus*, Saarbrücken; lat. view showing *Branchipus*-type lamellar branchial feet and eight thoracic somites,  $\times 15$  (45). [See *Arthropleura*, p. R617.]

### Family BRANCHINECTIDAE Daday, 1910

Thoracic somites 11; penes proceeding ventrolaterally to laterally, widely separated from each other; male antennae not fused basally and terminal segment not laminate (30, 69). *Rec.*, Eu.-Asia-N.Am.-S.Am.

**Branchinecta** VERRILL, 1869 [*\*Branchipus paludosus* O. F. MÜLLER, 1788 (= *B. arctica*, *B. groenlandica* VERRILL, 1869); OD]. Basal segment of male claspings antennae serrate on inner margin (30, 152). *Rec.*, N.Am. (Alaska-Can.-Greenl.)-N. Eu.—FIG. 70,1. *\*B. paludosus* (MÜLLER), N. Greenl.; 1*a,b*, ♂ and ♀, lat. views,  $\times 5$  (102). [See also Fig. 67,2.]

### Family CHIROCEPHALIDAE Daday, 1910

Thoracic somites 11; penes proceeding ventrally close to each other, sharply defined and mostly with large seminal vesicles. Each leg with two pre-epipodites or only one with deep incision on its edges; male antennae two-segmented, quite separate from each other; basal segment seldom without all outgrowths; frontal appendages missing (30, 69). *Rec.*

**Chirocephalus** PRÉVOST, 1803 [*\*C. diaphanus* (= *Cancer stagnalis* SHAW, 1791; *Branchipus diaphanus* MILNE-EDWARDS, 1840; *Chirocephalus stagnalis* (SHAW) DADAY, 1910); OD]. Characters of family (30). *Rec.*, Eu.-Afr.-Asia.—FIG. 70,2. *\*C. diaphanus*, Eng.; female, ovisac containing eggs, enl. (15).

*Eubranchipus* VERRILL, 1870 [\**Branchipus vernalis* VERRILL, 1869; OD]. Antennal appendages nearly bilaterally symmetrical with slightly obtuse apex (37, 153). *Rec.*, N.Am.—FIG. 70,3. \**E. vernalis* (VERRILL), USA (New England); ♂, lat. view, ×3.5 (102).

Family POLYARTEMIIDAE Simon, 1886

Thoracic somites 17 to 19; sharply marked off seminal vesicles absent and penes proceeding ventrally close to one another with

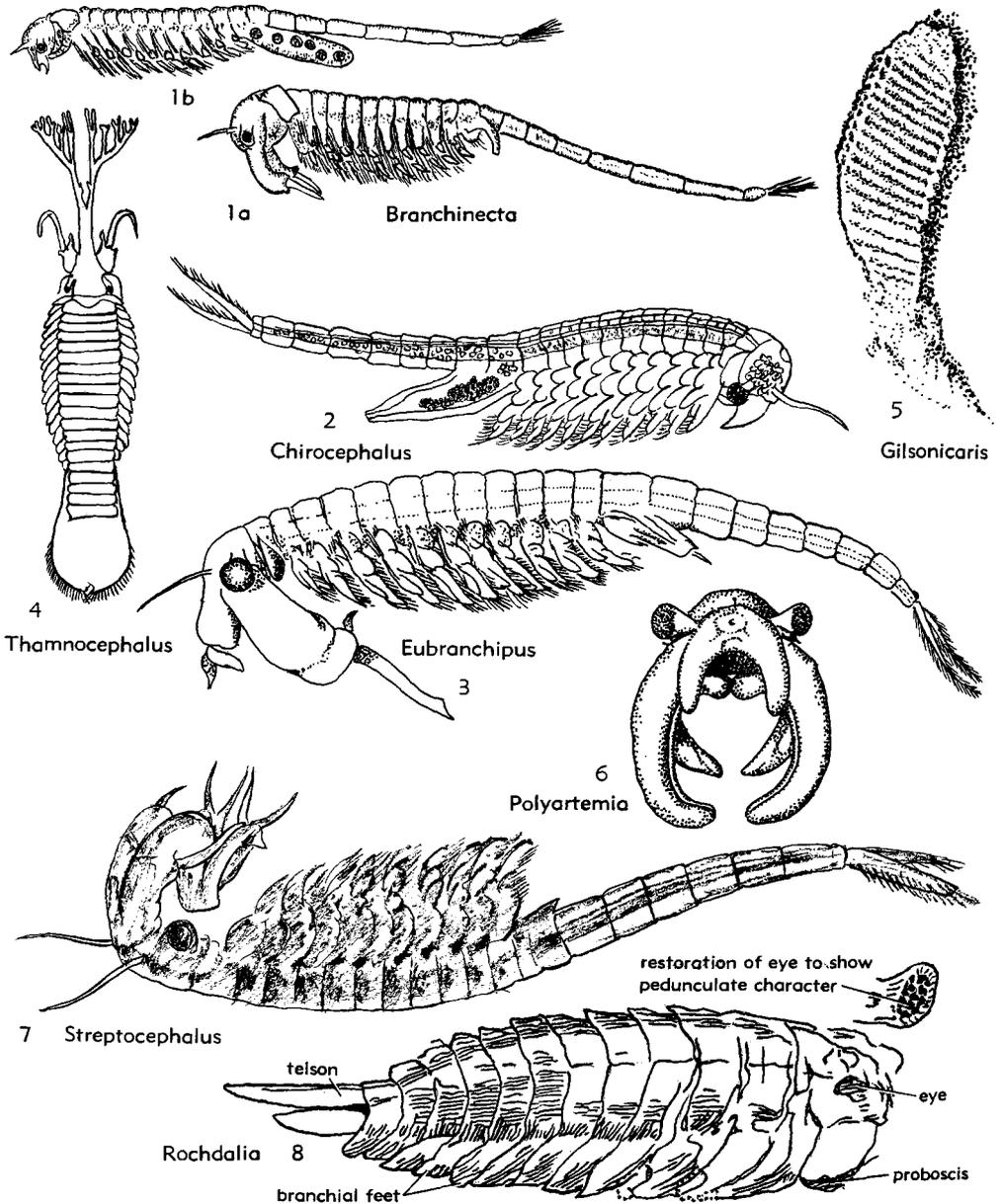


FIG. 70. Branchinectidae (1); Chirocephalidae (2,3); Polyartemiidae (6); Streptocephalidae (7); Thamnocephalidae (4); Gilsonicarididae (5); Family Uncertain (8) (p. R181-R183).

rigid basal parts, which bear two faint median warts (69, 129). *Rec.*

**Polyartemia** FISCHER, 1851 [*\*P. forcipata*; OD]. Thoracic segments 19. *Rec.*, Eu.-Asia.—FIG. 70,6. *\*P. forcipata*, Arctic; head, enl. (168).

### Family STREPTOCEPHALIDAE Daday, 1910

Thoracic somites 11; penes proceeding ventrally close to each other, lacking sharply defined seminal vesicles; one pre-epipodite on each leg; basal parts of penes soft and flexible; antennae of males with "hand" (Fig. 71) (30). *Rec.*

**Streptocephalus** BAIRD, 1852 [*\*S. similis*; OD]. Characters of family (6). *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 70,7. *\*S. similis*, Santo Domingo, W.Indies; ♂, lat. view,  $\times 8$  (6).

### Family THAMNOCEPHALIDAE Simon, 1886

[=*emend.* LINDER, 1941]

Like Streptocephalidae in number of thoracic somites and nature of male genital organs (except for upward loop of vas deferens in first genital somite and retractibility of whole penes); differs in that antennae of males lack "hand"; cercopods densely and uniformly setose along margin, generally thin and slender, rarely broadly leaflike and partly running along sides of abdomen (69, 129). *Rec.*

**Thamnocephalus** PACKARD, 1879 [*\*T. platyurus*; OD]. *Rec.*, N.Am.—FIG. 70,4. *\*T. platyurus*, USA(Kans.); ♂, dorsal view,  $\times 1$  (102).

### Family GILSONICARIDIDAE Van Straelen, 1943

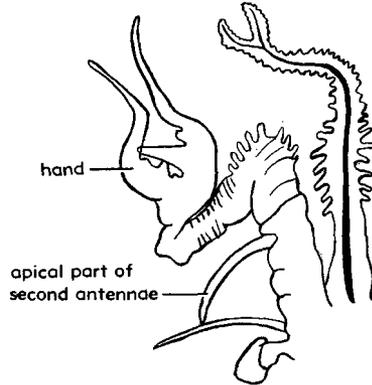
[*nom. correct.* TASCH, herein (*pro* Gilsonicaridae VAN STRAELEN, 1943)]

Trunk segments 18. *L.Dev.*

**Gilsonicaris** VAN STRAELEN, 1943 [*\*G. rhenanus*; OD]. Elongate, regularly segmented body without carapace; 18 trunk somites, of which 11 bear appendages; somites subequal in length, diminishing in size posteriorly; cephalon wider than long and equal in length to first three thoracic somites, divided by longitudinal groove. [Very close to *Branchipodites vectensis* but with many more segments.] *L.Dev.*(*Hunsrück.*), Ger.—FIG. 70, 5. *\*G. rhenana*, Bundenbach; ventral view of thorax and abdomen,  $\times 3$  (151).

### Family UNCERTAIN

**Rochdalia** WOODWARD, 1913 [*\*R. parkeri*; OD]. Head rounded, expanded downward in beaklike



Streptocephalidae

FIG. 71. *Streptocephalus proboscideus*, male, enl. (69).

proboscis; eyes pedunculate; 11 thoracic somites ending in pointed telson; four somites behind head largest, all somites with recurved lobelike swimming feet. *U.Carb.*(*M.Coal Measures*), Eng.—FIG. 70,8. *\*R. parkeri* ROCHDALE; carapace, oblique dorsal view,  $\times 3$  (157).

ROLFE (1967, *Palaeontology*, v. 10, no. 2, p. 307-313) has presented evidence indicating that *Rochdalia*, heretofore thought to be an anostracan, is indistinguishable from a Carboniferous insect nymph of the family Breyeriidae, order Palaeodictyoptera. It is also possible, as has been suggested previously by authors and reiterated by ROLFE, that such presumed anostracan fossils as *Gilsonicaris* and *Branchipusites* may prove to be a myriapod and a trilobitormorph *Arthropleura*, respectively.

## Order LIPOSTRACA Scourfield, 1926

Carapace lacking. Antennae biramous, natatory; trunk limbs about 11 pairs in two series, first three pairs foliaceous and lobed, posterior eight pairs biramous; furcal rami unsegmented, styliform, preceded by another smaller pair of styliform appendages in terminal somite (127). *M.Dev.*

## ANATOMY

The Lipostraca, known only from fossils, are elongated branchiopods. Even so, a fully grown adult reaches a maximum of 3 mm. in length. A bivalved shell or dorsal shield is absent. While the head lacks stalked eyes, it has mouth parts, antennules, and antennae. The antennules are very distinctive, being three-jointed. The essential features, found in the larval forms of other branchiopods, are retained in the antennae.

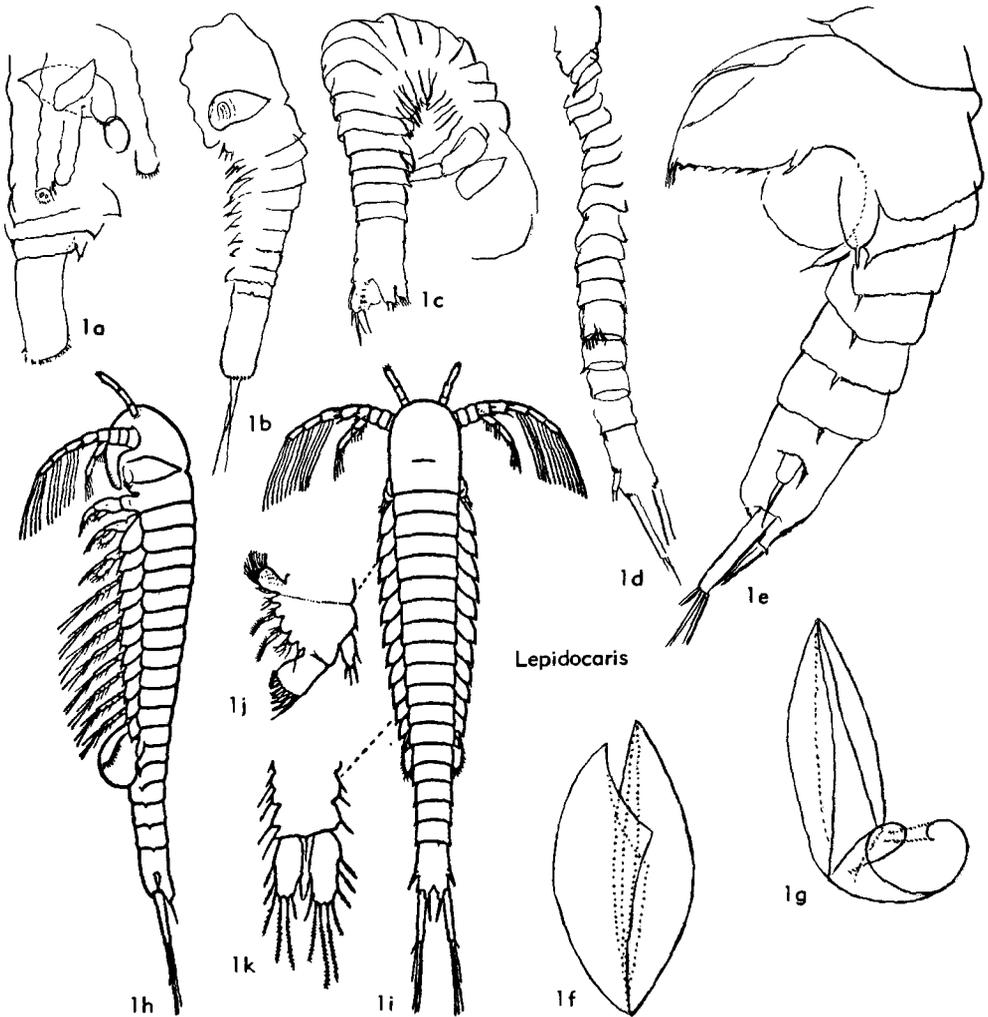


FIG. 72. Lepidocarididae (p. R185).

In adults of both sexes, these are large, biramous, swimming organs. In adult males, the pair of powerful clasp ing organs arise just behind the mandibles and are developed from the maxillules. In this feature they differ importantly from the anostracans, in which the antennae have been modified to give rise to this organ.

It is especially the 11 pairs of trunk limbs that make lipostracans "somewhat peculiar" branchiopods. Two sharply separate series can be distinguished, the first including the front three pairs. Even these, though of usual branchiopod type (i.e., foliaceous), are modified, for their terminal parts are

modified quite uniquely to serve as scraping and rasping organs. The second series of trunk appendages includes the 4th to 11th pairs of limbs, which differ from equivalent pairs in all other branchiopods in having the form of biramous copepod-like swimming feet.

Adult females bear an egg pouch and its cover, which may have developed from modified trunk limbs. In adult males the last two pairs of appendages are modified somewhat from the preceding copepod-type swimming feet.

Finally, the distinctive character of the caudal segment should be noted. It ter-

minates in two short knobs (primary furcae), from the center of which two long articulated processes project backward (secondary furcae). These double furcae are one of several unique lipostracan features.

### GEOLOGIC OCCURRENCE

Lipostracans have so far been found only in the Rhynie Chert, Devonian Old Red, of Scotland. The chert is semitransparent rock, so that a drop of oil on the surface of flakes or thin sections brings out astonishingly minute structural details of lipostracans contained in the chert.

Although microscopic in size, the Lipostraca are abundantly represented by both sexes in various stages of growth from minute larvae with only four somites to fully grown adults (Fig. 72,1). There has never been any doubt that SCOURFIELD'S evidence was adequate to establish a new order. No other trace of pondlife was found with the lipostracans. However, from the same chert beds, arachnids and plant fossils have been described. SCOURFIELD was impressed by the primitive characters seen in lipostracans (such as the biramous II antennae) combined with greater specialization than is found in living anostracans (127). He also noted the absence of associated pondlife. Making these two observations led him to infer that the

environment into which lipostracans fitted must have been "very peculiar." As a result, he favored the postulate that the water in which the Rhynie Chert was deposited may have been hot and highly charged with silica.

TASCH (137), from a review of all published evidence concerning the Rhynie Chert biota concluded that "the fifteen points of difference which SCOURFIELD found between lipostracans and anostracans cannot be attributed to the Rhynie thermal environment." Further, "all mutational effects leading to the appearance of the new crustacean order Lipostraca should be referred to specific variations that occurred outside the Rhynie area."

### Family LEPIDOCARIDIDAE Scourfield, 1926

Characters of order. *M.Dev.*

*Lepidocaris* SCOURFIELD, 1926 [*\*L. rhyniensis*; OD]. Characters of order. *M.Dev.* (*Rhynie Chert, Middle Old Red Sandstone*), Scot.—FIG. 72,1. *\*L. rhyniensis*; 1a, young with four somites,  $\times 2.40$ ; 1b, young with 10 somites,  $\times 150$ ; 1c, half-grown individual,  $\times 130$ ; 1d, adult, with 19 somites,  $\times 150$ ; 1e, female adult (note egg pouch marked by dotted arc),  $\times 130$ ; 1f,g,  $\varnothing$ egg cases,  $\times 210$  (127); 1h,j, lat. and dorsal views of adult female (reconstr. by Scourfield, 127),  $\times 25$ ; 1j,k, appendages of trunk, enl. (169).

### REFERENCES

The following list of publications is not definitive but is selected to serve as a guide to the extensive literature on the branchiopod orders. The index numbers enclosed in parentheses in the column at the left are employed in the text for identification of the publications.

#### Almeida, F. F. M. de

- (1) 1950, *Acantholeaia un novo G nero de Leaiaidae*: Brazil, Min. Agric. Div. Geol. Min., Notas Prelim. Estudos, no. 51, p. 3-6, pl. 1, text-fig. 2-4.

#### Audouin, Victor

- (2) 1837, *Communications*: in Soc. Entomol. France, Ann., v. 6, p. 5-516; Entomol. Bull. (1837), 1<sup>er</sup> Trimestre, p. i-xxxvii; Session, 1 Fev., 1837, p. ix-xi. [Reference to M. AUDOUIN and *Cyzicus* n.g.]

#### Austin, T. S.

- (3) 1942, *The fossil species of Bosmina*: Appendix I, in E. S. DEEVEY, JR., studies of Connecticut lake sediments, III. The biostratonomy of Linsley Pond: Am. Jour. Sci., v. 240, p. 233-264, append. p. 325-331.

#### Baird, W.

- (4) 1843, *The natural history of the British Entomostraca*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, no. 68, v. 11, p. 87-95, pl. 2-3.
- (5) 1849, *Monograph of the family Limnadiadae, a family of entomostracous Crustacea*: Zool. Soc. London, Proc., pt. 17, p. 84-90, pl. 11.
- (6) 1852, *Monograph of the family Branchiopodidae*: Same, v. 20, p. 18-31, pl. 22-23.

#### Barnard, K. H.

- (7) 1929, *Contributions to the crustacean fauna of South Africa. No. 10. A revision of the*

*South African Phyllopoda*: South Afr. Museum Ann., v. 29, p. 188-?, 33 text-fig.

**Bennie, James**

- (8) 1894, *Arctic plants in old lake deposits of Scotland*: Scot. Nat. History, Ann., v. 3, p. 46.

**Berry, E. W.**

- (9) 1926, *Description and notes on the life history of a new species of Eulimnadia*: Am. Jour. Sci., v. 11, p. 429-433.

**Beurlen, Karl**

- (10) 1954, *Um novo gênero de Conchostráceo de família Limnadiidae*: Brazil, Min. Agric. Div. Geol. Min., Notas Prelim. Estudos, no. 83, p. 1-7, text-fig. 1-3.

**Bill, Ph. C.**

- (11) 1913, *Über Crustacean aus dem Voltzien-sandstein des Elsass*: Mitt. Geol. Landesanst. Elsass-Loth., v. 8 (1914), p. 289-338, pl. 10-16, p. 326-327, pl. 15, text-fig. 9-10.

**Birge, E. A.**

- (12) 1918, *The water fleas (Cladocera)*, in H. B. WARD & G. C. WHIPPLE (eds.), *Fresh water biology*: p. 676-740, 110 text-fig., John Wiley & Sons, Inc. (New York).

**Bock, Wilhelm**

- (13) 1953, *American Triassic estherids*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 27, p. 62-76, pl. 11-13.

**Boltovskoy, Esteban**

- (14) 1955, *New reports (Argentina)*: Micro-paleontology, v. 1, no. 4, p. 385.

**Borradaile, L. A., & Potts, F. A.**

- (15) 1958, *The Invertebrata*: Third edit., 763 p., index, Cambridge University Press (Cambridge).

**Brehm, V., Krasske, G., & Krieger, W.**

- (16) 1948, *Subfossile tierische Reste und Algen Schwartzsee bei Kitzbühel*: Österr. Bot. Zeitschr., v. 95, p. 74-83.

**Brooks, J. L.**

- (17) 1953, *Cladocera*, in H. B. WARD & G. C. WHIPPLE (eds.), *Fresh water biology*: Revised edit., unpub. typescript (see 19).
- (18) 1957, *The systematics of North American Daphnia*: Connecticut Acad. Arts & Sci., Mem., v. 13, p. 1-176, 61 text plates.
- (19) 1959, *Cladocera*, in H. B. WARD & G. C. WHIPPLE (eds.), *Fresh water biology*: Second edit., W. T. EDMONDSON (ed.), p. 587-655, New York (John Wiley & Sons).

**Burmeister, H. B.**

- (20) 1846, *The organization of trilobites deduced from their living affinities with a systematic review of the species hitherto described*: 128 p., Ray Society (London).

**Calman, W. T.**

- (21) 1909, *The Branchiopoda*, in E. RAY LANKESTER, *A Treatise on Zoology: Crustacea*, Pt. 7, Appendiculata, 332 p. (Ch. 2, Branchiopoda, p. 29-55), A. & C. Black (London).

**Chang, W. T.**

- (22) 1957, *Some Cretaceous conchostracans from Tsaidam Basin*: Acta Palaeont. Sinica, v. 5, no. 4, p. 507-54, pl. 1-2.
- (23) 1957, *Fossil Conchostraca from the Neng-kiang shale, N. W. Heilungkiang*: Same, v. 5, no. 4, p. 489-501, pl. 1-6.

**Chernyshev [Tschernyshev], B. I.**

- (24) 1934, *O nekotorykh Branchiopoda iz Kuznetskogo basseyna*: Soc. Nat. Leningrad, Sec. Geol. & Mineral., Travaux, v. 63, p. 115-125, 4 text-fig. [*On some Branchiopoda from Kuznetsk Basin.*]
- (25) 1940, *Mesozoic Branchiopoda from Turkestan and Transbaikal*: Akad. Nauk Ukrain. SSR, Inst. Geol. Nauk; Jour. Geol., v. 7, issue 3, p. 5-27, pl. 1-3, 7 text-fig. (English summary, p. 28-43).

**Clarke, J. M.**

- (26) 1882, *New phyllopod crustaceans from the Devonian of western New York*: Am. Jour. Sci., 3rd ser., v. 23, p. 476-477, 1 pl., text-fig. 4.
- (27) 1900, *Note on Paleozoic crustaceans*: New York State Museum, Ann. Rept. 54, v. 1, append. 3, p. 109-110, pl. 4, text-fig. 5-8.

**Conger, P. S.**

- (28) 1939, *The contribution of diatoms to the sediments of Crystal Lake, Vilas County, Wisconsin*: Am. Jour. Sci., v. 237, p. 341-345.

**Copeland, M. J.**

- (29) 1962, *Canadian fossil Ostracoda, Conchostraca, Eurypterida, and Phyllocarida*: Canada, Geol. Survey, Bull. 91, p. 12-16, pl. 3-4.

**Daday de Deés, E. (Jenö)**

- (30) 1910-27, *Monographie systematique des phyllopedes anostracés*: Ann. Sci. Nat. Zool., v. (9) 11 (1910), p. 91-492, 84 text-fig., 5 fig. in appendix; Conchostracés, v. 20 (1915), p. 39-330; Conchostracés, 2<sup>e</sup> pt., v. (10) 6 (1923), p. 255-390; Conchostracés, pt. 3, v. 8 (1925), p. 143-184; Conchostracés, pt. 3, cont'd., v. 9 (1926), p. 1-81; Conchostracés, pt. 3, fin., v. 10 (1927), p. 1-112.
- (31) 1913, *Magyarország kagylós levellábu rakjai*: Math. Term. Közlemenyek, v. 32 (1913), p. 49-145, 13 text-fig. [*Phyllopoda conchostraca Hungariae.*]

- (32) 1913, *Az eddy ismert kagylós levéllábu rákok áttekintése*: Math. Term. Értesítő, v. 31 (1913), p. 559-601. [Übersucht der bisher bekannten Arten der Unterordnung: Phyllopora conchostraca.]
- Dechaseaux, Colette**  
 (33) 1951, *Contribution à la connaissance des esthéries fossiles*: Ann. Paléontologie, v. 37, p. 3-10, pl. 1, 3 text-fig.
- Defretin, Simone [S. Defretin-Lefranc]**  
 (34) 1953, *Quelques conchostracés du Nord-Cameroun*: Serv. Mines Cameroun, Bull., no. 1, p. 111-120, pl. 1-2.  
 (35) 1958, *Remarques à propos de la note de N. I. Novojilov sur quelques Conchostracés chinois et africains*: Ann. Soc. Geol. Nord, v. 67, p. 244-260, pl. 18.
- Depéret, Charles, & Mazeran, P.**  
 (36) 1912, *Les Estheria du Permien d'Autun*: Soc. Hist. Nat. Autun, Bull. 25, p. 167-173, pl. 5, text-fig. 1-4.
- Dexter, R. W.**  
 (37) 1959, *Anostraca*, in H. B. WARD & G. C. WHIPPLE (eds.), *Fresh water biology*: Second edit., W. T. EDMONDSON (ed.), p. 558-570, John Wiley & Sons (New York).  
 (38) 1960, *Unique records of North American phyllopod Crustacea*: Soc. Systematic Zool., New York City Meeting, Dec. 27, 1960 (Abstract).
- Eardley, A. J., & Gvosdetsky, V.**  
 (39) 1960, *Analysis of Pleistocene core from the Great Salt Lake, Utah*: Geol. Soc. America, Bull., v. 71, p. 1323-1344, 1 pl., 2 text-fig.
- Frey, D. G.**  
 (40) 1955, *Längsee: a history of meromixis*: Ist. Ital. Idrobiol., Mem. Suppl., v. 8, p. 141-164.  
 (41) 1958, *The late glacial cladoceran fauna of a small lake*: Arch. Hydrobiol., v. 54, p. 14-270, pl. 35-41, 113 text-fig., 6 tables.  
 (42) 1959, *The taxonomic and phylogenetic significance of the head pores of the Chydoridae (Cladocera)*: Internatl. Rev. Gesamten Hydrobiol. Hydrograph., v. 44, p. 27-50, 71 text-fig.
- Gerstaecker, K. E. A.**  
 (43) 1866, *Gliedenfüßler (Arthropoda)* in H. G. BRONN, *Die Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*: First edit. v. 5, pt. 1, p. 1029, Akad. Verlag. (Leipzig).
- Giebel, C. G.**  
 (44) 1857, *Paläontologische Untersuchungen*: Zeitschr. Naturwiss. v. 10, p. 301-317, pl. 2, text-fig. 6-7.
- Goldenberg, Friedrich**  
 (45) 1873, *Fauna Saraepontona Fossilis: Die fossilen Thiere aus der Steinkohlen-formation von Saarbrücken*: no. 1, p. 1-26, pl. 1, text-fig. 1-25 (Saarbrücken).
- Grochowski, M.**  
 (46) 1896, *Ueber eine neue im Susswasser lebende species von Artemia*: Zool.-bot. Gesell. Wien, Verhandl. v. 45, p. 95, text-fig. 5.
- Groschopf, Paul**  
 (47) 1936, *Die postglaziale Entwicklung des grossen Plöner Sees in Ostholstein auf Grund pollenanalytischer Sedimentuntersuchungen*: Arch. Hydrobiol., v. 30, p. 1-84 (see pages 43 and 72), 4 fig., 7 pl.
- Gurney, Robert**  
 (48) 1923, *Notes on some British and North American species of Apus cancriformis Schaeffer*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 9, fol. 11, p. 496-502.
- Guthörl, Paul**  
 (49) 1934, *Die Arthropoden aus dem Carbon und Perm. des Saar-Nahe-Pfalz Gebietes*: Preuss. Geol. Landesanst. Abhandl., new ser., no. 164, p. 3-219, pl. 1-30.
- Haughton, S. H.**  
 (50) 1924, *The fauna and stratigraphy of the Stormberg Series*: South Afr. Museum, Ann., v. 12, p. 323-495, 55 text-fig.
- Heyden, Carl von**  
 (51) 1861, *Gliederthiere aus der Braunkohle des Niederrhein's der Wetterau und der Rohn*: Palaeontographica, HERMAN v. MEYER (ed.), v. 10, p. 62-63, pl. 10, text-fig. 25.
- Joly, M. N.**  
 (52) 1842, *Recherches zoologiques, anatomiques, et physiologiques sur L'Isaura cycladoïdes; nouveau genre de Crustacé à test bivalve, découvert aux environs de Toulouse*: Ann. Sci. Nat., 2<sup>e</sup> Ser., v. 17, p. 293-349, pl. 7-8, text-fig. 1-45.
- Jones, T. R.**  
 (53) 1862, *A monograph on fossil Estheriae*: Palaeontograph. Soc., Mon., p. 115-117, pl. 1-5.  
 (54) 1897, *On some fossil Entomostraca from Brazil*: Geol. Mag., new ser., v. 4, p. 195-202, pl. 8, text-fig. 1-5.
- Jux, Ulrich**  
 (55) 1960, *Montecaris Lehmanni, a new crustacean from the Rhenish Devonian and the problem of its systematic position*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 34, p. 1129-1152, pl. 142-143, 11 text-fig.
- Keilhack, Ludwig**  
 (56) 1910, *Zur Nomenklatur der deutschen Phyllopoden*: Zool. Ann., v. 3, p. 177-184.
- Kelley, R. W.**  
 (57) 1956, *Natality factors of selected species of phyllopods*: Univ. of Missouri (unpublished doctor's thesis), 150 p., 9 text-fig., appendix.

**Kobayashi, Teiichi**

- (58) 1954, *Fossil estherians and allied fossils*: Tokyo Univ., Jour. Fac. Sci., v. 9, sec. 2, pt. 1, p. 1-192, 30 text-fig.

———, & **Huzita, Asahi**

- (59) 1943, *Estherites and its relation to the genera of living estherids*: Imp. Acad. (Japan), Proc., v. 19, no. 3, p. 161-167.

- (60) 1943, *On Estherites new genus*: Japan, Geol. Soc., Jour., v. 50, no. 598, p. 196-202.

———, & **Kusumi, H.**

- (61) 1953, *A study of Estherites middendorffii (Jones)*: Japanese Jour. Geol. & Geog., v. 23, p. 1-28, text-fig. 2.

**Kummerow, E. H. E.**

- (62) 1939, *Die Ostracoda und Phyllopoden des deutschen Unterkarbons*: K. Preuss. Geol. Landesanst., Abhandl., new ser., no. 194, p. 78-89, pl. 7.

**Kurz, Wilhelm**

- (63) 1874, *Dodekas neuer Cladoceran nebst einer kurzen Übersicht der Cladocerenfauna Böhmens*: K. Akad. Wiss. Wien, Math.-Naturwiss. Cl., Sitzungsber., v. 70 (1875), no. 1-5, p. 7-87, pl. 1-3.

**Lea, Isaac**

- (64) 1855, *Description of a new mollusk from the Red Sandstone near Pottsville, Pa.*: Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia, Proc., v. 7, p. 340-341, pl. 4.

**Leach, A.**

- (65) 1819, *Dictionnaire des sciences naturelles entomostracés*: v. 14, p. 453.

**Lehmann, W. M.**

- (66) 1955, *Vachonia rogeri, n. gen., n. sp., ein Branchiopod aus dem unterdevonischen Hunsrückschiefer*: Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 29, p. 126-130, pl. 11, 12, text-fig. 1, 2.

**Lilljeborg, Wilhelm**

- (67) 1900, *Cladocera Sueciae*: 701 p., 87 pl., E. Berling (Uppsala).

**Linder, Folke**

- (68) 1933, *Die Branchiopoden des arktischen Gebietes*, in: FRITZ RÖMER & FRITZ SCHAUDINN, *Fauna Arctica*; v. 6, no. 111, p. 183-204 (Jena).

- (69) 1941, *Contributions to the morphology and the taxonomy of the Branchiopoda Anostraca*: Zool. Bidrag. Uppsala, v. 20, p. 101-302, pl. 1, text-fig. 1-45.

- (70) 1945, *Affinities within the Branchiopoda with notes on some dubious fossils*: Arkiv Zoologi, v. 37A, p. 1-28, text-fig. 1-10.

- (71) 1952, *Contributions to the morphology and taxonomy of the Branchiopoda Notostraca with special reference to North American species*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 102 (no. 3291), pl. 1-69, text-fig. 1-31, pl. 1-7.

**Longhurst, A. R.**

- (72) 1954, *Reproduction in Notostraca (Crustacea)*: Nature, v. 173, p. 781.

- (73) 1955, *Evolution in the Notostraca*: Evolution, v. 9, p. 84-86.

- (74) 1955, *A review of the Notostraca*: British Museum (Nat. History), Bull. (Zoology), v. 3, no. 1, p. 1-54, 16 text-fig.

**Lovén, Sven**

- (75) 1845 (1846), *Fyra nya arter af Sötvattens-Crustacéen från södra Afrika*: [K.] Svenska Vetenskaps-Akad. Handl. (1845), p. 427-439, pl. 3-6. (Article bears date: 11, Feb., 1846.)

**Lundquist, G.**

- (76) 1923, *Bodenablagerungen und Entwicklungstypen der Seen*, in: Die Binnengewässer by AUGUST THIENEMANN, v. 2, 122 p., 14 pl., 60 text-fig., E. Schweizerbart (Stuttgart).

**Lynch, J. E.**

- (77) 1960, *The fairy shrimp Branchinecta campestris from northwestern United States (Crustacea: Phyllopoda)*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 112, p. 549-561.

**Lytkevich, E. M.**

- (78) 1929, *Phyllopoda srenego Devona Severo-Zapadnoy oblasti*: Geologisch. Komitet, Izvestia, v. 48, no. 5 (1929, English summary, p. 137-143, pl. 36, text-fig. 1-21b). [*Phyllopoda from middle Devonian of the Northwest Province.*]

- (79) 1939, *Phyllopoda*, in: Atlas of leading forms of fossil faunas of the U.S.S.R.: Permian, v. 6, p. 190-193; 264-65, pl. 46, text-fig. 1-5. [*Phyllopodids.*]

- (80) 1941, *Phyllopoda permskikh olozheniy Evropeyskoy Kargaly i ikh otnosheniya*: in: Paleontology of the U.S.S.R., v. 5, pt. 10, no. 1 (English summary, p. 33-44, pl. 1-3). [*The Phyllopoda of the Permian deposits of the European part of U.S.S.R.*]

**Mailleaux, Eugene**

- (81) 1939, *Un conchostracé nouveau de l'assise des grès et schistes de Wépion (Emsien inférieur)*: Muséé Royal Histoire Nat. Belgique, Bull., v. 15, no. 10, p. 4-6, text-fig. 1a, 1b, 2.

**Marlière, René**

- (82) 1950, *Ostracodes et phyllopodés au Système Karroo au Congo Belge*: Musée Congo Belge, Ann., Sci. Géol., sér. 8, v. 6, p. 30-31, pl. 3, fig. 4-5, text-fig. 2a, 2b.

**Mathias, Paul**

- (83) 1937, *Biologie des Crustacés Phyllopodés*: 106 p., 8 text-fig., Hermann et Cie (Paris).

**Mattox, N. T.**

- (84) 1939, *Description of two new species of the genus Eulimnadia and notes on the other*

- phyllopods of Illinois*: Am. Midland Naturalist, v. 22, p. 642-653, pl. 1-6.
- (85) 1939, *Studies of the development of the eggs and nauplii of a phyllopod belonging to the genus Cyzicus (Estheria)*: Anatomical Record, v. 75, p. 98-99.
- (86) 1950, *Notes on the life history and description of a new species of conchostracan phyllopod, Caenestheriella gynecia*: Am. Micros. Soc., Trans., v. 69, p. 50-53.
- (87) 1957, *A new estheriid conchostracan with a review of other North American forms*: Am. Midland Naturalist, v. 58 (2), p. 367-377.
- Mayr, Ernst, Linsley, E. G., & Usinger, R. L.**
- (88) 1953, *Methods and principles of systematic zoology*: 284 p., McGraw-Hill (New York).
- Mendes, J. C.**
- (89) 1954, *Conchostracos permianos do sul do Brasil*, in *Paleontologia do Paraná*: p. 153-164, pl. 12-14, Museu Paranaense (Curitiba, Paraná, Brasil).
- Messiatzev, I. I.**
- (90) 1924, *Die fossile Fauna der Seen in Kossino*: Arbeit. Biol. Sta. Kossino (bei Moskau), no. 1 (1924), p. 16-26, text-fig. 1-16.
- Miroshnichenko, B. E.**
- (91) 1956, *Otryad Phyllopoda*: in L. D. KIPARISOVA, et al. (ed.), *Materialy po Paleontologii (Novye semeistva i rody)*: Vsesoy. Nauchno-Issledov. Geol. Inst. (VSEGEI), new ser., v. 12, Paleont., p. 84-85, pl. 18, text-fig. 3, 4. [*Order Phyllopoda*.]
- Mitchell, John**
- (92) 1925, *Descriptions of new species of Leaila*: Linnean Soc. New South Wales, v. 1, pt. 5, p. 438-447, pl. 51-53.
- Newton, R. E.**
- (93) 1910, *Note on some fossil non-marine Mollusca and a bivalved crustacean Estheriella from Nyasaland*: Geol. Soc. London, Quart. Jour., v. 66, append. 2, p. 239-248, pl. 19, text-fig. 15-18.
- Novozhilov [Novojilov], Nestor**
- (94) 1946, *New Phyllopoda from the Permian and Triassic deposits of the Nordvick-Khatanga Region*: Nedra Arktiki, no. 1, p. 172-202, pl. 1-3 (English Summary, p. 194-202).
- (95) 1954, *Crustacés phyllopoles du Jurassique supérieur et du Crétacé de la Mongolie*: Acad. Sci., URSS Inst. Paléont., Travaux, v. 48, p. 7-124, 17 pl., 75 text-fig.
- (96) 1956, *Crustacés phyllopoles bivalves. I. Leailidae*: Akad. Nauk. SSSR, Inst. Paleont., Travaux, v. 61, 128 p., 14 pl.
- (97) 1957, *Un nouvel ordre d'arthropodes par-*
- ticuliers: Kazacharthra du Lias des monts Ketmen*: (Kazakhstan SE., U.R.S.S.); Soc. Géol. France, Bull., 6<sup>e</sup> ser., v. 7, p. 171-184, pl. 14, 15.
- (98) 1958, *Recueil d'articles sur les phyllopoles conchostracés*: Ann. Mines, Bur. Rech. Géol., Géophys. & Min., Serv. Inf. Géol. (Jan., 1958) no. 26, 117 p.
- (99) 1958, *Crustacés bivalves de l'ordre des conchostracés du Crétacé inférieur chinois et africain*: Ann. Soc. Géol. Nord, v. 67, p. 235-243, pl. 17.
- (100) 1959, *Position systématique des Kazacharthra (Arthropodes) d'après de nouveaux matériaux des monts Ketmen et Sajkan (Kazakhstan), S.E. et N.E.*: Soc. Géol. France, Bull., 7<sup>e</sup> ser., v. 1, p. 265-269, pl. 8, 9.
- Pacht, Raimund**
- (101) 1849, *Der devonische Kalk in Livland; Ein Beitrag zur Geognosie der Ostseeprovinzen*: 52 p. (Dorpat).
- Packard, A. S.**
- (102) 1883, *A monograph of the phyllopod Crustacea of North America with remarks on the order Phyllocarida*: U. S. Geol. Survey, Terr., 12th Ann. Rept. (F. V. Hayden, Geol.), p. 295-590, 39 pl.
- Palmer, A. R., & Bassett, A. M.**
- (103) 1954, *Non-marine Miocene arthropods from California*: Science, v. 120, p. 228-229.
- , et al.
- (104) 1957, *Miocene arthropods from the Mojave Desert, California*: U. S. Geol. Survey, Prof. Paper 294-G, p. 237-275, pl. 30-34, text-fig. 83-101.
- Parenzan, P.**
- (105) 1932, *Cladocera, Sistematica e corologia dei Cladoceri limnicoli italiani ed appendice sui Cladoceri in generale*: Scientia, Mem. no. 8, ser. B, 340 p., 31 pl.
- Pavlovskij, E N., & Lepneva, S. G.**
- (106) 1948, *Les Crustacés inférieur (Entomostracés) les Phyllopoles vrais (Euphyllopoda)*, in *Recherches sur la vie des animaux d'eau douce Moscou*; Edit. d'état de la Science Soviétique, Gosud. Nauch-Issledov. Inst. (Gosnauchizdat), ch. 19, p. 318-324, 2 pl.
- Pennak, R. W.**
- (107) 1953, *Fresh water invertebrates of the United States*: 740 p., Ronald Press (New York).
- Poulsen, E. M.**
- (108) 1944, *Entomostracans from the late-glacial lacustrine deposit at Naestved, Denmark*: Dansk Geol. Foren., Medd., v. 10, p. 405-416.

**Pruvost, Pierre**

- (109) 1911, *Note sur les Entomostracés bivalves du Terrain Houiller du Nord de la France*: Soc. Géol. Nord, Ann., v. 40, p. 60-78, pl. 1-2.
- (110) 1919, *Introduction a l'étude du Terrain Houiller du Nord et du Pas-de-Calais. La Faune Continentale du Terrain Houiller du Nord de la France*: Minist. Travaux Publ., Mém., p. 63, 64, pl. 24, text-fig. 34-35a.

**Raymond, P. E.**

- (111) 1946, *The genera of fossil Conchostraca—an order of bivalved Crustacea*: Harvard Univ., Museum Comp. Zoology, Bull., v. 96, no. 3, p. 218-307, pl. 1-6, text-fig. 1-6.

**Reed, F. R. C.**

- (112) 1929, *Novos phyllopodos fosseis do Brazil*: Serv. Geol. & Mineral., Brasil, Bol., v. 34, p. 12-14, pl., text-fig. 1-18.

**Richard, Jules**

- (113) 1895, *Sur quelques Crustacés Phyllopodés de la Basse-Californie*: Soc. Zool. France, Bull., v. 20, p. 102.

**Rossolimo, L.**

- (114) 1927, *Atlas tierische Überreste in Torf und Sapropel*: Volkskommissariat f. Landwirtschaft R.S.F.S.R., Zentrale Torfstation, Moscow (German text), p. 27-48, 9 pl.

**Ruedemann, Rudolf**

- (115) 1922, *On the occurrence of an Apus in the Permian of Oklahoma*: Jour. Geology, v. 30, p. 311-318, text-fig. 1-5.

**Rusconi, Carlos**

- (116) 1946, *Varias especies de trilobitos y estherias del Cambrico de Mendoza*: Soc. Hist. y Geogr. Cuyo, v. 1, p. 239-246, pl. 1, text-fig. 1-6.
- (117) 1948, *Algunos especies de Estherias del Triasico de Mendoza*: Museo Historia Nat. Mendoza, Rev., v. 2, p. 199-202, 5 text-fig.

**Rylov, W. M.**

- (118) 1935, *Das Zooplankton der Binnengewasser*, in *Die Binnengewasser*, by AUGUST THIENEMANN: v. 15, 224 p., E. Schweizerbart (Stuttgart).

**Sars, G. O.**

- (119) 1862, *Oversigt de af ham i Omegnen af Christiania iattagne Crustacea Cladocera*: Vidensk. - Selsk., Kristiania, Forhandl. (1861), p. 144-157 and 250-302.
- (120) 1867, *Histoire naturelle des Crustacés d'eau douce Norvège*: 145 p., 10 pl., C. Johnson (Christiania).
- (121) 1887, *On Cyclestheria hislopi (Baird) a new generic type of bivalve Phyllopoda*;

*raised from dried Australian mud*: Vidensk. Selsk. Forhandl., Kristiania no. 1, p. 3-60, pl. 1-8.

- (122) 1896, *Fauna Norvegiae. Descriptions of the Norwegian species at present known, belonging to the suborders Phyllocarida and Phyllopoda*: Same, v. 1, p. 1-120, pl. 1-20 (Conchostraca, p. 83-117, pl. 14-20).
- (123) 1898, *On some South-African Phyllopoda raised from dried mud*: Arch. Math. Naturvidens., v. 20, no. 4, p. 3-43, pl.
- (124) 1898, *Description of two additional South African Phyllopoda*: Same, v. 20, no. 6, p. 6-20, pl. 1-3.
- (125) 1899, *On some Indian Phyllopoda*: Same, v. 22, no. 9, p. 3-27, pl. 1-4.

**Schimper, W. P.**

- (126) 1840, "Communication" dated March 14, 1840: STRASSBURG in Neues Jahrb. Min. Geol., p. 336-338.

**Scourfield, D. J.**

- (127) 1926, *On a new type of crustacean from the Old Red Sandstone (Rhynie Chert Bed, Aberdeenshire)—Lepidocaris rhyniensis gen. et sp. nov.*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, v. 214, p. 153-187, pl. 21, 22, text-fig. 1-51.
- (128) 1941, *The Entomostraca of the bottom deposits of Windermere*: Linnean Soc. London, Proc. (Nov., 1940-July, 1941), p. 253-258.

**Simon, M. E.**

- (129) 1886, *Etude sur les crustacés du sous-order des phyllopodés*: Soc. Entomol. France, Ann., 6<sup>e</sup> ser., v. 6, p. 393-460, pl. 1-3.

**Soergel, W.**

- (130) 1928, *Apodiden aus dem Chirotherium Sandstein*: Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 10, p. 11-42.

**Spandl, Hermann**

- (131) 1925, *Euphyllopoda*, in PAUL SCHULTZE (ed.), *Biologie der Tiere Deutschlands*: pt. 14, p. 14.2-14.22 (Berlin).

**Spencer, B., & Hall, T. S.**

- (132) 1896, *Report of the Horn Expedition. Central Australia*: pt. 2 (Zoology), p. 238-244, pl. 21-23, Dulau & Co. (London).

**Stebbing, T. R. R.**

- (133) 1902, *Lynceidae*: Zoologist, p. 101.
- (134) 1910, *General catalogue of South African Crustacea*: South Afr. Museum, Ann., v. 6, p. 401-494.

**Swain, F. M.**

- (135) 1956, *Stratigraphy of lake deposits in central and northern Minnesota*: Am. Assoc. Petroleum Geologists, Bull., v. 40, p. 600-653, 29 text-fig.

**Tasch, Paul**

- (136) 1956, *Three general principles for a system of classification of fossil conchostracans*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 30, p. 1248-1257.
- (137) 1957, *Flora and fauna of the Rhynie chert: a paleoecological reevaluation of published evidence*: Wichita Univ., Bull., v. 32, Univ. Stud., no. 36, p. 1-24, text-fig. 1-7, append. 1, 2 (A complete bibliography of the Rhynie Chert biota).
- (138) 1958, *Note on Bileia Kobayashi, 1954, nom. nud. [corr: nom. dub.]*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 32, p. 637-638, fig. 1.
- (139) 1958, *Novojilov's classification of fossil conchostracans—a critical evaluation*: Same, v. 32, p. 1094-1106, 33 text-fig.
- (140) 1960, *Conchostracan genus Anomalonema in the American Pennsylvanian*: Same, v. 34, p. 285-289, pl. 42.
- (141) 1961, *Pemphilmnadiopsidae, a new family of fossil conchostracans*: Same, v. 36, p. 1117-1120, pl. 132.
- (142) 1961, *Data on some new Leonardian conchostracans with observations on the taxonomy of the family Vertexiidae*: Same, v. 35, p. 1121-1129, pl. 131-134.
- (143) 1961, *Paleolimnology, Part II: Harvey and Sedgwick Counties, Kansas: Stratigraphy and Biota*: Same, v. 35, p. 836-865, pl. 97-98, 6 text-fig.
- (144) 1961, *Valve injury and repair in living and fossil conchostracan valves*: Kansas Acad. Sci., Trans., v. 64 (2), p. 144-149, text-fig. 1-5.
- (145) 1962, *Taxonomy and evolutionary significance of two new conchostracan genera from the midcontinent Wellington*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 36, p. 817-821, pl. 120.
- , & Zimmerman, J. R.  
 (146) 1961, *Fossil and living conchostracan distribution in Kansas-Oklahoma across a 200-million-year time gap*: Science, v. 133, no. 3452, p. 584-586, fig. 1, table 1.
- (147) 1961, *Comparative ecology of living and fossil conchostracans in a seven county area of Kansas and Oklahoma*: Wichita Univ., Bull., v. 36, Univ. Stud. no. 47, p. 1-14, 1 text-fig.

**Trusheim, Ferdinand**

- (148) 1931, *Aktuo-paläontologische Beobachtungen an Triops cancriformis Schaeffer (Crust. Phyll.)*: Senckenbergiana, v. 13, p. 234-243.
- (149) 1938, *Triopsiden (Crust. Phyll.) aus dem Keuper Frankreichs*: Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 19, p. 198-216, pl. 13-14, 10 text-fig.

**Uéno, Masuzo**

- (150) 1927, *The freshwater Branchiopoda of Japan, I*: Kyoto Imp. Univ., Mem. Coll. Sci., ser. B, v. 2, p. 259-311, pl. 1-31.

**Van Straelen, Victor**

- (151) 1943, *Gilsonicaris rhenanus nov. gen., nov. sp., branchiopode anostracé de l'éodévonien du Hunsrück*: Musée Royal Histoire Nat. Belgique, Bull., v. 19, no. 56, p. 1-10, 1 pl.

**Verrill, A. E.**

- (152) 1869, *Descriptions of some new American phyllopod Crustacea*: Am. Jour. Sci., v. 48, p. 244.
- (153) 1870, *Observations on phyllopod Crustacea of the family Branchiopodidae*: Am. Assoc. Advanc. Sci., Proc. (1869), v. 10, p. 238.

**Weiss, C. E.**

- (154) 1875, *Notes on Estheria (Estheriella) costata and Estheria (Estheriella) lineata Weiss*: Deutsch. Geol. Gesell., Zeitschr., v. 27, p. 710-712.

**Wilson, J. L.**

- (155) 1956, *Stratigraphic position of the Upper Devonian branchiopod Rhabdostichus in the Williston Basin*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 30, p. 959-980.

**Woodward, Henry**

- (156) 1877, *On the occurrence of Branchipus (or Chirocephalus) in a fossil state*: Geol. Soc. London, Quart. Jour. (1879), p. 432-450.
- (157) 1913, *Rochdalia parkeri, a new branchiopod crustacean from the middle Coal Measures of Sparth, Rochdale*: Geol. Mag., v. 10, p. 352-356.

**Wright, M. C.**

- (158) 1920, *Limnetheria: A new conchostracan genus from the Kilkenny Coal Measures*: Royal Irish Acad., Proc., v. 35, sec. B, p. 187-203, pl. 24-25.

**Yokoyama, M.**

- (159) 1894, *Mesozoic plants from Kozuke, Kii, Awa, and Tosa*: Tokyo Imp. Univ., Jour. Coll. Sci., v. 7, Art. 3, p. 230-231, pl. 21, text-fig. 13.

**Zemp, Franz**

- (160) 1943, *Funde von Kleintierrelikten im neolithischen Wauwiler See*: Zeitschr. Hydrol., Hydrograph., Hydrobiol., v. 9, p. 50-70.

(161) Chernyshev, B. I., 1948

(162) Mitchell, G. F., 1957

(163) Mitchell, J., 1927

(164) Novozhilov, Nestor, 1955

(165) ———, & Varentsov, Ig., 1956

(166) Ozawa, Y., & Watanabe, T., 1923

(167) Schultze, Paul, 1925

(168) Smirnov, S. S., 1940

(169) Størmer, Leif, 1944

(170) Tasch, Paul, n (a), after Ruedemann; (b), from syntype? MCZ (Harvard) 6292; (c), after photograph by A. R. Palmer

## MYSTACOCARIDA

By ROBERT R. HESSLER

[Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution]

[Submitted December, 1961]

### GENERAL FEATURES

The mystacocarids are very minute crustaceans, fully developed adults having a length of only 0.5 mm. Their elongate body (Fig. 73,*A*) is divided into cephalon, maxilliped segment, and thoraco-abdomen.

The cephalon is about one-third the length of the body and bears antennules (first antennae), antennae (second antennae), mandibles, maxillules (first maxillae), and maxillae (second maxillae) (Fig. 73). The anterior end of the cephalon is marked off from the remainder by a deep constriction and is characterized by a pair of anterolateral indentations and a single anteromedial indentation. This anterior division of the head carries the antennules and, dorsally, paired simple eyes (ocelli) (Fig. 73,*B*). Ventrally, a very long labrum extends posteriorly past the end of the cephalon to the region of the maxilliped somite (Fig. 73,*A*).

Functionally the maxilliped is a cephalic limb (Fig. 73,*G*), although the maxilliped somite is not fused to the cephalic complex. However, because of the nature of the musculature, movement of the maxilliped somite with the first thoracic somite is freer than with the cephalon.

Following the maxilliped somite are four thoracomeres bearing reduced limbs. In all other respects these thoracic somites do not differ from the five which follow them, and functionally the two groups of somites cannot be considered as separate tagma. DAHL (1) has labeled the nine somites, plus the telson, as the thoraco-abdomen. A caudal furca occurs at the end of the telson (Fig. 73,*A*).

Pairs of toothed irregular furrows (Fig. 73,*B*) are found dorsolaterally on the posterior end of the cephalon and on the maxilliped somite. Homologous to these are a pair of regular dorsoventral furrows,

also toothed, located laterally on each of the thoracoabdominal somites except the telson. The function of these furrows is not known.

### APPENDAGES

The antennules are uniramous and consist of eight segments. Each segment carries setae, usually distributed in an irregular, distal crown. This rather inflexible appendage is directed strongly forward and is probably primarily sensory in function.

The antennae (Fig. 73,*C*) are biramous. A fringe of conspicuous setae runs down the ventral edge of the nine-segmented exopod, with setal length increasing distally. The endopod has four segments which bear a few stiff medioventral setae. Subdivision of the protopod is unclear.

The mandibles (Fig. 73,*D*) are strikingly like the antennae. The exopod has seven or eight segments, of which the basal ones never bear setae. The three- or four-segmented endopod carries setae on the medial edge of all its segments. A masticatory process projects from the protopod medially under the labrum. Both the mandibles and antennae function in feeding, as well as locomotion.

The uniramous maxillule (Fig. 73,*E*) consists of a four-segmented endopod and a protopod of uncertain subdivision. It bears large, stout setae which are particularly concentrated on the distal segment, where they aid locomotion, and on the basal two segments, where they are used in feeding.

The maxillae (Fig. 73,*F*) are like the maxillules in form, segmentation, and general setation, but their protopodial segments are even more richly supplied with trophic setae.

In *Derocheilocaris typicus* PENNAK & ZINN, and *D. remanei* DELAMARE DEBOUTTEVILLE & CHAPPUIS, the maxilliped is a biram-

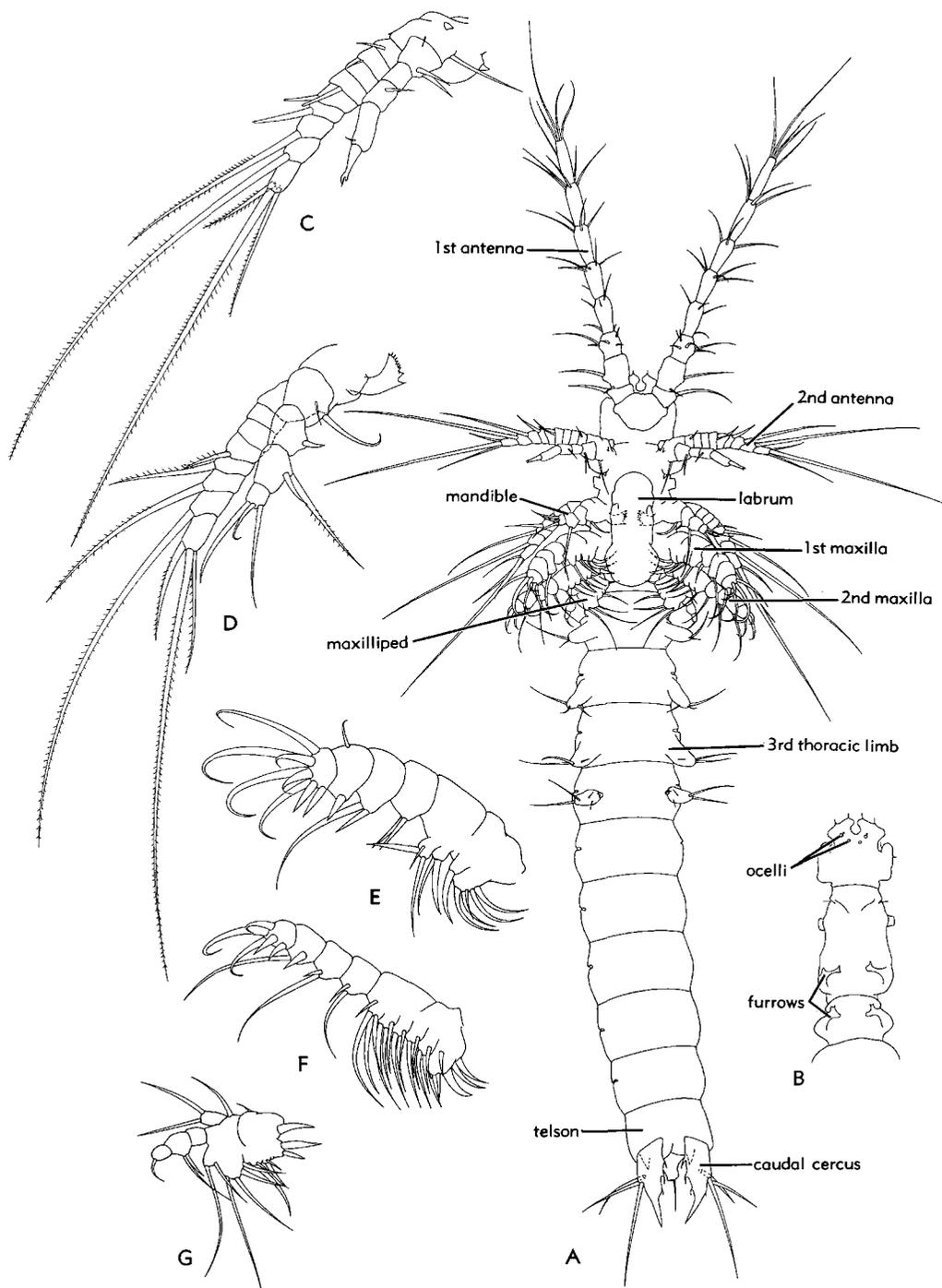


FIG. 73. Morphology of typical adult mystacocarid, *Derocheilocaris typicus* PENNAK & ZINN.—A. Complete specimen, ventral view.—B. Cephalon and maxilliped somite, dorsal view.—C. Antenna.—D. Mandible.—E. Maxillule.—F. Maxilla.—G. Maxilliped (A,B,  $\times 250$ ; C-G,  $\times 500$ ) (Hessler, n).

## MODE OF LIFE

Both larva and adult are totally benthonic, living in the interstitial spaces between sand grains. Their elongate body form is typical of arthropods living in this habitat. Mystacocarids are best known from intertidal beaches, but they occur in subtidal sand as well.

## AFFINITIES

The Mystacocarida are thought to be related to the Copepoda, as suggested by the similar tagmosis of the two classes, and by the similarity of the cephalic limbs. Yet it is clear that mystacocarids are more primitive than copepods, for they possess features which unite them to other classes as well. The musculature of the antennules is like that of the cephalocarids and larval branchiopods. The nerve cord is a simple ladder resembling that of the branchiopods, but is even similar to that of the cephalocarids. The cephalic limbs, although like those of the copepods, are most easily related to the cephalocarid condition. Indeed, the mystacocarid mandible, because of its unreduced condition in adults and close similarity to the antenna, is even more primitive than that of cephalocarids. Finally, although the maxillipeds functionally are cephalic appendages, the somite bearing them is free and appears to be only now in the process of cephalization.

## DISTRIBUTION

The Mystacocarida are an unusually conservative group. Not only do all the species closely resemble each other, but individual species have extremely wide geographic ranges (4, 6). *Derocheilocaris typicus* extends from Massachusetts to Florida and lives in microenvironments varying from subarctic at one end of this range to tropical at the other. *D. remanei* extends from the Atlantic coast of France, into the Mediterranean, down the coast of Africa, and around the Cape of Good Hope into the Indian Ocean as far as Durban. These extensive ranges exist in spite of the fact that both adults and larvae are entirely infaunal, with the result that gene flow must be very limited.

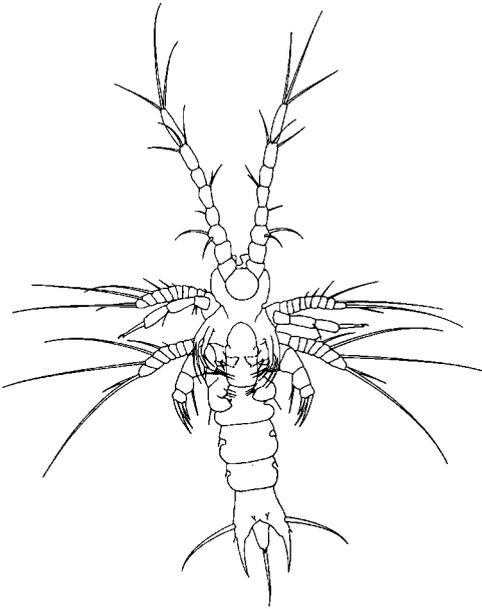


Fig. 74. Stage one metanaupliar larva of *Derocheilocaris typicus* PENNAK & ZINN, ventral view,  $\times 250$ . At this stage, only antennules, antennae, mandibles, and rudimentary maxillules are present (Hessler, n).

ous limb with a foliaceous protopod (Fig. 73,G) (2-4, 6). The endopod has three segments, whereas the exopod is unjointed. In *D. galvarini* DAHL, both endopod and exopod are absent. This limb probably functions only in feeding.

The much-reduced, unjointed limbs of the first four thoracoabdominal somites are nearly immobile. The third pair of limbs bears the genital pore in both sexes and the fourth limb of the male is modified for copulation.

Stout, claw-like caudal rami are used for grooming and to give purchase as the animal moves forward.

## DEVELOPMENT

The development of the Mystacocarida is gradual, beginning with a nauplius (Fig. 74) or metanauplius having four post-cephalic somites. Limbs and somites appear gradually. There are no metamorphic changes in limb morphology except the eventual loss of the naupliar process of the antennae and mandibles.

## Class MYSTACOCARIDA

Pennak & Zinn, 1943

Body divided into cephalon, maxilliped somite, and thoracoabdomen of ten somites (including telson). Antennules uniramous. Antennae and mandibles similar, biramous; fewer segments on endopods than on multi-articulate exopods. Maxillules and maxillae similar, uniramous, multisegmented; maxillipeds either lacking rami or bearing reduced exopods and endopods. Thoracic limbs reduced. Caudal cerci present. Nerve cord ladder-like, with short commissures. Labrum large. Total size of adult about 0.5 mm. *Rec.*

Since the class is monogeneric, it is not possible to characterize separately the class, order, family, and genus.

## Order MYSTACOCARIDIDA

Pennak & Zinn, 1943

[*nom. correct.* HESSLER, herein (*pro* order *Mystacocarida* PENNAK & ZINN, 1943)]

Characters of class. *Rec.*

## Family DEROCHEILOCARIDIDAE

Pennak & Zinn, 1943

[*nom. correct.* HESSLER, herein (*pro* *Derocheilocaridae* PENNAK & ZINN, 1943)]

Characters of order. *Rec.*

*Derocheilocaris* PENNAK & ZINN, 1943, p. 4 [*\*D. typicus*; OD]. Characters of family. *Rec.*, N.Am.-S.Am.-SW.Eu.-Medit.-Afr.—FIG. 73, 74. *\*D. typicus*, N.Am.(Atl. Coast); 73, *A-G*, adult, showing morphological features, 73, *A,B*,  $\times 250$ , 73, *C-G*,  $\times 500$ ; 74, early naupliar larva,  $\times 250$  (Hessler, n).

## REFERENCES

Dahl, Erik

(1) 1952, *Mystacocarida*: Lunds Univ. Årsskrift, new ser., sec. 2, v. 48, no. 6, 41 p., 25 text-fig.

Delamare Deboutteville, Claude

(2) 1954, *Le développement postembryonnaire des Mystacocarides*: Arch. Zoologie Exp. Gén., v. 91, no. 1, p. 25-54, 8 text-fig.

(3) 1960, *Biologie des eaux souterraines littorales et continentales*: 740 p., 254 text-fig., 1 pl. Hermann Press (Paris).

———, & Chappuis, P. A.

(4) 1954, *Morphologie des Mystacocarides*: Arch. Zoologie Exp. Gén., v. 91, no. 1, p. 7-24, 10 text-fig.

Hessler, R. R., & Sanders, H. L.

(5) 1965, *Derocheilocaris typicus (Mystacocarida) revisited*: *Crustaceana* (in press).

Pennak, R. W., & Zinn, D. J.

(6) 1943, *Mystacocarida, a new order of Crustacea from intertidal beaches in Massachusetts and Connecticut*: *Smithsonian Misc. Coll.*, v. 103, no. 9, 11 p., 2 pl.

# OSTRACODA

By RAYMOND C. MOORE

The bivalved crustaceans termed ostracodes are represented by nearly 1,000 described genera which range in age distribution from Cambrian to Recent. They include innumerable species known only as fossils and countless collected individual specimens are referred to them. As a group their paleontological importance merits special attention. Accordingly, they have been assigned a *Treatise* volume (Part Q, 442 p., 1961) that removes them from a place in taxonomic sequence of the divisions of Crustacea described and illustrated in the present volume.

The following outline of main divisions of the Ostracoda is given, changed from that published in Part Q by elevating the

rank of the assemblage to class, matching others such as Branchiopoda, Cirripedia, Malacostraca, and by omission of superfamilies.

### Main Divisions of Ostracoda

Class OSTRACODA Latreille, 1806

Order ARCHAEOCOPIDA Sylvester-Bradley, 1961

Order LEPERDITICOPIDA Scott, 1961

Order PALAEOCOPIDA Henningsmoen, 1953

Suborder BEYRICHICOPINA Scott, 1961

Suborder KLOEDENELLOCOPINA Scott, 1961

Order PODOCOPIDA Sars, 1866

Suborder PODOCOPINA Sars, 1866

Suborder METACOPINA Sylvester-Bradley, 1961

Suborder PLATYCOPINA Sars, 1866

Order MYODOCOPIDA Sars, 1866

Suborder MYODOCOPINA Sars, 1866

Suborder CLADOCOPINA Sars, 1866

## EUTHYCARINOIDEA

By RAYMOND C. MOORE

[University of Kansas]

## INTRODUCTION

Euthycarinooids are a distinctive group of arthropods which combine some characteristics of merostomes and diplopods with features that are judged to indicate proper placement of them among the Crustacea. They are known only as Lower Triassic fossils from northern Alsace and Moselle in the Saar region and from the Middle Triassic of Australia. The first ones discovered were three rather poorly preserved specimens which HANDLIRSCH (1914) described. He made reconstructions that prove to be erroneous in various ways and interpreted the fossils to be archaic copepods. He named the species *Euthycarcinus kessleri* and because it fitted no recognized group of copepods, erected for it a new order termed Archicopepoda. Not until a half century later has significant information been obtained, so that meanwhile archicopepods have remained as a puzzling, little-understood group, supposedly related to the copepods. An exceptionally fine contribution to knowledge of these fossils recently has been published by GALL & GRAUVOGEL (1964), based on more than 100 specimens, most of which are beautifully preserved. Plates accompanying the descriptions given by these authors adequately document important revisions of HANDLIRSCH's work both in respect to morphology and to interpretation of relationships. They reject the order Archicopepoda as a misnomer and introduce in its place the new name Euthycarinoidea, with proposal that it should be applied to an independent subclass of the Crustacea.

## MORPHOLOGY

Euthycarinooids have a moderately slender elongate body which is divisible into three tagmata defined as head, thorax, and abdomen (Fig. 75). The length of observed

specimens ranges from 5 to 65 mm., with an average of approximately 40 mm.; maximum width of the body is 12 mm. The head is not divided into somites, though attached appendages indicate its derivation by fusion of antecedent anterior somites. Annexed to the head is the first thoracic somite, with appendages functioning as maxillipeds inferred to belong with the buccal complex. The thorax contains 11 somites in addition to the first one, each provided with pairs of uniramous appendages. The abdomen includes five somites and an elongate telson.

The head is semicircular in outline, with evenly rounded front and sides and rectilinear posterior edge, except for small genal spines at the posterolateral angles. The dorsal side, which is gently convex, bears medium-sized sessile eyes, elliptical in outline, close to the lateral margins slightly in front of mid-length. The ventral side, presumably nearly flat, shows a small rostral plate medially in front. Behind this plate is a pair of mandibles and the buccal complex; antennules and a pair of antennae are attached in anterolateral locations. The exoskeletal covering is chitinous, somewhat thickened along the dorsal posterior edge and at the genal angles.

The thoracic somites are protected dorsally and to some extent laterally by five chitinous tergites, each of which is strengthened by a median crest that forms part of a longitudinal ridge running from the head to the telson. The tergites are weakly convex and trapezoidal in outline, with anterior portions projecting beneath neighbors and posterior borders thickened and provided with small spines. The second thoracic somite, bearing one pair of thoracopods, corresponds to the first tergite; the third to fifth somites with three pairs of thoracopods are covered by the second tergite; two additional groups of three somites and six pairs

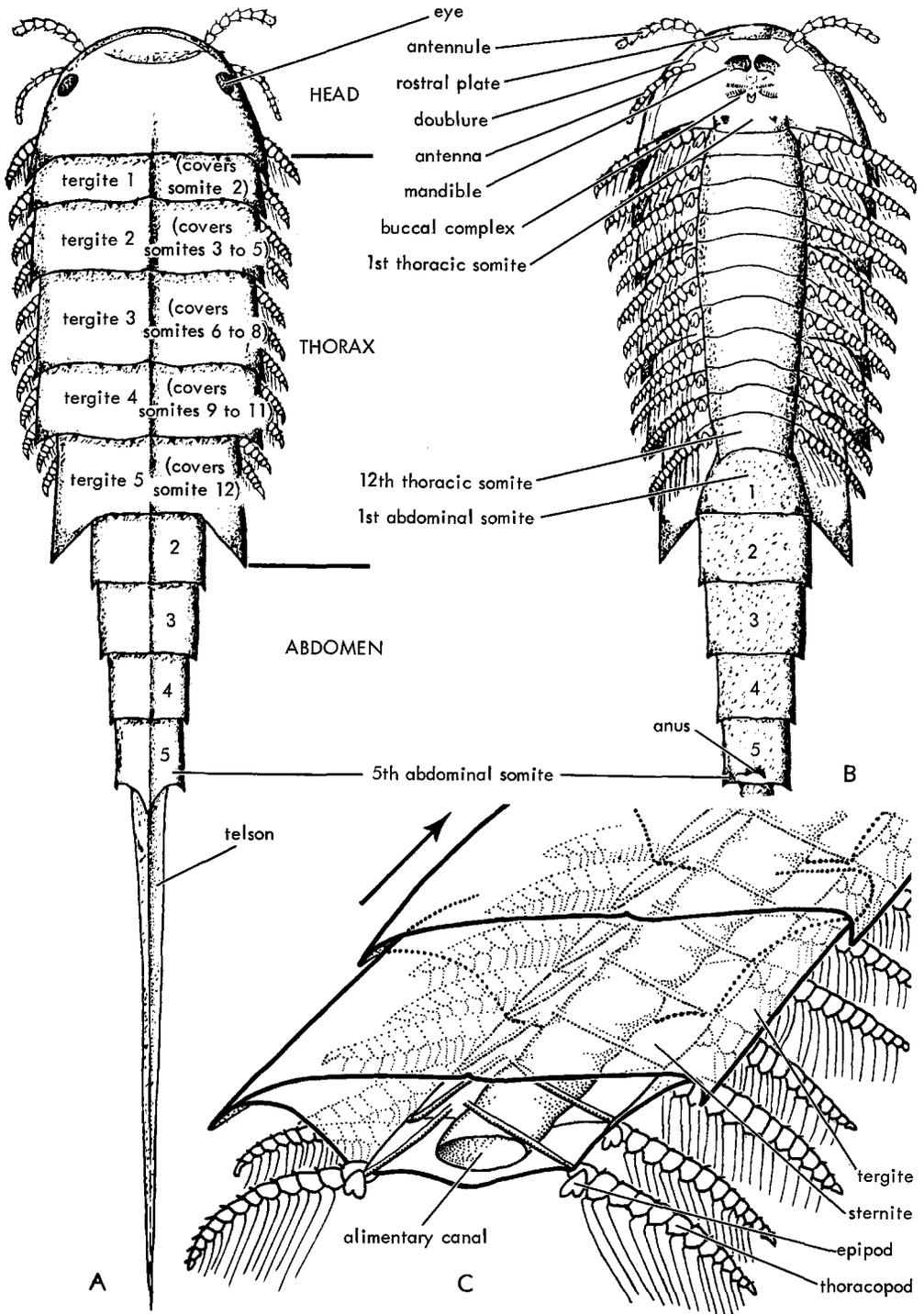


FIG. 75. Morphological features of *Euthycarcinus kessleri* (HANDLIRSCH), L.Trias., France.—A,B. Dorsal and ventral views (reconstr.),  $\times 3$ .—C. Oblique view of mid-portion of thorax with exoskeleton treated as though transparent (arrow points to front of animal), ca.  $\times 6$  (all mod. from Gall & Grauvogel, 1964).

of thoracopods match the third and fourth tergites; and the last thoracic somite (12th) with one pair of appendages underlies the fifth tergite. Thus, 11 limbs are present on each side of the thorax (Fig. 75,1,2). The anterior thoracopods are largest and the posterior ones smallest. Each contains 12 or 13 similar segments, the proximal one being identified as a coxa and bearing a small epipod. Posterior sides of the limbs are lined by rows of long setae, providing adaptation for swimming.

In the Middle Triassic euthycarinoidea named *Synaustrus* (3) multiple thoracic somites correspond to tergites 2, 3, and 4, as in *Euthycarcinus*, but only two somites (instead of three) belong with tergite 2 (Fig. 75A). RIEK reported two somites associated with tergite 5, but one of these is abdominal and therefore structure of this region is exactly similar to that of *Euthycarcinus*.

The abdominal somites have subcylindrical sheaths of chitin and are limbless. Four of these skeletal units are visible on the dorsal side but five are seen on the ventral side, for the anterior abdominal somite is concealed by the fifth thoracic tergite. The anus is located on the ventral side of the fifth abdominal somite just in front of the base of the telson. The telson of *Euthycarcinus* resembles the large caudal spike of *Limulus*; it is an elongate rigid structure strengthened by its dorsal keel.

The chief endoskeletal structures of the euthycarinoidea are slender arched struts with outer extremities adjoining bases of the limbs but inner positions somewhat variable (Fig. 75,3). They extend above the digestive canal and probably furnished support for it. This canal, identified in fossils by a filling of fine sediment, extends from the head to the terminal somite of the abdomen. Except for minor swellings in each somite, it is featureless.

Several pairs of brownish spots in the cephalic region are inferred to mark attachment places for muscles, chiefly for buccal appendages. Paired elliptical imprints along the axis of the body are interpretable as insertion spots for longitudinal ventral muscles; in the abdominal region the spots are accented by small ferruginous deposits.

## ONTOGENY

Some specimens of *Euthycarcinus* have been found with almost perfectly preserved brood sacs, adjacent to which indeterminate remains of small arthropods may occur, seemingly just emerged from eggs. The most diminutive yet-observed individual belonging to the species is a specimen 5 mm. in length. At this stage of growth the head, thorax, and abdomen with telson are already well developed and multi-articulated appendages have appeared.

Comparative examination of specimens of *Euthycarcinus* ranging in length from 5 to 35 mm. indicates that in the course of growth size increase of the thorax is much more rapid than enlargement of the head and that the thorax progressively becomes more slender. No changes in the number of thoracic somites during ontogeny are reported. Abdominal somites become elongated during growth.

The eyes of juvenile individuals are centrally located on the head and during growth of the animal migrate laterally to their near-marginal position in adults.

Molting was facilitated by a splitting apart of the exoskeleton along a line of dehiscence near the front and side margins of the head. Numerous fossils, distinguished by delicacy of cuticle and lack of coloration, are interpreted to represent exuviae—the cast-off exoskeletons of molted individuals.

## ECOLOGY

Euthycarinoidea are judged to have been adapted to burrowing in the soft bottom sediments of shallow fresh-water ponds and swampy areas, although undoubtedly they could swim. Evidently they were mud-eaters, as indicated by the fine-sediment filling of alimentary tracts in fossils and by the nature of the buccal apparatus, ill-suited for tearing and chewing large food chunks.

### Class EUTHYCARCINOIDEA Gall & Grauvogel, 1964

[*nom. transl.* MOORE, herein (*ex subclass Euthycarinoidea* GALL & GRAUVOGEL, 1964, p. 17)]

Moderately slender elongate body divisible into head, thorax, and abdomen; head

bearing pair of sessile eyes near lateral margins and incorporating anterior thoracic somite, antennules and antennae attached to underside of head, which also contains mouth parts; thoracic somites (11 in addition to that joined with head) covered by articulated exoskeleton consisting of five tergites and bearing 11 pairs of multisegmented uniramous thoracopods, each provided with long setae along posterior margins; abdomen with five subcylindrical somites, limbless, but with long styliform telson. *L.Trias.-M.Trias.*

### Order EUTHYCARCINIDA Gall & Grauvogel, 1964

[*nom. transl. et correct.* MOORE, herein (*ex subclass Euthycarcinoidea* GALL & GRAUVOGEL, 1964, p. 17)]

Characters of class. *L.Trias.-M.Trias.*

### Family EUTHYCARCINIDAE Moore, new family

Characters of order and class. *L.Trias.-M.Trias.*

**Euthycarcinus** HANDLIRSCH, 1914, p. 5 [*\*E. kessleri*; OD, M]. Characters of family. *L.Trias.* (*Upper Bundsandstein*), France (Alsace-Moselle).—FIG. 75, 1-3. *\*E. kessleri*; 1, 2, dorsal and ventral aspects of entire specimen (reconstr.),  $\times 3$  (Gall & Grauvogel, 1964); 3, oblique schematic view of mid-thoracic region, exoskeleton treated as though transparent, anterior direction indicated by arrow, *ca.*  $\times 70$  (mod. from Gall & Grauvogel, 1964).

**Synaustrus** RIEK, 1964 [*\*S. brookvalensis*; OD]. Closely similar to *Euthycarcinus* in morphological features and size, differing only in having one less thoracic somite corresponding to the 2nd tergite. *M.Trias.*, Australia.—FIG. 75A. *\*S. brookvalensis*, Hawkesbury Series, New South Wales; dorsal view of holotype (reconstr.),  $\times 2$  (Riek, 1964).

### REFERENCES

Gall, J.-C., & Grauvogel, Louis

- (1) 1964, *Un arthropode peu connu, le genre Euthycarcinus Handlirsch*: Annales de Paléon-

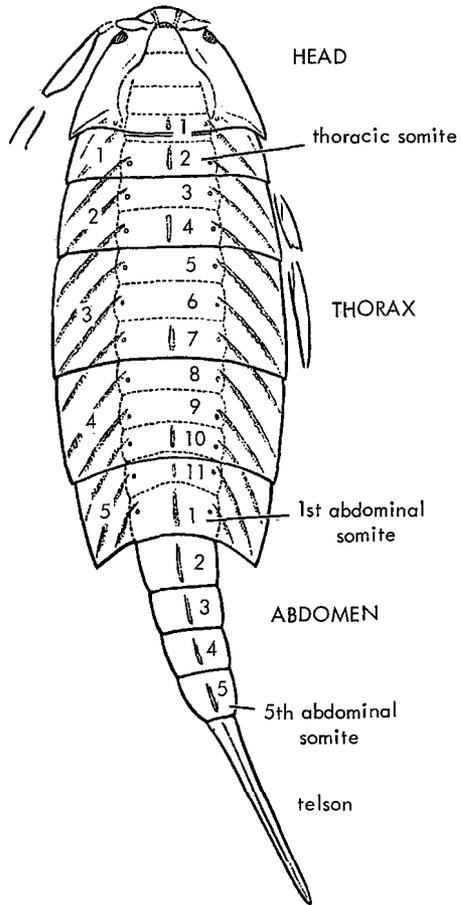


FIG. 75A. Euthycarcinidae (p. R199).

tologie, Invertébrés, v. 50, pt. 1, p. 1-18, pl. 1-8, fig. 1-3.

**Handlirsch, Anton**

- (2) 1914, *Ein interessante Crustaceenform aus der Trias der Vogesen*: [K.K.] Zool.-botan. Gesell. Wien, Verhandl., v. 64, p. 1-8, fig. 1.

**Riek, E. F.**

- (3) 1964, *Merostomoidea (Arthropoda, Trilobitomorpha) from the Australian Middle Triassic*: Australian Museum, Records, v. 26, p. 327-332, pl. 35, text fig. 1-2.

## COPEPODA

By A. R. PALMER

[United States Geological Survey, Washington, D.C.]

[Chapter submitted January, 1962; revised July, 1965]

### INTRODUCTION

Copepods are small crustaceans, rarely exceeding 5 mm. in length, that are found in nearly all aquatic environments. Both free-living and parasitic forms exist within the group. Only free-living forms have been found as fossils.

The bodies of free-living copepods are typically elongate, distinctly segmented, and commonly subcylindrical in shape. A prominent movable articulation at about the mid-length of the body furnishes a natural basis for differentiating fore and rear divisions (**prosome, urosome**) (Fig. 76,A). The prosome includes the head region with its paired appendages, covered dorsally and laterally by a cephalic carapace, and four or five thoracic segments that bear biramous jointed legs with setae that aid in swimming. The urosome includes one or two thoracic somites with appendages, four to six abdominal somites without appendages, and a terminal pair of setose caudal rami.

### CLASSIFICATION

The conventional classification of copepods is that of Sars (1901-03) (3) in which three orders of free-living forms and four orders of mainly parasitic or commensal forms were recognized, as follows:

#### *Main Divisions of Copepoda Recognized by Sars (1901-03)*

Free-living orders	Commensal or parasitic orders
Calanoida	Caligoida
Harpacticoida	Monstrilloida
Cyclopoida	Notodelphyoida
	Lernaeopoida

LANG (1948) (1) has proposed an alternative classification based on his arguments that Sars' classification places in widely separated orders more or less closely related

free-living and parasitic forms. This classification, which stresses morphologic relationships rather than adaptive characteristics, reduces the copepods to four groups that he calls suborders, as follows:

#### *Main Divisions of Copepoda Recognized by Lang (1948)*

- Progymnoplea (equivalent to part of Calanoida)
- Gymnoplea (equivalent to part of Calanoida)
- Propodoplea (for one family of Sars' Harpacticoida)
- Podoplea (includes all copepods not assigned to other suborders, these being divided among revised groups named Harpacticoida and Cyclopoida)

All known fossil copepods are harpacticoids or cyclopoids in either classification. They are assigned here to the orders Cyclopoida and Harpacticoida following the conventional classification of Sars.

Although body form is sufficient for differentiation of the Cyclopoida and Harpacticoida, precise identification of specimens below the ordinal level requires knowledge of morphologic details of the appendages that are rarely well preserved in fossils. Therefore, meaningful determination of species may be difficult or impossible.

### ECOLOGY AND PALEOECOLOGY

Recent copepods are found in nearly all aquatic environments. The majority of the calanoid and cyclopoid species comprise a significant part of the plankton assemblages in marine and fresh standing waters and are a major food for fish. The harpacticoid species are mostly benthonic and have been reported from unusual environments, including interstitial waters of beach sands and damp forest moss. Some cyclopoid and harpacticoid species may form cysts or cocoons for survival during anaerobic periods

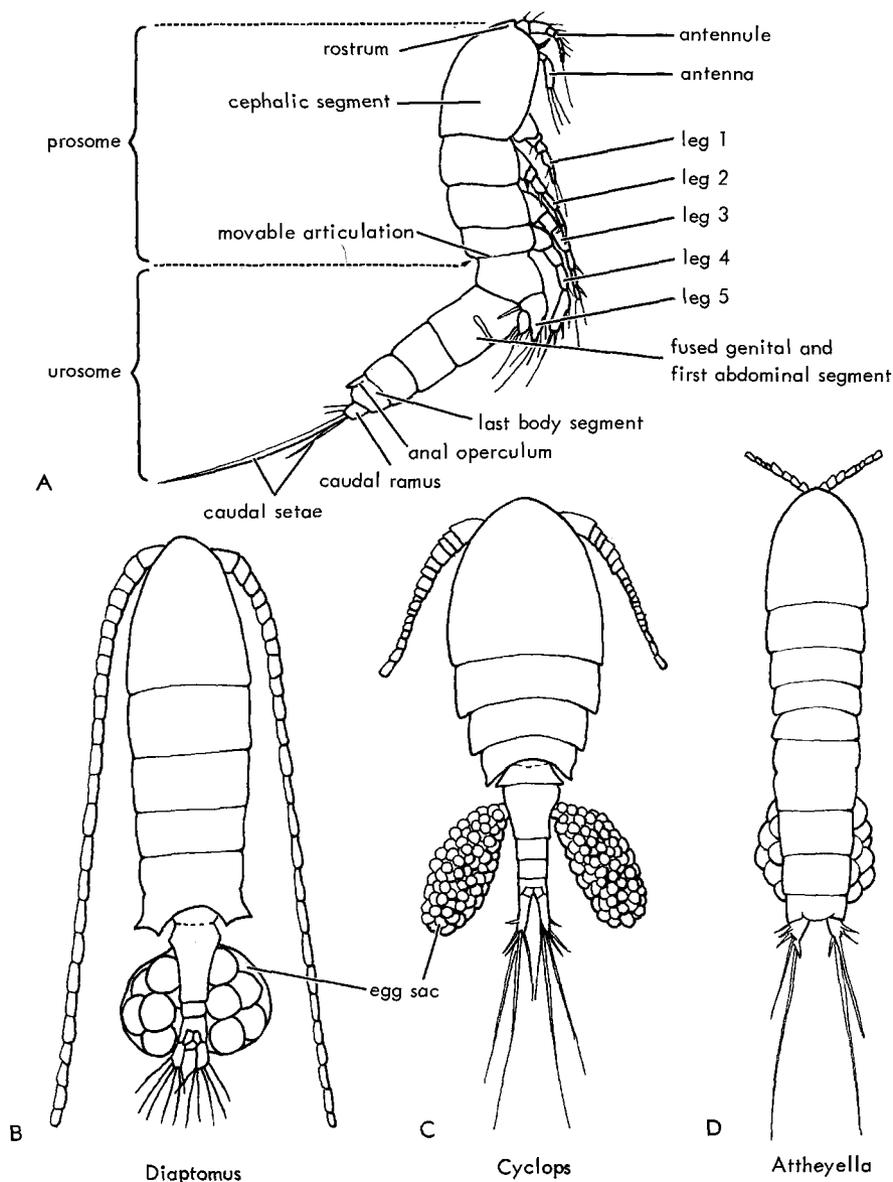


FIG. 76. General morphology of free-living copepods.—*A*. Descriptive terminology for a harpacticoid copepod.—*B-D*. Typical habitus of female of free-living fresh-water copepods, dorsal views: *B*, calanoid; *C*, cyclopoid; *D*, harpacticoid. (From Ward and Whipple, *Fresh-water Biology*; Fig. *A* slightly modified.)

in lacustrine environments. Cyclopoid cysts are also resistant to desiccation.

Fossil copepods have been found both in North and South America only in lake deposits associated with boron minerals.

### Class COPEPODA H. Milne-Edwards, 1840

Elongate body composed of more or less fused cylindrical chitinous segments which

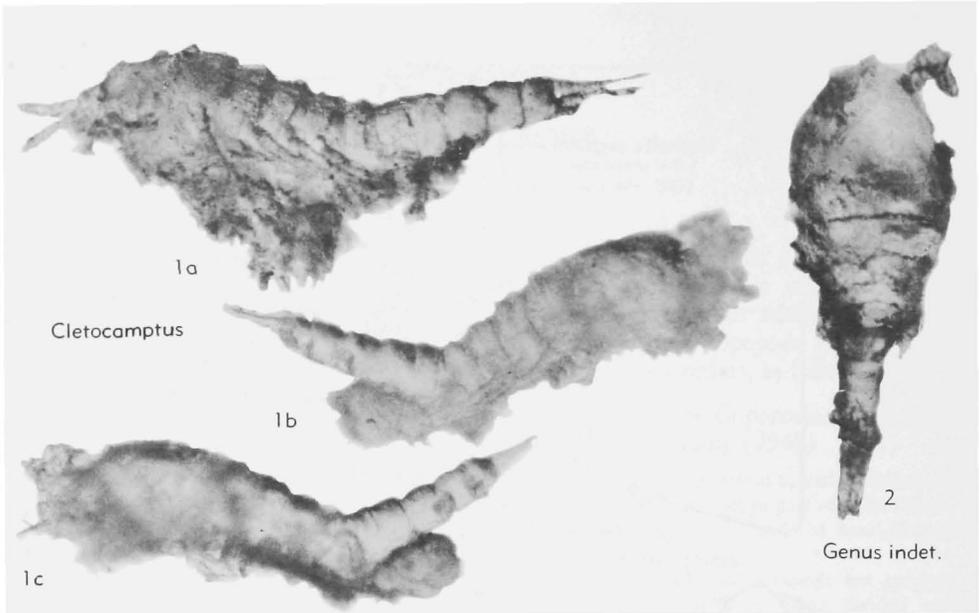


FIG. 77. Cyclopoida (2); Harpacticoida (Cletodidae) (1) (p. R202).

are divided at prominent movable articulation into prosome (in front) and urosome (in rear); prosome including four or five thoracic somites which bear biramous swimming legs and cephalic somite which bears pairs of antennules, antennae, mandibles, maxillules, maxillae, and maxillipeds; urosome including one or two thoracic somites and five to seven limbless abdominal somites, terminal one bearing pair of caudal rami. Body form substantially modified in parasitic groups. *Mio.-Rec.*

### Order CALANOIDA Sars, 1903

Prosome distinctly broader than urosome, movable articulation separating them placed between thoracic somites 6 and 7; antennules long (Fig. 76,B). *Rec.*

### Order CYCLOPOIDA Sars, 1903

Prosome distinctly broader than urosome, movable articulation located between thoracic somites 5 and 6; antennules short (Fig. 76,C). *Mio.-Rec.*

**Genus undet.**, *Mio.*, USA (Calif.).—FIG. 77, 2. Genus and species undet., Mojave Desert; dorsal view of body,  $\times 90$  (2).

### Order HARPACTICOIDA Sars, 1903

Prosome only slightly broader than urosome, movable articulation located between thoracic somites 5 and 6; antennules short (Fig. 76,A,D). *Mio.*, N.Am.; *Pleist.*, S.Am. (Arg.); *Rec.*

#### Family CLETODIDAE T. Scott, 1904

Maxillipeds composed of two, less frequently three segments, ultimate one terminating in movable claw. First leg of swimming type, without claws or clawlike setae on ultimate segment of exopod. Body normal, not markedly elongate; body somites distinct, wider distally than proximally. Antennules reduced; antennal appendage with single segment. Endopods of second to fourth legs usually with reduced number of segments; endopods of male as in female, or endopods of third leg modified. *Mio.-Rec.*

**Cletocampthus** SCHMANKEVITSCH, 1875 [*\*C. retrogressus*; ?OD]. Antennules 6-segmented; 5th leg single-segmented in both sexes. *Mio.-Rec.*, N.Am.—FIG. 77, 1. *C.* sp., *Mio.*, Mojave Desert lake beds, USA (Calif.); 1a, left lat. view of female,  $\times 90$ ; 1b,c, right and left lat. views of female, showing eggs below thorax,  $\times 90$  (2).

## REFERENCES

## Lang, Karl

- (1) 1948, *Copepoda "Notodelphyoida" from the Swedish west coast with an outline on the systematics of the copepods*: Arkiv Zoologi Uppsala, v. 40A, no. 14, p. 1-36.

## Palmer, A. R.

- (2) 1960, *Miocene copepods from the Mojave Desert, California*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 34, no. 3, p. 447-452, pl. 63.

## Sars, G. O.

- (3) 1901-03, *An account of the Crustacea of Norway, vol. 4, Copepoda Calanoida*: Bergen Museum, pt. 1-14, 171 p., 108 pl.

## BRANCHIURA

By ROBERT R. HESSLER

[Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution]

[Chapter submitted June, 1962]

## INTRODUCTION

The Branchiura comprise one of the most highly specialized and closely circumscribed of all classes of Crustacea. The members of this group are ectoparasites of fishes (although some have been found occasionally on amphibians as well) both in fresh and salt water. Unlike most parasites, they swim quite well and are completely capable of leaving their host. Many of the characteristics of the class obviously are adaptations for this ectoparasitic mode of life.

## MORPHOLOGY

The strongly dorsoventrally flattened body is divided into cephalon, thorax, and abdomen (FIG. 78). The lateral portions of the cephalic shield project a variable distance posteriorly as a pair of rounded lobes or alae. A single naupliar eye is located dorsally, while paired compound eyes occur ventrally.

The cephalon carries the usual five pairs of cephalic limbs. The proximal two segments of the uniramous, four-segmented an-

tennules are heavily developed, the second segment bearing a large, posteriorly directed hook. The basal segments of the uniramous, four-segmented antennae are also strongly developed and likewise fitted with a hook. The mouth is located at the tip of a piercing proboscis, while the mandibles are tiny, bladelike jaws at sides of the mouth. When not in use the proboscis folds back into a mid-ventral groove. Anterior to the proboscis is a delicate preoral spine, with which a poison gland is associated.

The maxillules are uniramous. In *Dolops* AUDOUIN, 1837, they are normally developed and bear distal claws, but in the other three described genera they are modified to form paired, stalked sucking discs. The six-segmented uniramous maxillae are characterized by generally having numerous large and small, posteriorly directed spines on their ventral surface. The ventral surface of the cephalon may also be studded with small spines of the same sort. All of these spines serve to prevent the animal from slipping backward on its host.

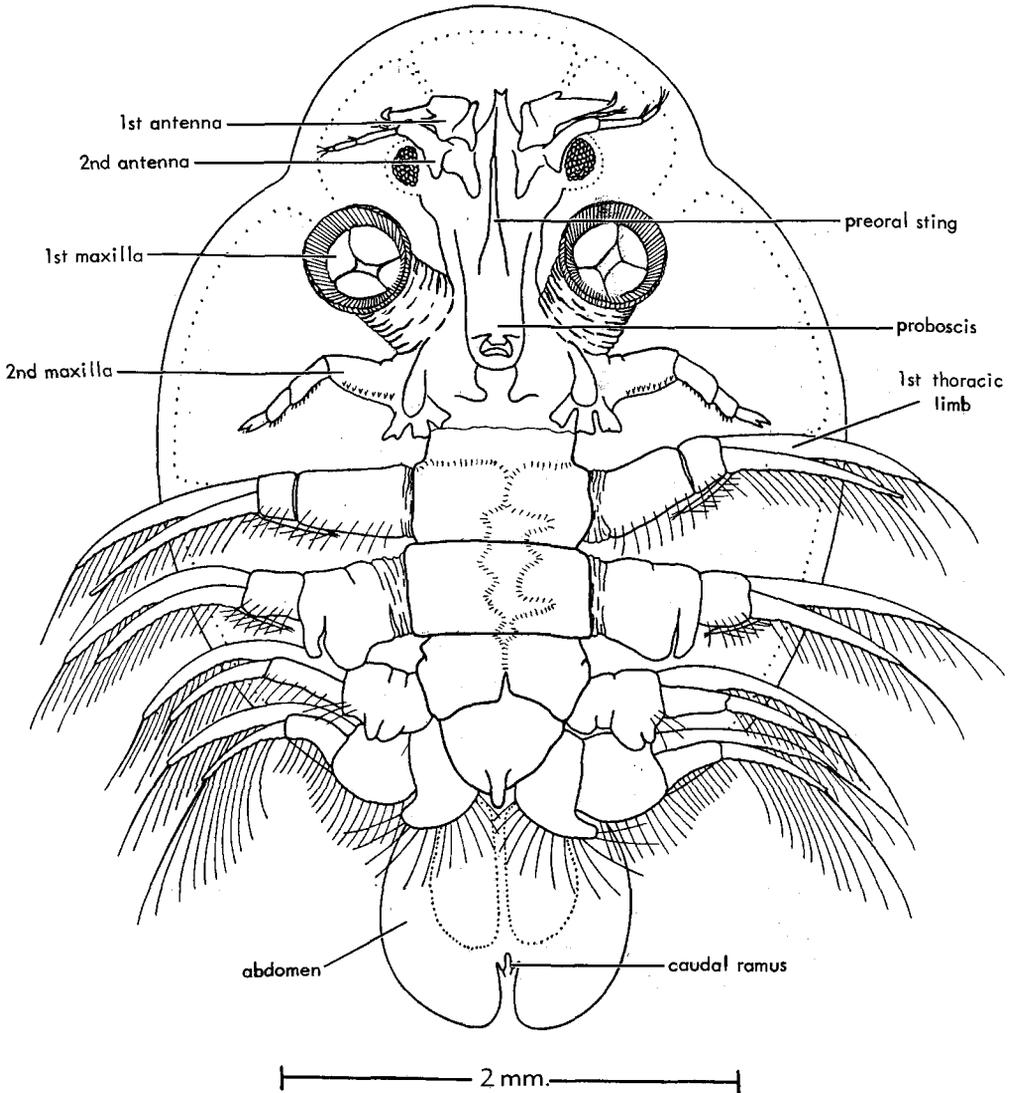


FIG. 78. *Argulus laicauda* SMITH, ventral view of adult male,  $\times 58$  (6).

Four thoracic somites occur, of which the first is partially fused to the cephalon. Each thoracic limb extends strongly laterally and serves as a swimming appendage. It has a three-segmented protopod and two rami which are fringed with natatory setae. The unjointed exopod is larger than the endopod and on the first two thoracic limbs has a flabellum which is reflected medially. The endopod may consist of one to three segments. In the male the basal segments of

the last three thoracic limbs are modified for copulation.

The abdomen is undivided (although the nervous system indicates that it may consist of two fused somites) and bifurcates posteriorly. A pair of minute caudal rami are present.

### DEVELOPMENT

In many species the first free-living stage is a metanauplius (FIG. 79) (5). The man-

dibles and antennules, in contrast to those of adults, are natatory, much as nauplii of other classes, and no sucker is present on the maxillules.

With later development the antennae are reduced to their adult form. The distal segments of the mandibles are lost, while the basal portion develops into the sides of the proboscis. In *Argulus*, *Chonopeltis*, and *Dipteropeltis*, the basal portion of the maxillules develops into a sucker. At the same time, thoracic limbs develop.

In other species, the young hatch at a far more mature stage of development.

### AFFINITIES

The Branchiura have long been classed under the Copepoda, particularly because of their similarity to the Siphonostoma (6). In conjunction with this determination it was thought that the maxillules were minute processes on the tip of the proboscis, and that the two pairs of subsequent limbs were maxillae and maxillipeds. However, MARTIN (2) has shown that the proboscis is primarily a derivative of the basal portion of the larval mandible and that it does not bear minute maxillules. The last two pairs of cephalic limbs are, then, maxillules and maxillae. Thus, the tagmosis of the Branchiura is basically different from that of the Copepoda and warrants independent status of the group.

### Class BRANCHIURA Thorell, 1864

Body dorsoventrally flattened with five pairs of cephalic appendages; mouth on suctorial proboscis which is formed largely from mandibular components; thoracic somites four, first being partially fused to cephalon; thoracic limbs biramous, natatory; abdomen undivided, with caudal rami. [Ectoparasites on fishes.] *Rec.*

The Carboniferous family Cyclidae PACKARD, 1885, containing the genera *Cyclus* DE KONINCK, 1842, and *Halicynce* VON MAYER, 1844, were included by HOPWOOD (1925) in the Branchiura. The resemblance of members of this family to living branchiurans is superficial, however. The cyclids differ from the branchiurans in several basic ways. The mouth is not modified for piercing and

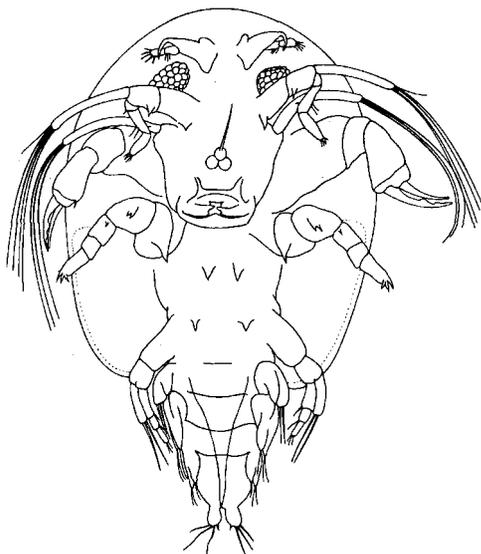


FIG. 79. *Argulus japonicus* THIELE, ventral view of stage-one metanaupliar larva,  $\times 80$  (5).

the antennae are normally developed, not modified for hooking into the host. The presence of a pair of maxillules modified as suckers is highly conjectural. Finally, the cyclids have too many thoracic limbs and therefore are considered to be unrelated to the Branchiura.

### Order ARGULOIDA Wilson, 1932

Characters of class. *Rec.*

#### Family ARGULIDAE Leach, 1819

Characters of class. *Rec.*

*Argulus* MÜLLER, 1785, p. 121 [*\*Monoculus foliaceus* LINNÉ, 1758; SD JURINE, 1806, p. 433] [= *Binoculus* GEOFFROY-ST. HILAIRE, 1732; *Ozoculus* LATREILLE, 1802; *Agenor* RISSO, 1826; *Huargulus* YÜ, 1939]. Antennules present; maxillules developed as suckers. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 78. *A. laticauda* SMITH, N.Am.; adult, showing morphological features,  $\times 25$  (6).—FIG. 79. *A. japonicus* THIELE, Japan; nauplius,  $\times 80$  (5).

*Dolops* AUDOIN, 1837, p. 13 [*\*D. lacordairei*; OD] [= *Gyropeltis* HELLER, 1857]. Maxillules normally developed, not modified as suckers; preoral sting absent. *Rec.*, S.Am.-C.Am.-Afr.

*Chonopeltis* THIELE, 1901, p. 46 [*\*C. inermis*; OD]. Antennules and preoral sting absent; maxillules developed as suckers. *Rec.*, Afr.

**Dipteropeltis** CALMAN, 1912, p. 766 [*\*D. hirundo*; OD] [= *Talaus* MOREIRA, 1913; *Moreiriella* MELLA LEITÃO, 1914]. Antennules and antennae minute, imperfectly segmented, maxillules developed as suckers; preoral sting reduced; alae greatly elongate. *Rec.*, S.Am.

REFERENCES

**Brehm, V.**

(1) 1927, *Branchiura*, in W. KÜKENTHAL & T. KRUMBACH, *Handbuch der Zoologie*: v. 3, no. 1, p. 497-502, text fig. 455-462 (Berlin & Leipzig).

**Martin, M. F.**

(2) 1932, *On the morphology and classification of Argulus (Crustacea)*: *Zool. Soc. London, Proc.*, p. 771-806, 5 pl., 19 text fig. (London).

**Meehan, O. L.**

(3) 1940, *A review of the parasitic Crustacea of the genus Argulus in the collections of the United States National Museum*: U.S. Natl. Museum, *Proc.*, v. 88, p. 459-522, 47 text fig.

**Ringuélet, R.**

(4) 1943, *Revisión de los Argúlidos Argentinos (Crustacea, Branchiura) con el catálogo de las especies neotropicales*: *Rec. Museo La Plata*, new ser., *Zool.*, v. 3, p. 43-99, 8 pl.

**Tokioka, T.**

(5) 1936, *Larval development and metamorphosis of Argulus japonicus*: *Kyoto Imp. Univ., Mem. College Sci.*, ser. B, v. 12, p. 93-114, 24 text fig.

**Wilson, C. B.**

(6) 1902, *North American parasitic copepods of the family Argulidae, with a bibliography of the group and a systematic review of all known species*: U.S. Natl. Museum, *Proc.*, v. 25, p. 635-742, 20 pl., 23 text fig.

CIRRIPEDIA

By WILLIAM A. NEWMAN,<sup>1</sup> VICTOR A. ZULLO<sup>2</sup> and T. H. WITHERS<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Scripps Institution of Oceanography, La Jolla, California; <sup>2</sup>Department of Geology, California Academy of Sciences, San Francisco, California; <sup>3</sup>formerly of the Department of Geology, British Museum (Natural History), London (deceased)]<sup>4</sup>

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R207
Definition of Cirripedia .....	R209
General Features of Orders .....	R210
MORPHOLOGY OF THORACICA .....	R213
STUDY TECHNIQUES .....	R237
ONTOGENY .....	R243
CLASSIFICATION .....	R247
FOSSIL TRACES .....	R251
STRATIGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION .....	R252
PHYLOGENY .....	R252

<sup>4</sup> A *Treatise* chapter on the Cirripedia Thoracica was prepared (1953) by T. H. WITHERS. Following his death, this manuscript was revised and enlarged by NEWMAN and ZULLO. They also added sections on methods, anatomy and soft parts, life histories and evolution of the Thoracica, and

sections on systematics of the remaining orders (Apoda, Ascothoracica, Acrothoracica and Rhizocephala), thus forming an integrated treatment of the entire class. The completed typescript and illustrations were received in December, 1967.—EDITOR.

SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R271
Class Cirripedia Burmeister, 1834 .....	R271
Order Acrothoracica Gruvel, 1905 .....	R271
Order Rhizocephala Müller, 1862 .....	R272
Order Ascothoracica Lacaze-Duthiers, 1880 .....	R273
Order Thoracica Darwin, 1854 .....	R275
Order Apoda Darwin, 1854 .....	R290
REFERENCES .....	R290

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We have expressed our personal thanks and appreciation to many persons, and wish it were possible to do so again here. Regardless of limitation on space, we must mention our gratitude to our editor, Professor R. C. MOORE, for his relentless and high spirited encouragement, critical supervision and advice, and to his staff for careful attention to virtually all figures and other aspects of assembling the manuscript. We would also like to thank Mr. ARNOLD ROSS for his critical and helpful reading of the entire galley proof, Dr. J. T. TOMLINSON for allowing us to use his manuscript classification of the Acrothoracica and Drs.

P. REISHMAN and J. BOCQUET-VÉDRINE for critically reviewing the classification of the Rhizocephala. We much appreciate the help of Drs. T. E. BOWMAN and A. G. HUMES in making decisions on certain quasi-rhizocephalans, and Drs. R. YANAGIMACHI and P. REISHMAN on the systematic position of *Thompsonia*. Many thanks are due Mrs. C. PLATT KOURTZ (SIO) for extensive and critical reference work, and for careful attention to countless details during the preparation of the manuscript. Support from the National Science Foundation is most gratefully acknowledged, W. A. N., GB-4937X; V. A. Z., GB-4507.

## INTRODUCTION

## HISTORICAL ACCOUNT

LINNÉ placed the Cirripedia in the class Testacea, along with most of the Mollusca. Cirripeds were not generally accepted as crustaceans until the discovery of the larvae and larval metamorphoses by J. VAUGHAN THOMPSON in 1829, even though their internal morphology was known to CUVIER, and though STRAUS had stressed their crustacean affinities as early as 1819.

It was CHARLES DARWIN who established the morphological nomenclature and systematic concepts upon which subsequent work was based. His two volumes on Recent cirripeds (1851,38; 1854,39) are among the finest morphological and systematic publications in zoological literature. Even after a lapse of more than a century, these works are still among the chief sources of reference.

Upon this basis, and the collections amassed by numerous biological expeditions

of the turn of the century and early 1900's, a number of significant works appeared which refined and expanded our knowledge. Principal contributors include: ANNANDALE, AURIVILLIUS, BROCH, GRUVEL, KRÜGER, NILSSON-CANTELL, PILSBRY, WELTNER, and UTINOMI (=HIRO prior to 1939).

DARWIN also monographed the British fossil cirripeds (37, 40) but fossil representatives have not received nearly the attention given the extant fauna. Prior to 1928, the only other comprehensive works on fossil cirripeds were those of BOSQUET on Cretaceous fossils from Holland; SEGUENZA on Tertiary forms from Sicily and Italy; DE ALESSANDRI on Tertiary cirripeds from Italy; and WITHERS on Tertiary fossils from New Zealand.

Between 1928 and 1953 WITHERS published three monographs on fossil Cirripedia, including those of the Triassic and Jurassic (1928), the Cretaceous (1935) and

the Tertiary (1953, exclusive of Balanomorpha and Verrucomorpha). Much of the data accumulated during the last twenty years on fossil Balanomorpha has come from the works of DAVADIE and KOLOSVARY. Significant papers on early cirripeds are those of CHERNYSHEV (1930) on *Praelepas* (M.Carb., USSR), WILLS (1963) on *Cyp-rilepas* (U.Sil., Estonia), and TOMLINSON (1963) on *Trypetesa* (Penn., N.Am.).

WITHERS (1926) demonstrated the echinoderm affinities of the early Paleozoic Machaeridia, and thus removed these puzzling fossils from consideration as primitive cirripeds. Recently, POPE (1961) has shown the machaeridian family Lepidocolleidae to be cover plates of the brachial spines of car-poid echinoderms. Various Paleozoic fossils from the Silurian and Devonian of New York State have been attributed to the Cirripedia and proposed as ancestral stocks. These fossils, which include *Eobalanus* RUEDEMANN, *Eopollicipes* RUEDEMANN, *Palaeocreusia* CLARKE, *Palaeopseudobalanus* FISHER, *Protobalanus* WHITFIELD, and *Strobilepas* CLARKE, superficially resemble cirripeds, but on detailed examination exhibit no affinities with the group. For example, LADD (1959) has shown that *Palaeocreusia* is not a cirriped, but more likely the shell of a fissurellid gastropod. Likewise, detailed examination of the shell of *Palaeopseudobalanus* reveals the stereome mesh structure characteristic of echinoderm plates. This structure, together with the arrangement of the imbricating whorls of plates suggests affinities with the machaeridians.

The present day has been described as the "Age of Barnacles," for these animals inhabit the shore line of every coast and are found from the surface to the greatest depths of the oceans. Explanation of the origins and development of this extant fauna requires detailed information on the fossil history of Cirripedia, and, conversely, an understanding of fossil cirripeds is best arrived at through knowledge of the living fauna. It is within this framework that the following synthesis is based. Additional references basic to cirriped systematics include the four monographs of DARWIN (37-40) previously mentioned, the monographs by GRUVEL (1905) and by PILSBRY (1907,

1916), and the synthesis of KRÜGER (1940) which includes a comprehensive bibliography to be consulted for many of the references cited herein.

TABLE 1. Comparative segmentation of Malacostraca, Cephalocarida, Maxillopoda, and Ostracoda.

	Malacostraca	Cephalocarida	Maxillopoda			Ostracoda	
			Copepoda	Cirripedia	Mystacocarida		
1	A'	A'	A'	A'	A'	A'	HEAD
2	A''	A''	A''	A''	A''	A''	
3	M	M	M	M	M	M	
4	M'	M'	M'	M'	M'	M'	
5	M''	M''	M''	M''	M''	?M''	
6	1P	1P	1P	1P ♀	1P	1P	THORAX
7	2P	2P	2P	2P	2P	2P	
8	3P	3P	3P	3P	3P	3P	
9	4P	4P	4P	4P	4P ♀	4 ♀	
10	5P	5P	5P	5P	5P	T+F	
11	6P ♀	6P ♂	6P	6P	6		
12	7P	7P	1 ♀	1 ♂	1		
13	8P ♂	8P	2	2	2		
14	1P	1P ♀	3	3	3		
15	2P	2	4	4	4		
16	3P	3	5T+F	5T+F	5T+F		
17	4P	4					
18	5P	5					
19	6P	6					
20	7	7					
21	8T+F	8					
22		9					
23		10					
24		11					
25		12T+F					

[Explanation: A', first antenna; A'', second antenna; M, mandible; M', first maxilla; M'', second maxilla; P, pod; T, telson; F, furca.]

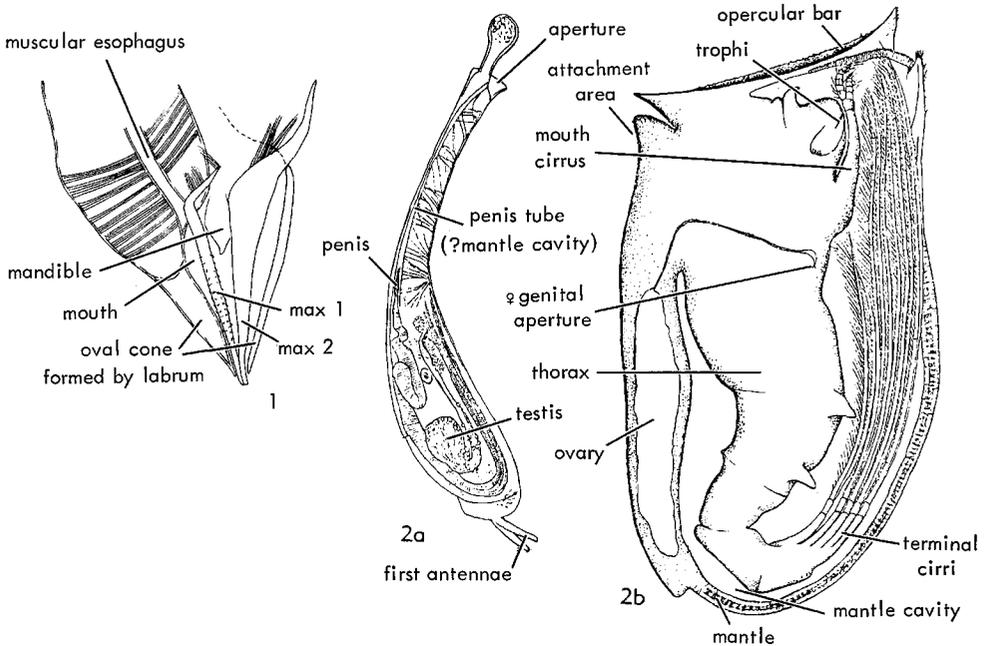


FIG. 80. Morphology of cirripeds.

1. Arrangement of biting mouth parts in female acrothoracican, *Synagoga metacrinicola* OKADA,  $\times 50$  (after Okada, 1939).
2. General anatomy of acrothoracican, *Berndtia purpurea*.—2a. Male,  $\times 47$  (after 103a).—2b. Female,  $\times 20$  (105, mod.).

### DEFINITION OF CIRRIPEDIA

The Cirripedia comprise a diverse and conspicuous group of sedentary marine Crustacea. The fundamental body plan is that of the Maxillopoda<sup>1</sup> (DAHL, 1956): five head and six thoracic appendage-bearing somites; and five abdominal somites, the last bearing a furca (Table 1). Parasitism has evolved in four of the five orders, and in one has resulted in appendageless forms unrecognizable as cirripeds except for their characteristic naupliar and cyprid larval stages.

Attachment in cirripeds occurs during the cyprid stage and is effected initially by the first antennae. The bivalved cyprid carapace is homologous with the so-called mantle of the adult, and it forms the mantle cavity enclosing the appendage-bearing portions of the body of the adult. The mantle itself is either membranous, armed with chitinous

spines, or more or less covered with calcareous plates. Food is obtained by setose feeding with the thoracic appendages in nonparasitic forms. Parasitic forms feed by piercing mouth parts; by absorption through cephalic or derived root systems; or through the surface of the carapace.

Sexes are separate or combined. The male genital apertures open on the first abdominal somite, or the last thoracic somite when the abdomen is reduced. The female genital apertures open on the first thoracic somite, near the basis of the first cirri, and this is the most anterior position occupied by genital apertures in any known crustacean. Eggs are laid and retained in the mantle cavity of the female or hermaphrodite, where they develop before being released, usually as planktonic nauplius larvae.

Five orders are generally recognized as Cirripedia: 1) Acrothoracica, 2) Rhizocephala, 3) Ascothoracica, 4) Thoracica, 5) Apoda. The placing of the last among the cirripeds appears to be questionable, how-

<sup>1</sup>Not recognized in *Treatise* classification. According to DAHL (1963, p. 1) includes Mystacocarida, Copepoda, Branchiura, and Cirripedia, but branchiurans are omitted in Table 1 of this chapter.—Ed.

## GENERAL FEATURES OF ORDERS

1) The Acrothoracica are free-living, burrowing cirripeds. Extant species are found in shells of bivalve and gastropod mollusks, living and dead corals, and limestone. Fossils are known only by their burrows that occur in a variety of invertebrate skeletons

(see "Fossil Traces"), the earliest having been found in Pennsylvanian pelecypod shells. The anatomically most primitive or unmodified living genus is *Weltneria* BERNDT.

Sexes are separate in all known Acrothoracica. Females excavate individual burrows where they are usually accompanied by one or more minute males (Fig. 80,2a,b).

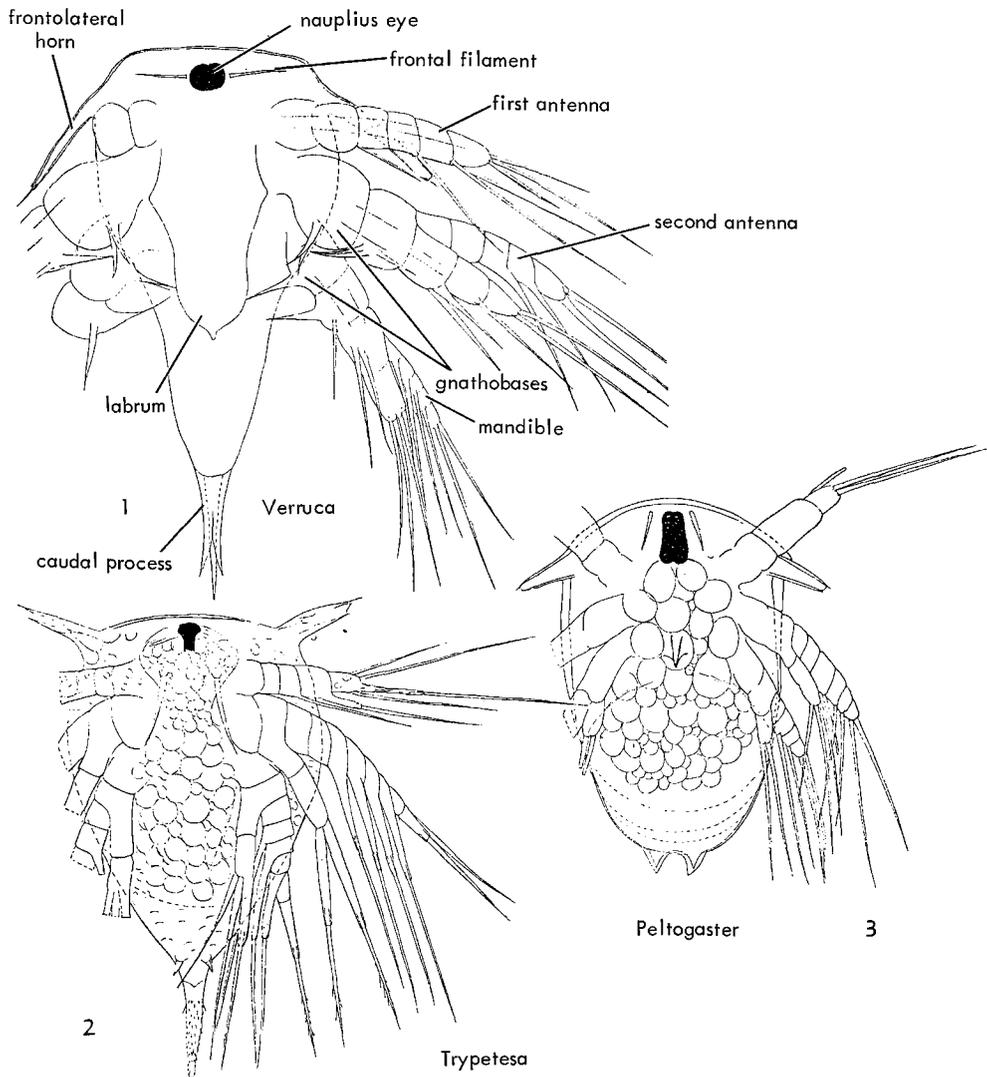


FIG. 81. Morphology of cirripeds; nauplius larvae (mod. from 61).

1. Thoracican, *Verruca (Verruca) stroemia* (MÜLLER), stage 1 nauplius,  $\times 267$ .
2. Acrothoracican, *Trypetesa lampas* (HANCOCK),  $\times 107$ .

3. Rhizocephalan, *Peltogaster sulcatus* LILLJEBORG,  $\times 189$ .

The male consists of little more than a sac of gametogenic material, sometimes provided with a visible copulatory apparatus. The life cycle includes nauplius and cyprid stages, although the former may be passed through in the egg. The female cyprid settles and initially becomes attached by its first antennae. In general, while in the process of metamorphosis, the cyprid begins to burrow mechanically into the substratum. The first antennae are left at the exterior attachment point, as the burrow becomes occupied.

In the adult, the mantle sac lines the burrow and opens to the exterior through an aperture at the entrance. The sac commonly is cemented to the wall of the burrow by the anterior end (attachment disc). The animal resides within the cavity formed by the mantle. The mouth field is made up of the labrum, the usual three pairs of mouth parts, and the first pair of cirri (mouth cirri) which are reduced in size and situated along the posterolateral margins of the oral cone. A maximum of five pairs of cirri are situated in a group at the posterior end of the thorax, and a pair of anal or caudal appendages may be present. The abdomen, present in the cyprid, is completely wanting. The most complete recent anatomical studies have been made on *Berndtia* by УТИНОМИ (1957, 1960, 1961).

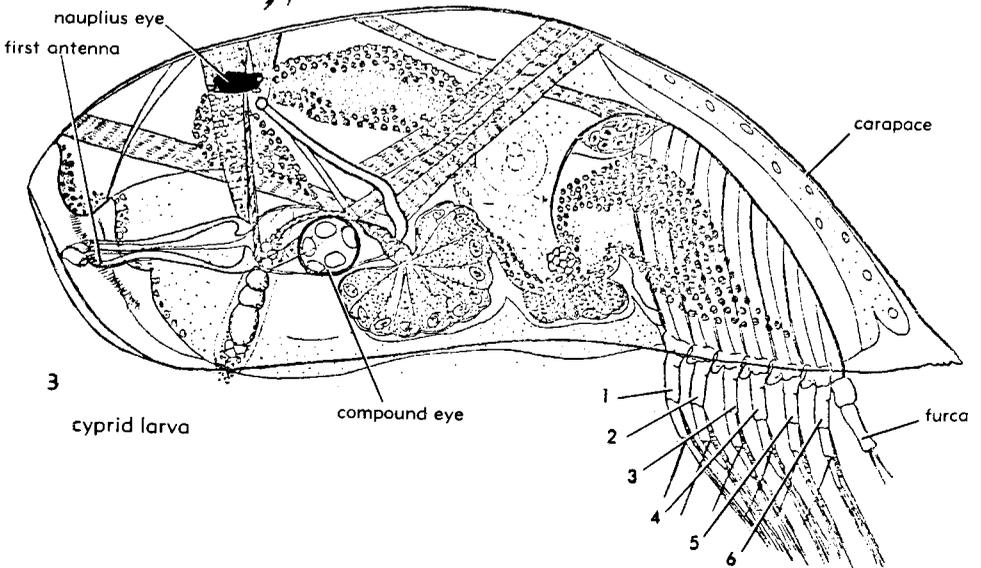
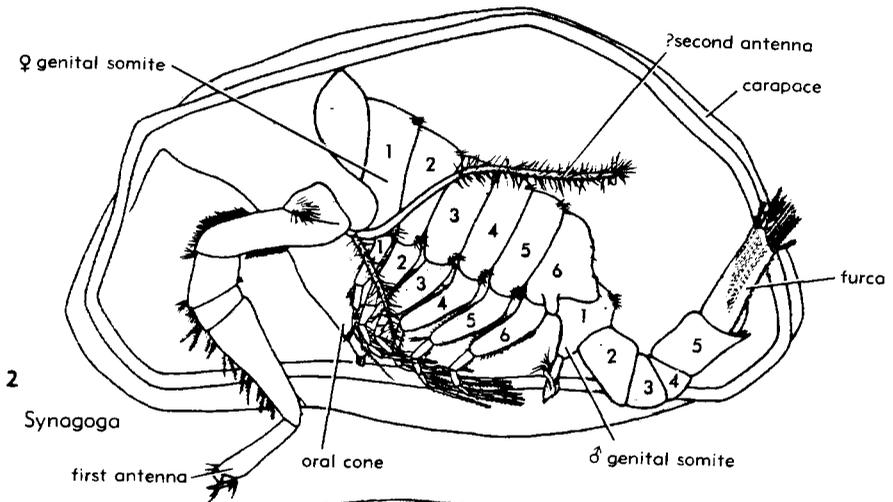
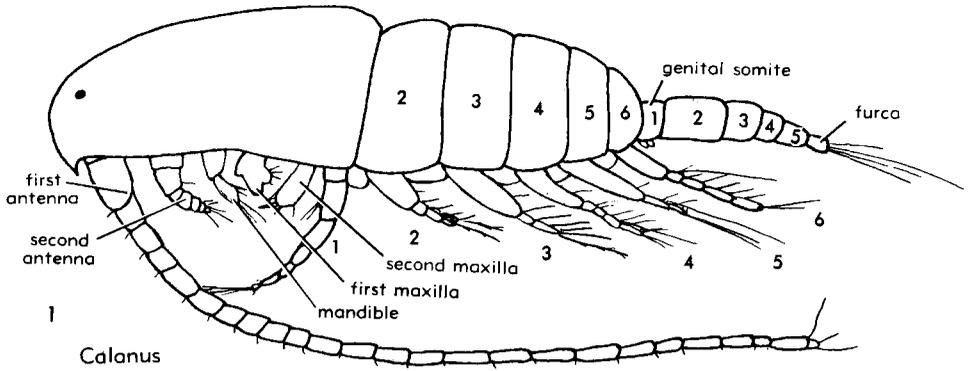
2) The Rhizocephala are parasites primarily of decapod crustaceans. In general, the cyprid seeks out and attaches itself to the host. Metamorphosis proceeds and a larval form known as kentrogon is developed that invades and ramifies through the tissues, usually resulting in parasitic castration of the host. Reproductive structures appear on the surface of the host after the nutritive structures have become well developed. The mantle, mantle cavity or brood chamber, ovaries and nervous elements of the reproductive body of the rhizocephalan are considered homologous with these structures in other cirripeds. However, the Rhizocephala are so modified that virtually no characteristics identify them as arthropods, much less crustaceans, other than their larval forms which are comparable to those of the acrothoracian and thoracican Cirripedia (Fig. 81,3).

Recent work has demonstrated that some species previously thought to be hermaphroditic have separate sexes. The female parasitizes the host while the male exists as a mass of spermatogenic material delivered to the female by the male cyprid larva (YANAGIMACHI, 1961). Another recently investigated rhizocephalan has been found to lack kentrogon and consequently to be externally parasitic (BOCQUET-VÉDRINE, 1961). BOSCHMA (1925 to date) can be consulted for taxonomic details of the group. A comprehensive bibliography is given in Zool. Meded. 39: xli-xlvi, 1964.

3) The Ascothoracica are parasitic on hexacorals and echinoderms. The order is ranked by some workers among the Cirripedia, and by others as a separate subclass of crustaceans, the Ascothoracida WAGIN. The least specialized forms have separate sexes, a life cycle including nauplius and cyprid larvae, a head reduced in the same manner as in ordinary cirripeds, an initial attachment by prehensile first antennae, and the same unique position of the female genital aperture as in other cirripeds (Fig. 82). Differences that have been utilized to separate them from the cirripeds are for the most part secondary and therefore of no great weight in a diagnosis of a separate subclass. We therefore have retained the Ascothoracica as an order of the Cirripedia.

The adult consists of a bivalved carapace gaping ventrally, permeated by gastric caeca, and provided with a postoral adductor muscle. The prosoma supports the prehensile first antennae, succeeded by a pair of filamentary appendages which have been interpreted as rudiments of the second antennae. The second antennae are usually lost in ordinary barnacles, appearing only in the nauplius and as rudiments in certain cyprids.

The mouth field is produced into an oral cone formed by the labrum, mandibles and two pairs of maxillae, and is apparently adapted to piercing and sucking (Fig. 80, 1). The thorax supports six biramous, natatory appendages. The abdomen of five somites is well developed in many species; the first somite supporting a penis or rudiment thereof, the last the furca. This is



the most generalized somite pattern found in the cirripeds and corresponds to that of the unspecialized Copepoda (cf. Fig. 82, 1-3). Hermaphroditism is apparently secondarily acquired. There are no fossils, although VOIGHT (1959) has described cysts in a Cretaceous octocoral; and MADSEN & WOLFF (1965) describe scars in an Upper Cretaceous echinoid they suggest were caused by ascothoracicans. WAGIN (1946) and BRATTSTRÖM (1947, 1948) can be consulted for systematic and biological aspects of the order.

4) Most Thoracica are free-living or commensal cirripeds found attached to a variety of living and inanimate substrata. They gain their greatest diversity in shallow waters but representatives are found at all depths. The earliest undoubted fossils (*Cyprilepas*) are found in the Silurian, but it is not until the Mesozoic that fossils become numerous. These are stalked forms belonging to the suborder Lepadomorpha (Fig. 83, 1, 3a, b). The Cenozoic marks the advancement of the sessile barnacles of the suborder Balanomorpha, an expansion that has continued through to the present time (Fig. 83, 2).

Most of the Thoracica are hermaphroditic, with internal fertilization. There is evidence for self-fertilization, but cross fertilization is generally the rule. The Scapellidae and Iblidae, among the Lepadomorpha, have species in which sexes are separate or combined; reduced attached males occurring with females; or complemental males with hermaphrodites; or all individ-

uals are hermaphrodites. The Balanomorpha were thought to be exclusively hermaphroditic. Recently, however, complemental males were discovered in a species of *Balanus* (HENRY & McLAUGHLIN, 1965).

The life cycle of the Thoracica is comparable to that of the Acrothoracica, including nauplius and cyprid stages. Anatomically the adult differs primarily in having the cirri nearly evenly distributed along the thorax, the mandibular palp associated more closely with the lateral margin of the labrum than with the mandible, and in not molting the exterior of the mantle along with the exoskeleton lining the mantle cavity and covering the appendages. This last feature is correlated with the ability to build up a permanent calcareous armament. Further details of structure will be taken up in the following section.

5) The Apoda was established by DARWIN to accommodate a curious parasite, *Proteolepas bivincta* DARWIN, found in the mantle cavity of the pedunculate barnacle *Heteralepas cornuta* (DARWIN) from the West Indies (Fig. 84). *Proteolepas* has not been seen since DARWIN described it. Because its segmentation can be interpreted as that of a copepod, or possibly a malacostracan (epicaridean), rather than that of a cirriped, it is presently considered to be an organism of unknown affinities. Therefore, the Apoda, and the larval forms attributed to it by HANSEN, STEUER, and McMURRICH, are retained *incertae sedis* in the Cirripedia only as a matter of convenience.

## MORPHOLOGY OF THORACICA

### GENERAL FEATURES

Thoracican cirripeds are sedentary animals. When at rest, the body and appendages are enclosed within a "mantle" formed by bilateral folds of the carapace. The

mantle is usually protected externally by a number of calcified plates (Fig. 83, 85). In the adult stage, the animal is attached to the substratum by the anterior part of the cephalic region. The first antennae and their associated cement glands form the

(See facing page.)

Fig. 82. Comparison of maxillopodan body plan of copepod with that of ascothoracan and thoracican cyprid larva.

1. Male *Calanus*,  $\times 32$  (23).
2. Male *Synagoga metacrinicola* OKADA,  $\times 25$  (after Okada, 1939).
3. Cyprid larva, *Trypetesa lampas* (HANCOCK),  $\times 233$  (after Kühnert, 1935, in 61).

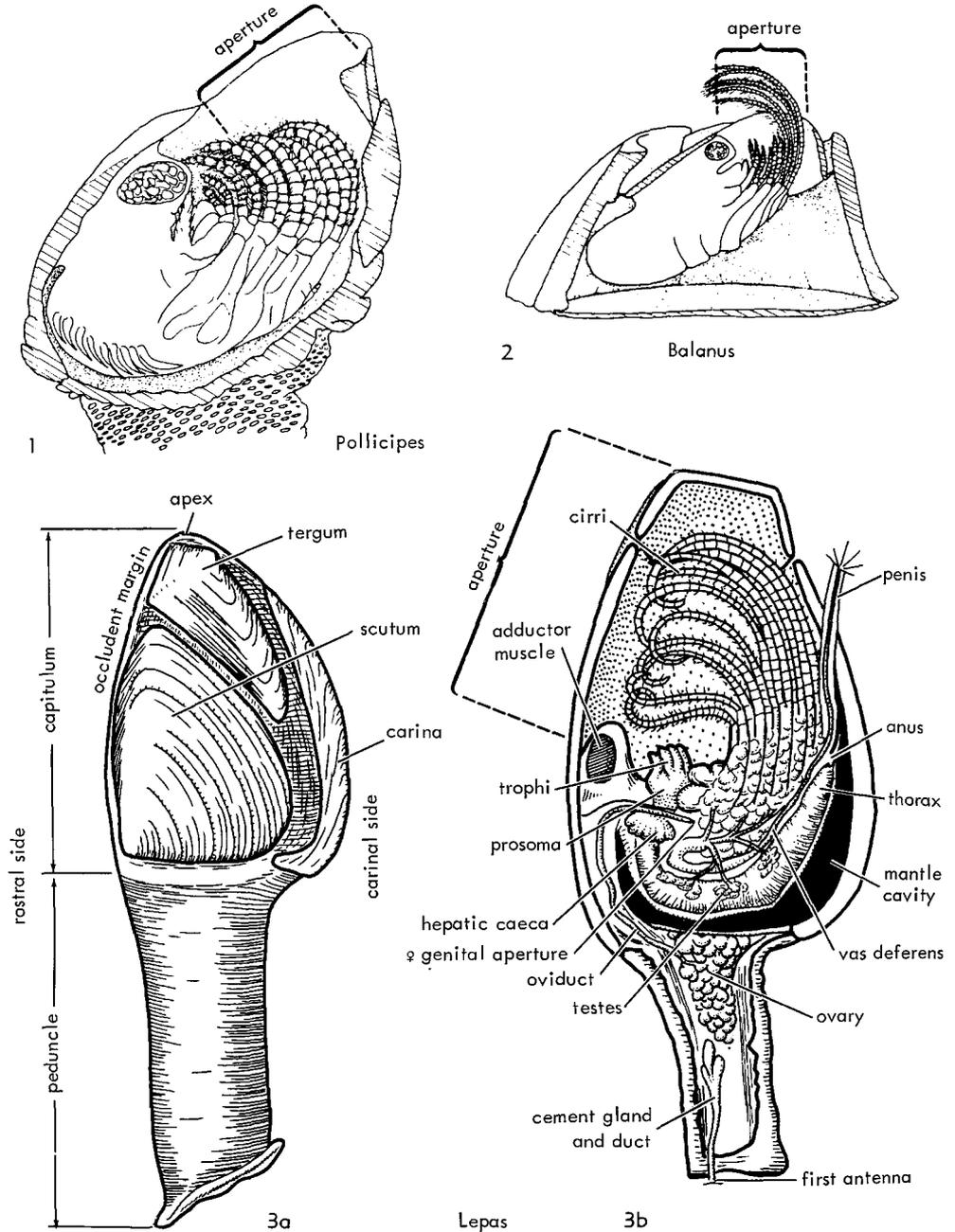


FIG. 83. Morphology of cirripeds; body plan of lepadomorphs compared with that of balanomorph.

1. Lepadomorph (Scalpellidae), *Pollicipes polymerus* SOWERBY, with right side of capitulum removed,  $\times 2.4$  (Newman, n).
2. Balanomorph (Balanidae), *Balanus (Balanus) amphitrite* DARWIN, with right side of wall and lining of mantle cavity removed,  $\times 2.4$  (Newman, n).
3. Lepadomorph (Lepadidae), *Lepas*.—3a. *L. (L.) hillii* LEACH, outer view of individual from right side,  $\times 2$  (after Darwin).—3b. *L. (L.)* sp., dissection from right side,  $\times 2.5$  (after Claus).

initial attachment of the free-living cyprid larva. After metamorphosis, the base of the peduncle in the Lepadomorpha, or where the margin of the wall meets the basis in Verrucomorpha and Balanomorpha, take over the function of attachment and cement the animal in place.

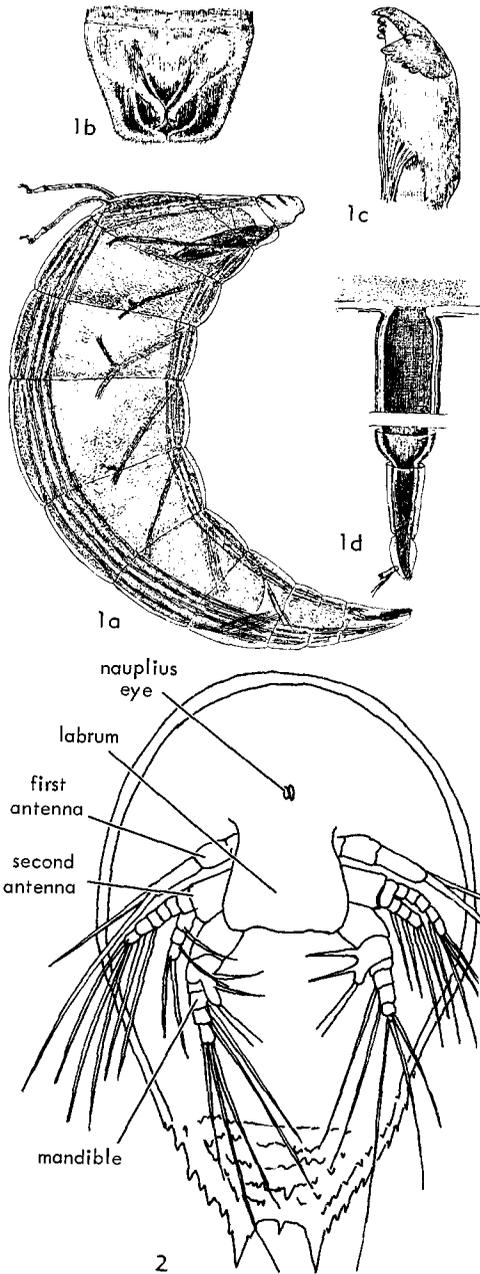


FIG. 84. Morphology of Apoda.—1. *Proteolepas bivincta* DARWIN; 1a, hermaphrodite,  $\times 17$ ; 1b, mouthfield, enl.; 1c, "compound mandibular organ," greatly enl.; 1d, "first antenna," greatly enl. (after Darwin).—2. HANSEN'S "Y" larva, supposed larva of the Apoda,  $\times 240$  (after 51).

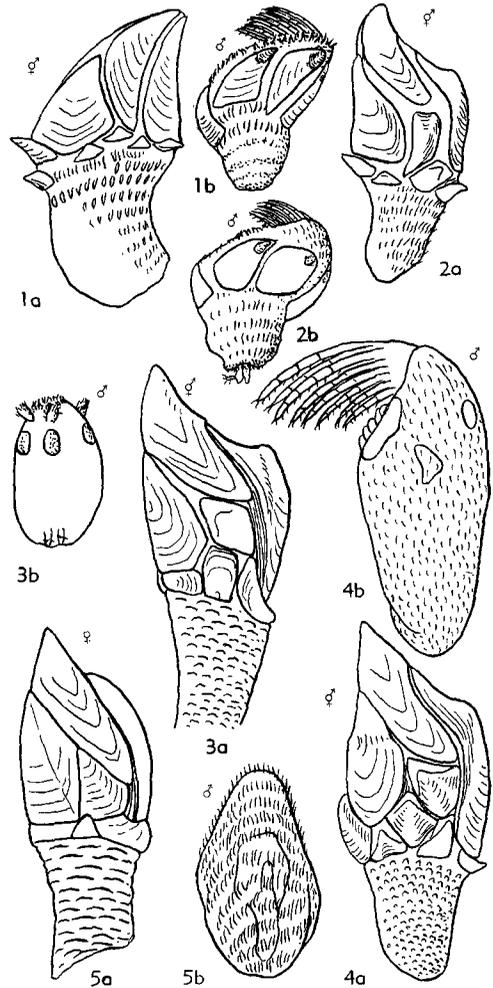


FIG. 85. Morphology of cirripeds. Sexuality in scalpellid genera, individuals viewed from right side, hermaphrodites (1a-4a) and their complementary males (1b-4b) and a female (5a) with dwarf male (5b) (males greatly enl.) (from Pilsbry, after Withers).—1a,b. *Calantica (Calantica) villosa* (LEACH).—2a,b. *Smilium peroni* GRAY. —3a,b. *Scalpellum scalpellum* (LINNÉ).—4a,b. *Euscalpellum rostratum* (DARWIN).—5a,b. *Acroscalpellum velutinum* (HOEK).

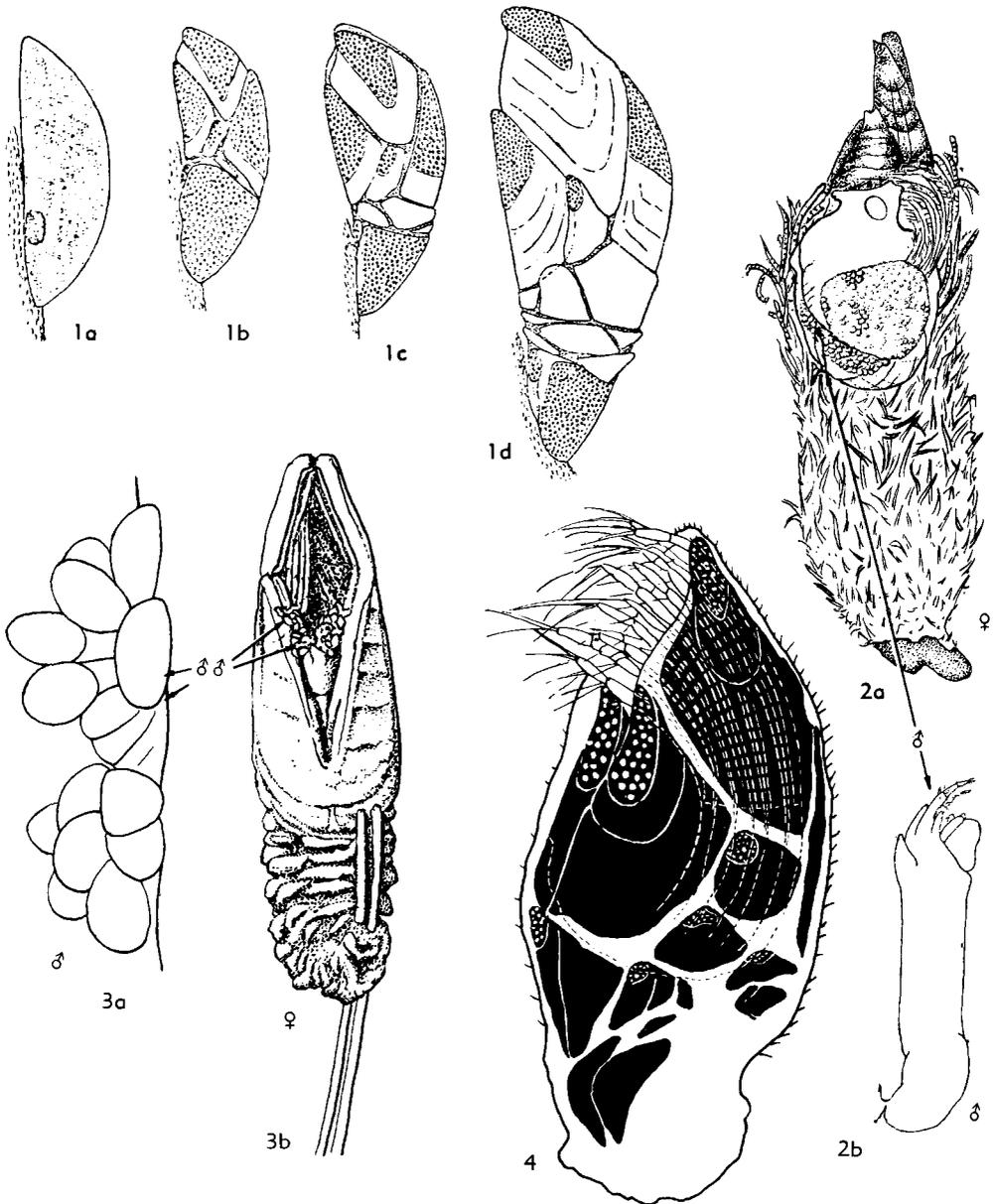


FIG. 86. Morphology of cirripeds. Ontogeny and sexuality.

1. Ontogeny of *Arcoscalpellum balanoides* (HOEK), illustrating appearance of additional primordia over basic number of five,  $\times 50$  (after 22).—*1a*. Newly settled cyprid larva.—*1b*. Cyprid shell cast, six primordia visible including that for upper latus and one each for dorsal and ventral peduncular scales, inframedian latus and carinal latus appearing as calcified plates without primordial precursor.—*1c*. Later stage, rostral latus appearing without primordial

precursor.—*1d*. Still later stage showing appearance of additional peduncular plates and continuing calcification of capitular plates, carrying primordia apically at their umbones.

2. *Ibla cumingi* DARWIN.—*2a*. Female,  $\times 4.5$  (right side of capitulum cut away, male and ovigerous lamellae seen *in situ*).—*2b*. Dwarf male, viewed from left side,  $\times 18$  (Newman, 1960).

The cephalic region in Lepadomorpha is developed into a more or less flexible stalk or **peduncle**. In the sessile forms Balanomorpha and Verrucomorpha, the anterior region is represented by a flattened disc or **basis**. The homology of these two regions in pedunculate and sessile forms was demonstrated by DARWIN (1851-54), who observed in both groups that initial attachment was made by the first antennae of the cyprid larva, and that traces of these appendages were located centrally, embedded in the cement of the attachment disc.

In the pedunculate cirripeds, the mantle, with or without its protective plates, is termed the **capitulum** (Fig. 83,3a). The body occupies the cavity formed by the capitulum, where it lies attached at the scutal margin in a curved position. The long axis of the body is curved, but for the most part, it is oriented at right angles to the long axis of the animal when at rest. Because of this distortion in the relationship of one part of the animal to the other, confusion arises if ordinary terms of orientation are followed. It therefore has been customary in describing cirripeds to use the arbitrary terminology established by DARWIN. By convention, pedunculate cirripeds are illustrated in an upright position, with the capitulum above and the peduncle below, so that the animal is effectively "standing on its head." In this position, what would be anatomically equivalent to the ventral surface, including the occludent margin, is termed **rostral**, and what would be dorsal is termed **carinal**, names being derived from the unpaired calcified plates that occur on these margins in many species. The body lying within the capitulum is reflexed toward the carinal margin from the prosoma. When extended during feeding, it assumes a position more parallel to the long axis of the entire animal, so that its ventral and dorsal surfaces more closely

correspond to the dorsal (carinal) and ventral (rostral) surfaces of the capitulum.

The relationship of the body to the mantle wall is basically the same in the pedunculate and sessile cirripeds (cf. Fig. 83,1-3). However, the body is reflexed even more in the latter, so that when the animal is at rest, the body tends to lie almost parallel to the substratum. When feeding, however, the body is rotated and extended posteriorly, so that the same general relationships hold for sessile forms as for the lepadomorphs. Further similarities and homologies between these two basic forms will be taken up under the section on evolution.

The majority of the extant thoracican cirripeds are hermaphroditic. However, some species produce relatively small males (Fig. 85, 86,2-3). Following DARWIN, the male is referred to as a **complemental male** when it occurs with a hermaphrodite, and as a **dwarf male** when it occurs with a female. In Recent forms, the males are considerably smaller than the female or hermaphrodite and are always attached either externally or within the mantle cavity. Usually the armature, trophic structures and digestive system of such males are degenerate or nonexistent.

Among Recent scalpellids (e.g., *Scalpellum ornatum*, *Mesoscalpellum gruevii*, Fig. 86,3) a depression or pocket occurs internally in the scuta, above the attachment for the adductor muscle closing these plates, and accommodates one or more minute males. A similar depression is seen in the scutal plates of *Arcoscalpellum* from the Upper Cretaceous, suggesting the presence of dwarf or complemental males in Mesozoic times. (See Addendum to Cirripedia, p. R628.)

It is assumed that fossil lepadomorphs are large females or hermaphrodites. Presently, however, there is no way of knowing that free-living separate sexes did not occur. The trend seen in Recent forms suggests that they did, and if such were the

FIG. 86. (Continued from facing page.)

3. *Mesoscalpellum gruevii* (ANNANDALE).—3a. Dwarf males, enl.—3b. Female with males *in situ*, viewed from rostral end,  $\times 2$  (Annandale, 1907-1908).
4. Primordial plates (possibly more than basic number of five) in *Euscalpellum bengalense* (ANNANDALE),  $\times 48$  (after Stubbings, 1936).

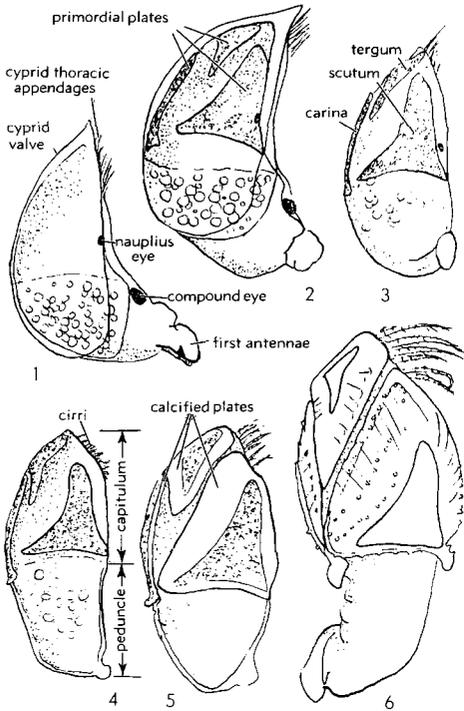


FIG. 87. Morphology of cirripeds. Metamorphosis of *Lepas* (*Lepas*) *anatifera* LINNÉ,  $\times 16$  (Newman, n).—1. Recently settled cyprid larva beginning metamorphosis.—2. Primordial plates appearing beneath cyprid shell, compound eyes being shed.—3. Cyprid shell shed, nauplius eye still visible near middle of occludent margin of scutal primordium.—4. Further differentiation of capitulum and peduncle, cirri but not calcareous plates having appeared.—5. Calcification beginning beneath and progressing away from primordial plates.—6. Juvenile stage having much the same proportions as adult.

case, it seems likely that the males would have been smaller than the females of the same species.

### HARD PARTS

A fundamental characteristic of the Arthropoda is molting of the exoskeleton during growth and development. Among the Crustacea, only the Conchostraca, certain fossil supposed Ostracoda and the thoracic Cirripedia, all forms with a basically bivalved carapace, have developed the ability to retain and build up portions of the

exoskeleton of the carapace with calcium carbonate, while frequently molting the chitinous exoskeleton of the rest of the body. Among Cirripedia, the Thoracica, but not the Ascothoracica, Acrothoracica, or Rhizocephala, produce a shell of calcium carbonate.

According to CLARKE & WHEELER (1917), the barnacle shell differs from that of other crustaceans in containing very little phosphate or organic material. CHAVE (1954) reported the shell of various forms to be predominantly calcite, to contain no aragonite and to have a magnesium carbonate fraction ranging between 1.35 and 4.60 percent, varying proportionally to the temperature at which it was laid down.

The calcareous portion of the thoracican shell appears during the metamorphosis of the cyprid larva into a young barnacle. In the Lepadomorpha and Verrucomorpha the appearance of certain of the calcified plates or valves is preceded by the appearance of so-called **primordial valves or plates**, which are presumably chitinous and for which the function is unknown. The primordial valves appear attached to the hypodermis, beneath the cyprid shell (Fig. 87-89). In the Lepadidae *s.l.* there are five primordia, corresponding to the five calcified plates that will develop beneath them as metamorphosis progresses. In the Scalpellidae there are also usually five primordia, associated with the same centers of calcification as in the Lepadidae, but in certain species additional primordia may be present as well (Fig. 86, *l, d*).

The shape and size of a primordial plate is apparently determined when it is formed and it appears that it becomes physiologically isolated from the hypodermis after calcification sets in. In the adult barnacle, it resides at the umbo of the calcified plate with which it is associated, and although small, it can be found, unless eroded away. Primordial plates have been found on the umbones of certain fossil scalpellids from the Middle Carboniferous and Jurassic (Kimmeridgian).

Interpretations of the phylogenetic significance of the primordial plates will be taken up in the section on phylogeny. Suffice it to say at this point that primordial

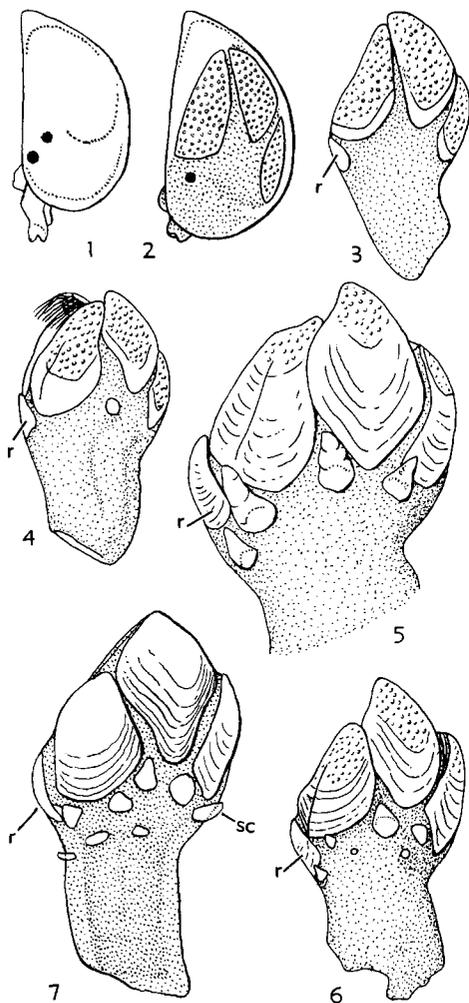


FIG. 88. Morphology of cirripeds. Ontogenetic development of *Pollicipes polymerus typica* BROCH, Rec. (not to scale) (Broch, mod.).—1. Cyprid just attached.—2. Cyprid with primordial plates.—3. Cyprid shell shed, calcification around primordia and rostrum developing.—4. Specimen with upper latus.—5. Somewhat aberrant specimen with three latera and subrostral latus.—6. Normal specimen with two lower latera developed.—7. Specimen with subcarina well developed, and first peduncle scale appearing below rostrum. [Explanation; *r*, rostrum; *sc*, subcarina.]

plates, while found in Lepadomorpha and Verrucomorpha, are unknown in the Balanomorpha.

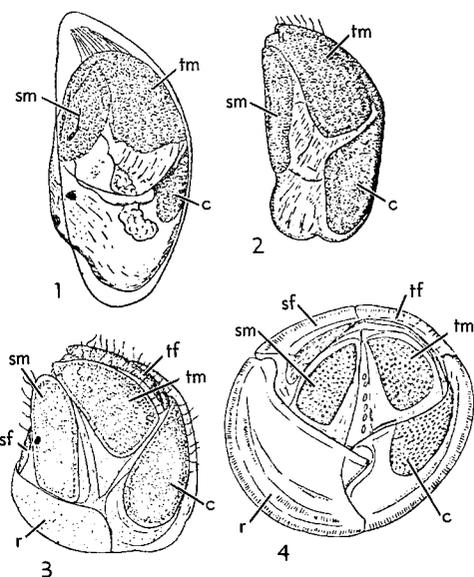


FIG. 89. Morphology of cirripeds. Metamorphosis in *Verruca (Verruca) stroemia* (O. F. MÜLLER), all enl. (after Runnström, 1926, from 61).—1. Attached cyprid with primordial plates of movable scutum, movable tergum and carina visible.—2. Cyprid shell cast, carina rotated somewhat to right side.—3. Calcification beginning—movable scutum, movable tergum, fixed scutum, fixed tergum and rostral plate visible.—4. Juvenile resembling adult. [Explanation: *c*, carina; *r*, rostrum; *sf*, scutum (fixed); *sm*, scutum (movable); *tf*, tergum (fixed); *tm*, tergum (movable).]

### LEPADOMORPHA

The armature of the capitulum consists of a distinct number of principal calcareous plates formed and arranged in a definite manner, depending on the species, genus, and generally the family. Therefore, the number of relative positions of the plates are of systematic, ontogenetic, and phylogenetic significance. For descriptive purposes, it has been found necessary to name not only each principal capitular plate, but also various conspicuous features of most of them.

The principal plates seem to be fundamentally six in number, in the Scalpellidae, namely the paired scuta and terga, a carina and a rostrum (Fig. 90, 1a). During meta-

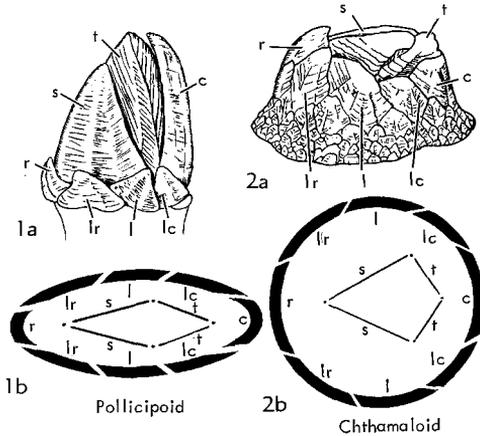


FIG. 90. Morphology of cirripeds. Comparison of (1) pollicipoid form comparable to *Calantica* (*Scillaelepas*) *dorsata* (STEENSTRUP, U.Cret. (Dan.), Denmark, but with relationship of latera to other latera altered and (2) the chthamaloid *Catophragmus* (*Catomerus*) *polymerus* DARWIN, Rec., Tasm.; 1a, 2a,  $\times 2.2$  (1a, after 118, 120); 1b, 2b, plan views of principal plates (Newman, n). [Explanation: c, carina; l, latera; lc, latera (carinal); lr, latera (rostral); r, rostrum; s, scutum; t, tergum.]

morphosis from the cyprid larva to the adult, in the Verrucomorpha, as well as the scalpellid Lepadomorpha, all but the last, or rostral plate, is preceded by a primordial plate (Fig. 88, 89). In the Lepadidae, there are basically only five capitular plates, the rostrum being completely absent (Fig. 87). The carina forms the dorsal margin of the capitulum. In *Praelepas*, one of the oldest known thoracicans, and in the Lepadomorpha *s.l.*, the carina extends between both the terga and the scuta (cf. Fig. 83,3, see Fig. 114,10). However, in the scalpellids, it borders on the terga alone, and this is another fundamental difference between the two groups. The scuta, usually larger than the terga in lepadids and equal or smaller in the scalpellids, serve to protect the ventrolateral part of the animal while the terga form the ventral or posteroventral aperture through which the cirri are protruded during feeding. A free scutum can often be recognized by the presence of an adductor muscle pit or scar on the interior.

The terga are usually large and flat, adjoin the scuta, and serve to protect the pos-

terior part of the animal. These plates are not provided with muscles, but are affected by opening and closing movements of the scuta. The rostrum, present in the scalpellids, commonly resembles the carina in shape, but is usually much smaller and adjoins the rostral angles of the scuta. This plate can usually be distinguished by the greater development of growth ridges on the apical part of the inner surface.

Only the principal six plates are present in the Carboniferous *Eolepas*, and they form a single whorl (see Fig. 115,1). *Archaeolepas* has the same basic arrangement of plates, but the peduncle has become armed with successive whorls of uniform additional plates (see Fig. 115,6). In *Calantica* (*Scillaelepas*), the scuta, terga and carina form an upper whorl, whereas the rostrum and basal portion of the carina, in conjunction with a number of secondary plates, form a secondary basal whorl, the margins of which overlap one another (Fig. 91,6). This secondary whorl has nine parts—the rostrum, three pairs of latera (sing., latera) known as the rostral, median and carinal latera, the carina and a subcarina. Eight of the nine can be compared with the wall plates of *Catophragmus* spp., forms intermediate between pedunculate and sessile barnacles to be taken up later (Fig. 90).

In genera such as *Arcoscalpellum* (see Fig. 115,8), the median latera, rather than forming part of the basal whorl, is located up between basal portions of the scutum and tergum, where it is known as the upper latera, the plate below it being termed the inframedian latera. The subcarina is highly developed in the Cretaceous *Cretis-scalpellum* (see Fig. 115,4) and the Cretaceous to Recent *Calantica* (*Scillaelepas*) (see Fig. 115,9).

The margins of the plates are named according to the plates which they adjoin. Details of the scutum and tergum are given in Figure 92,1a-e, 2a,b, and of the carina in Figure 92,3. A number of smaller plates arranged in whorls below the latera are seen in *Zeugmatolepas* (see Fig. 115,5), and *Pollicipes* (= *Mitella*) (see Fig. 115,7). These plates are collectively termed lower latera.

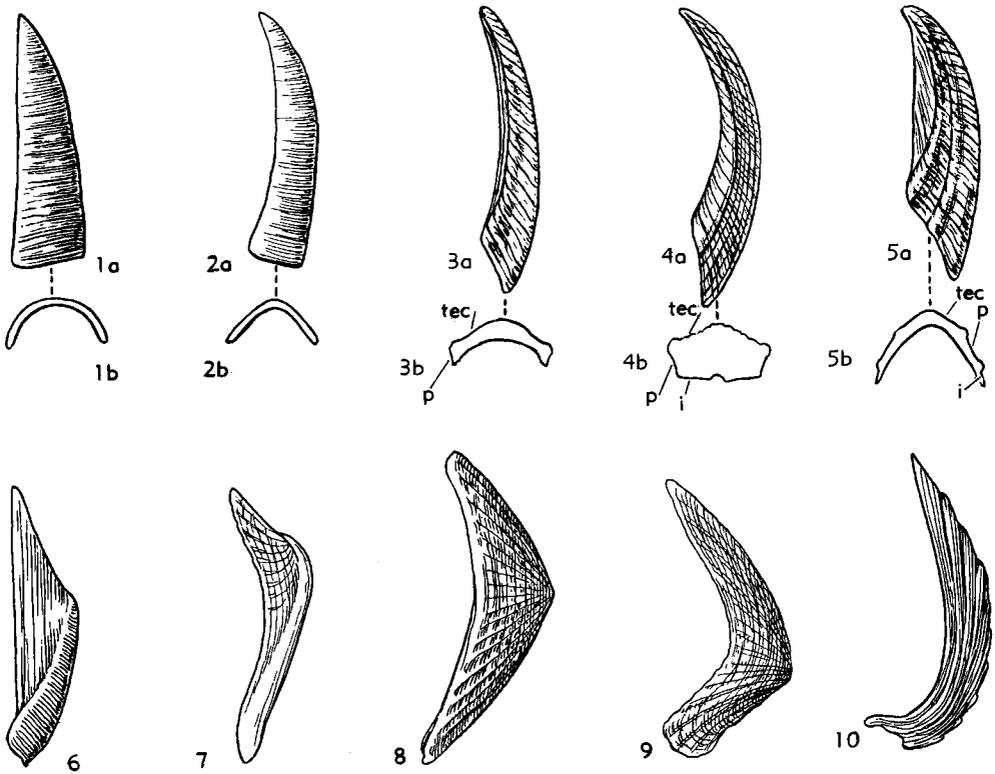


FIG. 91. Morphology of cirriped plates: carinae (not to scale) (after Withers).

1. *Eolepas quenstedti* (VON AMMON); 1a,b, lat., transv. sec.
  2. *Archaeolepas suprajurensis* (DE LORIO); 2a,b, lat., transv. sec.
  3. *Arcoscalpellum simplex* (DARWIN); 3a,b, lat., transv. sec.
  4. *Arcoscalpellum arcuatum* (DARWIN); 4a,b, lat., transv. sec.
  5. *Arcoscalpellum maximum sulcatum* (J. DE C. SOWERBY); 5a,b, lat., transv. sec.
  6. *?Smilium parvulum* (WITHERS); lat. view.
  7. *Virgiscalpellum hagenowianum* (BOSQUET); lat. view.
  8. *V. darwinianum* (BOSQUET); lat. view.
  9. *Oxynaspis celata* DARWIN; lat. view.
  10. *Lepas (Lepas) anatifera* LINNÉ; lat. view.
- [Explanation: *i*, intraparietes; *p*, parietes; *tec*, tectum.]

In some forms the inner surface of the carina, rostrum, and tergum is marked by ridges or lines of growth at the apical end. This feature is best developed in forms with massive plates. These growth ridges are caused by the recession of the hypodermis during periodic growth of the plates. In forms where this occurs, the ends of the plates come to project freely beyond the capitulum. This is a feature of great phylogenetic significance, as will be discussed shortly.

The carina in the Triassic (Rhaetic) and Jurassic Scalpellidae and the Middle Carbo-

niferous Praelepadidae has an apical (posterior) umbo and is simple in structure (Fig. 91,1-5). The carina of *Eolepas* (Fig. 91,1) is almost straight, transversely convex, with a straight or concave basal margin, and not inwardly bowed. *Archaeolepas* (Fig. 91,2) shows further development, the carina being somewhat bowed inwardly, and the basal margin is rounded. The carina of other Jurassic genera such as *Calantica*, has a rounded or angular basal margin, which reflects the development of basal latera. In Cretaceous species of *Arcoscalpellum* (e.g., *A. simplex*, Aptian, Fig. 91,3), a roof or

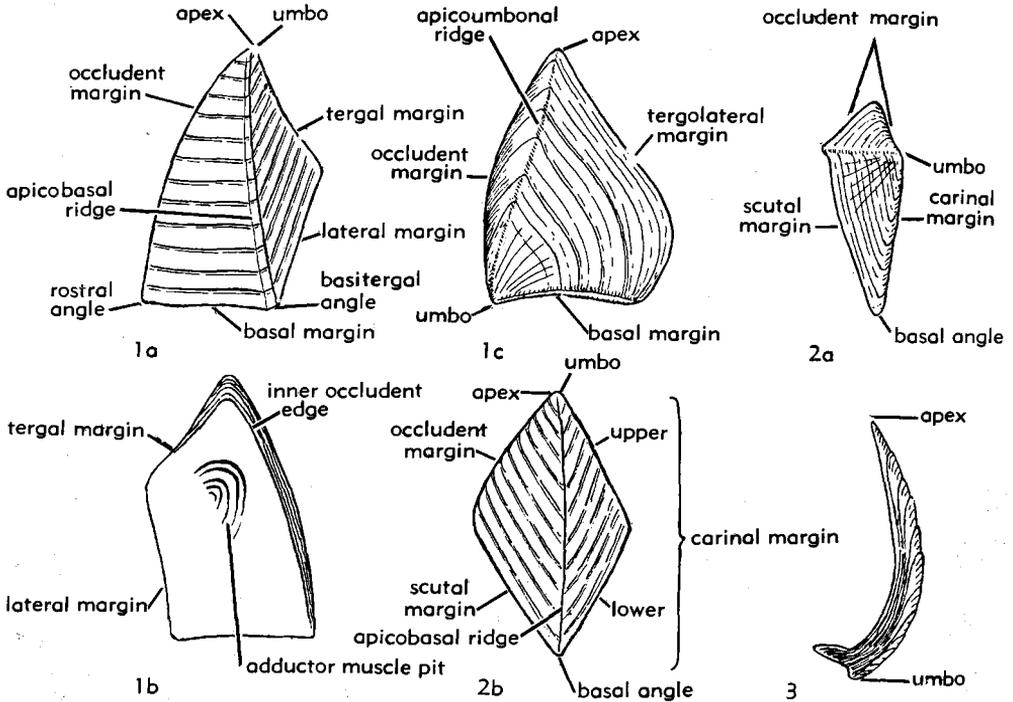


FIG. 92. Morphology of cirripeds, showing lepadomorph plates (not to scale) (after Withers).

1. Scutum.—1a,b. Scalpellid, exterior and interior.—1c. Lepadid, outer side.  
 2. Tergum.—2a. Lepadid, exterior.—2b. Scalpellid, exterior.  
 3. Carina; lepadid, lat. view.

tectum of the carina becomes demarcated from the sides, by an angle or ridge. The sides in such a carina are termed **parietes**. This term is unfortunate because of the confusion it may cause. It does not apply to the same part of the plate in the Lepadomorpha as in the Balanomorpha.

On the inner edge of the parietes in species such as the Aptian *A. accumulatum* and the Albian *A. arcuatum* (Fig. 91,4), a further development has taken place. The interior of the upper part of the carina is thickened by successive laminae, and the portions formed by the edges of these laminae are termed **intraparietes**. The intraparietes are marked off from the parietes by an angle or ridge. In later forms (e.g., *Arcoscalpellum maximum sulcatum*, Senonian, Fig. 91,5) the intraparietes are not rectangularly bent inward as in *A. arcuatum*, but form a thin wall on each

side of the plate. The intraparietes always have growth lines turned obliquely upward, and these parts bridge the interval between the carina and tergam. The intraparietes extend a little beyond the umbo in the Cenomanian *A. lineatum*, and in the upper Senonian *Virgiscalpellum darwinianum* (Fig. 91,8) the umbo of the carina is almost equal above and below the umbo. In the Recent *Oxynaspis* (Oxynaspididae) (Fig. 91,9) the umbo is well below center, and in *Lepas* (Lepadidae) (Fig. 91,10) the umbo is basal. What is called the carina in *Stramentum* (Stramentidae) (see Fig. 116, 6) is split longitudinally into two parts.

The scutum (Fig. 92,1a-c) is triangular or rhomboidal with the ventral border being termed the **occludent margin**, and the basal border simply termed the basal margin. In forms with a straight lateral border such as *Eolepas* (Fig. 93,1) this border is

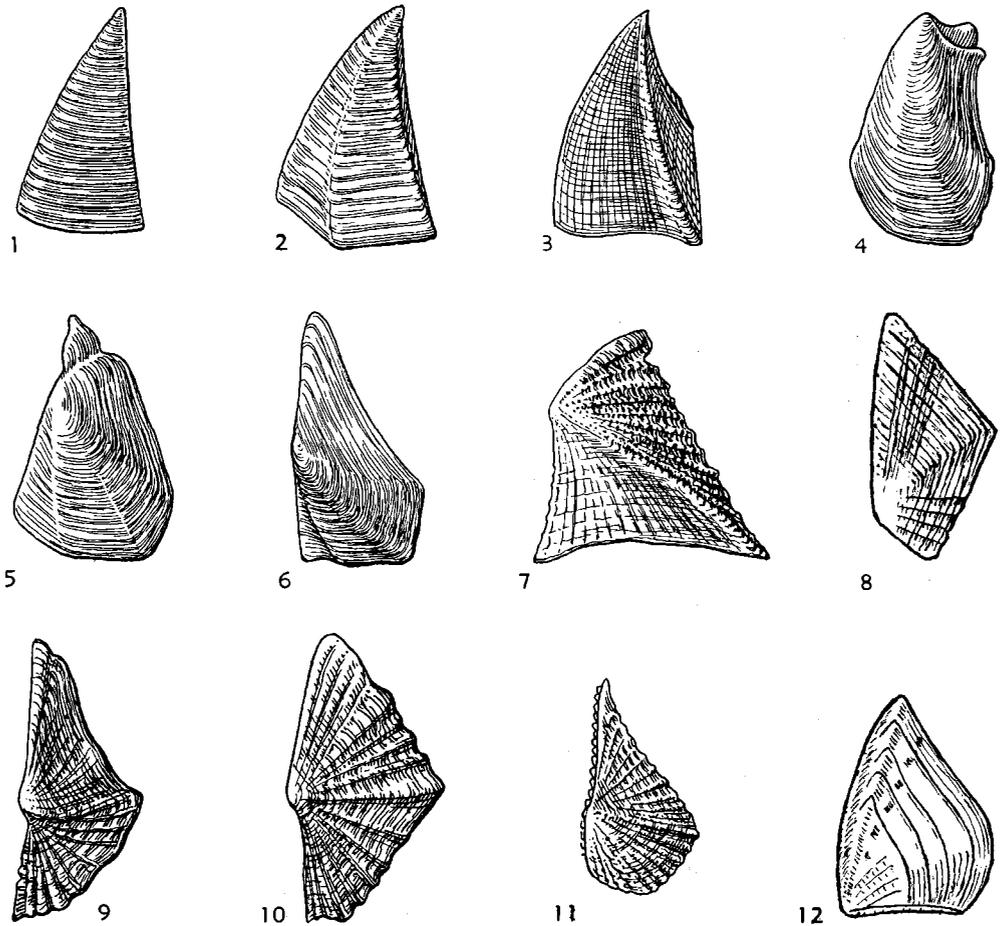


FIG. 93. Morphology of cirriped plates; scuta (all lat. views, not to scale) (after Withers).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Eolepas quenstedti</i> (VON AMMON).               | 8. <i>Virgiscalpellum darwinianum</i> (BOSQUET). |
| 2. <i>Archaeolepas suprajurensis</i> (DE LORIOI).       | 9. <i>V. hagenowianum</i> (BOSQUET).             |
| 3. <i>Arcoscalpellum arcuatum</i> (DARWIN).             | 10. <i>V. beisseli</i> (BOSQUET).                |
| 4, 5. <i>Zeugmatolepas mockleri</i> WITHERS.            | 11. <i>Oxynaspis celata</i> DARWIN.              |
| 6. <i>Z. cretae</i> (STEENSTRUP).                       | 12. <i>Lepas (Lepas) anatifera</i> LINNÉ.        |
| 7. <i>Calantica (Titanolepas) tuberculata</i> (DARWIN). |  |

termed the **tergal margin**. In forms with an angulate lateral border, such as *Cretiscalpellum* (see Fig. 115,4) and *Arcoscalpellum* (Fig. 93,3), the posterior part is termed the **tergal margin**, and the anterior part is termed the **lateral margin**. Along the tergal margin the growth lines of the scutum may turn abruptly, forming an area known as the **tergal slip** which may be demarcated from the bulk of the scutum by a longitudinal ridge. The basal angle adjacent to the

rostrum is termed the **rostral angle**, and the opposite angle the **basitergal angle**. The angle between the tergal and lateral margins, when present, is termed the **tergolateral angle**. That formed by the occludent and scutal margins is termed the **apical angle**. In the earliest Jurassic form *Eolepas* (Fig. 93,1) the scutum is triangular, without a tergal slip, and the tergal and basal margins are straight. *Archaeolepas* (Fig. 93,2) has a narrow tergal slip, and this fea-

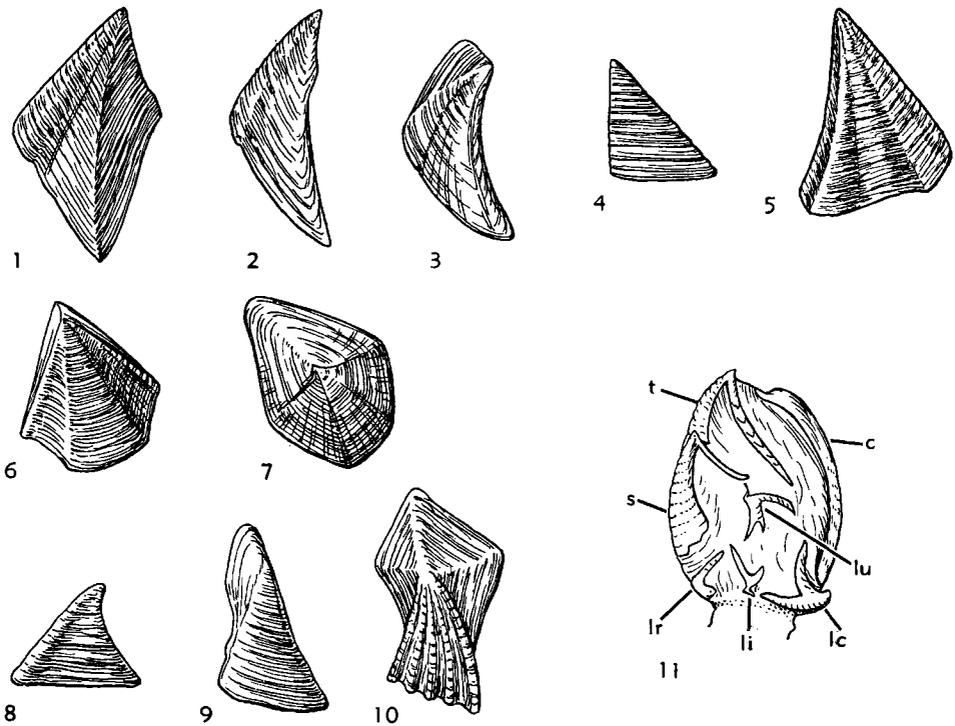


FIG. 94. Morphology of cirriped plates (all lat. views, not to scale) (1-10, after Withers; 11, after Pilsbry).

- 1-3. Terga.—1. *Cretiscalpellum glabrum* (F. A. ROEMER).—2. *Scalpellum magnum* DARWIN.  
3. *S. burdigalense* DES MOULINS.  
4-7. Upper latera.—4. *Cretiscalpellum glabrum* (F. A. ROEMER).—5. *Arcoscalpellum fossula* (DARWIN).—6. *A. quadratum* (DIXON).—7. *Scalpellum magnum* DARWIN.  
8-10. Inframedian latera.—8. *Arcoscalpellum fossula* (DARWIN).—9. *A. maximum* (J. DE C. SOWERBY).—10. *Virgiscalpellum darwinianum* (BOSQUET).  
11. Capitulum of *Mesoscalpellum dicheloplax* (PILSBRY).

[Explanation: *c*, carina; *lc*, latus (carinal); *li*, latus (inframedian); *lr*, latus (rostral); *lu*, latus (upper); *s*, scutum; *t*, tergum.]

ture is further developed in forms such as the Albian *Arcoscalpellum arcuatum* (Fig. 93,3).

The scutal umbo in early Scalpellidae is apical. Young individuals of the Cenomanian *Zeugmatolepas mockleri* (Figs. 93,4-5) have an apical umbo, but in older individuals the upper tergal part of the plate extends beyond the umbo. Development of the upper tergal part in the higher upper Senonian species *Z. cretae* (Fig. 93,6) is more pronounced, bringing the umbo to a more central position. In Scalpellidae such as the Cenomanian *Calantica* (*Titanolepas*) *tuberculata* (Fig. 93,7), the Maastrichtian *Virgiscalpellum darwinianum* (Fig. 93,8), and *V. hagenowianum*, and the Senonian *V. beisseli* (Fig. 93,10) the umbo is sub-

central. The umbo is also subcentral in the Recent *Oxynaspis* (*Oxynaspididae*) (Fig. 93,11), but is basal in the unmodified Lepadidae (*Lepas*, Fig. 93,12) and most Poecilasmatidae.

The tergum (Fig. 92,2a-b) is commonly diamond-shaped. The ventral border is termed the **occludent margin**; that adjoining the scutum, the **scutal margin**; and that adjoining the carina, the **carinal margin**, the last usually being divided into upper and lower parts. A submedial ridge or furrow usually divides this plate. The tergum of Mesozoic forms varies little, but in the Tertiary upward-directed growth from the occludent margin is observed (e.g., *Scalpellum burdigalense*, Mio., Fig. 94,3; *S. magnum*, Plio., Fig. 94,2).

The rostrum is a single plate situated at the rostral angles of the scuta. In forms where it approaches the carina in size, such as *Eolepas* (see Fig. 115,1) and the Recent *Pollicipes mitella*, the extent of the rostrum that projects freely is greater than in the carina. The rostral latera, when present, adjoin or may overlap the rostrum, as in *Calantica* (*Scillaelepas*), *Arcoscalpellum*, and *Scalpellum*.

The simplest form of the upper latus, as seen in *Cretiscalpellum* (Aptian-U.Senon., Fig. 94,4), is triangular, with a straight basal margin and an apical umbo. In certain species of *Arcoscalpellum*, such as *A. fossula* (Fig. 94,5), the growth lines are upturned at the sides and the basal angles consequently truncate. In other species (e.g., *A. quadratum*, Eoc., Fig. 94,6) the edges of the laminae forming the plate extend slightly beyond the umbo, a condition much emphasized in the Pliocene *Scalpellum magnum* (Fig. 94,7). Similar changes in the position of the umbo are found in the inframedian latus of some Cretaceous species of *Arcoscalpellum* (Fig. 85,5), and in one *Virgiscalpellum* (Fig. 85,91). The rostral and carinal latera exhibit comparable changes in umbonal position.

In certain stocks, the plates have unusual shapes which are the result of incomplete calcification, a condition usually associated with a special mode of life. This condition, for example, is seen in Recent species of *Mesoscalpellum* (Fig. 85,94) (Scalpellidae), *Octolasmis* (Poecilasmatidae), *Conchoderma* (Lepadidae), and *Oxynaspis* (Oxynaspididae).

#### VERRUCOMORPHA

These are sessile thoracicans with pronounced asymmetry of the shell. Of the three genera, *Proverruca*, *Eoverruca* and *Verruca* appearing in the Upper Cretaceous, only *Verruca* is surviving today.

The entire shell of the adult *Verruca* consists of but six plates; the paired terga and scuta, the carina and rostrum. The carina and rostrum, and the tergum and scutum of either the right or left side, form the box-like wall. The remaining tergum and scutum are movable and form a lid or operculum to the box. The basis is membranous

except in one modern species (WITHERS, 1935).

The ontogeny of these peculiar forms was analyzed by DARWIN (1854) and the gross features are briefly illustrated here (Fig. 89,1-4). Some asymmetry is seen in the arrangement of the primordial plates when they first appear beneath the cyprid shell, and it becomes more pronounced with development. This is particularly true of the terga and scuta, fixed and movable members of which bear little resemblance to each other in the adult. Once metamorphosis has been completed, the carina, rostrum, and fixed tergum and scutum rest directly on the substratum. The movable tergum and scutum are articulated with one another and form a rigid lid or operculum having an essentially straight hinge line along the upper margins of the carina and rostrum (see Fig. 117,4a,b).

The six-plated condition and asymmetry no doubt has been derived from a symmetrical ancestral stock as pointed out by DARWIN (1854). Both he and WITHERS (1935) called attention to similarity of the unmodified tergum and scutum with the same plates in forms presently assigned to the Brachylepadomorpha. The asymmetry found in fossil verrucomorpha is somewhat less pronounced, and two lateral plates not found in modern forms, contributed to the structure of the wall. These, the rostrolateral and carinolateral plates, lie between the carina and rostrum on the side opposite the fixed tergum and scutum, as seen in *Proverruca* and *Eoverruca* (see Fig. 117,1b, 3b).

In *Eoverruca*, the fixed tergum and scutum stand in a relatively vertical position and resemble their movable counterparts in having surfaces divided into two regions by a central ridge or rib, and in the manner in which they articulate with one another. The central ribs have been interpreted by PILSBRY (1916) and WITHERS (1935) as forming a primitive articulation between the two plates in Brachylepadomorpha. Their persistence on the fixed plates in *Eoverruca* would therefore be as vestigial structures. The rostrum and carina, on the other hand, are also more normal in not extending laterally any more on one side than on the other, the lateral space on the side opposite the

fixed tergum and scutum being filled by two lateral plates not found in *Verruca*. Thus the general form is higher and more laterally flattened, and as pointed out by WITHERS (1935), when viewed from the side of the movable opercular parts, there is a marked resemblance to the Brachylepadomorpha.

### BRACHYLEPADOMORPHA

These are extinct symmetrical sessile thoracicans that have eight primary plates forming the shell, the basal margin of which was surrounded by several whorls of small imbricate plates. In most cases, the basis was membranous. Although sessile, the general form of these barnacles resembles the capitulum of a pedunculate barnacle, in that it is not divided functionally into wall and operculum as in the Verrucomorpha and Balanomorpha. In fact, some of the first described species were placed in the scalpellid genus *Pollicipes*, and the resemblance between *Pycnolepas* and the capitulum of *Pollicipes mitella* is remarkable (cf. Fig. 115,7 and 117,5). The more primitive of the two recognized genera, *Pycnolepas*, is known probably as early as the Upper Jurassic. *Brachylepas* appears in the Upper Cretaceous.

The principal components of the shell, as in the Verrucomorpha, are the paired terga and scuta, and the carina and rostrum. The tergum and scutum of each side appear to be loosely articulated with each other, perhaps showing some advance over the condition seen in the Lepadomorpha. However, the articulation is overlain by a narrow upper latus which indicates that the articulation was no better developed than in *Pollicipes*. These six plates form the bulk of the shell and are contained between the large rostrum and the carina. Around the base small imbricate plates are arranged in several whorls.

Although these were sessile barnacles, they differed from other sessile forms in not having developed a functional separation between the plates forming the aperture and those primarily involved in forming the wall. The development of such a functional separation took two courses in other sessile forms; one seen in the Verru-

comorpha, the other in the Balanomorpha, and until the separation was achieved, a truly rigid wall could not be formed.

### BALANOMORPHA

The shell (Fig. 95,1) in balanomorph barnacles consists of a circular wall composed of a number of more or less rigidly articulated compartmental plates (Fig. 95, 4-6) with or without a calcareous basal disc (**basis**, Fig. 95,1). An uncalcified basis is simply membranous. The **orifice** (Fig. 95,1) is occupied by four **opercular valves (or plates)**: the paired **terga** (Fig. 95,2a-b) and **scuta** (Fig. 95,3), which together form an **operculum**. The tergum and scutum of each side are more or less intricately articulated, an aperture to the exterior being retained between the opposing pairs, through which the animal can protrude the feeding appendages or cirri.

The opercular valves and compartmental plates of Balanomorpha are considered homologous to specific plates in Lepadomorpha. The accepted homologies are depicted in Fig. 90. It will be noted that whereas in the Lepadomorpha *all* hard parts are termed plates, in the Balanomorpha the opercular parts, although they are homologous with certain lepadomorph plates, are termed valves.

Each compartmental plate is usually divided into three parts (Fig. 95,4-6): a large, central, triangular area (**paries**, pl. **parietes**) and narrower, linear areas on either side of the paries, overlapping or being overlapped by corresponding parts of adjacent compartmental plates. When the overlapping portions differ in structure from the paries, they are termed **radii** (sing., **radius**); those which are overlapped are termed **alae** (sing., **ala**). In Chthamalidae and most Balanidae, the parietes and radii are solid. In some balanids the parietes and radii are composed of an **outer** and an **inner lamina** or lamella. The lamellae are separated by **longitudinal septa** forming **longitudinal tubes** (pores) and in some species these are crossed by secondary **transverse septa**, or are secondarily filled with calcium carbonate (see Fig. 105,106). In a few balanids, more than one row of tubes are formed (see Fig. 119,2b,4b,9a,c,e).

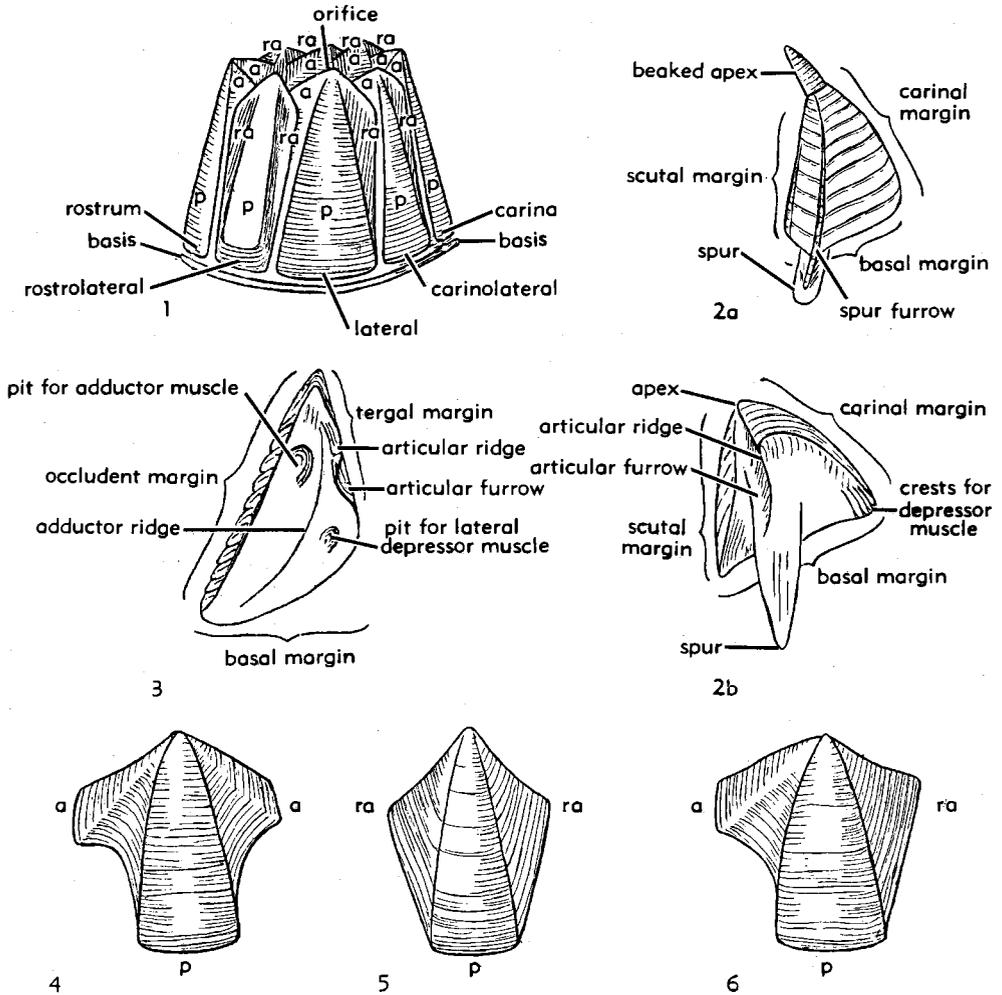


FIG. 95. Morphology of balanomorph plates and valves (not to scale) (1, 4-6, after Darwin; 2, 3, after Withers).

1. Entire shell of eight plates, showing part of sheath in orifice; rostrum and rostralateral compartment, usually unfused in chthamalids and fused in all balanids.
  2. Tergum.—2a,b. Exterior and interior.
  3. Scutum, interior.
  4. Compartment with alae on sides as in carina or true rostrum.
  5. Compartment with radii on sides, as in rostralateral or compound rostrum.
  6. Compartment with ala on one side and radius on other, as in lateral or carinolateral.
- [Explanation: a, ala; ra, radius; p, paries.]

The balanomorph shell wall includes, at most, eight primary plates: a rostrum, paired rostralaterals, paired laterals, paired carinolaterals, and a carina (Fig. 96,1-2). Some species possess one or more whorls of small supplementary plates at the base of the shell wall (Figs. 96,1).

A true rostrum has alae on both sides (Fig. 95,4). In some genera, the rostrum

may be fused with the adjacent rostralaterals to form a compound **rostral plate** in which case it overlaps rather than underlaps the adjacent lateral plates (Fig. 96,5-7).

The laterals and carinolaterals have alae on their carinal margins (Fig. 95,6). The carina has alae on both margins (Fig. 95,4), as does the true rostrum.

*Catophragmus* (Fig. 96,1) and *Octomeris*

(Fig. 96,2) have the full complement of eight plates. *Catophragmus* has several basal whorls of supplementary plates, in addition. *Chionelasmus* has a single whorl of supplementary plates. The wall is made up of six plates rather than eight, and the rostrum, having alae, is simple. In this case, the reduction to six plates has been through the loss of carinolaterals rather than by fusion of rostrilaterals to the rostrum. In *Chamaesipho* (Fig. 96,4), a simple rostrum is present, the carinolaterals are lacking, the laterals are apparently fused with the rostrilaterals and the carina is present. This arrangement results in a wall of four plates.

The chthamalid genera *Pachylasma*, *Hexelasma* (Fig. 96,5), and *Tessarelasma*, and all Balanidae superficially appear to have walls of six plates. In the chthamalid *Pachylasma* and the balanid *Chelonibia* (Fig. 96,7), eight plates can be discerned, for the rostrum is incompletely fused with the rostrilaterals. That the middle element is the rostrum in *Chelonibia* is demonstrated in a Miocene specimen of *C. caretta* (see Fig. 119,8) in which the middle element is not only separated from the lateral elements by deep sutures toward the apex (much deeper than in Recent specimens), but it has slightly developed alae over which the adjacent rostrilaterals distinctly overlap. In *Balanus*, on the other hand (Fig. 96,8), the rostral plate is considered to be formed of the fused rostrilaterals only, the true rostrum having been eliminated, and retention of the carinolaterals provides six compartmental plates. Thus, certain of the wall elements, although six in each genus, differ between *Balanus* and *Chthamalus*. In the latter, the arrangement is the same as in *Chionelasmus* excepting that the supplementary whorl is lacking. The balanids *Tetraclita* (Fig. 96,9) and *Creusia* (see Fig. 118A, 15a) have lost the carinolaterals, leaving four plates, and in *Pyrgoma* (Fig. 96,10), these four plates are fused into a single shell, although traces of a pair of sutures in the sheath can sometimes be seen at the carinal end on the interior in some species (see Fig. 118A, 16).

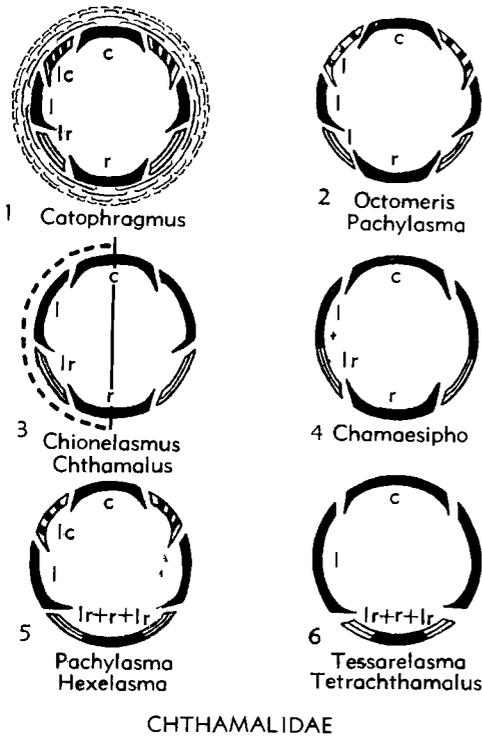
## GROWTH

Both determinate and indeterminate growth occurs in the Balanomorpha. In many species of *Balanus*, full size may be attained within the first year after settlement with only small growth increments occurring during the next year or so of life. Some species (e.g., *B. (B.) nubilis*) presumably have a much longer life span, apparently within the neighborhood of 15 years. Growth of the shell wall and basis of this species appears to continue through much of the life of the individual. The remarkable growth form of the basis in the California Miocene and Pliocene species *B. (B.) gregarius* (the so-called "*Tamiosoma*") has often been cited. Elongation of the basis into a cup-shaped or tubular form is not unusual in balanids, and is characteristic of such taxa as *Creusia*, *Pyrgoma*, *B. (B.) laevis*, and *B. (Megabalanus) tintinnabulum*. However, the filling of this cavity in *B. (B.) gregarius* with numerous thin irregular horizontal partitions results in a peculiar cellular structure which resembles that of rudistid pelecypods. In *Chthamalus hembeli* and *C. intertextus*, growth is determinate, ceasing with the advent of secondary calcification within the interior of the shell.

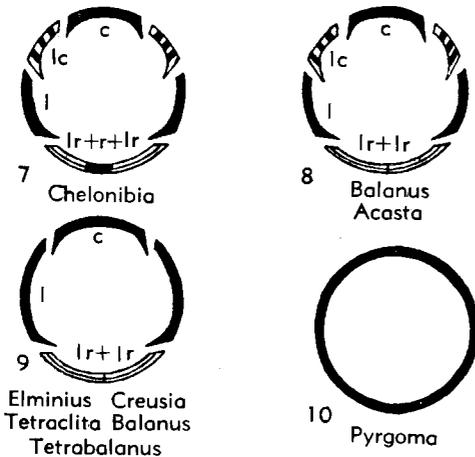
Growth of the shell occurs along the basal and lateral margins of the compartmental plates, and around the circumference of the basis. As the general form of the balanomorph shell is conic, increase in height and diameter, and, therefore, volume, can be attained entirely through growth at the basal margins of the shell. However, without marginal growth, the diameter of the orifice at the top (or oldest part) of the cone would remain constant and communication with the external environment as growth progressed would become proportionately reduced. In most balanomorphs, the orificial opening is enlarged by lateral growth at the sutural edges of the plates. In some taxa (e.g., *Tetraclita*, *Pyrgoma*) in which partial or complete concrescence of the compartmental plates has occurred, expansion of the orifice is apparently achieved by the wearing away of the upper portions

of the wall by external erosion and activities of the animal.

Color and, more specifically, color pattern has proven useful in the classification of species-group taxa in the Balanidae. Various shades of red and red-brown are the prevalent colors exhibited, although blues and purples are also found (e.g., *Balanus (Austrobalanus) imperator*). Coloration appears to be confined mainly to the exterior of the parieties and to the surface of the opercular valves. In some cases, the entire surface of the parieties is of a uniform shade, but in most taxa, the coloration consists of radial color stripes on a background of a different color or shade (e.g., *B. (Megabalanus) tintinnabulum*, *B. (Balanus) venustus niveus*, *B. (B.) amphitrite amphitrite*). The pattern of these stripes has proved useful in distinguishing between various so-called subspecies of the *B. (M.) tintinnabulum* and *B. (B.) amphitrite* complexes. Radial bands are also common in such taxa as *B. (M.) tintinnabulum*, and have been employed as diagnostic characters. The origin and purpose of these colors and color markings, however, are not understood.



CHTHAMALIDAE



BALANIDAE

FIG. 96. Cirriped morphology. Diagrams showing modes of imbrication and homologies of compartments in the Chthamalidae (1-6) and Balanidae (7-10) (after Darwin and Pilsbry). [Explanation: c, carina; lc, latus (carinal); l, lateral; lr, latus (rostral); r, rostrum.]

ARTHROPODAL STRUCTURES

The Cirripedia have the fundamental body plan of the Maxillopoda (DAHL, 1956), that is, five appendage-bearing head somites, six appendage-bearing thoracic somites and five abdominal somites. Basically the abdomen is appendageless, except for the first and the last somites which bear male reproductive structures and a furca respectively (Table 1). Only a few of the least specialized Ascothoracica have an entire complement of somites and appendages in the adult stage, although it is not certain that the so-called second antenna of *Baccalaureus* (PYFINCH, 1939) is actually the homologue of this structure. In adults of all other orders, the second antennae and abdomen are lost, although a vestige of the latter may be represented by the so-called **basidorsal point** seen in certain Balanomorpha. Most of the Acrothoracica, the Verrucomorpha, most of the Lepadomorpha, and a few of the primitive Chthamalidae among

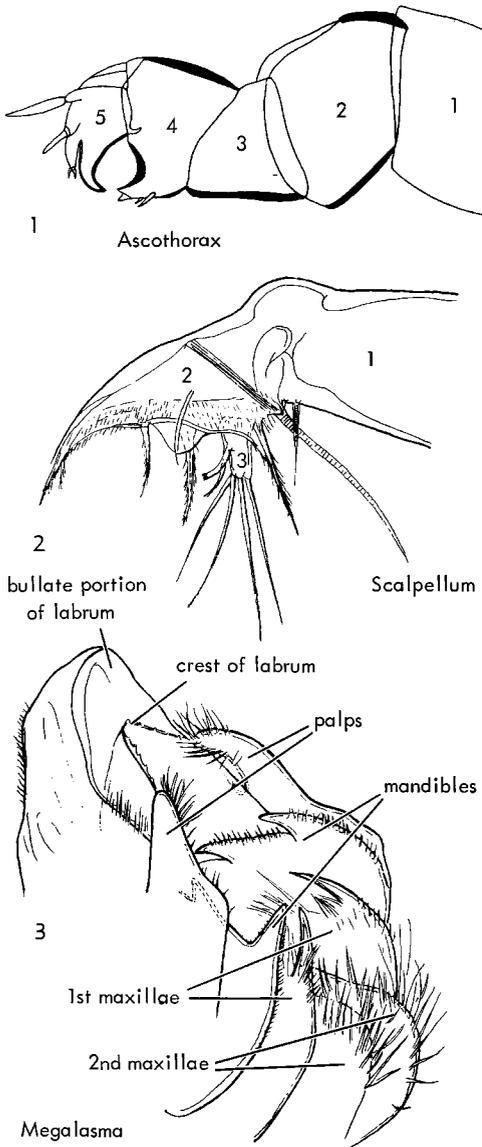


FIG. 97. Cirriped morphology. Antennae and trophi. —1. First antenna, male *Ascothorax ophiocetens* DJAKONOV,  $\times 35$  (after 111).—2. First antenna, cyprid stage, of *Scalpellum gibberum* AURIVILLIUS,  $\times 290$  (after 77).—3. Trophi, *Megalasma striatum* HOEK,  $\times 63$  (after 53).

the Balanomorpha have terminal or caudal appendages, probably representing the caudal furca (CALMAN, 1909) (see Fig. 104, 1c,2a,3,4).

In the Cirripedia, the antennules or first antennae are uniramous, and always prehensile at some stage of development. In

the cyprid and adult of the Ascothoracica, they are four- or five-jointed, subchelate, and serve as devices for temporary attachment in most species. In the other orders, they are four-segmented, provided with a suction disc on the second segment used for temporary attachment in the cyprid, and with cement-producing glands, opening on the second segment used for permanent attachment prior to metamorphosis into the adult (Fig. 82; 97,2).

The next pair of head appendages, the second antennae, are biramous during the naupliar stages, but are lost in the cyprid and adult (Fig. 81; 82,3). A vestige may be found in some cyprids (BATHAM, 1945) or may be represented as a much modified filament-like process extending into the dorsal brood chamber of the female or hermaphroditic Ascothoracica where they probably function in care of eggs (UTINOMI, 1962).

The third head appendages are also basically biramous, as in all Crustacea, and where present in the adult, the gnathobases of the protopods form the mandibles. In the Ascothoracica, the mandibles and other mouth parts are modified for piercing and sucking, but in the Acrothoracica and Thoracica, they function in grasping, manipulating, and in some forms triturating the food before delivering it to the mouth. In the Acrothoracica, the mandibles are each provided with a one-segmented palp, also present in the Thoracica. In the latter, however, the position has shifted from the outer margin of the mandibles to the outer margins of the labrum or upper lip. In either position, the palps serve to control food particles in the area over the exposed margins of the labrum, mandibles, and following mouth appendages (cf. Fig. 80, 97, 98).

Although the general form of the mandible in Acrothoracica and Thoracica is quite similar, the number, arrangement, and development of teeth, spines, and setae differs considerably among genera, particularly in the Lepadomorpha, suggesting differences in food habits (Fig. 98). These differences in structure are of considerable systematic value.

Immediately behind the mandibles, and acting in essentially the same plane, are the

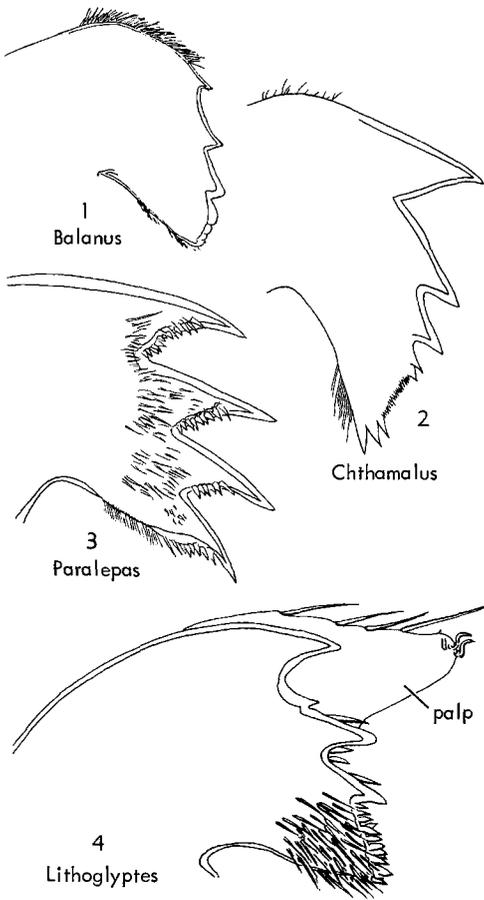


FIG. 98. Mandibles of cirripeds.—1. *Balanus (Balanus) hystrix* HOEK,  $\times 96$  (after 55).—2. *Chthamalus challengerii* HOEK,  $\times 147$  (est.) (after 83).—3. *Paralepas palinuri* BARNARD,  $\times 33$  (after Newman, 1960).—4. *Lithoglyptes spinatus* TOMLINSON & NEWMAN, mandible and palp,  $\times 267$  (after 103).

first maxillae. They are somewhat similar in form to the mandibles, and, on theoretical grounds, were inferred to represent modified gnathobases of a biramous limb. Evidence that this is the case was only recently forthcoming, where the biramous rudiment was observed in a late nauplius stage (CRISP, 1962). The first maxillae are as diverse in form and armament as the mandibles, and some features, such as the presence or absence of a notch or a stepwise or protuberant portion of the cutting edge, appear to be of systematic value (Fig. 99,1-4).

The fifth pair of head appendages, the second maxillae, are comparable in general form to the preceding two pairs, but are more delicate and less jawlike, being provided with relatively soft setae and thin cuticle (Fig. 99,1b,4). They appear to act in the manner of a lower lip or labium and indeed, as in the labiate arthropods, they may be fused together, basically serving to close the back of the mouth field. Openings at or near their bases are the apertures of the maxillary glands.

In the Ascothoracica, the trophi or mouth parts are cutting, piercing, and sucking, and are surrounded by the labrum, forming a protuberant oval cone apparently adapted to dealing directly with the matter of obtaining food (Fig. 80,1). The trophi of the Acrothoracica and Thoracica on the other hand, are manipulating and triturating structures, having the food passed to them by the following appendages, rather than being applied directly to the matter of gathering food. The trophi nonetheless are surrounded anteriorly and laterally by the labrum which extends nearly vertical from the body. This entire complex surrounds the mouth and protrudes as a unit below the ventral surface of the body. According to DARWIN, the entire trophic complex can be moved about to a considerable extent (Fig. 97,3).

Primitively, the labrum is bullate, with a broad, straight, or somewhat concave ventral margin or cutting edge, with or without soft setae or small sharp toothlike spines (Fig. 97,3; Fig. 100,2). This condition is seen in the Acrothoracica, Verrucomorpha, and Lepadomorpha, and in the Chthamaliidae among the Balanomorpha. In the Balanidae, however, a median notch has developed as a specialization along with the loss of the bullate appearance of the labrum as a whole.

The six pairs of appendages following the second maxillae are thoracic and basically biramous. Except in the Ascothoracica, where they are straight and natatory as they are in the cyprid, they have a characteristic curled form and are called cirri. A cirrus consists of a two-segment protopod or pedicle, supporting a multiarticulate exopod and endopod. The rami are usually designated as outer and inner, but in many

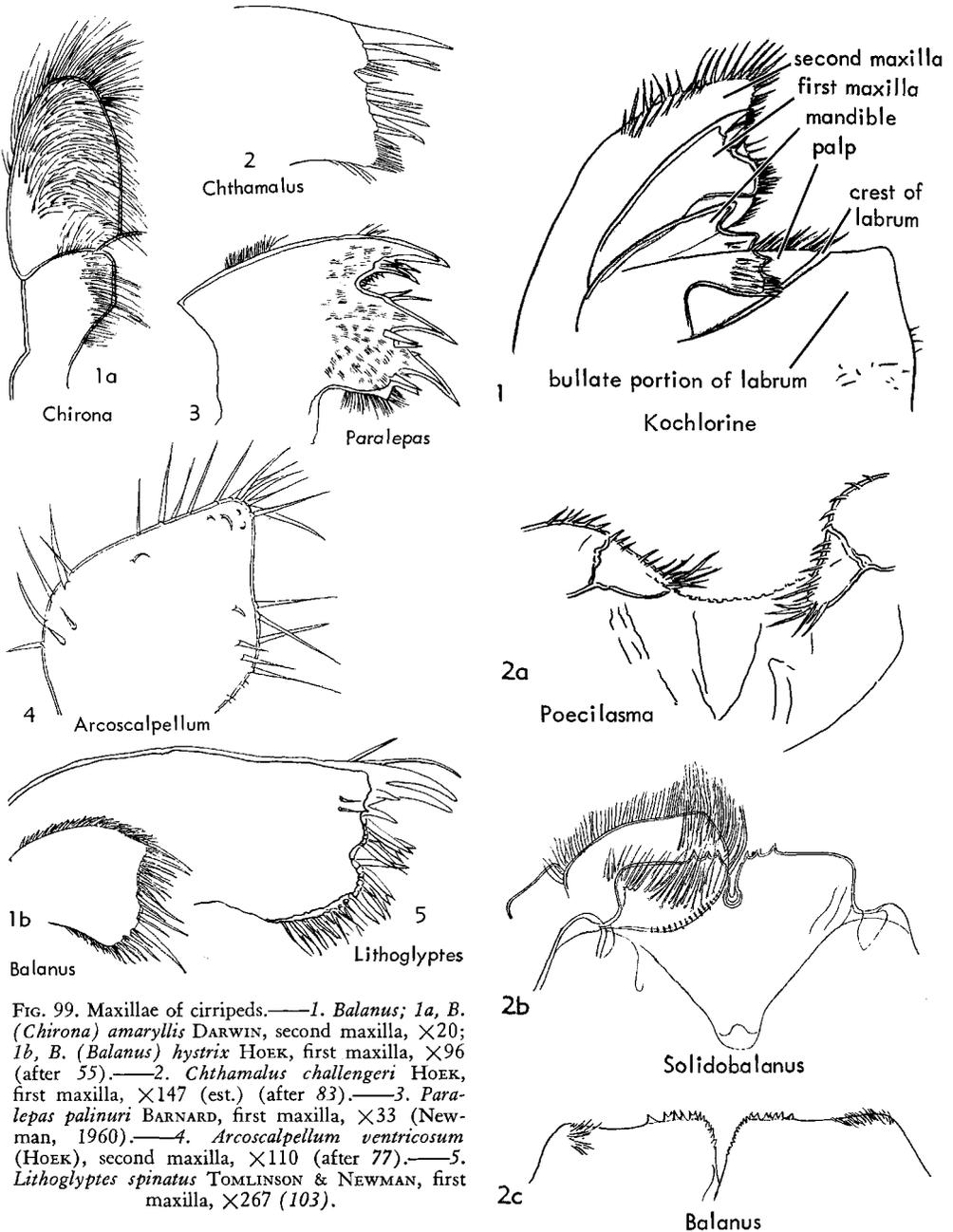


FIG. 99. Maxillae of cirripeds.—1. *Balanus*; 1a, *B. (Chirona) amaryllis* DARWIN, second maxilla,  $\times 20$ ; 1b, *B. (Balanus) hystrix* HOEK, first maxilla,  $\times 96$  (after 55).—2. *Chthamalus challengerii* HOEK, first maxilla,  $\times 147$  (est.) (after 83).—3. *Paralepas palinuri* BARNARD, first maxilla,  $\times 33$  (Newman, 1960).—4. *Arcoscalpellum ventricosum* (HOEK), second maxilla,  $\times 110$  (after 77).—5. *Lithoglyptes spinatus* TOMLINSON & NEWMAN, first maxilla,  $\times 267$  (103).

FIG. 100. Trophi and labra of cirripeds.—1. Trophi, *Kochlorine floridana* (WELLS & TOMLINSON),  $\times 230$  (Tomlinson, n).—2. Labrum and palps, 2a, *Trilasmis (Poecilasma) gracile* (HOEK),  $\times 72$  (after 53); 2b, *Balanus (Solidobalanus) ciliatus* (HOEK), right palp removed,  $\times 34$  (after 55); 2c, *Balanus (Balanus) eburneus* GOULD, both palps removed,  $\times 16$  (after 83).

forms, it is necessary to refer to them as anterior and posterior, when they appear so arranged. In the Ascothoracica, the homologues of the cirri are natatory (WAGIN, 1946) (Fig. 101,I), while in the Acrothoracica and Thoracica the cirri serve to capture food (Fig. 101; 102,I-3).

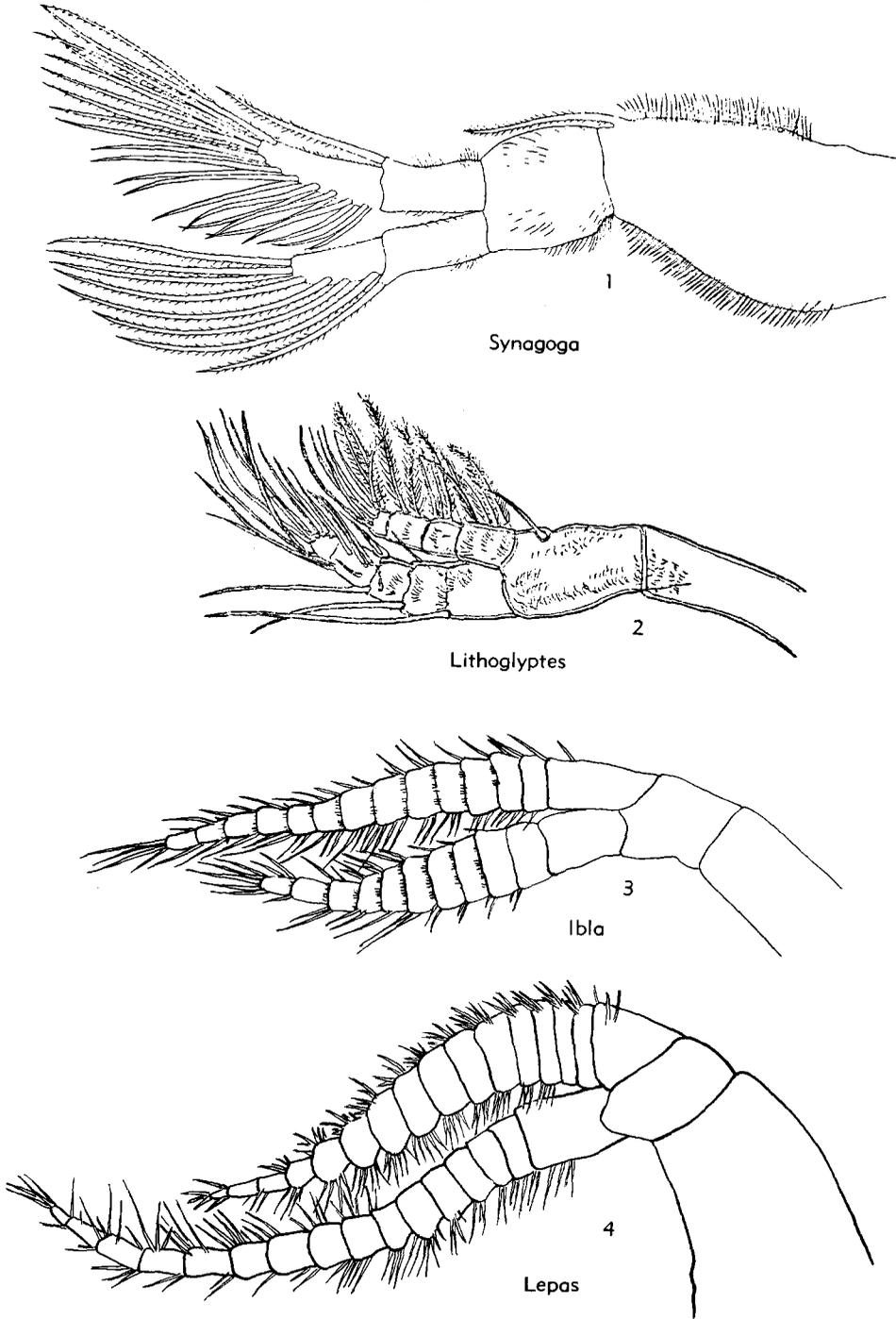


FIG. 101. First cirri of cirripeds.

- 1. *Synagoga metacrinicola* OKADA,  $\times 100$  (est.) (after Okada, 1939).
- 2. *Lithoglyptes spinatus* TOMLINSON & NEWMAN,  $\times 150$  (after 103).
- 3. *Ibla cumingi* DARWIN,  $\times 44$  (Newman, n).
- 4. *Lepas (L.) hillii* LEACH,  $\times 44$  (Newman, n).

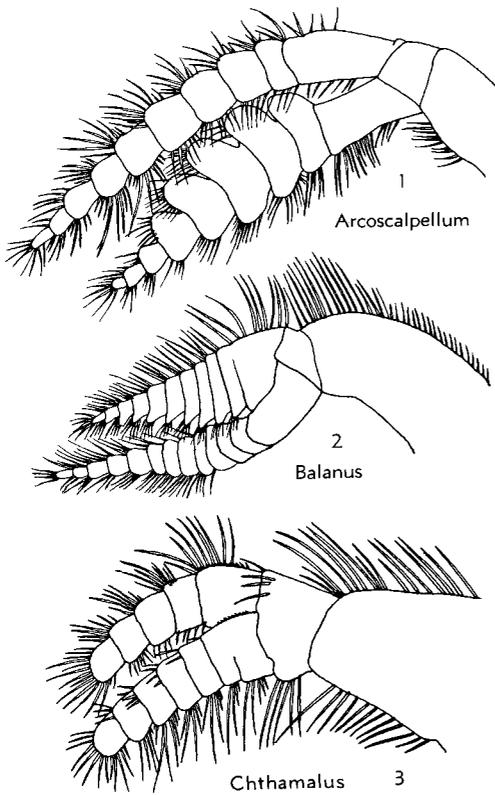


FIG. 102. First cirri of cirripeds (Newman, n).—1. *Arcoscalpellum osseum* (PILSBRY),  $\times 16$ .—2. *Balanus* (*Balanus*) *amphitrite* DARWIN,  $\times 18$ .—3. *Chthamalus panamensis* PILSBRY,  $\times 40$ .

The first pair of cirri usually differ somewhat in structure from the others, functioning as accessory mouth parts, and they can legitimately be called maxillipeds in all but the most primitive forms. Additional cirri may also be modified as maxillipeds in higher forms. Clearly they have become so modified independently of the development of this condition in other Maxillopoda and in the Malacostraca.

The first pair of cirri, when modified to form maxillipeds, have been drawn into close association with the trophi in transferring food from the cirri to the mouth. This separation from the following cirri is especially marked in the Acrothoracica, where all cirri behind the single pair of maxillipeds (formerly mouth cirri) are separated by the entire length of the thorax (Fig. 80,2). The Thoracica have up

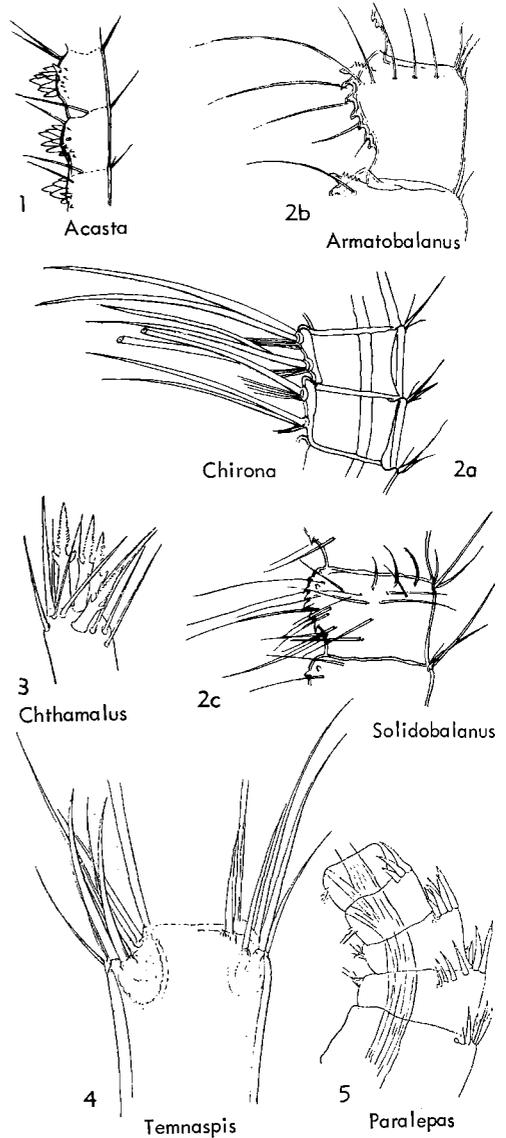


FIG. 103. Cirral armament of cirripeds.—1. *Acasta conica* HOEK, intermediate segments, fourth cirrus,  $\times 96$  (after 55).—2. *Balanus*; 2a, *B. (Chirona) amaryllis* DARWIN, intermediate segments of sixth cirrus,  $\times 30$ ; 2b, *B. (Armatobalanus) arcuatus* HOEK, intermediate segments, third cirrus,  $\times 137$  (ctenopod type); 2c, *B. (Solidobalanus) ciliatus* HOEK, intermediate segments, third cirrus,  $\times 96$  (after 55).—3. *Chthamalus fragilis* DARWIN, terminal spines, second cirrus, enl. (after 83).—4. *Trilasmis* (*Temnaspis*) *fissus* DARWIN, intermediate segments, sixth cirrus (lasiopod type),  $\times 169$  (after 54).—5. *Paralepas palinuri* BARNARD, intermediate segments, fifth cirrus (acanthopod type),  $\times 33$  (Newman, 1960).

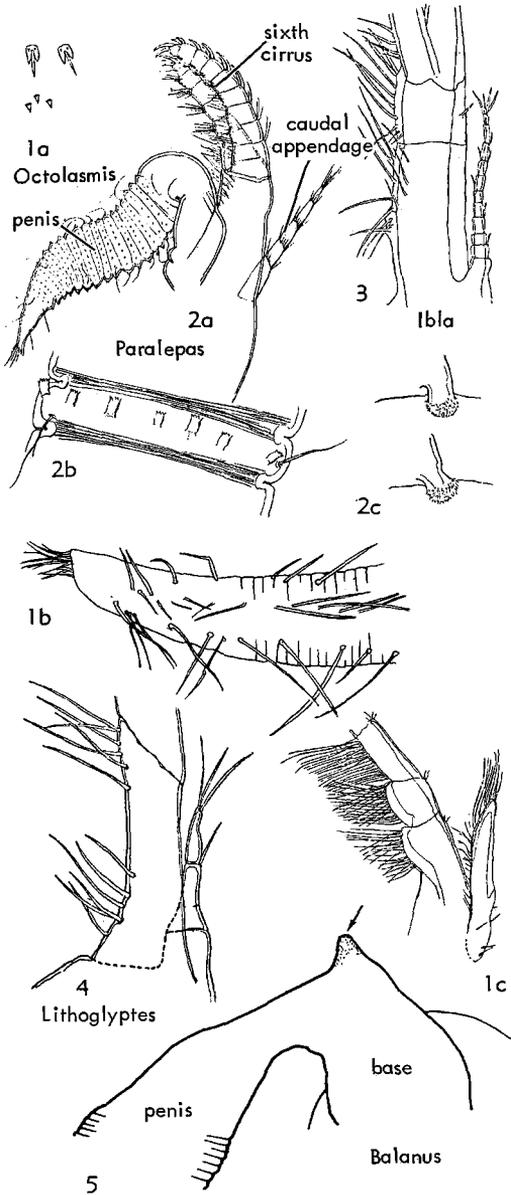


FIG. 104. Terminal appendages and penes of cirripeds.—1. *Octolasmis*; 1a, *O. (O.) cor* (AURIVILLIUS), two types of barbs clothing the penis,  $\times 147$ ; 1b, *O. (O.) californiana* NEWMAN, terminal portion of penis,  $\times 134$ ; 1c, *O. (O.) cor*, caudal appendage and pedicle of sixth cirrus,  $\times 40$  (Newman, 1960).—2. *Paralepas*; 2a, *P. lithotryae* HOEK, penis, sixth cirrus and caudal appendage,  $\times 35$  (after 54); 2b, *P. lithotryae* HOEK, rivet-like barbed structures clothing penis,  $\times 169$  (after 54); 2c, *P. palinuri* BARNARD, rivet-like barbed structures clothing penis,  $\times 334$  (Newman, 1960).—3. *Ibla cumingi* DARWIN, caudal appendage

to three pairs of maxillipeds assisting in the transfer of food, and, in general, their addition, pair by pair, follows phylogenetic lines. In the primitive Lepadomorpha (i.e., *Lepas*), only the first pair differs from the following, and then only slightly. In more advanced forms, the first pair differs considerably from the following, while the second pair has been modified slightly. In the Balanomorpha, the Chthamalidae have the first and second cirri serving as maxillipeds, while in the Balanidae, the first, second, and third pairs form a graded series on their degree of modification, differing conspicuously from the posterior three cirri-form pairs.

The cirri are generally flattened laterally and curled anteriorly. The anterior margin of each ramus can be designated as the lesser curvature; the posterior margin as the greater curvature. The lesser curvature of the articles usually supports long setae arranged in a number of pairs along the length of each article, and it was suggested by PILSBRY (1911) that cirri with this arrangement be designated as **ctenopod cirri** (Fig. 103,2a). In ctenopod cirri, the setae of each pair spread laterally away from each other, crossing the cirral net when the cirri are extended. These setae can be simple or slightly plumose. Ctenopod cirri usually have a few setae at the distal edge of each article, along the greater curvature. Another type of cirrus was noticed by DARWIN (1851) in a small pedunculate barnacle, where the setae at each articulation tended to be arranged in a transverse row, and PILSBRY suggested this type be designated as **lasiopod cirri** (Fig. 103,4). In some species, the row of the greater curvature is composed of stout, sharp spines while there were few or no setae along the lesser curvature. This arrangement is quite distinct from the previous two types and has been designated as **acanthopod cirri** (Fig. 103,5).

In certain species of *Chthamalus*, a few of the terminal setae of the second cirrus are

and pedicle of sixth cirrus,  $\times 14$  (Newman, 1960).—4. *Lithoglyptes spinatus* TOMLINSON & NEWMAN, caudal appendage and pedicle of terminal cirrus,  $\times 100$  (103).—5. *Balanus (Balanus) amphitrite* DARWIN, basal portion of penis, arrow indicating basidorsal point,  $\times 22$  (Newman, n).

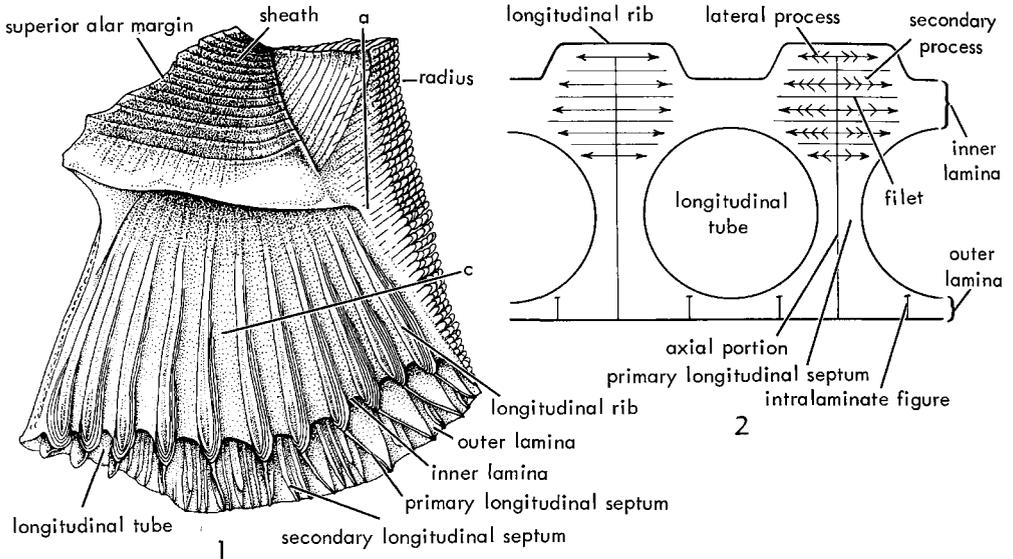


FIG. 105. Morphology of cirripeds; interlaminate figures in balanomorph shell wall (after 76, mod.).

1. *Balanus (Balanus) amphitrite* DARWIN, left lateral plate viewed from interior, enl.
2. Schematic cross section of *Balanus (Balanus)* shell wall at level *c* indicated in 1, illustrating parts of wall and characteristics of figures; axial portion+file+lateral process+secondary

process (all or in part) belong to interlaminate figure.  
 [Explanation: *a*, area of transverse section in radius (see Fig. 106,2); *c*, area of transverse section in parietes (see Fig. 106,3).]

lanceolate, with serrate and barbed edges (Fig. 103,3). In the balanids, in addition to supporting setae, the articles are frequently armed with denticles and true spines (Fig. 103,1,2*b*,2*c*), especially those of the third and fourth cirri.

The number of articles of the cirri, their relative lengths, the relative lengths of the rami, and the arrangement of setae, spines, and hooks, differ considerably between many genera and species of Thoracica, indicating differences in feeding, and these characteristics are of obvious systematic value.

All female or hermaphroditic Thoracica have six pairs of cirri, but in males of this order and in female Acrothoracica the number is usually reduced. In the Acrothoracica, the full complement seen in the primitive genus *Weltmeria* is present, but there are as few as two uniramous pairs in *Trypetesa*. The rami of cirri have retractor muscles but no protractors. Their extension is accomplished by hydrostatic pressure of the hemolymph (CANNON, 1947). They are therefore well provided with blood channels and

under certain conditions of activity probably function as respiratory, as well as feeding organs.

On the pedicles of the cirri, particularly the first, in genera of Lepodomorpha (e.g., *Pollicipes*, *Heteralepas s.l.*, *Lepas*, *Conchoderma*, *Megalasma*) filament-like extensions of the body wall are found (Fig. 83,1). These have been thought to be respiratory structures, but it seems likely that they are at least also concerned with the incubation of eggs within the mantle cavity. In this regard, the present authors suggest that they are analogous with the so-called branchiae or much elaborated extensions of the mantle lining found in most Balanomorpha (e.g., *Balanus*, *Chelonibia*, *Chthamalus*). It has been noted that the female genital apertures open at the bases of the first cirri, and this is the most anterior position known among the Crustacea. When cirral filamentary appendages occur in reduced numbers, they are usually found on the first cirrus or near its base and not uncommonly in close association with the genital aperture.

Sexes are separate in many of the Ascothoracica, some Thoracica, and all of the Acrothoracica, but the method of fertilization is unknown. Ascothoracica and some of the reduced males among the Acrothoracica and Thoracica have a so-called penis or intromittent organ. In the former (Fig. 82,2), this is located on the first abdominal somite, and in the latter, within the sac constituting the reduced male (Fig. 80,2a). In the Thoracica, the abdomen has been lost and in hermaphroditic species, that is, the majority of Lepadomorpha, all known Verrucomorpha, and the Balanomorpha, the intromittent organ arises from between the base of the last or sixth pair of cirri (Fig. 104,2a). It is probosciform, greatly distensible, and in many species capable of transferring sperm to neighboring individuals some distance away. In hermaphrodites, fertilization at a given mating is not known to be reciprocal, but rather one individual acts as the female and the other as the male. Presumably the roles are reversed at another time. Although sperm is actually transferred from one individual to another, where well investigated the act is not

strictly copulation, for the sperm are deposited in the mantle cavity, outside the body, where fertilization occurs. The intromittent organ is generally annulated, in some cases strongly so, and DARWIN (1851-54) was inclined to consider the annulations as somites of the reduced abdomen, an interpretation accepted by KRÜGER (1940). However, the fact that no other metameric structures are associated with the annulations, that the presumably homologous intromittent organ of the Ascothoracica arises on the first abdominal somite, and that no other crustacean is known to be opisthogeneate, precludes this interpretation.

The intromittent organ is usually provided with soft setae, particularly at the apex (Fig. 104,1b). Setae in some forms are arranged in particular patterns, and bristles, knobs or complex spiny knobs directed basally (e.g., *Heteralepas*, *Octolasmis*) may be present (Fig. 104,1a,b;2a,b). Where such specially developed and arranged structures occur, they are regarded to be of considerable systematic value.

## STUDY TECHNIQUES

### PALEONTOLOGICAL METHODS

#### COLLECTION

Fossil taxa of lepadomorphs, brachylepadomorphs, and verrucomorphs are often based on isolated plates, as the shell of the animal usually becomes disarticulated soon after death. The shell of most balanomorph barnacles is more rigidly articulated, and complete specimens are often recovered. However, the opercular valves, which are important in identification, rarely remain fixed in their position in the orifice after death, and they may be lost.

In collecting from rocks where fossil barnacles are known to occur, a bulk sample should be taken from each barnacle-bearing stratum, washed, and screened (if possible), and sorted for all barnacle plates or fragments. In the case of loosely articulated forms such as the lepadomorphs, the complete individual can often be reconstructed.

Opercular valves can usually be recovered in this manner also, although examination of the interior of shells will often reveal the full complement of valves preserved where they have fallen to the bottom of the body chamber.

#### INTERLAMINATE FIGURES AND THIN SECTIONS

Interlaminar figures, discovered by DE ALESSANDRI (1895) are found in balanomorphs having a wall permeated by longitudinal tubes. CORNWALL (1962 and earlier) and DAVADIE (1963) have used interlaminar figures in the shell for determination of balanomorph species from fragmentary remains. Interlaminar (and shorter intralaminar) figures are observed in the transverse section of the parietes and represent crystalline organization about an organic matrix developed during the formation of the complex articulation between the parie-

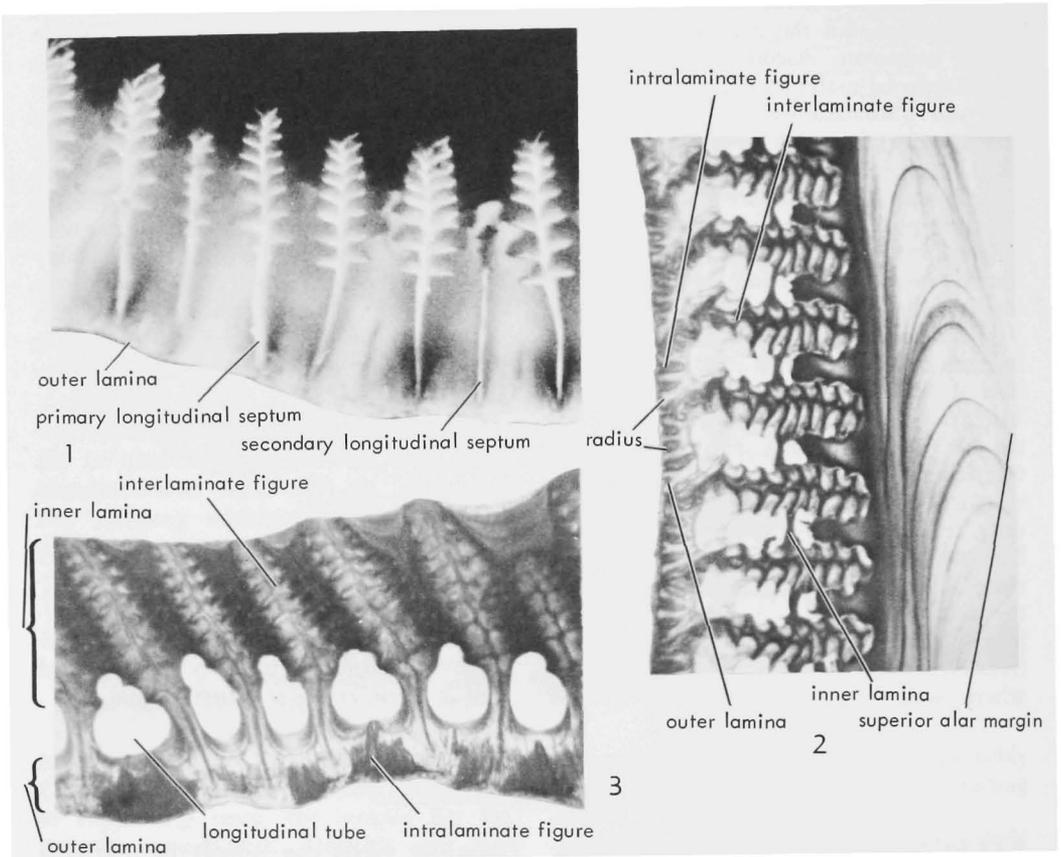


FIG. 106. Morphology of cirripeds; interlaminar figures in balanomorph shell wall (*Balanus* (*Megabalanus*) *tintinnabulum californicus* (PILSBRY), enl.

1. Basal margin of wall viewed from below, showing septa and teeth which lock between radial septa of basis (from 76).
2. Interlaminar figures seen in radius where radial teeth interlock with ala of adjacent plate;

section cut at level *a* shown in Fig. 105,1 (Newman, n).

3. Interlaminar figures seen in transverse section of wall plate cut at level *c* in Fig. 105,1 (Newman, n).

tes and the basis (Fig. 105,1-2; Fig. 106,2) (NEWMAN, ZULLO, & WAINWRIGHT, 1967). A similar pattern may be seen in a longitudinal section of the radii, reflecting the development of articulating sutural edges. The pattern related to these articular structures is observed as darker "figures" against the light background of the shell (Fig. 106,1).

Interlaminar figures appear to be characteristic of some species and are potentially of value in the determination of taxa from fragmentary material. Studies of the interlaminar figures of some Recent

and Tertiary Californian barnacles indicate that some species may display more than one type of figure, and that several species may share a particular figure type. A thorough study of extant and fossil species from various localities throughout their geographic range will be required before the taxonomic value of this method can be established.

A variety of techniques and equipment are available for cutting thin sections of cirriped hard parts. The simplest procedure is to mount a piece of shell to be sectioned on a glass microscope slide and hand grind the exposed surface with a circular

motion flat to about 1 mm. thickness. The specimen is then removed, turned over and reaffixed, with the freshly ground flat side toward the slide. The newly exposed surface is then ground in the same manner until, ideally, it is flat and 20-30 $\mu$  thick.

The piece being sectioned can be affixed to the slide with any petrographic thermoplastic cement. The cement is melted on the slide, over an alcohol lamp, hot plate, or other heat source, with the specimen in place. Pressure is applied to the specimen before cooling, so that it comes into even contact with the slide surface. The melted cement is hot (145°F. or more) so that a piece of sponge is useful in applying the needed pressure. A piece of thin aluminum foil, foil-coated wrapping paper being ideal, is placed between the sponge and the specimen to prevent sticking.

Rough cutting and rapid removal of material requires abrasives of 100- to 200-grit, while finishing cuts and polishing utilize 400- to 600-grit. A few intermediate grades between these two extremes are useful during the grinding process. Grinding can be done by sprinkling an appropriate abrasive, or by using so-called wet and dry sand papers, on a sheet of plate glass flooded with water. Surfaces should be carefully cleaned when changing from one grit to another.

This method will yield satisfactory sections if the operator is particularly skilled, but it is difficult to get hand-held sections perfectly flat and uniformly thick. Performance can readily be improved by using guides or shims of various thicknesses. Two strips of steel shim stock placed on the glass or paper form tracks on either side of the specimen, separating the slide an appropriate distance from the cutting surface. Shims 0.001 inch thick will allow the specimen to come to within approximately 25 $\mu$  of the cutting surface, and would be used for the final cut. When the section is finished, optical interference from scratches and other surface irregularities can be minimized by applying a drop of balsam and a cover slip.

For the worker cutting a section or two at infrequent intervals, the procedure outlined above is probably sufficient. If large quantities and sustained production are anticipated, one had best consult petrographic hand books on the subject, or professionals in the field, for a considerable amount of mechanization would be required. In between these two requirements are those who wish to carry out repetitive sectioning of perhaps ten samples ten times a year, and here a few accessories to the bare essentials outlined above would be reasonable. We have found the following improvements useful and they require only a modest outlay in funds.

Aside from the difficulties of getting good sections, one of the problems in hand-sectioning is holding the slide without acquiring numerous

small cuts and abrading away significant amounts of skin. Also, the shim stock, although it can be held in line with tape, tends to skid about and get abrasive between it and the grinding surface and the slide, or both. To overcome these difficulties, increase the rate of production and improve the quality of the sections, a slide holder is desirable and some are commercially available. A slide holder consists of two accurately ground metal blocks, held in alignment by rods running through them, and grooved to hold a standard slide by tightening a thumb screw, which draws the blocks together. The outer surface of the slide is held slightly below the surface of the blocks so that a specimen on the slide will be ground to a thickness equaling this distance, when the surface of the block comes into complete contact with the grinding plate at the end of the cut. A specimen so ground can be dead flat and of uniform thickness. To prevent the block itself from being slowly ground away with each operation, and thus gradually decreasing the distance between the surface of the slide and the surface of the block, surfaces of the block coming in contact with the grinding surface are faced with precision ground boron carbide runners. This material is much harder than abrasives such as silicon carbide, and therefore undergoes little wear and loss of accuracy.

Slide holders presently cost less than one hundred dollars. They are designed to hold petrographic slides, which, after having been ground to a standard thickness in another specially designed holder, will clear the grinding surface of approximately 50 $\mu$ , thereby yielding sections too thick for our purposes. This can be overcome by placing a piece of shim stock 0.001 inch thick between the slide and the holder, which advances the slide approximately 25 $\mu$  and yields a section of comparable thickness.

We have found it convenient to use ordinary microscope, rather than petrographic slides. However, slides from any given lot, although parallel-sided, usually vary in thickness from one end to another and from side to side, some to a marked degree. A box can be checked over quickly by measuring the thickness of individual slides at each end, and at each side near the middle. Those varying only a few microns, especially from side to side, can be used for grinding thin sections. A micrometer, calibrated in 100ths of a millimeter (10 $\mu$ ) and readable to within a few microns by interpolation, is satisfactory for this purpose, and for estimating the thickness of the section.

Ordinary microscope slides are considerably thinner than petrographic slides, so that when used without backing shims, the first surface grinding results in a section more than 100 $\mu$  thick. Such a section is strong enough to be turned over and pressed flat against the slide, in order to cut the second surface. The thickness of the section can be estimated by subtracting the thickness of the

slide adjacent to the specimen from thickness of the slide and the specimen, as measured with a micrometer before beginning the second cut. The amount of material to be removed is then estimated and an appropriate number of shims placed between the slide and backing face of the holder. When the last polishing cut is to be made, it is a good policy not to rely on estimates made with the micrometer of the number of shims necessary to bring the section to final thickness, but rather to use a 0.001-inch shim as a feeler gauge inserted between the surface of the slide and a straight edge (the long edge of another slide), held across the two boron carbide runners. Sections will occasionally be lost without taking this precaution.

A sheet of plate glass, about 9x12 in. or larger, is a convenient grinding surface. The surface should be wet and, when using sand paper, running water is desirable. If a sink is available, a simple way to achieve this is to mount the glass on a pair of wooden supports arranged so as to bridge the sink. The relatively new silicon rubber cements for glass and ceramics are excellent for bonding the glass to the supports. A rubber tube from the cold water faucet can then be used to provide a slow stream of water, the runoff spilling into the sink.

Ordinary water-proof sand paper, especially in the coarser grits, has proved satisfactory. The relatively new abrasive coated *Mylar* films sold under the trade name *Flex-i-grit*, are more durable, especially in the finer grits, but are not generally available locally.

Preparation of blanks of the material to be sectioned can be accomplished by breaking, filing, sawing, and power grinding. Small, relatively inexpensive, diamond-impregnated discs or wheels available through dental supply houses, driven and manipulated by hand-held motors such as those available under the trade name *Mototool*, are highly recommended. With them, relatively thin, flat-sided portions of a specimen can be removed, often leaving the bulk of the specimen intact. Although manufacturers recommend that these wheels be run wet, satisfactory cutting or microslabbing can be accomplished dry.

## NEONTOLOGICAL METHODS

The diversity of habitats in which cirripeds occur may even be surprising to the marine biologist with considerable field experience. This would be especially true in the tropics where, although not usually occurring in great numbers in any one place, the variety of niches occupied is remarkable.

The Acrothoracica are burrowing forms, able to penetrate any calcareous substratum,

particularly mollusk shells and skeletons of living and dead scleractinian corals. They are less often found in echinoid and balanoid shells, but are frequently encountered in limestone. All described species are from shallow water, although an undescribed species is known from approximately 1,000 meters of depth on the Bermuda slope in the western Atlantic.

Usually the only visible sign of an acrothoracican's presence in a piece of calcareous substratum is the small slitlike opening to the burrow, generally a millimeter or so in length and shaped like a straight or slightly curved apostrophe. This small aperture opens into a commodious oval chamber excavated and inhabited by the female which usually is accompanied by one or more dwarf males. The chamber may extend straight or somewhat obliquely down from the surface and can be studied by making casts with materials not attacked by acid and then dissolving away the substratum, or by successively grinding the substratum, gradually exposing the outline of the burrow. X rays are useful in exploring certain kinds of materials, especially gastropod shells inhabited by hermit crabs, where the burrows open on the interior surface.

The aperture of the burrow is guarded by the chitinous lips formed at the mantle opening of the barnacle. Shortly after placing an object bearing living acrothoracicans back in sea water, the operculum formed by these lips will be drawn back and the cirri thrust forth forming the cirral net. The appearance of cirri is useful in confirming the presence of living specimens and is especially useful in locating them in materials encrusted with sponges, bryozoans, and algae. Females can be removed by chipping the substratum away, but usually not without some obvious damage, especially if cemented to the burrow. Another method involves treatment with acid after the material has been properly fixed in Bouin's fluid, 70 percent alcohol, or another appropriate fixative. A specimen can be studied externally and dissected in much the same manner as the relatively unarmored Lepodomorpha described below. Or it can be treated with dilute sodium hydroxide in the manner described by TOMLINSON (1960),

until most of the soft tissues have been digested away, but care must be taken in making observations on specimens so treated, because frequently the new cuticle developing beneath the old will have separated, giving a multiple or otherwise inaccurate appearance of structures. After this treatment and a thorough washing, the specimens may be stained or simply mounted directly in an appropriate medium on a microscope slide. Glycerin as a mounting medium is useful in allowing specimens to be manipulated, although, to avoid distortion of delicate structures, it is best to infiltrate the specimen gradually by placing it in a glycerin and alcohol solution and allowing the latter to evaporate. This procedure is equally desirable before mounting a specimen in glycerin jelly. Whole mounts need the support of a glass or plastic ring. The whole preparation should be sealed with an appropriate ringing medium, and clear "finger-nail polish" is convenient.

The acrothoracicans occur in calcareous substrates and therefore are relatively limited in the diversity of habitats they can occupy. The thoracicans on the other hand, are rarely obligated to any one particular substratum or association, are basically not dependent on support or armament provided by the environment, and consequently, exploit a great diversity of habitats. Some members of each of the suborders are found intertidally, on rocks and other intertidal organisms, and most are in a size range readily detected with the unaided eye. Of the Lepadomorpha, only a few genera occur intertidally. In particular, there are *Pollicipes* and *Lithotrya* among the Scalpellidae and *Ibla* of the Iblidae. The Verrucomorpha are primarily subtidal, but there are a few intertidal species, some being very small. The Balanomorpha contain a large number of species in both subtidal and intertidal situations. Although there are probably no rules for general collecting, it is desirable to obtain all of a particular specimen. The ease with which this can be accomplished will depend on where and how the animal is attached and, it is probably best to bring materials to the laboratory where they can be observed alive and carefully removed from their attach-

ment place. As far as collecting is concerned, every conceivable habitat washed by sea water should be explored, specifically the surfaces of rocks to the highest reaches of the tides, the surfaces of living animals including mollusks, crustaceans, large jellyfish, sea urchins, other barnacles, sea snakes, turtles, cetaceans and so forth. The interiors of other animals should also be explored, especially the gill chambers of large decapod crustaceans, sponges, turtle gullets, and corals, and alcyonarians. At least one genus is known from within living clams and another between the pedal disc of sea anemones growing on gastropod shells inhabited by hermit crabs. Some species are also found on plant materials, including mangrove roots and leaves, seaweeds and flotsam in the sea.

Observations on living barnacles are interesting and instructive. Adult shore barnacles, especially estuarine or harbor forms, can often be maintained on young brine shrimp (*Artemia*) for extended periods of time, and frequently individuals will reattach to the walls of the container in which they are kept. Growth, molting, feeding, reactions to currents and shadowing, and mating can be observed. The mantle forms lips around the aperture that can adequately be observed only in living material. These are expanded when the animal is relaxed or feeding and have more or less striking color patterns. The function of these colors has not been determined, but they are of some systematic value (SOUTHWARD & CRISP, 1963).

Larvae can also be obtained in the laboratory, either spawned directly from the adults or from ovigerous lamellae removed from sacrificed animals and suspended in sea water (COSTLOW & BOOKHOUT, 1957). Culture techniques have become considerably refined, and differences in dietary requirements are being analyzed (MOYSE, 1963). Through the rearing of larvae, much has been learned of the morphology of different species, and methods of description are still in the process of development. Setation formulae have been used for descriptive purposes and appear to be an important aspect in comparative studies. However, considerably more work is needed before an understanding of larval relationships

and affinities contribute to our knowledge of the systematics of the cirripeds (75).

The larvae or their molts are readily prepared for microscopical study. Molts are usually obtained from individuals reared singly. Living nauplii, on the other hand, are generally handled in relatively large numbers. They are usually photo-positive and can be pipetted from a container illuminated on one side. These can be concentrated in a small glass tube opened at one end, and with a fine mesh of silk bolting cloth stretched and secured over one end. In this, the larvae are washed, fixed, and stained if desired, before transferring to a drop of glycerin on a microscopic slide. In glycerin, individuals can be manipulated or dissected so that the appendages can be observed, drawn, and setation counts made. If dissection proves difficult, preparations can be lightly squashed under a coverslip.

Preparation of adult barnacles for examination is relatively simple once the anatomical relationships are understood. Removing the body from the mantle or shell requires certain tools, the sizes of which will depend on the size and type of barnacle. In general, ordinary dissecting needles and forceps are useful. For small specimens, finer instruments are necessary. Small dissecting needles can be constructed from small sewing needles or insect pins mounted in appropriate holders. Fine jeweler's forceps are indispensable and not infrequently the finest available can be ground a little finer.

Acrothoracicans and small unarmored lepadomorphs can be removed from the mantle by plucking a hole in the side, withdrawing the body and then freeing it completely by teasing away the attachments of the adductor muscles. The body of armored lepadomorphs usually can be removed through the aperture by grasping the attachment area at the adductor muscle lying between the scuta, and gently withdrawing the body. Some teasing of the membranes between the scuta may be necessary in order to enlarge the aperture sufficiently, but this is usually unnecessary. In the Balanomorpha, the body is too large, relative to size of the aperture, to be removed in this manner, but it can be removed through the base, leaving the shell wall

intact. The body is attached almost entirely to the scutal valves, which are in turn articulated with the terga. Therefore, in removing the opercular parts, the body is removed at the same time. The ease with which these parts are removed will depend on the structure and condition of the barnacle. Usually, inward pressure applied to the operculum, and teasing or cutting of the arthroal membrane connecting it to the sheath of the wall, will allow the entire mass to be forced out through the base. Once removed, the body is easily dissected free of the opercular parts, under water in a small dish such as a Syracuse dish. The mantle cavity may contain ovigerous lamellae of eggs, developing embryos or larvae, and these should be saved for study. Frequently, the first larval stage can be obtained in this way. It can be either the first naupliar stage or the cyprid larva, depending on the life history of the species.

The opercular parts, as well as the wall plates, can be cleaned and disarticulated by soaking in sodium hypochlorite (commercial bleach such as Clorox). Methods of handling these parts will vary with the nature of the material and the interests of the investigator. Small vials, gelatin capsules, boxes, Curtin and Riker mounts are useful.

Once the body is removed, it can be studied under water, note being taken of the attachment and arrangement of cirri, the presence or absence of filamentary appendages (Lepadomorpha) or branchiae (Balanomorpha), and so forth. After these observations, the specimen can be dissected. The appendages and parts will usually mount satisfactorily on one or two slides, although large specimens may require special handling. Before dissection begins, some estimate of these requirements should be made. The actual dissection will vary with the worker, as will the selection of the mounting medium. Permanent synthetic resins and media such as Turtox CMC and Euparal, have certain advantages, but glycerin jelly has been satisfactory for us.

A clean microscope slide is warmed over an alcohol lamp and a few square millimeters of glycerin jelly are placed on it. The jelly should be spread so as to form a

film covering the area to be occupied by the cover slip. Spreading can be aided with a warm dissecting needle and bubbles can be removed by pricking with the tip of a hot needle. The slide is then placed conveniently near the microscope and allowed to cool. The body of the barnacle in a dish of water will usually lie on one side or the other. For right-handed workers, it is usually convenient to place the animal on its left side and to dissect away the right cirri one by one, starting with the first. Special care must be taken if caudal appendages are present, as it is preferable that each remain attached to the base of the pedicle of each sixth cirrus. Then usually the cirri of the left side are removed, working from posterior to anterior.

As each cirrus of the right side is removed, it is generally placed in glycerin jelly on the slide outside surface up, in order from left to right. A little water is carried with the appendage and the tips of the forceps, and this aids in slowing the infiltration of jelly and rapid osmotic removal of water. The cirri of the left side are placed in a like manner so that their inner surfaces are up. Due to the osmotic situation, the penis with its delicate cuticle will generally shrivel if placed directly in the glycerin jelly and should be first infiltrated with glycerin.

At this point one is left with the appendageless thorax, and the prosoma supporting the buccal mass. These can be separated, and the former discarded, provided it does not support filamentary appendages. Some experience is helpful in dissecting out the mouth parts. Generally the first maxillae and mandibles are removed before attempting to remove the second maxillae. This is because the second maxillae are rather delicate and are

fused together basally. They are best taken off as a pair and then teased apart, before mounting. The numerous muscles and adhering shreds of cuticle are removed from the labrum. It may be desirable to detach one of the palps and mount it separately, so that the crest of the labrum can be viewed. Although the mouth parts are readily distinguishable and there is little likelihood of getting them confused, it is best to mount them in a meaningful way, as was done with the cirri. This completes the dissection and the mount should be inspected and adjustments in the positions of parts made with the tip of a warm needle. The slide is then warmed gently to soften but not completely liquify the jelly, and a warmed coverslip is lowered into place, allowing one edge to touch first so that air can escape without forming bubbles. The finished slide should be cleaned and sealed and given an identifying mark or label.

A certain amount of flattening is unavoidable in a preparation of this sort, and structures such as the penis and labrum may best be studied in glycerin alone, without a coverslip, before being transferred to glycerin jelly.

It has long been customary to store barnacles dry and many collections are presently so maintained. Dried materials that have not been damaged by insects can be "reconstituted" to a considerable extent by soaking for several days in alcohol and glycerin. If the preparation does not soften sufficiently for dissection, it should be treated with a dilute solution (0.5 to 1 percent) of trisodium phosphate for one to several days. Specimens that have been dried for more than one hundred years have been successfully dissected after having been treated in this way.

## ONTOGENY

### EMBRYONIC AND LARVAL LIFE

Eggs are laid in the mantle cavity of the female or hermaphrodite where they are fertilized (Fig. 107). A substance secreted during laying forms a matrix holding the

eggs in a mass of a more or less definite form. When formed in sheets, the masses are termed **ovigerous lamellae** (DARWIN, 1851). In many species, the egg masses lie free within the mantle cavity, conforming closely to the space occupied, or, in *Lepas*

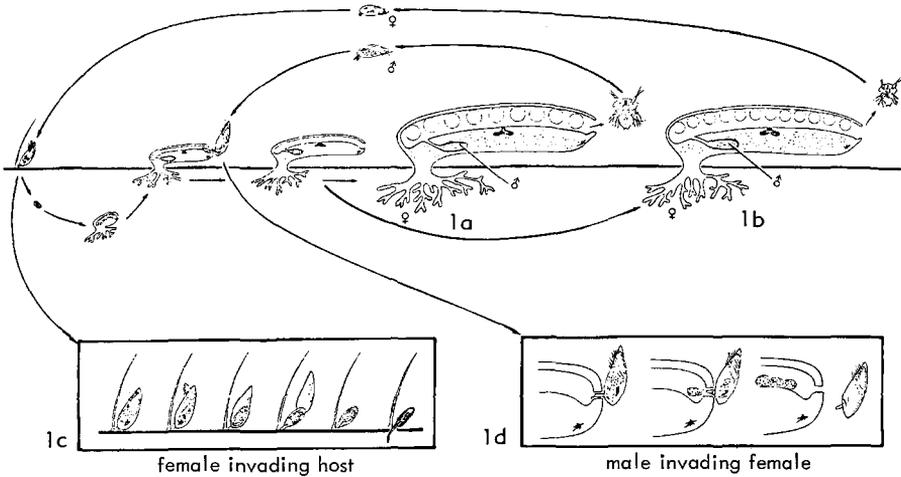


FIG. 107. Life cycle of *Peltogasterella gracilis* (BOSCHMA) (Rhizocephala); 1a, female producing large eggs, nauplii and male cyprid larvae; 1b, female producing small eggs, nauplii and female cyprid larvae; 1c, female cyprid kentrogon invading hermit crab host; 1d, male cyprid cells being injected into mantle cavity of young female and migrating toward male cell receptacles (Newman, simplified, after Yanagimachi, 1961).

and its allies, a pair of ovigerous lamellae are held in position by special structures called **ovigerous frenae**. Although the eggs are relatively yolky, cleavage is characteristic of the Spiralia, being total, unequal and presumably determinant in genera such as *Lepas* (BIGELOW, 1902). After a period of incubation, the eggs usually hatch as **nauplii** which are subsequently released by the adult (GROOM, 1894). The free-swimming nauplius generally molts five times, thus passing through six stages, each of increasing complexity (BASSINDALE, 1936). The nauplius has a pair of **frontolateral horns**—distinguishing the nauplii of Thoracica, Acrothoracica, and Rhizocephala from all other Crustacea; a nauplius eye, uniramous first antennae and natatory biramous second antennae and mandibles (Fig. 81). Gnathobases on the last two pairs of appendages serve to capture food and tuck it beneath a large labrum covering the mouth. By the last naupliar stage, compound eyes, first maxillae, the incipient six thoracic somites have appeared beneath the cuticle, and the setation of the naupliar appendages has gained considerable complexity. The sixth naupliar molt involves a complicated metamorphosis into a **cyprid larva** (GROOM, 1895; BATHAM, 1945) (Fig. 81, 84). The broad dorsal shield of the nauplius becomes the bivalved carapace of the cyprid, the

first antennae become prehensile (Fig. 91, 2), the second antennae disappear, the mouth parts persist as rudiments, and the six thoracic limbs appear as natatory appendages.

The cyprid larva is not known to feed. It settles out of the plankton and selects the site where it will attach. Attachment is effected initially by the first antennae and once cemented in place, the cyprid undergoes a complex metamorphosis and reorganization in attaining a juvenile form (RUNNSTRÖM, 1925; BERNARD & LANE, 1962) (Fig. 108).

The nauplius stage is passed through in the egg in a number of thoracic cirriped species (Fig. 109,A), the larvae being liberated as fully developed cyprids (BARNARD, 1924; BROCH, 1924; HOEK, 1883; NILSSON-CANTELL, 1921) (Fig. 109,B). The deletion of the nauplius as a free-swimming stage is seen in the other orders of cirripeds: Ascothoracica (WAGIN, 1946; BRATTSTRÖM, 1948), Acrothoracica (NILSSON-CANTELL, 1921; TOMLINSON & NEWMAN, 1960; BATHAM & TOMLINSON, 1965), and Rhizocephala (NILSSON-CANTELL, 1921; BOCCQUET-VÉDRINE, 1961). Yet the nauplius is a fundamental part of the basic cirriped life cycle, its elimination being a secondary development that appeared independently in the various orders.

## EARLY DEVELOPMENT OF LEPADOMORPHA

*Lepas* has a nauplius larva which passes through six stages (Moyse, 1963). The last stage metamorphoses into a cyprid, which is weakly free-swimming. The cyprid swims about for an unknown, but presumably short, period of time, and then settles on virtually any floating or suspended object. Shortly after settling, five uncalcified primordial plates (carina and paired scuta and terga) appear beneath the bivalved cyprid shell. Then the cyprid shell becomes loosened, opens along the ventral margin, and is worked off, usually before the calcified plates appear (Fig. 87,2-3). The calcified plates are formed under, and extend beyond, the primordial plates and in later stages may be seen on the umbo of the calcified plates unless worn away (Fig. 87,5-6).

Development of plates in the Scapellidae is well shown in a series of *Pollicipes polymerus typica* described by BROCH (1922), whose figures are reproduced here (Fig. 88,1-7). This barnacle exhibits a similar ontogeny to that of *Lepas*, including the appearance of five primordial plates as primary centers of calcification. At this point, a number of additional calcified plates appear which are not associated with primordial plates. Thus, although the basic number of primordia seems to be five, primordia are not required for a calcified plate to develop. In fact, the functional relationship between the primordial plates and calcification is unknown.

In the ontogenetic development of *Pollicipes* and *Lepas*, it was seen that a stage occurs where the animal is enclosed by the primordial plates and connecting membrane. It is only later that the calcareous plates are formed, and as they develop, the primordial plates are displaced farther and farther from each other, remaining on the umbo of the calcified plates. In Lepadomorpha, the five primordial plates are present, as they also are in the sessile asymmetrical forms included in the Verrucomorpha (Fig. 89,1-4).

Primordial plates, however, have not been found in Balanomorpha.

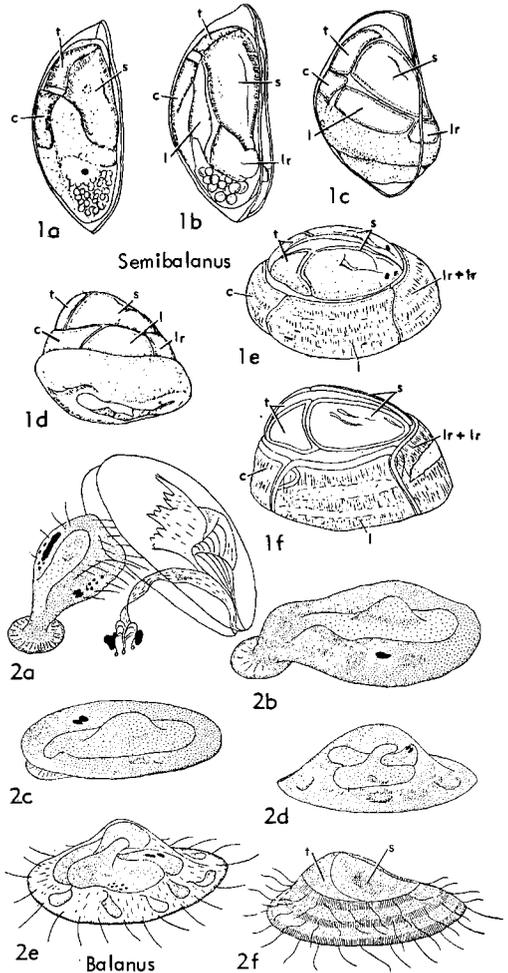


FIG. 108. Morphology of cirripeds. Metamorphosis in *Balanus*.—1. *Balanus (Semibalanus) balanoides* (LINNÉ), enl.; 1a, freshly settled cyprid larva with presumptive tergum, scutum and carina beginning to appear; 1b, further differentiation of presumptive plates and appearance of two pairs of lateral plates; 1c, cyprid shell about to be cast, terga and scuta becoming organized to form the opercular valves; carina, lateral and rostrolateral plates becoming organized into wall; 1d, further differentiation and development of opercular and wall parts, rostrolaterals still separate; 1e, rostrolaterals fusing, forming compound rostrum; 1f, four-plated stage of *Semibalanus* (after Runnström, 1925, from 61).—2. *Balanus (Balanus) amphitrite* DARWIN; 2a, settled larva shedding cyprid shell and compound eyes, devoid of presumptive plates,  $\times 53$ ; 2b-e, successive metamorphic stages with changes in external morphology toward the juvenile form,  $\times 93$ ; 2f, differentiation of opercular valves (terga and scuta) and wall,  $\times 93$  (after 10). [Explanation: c, carina; l, latus; lr, latus (rostral); r, rostrum; s, scutum; t, tergum.]

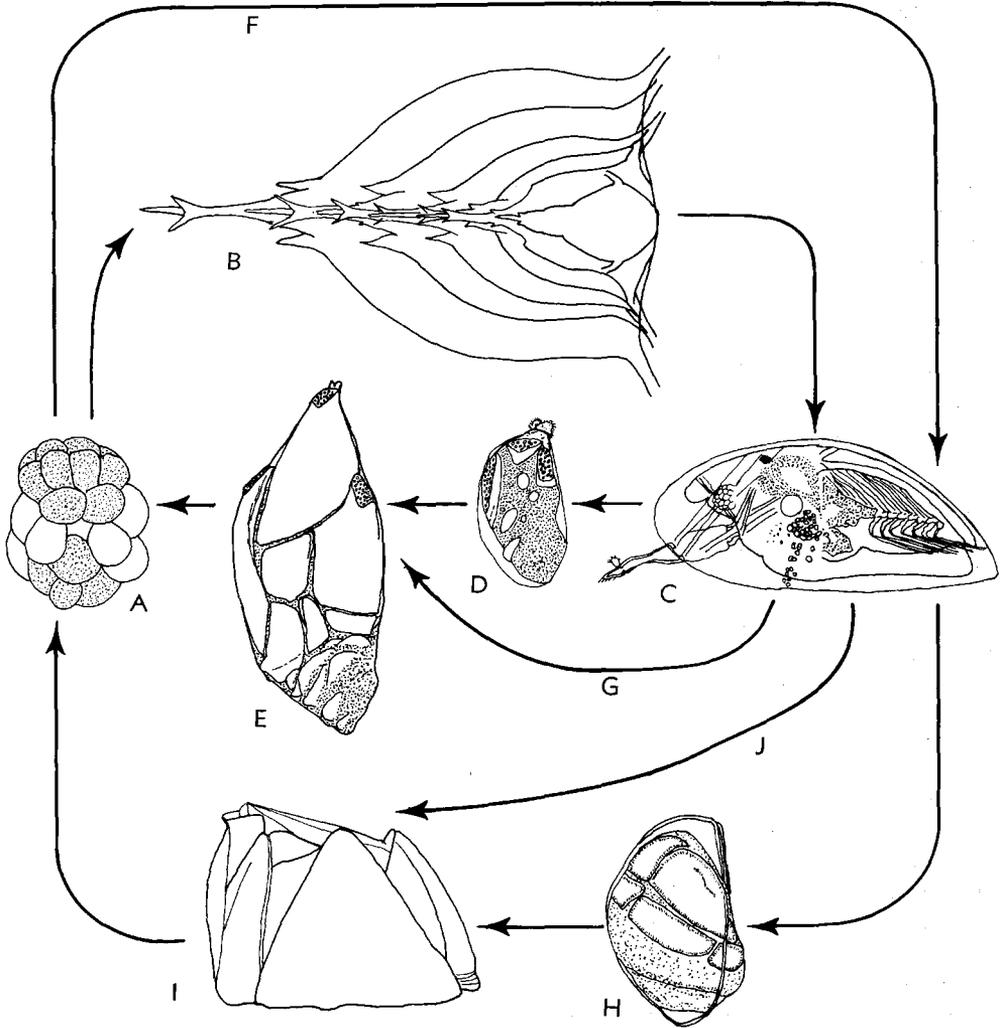


FIG. 109. Life cycles of thoracican cirripeds (Newman, n).

The generalized life cycle includes spirally cleaving egg brooded in mantle cavity (A), naupliar stages, usually six (B), nonfeeding cyprid larva (C), pupal or metamorphic stage (D or H), and adult, usually pure hermaphrodite, less commonly hermaphrodite accompanied by complementary males or female accompanied by dwarf males (E or I). In some species, naupliar stages are passed through in egg, and cyprid emerges as first larval stage (A, through F, to C). In some species with males, certain

cyprids metamorphose into minute degenerate male attached to hermaphrodite or female (C, through G or J, to E or I), within mantle cavity (Iblidae, Fig. 86,2a); along scutal margin of aperture (Scalpellidae, Fig. 86,3b); at rostral end of aperture (Koleolepadidae, Fig. 114,9), or on inner surface of rostrum and rostral ends of scuta (Balanidae, Fig. 118,3a-b) (A, after 12; B, after 7; C, mod. from Kühnert, 1935; D, E, after 20; H, after 91; I, after 55).

### EARLY DEVELOPMENT OF BALANOMORPHA

The balanomorph larva also passes through six naupliar stages and one cyprid stage (BASSINDALE, 1936; COSTLOW & BOOK-

HOUT, 1957; BARNES & COSTLOW, 1961). Upon settlement, the cyprid body has been observed to undergo a metamorphosis similar to that seen in the Lepodomorpha (RUNNSTRÖM, 1925), or to enter a stage in which no structure can be discerned

(DOOCHIN, 1951; BERNARD & LANE, 1962). These two types of metamorphosis have been described for species belonging to different subgenera of *Balanus* so that it is possible the apparent differences are real rather than mistaken observations. The two processes are illustrated here (Fig. 108, 1a-f, 2a-f). In the latter, the cyprid carapace is discarded and the barnacle appears as a small, dome-shaped, amorphous lump attached to the substrate. The compartmental plates and the opercular valves begin to take form after the carapace is discarded, and presumably at this time the adult body also forms.

RUNNSTRÖM (1925) and BROCH (1927) have described the ontogeny of the shell wall in *Balanus* (*Semibalanus*) *balanoides* in which five wall plates (two rostrilaterals, two laterals, and carina; rostrum being absent), are first discernible. The rostrilaterals fuse to form a single plate, leaving four in the shell wall. This is followed by the appearance of the carinilaterals, on either side of the carina, to form the full complement of six compartmental plates. The observations on the formation of the rostral plate are, for a good part, the basis for concluding that it is made up of the

fused rostrilaterals and that actually the true rostrum is lacking in *Balanus* and derived genera (Fig. 96, 8). However, COSTLOW's (1956) observations on *B. (B.) improvisus* do not confirm this finding. Two plates first appear, one of which is the rostrum. The other subsequently divides to form the carina and paired laterals, yielding the four-plated stage. The carinilaterals then appear between the carina and the laterals, in the same manner as described for *B. (S.) balanoides*. From this description, the rostral plate would be homologous with the rostrum of other Thoracica. Whether one or the other, or both, of these methods of formation of the rostral plate is actually the case is not known.

COSTLOW (1956) has also described the early ontogeny of the wall in *Balanus* (*Balanus*) *improvisus*, and identifying certain cells in the basal margin of the mantle responsible for the secretion of the cuticle and the organic matrix that subsequently becomes calcified. His description includes details of the inception of complex wall elements such as parietal tubes, septa, and the inner lamina composing the wall of higher balanomorphs.

## CLASSIFICATION

An outline of the taxonomic divisions of the Cirripedia, which seems most acceptable in light of published knowledge of these crustaceans accumulated to the present, follows.

### Order ACROTHORACICA Gruvel, 1905

In his first volume on the living cirripeds, DARWIN (1851), considered *Alcippe* HANCOCK (= *Trypetesa*), and an undescribed form (*Cryptophialus*), were sufficiently distinct from the ordinary cirripeds (Thoracica) to constitute a distinct order. However, when the time came to erect the order (Abdominalia), he described and placed *Cryptophialus* but not *Alcippe* in it (1854). This decision was in good part due to difficulties in the homologies of segmentation in the cirripeds that had grown

out of the prevalent tendency to compare entomostracan segmentation patterns to that of the Malacostraca, to difficulties in reconciling the apparently aberrant segmentation of *Alcippe* with that of *Cryptophialus*, and in the similarities he noted between the plan of *Alcippe* and that found in other lepadomorphs, especially the reduced males of some species. NOLL (1872) recognized the underlying bases for certain of these difficulties and placed *Alcippe* in the Abdominalia, and GRUVEL (1905) cognizant of the thoracic rather than abdominal situation of the posterior cirri, changed the name of the order to Acrothoracica.

Since DARWIN, more than 30 Recent and fossil species have been described. The classification of living species generally reflects the degree of reduction of the appendages. The most generalized genus, *Weltneria*, has a complete complement of

cirri, and caudal appendages are present. Other genera are primarily characterized by the loss of one or more pairs of cirri, the presence or absence of caudal appendages, the condition of the mouth parts and to some degree, the musculature. All those having a well-developed posterior end and complete gut, BERNDT (1907) considered to form a suborder, the Pygophora. In contrast, *Trypetesa*, with the posterior end quite rudimentary and hind gut closed, he set aside as a separate suborder, the Apygophora. Classification in the *Treatise* follows that of BERNDT (1907) as suggested by TOMLINSON (1967, personal communication) (p. R251).

### Order RHIZOCEPHALA F. Müller, 1862

The Rhizocephala were first recognized as crustacean organisms by CAVOLINI (1787), through the discovery of nauplius larvae in *Sacculina*. It was 50 years later, without knowledge of CAVOLINI's work, that J. V. THOMPSON (1836) correctly referred these highly modified parasites of crustaceans to the Cirripedia. MÜLLER (1862-63) advanced knowledge of their life history and adult anatomy, and confirmed LILLJEBORG's (1861) observations and interpretations on the existence of males, found as cyprids attached to the parasite. The males were considered complemental in function because the parasites were presumed to be hermaphroditic, a sexual relationship comparable to that discovered by DARWIN (1851-54) in certain thoracican cirripeds. DELAGE (1884) made important studies on anatomy, further confirmed the presence of males, and discovered the manner in which the cyprid stage of the parasite infects and establishes the internal parasitic phase, by way of the so-called kentrogon stage. GIARD (1891) recognized that infection resulted in parasitic castration of the host.

Much controversy has surrounded sexuality in the rhizocephalans. The consensus primarily fostered by SMITH (1906) and POTTS (1912) was that when so-called testes were found along with ovaries in the same parasite, the individual was a hermaphrodite. In such cases, the males would be complemental and were construed as func-

tionless. This concept persisted until REINHARD (1942) demonstrated in *Peltogaster* that the so-called complemental male was functional. That the so-called testes were in fact males that had left their cyprid integument attached outside the mantle opening, and had migrated into special pockets formed for them within the mantle cavity of the female and many other important details in the life cycle were uncovered by ICHIKAWA & YANAGIMACHI (1958) in *Peltogasterella*. Comparable processes have been recently described in other rhizocephalans (VEILLET, 1962; YANAGIMACHI & FUJIMAKI, 1967).

Whereas the Rhizocephala were generally considered more closely related to ordinary cirripeds than to other crustaceans, DELAGE (1884) inferred that they were sufficiently distinct to form a coordinate group, and proposed the name Kentrogonida for them. Such separation was not generally accepted, however. KOSSMANN (1872) considered them best regarded as a subfamily of the Lepadidae. Morphological intergradations between pedunculate barnacles and rhizocephalans have been observed and the nauplii of Rhizocephala, Acrothoracica, and Thoracica have frontolateral horns, structures found in no other Crustacea. The Rhizocephala are simply cirripeds highly modified for parasitism. Furthermore, it is likely that the Rhizocephala are polyphyletic, lines having arisen from different thoracican stocks.

The studies of COUTIÈRE (1902) suggested that, unlike *Sacculina*, *Thylacoplethus* (= *Thompsonia*) probably did not pass through an internal phase, and therefore lacked a kentrogon stage. On this basis, HÄFELE (1911) divided the Rhizocephala into two groups, the Kentrogonida and Akentrogonida. This division was not adopted by CALMAN (1909) or KRÜGER (1940).

It had been thought that each reproductive sac of *Thompsonia* was supported by an individual set of nutritive processes that had become established in the host without loss of communication with the exterior. This level of organization, on theoretical grounds, would have to have preceded the evolution of the kentrogon. However, POTTS (1915) demonstrated that the individual

reproductive bodies in *Thompsonia* were actually interconnected by nutritive processes and were undoubtedly developed from a single individual, rather than by multiple infection. Yet it has not been determined whether *Thompsonia* passes through a kentrogen stage. Consequently, the retention of the genus in the Akentrogonida is tentative. *Duplorbis* and *Mycetomorpha*, especially the former, are suspected of being at the akentrogonid level of organization, but their life histories, too, are incompletely known. *Chthamalphilus*, on the other hand, has been critically examined and is definitely assignable to the Akentrogonida (BOCQUET-VÉDRINE, 1961), so that the suborder, provisionally including *Thompsonia*, *Duplorbis*, *Microgaster*, and *Mycetomorpha*, is adopted here, outlined on p. R251.

## Order ASCOTHORACICA

### Lacaze-Duthiers, 1880

When LACAZE-DUTHIERS (1880) described *Laura*, he recognized its affinities with the Cirripedia. The prehensile first antennae, bivalved carapace and natatory thoracic limbs provide a strong facies similarity with cyprid larvae, and the female genital ducts opening on the first thoracic somite, as in the ordinary cirripeds but in no other crustaceans, further indicated this. In consideration of the uniqueness of organization, and adaptations made to parasitism, he proposed a separate category for *Laura*, the Ascothoracida or Rhizothoracida, to be included as the fourth suborder of otherwise peculiar or parasitic forms, or both, the *Cirripedia abortiva* of GERSTAECKER (1866). Thus he recognized suborders designated as 1) Suctoria or Rhizocephala, 2) Apoda, 3) Abdominalia, and 4) Ascothoracida or Rhizothoracida.

The inclusion of these suborders under an order distinguishing them from the Cirripedia genuina (Thoracica), proved highly artificial in terms of natural affinities, and in his revisionary work, GRUVEL (1905) arranged them simply as separate orders under the subclass Cirripedia: 1) Thoracica, 2) Acrothoracica (=Abdominalia), 3) Ascothoracica (=Ascothoracida or Rhizothoracida), 4) Apoda, and 5) Rhizocephala.

In subsequent studies, WAGIN (1937, 1946) concluded that the Ascothoracica were sufficiently distinct from the cirripeds to be considered as separate and of equal rank. This view was accepted by KRÜGER (1940). Yet, the comparative analyses were made with respect to the thoracican barnacles rather than with the cirripeds in general, and as WAGIN (1946) pointed out, there were difficulties in separating specialized from fundamental features. Upon re-examination, the only fundamental difference between the two groups seems to be the absence of frontolateral horns in ascothoracican naupliar stages. Otherwise the closer affinities of the ascothoracicans with the cirripeds than with any other group of crustaceans is admitted by all. There is no compelling reason, then, to place the Ascothoracica equal in rank with other maxillopodan subclasses, and the category is retained here as the most generalized order of Cirripedia (p. R251).

## Order THORACICA Darwin, 1854

LINNÉ (1758) did not distinguish genera among the cirripeds, but included all known species in *Lepas*. DA COSTA (1778) was the first binomial author to distinguish between the "sessile" barnacles, which he placed in the genus *Balanus*, and the stalked or pedunculate barnacles for which he retained the name *Lepas*.

LEACH (1817, 1818, 1825) and GRAY (1825) were among the first to classify barnacles in a more modern manner. LEACH (1825, p. 208-209) proposed orders designated as 1) Campylosomata (= "Pedunculata" of later authors), including families Clytiadae, Pollicipedidae, Iblidae, and 2) Acamptosomata (= "Operculata" of later authors), including families Coronulidae, Balanidae, Clisiadae.

In the same year GRAY (1825) proposed division of the Thoracica into families named Anatiferidae, Pollicipedidae, Pyrgomatidae, Balanidae, and Coronulidae.

DARWIN (1851, 1854) not only revised the classifications of LEACH and GRAY, but established the genera on firm morphological bases, defined species which at that time were in a chaotic state, and established a definite terminology. He demonstrated re-

relationships between supraspecific taxa, his more important contributions being definition of the families Lepadidae, Verrucidae, and Balanidae as groups of equal rank, separation of the Chthamalinae and Balaninae as subfamilies of the Balanidae, and determination of important differences in the morphology of the “turtle” (*Chelonibia*) and “whale” (*Coronula*) barnacles.

GRUVEL’s (1905) classification represents a radical departure from that proposed by DARWIN, being based, especially in the Balanomorphia, on number of plates in the shell wall. The inadequacies of this classification, discussed by PILSBRY (1916, p. 13), WITHERS (1928, p. 62) and KRÜGER (1940, p. 26-27), result from the fact that the compartmental plates are not always homologous in taxa having a like number of plates in the shell wall. Continued usage of this classification is not recommended.

PILSBRY (1907) divided the Lepadidae into five subfamilies: Lepadinae, Scalpellinae, Oxynaspidinae, Alepadinae, Iblinae.

HOEK (October, 1907) and PILSBRY (November, 1907) independently proposed to group members of *Scalpellum* into a number of subgenera. These studies later led PILSBRY (1908) to divide *Scalpellum* into four genera: *Calantica* (with subgenera *Calantica s.s.*, and *Scillaelepas*), *Smilium*, *Euscalpellum*, and *Scalpellum* (with subgenera *Scalpellum s.s.* and *Arcoscalpellum* (= *Holoscalpellum*), the latter including the “sections” *Mesoscalpellum* and *Neoscalpellum*). *Arcoscalpellum* and *Mesoscalpellum* (= *Neoscalpellum*) have subsequently been recognized as genera. These six genera are based on the armature of the females or hermaphrodites and to some extent that of the males.

PILSBRY (1916) confirmed revision of the Thoracica, and expanded and modernized the classification of DARWIN’s Balanidae. His major contributions include separation of the Chelonibiinae (“turtle” barnacles) and the Coronulinae (“whale” barnacles) as distinct subfamilies apart from the Balaninae; the creation of a number of subgenera in the genus *Balanus* following the basic work of HOEK (1913); the designation of type species for genera and subgenera; and the recognition of two distinct morphological groups in the genus

*Chthamalus*. PILSBRY’s (1916) classification of the Thoracica recognized 1) suborder Turrilepadomorpha (=Machaeridia, WITHERS, 1926), Lepidocoleidae, Turrilepadidae; 2) suborder Lepadomorpha, Loriculidae (=Stramentidae), Brachylepadidae, Scalpellidae, Lepadidae; 3) suborder Verucomorpha, Verrucidae; 4) suborder Balanomorphia, Balanidae, (Balaninae, Chelonibiinae, Coronulinae), Chthamalidae.

The suborder Turrilepadomorpha was renamed Machaeridia by WITHERS (1926) and removed by him from the Cirripedia. WITHERS concluded from crystal structure of the plates that the machaeridians were probably allied to the echinoderms. This conclusion was in part substantiated by POPE (1962) who recognized that the Lepidocoleidae represent cover plates of the brachial spines in echinoderm “Carpoidea.” It can be assumed reasonably that the Turrilepadidae are of similar origin. WITHERS (1923) also removed the family Brachylepadidae from the Lepadomorpha and created a separate suborder Brachylepadomorpha for this group.

The diversity of opinion regarding classification of the Lepadomorpha is exhibited in the following two examples. In 1909 ANNANDALE divided what is now recognized as the Lepadomorpha into three families: Pollicipedidae, including *Pollicipes*, *Scalpellum*, and *Lithotrya*; Iblidae, with the genus *Ibla*; and Lepadidae. The Lepadidae were divided into four subfamilies: Oxynaspidinae, with *Oxynaspis*; Lepadinae, including *Lepas*, *Conchoderma*, and *Heteralepas*; Poecilasmatinae including *Poecilasma*, *Dichelaspis* (= *Octolasmis*), and *Megalasma*; and Alepadinae, including *Alepas s.s.*, *Chaetolepas* (= *Ibla*), *Microlepas*, *Anelasma*, and *Koleolepas*. Later ANNANDALE (1910, 1916) distinguished two subgenera in *Scalpellum*: *Smilium* and *Scalpellum s.s.*

NILSSON-CANTELL (1921) divided the Lepadomorpha into the families Scalpellidae, including *Pollicipes*, *Scalpellum* (with groups *Calantica*, *Smilium*, *Euscalpellum*, *Scalpellum*), and *Lithotrya*; Iblidae containing only *Ibla*; Oxynaspididae with *Oxynaspis*; Lepadidae, including *Lepas*, *Conchoderma*, and *Alepas*; Heteralepadidae, containing *Heteralepas* (with the subgenera *Heteralepas s.s.*, and *Paralepas*); and Poe-

cilasmataidae, including *Poecilasma* (with the subgenera *Poecilasma s.s.*, *Glyptelasma*, and *Temnaspis*), and *Octolasmis*.

The generally acceptable features of this classification were incorporated by WITHERS (1953), and with some additions and emendations, his classification has been adopted for the *Treatise*, as given in the following outline.

### Order APODA Darwin, 1854

*Proteolepas bivincta*, a curious parasitic crustacean, was found in the mantle cavity of a pedunculate barnacle, *Heteralepas cornuta* (DARWIN) from the West Indies. On the basis of a single specimen, DARWIN (1854) developed an analysis that led him to believe the form was a member of the Cirripedia, for which he established the order Apoda. No specimens attributed to *Proteolepas* have been found subsequently.

The interpretation, that *Proteolepas* is a cirriped, was based primarily on the marked similarity between the pair of appendages by which it attached to the host and the first antennae of ordinary cirripeds. However, in order to consider these appendages homologous with the first antennae of cirripeds requires that they should have migrated backward on the body as many as five segments. Peculiarities in the pair of biting mouth parts, as compared to the cirriped mandible, led DARWIN to speculate on their formation. He concluded that the relatively complex structure had resulted from fusion of the mandibles with the first and possibly the second maxillae, and had rotated through 180°. At the present level of our knowledge, both of these interpretations seem highly unlikely. The appendages of attachment could be first or second maxillae, rather than first antennae, and thus the parasite could be interpreted as a copepod. On the other hand, if the

mouth parts were interpreted as mala-costracan mandibles, as they appear, then the parasite might be an epicaridean. Therefore, until new material is discovered, the affinities of *Proteolepas* remain conjectural.

Certain larvae were attributed to the Apoda by HANSEN (1899). Termed Y-larvae by him, they were subsequently found by other workers (STEUER, 1904; McMURRICH, 1917). The assignment of Y-larvae to the Apoda was by process of elimination, since they resembled the larvae of no cirriped known at the time. On the basis of present knowledge, it seems equally possible that Y-larvae, provided they are cirripeds, belong to ascothoracicans, because of the absence of frontolateral horns. However, some of them have compound eyes, which, while found in late naupliar and cyprid stages of other cirripeds and in the Branchiura, are unknown in larvae of Ascothoracica. Therefore the affinities of the Y-larvae with the Apoda, with other cirriped groups, or with other crustaceans remain doubtful.

#### Classification of Class Cirripedia

##### Order Acrothoracica

Suborder Pygophora: Lithoglyptidae, Cryptophialidae (Rodgerellidae, Zapfelliidae provisional).

Suborder Apygophora: Trypetesidae

##### Order Rhizocephala

Suborder Kentrogonida: Peltogastridae, Sacculinidae, Lernaediscidae, Clistosaccidae, Sylonidae.

Suborder Akentrogonida

##### Order Ascothoracica: Synagogidae, Lauridae, Petraracidae, Dendrogastridae

##### Order Thoracica

Suborder Lepadomorpha: Cyprilepadidae, Praelepadidae, Scalpellidae, Heteralepadidae, Iblidae, Koleolepadidae, Lepadidae, Malacolepadidae, Oxynaspididae, Poecilasmataidae, Stramentidae, Family uncertain

Suborder Verrucomorpha: Verrucidae

Suborder Brachylepadomorpha: Brachylepadidae

Suborder Balanomorpha: Chthamalidae, Balanidae (Balaninae, Tetracitinae, Chelonibiinae, Coronulinae, Emersoniinae)

##### Order Apoda

## FOSSIL TRACES

Of the four orders of Cirripedia, only the Thoracica is represented by actual fossil remains. No fossil evidence has been found for the purely parasitic Rhizocephala. The

remaining two orders (Acrothoracica, Ascothoracica) have been identified by the traces left in the substrates they inhabited.

The characteristics of fossil acrothoracican

burrows were summarized by TOMLINSON (1963) from whose table the following list of species was obtained.

#### *Acrothoracican Fossil Burrows*

##### Family ZAPFELLIDAE

*Zapfella pattei* SAINT-SEINE, 1954, Mio.-Plio., in large gastropods, few pelecypods, calcareous marls.

*Simonizapfes elongata* CODEZ, 1957, Trias.-Jur., in belemnites, pelecypods, crinoids, gastropods, etc.

*Brachyzapfes elliptica* CODEZ, in belemnites, pelecypods. TAYLOR (1965) has described burrows identified as *B. elliptica gigantea* (new), from Antarctic (Aptian) belemnite rostra.

##### Family RODGERELLIDAE

*Rodgerella lecointrei* SAINT-SEINE, 1951, Cret., in echinoids.

*Rodgerella mathieui* SAINT-SEINE, 1955, M.Jur.-Cret., L.Mio.-Plio., in echinoids, pelecypods, belemnites, corals.

*Rodgerella cragini* SCHLAUDT & YOUNG, 1960, Cret.(Alb.), in *Ceritella proctori* (gastropod).

##### Family TRYPETESIDAE

*Trypetesa caveata* TOMLINSON, 1963, Penn.-L. Perm., in myalinid pelecypods. Unnamed spe-

cies, in JOYSEY, 1959, Cret., in *Echinocorys* (echinoid).

Unidentified acrothoracican burrows were also described by SCHLAUDT and YOUNG (1960) and later by RODDA and FISHER (1962) from the Pennsylvanian and Permian of Texas in myalinid pelecypods, brachiopods, crinoids, rugose corals, and bryozoans, and by ROSS (1965) from the Miocene of Florida in the bryozoan *Holoporella*.

The Ascothoracica were apparently represented in the Cretaceous. Fossil traces, in the form of cysts in the octocoral *Moltkia minuta*, from the Maastrichtian, have been identified and named *Endosacculus moltkiaie*, by VOIGT (1959). Furthermore, holes comparable to those made by the ascothoracican *Ulophysema* in the test of certain extant sea urchins, have been discovered in the Upper Cretaceous (Turon.-Maastricht.) in an extinct irregular urchin, *Echinocorys* by MADSEN & WOLFF (1965). Therefore, not only does it appear that Ascothoracica were present in the Cretaceous, but some members were already highly specialized endoparasites before the close of the Mesozoic.

## STRATIGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Fossil cirripeds have a total known range from Upper Silurian to Recent, Paleozoic forms being represented by thoracicans, except for a genus of acrothoracicans (*Trypetesa*) identified from borings in bivalve shells (Penn.-Perm. myalinids). Also, dis-

covered Mesozoic and Cenozoic cirripeds belong almost entirely to the Thoracica.

The stratigraphic distribution of Cirripedia found preserved as fossils is indicated graphically in the accompanying Tables 2 and 3.

## PHYLOGENY

### ORIGIN OF CIRRIPEDES

Within the Crustacea, the Cirripedia have their closest affinities with the Maxillopoda. The Maxillopoda are typified by a fundamental five-six-five body plan, in contrast, for example, to the Malacostraca with a fundamental five-eight-seven plan. The divisions include a head with five pairs of appendages, a thorax of six appendage bearing segments, and a five-segmented abdomen which includes a telson with furca (Table 1). The abdominal somites are without appendages, except for the furca

and the male reproductive structure on the first somite which may represent modified limbs. The Maxillopoda include, either by definition or by inference, the Copepoda, Branchiura, and Mystacocarida, as well as the Cirripedia. The Ostracoda, although highly reduced segmentally, could have been derived from a basic five-six-five plan, and are generally considered closer to the Maxillopoda than to other groups.

Among the Cirripedia, only the Ascothoracica have a complete five-six-five plan (Fig. 82,2). The abdomen is absent in adult Acrothoracica and Thoracica, but is repre-

sented by at least three segments in the cyprid larvae of these orders (Fig. 82,3). The Cirripedia seem to have their closest affinities with the Copepoda and Branchiura. Before the life cycle of the harpacticoid copepod *Longipedia* was known, its nauplius larvae were thought to be those of a cirriped. The carapace and cirrus-like thoracic appendages of Branchiura are comparable to those of cirripeds, and detailed similarities between larval cirriped and branchiuran compound eyes further indicate a relationship between the two groups. Thus it can be inferred that the stemline of the Cirripedia is closer to the copepod-branchiuran line of the Maxillopoda than to any other crustacean group (Tables 1, 3).

The ascothoracican grade of construction is the most generalized body plan found in cirripeds, despite the secondary parasitic nature of the group. This body plan is not readily detected in other cirriped groups, but is clearly defined in their cyprid larvae. Therefore, it appears that cirripeds stem from free-living Maxillopoda that had a bivalved carapace, compound eyes, prehensile first antennae, generalized copepod-like mouth parts, natatory thoracic appendages, and an abdomen with telson and furca. Such a form would differ from other Maxillopoda in having female genital apertures on the first thoracic somite, and male genital apertures on the first abdominal somite. The majority of cirripeds are hermaphroditic. However, it may be possible that some species among the Thoracica, having either separate sexes or hermaphrodites accompanied by complementary males, have arrived at this condition through reversion from a purely hermaphroditic condition. It can be inferred that fundamentally the sexes were separate, as separate sexes are found in all cirriped orders, as in the Maxillopoda in general.

The hypothetical ancestral cirriped stock would have resembled extant Ascothoracica in many details, including a basic nonsetose omnivorous feeding mechanism in which only the mouth parts were involved. Such an organism would be suited to an epibenthic existence, but the prehensile first antennae, so fundamental to cirripeds, suggest an epizootic habit, probably on arborescent forms of life (Fig. 110,4).

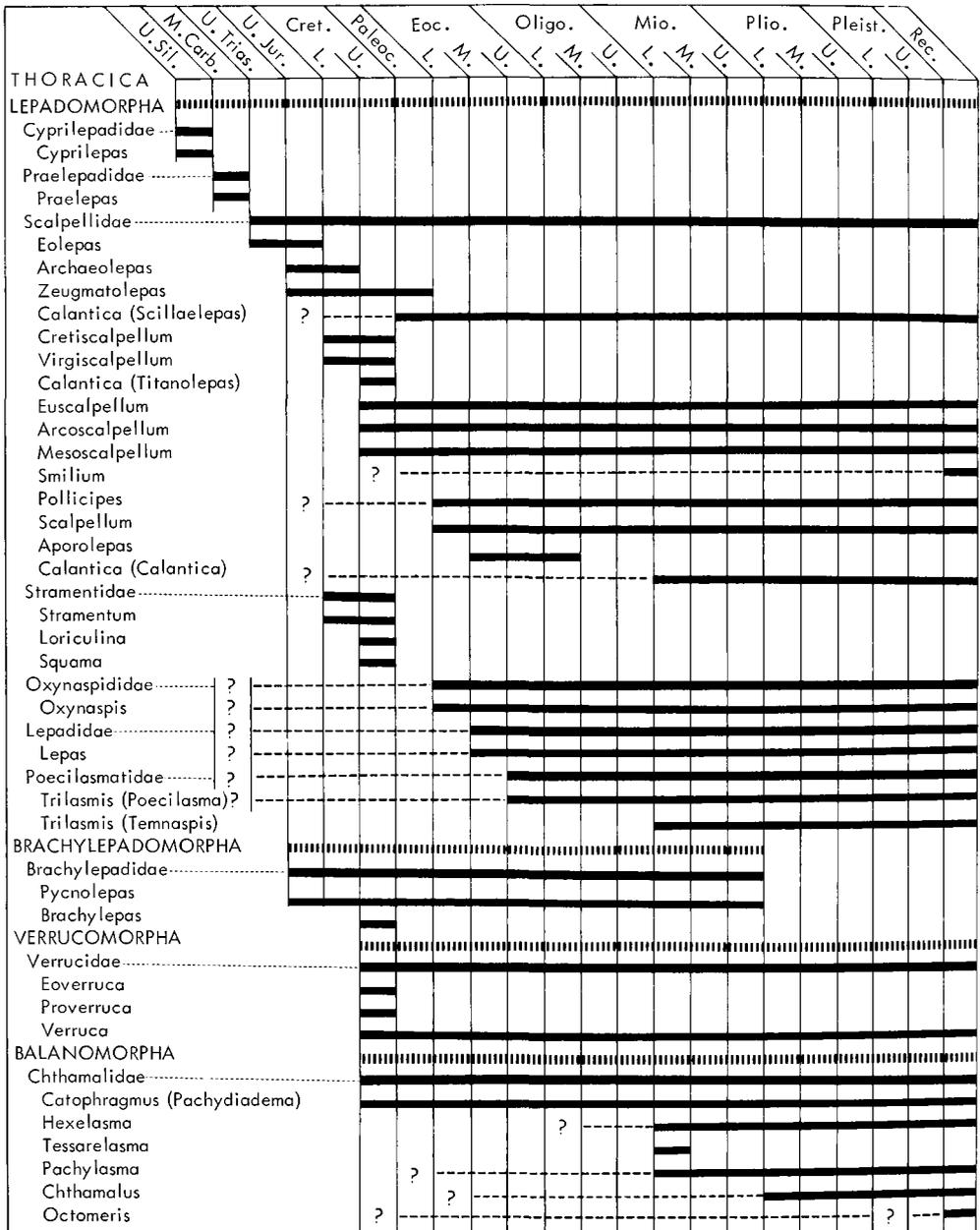
## ORIGIN OF CIRRIPEL ORDERS

The ancestral cirriped would have given rise directly to the Ascothoracica with little modification. The early separation of Ascothoracica from other Cirripedia is exemplified by the generalized form, lack of setose feeding mechanism, complete loss of compound eyes in all stages of the life cycle, and the absence of frontolateral horns in the nauplii.

Two fundamental developments are necessary for transition from the hypothetical cirriped to the level of organization seen in Thoracica and Acrothoracica. The first is acquisition of a setose feeding mechanism, and the second is development of cement glands in connection with the prehensile first antennae. Beyond these basic advances relatively few and simple modifications are necessary to arrive at the highest forms among the cirripeds. Acquisition of a setose feeding mechanism by a generalized omnivore probably developed through modification of a grooming or cleaning behavior, in which the natatory appendages were drawn over the mouth parts to remove particles of detritus adhering to the setae. Sufficient nutrients must have been obtained in this way to place a selective advantage on forms having thoracic appendages with setae that required frequent cleaning. The more food was collected in this manner, the less the necessity of foraging, thus allowing for a more sedentary existence. Once freed of foraging, it is possible for an organism to become cemented in place, if ecological factors such as substratum and predation permit.

It follows, therefore, that the Thoracica and Acrothoracica could have evolved from a stock at the ascothoracican grade of construction (Fig. 110, Table 3). The inferences utilized, however, rest entirely on knowledge of extant cirripeds. Nothing has been recognized in the fossil record that sheds light on the subject. This is not surprising, because most Maxillopoda are small and lack a heavily calcified exoskeleton. Therefore, the probability of being preserved is low, and of being detected, even lower. It is not until the cirripeds gained a well-calcified exoskeleton that their fossil history becomes well documented.

TABLE 2. Stratigraphic Distribution of Genus-group Taxa with Fossil Records.



The earliest and perhaps most remarkable fossil attributed to the Cirripedia is *Cyprilepas* WILLIS, found attached to the appendages of Upper Silurian eurypterids (Fig. 111, I). *Cyprilepas* is clearly divided into peduncle and capitulum, and, there-

fore, is already a thoracican at the lepadomorph grade of construction. With one exception it differs from all known Lepadomorphs in having a bivalved carapace. The extant *Trilasmis eburneum* HINDS also has a bivalved shell, but as shown by DARWIN

TABLE 2. (Continued).

	Carb.		Trias.		M. Jur.		U. Jur.		Cret.		Paleoc.		Eoc.		Oligo.			Mio.			Plio.			Pleist.			Rec.		
	L.	U.	L.	U.	L.	U.	L.	U.	L.	U.	L.	U.	L.	M.	U.	L.	M.	U.	L.	M.	U.	L.	M.	U.	L.	U.	L.	U.	
Balanidae																													
Balaninae																													
Balanus (Hesperibalanus)																													
Kathpalmeria																													
Balanus (Balanus)																													
Balanus (Megabalanus)																													
Acasta																													
Balanus (Austrobalanus)																													
Balanus (Chirona)																													
Balanus (Conopea)																													
Creusia																													
Pyrgoma																													
Balanus (Armatobalanus)																													
Balanus (Semibalanus)																													
Balanus (Hexacreusia)																													
Balanus (Memranobalanus)																													
Emersoniinae																													
Emersonius																													
Tetraclitinae																													
Tetraclita (Tesseropora)																													
Tetraclita (Tetraclita)																													
Chelonibiinae																													
Chelonibia																													
Coronulinae																													
Coronula (Coronula)																													
Coronula (Cetopirus)																													
Cryptolepas																													
Platylepas																													
ACROTHORACICA																													
APYGOPHORA																													
Trypetesidae																													
Trypetesa																													
SUBORDER UNCERTAIN																													
Zapfelliidae																													
Simonizapfes																													
Brachyzapfes																													
Zapfella																													
Rodgerelliidae																													
Rodgerella																													
ASCOTHORACICA																													

Explanation: Known ranges, solid bar; inferred ranges, broken bar (Zullo, n).

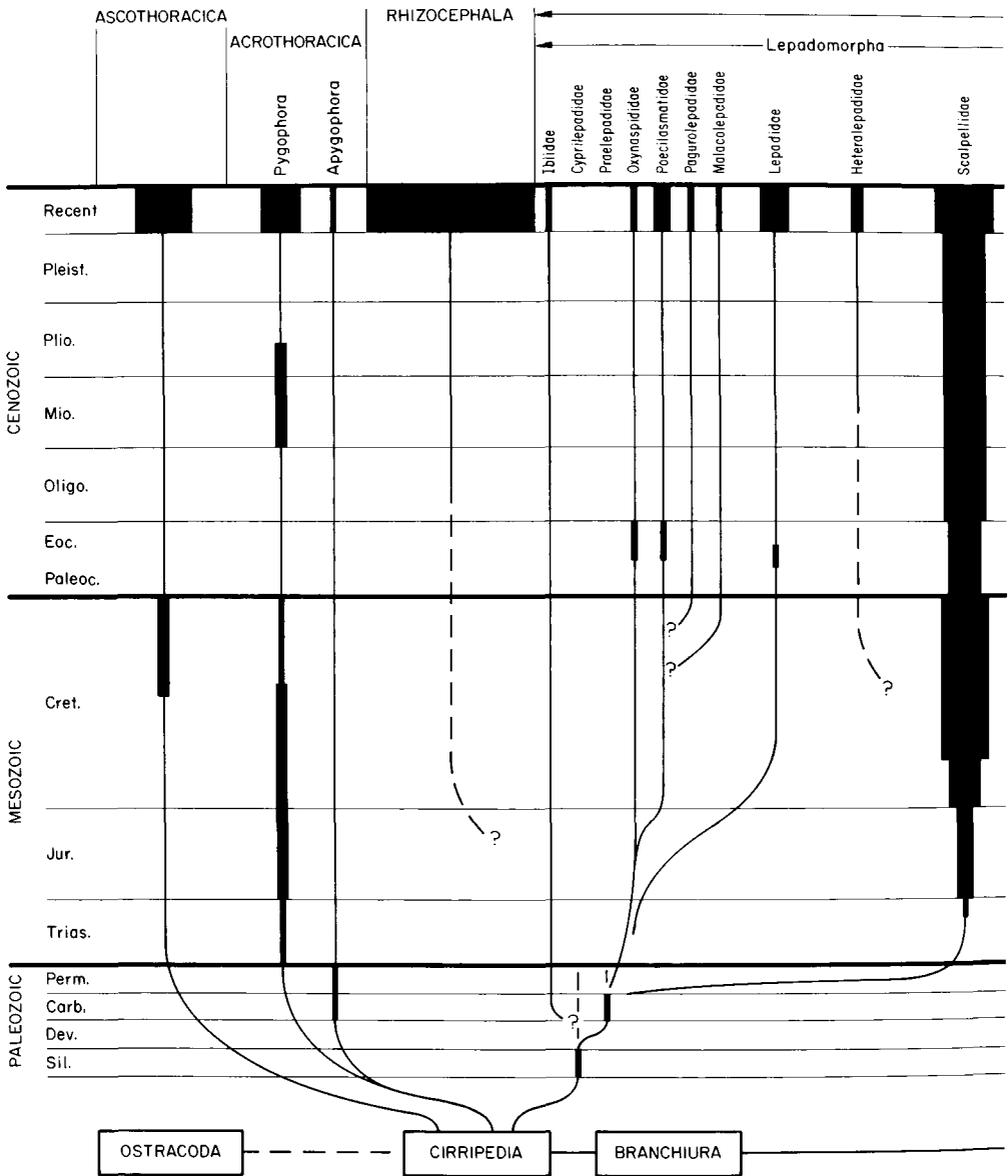
(1851), this condition is the result of secondary reduction (see Fig. 116,9). On the other hand, the bivalved condition seen in *Cyprilepas* probably represents the level of organization attained by cirripeds in the early Paleozoic, and is homologous with the bivalved carapace of Ascothoracica and cyprid larvae of other orders.

*Cyprilepas* may differ from known Lepadomorpha in an even more fundamental way. The absence of growth lines on the

carapace suggests that the entire exoskeleton was shed at each molt, rather than only the exoskeleton lining the mantle cavity and clothing the body and appendages. This is the manner of growth in Acrothoracica, Ascothoracica, and most crustaceans, and could be expected in the stock leading to Thoracica.

In size and grosser form, *Cyprilepas* fits the concept of the ancestral thoracican. However, nothing is known of the body

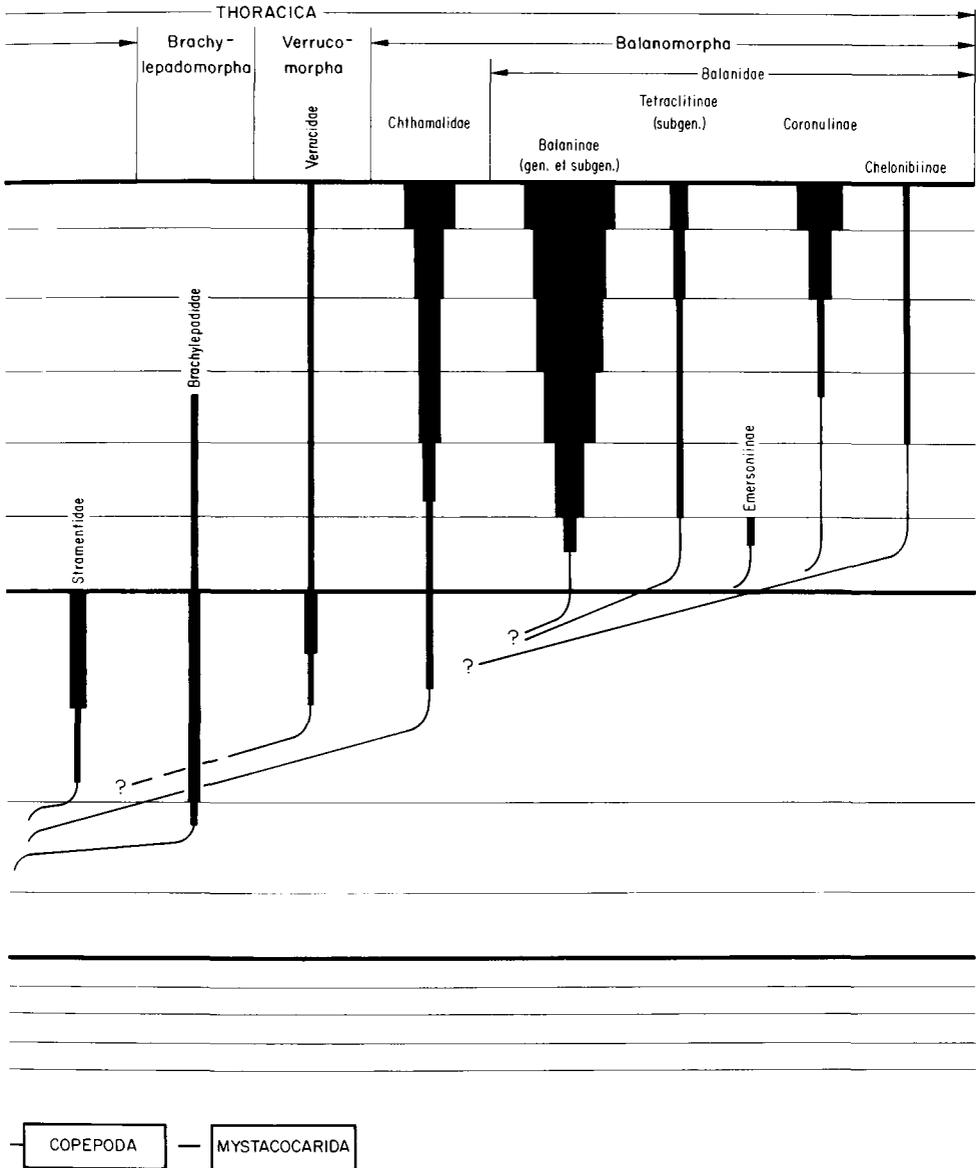
TABLE 3. Stratigraphic Distribution and Inferred Phylogeny of Cirriped Orders and Families (Newman, n).



and appendages, and such information would be desirable in assessing its significance in cirriped evolution. From present knowledge, the *Cyprilepas* grade of construction can be considered the basis from which the array of forms seen in the Lepadomorpha, Verrucomorpha, Brachylepadomorpha, and Balanomorpha have evolved.

It has not been resolved whether the Acrothoracica are descended from the ancestral stock of the Thoracica, or from Thoracica themselves. No fossil acrothoracicans are known, although their characteristic burrows have been recognized in carbonate substrata from as early as Late Carboniferous. The ability to burrow is a specialization acquired after the develop-

TABLE 3. (Continued).



ment of a setose feeding mechanism and attached mode of life. Unlike Thoracica, with the possible exception of *Cyprilepas*, Acrothoracica molt the exterior as well as the interior lining of the carapace, along with the lining of the body and appendages. Burrowing is accomplished, at least initially,

by chitinous hooks and spines covering the exterior of the carapace, and these, too, are replaced at each molt. The cyprid larva attaches itself by the first antennae, with the ventral surface of the shell applied to the substratum. The metamorphosing barnacle, covered by the cyprid shell, begins

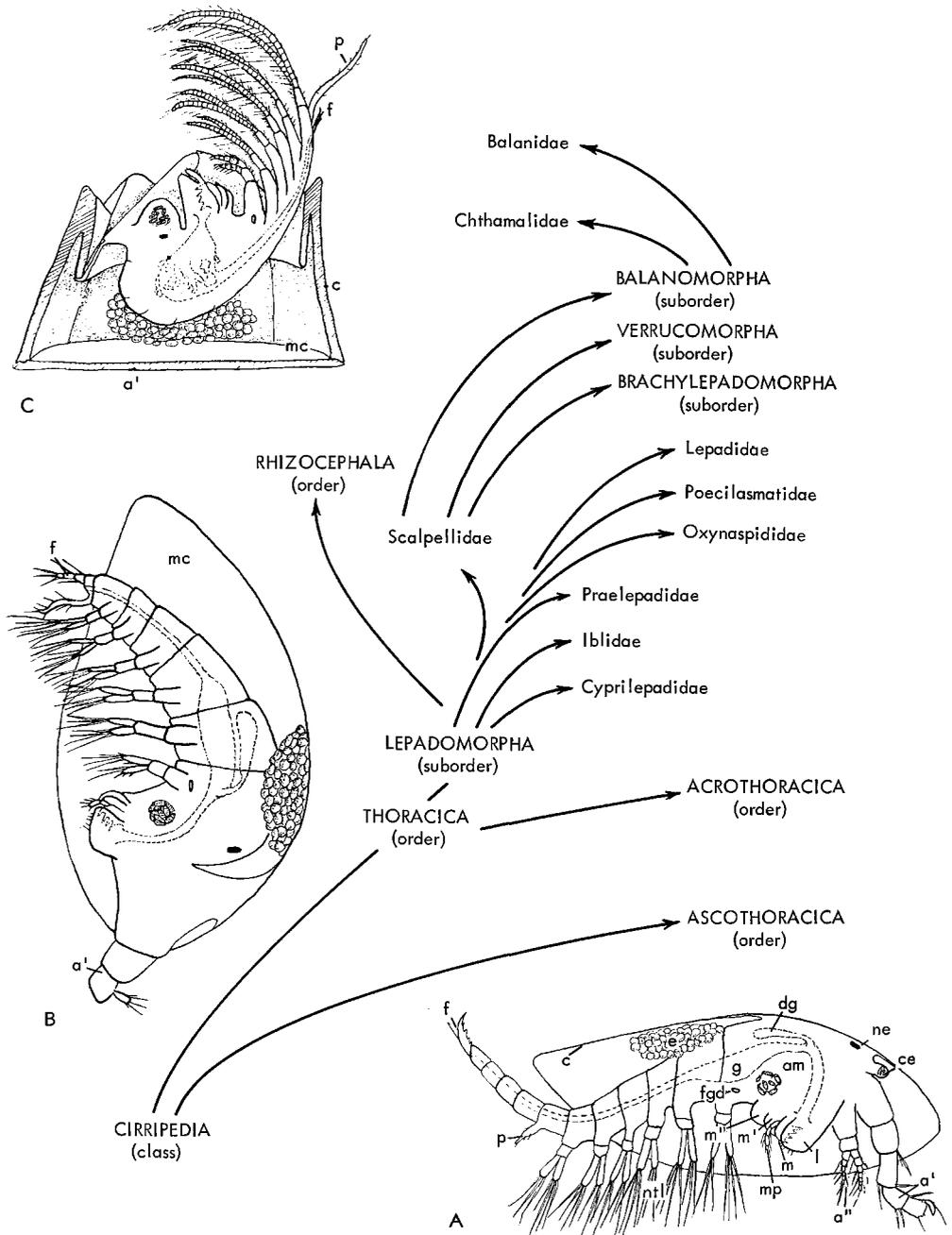


FIG. 110. Evolution of Cirripedia (Newman, n).

A. The ascothoracicans share a 5-6-5 body plan with the Maxillopoda. A generalized ancestral stock having prehensile first antennae and bivalved carapace and differing from Acosthoracica only in having compound eyes and generalized rather than piercing mouth parts, is hypothesized. Such a stock, sharing characters of the Copepoda, Branchiura and Ascothoracica,

would be typified by the form illustrated at the lower right.

B. Transition from the ascothoracican to thoracican level of organization would include acquisition of setose feeding, concomitant with more or less permanent attachment by means of first antennae.

C. From this level remaining cirripeds evolved, the

to burrow mechanically into the substratum by chipping away flakes of carbonate with the carapace spines (BATHAM & TOMLINSON, 1965). If these barnacles did not burrow, but merely remained attached to the substratum, they probably would be included in Thoracica, rather than in a separate order. Since burrowing is a secondary adaptation in the cirriped facies, and in consideration of the geological record of the order, it seems likely that the Acrothoracica descended from lepadomorphan ancestors at a level of organization comparable to that found in *Cyprilepas*. Whereas most Lepadomorpha have developed an external calcareous armament, the Acrothoracica rely on the substratum for protection.

The origin of the Rhizocephala is presently unknown. Members of the order are exclusively parasitic. It might seem that the Rhizocephala are most closely allied to the parasitic Acrothoracica in which the feeding mechanism involves only the mouth parts. However, the rhizocephalan nauplius larva bears frontolateral horns, and although the functional significance of these horns is unknown, their presence demonstrates a closer affinity of the Rhizocephala with Thoracica and Acrothoracica than with Ascothoracica. Furthermore, while the cyprid larva of these three orders cement themselves in place, the cyprid of the Ascothoracica does not.

While Acrothoracica show no tendency towards parasitism, grades of parasitic development are found in Thoracica that suggest the direction evolution must have taken in development of rhizocephalan organization. *Rhizolepas* DAY, parasitic on a polychaete annelid, and *Anelasma* DARWIN, parasitic on sharks, are lepadomorphs, which, although retaining vestigial limbs, have given up setose feeding in favor of development of a system of processes which invade and draw nutrients from the host tissues. The gut is complete in *Anelasma*, but mouth parts are vestigial (Fig. 112,2-3). The gut in *Rhizolepas* closes blindly at both

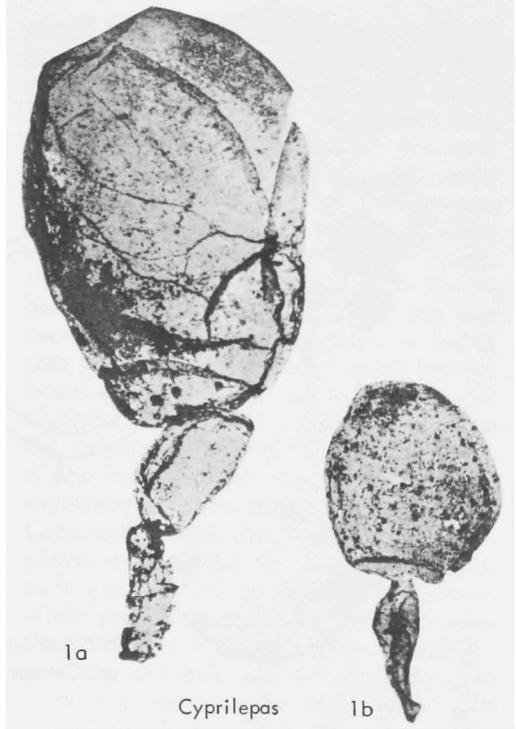


FIG. 111. Silurian cirriped, interpreted as possible and most generalized ancestral thoracican, *Cyprilepas holmi* WILLS; 1a, large specimen, viewed from left side, peduncle somewhat wrinkled and bilateral valves of carapace forming caputulum displaced, thickening along carinal and basal margin of carapace evident; occludent margins forming aperture of carapace visible; 1b, small, less distorted specimen, viewed from same side, revealing same characteristics,  $\times 11$  (112).

ends and mouth parts are apparently lacking. Forms such as these give us definite clues to rhizocephalan evolution.

Rhizocephala are generally considered to pass through an endoparasitic phase before the appearance of the external reproductive structures. However, the recently discovered *Chthamalophilus* BOCCQUET-VÉDRINE (1961), although a rhizocephalan by most criteria, does not develop a kentrogen, and has an entirely ectoparasitic life cycle (Fig. 112,1). Thus it would

FIG. 110. (Continued from facing page.)

highest level of organization being attained in the Balanomorpha, as discussed in text.

[Explanation: a', first antennae; a'', second antennae; am, adductor muscle; c, carapace; ce, com-

pound eye; dg, digestive gland; e, egg mass; f, furca; fgd, female genital duct; g, gut; l, labrum; m, mandible; m', first maxilla; m'', second maxilla; mc, mantle cavity; mp, mandibular palp; ne, naupliar eye; nil, natatory thoracic limbs; p, penis.]

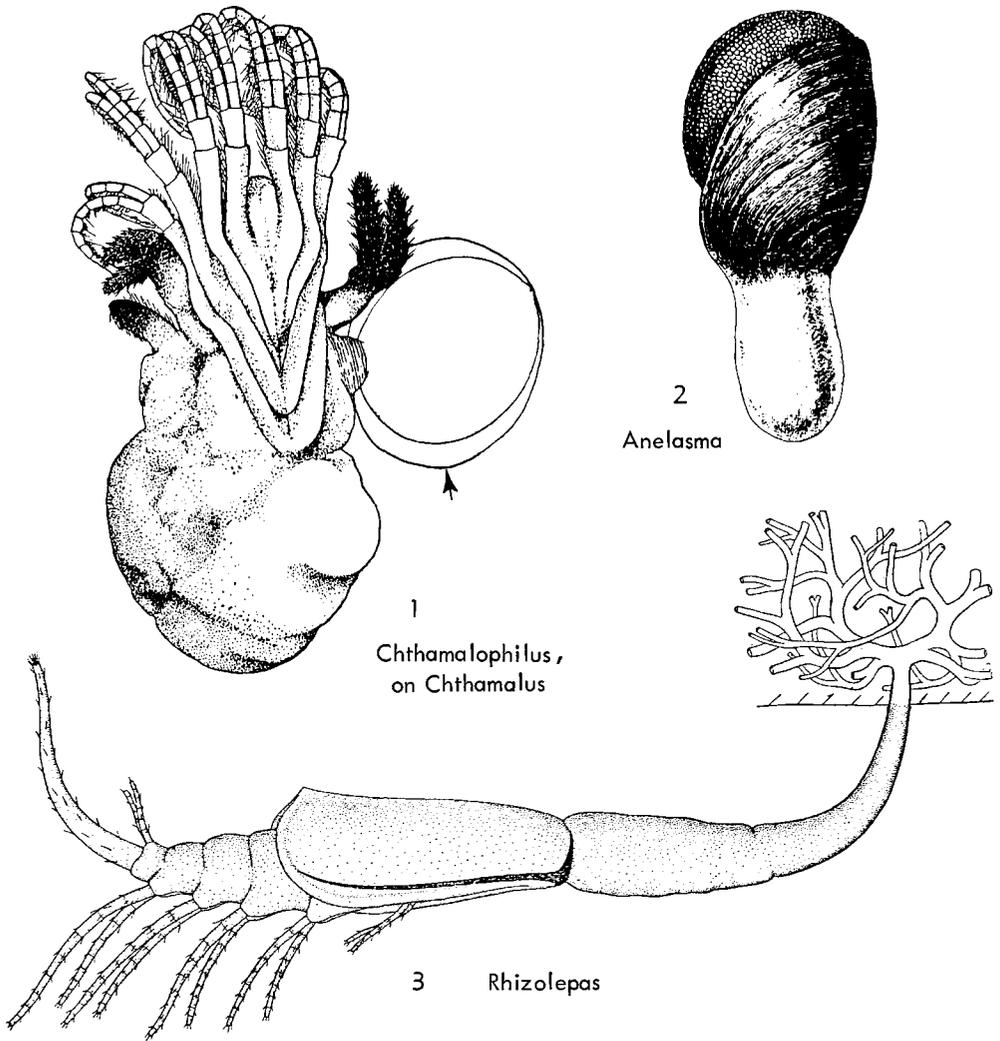


FIG. 112. Parasitic adaptations of cirripeds:—1. Akentrogonid rhizocephalan on a barnacle (after 13). —2. Lepadid parasitic on certain sharks (peduncular nutritive processes not illustrated) (after Darwin, 1851, 37).—3. Lepadomorph parasitic on a polychaetous annelid (after Day, 1939).

appear that *Chthamalophilus* represents a level of organization intermediate between the rhizocephaloid lepadomorph parasite and the endoparasitic Rhizocephala.

In summary, it appears that the Cirripedia evolved along two major lines, one giving rise to the basically free-living Ascothoracica and the other to the permanently attached Acrothoracica, Thoracica, and Rhizocephala. These two lineages stemmed from a common maxillopodan ancestral stock related to the progenitors of the Copepoda and Branchiura. This stock was simi-

lar in general organization to the Ascothoracica, but differed mainly in possessing compound eyes of branchiuran type. Setose feeding and the development of cement glands in conjunction with the prehensile first antennae led to a lepadomorph level of organization, probably comparable to that seen in the fossil *Cyprilepas*. This level of organization differs from that seen in other fossil and living Lepadomorpha in the periodic molting, rather than retention of the carapace exterior. At this point, one group, leading to Acrothoracica, gained the

ability to burrow mechanically into calcareous substrata, whereas another, leading to Thoracica, developed the ability to retain exterior portions of the carapace while molting the remaining exoskeleton, thus forming a tough exterior shell that provided protection during all periods of the molt cycle. This step apparently preceded the development of the typical thoracican shell laid down in successive layers. Subsequent lines of Lepadomorpha developed sessile forms, such as the extinct Brachylepadoromorpha, the Verrucomorpha, and the Balanomorpha. It appears further that the trend towards parasitism seen in certain Lepadomorpha led to the evolution of the Rhizocephala.

## THORACICA

### LEPADOMORPHA

The Lepadomorpha can be distinguished from other suborders by the presence of a peduncle representing a prolongation of the anterior part of the cephalic region, and a capitulum supporting two or more plates derived from the carapace. The suborder includes ten families, three of which are extinct. The oldest, Cyprilepadidae, appears only in the Silurian. There are 38 recognized lepadomorph genera, of which only two occur in the Paleozoic. One Recent genus, *Arcoscalpellum*, ranges back to the Lower Cretaceous. The two principal families are named Scalpellidae and Lepadidae and it is with these and their relationship to less well known groups that the following discussion is mostly concerned.

The origin of the Lepadomorpha has been considered in the preceding section. Within the suborder, the Scalpellidae are generally interpreted to be more primitive than the Lepadidae (DARWIN, 1851; HOEK, 1883; GRUVEL, 1905; PILSBRY, 1907; ANNANDALE, 1910; KRÜGER, 1920; NILSSON-CANTELL, 1921; WITHERS, 1928-53). In fact, the original scheme proposed by DARWIN in 1851 has been little modified in its essentials since it was proposed. He envisaged a *Pollicipes*-like stem form giving rise to *Pollicipes*, *Lithotrypa*, and the Balanomorpha, on one hand, and to the Lepadidae, through *Scalpellum* and *Oxynaspis*, on the other. Following this view, the ancestral stock

would have been already highly derived, having a capitulum and peduncle well armored with numerous calcareous plates. For the capitulum there would have been six plates—paired terga and scuta associated with carina and rostrum—all with apical umbones, and for the peduncle, numerous unspecialized calcareous plates or scales. Subsequent evolution would then involve the addition of peduncular plates to the basal area of the capitulum. In one line these would form basal whorls of imbricate plates, some of which would become latera, as seen in *Pollicipes*, and these would ultimately be utilized in the formation of the balanomorph wall. In another, some of the latera become incorporated into the capitulum in the manner seen in *Scalpellum*. Concomitant with this, umbones of certain plates, in particular the carina and scuta, shift from apical to subcentral, because, while previously the body had been contained within a mantle cavity formed by both the peduncle and the capitulum, the body has come to lie more within the capitulum alone. With this change, the armament of the peduncle and the basal portion of the capitulum becomes reduced, and this eventually results in a five-plated *Oxynaspis*-like form, which in turn leads to the other five-plated Lepadomorpha. In this conception, the six-plated scalpellids are primitive.

Fossil Mesozoic scalpellids, particularly *Eolepas* and *Archaeolepas*, discovered after the time of DARWIN, support the view that the six-plated facies was basic to the archetype thoracican, as WITHERS (1928-53) further advocated. However, BROCH (1922), while admitting the great age of the six-plated Scalpellidae, did not concede that this meant they were necessarily archetypes. He pointed out that the really primitive thoracicans probably lacked plates impregnated with carbonate, and therefore would be unlikely subjects for fossilization. Furthermore, BROCH looked to ontogenetic evidence suggesting that a five-plated condition is actually as fundamental to the Scalpellidae as to the Lepadidae, and accordingly judged that both groups must have descended from a common five-plated stock. This would place the Lepadidae as primitive as the Scalpellidae, if not more

so, quite the reverse of what other authors had thought. These two fundamentally different points of view have not been reconciled, but we offer an argument here which is more in keeping with that of BROCH.

WITHERS (1928-53) assumed the primitive capitular valve complement to be six, paired terga and scuta plus carina and rostrum, as exhibited by the oldest known Triassic and Jurassic scalpellids, *Eolepas* and *Archaeolepas*. BROCH (1922), on the other hand, considered the complement of primitive capitular plates to be five, the same as in scalpellids minus the rostrum, as seen in the ontogeny of extant members of both families where five chitinous primordial plates appear before calcification begins. The development of the rostral plate has never been observed to be anticipated by a chitinous primordium. At the time, BROCH's arguments were weakened by the relative scarcity of paleontological evidence, and WITHERS' argument by giving little weight to the ontogenetic evidence. WITHERS also minimized the importance of the only Paleozoic thoracican known at the time, *Praelepas*, described by CHERNYSHEV in 1930, from the Upper Carboniferous. This genus not only had chitinous rather than calcareous capitular plates, a condition thought probable by both authors on theoretical grounds, but it also had only five plates (rostrum lacking), a fact that adds much support to BROCH's hypothesis.

WITHERS rejected *Praelepas* as an important form in thoracican evolution not only because it lacked the sixth capitular plate, but because the umbo of the scutum was central rather than apical. Since Mesozoic forms, *Eolepas* and others had apical umbones on all plates, this condition was taken as primitive and the idea rigorously adhered to. Thus he was compelled to regard the Carboniferous *Praelepas* as an early specialization ancestral to neither the Mesozoic scalpellids nor the Cenozoic lepadids.

We think, however, that *Praelepas* should not be so readily dismissed as an early specialization. BROCH (1922) has stressed the generality and uniformity of five rather than six principal primordial plates

in the development of both the Scalpellidae and Lepadidae, and this cannot be lightly put aside. Even where as many as 11 primordia are known during development (*Scalpellum balanoides* HOEK, cf. BROCH, 1931), the rostrum appears without one. At the present level of our knowledge it seems inescapable that there are five fundamental capitular plates in both the Scalpellidae and Lepadidae, and that any larger number is secondarily derived. The rostrum, so fundamental to the Scalpellidae, never has a primordial plate and is therefore very much secondary. These facts must be considered as such in our thinking on the evolution of the Lepadomorpha, even though at present they do not clarify the phylogenetic history of the group.

The next problem relates to position of the umbo. In the Scalpellidae all the umbones appear to be fundamentally apical, whereas those of the carina and scuta in the Lepadidae seem to be fundamentally basal. Following WITHERS, the apical position would be primitive, whereas other conditions were derived. The apical condition seen in the earliest known scalpellid, *Eolepas* of the Triassic and Jurassic, carries through in Recent *Pollicipes* and its allies, but this line, while old as far as fossil evidence is concerned, appears well advanced. In particular, the rostrum is very large, the apical portion having grown free of the capitulum, and the plates in general overlap, a specialized condition in itself. *Eolepas* and its allies, including *Archaeolepas*, *Zeugmatolepas*, *Pycnolepas*, and others, are clearly already well separated from the stem line of the Lepadomorpha.

Apical umbones and more or less overlapping plates seem to be general features in other Mesozoic scalpellids. A notable exception, however, is seen in *Virgiscalpellum*, from the Lower and Upper Cretaceous. Not only do the plates lack overlap, but the umbones of the scuta and carina are central rather than apical, and the rostrum is minute. This is a very different facies from that presented by *Eolepas* and its allies, and one that, according to WITHERS' suggestion, anticipated the five-plated Eocene lepadid *Oxynaspis*, a form considered primitive to the Lepadidae. Although the primordium of the carina is generally subcentral or

basal in adults of most oxynaspidid species, it was shown by TORTON (1940) to move considerably during ontogeny from an apical position. This suggests that *Oxynaspis* is more primitive than the adult form had previously indicated. It should be mentioned also, that BROCH (1922) tended to dismiss the so-called primitive features seen in *Oxynaspis* because of its special way of life in association with antipatharians, and in one case a sponge. However, it seems just as reasonable that *Oxynaspis* has retained rather than evolved these features, just as *Chelonibia*, although specialized to life on turtles and large decapod crustaceans, has retained a very primitive feature (separate rostrum) seen in no other balanid. It happens that these characters, specifically the central scutal umbo and apical carinal umbo, as well as simply five plates, the characters that lead us to believe *Oxynaspis* is primitive, are the characters it shares with the oldest known five-plated thoracican, *Praelepas* from the Carboniferous. In fact, if *Praelepas* existed today, and nothing of its internal anatomy indicated otherwise, it would be classified as an oxynaspidid.

Thus it seems that evidence based on the position of umbones is not alone valid in establishing primitiveness. Comparisons that have been made assume the lineage from Scalpellidae to Lepadidae (or "migration" of the umbo from an apical to basal position) to be established, whereas this is not the case. The definitive position of the umbo is related to allometric growth of the plate and therefore is interrelated with the overall form of the capitulum and the distribution and number of plates. The great antiquity of the five-plated *Praelepas*, and its possession of chitinous rather than calcareous plates, are strong points in favor of its consideration as a primitive, unmodified lepadomorph at the level of organization of the extant Oxynaspididae. *Praelepas* and the general lack of Paleozoic thoracicans suggests that calcareous plates did not evolve until the Mesozoic.

This general hypothesis is supported by the recent discovery of *Cyprilepas* in the Silurian, found living on eurypterids (WILLS, 1963). These minute (2.2 to 4.8 mm.) lepadomorphs consist of a chitinous bivalved capitulum and cylindrical pe-

duncle, and somewhat resemble recently settled lepadomorph cyprid larvae. Although there is no indication that the capitulum bore calcareous plates, the microstructural patterns found on the plates of some specimens are suggestive of the hexagonal pattern apparently occurring in the cyprid shell of *Lepas* and in the primordial plates of the lepadomorphs in general. The presence of a peduncle with attachment disc, and the relatively large size of the biggest individuals, rule out the possibility that *Cyprilepas* is only a cyprid stage. It appears that there are actually two size classes and these could be interpreted either as growth stages or separate male and female individuals. *Cyprilepas* is very similar in size and form to certain of the Poecilasmatidae living on large decapod crustaceans.

*Cyprilepas* and *Praelepas* suggest a primitive lepadid facies. The relative primitiveness of extant Lepadidae is further demonstrated by the nervous system (CORNWALL, 1953). The nerve cord of *Lepas* is the most ladder-like of the known Thoracica, with greatest separation of the ganglia. In contrast, the Scalpellidae show progressive fusion of the cords and condensation of ganglia. In the Balanomorphs, which are without question phylogenetically most highly advanced, all cirral nerves stem from one large subesophageal ganglionic mass.

The cirral arrangement is no more specialized or generalized in the Scalpellidae than in the Lepadidae. In *Lepas*, *Alepas*, and *Scalpellum* only cirrus I is modified as a maxilliped, with the anterior ramus rotated posteriorly and attenuated, the articles of both rami somewhat protuberant. In *Conchoderma*, a close relative of *Lepas*, cirrus I is hardly modified, with nonrotated anterior ramus, and the cirri form a simple graded series. The simplest and perhaps most primitive arrangement is found in the Iblidae, where all cirri are structurally similar (cf. Fig. 101,3-4; 102,1).

In summary, available paleontological and neontological evidence indicates that the Lepadidae are more closely related to *Cyprilepas* and *Praelepas* stocks than are the Scalpellidae. It had been assumed by DARWIN and WITHERS that shell development exhibited by Scalpellidae is the more primitive method. However, the situation

seen in *Cyprilepas* and *Praelepas* suggests that the lepadid type of shell development is probably the more primitive mode. Here the scutum or its equivalent is the principal capitular plate, covering most of the animal's body, as does the single bivalved shell of the Ascothoracica and the cyprid larva of cirripeds in general.

WITHERS (1928, 1935, 1953) has described in some detail the phylogeny of Mesozoic Scalpellidae for which there is a relatively continuous although fragmentary fossil record. Much less, however, is known of other lepadomorph families. The Lepadidae (Lepadinae) are known only from the Cenozoic by a few fossil representatives included in the genus *Lepas*. WITHERS (1953) proposed *L. (Dosima) fascicularis* as the most primitive of extant species, based on the more central position of the carinal umbo. However, he pointed out that this species is highly specialized for a pelagic existence. It is very thin-shelled, the peduncle produces a gas-filled float, and the entire animal is globular in form. Of other five-plated families, the Oxyaspididae are represented in the fossil record by one species from the middle Eocene of England, and the Poecilasmataidae are known by two scuta and a tergum from the English upper Eocene.

#### EVOLUTION OF SCALPELLIDAE

WITHERS postulated three trends in the evolution of the Scalpellidae, in regard to the capitular plates: 1) changes in number, 2) change in position of umbones as a result of differential growth, and 3) reduction in the extent of calcification.

1) Many-plated scalpellids of the genera *Calantica* and *Zeugmatolepas* occur with six-plated *Archaeolepas* and *Eolepas* in the late Middle and Upper Jurassic, suggesting an initial trend toward multiplication of the number of capitular plates. In the Cretaceous, *Scalpellum*-like forms are first found, suggesting a reversal in trend toward fewer plates, from 17 in *Cretiscalpellum* to 15 in extinct, or 14 or ?13 in extant species of *Arcoscalpellum*, and 14 in *Virgiscalpellum*. The reduction to 13, through loss of the rostrum in many species of *Arcoscalpellum*, is in need of confirmation. Among extant scalpellids, the 11-plated *Scalpelopsis*

exhibits yet further reduction from the condition seen in *Arcoscalpellum*, through the loss of the rostral latera.

On the other hand, a trend toward an increased number of capitular plates is seen in *Zeugmatolepas* and Jurassic *Calantica*, and this is apparently continued in extant *Calantica* and the related *Pollicipes*. Thus it appears that both multiplication and reduction has occurred in various scalpellid lineages.

2) The position of the umbo, which was discarded above as the definitive guide to major evolutionary trends in the Lepadomorphs, is apparently of real value in the interpretation of lineages within genera or closely related groups, as illustrated by the following examples.

*Euscalpellum*. This genus ranges from Upper Cretaceous to Recent, but is known in the Cretaceous only by large peduncles. *E. minutum* (BROWN) from the lower Eocene (Ypresian) of England has the umbo of each plate in an apical position, and also has an extra plate, the subrostrum, unknown in later species. The umbo is removed from the apex of the carina, scutum, and upper latus of *E. vomer* (BERTRAND) from the middle Eocene (Lutetian) of France and England. The umbones of the carina and scutum are subapical in *E. eocenense* (MEYER) from the middle Eocene (Claiborne, Lutetian) of the USA, but the upper latus still possesses an apical umbo. The greatest change in position of the umbones is found in the extant *E. rostratum* (DARWIN) from the Philippines, in which on the carina, scutum, upper latus, and all latera they are subapical. However, some Miocene and Recent species still have the umbones of all plates apical in position.

*Arcoscalpellum*. In *Cretiscalpellum* and the earlier Cretaceous species of *Arcoscalpellum*, the umbo of every valve is apically situated. However, the later upper Senonian species *A. fossula* (DARWIN), which is apparently derived from the Cenomanian-Turonian *A. angustatum* (GEINITZ), exhibits definite upward growth of the inframedian and upper latera, leaving the umbones slightly removed from the apex. The Eocene *A. quadratum* (DIXON) shows this development more clearly, especially in the inframedian latus.

*Scalpellum*. The earliest known species of *Scalpellum* is *S. fischeri* BERTRAND from the lower Eocene of France and England. It exhibits an upward growth in all the plates except the rostral latus, and this growth is greatest in the upper and inframedian latera. It is in these latter plates that upward growth is first seen in *Arcoscalpellum*. Some Eocene, Miocene, and Recent species (e.g., *S. stearnsi* PILSBRY) show progressive migration of the umbones away from the apices of the plates. In fact, *S. stearnsi* differs from *S. fischeri* only in the progressive development of the plates, for the umbones, especially of the carina and scutum, are still farther removed from the apices, and the rostral and carinal latera have become lower and wider. Instructively, the *S. fischeri* stage is ontogenetically recapitulated during development of *S. stearnsi*.

From examination of the fossil species of *Arcoscalpellum* and *Scalpellum*, and from studying the ontogeny of *S. stearnsi*, it appears that *Scalpellum* was derived from an *Arcoscalpellum* stock.

*Virgiscalpellum*. This genus is first found in the Lower Cretaceous (Aptian) together with *Arcoscalpellum* and *Cretiscalpellum*. The capitulum has 14 plates, including a long, thick and narrow rostrum; no subcarina has been found. *Virgiscalpellum* represents the earliest known scalpellid in which both the carinal and scutal umbones are subapical. It is peculiar among *Scalpellum*-like barnacles in that the scutum possesses a nearly central umbo, except in the Maastrichtian *V. darwinianum*, in which the umbo is in the basal third of the scutum. The placement of the carinal umbo varies widely in the several species, and in fact is nearest the base of the carina in the earliest (Aptian) species, *V. wrightii*. In other species (e.g., *V. ryckholii*, *V. hagenowianum*) the carinal umbo is subapical. In *V. darwinianum* the umbo is nearly central, although in some older specimens it is nearer the base. The scutal umbo varies little in position from species to species. The form of the upper, rostral, inframedian, and carinal latera suggests either that *Virgiscalpellum* represents a side lineage from *Arcoscalpellum*, or that both genera had a common ancestor. *Virgiscalpellum* reached a more advanced stage of capitular develop-

ment than any other scalpellid genus, and has little in common with the *Scalpellum* stock.

3) WITHERS (1928), in concurrence with interpretations of other students of the cirripeds, in particular DARWIN (1851), has pointed out that certain species of the Lepadomorpha, having plates that do not fully cover the capitulum, are forms that have descended from fully armored stocks. Trends in reduced armament occur in very distantly related lines, as can be amply documented in the families Lepadidae, Poecilasmataidae, Oxynaspididae and Scalpellidae. Such trends were categorized by WITHERS under the heading "Decalcification" but this term is somewhat misleading because the plates are not first formed ontogenetically and then subsequently reduced by a decalcification process as it would imply. Rather, the situation is a case of allometry where calcification of the plates has lagged behind general growth, so that the plates come to occupy proportionately less and less of the area of the capitulum, during development of an individual. HOEK (1883) considered such forms among the Scalpellidae as "imperfectly calcified" and PILSBRY (1907) pointed out that ontogenetic development progressed from fully armored juveniles to adults with reduced plates.

The failure of a particular calcified plate to develop at a rate sufficient to maintain its margins approximate to those of its neighbors may occur uniformly around its perimeter, so that its fundamental shape is retained, or it may occur in specific areas while the remainder continues to grow. This type of development is clearly illustrated in *Mesoscalpellum convexum* (NILSSON-CANTELL), in which the juvenile stages are initially completely armored, but become progressively less so as maximum size is reached. In the adult of this species, the latera have come to occupy as little as a sixth of the space available to them, yet their original shape has for the most part been maintained. However, only portions of the terga have been affected, so that while the distal portions appear normal, development of the proximal portions have lagged behind, thus altering the form of the plate from simply triangular to quadrangular, with a basal spur (NILSSON-CANTELL, 1930,

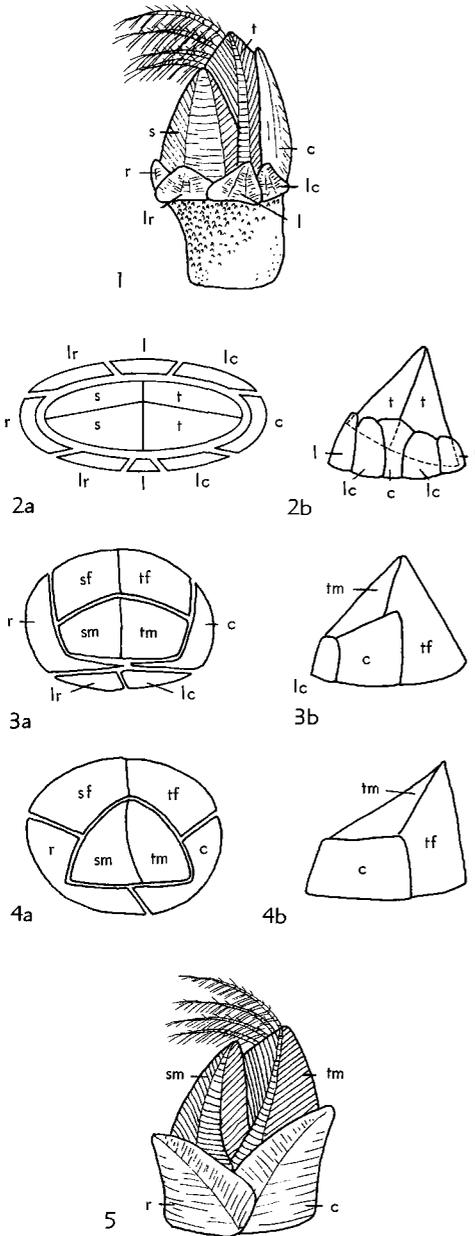


FIG. 113. Inferred origin of plate arrangement in Verrucomorpha (Newman, n).

1. Bilaterally symmetrical pedunculate ancestor comparable to living species of *Calantica*, viewed from right side.
2. Hypothetical intermediate sessile form in which tergum and scutum of one side contact the substratum basally, to become incorporated into structure of the wall, while tergum and scutum of other side act as the operculum.

p. 2445, fig. 9). A more extreme example is seen in the Recent *M. dicheloplax* (PILSBRY) where the basic form of all plates, except the carina, is modified in this manner (Fig. 94,11).

In the Lepadidae and Poecilasmatidae with reduced armor, an ontogenetic recapitulation of the fully armored form is not seen, and the juvenile begins virtually as fully armored as the adults. In the Poecilasmatidae, a curious reversal has come about. A typical case of reduction in calcified portions of the plates is seen in *Octolasmis* (*Octolasmis*) *neptuni* (MACDONALD) where, while the full extent of the plates can be seen in the chitin of the capitulum, the calcified portions are much reduced at their inception and they retain relatively the same proportions during subsequent growth. However, certain other species of the genus, *O. (O.) cor* (AURIVILLIUS), *O. (Dichelaspis) orthogonia* (DARWIN), and *O. (O.) tridens* (AURIVILLIUS) for example, begin their ontogenetic development in the same ways as *O. (O.) neptuni*, but as growth progresses the plates become proportionately more extensive and appreciably altered in form. This is effectively a rearmament process where adults come to have more complete plates than juveniles. In fact, the trend towards rearmament is completed in such species as *Trilasmis* (*Trilasmis*) *eburneum* HINDS and *T. (Temnaspis) fissus* (DARWIN), where, although the plates cover the entire capitulum, it is evident that the scutum was once very much reduced, having been formed of two principal arms as in *O. (Octolasmis)*. However, the terga are missing in *T. (T.) eburneum*, indicating that this plate was completely lost during an earlier phylogenetic period when the plates in general were much reduced, as in present day *O. (O.) cor*. This

3. Arrangement of plates in extinct genera *Eoverruca* and *Proverruca*, in which rostrrolateral and carinolateral plates of one side are still present.
4. Arrangement of plates, as in *Altiuverruca*.
5. Generalized *Verruca*, viewed from right side. [Explanation: 2a, 3a, 4a, plan views; 2b, 3b, 4b, carinal or dorsal views; c, carina; l, lateral plate; lc, carinolateral plate; lr, rostrrolateral plate; r, rostrum; s, scutum; sf, scutum (fixed); sm, scutum (movable); t, tergum; tf, tergum (fixed); tm, tergum (movable).]

indicates that once a plate is lost, a homologue is not likely to be regained.

In the Scalpellidae, then, since the Mesozoic two trends can be discerned, one in reduced number and the other in reduced area occupied by plates of the capitulum. These do not necessarily go hand in hand, for many species with plates much reduced in number have remained fully armored. However, reduction in extent has led to loss in number in such forms as *Scalpellopsis*.

The lepadids have undergone similar trends, but the trend in reduction of area covered by the capitular plates has been reversed in some species. Some of these through a rearmament process, in particular in *Trilasmis (Temnaspis) fissus*, have come to appear structurally as armored as species that cannot be demonstrated to have passed through a reductional phase. Both the Lepadidae and Scalpellidae have given rise to forms in which only a trace of the scutum remains: *Alepas*, showing affinities with *Lepas* on one hand, and Heteralepadidae showing affinities with the scalpellids on the other.

### VERRUCOMORPHA

The Verrucomorpha contain a single family, the Verrucidae. Three genera are known: *Proverruca* ranging from the upper Senonian (Cretaceous) to the Miocene; *Eoverruca* known only from the middle Senonian; and *Verruca* ranging from upper Senonian to Recent.

The Verrucomorpha are sessile cirripeds, differing from the Balanomorpha in the highly asymmetrical development of the shell wall and the operculum (Fig. 113). In the Lepadomorpha, two pairs of plates, the terga and scuta, border along the occludent margin of the aperture. In the scalpellids, these plates never form the operculum-like arrangement as that seen in the Balanomorpha, but they do become somewhat specialized in their role of guarding the aperture. The separation of these plates from those forming the wall develops during the transition from a pedunculate to a sessile mode of life. In the transition from pedunculate to balanomorph, a clear separation is made between the opercular and

wall plates, and the basic bilateral symmetry of the plates is maintained. However, in the transition from pedunculate to verrucomorph, one of each pair of potential opercular plates becomes incorporated into the wall, rather than separating off to form one side of the operculum, so that the basic bilateral symmetry both of the shell wall and the operculum is lost (Fig. 90).

The earliest known verrucomorphs, *Proverruca* and *Eoverruca*, have a six-plated wall closed by two plates forming the opercular valves. The carina and rostrum form the ends of the boxlike shell, a carinolateral and rostrolateral form one side, and a fixed tergum and fixed scutum form the other. It is quite evident that this asymmetrical arrangement has come about through the loss of at least two latera, in conjunction with the incorporation of the tergum and scutum into that side of the wall. Thus the protoverrucomorph, before the separation of the operculum from the wall, must have had a bilaterally symmetrical wall composed of carina, rostrum, and at least two pairs of latera; effectively the same grade of construction is seen in *Calantica (Paracalantica)*, although without phylogenetic implications. Like *C. (Paracalantica)*, the verrucomorph presumably descended from a form with three pairs of latera, such as *Calantica (Scillaelepas)* or *C. (Titanolepas)* (Fig. 115,9,12).

The grade of construction seen in *Proverruca* and *Eoverruca* leads to that seen in *Verruca*, through the loss of the remaining latera, and the joining of the carina and rostrum on the carinorostral side (Fig. 113). As will be seen, this trend toward simplification and rigidity by reduction in number of parts in the verrucomorphs is paralleled in several distinct lines of balanomorphs, although the latter maintain their bilateral symmetry.

Except for the carina and rostrum, the plates of *Proverruca* (see Fig. 117,1) have not departed far in structure from those of the Lepadomorpha. The suppression of the two latera of *Proverruca*, and the joining of the carina and rostrum on what becomes the carinorostral side, are all the changes required to arrive at the plate arrangement seen in *Verruca*. This trend is indicated in *Proverruca*, as one of the two latera is al-

ready nearly excluded from the wall by the underlying carinal latus and the rostrum.

*Eoverruca* (see Fig. 117,3), like *Proverruca*, had at least two latera opposite the side of the fixed tergum and scutum, but the carina and rostrum are only slightly asymmetrical. In this respect *Eoverruca* is closer to the pedunculate ancestor than *Proverruca*, but on the other hand, the fixed scutum and tergum possess interlocking ribs which indicate an advanced condition. The plates of *Eoverruca* bear a marked resemblance to those of the brachylepadomorph *Pycnolepas*, and differ considerably from those of *Proverruca*, suggesting that these two verrucomorph genera are not closely related.

The shell of *Verruca* exhibits the greatest degree of asymmetry seen in the suborder, and even in Cretaceous representatives, the carina and rostrum form one side of the wall and are articulated by means of several interlocking ribs. An asymmetrical shell wall is not confined to the Verrucomorpha. In the lepadomorph *Calantica*, the rostrum and subcarina are often asymmetrical. Also, the carina and rostrum in the balanid *Chelonibia* and the chthamalid *Chthamalus* are not precisely opposing, although the animals remain effectively bilaterally symmetrical. However, a curious parallel has occurred in *Chthamalus anisopoma* PILSBRY that verges on the type of asymmetry seen in verrucomorphs. The opercular valves, although fundamentally bilateral in the genus, have been displaced on one side so that the set formed by one tergum and scutum lies horizontally across the aperture and acts as the principal part of the operculum. The other set is very much reduced in size and serves more as a rim on which the opercular set rests, than as a movable part of the opercular apparatus. The body of the animal also lies somewhat on its side, and like *Verruca*, the cirri tend to be projected laterally rather than vertically, but the functional significance of this is unknown.

#### BRACHYLEPADOMORPHA

The suborder Brachylepadomorpha includes a single family, the Brachylepadidae, and the two genera, *Pycnolepas* and *Brachy-*

*lepas*. The shell is formed by the carina and rostrum, surrounded at the base by three or four whorls of small imbricating plates. A feature that distinguishes this suborder from all sessile cirripeds but is shared with *Pollicipes mitella* among the scalpellid Lepadomorpha is the presence of a long, narrow upper latus between the scuta and terga of each side.

*Pycnolepas* (see Fig. 117,5) is possibly represented in the Upper Jurassic (Tithon.) by certain carinae, but it is definitely represented in the Albian by *P. rigida* (SOWERBY); which ranges into the Cenomanian. Another species, *P. brünnichi* WITHERS, which is related to *P. rigida*, occurs in the Danian, but the evolution of this lineage in the intervening time is not known. *Pycnolepas* has a cylindrical carina and a laterally flattened shell, the plates being similar to those of lepadomorphs. Imbricating plates form whorls at the base of the carina and rostrum, and at least the two outer whorls have deep "muscle-pits" on the inner extremity of the inwardly projecting basal ledge.

*Brachylepas fallax* (DARWIN) (TUFON-L. Maastricht.) once assigned to *Pycnolepas*, was transferred to the genus *Brachylepas*, on the basis of the structure of the basal imbricating plates. Since it occurs in the time interval between the two above-mentioned species, the reassignment alleviated the problem of attempting to include *B. fallax* in the *Pycnolepas* lineage. *B. fallax* is like *Pycnolepas* in having a cylindrical carina and laterally flattened shell, and was probably a derivative of the *Pycnolepas* stock. *B. naissantii* (HEBERT) (see Fig. 117, 2) which is widespread in comparatively deep-water deposits of the upper Senonian (*Belemnitella mucronata* Zone), has a radially symmetrical shell, but the basis was probably membranous. The remaining species, *Brachylepas guascoi* (BOSQUET) (Maastricht.) from shallow-water deposits, also has a radially symmetrical shell, but the basis is calcareous and the scuta and terga resemble somewhat those of primitive Balanomorpha.

In the Brachylepadomorpha, the geologically earliest representative (*Pycnolepas*) is closely similar in structure to the Lepado-

morpha. *Brachylepas*, which was probably derived from *Pycnolepas*, appears to be transitional between a form with laterally flattened shell and membranous basis to one with a radially symmetrical shell and a calcareous basis. The Brachylepadomorpha, in view of the reduced number of elements in the shell wall, are apparently not ancestral to the Balanomorpha, but represent an early and independently developed group which became widespread in the late Senonian and Maastrichtian. Except for the reduced number of shell plates and the retention of the upper lateral, brachylepadomorphs bear a closer resemblance to the chthamalid *Catophragmus* and to the scalpellid *Pollicipes mitella* than to other extant thoracicans. In fact, species of *Pycnolepas* and *Brachylepas* were assigned to *Pollicipes* by early workers, including both DARWIN and WITHERS. Although it seems inescapable that they represent a specialization in themselves and are not in the stem line of the balanomorphs, the evidence is equally convincing that they are closely related to the pedunculate stock that did give rise to the Balanomorpha.

Even though the Brachylepadomorpha appear to have no direct relationship to Balanomorpha, such fossils as *Brachylepas guascoi* help to elucidate the homologies of the opercular valves in balanomorphs. In *Pycnolepas* and *B. fallax* the scutum has an almost median apicobasal ridge, in *B. naisantii* the tergal side is narrower and more steeply sloping, and in *B. guascoi* the tergal side of the scutum is very narrow and reflexed at right angles to the outer surface so that the apicobasal ridge forms the tergal margin. The scutum of *B. guascoi* is similar in shape to that of *Balanus*, but lacks the articular ridge and lateral depressor muscle pit on the inner surface. The narrow basal part of the tergum of *B. guascoi* needs little modification to form the characteristic balanid spur, but lateral depressor muscle crests are absent. The upper latus of *B. guascoi* has not yet been identified, and there is some indication from the form of the scutum that it was reduced or even absent.

## BALANOMORPHA

The suborder Balanomorpha includes two families, Chthamalidae and Balanidae. It is distinguished from other sessile thoracican groups by the presence of a symmetrical, basically eight-plated shell wall, with paired scuta and terga forming an operculum. The Chthamalidae are considered phylogenetically more primitive and to have been derived from a lepadomorph stock. *Catophragmus* most closely resembles the present concept of the early balanomorph. The presence of eight compartmental plates, additional whorls of smaller plates about the base of the shell wall, opercular valves which lack well-defined internal structures, caudal appendages, and an unmodified cirrus III are all features which link *Catophragmus* with such scalpellid lepadomorphs as *Pollicipes* (as noted by DARWIN, 1854) and *Calantica (Scillaelepas)* (as indicated by PILSBRY, 1916). It is probable that *Catophragmus* and the above mentioned scalpellids shared a common ancestry. Also, it is significant (and fortuitous) that the oldest known balanomorph, the only undoubted balanomorph from Mesozoic deposits, belongs to the genus *Catophragmus* (i.e., *C. (Pachydiadema) cretaceum*).

Chthamalids are not well represented in the fossil record. *Hexelasma* has been identified tentatively from early Oligocene rocks and is definitely recorded from Miocene deposits of New Zealand (114). *Pachylasma* is known from the Miocene of Italy (2). *Tessarelasma* is known only from the early Miocene of India (WITHERS, 1936), and *Chthamalus* has been recorded from Pliocene (Piacenz.) deposits in Italy (ALESANDRI, 1906). *Chthamalus* is found rarely in late Pleistocene deposits in southern and Baja California (ZULLO, herein), and WITHERS (1932) has reported *Octomeris* from a supposed Pleistocene limestone in Australia. Therefore, many of the inferences made at the present time concerning the phylogeny of the Chthamalidae must be based on comparisons of extant taxa.

The evolutionary history of the Chthamalidae has been one of reduction in the number of elements in the shell wall and modifications in the feeding apparatus (ZULLO,

1963). Two lineages can be distinguished. In the first, leading from *Catophragmus* to *Octomeris*, *Chionelasmus*, *Chthamalus*, and *Chamaesipho*, shell wall reduction was achieved primarily through exclusion of elements, and feeding modifications were confined to changes in mandibular structure. *Octomeris* differs from *Catophragmus* principally in the absence of whorls of smaller plates about the base of the shell wall. *Chionelasmus* retains one of the basal whorls, but the carinolaterals have been lost. *Chthamalus* is closely related to *Chionelasmus*, but differs in having lost all traces of the basal whorls, and in possessing (in some species) a mandible modified from the basic lepadomorph type. *Chamaesipho* represents a further step beyond *Chthamalus* in the reduction of the number of elements in the shell wall. In this genus, the laterals and rostrilaterals have apparently fused to form a four-plate shell wall (Fig. 96).

In the second lineage, leading from *Octomeris* to *Pachylasma* to *Hexelasma*, and *Tessarelasma*, shell wall reduction was accomplished primarily through fusion of elements, and feeding adaptations involved the modification of cirrus III for use as a mouth appendage. Fusion of the rostrum with the adjacent rostrilaterals is exhibited in species of *Pachylasma*, and from this, the tripartite rostral plate is inferred in *Hexelasma*, and *Tessarelasma*. These last two genera also differ from *Pachylasma* in the form of the opercular valves which are more like those of the balanid barnacles than of other chthamalids. Also, in *Hexelasma*, in which the body is known, cirrus III has been modified somewhat for use as a mouth appendage. *Tessarelasma*, as *Chamaesipho*, has attained a four-plate shell wall, but in this case the reduction was apparently achieved through loss of the carinolaterals as in *Tetrachthamalus* (Newman, 1967).

The development of a compound rostral plate, the modification of cirrus III, and the change in form of the opercular valves in the *Pachylasma*-*Hexelasma* lineage indicates that the Balanidae were derived from a *Pachylasma*-like ancestor. The compound nature of the balanid rostral plate is

demonstrated by *Chelonibia*, in which the sutures between the rostrum and rostrilaterals are still visible. It is no doubt through the highly specialized habitat of this genus that this primitive character has been retained. All other balanids bear no trace of the sutures uniting the elements of the rostral plate. RUNNSTRÖM (1925) and BROCH (1927) have concluded from a study of ontogenetic development of the shell in *Balanus* (*Semibalanus*) *balanoides*, that the rostrum is not present in the balanid rostral plate, which therefore would be formed only of the two rostrilaterals.

The ancestral balanid was probably a form similar to *Balanus* (*Solidobalanus*) [includes *Hesperibalanus*] in possessing a shell wall with solid parietes and moderately developed radii, a solid calcareous basis, and heavy opercular valves which lacked prominent internal structures. Some of the geologically earliest balanids from the middle and late Eocene of Europe, and southeastern and northwestern United States can be included in the subgenus *B.* (*Solidobalanus*) (ZULLO, 1960). More recently Ross (1965) has established a new genus *Kathpalmeria* to include other Eocene balanids. Rapid diversification apparently took place during the Oligocene. Forms with parietal tubes and tubes in the radii (e.g., *B.* (*Balanus*), *B.* (*Megabalanus*), *Tetraclita*) have been reported from Oligocene strata, as well as the solid-walled subgenus *B.* (*Austrobalanus*). *B.* (*Balanus*) was probably derived from a solidobalanid-like stock through a form similar to *B.* (*Balanus*) *crenatus*. *B.* (*Balanus*) gave rise to *B.* (*Semibalanus*) through the multiplication of rows of parietal tubes and the loss of the calcareous basis, and subsequently to *Tetraclita* (? and *Elminius*) through loss of the carinolaterals. *Tetrabalanus* also appears to be a derivative of *Balanus* s.s., perhaps through such a species as *B.* (*B.*) *amphitrite*. *B.* (*Chirona*) was probably derived independently from a solidobalanid-like stock, with *B.* (*Metabalanus*) representing a relatively recent offshoot of *B.* (*Chirona*).

The complex *Balanus* (*Armatobalanus*), *B.* (*Conopea*), *B.* (*Membranobalanus*), and *Acasta* represents another independent off-

shoot of the hesperibalanid stock, and the differences between these taxa primarily reflect differences in habitat. The lineage *Hexacreusia* - *Creusia* - *Pyrgoma* - *Pyrgopsella* was derived in the Miocene from this *Armatobalanus* complex which may also

have given rise to the coronuline barnacles. The proposed derivation of *Cryptolepas* from *Coronula*, and *Tubicinella* from *Cryptolepas* appears valid, but the relations between the other coronuline taxa are at present difficult to interpret.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Class CIRRIPIEDIA Burmeister, 1834

Sedentary marine Crustacea having fundamental affinities with the Maxillopoda;<sup>1</sup> forming initial attachment by first antennae; following appendages (when present) and body contained within carapace (mantle); mantle in principal order (Thoracica) typically supporting calcareous plates persisting through molt cycles during adult life. Development usually includes six naupliar stages, and bivalved cyprid stage. Sexes separate or combined; males, when present, always reduced, occurring with females or hermaphrodites. *U.Sil.-Rec.*

### Order ACROTHORACICA Gruvel, 1905

[=Abdominalia DARWIN, 1854]

Cirripedia with separate sexes; females always found burrowing in calcareous substrate, accompanied by reduced males which lack feeding appendages. Females differ from thoracican cirripeds in having the cirri (except first pair) terminal rather than evenly distributed along thorax, in not developing calcareous plates, and in molting the entire exoskeleton, including exterior of carapace, rather than just the interior lining and appendages. *Carb.-Rec.*

### Suborder PYGOPHORA Berndt, 1907

Gut complete, and three or more pairs of biramous terminal cirri present. *Rec.*

The following classification parallels that of BERNDT (1907), as suggested by TOMLINSON (1967, personal communication).

<sup>1</sup>As previously noted, not recognized in *Treatise* classification. DAHL (1963, p. 1) grouped cirripeds with mystacocarids, copepods, and branchiurans in so-called maxillopods.—Ed.

### Family LITHOGLYPTIDAE Aurivillius, 1892

[=Kochlorinidae GRUVEL, 1905; BERNDT, 1907; Balanodytidae UTINOMI, 1950 (103a); Berndtiidae UTINOMI, 1950 (103b); Chytracidae UTINOMI, 1950 (103b); Utinomiidae TOMLINSON, 1963]

Pygophora without lateral bar, gastric mill or elongate labrum. *Rec.*

**Lithoglyptes** AURIVILLIUS, 1892 (p. 133) [\**L. indicus*; OD]. Five pairs of cirri (1 mouth, 4 terminal), and caudal appendages. *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Carib.

**Balanodytes** UTINOMI, 1950 (p. 1) [\**B. taiwanus*; OD]. Five pairs of cirri (1 mouth, 4 terminal), without caudal appendages. *Rec.*, Taiwan.

**Berndtia** UTINOMI, 1950 (p. 7) [\**B. purpurea*; OD]. Six pairs of cirri (1 mouth, 5 terminal), without caudal appendages. *Rec.*, Japan.

**Kochlorine** NOLL, 1875 (p. 114) [\**K. hamata*; OD]. Four pairs of cirri (1 mouth, 3 terminal) and caudal appendages. *Rec.*, Spain.-S.Afr.-W.Atl.

**Kochlorinopsis** STUBBINGS, 1967 (p. 306) [\**K. discoporellae*; OD]. Like *Kochlorine* but lacking longitudinal retractor muscles along rostral sides of mantle. *Rec.*, W.Afr.

**Weltneria** BERNDT, 1907 (p. 289) [\**W. spinosa*; OD] [=Utinomia TOMLINSON, 1963 (p. 264)]. Six pairs of cirri (1 mouth, 5 terminal), and caudal appendages. *Rec.*, S.Afr.-Japan-Hawaii-Bermuda.

### Family CRYPTOPHIALIDAE Gerstaecker, 1866

Pygophora with lateral bar, gastric mill, and much elongated labrum. *Rec.*

**Cryptophialus** DARWIN, 1854 (p. 566) [\**C. minutus*; OD]. Five or four pairs of cirri (1 mouth, 4 or 3 terminal), no caudal appendages. *Rec.*, S. Am.-S.Afr.-W.Afr.-Antarctic-N.Z.

### Suborder APYGOPHORA Berndt, 1907

Acrothoracica with incomplete gut, three pairs of uniramous terminal cirri. *Carb.-Rec.*

**Family TRYPETESIDAE Stebbing, 1910**

[=Alcippidae HANCOCK, 1849]

**Trypetesa** NORMAN, 1903 (p. 369) [\**Alcippe lam-pas* HANCOCK, 1849; SD STEBBING, 1910]. Characteristics of family. *Carb.-Perm.* (burrows in exterior of mollusk shells); *Rec.* (burrows in interior of gastropod shells inhabited by hermit crabs), cosmop., N.Hemis.

**Suborder UNCERTAIN**

Burrows in a variety of calcareous substrates have been identified as those of Acrothoracica. The appropriateness of applying Linnean nomenclature has been questioned by RODDA & FISHER (1962), and there is in fact good reason to voice concern when it is recognized that only *Cryptophialus* and *Trypetesa*, among extant Acrothoracica, can be recognized presently by the form of their burrows alone. *Trias.-Plio.*

**Family RODGERELLIDAE Saint-Seine, 1951**

Burrow depth exceeding length, with peduncular slit and marginal flange; in echinoid tests, mollusk shells, and corals. *M.Jur.-L.Plio.*

**Rodgerella** SAINT-SEINE, 1951 (p. 1053) [\**R. lecointrei*; OD]. Characteristics of family. *M.Jur.-L.Plio.*, Eu.-N.Am.

**Family ZAPFELLIDAE Saint-Seine, 1954**

Burrow depth at least half length, without peduncular slit or marginal flange. *Trias.-Plio.*

**Zapfella** SAINT-SEINE, 1954 (p. 449) [\**Z. patei*; OD]. One end of aperture greatly enlarged. [Burrows in gastropods, pelecypods, and marl.] *Mio.-Plio.*, Eu.

**Brachyzapfes** CODEZ, 1957 (p. 706) [\**B. elliptica*; OD]. Form of aperture elliptical. [Burrows in belemnites and pelecypods.] *L.Cret.*, Eu.-Antarctica.

**Simonizapfes** CODEZ, 1957 (p. 704) [\**S. elongata*; OD]. One end of aperture slightly enlarged. [Burrows in belemnites and other mollusk shells.] *Trias.-Jur.*, Eu.

**Order RHIZOCEPHALA F. Müller, 1862**

[=Suctoría LILLJEBORG, 1861; Kentrogonida DELAGE, 1884]

Parasitic crustaceans without appendages

or digestive tract in adult stage; recognized as Cirripedia by characteristic nauplius larvae or cyprid stage, or both. Parasitic on crustaceans, primarily Decapoda. *Rec.*

**Suborder KENTROGONIDA****Delage, 1884**

[Kentrogonidae HÄFELE, 1911; Kentrogonidea GUERIN-GANIVET, 1911; BOUQUET-VÉDRINE, 1961]

Rhizocephala with kentrogon stage establishing endoparasitic phase; development generally including naupliar stages. *Rec.*

**Family PELTOGASTRIDAE Lilljeborg, 1861<sup>1</sup>**[Peltogastriidae LILLJEBORG, 1861, p. 96; BOSCHMA, 1928, p. 3 *emend.*]

**Peltogaster** RATHKE, 1843, p. 2+4 [\**P. paguri*; SD LILLJEBORG, 1861, p. 25]. Body elongate or ovoid, long axis parallel to long axis of host; colleteric glands and male-cell receptacles ("testes") paired; latter opening backward into mantle cavity. [Family divisible into gregarious (colonial) and non-gregarious genera. Parasitic on pagurids and galatheids.] *Rec.*

**Family SACCULINIDAE Lilljeborg, 1861<sup>1</sup>**[Sacculinidae LILLJEBORG, 1861, p. 96; BOSCHMA, 1928, p. 13 *emend.*]

**Sacculina** THOMPSON, 1836, p. 452 [\**S. carcini*; SD BOSCHMA, 1928, p. 3]. Body laterally compressed; colleteric glands and male-cell receptacles paired; latter opening ventrally into mantle cavity. [Parasitic on anomurans (Hippidea and Galathea); brachyurans (Gymnopleura, Dromiacea, Brachygnatha and Oxyrhyncha).] *Rec.*

**Family LERNAEODISCIDAE Boschma, 1928<sup>1</sup>**

[Lernaediscidae BOSCHMA, 1928, p. 17]

**Lernaediscus** F. MÜLLER, 1862, p. 2 [\**L. porcellanae*; SD VAN BAAL, 1935, p. 51]. Body dorso-ventrally compressed; colleteric glands and male-cell receptacles ("testes") paired; latter opening into posterior part of mantle cavity. [Parasitic on galatheids and thalassinideans.] *Rec.*

**Family CLISTOSACCIDAE Boschma, 1928**

[Clistosaccidae BOSCHMA, 1928, p. 26]

**Clistosaccus** LILLJEBORG, 1861, p. 81 [\**C. paguri* (= *Apeltes paguri* LILLJEBORG, 1861, p. 95); SD BOSCHMA, 1928, p. 26]. Body elongate or ovoid, long axis parallel to long axis of host; colleteric

<sup>1</sup> Additional genera listed in Addendum to Cirripedia, p. R628.

gland and "testis" unpaired; the latter opening into anterior part of mantle cavity. [Parasitic on Paguridea.] *Rec.*, N.Atl.-N.Pac.

### Family SYLONIDAE Boschma, 1928

[Sylonidae BOSCHMA, 1928, p. 33]

**Sylon** KRÖYER, 1855, p. 128 [\**S. hippolytes* M. SARS, 1870; SD BOSCHMA, 1928, p. 35]. Body ovoid, long axis parallel to long axis of host; colleteric glands unpaired, ?forming male-cell receptacle; mantle cavity with paired opening to exterior; development without free naupliar stages. *Rec.*, N.Pac.-N.Atl. Inclusion of *Thompsonia*, *Duplorbis* and *Mycetomorpha* (YANAGIMACHI & FUJIMAKI, 1967) by *lapsus calami* (YANAGIMACHI, pers. comm.; REISCHMAN, pers. comm.).

### Suborder AKENTROGONIDA

#### Häfele, 1911

[A Kentrogonidae HÄFELE, 1911; A Kentrogonidea GUERIN-GANVET, 1911; BOCCQUET-VÉDRINE, 1961]

Rhizocephala without kentrogon stage; ectoparasitic penetration superficial or with moderate to extensively developed nutritive processes; development without free naupliar stage; no male-cell receptacles. [Genera other than *Chthamalophilus* included provisionally.] *Rec.*

**Chthamalophilus** BOCCQUET-VÉDRINE, 1957, p. 1545 [\**C. delagei*; OD]. Solitary rhizocephalan, with bulbous localized nutritive process; "testes" residing in mantle cavity. [Ectoparasite on cirriped *Chthamalus*]. *Rec.*, E.Atl. (vicinity of Roscoff).

**Duplorbis** SMITH, 1906, p. 118 [\**D. calathuræ*; OD]. Solitary rhizocephalan; apparently without extensive nutritive processes, attached to host by tube opening into mantle cavity; ?male-cells residing in mantle cavity. [Parasitic on Isopoda.] *Rec.*, N.Atl.

**Microgaster** BOCCQUET-VÉDRINE, 1967, p. 1630 [\**M. balani*; OD]. Solitary, much like *Chthamalophilus* except for rootlike nutritive processes, invading tissue of host. [Parasitic on *Balanus*.] *Rec.*, E.Atl.

**Mycetomorpha** POTTS, 1912, p. 591 [\**M. vancouverensis*; OD]. Multilobed solitary rhizocephalan; nutritive processes not widely distributed; situated under abdominal nerve cord of host; male-cells residing in mantle. [Parasitic on Caridea.] *Rec.*, N.Pac.

**Thompsonia** KOSSMANN, 1873, p. 132 [\**T. globosa*; OD] [= *Thylacoplethus* COUTIÈRE, 1902; POTTS, 1915, p. 28, *emend.*]. Colonial rhizocephalan without mantle cavity; internal nutritive processes giving off numerous external reproductive sacs, male-cells residing in mantle. [Parasitic on Caridea, Galatheidea, Paguridea, Thalassinidea, Brachygnatha.] *Rec.*, N.Pac.-Carib.-Medit.

### UNCERTAIN AFFINITIES

**Sphaerotherylacus** SLUITER, 1884, p. 205 [\**S. polycarpæ*; OD]. Body containing reproductive organs and alimentary canal, covered by mantle. Attached to pharynx of tunicate by branching nutritive processes; ovaries opening near mouth suggesting cirriped affinities; nauplii without frontolateral horns suggesting ascothoracican or copepod; host selection suggests copepod. [Parasitic on *Polycarpa*.] *Rec.*, E.Indies.

### Order ASCOTHORACICA

#### Lacaze-Duthiers, 1880

[= Ascothoracida or Rhizothoracida LACAZE-DUTHIERS, 1880 (p. 580); Ascothoracica GRUVEL, 1905 (p. 336)]

Cirripedia with prehensile first antennae; body enclosed in bivalved carapace; sexes separate or combined; mouth parts forming oral cone modified for biting and piercing; thoracic appendages basically natatory, first pair not conspicuously modified to form accessory mouth parts; fifth abdominal segment bearing furca. [Ectoparasitic and endoparasitic on coelenterates and echinoderms; generic definitions based on degree of reduction related to parasitic mode of existence.] *Cret.-Rec.*

#### Family SYNAGOGIDAE Gruvel, 1905

Six pairs of thoracic appendages; abdomen of four or five distinct somites and furca; carapace distinctly bivalved. [Ectoparasitic on antipatharians, crinoids, and ophiuroids.] *Rec.*

**Synagoga** NORMAN, 1887 (p. 87) [\**S. mira*; OD]. Thorax of 6 distinct somites, each bearing pair of biramous natatory appendages. [Ectoparasitic on crinoids and Antipatharia.] *Rec.*, Medit.-Japan. [See Fig. 82.2.]

**Ascothorax** DJAKONOV, 1914 (p. 158) [\**A. ophiocetenis*; OD]. First thoracic somite fused with head; thoracic limbs somewhat reduced; 1st and 6th pairs biramous or uniramous; abdomen of 4 or 5 somites. [On ophiuroids.] *Rec.*, Arctic-Antarctic.

**Parasothorax** WAGIN, 1964 (p. 271) [\**P. synagogoides*; OD]. First thoracic somite fused with head, 1st thoracic limbs uniramous; abdomen of 5 somites, furca multiarticulate. [On ophiuroid.] *Rec.*, Okhotsk Sea-NW.Pac.

#### Family LAURIDAE Gruvel, 1905

Three to six pairs of uniramous unsegmented thoracic limbs; abdomen with four

distinct somites (except *Gorgonolaureus*); carapace a sac (bivalved in *Baccalaureus maldivensis*). [On Octocorallia and Hexacorallia.] *Rec.*

Laura LACAZE-DUTHIERS, 1866 (p. 5) [*\*L. gerdardiae*; OD]. Five pairs of thoracic limbs (5th one reduced) [On Antipatharia.] *Rec.*, *Medit.*

Baccalaureus BROCH, 1929 (p. 242) [*\*B. japonicus*; OD]. Thorax of 4 or 5 somites which bear 3 to 5 pairs of uniramous limbs, with lateral chitinous ridge. [On Zoantharia.] *Rec.*, *IndoPac.*

*Gorgonolaureus* UTINOMI, 1962 (p. 458) [*\*G. bikiniensis*; OD]. Thorax apparently unsegmented, bearing 6 pairs of uniramous limbs; abdomen unsegmented yet bearing furca. [Only member of order known from Octocorallia (on gorgonian).] *Rec.*, *C.Pac.*

Family PETRARCIDAE Gruvel, 1905

Unsegmented thorax bearing six pairs of unsegmented uniramous appendages; abdomen three-segmented; furca minute. *Rec.*

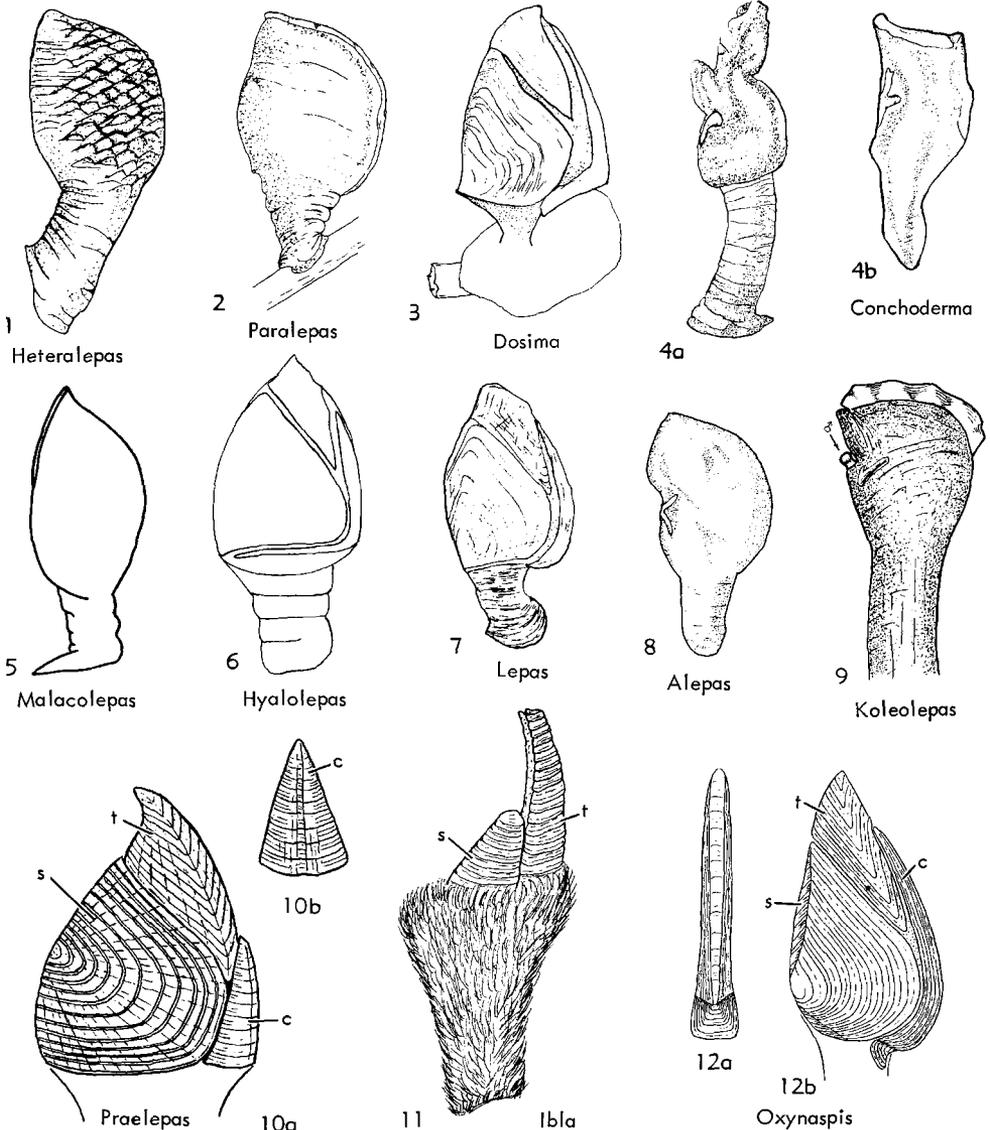


FIG. 114. Praelepadidae (10), Heteralepadidae (1-2), Iblidae (11), Kolcolepadidae (9), Lepadidae (3-4, 6-8), Malacolepadidae (5), Oxynaspidae (12), (p. R275-R279).

*Petrarca* FOWLER, 1889 (p. 107) [\**P. bathyactidis*; OD]. Characteristics of family. [On madreporarian, 4,200 m.] *Rec.*, Japan.

### Family DENDROGASTRIDAE Gruvel, 1905

[*nom. correct.* NEWMAN & ZULLO, herein (*pro* Dendrogasteridae GRUVEL, 1905)]

Thoracic somites more or less evident, limbs rudimentary stubs or absent; furca partially fused rudimentary stubs, or absent. [On asteroids and echinoids.] *Rec.*

*Dendrogaster* KNIPOWITSCH, 1891 (p. 1) [\**D. astericola*; OD]. Thorax of indistinct somites, without limbs; abdomen of ?4 somites, without furca. [On asteroids.] *Rec.*, White Sea-?NW.Atl.  
*Myriocladus* OKADA, 1925 (p. 370) [\**Dendrogaster arborescens* LEROI, 1905 (p. 400) (*non* *M. arborescens* OKADA, 1925, p. 365, =*M. okadai* YOSII, 1931, p. 337); SD]. Like *Dendrogaster*, but abdomen coalesced with thorax. [On asteroids.] *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Calif.

*Ulophysema* BRATTSTRÖM, 1936 [\**U. öresundense*; OD]. Thorax of ?6 more or less distinct somites bearing 4 or 5 limb stubs; ?3-segmented abdomen bearing rudimentary furca. [On irregular echinoids.] *Rec.*, NE.Atl.

### Family UNCERTAIN

*Endosacculus* VOIGHT, 1959 [\**E. moltkiaei*; M]. *U.Cret.(Maastricht.)*, W.Ger.

Genus cf. *Ulophysema* MADSEN & WOLFF, 1965. *U.Cret.(Turon.-Maastricht.)*, W.Ger.

## Order THORACICA Darwin, 1854

Permanently attached cirripeds as adults; mantle usually strengthened by calcareous plates; with six pairs of biramous thoracic appendages or cirri (?except *Rhizolepas*), first usually associated closely with mouth parts, second through sixth evenly distributed along thorax; nauplii usually, cyprid larva always present, latter undergoing complex metamorphosis into adult form. *U.Sil.-Rec.*

### Suborder LEPADOMORPHA Pilsbry, 1916

Usually differentiated into capitulum containing body with mouth parts and thoracic appendages and peduncle containing testes in males or ovaries in females or hermaphrodites; capitulum usually pro-

ted by calcareous plates of specific form; peduncle protected in some by calcareous plates, usually muscular, allowing changes in orientation. *U.Sil.-Rec.*

### Family CYPRILEPADIDAE Newman & Zullo, new family

Capitulum distinct from peduncle, possibly weakly calcified, although lack of growth lines in cuticle indicates complete molting as in Acrothoracica; thickening along carinal and basal margins separates capitulum into single lateral plate on each side; appendages unknown. *U.Sil.*

*Cyprilepas* WILLS, 1962, p. 567 [\**C. holmi*; OD]. Characters of family. [Occurring on appendages of *Eurypterus fischeri* EICHWALD.] *U.Sil.*, Estonia. —FIG. 111, I. \**C. holmi*; I a, b, large and small individuals from left side,  $\times 17$  (Wills).

### Family PRAELEPADIDAE Chernyshev, 1930

[=Cirravidae CHERNYSHEV, 1935]

Plates probably five, chitinous; scutal umbones subcentral; tergal umbones apical; carina short, semiconical, umbo apical. *M.Carb.*

*Praelepas* CHERNYSHEV, 1930, p. 28 [\**P. jaworskii*; SD WITHERS, 1953, p. 11] [=Cirravus CHERNYSHEV, 1935, p. 36]. Characters of family. *M.Carb.*; USSR. —FIG. 114, 10. \**P. jaworskii*; 10a, reconstr., 10b, carina,  $\times 8$  (118).

### Family SCALPELLIDAE Pilsbry, 1916

Capitulum protected by more than five plates; peduncle armed with plates. *U.Trias.(Rhaet.)-Rec.*

*Scalpellum* LEACH, 1817, p. 68 [\**Lepas scalpellum* LINNÉ, 1767, p. 1109 (=Scalpellum vulgare LEACH, 1824, p. 170); SD LEACH, 1824]. Carina bent, forming angle at position of umbo; scutal umbo usually subapical; inframedian latus usually large, umbo varying in position from middle to basal. *L.Eoc.-Rec.*, N.Atl.-Medit. —FIG. 115, 3. *S. fischeri* BERTRAND, M.Eoc.(Lutet.), France; reconstr.,  $\times 3$  (120).

*Aporolepas* WITHERS, 1953, p. 116 [\**Scalpellum recurvatum* BERTRAND, 1891, p. 694; OD]. Capitular plates 21 or more, umbones all apical, with at least 8 pairs of comparatively large modified lower latera; rostrum and subcarina present; upper latus long and narrow, extending well up between scutum and tergum. *M.Eoc.(Lutet.)-L.Oligo.(Lattorf.)*; Eu.(France-Eng.)-USA.

*Archaeolepas* ZITTEL, 1884, p. 581 [\**Pollicipes redtenbacheri* OPPEL, 1862, p. 116; SD WITHERS, 1928, p. 83]. Capitular plates 6; scutum triangular, with tergal slip; tergum with base widely truncated; carina comparatively small; rostrum

much smaller than carina. *U. Jur.-L. Cret.*, Eu. (Eng.-France-Ger.)-S. Am.—FIG. 115.6. \**A. redtenbacheri* (OPPEL), *U. Jur. (Kimmeridg.)*, Ger.; reconstr.,  $\times 2$  (116). *Arcoscalpellum* HOEK, 1907, p. 59, 85 [\**Scalpellum*

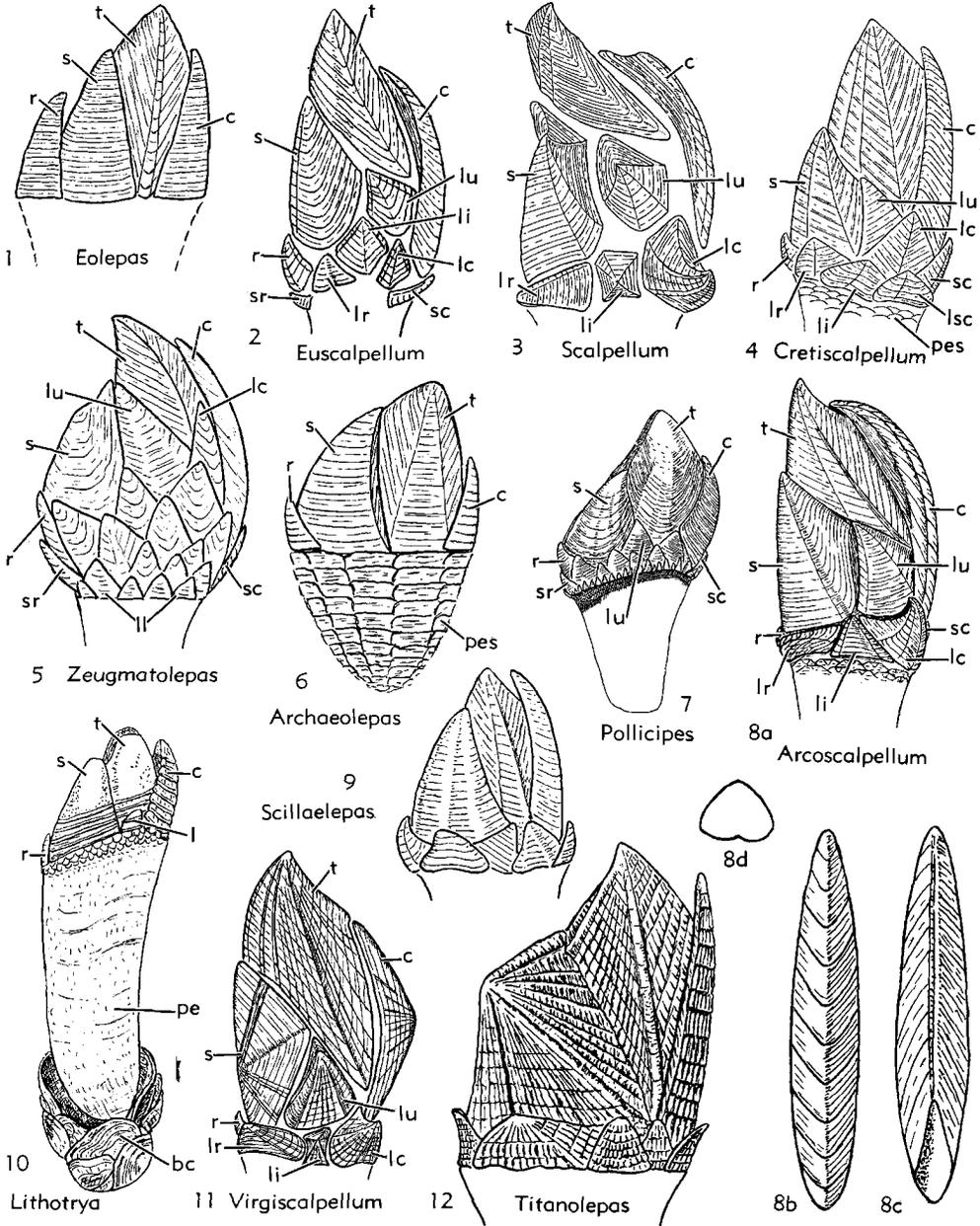


FIG. 115. Scalpellidae (p. R275-R278).

[Explanation: *bc*, basal cup (calcareous); *c*, carina; *l*, latus; *lc*, latus (carinal); *li*, latus (inframedian); *ll*, latus (lower); *lm*, latus (median); *lr*, latus (ros-

tral); *lsc*, latus (subcarinal); *lu*, latus (upper); *pe*, peduncle; *pes*, peduncle scale; *r*, rostrum; *s*, scutum; *sc*, subcarina; *sr*, subrostrum; *t*, tergum.]

*michelottianum* SEGUENZA, 1876, p. 381, 464 (= *S. velutinum* HOEK, 1883, p. 96); OD] [= *Holoscalpellum* PILSBRY, 1907, p. 25]. Capitular plates 15 in fossil and ?13-14 in Recent forms; rostral latus low and wide, larger than infra-medial latus; carina with umbo apical. *U.Cret. (Senon.)-Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 115,8a. *A. fossula* (DARWIN), *U.Senon.*; reconstr.,  $\times 2$  (116).—FIG. 115,8b-d. *A. maximum solidulum* (STEENSTRUP), *U.Cret.(Senon.)*, *B. mucronata* ZONE, *E. Ger. (I. of Rügen)*; 8b-d, carina (reconstr.), outer side, inner side, cross sec.,  $\times 2$  (116).

**Calantica** GRAY, 1825, p. 100 [\**Pollicipes villosus* LEACH, 1824, pl. lvii; OD]. Capitulum with 2 whorls of plates; upper whorl comprising paired scuta, terga, and carina; tergum occupying entire space between scutum and carina; lower whorl comprising rostrum, subcarina, subrostrum in some species, and 3 pairs of latera (2 pairs in subgenus *Paracalantica*; umbones all apical (scutal umbo subcentral in subgenus *Paracalantica*, central in subgenus *Titanolepas*). *U.Jur.-Rec.*, Eu.-S.Am.-N.Z.-Australia-N.Am.-?E.Indies.

**C. (Calantica)**. Plates of lower whorl low and wide, small, barely concealing bases of upper whorl, scales of peduncle minute. ?*U.Jur.*, *Mio.-Rec.*, Eu.-N.Z.—FIG. 85,1. \**C. (C.) villosa* (LEACH), *Rec.*, N.Z.; 1a,b,  $\times 1$  (Withers).

**C. (Paracalantica)** UTINOMI, 1949, p. 93 [\**C. (P.) ikedai*, p. 93; OD]. Only 2 pairs of latera, scutum with subcentral umbo. *Rec.*, Japan.

**C. (Scillaelepas)** SEGUENZA, 1876, p. 390 [\**Pollicipes carinatus* PHILLIPI, 1835, p. 512; OD]. Plates of lower whorl large, high, concealing bases of upper whorl; scales of peduncle large. ?*U.Jur.*, *Paleoc.-Rec.*, N.Atl.-Eu.-Australia.—FIG. 115,9. *C. (S.) dorsata* (STEENSTRUP), *Paleoc.*, Denm.; reconstr.,  $\times 2$  (120).

**C. (Titanolepas)** WITHERS, 1913, p. 943 [\**Scalpellum tuberculatum* DARWIN, 1851, p. 43; OD]. Like *C. (Scillaelepas)*, but with scutal umbo subcentral. *U.Cret.(Cenoman.-U.Senon.)*, Eu.-N.Am.—FIG. 115,12. \**C. (T.) tuberculata* (DARWIN), *Cenoman*, Eng.; reconstr.,  $\times 10$  (Withers, 1913).

**Cretiscalpellum** WITHERS, 1922, p. 374 [\**Pollicipes unguis* J. DE C. SOWERBY, 1836, p. 335; OD]. Capitular plates 17, including 4 pairs of large, overlapping and little-modified lower latera; subcarina much larger than rostrum; all umbones apical. *L.Cret.-U.Cret.(Apt.-Maastricht.)*, Eu.—FIG. 115,4. \**C. unguis* (J. DE C. SOWERBY), Alb., Eng.; reconstr.,  $\times 1.5$  (118).

**Eolepas** WITHERS, 1928, p. 65 [\**Pollicipes rhaeticus* MOORE, 1861, p. 512, 497; OD]. Capitular plates 6, scutum without tergal slip and apicobasal ridge; tergum not truncated at base; rostrum large, almost equaling carina in size. *U.Trias.(Rhaet.)-U.Jur.(Kimmeridg.)*, Eu.(Eng.-France-Ger.).—FIG. 115,1. *E. quenstedti* (VON AMMON), *U.Jur.(Kimmeridg.)*, Ger.; reconstr.,  $\times 1.5$  (116).

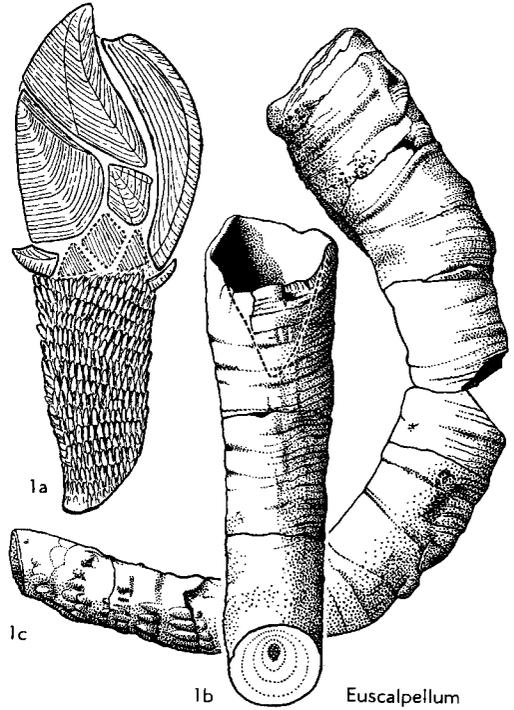


FIG. 115A. Scalpellidae, shells showing secretion of calcium carbonate; 1a, *Euscalpellum eocenense* (MEYER); 1b,c, *E. zelandicum* WITHERS (p. R277).

**Euscalpellum** HOEK, 1907, p. 59, 65 [\**Scalpellum rostratum* DARWIN, 1851, p. 259; SD PILSBRY, 1908, p. 107]. Capitular plates 15; rostrum large and prominent; subcarina well developed; infra-medial latus diamond-shaped. *U.Cret.-Rec.*, Eu.-USA-S.Am.-N.Z.-Antarctica-Malay Arch.—FIG. 115,2. *E. minutum* (T. BROWN), *L.Eoc.(Ypres.)*, London Clay, Eng.; reconstr.,  $\times 3.5$  (120).—FIG. 115A,1a. *E. eocenense* (MEYER), *M.Eoc. (Claiborne)*, USA; side view of shell, reconstr.,  $\times 1.5$  (120).—FIG. 115A,1b,c. *E. zelandicum* WITHERS, *U.Cret.(Senon.)*, N.Z.; 1b, whole peduncle,  $\times 1.4$ ; 1c, upper half of peduncle showing cavity above and cross section below,  $\times 1.4$  (Withers, 1951).

**Lithotrya** G. B. SOWERBY, 1822, no. 8 [\**Lepas dorsalis* ELLIS & SOLANDER, 1786, p. 197; OD]. Capitulum of 8 plates, umbones apical; scuta, terga and carina large; rostrum and pair of latera small; peduncle with small scales, those of upper row crenated; base terminating in calcareous cup; inhabits cavities bored in calcareous substrata. *Rec.*, E.Atl.-IndoPac.—FIG. 115,10. \**L. dorsalis* (ELLIS & SOLANDER), *Rec.*, W.Indies;  $\times 2$  (37).

**Mesoscalpellum** HOEK, 1907, p. 39, 73 [\**Scalpellum javanicum* HOEK, 1907, p. 78; SD PILSBRY, 1908, p. 110] [Includes *Neoscalpellum* PILSBRY, 1907, p. 69, 1908, p. 110]. Juveniles typically

arcoscalpelloid, adults with capitular plates variously reduced; tergum V-shaped, carinal umbo apical. [Deep sea.] *U.Cret.(M.Senon.)-Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 94,11. *M. dicheloplax* (PILSBRY), Rec., W. Atl.,  $\times 1$  (Pilsbry).

**Pisiscapellum** U TINOMI, 1958, p. 113 [*\*P. withersi*; OD]. Similar to *Calantica* (*Scillaelepas*) but lacking subcarina and males attached in different position. *Rec.*, Japan.

**Pollicipes** LEACH, 1817, p. 68 [*\*Lepas pollicipes* GMELIN, 1790, p. 3213; OD]. Capitular plates 18 or more, all umbones apical; lower latera numerous, arranged in one or more whorls. ?*U.Jur.*, *L.Eoc.-Rec.*, Eu.-Greenl.-Medit.-Indo Pac.-E. Pac.—FIG. 115,7. *\*P. pollicipes* (GMELIN), Rec., N. Atl.-Medit.;  $\times 1$  (120).

**Protomitella** BROCH, 1922, p. 246 [*\*P. paradoxa*, p. 247; OD]. Similar to *Pollicipes*, capitular plates nearly identical to some variants of *P. spinosus*, except lower latera digitiform rather than pointed and complemental males present. *Rec.*, N.Z.

**Scalpelopsis** BROCH, 1922, p. 243 [*\*S. striatociliata*, p. 243; OD]. Like *Arcoscapellum* but with inframedian latera highly reduced and rostral latera wanting. *Rec.*, Philip.Is.

**Smilium** LEACH, 1825, p. 209 [*\*S. peronii* GRAY, 1825, p. 100; SD PILSBRY, 1907, p. 13]. Similar to *Calantica* but with pair of upper latera interposed between carina and scuta. ?*U.Cret.* (*Cenoman.-Turon.*), *Rec.*, cosmop.

**Virgiscalpellum** WITHERS, 1935, p. 283 [*\*Scalpellum beisseli* BOSQUET & MILLER, 1857, p. 7; OD]. Capitulum as in *Arcoscalpellum*, but with carinal umbo subapical to subcentral and scutal umbo subcentral or lower; rostrum long and narrow; 14 plates known. *L.Cret.-U.Cret.* (*Apt.-Maastricht.*), Eu.-N.Am.-S.Am.—FIG. 115,11. *V. darwinianum* (BOSQUET), Maastricht., Neth.; reconstr.,  $\times 2$  (118).

**Zeugmatolepas** WITHERS, 1913, p. 938 [*\*Z. mockleri*, p. 939; OD] [= *Cretaspis* JOLEAUD, 1916, p. 43]. Capitulum like that of *Scalpellum*, but with at least 34 plates, including 3 or more whorls of lower latera; scutal umbo apical in Jurassic forms, subcentral in Cretaceous forms. *U.Jur.-Paleoc.*, Eu.-S. Am.-W. Australia.—FIG. 115,5. *\*Z. mockleri*, *U.Cret.* (*Cenoman.*), Eng.; reconstr.,  $\times 10$  (118).

#### Family HETERALEPADIDAE Nilsson-Cantell, 1921

Capitulum without calcareous plates; position of scuta (attachment of scutal adductor muscle) marked by small chitinous thickening on each side and below aperture; multiarticulate caudal appendages present; one or more filamentary appendages at base of first cirrus; no ovigerous frena. *Rec.*

**Heteralepas** PILSBRY, 1907, p. 100 [*\*Alepas rex* PILSBRY, 1907, p. 186, 1911, p. 171; OD]. Cirri ctenopod or lasiopod; outer rami of 2nd through 6th pairs normal; inner rami of 5th and 6th moderately to very much reduced. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 114,1. *\*H. rex* (PILSBRY), Hawaii;  $\times 1.5$  (80, mod.).

**Paralepas** PILSBRY, 1907, p. 100 [*\*Alepas percarinata* PILSBRY, 1907, p. 185; 1911, p. 171; OD]. Cirri acanthopod; outer rami of 2nd through 6th stout; inner rami somewhat more slender but not reduced. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 114,2. *\*P. percarinata* (PILSBRY), Hawaii;  $\times 2$  (80, mod.).

#### Family IBLIDAE Leach, 1825

Capitulum of female or hermaphrodite supporting two pairs of weakly calcified plates; scuta and terga, with apical umbones. Peduncle not separated from capitulum, clothed with blunt chitinous spines. *Rec.*

**Ibla** LEACH, 1825, p. 209 [*\*I. cumingi* DARWIN, 1851, p. 183; SD]. Diagnosis as for family. *Rec.*, W.Afr.-IndoPac.—FIG. 114,11. *\*I. cumingi* DARWIN, IndoPac.;  $\times 4$  (37). [Also see Fig. 86,2.]

#### Family KOLEOLEPADIDAE Hiro, 1937

Capitulum of female or hermaphrodite without calcareous plates; scuta chitinous, small, left usually better developed than right; mouth parts well developed, mandible atypical; cirri biramous, short, posterior pairs acanthopod, filamentary appendage at base of first cirrus; caudal appendage unarticulate. Male much reduced, attached at base of aperture. [Living attached between pedal disc of anemone on gastropod shell inhabited by hermit crab.] *Rec.*

**Koleolepas** STEBBING, 1900, p. 677 [*\*K. willeyi*; OD]. Characters of family. *Rec.*, IndoPac. (Loyalty Is.-Japan-Hawaii).—FIG. 114,9. *K. tinkeri* EDMONDSON, Hawaii;  $\times 2$  (Newman, n).

#### Family LEPADIDAE Darwin, 1851

Capitulum with five approximate plates (*Lepas*), five or two reduced plates (*Conchoderma*), two reduced plates (*Alepas*), or naked (*Anelasma*); scutal and carinal umbones fundamentally basal; caudal appendages continuous with thorax, simple points without long setae; first maxillae with steplike cutting edge; ovigerous frena present; peduncle naked. ?*U.Trias.*, *M.Eoc.-Rec.*  
**Lepas** LINNÉ, 1758, p. 667 [*\*L. anatifera* LINNÉ, 1785, p. 668; SD PILSBRY, 1907]. Capitular plates

5, approximate. [Pelagic.] ?*U.Trias.*, *M.Eoc.-Rec.*, Eng.-France-Italy-Australia-all seas.

**L. (Lepas).** Plates well calcified; basal portion of carina forming small fork or knob. [On floating objects.] *M.Eoc.-Rec.*, Eng.-France-Italy-Australia-N.Z.—FIG. 114,7. \**L. (L.) anatifera* LINNÉ, L.Mio. (Southland Series), N.Z.;  $\times 0.5$  (80).

**L. (Dosima)** GRAY, 1825, p. 100 [\**Lepas fascicularis* ELLIS & SOLANDER, 1786, p. 197; SD ANNANDALE, 1909, p. 72]. Plates weakly calcified; basal portion of carina forming large disc. [Pelagic; larvae attached to floating objects, subsequently forming floats of their own.] *Rec.*, all seas.—FIG. 114,3. \**L. (D.) fascicularis* (ELLIS & SOLANDER), W.Atl.;  $\times 1$  (after 80).

**L. (Hyalolepas)** ANNANDALE, 1909, p. 72 [\**Dichelaspis tenuivalvata* ANNANDALE, 1906, p. 193; OD]. Plates weakly calcified; arms of basal fork of carina long, slender, running about parallel to each other along basal margins of scuta. [On sea snakes, feathers.] *Rec.*, Ind.O.—FIG. 114, 6. *L. (H.) begalensis* DANIEL, Ind.O.;  $\times 14$  (Daniel, 1952, mod.).

**Conchoderma** OLFERS, 1814, p. 177 [\**Lepas virgata* SPENGLER, 1790, pl. 6, fig. 9; OD]. Capitulum generally striped, typically with 5 vestigial plates or two pair of scuta in some species. [Attached to floating objects and organisms.] *Rec.*, all seas.—FIG. 114,4a. *C. auritum* (LINNÉ), Cape Hatteras;  $\times 0.5$  (after 80).—FIG. 114,4b. \**C. virgatum* (SPENGLER), Woods Hole;  $\times 1$  (after 80).

**Alepas** RANG, 1829, p. 364 [\**Anatifa univalvis* QUOY & GAIMARD, 1827, p. 234; (= *Alepa parasita* RANG, 1829, p. 364); SD PILSBRY, 1907]. Capitulum thin, translucent, typically with small, lobed, weakly calcified scuta. [On large medusae.] *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 114,8. *A. pacifica* PILSBRY, Calif.;  $\times 0.7$  (after 80).

**Anelasma** DARWIN, 1851, p. 169 [\**Alepa squalicola* LOVÉN, 1844, p. 192; OD]. Capitulum without valves; trophi and cirri apparently functionless; peduncle with root system invading host tissues. [Parasitic on dogfish, *Etmopterus*, and *Squalus*.] *Rec.*, N.Sea.—FIG. 112,2. \**A. squalicola* (LOVÉN);  $\times 2$  (est.) (after Darwin).

### Family MALACOLEPADIDAE Hiro, 1937

Capitulum thin, membranous, without plates; mouth parts and ctenopod cirri well developed, mandible with six or seven teeth; filamentary and caudal appendages absent. [Inhabiting calcareous tubes between mantle and shell of living bivalve mollusks.] *Rec.*

**Malacolepas** HIRO, 1933, p. 233 [\**M. conchicola*; OD]. Characters of family. *Rec.*, Japan.—FIG. 114,5. \**M. conchicola*;  $\times 4$  (Hiro, 1933, mod.).

### Family OXYNASPIDIDAE Pilsbry, 1907

Capitulum with five plates; scutal umbo subcentral; tergal umbo usually apical; carina extending upward between terga, umbo subapical to subbasal, basal portion sometimes formed into broad plate or fork. Caudal appendages minute, uniarticulate; ovigerous frena absent. [Extant forms (except *O. connectens* BROCH) on antipatharians.] *M.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Oxynaspis** DARWIN, 1851, p. 133 [\**O. celata*; OD]. Characters of family. *Eoc.-Rec.*, Atl.O.-Ind.O.-W.Pac.-E.Pac.—FIG. 114,12. *O. eocenica* (WITHERS), M.Eoc., Eng.; 12a,b, reconstr.  $\times 8$  (120).

### Family POECILASMATIDAE Nilsson-Cantell, 1921

[=Trilasmidae NILSSON-CANTELL, 1934]

Capitulum typically with five calcified, approximate plates or plates five, three, or two, in varying degrees of reduction; scutum may be divided into two calcified portions, but parts always connected by chitinous ligament, having developed from common primordial plate; scutal and carinal umbones fundamentally basal; caudal appendages well developed, uniarticulate, provided with long setae; cutting edge of first maxilla not steplike; peduncle naked or with chitinous thickenings. *U. Eoc. (Barton.)-Rec.*

**Trilasmis** HINDS, 1844, p. 71 [\**T. eburneum*; SD PILSBRY, 1928, p. 308]. Capitulum typically with 5, in one case 3, well-calcified plates; scutum entire or divided into 2 parts, umbo at rostral or basal angle. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*, Atl.-IndoPac.-Medit.

**T. (Trilasmis).** Capitulum with 3 well-calcified plates; terga wanting; scuta with internally visible, fused suture; carina with base expanded into large disc. *Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 116,9. \**T. (T.) eburneum* HINDS, New Guinea;  $\times 8$  (37).

**T. (Poecilasma)** DARWIN, 1851, p. 99 [\**Poecilasma kaempferi* DARWIN, 1851, p. 102; SD PILSBRY, 1907]. Capitulum with 5 approximate plates; scutum not split into 2 parts; carina not expanded laterally at base. *U.Eoc.(Barton.)-Rec.*, Atl.-IndoPac.—FIG. 116,5. \**T. (P.) kaempferi* (DARWIN), *Rec.*, Japan;  $\times 5$  (37).

**T. (Temnaspis)** FISCHER, 1884, p. 357 [\**Poecilasma fissa* DARWIN, 1851, p. 109; OD]. Capitulum with 5 approximate plates; scutum split into 2 parts. *L.Mio.-Rec.*, IndoPac.-Medit. (Malta I.).—FIG. 116,8. \**T. (T.) fissus* (DARWIN), *Rec.*, Philip. Is.;  $\times 5$  (after Darwin).

**Megalasma** HOEK, 1883, p. 50 [\**M. striatum*; OD]. Capitulum with 5, approximate, heavily calcified

plates; carina progressively larger towards base, with internal transverse shelf; scutal umbo sub-central; peduncle very short. *Rec.*, Atl.-IndoPac.-E. Pac.

**M. (Megalasma)**. Basal margin of scutum nearly

continuous with occludent margin. *Rec.*, Indo-Pac.-E.Pac.—FIG. 116, 12. *M. (M.) bellum* (PILSBRY),  $\times 5$  (80).

**M. (Glyptelasma)** PILSBRY, 1907, p. 87 [*\*Megalasma subcarinatum* PILSBRY, 1907, p. 91; OD].

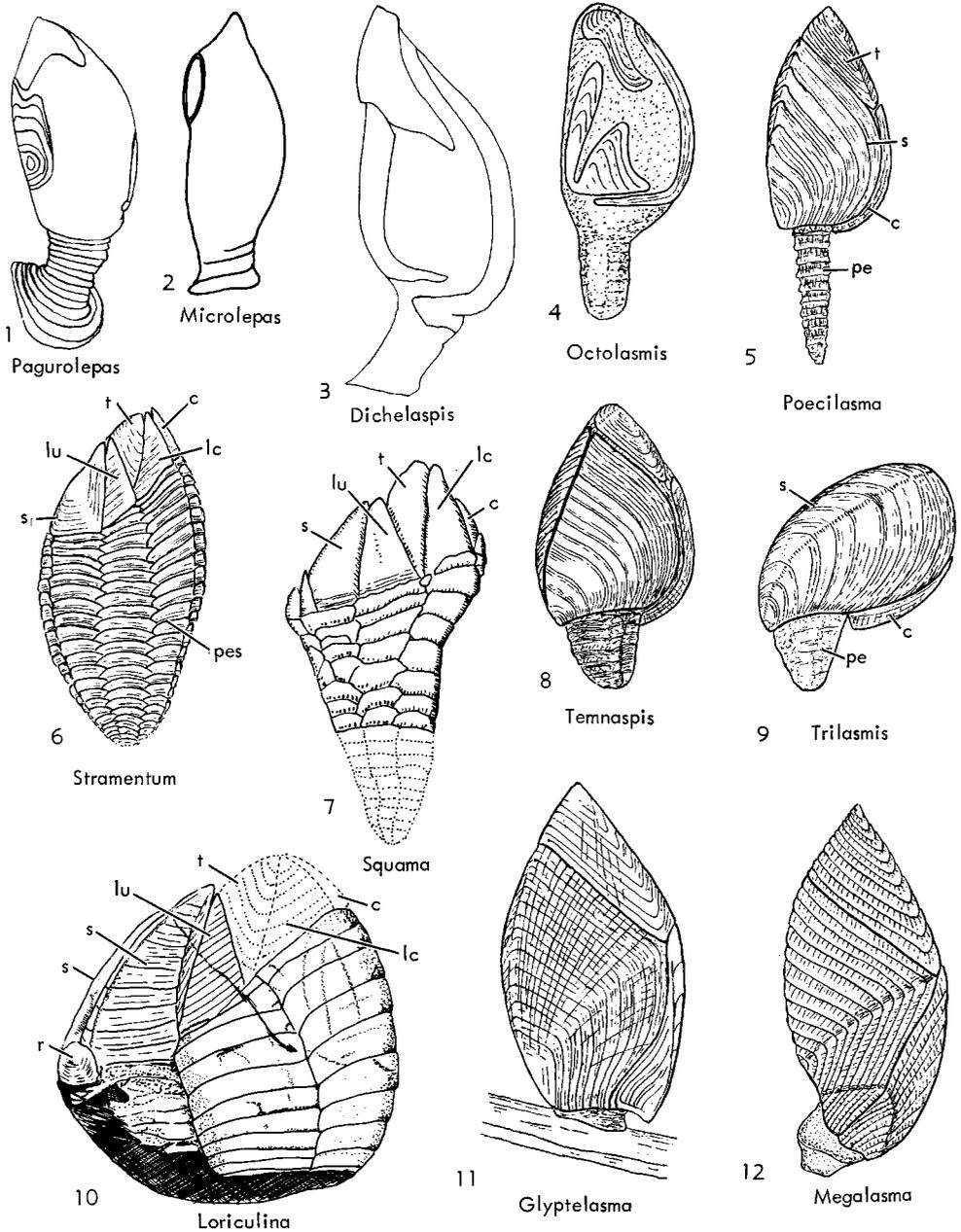


FIG. 116. Poecilasmatidae (3-5, 9, 11-12), Stramentidae (6-7, 10), Family Uncertain (1-2) (p. R279-R281). [Explanation: *c*, carina; *lc*, latus (carinal); *lu*, latus (upper); *pe*, peduncle; *pes*, peduncle scale; *r*, rostrum; *s*, scutum; *t*, tergum.]

Basal margin of scutum nearly at right angles with occludent margin. *Rec.*, Atl.-IndoPac.—FIG. 116,11. \**M. (G.) subcarinatum* PILSBRY, USA(N.J.);  $\times 5$  (80).

**Octolasmis** GRAY, 1825, p. 100 [\**O. warwickii*; OD]. Capitulum with 5, 3 or 2 incompletely calcified plates; carina extending up between terga when present. *Rec.*, cosmop., all warm seas.

**O. (Octolasmis)**. Plates very incompletely calcified; scutum usually with 2 principal arms, connected by chitinous ligament; carina, when present, usually with slender basal fork; tergum, when present, usually with 2 or more diverging points. *Rec.*, cosmop., all warm seas and in deep water.—FIG. 116,4. \**O. (O.) warwickii* GRAY, Borneo;  $\times 10$  (37).

**O. (Dichelaspis)** DARWIN, 1851, p. 115 [\**D. orthogonia*; SD PILSBRY, 1907, p. 94]. Plates 5, incompletely calcified; scutum usually with 2 principal arms calcified together at their junction; carina terminating in basal disc; tergum usually triangular, commonly with projecting points. *Rec.*, Atl.-IndoPac.—FIG. 116,3. *O. (D.) hawaiiense* (PILSBRY), Hawaii;  $\times 10$  (after 80).

### Family STRAMENTIDAE Withers, 1920

[=Loriculidae PILSBRY, 1916]

Capitulum short, composed of single whorl of nine to 12 plates; upper latus interposed for its whole length between scutum and tergum; carinal latus placed between carina and tergum. Peduncle composed on each side of five vertical rows of closely imbricating plates, two outer rows in free apposition. *Cret. (Alb.-Senon.)*.

**Stramentum** LOGAN, 1897, p. 188 [\**Pollicipes haworthi* WILLISTON, 1896, p. 243; SD WITHERS, 1920, p. 68] [=Loricula G. B. SOWERBY, JR., 1851, p. 81]. Capitulum of 9 plates; no rostrum; carina split longitudinally into 2 halves; scutal umbo subcentral. *Cret. (?Alb.-U.Senon.)*, Eu.-Syria-N.Am.—FIG. 116,6. *S. pulchellum* (SOWERBY), Turon., Eng.(Kent);  $\times 6$  (116).

**Loriculina** DAMES, 1885, p. 155 [\**Loricula noetlingi* DAMES, 1885, p. 152; SD WITHERS, 1935, p. 303]. Capitular plates 10; paired scuta, upper latera, carinal latera, carina and entire rostrum; scutum elongate, umbo apical. *U.Cret. (Cenoman.-U.Senon.)*, Eu.-Syria-USA.—FIG. 116,10. \**L. noetlingi* (DAMES), U.Senon., Syria;  $\times 6$  (118).

**Squama** LOGAN, 1897, p. 187 [\**S. spissa*; SD WITHERS, 1935, p. 309]. Capitular plates probably 12, subcarina, rostrum and subrostrum in addition to plates in *Stramentum*; carina probably entire. *U.Cret. (Senon.)*, N.Am.—FIG. 116,7. \**S. spissa*, U.Niobrara, USA(Kans.);  $\times 1.5$  (118).

### Family UNCERTAIN

**Microlepas** HOEK, 1907, p. 43 [\**M. diademae*; OD]. Capitulum continuous with short peduncle, without calcareous plates; mouth parts and cirri peculiar; 1st cirrus single article, 2nd through 6th biramous, rami uniaarticulate, unequal in length; no caudal appendages. [On sea urchin spines.] *Rec.*, Ind.O.(Savu Sea).—FIG. 116,2. \**M. diadema*, Savu Sea;  $\times 10.5$  (54, mod.).

**Pagurolepas** STUBBINGS, 1940, p. 383 [\**P. conchicola*; OD]. Capitulum with 5 calcified, reduced plates; carinal umbo basal; scutal umbo subcentral; mandible normal, 1st maxilla atypical; cirri biramous, rami each of 3 articles; caudal appendage well developed, uniaarticulate. [In gastropod shells inhabited by hermit crab.] *Rec.*, Ind.O.(Zanzibar)-W.Atl.(Fla.).—FIG. 116,1. \**P. conchicola*, Zanzibar;  $\times 8$  (Stubbings, 1936, mod.).

**Rhizolepas** DAY, 1939, p. 64 [\**R. annelidicola*; OD]. Capitulum without plates; not completely covering thorax; with chitinous ribs supporting occludent margins; peduncle long, forming root system in host; cirri uniramous, weakly developed, rami multiarticulate; ?caudal appendages multiarticulate. [Parasitic on polychaete annelid.] *Rec.*, S.Afr.—FIG. 112,3. \**R. annelidicola*, S. Afr.;  $\times 8.5$  (after Day).

## Suborder VERRUCOMORPHA Pilsbry, 1916

Cirripeds lacking peduncle; with asymmetrical shell composed of rostrum, carina, scutum, tergum, and in some forms carinal and rostral latera; remaining scutum and tergum reduced in size, forming movable lidlike top to shell; basis membranous or calcareous. *U. Cret. (?Cenoman.-U.Senon.)-Rec.*

### Family VERRUCIDAE Darwin, 1854

Characters of suborder. *U.Cret. (?Cenoman.-U.Senon.)-Rec.*

**Verruca** SCHUMACHER, 1817, p. 35 [\**Lepas stroemia* MÜLLER, 1776, p. 251; OD]. Wall composed of 4 compartmental plates. [PILSBRY (1916) divided *Verruca* into four sections. BROCH (1922) elevated a subgroup of one of these, forming a fifth. He and other authors have used the sections as subgenera.] [Littoral-bathyal.] *U.Cret. (Senon.)-Rec.*, temp. and tropic seas (except *Rec.* in N.Pac.).

**V. (Verruca)** [=Euverruca BROCH, 1924, p. 63]. Top of movable plates flat, plane nearly parallel to that of base; radioalar area between parietes of fixed scutum and tergum narrow and linear.

*U. Cret. (Senon.)-Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 117, 4.  
*V. (V.) prisca* BOSQUET, U. Senon., Eng.; 4*a, b*,  
 ×20 (118).

*V. (AltiVERRUCA)* PILSBRY, 1916, p. 40 [\**V. hocki*

PILSBRY, 1907, p. 113; OD]. Top nearly vertical;  
 fixed scutum without adductor ridge; no internal  
 recesses of general cavity. *Rec.*, cosmop.

*V. (Cameraverruca)* PILSBRY, 1916, p. 39 [\**V.*

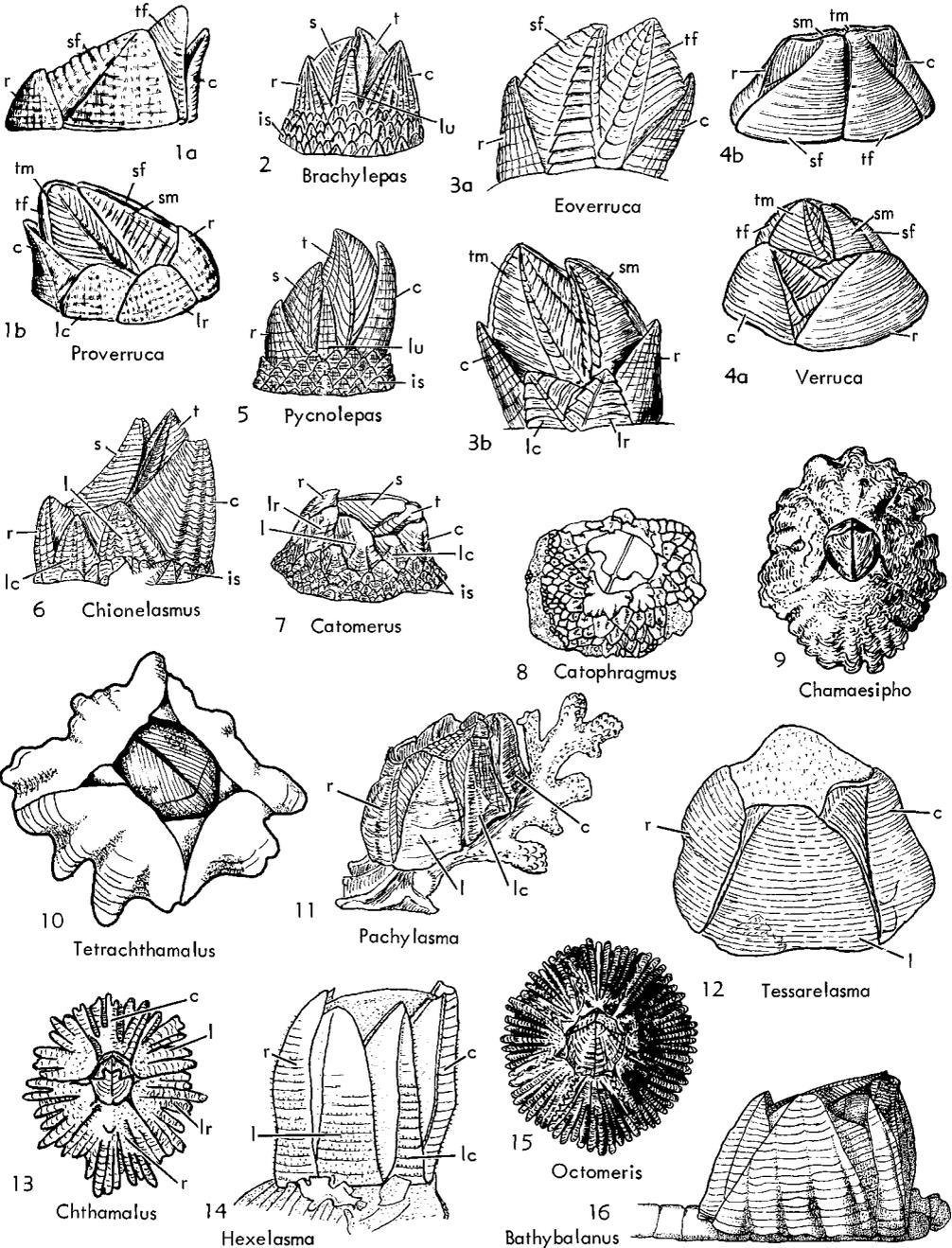


FIG. 117. Verrucidae (1, 3-4); Brachylepadidae (2, 5); Chthamalidae (6-15); Balanidae (16) (p. R281-R285). [Explanation: *c*, carina; *is*, imbricating scales; *lc*, latus (carinal); *lr*, latus (rostral); *lu*, latus (upper); *r*, rostrum; *s*, scutum; *sf*, scutum (fixed); *sm*, scutum (movable); *t*, tergum; *tf*, tergum (fixed); *tm*, tergum (movable).]

*eu glypta* PILSBRY, 1907, p. 108; OD]. Top steeply sloping; adductor ridge of fixed scutum forming vertical partition-like myophore; partitioned off apical cavities in fixed tergum and rostrum forming recesses of general cavity. *Rec.*, USA(Fla.).

V. (*Metaverruca*) PILSBRY, 1916, p. 21 [\**V. coraliophila* PILSBRY, 1916, p. 21; OD]. Top flattened; basal border of wall plates inflected; adductor ridge of fixed scutum forming tongue-shaped myophore. *Rec.*, cosmop.

V. (*Rostratoverruca*) BROCH, 1922, p. 297 [\**V. nexa* DARWIN, 1854, p. 522; OD]. As *V. (Verruca)*, but with apex of rostrum removed from upper edge of the plate. *Rec.*, IndoPac.

Eoverruca WITHERS, 1935, p. 388 [\**E. hewitti*; OD]. Two lateral plates on rostracarinal side; rostrum and carina nearly symmetrical; interlocking ribs present on fixed and movable scuta and terga. *U.Cret.(M.Senon.)*, Eng.—FIG. 117,3. \**E. hewitti*: 3a,b, reconstr.,  $\times 20$  (118).

Proverruca WITHERS, 1914, p. 946 [\**P. vinculum*; OD]. Two lateral plates on rostrocarinal side; rostrum and carina asymmetrical; plates without interlocking ribs. *U.Cret.(Turon.-U.Senon.)*, Eu.—FIG. 117,1. \**P. vinculum*, L.Senon., Eng.; 1a,b, reconstr.,  $\times 15$  (118).

### Suborder

## BRACHYLEPADOMORPHA

Withers, 1923

Cirripeds lacking peduncle; with laterally flattened or circular, bilaterally symmetrical shell composed of rostrum and carina; with up to four whorls of smaller imbricating plates at base of wall; operculum formed of paired scuta and terga separated by long, narrow upper latus; basis membranous or calcareous. *U. Jur. (Tithon.) U. Mio. (Helvet.)*.

### Family BRACHYLEPADIDAE

Woodward, 1901

Character of suborder. *U. Jur. (Tithon.)-U. Mio. (Helvet.)*.

*Brachylepas* WOODWARD, 1901, p. 150 [\**Emerginula*(?) *naissantii* HEBERT, 1855, p. 374; OD]. Shell laterally flattened or circular; carina cylindrical or semiconical; outer whorls of imbricating plates with inwardly projecting ledge which fits into median basal notch on plates of inner whorl; basis membranous, except in *B. quascoi*. *U.Cret.(Turon.-Maastricht.)*, Eu.—FIG. 117,2. \**B. naissantii* (HEBERT), U.Senon., Eu.; reconstr.,  $\times 1.3$  (Withers).

*Pycnolepas* WITHERS, 1914, p. 170 [\**Pollicipes rigidus* SOWERBY, 1836, p. 335; OD]. Shell laterally flattened; carina cylindrical; outer whorls of imbricating plates with inwardly projecting ledge bearing median basal socket (?muscle pit); basis probably membranous. *U. Jur. (Tithon.)-U. Mio. (Helvet.)*, Eu.—FIG. 117,5. \**P. rigida* (SOWERBY), L.Cret.(Alb.), Eng.; reconstr.,  $\times 3$  (Withers).

## Suborder BALANOMORPHA

Pilsbry, 1916

Cirripeds lacking peduncle; with bilaterally symmetrical shell composed of carina, rostrum, and one to three pairs of lateral compartmental plates variously fused or totally concrescent; opercular valves when present paired, members of each pair separate, articulated or concrescent; with but one or two exceptions in the Balaninae, purely hermaphroditic. *U.Cret.(U.Senon.)-Rec.*

### Family CHTHAMALIDAE Darwin, 1854

[*nom. transl.* PILSBRY, 1916 (*ex* Chthamalinae DARWIN, 1854)]

Wall of eight, six, or four distinct, solid compartmental plates; some forms with one or more whorls of smaller accessory plates encircling base of wall; rostrum free or fused with rostrolaterals; carinolaterals absent in six- and four-plated groups with free rostra; inner surface of parieties without regular longitudinal ribs; cirrus III usually more similar in structure to cirrus IV than to cirrus II, or intermediate in structure between cirri II and IV; labral crest straight or concave, not notched, labrum usually swollen externally. *U.Cret. (U.Senon.)-Rec.*

*Chthamalus* RANZANI, 1817, p. 276 [\**Lepas stellata* POLI, 1791, p. 29; OD]. Six compartmental plates in wall; rostrum free; carinolaterals absent; basis membranous or calcareous. [The genus falls into two natural divisions (*C. stellatus*, *C. hembeli*), primarily on the form of the mandible and opercular parts (NILSSON-CANTELL, 1921, p. 279, 290). These will no doubt eventually receive at least subgeneric status.] *Plio. (Piacenz.)-Rec.*, warm temp.-tropic seas.—FIG. 117,13. \**C. stellatus* (POLI), Rec., Madeira Is.;  $\times 4$  (39).

*Catophragmus* SOWERBY, 1826, no. 28 (June 28) [\**C. imbricatus* SOWERBY, 1827, plate; OD]. Eight compartmental plates in wall, including rostrum, carina, 2 laterals, 2 rostrolaterals, and 2 carino-

laterals; 2 or more basal whorls of accessory plates present; basis membranous or calcareous; scutum without adductor ridge. *U.Cret.(U.Senon.)*, Sweden; *Rec.*, Australia-E.Pac.(Panama)-Carib.-Bermuda.

**C. (Catophragmus).** Plates of basal whorls few, not keeled, imbricating over sutures of inner whorls; basis calcareous, small caudal appendages present. *Rec.*, E.Pac.(Panama)-Carib.-Bermuda.—FIG. 117,8. *C. (C.) pilsbryi* BROCH, Panama;  $\times 1.3$  (after 18).

**C. (Catomerus)** PILSBRY, 1916, p. 335 [*Catophragmus polymerus* DARWIN, 1854, p. 487; OD]. Plates of basal whorls numerous, carinate, imbricating over sutures of each preceding whorl, basis membranous; caudal appendages absent. *Rec.*, SE.Australia.—FIG. 117,7. *\*C. (C.) polymerus* DARWIN;  $\times 1.2$  (118).

**C. (Pachydiadema)** WITHERS, 1935, p. 389 [*Catophragmus cretaceus* WITHERS, 1935, p. 390; OD]. Basal plates arranged in more than 2 whorls, not keeled or toothed; articular ridge and furrow of both scutum and tergum weakly developed. *U.Cret.(U.Senon.)*, Sweden.

**Chamaesipho** DARWIN, 1854, p. 470 [*Lepas columna* SPENGLER, 1790, p. 192; SD POPE, 1965, p. 63]. Four compartmental plates in wall, including rostrum, carina, and composite lateral-rostrolaterals; basis membranous. *Rec.*, SE.Australia-N.Z.-?China seas.—FIG. 117,9. *\*C. columna* (SPENGLER), Australia;  $\times 2.2$  (39).

**Chionelasmus** PILSBRY, 1911, p. 82 [*Catophragmus darwini* PILSBRY, 1907, p. 188; OD]. Six compartmental plates in shell wall, including free rostrum, carina, 2 laterals, and 2 rostrolaterals; single basal whorl of accessory plates present; basis calcareous; caudal appendages present. *Rec.*, Hawaiian Is.-Ind.O.—FIG. 117,6. *\*C. darwini* (PILSBRY), Ind.O.;  $\times 3$  (118).

**Hexelasma** HOEK, 1913, p. 157, 244 [*H. velutinum*; SD UTINOMI, 1965, p. 13]. Six compartmental plates in shell wall as in *Pachylasma*, but compound rostral plate showing no sign of fusion; radii absent; basis membranous or thinly calcareous; cirrus III intermediate in structure between cirri II and IV; caudal appendages absent. ?*L.Oligo.*, *L.Mio.-Rec.*, W.Pac.-SW.Pac.-Anarctic-N.Atl.—FIG. 117,14. *\*H. velutinum*, *Rec.*, Malay Arch.;  $\times 3.2$  (54).

**Octomeris** SOWERBY, 1825, no. 26 (Nov. 8) [*O. angulosa*; OD]. Eight compartmental plates in shell wall as in *Catophragmus*; without basal whorls of accessory plates; basis membranous; caudal appendages absent. ?*Pleist.*, *Rec.*, S.Afr.-IndoPac.-Japan.—FIG. 117,15. *O. brunnea* DARWIN, *Rec.*, Philip. Is.;  $\times 3$  (39).

**Pachylasma** DARWIN, 1854, p. 475 [*Chthamalus giganteus* PHILIPPI, 1836, p. 250; SD PILSBRY, 1916]. Six compartmental plates in shell wall,

including tripartite rostral plate formed by partial or complete fusion of rostrum with adjoining rostrolaterals, 2 laterals, 2 carinolaterals, and carina; radii rudimentary or absent; basis calcareous; cirrus III similar to cirri IV-VI; caudal appendages present. *Mio.(Helvet.)-Rec.*, Medit.-W.Pac.-IndoPac.—FIG. 117,11. *\*P. giganteum* (PHILIPPI), *Rec.*, Medit.;  $\times 2$  (39).

**Tessarelasma** WITHERS, 1936, p. 591 [*\*T. pilsbryi*; OD]. Four compartmental plates in shell wall, including compound rostral plate, 2 laterals, and carina; radii absent; basis possibly calcareous; indistinct longitudinal ribs on inner surface of parietes; opercular valves as in balanids. *L.Mio. (?Burdigal.)*, India.—FIG. 117,12. *\*T. pilsbryi*, E.Bengal;  $\times 2$  (39).

**Tetrachthamalus** NEWMAN, 1967, p. 425 [*\*T. oblitteratus*; OD]. Wall composed of 4 compartments (rostrum compound, carinolaterals lacking); basis membranous; opercular parts, trophi and cirri similar to species of the *Chthamalus stellatus* group. *Rec.*, Red Sea (Gulf of Aqaba)-W.Ind.O.—FIG. 117,10. *\*T. oblitteratus*;  $\times 10$  (Newman, n).

### Family BALANIDAE Leach, 1817

Wall of four or six distinct compartmental plates, or single fused plate; rostrum apparently fused with rostrolaterals, (?) or absent, forming compound rostral plate; carinolaterals usually present. Radii usually developed; parietes either solid or with parietal tubes; inner surface of parietes usually longitudinally ribbed; cirrus III similar in structure to cirri I and II; labrum not swollen externally; labral crest usually notched centrally, penis usually with basidorsal point. *L.Eoc.-Rec.*

#### Subfamily BALANINAE Leach, 1817

[*nom. transl.* DARWIN, 1854 (ex Balanidae LEACH, 1825)]

Wall of hermaphrodites composed of six, four, or single compartmental plates; parietes solid or with parietal tubes; basis membranous or calcareous; labral crest with deep, V-shaped notch; paired scuta and terga present, articulated, and filling orifice. Males, when present, variously reduced, located on interior of rostral plate. *L.Eoc. (Auvers.)-Rec.*

**Balanus** DA COSTA, 1778, p. 248 [*\*Lepas balanus* LINNÉ, 1758, p. 667 (= *B. porcatus* DA COSTA, 1778, p. 249); SD PILSBRY, 1916, p. 49]. Wall of 6 usually rigidly articulated compartmental plates. *M.Eoc. (Auvers.)-Rec.*, all seas.

**B. (Balanus).** Parietes with parietal tubes; radii solid; basis calcareous. *Oligo.-Rec.*, all seas.—

FIG. 118,1. \**B. (B.) balanus* (LINNÉ), *Plio.*, Eng.; 1*a*, shell,  $\times 0.75$ ; 1*b*, part of basal margin, 1*c*, part of basis, enl. (39).—FIG. 118,2. *B. (B.) laevis* BRUGUIÈRE, Pleist., Coquimbo, Chile; lower part of basal cup filled with bubble-like septa,  $\times 2.5$  (40).

**B. (Armatobalanus)** HOEK, 1913, p. 159 [\**B. quadrivittatus* DARWIN, 1854, p. 284; SD PILSBRY, 1916]. Parietes and radii solid; radii well developed with denticulate sutural edges; basis calcareous; interior of parietes with sharp, longitudinal ribs; tergal spur wide, one third to more than one-half width of basal margin, teeth on anterior margins of some cirri. *Mio.*, USA (Md.); *Rec.*, Japan-Australia-W. Indies-USA (Calif.)-Eng.—FIG. 118A,6. \**B. (A.) quadrivittatus* DARWIN, *Rec.*,  $\times 3.5$  (39).

**B. (Austrobalanus)** PILSBRY, 1916, p. 218 [\**B. imperator* DARWIN, 1854, p. 288; OD]. Parietes and radii (when present) solid; radii without denticles on sutural edges; internal basal edge of parietes with irregular points, ridges, or strong, irregular ribs; basis calcareous; scutum with adductor ridge and crest for lateral depressor muscle. ?*Oligo.*, Chatham I.; *Rec.*, W.S.Am.-N.Z.-SE.Australia.—FIG. 118A,7. *B. (A.) flosculus* DARWIN, *Rec.*, S.Am.;  $\times 1.5$  (39).

**B. (Chirona)** GRAY, 1835, p. 37 [\**Lepas hameri* ASCANIUS, 1767, p. 8; OD]. Characterized by thin, solid parietes and radii; basis calcareous; sutural edges of radii smooth or weakly crenulate; tergal spur narrow, moderately long. *Mio.-Rec.*, N. Pac.-Bering Sea-N. Atl.-Ind. O.-W. Pac.-Medit.—FIG. 118A,9. \**B. (C.) hameri* (ASCANIUS), *Rec.*, Sweden;  $\times 1$  (39).

**B. (Conopea)** SAY, 1822, p. 323 [\**Lepas galeata* LINNÉ, 1771, p. 544; OD]. Parietes of hermaphrodites(?) with or without parietal tubes; radii solid, well developed; basis calcareous, elongate along carinorostral axis, boat-shaped; shell attached to gorgonians. Males, when present, occurring on inner surface of rostral plate. *Mio.-Rec.*, Ind.O.-W.Pac.-S.Calif.-Gulf Calif.-E.C.Am.-SE. USA-W. Afr.-Medit.-N.S. Am.—FIG. 118A, 12. *B. (C.) cymbiformis* DARWIN, *Rec.*, E.Indies;  $\times 7$  (22).

**B. (Hesperibalanus)** PILSBRY, 1916, p. 192 [\**B. hesperius*; OD]. Parieties and radii solid; basis calcareous; radii narrow with denticulate sutural edges; scutum ridged between adductor muscle scar and articular ridge; juncture between tergal spur and basal margin angulate. [See *B. (Solidobalanus)*.] *Eoc.-Oligo.*, G.Brit.-France-USA; *Rec.*, N.Pac.—FIG. 118A,8. \**B. (H.) hesperius* PILSBRY, *Rec.*, Alaska (Bering Sea);  $\times 2.7$  (83).

**B. (Hexacreusia)** ZULLO, 1961, p. 72 [\**B. durhami*; OD]. Parietes and radii solid; radii broad, with thick, denticulate sutural edges; sheath extending nearly to basal margin; lower edge of

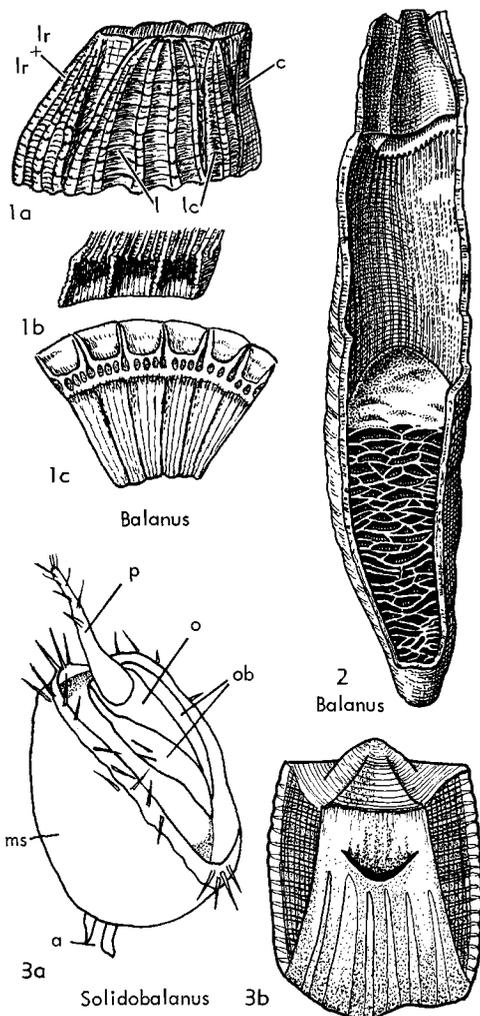


FIG. 118. Balanidae (Balaninae) (p. R285-R287). [Explanation: a, first antennae; c, carina; l, latus; lc, latus (carinal); lr, latus (rostral); ms, mantle sac; o, orifice; ob, opercular bars; p, penis.]

sheath free, continuous; basis calcareous, cup-shaped to subcylindrical; opercular valves as in *Creusia*; embedded in corals. *U.Plio.-Rec.*, Gulf Calif.-Tres Marias Is.—FIG. 118A,5. \**B. (H.) durhami* ZULLO, *Rec.*, Gulf Calif.;  $\times 10$  (after Ross).

**B. (Megabalanus)** HOEK, 1913, p. 158 [\**Lepas tintinnabulum* LINNÉ, 1758, p. 668; OD]. Both parietes and radii with tubes; basis calcareous. *Oligo.-Rec.*, temp. and tropic seas.—FIG. 118A, 2. \**B. (M.) tintinnabulum* (LINNÉ), *Plio.*, Eng.; 2*a*, shell,  $\times 1.5$ ; 2*b*, basal margin of wall, enl. (40).

**B. (Membranobalanus)** HOEK, 1913, p. 159 [\**B. declivus* DARWIN, 1854, p. 275; SD PILSBRY, 1916]. Parietes and radii thin, solid; sutural edges of radii not crenulate; basis membranous; rostrum extending below and nearly twice as long as other compartmental plates; tergal spur short, broad. *Pleist.-Rec.*, E.Indies-S. Japan-W. In-

dies-S. Calif.-Gulf Calif.—FIG. 118A, 10. \**B. (M.) declivus* DARWIN, Rec., W. Indies;  $\times 4.5$  (39).

**B. (Metabalanus)** PILSBRY, 1916, p. 200 [\**B. hoekianus* PILSBRY, 1911, p. 77; OD]. Parietes solid; radii absent; adductor ridge of scutum absent; tergal spur well differentiated from tergal

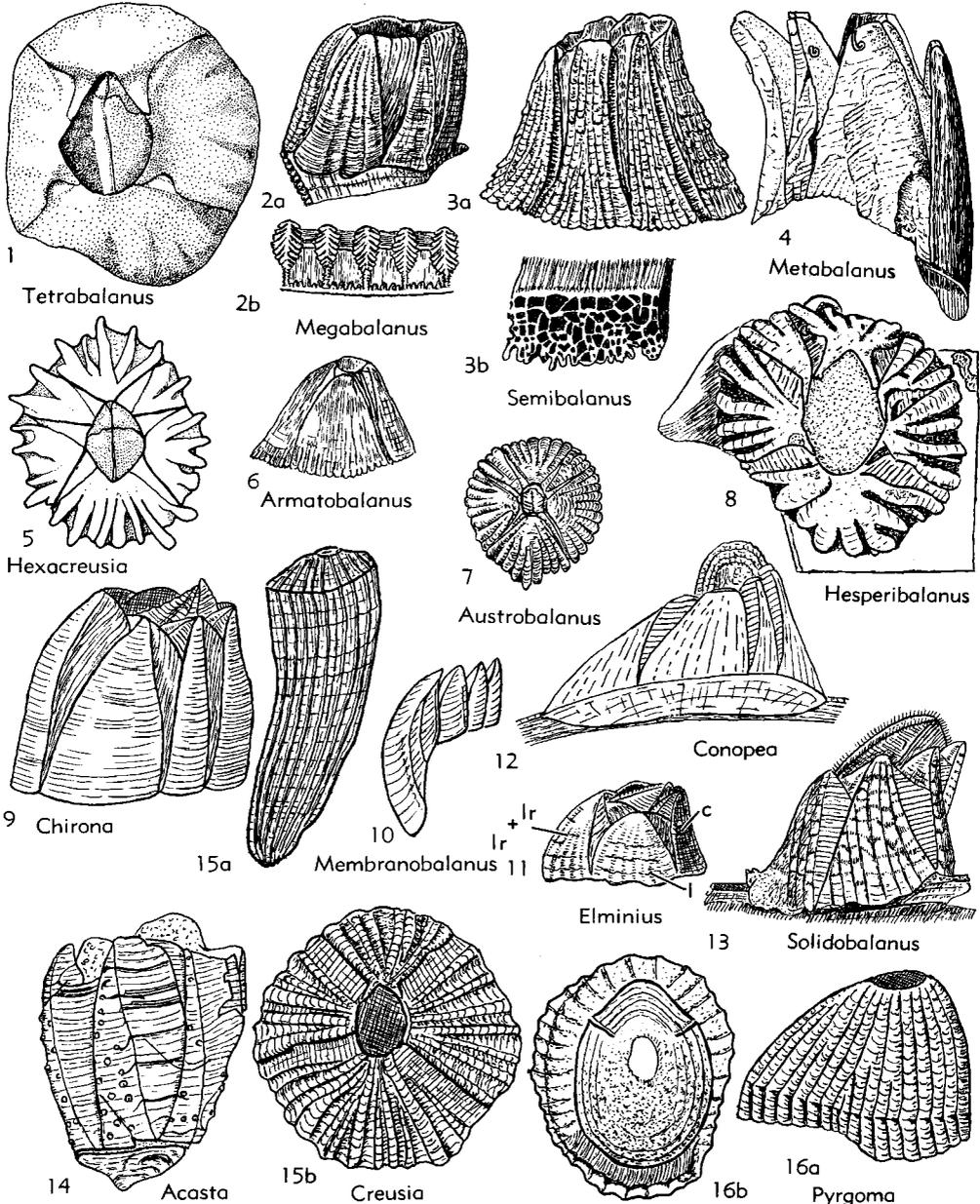


FIG. 118A. Balanidae (Balaninae) (p. R285-R287). [Explanation: *c*, carina; *l*, latus; *lr*, latus (rostral).]

- margin. *Rec.*, Bering Sea.—FIG. 118A,4. \*B. (*M.*) *hoekianus* PILSBRY;  $\times 4$  (83).
- B. (Semibalanus)** PILSBRY, 1916, p. 182 [*Lepas cariosa* PALLAS, 1788, p. 234; OD]. Parietes with one or more rows of parietal tubes; radii solid; basis membranous; rostrum not extending downward below other compartmental plates. *M.Plio.-Rec.*, N.Pac.-N.Atl.—FIG. 118A,3. \*B. (*S.*) *cariosus* (PALLAS), *Rec.*, NE.Pac.; 3a, shell,  $\times 1.5$ ; 3b, basal view of wall, enl. (39).
- B. (Solidobalanus)** HOEK, 1913, p. 159 [*B. auricomma*; SD PILSBRY, 1916]. Hermaphrodite with parietes and radii solid; radii well developed, with denticulate sutural edges; basis calcareous; adductor ridge of scutum reduced or absent; sides of tergal spur curving into basal margin. Complementary male, when present, may be found in pit inside rostral plate of hermaphrodite. [Includes *Hesperibalanus*, *fide* HENRY & McLAUGHLIN, 1967.] *Rec.*, RedSea-Ind.O.-W.Pac.-Hawaiian Is.-SE.Pac.-SE.Atl.—FIG. 118A,13. \*B. (*S.*) *auricomma* HOEK, N.Z.;  $\times 3.3$  (18).—FIG. 118, 3. *B. (S.) masignotus* HENRY & McLAUGHLIN, *Rec.*; 3a, complementary male,  $\times 135$ ; 3b, int. view of rostrum,  $\times 1.7$  (from Henry & McLaughlin, 1967).
- Acasta** LEACH, 1817, p. 69 [*Lepas spongites* POLI, 1795, p. 25 (= *A. montagui* LEACH, 1817); OD] [= *Pseudacasta* NILSSON-CANTELL, 1930]. Six solid compartmental plates arranged as in *Balanus*; radii well developed; compartmental plates weakly articulated; form of shell globose; basis solid, rounded or cup-shaped; shell not elongate along carinorostral axis; cirrus IV with or without recurved teeth or hooks; commonly embedded in sponges. *L. Oligo.-Rec.*, Ind. O.-W. Pac.-Red Sea-Medit.-W.Afr.-Eng.-SE.USA-Cuba.—FIG. 118A, 14. *A. sp. cf. cyathus* DARWIN, *Rec.*, Cuba;  $\times 2$  (Withers, ?n).
- Bathybalanus** HOEK, 1913, p. 230 [*Balanus pentacrini* HOEK, 1913, p. 230; OD]. Six compartmental plates solid, ribbed internally; radii well developed; basis calcareous, solid; labrum with notch; cirrus III more like cirri I and II than cirri IV-VI; caudal appendages absent. Penis with basidorsal point. *Rec.*, Moluccas.—FIG. 117,16. \*B. *pentacrini* (HOEK);  $\times 4.4$  (54).
- Creusia** LEACH, 1817, p. 68 [*C. spinulosa* LEACH, 1818, p. 171; OD]. Four solid compartmental plates in shell wall, including rostral plate, carina, and 2 laterals; radii present or absent; sutural edges distinct or interlocked so as to appear to have become concurrent; basis cup-shaped to cylindrical, solid; embedded in corals. *L.Mio.-Rec.*, Medit.-Ind.O.-W.Pac.-W.Indies.—FIG. 118A,15a. \*C. *spinulosa*, *Rec.*;  $\times 7$  (Withers, after Darwin).—FIG. 118A,15b. *C. barbadensis* WITHERS, Pleist., Barbados; top view,  $\times 6$  (115).
- Elminius** LEACH, 1825, p. 210 [*E. kingii* GRAY, 1831, p. 13; SD PILSBRY, 1916, p. 260]. Wall composed of 4 solid compartmental plates, including rostral plate, carina, and 2 laterals; basis membranous. *Rec.*, W. S. Am.-N. Z.-Australia-Azores-(introduced by ships into NE.Atl.).—FIG. 118A,11. \*E. *kingii* GRAY, *Rec.*, S.Am.;  $\times 1.5$  (39).
- Kathpalmeria** ROSS, 1965, p. 61 [*K. georgiana*; OD]. Wall form of 6 solid compartmental plates; basis calcareous, solid; reentrant buttresses forming ribs on inner surface of parietes; radii narrow or wanting; scutum without adductor ridge. *L. Eoc.*, SE.USA; *M.Eoc.*, Eu.(Hung.).
- Pyrgoma** LEACH, 1817, p. 68 [*P. cancellata* LEACH, 1818, p. 161; OD]. Shell wall composed of single plate; although carinolateral sutures may be seen in sheath in some species; basis calcareous, cup-shaped or cylindrical. *Plio.-Rec.*, Medit.-Ind.O.-W. Pac.-Carib.—FIG. 118A,16. \*P. *anglicum* G. B. SOWERBY, *Rec.*, W.Indies; 16a, shell, side view,  $\times 7$ ; 16b, shell, top view,  $\times 7$  (115).
- Pyrgopsella** ZULLO, 1967 [*nom. subst. pro Pyrgopsis* GRUVEL, 1907 (*non* ROCHEBRUNE, 1884)] [*\*Pyrgopsis annandalei* GRUVEL, 1907, p. 8; OD]. Shell wall composed of single plate; basis membranous, in form of short peduncle. *Rec.*, Andaman Is.
- Tetralbanus** CORNWALL, 1941, p. 227 [*T. polygenus*; OD]. Shell wall of 4 plates including rostral plate, carina, and 2 laterals; parietes with single row of parietal tubes; radii solid, well developed; basis calcareous with radial tubes; inner surface of parietes ribbed. *Rec.*, Ecuador.—FIG. 118A,1. \*T. *polygenus*, Puna I.;  $\times 5.5$  (after Cornwall, 1941).

#### Subfamily TETRACLITINAE Gruvel, 1903

[*nom. transl.* NILSSON-CANTELL, 1921 (*ex* Tetraclytinæ GRUVEL, 1903)]

Wall composed of four compartmental plates, including rostral plate, carina, and two laterals; parietes with one row, or more commonly with many irregular rows of parietal tubes; basis usually membranous; labrum with or without moderately developed notch. *Oligo.-Rec.*

**Tetraclita** SCHUMACHER, 1817, p. 91 [*Balanus squamosus* BRUGUÈRE, 1789, p. 170 [= *Tetraclita squamulosa* SCHUMACHER, 1817]; OD] [= *Conia* LEACH, 1817; *Asemus* RANZANI, 1817; *Polytrema* FÉRUSAC, 1822]. Characters of subfamily. *Oligo.-Rec.*, all seas.

**T. (Tetraclita)**. Two or more irregularly arranged rows of parietal tubes; radii inconspicuous; adult shell externally concurrent in some specimens; scutum with prominent adductor ridge, and crests for lateral depressor muscle; tergum narrow, elongate. ?*Mio.-?Plio.*, *Pleist.-Rec.*, W. Ind.O.-W. Pac.-E. Pac.-SW. Atl.-S. Afr. — FIG.

119,2. *T. (T.) squamosa rubescens* DARWIN, 1854, Rec., USA (Calif.); 2a, shell,  $\times 1.5$ ; 2b, basal edge of wall, enl. (39).

**T. (Tesseropora)** PILSBRY, 1916, p. 259 [\**Conia rosea* KRAUSS, 1848, p. 136; OD]. Parietes of adult usually with single row of large parietal tubes; some with 1 or 2 secondary rows of small tubes; radii solid. *Oligo.*(Lattorf.)-Rec., W.Pac.-Carib.-Medit.-E.Afr.—FIG. 119,1. \**T. (T.) rosea* (KRAUSS), Rec., ?S.Afr.; 1a, shell,  $\times 1$ ; 1b, basal edge of wall, enl. (39).

**T. (Tetraclitella)** HIRO, 1939, p. 273 [\**Lepas purpurascens* WOOD, 1815, p. 55; OD]. Parietes with more than one row of irregularly arranged parietal tubes; radii broad, with nearly horizontal summits and interseptal tubes; scutum

broad with poorly developed adductor ridge and without crests for lateral depressor muscles; tergum short, broad. Rec., W.Pac.-Hawaiian Is.-W. Indies-Madras.—FIG. 119,4. *T. (T.) divisa* NILSSON-CANTELL, Hawaii; 4a, shell from above,  $\times 12$ ; 4b, view from below of basal margin on interior, enl. (Newman, n).

Subfamily CHELONIBIINAE Pilsbry, 1916

Six compartmental plates in shell wall, including tripartite rostral plate, two laterals, two carinolaterals, and carina; sheath extending to base of shell, forming inner wall of body chamber; sutures uniting rostrum and rostral plate; compartmental plates

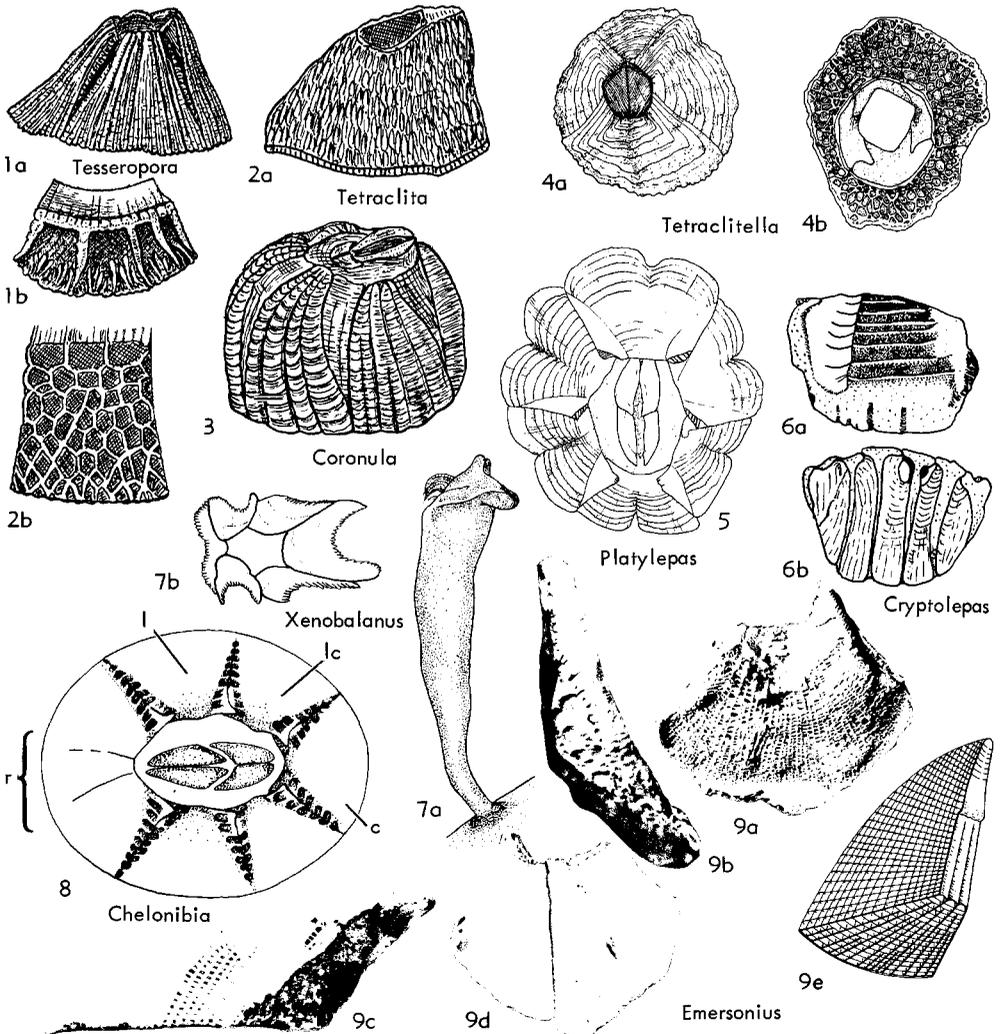


FIG. 119. Balanidae (Tetraclitinae) (1-2, 4), (Chelonibiinae) (8), (Coronulinae) (3, 5-7), (Emersoniinae) (9) (p. R287-R290). [Explanation: c, carina; l, latus; lc, latus (carinal); r, rostrum.]

with cavity between outer lamina and sheath partially filled by lamellar plates normal to shell wall; basis membranous; opercular valves smaller than orifice; articular ridge of scutum chitinous. *L.Mio.-Rec.*

**Chelonibia** LEACH, 1817, p. 68 [*\*Lepas testudinaria* LINNÉ, 1757, p. 668; SD PILSBRY, 1916]. Diagnosis as for subfamily. [On turtles, sea snakes, manatees, and crabs.] *L.Mio.(Aquitain.)-Rec.*, temp. and tropic seas.—FIG. 119,8. *\*C. testudinaria* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*, Baja Calif.;  $\times 1$  (Newman, n).

#### Subfamily CORONULINAE Leach, 1825

[*nom. transl.* PILSBRY, 1916 (*ex Coronuladae* LEACH, 1825)]

Six compartmental plates in shell wall, including rostral plate, two laterals, two carinolaterals, and carina; opercular valves, when present, smaller than orifice, not articulating; sheath extending nearly to base, but with inner lamina present below; basis membranous; shell attached to marine animals. *U.Mio.-Rec.*

**Coronula** LAMARCK, 1802, p. 464 [*\*Lepas diadema* LINNÉ, 1767, p. 1108; SD PILSBRY, 1916] [= *Diadema* SCHUMACHER, 1817; *Diadema* RANZANI, 1817; *Cetopirus* RANZANI, 1817; *Polylepas* KLEIN, 1825; *Coronulites* PARKINSON, 1833; *Polylopus* MÖRCH, 1852; *Ceteopirus* MÖRCH, 1852; *Flabelcorona* DE GREGORIO, 1895]. Body contained in shell wall composed of 6 equal-sized compartmental plates; opercular valves present; parietes with similar structure throughout, without internal midribs; radiating accordion-like folds of parietes (ribs) ending in T-shaped flanges forming exterior of wall; radii well developed; sheath smooth. [On cetaceans.] *U.Mio.-Rec.*, cosmop.

**C. (Coronula)**. Orifice of body chamber larger than basal openings; sheath as long as inner wall; radiating ribs on either side of sutures unbranched or asymmetrically branched; opposed sides of terminal flanges crenulate; radii less than half thickness of compartmental plates, leaving cavity between radii and adjacent alae. *U.Mio.-Rec.*, N. Am.-S. Am.-Eu.-Australasia-Japan.—FIG. 119,3. *\*C. (C.) diadema* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*, Arctic;  $\times 1$  (39).

**C. (Cetopirus)** RANZANI, 1817, p. 276 [*\*Ceteopirus complanatus* MÖRCH, 1852, p. 67 (= *Ceteopirus balaenaris* RANZANI, 1817); OD]. Orifice of body chamber equal to or smaller than basal opening; sheath shorter than inner wall; branches of sutural ribs symmetrical; opposed sides of terminal flanges not crenulate; radii almost as thick as compartments, filling cavity between adjacent plates. *Pleist.*, USA (Ore.); *Rec.*, S. Hemis.-Norway-?USA (Calif.).

**Cryptolepas** DALL, 1872, p. 300 [*\*C. rachianecti*;

OD]. Body contained in shell wall; opercular valves present; parietes with similar sculpture throughout, without internal mid-ribs; radiating ribs of parietes with or without terminal T-shaped flanges; radii well developed; sheath transversely grooved. *U.Pleist.-Rec.*, N.Pac.—FIG. 119,6. *C. murata* ZULLO, *U.Pleist.*, Baja Calif.; *6a*, inner view of compartmental plate showing grooved sheath,  $\times 3$ ; *6b*, bottom view of same showing T-shaped terminal flanges,  $\times 3$  (Zullo, 1961).

**Cylindrolepas** PILSBRY, 1916, p. 287 [*\*C. darwini-ana*; OD]. Cylindrical shell with orifice and basal opening of same size; bases of compartmental plates obtusely dentate, with median tooth in each compartmental plate largest, slightly inflected; sheath long; basis and opercular valves as in *Platylepas*. *Rec.*, ?W. Indies-USA (Hawaii)-E. Pac.

**Platylepas** GRAY, 1825, p. 105 [*\*Lepas hexastylus* FABRICIUS, 1798, p. 35; OD] [= *Columellina* BIVONA, 1832]. Conic shell wall composed of 6 compartmental plates, each with internal, downward projecting median rib; basis membranous, supported by median ribs; sheath short; opercular valves occupying entire orifice. *U.Pleist.*, USA (Fla.-Calif.); *Rec.*, warm temp. and tropic seas.—FIG. 119,5. *\*P. hexastylus* (FABRICIUS), *Rec.*, Baja Calif.;  $\times 17$  (Newman, n).

**Stephanolepas** FISCHER, 1886, p. 193 [*\*S. muricata*; OD]. Body contained in globoconic (young) or tubular (adult) shell wall composed of 6 compartmental plates; opercular valves not distinctly articulated; parietes with median, longitudinally ridged area flanked by spinose areas bearing horizontally flattened projections irregularly arranged in transverse rings; basal opening smaller than orifice; sheath 0.7 length of inner wall. *Rec.*, Indochina-Ceylon-USA (Calif.).

**Stomatolepas** PILSBRY, 1910, p. 304 [*\*S. praegustator*; OD]. Wall bowl-shaped, with orifice larger than basal opening; composed of 6 compartmental plates, each with external median sulcus; sheath long, transversely grooved, without distinct lower edge; opercular valves thin, long, narrow; basis membranous. *Rec.*, Medit.-W. Indies-Japan.

**Tubicinella** LAMARCK, 1802, p. 461 [*\*T. major*; OD]. Body contained in elongate, tubular shell wall composed of 6 equal compartmental plates; parietes similar in structure throughout, without internal mid-ribs or radial ribs or parietal folds on exterior of parietes; radii narrow; sheath transversely grooved. [On whales.] *Rec.*, S. Hemis.-Faroe Is.

**Xenobalanus** STEENSTRUP, 1851, pl. 3, fig. 11-15 [*\*X. globicipitis*; OD] [= *Siphonicella* DARWIN, 1852]. Lengthened body not contained in shell wall; shell star-shaped, small, composed of 6 compartmental plates embedded in skin of host; opercular valves absent. *Rec.*, Atl.-NE. Pac.—FIG. 119,7. *\*X. globicipitis*, Calif.; *7a*, shell,  $\times 2$  (Newman, n); *7b*, wall plates embedded in skin of cetacean seen from above, enl. (Newman, n).

## Subfamily EMERSONIINAE Ross, 1967

[*nom. correct.* NEWMAN & ZULLO, herein (*pro* Emersoniinae Ross, 1967)]

Known from single rostral plate, paries and radii of which are permeated by tubes divided into cubes by uniformly spaced transverse septa. Unique, regularly spaced, intercalated laminae occurring between inner and outer laminae, distinguish this from other known Balanomorphs. *U.Eoc.*

**Emersonius** Ross, 1967, p. 7 [*\*E. cybosyrinx*; OD; in Ross & NEWMAN, 1967]. Characteristics of subfamily. *U.Eoc.*, USA (Fla.).—FIG. 119,9. *\*E. cybosyrinx*; 9a, internal surface of rostrum,  $\times 1.6$ ; 9b, lateral view of articulating surface of left radius, showing arborescent teeth,  $\times 3$ ; 9c, cross section taken at primary septum showing transverse septa, intercalated laminae, inner and outer laminae,  $\times 2$ ; 9d, external surface of rostral plate showing radii slightly below surface of parietes and the exposed transverse septa in tubes of right radius,  $\times 1.5$ ; 9e, schematic projection of wall portion depicting relationships of transverse and longitudinal septa (90a).

## Order APODA Darwin, 1854

Single specimen of a parasitic crustacean described by DARWIN (1851-54), not encountered since. Body markedly segmented,

but bearing only two pairs of appendages; mandibles, with fused first and possible ?second maxillae; and ?first antennae. Presumed hermaphroditic. Attached by mouth parts within the mantle cavity to prosoma of a barnacle. [Assignment to Cirripedia questioned by KRÜGER (1940); interpreted as a copepod, or more likely an epicaridean isopod (74).] *Rec.*

**Proteolepas** DARWIN, 1854; p. 589 [*\*P. bivincta*; OD]. Parasitic within mantle cavity of *Heterolepas cornuta* (DARWIN), *Rec.*, W.Indies [Fig. 84, 1a-d].

**Y-larvae.** Metanauplii inferred to be those of Apoda. If Cirripedia, equally and likely of Ascothoracica; if not, possibly of Branchiura.

**Y-larvae** HANSEN, 1899, p. 41. Metanauplii lacking frontolateral horns but otherwise resembling those of cirripeds. [Not assignable to any group in which larval forms are well known, and therefore, relegated to Apoda by HANSEN.] *Rec.*, North Sea-W.Indies-S.Atl. [Fig. 85,2].

**Y-larvae** STEUER, 1904, p. 3. Metanauplii comparable to HANSEN'S *Y-larvae*, considered to be those of Apoda and named *Proteolepas hanseni* by STEUER. *Rec.*, Medit.

**Y-larvae** McMURRICH, 1917, p. 50. Metanauplii apparently identical to certain of those of HANSEN. Recognized as probably of cirripeds, but assignment to Apoda considered highly speculative. *Rec.*, E.Atl.

## REFERENCES

## Alessandri, G. de

- (1) 1895, *Contribuzione allo studio dei Cirripedia fossili d'Italia*: Soc. Geol. Italiana, Boll., v. 13, p. 234-314.
- (2) 1906, *Studi monografici sui Cirripedi fossili d'Italia*: Palaeontographia Italica, v. 12, p. 207-324, pl. 13-18.

## Annandale, Nelson

- (3) 1909, *An account of the Indian Cirripedia Pedunculata*: Indian Museum, Mem., v. 2, p. 61-137, 2 pl.
- (4) 1910, *The Indian barnacles of the subgenus Smilium, with remarks on the classification of the genus Scalpellum*: Indian Museum, Records, v. 5, p. 145-155, 2 fig.

## Barnard, K. H.

- (5) 1924, *Contributions to the crustacean fauna of South Africa*: South Afr. Museum, Annals, pt. 1, v. 20, 103 p., 1 pl.

## Barnes, H., &amp; Costlow, J. D.

- (6) 1961, *The larval stages of Balanus balanus (L.) da Costa*: Marine Biol. Assoc. United Kingdom, Jour., v. 41, p. 59-68.

## Bassindale, R.

- (7) 1936, *The developmental stages of three English barnacles, Balanus balanoides (Linn.), Chthamalus stellatus (Poli) and Verruca stroemia (O. F. Müller)*: Zool. Soc. London, Proc., 1936, p. 57-74.

## Batham, E. J.

- (8) 1946, *Pollicipes spinosus Quoy and Gaimard. II. Embryonic and larval development*: Royal Soc. New Zealand, Trans., v. 75, p. 405-418, pl. 36-43.

## ———, &amp; Tomlinson, J. T.

- (9) 1965, *On Cryptophialus melampygos Berndt, a small boring barnacle of the order Ascothoracica abundant in some New Zealand*

- molluscs*: Royal Soc. New Zealand, Zoology, Trans., v. 7, p. 141-154, 23 fig., 1 pl.
- Bernard, F. J., & Lane, C. E.**  
 (10) 1962, *Early settlement and metamorphosis of the barnacle Balanus amphitrite niveus*: Jour. Morphology, v. 110, p. 19-30, 5 pl.
- Berndt, W.**  
 (11) 1907, *Über das System der Acrothoracica*: Arch. Naturgesch., v. 73, p. 287-289.
- Bigelow, M. A.**  
 (12) 1902, *The early development of Lepas. A study of cell-lineage and germ layers*: Harvard Univ., Museum Comp. Zoology, Bull., v. 40, 144 p., 12 pl.
- Bocquet-Védrine, J.**  
 (13) 1961, *Monographie de Chthamalophilus delagei J. Bocquet-Védrine, rhizocephale parasite de Chthamalus stellatus (Poli)*: Cahiers Biol. Mar., v. 2, p. 455-593.  
 (13a) 1967, *Un nouveau rhizocephale parasite de cirripède: Microgaster balani n. gen. n. sp.*: Acad. Sci. Paris, Comptes Rendus, v. 265, p. 1630-1632.
- Bosquet, J.**  
 (14) 1857, *Notice sur quelques cirripèdes récemment découverts dans le terrain crétacé du Duché de Limbourg*: Nat. Verhand. Maatsch. Wet., v. 13, 4 to., 36 p., 3 pl., 1 table (Haarlem).
- Brattström, H.**  
 (15) 1947, *On the ecology of the ascothoracid Ulophysema öresundense Brattström*: Lunds Univ. Årsskrift, new ser., sec. 2, v. 43, no. 7, 75 p.  
 (16) 1948, *On the larval development of the ascothoracid Ulophysema öresundense Brattström*: Same, v. 44, 70 p.
- Broch, Hjalmar**  
 (17) 1912, *Die Plattenentwidelung bei Scalpulum stroemia M. Sars*: [K.] Norske Vidensk. Selsk., Skrifter, 14 p., 7 fig. (Trondhjem).  
 (18) 1922, *Papers from Dr. Th. Mortensen's Pacific expedition 1914-16. X. Studies on Pacific cirripeds*: Vidensk. Medd. Dansk. Naturh. Foren., v. 73, 358 p., 77 fig.  
 (19) 1924, *Cirripedia Thoracica von Norwegen und dem norwegischen Nordmeere. Eine systematische und biologisch-tiergeographische Studie*: Vidensk. Skrifter, I. Math.-Naturv. Kl., v. 17, 121 p., 35 fig., 3 pl.  
 (20) 1927, *Plattenhomologien, Ontogenie und Phylogenie der Cirripeden*: Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 8, p. 247-262, fig. 1-6.  
 (21) 1927, *Cirripedia*: in Kükenthal & Krumbach, Handbuch Zoologie, v. 3, pt. 5, p. 503-552, fig. 463-519, de Gruyter (Berlin).  
 (22) 1931, *Indomalayan Cirripedia*: Vidensk. Medd. Dansk. Naturh. Foren., v. 91, 146 p.
- Calman, W. T.**  
 (23) 1909, *Crustacea*: in E. R. Lankester (ed.), A treatise on zoology, v. 7, Appendiculata, fasc. 3, 346 p., 194 fig., Adam & Charles Black (London).
- Cannon, H. G.**  
 (24) 1947, *On the anatomy of the pedunculate barnacle Lithotrya*: Royal Soc. London, Philos. Trans., ser. B, no. 595, v. 233, p. 89-136.
- Cavolini, F.**  
 (25) 1787, *Sulla generazioni dei Pesci e dei Granchi*: 186 p., the author (Napoli).
- Chave, K. E.**  
 (26) 1954, *Aspects of the biochemistry of magnesium. 1. Calcareous marine organisms*: Jour. Geology, v. 62, p. 266-283.
- Chernyshev, B. I.**  
 (27) 1931, *Cirripeden aus dem Bassin des Donez und von Kusnetsk*: Zool. Anzeiger, v. 92, p. 26-28, 7 fig.
- Clarke, F. W., & Wheeler, W. C.**  
 (28) 1917, *The inorganic constituents of marine invertebrates*: U.S. Geol. Survey, Prof. Paper 102, 56 p.
- Cornwall, I. E.**  
 (29) 1953, *The central nervous system of barnacles (Cirripedia)*: Fisheries Res. Bd. Canada, Jour., v. 1, p. 76-84.  
 (30) 1962, *The identification of barnacles with further figures and notes*: Canad. Jour. Zoology, v. 40, p. 612-624.
- Costa, E. M. da**  
 (31) 1778, *Historia naturalis Testaceorum Britanniae*: 254 p., 200 fig., 17 pl., the author (London).
- Costlow, J. D.**  
 (32) 1956, *Shell development in Balanus improvisus Darwin*: Jour. Morphology, v. 99, p. 359-400, pl. 1-8.
- , & Bookhout, C. G.  
 (33) 1957, *Larval development of Balanus eburneus in the laboratory*: Biol. Bull., v. 112, p. 313-324.
- Coutière, H.**  
 (34) 1902, *Sur un nouveau type de rhizocephale, parasite des Alpheidae*: Acad. Sci. Paris, Comptes Rendus, v. 134, p. 913-915.
- Crisp, D. J.**  
 (35) 1962, *The larval stages of Balanus hameri (Ascanius 1767)*: Crustaceana, v. 4, p. 123-130.
- Dahl, E.**  
 (36) 1956, *Some crustacean relationships*: Hanström Festschrift, p. 138-147, Lund Univ. (Lund).

**Darwin, Charles**

- (37) 1851, *A monograph on the subclass Cirripedia with figures of all the species. The Lepadidae; or, pedunculated cirripedes*: 400 p., 10 pl., Ray Soc. Publ. (London).
- (38) 1851, *A monograph on the fossil Lepadidae, or, pedunculated cirripedes of Great Britain*: Palaeontograph. Soc., Mon., 88 p., 5 pl.
- (39) 1854, *A monograph on the subclass Cirripedia, with figures of all the species*: 684 p., 30 pl., Ray Soc. Publ. (London).
- (40) 1854, *A monograph on the fossil Balanidae and Verrucidae of Great Britain*: Paleontograph. Soc., Mon., 44 p., 2 pl.

**Davadie, Claude**

- (41) 1963, *Étude (systématique et structure) des balanes (fossiles) d'Europe et d'Afrique*: Centre Natl. Rech. Scient., 150 p., 56 fig.

**Delage, Yves**

- (42) 1884, *Evolution de la sacculine (Sacculina carcini Thomps.) Crustacé endoparasite de l'ordre nouveau*: Arch. Zoologie Expérimentale Générale, ser. 2, v. 2, p. 417-736, pl. 22-30.

**Doochin, H. D.**

- (43) 1951, *The morphology of Balanus improvisus Darwin and Balanus amphitrite niveus Darwin during initial attachment and metamorphosis*: Marine Sci. Gulf. Carib., Bull., v. 1, p. 15-39.

**Gerstaecker, Adolf**

- (44) 1866-79, *Arthropoda*: in H. G. Bronn, Klassen u. Ordnungen, v. 5, Abt. 1, Crustacea, 1, Hälfte, Rankenfüssler: Cirripedia Burm., p. 406-589, 1 fig., 6 pl.

**Giard, Alfred**

- (45) 1891, *Observations sur les notes précédents*: Biol. France Belgique, Bull., v. 23, p. 96-99.

**Gray, J. E.**

- (46) 1825, *A synopsis of the genera of cirripedes arranged in natural families with a description of some new species*: Ann. Phil., v. 10, p. 97-107.

**Groom, Theo.**

- (47) 1894, *The life history of the rock barnacle (Balanus). Part I*: Jour. Marine Zool. Microscop., v. 1, p. 81-86, pl. 8.
- (48) 1895, *The life history of the rock barnacle (Balanus). Part II*: Same, v. 2, p. 1-6, pl. 1.

**Gruvel, A.**

- (49) 1905, *Monographie des cirripèdes ou théostracés*: 472 p., 427 fig., Masson et Cie (Paris).

**Häfele, F.**

- (50) 1911, *Anatomie und Entwicklung eines neuen Rhizocephalen, Thompsonia japonica*: in Dolfein (ed.), Beiträge zur Natur-

gesch. Ostasiens, Abhandl. math.-phys. [K.K.] Bayer Akad. Wiss., Suppl. 2, v. 7, 25 p., 2 pl.

**Hansen, H. J.**

- (51) 1899, *Die Cladoceren und Cirripeden der Plankton-Expedition*: Ergebn. Plankton-Exped. Humboldt-Stif., v. 2, p. 15-58 (Cirripedia only), pl. 3, 1 map (Kiel & Leipzig).

**Henry, D. P., & McLaughlin, P. A.**

- (52) 1967, *A revision of the subgenus Solidobalanus Hoek (Cirripedia, Thoracica) including a description of a new species with complementary males*: Crustaceana, v. 12, p. 43-58.

**Hoek, P. P. C.**

- (53) 1883, *Report on the Cirripedia collected by H. M. S. Challenger during the years 1873-76*: Rept. Sci. Results Explor. Voyage H. M. S. Challenger, v. 8, Zoology, pt. 25, 169 p., 13 pl.
- (54) 1907, *The Cirripedia of the Siboga-Expedition*: Siboga-Expedition, Mon. 31a, xxv+127 p., 2 fig., 10 pl., E. J. Brill (Leiden).
- (55) 1913, *The Cirripedia of the Siboga Expedition. B. Cirripedia Sessilia*: Same, Mon. 31b, p. 129-275, 17 pl.

**Ichikawa, A., & Yanagimachi, R.**

- (56) 1958, *Studies on the sexual organization of the Rhizocephala. 1. The nature of the "testes" of Peltogasterella socialis Krüger*: Annot. Zool. Japon., v. 31, p. 82-96, fig. 1-11.

**Joysey, K. A.**

- (57) 1959, *Probable cirripede, phoronid, and echinoid burrows within a Cretaceous echinoid test*: Palaeontology, v. 1, p. 397-400, pl. 70.

**Kossmann, R.**

- (58) 1872, *Beiträge zur Anatomie der Schmarotzende Rankenfusser*: Arbeiten Zool. Inst. Zootom. Würzburg, v. 2, p. 97-120, 2 pl.
- (59) 1873, *Suctorina und Lepadidae*: Same, v. 3, p. 179-202, 2 pl.

**Krüger, Paul**

- (60) 1920, *Studien an Cirripeden I*: Zeitschr. Indukt. Abstammungs- u. Vererbungs., v. 24, p. 105-158.
- (61) 1940, *Ascothoracida*: in H. G. Bronn, Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs, v. 5, div. (Abt.) 1, fasc. (Buch) 3, pt. (Teil) 4, p. 1-5, fig. 1-45; *Apoda*, v. 5, div. 1, fasc. 3, pt. 4, p. 46; *Cirripedia*, same, v. 5, div. 1, fasc. 3, pt. 3, p. 1-112, fig. 1-114; p. 113-272, fig. 115-263; p. 273-432, fig. 264-358; p. 433-560, fig. 359-391.

**Lacaze-Duthiers, H.**

- (62) 1880, *Historie de la Laura gerardiae, type nouveau de crustacé parasite*: Archiv. Zool. Experimentale et Générale, v. 8, p. 337-381.

**Ladd, H. S.**

- (63) 1959, *Reexamination of Palaeocreusia devonica Clarke*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 33, p. 963-964.

**Leach, W. E.**

- (64) 1817, *Distribution systématique de la classe des cirripèdes*: Jour. Physique, v. 85, p. 67-69.
- (65) 1825, *A tabular view of the genera composing the class Cirripedia, with descriptions of the species of Otton, Cincras, and Clypra*: Zool. Jour., v. 2, p. 208-215.

**Lilljeborg, W.**

- (66) 1861, *Liriope et Peltogaster, H. Rathke*: Nova Acta Reg. Scient. Soc. Upsaliensis, ser. 3, v. 3, p. 1-35.
- (67) 1861, *Supplement au mémoire sur les genres Liriope et Peltogaster, H. Rathke*: Same, ser. 3, v. 3, p. 73-102.

**Linné, Carl von**

- (68) 1758, *Caroli Linnaei Systema Naturae: Regnum animale*: 10th edit., v. 1, 823 p., Brit. Museum (Nat. History) (London).

**McMurrich, J. P.**

- (69) 1917, *Notes on some crustacean forms occurring in the plankton of Passamaquoddy Bay*: Royal Soc. Canada, Trans. and Proc., ser. 3, v. 11, p. 47-61.

**Madsen, N., & Wolff, T.**

- (70) 1965, *Evidence of the occurrence of Ascothoracica (parasitic cirripèdes) in Upper Cretaceous*: Medd. Dansk Geol. Foren., v. 15, p. 556-558, pl. 1.

**Moyse, J.**

- (71) 1963, *A comparison of the value of various flagellates and diatoms as food for barnacle larvae*: Jour. Can. Internat. Explor. Mer., v. 28, p. 175-187.

**Müller, Fritz**

- (72) 1862, *Die Rhizocephalen, eine neue Gruppe schmarotzender Kruster*: Arch. Naturgesch., v. 28, p. 1-9, pl. 1.
- (73) 1863, *Die zweite Entwicklungsstufe der Wurzelkrebse (Rhizocephalen)*: Wiegmann, Archiv, v. 29, p. 24-33.

**Newman, W. A.**

- (74) 1962, *Origin and evolution of the Cirripedia*: in I. Gordon, 1962, Conference on the evolution of Crustacea, Crustaceana, v. 4, p. 166.
- (75) 1965, *Prospectus on larval cirripèd setation formulae*: Same, v. 9, p. 51-56.

**———, Zullo, V. A., & Wainwright, S. A.**

- (76) 1967, *A critique on recent concepts of growth in Balanomorphs (Cirripedia, Thoracica)*: Crustaceana, v. 12, p. 167-178.

**Nilsson-Cantell, C. A.**

- (77) 1921, *Cirripèdien Studien. Zur Kenntnis der Biologie, Anatomie und Systematik dieser Gruppe*: Zool. Bidrag Uppsala, v. 7, p. 75-390.
- (78) 1930, *Thoracic cirripèdes collected in 1925-1927*: Discovery Reports, v. 2, p. 223-260, fig. 1-12, pl. 1.

**Noll, F. C.**

- (79) 1872, *Kochlorine hamata N. ein bohrendes Cirripèd*: Senckenberg. Naturf. Gesell., Bericht. 1872-73, p. 50-58.

**Pilsbry, H. A.**

- (80) 1907, *The barnacles (Cirripedia) contained in the collections of the U.S. National Museum*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Bull., v. 60, 122 p., 11 pl.
- (81) 1908, *On the classification of scalpelliform barnacles*: Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia, Proc., v. 60, p. 104-111, fig. 1.
- (82) 1911, *Remarks on new cirripèdes*: same, v. 63, p. 170-173.
- (83) 1916, *The sessile barnacles (Cirripedia) contained in the collections of the U.S. National Museum; including a monograph of the American species*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Bull., v. 93, p. 1-366, pl. 1-76.

**Pope, J. K.**

- (84) 1960, *Sokolophocoleus, a new name for the machaeridian genus, Lophocoleus Ruedemann*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 34, p. 1054.

**Potts, F. A.**

- (85) 1912, *Mycetomorpha, a new rhizocephalan (with a note on the sexual condition of Sylon)*: Zool. Jahrb. Abt. Syst., v. 33, p. 575-594, 2 fig., 2 pl.
- (86) 1915, *On the rhizocephalan genus Thompsonia and its relation to the evolution of the group*: Carnegie Inst. Washington, Dept. Marine Biology, v. 8, p. 1-32.

**Pyefinch, K. A.**

- (87) 1939, *Ascothoracica (Crustacea, Cirripedia)*: in John Murray Exped. 1933-34, Sci. Rept. Brit. Museum (Nat. History), v. 5, p. 247-262.

**Reinhard, E. G.**

- (88) 1942, *The reproductive role of the complementary males of Peltogaster*: Jour. Morphology, v. 70, p. 389-402.

**Rodda, P. U., & Fisher, W. L.**

- (89) 1962, *Upper Paleozoic acrothoracic barnacles from Texas*: Texas Jour. Sci., v. 14, p. 460-479.

**Ross, Arnold**

- (90) 1965, *A new cirriped from the Eocene of Georgia*: Florida Acad. Sci., Quart. Jour., v. 28, p. 59-67.

## ———, &amp; Newman, W. A.

- (90a) 1967, *Eocene Balanidae of Florida, including a new genus and species with a unique plan of "turtle-barnacle" organization*: Am. Museum Novitates, no. 2288, p. 1-21, text fig. 1-7.

**Runnström, S.**

- (91) 1925, *Zur Biologie und Entwicklung von Balanus balanoides (Linné)*: Bergens Museum Aarbok, v. 5, p. 1-40, 22 fig.

**Schlaudt, C. M., & Young, Keith**

- (92) 1960, *Acrothoracic barnacles from the Texas Permian and Cretaceous*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 34, p. 903-907, fig. 1-3, pl. 119-120.

**Seguenza, Giuseppe**

- (93) 1873-76, *Ricerche paleontologiche intorno ai cirripedi terziarii della Provincia di Messina. Con appendice intorno ai Cirripedi viventi nel Mediterraneo, e sui fossili terziarii dell'Italia meridionale. Pt. i, Balanidi e Verrucidi, 1873, Pt. ii, Lepadidi, 1876*: Accad. Pontaniana, Atti, v. 10, p. 265-481, pl. A, B, i-x.

**Smith, G.**

- (94) 1906, *Rhizocephala*: Stazione Zool. Napoli (Fauna u. Flora Golf. Neapel), Mon. 29, 123 p., 8 pl.

**Southward, A., & Crisp, D. J.**

- (95) 1963, *Catalogue of main marine fouling organisms. I. Barnacles*: 46 p., McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc. (New York).

**Steuer, A.**

- (96) 1903, *Über eine neue cirripedien Larvae aus dem Golfe von Trieste*: Zool. Inst. Univ. Wien, Arbeit., v. 15, 6 p.

**Taylor, B. A.**

- (97) 1965, *Antian cirripedes from Alexander Island*: Brit. Antarctic Survey, Bull., v. 7, p. 37-42.

**Thompson, J. V.**

- (98) 1830, *Sur les cirripèdes*: Férussac, Bull. Sci. Nat., v. 22, p. 331-333.
- (99) 1836, *Natural history and metamorphosis of an anomalous crustacean parasite of Carcinus maenas, the Sacculina carcini*: Entom. Mag., v. 3, p. 452-456.

**Tomlinson, J. T.**

- (100) 1960, *Cryptophialus coronatus, a new species of acrothoracic barnacle from Dakar*: Bull. Inst. Français d'Afrique Noire, ser. A, v. 22, p. 402-410.
- (101) 1963, *Acrothoracic barnacles in Paleozoic*

*myalinids*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 37, p. 164-166, fig. 1, pl. 23.

- (102) 1963, *Two new acrothoracic cirripeds from Japan*: Seto Marine Biol. Lab., Publ., v. 11, p. 263-280.

## ———, &amp; Newman, W. A.

- (103) 1960, *Lithoglyptes spinatus, a new burrowing barnacle from Jamaica*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 112, p. 517-526.

**Utinomi, H.**

- (103a) 1950, *A new remarkable coral-boring acrothoracic cirriped*: Coll. Sci. Univ. Kyoto, Mem., ser. 8, v. 19, p. 87-93, pl. 1.

- (103b) 1950, *General account of Acrothoracica*: in Nakamura, Some problems of modern biology, 428-461 (in Japanese) (Osaka).

- (104) 1957, *Studies on the Cirripedia Acrothoracica. I. Biology and external morphology of the female of Berndtia purpurea Utinomi*: Seto Marine Biol. Lab., Publ., v. 6, p. 1-26, 2 pl.

- (105) 1960, *Studies on the Cirripedia Acrothoracica. II. Internal anatomy of the female of Berndtia purpurea Utinomi*: Same, v. 8, p. 223-279, 3 pl.

- (106) 1961, *Studies on the Cirripedia Acrothoracica. III. Development of the female and male of Berndtia purpurea Utinomi*: Same, v. 9, p. 413-446.

- (107) 1962, *Gorgonolaureus, a new genus of ascothoracic barnacle endoparasitic in Octocorallia*: U.S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 113, p. 457-464.

**Veillet, A.**

- (108) 1962, *Sur la sexualité de Sylon hippolytes M. Sars, Cirripède parasite de crevettes*: Acad. Sci. Paris, Comptes Rendus, v. 254, p. 176-177.

**Voight, E.**

- (109) 1959, *Endosacculus moltkiaie, n.g. n.sp. ein vermutlicher fossiler Ascothoracide (Entomostr.) als Cystenbildner bei der Oktochoralle Moltkia minuta*: Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 33, p. 211-223, 2 pl.

**Wagin, V. L.**

- (110) 1937, *Die Stellung der Ascothoracida ord. nov. (Cirripedia, Ascothoracica Gravel, 1905) im System der Entomostraca*: Acad. Sci. USSR, Comptes Rendus, v. 15, p. 273-278.

- (111) 1946, *Ascothorax ophiocetis and the position of Ascothoracida Wagin in the system of the Entomostraca*: Acta Zool. Stockholm, v. 27, p. 155-267.

**Wills, L. J.**

- (112) 1963, *Cyprilepas holmi Wills 1962, a pedunculate cirripede from the Upper Silurian of Oesel, Esthonia*: Palaeontology, v. 6, p. 161-165, pl. 22.

**Withers, T. H.**

- (113) 1923, *Die Cirripedien der Kreide Rügens*: Univ. Greifswald, Geol. Pal. Inst., Abhandl., v. 3, 54 p., 3 pl.
- (114) 1924, *The fossil cirripedes of New Zealand*: New Zealand Geol. Survey, Paleont. Bull. 10, 47 p., 8 pl., 2 maps.
- (115) 1926, *Catalogue of the Machaeridia (Tur-rilepas and its allies) in the Department of Geology*: 8 vo., xvi+99 p., 8 pl., Brit. Museum (Nat. History) (London).
- (116) 1928, *Catalogue of fossil Cirripedia in the Department of Geology, I. Triassic and Jurassic*: xii+154 p., 12 pl., Brit. Museum (Nat. History) (London).
- (117) 1932, *Barnacles from Magnetic Island, North Queensland*: Queensland Museum, Mem., v. 10, p. 122-124.
- (118) 1935, *Catalogue of fossil Cirripedia in the Department of Geology. II. Cretaceous*: xiii+534 p., 50 pl., Brit. Museum (Nat. History) (London).

- (119) 1936, *Miocene cirripedes (Scalpellum and Tessarelasma n.g.) from India*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 10, v. 18, p. 589-593, fig. 1-10.
- (120) 1953, *Catalogue of fossil Cirripedia in the Department of Geology. III. Tertiary*: xvi+396 p., 64 pl., Brit. Museum (Nat. History) (London).

**Yanagimachi, R., & Fujimaki, N.**

- (121) 1967, *Studies on the sexual organization of the Rhizocephala IV. On the nature of the "testis" of Thompsonia*: Annot. Zool. Japan., v. 49, p. 98-104.

**Zullo, V. A.**

- (122) 1960, *Eocene species of the genus Balanus (Cirripedia)*: Geol. Soc. America, Bull., v. 71, p. 2084.
- (123) 1963, *A classification and phylogeny of the Chthamalidae (Cirripedia, Thoracica)*: 16th Internat. Congr. Zoology, v. 1, p. 190.

**MALACOSTRACA**

By H. K. BROOKS, M. F. GLAESSNER, GERHARD HAHN, R. R. HESSLER,  
L. B. HOLTHUIS, R. B. MANNING, R. C. MOORE, and W. D. I. ROLFE

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
PHYLLOCARIDA (W. D. I. Rolfe) .....	R296
EUMALACOSTRACA (R. C. Moore) .....	R332
Eocarida (H. K. Brooks) .....	R332
Syncarida (H. K. Brooks) .....	R345
Peracarida (R. R. Hessler) .....	R360
Eucarida (R. C. Moore) .....	R393
Euphausiacea (R. R. Hessler) .....	R394
Decapoda (M. F. Glaessner) .....	R399
Hoplocarida (R. C. Moore) .....	R533
Palaeostomatopoda (H. K. Brooks) .....	R533
Stomatopoda (L. B. Holthuis and R. B. Manning) .....	R535
SUBCLASS, ORDER, and FAMILY UNCERTAIN .....	R552
REFERENCES FOR MALACOSTRACA .....	R552

## Class MALACOSTRACA Latreille, 1806

[Diagnosis prepared by R. C. MOORE]

Crustaceans with carapace of widely varied form covering all or most of head and trunk regions, but vestigial in some. Head typically bearing paired compound eyes, commonly located at tips of movable stalks, rarely much reduced or lacking, with five pairs of appendages behind eyes, termed antennules (or first antennae), antennae (or second antennae), mandibles, maxillules, and maxillae. Trunk composed of well-differentiated thoracic and abdominal tagmata, former having eight somites and latter six (or uncommonly seven), all equipped with paired appendages except seventh abdominal somite, if present. Male genital apertures located on eighth thoracic somite (rarely on seventh) and female genital openings invariably on sixth thoracic somite.

Development usually with metamorphosis, although young seldom are hatched as nauplii. *L.Cam.-Rec.*

Despite exceptional diversity in form and size, malacostracans are joined together by more numerous morphological features in common than can be found in almost any other class of Crustacea. These include 1) the carapace enveloping the thoracic region, 2) movable paired stalked eyes, 3) biramous antennules, possessed by no other crustacean group, 4) flattened scalelike exopod on the antennae, 5) pairs of pereipods adapted for swimming, 6) generally elongate, ventrally flexed abdomen, and 7) commonly developed tail fan composed of uropods and the telson. These characters suggest that the Malacostraca are descendants of crustaceans of so-called caridoid facies, resembling the shrimps.

## PHYLLOCARIDA

By W. D. IAN ROLFE

[Hunterian Museum, University of Glasgow] [Acknowledgments are expressed to H. B. WHITTINGTON, of Harvard University, to whom the author is specially indebted for help and guidance in preparing this chapter; also to H. K. BROOKS, of the University of Florida, and R. R. HESSLER and H. L. SANDERS, of the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, who contributed many ideas and suggestions in discussing Phyllocarida; and numerous museums which loaned specimens for study.]

[Chapter submitted April, 1961; revised 1962, 1963, 1964, 1965, 1966]

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R296
MORPHOLOGY .....	R297
MISIDENTIFICATION .....	R306
ONTOGENY .....	R307
HABITAT, DISTRIBUTION AND HABITS .....	R308
PHYLOGENY .....	R309
CLASSIFICATION .....	R311
SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R312
Subclass Phyllocarida Packard, 1879 .....	R312
Order Leptostraca Claus, 1880 .....	R312
Order Hymenostaca Rolfe, new order .....	R314
Order Archaeostraca Claus, 1888 .....	R315
Phyllocarida order and family uncertain .....	R323
Nonphyllocarid and uncertain genera .....	R328

## INTRODUCTION

Phyllocarids are an important group of malacostracans distinguished by the bivalved nature of their carapace, in this re-

spect being reminiscent of less advanced crustacean assemblages such as the conchostracan branchiopods and the ostracodes. Unlike conchostracans and ostracodes, in which the entire body is enclosed by the two

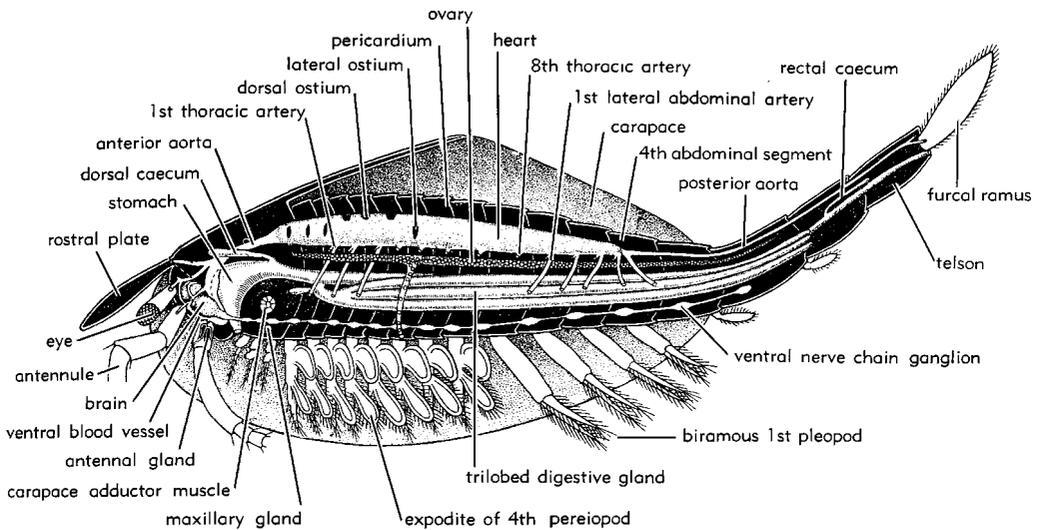


FIG. 120. Idealized figure of female *Nebalia bipes* (FABRICIUS), Rec., showing leptostracan morphology,  $\times 12$  (68, after 271). (From H. G. Cannon, 1960, in Bronn's Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs, v. 5, Abt. 1, Buch 4, Teil 1.)

valves, the carapace of phyllocarids covers only the anterior parts of the body, however, and phyllocarids are relatively much larger than the other groups mentioned. Also, at the front of the phyllocarid carapace is a movably articulated lanceolate rostral plate, which is a distinctive feature.

Appendages of the head, as observed in various genera of Phyllocarida, may project well in front of the carapace margin. In addition to pairs of antennules and antennae, stalked eyes are present and may be seen in side view of individuals. The thorax, which is mainly or entirely concealed by the covering valves, consists of eight short free segments. Commonly, their appendages (thoracopods) are well-developed limbs, long enough to reach beyond the lower margins of the carapace. The abdomen is exposed partly or entirely behind the carapace and consists of seven segments and a telson. In the living phyllocarids (Leptostraca) all except the pretelson segment bear appendages, but in only a few genera of fossil phyllocarids (Archaeostraca) are abdominal appendages known with certainty. The abdominal limbs are moderately short pleopods, adapted for swimming. Appendages of the telson are the two branches of a caudal furca, which are

movably articulated with the telson but unsegmented.

Phyllocarids are distributed from the Lower Cambrian to the Recent and they have wide occurrence geographically. They include the stock from which the higher Malacostraca arose, presumably during the Early Devonian.

## MORPHOLOGY

The chief morphological features of Phyllocarida are shown in Figures 120 and 121 (see also Fig. 124).

### SIZE

The largest leptostracan is *Nebaliopsis*, which reaches a length of about 4 cm.; the other Leptostraca are rarely longer than 12 mm. Many of the Archaeostraca, however, are very large; *Ceratiocaris ludensis* WOODWARD (U.Sil., Eng.) and *Schugurocaris? cornwallisensis damesi* (CHLUPÁČ) (U.Sil., Czech.) reach a length of 75 cm.; other Silurian species of *Ceratiocaris* and *Heroldina rhenana* (BROILI) (L.Dev., Ger.) attaining a length of 60 cm. *C. pyriformis* RYABININ (U.Perm., Perm. region of USSR) and ROTHPLETZ's (1913) phyllocarid (U.Sil., Gotland) have carapace lengths of only 0.8

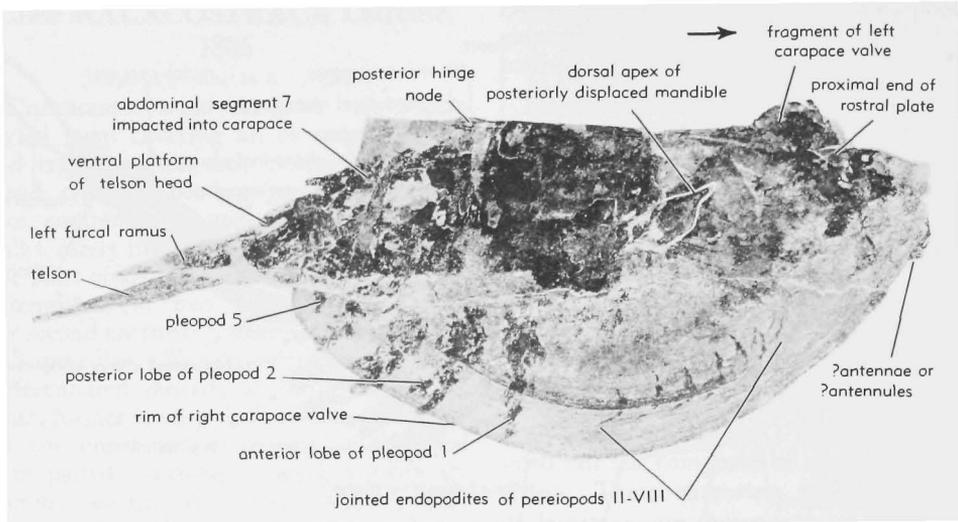


FIG. 121. *Ceratiocaris papilio* SALTER in MURCHISON, M.Sil., Scot.; showing limbs and morphological features of Archaeostraca Ceratiocarina,  $\times 1.5$  (258).

mm. and 0.7 mm. respectively, but neither of these is an undoubted phyllocarid. Possibly the smallest genuine archaeostracan is *C. oklahomensis* (RUEDEMANN) (U.Sil., Okla.), which has a total length of only 8 mm.

### INTEGUMENT AND PRESERVATION

In the Leptostraca the integument is thin and flexible, whitish, and transparent or semiopaque. Typical arthropod cuticular prisms, pore canals and gland-duct openings have been described from the cuticle of *Nebalia* by CLAUS (1888).

Many Paleozoic phyllocarids occur in concretions preserved as a substance that superficially appears to be colophane. This mineraloid has only been proved by analysis in the Middle Silurian *Ceratiocaris papilio*, however, where the dark brown colophane has been partially replaced within the thickness of the cuticle by calcite and dolomite (257). The cuticle of ca. 50 cm.-long specimens of *C. papilio* does not normally exceed 0.6 mm. in thickness, although it is locally thickened in such regions as the tips of the mandibular teeth. Microstructures recognized in the cuticle include moniliform and spiral ?pore canals up to  $17\mu$  in external diameter and up to 4,700 per sq. mm., laminae up to  $7\mu$  thick, "Balkenlagen," and prisms up to  $270\mu$  in diameter. In many

phyllocarids, the cuticle is penetrated by tubules attributable to aquatic thallophyte perforants.

Microstructure is probably detectable in many phyllocarids, and further study might enable the recognition of major stratifications needed to establish stages reached in the intermolt cycle. Prismatic structure has been detected in *Aristozoe*, *Caryocaris*, *Concavicaris*, *Dictyocaris*, *Echinocaris*, and *Montecaris*. Fossil phyllocarids, such as *Ceratiocaris*, probably had a flexible cuticle in life, although it is impossible to be certain of this in view of the ravages wrought by selective diagenesis. Others, such as *Aristozoe* and *Dithyrocaris paradoxides* (DE KONINCK), probably had a less flexible, possibly calcified cuticle. Phyllocarid cuticles show a great variety of surface sculpture, raised thick or thin anastomosing ridges or striae forming various patterns, scalelike elevated cusps, tubercles, and pits.

Phyllocarids probably formed part of the diet of contemporary predators, and GÜRICH has suggested that the fragmentary and crumpled nature of *Silesicaris* specimens indicates that they had passed through the gut of some predator (128).

### CARAPACE

The carapace loosely envelops the thorax and part of the abdomen, except in *Sairo-*

GENUS	Rostral plate present	Carapace with hinge line	Carapace without hinge line	Median dorsal plate present	Anterior tubercle present	Number of thoracic segments	Number of abdominal segments	Telson present	Furca present	Cephalic appendages present	Mandible present	Thoracic appendages present	Abdominal appendages present	Intestinal infilling present
Aristozoe	-	●	-	-	-	+3	●	-	-	-	-	-	-	?Ord., Sil.-Dev.
Austriocaris	●	●	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	U.Trias.
Baituganocaris	?	●	-	-	-	?4	●	●	-	-	-	-	-	U.Dev.
Callizoe	-	●	-	-	●	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	L.Dev.
Canadaspis	●	●	-	-	-	?8	?7	??	●	-	●	-	●	M.Cam.
Caryocaris	?	●	-	-	-	-	?7	●	●	-	-	-	-	Ord.
Ceratiocaris	●	●	-	-	??	8	7	●	●	●	●	●	5	?Ord., ?Perm.
Concavicaris	●	●	-	-	-	-	-	●	●	-	-	-	-	Dev.-Penn.
Coreocaris	-	-	?	-	-	-	?4	●	?	?	-	-	-	L.Perm.
Dictyocaris	-	-	●	-	-	?8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Sil.-Dev.
Dithyrocaris	-	●	-	●	●	+7	7	●	●	-	●	-	-	Dev.-Penn.
Echinocaris	-	●	-	-	?	-	+6	●	●	-	●	-	-	? Dev.-Miss.
Eleutherocaris	-	●	-	-	-	-	-	●	●	-	-	-	-	U.Dev.
Elymocaris	●	●	-	●	●	-	+6	●	●	-	●	-	-	Dev.
Gonatocaris	?	●	-	-	●	-	+5	?	-	-	-	-	-	U.Sil.
Heroldina	●	●	-	-	-	-	+5	●	●	-	-	-	-	L.Dev.
Hymenocaris	-	-	●	-	-	?11	-	●	●	?	-	-	-	Cam.-Ord.
Montecaris	-	●	-	-	-	+4	7	●	●	-	●	-	-	Dev.
Nahecaris	●	-	●	●	?	?8	7	●	●	●	●	●	5	● L.Dev.
Odaraiia	-	?	-	-	-	-	+2	-	●	-	-	-	-	M.Cam.
Ohiocaris	-	●	-	●	-	-	+3	●	●	-	●	●	-	U.Dev.
Orozoe	-	●	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Dev.
Pephricaris	-	●	-	-	-	+3	?6	●	●	-	●	-	-	U.Dev.
Ptychocaris	-	●	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Dev.
Pygocaris	●	●	-	-	-	-	+3	●	-	-	-	-	-	?L.Dev.
Rhinocaris	●	●	-	●	●	-	+4	●	●	-	●	●	-	Dev.
Saccocaris	-	-	-	-	-	-	?3	?	?	-	-	-	-	Cam.-Ord.
Sairocaris	-	-	●	-	-	+3	7	●	●	-	●	-	-	● L.Carb.
Silesicaris	-	●	-	-	-	-	-	●	-	-	-	-	-	L.Dev.
Tropidocaris	●	●	-	●	●	-	+3	●	●	-	-	-	-	Dev.

FIG. 122. Morphological features observed in 30 phyllocarid genera (Rolfe, n).

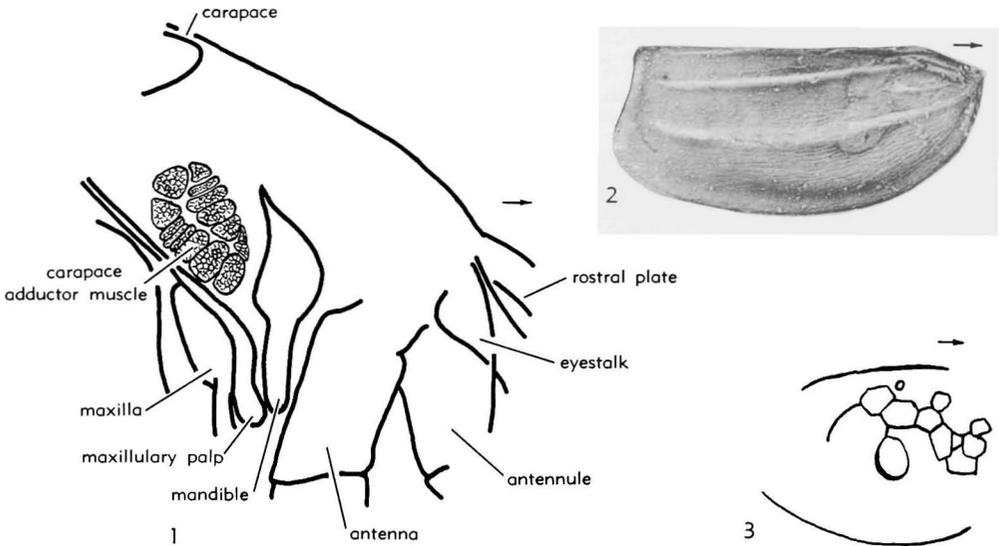


FIG. 123. Carapace muscle attachments in Phyllocarida; right lateral views.—1. Leptostracan *Nebalia bipes* (FABRICIUS), Rec., showing attachment of carapace adductor muscle, ca.  $\times 50$  (366).—2. *Tropidocaris bicarinata* BEECHER, U.Dev., USA, showing anteromedian carapace adductor and cephalic limb muscle impressions between carinae,  $\times 6$  (Rolfe, n).—3. *Ceratiocaris praecedens* CLARKE, U.Sil., USA; muscle scar on anterior tubercle,  $\times 10$  (Rolfe, n).

*caris* where the posterior thoracic somites are exposed, as in many mysids. It may possess or lack a **hinge line** (Fig. 122), and in species of *Ceratiocaris* the hinge line is strengthened by three simple **hinge nodes** borne on the right valve (see Fig. 136). A large carapace must be more heavily sclerotized in order to maintain its shape and a zone must be left unsclerotized to permit hingement of the valves. In smaller, weakly sclerotized carapaces there is sufficient rigidity to maintain the shape and yet enough flexibility for movement without such a hinge line. In the Rhinocarina the valves are separated by a **median dorsal plate** extending back from the anterodorsal region. A double hinge structure is thus produced which may have permitted the valves to open out laterally.

In the Leptostraca the two valves of the carapace can be approximated by the **carapace adductor muscle**, derived from the maxillary somite. It is composed of a pair of lateral bundles of muscles united medially by a horizontal ligament, and is attached to the carapace anterolaterally (Fig. 123,1). Well-defined scars occur in *Canadaspis* and *Tropidocaris* (Fig. 123,2). The muscle scar seen above the carapace ad-

ductor scar presumably indicates the attachment of a cephalic limb dorsal muscle. Although carapace adductor muscle scars have been reported from many archaeostracans, few have been adequately demonstrated.

Pits left by individual muscle bundles have been observed on what CLARKE regarded as the "distinct eye node" of *Ceratiocaris praecedens* CLARKE (Fig. 123,3). This raises the question of whether such nodes may not be apodemes for the attachment of cephalic muscles to an otherwise probably flimsy carapace. BEECHER (1902) observed the apical invagination of these nodes in the Rhinocarididae and suggested that they might be attachment points for mandibular muscles. Other "optic nodes" described from fossil Phyllocarida are impressions through the carapace of the thickened dorsal apex of the mandible, or scars left by epiphytic organisms, such as discinid or craniid brachiopods. Others might be genuine eye tubercles, and would have value in generic or familial classification.

However, the tubercle may or may not be discernible in individuals of the same species of *Silesicaris* (128) and *Rhinocaris*, and is a variable character within these

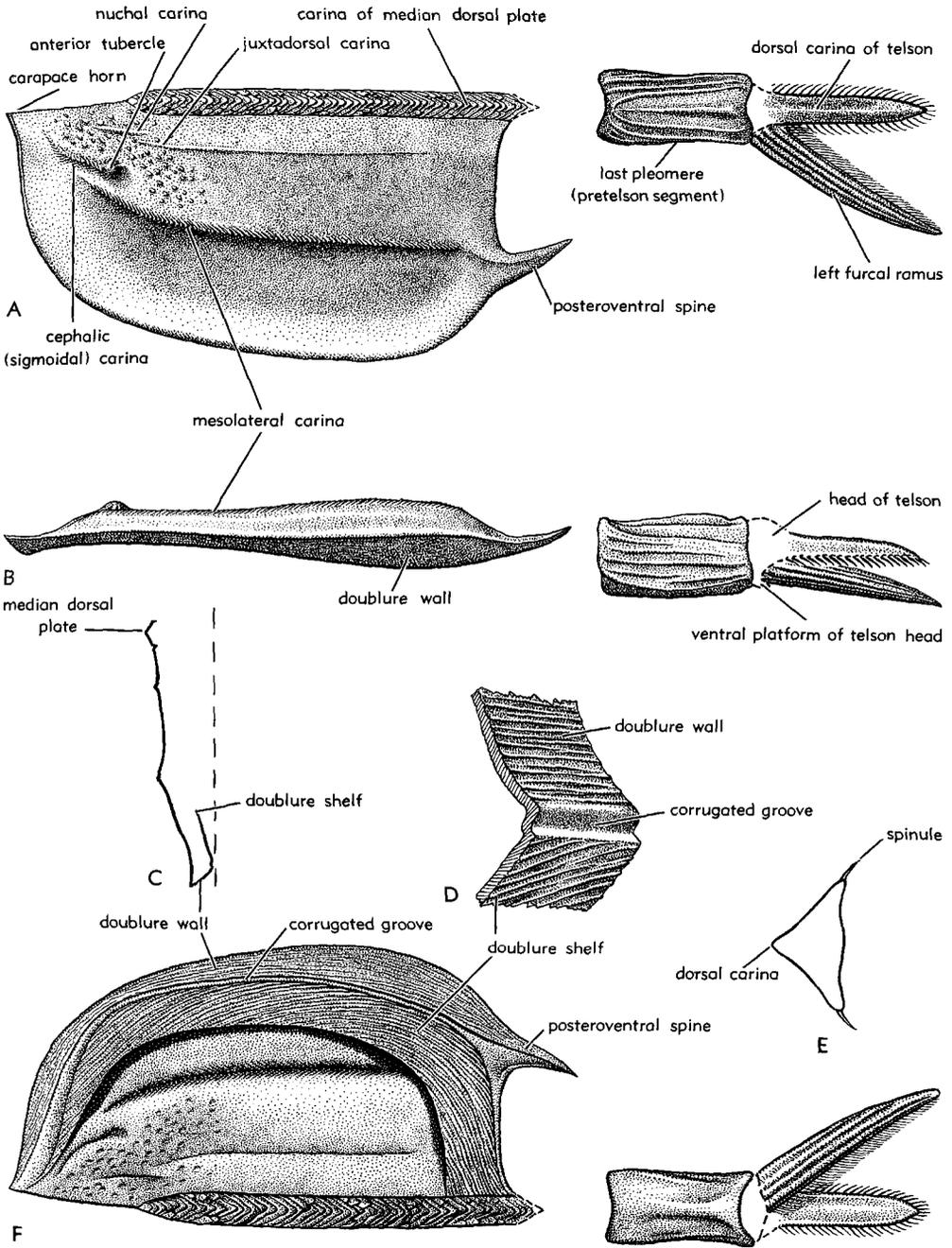


FIG. 124. *Dithyrocaris paradoxides* (ДЕКОНИЦК), L. Carb., Belg., showing morphological features of Archaeostraca Rhinocarina; only left side shown. The median dorsal plate is unknown in this species but one of *D. granulata* type has been interpolated. A. B. Dorsal and left lateral views,  $\times 1$ . C. Transverse section through middle of carapace, the broken line suggesting position of horizontal plane in relation to attitude of the valve during life,  $\times 1$ . D. Oblique view of slice of ventral doublure showing longitudinal striae of the wall and asymptotic striae of the shelf separated by corrugated groove,  $\times 7$ . E. Transverse section through middle of telson,  $\times 4$ . F. Ventral view,  $\times 1$  (Rolfe, n).

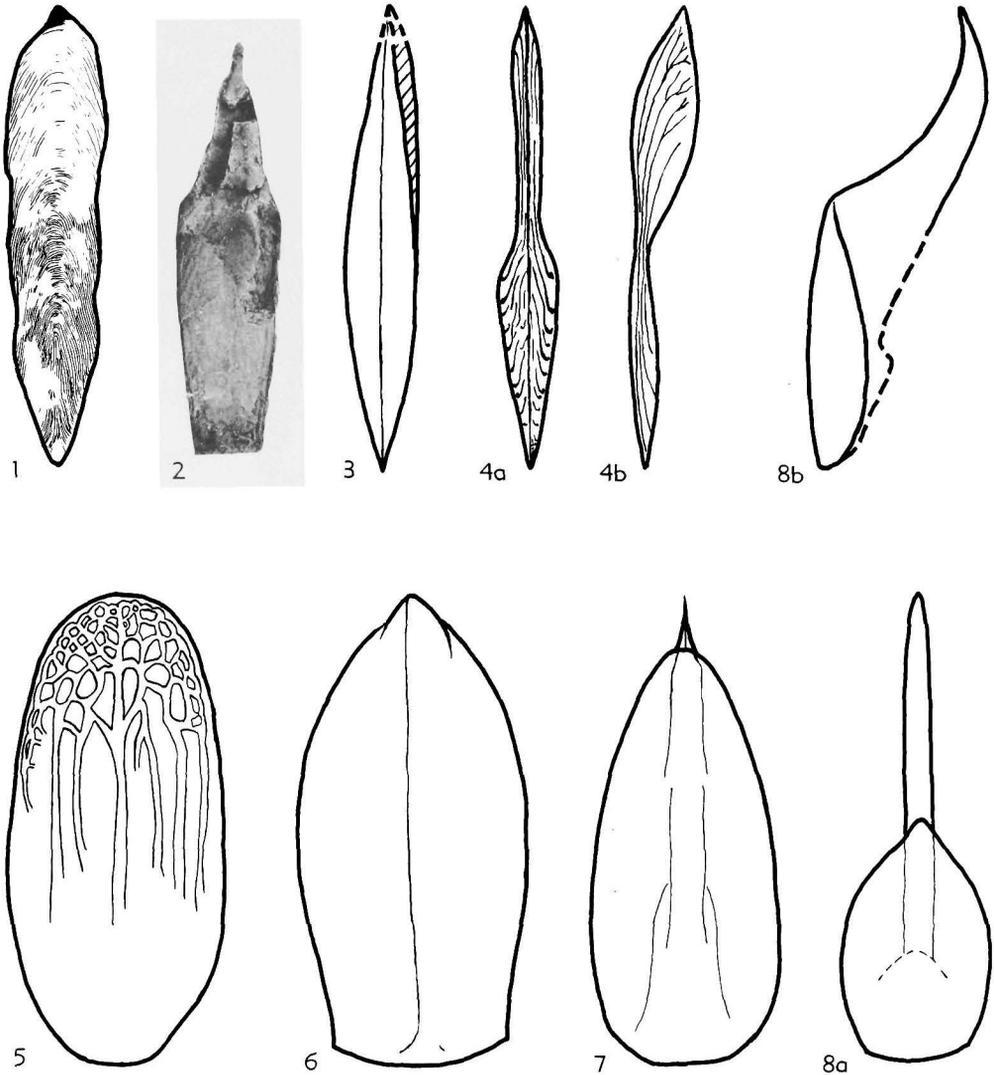


FIG. 125. Rostral plates of Phyllocarida; dorsal views, except where indicated, and oriented with anterior tip uppermost.—1. *Ceratiocaris papilio* SALTER in MURCHISON, M.Sil., Scot.,  $\times 3$  (258).—2. *Pygocaris schuberti* PERNER, ?L.Dev., Czech.,  $\times 5$  (Rolfe, n).—3. *Elymocaris siliqua* BEECHER, U.Dev., USA, right dors. lat.,  $\times 7.5$  (Rolfe, n).—4. *Rhinocaris columbina* CLARKE in HALL & CLARKE, M.Dev.-U.Dev., USA; 4a,b, dors., right lat.,  $\times 3.3$  (351, mod.).—5. *Nebalia geoffroyi* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, Rec., Medit.-E.Atl., showing median blood vessel and afferent network,  $\times 60$  (352).—6. *Nebaliopsis typica* SARS, Rec., Atl.-Pac.-SW.Ind.O.,  $\times 20$  (382a, mod.).—7. *Paranebalia longipes* (WILLEMOS-SUHM), Rec., NW. Atl.-NW.Pac.,  $\times 75$  (377b).—8. *Nebaliella extrema* THIELE, Rec., Antarct.O.; 8a,b, dors., right lat.,  $\times 46$  (349, 382b).

genera. For this reason the significance previously accorded this polygenetic character is here minimized by synonymizing genera (e.g., *Emmelezoe*, *Limnocaris*) that are differentiated solely by the possession of such a structure (here termed **anterior tubercle**).

The carapace valves of Leptostraca are pervaded by a dense network of blood vessels and lacunae and, like the thoracopodal epipods and exopods, function as respiratory organs. Blood leaves the tubular heart anteriorly, flows through the network of each carapace valve and returns to the peri-

cardium opposite the last lateral ostium by a large posterodorsal afferent vessel. The well-marked branching ridges on the valves of *Carnarvonia* (see Fig. 149), *Rhinocaris*, and *Tropidocaris* (see Fig. 146) mark the position of internal grooves which possibly accommodated afferent blood vessels. These genera show a similar pattern of a posterior group of vessels converging into one main vessel which terminates anteriorly just dorsal from the carapace adductor muscle. This contrasts with the subvertical direction of the main blood vessel in the Ostracoda (HENNINGSMOEN, 1954, p. 55).

In the Aristozoidae and Echinocarididae the anterodorsal region of the carapace is inflated into lobes, which BEECHER attempted to correlate with subjacent cephalic appendages. Most of the lobes are situated too far dorsally to mark the position of such appendages, however.

A thickened rim is present along the free margin of most archaeostracan carapaces, in some forms separated from the main area of the valves by a marginal groove. This rim is distally reflected to form a **doublure**, in life connected with the cephalon by thin unsclerotized integument. The doublure is usually simple, but it may be elaborated into a proximal wall and a distal shelf in species of *Dithyrocaris* (Fig. 124). These marginal structures are commonly impressed through the outer integument of the carapace during diagenesis.

Anterodorsally, the carapace valve may terminate in a thickened **carapace horn**, which abuts against the thickened tip of the rostral plate in *Ceratiocaris*. In *Caryocaris maccoyi* (ETHERIDGE), the right and left carapace horns are produced into long slender processes, but they do not fuse together to form the eumalacostracan type of rostrum.

### ROSTRAL PLATE

The carapace is produced anteriorly into a movable **rostral plate**. In the Archaeostraca the few rostral plates known (Fig. 122) are situated more dorsally than in Recent Leptostraca, where the rostral complex (68) is specialized for feeding. Figure 125 shows the variation in shape of phyllocarid rostral plates, which suggests that this

structure may be of use for future classification of the Archaeostraca.

### EYES

Pedunculate compound eyes are present in Leptostraca, although the ommatidia have been lost in *Nebaliella* and *Nebalia typhlops*. Stalked eyes are known only from *Canadaspis* (see Fig. 149) and *Nahecaris*, but presumably most Archaeostraca had such eyes. The supposedly sessile eyes have been discussed above.

### TRUNK

Two tagma can be distinguished in the trunk of Leptostraca and in several Archaeostraca (Fig. 122). These comprise a thorax of eight short segments, and an abdomen of eight longer segments, including the telson. Short pleurae may be present on the pleomeres of Leptostraca and Archaeostraca; large pleural spines are found in *Montecaris lehmanni* and *Pephricaris*.

In the Leptostraca, and also probably in the Hymenosthraca, the telson resembles the preceding pleomeres except that it bears a pair of posteroventral spines and the **furcal rami** at its distal end. In the Archaeostraca, however, the telson is produced dorsally between the furcal rami, which articulate proximally with the enlarged **telson head**. The furcal rami are commonly rodlike, but in *Nebaliopsis* and many Archaeostraca they are dorsoventrally flattened. In many Archaeostraca these expanded and densely setiferous rami formed with the flattened telson an efficient swimming structure analogous to the eumalacostracan tail fan (27). The archaeostracan telson head usually bears a **ventral platform** embracing the proximal part of the furca. In one species of *Schugurocaris*? (Fig. 126) the ventral surface of the telson head has a large area without cuticle, which probably was originally filled by the unsclerotized integument around the anus. The small median process just in front of this area (Fig. 126) is homologous with that in *Aristozoe regina* BARRANDE, which NOVÁK suggested controlled ventral flexure of the telson.

The spiniferous telson of the small *Ceratiocaris pusilla* MATTHEW is unusual in having been whiplike and flexible during life.

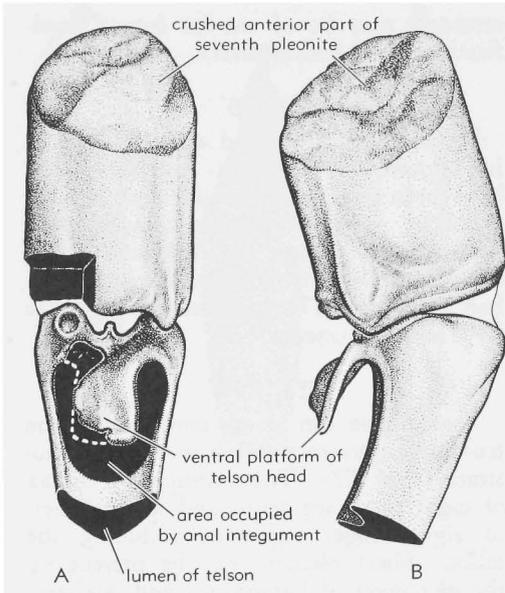


FIG. 126. Seventh pleonite (crushed anteriorly) and telson head of *Schugurocaris? cornwallisensis damesi* (CHLUPÁČ), U.Sil., Czech., showing articulation, ventral platform of telson head and space originally occupied by thin anal integument.—A. Ventral view, with right posteroventral process of pleonite cut away to show telson socket,  $\times 1$ .—B. Left lateral view,  $\times 1$  (376b, mod.).

Dorsal spinules on the telson of *C. papilio* are set in thin-walled sockets (see Fig. 136), and were probably sensory.

### APPENDAGES

The limbs of fossil Phyllocarida are poorly known, with the exception of the mandible, which has been recorded from numerous genera (Fig. 122). The following list tabulates the major records of such limbs with a brief description of each.

#### Fossil Phyllocarida Appendages

*Canadaspis perfecta* (WALCOTT), *M.Cam.*, B.C.; uniramous antenna, ?cephalic limbs, eight thoracopods composed of eight short segments with basal nonfilamentous ?epipod (WALCOTT, 1912; STØRMER, 1944).

*Ceratiocaris telleri* (WHITFIELD) and *C. monroei* WHITFIELD, *U.Sil.*, USA (Wis.); limb fragments (WHITFIELD, 1896).

*Ceratiocaris papilio* SALTER in MURCHISON, *M.Sil.*, Scot.; ?antennae, ?maxillipeds, seven slender thoracic endopods of at least four segments, five stouter pleopods (JONES & WOODWARD, 1888; ROLFE, 1962).

*Coreocaris eishunensis* KOBAYASHI, *L.Perm.*, S.Korea; ?antennae (KOBAYASHI, 1937).

*Dithyrocaris* sp., *L.Carb.*, N.Fr.; cephalic limb fragments (CARPENTIER, 1913).

*Dithyrocaris?* sp., *L.Carb.*, S.Fr.; thoracic branchiae (BÖHM, 1935).

*Hymenocaris ornata* SHERRARD, *L.Ord.*, S.E.Australia; ?antennae (SHERRARD, 1930).

*Nahecaris stuerzi* JAEKEL, *L.Dev.*, Ger.; antennae, eight thoracopods, five pleopods (BROILI, 1928, 1929).

*Nahecaris balssi* BROILI, *L.Dev.*, Ger.; antennae (BROILI, 1930).

*Ohiocaris wycoffi* ROLFE, *U.Dev.*, USA (Ohio); four thoracic ?endopods (ROLFE, 1962).

*Rhinocaris? bipennis* CLARKE, *U.Dev.*, USA (N.Y.); cephalic or thoracic limb fragments (CLARKE, 1898).

The archaeostracan mandible is well known only from *Ceratiocaris*, but that of other genera seems to have been identical. As can be seen in Fig. 127,2 the mandible is of generalized type, with a large inflated mandible body (corpus mandibulae) and a gnathal lobe set with paired incisor teeth and a simple molar process. In two species of *Ceratiocaris* the molar process is known to have a broad, laterally ridged surface for grinding (Fig. 127,1). The large mandible

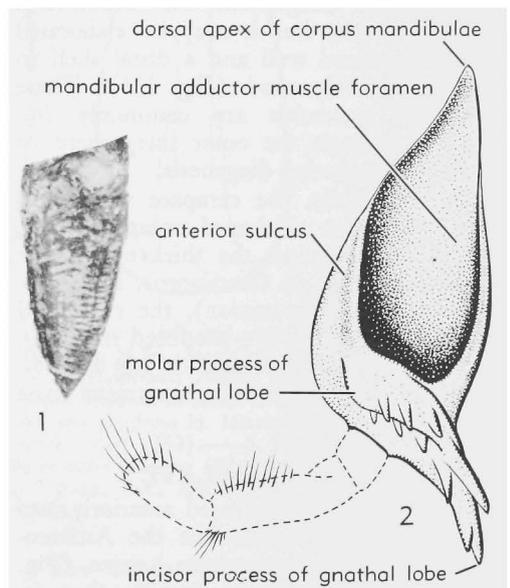


FIG. 127. Mandible of *Ceratiocaris*.—1. *C. monroei* WHITFIELD, *U.Sil.*, USA (Wis.), tooth base and ridged molar process of left mandible,  $\times 6$  (258).—2. *C. papilio* SALTER in MURCHISON, *M.Sil.*, Scot., right mandible, mesial view, with palp of *Anaspides* type reconstr.,  $\times 6$  (Rolfe, n).

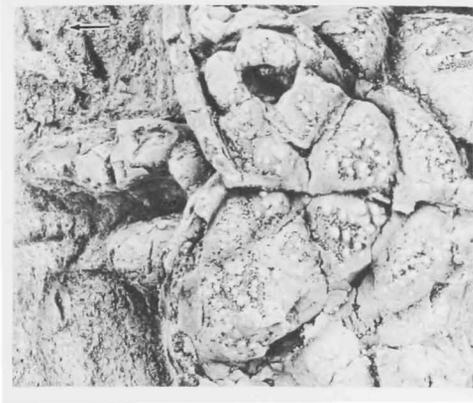


FIG. 128. *Echinocaris randallii?* BEECHER, L. MISS., USA (Pa.), three segmented ?mandibular palps at left, protruding from anterior of carapace valves,  $\times 2.4$  (Rolfe, n). [According to K. E. CASTER, the right appendage was chelate when the specimen was originally collected by him.]

**bular adductor muscle foramen** for the transverse adductor muscle is rimmed by shallow anterior and posterior sulci marking internal ridges for attachment of dorsal muscles. BEECHER's "manubrium" was simply a part of the corpus mandibulae preserved adjacent to this foramen. A palp has not been found in *Ceratiocaris*, although a small circular **palp foramen** is always present. A **palp** of at least three segments is present in *Echinocaris punctata* (HALL) and this was figured, although not recognized as such, by HALL & CLARKE (140, pl. 29, fig. 7). The stout, three-segmented appendages occasionally found protruding from the carapace of *Echinocaris* may be mandibular palps (Fig. 128).

No proof has been found that gastric teeth or ossicles are present in the Archaeostraca, although such teeth might be expected to occur. The structures referred to as such by previous authors are the heavily sclerotized, commonly abraded, gnathal lobes of the mandible, which are commonly all that remains after the thin-

ner corpus mandibulae has been broken off or crushed. The broader teeth illustrated by JONES & WOODWARD (160, pl. 26) are internal molds of the paired, thick-walled teeth, and not the surface of the cuticle.

The significance of the cephalic limbs of *Nahecaris* and the thoracopods of *Canadaspis* will be discussed under phylogeny, but it may be emphasized here that knowledge of the limb structure of these genera is inadequate for phylogenetic speculation.

Filamentous thoracic branchiae have been figured from *Dithyrocaris*; they are unknown in other Phyllocarida, however, and detailed study is required.

The least specialized leptostracan thoracopods are found in *Paranebalia*, and these contrast with the specialized thoracopods of *Nebalia*, which have large epipods and exopods (Fig. 129). The thoracopods are all similar, except in *Nebaliopsis*, where the first limb is modified to act as an interlimb space valve. In all Leptostraca except *Nebaliopsis*, the tip of each thoracic endopod of the breeding female carries long setae which curve inward to form the floor of a brood chamber in which the embryos develop.

Five pairs of lamellar pleopods occur in *Nahecaris* and probably also in *Ceratiocaris papilio*. In the Leptostraca six pairs of pleopods are present but only the first four are large and biramous, the posterior two being small and uniramous. The right and left limbs of the anterior four pairs are linked together by a small spined appendix interna at the base of the endopod to form powerful swimmerets.

### SEXUAL DIMORPHISM

All Recent Leptostraca, except *Nebaliopsis*, show pronounced sexual dimorphism. Males also occur much more rarely than females. The carapace of the male is less deep than that of the female and the antennae are much longer (Fig. 130). In the male *Nebalia* the antennae may reach to the tips of the furca, whereas in the female they are shorter than the carapace. The furca of the male *Nebalia* is also longer than that of the female, the pleopods are larger and the antennules bear a greater number of sensory bristles.

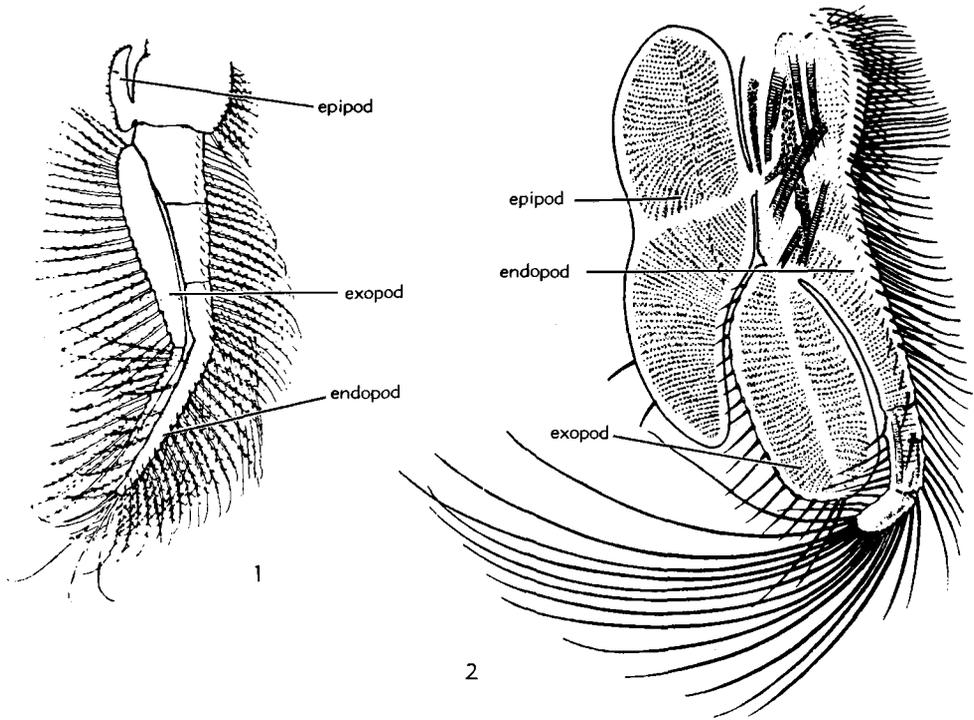


FIG. 129. Thoracopods of Recent Leptostraca showing little specialized and highly specialized conditions. —1. *Paranebalia longipes* (WILLEMOES-SUHM), fifth thoracopod of adult female,  $\times 40$  (65, after 377b). —2. *Nebalia geoffroyi* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, first thoracopod of adult female, ca.  $\times 25$  (68, after 352). (Fig. 129,1 from W. T. Calman in Lankester Treatise on Zoology, Pt. 7, Appendiculata, fasc. 3, A. & C. Black, Ltd., publishers, London; Fig. 129,2, from H. G. Cannon, 1960, in BRONN's Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs, v. 5, Abt. 1, Buch 4, Teil 1.)

The antennules or antennae of the male may be modified in different genera, presumably to function as clasp ing organs. *Nebalia pugetensis* (CLARK) has an anteriorly curved, sickle-shaped region of the antenna consisting of about 30 segments, each segment bearing in front a spoon-shaped seta. In *Paranebalia* the antennular flagellum is transformed into a papillate cushion, and in *Nebaliopsis* the two terminal segments of the antenna are bent back to form a hook.

The ratio of carapace length to height has been used to differentiate species of *Ceratiocaris* and *Caryocaris*, although paleontologists since SALTER have been aware of the problem of sexual dimorphism. Scottish Silurian species of *Ceratiocaris* have been examined statistically but no significant difference in carapace shape was found between forms previously regarded as sexual dimorphs and distinct species. Variation

within one species of *Austriocaris* was attributed by GLAESSNER to sexual dimorphism.

#### PATHOLOGY

Fig. 131 shows a specimen of *Dithyrocaris* in which the mesolateral carina has been bowed out, presumably owing to a wound received during the soft-shell period of the molt cycle.

#### MISIDENTIFICATION

Fossil phyllocarids have commonly been misidentified, perhaps for the first time by LOUIS AGASSIZ, who in 1837 referred a species to his fish-spine genus *Onchus*. BARRANDE (1853) showed that this was neither *Onchus*, nor a eurypterid claw, as M'COY had suggested in 1849, but the telson and furcal ramus of a species of M'COY's own crustacean genus *Ceratiocaris*, previously known only from carapaces. Other instances

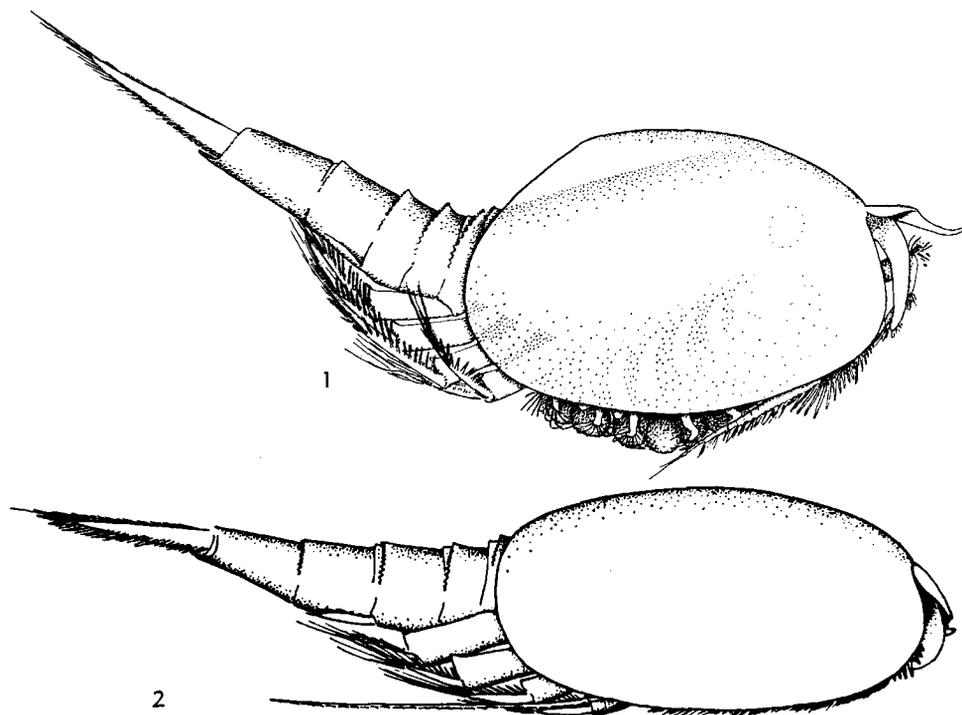


FIG. 130. Sexual dimorphism in *Nebaliella extrema* THIELE, Rec., right lateral view.—1. Female,  $\times 10$  (349).—2. Male, ca.  $\times 20$  (68) (Fig. 129, 2, from H. G. Cannon, 1960, in Bronn's Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs, v. 5, Abt. 1, Buch 4, Teil 1).

of archaeostracan telsons and furcal rami being mistaken for fish spines are known, although they are quite distinct in general morphology and especially in microstructure.

Isolated archaeostracan carapaces may be difficult to distinguish from Bivalvia, and numerous carapaces now regarded as Ostracoda Archaeocopida are indistinguishable, except by their smaller size, from carapaces referred to the Phyllocarida. Whether such resemblances as that of the large *Pseudoarctolepis sharpi* to the ostracode *Pteroleperditia* are only due to convergence it is impossible to say. Convergent resemblances among crustacean carapaces are well known, as ROGER (1946) has pointed out, and carapaces should therefore not be referred to the Archaeostraca until the trunk tagma and furca are known. It is worth recalling that the Recent phyllocarid *Nebaliopsis* was first described as a gigantic ostracode, since only the carapace was brought up in the dredge.

Carapaces, telsons, and furcal rami of *Caryocaris* have been interpreted as graptolite rhabdosomes, floats, and "ovarian capsules," primarily on account of their occurrence in graptolite-rich shales.

Isolated archaeostracan mandibles are sometimes regarded as problematica, and CHLUPÁČ (73) has pointed out such an instance where gnathal lobes were described in a 1958 work on conodonts.

## ONTOGENY

The eggs of all Leptostraca, except possibly in *Nebaliopsis*, are carried in the thoracopod brood chamber beneath the carapace. Development is embryonic and the young hatch as postlarvae. These postlarval or mancoid stages, as LINDER has termed them, differ from the adults in having a rudimentary 4th pleopod. CANNON has recently attributed a free-swimming, pelagic larva to *Nebaliopsis* (68), and suggested that the eggs of *Nebaliopsis* were laid

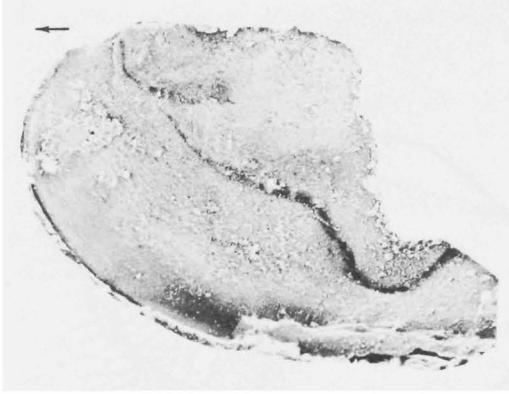


FIG. 131. Pathological right valve of *Dithyrocaris paradoxides* (DEKONINCK), L.Carb., Belg., rubber mold of fragment showing mesolateral carina bowed out in median region; (compare with normal valve shown in Fig. 124,A),  $\times 3$  (Rolfe, n).

directly in the water. The presence of large antennae and yolk mass in the larva are, CANNON has suggested, adaptations for this planktonic existence.

### HABITAT, DISTRIBUTION, AND HABITS

The only nonmarine form attributed to the Phyllocarida is the problematical *Coreocaris*. Other fossil genera are associated with undoubtedly marine faunas, or with primitive vertebrates and eurypterids. The second association is almost always enhanced by selective diagenesis of calcareous shells, with consequent enrichment of the preserved fauna in the noncalcified elements. No convincing evidence is found to indicate that the Archaeostraca were either fluvial (O'CONNELL) or "continental" (JUX, 162).

Fossil phyllocarids are generally rare, although they are locally abundant in the Middle Silurian laminated siltstones of Lesmahagow, South Scotland, the Upper Devonian of Cologne, Germany, and of Western Australia, the Viséan limestones of Visé, Belgium, and the Middle Pennsylvanian Mecca Shale of Indiana.

The wide distribution of the fossil *Caryocaris* and Recent *Nebaliopsis* is doubtless correlated with their large expanded furcal rami, which made sustained swimming possible. *Nebaliopsis* is bathypelagic and lives at depths down to 2,500 m., whereas

*Caryocaris* occurs in graptolitic shales and has been suggested to be planktonic. The remaining Leptostraca are bottom-dwellers and commonly live buried in the mud or under stones in shallow coastal waters, although species occur down to depths of 2,200 m. *Nebalia bipes* is extremely widespread, very resistant to unfavorable conditions, and thrives in water foul with decaying organic matter (65).

From studies of facies in Czechoslovakia and Eastern Europe, CHLUPÁČ (73) and KRESTOVNIKOV (168) have independently concluded that the thick-shelled forms *Aristozoe*, *Callizoe*, and *Orozoe* were benthonic and confined to shallow reef environments. Genera with a thinner cuticle, such as *Ceratiocaris*, they suggested were nektonic and planktonic and favored calmer, coastal lagoonal or neritic habitats. The Upper Permian *Nebalia? bentzi* inhabited shallow, coastal marine conditions, according to MALZAHN (186).

Although all Leptostraca are strong swimmers, only *Nebaliopsis* is adapted for a nektonic life. The other genera are highly adapted for burrowing in the mud, and such features as the plowshare-like rostral plate, the blind, curved eyestalks, and the extra segment in the antenna of *Nebaliella* have all been explained by CANNON as modifications to that end. *Nebalia* has an extremely efficient feeding mechanism for collecting the fine edible detritus from the mud, and this has been described in great detail by CANNON (1927). A feeding-respiratory current is sucked into a **filter chamber**, formed by the thoracopods and ventral body wall, by metachronal movements of the thoracopods. The current enters anteriorly, since the lamellar epipods and exopods act as valves preventing the lateral entry of water, while the amount entering is controlled by elevating or depressing the rostral plate. Food particles are filtered off by rows of setae on the endopodites and then combed from the filter setae and passed anteriorly to the mouth parts by other setae. The filtered current of water is then pumped laterally out of the chamber by the eighth thoracopods via the seventh interlimb space. When the filter chamber is blocked with eggs, the female utilizes food reserves stored in the fat-body.



FIG. 132. X-ray photograph of *Nahecaris stuertzi* JAEKEL, L.Dev., Ger., dors., showing mud-filling of intestine (light) through pyritized (dark) abdomen,  $\times 0.75$  (Rolfé, n).

*Nebaliopsis* is specialized for feeding in quite a different way, as ROWETT has shown (1943, 1946). Although it possesses a filter chamber formed by the maxilla and first thoracopod, its main sustenance is probably derived from eggs floating in the water. These are sucked in and stored in the large midgut diverticulum and assimilated as required.

The alimentary canal of many fossil phyllocarids may be traced by the sediment

originally filling the gut (Fig. 132). This suggests that these genera were deposit-feeders, which probably, like CANNON's "ancestral *Nebalia*, would have fed simply on large pieces of detritus picked up directly by the mouth parts." The powerful archaeostracan mandible would be very suitable for dealing with large fragments.

BROILI (1928) has interpreted the antennae of *Nahecaris* as locomotory organs and suggested that the body limbs formed good swimmerets. The telson and furca were doubtless moved by powerful muscles situated in the elongated seventh abdominal segment, and BROILI has pointed out that the tail was probably used in swimming and steering. BEURLEN (1930) has suggested that most Archaeostraca were benthonic and that the furcal spines were used in leaping forward.

Rhinocarididae, such as *Dithyrocaris*, may have had their carapace valves spread out laterally during life, suggesting a benthonic habit. This would imply considerable modification of the limbs and internal structures such as the carapace adductor muscle.

## PHYLOGENY

The lack of detailed morphological data for most fossil phyllocarids, rightly emphasized by neontologists since CLAUS, has led to much speculation about their affinities. They have been compared with Notostraca, Conchostraca, Ostracoda, and free-living Cirripedia by FEDOROV and others, and with Eumalacostraca Euphausiacea by ROGER (256). Although some specimens may belong to some of these groups, no basis is seen for JUX's assertion (162) that all Archaeostraca should be referred to the Branchiopoda. The number and tagmosis of body segments and limbs, and the differentiation of the gnathal lobe of the mandible into incisor and molar processes, known from some of the Archaeostraca, leave no doubt that these are genuine Malacostraca. The large carapace, adductor muscle scar, rostral plate, and furca indicate their close relation to the Leptostraca.

Despite these complications, the Phyllocarida have long been recognized as the most primitive of malacostracans, the Paleozoic forms occupying various ecological

niches from which the later, higher Malacostraca were to displace them. Primitive features present in the Leptostraca according to SIEWING (271) are the rostral plate, eight free thoracomeres covered by a carapace but not fused with it, seven pleomeres, furca, both antennal and maxillary glands, heart extending from head into abdomen, lateral arteries segmentally arranged and consisting of visceral and limb components, gonads extending through whole body, and simple stomach and brain.

The presence of foliaceous thoracopods in *Nebalia* has classically been taken to indicate that the Leptostraca form a connecting link between the Branchiopoda and the Malacostraca. The absence of true endites from the thoracopods of *Nebalia*, together with the presence of more stenopodous thoracopods in *Paranebalia*, led CALMAN (65) to suggest that the phyllopodous form of the thoracopods might be secondary. CANNON has attacked the theory that the phyllopodium represents the archetypal crustacean limb and from a study of the feeding mechanism of *Nebalia* concluded that its foliaceous limbs are secondary adaptations for filter-feeding. Furthermore, the embryology of *Nebalia* was shown by MANTON (1934) to be eumalacostracan and not at all entomostracan.

Leptostracan specializations other than the lamellar thoracopods, according to SIEWING, are the carapace with adductor muscle, absence of posterior pleopods, presence of a scale on the antennule instead of a second flagellum, and absence of antennal exopod. The first two characters are present in Middle Cambrian forms and suggest that the Phyllocarida were already well differentiated from the ancestral malacostracan by that time.

The Middle Cambrian *Canadaspis* is poorly known and the supposedly trilobitan nature of the thoracopods has never been adequately demonstrated. The limbs can also be interpreted as endopods with a lamellar epipod but lacking an exopod. In the Upper Silurian-Lower Devonian, a great radiation from the Ordovician-Silurian ceratiocaridid stock gave rise to the Aristozoidae and Echinocarididae via *Callizoe* and *Ptychocaris*. It is possible that the Aristozoidae have reduced or lost the furca completely,

thereby indicating a major departure from the Ceratiocarina condition, as ČHLUPÁČ has pointed out. If this can be verified it would be of great interest as a reverse trend from that in the Leptostraca where the telson has been reduced. In the Middle Devonian the Rhinocarina were established from some line presumably within the Ceratiocarina. In terms of the number of genera, however, the Rhinocarina were less successful than the Ceratiocarina. The diminution in number of genera through the upper Paleozoic to only one genus in the Triassic suggests that the Archaeostraca were extinguished by the increase in number and diversity of the better adapted Eumalacostraca. Part of the post-Triassic lack of fossil Phyllocarida may be due to oversight. Little-known carapaces from the Mesozoic such as *Clausia* and *Protozoëa* are regarded as stomatopod larvae, but if found in Paleozoic strata they would be referred to the Phyllocarida.

The origin of the Leptostraca in or before the Late Permian is obscure; they were possibly derived from some basal stock within the Ceratiocarina or even the Hymenostera. More probably, however, they diverged from the hypothetical cephalocarid-like ancestor (SANDERS, 1955, 1957, 1959) earlier than the other Phyllocarida. The long preperacarid geological history of the Phyllocarida does not support CANNON's suggestion (1927) that *Nebalia* "evolved from some primitive mysid-like malacostracan." It is likely that the reverse derivation occurred, the Phyllocarida representing the stock from which the eumalacostracan or caridoid type was eventually derived.

Following BROILI and BEURLEN, SIEWING (271, p. 153) has emphasized that the lack of a hinge line in the carapace, the biramous nature of the antennules, and the antennal exopod of *Nahecaris* are eumalacostracan features, and that *Nahecaris* can thus be regarded as a link between the Leptostraca and Eumalacostraca. However, BROILI's interpretation of the carapace structure is probably erroneous and *Nahecaris* is here reassigned to the Rhinocarina. The specialized rhinocaridid carapace structure prevents *Nahecaris* from being a simple "missing link" between the two groups. Furthermore, BROILI was not able to prove that the supposed exopod of the antenna did, in fact,

spring from the antennal protopod. Although this may be the case, the supposed exopod might belong to a more posterior cephalic appendage, and restudy is required. The biramous antennules do suggest an affinity with the Eumalacostraca and they contrast with the small antennular exopods of the Leptostraca, which may be secondary and due to relatively recent reduction, rather than being a primitive feature.

Several attempts have been made to relate other crustacean subclasses to the Phyllocarida. RUEDEMANN (1918) suggested that the sessile Cirripedia were derived from one of the Rhinocarina by a modification of the carapace to form compartments. This speculation, which recalls THOMPSON'S (1830) idea that *Nebalia* was the active larva of the sessile whale-barnacle *Coronula*, was shown by CALMAN (1919) to be based on superficial resemblances. BERNARD (1892), a proponent of the phyllopodan nature of the Phyllocarida, argued that "the extraordinary likeness of the shells of some of the early Ostracoda (e.g., *Leperditia*) to the shells of such phyllo-pods as *Ceratiocaris salteriana* makes a phyllo-podan origin for at least some of the Ostracoda very probable." Similarly, the genera now grouped under Ostracoda Archaeocopida were suggested by KUMMEROW in 1931 to bear the same relation to the Phyllocarida as the Decapoda Brachyura do to the Macrura. This suggestion was effectively formalized in RAYMOND'S 1935 classification of the Archaeostraca. Again, the similarity of the carapaces in these is probably only superficial and due to convergence. GLAESSNER (1928) suggested that the Cycloidea could be considered as benthonic Phyllocarida, the lack of a free abdomen perhaps paralleling the brachyuran trend of the Decapoda. Despite the work of HOPWOOD (1925) and others, the ventral morphology of the Cycloidea is still inadequately known and thus, as VAN STRAELEN & SCHMITZ (312) have pointed out, the systematic position of the group must remain uncertain.

## CLASSIFICATION

The first phyllocarid found was described as *Cancer bipes* by FABRICIUS in 1780 and initially regarded as a malacostracan. From

the foliaceous nature of the thoracopods, MILNE-EDWARDS (1828) was led to suggest that this species was a branchiopod, and it was not until 1868 that *Nebalia* was shown to be a malacostracan (a "phyllopodiform decapod") by METCHNIKOV from its embryology and gastric mill. Meanwhile, several fossil phyllocarids had been described. SCOULER (1835) had described two Carboniferous phyllocarids and referred them to the Entomostraca Branchiopodes, the group to which LATREILLE had already in 1829 referred *Nebalia*.

The first direct comparison of a fossil form with *Nebalia* was not made until 1853, when SALTER described *Hymenocaris*. In 1879 PACKARD proposed that the fossil forms be united with the Nebaliidae to form a separate order of Crustacea, named Phyllocarida. CLAUS had already stressed (1872) that little was known of the fossil forms and their relationships, and in 1880 he reiterated this and, apparently unaware of PACKARD'S order, proposed the term Leptostraca for the Recent forms. In 1888 CLAUS firmly established the malacostracan nature of *Nebalia* and, emphasizing the supposed variability in number of body somites, separated the fossils as Archaeostraca. Subsequent use of the three names has been confused, despite BEURLIN'S clear summaries (29) of the history outlined above.

In the present treatment the old division of the Phyllocarida into Archaeostraca and Leptostraca is accepted with the addition of a new order, Hymenostocraca. The GROBBEN (1892) and CALMAN (1904) position of the Leptostraca is thus slightly emended, but the term will still be available to neontologists in its most usual connotation, namely for the Nebaliidae.

Ordinal classification is based essentially on the nature of the telson and furca. Such single-character classification is obviously unsatisfactory, but few other morphological features observable in fossil material are as conservative or reliable. Since 1880, when WHITFIELD published a table showing the "maximum number of naked segments known" in 13 fossil forms, undue emphasis has been laid on the supposed variation in number of body segments. As CALMAN (1913) pointed out, if this variation did

exist new orders would be required, and it would be difficult to regard them even as Malacostraca (271, p. 143). In fact, as Figure 122 shows, of 30 fossil phyllocarid genera tabulated, the number of abdominal somites (telson not included) is known with certainty in only five genera and the number of thoracic somites in only one, or possibly three. Significantly, the numbers of somites in these tagmata are respectively seven and eight, as in the Leptostraca. *Dithyrocaris*, for example, was reported by WHITFIELD to have one somite and by JONES & WOODARD (1898) to have three; but it was not until 1916 that CARPENTIER was able to prove the presence of seven abdominal somites and at least seven thoracic somites. The number of somites in other genera may be different but it has never been shown to be so.

Another character used in classification has been the nature of the carapace, whether with or without a hinge line. JONES & WOODWARD (1883-1899) and others, in reports on British Paleozoic Phyllocarida, divided the fossil forms into two major groups on this single character, although they proposed no formal names for divisions thus recognized. This character is often difficult to ascertain, and such a classification minimizes the significance of the median dorsal plate first recognized by HALL & CLARKE (140). The presence or absence of a simple hinge line is probably phylogenetically insignificant and functionally dependent on the size and degree of induration of the valves to be articulated.

The characters most used in generic and familial classification have been carapace shape and the nature of surface ornament. By analogy with other crustacean groups, however, these might be expected to be the most variable of characters. Recent Leptostraca are differentiated mainly by their limb structure, and if found fossil they would be separated into only two genera on the basis of carapace form, one comprising *Paranebalia-Nebalia-Nebaliella* and the other *Nebaliopsis*. Thus, *Montecaris* has convergently acquired the peculiar double structure, mesolateral ridge, and posteroventral spine of *Dithyrocaris paradoxides*, but, as known at present, it lacks the median dorsal plate, thereby excluding it from the

Rhinocarina. Further convergences are undoubtedly hidden by the present classification, but the lack of more conservative characters suggests that this problem will not be solved easily.

In the present systematic descriptions only genera which are known from several tagmata are classified, with the exception of genera such as *Austriocaris* where relationships seem clear. The others are listed and described subsequently. A tabulation of suprageneric divisions of the Phyllocarida with numbers of genera contained in each is given on page R113.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Subclass PHYLLOCARIDA Packard, 1879

[=Phyllocardia ETHERIDGE, 1892; Phyllostraca HENNIG, 1922; Phyllofarida RICHTER & RICHTER, 1927; Phillocarida REIN, 1936; Phyllocarida KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961; Phyllocardida HOWE, 1962, p. 162]

Malacostraca with large carapace of two valves, with or without hinge line along dorsal margin, connected by adductor muscle, produced anteriorly into movably articulated lanceolate rostral plate. Thorax of eight short, free somites; abdomen of seven somites and telson, seventh abdominal somite without appendages, telson bearing unsegmented, movably articulated furca. *L. Cam.-Rec.*

### Order LEPTOSTRACA Claus, 1880

[=Leptocarida HAECKEL, 1889; Nebaliadae GROBEN, 1892; includes *Nebaliina* CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900; *Nebaliacea* CALMAN, 1904]

Small to medium-sized, carapace without hinge line, telson not produced dorsally between furcal rami; outer ramus of antennule reduced to a scale; antenna without exopod. Gnathal lobe of mandible reduced or with only single row of teeth; six pairs of pleopods, anterior four pairs comprising biramous swimmerets with large protopod, posterior two pairs small and uniramous. *U. Perm.-Rec.*

### Family NEBALIIDAE Baird, 1850

[*nom. correct.* SARS, 1887 (*pro* Nebaliidae BAIRD, 1850)]  
[=Nebaliidae CLAUDIUS, 1880; *Nebalida* HAECKEL, 1896]

Characters of order. *U. Perm.-Rec.*

MALZAHN has described an eight-somite, 8 mm. long, furca-bearing abdomen from

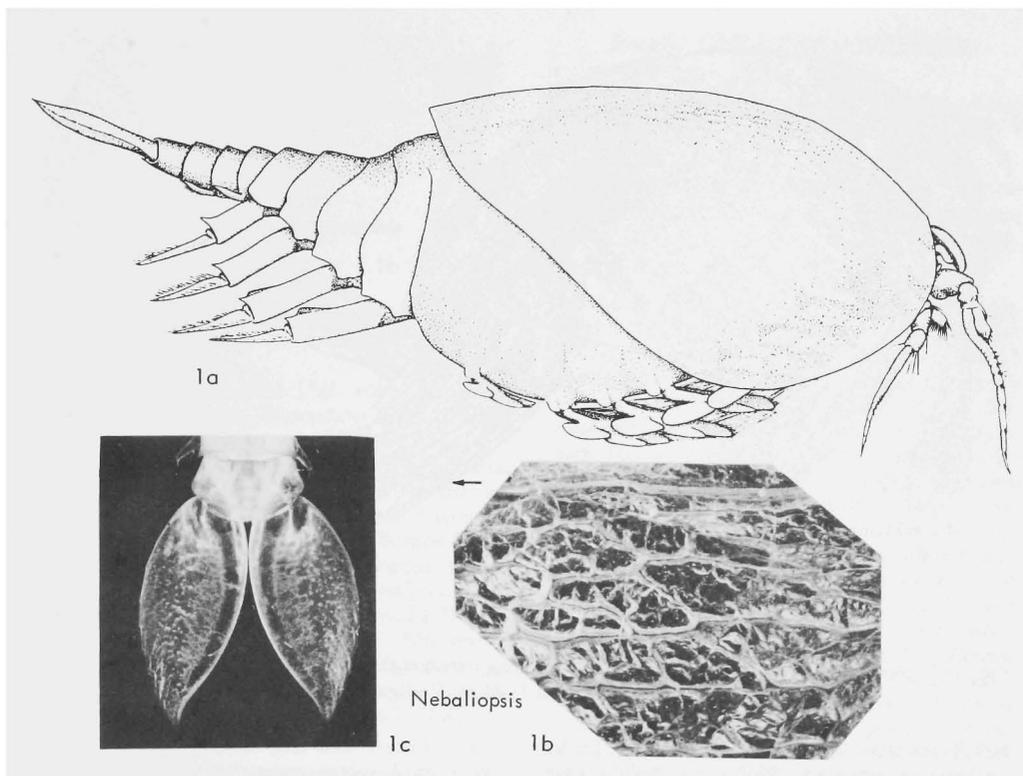


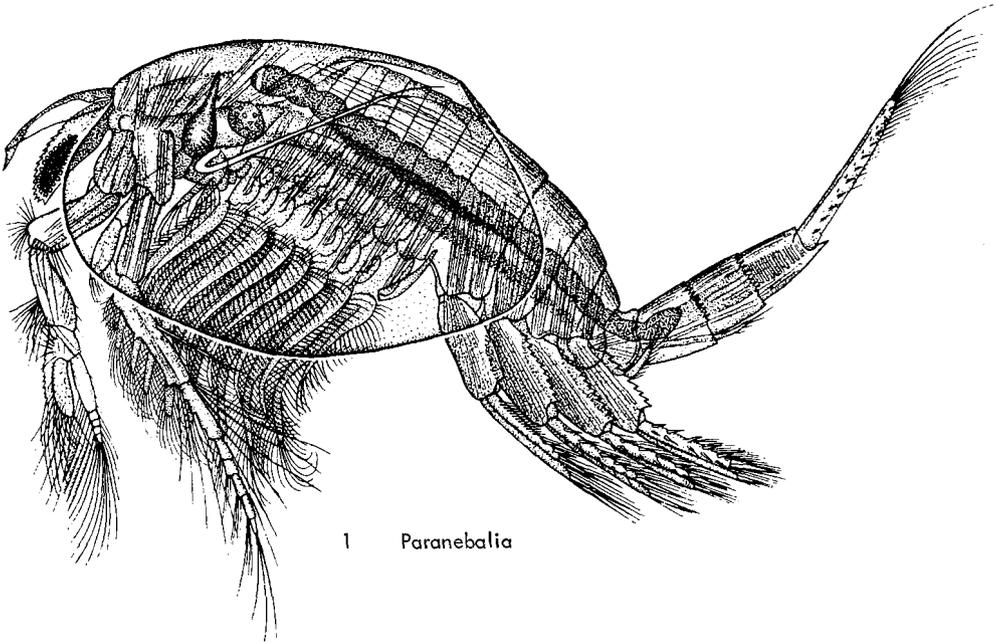
FIG. 133. Nebaliidae (p. R314).

the Upper Permian (Zechstein 1) of Germany as *Nebalia bentzi* (the carapace doubtfully referred to this species by MALZAHN, 186, is that of a young cumacean). The four most anterior somites bear large, two-segmented limbs, although they are not described as biramous. This specimen is probably a leptostracan, but it is impossible to refer it with certainty to any of the Recent genera, *Nebalia*, *Nebaliella*, or *Paranebalia*. Two generic names not listed below are *Pseudonebalia* and *Neonebalia*, quoted by KRESTOVNIKOV (1961). I have been able to find no other reference to these genera and it is presumed that they are *nomina nulla*.

**Nebalia** LEACH, 1814 [\**N. herbstii* LEACH, 1814 (= \**Cancer bipes* FABRICIUS, 1780; *Monoculus rostratus* MONTAGU, 1813; *Nebalia glabra*, *N. ciliata* LAMARCK, 1818; *N. montagui* THOMPSON, 1830); OD, M] [Although *N. herbstii* is type species of *Nebalia*, it is usually classed as a junior synonym of *Cancer bipes*. This misidentification of the type species needs to be referred to ICZN for decision by neontologists (Code, 1961, Art. 67, j, 70a)] [= ?*Epinebalia* CLARK, 1932]. Carapace laterally compressed, valves

elliptical, posterodorsally truncate, smooth and translucent. Furcal rami rodlike, with rows of setae and spines. Eyestalk with basal scale; 4th segment of antennule without process; antennal peduncle of 3 segments; incisor process of mandible small and simple; maxillule with 2 endites and long setiferous palp; maxilla small, with 4 endites; 8 pairs of undifferentiated thoracopods concealed beneath carapace, each limb bearing large lamellar exopod and epipod. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 120. \**N. bipes* (FABRICIUS), Atl.; ♀ idealized,  $\times 12$  (68, after 271).—FIG. 129,2. *N. geoffroyi* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, Atl.; ♀ 1st thoracopod, ca.  $\times 25$  (68, after 352). [= *Epinebalia* CLARKE, 1932 (type, *E. pugettensis*; OD).]

**Nebaliella** THIELE, 1904 [\**N. antarctica*; OD]. Like *Nebalia* but with short row of setae inside posterior carapace margin; rostral plate with prominent ventral keel produced anteriorly into spine; eyestalk elongate, flat and crescentic, without ommatidia and lacking basal scale; 4th segment of antennule with tuft of bristles; antennar peduncle of 4 segments; incisor process of mandible large and with several teeth; thoracic limbs without epipods. *Rec.*, N. Atl.-S. Pac.-S. Ind. O.-Antarct. O.—FIG. 130, 1,2. *N. extrema* THIELE, Antarctic O.; 1, ♀,  $\times 10$  (349); 2, ♂,  $\times 20$  (68).



1 Paranebalia

FIG. 134. Nebaliidae (p. R314). (From H. G. Cannon, 1960, in Bronn's Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs, v. 5, Abt. 1, Buch 4, Teil 1, Akad. Verlag. publ., by permission).

**Nebaliopsis** Sars, 1887 [*\*N. typica*; OD] [= *Nebaliopsis* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace subtriangular, posteriorly acuminate, with median dorsal keel, transparent, and with large polygonal ornament of ridges; rostral plate short, triangular in cross section; thorax large, distensible; furcal rami flattened, leaflike, with serrate outer margins; eyes small, with few ommatidia, without basal scale; 4th segment of antennule produced distally into anteriorly denticulate, curved and pointed process; antennar peduncle of 4 segments; gnathal lobe of mandible reduced to simple knob; maxillule with vestigial palp; maxilla with greatly enlarged 1st endite; thoracopods reduced to lanceolate lobes; 1st limb with shorter protopod, longer endopod, and more setiferous epipod than succeeding limbs; 2nd to 4th pleopods with broad exopods. *Rec.*, Atl.-Pac.-SW. Ind.O.—FIG. 133, I. *\*N. typica*, W.Atl.; 1a, ♀, adult, right lat. view showing thorax distended by food in digestive sac,  $\times 4.8$  (349); 1b, anterodorsal region of carapace showing median dorsal keel at top and network of ridges,  $\times 4$  (Rolfe, n); 1c, dorsal view of posterior part of 7th abdominal somite showing tips of 6th pleopods, telson, and furca,  $\times 3.8$  (Rolfe, n).

**Paranebalia** Claus, 1880 [*\*Nebalia longipes* WILLEMOES-SUHM, 1875; OD, M]. Like *Nebalia* but eyestalks elongate and denticulate, without basal scale; 4th segment of antennule produced distally into anteriorly serrate, pointed process; tips of thoracopods projecting well beyond ventral margin of carapace, their endopods and exopods elon-

gate, slender, with long setae on outer edge, epipods small, subtriangular. *Rec.*, NW.Atl.-NW.Pac.—FIG. 134, I. *\*P. longipes* (WILLEMOES-SUHM), W.Atl.; ♀, adult, left lat. view,  $\times 22$  (68, after 377b).

### Order HYMENOSTRACA Rolfe, new order

[=order *Hymenocarina* CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900 (*nom. transl.* WALCOTT, 1912, p. 182, ex suborder *Hymenocarina* CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900)]

Carapace without hinge line, last somite not elongate, telson ?not posteriorly produced, three pairs of caudal spines (?furcae) of unequal length. ?*L.Cam.*, *M.Cam.-L.Ord.*

The tentative erection of this new order is demanded by the peculiar character of the telson and furca. Such a single-character classification is unsatisfactory, but little better can be done in view of the present lack of information on more significant features.

### Family HYMENOCARIDAE Haeckel, 1896

[*nom. correct.* ROLFE, herein (*pro* family *Hymenocarina* HAECKEL, 1896, *nom. imperf.*)] [= *Hymenocaridae* CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900 (*nom. imperf.*)]

Characters of order. ?*L.Cam.*, *M.Cam.-L.Ord.*

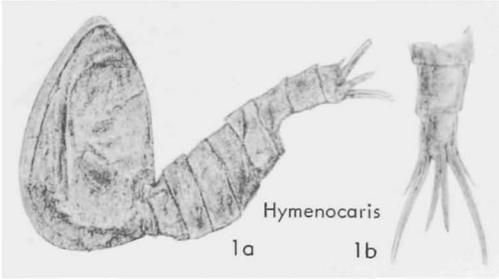


FIG. 135. Hymenocarididae (p. R315).

**Hymenocaris** SALTER, 1853 [*\*H. vermicauda*; OD, M] [= *Hymenocarys* BRINKMANN, 1954 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace subovate, with posterior rim; surface smooth; telson similar to preceding somites; outer pair of caudal spines divergent, shortest; inner pair subparallel, of medium length; intermediate pair longest. [Middle Cambrian (Burgess Shale) species from Canada previously assigned to this genus now are assigned to *Canadaspis*.] ?*L. Cam.*, *M. Cam.*-*L. Ord.*, NW. Eu. (G. Brit.-?Swed.)-?N. Am. (Can.)-Australia-N. Z.—FIG. 135, 1. *\*H. vermicauda*, *L. Ord.*, G. Brit. (Wales); 1a, left lat. view of distorted specimen,  $\times 1$ ; 1b, ?dorsal view of somites, telson, and caudal spines,  $\times 2$  (160).

## Order ARCHAEOSTRACA Claus, 1888

[*nom. correct.* STROMER, 1909 (*pro* Archaeostraken CLAUD, 1888)] [= Palaeocarida HAECKEL, 1889; Palacarides HAECKEL, 1896; Archaeocarida HENNIG, 1921; Archaeostraka RICHTER & RICHTER, 1927; Nahecarida BROILI, 1928; Palaeostracés LA-MEERE, 1933; Archeostrata STØRMER, 1935]

May be large, carapace with hinge line, seventh abdominal somite usually much longer than preceding ones, telson produced dorsally as median process between furcal rami; antennule biramous (known only in *Nahecaris*); antenna ?with flagellar exopod (supposedly in *Nahecaris*); gnathal lobe of mandible with large, paired teeth; ?five pairs of pleopods only. *L. Ord.*-*U. Trias*.

### Suborder CERATIOCARINA Clarke in Zittel, 1900

[= Ceratiocarina RAYMOND, 1935; Ceatiocarina IVANOVA, 1960; Ceratiocarinae JUX, 1960; Ceratiocarida KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961]

Carapace with hinge line; rostral plate without longitudinal ridge, no median dorsal plate; eight short thoracic somites and seven longer abdominal somites where known (Fig. 122), pretelson somite usually elongated. *L. Ord.*-*U. Trias*.

### Family CERATIOCARIDIDAE Salter, 1860

[*nom. correct.* ROLFE, 1961 (*pro* Ceratiocaridae SALTER, 1860)] [= Ceratiocaridae BEECHER, 1884; Ceratiocarida HAECKEL, 1896; Caryocaridae (*recte* Caryocarididae) CHAPMAN, 1903]

Carapace large, covering thoracic and anterior abdominal somites, lacking prominent nodes and ridges; furca long. *L. Ord.*-*L. Dev.*, ?*Carb.*, ?*U. Perm.*

**Ceratiocaris** M'COY, 1849 [ICZN, March, 1964, Op. 690] [*\*C. solenoides*; SD MILLER, 1889 (= *Cultellus rectus* M'COY, 1851, obj., *nom. nud.*)] [= *Leptocheles* M'COY, 1849 (type, *Pterygotius (Leptocheles) leptodactylus* M'COY, 1849; OD, M); *Leptonotus* BARRANDE, 1856 (*nom. nud.*); *Physocaris* SALTER, 1860 (type, *Ceratiocaris (Physocaris) vesica*; OD = *C. cassia* SALTER, 1860); *Phytocaris* ETHERIDGE, 1888 (*nom. null.*); *Astacoderma* HARLEY, 1861 (type, *A. subundulatum var. compositum*; SD ROLFE, herein); *Ceratiocaris* CLAUS, 1880 (*nom. null.*); *Caratiocaris* PACKARD, 1889 (*nom. null.*); *Ceratiocaris* HAECKEL, 1889 (*nom. null.*); *Cerathiocaris* SCALIA, 1922 (*nom. null.*); *Ceratiocaris* PÉNEAU, 1935 (*nom. null.*); *Ceratiocaris*, *Leratiocaris* PÉNEAU, 1946 (*nom. null.*); *Ceratioceras* KRESTOVNIKOV in ORLOV, 1960 (*nom. null.*); *Emmelezoe* ETHERIDGE, JONES & WOODWARD, 1886 (type, *Ceratiocaris elliptica* M'COY, 1849; SD GÜRICH, 1929); *Emmelezoe* LINDSTRÖM, 1895 (*nom. null.*); *Emmelezoe* CLARKE, 1902 (*nom. null.*); *Entomocaris* WHITFIELD, 1896 (*non* GÜRICH, 1929) (type, *E. telleri*; OD); ?*Calyptocaris* JONES & WOODWARD, 1898 (type, *Dithyrocaris? striata* WOODWARD & ETHERIDGE in GEIKIE, GEIKIE, PEACH, & ETHERIDGE, 1873; OD, M); *Limnocaris* CLARKE, 1902 (type, *Ceratiocaris (L.) praecedens*; OD, M); ?*Polystomurum* NOVOZHILOV, 1958 (type, *P. stoermeri*). Carapace elongate to subovate, with prominent anterior horn, posterior margin usually sinuous; right valve with or ?without 3 dorsal hinge nodes; rostral plate of medium length, only anterior indurated tip projecting free of valves; rostral plate and carapace with anastomosing, longitudinal striae. Body somites commonly encircled by posteroventrally inclined striae and anteriorly imbricating scale ornament; telson and furca rodlike, usually longitudinally grooved and bearing spinules, telson longer than furca; 8 thoracic appendages differentiated from ?5 abdominal appendages, poorly known. [*Emmelezoe* and *Limnocaris* are here synonymized since the presence or absence of the anterior tubercle or "eye spot" is at present unreliable for generic differentiation.] ?*L. Ord.*, *U. Ord.*-*L. Dev.*, ?*L. Carb.*, ?*U. Perm.*, cosmop.—FIG. 136, 1. *C. papilio* SALTER in MURCHISON, M. Sil., Scot.; right dorsolat. view (reconstr.), pleopods known to be present, but their structure unknown,

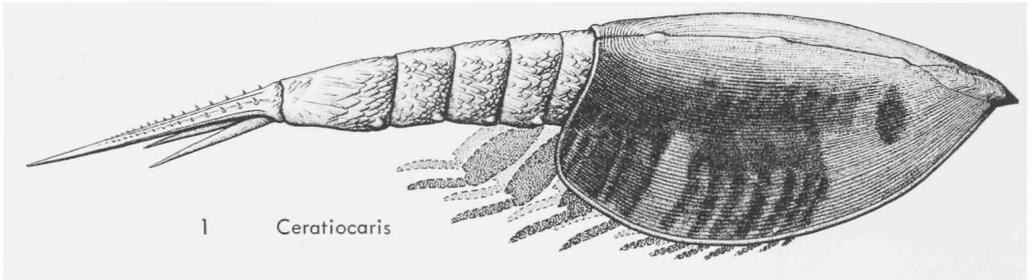


FIG. 136. Ceratiocarididae (p. R315).

hence pleopods of *Paranebalia* type are shown,  $\times 1$  (258).

**Caryocaris** SALTER, 1863 [*\*C. wrightii*; OD] [= ?*Dawsonia* NICHOLSON, 1873 (type, *D. campanulata*; SD S. A. MILLER, 1889) (*non Dawsonia* HARTT in DAWSON, 1868; *nec* FRITSCH, 1879; *nec* CARPENTER in DALL, 1882); *Caryocaris* GURLEY, 1896 (*nom. null.*); ?*Rhinopterocariss* CHAPMAN, 1903 (type, *Lingulocaris mcoyi* ETHERIDGE, 1892; OD, M); *Rhinopteriocaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*); *Lamprocaris* NOVÁK in ŽELÍZKO, 1907 (*nom. nud.*); *Lamprocaris* ŽELÍZKO, 1919 (*fide* CHLUPÁČ) (type, *L. micans*; SD VAN STRAELLEN & SCHMITZ, 1934)]. Carapace elongate-subovate, posterior margin with (or ?without) fringe

of spines and spinules, anterodorsal carapace horn of each valve may be anteriorly produced; mid-ventral ridge may be present, subparallel to ventral margin but confluent with it antero- and posteroventrally; surface smooth, striate, or reticulate; telson and furca laterally expanded, leaflike; telson shorter than furca; external margins of furcal rami ?notched or serrate. [*Rhinopterocariss* may prove to be generically distinct, but the absence of posterior spinules and produced carapace horn from the type species and other species of *Caryocaris* may only be due to preservation. These structures are commonly not preserved in specimens of "*Rhinopterocariss*" and indeed were not noticed or figured by ETHERIDGE in his original description of the syntypes of the type species of *Rhinopterocariss*. Furthermore the significance of these characters at the generic level seems doubtful.] *L.Ord.-U.Ord.*, cosmop. [*U. Cam.* and *Sil.* records of this genus are based on generically indeterminate specimens.]—FIG. 137,1. *\*C. wrightii*, L. Ord., Eng. (Skiddaw, Cumberland), left lat.,  $\times 1.5$  (160).—FIG. 137,2. *C. maccoyi* (ETHERIDGE) [= *C. curvilata* GURLEY], L. Ord., USA (N.Y., N. Granville); LV lat.,  $\times 1.5$  (Rolfe, n).—FIG. 137,3. *C. monodon* (GURLEY), L. Ord., Can. (Que.); telson and furca, dors. (reconstr.),  $\times 3$  (Rolfe, n).

**Gonatocaris** GÜRICH, 1929 [*\*Emmelezoe decora* CLARKE, 1902; OD]. Like *Ceratiocaris* but with carapace valves truncate anteriorly, coarsely ribbed

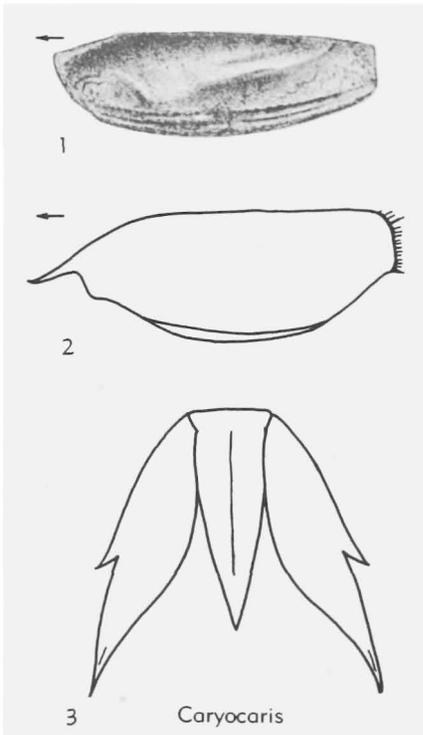


FIG. 137. Ceratiocarididae (p. R316).

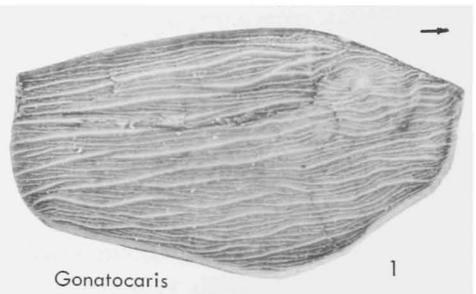


FIG. 138. Ceratiocarididae (p. R316).

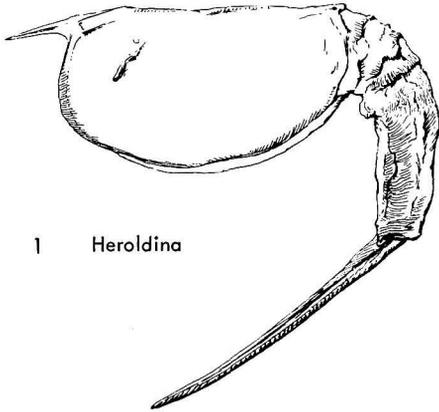


FIG. 139. Ceratiocarididae (p. R317).

and with anterior tubercle. *U.Sil.*, N.Am.—FIG. 138, *I*. \**G. decora* (CLARKE), Salina Gr. (Vernon Sh.), USA (N.Y.); RV (syntype) lat.,  $\times 4$  (Rolfe, n).

**Heroldina** BROILI, 1931 [*pro Heroldia* BROILI, 1929 (*non* VERHOEFF, 1926)] [\**Mesothyra rhenana* BROILI, 1928; OD] [= *Allolepicthys* WHITLEY, 1940 (*pro Allolepis* HEINTZ, 1932, *non* JORDAN & HUBBS, 1925) (type, *A. longicornis*; OD)]. Like *Ceratiocarididae* but carapace valves less acuminate anteriorly, larger rostral plate (length almost half that of carapace), projecting free from carapace anteriorly as triangular spine, and last abdominal somite very elongate. [CHLUPÁČ (1963) has suggested that this genus belongs to the Aristozoidae; although the last abdominal somite and telson indicate such an affinity, the carapace is unlike that of any aristozoid.] *L.Dev.*, W.Ger.—FIG. 139, *I*. \**H. rhenana* (BROILI), Hunsrück Sh., Gemünden; left lat. view,  $\times 0.25$  (346b).

**Family AUSTRIOCARIDIDAE**  
Glaessner, 1931

[*nom. correct.* ROLFE, herein (*pro* Austriocarididae GLAESSNER, 1931)] [= *Austricaridae* BROOKS & CASTER, 1956 (*nom. null.*)]

Carapace with excavate posterior margin and commonly a mesolateral or juxtadorsal ridge; rostral plate relatively short; posteroventral or posteromedian protuberances or internal impressions may represent carapace adductor muscle scars, suggesting that thorax projected free from carapace. *M.Dev.-U.Trias.*

**Austriocarididae** GLAESSNER, 1931 [\**A. carinata*; OD]. Carapace only known, posterior excavation arcuate or irregular, anterior margin concave or produced into small beak; posteroventral or ventromedian V-shaped furrow; surface smooth with mid-dorsal

granulations or posteroventral pits, or dorsoventrally striate. *U.Trias.*, W.Eu. (Austria).—FIG. 140, 2. \**A. carinata*; RV with rostral plate, lat.,  $\times 0.6$  (111).

**Concavicularis** ROLFE, 1961 [*pro Colpocaris* MEEK, 1872 (*non* VON MEYER, 1862)] [\**Ceratiocarididae* (*Colpocaris*) *bradleyi* MEEK, 1872; SD S. A. MILLER, 1889]. Posterior excavation of carapace valves semicircular, anterior margin truncate or acuminate; may bear mesolateral ridge or bluntly serrate juxtadorsal ridge; surface ?smooth, reticulate or striate; doublure may be broad; telson shorter than furca, all smooth or longitudinally striate. *M.Dev.-M.Penn.*, Czech.-USA.-?E.Can.-Australia.—FIG. 140, 1a. *C. sinuata* (MEEK & WORTHEN), M.Penn., USA (Ill.); LV (holotype) lat.,  $\times 0.6$  (Rolfe, n).—FIG. 140, 1b. *C. rostellata* ROLFE, M.Penn., USA (Ill.); LV (holotype) lat., with anastomosing striae ornament shown diagrammatically,  $\times 0.9$  (Rolfe, n).

**Family ECHINOCARIDIDAE**  
Clarke in Zittel, 1900

[*nom. correct.* CHLUPÁČ, 1963 (*pro* Echinocarididae CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900)] [= *Echinocaridae* BOCK, 1946]

Carapace with hinge line, without anterior horn, with anterior swellings and lateral ridge. *L.Dev.-L.Miss.*

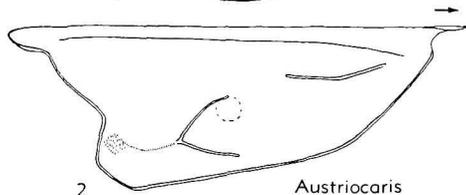
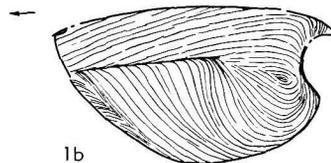


FIG. 140. Austriocarididae (p. R317).

## Subfamily ECHINOCARIDINAE

Clarke in Zittel, 1900

[*nom. transl.* ROLFE, herein (*ex* Echinocaridae CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900)]

Carapace subovate-subquadrate, anterodorsally rounded and without posteroventral spine; telson and furca thin, rodlike. *L. Dev.-L. Miss.*

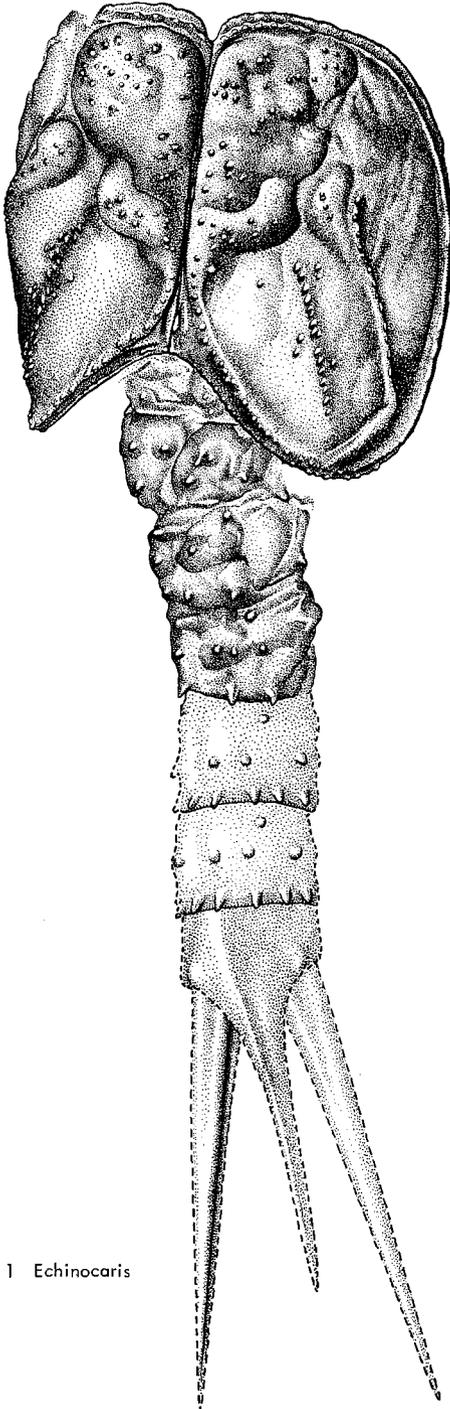
*Echinocaris* WHITFIELD, 1880 [*\*E. sublevis*; OD] [= *Echinocarys* BARROIS, 1891 (*nom. van.*)]. Carapace subovate-subelliptic, posterodorsally truncated, with prominent anterodorsal and mid-dorsal lobes; lateral ridge carinate, sigmoidal or sinuous; carapace and somites characteristically tuberculate or spinose; furca longer than telson, all slender, each furcal ramus grooved along inner side. *M. Dev.-L. Miss.*, cosmop.—FIG. 141, 1. *E. socialis* BEECHER, U. Dev. (Chemung), USA (Pa.); right dors. lat. (part reconstr.),  $\times 4$  (Rolfe, n).—FIG. 142, 3. *E. punctata* (HALL), M. Dev. (Hamilton Gr.), USA (N.Y.); last 2 somites of abdomen, telson and furca; 3a, dors., showing clasping posterior spines,  $\times 0.5$ ; 3b, vent.,  $\times 0.5$  (140).

*Callizoe* BARRANDE, 1872 [*\*C. bohémica*; OD, M] [= *Callizoe* BARRANDE in BIGSBY, 1868 (*nom. nud.*); *Calozoe* NICHOLSON & LYDEKKER, 1889 (*nom. null.*); *Calizoe* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace like *Ptychocaris* but margin concave anteroventrally, anterior tubercle anteroventrally situated, lacks anteromedian pair of nodes and furrow, lateral ridge faint, not carinate; doublure wall concave; pitted ?hinge node developed at posterior end of hinge line. *L. Dev.*, Czech.—FIG. 142, 2. *\*C. bohémica*, U. Koněprusy Ls.; lat. view of LV (int. mold),  $\times 3$  (Rolfe, n).

*Ptychocaris* NOVÁK, 1885 [*\*P. parvula*; SD VAN STRAELEN & SCHMITZ, 1934] [= *Ptychocaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace elongate-subquadrate, with mid-anterior group of ?3 low nodes, anterodorsally situated prominent anterior tubercle, and posterior pair of large nodes (?carapace adductor and mandibular muscle attachments) bordered posteriorly and separated by furrows; lateral ridge prominent, carinate. *L. Dev.-M. Dev.*, Czech.-N. Can.—FIG. 142, 5. *P. simplex* NOVÁK, L. Dev. (Koněprusy Ls.), Czech.; lat. view of RV,  $\times 1$  (77, after 370b).

## Subfamily MONTECARIDINAE Rolfe, 1966

Carapace valves elongate-subquadrate, anterodorsally truncate, with anterodorsal grooves perpendicular to hinge line separating tuberculate areas; with carinate lateral ridge and posteroventral spine; telson and furca laterally expanded; telson with prominent, movable, lateral spines. ?*L. Dev.*, *M. Dev.-U. Dev.*



1 Echinocaris

FIG. 141. Echinocarididae (Echinocaridinae) (p. R318).

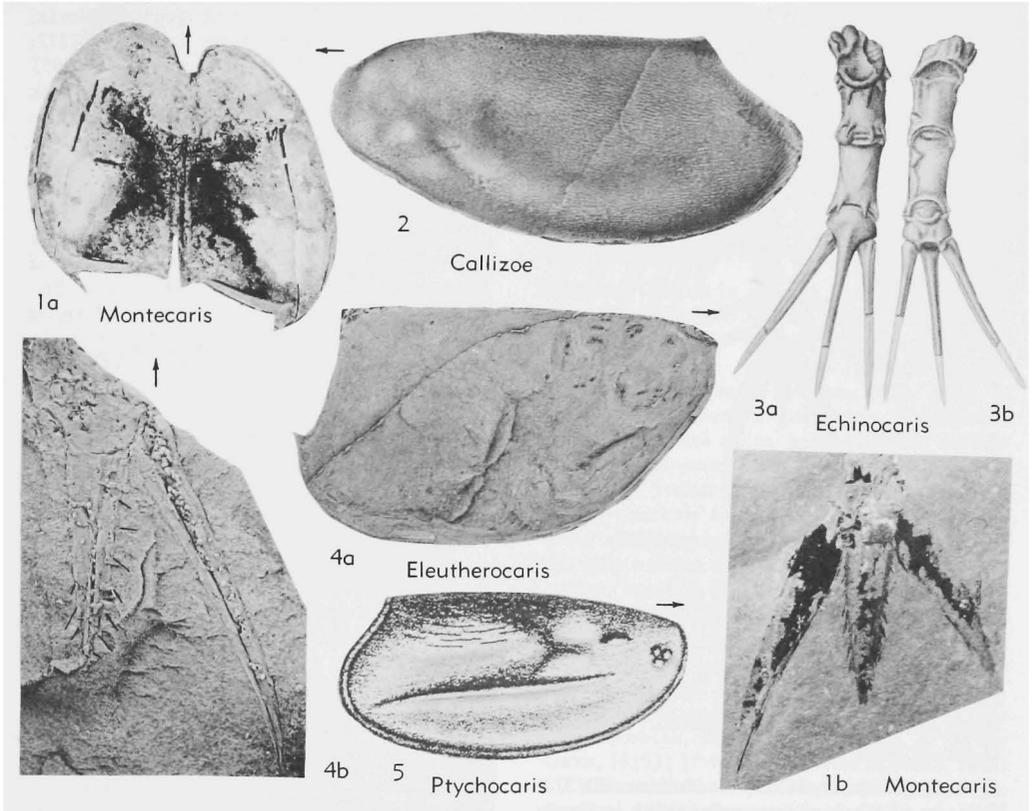


FIG. 142. Echinocarididae (Echinocaridinae) (2-3, 5), (Montecaridinae) (1, 4) (p. R318-R319).

**Montecaris** Jux, 1959 [*\*M. strunensis*; OD]. Anterodorsal grooves deep, 4 in number, 1st and 4th uniting ventrally; doublure broad; lateral ridge long, extending to posteroventral spine; small posterodorsal spine present; posterior margin of abdominal somites produced into spines; telson broad, equal in length to furca or shorter than it. ?*L.Dev.*, *M.Dev.-U.Dev.*, *C.Eu.*-?*W.Can.*-Australia. —FIG. 142,1. *\*M. strunensis* Jux, *U.Dev.* (Frasn.), Ger.; 1a, dorsal view of holotype, carapace valves spread out,  $\times 0.5$ ; 1b, incomplete telson and furca,  $\times 1$  (Rolfe, n).

**Eleutherocaris** CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900 [*\*Echinocaris whitfieldi* CLARKE, 1885; SM CLARKE, 1902]. Like *Montecaris* but anterodorsal grooves of carapace shallow, lateral ridge short and restricted to anteroventral region, telson narrower; carapace with dorsal-ventral rows of anteriorly convex crescentic ridges or scales. *U.Dev.*, USA(N.Y.). —FIG. 142,4. *\*E. whitfieldi*, Naples Gr. (Hatch Hill), Naples; rubber molds of holotype; 4a, lat. view of LV,  $\times 1.7$ ; 4b, telson and right furcal ramus, dorsal, ventral platform of telson head impressed through tergum, telson spines re-touched,  $\times 1.7$  (Rolfe, n).

### Family PEPHRICARIDIDAE Van Straelen, 1933

[*nom. correct.* ROLFE, herein (*pro* Pephricaridae VAN STRAELEN, 1933)]

Carapace valves semicircular, with prominent, posteriorly tapering, mid-dorsal-posteromedian fold; rim with long spines; last two abdominal somites with long spine on each side; telson shorter than curved furcal rami. *U.Dev.*

**Pephricaris** CLARKE, 1898 [*\*P. horripilata*; OD, M] [= *Pephrycaris* RUSCONI, 1950 (*nom. null.*)]. Characters of family. *U.Dev.*, USA(N.Y.). —FIG. 143,1. *\*P. horripilata*, Chemung, Alfred, Allegany Co.; dorsal view of lectotype showing anterodorsal "pits" due to erosion of mandible bodies,  $\times 1.5$  (351b, mod.).

### Family ARISTOZOIDAE Gürich, 1929

Carapace strongly convex, with dorsal-median nodes and large anterior horn but without lateral ridge; deep marginal groove

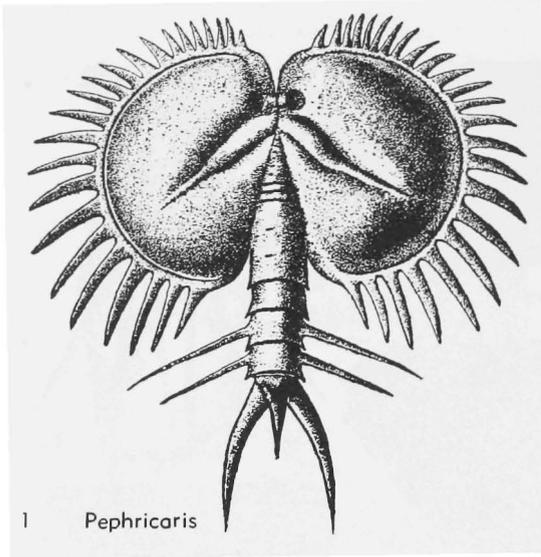


FIG. 143. Pephricarididae (p. R319).

demarcating broad rounded rim; last abdominal somite very elongate. [Furca unknown and possibly lacking. If this can be substantiated a new order would be indicated as CHLUPÁČ has suggested.] ?*M.Ord.*, *U.Sil.-M.Dev.*

*Aristozoe* BARRANDE, 1872 [*\*A. bisulcata*; SD S. A. MILLER, 1889] [= *Aristozoe* BARRANDE in BIGSBY, 1868 (*nom. nud.*); *Aristozoe* BARRANDE, 1872 (*nom. null.*); *Bactropus* BARRANDE, 1872 (type,

*\*B. longipes*; SD ROLFE, herein); *Bractropus* CANU, 1886 (*nom. null.*); ?*Phasganocaris* NOVÁK, 1886 (type, *Eurypterus pugio* BARRANDE, 1872; OD, M); *Phasgonocaris* ROGER in PIVETEAU, 1953 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace with relatively thick cuticle, subcircular-subelliptical, with rounded anterior horn, anterodorsal nodes separated by grooves, posterodorsal angle rounded; telson as in *Ceratiocaris*. [The two synonymized genera were described from last abdominal somites and a telson only, and were subsequently suggested by NOVÁK and GÜRICH to correspond with carapaces of *Aristozoe* spp.]. ?*M.Ord.*, *U.Sil.-M.Dev.*, Eu-Novaya Zemlya-?SE.Can.—FIG. 144, 1. *A. regina* BARRANDE, L.Dev.(U.Koněprusy Ls.), Czech.; 1a, left lat. view of carapace,  $\times 0.8$ ; 1b, 7th abdominal somite and telson,  $\times 0.8$  (370a). [= *Bactropus* BARRANDE in BIGSBY, 1868 (*nom. nud.*).]

*Orozoe* BARRANDE, 1872 [*\*O. mira*; OD, M]. Like *Aristozoe* but carapace subquadrate, rim anteroventrally and posteroventrally flattened and produced, with large, dorsoventrally flattened, posteriorly directed blunt spine on posteromedian area. *L.Dev.*, ?*M.Dev.*, Czech.-?Ger.—FIG. 145, 1. *\*O. mira*, L.Dev.(U.Koněprusy Ls.), Czech.; 1a,b, lat. and dorsal views of LV with spine restored,  $\times 4$  (Rolfe, n).

*Pygocaris* PERNER, 1916 [*\*P. schuberti*; OD]. Like *Aristozoe* but with (?secondarily) thin cuticle, anterior horn acuminate, anterodorsal nodes not separated by grooves and may be only poorly developed, posterodorsal corner produced; rostral plate lanceolate, with 2 anterior constrictions. ?*L.Dev.*, Czech.—FIG. 145, 2. *\*P. schuberti*, Lochkov Ls., Kosoř; lat. view of LV (paralectotype),  $\times 0.75$  (372).

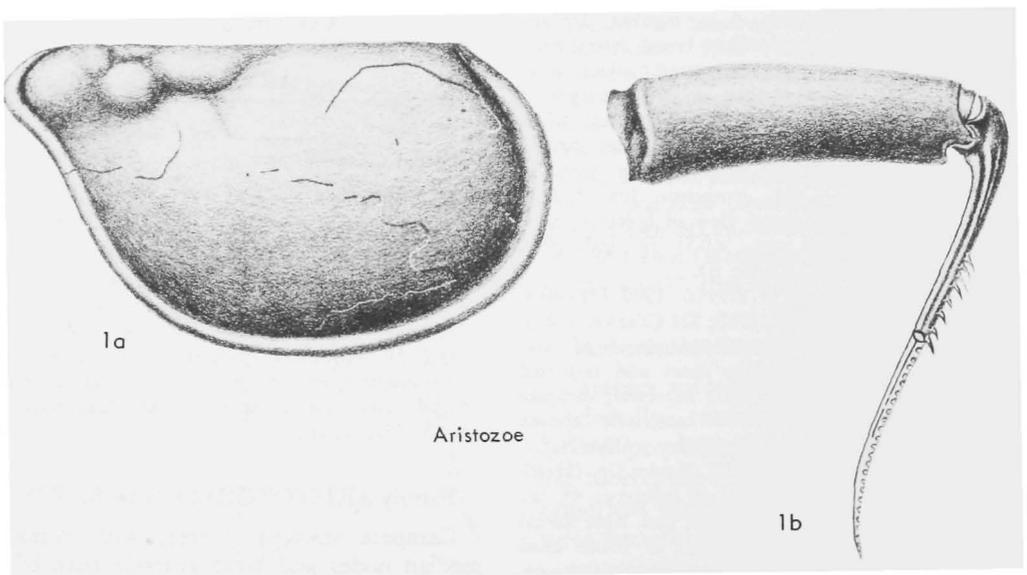


FIG. 144. Aristozoidae (p. R320).

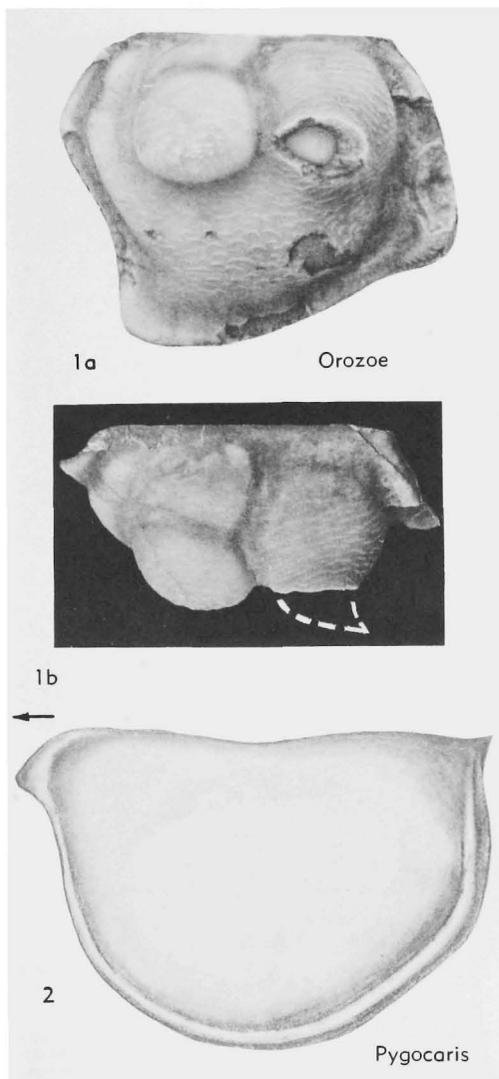


FIG. 145. Aristozoidae (p. R320).

### Suborder RHINOCARINA Clarke in Zittel, 1900

[=Nahecarina RICHTER, 1933; Rchinocarina IVANOVA, 1960]

Carapace with median dorsal plate separating valves behind rostral plate; last abdominal somite elongated. ?*Sil.*, *L.Dev.-M. Penn.*, ?*U. Perm.*

### Family RHINOCARIDIDAE Hall & Clarke, 1888

[*nom. correct.* ROLFE, 1962 (*pro* Rhinocaridae HALL & CLARKE, 1888)] [=Pinnacidae HALL & CLARKE, 1888; Pinnacidae CLARKE, 1893; Rhinocaridae CLELAND, 1903; Nahecaridae (*recte* Nahecarididae) BROILI, 1928; Reinocaridae

BROOKS & CASTER, 1956; Pseudodontichthyidae OBRUCHEV in ORLOV, 1964; includes Rhinocarinae (*recte* Rhinocaridinae) HALL & CLARKE, 1888 (*nom. transl.* KRESTOVNIKOV in ORLOV, 1960, *ex* Rhinocaridae HALL & CLARKE, 1888); Dithyrocarinae (*recte* Dithyrocaridinae) JONES & WOODWARD, 1899 (*nom. transl.* KRESTOVNIKOV in ORLOV, 1960, *ex* Dithyrocaridae JONES & WOODWARD, 1899); Rachuridae MILLER, 1889 (*nom. neg.*)]

Carapace valves elongate, subovate; median dorsal plate narrow and with chevron ornament; rostral plate and median dorsal plate slightly bent along median carina. ?*Sil.*, *L.Dev.-M. Penn.*, ?*U. Perm.*

**Rhinocaris** CLARKE in HALL & CLARKE, 1888 [\**R. columbina*; SD S. A. MILLER, 1889] [=Phinocaris MATTHEW, 1888 (*nom. null.*); *Rhynocaris* CHERNYSHEV, 1938 (*nom. null.*)]. Posterior margin of carapace valves concave, with small to medium posteroventral and rarely posterodorsal spine; mesolateral carina faint or absent; anterior node may be present and from it branching furrows may radiate posteriorly; rostral plate projecting anteriorly from carapace, anterior half laterally compressed; somites encircled by posteroventrally inclined striae; telson subcircular in cross section, equal in length to furca or shorter than it. *M.Dev.-U.Dev.*, N.Am.—FIG. 146.4. \**R. columbina*, USA(N.Y.); 4a,b, left lat. and dorsal views (reconstr.),  $\times 0.7$  (351). [=Pseudodontichthys SKEELS, 1962 (type, *P. whitei*; OD)].

**Dithyrocaris** SCOULE in PORTLOCK, 1843 [*pro Argas* SCOULE, 1835 (*non* LATREILLE, 1795; *nec* OKEN, 1815)] [\**Argas testudineus* SCOULE, 1835; SD ROEMER in BRONN & ROEMER, 1854] [=Argus GEINITZ, 1853 (*nom. null.*); *Arges* CLAUS, 1876 (*nom. null.*); *Anthropodontoides* BARKAS, 1871 (type, *A. bailesii*; OD, M); *Dithyrocarus* M'COY in GRIFFITH, 1842 (*nom. nud.*); *Ditryocharis* ROEMER, 1866 (*nom. null.*); *Dithyrocaris* MEEK & WORTHEN, 1873 (*nom. null.*); *Dythyrocaris* KAYSER, 1878 (*nom. null.*); *Dithyrocaris* BIGSBY, 1878 (*nom. null.*); *Dithyriocaris* HIND *et al.*, 1903 (*nom. null.*); *Dithyrocaris* BARROIS, 1891 (*nom. van.*); *Rhachura* SCUDDER, 1878 (type, *R. venosa*; OD, M); *Rachura* ZITTEL, 1885 (*nom. null.*); *Rhaehura* JONES & WOODWARD, 1899 (*nom. null.*); *Mesothyra* HALL in HALL & CLARKE, 1888, (type, *Dithyrocaris oceanii*; OD); *Mesothyris* RUEDEMANN, 1918 (*nom. null.*); *Chaenocaris* JONES & WOODWARD, 1898 (type, *Dithyrocaris tenuistriata* M'COY, 1844; SD ROLFE, herein)]. Like *Rhinocaris* but posterior margin of carapace valves straight or convex, with large posteroventral spine and usually with prominent mesolateral carina and anterodorsal granules; may bear up to 4 lateral carinae; doublure usually broad, rim may have oblique, posteriorly imbricating ridges; somites ornamented as in *Rhinocaris* or with longitudinal carinae; telson subtriangular in cross section, shorter, equal in length to furca or longer than it; furcal rami flattened, commonly with deep longitudinal grooves. ?*Sil.*,

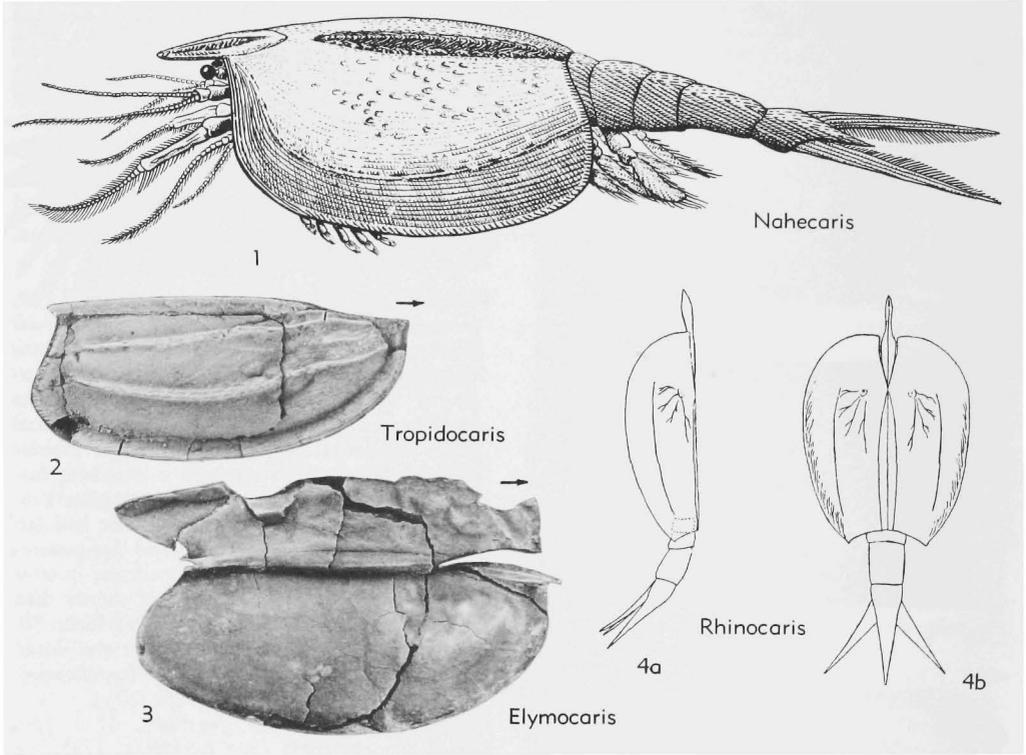


FIG. 146. Rhinocarididae (p. R321-R322).

?L.Dev., M.Dev.-M.Penn., ?U.Perm., Eu.-N.Am.-USSR-?Australia.—FIG. 147,1. \**D. testudinea* (SCOULER), L.Carb., Scot.; dorsal view of holotype,  $\times 2$  (Rolfe, n). [= *Chaenocartis* YANISHEVSKII, 1910 (*nom. null.*.)]

**Elymocarid** BEECHER, 1884 [\**E. siliqua*; OD] [= *Elimocarid* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*.)]. Like *Rhinocarid* but carapace valves without posteroventral spine; no mesolateral carina, anterior tubercle present; rim with oblique, posteriorly imbricating ridges; rostral plate folded ventrally along 2 lateral, anteriorly converging carinae; telson with broad median ridge. M.Dev.-U.Dev., USA-?Can.—FIG. 146,3. \**E. siliqua*, U.Dev. (Chemung), USA (Pa.); dorsal view of carapace showing median dorsal plate, rostral plate, and crushed LV,  $\times 1.6$  (Rolfe, n).

**Macrocarid** S. A. MILLER, 1894 [\**M. gorbyi*; OD]. Like *Rhinocarid* but carapace with short longitudinal ridges; no mesolateral carina. [Poorly known; ventral region of carapace and tailpiece unknown. Supposed body segments of MILLER's syntypes lack ornament of lectotype (Miller, 1894, fig. 43; Chicago Field Museum) and probably not crustacean; supposed "masticatory apparatus" is scolecodont.] L.Miss., USA (Ind.).

**Nahecarid** JAEKEL, 1921 [\**N. stuertzi*; OD] [= *Nehecarid* GÜRICH, 1929 (*nom. null.*.)]. Like

*Tropidocaris* but with single lateral carina on each carapace valve. L.Dev., Ger.—FIG. 146,1. \**N. stuertzi*; left dorsolateral view (reconstr.),  $\times 0.7$  (Rolfe, n).

[BROILI maintained that the rostral plate of *Nahecarid* was completely fused with the carapace, but HENNIG and GÜRICH showed that it was free, at least in some specimens (which BROILI therefore asserted belonged to a different genus). Specimens in the Harvard Museum of Comparative Zoology show the rostral plate separated from the carapace laterally and probably posteriorly, though obscured by pyritization. A median dorsal plate is present, so that *Nahecarid* is certainly one of the *Rhinocarina*, as HENNIG and GÜRICH affirmed, but BROILI and RAYMOND denied. Thus no basis exists for BROILI's order *Nahecarina*, although, should the rostral plate definitely prove to be fused, the separate family might be resurrected.]

**Tropidocaris** BEECHER, 1884 [\**T. bicarinata*; SD S. A. MILLER, 1889] [= *Tropocaris* JONES & WOODWARD, 1888 (*nom. null.*); *Tropidocaris* CLARKE, 1892 (*nom. null.*); *Tropidocaris*, *Tropidocaris*, *Trapidocaris* CHERNYSHV, 1938 (*nom. null.*); *Tropidocarinatus* STURGEON, HLAVIN, & KESLING, 1964 (*nom. null.*.)]. Like *Dithyrocarid* but with mesolateral carina extending to anterior border of carapace; rim broader and more convex; commonly lacks posteroventral spine. [The characters by which present genera of *Rhinocarididae* are differentiated are probably only of specific value and considerable revision is required.] ?M.Dev., U.Dev., Eu.-N.Am.—FIG. 146,2. \**T. bicarinata*,

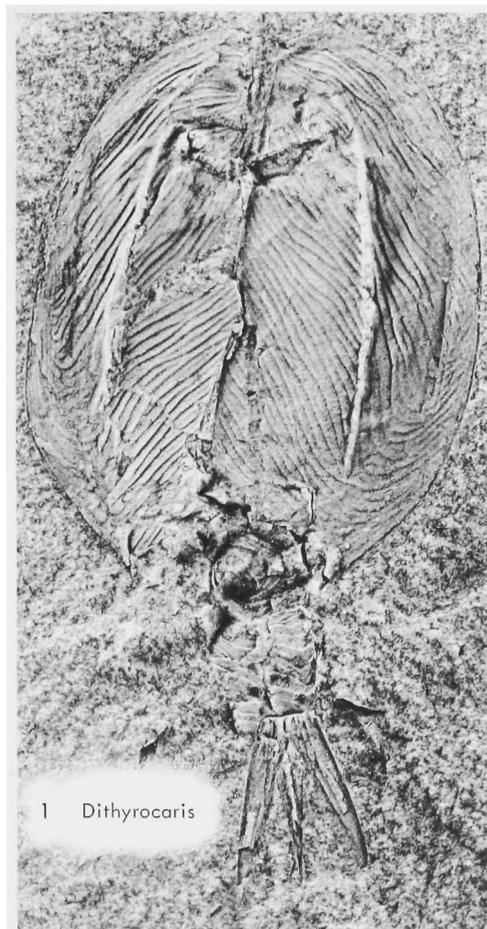


FIG. 147. Rhinocarididae (p. R321-R322).

U.Dev., USA(Pa.); lat. view of RV (lectotype), right half of median dorsal plate only preserved, showing adductor muscle impression and vascular ridges between lateral carinae,  $\times 2$  (Rolfe, n).

#### Family OHIOCARIDIDAE Rolfe, 1962

Carapace valves subcircular, with anterodorsal-medioventral fold and marginal ridge dorsal from ventral margin; median dorsal plate broad, without median carina. *U.Dev.*

*Ohiocaris* ROLFE, 1962 [*\*O. wycoffi*; OD]. Characters of family. *U.Dev.*, USA(Ohio).—FIG. 148, 1. *\*O. wycoffi*, Chagrin Sh., Porter Creek (Cuyahoga Co.); dorsal view of holotype showing mandibles impressed through anterodorsal region of carapace valves; abdomen inverted relative to carapace,  $\times 1$  (376a, mod.).

### Phyllocarida Order and Family UNCERTAIN

Genera and families founded on isolated carapaces or tail pieces, or of family or order incertae sedis are described below. Some genera may not even be Phyllocarida, but they are too poorly known to be assigned with certainty to other groups.

*Anomalocaris* WHITEAVES, 1892 [*non* ORTMANN, 1893] [*\*A. canadensis*; OD] [= *Anomalocaris* WALCOTT, 1908 (*nom. null.*); *Anomalocaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Curved body of at least 14 subquadrate segments including telson, each segment with pair of ?ventral, elongate pointed, unsegmented appendages; dorsal and ventral processes on telson may represent ?furcae of *Hymenocaris* type. [Possibly the body of *Tuzoia*. Type of Anomalocaridae (*recte* Anomalocarididae) RAYMOND, 1935]. *L.Cam.-M.Cam.*, ?*U. Sil.*, N.Am.—FIG. 149,2. *\*A. canadensis*, M. Cam., Can.(B.C.); part of body, lat.,  $\times 0.5$  (Rolfe, n).

*Baituganocaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 [*\*B. tatarica*; OD]. Like *Montecaris*, but carapace without posteroventral spines and anterodorsal grooves. [Type of Baituganocarinae (*recte* Baituganocaridinae) KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961. Should this genus prove synonymous with *Montecaris*, as CHLUPÁČ has suggested, the subfamily Baituganocaridinae would have priority over Montecaridinae.] *U.Dev.*, E.Eu.-?Czech.—FIG. 149,3. *\*B. tatarica*, Shugurov Beds (Frasn.), Orenburg distr., E.Eu.; carapace displaced from abdomen (holotype),  $\times 1.5$  (168).

*Canadaspis* NOVOZHILOV in ORLOV, 1960 [*\*Hymenocaris perfecta* WALCOTT, 1912; OD]. Carapace

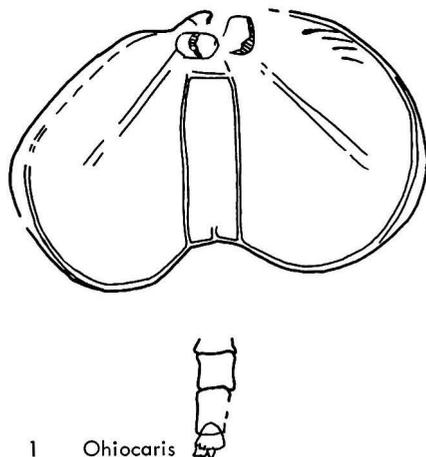


FIG. 148. Ohiocarididae (p. R323).

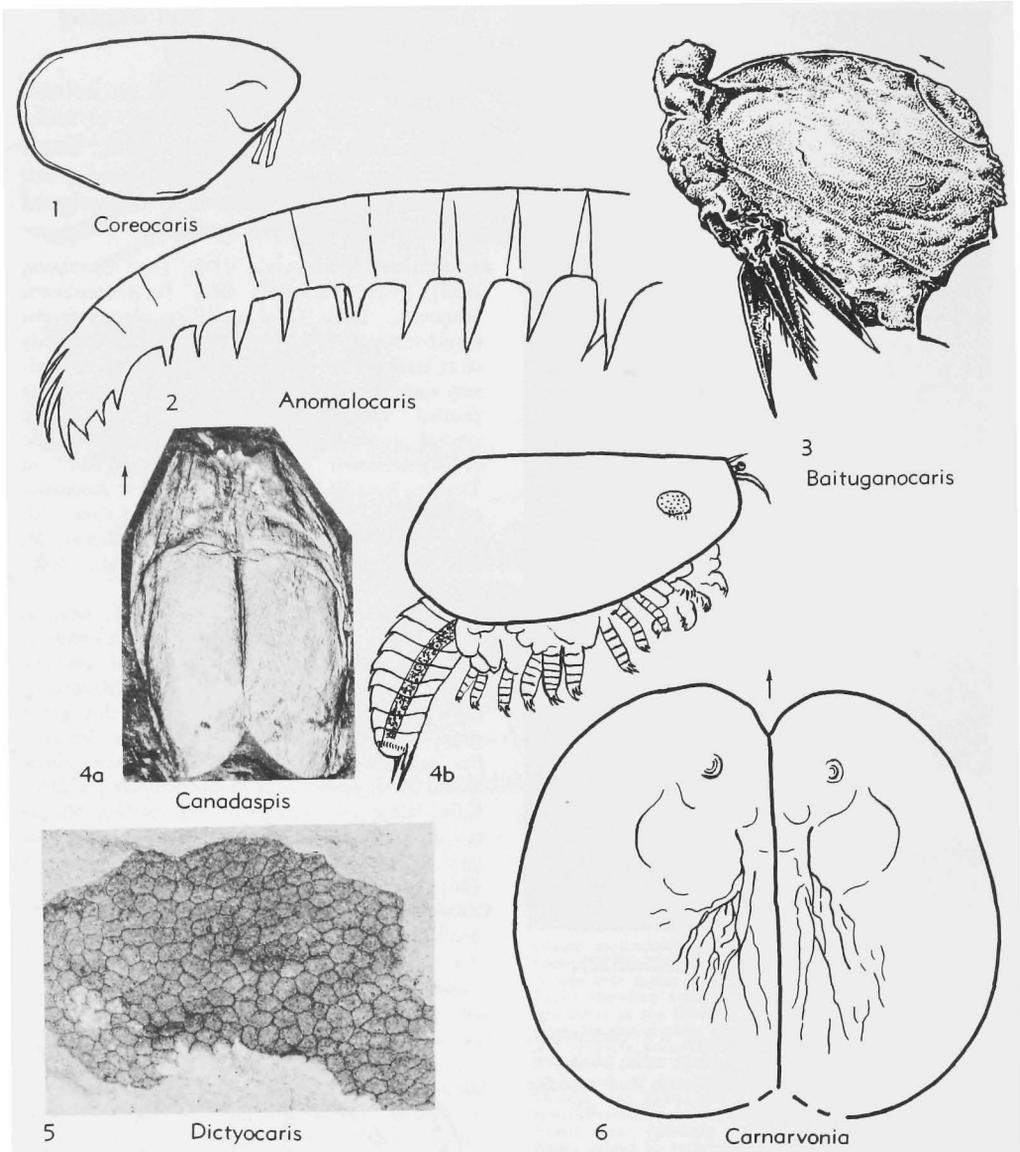


FIG. 149. Phyllocarida, Order and Family Uncertain (p. R323-R325).

with hinge line, valves subovate, each with large anteromedian adductor muscle scar; rostral plate small, eyes pedunculate; pleomeres of same length as thoracomeres, without pleopods; with posteroventral spines, especially well developed on ?pretelson somite and simulating furca; telson small, rounded, ?without furca; ?amandibulate; thoracopods of at least 8, short segments with 4 distal, anteriorly curved claws and large proximally attached lamella. [Type of order Canadaspidida and family Canadaspididae NOVOZHILOV in ORLOV, 1960.] *M. Cam.*, W. Can.—FIG. 149, 4. \**C. per-*

*jecta* (WALCOTT), Burgess Sh., B.C.; 4a, dorsal view of carapace showing left ?antenna, eyes, and rostral plate,  $\times 1.6$  (Rolfe, n); 4b, right lat. view of holotype (reconstr.) showing intestinal filling,  $\times 1.7$  (Rolfe, n, after 384c).

*Carnarvonja* WALCOTT, 1912 [\**C. venosa*; OD] [= *Caanarvonja* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace with hinge line, valves subelliptical, with anterior tubercle; prominent ?vascular markings diverge posteriorly from main mid-dorsal, longitudinal trunk on each valve. *M. Cam.*, Can.—FIG. 149, 6. \**C. venosa*, Burgess Sh.,

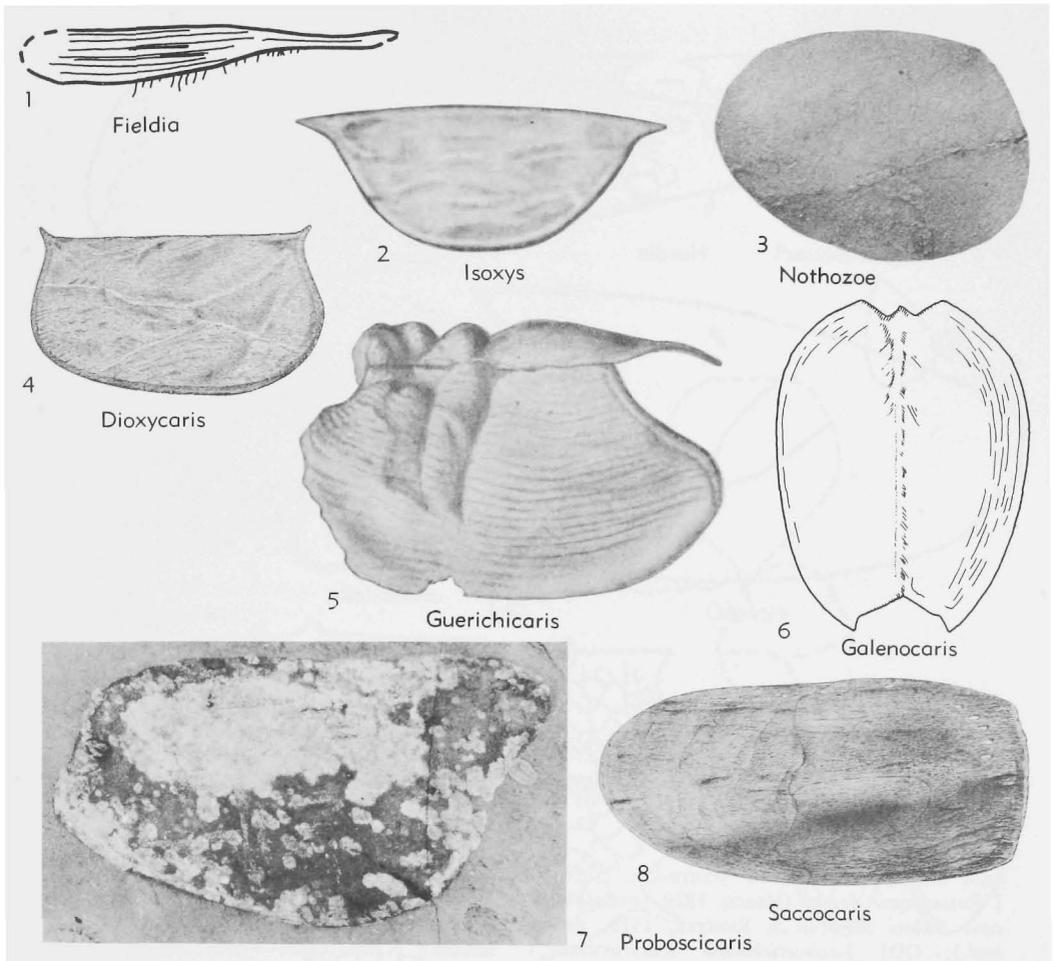


FIG. 150. Phyllocarida, Order and Family Uncertain (p. R325-R327).

B.C.; dorsal view of carapace (holotype) with valves spread out,  $\times 0.6$  (Rolfe, n).

**Coreocaris** KOBAYASHI, 1937 [*\*C. eishunensis*; OD]. Carapace valves subovate, ?without hinge line. *L.Perm.*, S.Korea.—FIG. 149.1. *\*C. eishunensis*, Jido Ser.; right lat. view of carapace (holotype) showing ?cephalic appendages,  $\times 4$  (Rolfe, n).

**Dictyocaris** SALTER, 1860 [*\*D. slimoni*; OD] [= *Dictyacris* HENDERSON, 1880 (*nom. null.*); *Didyocaris* VOGDES, 1889 (*nom. null.*); *Eohepatica* HEARD & JONES, 1931 (type, *E. dyfriensis*; OD, M); *Thallomia* HEARD & JONES, 1931 (*nom. van.*)]. Carapace without hinge line, valves subtriangular, with reticulation of grooves or ridges (probably indicating outlines of cuticular prisms). *M.Sil.-L.Dev.*, NW.Eu.-USA.—FIG. 149.5. *\*D. slimoni*, ?M.Sil., Scot.; carapace fragment showing reticulation,  $\times 3$  (Rolfe, n).

**Dioxyaris** GÜRICH, 1929 [*\*Leperditia? argenta*

WALCOTT, 1886; OD] [= *Dyoxyaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace ?with hinge line, valves subrectangular, anterodorsal and posterodorsal extremities produced obliquely into processes. *L.Cam.*, N.Am.—FIG. 150.4. *\*D. argenta* (WALCOTT), USA (Utah); lat. view of ?LV (holotype),  $\times 0.7$  (384a).

**Fieldia** WALCOTT, 1912 [*\*F. lanceolata*; OD]. ?Carapace lanceolate, with at least 5 longitudinal furrows. *M.Cam.*, N.Am.—FIG. 150.1. *\*F. lanceolata*, Burgess Sh., Can.(B.C.); ?carapace lat., holotype,  $\times 1.3$  (384c).

**Galenocaris** WELLS, 1944 [*\*G. campbelli*; OD, M]. Carapace ?without hinge line, valves elongate, with short posteroventral spine; anterodorsally and posteriorly truncate; short process between valves anteriorly. *U.Ord.*, N.Am.—FIG. 150.6. *\*G. campbelli*, Maquoketa Sh., USA (Ill.); dorsal view of carapace (holotype),  $\times 2$  (385).

**Guerichicaris** VAN STRAELLEN, 1933 [*pro Entomo-*

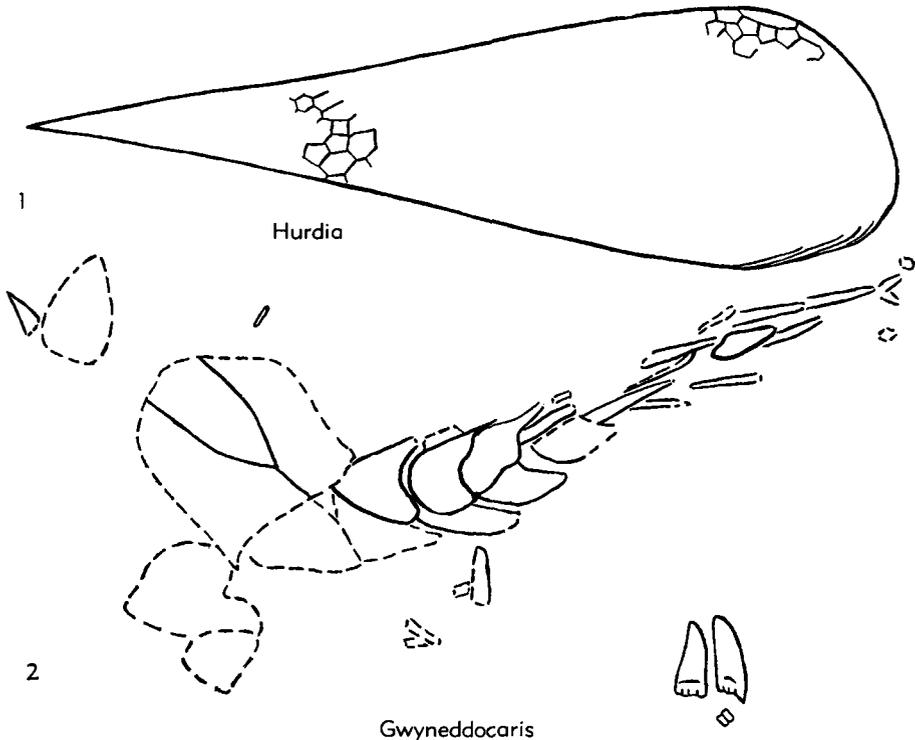


FIG. 151. Phyllocarida, Order and Family Uncertain (1); Discinocarina, Family Uncertain (2) (p. R325-R326).

*caris* GÜRICH, 1929 (non WHITFIELD, 1896) [\**Entomocaris dohmi* GÜRICH, 1929 (= *Entomocaris dohmi* RICHTER & RICHTER, 1918, *nom. nud.*); OD] [= *Guerichocaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace with hinge line, valves subovate, anteriorly rounded, posterodorsally truncate; marginal rim narrow anteroventrally, broadening posteriorly; anterodorsal region of carapace with 3 deeply incised, oblique furrows separating 3 swellings; valves with coarse longitudinal striation. [Type of *Guerichicaris* (*recte* *Guerichicaris*) VAN STRAELLEN, 1933, of *Ceraticarina*.] *M.Dev.*, Ger.—FIG. 150,5. \**G. dohmi* (GÜRICH), Couvin., Eifel; left posterodorsal view of carapace (paratype),  $\times 3$  (128).

**Hurdia** WALCOTT, 1912 [\**H. victoria*; OD]. ?Carapace triangular, commonly reticulate. *M.Cam.*, N. Am.—FIG. 151,1. \**H. victoria*, Burgess Sh., Can.(B.C.); lat. view of small specimen showing reticulation,  $\times 0.6$  (Rolfe, n).

**Isoxys** WALCOTT, 1890 [\**I. chilhoweanus*; OD] [= *Isoxis*, *Isoxis*, KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace with convex hinge line, valves subelliptical; anterodorsal or mid-anterior and posterodorsal extremities of valves produced into sharp processes. [Type of *Isoxyidae* BROOKS & CASTER, 1956 (*nom. correct.* ROLFE, 1962, *pro*

*Isoxyidae* BROOKS & CASTER, 1956) including *Isoxys*, *Dioxyaris*, and *Tuzoia*, and thus junior synonym of *Tuzoioidea* RAYMOND, 1935.] *L.Cam.-M.Cam.*, N. Am.-Spain.—FIG. 150,2. \**I. chilhoweanus*, L.Cam., USA(Tenn.); lat. view of carapace (syntype),  $\times 1.5$  (384b).

**Lebesconteia** JONES & WOODWARD, 1899 [*nom. correct.* ROLFE, herein (*ex Lebescontia* JONES & WOODWARD, 1899)] [\**L. aenigmatica*; OD]. Carapace of ?*Dithyrocaris*, indeterminate. Other species may be *Bivalvia*. *U.Ord.*, *L.Carb.*, NW.Eu.

**Mendocaris** RUSCONI, 1950 [\**M. australis*; OD, M]. Carapace with marginal excavation and anterior depression; poorly described and unfigured. *U. Cam.*, Argentina.

**Nothozoe** BARRANDE, 1872 [\**N. pollens*; OD, M] [= *Nothozoe* BARRANDE in BIGSBY, 1868 (*nom. nud.*); *Nothozoe* ZITTEL, 1885 (*nom. null.*)]. Elliptical, subovate, or subcircular, smooth and gently arched molds of carapace valves. *L. Cam.-M.Ord.*, ?*L.Dev.*, W.Eu.-USA-?SW.China.—FIG. 150,3. \**N. pollens*, M.Ord., Drabov Qtzt., Czech.; convex mold of ?LV of large specimen,  $\times 0.6$  (Rolfe, n).

**Odaraia** WALCOTT, 1912 [\**O. alata*; OD] [= *Odaria* FEDOTOV, 1925 (*nom. null.*); *Odaraia* ROGER in PIVETEAU, 1953 (*nom. null.*); *Odría*

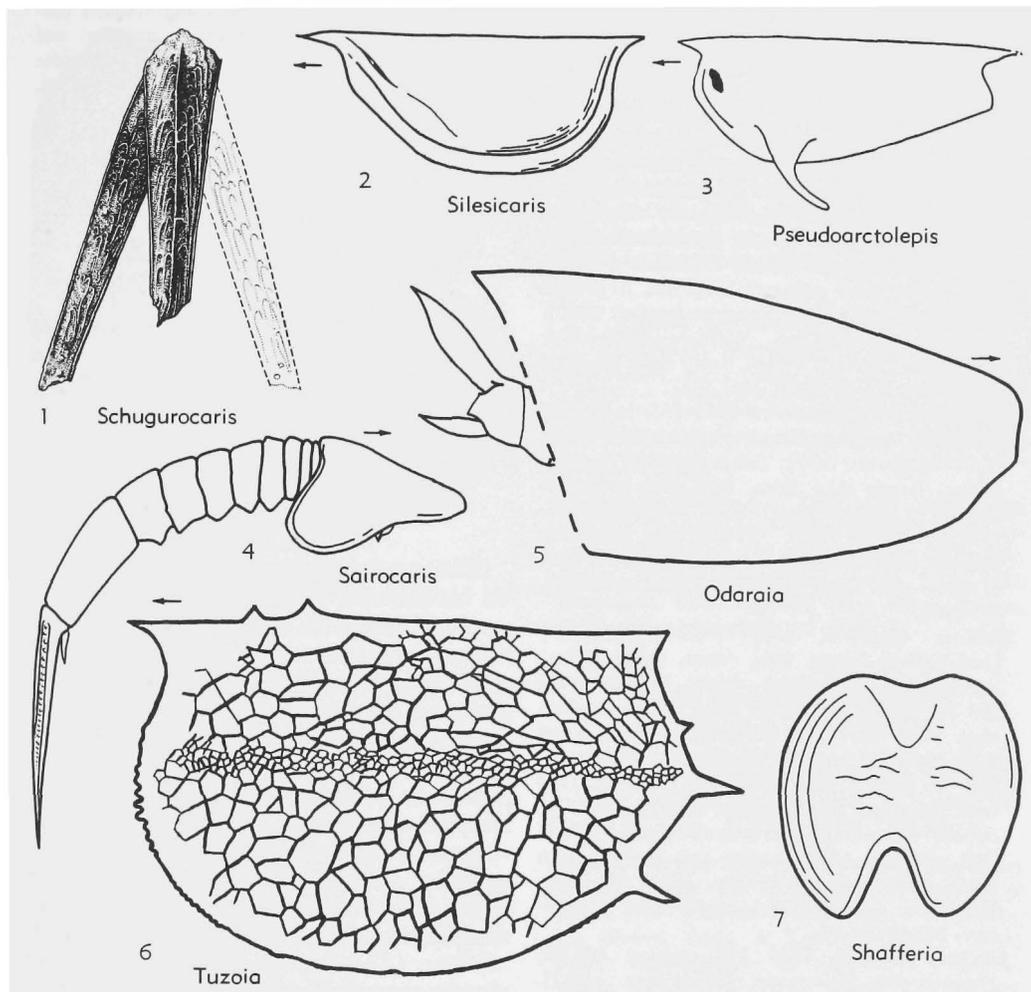


FIG. 152. Phyllocarida, Order and Family Uncertain (p. R326-R328).

KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*), Carapace subtriangular, with oblique posterior truncation, furcal rami laterally expanded, lanceolate. *M.Cam.*, N.Am.—FIG. 152.5. \**O. alata*, Burgess Sh., Can.(B.C.); lat. view of lectotype,  $\times 0.5$  (Rolfe, n).

**Proboscicaris** ROLFE, 1962 [*\*P. agnosta*; OD]. Carapace valves subovate to subrectangular, with carapace horn anteriorly produced into spatulate beak. *M.Cam.*, N.Am.—FIG. 150.7. \**P. agnosta*, Burgess Sh., Can.(B.C.); lat. view of RV (holotype), blotched with ?alga *Morania parasitica* WALCOTT,  $\times 0.5$  (376a).

**Pseudoarctolepis** BROOKS & CASTER, 1956 [*\*P. sharpi*; OD]. Carapace elongate, with hinge line; anterodorsal and posterodorsal extremities of valves produced into processes, posterior margin concave; large, posteriorly curved, anteroventrally sit-

uated hollow spine and eroded area marking site of anterior tubercle on each valve. [Type of *Pseudoarctolepididae* BROOKS & CASTER, 1956 (*nom. correct.* ROLFE, 1962, *pro* *Pseudoarctolepididae* BROOKS & CASTER, 1956). This large form shows remarkable convergent resemblance to the ostracode *Pteroleperditia armata* (WALCOTT).] *M.Cam.*, N.Am.—FIG. 152.3. \**P. sharpi*, Wheeler Sh., USA(Utah); lat. view of LV (reconstr.),  $\times 0.7$  (58).

**Saccocaris** SALTER, 1873 [*\*Hymenocaris (Saccocaris) major*; M] [= *Saccocaris* SALTER, 1868 (*nom. oblit.*)]. Carapace ?without hinge line, valves subrectangular. *U.Cam.-L.Ord.*, G.Brit.-?Australia.—FIG. 150.8. \**S. major* (SALTER), Wales; lat. view of LV (holotype),  $\times 0.5$  (160).

**Sairocaris** ROLFE, 1963 [*pro Acanthocaris* PEACH, 1883 (*non* SIM, 1872)] [*\*Acanthocaris attenuata*

PEACH, 1883; SD VAN STRAELEN & SCHMITZ, 1934] [= *Acantocaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace reduced, triangular, without hinge line, with or without mid-ventral excavation which may have allowed ventral exposure of gnathal lobes of mandibles; carapace smooth or ?longitudinally striate; abdomen and ?posterior thoracic somites not covered by carapace; telson as in *Ceratiocaris*, dorsal ridge may be tuberculate; furca reduced to short spines. [Emendation of the Ceratiocarina may be needed to include a family based on this genus without a hinge line. At present *Sairocaris* is too poorly known to warrant such a major change.] *L.Carb.*, W.Eu.—FIG. 152,4. *S. elongata* (PEACH), Visean, Scot.; right lat. view (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (Rolfe, n, after 371).

**Schugurocaris** KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 [*\*S. magnifica*; OD] [= ?*Neurocaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (type, *N. libelluliformis*; OD)]. Telson triangular in cross-section, longer than furca, both with ornament of cusps or oblique striae. *U.Dev.*, E.Eu.-Australia-?N.Can.—FIG. 152,1. *\*S. magnifica*, Shugurov Beds (Frasn.), Orenburg distr., E.Eu.; dorsal view of telson and furca (holotype) (part reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (168).

**Shafferia** WALCOTT, 1917 [*\*S. cisina*; OD] [= *Schafferia* SHARP, 1901 (*nom. null.*) (WALCOTT'S original spelling should be conserved and not treated as a *lapsus* since Mount Schaffer, after which the fossil was named, is also (and more correctly) written Schaeffer. Confusion will then be avoided with *Schaefferia* ABSOLON, 1900 (*non* HOULBERT in OBERTHÜR, 1918)]. Like *Discinocarid* but shell thicker, bent along mid-line and with shallow indentation at end farthest from notch. *M.Cam.*, N.Am.—FIG. 152,7. *\*S. cisina*, Mt. Whyte F., Can.(B.C.); dorsal view of holotype,  $\times 6$  (Rolfe, n).

**Silesiacaris** GÜRICH, 1926 [*\*S. nasuta*; OD, M] [= *Silesiacaris* KOBAYASHI, 1937 (*nom. null.*)]. Outline of carapace valves like that of *Isoxys* but with well-defined marginal groove demarcating broad rounded rim and with deep, oblique antero-dorsal-mid-anterior furrow continued as fold which joins margin mid-ventrally; anterior tubercle sometimes detectable. *L.Cam.* (not *L.Dev.* as originally described), SW.Pol.—FIG. 152,2. *\*S. nasuta*, Bolków; lat. view of LV,  $\times 2$  (128).

**Trigonocarys** BARROIS, 1891 [*\*T. lebescontei*; OD, M] [= *Trigonocaris* WILTSHIRE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1892 (*nom. van.*)]. Telson triangular, with 4 longitudinal, ventral ribs separated by furrows; furca shorter than telson, furcal rami laterally compressed, hourglass-shaped in cross section. *U. Ord.*, NW.Fr.

**Tuzoia** WALCOTT, 1912 [*\*T. retifera*; OD] [= *Puzoia* GÜRICH, 1929 (*nom. null.*); *Tuzoia* BROOKS & CASTER, 1956 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace with hinge line, valves subelliptical, carapace horn slightly produced; usually reticulate; prominent lateral ridge carinate, with smaller reticulae than

on main area of valves; spines and spinules projecting from entire margin except anterior, and may occur on lateral ridge. [Type of Tuzoidea RAYMOND, 1935 (= Isoxyidae BROOKS & CASTER, 1956.)] *L.Cam.-M.Cam.*, W.Can.-China.—FIG. 152,6. *T. burgessensis* RESSER, M.Cam. (Burgess Sh.), B.C.; lat. view of LV (paratype) (reconstr.),  $\times 0.5$  (Rolfe, n).

## NONPHYLLOCARID AND UNCERTAIN GENERA

In this section consideration is given to various nominal genera which have been improperly classed by authors as belonging to the Phyllocarida and to some which now are regarded as *incertae sedis*.

### FORMS REFERRED TO DISCINOCARINA

The genera grouped by CLARKE (1900) in his suborder Discinocarina and referred to the Phyllocarida are of uncertain affinity. They have been compared and confused with graptolite "swim-bladders" and "gonangia," eurypterid metastomata, hyolithid opercula, polyalaphoran plates, bivalves, arthrodire dermal plates, and brachiopod carapaces. *Discinocarid gigantea*, which may be up to 18 cm. in diameter, has been suggested by analogy with *Oxlosia* to be a genuine acrotetid brachiopod. Some of these genera are known to be ammonoid anaptychi and have been synonymized with *Sidetes* (*Treatise*, p. L467-L468). Other genera are pre-Devonian and hence cannot be ammonoid aptychi, but RUEDEMANN'S (1916) suggestion that aptychi "would naturally also have existed in the Ordovician and Silurian cephalopods" has been largely overlooked. The sole crustacean feature of the remaining Discinocarina is the supposed "rostral plate," which shows little similarity to rostral plates of other fossil phyllocarids. Two cases of body segments associated with Discinocarina have been described, but these are both doubtful. It is tempting to suggest an analogy between the bivalved Peltocarididae and ammonoid diaptychi, and between the Discinocarididae and ammonoid anaptychi. Significantly, their stratigraphic range coincides with that of the michelinoceratid nautiloids. The isolated occurrence

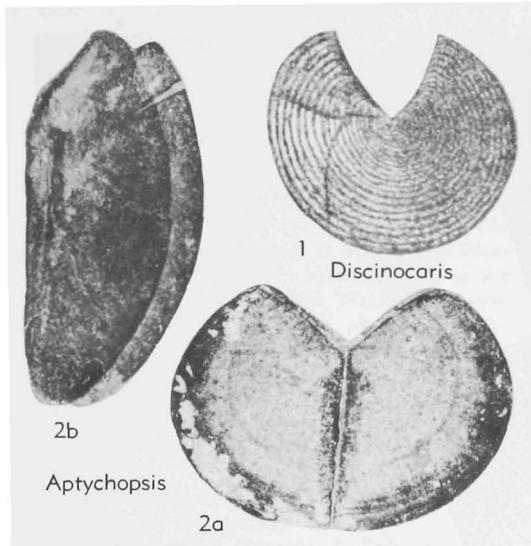


FIG. 153. Subclass Uncertain (Discinocarididae) (1); (Peltocarididae) (2) (p. R329).

of these shields may result from current sorting and selective diagenesis (KEYSERLING, 1846; CLARKE, 1902) in the same way as aptychi occur in aptychus beds.

No pre-Devonian Discinocarina have been found in nautiloid apertures, however, which makes difficult a ready acceptance of RUEDEMANN'S hypothesis. On the other hand, it seems worth recalling that, as DAMES (1884) and MATERN (1931) stressed, "only in exceptional cases do anaptychi and shells occur together."

Two groups of nominal genera previously classed as belonging to CLARKE'S order Discinocarina are included under this heading. One consists of forms which now are regarded as synonyms of *Sidetes*. The other contains genera *incertae sedis* which are not synonymized with *Sidetes*. Fossils included in this latter group are represented by circular to subcircular, ?originally conical, concentrically ridged, thin organic or carbonized films, with subtriangular plate filling a prominent notch. For reference purposes it is useful to retain the familial classification employed for them.

The genera here cited as synonyms of *Sidetes* are additional to those given in *Treatise Part L* (1957, p. L467-L468).

*Sidetes* GIEBEL, 1847, p. 821 [\**S. striatus* GIEBEL, 1851; SM] [?= *Ellipsocaris* WOODWARD in DE-

WALQUE, 1880 (type, *E. dewalquei*; OD, M); *Spathiocaris* CLARKE, 1882 (type, *S. emersonii*; OD); *Spathiocaris* ETHERIDGE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1883 (nom. null.); *Spathiocaris* CAMPBELL, 1946 (nom. null.); *Ellipsocaris* BROOKS & CASTER, 1956 (nom. null.); *Spathiocaris*, *Spatiocaris*, *Spatchiocaris* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (nom. null.); *Dipterocaris* CLARKE, 1883 (type, *D. pennaedaedali*; SD S. A. MILLER, 1889) (holotype of the type species is a *Spathiocaris* torn along its mid-line, as surmised by ETHERIDGE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1885)].

### Family DISCINOCARIDAE Etheridge, Woodward & Jones, 1885

[nom. correct. ROLFE, herein (pro family Discinocarida ETHERIDGE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1885, nom. imperf.)]  
[=Discinocaridae HALL & CLARKE, 1888]

Without median suture line. *M.Ord.-U. Trias.*, ?*L.Jur.*

*Discinocaris* WOODWARD, 1866 [\**D. browniana*; OD, M] [= *Aspidocaris* REUSS, 1867 (type, *A. trisica*; OD)]. Sides of notch straight. *M.Ord.-U. Trias.*, ?*L.Jur.*, W.Eu.-USA.—FIG. 153, 1. \**D. browniana*, L.Sil. (Birkhill Sh.), Scot.; syntype, lacking triangular plate,  $\times 2$  (386a).

### Family PELTOCARIDIDAE Clarke in Zittel, 1900

[nom. correct. ROLFE, herein (pro Peltocarididae CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900)] [= *Peltocariden* HAECKEL, 1896 (vernacular)]

With median suture line. ?*L.Cam.-?M. Cam.*, ?*L.Ord.*, *U.Ord.-U.Sil.*, ?*U.Perm.*

*Peltocaris* SALTER, 1863 [\**Dithyrocaris? aptychoides* SALTER, 1852; SD ETHERIDGE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1884] [= *Peltocharis* ETHERIDGE in GEIKIE, A., HORNE, SKAE, & ETHERIDGE, 1877 (nom. null.); =? *Culampaia* RUSCONI, 1949 (type, *C. ornata*; OD, M); *Culampia* ROGER in PIVETEAU, 1949 (nom. null.); *Peltoceras* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (nom. null.)]. Notch semicircular, ?with nodes on valves at base of notch. ?*M.Cam.*, ?*L.Ord.*, *M. Sil.*, Eu.-?S.Am.

*Aptychopsis* BARRANDE, 1872 [\**A. prima*; OD, M] [= *Aptychopsis* BARRANDE, 1870 (nom. nud.); *Aptychoides* BARRANDE, 1872 (obj.); *Aptychopsis* DUNCAN, WOODWARD & ETHERIDGE, 1872 (nom. null.); *Aptychopsis* WOODWARD, 1882 (nom. null.); *Aptychopsis* RUSCONI, 1949 (nom. null.)]. Like *Peltocaris* but sides of notch straight; valves without nodes. ?*L.Cam.*, ?*L.Ord.*, *U.Ord.-U.Sil.*, ?*U.Perm.*, Eu.-?E.Can.-?Australia.—FIG. 153, 2. \**A. prima*, L.Sil.-M.Sil. (Liten Beds), Czech.; 2a, dors.,  $\times 3$ ; 2b, lat. with valves displaced,  $\times 4$  (Rolfe, n).

### GENERA UNCERTAIN

*Anatifopsis* BARRANDE, 1872 [\**A. bohémica*; OD, p. 578] [= *Anatifopsis* BARRANDE in BIGSBY, 1868

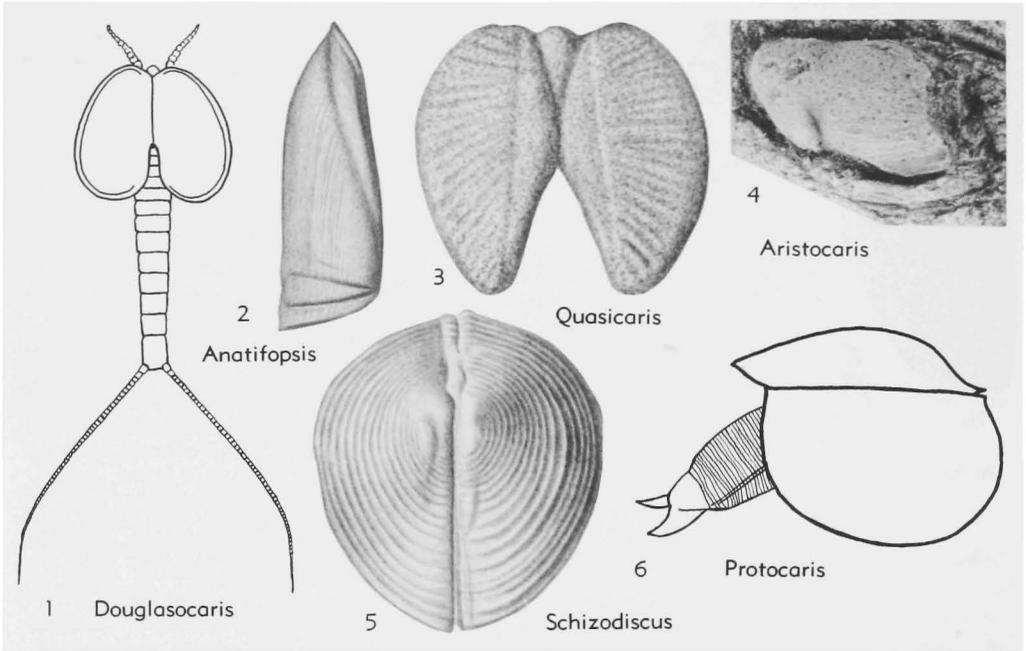


FIG. 154. Subclass Uncertain (Genera Uncertain) (p. R329-R331).

(*nom. nud.*). Thin-shelled ?Bivalvia; valves elongate, strongly convex, one end truncate, ?open in life; concentrically striate and with 2 vertical internal septa, diverging ventrally away from hinge line; may have platform developed along hinge line perpendicular to surface of valves. [Other species referred to this genus are polyplacophorans and dermal plates of *Cyathaspis*.] *L.Ord.-U.Ord.*, Eu.—FIG. 154.2. *A. prima*, *L.Ord.*, Czech., single valve, lat.,  $\times 2$  (343).

**Aristocaris** TOLMACHOV, 1926 [*\*A. incerta*] [= *Aristocaris* NEAVE, 1950 (*nom. null.*)]. ?Ostracode. *M.Dev.*, N.Can.—FIG. 154.4. *\*A. incerta*, Givet., Ellesmere I.; lat. (holotype),  $\times 9$  (Rolfé, n).

**Caridolites** ETHERIDGE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1890 [*\*C. wilsoni*; OD, M] [= *Caridolites* NICHOLSON, 1873 (*nom. nud.*); *Cardiolites* CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900 (*nom. null.*); *Cardiolites* KRESTOVNIKOV, 1961 (*nom. null.*)]. Based on supposed tracks of ?*Ceratiocaris*, possibly groove casts. *M.Sil.*, Scot.

**Cryptozoe** PACKARD, 1886 [*\*C. problematica*; OD] [= *Cryptozoe* POMPECKJ, 1912 (*nom. null.*); *Schopfia* JANSSEN, 1940]. [Dr. J. M. SCHOPF has isolated plant epidermis from the holotype (U.S. Natl. Mus. 38865) and suggests that this is a lycopod sporangium.] *M.Penn.*, USA (Ill., Mazon Creek).

**Douglasocarid** CASTER & BROOKS, 1956 [*\*D. collinsi*; OD]. Carapace with hinge line, valves subelliptical, smooth; ?9 abdominal somites, telson elongated but not produced and bearing pair of annulated

cerci; thoracic limbs biramous, nonfoliaceous, with 2- or 3-segmented protopod. ?Notostracan branchiopod. [Type of Douglasocarididae (*recte* Douglasocarididae) CASTER & BROOKS, 1956.] *L.Ord.*, N.Am.—FIG. 154.1. *\*D. collinsi*, "33 Formation," Douglas Dam, USA (Tenn.); dors. holotype (reconstr.),  $\times 2$  (350, mod.).

**Gwyneddocarid** BOCK, 1946 [*\*G. parabolica*; OD]. *U.Trias.*, N.Am.—FIG. 151.2. *\*G. parabolica*, Lockatong F., USA (Pa.); dorsal view of holotype,  $\times 4.8$  (Rolfé, n).

Dr. DONALD BAIRD recognized that the unique specimen of *Gwyneddocarid* comprises the mid-line scales and fin fulcra of a ganoid fish. He therefore obtained the independent opinion of Dr. HAROLD F. ROELLIG who agreed that "The specimen does represent the midline region of a fish. . . The 'univalved carapace' is probably scalation associated with the vent. I know of nothing quite like it along the dorsal midline. The 'thoracic somites' [Bock's numbers] 2,3,4,5,6 are midline scales. The 'spines' 20 and 21 are fulcra. The small size of these fulcra indicates that the fish is not *Semionotus* but probably *Catopterus*; fulcra of *Semionotus* are more robust. The tubercles illustrated in Bock's Fig. 5 as on the 'spines' are to be seen on the fulcra of both *Semionotus* and *Catopterus*."

**Lingulocarid** SALTER in RAMSAY, 1866 [*\*L. lingu-laeomes*; OD, M] [= *Mytilocaris* ETHERIDGE, 1888 (*nom. nud.*); *Lingulocaris* BARROIS, 1891 (*nom. van.*); *Lingulocaris* MARR, 1892 (*nom. null.*); *Modiolocaris* PEACH in JEHU & CAMPBELL, 1917 (type, *M. dakynsi*; OD, M)]. Thin bivalve shell with slight umbo, concentrically striate; ?ribeiroiid or Bivalvia. [Refers to type-species and *Modiolocaris* only. Other Lower Ordovician species referred to this genus are based on elongate carapaces resembling *Hymenocaris*. Further knowledge of

- these is needed before establishing a separate genus. The body segments shown on PEACH's restoration of *Modiolocaris* are imaginary; the holotype shows only a fracture plane.] *U.Cam.-L.Ord.*, G.Brit.
- Myocaris** SALTER, 1864 [\**M. lustraria*; OD]. Ribeiroid. *L.Ord.-U.Ord.*, W.Eu.
- Pinnocaris** ETHERIDGE, 1878 [\**P. lapworthi*; OD]. ?Ribeiroid or Bivalvia. *U.Ord.-U.Sil.*, Brit.
- Portalia** WALCOTT, 1918 [\**P. mira*; OD]. The holotype of the type species is a ?sponge (MADSEN, 1957) and is overlain by a specimen of the ?actinarian *MacKenziea costalis* WALCOTT (according to WALCOTT, 1918; later identified as the worm *Miskoiia* by RESSER, 1931). STØRMER (1944, p. 101) has compared the specimens with *Protocaris*, interpreting the *MacKenziea* as a carapace, and has referred to the "papillae" of *Portalia* as arthropod appendages with "indications of gill-blades."
- Proracaris** BAILY, 1870 [\**P. machenrici*; OD, M] [= *Protocaris* ETHERIDGE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1883 (*nom. null.*); *Proracaris* BAILY, 1875 (*nom. null.*); *Protocaris* JONES & WOODWARD, 1888 (*nom. null.*)]. Fragments of eurypterid according to ETHERIDGE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1890. *U.Dev.*, SE.Eire.
- Protocaris** WALCOTT, 1884 [non JONES & WOODWARD, 1888 (*nom. null.*)] [\**P. marshi*; OD] [= *Protocaris* WOODWARD, 1895 (*nom. null.*)]. Carapace with hinge line, valves subelliptical. Large number (may exceed 45) of short body somites bearing lamellate appendages anteriorly. Telson not produced, furcal rami curved. ?Branchiopod. [Type of Protocaridae (*recte* Protocarididae) MILLER, 1889.] *L.Cam.-M.Cam.*, N. Am.—FIG. 154,6. *P. pretiosa* RESSER, M.Cam. (Burgess Sh.), Can.(B.C.); right lat. (holotype),  $\times 0.7$  (Rolfe, n).
- Quasicaris** ROLFE, 1961 [pro *Pterocaris* BARRANDE, 1872 (non HELLER, 1862; nec CLAUS, 1876)] [\**Pterocaris bohemia* BARRANDE, 1872; OD, M]. Like *Aptychopsis* but with posterior notch, thin radial striae and single longitudinal line on each ?valve. *M.Ord.*, Czech.—FIG. 154,3. \**Q. bohemia* (BARRANDE), Drabov Qtzt., Mt. Drabov; internal mold, dors. (holotype),  $\times 3$  (343).
- Salterina** JONES & WOODWARD, 1888 [\**S. pholadiformis*; OD, M] (= *Dithyrocaris pholadomya* SALTER, 1863, *nom. nud.*; *D. pholadiformis* HUXLEY & ETHERIDGE, 1865, *nom. nud.*) [= *Salterella* JONES & WOODWARD, 1888 (non BILLINGS, 1861) (obj.), an offprint of the 1888 paper signed by T. R. JONES in the Harvard Museum of Comparative Zoology has the spelling corrected in JONES' handwriting.]. Fragment of large bivalve mollusk. *L.Carb.*, Eng.
- Schizodiscus** CLARKE in HALL & CLARKE, 1888 [non KITTL, 1891; nec KISHINOUE, 1902] [\**S. capsa*; OD, M]. Carapace with hinge line, valves semicircular, with ridges concentric about mid-dorsal umbo. ?Conchostracan branchiopod. *M.Dev.*, N.Am.—FIG. 154,5. \**S. capsa*, Hamilton Gr., USA(N.Y.); carapace valves spread out, dorsal (lectotype),  $\times 3$  (140).
- Sinocaris** MANSUY, 1912 [\**S. asiatica*; SD VAN STRAELEN & SCHMITZ, 1934]. Elongate valves with slight ventral excavation, posterior attenuation and prominent, longitudinal folds. ?Bivalvia. *Sil.*, SW. China.
- Strigocaris** VOGDES, 1889 [pro *Solenocaris* MEEK, 1872 (non YOUNG & YOUNG, 1868)] [\**Ceratiocaris (Solenocaris) strigata* MEEK, 1872; OD, M] [= *Stringocaris* KOBAYASHI, 1937 (*nom. null.*)]. Two of the syntypes of the type species are Bivalvia, and the third is a fish bone, probably a coelacanth jugular plate. [*Strigocaris sanctiludovici* (WORTHEN) is possibly a phyllocarid carapace, but poorly preserved.] *L.Miss.*, USA.
- Trilobocaris** PŘIBYL, 1953 [\**T. bohemia*; OD]. ?Carapace small, elongate, one valve convex, trilobed, the other flat, weakly bilobed. ?Ostracode or crinoid calyx plate (*vide* J. BOUŠKA and I. CHLUPLÁČ). *M.Dev.*, Czech.
- Xiphidiocaris** CLARKE in ZITTEL, 1900 [pro *Xiphocaris* ETHERIDGE, WOODWARD & JONES, 1886 (non MARTENS, 1872)] [\**Ceratiocaris? ensis* SALTER, 1860; OD, M] [= *Xyphocaris* GÜRICH, 1929 (*nom. null.*)]. Telson of eurypterid *Carcinosoma*, according to RUEDEMANN. *M.Sil.-U.Sil.*, Eng., Australia.

## EUMALACOSTRACA

By R. C. MOORE

Subclass EUMALACOSTRACA  
Grobben, 1892

Malacostraca generally of shrimplike form distinguished from Phyllocarida by nonbivalve nature of carapace and lack of seventh abdominal somite, telson without unsegmented, movably articulated caudal furca. *M.Dev.-Rec.*

The Eumalacostraca include all malacostracans considered to be relatively advanced in divergent lines of evolution. They are divided into superorders designated as Eocarida, contained archaic forms, Syncarida, Peracarida, Eucarida, and Hoplocarida, of which the last four include most post-Paleozoic malacostracans.

## EOCARIDA

By H. K. BROOKS

[University of Florida]

[Chapter submitted August, 1964]

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R332
MORPHOLOGY .....	R333
ONTOGENY .....	R336
PALEOECOLOGY AND STRATIGRAPHIC OCCURRENCE .....	R336
PHYLOGENY .....	R337
CLASSIFICATION .....	R340
SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R341
Superorder Eocarida Brooks, 1962 .....	R341
Order Eocaridacea Brooks, 1962 .....	R342
Order Pygocephalomorpha Beurlen, 1930 .....	R344

## INTRODUCTION

Most of the Paleozoic eumalacostracan fossils with a carapace have a puzzling combination of morphological characteristics not consistent with the definition of any one of the Recent superorders. They are unique in that all have biramous thoracic appendages with a single joint in the protopod and there are furcal lobes and a median spine on the telson. However, structural trends toward the Mysidacea, Euphausiacea, and Decapoda are displayed. The superorder Eocarida was established (Brooks, 1962) for this archaic caridoid stock.

In older papers on eumalacostracan fossils from the Paleozoic, most authors classified shrimplike specimens as decapods. The single exception was HUXLEY (1857), who recognized some homologies between *Pygocephalus* and the Mysidacea. WOODWARD

(1907) figured and described a peracarid marsupium on *Pygocephalus*. In the following year PEACH (226) published a monographic study on the Upper Paleozoic Eumalacostraca from Scotland in which oöstegites were proved to exist also on *Tealliocaris*. He envisioned that a marsupium was present on all other contemporaneous caridoid genera. PEACH repeatedly compared morphological features of the fossils with those of the Recent Lophogastridae.

BROOKS (55) has demonstrated that a vertical classification of these caridoid Malacostraca consistent with established taxa for Recent Eumalacostraca is impossible. Their primitiveness and phylogenetic significance are best emphasized by recognition of the superorder Eocarida, fossils of which occur sporadically from Middle Devonian through the Permian.

## MORPHOLOGY

Furcal lobes and a large median telson spine have been frequently figured on specimens of Paleozoic caridoid fossils. It was not until detailed morphological studies by BROOKS (55) that the significance of these and other archaic crustacean features were realized. It is possible that none of the known fossil eocarids are the direct ancestors of the extant Mysidacea, Euphausiacea, and Decapoda, but as a group they provide valuable morphological evidence bearing on malacostracan phylogeny.

Tagmosis of the body is into a **head**, **thorax**, **abdomen**, and a terminal **telson**. In the shrimplike members of the order Eocaridacea the abdomen is longer than the **cephalothorax** (Fig. 155,*A*), whereas in the prostrate eryonid and crablike Pygocephalomorpha (Fig. 155,*B*) they are subequal or the telson is reduced.

The **carapace** completely covers the head and thorax, but it is not fused with any of the postcephalic somites. The pygocephalomorphs all have the ventral margin of the carapace folded under and the **branchiostegal area** produced laterally, the lateral margins thus formed being keeled and usually serrate. The **lappets** of the carapace of the Eocaridacea fit closely against the pleura of the thoracic somites. However, in *Palaeopalaemon* an incipient double occurs near the ventral margins of the carapace.

Only one transverse sulcus is conspicuously developed on the carapace and this appears to be homologous with the **cervical groove** of decapods. In that the furrow bifurcates dorsally in *Palaeopalaemon*, it is possible that the posterior branch reaching the dorsum is equivalent to the "postcervical furrow" of GLAESSNER (118). There is no basis for derivation of a quadruple system of dorsal carapace sulci from a *Palaeopalaemon*-like animal, as BURKENROAD (62) has postulated.

Structure of the five pairs of cephalic appendages is believed to be comparable to that of the syncarids and mysidaceans. The **antennules** each consist of two multi-articulate **flagella** arising from a three-jointed **peduncle**. The **antennae** have a two-jointed protopod, the second of which ex-

tends as a **stipe** for the squamate exopod, the caridoid **scaphocerite**. The endopod consists of three joints and a long flagellum.

Little is known of the **mandible** except that in *Anthracaris* secondary articulation with the epistome is observed (Fig. 156,*B*), a feature found in Recent decapods and some stomatopods and mysidaceans. The two pairs of **maxillae** are unknown. The structures of *Tealliocaris* designated by PEACH (226) as mandibular palps and maxillae are incorrectly interpreted portions of thoracic appendages.

Each of the eight thoracic somites bears a pair of **perioopods**, which are biramous appendages. In all known fossils the appendages are distinct in possessing only one segment in the **protopod** (Fig. 156,*C*), as does the most primitive extant crustacean known, *Hutchinsoniella*. In all other eumalacostracans two or three segments occur in the protopod. The **endopods** have five segments, as do those of euphausiids and decapods. The **exopods** that have been observed have an unjointed stipe and a short flagellum (Fig. 156,*D*).

Nothing is known of the **branchiae** of eocarids; however, the branchiostegal development of the carapace of the pygocephalomorphs is suggestive of a **branchial chamber**. PEACH (226) reported podobranchiae on *Tealliocaris*, but re-examination of the specimens failed to confirm his interpretation.

Thoracic sexual features found on some eocarids are sternal processes, oostegites forming a brood pouch, and a seminal receptacle. **Gonopores** have not been observed, but it must be assumed they were associated with the base of the appendages of the sixth thoracic somite in females and the eighth thoracic somite in males. The function of **sternal processes** is unknown, but they are characteristic of mysidaceans and occur mid-ventrally on the sternites. It is only on *Tealliocaris* that low conical projections (Fig. 156,*E*), which may be homologous, are known to occur. PEACH (226) reported seeing oostegites on a variety of Paleozoic caridoid fossils, including the Palaeostomatopoda, but close scrutiny has proved their existence only on *Tealliocaris* and *Pygocephalus* (Fig. 156,*F,G*). In

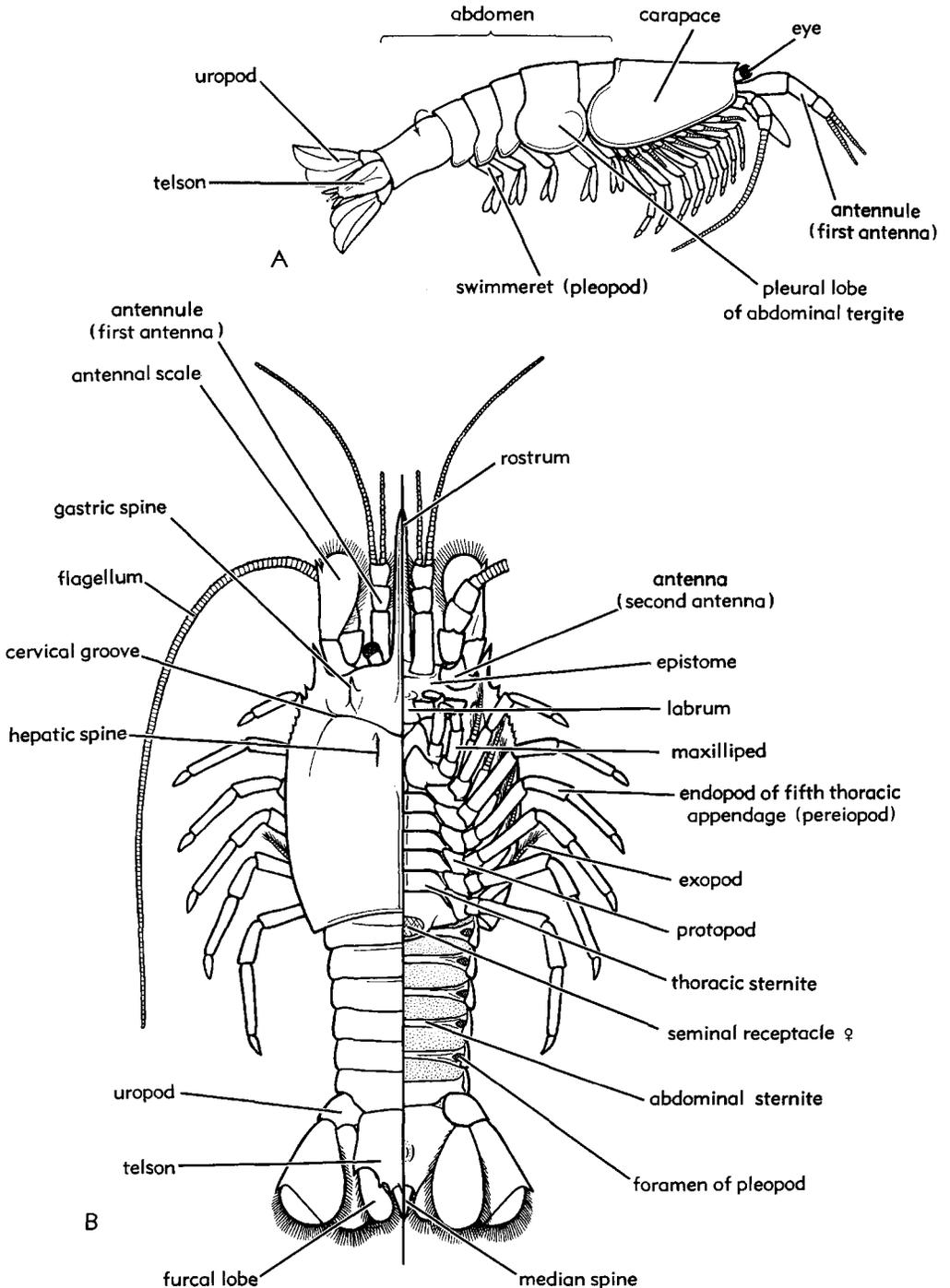


FIG. 155. Morphology of Eocarida.—A. *Crangopsis socialis* (SALTER), Eocaridacea, L.Carb., Scot.;  $\times 4$ .  
 —B. *Anthracaris gracilis* (MEEK & WORTHEN), Pygocephalomorpha, Penn., USA (Ill.);  $\times 2$  (55).

these fossils the **marsupium** occurs only on a few mature specimens, presumably the females, and is composed of large imbricating endites of the thoracic appendages.

The **seminal receptacle** occurs as a large medial pouch on the eighth thoracic sternite of *Pygocephalus* and *Anthracaris* (Fig. 156, C). Comparable but not homologous struc-

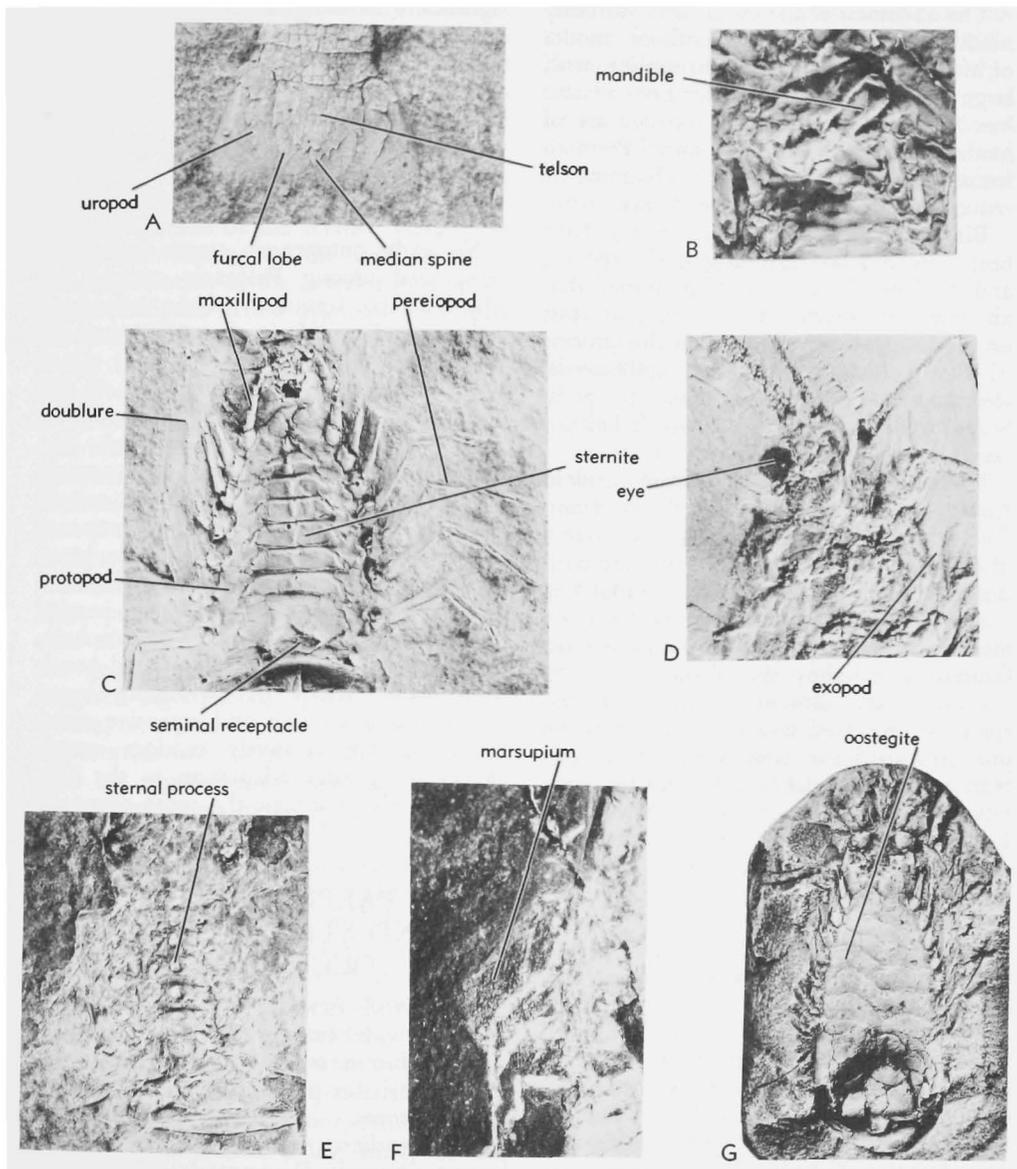


FIG. 156. Morphological features of Eocarida exemplified by photographs (all 55).—A. Caudal fan of *A. gracilis* showing uropods and telson with furcal lobes and median spine,  $\times 3$ .—B. *Anthracaris gracilis* (MEEK & WORTHEN), Penn., USA (Ill.), showing mandible with secondary epistome articulation,  $\times 4$ .—C. *A. gracilis*, showing sternal features of thorax and 1st 2 thoracic appendages modified as maxillipeds, also single joint of protopod of pereopods,  $\times 4$ .—D. *Mamayocaris jepseni* BROOKS, L.Perm., USA (Tex.), showing stalked compound eye and flagellate exopod of thoracic appendage,  $\times 4$ .—E. *Teallicaris loudonensis* PEACH, L.Carb., Scot., showing sternal processes,  $\times 2$ .—F. Marsupium of *T. loudonensis*, female,  $\times 3$ .—G. *Pygocephalus dubius* (MILNE-EDWARDS), U.Carb., Eng., showing marsupium composed of individual oostegites,  $\times 3$ .

tures are seen in some isopods, syncarids, and decapods. It is remarkable to find both a marsupium and a seminal receptacle on *Pygocephalus*.

The **abdomen** of the eocarids is variously modified for nektonic and benthonic modes of life. The six somites are shrimplike, with large **pleural lobes** in the order Eocaridacea, but in the Pygocephalomorpha they are of moderate development. In some Permian forms (e.g., *Notocaris*), the abdomen is reduced and flexed under the thorax.

Biramous **pleopods** (swimmerets) have been observed on *Anthracaris*, *Crangopsis*, and *Teallicaris*. It must be presumed that an appendix interna was present, at least on the more primitive forms, as this process of the endopod occurs on phyllocarids, stomatopods, euphausiids, and decapods. Sexual modification of the pleopods has not been observed.

**Uropods** are the most significant caridoid feature of these primitive eumalacostracans. The large, biramous spatulate appendages of the sixth abdominal somite combine with the platelike telson to form the **caudal fan**.

The **telson** of the eocarids has retained the crustacean **furca** (Fig. 156, *A*). In most Crustacea, including the phyllocarid malacostracans, this structure consists of two spinelike processes, whereas in eocarids the processes are lobate and contribute to formation of the caudal fan. A furca has been reported in larval stages of the Mysidacea, Euphausiacea, and Decapoda. However, ontogenetic evidence has been interpreted to indicate that the paired spines of adults are not homologous but are secondarily formed bristles. This may be correct, but true furca are retained on some extant syncarids.

The **median articulated spine** on the telson of the eocarids may not have a homologue in any extant Crustacea. Such a spine does occur on many Cambrian Pseudocrustacea. The Paleozoic phyllocarids and paleostomatopods have a median spine, but it is not articulated.

Internal anatomy of the eocarids can be inferred from the study of extant Crustacea. In the discussion of the phylogenetic relationships, some features will be discussed.

Small slitlike openings are present on the abdominal pleura of *Pygocephalus* and

*Anthracophausia*. The slits also occur on the telson. If they are openings of serial homologous glands of the archaic arthropod, then their presence on the telson is significant in indicating this to be a true somite. PEACH (226) has interpreted the opening on *Anthracophausia* as luminous organs. This is unlikely, considering the shallow coastal and estuarine water in which these animals lived.

## ONTOGENY

No early ontogenetic stages have been recognized among Paleozoic eocarid fossils. The size frequency of the individuals in a normal sample is skewed toward the largest size.

The embryological development of this ancestral stock of the mysidaceans, euphausiids, and decapods can be inferred. The fact that all euphausiids and some penaeid decapods hatch as free-swimming nauplii prove that the Paleozoic eumalacostracans had retained their original crustacean larval stages. Secondary abbreviated development of the peracarids is correlated with incubation; thus only such Paleozoic pygocephalomorphs as possessed a similar brood pouch must have lacked free-swimming larval stages. Zoal eclosion and extensive metamorphism are relatively modern contrivances for greater adaptation to the benthonic mode of life by the more advanced decapods.

## PALEOECOLOGY AND STRATIGRAPHIC OCCURRENCE

Form and function as interpreted by analogy with extant Crustacea and the stratigraphic occurrence of the fossils provides a basis for paleoecological conclusions and inferences.

The earliest eumalacostracan fossils known (*Eocaris*, *Devonocaris*, *Palaeopalaeomon*) all have shrimplike bodies. This supports the hypothesis that eumalacostracans arose from nekto-benthonic crustaceans. In fact, the antennal scale and the caudal fan are caridoid nektonic adaptations that distinguish this taxon. Suppression of the styliform furca and median spine corre-

lates with the development of the enlarged uropods and telson into a swimming structure. That the eocarids had not fully developed the retrograde evasion propulsion of the eucarids was suggested by BURKENROAD (62). He has correlated fusion of the carapace to the thoracic somites in eucarids with this habitus. The position of the intestine relatively low in the abdomen of *Anthracophausia* also was cited as evidence that the abdominal flexor muscles were not enlarged relative to the extensors.

The reduction of the relative size of the abdomen, widening of the cephalothorax, and modification of the anterior pereopods into maxillipeds in the pygocephalomorphs correlate with adaptation to a predominantly benthonic mode of life. The crablike *Notocaris*, from the Permian of Africa, is the culmination of this adaptive trend.

Evidence relative to feeding habits of the Paleozoic Eumalacostraca is inconclusive. It should be noted that the typical crustacean jaw is a biting, triturating structure—in fact, Malacostraca are distinguished by possessing both molar and incisor mandibular processes. The presence of detrital casts of the intestine of some eocarid fossils (e.g., *Anthracophausia*, *Anthracaris*) suggests ingestion of clastic sediment in feeding on organic bottom detritus. None of the eocarids had chelate appendages. These facts are suggestive of scavenging to low-grade carnivorous modes of life.

Fossil eocarids occur sporadically in Paleozoic deposits, the conclusion being not that these Crustacea failed to thrive in the Paleozoic seas, but rather that their chitinous exoskeletons were destroyed under normal conditions of marine deposition (55, p. 261-262). Only *Palaeopalaemon*, with a calcareous reinforced exoskeleton, is found associated with a typical marine fauna. Most of the eocarid fossils occur in deposits indicative of coastal lagoons, estuaries, and swamps. As is true today, many of the coastal crustaceans probably were euryhaline and wandered into environments where catastrophic silting, hypersalinity, and stagnation enhanced the preservation of uncalcified chitinous remains. There is no positive evidence that any of the eocarids actually inhabited fresh water.

The known biostratigraphic range of the Eocarida is upper Middle Devonian to Permian. The Eocaridacea appear in the Devonian, reach their maximum development in the Mississippian, and are not known in deposits younger than Middle Pennsylvanian. Pygocephalomorphs originate in the Mississippian, occur with great frequency and diversity in Pennsylvanian dark shales and ironstone concretions, and last occur as highly specialized crablike forms in Permian strata.

## PHYLOGENY

The rigid plan of tagmosis of the body and the consistency of position of the genital openings are indicative of a monophyletic origin of the subclass Malacostraca. The phyllocarids are the most primitive representatives of this natural group. Their remains occur in Cambrian to Recent deposits, whereas the caridoid Eumalacostraca first appear in the Devonian.

Ontogenetic, morphological, and stratigraphic evidence supports the theory of a phyllocarid ancestry for the Malacostraca, not the caridoid theory of CALMAN (65, p. 144). The presence of a seventh abdominal somite, a furca on the telson, occurrence of both antennal and maxillary glands, heart and gonads extending the length of the body, segmented arrangement of the lateral arteries, and the simple structure of the brain and stomach of the Recent *Nebalia* attest to their primitiveness (275, p. 88). That they are not on the direct line of descent for the Eumalacostraca is indicated by the possession of a rostral plate, carapace adductor muscle, and absence of the posterior abdominal appendages. Phyllocarids from the Cambrian already possessed these unique characteristics.

STEWING (275, p. 90) has proposed that *Nahecaris*, from the Devonian of Germany, is ancestral to the Eumalacostraca. The antennules of this phyllocarid does have two flagella, but the other eumalacostracan features reported by BROILI (54) do not exist. Thus, we must conclude that the archetype of the Malacostraca has not been discovered.

The first eumalacostracan fossils are also the most primitive caridoid Crustacea known, members of the order Eocaridacea.

These nekto-benthonic crustaceans have a relatively large abdomen, a caudal fan, scaphocerites, and undifferentiated biramous thoracopods. PEACH'S (226) report of oöstegites on *Crangopsis* has not been substantiated by critical restudy. The only morphological criteria that can be determined which prevent their being classified as Euphausiacea are the single joint of the thoracic protopod and absence of fusion of the thoracic somites with the carapace. Ontogenetic evidence bearing on the homology of the "furca" and median spine on the telson of Recent adult euphausiids is inconclusive.

Except for the single segment in the protopod of the thoracopods, furcal lobes, and median articulated spines on the telson of adults, and especially the absence of oöstegites, the eocarids are comparable to lophogastrid mysidaceans. The peracarid marsupium of the mysidaceans correlates with abbreviated ontogenetic development. Free nauplius stages are the original eumalacostracan mode of development, not incubation.

Syncarids have retained a remarkable number of primitive eumalacostracan characteristics; even furcal lobes are present on members of the Bathynellacea and Stygo-carididae. Absence of a carapace, presence of two segments in the thoracic protopod, and absence of a median articulated spine on the telson distinguish them from the Eocaridacea. The presence of a sperm receptacle on some extant syncarids is of no phylogenetic significance, as this structure is known to have evolved independently on different somites of various races of Malacostraca.

Comparison of the eocarids with the most primitive extant eumalacostracans, the euphausiaceans, lophogastrid mysidaceans, and syncarids, has emphasized the significance of the single segment in the thoracic protopod and the presence of furcal lobes and median spine on the telson. These are primitive crustacean features that have been lost or suppressed on extant forms. Loss of carapace, fusion of carapace with thorax, development of brood pouch, and other features mentioned above that are not present on the eocarids have been secondarily acquired by the different descendent races.

The Eocaridacea must be the ancestors of the modern Eumalacostraca, hoplocarids excepted.

The primitive skeletal morphology and internal anatomy of the Syncarida suggest that they were differentiated early in evolutionary history of the Eocaridacea. They first occur in Mississippian rocks. The taxonomic affinities of *Anthracocharis* (CALMAN, 1932) and *Acadiocarid* (BROOKS, 1962), of Mississippian age, which have a short carapace, are dependent on morphological details still unknown. We must accept the suggestion of CALMAN (66) that they are related to the Peracarida. They could be ancestral tanaidaceans, spelaeogriphaceans, or if they lack oöstegites, a stage in the evolution of the carapaceless syncarids.

Hoplocarid fossils first occur in the Mississippian. Their internal anatomy is indicative of early derivation from the malacostracan stock. Though they are caridoid, they are distinguished from the very beginning by possessing an articulated rostrum, subchelate thoracopods, and triramous antennules.

Admittedly, the superorder Eocarida represents several divergent stocks, the order Eocaridacea being the most primitive. *Palaeopalaemon* (U.Dev.-L.Miss.) is distinguished by a thorax that is only slightly shorter than the abdomen and by the presence of incipient branchiostegal development of the pleura of the carapace. It may have been from such a morphological type that the late Paleozoic Pygocephalomorpha evolved.

The pygocephalomorphs retained the primitive telson and unjointed thoracic protopod but show homeomorphic structural trends toward the decapods and mysidaceans. *Tealliocarid* has a brood pouch, sternal processes, and no seminal receptacle. These are mysidacean characteristics. On the other hand, *Anthracocharis* lacks oöstegites, has a seminal receptacle, displays a secondary articulation between the mandible and epistome, and has endopods on the first three thoracopods that are incipiently adapted as decapod maxillipeds. The problems in classification are best exemplified by *Pygocephalus*, which not only has a peracarid marsupium but also the seminal receptacle of syncarids and decapods. All

of these Paleozoic genera have a laterally extended carapace and abdomen and cephalothorax of subequal length or a reduced abdomen. It is apparent that the pygocephalomorphs are the Paleozoic benthonic eumalacostracans. It is probable that the mysidacean and decapod characteristics cited are analogues and that the pygocephalomorphs are not ancestral to any extant Crustacea.

BURKENROAD (62) has presented a hypothetical argument that the Eucarida arose monophyletically from some unknown Paleozoic Malacostraca. The oldest decapod-like crustaceans are *Palaeopemphix* (GEMMELLARO, 1892), from the Permian of Sicily, *Antrimpos* (VAN STRAELEN, 1933), from the Permian of Madagascar, and *Protoclytiopsis* (BIRSHTEYN, 1958), from the Permian of Siberia. Probably these are not directly ancestral to the decapods. Morphological considerations that must be taken into account in deriving the eucarids from the eocarids are: (1) triple system of transverse carapace grooves on the older fossil decapods, (2) body gills of decapods, (3) carapace fused to thorax and enlarged abdominal flexor muscles of all eucarids, (4) development of an accessory process of the endopod of the second male pleopod to form the appendix masculina in euphausiaceans and decapods, (5) furca and median spine of the eocarids, and (6) the single segment in the protopod of the eocarids.

The triple system of transverse carapace grooves may be strictly a decapod feature that has independently evolved and need not be expected in the ancestral malacostracan stock. It is true that most of the earliest fossil decapods, including some species of *Palaeopemphix*, display this characteristic (118). Comparative morphology and embryology of extant decapods prove the primitiveness of the penaeids and carids, neither of which have the triple system. The nektonic euphausiaceans have retained the greatest number of eocarid characteristics and have only one transverse carapace groove.

The gills of the eocarids are unknown. Euphausiaceans have branchiae (podobranchiae) attached to the coxae of their appendages, whereas decapods have arthro-

branchiae, and pleurobranchiae in addition to podobranchiae. Arthrobranchiae originate ontogenetically on the proximal portion of the appendages and later change position to the basal articular membrane. The pleurobranchiae appear later and their place of origin is close to, if not actually on, the basal part of the embryonic appendages that have coalesced with the thorax. Thus, the development of the "body gills" of decapods can be correlated with increased body size, development of the branchial chamber, and especially the evolution of the efficient maxillary pump.

Fusion of the carapace with the thorax and the enlarged abdominal flexor muscles of both euphausiaceans and decapods has been attributed to the development of retrograde evasive propulsion (62). The caridoid caudal fan of all eumalacostracans is a swimming structure. Though it may have originally functioned principally for planing and steering, it is sometimes used by all nektonic forms, including the syncarid *Paranaspides*, for backward darting. Therefore, BURKENROAD's first criterion for monophyletic origin of the eucarids is of questionable significance.

The second and most relevant criterion suggested by BURKENROAD is the presence of an appendix masculina in both euphausiaceans and decapods. The development of copulatory structures from pleopods has evolved independently in male syncarids, stomatopods, eucarids, and even isopods. It is not altogether improbable that this copulatory structure of the euphausiaceans and decapods is a true analogy. Even BURKENROAD (62, p. 15) admits the modification of the first pleopod of the decapod as a spermatophore-handling organ is "not homologous with the Euphausiid [euphausiid] organ derived from a branch of the *appendix interna*, nor with the also independently-modified first endopods in various Reptant Decapods. . . ."

A furca and median spine on the telson are primitive crustacean characteristics. The furca is retained in the adults of eocarids, some extant adult syncarids and possibly the euphausiaceans. Embryologically these features are present throughout the Malacostraca. It is to be expected that these

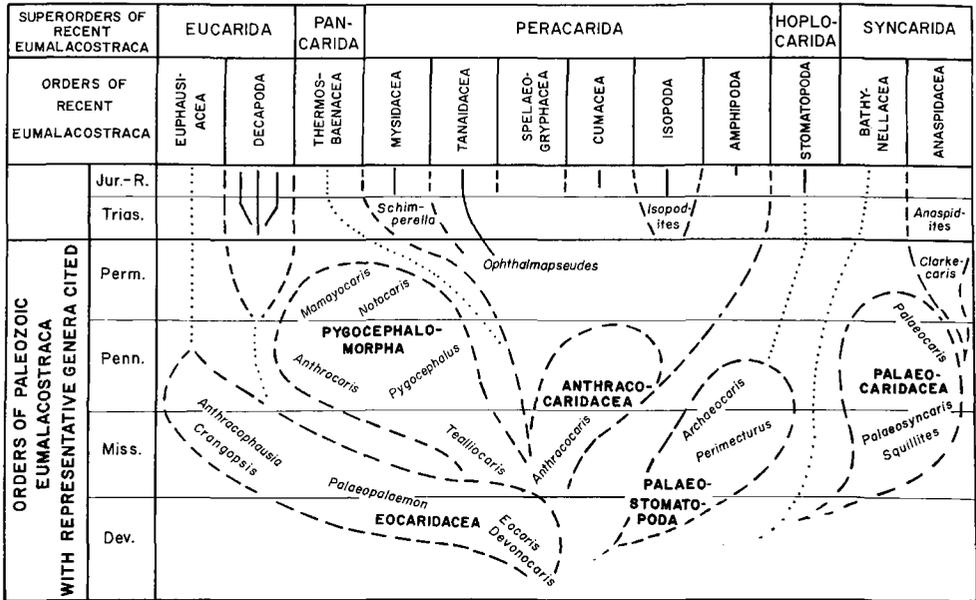


FIG. 157. Diagram showing inferred phylogenetic relationships of Paleozoic Eumalacostraca.

crustacean structures would be present on the Paleozoic ancestral eumalacostracan stock, the Eocarida.

Traditionally it has been assumed that the original crustaceans had three segments in the protopod of their appendages. The discovery of *Hutchinsoniella* (SANDERS, 1957) has cast doubt upon this theory. Again, the single segment of the eocarid protopod may be an archaic characteristic.

In summary, no valid objections are seen for considering the Paleozoic eocarids as ancestral to the Peracarida and Eucarida and for postulating that the euphausiaceans and decapods evolved their two common eucarid characteristics independently. The Syncarida and Hoplocarida are earlier derivatives (Fig. 157).

### CLASSIFICATION

As indicated in foregoing discussion, a phylogenetic (vertical) classification consistent with the taxa established for Recent Eumalacostraca is impossible. Divergent evolution toward extant morphological types can be distinguished, but in the

pygocephalomorphs they are homeomorphic. Accordingly, the superorder Eocarida was established (55) for caridoid fossils which have a carapace not fused with the thorax, biramous thoracic appendages, a single segment in the protopod, and furcal lobes and a median articulated spine on the telson. Two orders, Eocaridacea and Pygocephalomorpha, are recognized.

*Anthracomysis* and *Palaemysis*, previously assigned to the Eocaridacea (55) on the basis of published descriptions, have been restudied. *Palaemysis* lacks statocysts in the uropods as portrayed by PEACH (226), and most fossils assigned here are abdomens and telsons of *Anthracophausia*. *Anthracomysis* (VAN STRAELEN, 1922) is the caudal fan of *Perimecturus fraiponti* VAN STRAELEN, a palaeostomatopod. *Gitocrangon granulata* RICHTER (1848) is a pseudofossil.

A revision of the European genera and species of eocarids is in progress. Many described species are synonyms and some have incorrect generic assignment. As previously suggested by BEURLEN (27, p. 126)

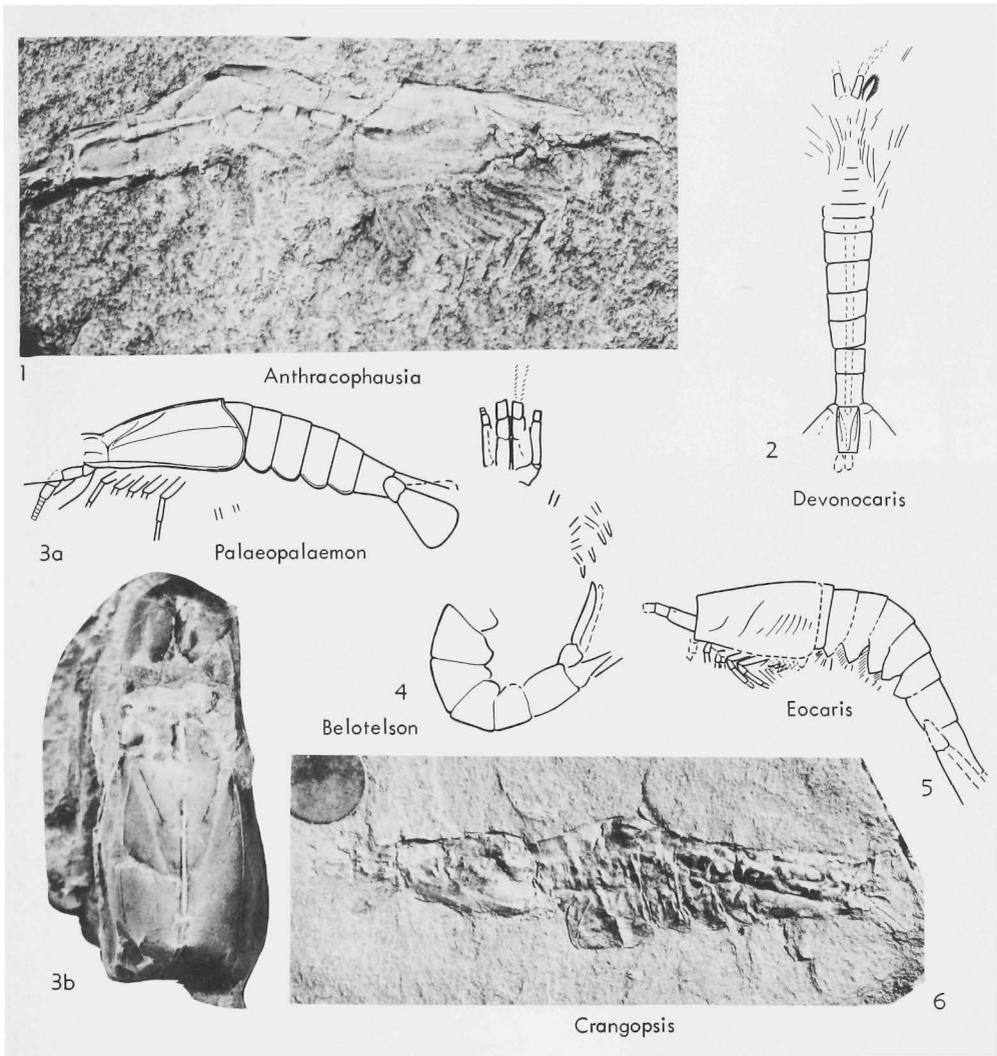


FIG. 158. Eocaridacea—Eocarididae (2,5); Palaeopalaemonidae (3); Anthracophausiidae (1,4,6) (p. R342-R343).

and GLAESSNER (117, p. 178), *Anthrapalaemon* is believed to be a synonym of *Pygocephalus*. Two or three new genera need to be proposed.

The Palaeostomatopoda (BROOKS, 1962), assigned tentatively to the superorder Eocarida, have now proved to be true hoplocarids. In addition to possession of subchelate thoracopods by *Perimecturus* and *Archaeocaris*, these genera have the distinctive triramous antennules of Recent Stomatopoda. PEACH (226) was mistaken in portraying a marsupium on these fossils.

A tabulation of suprageneric divisions of the Eocarida with numbers of genera contained in each is given on page R114.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Superorder EOCARIDA Brooks, 1962

Carapace with single transverse groove and not fused with thoracic tagmata; biramous thoracopods with single segment in

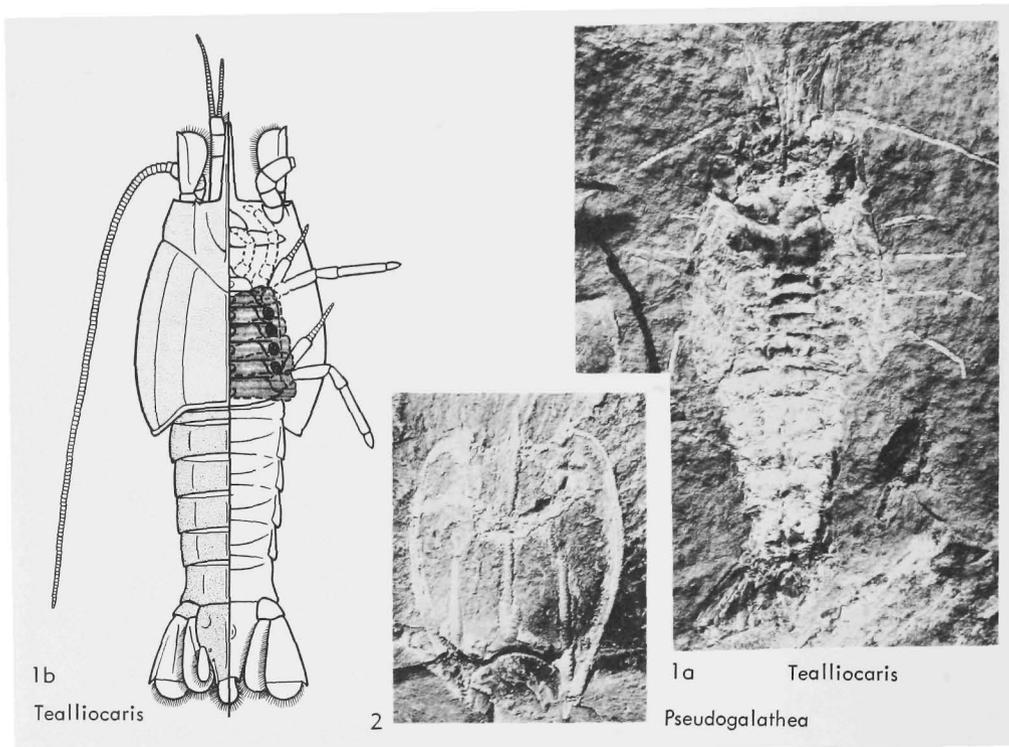


FIG. 159. Pygocephalomorpha (Mississippian)—Teallicarididae (p. R344).

protopod. Chief diagnostic characters are furcal lobes and median articulated spine on telson. *M.Dev.-Perm.*

### Order EOCARIDACEA Brooks, 1962

Carapace relatively shorter than abdomen; pleura of carapace not produced laterally. *M.Dev.-Penn.*

#### Family EOCARIDIDAE Brooks, 1962

Transverse carapace grooves indistinct, not reaching dorsum; pleura of abdominal tergites large and pointed. *M.Dev.*

*Eocaris* BROOKS, 1962, p. 312 [*\*E. oervigi*; OD]. Presence of rostrum doubtful and ventral margin of carapace forming nearly right angle with straight anterior margin; carapace with 2 transverse grooves, neither reaching dorsum. *M.Dev.*, Eu. (Ger.).—FIG. 158,5. *\*E. oervigi*;  $\times 1$  (55).

*Devonocaris* BROOKS, 1962, p. 308 [*\*Palaeocaris? cuylerensis* WELLS, 1957, p. 983; OD]. Thoracic somites relatively large, body of telson spade-shaped. *M.Dev.-U.Dev.*, N.Am.(N.Y.)-Eu.(Belg.).—FIG. 158,2. *\*D. cuylerensis* (WELLS), *M.Dev.*, N.Y.;  $\times 3$  (55).

#### Family PALAEOPALAEEMONIDAE Brooks, 1962

Peduncle of antennules hypertrophied; carapace with well-developed cervical groove and incipient branchiostegal keel near ventral margin. *U.Dev.-L.Miss.*

*Palaeopalaemon* WHITFIELD, 1880, p. 41 [*\*P. newberryi*; OD]. Carapace with pair of longitudinal lateral carinae which become spines anterior to cephalic sulcus, rostrum probably present; pleural lobes of abdominal tergites rounded. *U.Dev.-L.Miss.*, N.Am.(Ohio-Ky.-Iowa).—FIG. 158,3. *\*P. newberryi*, *U.Dev.*, Ohio; 3a,b,  $\times 1$ ,  $\times 4$  (55).

#### Family ANTHRACOPHAUSIIDAE Brooks, 1962

Proximal segment of peduncle of antennules with recessed "eye socket"; rostrum prominent; carapace lacking ridges and spines but having large lappets. *Miss.-Penn.*

*Anthracophausia* PEACH, 1908, p. 61 [*\*A. dunsiana*; OD] [= *Palaemysis* PEACH, 1908 (type, *P. dunlopi*; OD)]. Rostrum keeled and falciform; pleural lobes of all abdominal tergites similar and pointed.

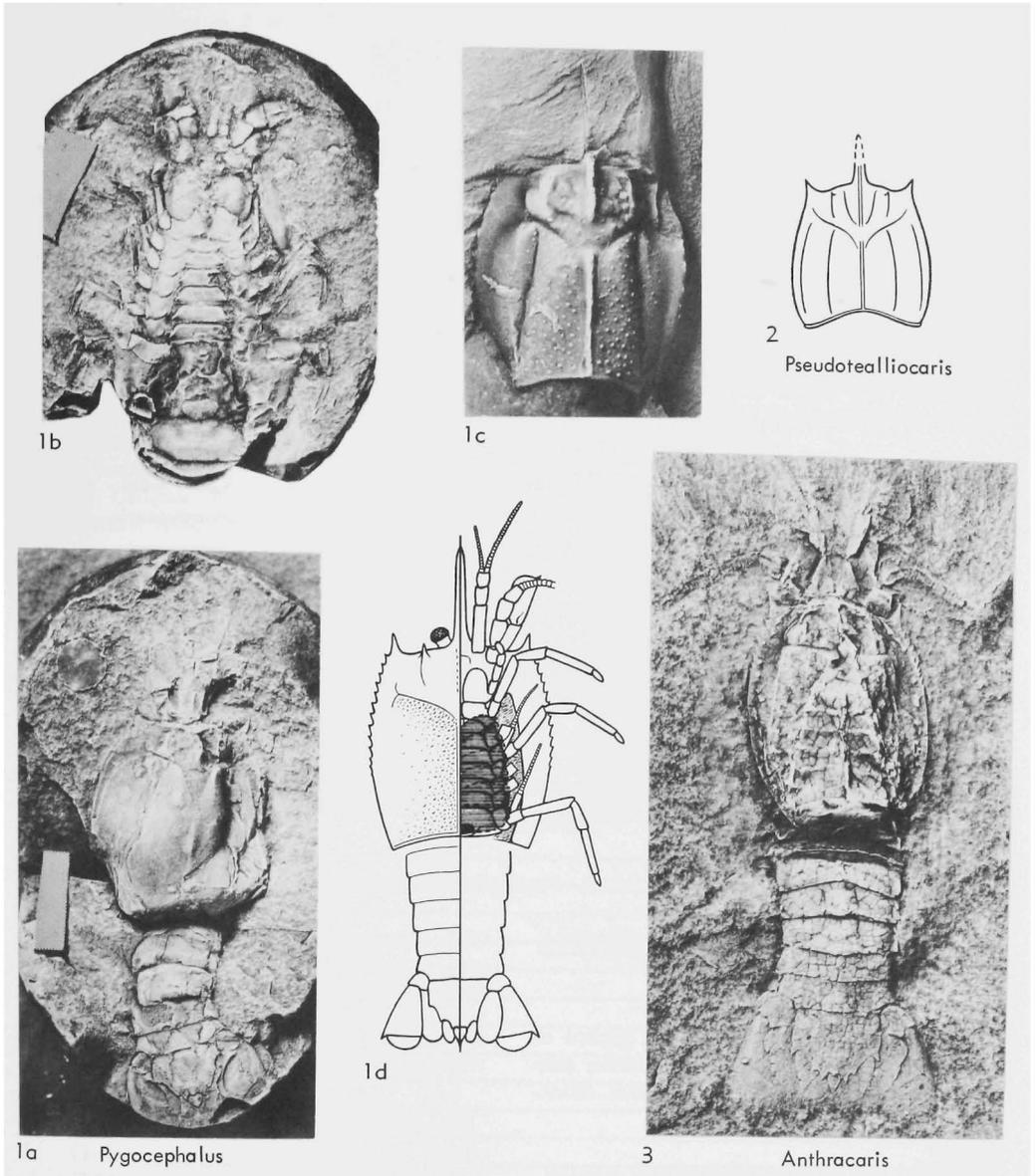


FIG. 160. Pygocephalomorpha (Pennsylvanian)—Pygocephalidae (p. R344-R345).

[Several species assigned to *Crangopsis* by PEACH (1908) belong to *Anthracophausia*. These include *C. couttsi*, *C. rhodesi*, *C. magna*, *C. robusta*, *C. minuta*, and *C. hastata*.] *Miss.-Penn.*, Eu.(Scot.-Eng.-?Fr.)-N.Am.(Ill.).—FIG. 158,1. *A. strongi* BROOKS, Penn., Ill.;  $\times 3$  (55).

**Belotelson** PACKARD, 1886, p. 128 [*\*Acanthotelson? magister* PACKARD, 1886, p. 127; OD]. Spinelike telson and heavily chitinized bladlike outer margin of exopods of uropods characterize this in-

adequately known caridoid. *Penn.*, N.Am.(Ill.).—FIG. 158,4. *\*B. magister* (PACKARD);  $\times 0.7$  (55).

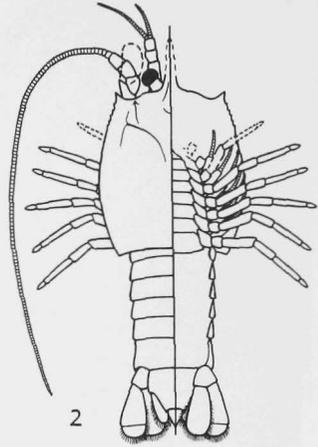
**Crangopsis** SALTER, 1863, p. 531 [*\*Uronectes socialis* SALTER, 1861, p. 394; OD]. Carapace thin, with faint suggestion of cervical groove; rostrum short, blunt; pleura of 2nd abdominal tergite large and rounded, overlapping those of both adjacent somites. *L.Carb.-U.Carb.*, Eu.(Scot.).—FIG. 158, 6. *C. eskdalensis* (PEACH), L.Carb.;  $\times 2$  (55).



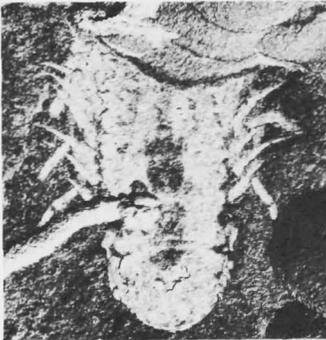
1a Paulocaris



1b



2 Mamayocaris



3a Notocaris



3b

FIG. 161. Pygocephalomorpha (Permian)—Pygocephalidae (2); Notocarididae (1, 3) (p. R345).

## Order PYGOCEPHALOMORPHA Beurlen, 1930

[emend. BROOKS, 1962]

Branchiostegal development in pleura of carapace; cephalothorax and abdomen subequal in length or abdomen reduced. *Miss.-Perm.*

### Family TEALLIOCARIDIDAE Brooks, 1962

Carapace with prominent longitudinal carinae; anterolateral spines, if present, small; median process of telson lobate. *L. Carb.*

**Teallicaris** PEACH, 1908, p. 9 [*\*T. loudonensis*; OD]. Carapace lacking anterolateral spines but bearing sternal processes and oöstegites. *L. Carb.*, Eu.(Scot.-Fr.).—FIG. 159, 1. *\*T. loudonensis*, Scot.; 1a, b, dorsal view and reconstr.,  $\times 2$  (55). **Pseudogalathea** PEACH, 1882, p. 514 [*\*P. rotunda*;

OD]. Anterior and posterolateral angles of carapace produced, latter very prominent; carapace with median and 2 lateral longitudinal ridges and with heavy lateral thickening; abdomen and caudal fan relatively small. *L. Carb.*, Eu.(Scot.).—FIG. 159, 2. *P. macconochiei* (PEACH);  $\times 3$  (55).

### Family PYGOCEPHALIDAE Brooks, 1962

Carapace produced laterally with double, longitudinal carinae absent, but with prominent anterolateral spines; sternal processes lacking. *Miss.-Penn.*

**Pygocephalus** HUXLEY, 1857, p. 363 [*\*P. cooperi*; OD] [= *Anthrapalaemon* SALTER, 1861, p. 530 (type, *A. grossarti*; OD); *Palaeocarabus* SALTER, 1861, p. 530 (type, *Apus dubius* PRESTWICH, 1840); *Necroscilla* WOODWARD, 1879, p. 551 (type, *N. wilsoni*; OD); *Diplostylus* SALTER, 1863, p. 76 (type, *D. dawsoni*; OD)]. Hepatic spines absent from carapace; some female specimens bear-

ing oöstegites and seminal receptacle; telson narrowing backward in 2 abrupt steps, furcal lobes originating at last. *Penn.(U.Carb.)*, N.Am.(N.Scotia-Ohio).—FIG. 160,1. *P. dubius* (MILNE-EDWARDS), Eng.; 1a,b, dorsal and ventral views of specimens; 1c, dorsal view of carapace; 1d, reconstr.; all  $\times 1.5$  (55). [= *Amphipeltis* SALTER, 1863.]

**Anthracarid** BROOKS, 1962, p. 173 [*\*Anthrupalae-mon gracilis* MEEK & WORTHEN, p. 50; OD]. Hepatic and gastric spines present on carapace, oöstegites never present, but large seminal receptacle on last thoracic sternite of mature females; base of telson broad; its width constricting abruptly at position of origin of furcal lobes. *Penn.*, N.Am.(Ill.).—FIG. 160,3. *\*A. gracilis* (MEEK & WORTHEN); dorsal view of complete specimen,  $\times 3$  (55).

**Pseudotealliocaris** BROOKS, 1962, p. 199 [*\*Tealliocaris caudafimbriata* COPELAND, p. 44, 1957; ODI]. Carapace as wide as long, with large anterolateral spines, median keel, and 2 pairs of lateral carinae. *Penn.*, N.Am.(N.Scotia).—FIG. 160,2. *\*P. caudafimbriata* (COPELAND); dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 1.3$  (55).

**Mamayocaris** BROOKS, 1962, p. 188 [*\*M. jepseni*; OD]. Carapace lacking hepatic spines, dorsal carinae indistinct; body of telson subtriangular. *L.Perm.*, N.Am.(Tex.-S.Dak.).—FIG. 161,2. *M. jepseni* BROOKS; dorsal view (reconstr.),  $\times 2$  (55).

**Family NOTOCARIDIDAE Brooks, 1962**

Abdomen reduced and reflexed under thorax. *Perm.*

**Notocaris** BROOM, 1931, p. 572 [*\*Pygocephalus tapscottii* WOODS, p. 41, 1923; OD]. Carapace relatively long and narrow, without spines and dorsal keel. *Perm.*, S.Afr.—FIG. 161,3. *\*N. tapscottii* (WOODS); 3a, thorax with appendages and abdomen reflexed; 3b, lateral compression of cephalothorax,  $\times 2$  (55).

**Paulocaris** CLARKE, 1920, p. 219 [*\*P. pachocoi*; OD] [= *Pygaspis* BEURLIN, 1934, p. 126 (type, *P. brasiliensis*; OD); *Liocaris* BEURLIN, 1931, p. 40 (type, *L. huenei*; OD)]. Carapace as wide as long, with prominent dorsal keel. *Perm.*, S.Am. (Brazil).—FIG. 161,1. *\*P. pachocoi*; 1a,b, dorsal views of carapace and abdomen,  $\times 2$  (55).

**SYNCARIDA**

By H. K. BROOKS

[University of Florida]  
[Chapter submitted February, 1964]

**CONTENTS**

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R345
MORPHOLOGY .....	R347
ONTOGENY .....	R352
ECOLOGY .....	R352
STRATIGRAPHIC OCCURRENCE .....	R353
PHYLOGENY .....	R353
CLASSIFICATION .....	R354
SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R355
Superorder Syncarida Packard, 1885 .....	R355
Order Palaeocaridacea Brooks, 1962 .....	R355
Order Anaspidacea Calman, 1904 .....	R356
Order Bathynellacea Chappuis, 1915 .....	R358
Order Stygocaridacea Noodt, 1964 .....	R358
Order and family uncertain .....	R358

**INTRODUCTION**

Syncarids possess a unique combination of characteristics that impart to them a decisive position in any phylogenetic discussion of the Eumalacostraca. This is not because they were ancestral to any other crustacean main groups, but rather because they are a relatively unmodified lineage

that differentiated early in the history of crustacean evolution.

The feature that most distinguishes the Syncarida is absence of a carapace. Some other Eumalacostraca (e.g., isopods, amphipods, cumaceans) have the carapace aborted or greatly reduced, but in these the absence or reduction can be proved to be secondary.

In the Syncarida no evidence indicates that a cephalothoracic shield ever was present.

Only a few syncarid species have survived to the present. The fossil record, however, indicates that they flourished during the late Paleozoic; indeed, representatives

of the Paleozoic fauna were discovered approximately 50 years before any extant species belonging to the assemblage was known. At first the fossils were interpreted as amphipods or isopods, but in 1885 PACKARD recognized their singularity and pro-

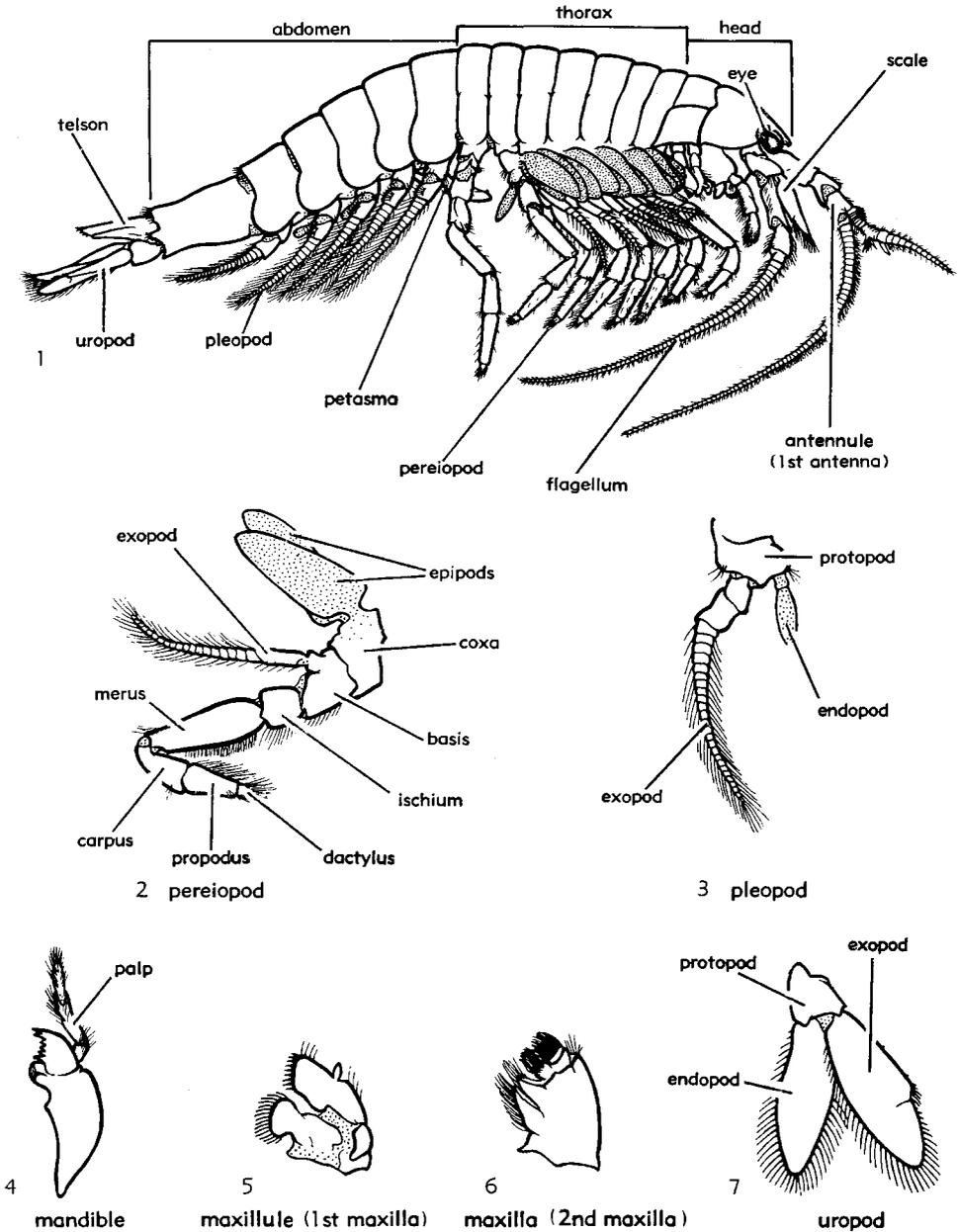


FIG. 162. Morphological features of syncarids illustrated by a generalized anaspidacean, *Anaspides tasmaniae* (THOMSON), Rec., Australia.—1. Lateral view of male,  $\times 3$ .—2. Second thoracic appendage,  $\times 6$ .—3. Second abdominal appendage,  $\times 6$ .—4. Mandible,  $\times 10$ .—5. Maxillule,  $\times 10$ .—6. Maxilla,  $\times 10$ .—7. Uropod,  $\times 6$  (55).

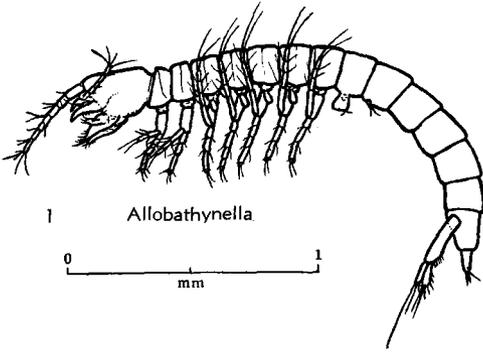


FIG. 163. Vestiges of furca in syncarids shown by bathynellacean *Allobathynella japonica* MORIMOTO & MIURA, male, Rec., Japan,  $\times 32$  (290).

posed the name Syncarida for them. Subsequent discoveries of fossils and extant species have greatly enlarged our knowledge of these relics of the past. The taxon is now recognized as being distinct from the Peracarida and the Eucarida. It is best defined by three morphological features which individually are not definitive, but taken together provide a valid basis for systematic differentiation. These characteristics are biramous thoracopods, absence of a carapace, and absence of a marsupium on mature females.

### MORPHOLOGY

The syncarid body is constructed upon the basic eumalacostracan plan (Fig. 162,1). Tagmosis of the 19 appendage-bearing somites is into (1) a **head**, bearing two pairs of antennae (**antennules**, **antennae**), a pair of **mandibles** and two pairs of **maxillae** (**maxillules**, **maxillae**), (2) a **thorax** composed of eight somites, each bearing a pair of **perciopods**, and (3) an **abdomen** composed of six somites, of which the first five bear **pleopods** and the last one a pair of **uropods**. The terminal body unit is a **telson**. The uropods and telson form a **caudal fan**. In the primitive extant Bathynellacea (Fig. 163) and in the recently discovered representative of a new family, the Stygocarididae (215) (Fig. 164), diminutive vestiges of **furca** are found. Cephalization has resulted in fusion of the first thoracic somite with the head in the Anaspidae,

whereas in the Bathynellacea the sixth abdominal somite is fused with the telson. All eight thoracic somites and six abdominal somites of the extinct Paleozoic order Palaeocaridacea (56) have retained their identity (Fig. 165).

No carapace or vestige of a carapace is found on any known syncarid, fossil or Recent. *Anthracocaris scotica* (PEACH) and *Acadiocaris novascotica* (COPELAND) (55) are peracarids with diminutive carapaces

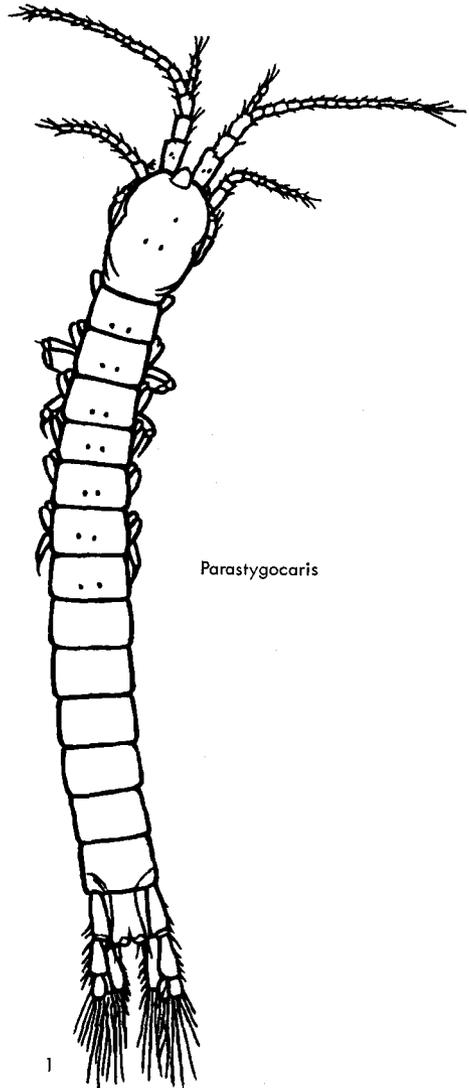


FIG. 164. Vestiges of furca in syncarids shown by stygocaridacean *Parastygocaris andina* NOODT, male, Rec., Argentina,  $\times 60$  (215).

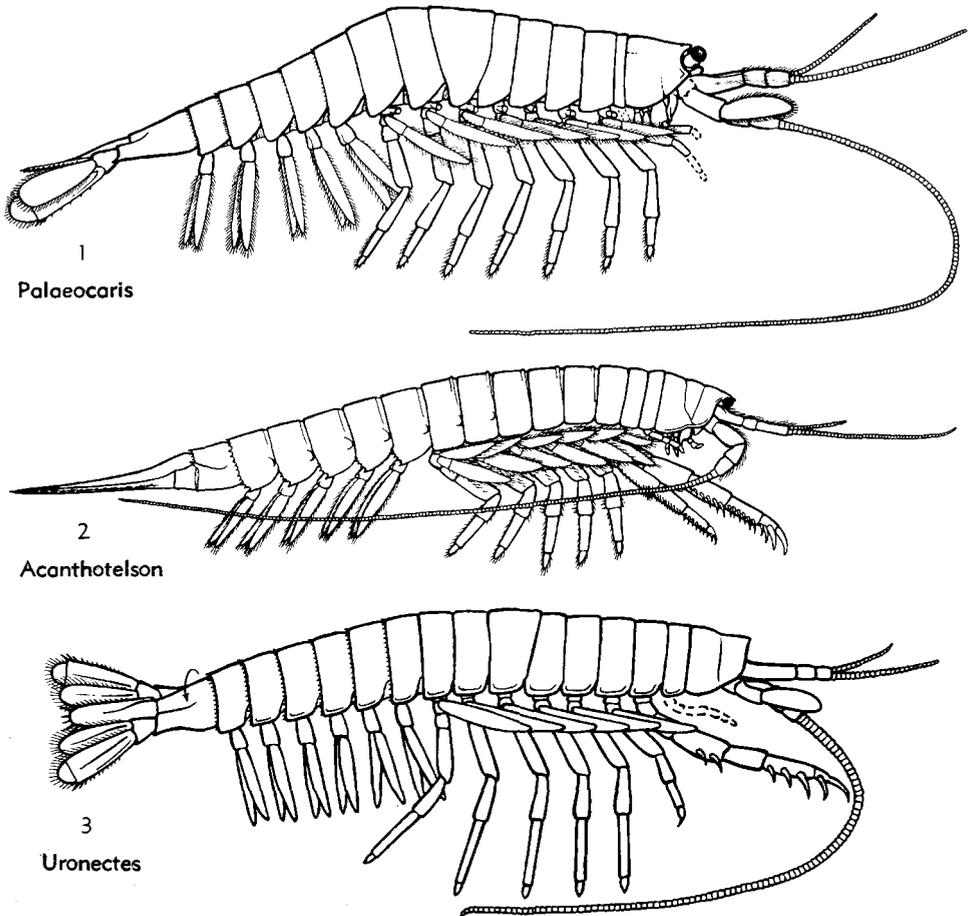


FIG. 165. Morphological features of syncarids shown by palaeocaridaceans (reconstr.).—1. *Palaeocaris typus* MEEK & WORTHEN, Penn., Ill.,  $\times 3$ .—2. *Acanthotelson simpsoni* MEEK & WORTHEN, Penn., Ill.,  $\times 2$ .—3. *Uronectes fimbriatus* (JORDAN), Perm., Ger.,  $\times 3$  (55).

occurring in Lower Carboniferous deposits of Scotland and Canada. Though both of these species were originally assigned to the syncarid *Palaeocaris*, their affinities are probably with the Tanaidacea or Spelaeogriffacea (55).

For purposes of homologous comparison between the different Eumalacostraca, the appendages of *Anaspides* (Rec., Tasmania) are most instructive (Fig. 162). The biramous thoracic legs are believed to have retained a primitive structure.

Each of the antennules consists of a **protopod** of three segments and two multiarticulate **flagella** (Fig. 162,1). Upon the proximal segment of this appendage is a slitlike

pore, which is the external opening of a **statocyst**.

The antennae have a two-segment **protopod**, a **bladelike exopod**, a **scaphocerite** (antennal scale), and two-segment **endopod**, and a **flagellum** (Fig. 162,1). In some of the benthonic Paleozoic species (e.g., *Acanthotelson simpsoni*) the caridoid eumalacostracan **bladelike exopod** has been lost (Fig. 166,1).

It is frequently stated that the retention of only two segments in **protopods** of the antennae is a feature distinctive of the Syncarida and the Eucarida, the latter having the **nephropore** of an antennal gland upon the proximal segment. For extant spe-

cies this observation is correct, but *Palaeocaris typus* (Penn., Ill.) probably had three distinct segments in protopods of its antennae (55, p. 244). It is definite that *Acanthotelson simpsoni* (Penn., Ill.) had a nephropore on the basal segment (55, p. 235) of its antennae (Fig. 166,1).

The body of the mandible of *Anaspides* is stout, with **gnathal lobe** differentiated into a thick **molar process** and distal toothed **incisor process** (Fig. 162,4). A three-seg-

ment **palp** arises on the outer surface of the body of the mandible. CALMAN (65, p. 148) and others have emphasized the absence of a lacinia mobilis on the mandibles of Syncarida. Bristles that may be homologous to this peracarid feature have been reported recently in species of *Parastygocaris* and *Stygocaris* (Rec., S.Am.) by NOODT (215, p. 571).

Both the maxillules and maxillae of *Anaspides* are small and highly specialized to

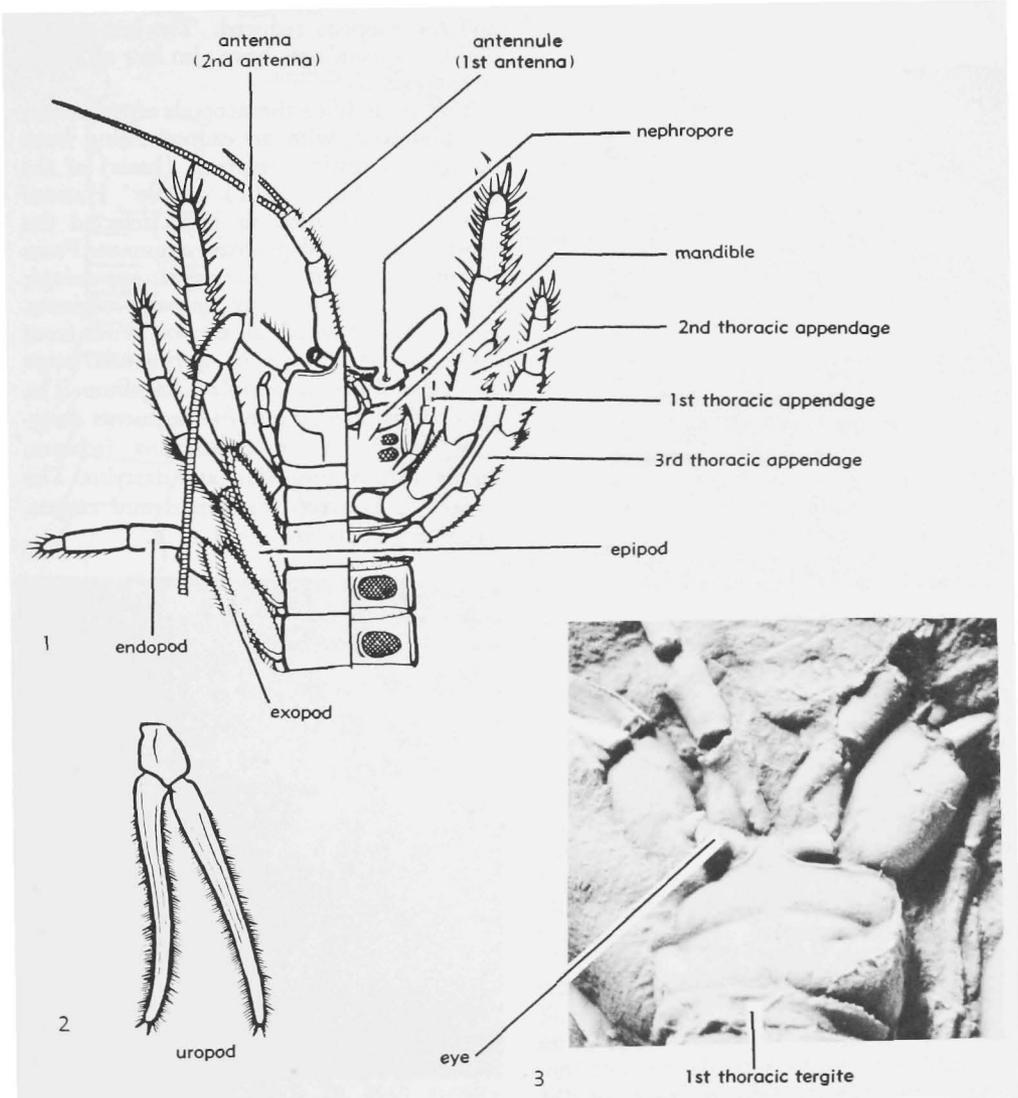


FIG. 166. Morphological features of syncarids shown by palaeocaridacean *Acanthotelson simpsoni* MEEK & WORTHEN, Penn., Ill.—1. Anterior portion of body, dorsal and ventral views,  $\times 4$ .—2. Uropod, dorsal view,  $\times 4$ .—3. Head and first thoracic tergite, dorsal view,  $\times 8$  (Brooks, n).

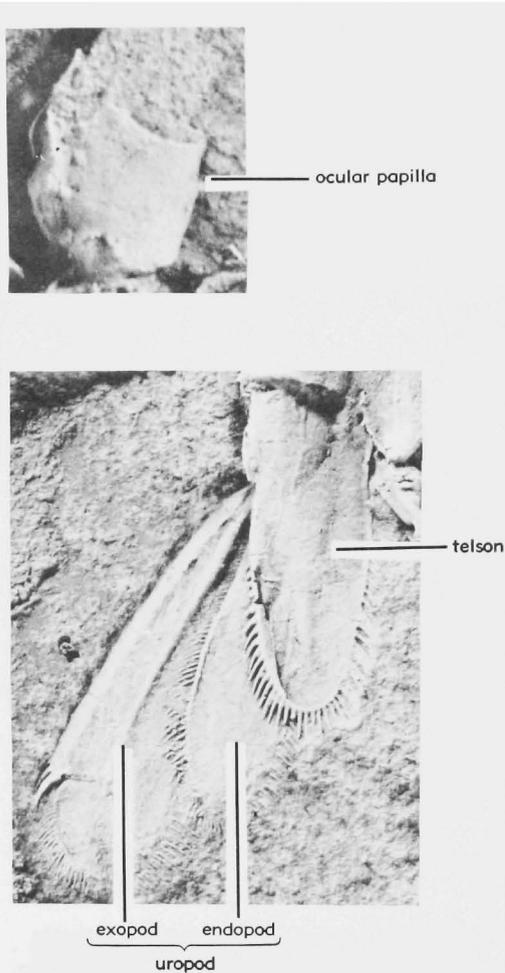


FIG. 167. Some morphological characteristics of *Palaeoecaris typus* MEEK & WORTHEN, Penn., Ill. (Brooks, n).—1. Peduncle of left eye with base of ocular papilla,  $\times 14$ .—2. Uropod (left) and telson,  $\times 10$ .

assist in food manipulation during mastication. They have little resemblance to legs. The maxillules have a small basal segment which gives rise to two plates that constitute the greater part of the appendage (Fig. 162,5).

A broad endite extends mesially. On the outer edge of the lateral plate is a small lobe that might represent the vestige of an endopod or exopod. A single segment constitutes the greater part of each of the maxillae (Fig. 162,6). The mesial margin bears two small setiferous endites, whereas

a movable bilobed structure with bristles is borne at its terminus.

The first pair of pereopods of *Anaspides* are modified as **maxillipeds**. Their **endopod** is adapted for grasping, but otherwise is unaltered from the plan of that of the succeeding pereopods. The **exopod** and **epipods** are reduced on the maxillipeds, but endites are present. The succeeding five pairs of appendages of *Anaspides* have retained their primitive structures, whereas the seventh pair have the epipods aborted and the exopods reduced. The last pair of thoracic appendages have also lost all traces of exopods.

The unmodified thoracopods of *Anaspides* are biramous, with an exopod rising from the second distinct segment (basis) of the protopod (Fig. 162,2). Only HANSEN (1925) has claimed to have detected the evasive theoretical precoxal segment. From the basal segment (coxa) of the appendage, two lobate, membranous epipods originate. As previously noted, an exopod arises from the basis; it consists of a proximal **stipe** and beyond this an annulate **flagellum**. The endopod is divided into five segments designated as in other crustaceans ischium, merus, carpus, propodus, and dactylus. The "knee" is between the merus and carpus. Three segments are distal to it.

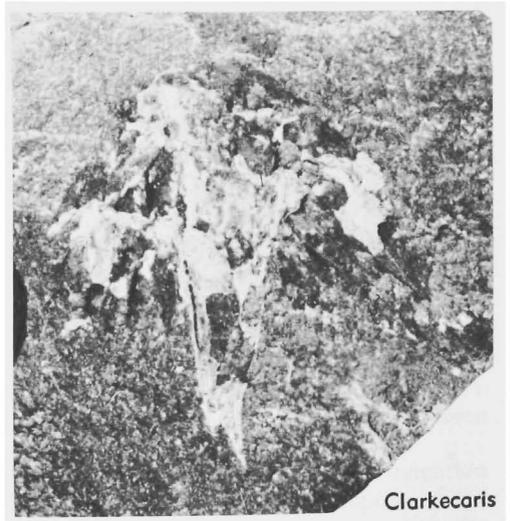


FIG. 168. Portion of caudal fan of *Clarkecaris brasiliensis* (CLARKE), Perm., Brazil, showing telson and right furcal lobe,  $\times 6$  (Brooks, n).

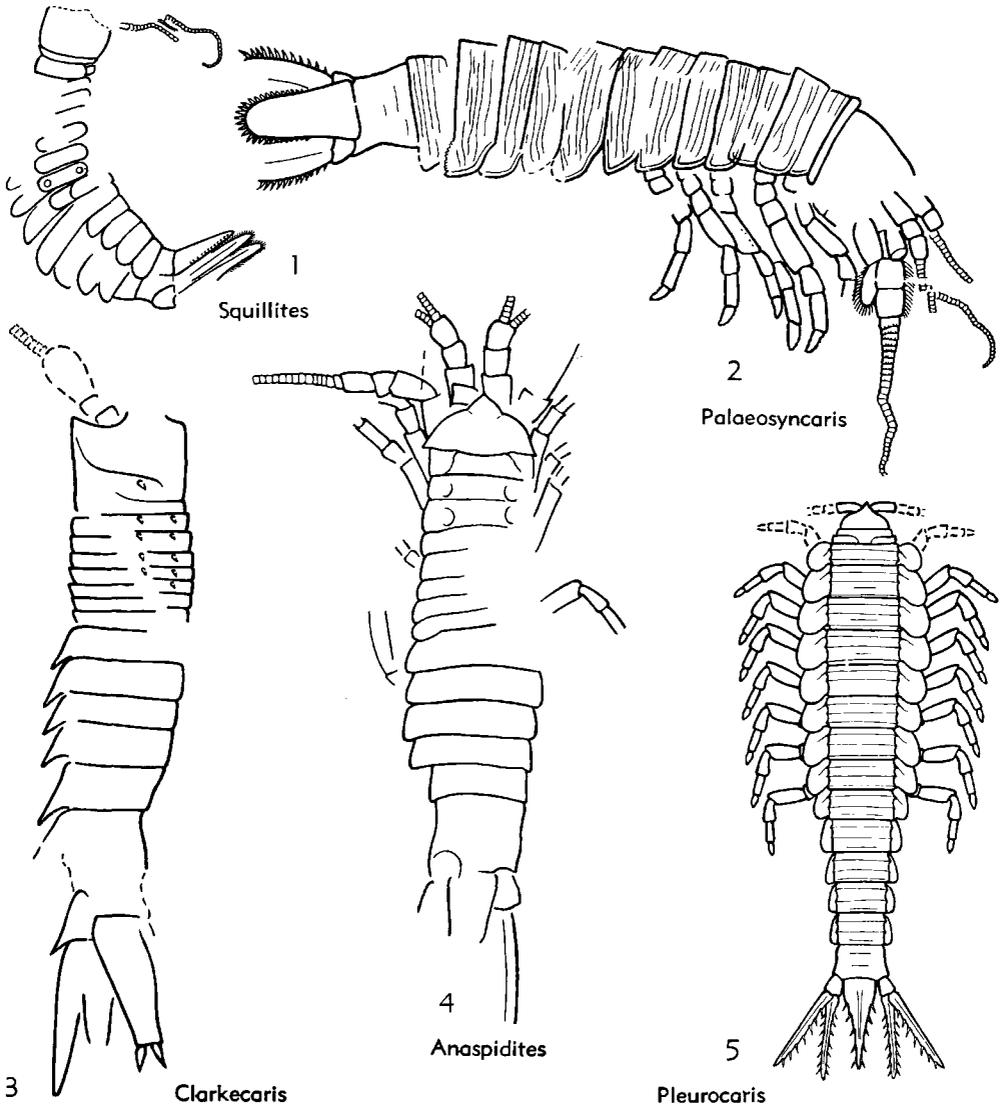


FIG. 169. Morphological features of fossil syncarids that are incompletely known (Brooks, n).—1. *Squillites spinosus* SCOTT, Miss., USA (Mont.),  $\times 5$ .—2. *Palaeosyncaris dakotensis* BROOKS, Miss., USA (N. Dak.),  $\times 2$ .—3. *Clarkecaris brasiliensis* (CLARKE), Perm., Brazil,  $\times 3$ .—4. *Anaspidites antiquus* (CHILTON), Trias., Australia,  $\times 1.5$ .—5. *Pleurocaris annulata* CALMAN, U. Carb., Eng.,  $\times 7$ .

The pereiopods of Paleozoic syncarids have an identical structure (Fig. 165). In most species no maxillipeds are present, but *Acanthotelson stimpsoni* (Penn., Ill.) has massive grasping legs, as does *Uronectes fimbriatus* (Perm., Eu.). In both species they are the second pair of pereiopods.

Traces of the membranous epipods are rarely found on fossils, but remains of them

have been reported for *Palaeocaris typus* and *Acanthotelson stimpsoni* (55). Though the preservation of the fossils is not adequate for positive proof, it appears that the exopods were not flagellate in the Paleozoic fossils, but rather spatulate lobes somewhat resembling epipods (Fig. 166, I).

In the minute Recent Bathynellacea, adapted for living in interstitial spaces in

sand, the antennae and thoracic appendages are reduced and simplified (Fig. 163).

As to the pleopods and uropods of *Anaspides*, no morphological features of special importance call for notice. The pleopods of the first and second abdominal somites of males differ from those that follow and from female pleopods in that the endopods are produced as strong armlike gonapophyses—the petasma of stomatopods and eucarids—which projects forward between the last pair of thoracopods. The typical pleopod has a large basal segment (protopod), a much-reduced, soft lobate endopod, and an exopod consisting of two proximal segments followed by a long annulate, hairy flagellum (Fig. 162,3). In Recent syncarids adapted for living in interstitial spaces, the pleopods are reduced or aborted. Among Paleozoic fossils in which pleopods are known, the two rami are spatulate lobes of approximately equal size (Fig. 165).

The uropods are biramous on all known syncarids. Those of *Anaspides* (Fig. 162,1) and *Palaeocaris* (Fig. 167,2) are spatulate, but in many forms the rami are variously modified as styli (Fig. 166,2). A statocyst was reported by FRITSCH (97) in the basal segment of the uropod of *Uronectes fimbriatus*. Diligent restudy of the fossils has proved this observation to be in error.

The telson of *Anaspides* is a simple, spatulate terminal body unit with the anus situated on its ventral surface. In the Bathynellacea (Fig. 163) and Stygocaridacea (Fig. 164) are two small lobes representing rudiments of a furca. *Clarkecaris* (Perm., S.Am.), a primitive stygocarid, is the only Paleozoic fossil known to have preserved this fundamental crustacean structure (Fig. 168; 169,3).

The compound eyes of *Anaspides* are stalked, whereas those of *Koonunga* are sessile. The Bathynellacea are blind. All known fossil syncarids have stalked compound eyes (Fig. 166,3). A discovery of special interest on the peduncle of the eyes of *Palaeocaris typus* (55, p. 243) is an ocular papilla similar to that of the Mysidacea (Fig. 167,1).

For the most part, features of the internal morphology of the Syncarida are

primitive. Especially noteworthy is the so-called pars ampullaris on the entrance of the caeca into the pyloric chamber of the stomach, which is homologous to a similar structure in the Stomatopoda (275, p. 95). The stomach is small. A large number of liver caeca enter the stomach ventrally. Except for two small dorsal diverticula in the abdomen, the intestine is simple. In all Recent syncarids the excretory organs are maxillary nephridia, but in *Acanthotelson stimpsoni* nephropores are associated with the antennae (55, p. 235). Publications by SMITH (278) and SIEWING (273) give details of the internal morphology of the Recent Syncarida.

## ONTOGENY

The eggs of Recent Syncarida are deposited, not carried by the mother. The nauplius and other ontogenetic stages are developed in the egg. No metamorphosis occurs, though the newly hatched animal is not completely developed; for example, in *Anaspides* the eyes are sessile and only two hepatic caeca are present (146). Whereas *Anaspides* is hatched with a full complement of body somites, *Bathynella* has only three abdominal somites (16).

## ECOLOGY

It is customary to refer to the Syncarida as fresh-water Crustacea. Though all extant species, except *Thermobathynella amyxi* SIEWING, from brackish waters at the mouth of the Amazon, do live in fresh water, it is definite that many fossil syncarids were marine. In evaluating the paleontological environmental occurrence of animals with a chitinous exoskeleton, one must not neglect the fact that fossil arthropods without mineral-reinforced skeletons are practically unknown from marine deposits. This does not mean that highly diverse arthropods were lacking in seas of the past, but only that remains of those with chitinous exoskeletons were destroyed by normal biological and physicochemical vicissitudes during accumulation and diagenesis of the sediments.

It is believed that all Carboniferous syncarids were marine, but it is possible that some Permian species normally inhabited fresh water. *Clarkecaris brasiliicus* (Perm., S.Am.), from the Irati Shales, is from a marine lithotope (Fig. 168; 169,3). On the other hand, stratigraphic evidence and the associated fossils of *Anaspidites antiquus*, from the Triassic of Australia, suggest a fresh-water habitat (Fig. 169,4).

*Paranaspidites lacustris*, a shrimplike syncarid, is nektonic, whereas *Anaspidites tasmaniae* is benthonic. These relatively unspecialized Crustacea are from lakes and rivers of Tasmania. Species of *Koonunga* and *Micraspidites* have been found in bottom detritus of lakes and pools in Australia and are intermediate between the true surface-dwellers mentioned above and highly specialized subterranean species. *Koonunga* has small sessile eyes and shuns strong light, whereas *Micraspidites* lacks eyes. Species adapted for existence in interstitial spaces in sediment are geographically widespread, for North America and Australia are the only continents from which members of the Bathynellacea have not been reported. Fossil and extant members of the Stygocaridacea have been found only in South America.

Some syncarids are microphagous feeders. *Anaspidites*, on the other hand, has maxillipeds adapted for grasping large detritus and prey. It has been observed to be carnivorous (213, p. 15). No question exists as to the predaceous habits of the extinct *Acanthotelson* and *Uronectes*, which possessed strong raptorial maxillipeds.

## STRATIGRAPHIC OCCURRENCE

None of the Syncarida have carapaces strengthened by mineral matter. Chitinous exoskeletons rapidly decompose upon death of animals except when unusual physicochemical conditions exist to prevent destruction. Such fossils are found as compressions in black shales and in clay ironstone concretions from dark gray to black siltstone and shales. *Anaspidites antiquus* (Trias., Australia) is from a variegated gray to brick red, laminated lacustrine deposit (Fig. 169,4).

Though "*Palaeocaris*" has been reported from the Devonian of Belgium (VAN STRAELLEN, 1943) and New York (WELLS, 1957), these fossils were misinterpreted (57). The original determinations were based on absence of a carapace in the fossils, but this is due to poor preservation. The oldest true syncarids are *Squillites spinosus* and *Palaeosyncaris dakotensis*, from the Heath Shale, of Late Mississippian age, in Montana and North Dakota (55) (Fig. 169,1,2). A large number of specimens are known from Carboniferous deposits in North America and Europe. Permian species are known from Europe and South America. The Paleozoic northern hemisphere species are all members of the order Palaeocaridacea, whereas *Clarkecaris*, from Brazil, is a primitive stygocaridacean. A single specimen of *Anaspidites antiquus* has been found in Triassic shales of Australia (Fig. 169,4). It is doubtful that *Triasocaris* (BILL, 1914), from the Triassic of France, has been interpreted correctly.

## PHYLOGENY

Misinformation and insufficient knowledge of the morphology of fossil syncarids have resulted in many misconceptions of their phylogenetic relationships. Because of the erroneous interpretation of *Acanthotelson* by PACKARD (1886), many authors have postulated a relationship between the Syncarida and Isopoda (NICHOLLS, 1929; CALMAN, 1934; GLAESSNER, 1957). SIEWING (275, p. 95) has cited the presence of a seventh abdominal somite and the occurrence of statocysts in uropods of *Uronectes* (FRITSCH, 1901) as evidence for an affinity of syncarids with the Mysidacea, although it has been proved that FRITSCH was mistaken in reporting both of these morphological features (55, p. 239). In the light of present knowledge of Recent and extinct Crustacea, the Syncarida possess characteristics considered to be diagnostic of one or more of all other eumalacostracan taxa; thus they are of great phylogenetic interest.

The furca on the telson of Recent Bathynellacea and Stygocaridacea is a primitive crustacean feature that has been lost by most Eumalacostraca. Rudiments of a furca are present on some euphausiaceans and

in larval stages of the Eucarida. All known species of the extinct Eocarida have a furca or furcal lobes on the telson. None of the Paleozoic syncarids of the extinct order Palaeocaridacea are known to have had a furca. Restudy of the type specimens of *Clarkecaris brasiliensis*, a primitive stygocaridacean from South America, proves it to have had a furca (Fig. 168). These crustaceans, not the palaeocarids, must be closest to the ancestral syncarid stock.

The digestive tract, nervous system, reproductive system, and excretory system of Recent syncarids are those of a generalized eumalacostracan. This is true also for the stomatopods (275, p. 93), but the characteristics in each were inherited independently from the ancestral eumalacostracan stock.

Until nephropores were discovered in *Acanthotelson*, it was believed that all syncarids had maxillary glands. This, in addition to the presence of biramous pereopods and stalked or sessile compound eyes coupled with lack of a carapace and of an appendix interna on the pleopods of syncarids, has been construed as indicative of their affinities with Peracarida. Features that syncarids have in common with the Eucarida invalidate this interpretation. Female syncarids lack oöstegites and the mature males have a petasma. These are characteristic of both the Stomatopoda and Eucarida. Characteristics that are distinctly eucarid in nature are presence of a statocyst in the basal antennal segments and presence of a seminal receptacle in females. The correlative morphological features mentioned above must be homeomorphic.

The evidence presented supports the conclusion that syncarid evolution has followed four distinct lines. These have led to differentiation of the groups now ranked as orders—Palaeocaridacea, Anaspidacea, Bathynellacea, and Stygocaridacea. The archaic syncarid, which is unknown, must have had all thoracic and abdominal somites free, lacked a carapace, had biramous thoracic appendages, and possessed a furca on the telson.

The Palaeocaridacea are the oldest syncarid fossils yet discovered. Even so, they cannot be considered the ancestral stock of the Syncarida, as Noodt (1964) has pos-

tulated. Though highly specialized, the extant members of the orders Bathynellacea and Stygocaridacea have retained more fundamental primitive characteristics. These two orders must have been early derivatives of the original syncarids which thus far are unknown. The Stygocaridacea are restricted to the South American continent with the oldest known fossil, *Clarkecaris*, occurring in Permian strata. It is possible that the Anaspidacea of Australia and Tasmania are their descendants.

The relationships of the Syncarida have been confused by the evolution of homeomorphic features. There is no proof of a relationship with any of the other Eumalacostraca other than through a common ancestor.

## CLASSIFICATION

The Syncarida was originally defined by PACKARD (1885) as including only the Pennsylvanian fossil, *Acanthotelson simpsoni*, believed to be closely related to the Isopoda and Amphipoda. With the discovery of the Recent "Tasmanian mountain shrimp," *Anaspides tasmaniae* (THOMSON), CALMAN (1896) established the Syncarida as an order and extended it to include fossils such as *Palaeocaris*. Subsequently, several additional Recent genera have also been discovered. In his last published classification of these Crustacea, CALMAN (1909, p. 162) raised the Syncarida to division rank (i.e., superorder).

The attempts of CHAPPUIS (1915), COCKRELL (1916), SIEWING (1959), and VANDENBERGHE (1960) to establish a systematic classification of the Syncarida have failed because they were based upon erroneous interpretation of the Paleozoic fossils. BROOKS (55, 56) has restudied the fossils and proposed that three orders be recognized on the basis of fusion or lack of fusion of somites. One additional order (Stygocaridacea) subsequently has been defined by NOODT (1964, p. 96).

The Palaeocaridacea have all eight thoracic somites and six abdominal somites free. There is no furca. The known Anaspidacea have the first thoracic somite fused with the head and in the Clarkecarididae and Stygocarididae the first thoracic somite is

fused with the head, but rudiments of a furca are present. The order Stygocaridacea, established for the extant forms (NOODT, 1964), should include also the extinct Clarkecarididae, which possess the same characteristics. The aberrant Bathynellacea all have a furca, and although their eight thoracic somites are free, the last abdominal somite is fused with the telson. Families are distinguished on the basis of their adaptive trends.

A tabulation of suprageneric divisions of the Syncarida showing their stratigraphic occurrence and numbers of contained genera is given on page R114.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Superorder SYNCARIDA

#### Packard, 1885

[*nom. transl.* CALMAN, 1904 (ex Syncarida PACKARD, 1885, *partim*)] [=Anomotraka VON GROBEN, 1910]

Carapace absent, pereopods biramous, with one or two epipods; seminal receptacle may be present but no oostegites. *U.Miss.-Rec.*

### Order PALAEOCARIDACEA

#### Brooks, 1962

[=Gampsonychidae SIEWING, 1959 (*pro* Gampsonychidae PACKARD, 1886, *partim*); Anaspidacea CALMAN, 1904 (*partim*); Simplicipoda FRITSCH, 1901 (*partim*)]

First thoracic somite not incorporated into cephalon; compound eyes stalked; caudal furca lacking. *U.Miss.-Perm.*

### Family PALAEOCARIDIDAE

#### Meek & Worthen, 1865

[*non* Palaeocaridae SIEWING, 1959] [=Nectotelsonides BROCCHI, 1880; Eilecticidae VANDENBERGHE, 1960]

No thoracic endopods modified as raptorial appendages; rami of uropods lobate; telson spatulate. *U.Miss.-Perm.*

*Palaeocaris* MEEK & WORTHEN, 1865, p. 48 [*\*P. typus*; OD] [=Nectotelson BROCCHI, 1880; *Palaeorchestia* ZITTEL, 1882; *Gasocaris* FRITSCH, 1901; *Praeanaspides* WOODWARD, 1908]. Thoracic and abdominal pleural lobes rounded anteriorly, posterior edge straight, without spines. *U.Carb. (Westphalian) - Perm.*, N. Am. (Ill.-N. Scotia)-Eu. (Eng.-Fr.-Belg.-Neth.).—FIG. 165,1; 170,1a. *\*P. typus*, Penn., Ill.; 165,1,  $\times 3$ ; 170,1a,  $\times 2$  (55).—FIG. 170,1b. *P. krejci* (FRITSCH), Perm., Eu.;  $\times 4$  (Brooks, n).—FIG. 170,1c. *P. rochi* (BROCCHI), Perm., Eu.;  $\times 4$  (Brooks, n).

*Palaeosyncaris* BROOKS, 1962, p. 250 [*\*P. dakotensis*; OD]. Thoracic and abdominal pleural lobes progressively larger, posterior margin at last thoracic and abdominal lobes rounded, spines on abdominal pleural lobes. *U.Miss.* or *L.Penn.*, N. Am. (N.Dak.).—FIG. 169,2; 170,2. *\*P. dakotensis*, 169,2; 170,2, both  $\times 2$  (55).

*Squillites* SCOTT, 1938, p. 508 [*\*S. spinosus*; OD]. First thoracic tergite reduced; uropods with narrow spatulate rami; telson wedge-shaped. *U.Miss.*, N. Am. (Mont.).—FIG. 169,1; 170,3. *\*S. spinosus*; 169,1,  $\times 5$ ; 170,3,  $\times 6$  (55).

### Family URONECTIDAE Cockerell, 1916

[=Gampsonychidae PACKARD, 1886]

Endopods of second thoracic appendages raptorial; rami of uropods and telson spatulate; antennae without scaphocerites. *L. Perm.*

*Uronectes* BRONN, 1850, p. 575 [*\*Gampsonyx fimbriatus* JORDAN, 1847; OD] [=Gampsonyx JORDAN, 1847 (obj.); *Carcinurus* BRONN, 1850; *Gampsonychus* BURMEISTER, 1855 (obj.)]. First thoracopods reduced; pleura truncate and posterior margin of abdominal tergites serrate. *L.Perm.*, Eu. (Saar B.).—FIG. 165,3; 173,1. *\*U. fimbriatus* (JORDAN); 165,3,  $\times 3$ ; 173,1,  $\times 4.5$  (Brooks, n).

### Family ACANTHOTELSONIDAE

#### Meek & Worthen, 1865

[*non* COCKERELL, 1916]

Second and third pereopods raptorial; rami and uropods and telson styloid. *Penn.*

*Acanthotelson* MEEK & WORTHEN, 1865, p. 399 [*\*A. stimpsoni*; OD]. Thoracic pleura truncate, posterior margin of abdominal pleural lobes serrate; length of all abdominal somites approximately equal. *Penn.*, N. Am. (Ill.).—FIG. 165,2; 171,1. *\*A. stimpsoni*; 165,2,  $\times 2$ ; 171,1,  $\times 4.5$  (Brooks, 1962).

### Family PLEUROCARIDIDAE

#### Chappuis, 1915

[*nom. correct* BROOKS, 1962 (ex Pleurocaridae CHAPPUIS, 1915)] [*non* Eilecticidae VANDENBERGHE, 1960]

No pereopods specialized for raptorial purposes; thoracic pleura large; rami of uropods and telson styloid. *Penn.*

*Pleurocaris* CALMAN, 1911, p. 156 [*\*P. annulatus*; OD]. Head small, 2 cephalic grooves not joining laterally; margins of uropod rami and telson spinose. *Penn.*, Eu. (Eng.-?Fr.).—FIG. 169,5; 172,1. *\*P. annulatus*, Eng.; 169,5,  $\times 7$ ; 172,1,  $\times 9$  (Brooks, n).

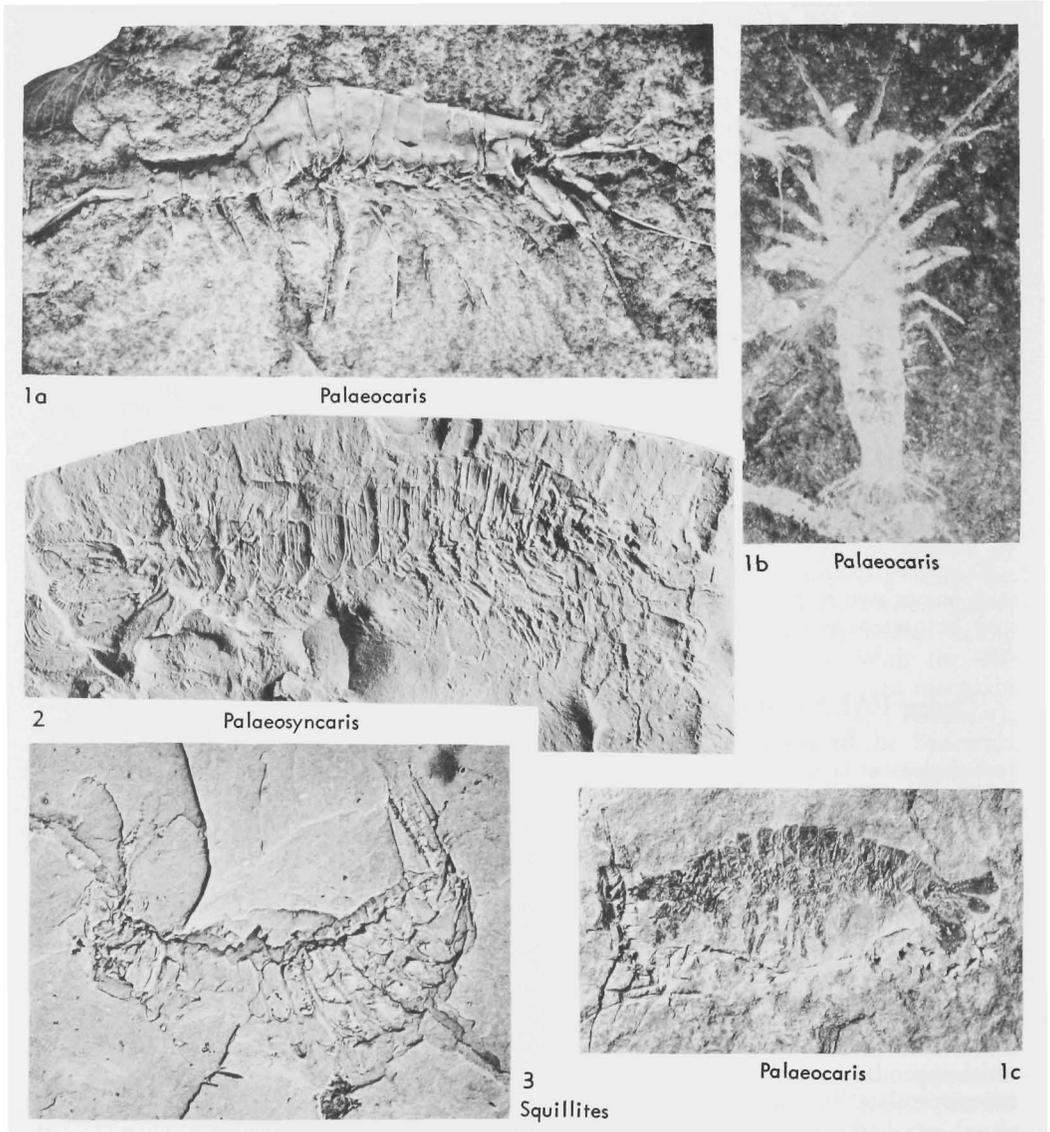


FIG. 170. Palaeocaridacea, Palaeocarididae (p. R355).

## Order ANASPIDACEA Calman, 1904

[*nom. transl.* SIEWING, 1959]

First thoracic somite incorporated into cephalic tagma; seminal receptacle present. *Trias.-Rec.*

### Family ANASPIDIDAE Thomson, 1894

Exopods on thoracic appendages 1 to 7;

endopods of pleopods reduced; with stalked compound eyes. *Trias.-Rec.*

**Anaspides** THOMSON, 1894, p. 285 [*Anaspis tasmaniae* THOMSON, 1892; OD]. Thoracic somites increasing only slightly in length posteriorly; antennal scales shorter than 1st 2 joints of endopod. *Rec.*, Tasmania.—FIG. 162, I. \**A. tasmaniae* (THOMSON); ×3 (Brooks, n).

**Paranaspides** SMITH, 1908, p. 465 [*P. lacustris*; OD]. Thoracic somites increasing in length pos-

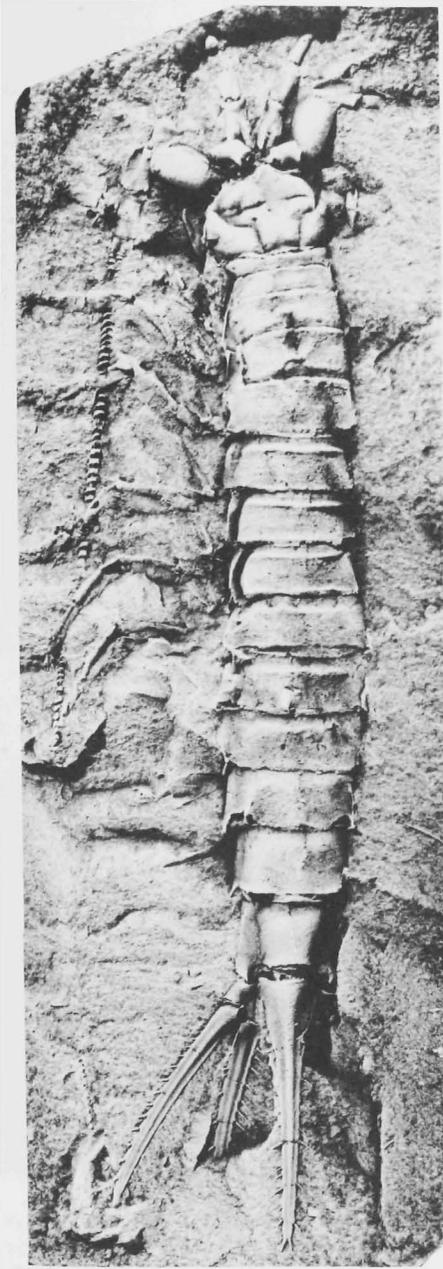
**Anaspidites** BROOKS, 1962, p. 234 [*\*Anaspides antiquus* CHILTON, 1929; OD]. Rostrum with broad base; thoracic somites reduced but position of origin of thoracic legs relatively widespread; scaphocerites with straight outer edge. *Trias.*, Australia.—FIG. 169,4; 174,1. *\*A. antiquus* (CHILTON); 169,4,  $\times 1.5$ ; 174,1,  $\times 2$  (Brooks, n).

**Family KOONUNGIDAE Sayce, 1908**

Eyes sessile, antennae lacking scaphocerites; last two pereopods uniramous, pleopods all uniramous except first two in males, which are copulatory organs. *Rec.*

**Koonunga** SAYCE, 1908, p. 353 [*\*K. cursor*; OD]. Eyes sessile. *Rec.*, Australia.

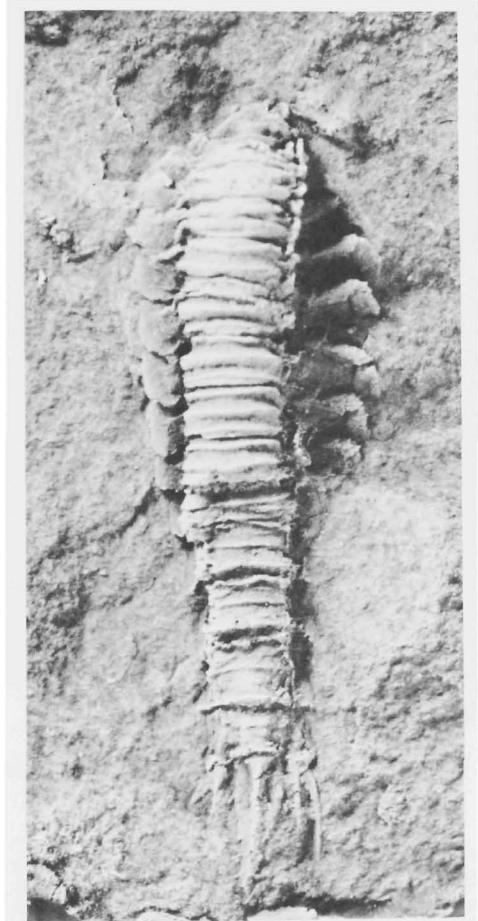
**Micraspides** NICHOLLS, 1931, p. 475 [*\*M. calmani*; OD]. Blind. *Rec.*, Tasmania.



1 Acanthotelson

FIG. 171. Palaeocaridacea, Acanthotelsonidae (p. R355).

teriorly and body flexed at 1st abdominal somite, which is largest; antennal scales longer than 1st 2 joints of endopod. *Rec.*, Tasmania.



1 Pleurocaris

FIG. 172. Palaeocaridacea, Pleurocarididae (p. R355)



FIG. 173. Palaeocaridacea, Uronectidae (p. R355).

## Order BATHYNELLACEA Chappuis, 1915

[*nom. transl.* SIEWING, 1959]

Aberrant subterranean syncarids having last abdominal somite fused with telson; pleopods reduced or absent; furca present. *Rec.*

### Family BATHYNELLIDAE Chappuis, 1915

Characters of order. *Rec.*

*Bathynella* VEJDovsky, 1882, p. 65 [*\*B. natans*; OD]. Pleopods 2-jointed, antennae with 5 or more joints; exopods present on pereopods 1 to 7. *Rec.*, Eu.-Japan.

*Allobathynella* MORIMOTO & MIURA, 1957, p. 145 [*\*A. japonica*; OD]. Pleopods single-jointed, rudi-

mentary. *Rec.*, Japan.—FIG. 163, I. *\*A. japonica*;  $\times 32$  (290).

*Brazilibathynella* JAKOBI, 1961, p. 27 [*\*B. floriano-  
polis* JAKOBI, 1958; OD]. Pleopods absent; 1st antennae with 6 joints; exopods of thoracopods with 2 joints. *Rec.*, S.Am. (Brazil).

*Parabathynella* CHAPPUIS, 1926, p. 7 [*\*P. stygia*; OD]. Pleopods entirely absent; antennae with 5 or fewer joints; exopods of pereopods 2 to 7, 2- or 3-jointed. *Rec.*, Eu.-Malay.Arch.-Japan-Madag.

*Thermobathynella* CAPART, 1951, p. 1 [*\*T. adami*; OD]. Pleopods entirely absent; antennae with 5 joints; exopods of pereopods 1 to 7 with only single joint. *Rec.*, Afr.-S.Am.

## Order STYGOCARIDACEA Noodt, 1964

First thoracic somite fused with head; telson bearing furcal rudiment; petasma and antennal statocysts present. *Perm.-Rec.*

### Family STYGOCARIDIDAE Noodt, 1962

[*nom. correct.* NOODT, 1964 (*pro* Stygocaridae Noodt, 1962)]

Specialized for living interstitially, eyes and pleopods aborted. First pereopods specialized as maxillipeds; antennae lacking exopod scaphocerites; rudiments of furca on telson. *Rec.*

*Stygocaris* NOODT, 1962, p. 577 [*\*S. gomezmillasi* NOODT, 1962; OD]. Exopods on pereopods aborted; segments of both antennules and antennae reduced in number. *Rec.*, S.Am. (Chile).

*Parastygocaris* NOODT, 1962, p. 576 [*\*P. andina* NOODT, 1962; OD]. Exopods on thoracic appendages 2 to 6; exopods of uropod divided into 2 segments. *Rec.*, S.Am. (Arg.).—FIG. 164, I. *\*P. andina*;  $\times 50$  (215).

### Family CLARKECARIDIDAE Brooks, 1962

Suture between head and first thoracic tergite vestigial; anterior sulcus on cephalon sigmoidal; abdominal pleura spinelike; furca present. *Perm.*

*Clarkecaris* MEZZALIRA, 1952, p. 47 [*\*Gampsonyx  
brasiliicus* CLARKE, 1920; OD] [= *Gampsonyx*  
CLARKE, 1920 (obj.)]. Thoracic somites shortened, paired dorsal spines on thoracic tergites. *Perm.*, S.Am. (Brazil).—FIG. 169, 3; 174, 2. *\*C. brasiliicus* (CLARKE), 169, 3,  $\times 3$ ; 174, 2,  $\times 6$  (Brooks, n).

### Order and Family UNCERTAIN

*Triasocaris* BILL, 1914, p. 323 [*\*T. peachi*; OD] (*nom. dub.*). *Trias.*, Eu. (Fr.).

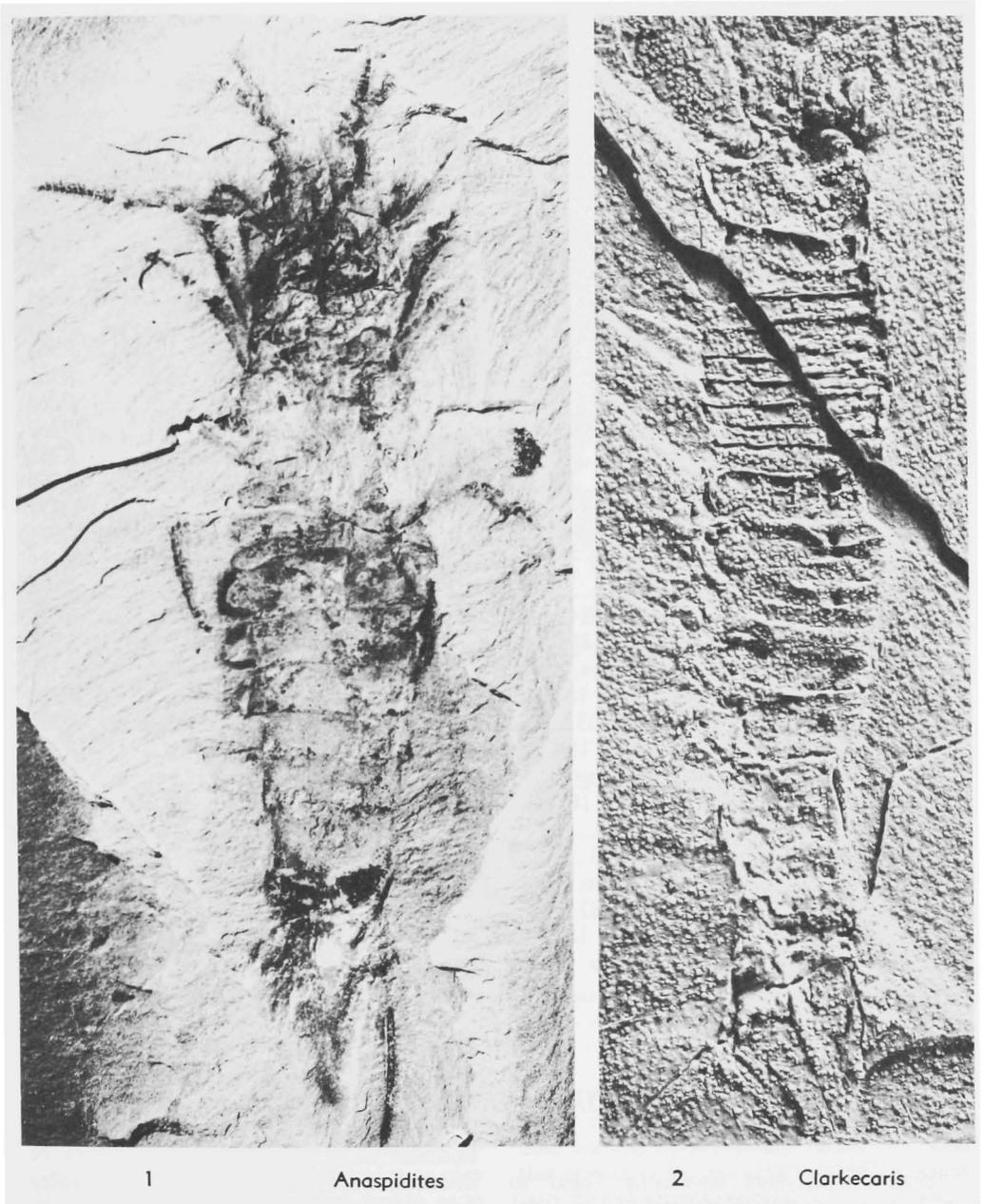


FIG. 174. Anaspidacea (Anaspididae) (1); Stygocaridacea (Clarkecarididae) (2) (p. R357-R358).

## PERACARIDA

By ROBERT R. HESSLER

[Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution] [Acknowledgments are made to Dr. EDWARD L. BOUSFIELD, National Museum of Canada, and to Dr. ERIC L. MILLS, Queen's University, Ontario, Canada, for their advice on taxonomic placement of fossil amphipods. Appreciation also is expressed to Dr. ISABELLA GORDON, British Museum (Natural History), Lon-

don, and Dr. W. D. I. ROLFE, Hunterian Museum, University of Glasgow, for their criticism of the typescript. Work for the *Treatise* has been supported partly by the National Science Foundation under grants G-10744 and GB-563. This is contribution 1445 of the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution.]

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
Superorder PERACARIDA Calman, 1904 .....	R360
Order Mysidacea Boas, 1883 .....	R363
Suborder Lophogastrida Boas, 1883 .....	R365
Suborder Mysida Boas, 1883 .....	R365
Suborder and family uncertain .....	R366
Order Thermosbaenacea Monod, 1927 .....	R366
Order Spelaeogriphacea Gordon, 1957 .....	R367
Order Cumacea Kröyer, 1846 .....	R368
Order Tanaidacea Dana, 1853 .....	R369
Suborder Monokonophora Lang, 1956 .....	R371
Suborder Dikonophora Lang, 1956 .....	R371
Suborder and family uncertain .....	R371
Order Isopoda Latreille, 1817 .....	R371
Suborder Gnathiidea Leach, 1814 .....	R373
Suborder Anthuridea Leach, 1814 .....	R373
Suborder Flabellifera G. O. Sars, 1882 .....	R373
Suborder Valvifera G. O. Sars, 1882 .....	R380
Suborder Asellota Latreille, 1803 .....	R381
Suborder Oniscoidea Latreille, 1803 .....	R381
Suborder Phreatoidea Stebbing, 1893 .....	R384
Suborder Epicaridea Latreille, 1831 .....	R386
Suborder uncertain .....	R387
Order Amphipoda Latreille, 1816 .....	R387
Suborder Gammaridea Latreille, 1803 .....	R388
Suborder Caprellidea Leach, 1814 .....	R390
Suborder Hyperidea Latreille, 1831 .....	R391
Suborder Ingolfiellidea Hansen, 1903 .....	R391
Suborder uncertain .....	R392
Order Anthracocaridacea Brooks, 1962 .....	R392
Peracarida Incertae Sedis .....	R393

## Superorder PERACARIDA

## Calman, 1904

First thoracomere invariably fused to cephalon; carapace fold (when present) never fused to all thoracomeres; protopod of antenna typically three-segmented; mandible with lacinia mobilis in all expect parasitic and other specialized forms (Fig. 175); first thoracopod modified as maxilliped; major flexure ("knee") of endopods of second to eighth thoracopods between merus and carpus; eggs and young nearly always carried in marsupium formed by medial lamellar outgrowths (oöstegites) of coxae of two

to seven pairs of thoracopods (Fig. 176); pleopods without appendix interna; young liberated from marsupium at late stage of development, not as nauplii. Hepatic caeca few and simple; heart usually elongate, extending through greater part of thorax or displaced into abdomen; spermatozoa usually threadlike. *Perm.-Rec.*

In both isopods and amphipods the coxae of the pereopods tend to be flattened and platelike, and may be quite large. These plates, called epimeres or coxal plates, are broadly joined to edges of the tergites and are the functional equivalent of pleura (lateral outfoldings of tergites), commonly fold-

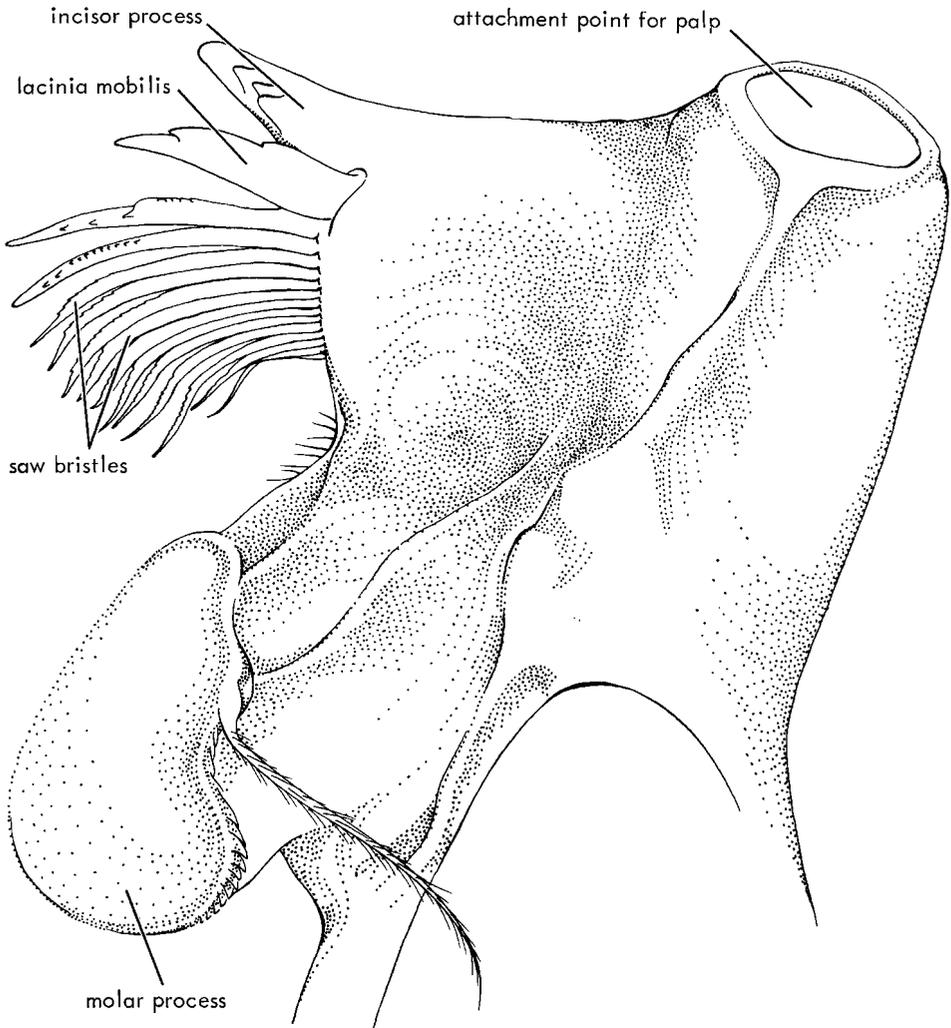


FIG. 175. Right mandible of the amphipod *Leptocheirus pinguis* (STIMPSON) (1853), dorsal view, showing the characteristic gnathic structures found in the Peracarida. The mandibular palp has been removed (Hessler, n).

ing down laterally over the basal portion of the rest of the limb (Fig. 176). The line of juncture of coxal plate and tergite may remain distinct, as in the Gammaridea or may be completely obscured through fusion, as in most Oniscoidea (GRÜNER, 1953). Epimeres are never developed on the pleon, where pleura of considerable size may occur instead.

Among many varied attempts at classifying the Malacostraca, only the few major systems having direct importance to the Peracarida are considered here.

LEACH (1815) divided the Malacostraca

into groups named Edriophthalma, having sessile eyes, and Podophthalma, with movable stalked eyes. Nearly coincident with this system is BURMEISTER'S (1834) division into Thoracostraca, having a carapace fold, and Arthrostraca, without one. Although most orders fall into either the edriophthalmid-arthrostracid or podophthalmid-thoracostracid assemblages, the living Tanaidacea, which possess a carapace and lack stalked eyes, and the equally equivocal Cumacea make such a bipartite division indefensible (1).

The Schizopoda of LATREILLE (1817), in-

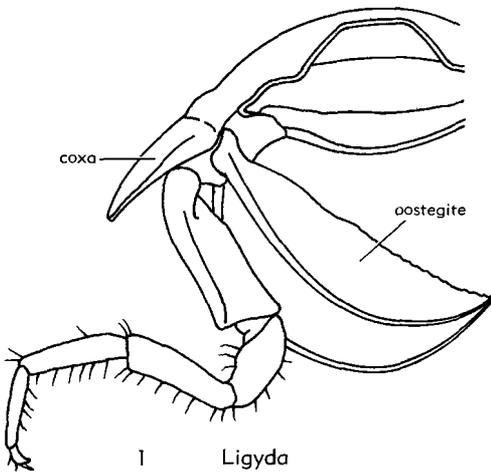


FIG. 176. Thoracic segment of *Ligyda exotica* ♀ showing one of oostegites which make up brood pouch, also illustrating how the coxa has become fused to the trunk, becoming modified as an epimeral plate, enlarged (379).

cluding the Mysidacea and Euphausiacea, is another taxonomic unit which existed for many years in good standing. BOAS (1883) pointed out the many differences between mysidaceans and euphausiids and discarded this grouping. HANSEN (1893) concurred with BOAS and united the mysidaceans with the cumaceans, tanaidaceans, isopods, and amphipods. CALMAN (1904) called this large group the Peracarida.

The Tanaidacea have had a very unsettled systematic position in the past. Early workers often included them with the amphipods, whereas G. O. SARS and other late 19th century taxonomists placed them in the isopods. CALMAN and HANSEN followed CLAUS (1888) in considering the Tanaidacea as an independent order.

The Peracarida, in addition to containing orders with highly unique morphologies, includes one group, the Mysidacea, which shares with a number of nonperacaridan orders a collection of important characters known as the caridoid facies (further noted in discussion of the mysidaceans). Unless one is willing to assume that the caridoid facies was acquired convergently, he is forced to conclude that mysidaceans are the most primitive living peracaridan group. Other primitive mysidacean features are the

presence of seven abdominal segments and a caudal furca in the embryo, large number of oostegites in lophogastrids, free telson, first maxillipeds not fused basally and not strongly differentiated from other thoracic limbs, and nature of the filter-feeding mechanism.

The Amphipoda and Isopoda, which comprise the heart of BURMEISTER'S Arthropoda, have been thought by many (e.g., REIBISCH, 1927) to be closely related, having in common sessile eyes and thoracic epimeres (see below), and lacking a carapace fold. However, CALMAN (65) and SIEWING (274) have considered these similarities to be superficial. Far more important differences in the excretory organs, respiratory and circulatory systems, modes of reproduction and development, structure of abdominal appendages, and morphology of the digestive tract indicate that these orders are the end products of two distinct lines of specialization which diverged from some mysidacean-like ancestor (Fig. 177).

The Cumacea and Tanaidacea are considered to represent intermediate grades of development in the evolution of the isopodan condition (274). Important facets of this evolution are the progressive reduction of the carapace fold, specialization of the first maxilliped (especially in relating cumaceans and tanaidaceans), and gradual loss of pereopodal exopods. SIEWING has mentioned changes in the structure of the digestive tract and shift in the respiratory organs, as well as similarity to the isopods

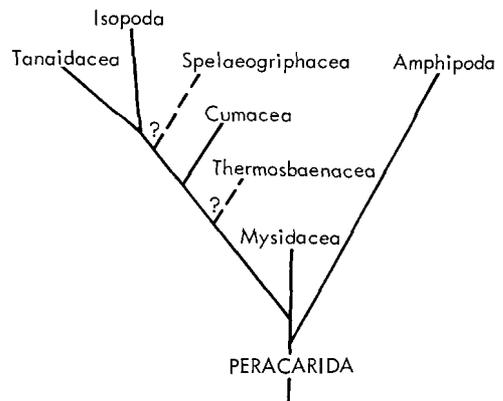


FIG. 177. Phylogeny of Recent Peracarida as interpreted by SIEWING (274) and modified by FRYER (101).

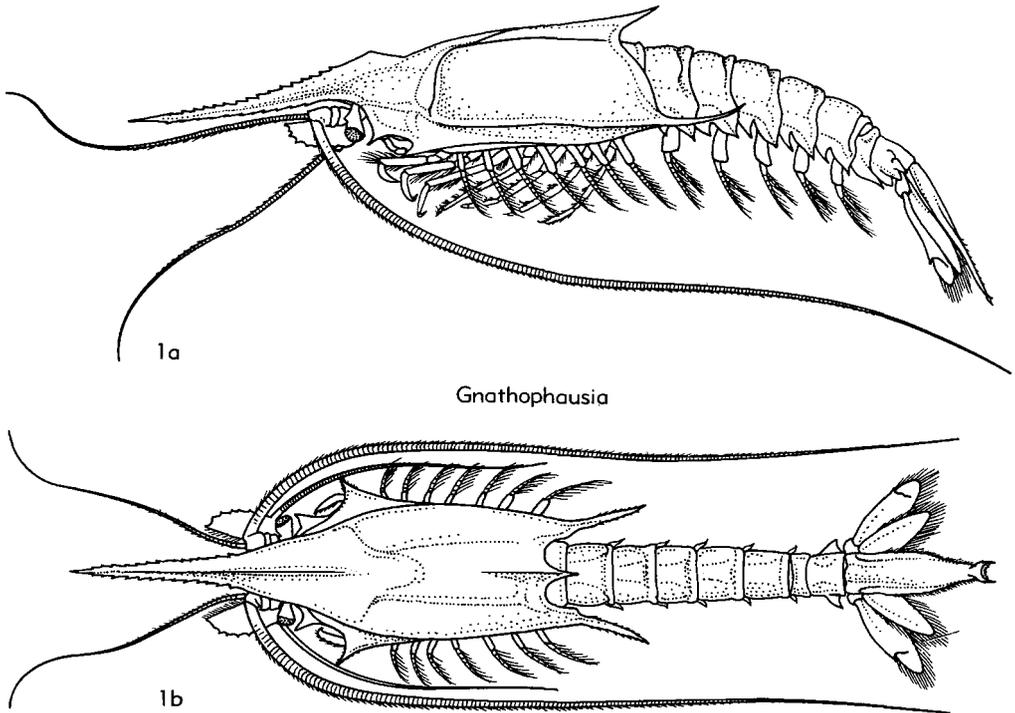


FIG. 178. Lophogastrida: *Gnathophausia calcarata* G. O. Sars; 1a,b, lateral and dorsal views,  $\times 0.8$  (377c).

in such characters as distinguish the latter group from the amphipods.

The Spelaeogriffacea is clearly a primitive order, but its exact position within the Peracarida is uncertain.

A tabulation of suprageneric divisions of the Peracarida showing their stratigraphic occurrence and numbers of genera contained in each is given on page R114.

The Thermosbaenacea, included in the Peracarida in this volume, are probably the result of an early divergence in peracaridan evolution. SIEWING has considered the order to be a closely related but independent division.

Quite different from the above scheme, in which the Peracarida is construed to be a natural phyletic unit, is GLAESSNER'S (1957) suggestion that the Tanaidacea, Isopoda, and Amphipoda are related to the early Syncarida by way of the Acanthotelsonidae, and that the Mysidacea, Cumacea, Eucarida, and Hoplocarida are all derived from the Pygocephalomorpha. The Acanthotelsonidae and

Pygocephalomorpha then would be interpreted as derived from a common Paleozoic caridoid malacostracan. As such, the Peracarida would be a diphyletic group. TIEGS & MANTON (288), BIRSHTEYN (43), and SIEWING (275) do not agree to the syncarid origin of part of the Peracarida.

### Order MYSIDACEA Boas, 1883

Exhibiting caridoid facies; carapace fold more or less enveloping thoracic region; eyes stalked, movable; antennule (first antenna) biramous; antenna (second antenna) with scalelike exopod; thoracopods bearing natatory exopods; abdomen large, elongate, ventrally flexed, terminating in tail fan formed by lamellar rami of uropods and telson; first one, two, three, or rarely four thoracomeres fused to cephalon; first one or two pairs of thoracopods modified as maxillipeds, in some forms lacking exopods, first with leaflike epipod; ramified gills at base of some or all thoracopods. Young

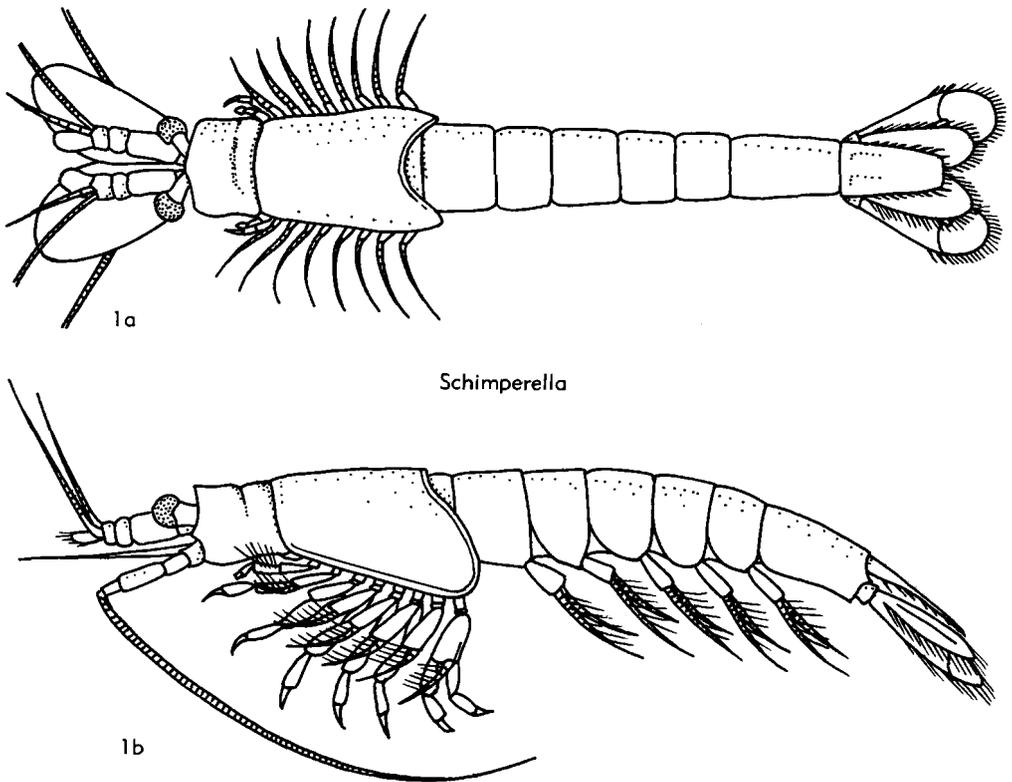


FIG. 179. Mysida: *Schimperella beneckeï* BILL; 1a,b, dorsal and lateral views,  $\times 7$  (39).

leave marsupium with full complement of limbs. *Trias.-Rec.*

Among peracarids, the Mysidacea can be recognized at a glance because they possess the caridoid facies, but it is sometimes more difficult to distinguish members of this order from nonperacaridan forms (e.g., Euphausiacea, and lower Decapoda) which also exhibit the caridoid facies. This is particularly true of fossils in which diagnostic peracaridan traits usually are not preserved.

A number of Paleozoic genera have been included in the Mysidacea (299) in the past, some (e.g., *Pygocephalus*, *Tealliocaris*, *Crangopsis*) because of the presence of oöstegites. Brooks (55) has pointed out that all of these genera differ from any of the Recent eumalacostracan superorders in having an unsegmented sympod and caudal furca on which account he has included them in a new division named Eocarida.

Accepting this classification, at the present time no mysidaceans are known from the Paleozoic.

Of the two mysidacean suborders, the Lophogastrida are considered to be the more primitive in that all have seven pairs of oöstegites, well-developed unspecialized pleopods, and no uropodal statocysts. The Lophogastridae are especially primitive in that some show indications of a seventh abdominal segment (Fig. 178) and in having (*Gnathophausia*) a two-jointed maxillary palp, which is reflected into the branchial cavity.

Mysidaceans are found primarily in marine environments, but some species are markedly euryhaline, and a few live in fresh water. As a whole, the group is essentially pelagic, although commonly epibenthic. Species which exhibit vertical migration may be found on the bottom or even burrowed into it during the daytime.

Both carnivorous and detritus-feeding habits are characteristic. The detritus-feeders may filter fine particles from the water or pick up larger bits from the bottom.

The Mysidacea, including both suborders Lophogastrida and Mysida, are a very cosmopolitan assemblage.

**Suborder LOPHOGASTRIDA**  
**Boas, 1883**

Ramified branchiae well developed on second to seventh thoracopods but rudimentary or absent on eighth; seven pairs of oöstegites; pleopods biramous, natatory, well developed in both sexes, may be slightly modified in males. No statocyst in endopod of uropods (Fig. 178). *Rec.*

**Suborder MYSIDA Boas, 1883**

Thoracopods lacking branchiae; usually two or three pairs of oöstegites present, rarely seven pairs; pleopods usually rudimentary in females, biramous and natatory in some males but more commonly with one or more pairs modified as accessory copulatory organs; uropodal endopod usually with statocyst. *Trias.-Rec.*

**Family UNCERTAIN**

**Schimperella** BILL, 1914, p. 310 [*\*S. beneckeii*; SD HESSLER, herein]. No obvious rostrum; carapace fold extended posteriorly to cover most of last pereionite, rounded posterolaterally, only moderately emarginate posteriorly; eyes well developed. Antennule with distal end of last peduncular segment modified in males; scaphocerites of antennae very large, broad; pereopods normal, more or less similar where known. Abdomen without evident pleura; telson elongate, truncate, entire; pleopods large, subequal, natatory, apparently unmodified. Uropodal rami broadly rounded posteriorly; exopod with transverse suture; no apparent statocyst. *Trias., Eu.*(Alsace).—FIG. 179, 1. *\*S. beneckeii*; 1a, b, dorsal, lat. views (reconstr.),  $\times 7$  (39).

[*Schimperella* is tentatively placed in the suborder Mysida on the basis of its general body form, especially that of the carapace, and the presence of an *appendix masculina* on the first antenna. The well-developed, unmodified pleopods and pereopods and the absence of a statocyst in the uropods suggest that this genus may be relatively primitive. It differs from some of the Lophogastridae in that no suture subdivides the last pleonite indicates fusion of the 6th and 7th abdominal somites.]

**Francocaris** BROILI, 1917, p. 429 [*\*F. grimmi*; OD]. Cephalon strongly produced anteriorly into long

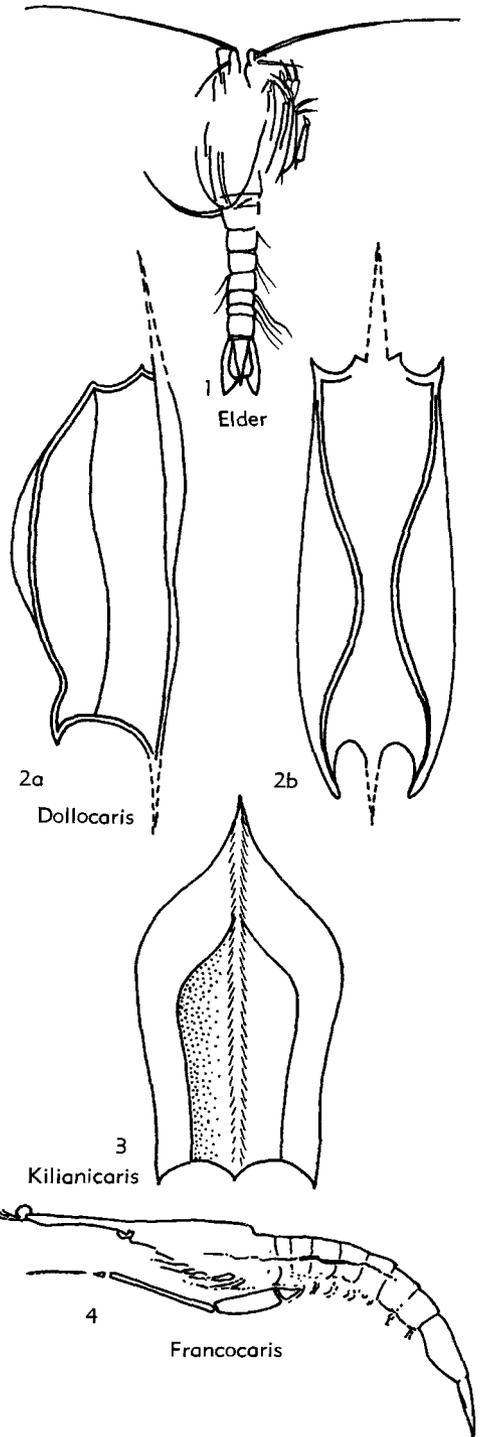


FIG. 180. Mysidacea, Family Uncertain (4), Suborder and Family Uncertain (1-3) (p. R365-R366).

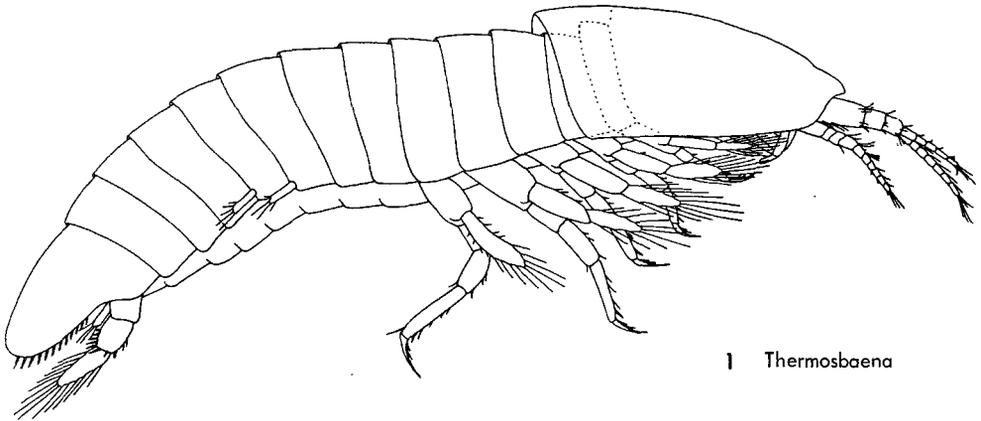


FIG. 181. *Thermosbaena mirabilis* MONOD, adult female, lateral view,  $\times 30$  (347).

slender process with eyes at anterior end; carapace not strongly sclerotized; 8th thoracopods extremely long, with large basal segment. [BROILLI placed *Francocaris* among the Mysidacea because its carapace appears to be fused only to the anterior thoracic segments.] *U.Jur.*, Eu.(Ger.).—FIG. 180,4. \**F. grimmi*; lat.,  $\times 1.4$  (346a).

### Suborder and Family UNCERTAIN

*Dollocaris* VAN STRAELEN, 1923, p. 432 [\**D. ingens*; OD]. Carapace with weak marginal furrow; dorso-medial carina running from posteromedial spine forward onto long rostrum; marked lateral carina halfway between dorsal mid-line and lateral edge, running length of carapace; posterolateral spines present. *U.Jur.*, Eu.(Fr.).—FIG. 180,2. \**D. ingens*; 2a,b, carapace; lat., dorsal,  $\times 0.6$  (383).

Elder MÜNSTER, 1839, p. 77 [\**E. unguatus*; SD OPPEL, 1862] [=Saga MÜNSTER, 1839]. Cephalothorax of relatively delicate composition, rarely preserved in fossils where all other parts are in the proper relationship to each other; flagellum of antennae as long as body, much longer than those of antennules; pereopods with distinct distal claw. *U.Jur.*, Eu.(Ger.).—FIG. 180,1. \**E. unguatus*; dorsal,  $\times 0.8$  (369).

*Kilianicaris* VAN STRAELEN, 1923, p. 434 [\**K. lerichei*; OD]. Carapace angular, subquadrate posteriorly, with strong dorso-medial and weak lateral carinae; rostrum broad; posteromedial and posterolateral spines weakly produced. *U.Jur.*, Eu.(Fr.).—FIG. 180,3. \**K. lerichei*; carapace, lat.,  $\times 1.1$  (383).

[VAN STRAELEN (383) put *Dollocaris* and *Kilianicaris* in a new family, the Dollocaridae, which he placed near the Lophogastridae, but which differ in lack of a cervical furrow, in general form of the carapace, and in position of the carinae. *Dollocaris* and *Kilianicaris* are based on the carapace alone. Although in both this structure is much like that of *Gnathophausia*, not enough is known of these two fossil genera to demonstrate that they are definitely mysidaceans (287).]

## Order THERMOSBAENACEA Monod, 1927

No oöstegites; instead eggs and embryos carried in dorsal brood pouch formed by shell fold. Maxilliped with two protopodal endites, most distal of which is very large, quadrate; epipod leaflike; slender exopod usually present in both sexes; slender endopod found in males of some species and female of one. Shell fold fused to first thoracomere, small, covering no more than next two somites. Eyes rudimentary or absent. Antennule biramous; antenna lacking exopod. Pereiopods with exopods. Pleopods on first two pleonites only. Uropod biramous, flattened. Young leave brood pouch before pereiopods 6 and 7 have developed. *Rec.*

STELLA (1953) and TARAMELLI (1954) placed the Thermosbaenacea between the Peracarida and Syncarida. SIEWING (272) noted the close relationship to the Peracarida, but concluded that the unique mode of brooding young and the different form of the maxilliped were of sufficient importance to warrant placing thermosbaenaceans in a separate, new division, the Pancarida. Subsequently, GORDON (1958), BARKER (14), and FRYER (101) have minimized the importance of these differences and have followed MONOD's original designation.

Thermosbaenaceans have been recorded from thermal springs, fresh and brackish subterranean lakes, and brackish coastal

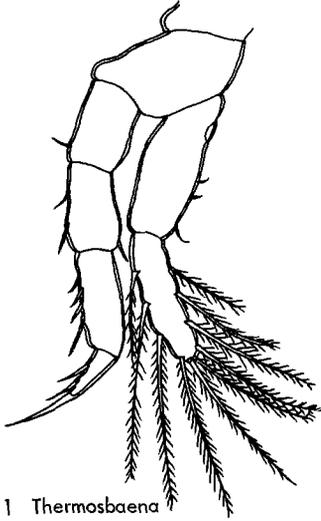
1 *Thermosbaena*

FIG. 182. Third pereopod of *Thermosbaena mirabilis* MONOD,  $\times 90$  (206).

ground water. KARAMAN (163) and others consider the ancestors of this group to have been marine, thermosbaenaceans having invaded continental environments through the intermediate marine or brackish coastal ground water.

#### Family THERMOSBAENIDAE Monod, 1927

Characters of order. *Rec.*

**Thermosbaena** MONOD, 1924, p. 58 [*\*T. mirabilis*; OD]. Body short and stocky; pereopods absent from last 2 pereonites; endopod of uropod reduced; telson fused to pleonite 6. *Rec.*, N.Afr.—FIG. 181, 1; 182, 1. *\*T. mirabilis*, Tunisia; 181, 1, adult female, lat.,  $\times 30$  (347); 182, 1, 3rd pereopod,  $\times 90$  (206).

**Monodella** RUFFO, 1949, p. 45 [*\*M. stygicola*; OD]. Body slender, elongate; pereopods on all pereonites; uropod with well-developed endopod; telson free. *Rec.*, USA (Tex.)-Italy-Yugosl.-Israel.—FIG. 183, 1. *M. halophila* KARAMAN, Yugosl.; maxilliped of male,  $\times 90$  (163).

#### Order SPELAEGRIPHACEA Gordon, 1957

Body elongate, subcylindrical; carapace short, fused dorsally to first thoracic somite, covering most of second to form lateral branchial cavities; trunk segments other

than first thoracomere free, including telson; pleon long; ocular lobe movable, but without visual elements. Antennules biramous; antennae with small exopodal scaphocerite and four-jointed peduncle; mandible with unjointed palp; maxilliped having large cup-like branchial epipod located in branchial chamber; thoracopods two to four with two-segmented natatory exopods, next three (in some forms four) pairs with unjointed branchial exopods; first four pleopods well developed, biramous, natatory, fifth pleopods vestigial; uropods biramous, flattened. *Rec.*

This order is known only from a cave at Table Mountain, South Africa, where its single known species was found in a freshwater pool. Because *Spelaeogriphus* possesses a lacinia mobilis and oostegites GORDON (121) included it in the Peracarida. Nevertheless, some of its features (e.g., large number of exopods, some respiratory) are reminiscent of the Syncarida. Although almost all characters of *Spelaeogriphus* are found in other peracaridan orders, in combination they are unique; the small carapace fold fused to a single thoracomere, the well-developed abdomen bearing large, natatory pleopods, and the movable ocular lobes are among the most important of these (Fig. 184). GORDON (1960) has placed *Spelae-*

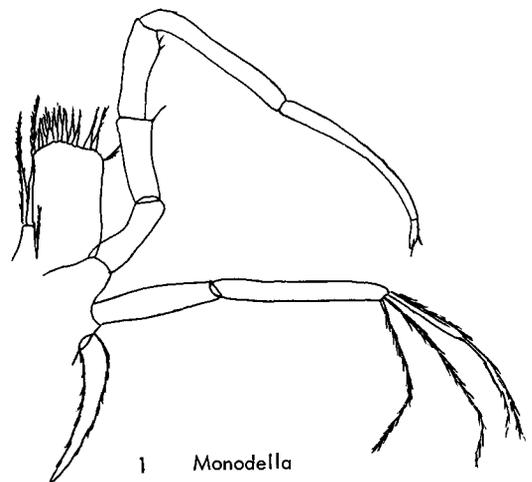
1 *Monodella*

FIG. 183. *Monodella halophila* KARAMAN, maxilliped of adult male,  $\times 90$  (163).

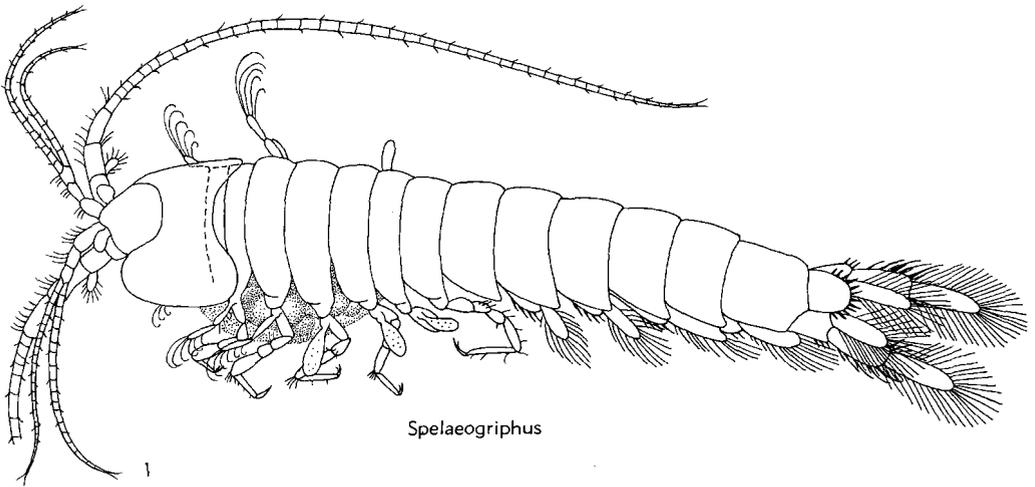


FIG. 184. *Spelaeogriphus lepidops* GORDON; dorsolateral view of adult female carrying eggs,  $\times 7.5$  (358).

*ogriphus* closest to the Tanaidacea, mainly because of its small carapace, two-jointed antennal protopod, and the cuplike branchial epipod of the maxillipeds.

### Order CUMACEA Kröyer, 1846

[=Symphoda STEBBING, 1900]

Carapace fold fused to at least three thoracomeres, in some to four, and very rarely to as many as six thoracomeres thus forming lateral branchial chambers which contain branchial epipodite of first maxilliped; anterolateral portions produced anteriorly, usually meeting in front of cephalon to form pseudorostrum. Eyes (when present) nearly always forming unpaired dorso-medial organ; antennules may be biramous; antennae lacking exopod; first three thoracopods modified as maxillipeds; natatory exopods may be present on thoracopods 3 to 7; pleon slender, long, usually defined distinctly from bulkier unit formed by cephalon and thorax; pleopods absent on female, present in varying numbers on male; uropods large, styliform; telson may or may not be fused to last pleomere. *U.Perm.-Rec.*

Cumaceans are easily recognized by the long, slim, subcylindrical pleon which is usually strongly differentiated from the broad, commonly inflated pereion and cephalon. The shape of the anterior end of the cephalon is also distinctive (Fig. 185). The

sessile eyes usually form an unpaired dorsal visual organ situated between the rostrum and pseudorostrum; this probably results from a dorsomedial migration of the originally lateral eyes in response to development of the pseudorostrum. Also contributing to the characteristic shape are the large, obvious uropods, each with its long, slender peduncle. Cumaceans are rarely more than 3.5 cm. long.

The inflated form of the carapace is mostly a result of the large, lateral branchial chambers. These serve respiration in being lined with a respiratory epithelium, and far more importantly, in housing a large branchial epipod of the maxillule. This epipod is subdivided into a complicated, posteriorly directed gill and an anteriorly directed exhalant siphon. The latter projects forward under the pseudorostral lobe and forms the siphonal apparatus, either in conjunction with this lobe or independently.

The Cumacea are dominantly marine, but some brackish and fresh-water forms exist. Although cumaceans, particularly reproductive males, can swim, they spend most of their time buried in the substrate. Many species are selective as to grain size of particles comprising this substratum. Cumaceans occur from intertidal to abyssal depths, and many species are quite eurybathic. For the most part, cumaceans are selective deposit-feeders.

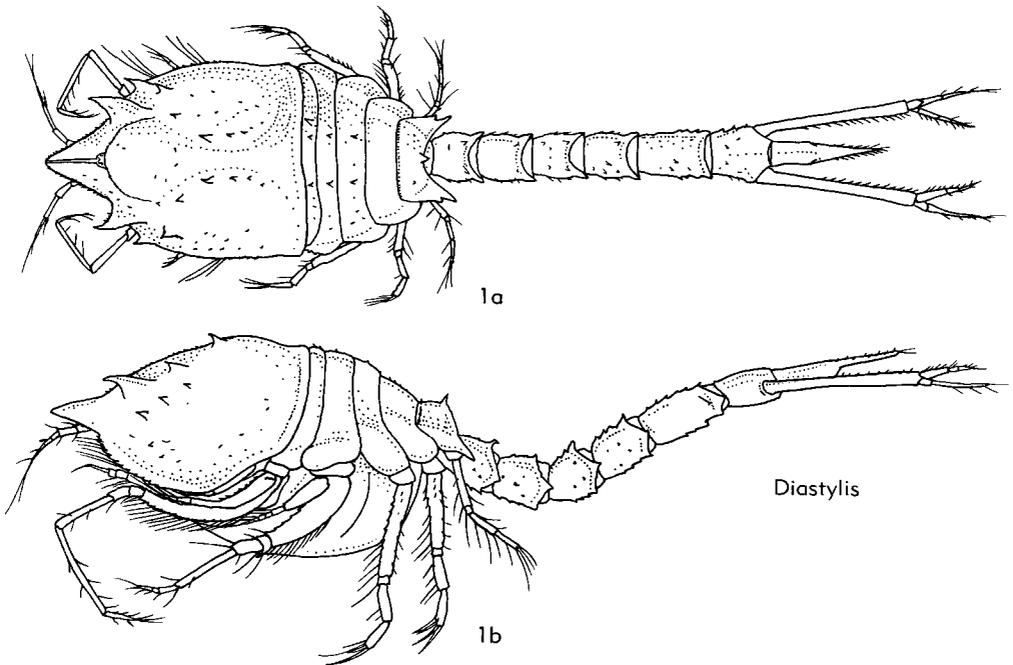


FIG. 185. *Diastylis cornuta* (BOECK, 1863), Rec.; 1a,b, adult female, dorsal, lateral views,  $\times 7.5$  (377d).

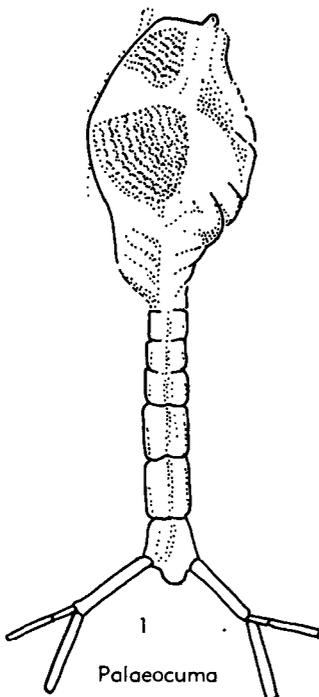


FIG. 186. Cumacea, Family Uncertain (p. R369).

ZIMMER (338) has divided the Cumacea into seven families, which, according to JONES (1960), contain 78 genera and about 645 species.

MALZAHN (personal communication; also see ROLFE, this volume, p. R313) has found cumacean remains in Upper Permian beds of Germany.

#### Family UNCERTAIN

*Palaeocuma* BACHMAYER, 1960, p. 422 [*\*P. hessi*; OD]. Telson small; cephalothorax egg-shaped, somewhat truncate anteriorly; pleonites 1 to 5 cylindrical, with strong dorsomedial keel; pleon only slightly longer than cephalothorax; exopod of uropods weaker, somewhat shorter than endopod. *M. Jur.*, Eu. (Fr.).—FIG. 186, 1. *\*P. hessi*; dorsal,  $\times 2.5$  (9).

#### Order TANAIDACEA Dana, 1853

[=Chelifera G. O. SARS, 1882; Anisopoda CLAUD, 1888]

Carapace fold short, covering first two thoracomeres to which it is fused dorsally, forming small lateral branchial cavities; body generally subcylindrical or tapering evenly posteriorly; pleon short; telson fused

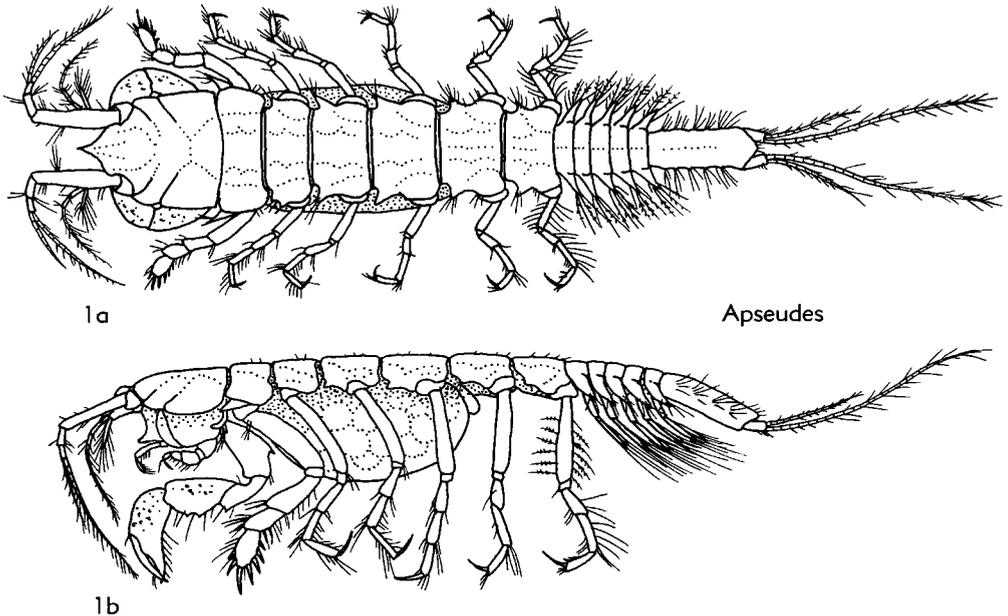


FIG. 187. Monokonophora: *Aapseudes spinosus* (M. Sars); 1a,b, dorsal and lateral views,  $\times 10$  (261b).

to sixth pleonite; eyes (when present) set on short immovable lobes (except in *Ophthalmapseudes*). First thoracopods modified as maxillipeds having branchial epipodite; second thoracopods chelate, usually enlarged; vestigial exopods present in some forms on second and third thoracopods of adults; more posterior thoracopods with or without exopod in manca-stage larvae; pleopods usually present, biramous; uropods small, slender. *Perm.-Rec.*

The cylindrical or somewhat depressed body is generally slender and long. The pleon is commonly quite abbreviated, although its individual segments are almost never fused together. In the Monokonophora the body gradually narrows posteriorly, whereas in the Dikonophora it is common for body width hardly to vary. This body shape, in combination with the tagmosis and usually enlarged chelipeds, gives the tanaidaceans an appearance which is difficult to mistake. Tanaidaceans are small, rarely attaining a length of 2.5 cm.

In many differences between the two suborders, the Dikonophora consistently prove to be more degenerate than the Monokonophora.

Both antennules and antennae are biramous in the latter but uniramous in the former. In the Dikonophora a mandibular palp is lacking, the maxillules bear only a single endite and the maxillae are rudimentary. Indeed, in males of many Dikonophora most of the mouth parts are vestigial or absent. The monokonophoran maxillipeds bear a much larger, more complicated branchial epipodite. In the Dikonophora the coxae and even the bases of the maxillipeds tend to fuse. Small exopods may be present on some thoracopods of monokonophorans, but are always absent in the Dikonophora. The marsupium of the Tanaidae (Dikonophora) is formed by only a single pair of oostegites. Finally, the uropodal rami tend to be shorter in the Dikonophora, and the exopod may even be absent. SIEWING (1954) has compared the internal anatomy of Aapseudidae (Monokonophora) and Paratanaidae (Dikonophora) and has found the latter to be reduced in a number of respects.

Tanaidaceans live almost exclusively in marine or brackish waters, from littoral to hadal depths (more than 6,000 m.). They are benthic organisms and burrow in mud,

crawl in rock crevasses, or live among plant or animal colonies. Some secrete a filamentous, feltlike mass in which they live; others build tubes. Walking is the predominant form of locomotion; a few also swim, but very poorly.

Both suborders of the Tanaidacea are very widespread, cosmopolitan crustacean groups.

### Suborder MONOKONOPHORA

Lang, 1956

Antennules with two flagella; mandibles with palp; maxillules with two endites; marsupium formed by four pairs of oöstegites; males with one genital cone (Fig. 187). *Perm.-Rec.*

#### Family UNCERTAIN

*Ophthalmapseudes* GLAESSNER, in GLAESSNER & MALZAHN, 1962, p. 259 [\*Decapoda cf. *Macrura rhenana* MALZAHN, 1957; OD]. General aspect of carapace and abdomen as in Apsseudidae (Fig. 187); eyes on elongate, apparently movable stalks. *U.Perm.-M.Jur.*, Eu.(Ger.).—FIG. 188, 1. \**O. rhenanus* (MALZAHN); 1a, b, cephalic shield (reconstr.), lat., dorsal, showing eyestalks,  $\times 30$  (186).

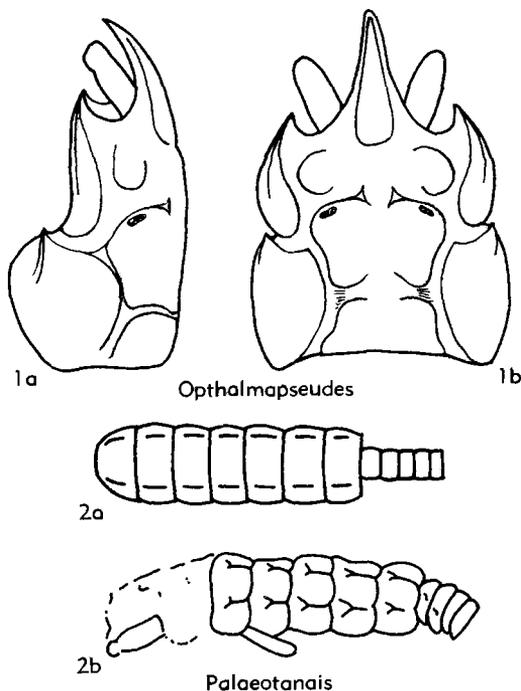


FIG. 188. Tanaidacea: Monokonophora, Family Uncertain (1); Suborder and Family Uncertain (2) (p. R371).

### Suborder DIKONOPHORA Lang, 1956

Antennules with single flagellum; mandibles without palp; marsupium formed by one or four pairs of oöstegites; males with two genital cones (Fig. 189). *Rec.*

### Suborder and Family UNCERTAIN

*Palaeotanais* REIFF, 1936, p. 86 [\**P. quenstedti*; OD]. Pereonites well vaulted, each with pair of dorsolateral furrows; basis of third thoracopods long, broad; pleonites narrower, not vaulted, each pointed posterolaterally. *L.Jur.*, Eu.(Ger.).—FIG. 188, 2. \**P. quenstedti*; holotype, 2a, dorsal, as figured by QUENSTEDT,  $\times 5$  (374); 2b, same fossil, dorsal, refigured by REIFF,  $\times 5$  (375).

[REIFF (375) has commented that the single known specimen is less complete than when QUENSTEDT (374) first figured it. The fossil originally consisted of seven large somites, of which the first was rounded off anteriorly, and four small posterior somites, the posterior end being missing. Assuming the first somite to be the cephalon, REIFF concluded that the fossil was most similar to tanaidaceans because of identical tagmosis, similar size and body form, and similar morphology of sole remnant limb fragment.]

*Charassocarcinus* (see p. R532 and p. R628).

### Order ISOPODA Latreille, 1817

First thoracomere fused to cephalon, and rarely second as well; no distinct carapace fold; body most commonly somewhat depressed; pleon short, in many with segments fused; telson nearly always fused with last pleonite; eyes sessile, not stalked. Antennules usually uniramous; antennae nearly always lacking exopod; pereopods without exopods, coxae always short; first thoracopods modified as maxilliped with epipod (when present) not enclosed in branchial chamber; second thoracopods rarely also modified as mouth parts; pleopods biramous, specialized for respiration; heart located in pleon. [Young leave marsupium before appearance of last pair of thoracopods (manca stage).] *Trias.-Rec.*

Many different body shapes are found in this order. Most commonly isopods are somewhat depressed, as in the Oniscoidea (Fig. 202) or Flabellifera (Fig. 192). This

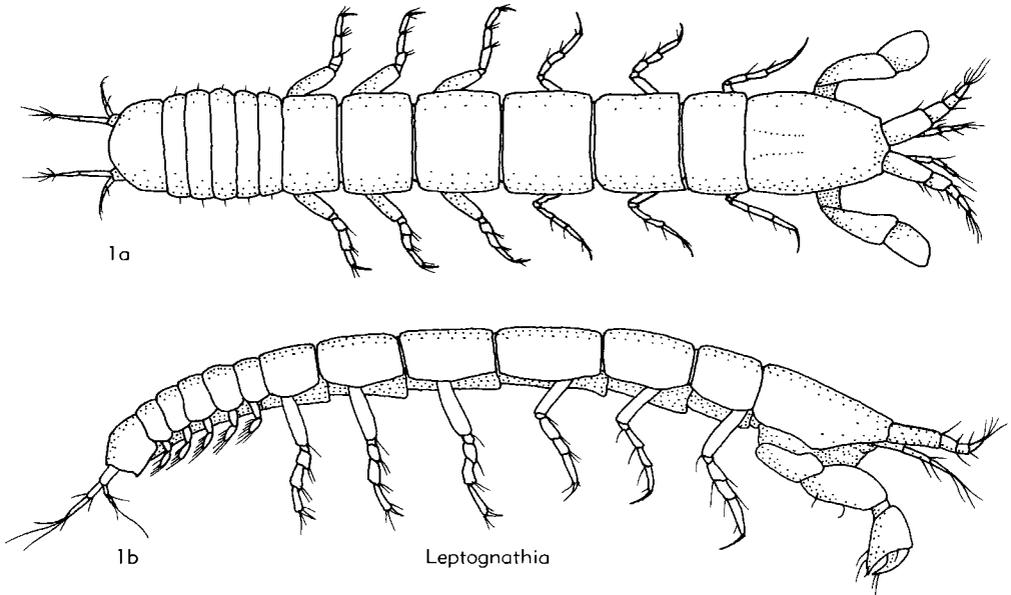


FIG. 189. Dikonophora: *Leptognathia longiremis* (LILLJEBORG); 1a, b, dorsal and lateral views,  $\times 30$  (261b).

form is carried to the extreme in the Serolidae (Fig. 197). Some of the Phreatoicoidea (Fig. 203) exhibit the opposite pattern, appearing to be compressed laterally and are remarkably similar to the gammaridean amphipods. Many of the Asellota are cylindrical, as are the Anthuridea (Fig. 191) and Arcturidae (Valvifera). The latter two groups are, in addition, conspicuously elongate, this being achieved in the arcturids by lengthening of but a single segment.

As pointed out by ZIMMER (337), the name Isopoda is somewhat of a misnomer. Except in the Epicaridea, which are truly isopodous, pereopods one to three are directed anteriorly and pereopods five to seven point posteriorly, whereas the fourth pereopod commonly occupies an intermediate position. This is true even in the Oniscoidea, Limnoriidae (Flabellifera), and Gnathiidea, where the limbs are otherwise essentially alike.

More commonly the pereopods are specialized in blocks. A frequent pattern is one in which the posteriorly turned limbs are significantly longer than others and are "ambulatory" in form as in the Aegidae (Flabellifera). In many groups the first three pereopods are hooked or subchelate; the Anthuridea and many Idotheidae are

examples of this. In the Phreatoicoidea and many Asellota only the first pereopod is subchelate. The most extreme pereopodal specialization is seen in the Munnopsidae (Asellota). Here the first two pereopods are short and slender, the second two are thin and extremely elongate, while the last three are short paddles.

Because of the primarily respiratory function of all or part of a number of the pleopods, a variety of different adaptations serves to protect these delicate structures. For example, in many Cymothoidae the exopod of each pleopod protects the respiratory endopod. The first pleopods of some Anthuridea fold back over the rest. In female Paraselloidea (Asellota) the second pleopods form an unpaired operculum covering a ventral chamber in which the other pleopods lie. In the Valvifera the uropods are modified to form a pair of laterally hinged ventral plates which cover the ventral surface of the pleon. In addition to this respiratory or protective function, pleopods may also serve in locomotion or be modified for copulation.

The uropods may vary in form from valvelike opercula described above to relatively simple caudal processes, as found in the Asellota or Oniscoidea. A fanlike form,

such as that of the caridoid facies, appears in many Flabellifera and in the Gnathiidae.

The order Isopoda is the largest of the peracaridan orders. The majority of species are marine where they are found at all depths. Nevertheless they are well represented on land, primarily by the large suborder Oniscoidea. Members of the Asellota, Valvifera, Flabellifera, Anthuridea, and all of the Phreatoicoidea (except for a few terrestrial forms) may be found in fresh water and may even occur in interstitial and subterranean environments.

The feeding types found among the isopods are equally diverse. Most are detritus-feeders. Some are herbivorous, including wood-eaters, and yet others are carnivores, ranging in degree from predators to highly specialized parasites. Most of the nonparasitic isopods are primarily benthic.

Isopods are almost ubiquitous crustaceans, for each of the suborders can be classed as cosmopolitan, with qualification that living Phreatoicoidea now are known only from New Zealand, Australia, northern India, and South Africa.

### Suborder GNATHIIDEA Leach, 1814

Second thoracomere fused to cephalon and its appendage modified to act as mouth part; eighth thoracomere and its appendage absent; as result, only five free thoracomeres and the same number of pereopods occur; peduncles of antennae consisting of four segments; pleonites not fused; uropods flattened, biramous, forming caudal fan in conjunction with pleotelson. Extraordinary sexual dimorphism and extensive metamorphosis; larvae parasitic and provided with suckorial mouth parts; those of adult male reduced to large, anteriorly protruding, pincer-like mandibles and modified maxillipeds, while in adult female only maxillipeds remain (Fig. 190). *Rec.*

### Suborder ANTHURIDEA Leach, 1814

Body slender, elongate. Some forms with anterior pleonites fused but last somite never

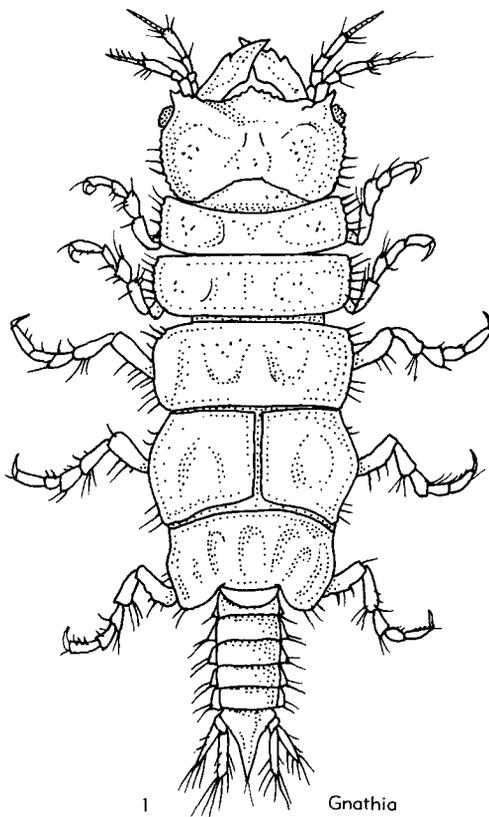


FIG. 190. Gnathiidea: *Gnathia elongata* (KRÖYER); ♂, dorsal view,  $\times 18$  (261b).

fused to telson; peduncle of antenna with five segments; mouth parts suckorial in some forms; second, third, fourth thoracopods subchelate, second being enlarged; pleopods branchial, first long, somewhat opercular; uropods broad, flat, biramous, with exopod arching over telson (Fig. 191). *Rec.*

### Suborder FLABELLIFERA G. O. Sars, 1882

Body more or less depressed; pleonites free or fused. Peduncle of antennae with five or six joints; mouth parts normal or suckorial; mandibles usually with reduced or modified molar process; coxae of pereopods developed as epimeres, in many forms partly or completely fused to thoracomeres;

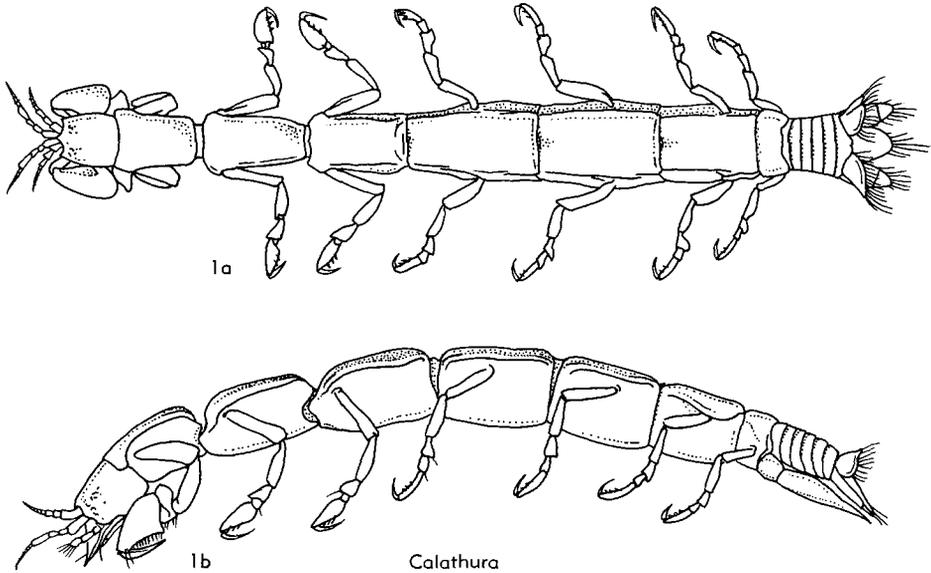


FIG. 191. Anthuridea: *Calathura norvegica* (G. O. Sars); 1a,b, dorsal and lateral views of female,  $\times 9$  (261b).

uropods biramous, usually flattened and forming caudal fan in conjunction with pleotelson. *Trias.-Rec.*

#### Family CIROLANIDAE Hansen, 1890

Body ovoid; subsemicircular in cross section; labrum large; eyes usually small. Antennules and antennae unequal in length, with well-defined peduncles and flagella; mandibles with large lacinia mobilis; maxillipeds and both pairs of maxillae well developed, palp of former without hooks; well-developed epimeres defined on all pereonites except first; pereopods 1 to 3 prehensile, 4 to 7 ambulatory; all six pleonites distinct from each other, but last one fused to telson; biramous uropods lateral, forming caudal fan with flattened pleotelson. Free-living. ?*Mio., Rec.*

**Bathynomus** MILNE-EDWARDS, 1879, p. 21 [*\*B. giganteus*; OD]. Peduncle of antenna with 5 joints; rudimentary scaphocerite attached to distal end of peduncle of antennule; maxilliped with hooks on endite of basis; all 6 pleonites distinct; pleopods with accessory branchial rami on endopods. [IMAIZUMI (1953) has placed a fragmentary pleon from the Miocene of Japan in this genus and has claimed that specimens included in

*Palaega* WOODWARD (1870) more properly belong here.] ?*Mio., Rec.*, Carib.-Gulf Mex.-Indian O.-W. Pac.—FIG. 192, 1. *\*B. giganteus*; 1a,b, dorsal, lat.,  $\times 0.6$  (368).

#### Family SPHAEROMIDAE White, 1847

Body ovoid, well vaulted, capable of partial or complete enrollment. Antennules and antennae multiarticulate, clearly divided into peduncle and flagellum; mandibles with palp; epimeres firmly fixed to all pereonites, defined by furrow on all but first; pleon biarticulate, composed of large pleotelson and smaller anterior unit which is product of at least two fused pleonites; uropods lateral; endopod fused to protopod; exopod absent in some forms. *Trias.-Rec.*

The relationships between the modern genera of the Sphaeromidae are extremely subtle and difficult to interpret (142). This is in part a result of extensive sexual dimorphism. As usual in Recent groups, much of the systematics is based on structures seldom preserved in fossils. For all of these reasons the reference of fossil forms to Recent genera (e.g. *Sphaeroma*, *Cymodoce*) should be suspected and considered only tentative.

Group SPHAEROMIDAE  
HEMIBRANCHIATAE Hansen, 1905

Body never strongly depressed; ability to enroll well developed; lateral margin of pereion not continuous. Proximal portion of antennae never protruding with free expansions in front of cephalon, fitted into oblique excavations. Pleopods 4 and 5

with thick fleshy endopods having deep transverse folds; exopods submembranous, rather pellucid, with two segments; neither ramus with plumose marginal setae; exopod of fifth pleopod with subapical squamiferous protuberance of lower surface very high; pleopod three with both rami having long closely set plumose setae, at least on distal

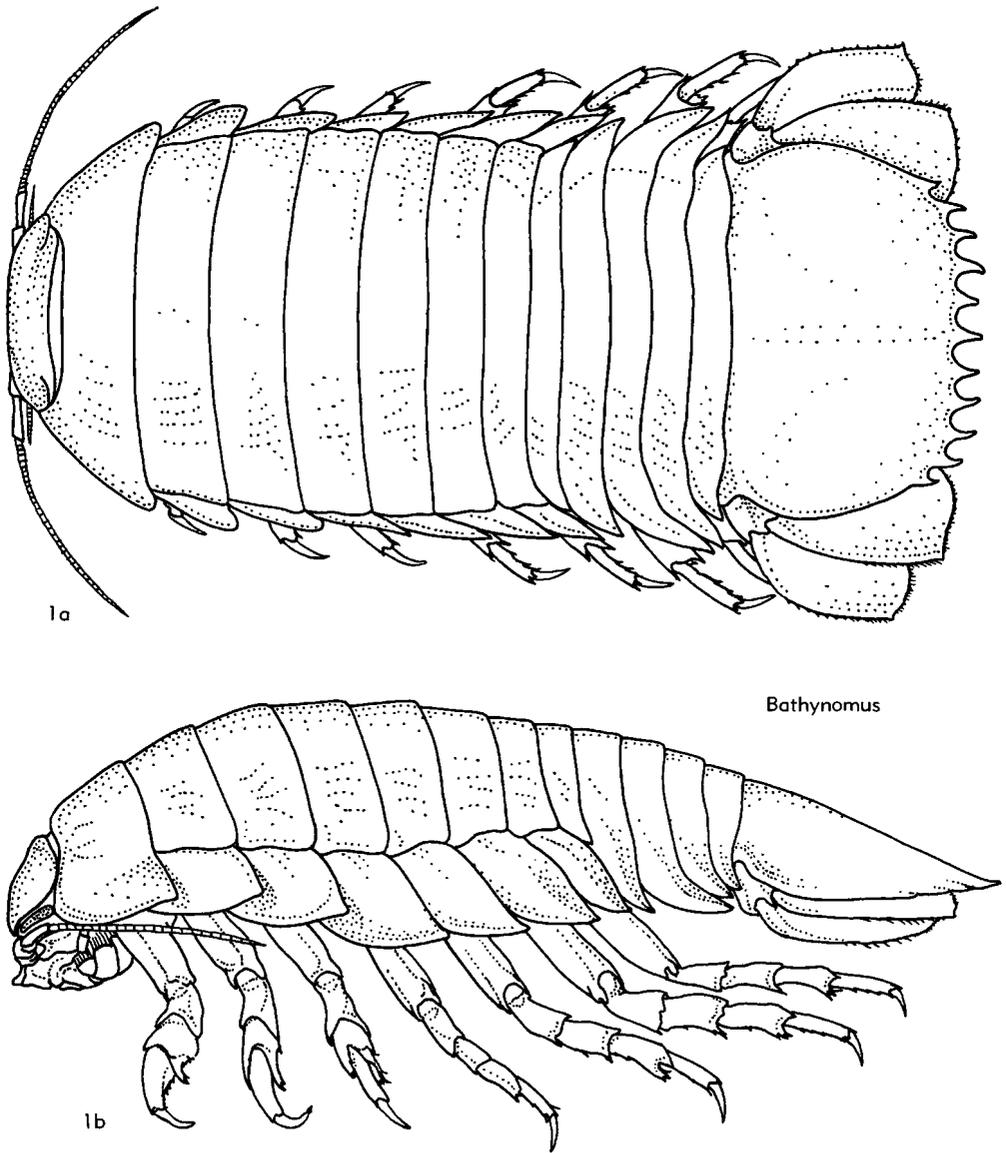


FIG. 192. Flabellifera, Cirolanidae: *Bathynomus giganteus* MILNE-EDWARDS; 1a,b, ♂ dorsal and lateral views,  $\times 0.5$  (368).

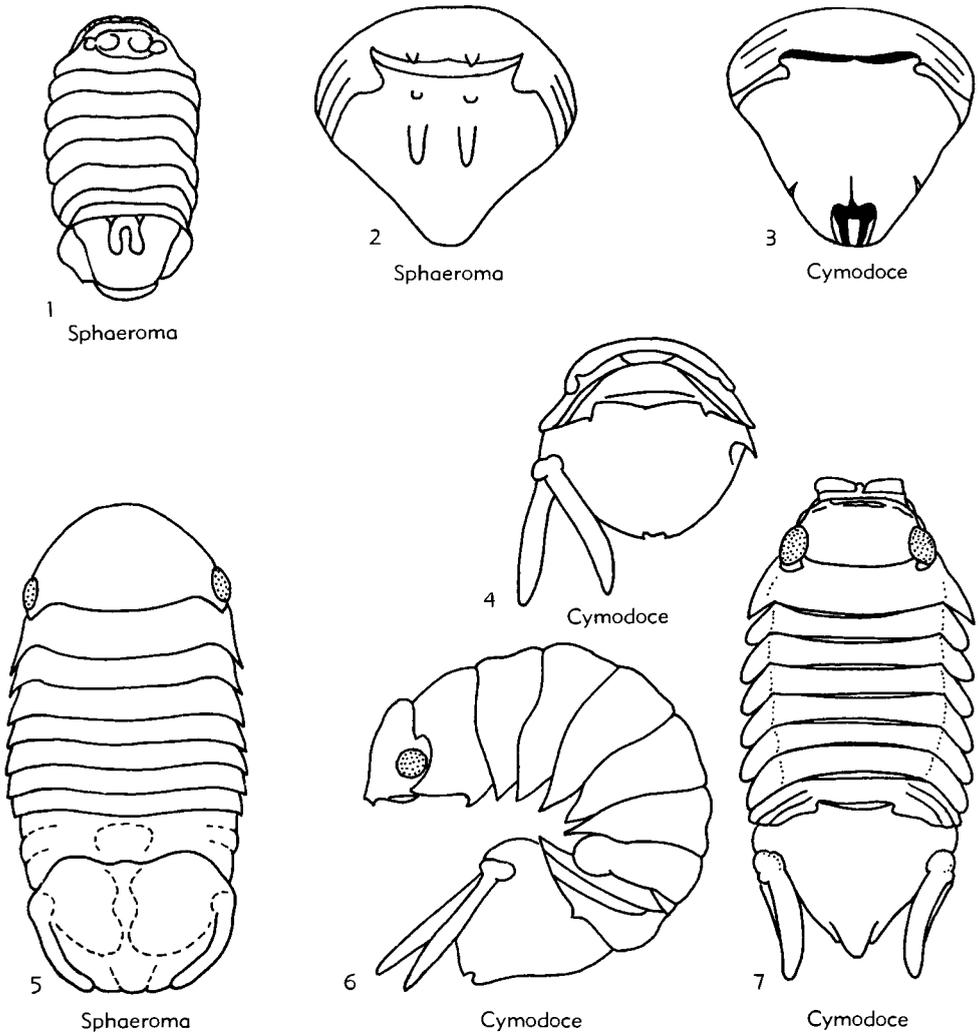


FIG. 193. Flabellifera, Sphaeromidae (p. R376-R377).

margin; pleopod one with rather broad endopod (scarcely ever 1.5 times longer than wide); uropods always with exopods, which may be exceedingly small. Brood develops in ventral pockets. ?*Mio.*, *Rec.*

#### Tribe CYMODOCINI Hansen, 1905

End of pleon in both sexes with notch which is semicircular in some forms but most commonly bilobed, being divided by mesial process, which rarely is large enough to overlap lateral teeth limiting notch, so that lateral teeth are visible only from side; mouth parts strongly metamorphosed in female; maxillipeds with long lobes on

joints 2 to 4 of palp; oöstegites overlapping at mid-line; pleopod 3 with two-jointed exopod. ?*Mio.*, *Rec.*

**Cymodoce** LEACH, 1814, p. 433 [*\*C. truncata*; OD] [= *Cymodocea* LEACH, 1818; *Cymodice* LEACH, 1815]. Epistome without free process anteriorly; notch at posterior end of pleotelson at least with vestige of mesial lobe which generally is well developed, being commonly large or even very large; no medial process on anterior unit of pleon in male; rami of uropod generally well developed; exopod not able to fold under endopod. ?*Mio.*, *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 193,4,6-7. *C.?* *exors* (VON EICHWALD), *Mio.*, Eu. (Rumania-S. USSR); 4, pleon, dorsal,  $\times 3$  (4); 6, lat. (reconstr.),  $\times 3.5$  (4); 7, dorsal (reconstr.),  $\times 6$  (276).—FIG. 193,

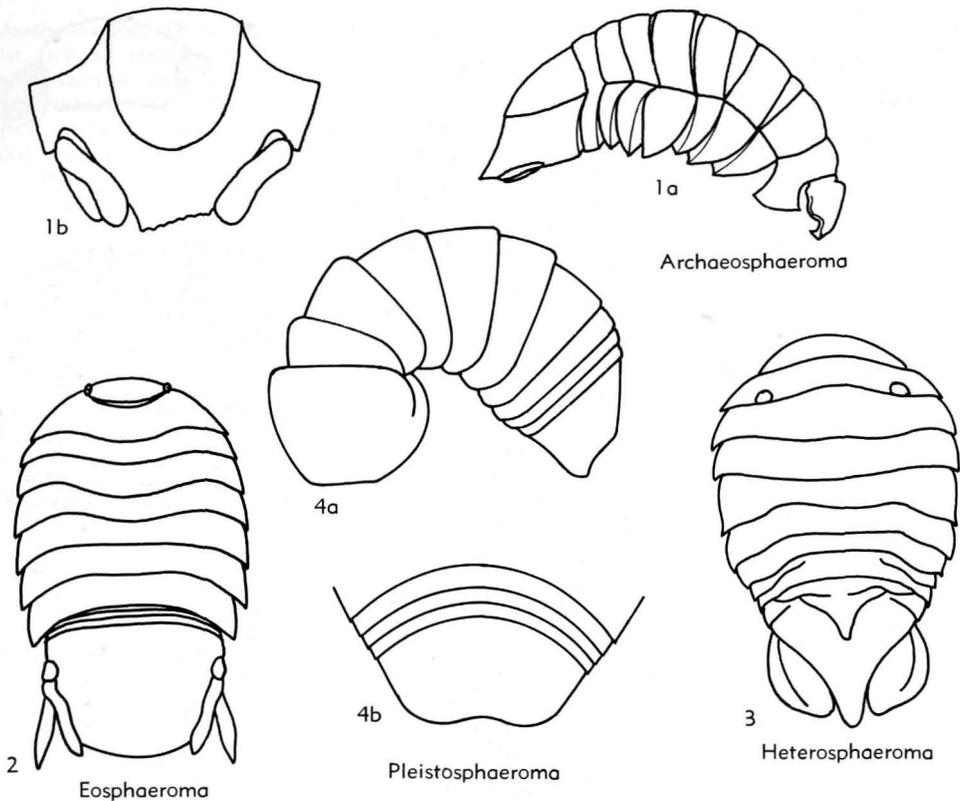


FIG. 194. Flabellifera, Sphaeromidae (p. R377-R378).

3. *C.?* *oroszyi* BACHMAYER, M.Mio., Aus., pleon, dorsal,  $\times 6$  (341a).

#### Tribe SPHAEROMINI Hansen, 1905

End of pleon in female rounded or somewhat produced and more or less acute, without notch; in some forms end much produced, with pair of lateral notches, so that mesial part is shaped as process narrowed at base. Mouth parts similar in both sexes. ?*Mio.*, *Rec.*

**Sphaeroma** LATREILLE, 1804, p. 41 [\**Cymothoa serrata* FABRICIUS, 1793; OD]. Body capable of complete enrollment. Mandible normal, incisor process not elongate, its end obtuse or with some small teeth; maxillipeds with low or rudimentary lobes on segments 2 to 4 of palp; 3 anterior pereopods with closely spaced, exceedingly long, stiff, plumose setae on outer margin of segments 3 and 4; oostegites overlapping at mid-line; pleon with side not expanded below lateral margin of pereion, tip rounded, not triangular or subacute; exopod of 3rd pleopod unjointed; uropodal rami subsimilar; exopod denticulate laterally, capable of fold-

ing under endopod, which is immovably fixed to side of pleotelson. ?*Mio.*, *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 193,2. *S. weinfurteri* BACHMAYER, M.Mio., Ger.; pleon, dorsal,  $\times 11$  (341).—FIG. 193,5. *S.?* *bachmayeri* TAUBER, M.Mio., Austria; dorsal,  $\times 9$  (381).—FIG. 193,1. *S.?* *burkartii* BARCENA, Tert., Mex.; dorsal,  $\times 4.5$  (342).

#### Group UNCERTAIN

**Archaeosphaeroma** NOVAK, 1872, p. 45 [\**A. friči*; OD]. Body strongly vaulted, not capable of complete enrollment; epimeres transversely elongate, pointed, imbricating anteriorly and posteriorly from 5th pereionite; uropods with elongate, rounded, subequal rami much shorter than pleotelson, which tapers posteriorly and is strongly emarginated laterally to accommodate uropods. *Mio.*, Czech.—FIG. 194,1. \**A. friči*; 1a, lat.,  $\times 4.5$ ; 1b, pleon, dorsal,  $\times 6$  (370a).

**Cyclosphaeroma** WOODWARD, 1890, p. 530 [\**C. trilobatum*; OD] [= *Palaeosphaeroma* REMES, 1903]. Body broad, strongly vaulted; cephalon also quite broad, but short, trilobate, only slightly surrounded by 1st pereionite; eyes large. Epimeres fused to pereionites, but still defined by

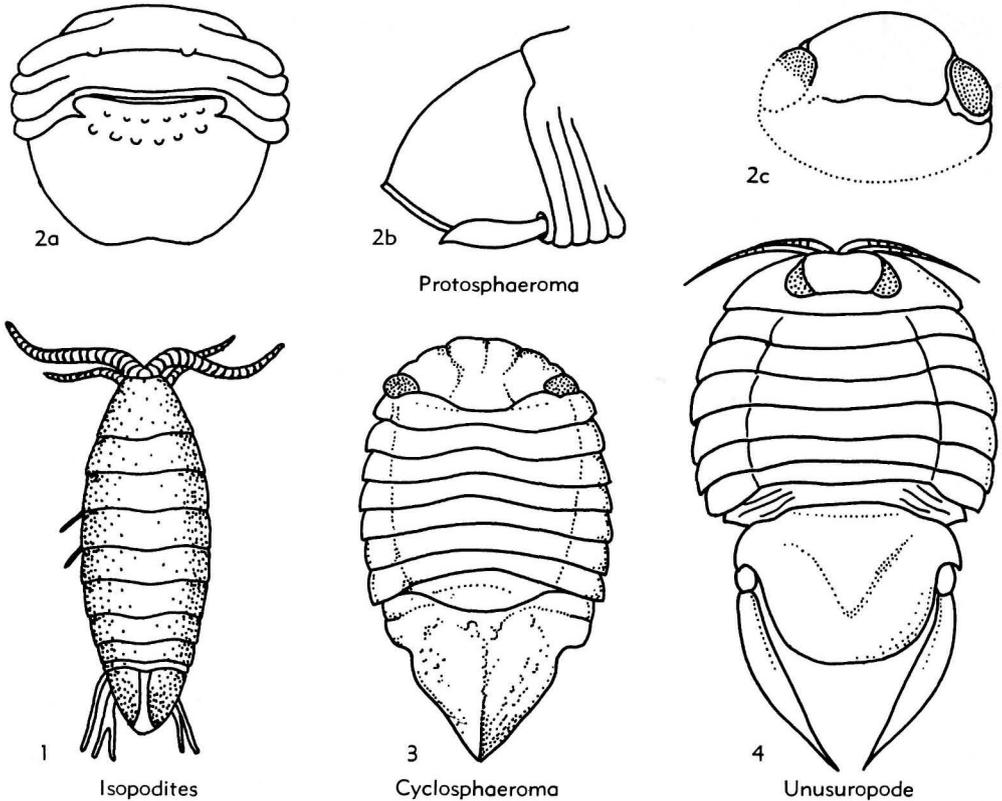


FIG. 195. Flabellifera, Sphaeromidae (p. R377-R379).

furrows except on 1st. Pleotelson triangular, pointed posteriorly, with lateral emargination for uropods; pleura of single fused pleonite defined by lateral furrows anteriorly; with strong medial ridge; pleura of anterior pleonal unit apparently obsolete, pleotelson and last pereonite coming together laterally. *Jur.*, Eng.-Czech.-Austria.—FIG. 195,3. \**C. trilobatum*, Eng.; dorsal,  $\times 1$  (386b).

**Eosphaeroma** WOODWARD, 1879, p. 346 [\**E. fluviatile*; SD VAN STRAELEN, 1931] [= *Palaeoniscus* MILNE-EDWARDS, 1843]. Body broad, ovoid; cephalon small, much narrower than width of pereon, surrounded posterolaterally by 1st pereonite. Pleotelson subsemicircular, broadly rounded posteriorly; uropods biramous; rami subequal, sickle-shaped. *Oligo.*, Eng.-Fr.-Ger.—FIG. 194,2. *E. margarum* (DESMAREST), Fr.-Ger., dorsal,  $\times 3.5$  (298).

**Heterosphaeroma** MUNIER-CHALMAS, 1872, p. 166 [\**Sphaeroma priscum* MILNE-EDWARDS, 1868; OD]. Body broad; anterior pleonal unit with single pair of transverse lateral furrows; pleotelson subtriangular, strongly pointed posteriorly, with single pair of lateral furrows anteriorly; uropods apparently uniramous, broad, rounded posteriorly.

*L.Eoc.*, Fr.—FIG. 194,3. \**H. priscum* (MILNE-EDWARDS), dorsal,  $\times 4$  (298).

[VAN STRAELEN (298) has misinterpreted the specimen at his disposal. His photograph (Fig. 9 of plate) shows clearly that what he called the fused 6th and 7th pereonites is actually the anterior unit of the pleon, and the part identified by him as cephalon is the 2nd pereonite; the specimen actually lacks a cephalon.]

**Isopodites** VON AMMON, 1882, p. 536 [\**Sphaeroma triasina* PICARD, 1858; OD]. Body elongate, ovoid; cephalon relatively elongate, not surrounded posteriorly by pereonite 1; pleotelson subtriangular, with median carina; apparently no lateral emargination for uropods, which are biramous, scissors-like. *Trias.*, Ger.—FIG. 195,1. \**I. triasinus* (PICARD), dorsal,  $\times 4$  (373).

[VAN STRAELEN (298) has stated that this species is unrelated to the Sphaeromidae, being more like the Cymothoidae. However, the presence of only a single free pleonal unit anterior to the pleotelson is a strong argument for affinity to the Sphaeromidae.]

**Pleistosphaeroma** STROUHAL, 1954, p. 57 [\**P. hundsheimensis*; OD]. Body strongly vaulted; 1st pereonite with posterolateral furrow which accommodates anterior edge of following pereonite during enrollment; epimeres completely fused to pereonites, rounded laterally; 3 free pleonal somites anterior to pleotelson, which is short, subtrapezoidal, and rounded posterolaterally. *Pleist.*,

Austria.—FIG. 194,4. \**P. hundsheimensis*; 4a, lat.,  $\times 8$ ; 4b, pleon, dorsal,  $\times 12$  (380).

**Protosphaeroma** BACHMAYER, 1949, p. 264 [\**P. ernstbrunnense*; OD]. Body strongly vaulted; eyes well developed. Anterior pleonal unit with lateral furrows which demark fused segments that curve anteriorly at their lateral ends; pleotelson short, rounded posteriorly. *Jur.*, Czech.-Austria.—FIG. 195,2. \**P. ernstbrunnense*, Austria; 2a,b, pleon, dorsal, lat.,  $\times 13$ ; 2c, cephalon, dorsal,  $\times 10$  (7).

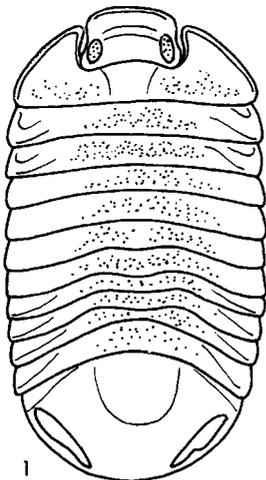
**Unusuropode** DUARTE & SANTOS, 1962, p. 58 [\**U. castroi*; OD]. Cephalon small, set deeply back into pereionite 1; eyes large; epimeres defined on pereionites 2 to 7; anterior pleonal unit with 3 pairs of lateral sutures; pleotelson smoothly rounded posteriorly, entire, well vaulted, with strong anteromedial elevation; uropods apparently uniramous, very long, saber-like. *U.Cret.*, Brazil.—FIG. 195,4. \**U. castroi*; dorsal,  $\times 10$  (83).

### Family ARCHAONISCIDAE Haack, 1918

Characters of type genus. *Jur.*

**Archaeoniscus** MILNE-EDWARDS, 1843, p. 328 [\**A. brodiei*; OD]. Body broad, oval, only moderately vaulted; cephalon subquadrate, sunk deeply into 1st pereionite; eyes located dorsolaterally, of moderate size, prominent; 7 pereionites alike except for 1st; epimeres not defined; pleon as wide as pereion; 4 free pleonites subequal, essentially like pereionites; pleotelson large, subsemicircular. *Jur.*, Eng.-Ger.—FIG. 196,1. \**A. brodiei*; dorsal,  $\times 2.5$  (136).

[The broad, oval body, prominent eyes, absence of defined epimeres, and presence of only 4 free pleonites justifies placement of this monotypic genus in its own family.



Archaeoniscus

FIG. 196. Flabellifera, Archaeoniscidae (p. R379).

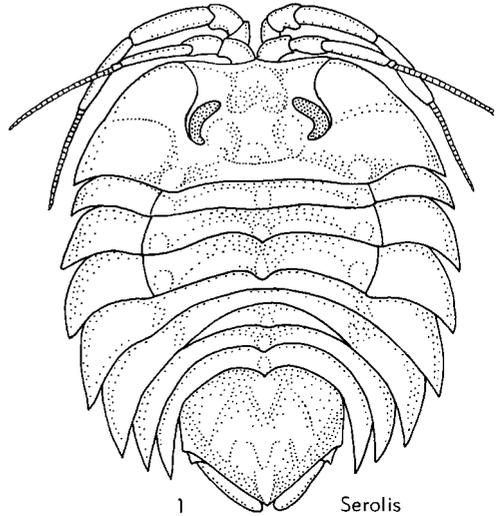


FIG. 197. Flabellifera, Serolidae: *Serolis kempi* SHEPPARD; ♂, dorsal view,  $\times 3.4$  (378).

These are all features commonly occurring in the Oniscoidea, but as HAACK (136) has pointed out, the large pleotelson, well-developed antennules and form of antennae and uropods exclude *Archaeoniscus* from the latter suborder.]

### Family SEROLIDAE Dana, 1852

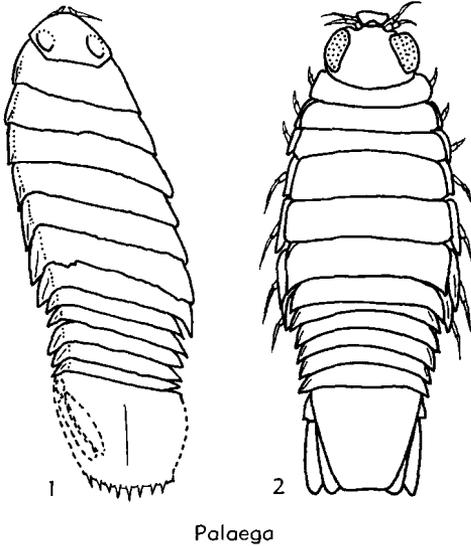
Body strongly flattened, broad; cephalon sunk deeply into first pereionite and fused to it posteriorly. Both antennules and antennae with well-defined peduncle and multiarticulate flagellum; mandible with palp; maxilliped with three-segmented palp; epimeres of pereionites extensive; tergum of last thoracomere usually absent; second pereiopod in both sexes, third pereiopod in male modified as prehensile organ; pleon composed of four units, three relatively subequal pleonites and one large pleotelson; first three pleopods natatory; fourth and fifth branchial, with outer pair of fourth forming operculum; uropod lateral, with free rami (Fig. 197). *Rec.*, S.Hemis.-N.Pac.-N.Atl.

### Family UNCERTAIN

**Anhelkocephalon** BILL, 1914, p. 338 [\**A. handlirschi*; OD]. Much like Serolidae, with number of pleonites reduced; terminal segment large, cephalon deeply embedded in 1st pereionite. *M. Trias.*, Fr.(Alsace).

[This monotypic genus is vaguely characterized and has not been figured. VAN STRAELEN (298) doubted that it should be put in the Serolidae.]

**Cymatoga** VON EICHWALD, 1863, p. 416 [\**C. jazzy-*



Palaeoga

FIG. 198. Flabellifera, Family Uncertain (p. R380).

*howii*; OD]. Body very elongate (cephalon lacking); 7 pereonites and 6 free subequal pleonites; pleon narrower than pereon; telson large. *Cret.*, Eu.(USSR).

[This monotypic genus has not been figured. VON EICHWALD claimed that it belongs to the Cymothoidae, and therefore it may be assumed that its body is of the same general facies as seen in *Palaeoga*.]

**Palaeoga** WOODWARD, 1870, p. 496 [*emend.* HESSLER, herein] [\**P. carteri*; OD] [= *Aegites* VON AMMON, 1882]. Body elongate, oval; eyes large (where known). Seven free pereonites (where known), not necessarily subequal; epimeres distinct on all but first; pereopods slender, ambulatory (where known); pleon not abruptly narrower than pereon, may taper posteriorly; five free pleonites subequal, with posteriorly pointed pleura; pleotelson large, commonly with median carina and rounded, posterior margin which may be denticulate; uropods biramous, lamellar. *Jur.-Plio.*, Eu.-N.Am.-Australia. —FIG. 198, 1. *P. scrobiculata* VON AMMON, U. Oligo., Austria, dorsal,  $\times 0.5$  (340). —FIG. 198, 2. *P. kessleri* REIFF, L.Jur., Ger.; dorsal (reconstr.),  $\times 2$  (375).

[Virtually all fossil flabelliferans having 7 free pereonites and 5 free pleonites have been included in *Palaeoga*. These fossils cover a range from Jurassic through Pliocene. Many of the species are based on the posterior half of the body, but in *P. kunthi* (VON AMMON) (1882), *P. scrobiculata* VON AMMON (1882), *P. maccoyi* CARTER (1899), *P. jurassica* STOLLEY (1910), *P. danica* VAN STRAELLEN (1928), *P. suevica* REIFF (1936), and *P. kessleri* REIFF (1936), the general form of the whole body is known. This body form, particularly that of pleon, is essentially the same in all and plays the major role in diagnosis of the genus. However, this very same body form is found in numerous families of modern flabelliferans (Cirolanidae, Exocorallanidae, Corallanidae, Aegidae, Cymothoidae) (251). These modern groups are discriminated mainly on the basis of appendages which are almost unknown in the fossils. Therefore, it is quite likely that *Palaeoga* is no more than a form genus. From the literature it appears that *Palaeoga*

can be divided into two groups on the basis of the cephalon. In one, characterized by *P. scrobiculata* (Fig. 198, 1), *P. kunthi*, *P. jurassica*, and *P. danica*, the cephalon is distinctly sunk back into the first pereonite. Its eyes are dorsally placed. In the other, composed of *P. maccoyi*, *P. suevica*, and *P. kessleri* (Fig. 198, 2), the cephalon is smoothly rounded and at the very most is only slightly engulfed by the 1st pereonite. Its eyes are anterolateral. In the 3 latter species the labrum protrudes strongly in front of the cephalon and where known is accompanied by a pair of scythelike mandibles. The palaeogids which possess these protruding mouth parts are strongly reminiscent of the Urdidae, differing only in size of the eyes and number of pereonites. REIFF (375) has noted that the mandibles are formed as in the Exocorallanidae, but that the pleotelson differs. VAN STRAELLEN (1930) has reported a poorly preserved isopod from the Eocene of Jutland. This he placed in the vicinity of *Aega* LEACH (1815), on the basis of the pleotelson. Such an assignment makes the systematic position of this individual as vague as is that of *Palaeoga*.]

### Suborder VALVIFERA G. O. Sars, 1882

Uropods modified to form laterally hinged opercula which fold over branchial pleopods like pair of swinging doors. Pleonites more or less fused; peduncle of antennae consisting of five segments; mouth parts normal but mandible usually without palp, and maxilliped commonly with reduced

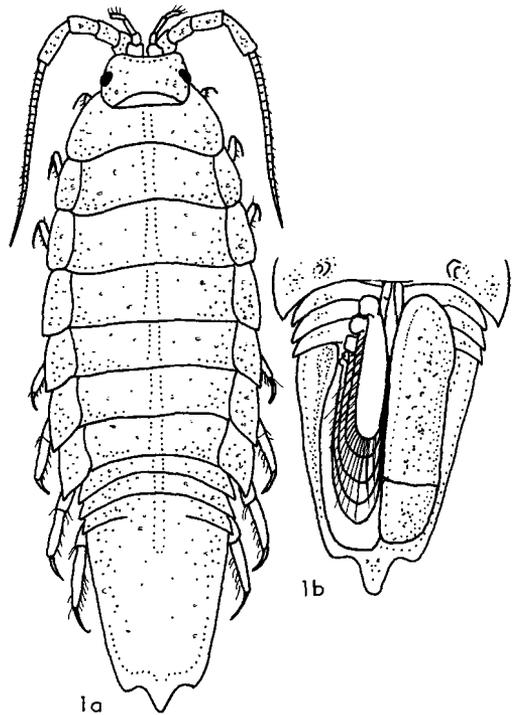


FIG. 199. Valvifera: *Idotea baltica* (PALLAS); 1a, ♂, dorsal view,  $\times 1.6$ ; 1b, ventral surface of pleon, with uropod removed to show branchial pleopods in respiratory chamber,  $\times 2$  (261b).

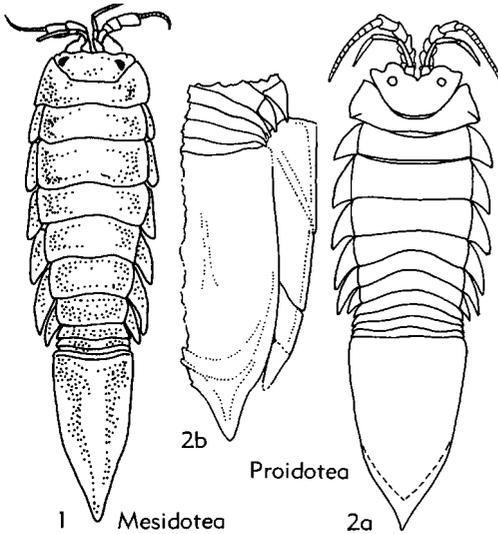


FIG. 200. Valvifera: Idotheidae (Mesidoteinae) (p. R381).

number of segments; coxae of pereopods usually developed as epimeres which are commonly fused to pereion. *Oligo.-Rec.*

#### Family IDOTEIDAE Leach, 1813

Body somewhat depressed. Pereionites subequal; epimeres distinct in some forms but fused to somites in others; some or all pleonites fused to form large pleotelson; antennule with uniaarticulate flagellum; antenna much longer than antennule, with multiarticulate flagellum; mandibular palp lacking; pereopods increasing in length posteriorly, first four subchelate on some forms, otherwise pereopods similar to each other (Fig. 199). *Oligo.-Rec.*

##### Subfamily MESIDOTEINAE Racovitza & Sevastos, 1910

[*nom. correct.* HESSLER, herein (*pro* subfamily Mesidoteini RACOVITZA & SEVASTOS, 1910)]

Anterolateral angles of cephalon produced into flattened lobes having submedial cleft; eyes dorsal. First pereionite strongly enveloping cephalon laterally; epimeres defined on all pereionites except first; pereopods distinctly dimorphic, first four subchelate, others ambulatory and longer; first three or four pleonites free; pleotelson more than 0.25 length of body; protopod of uropod at least

0.6 total length of limb, exopod present, rudimentary. *Oligo.-Rec.*

**Mesidotea** RICHARDSON, 1905, p. 347 [\*?type sp.]. Flagellum of antennule with single segment, that of antenna multiarticulate; palp of maxilliped with five segments; pleonite four fused to pleotelson, but distinctly defined; protopod of uropod at least 0.8 total length of limb. *Pleist.-Rec.*, Holarctic-N. Atl.-NE. Pac.-Baltic-Caspian.—FIG. 200,1. *M. sabini* KRØYER, dorsal,  $\times 0.7$  (359).

**Proidotea** RACOVITZA & SEVASTOS, 1910, p. 194 [*\*P. haugi*; OD]. Body elongate, tapering only slightly posteriorly; first four pleonites distinctly defined and probably free; protopod of uropod only 0.6 total length of limb. *L.Oligo.-M.Oligo.*, Romania-Pol.—FIG. 200,2. *\*P. haugi*; 2a, dorsal (reconstr.),  $\times 2.25$ ; 2b, post. portion of body with uropod, dorsal,  $\times 3$  (230).

#### Suborder ASELLOTA Latreille, 1803

Telson and last five (rarely four or six) pleonites fused into a single unit; anterior pleonites, when free, strongly reduced; one or two of more anterior pleopods forming posteriorly directed operculum over the other pleopods which are branchial in function. Various thoracomeres in some forms fused to each other or to pleotelson; peduncle of antenna consisting of six segments; mouth parts normal; coxae of pereopods small; uropods subterminal, styliform, commonly biramous (Fig. 201). *Rec.*

#### Suborder ONISCOIDEA Latreille, 1803

[*emend.* G. O. SARS, 1882]

Body more or less depressed; pleonites rarely fused. Antennules very small, never with more than three segments; peduncle of antennae with five segments; mouth parts normal, but mandible lacking palp and terminal portion of maxilliped reduced; coxae of pereopods expanded into epimeres which are usually not differentiated from tergites; uropods subterminal, styliform, generally biramous. Terrestrial, pleopods fitted for air-breathing. *Eoc.-Rec.*

#### Family TRICHONISCIDAE G. O. Sars, 1899

Cannot enroll. Cephalon without frontal line or occipital furrow; supra-antennary

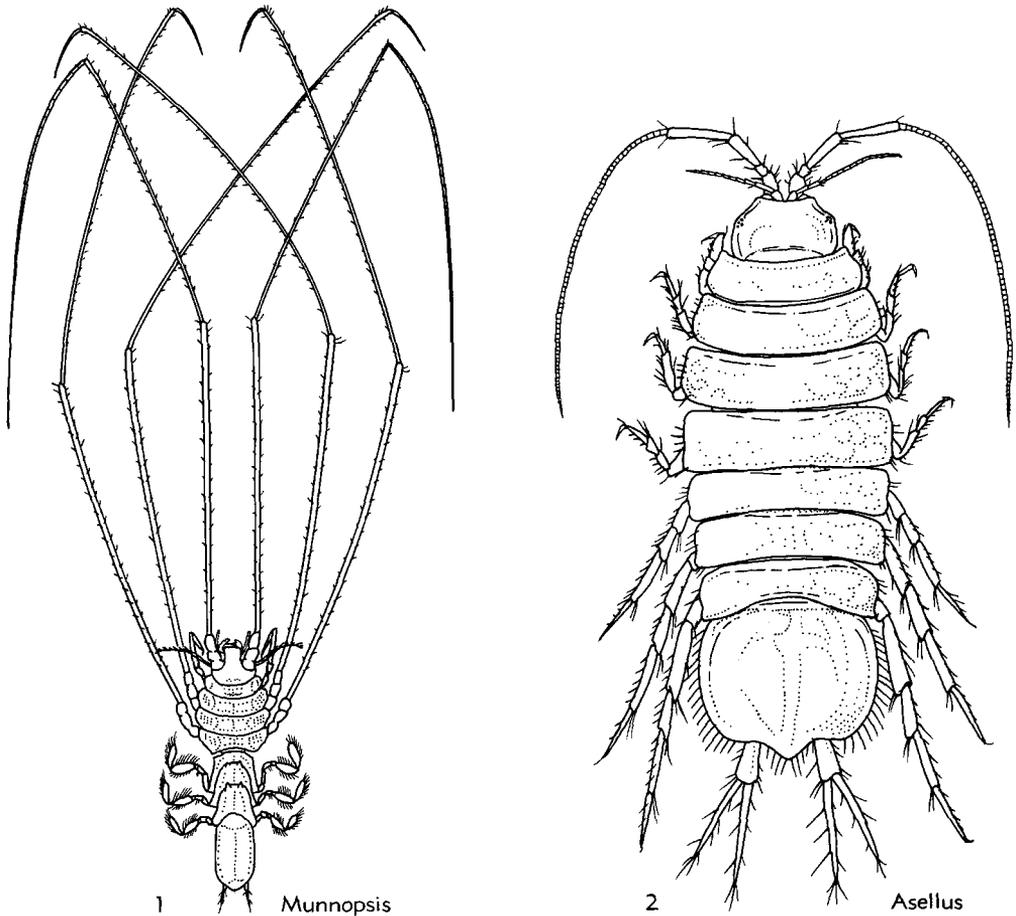


FIG. 201. Asellota: 1, *Munnopsis typica* M. Sars; ♂, dorsal view,  $\times 2.7$  (261b); 2, *Asellus aquaticus* LINNÉ, ♀, dorsal view,  $\times 8$  (261b).

line projecting broadly down between antennae nearly to clypeus, and also defining projecting antennary tubercles laterally; marginal line horizontal; clypeus flat, projecting strongly forward; mandible with well-developed molar process; genital apophysis unpaired, with single duct; no pseudo-trachea. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Subfamily TRICHONISCINAE Verhoeff, 1908**

Body smooth or tuberculate, but lacking costae; pleura of pleonites short (transverse) so that pleon is abruptly narrower than pereion. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Trichoniscus** BRANDT, 1833, p. 174 [*\*T. pusillus*; OD] [= *Spiloniscus* RACOVITZA, 1908]. Cuticle smooth or scaly, but not granular. Eyes triangular, with 3 ommatidia, rarely reduced. Flagellum of antennae with 3 or 4 poorly defined segments; left mandible with 2 penicilli, right with 1; pleopod 1 of male with triangular exopod lacking setae; endopod developed as 2-jointed paracopulatory organ; pleotelson with narrowly truncate tip. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*, Eu.-N.Afr.-N.Am.—FIG. 202, 3. *\*T. pusillus*; dorsal,  $\times 11$  (261b).

**Family ONISCIDAE Dana, 1852**

[emend. VERHOEFF, 1918]

Cannot enroll (with rare exceptions). Eyes generally well developed; triturating

molar process of mandible replaced by brushlike setae; genital apophysis unpaired, with paired ducts and exit pores; pseudo-

trachea absent; uropod extending beyond posterior end of body; tip of pleotelson conically produced. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

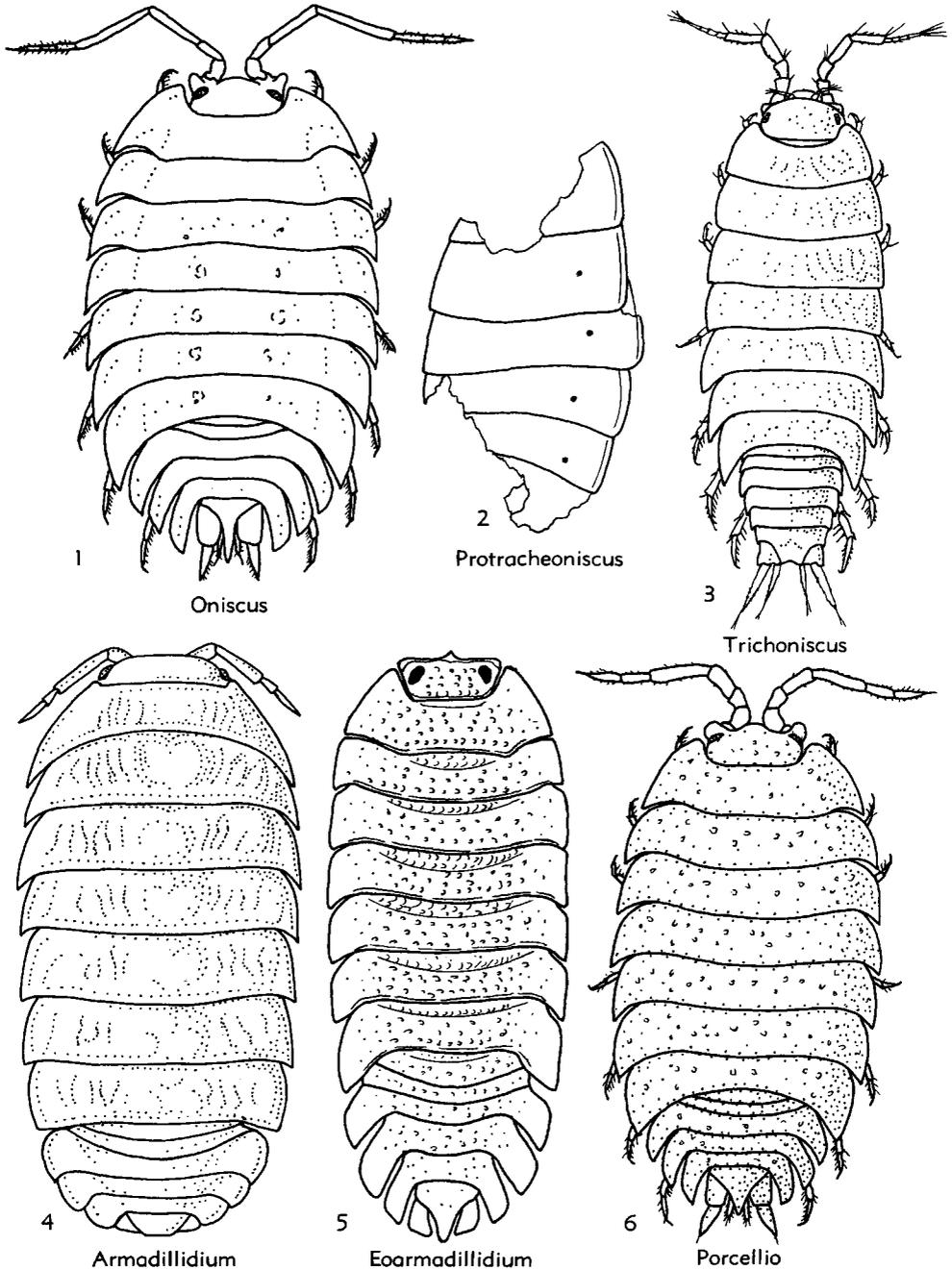


FIG. 202. Oniscoidea; Trichoniscidae (Trichoniscinae) (3); Oniscidae (Oniscinae) (1); Porcellionidae (2,6); Armadillidiidae (4-5) (p. R382-R384).

## Subfamily ONISCINAE Vandel, 1952

Cephalon with strongly developed frontal line defining pair of lateral lobes and single median frontal lobe. Flagellum of antennae with three segments; glandular field on epimeres generally ovoid and reduced; pleura of pleonites large, causing outline of pleon to be continuous with that of pereion; genital apophysis simple. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Oniscus** LINNÉ, 1758, p. 636 [*\*O. asellus*; SD DESMAREST, 1859]. Cephalon with indistinct supra-antennary line. Mandible with 3 to 5 penicilli; posterior margin of anterior pereionites strongly sinuous, forming acute posterolateral angles; epimeres large; articular process on pereionites 1-4; lateral edge of pleopodal exopods bearing well-differentiated respiratory region; pleotelson tapering to long narrow point. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*, Eu.—FIG. 202,1. *\*O. asellus*; dorsal,  $\times 2.7$  (261b).

Family PORCELLIONIDAE  
Verhoeff, 1918

Usually cannot enroll; where enrollment is possible, system is primitive. Flagellum of antennae with two or three segments; molar process of mandible reduced to brush-like setae; genital apophysis unpaired, with paired ducts and exit pores; pseudotrachea present; uropods extending beyond posterior end of body; tip of pleotelson conically produced. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Porcellio** LATREILLE, 1804, p. 45 [*\*P. scaber*; SD ICZN Opinion 104, 1928]. Cuticular granulation distinct to absent. Cephalon without supra-antennary line; frontal line distinct, defining more or less developed median lobe and well-developed lateral lobes; eyes large; antennae long. Pleura of pleonites large, so that margin of pleon is continuous with that of pereion; pseudotrachea on exopods of pleopods 1 and 2 only; produced terminal portion of pleotelson usually distinctly defined from basal portion. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*, N.Am.-Central Am.-Eu.-N.Afr.-AsiaM.—FIG. 202,6. *\*P. scaber*; dorsal,  $\times 3.3$  (261b).

**Protracheoniscus** VERHOEFF, 1917, p. 211 [*\*?*type-sp.]. Tergites smooth, not granulate. Cephalon without supra-antennary line; frontal line defining pair of small or medium-sized lateral lobes; median lobe not developed. Posterior margin of pereionites 1 and 2 rounded, not sinuous; all pleopodal exopods with weakly developed pseudotracheal system; exopod of pleopod 1 in male longer than wide. *?Pleist.-Rec.*, Asia-Japan-Philippines-Eu.—FIG. 202,2. *P. sp. cf. P. amoenus* KOCH, *Pleist.*, Austria; fragment of pereion, dorsal,  $\times 7.5$  (380).

Family ARMADILLIDIIDAE Brandt,  
1833

Median genital apophysis with paired ducts and exit pores; pseudotrachea in exopods of pleopods one and two only. Capable of complete enrollment and possessing many specializations related to this function; body very convex; cephalon enlarged transversely so that insertions of antennules and antennae widely separated; in enrollment two-jointed antennae rest against median scutellar lobe and in grooves formed by pair of lateral antennary lobes; primary marginal line almost completely obliterated in favor of secondary one; pleurepimeres fitted with specialized tongue-and-groove system; pleotelson broadly triangular or truncate; appendages generally short; uropodal exopod enlarged and flattened to fill gap between pleonite five and pleotelson. *Mio.-Rec.*

**Armadillidium** BRANDT, 1833, p. 184 [*\*Armadillo vulgare* LATREILLE, 1804; SD ICZN Opinion 104, 1928] [= *Uropodias* RICHARDSON, 1902; *Armadillo* CUVIER, 1792]. Cephalon with vertex separated from frontal region by parallel frontal and post-scutellar lines. Posterior edge of epimere of pereionite 1 rarely with horizontal cleft (schisma); uropodal endopod short, not extending beyond posterior border of telson. *Mio.-Rec.*, *Medit.-C.Eu.* —FIG. 202,4. *\*A. vulgare* (LATREILLE); dorsal,  $\times 3.7$  (261b).

**?Eoarmadillidium** DOLLFUS, 1904, p. 146 [*\*E. granulatum*; OD]. Body moderately convex, slightly spread out laterally; cephalon with triangular median lobe. Pleotelson triangular; uropod with platelike exopod. *Pleist.*, Fr.—FIG. 202,5. *\*E. granulatum*; dorsal,  $\times 5.4$  (354).

[This genus may not be a member of the Armadillidiidae in spite of its spatulate uropods. The flattened body and the form of the cephalon are more reminiscent of *Porcellio* than of *Armadillidium* (291).]

Suborder PHREATOICIDEA  
Stebbing, 1893

Body more or less laterally flattened. Pleonal somites free, but telson fused to last somite; mouth parts normal; peduncle of antennae with five segments; second thoracopod subchelate; second to fifth thoracopods directed forward, sixth to eighth directed backward; coxae of thoracopods not expanded into epimeral plates; pleopods subequal, natatory as well as respiratory; uropod posterolateral, biramous, locomotory. *Perm.-Rec.*

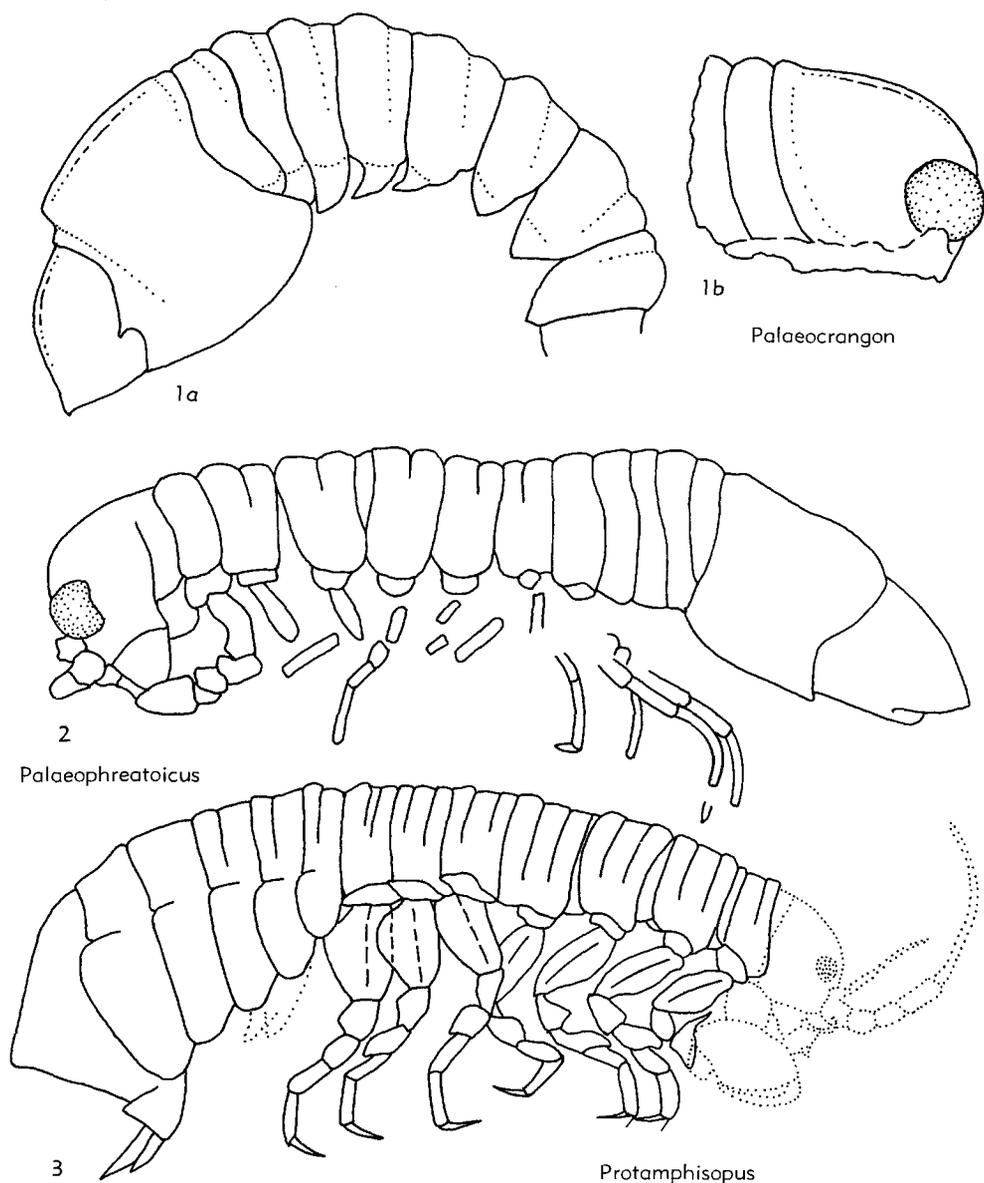
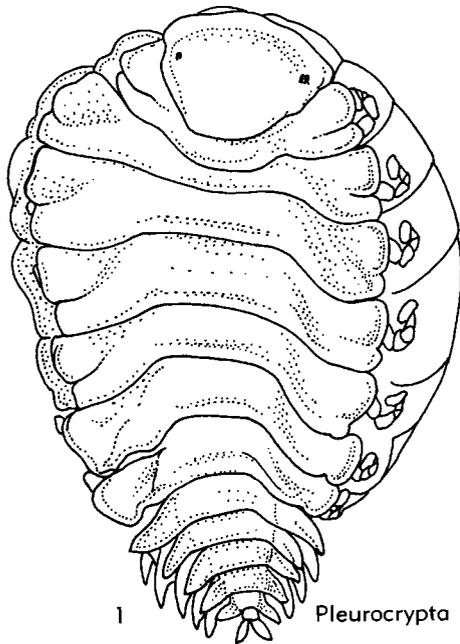


FIG. 203. Phreatoicidea; Amphisopidae (3); Palaeophreatoicidae (1-2) (p. R385-R386).

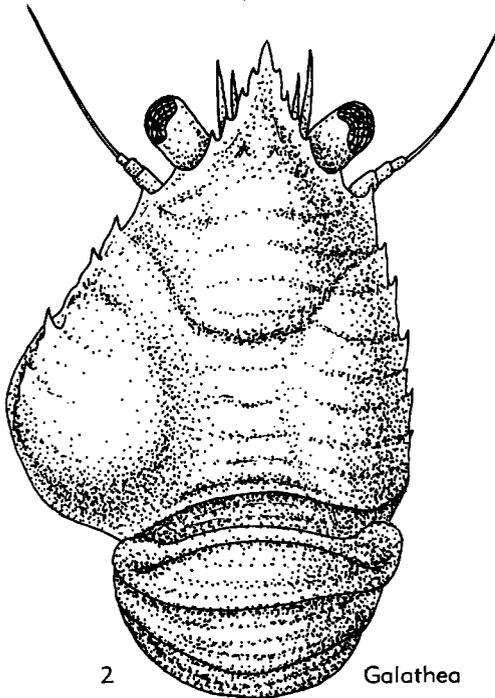
#### Family AMPHISOPIDAE Nicholls, 1943

Lacinia mobilis on both mandibles. Head relatively short; eyes (when present) prominent, many-faceted. Telson only slightly produced into terminal projection or not at all; coxae of pereopods generally fused with pleura; basis of more posterior pereopods usually well expanded. *Trias.-Rec.*

*Protamphisopus* NICHOLLS, 1943, p. 109 [*Phreatoicus wianamattensis* CHILTON, 1917; OD]. Pereionites deeper than long, some with marked transverse ridge; transition to pleon abrupt, pleonites being extremely deep; bases of at least last 5 pereopods well expanded; ischia relatively shorter than in Recent forms; merus produced strongly downward on 3rd and 4th pereopods; 3rd to 6th pereopods apparently subequal; uropod very short,



Pleurocrypta



Galathea

FIG. 204. Epicaridea: 1, *Pleurocrypta microbranchiata* G. O. Sars; ♀, dorsal view,  $\times 12$  (261b); 2, dorsal view of decapod *Galathea intermedia* Lilljeborg showing left branchial cavity swollen to accommodate an individual of the epicaridean species *Pleurocrypta microbranchiata*, enlarged (261b).

with short peduncle expanded distally. *Trias.*, Australia.—FIG. 203,3. \**P. wianamattensis* (CHILTON); lat. (reconstr.),  $\times 2.4$  (211).

### Family PALAEOPHREATOICIDAE Birshteyn, 1962

Head relatively long, with deep vertical cervical furrow; eyes very large, protruding anteriorly. First pereonite not expanded ventrolaterally; coxae of pereopods not fused to pleura; fifth pleonite extremely enlarged; pleotelson large, pointed, but telsonic projection not defined. *Perm.*

**Palaeophreatoicus** BIRSHTEYN, 1962, p. 66 [\**P. sojanensis*; OD]. Body cylindrical; pleonites 1 to 4 shorter than pereonites, which bear transverse furrows. *U.Perm.*, Eu.(Ger.-USSR).—FIG. 203, 2. \**P. sojanensis*, lat. (holotype),  $\times 8$  (43).

**Palaeocrangon** VON SCHAUROTH, 1854, p. 560 [\**Trilobites problematicus* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1820; OD] [= *Prosoponiscus* KIRKBY, 1857 (non *Palaeocrangon* SALTER, 1861)]. Body laterally compressed, with mid-dorsal keel; pereonites and 1st 4 pleonites subequal in length; anterior pleonites with triangular pleurae. *Perm.*, Eu.(Eng.-Ger.).—FIG. 203,1. \**P. problematicus* (SCHLOTHEIM); 1a, pleon and posterior portion of pereion (composite reconstr.),  $\times 7.2$  (356); 1b, cephalon and 1st 2 pereonites, lat.,  $\times 6.4$  (362).

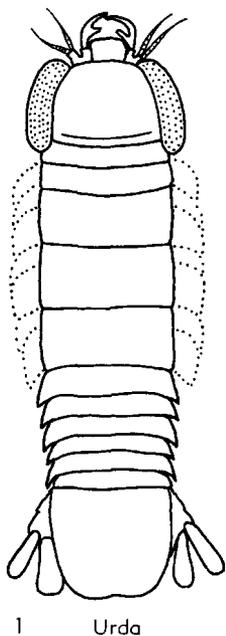
[The systematic position of this monotypic genus has been the subject of much disagreement. Indeed, it has been placed with the trilobites, decapods, amphipods, and isopods. Most recently GLAESSNER (1957) and BIRSHTEYN (43) have argued for phreatoicid affinities.]

### Suborder EPICARIDEA Latreille, 1831

[= *Bopyroidea* RICHARDSON, 1904]

Ectoparasitic on other Crustacea (Copepoda, Ostracoda, Mysidacea, Euphausiacea, Isopoda, Amphipoda, parasitic Cirripedia, and Decapoda). Sexual dimorphism marked, female greatly modified, often asymmetrical and some lacking segmentation or appendages; male comparatively diminutive. Mouth parts suctorial and reduced or absent; thoracopods (when present) are prehensile; pleopods of adult all branchial. Development in form of regressive metamorphosis (Fig. 204). ?*U.Jur.*, *Rec.*

Adult female Epicaridea may be so specialized that in some groups they are no more than nearly formless sacs of eggs. Adult males and larvae of both sexes are more normal in form and are much like



1 Urda

FIG. 205. Isopoda Suborder Uncertain; Urdidae (p. R387).

Flabellifera. Epicarideans exhibit a degree of host specificity. For instance, the Bopyridae are parasitic on Decapoda, and the various genera of Cryptoniscidae parasitize Ostracoda, Cirripedia, Mysidacea, Cumacea, Isopoda, or Amphipoda (337).

Where found in the branchial cavity of the host, the carapace of the latter may become asymmetrical distended to accommodate the parasite (Fig. 204,2). Such abnormally swollen carapaces have been found in a number of species of Decapoda from the Upper Jurassic and the Cretaceous of England, Germany, France, and Czechoslovakia. They are regarded as indicating the presence of epicarideans during these periods (6, 298, 314b).

### Suborder UNCERTAIN

#### Family URDIDAE Kunth, 1870

[*nom. correct.* HESSLER, herein (*pro* Urdidae KUNTH, 1870)]

Characters of type genus. *Jur.-Cret.*

KUNTH (1870) placed this family between the Anceidae (=Gnathiidea) and Cymothoidea (Flabellifera). MONOD (205) denied

its affinity to the Gnathiidae, claiming that the missing pereonites of *Urda* are probably merely hidden from view. He included the Recent genus *Gnatholana* BARNARD (1920) in the Urdidae because it also possesses protruding mandibles and labrum, and he placed the family close to the cymothoids. MENZIES (1962) has considered the Gnathiidae to be derived from a cirolanid ancestor, with *Urda* being related to an intermediate form; *Gnatholana* was judged to be a relict that descended from this *Urda*-like ancestor.

*Urda* MÜNSTER, 1840, p. 21 [*emend.* HESSLER, herein] [*\*U. rostrata*; SD OPPEL, 1862] [= *Reckur* MÜNSTER, 1842]. Body elongate, with subparallel sides; cephalon large, not surrounded posteriorly by 1st pereonite; eyes lateral and very large, usually equal to the length of cephalon; labrum extending anterior to cephalon. Mandibles prominent, pincer-like, extending anteriorly beyond labrum; 6 pereonites; epimeres free; pleon slightly narrower than pereon, with 5 free, subequal pleonites and large, flat pleotelson; uropods biramous, lamellar. *Jur.-Cret.*, Eu. (Fr.-Ger.-Czech.).—FIG. 205,1. *\*U. rostrata*, dorsal,  $\times 2.2$  (363).

[MÜNSTER (1840), KUNTH (1870), REMES (1912) and VAN STRALEN (298) claim that *Urda* has only 5 free pereonites. The first-mentioned three authors stated that the pleon has 6 free pleonites. STOLLEY (285) reported 6 pereonites and 5 free pleonites on *U. cretacea*, the last pereonite being smaller than the 5th and such that it might be confused as a pleonite in poorly preserved material.]

### ISOPODA INCERTAE SEDIS

Two fossil isopod species, both from the Jurassic of Bavaria, which have never been figured and are too poorly described to be diagnosed are *Sphaeroma antiqua* DESMAREST (1822) and *Neosoma edwardsii* OPPEL (1865). The latter genus is monotypic.

### Order AMPHIPODA Latreille, 1816

First and second thoracomeres in some fused to cephalon; no distinct carapace fold; eyes sessile, unstalked (except in Ingolfliidea). Antennules commonly biramous; antennae uniramous, with five-segmented peduncle. Thoracopods lacking exopods, some with branchiae; coxae short, but they may be expanded into plates which are more or less fused to body; first thoracopods modified as maxillipeds, next two commonly subchelate gnathopods; forms with pleon not reduced bearing pleopods with multiarticu-

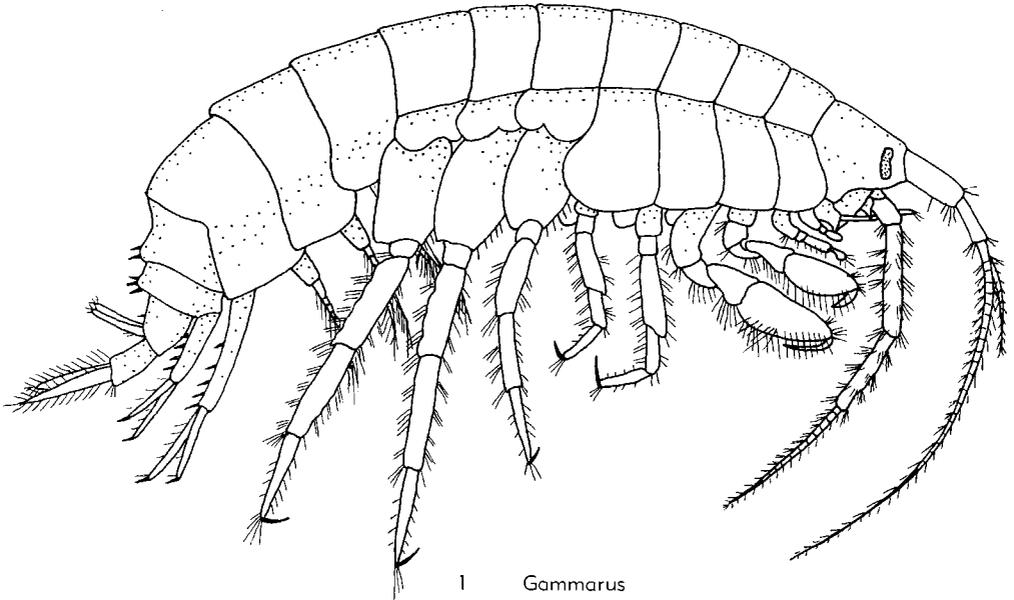


FIG. 206. Gammaridea, Gammaridae (p. R390).

late rami on first three somites and usually uropods with unsegmented rami on last three somites; telson usually not fused to last pleonite. Young leave marsupium with full number of appendages. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

Amphipods are dominantly marine, occurring at all depths. Of the three major suborders, only the Gammaridea include freshwater and even terrestrial representatives. More than one-third of the known freshwater forms are found in Lake Baikal. Because of the long history and isolation of this lake, a small initial gammaridean stock located there is judged to have undergone extensive taxonomic differentiation, resulting in more than 290 species which live in Lake Baikal today (59).

The Hyperiidea are exclusively pelagic and commonly live a predaceous existence. Within the Caprelliidea, the Cyamidae live as ectoparasites on whales, whereas the Caprellidae are epifaunal, being found on seaweed, hydroids, and other living substrata. A few Gammaridea are truly pelagic; most are benthic, but possess the ability to swim. The majority of these benthic forms are detritus- or filter-feeders and may build a large variety of burrows or tubes in pursuit of these

ends. Gammarideans may also be epifaunal herbivores.

About 4,000 species of amphipods are known, and by far the greatest majority of these are gammarideans. This suborder is striking because, in relation to its large species composition and wide range of environments occupied, it displays a relatively small degree of morphological diversity. Thus, in the taxonomy of the Gammaridea minor structural differences play an important role, even at high taxonomic levels. This fact should be kept in mind when evaluating the placement of fossil forms in Recent genera.

Most amphipod groups are cosmopolitan in distribution but the Ingolfiellidea are as yet known only from Europe, North Atlantic, South America, Africa, and the South China Sea.

### Suborder GAMMARIDEA Latreille, 1803

[=*Crevettina* CLAUS, 1880 (*pro Crevettines* MILNE-EDWARDS, 1830)]

First thoracomere only fused to cephalon; maxillipeds with palp; coxae of thoracopods two to eight usually giving rise to large

plates; body usually appearing to be laterally flattened; all pleonites well developed, free; three pairs of pleopods and three pairs of uropods well developed; eyes rarely very large. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Family GAMMARIDAE Leach, 1814**

Body more or less slender; pleonites four to six usually well defined. Antennules and antennae generally rather slender, usually similar in both sexes; accessory flagellum of

antennule well developed in many forms but may be reduced or absent; mouth parts normal; labrum with distal border rounded, entire, or only slightly emarginate; labium with inner lobes well developed, poorly defined, or absent; mandibles with well-developed gnathic structures and three-segmented palp, second segment of palp almost never smaller than first; maxillules with both endites and palp well developed; gnathopods generally rather powerful, rarely less than subchelate; pereopods more or less slender,

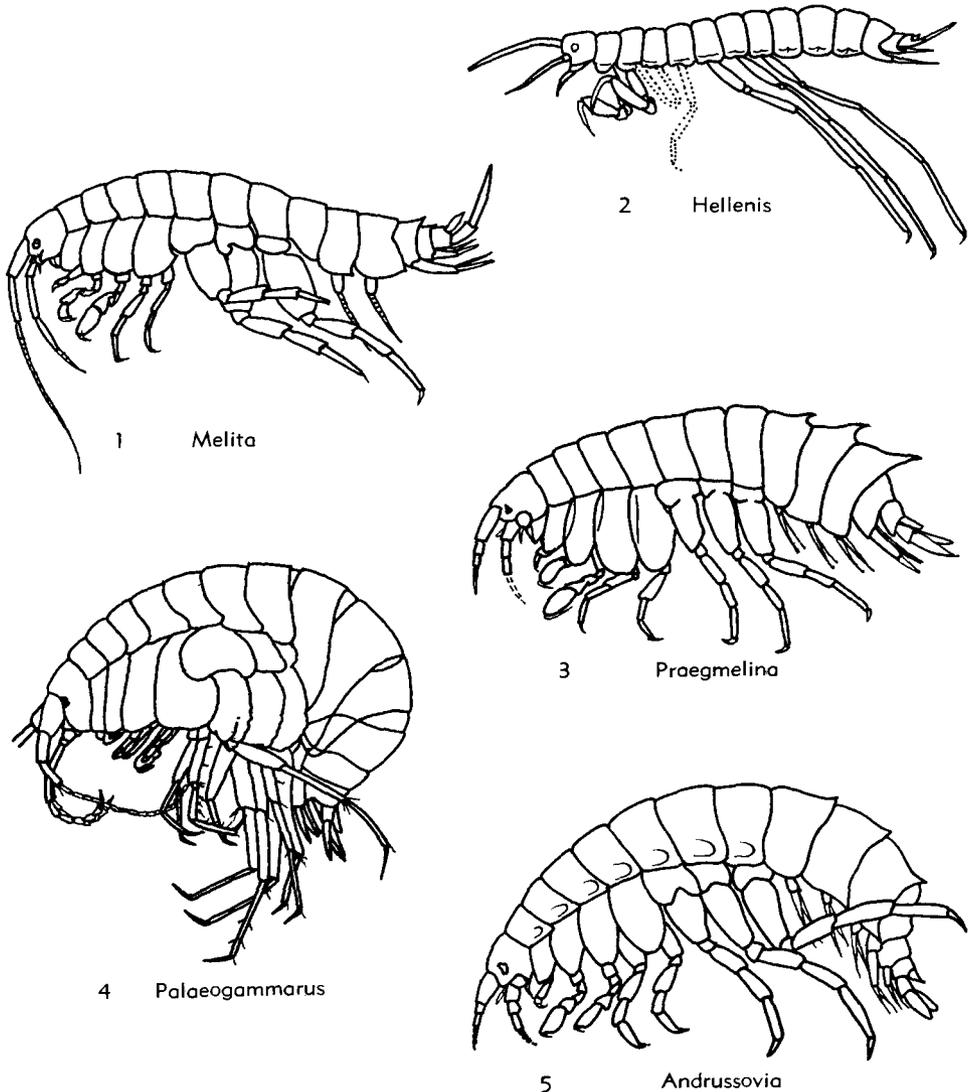


FIG. 207. Gammaridea, Gammaridae (p. R390).

few with basis little expanded in last three pereopods; pleopods only rarely uniramous; uropod 3 rarely losing one or both rami, which are often foliaceous, usually projecting beyond uropods 1 and 2; telson either entire, partially cleft, or cleft to base, in some forms sexually dimorphic. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Gammarus** FABRICIUS, 1775, p. 418 [*\*Cancer pulex* LINNÉ, 1758; SD ICZN Opinion 104, 1928]. Cephalon without distinct rostrum; body lacking carinae, teeth, and tubercles; dorsal spicules in median and lateral groups on pleonites 4 to 6. Antennules usually longer than antennae but with shorter peduncle; accessory flagellum with 1 to 4 segments; basal endite of maxillules with continuous row of strong, plumose setae on inner margin; outer lobe with 10 or 11 serrate spines; tip of right palp with short thick spines, those of left palp being longer, thinner; coxal plates 1 to 4 usually deep, 4th with distinct lobe occupying distal portion of posterior border, gnathopods subchelate, 2nd usually larger than 1st, both stronger in male; 3rd uropods large, biramous; exopods with 2 segments, 2nd being short; telson deeply cleft. Branchiae simple. [Boreal-temperate-subtropical.] ?*U.Eoc.*, Rec.—FIG. 206,1. *G. locusta* (LINNÉ); lat.,  $\times 6$  (261a).

[None of the various reports compiled by VAN STRAELEN (299) and MAIKOVSKY (185) claiming the occurrence of *Gammarus* in the fossil record is convincing. Undoubtedly the fossils in question belong to the Gammaridea but need to be studied in far greater detail before trustworthy generic determinations can be made.]

**Andrussovia** DERJAVIN, 1927, p. 190 [*\*A. sokolovi*; SD BIRSHTYEN, 1960]. Rostrum small; 1st 3 pleonites and in one species posterior pereonites dorsally carinate; pleonites 2 and 3 with subquadrate posterolateral corners; antennules and antennae short, subequal, accessory flagellum apparently absent; gnathopods alike, subchelate; coxal plates 1 to 4 large, deep; basis of last 3 pereopods scarcely expanded; uropod 3 comparatively long, endopod well developed. *M.Mio.*, USSR (Caspian).—FIG. 207,5. *\*A. sokolovi*, lat.,  $\times 5.4$  (353).

**Hellenis** PETUNNIKOV, 1914, p. 153 [*\*H. saltatorius*; OD] [= *Prionchelius* PETUNNIKOV, 1914; *Tetrachelius* PETUNNIKOV, 1914]. B.dy slender; antennules and antennae short, antennules being longer; coxal plates 1 to 4 small, shallow; gnathopods subequal, large with proximal end of propodus slender; last 3 pereopods long, slender; uropod 2 short; uropod 3 much longer. *L.Mio.*, USSR (Caspian).—FIG. 207,2. *\*H. saltatorius*, lat.,  $\times 15$  (345).

**Melita** LEACH, 1814, p. 403 [*\*Cancer palmatus* MONTAGU, 1804; OD]. Cephalon not rostrate. Pereon smooth; pleon usually with one or more segments dorsally dentate and armed with bristles;

antennules longer, more slender than antennae, with accessory flagellum; mouth parts normal; several setae on basal endite of maxillules, 11 setae on more distal endite; 1st gnathopods small, subchelate, 2nd larger, in some species with left and right unequal in males, in some nearly chelate; 4th coxal plate largest, emarginate posteriorly; basis of last 3 pereopods well expanded, last 2 subequal, longer than others; 2nd uropod shortest; 3rd largest by far, with very large exopod and tiny endopod; telson small, deeply cleft. [МАЙКОВСКИЙ (185) has reported *M. palmata* from the Lower Oligocene of Alsace.] *L.Oligo.-Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 207,1. *\*M. palmata* (MONTAGU), *L.Oligo.*, Rec., lat.,  $\times 7$  (261a).

**Palaeogammarus** ZADDACH, 1864, p. 10 [*\*P. sambiensis*; OD]. Antennules longer than antennae, with thick 1st peduncular segment and accessory flagellum of 2 segments; coxal plates 1 to 4 very deep; gnathopods subequal, subchelate; propodus rounded; last pereopod shorter than preceding one; basis of last 3 pereopods expanded, oval; 4th and 5th pleonites with marginal denticles posteriorly; uropod 3 short, biramous; endopod reduced; telson deeply cleft. [According to BOUSFIELD (personal communication) this genus is much like *Crangonyx* BATE.] *U.Eoc.* (*Baltic amber*).—FIG. 207,4. *P. balticus* LUCKS; lat.,  $\times 15$  (365).

**Praegmelina** DERJAVIN, 1927, p. 187 [*\*P. andrussovi*; SD BIRSHTYEN, 1960]. Cephalon without conspicuous rostrum; pereon with pair of low lateral ridges formed from single pair of prominences on each somite; 1st 3 pleonites dorsally carinate; 2nd and 3rd with acutely produced posterolateral corners; antennules and antennae short, subequal, accessory flagellum not obvious; mouth parts apparently normal; gnathopods subequal, subchelate, small; coxal plates large and deep; basis of last 3 pereopods not expanded; uropod 3 of moderate size with well-developed endopod. *M.Mio.*, USSR (Caspian).—FIG. 207,3. *\*P. andrussovi*, lat.,  $\times 2.5$  (353).

## Suborder CAPRELLIDEA Leach, 1814

[= *Laemodipoda* LATREILLE, 1817]

First and second thoracomeres fused to cephalon; palp of maxilliped usually present; thoracopods four and five nearly always vestigial or absent; coxae of thoracopods small, commonly fused to body; pleon strongly reduced, with appendages vestigial or absent; body either slender and very elongate, or dorsoventrally flattened; eyes small. *Rec.*

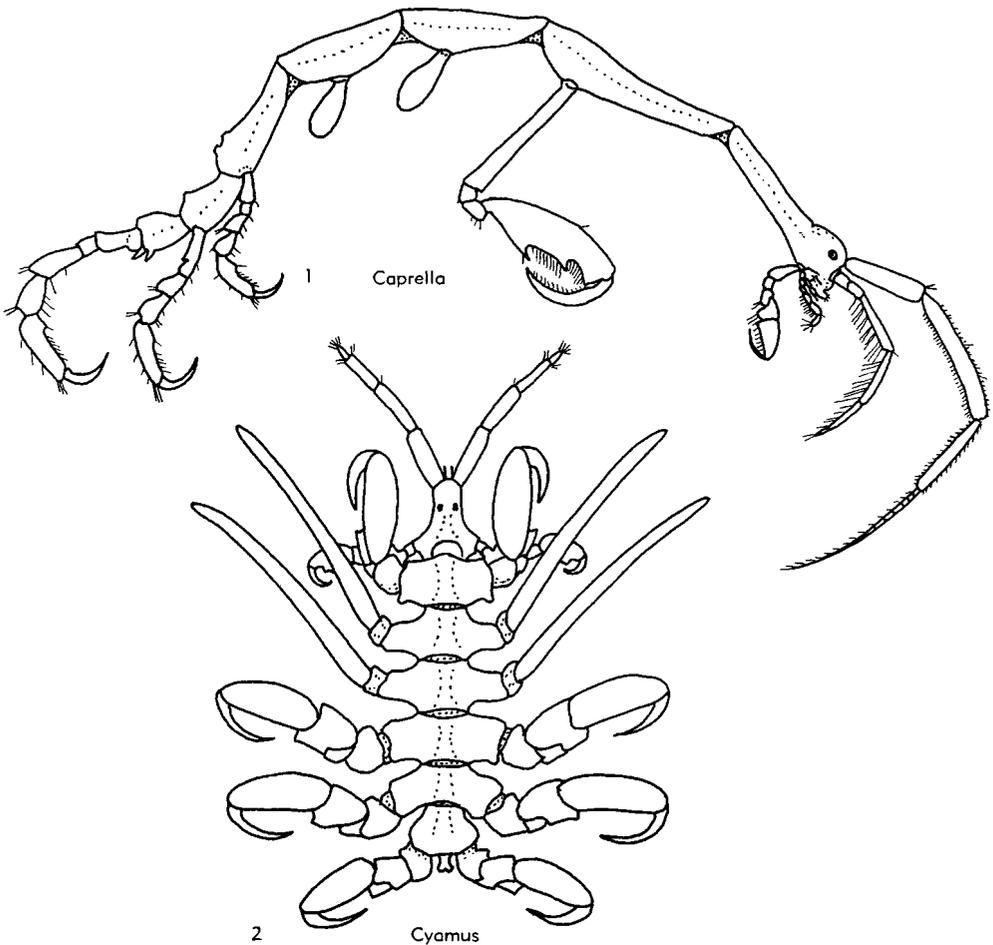


FIG. 208. Caprellidea: 1, *Caprella linearis* (LINNÉ) (Caprellidae); ♀, lat. view,  $\times 5.2$  (261a); 2, *Cyamus boopis* LÜTKEN (Cyamidae); ♂, dorsal view,  $\times 3$  (261a).

This suborder consists of two families, the Caprellidae DANA (1852), which are free-living forms (Fig. 208,1), and the Cyamidae WHITE (1847), which are ectoparasites on whales (Fig. 208,2).

#### Suborder HYPERIIDEA Latreille, 1831

First thoracomere fused to cephalon; maxilliped without palp; coxae of thoracopods two to eight small or fused to body; head usually enlarged, conspicuous; eyes generally very large, commonly covering

most of surface of head; pleon well developed; pleonites generally free with appendages well developed (Fig. 209). *Rec.*

#### Suborder INGOLFIELLIDEA Hansen, 1903

First thoracomere fused to cephalon; maxillipeds with palp; coxae of thoracopods two to eight small; body elongate; articulated eye lobes may occur, but without visual surfaces; pleon well developed; pleonites free; pleopods one to three and uropod three vestigial (Fig. 210). *Rec.*

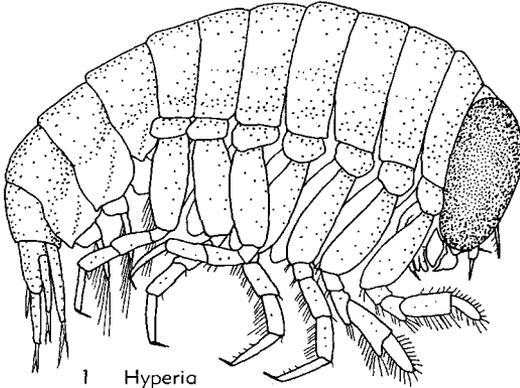


FIG. 209. Hyperiidea: *Hyperia medusarum* MÜLLER; ♀, lat. view,  $\times 3.9$  (261a).

### Suborder UNCERTAIN

Tracks or burrows supposed to have been made by amphipods have been reported from the Devonian (DAHMER, 1938), Triassic (RÜCKLIN, 1938), and Jurassic (PUTZER, 1938; WEISS, 1940) of Germany.

### Order ANTHRACOCARIDACEA Brooks, 1962

Carapace short, covering only first two thoracomeres; sixth pleonite not fused to telson. *Miss.*

BROOKS (55), following CALMAN (1933), has placed this order tentatively in the Peracarida. The general form of its carapace and body suggests possible affinity with the Tanaidacea, Spelaeogriphacea, or Thermosbaenacea and indeed may prove eventually to belong to one of the extant orders.

### Family ANTHRACOCARIDIDAE Brooks, 1962

Characters of order. *Miss.*

*Anthracocaris* CALMAN, 1933, p. 562 [*\*Palaeocaris scoticus* PEACH, 1882; OD]. Posterolateral expansions of cephalic shield defined by dorsolateral furrows, indicating probable branchial chambers; pleon not abbreviated, not clearly differentiated from pereion; telson large, styliform. *L. Carb., Scot.*—FIG. 211, 1. *\*A. scotica* (PEACH); dorsal,  $\times 3$  (348b).

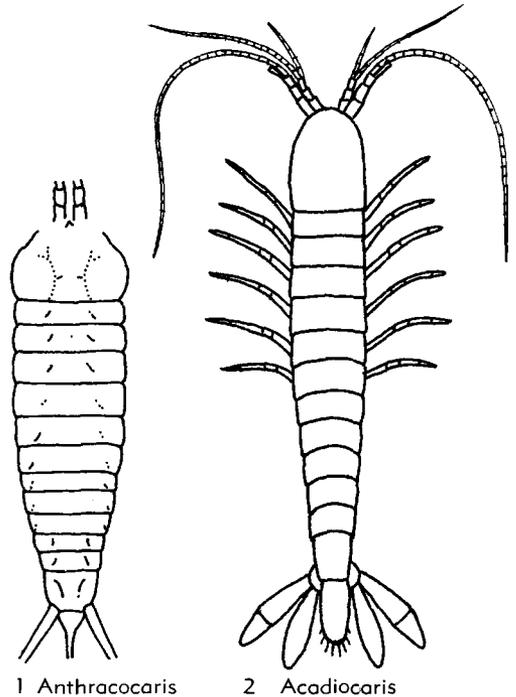


FIG. 211. Anthracocaridacea; Anthracocarididae (p. R392-R393).

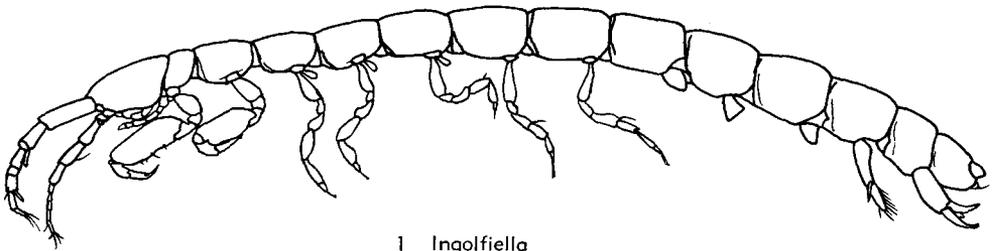


FIG. 210. Ingolfiellidea: *Ingolfiella abyss* HANSEN; lat. view,  $\times 33$  (360).

*Acadiocaris* BROOKS, 1962, p. 273 [*\*Palaeocaris novascotica* COPELAND, 1957; OD]. Telson spatulate; uropods with narrow, lobate, leaflike rami. *M. Miss.*, Can.—FIG. 211,2. *\*A. novascotia* (COPELAND); dorsal (reconstr.),  $\times 5$  (Hessler, n).

#### PERACARIDA INCERTAE SEDIS

A number of fossils from Europe and North America which have been referred to peracaridan orders either clearly do not belong to them or they are so fragmentary that the evidence for classifying them is insufficient (55, 299). Such fossils are: *Houghtonites* [*Mollisonia*] *gracilis* WALCOTT (1912) from the Cambrian; *Necro-*

*gammarus salwayi* WOODWARD (1871), from the Silurian; *Oxyuropoda ligioides* CARPENTER & SWAIN (1908), *Gitocrangon granulatus* RICHTER (1848), *Praearcturus gigas* WOODWARD (1871), and *Palaeoisopus problematicus* BROILI (1928) from the Devonian; *Camptophyllia eltringhami* GILL (1924), *Diplostylus dawsoni* SALTER (1863), and *Amphipeltis paradoxus* SALTER (1863) from the Carboniferous; *Diaphanosoma rare* BILL (1914) from the Triassic; *Mysis steinlai* GEINITZ (1843) from the Cretaceous; and *Opsipeton gracilis* HEER (1865) and *Norna lithophila* MÜNSTER (1840) from the Jurassic.

## EUCARIDA

By R. C. MOORE

### Superorder EUCARIDA Calman, 1904

Highly developed eumalacostracans having carapace fused dorsally with all thoracic somites, compound eyes located on movable stalks, adults without lacinia mobilis on mandibles, eggs usually attached to abdominal appendages, young typically developing with metamorphosis, free-swimming nauplius stage in primitive forms. *Permotrias-Rec.*

The Eucarida comprise the host of decapods—unnumbered kinds of shrimps, crayfishes, lobsters, and crabs—and the cos-

mopolitan oceanic nektonic crustaceans known as euphasiaceans, which are a very important food source for whales. Among decapods, the caridoid facies may be retained by adults, but the body shape and nature of appendages is greatly modified in crabs. The gills of decapods generally are developed in several series, all protected by the carapace. Three pairs of their thoracic limbs are specialized as maxillipeds. The young generally hatch at a postnauplius stage. In euphasiaceans the gills occur in a single exposed series and none of the pereopods are developed as maxillipeds. Instead, all may be specialized for filter-feeding.

## EUPHAUSIACEA

By ROBERT R. HESSLER

[Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution]

## ADULT MORPHOLOGY

All euphausiaceans conform to a narrowly circumscribed morphological pattern. The general body form is prawnlike (Fig. 212). The carapace, which is fused to all thoracic somites, is usually divided by a cervical furrow and terminates anteriorly in a short or moderately produced rostrum. Pleura, in contrast to those of the Decapoda, are weakly developed and do not enclose branchial chambers. They occur on all but the last of the abdominal somites.

The antennules consist of two flagella and a three-segmented peduncle. The antennae are composed of a two-segmented protopod, endopodal flagellum, and exopodal scaphocerite. The uniramous mandibles usually are provided with three-segmented palps. Their gnathal lobes lack saw bristles and lacinia mobilis. The three-segmented main body of the maxillules is produced medially into two endites and rather commonly bear a pseudoexopod laterally. The palp of maxillules is unjointed in all genera except *Bentheuphausia*, where it consists of two segments. The maxillae are composed of a three-segmented protopod,

with endites on the second and third segments, an exopod, and a palp. The palp is a single segment except in *Bentheuphausia* where it is three-segmented. Paragnaths are well developed.

All thoracic limbs are basically similar in structure (Fig. 213). Coxa and basis are distinct from each other and bear medial endites which are more strongly developed on the anterior thoracopods, but not to such a degree as to constitute gnathobases. Except where reduction has occurred, all limbs bear a leaflike, two-segmented exopod furnished with long, natatory setae. The five-segmented endopod is much larger and carries medially directed setae. Its knee occurs between the second and third segments. In all euphausiaceans except *Bentheuphausia* the eighth thoracopod is markedly reduced. The seventh thoracopod is also reduced in many members of the Euphausiidae.

Raptorial structures have been derived from the modification and elongation of the second thoracic endopod in *Thysanoessa* and *Nematoscelis*, the third thoracic endopod in *Nematobranchion* (Fig. 214) and

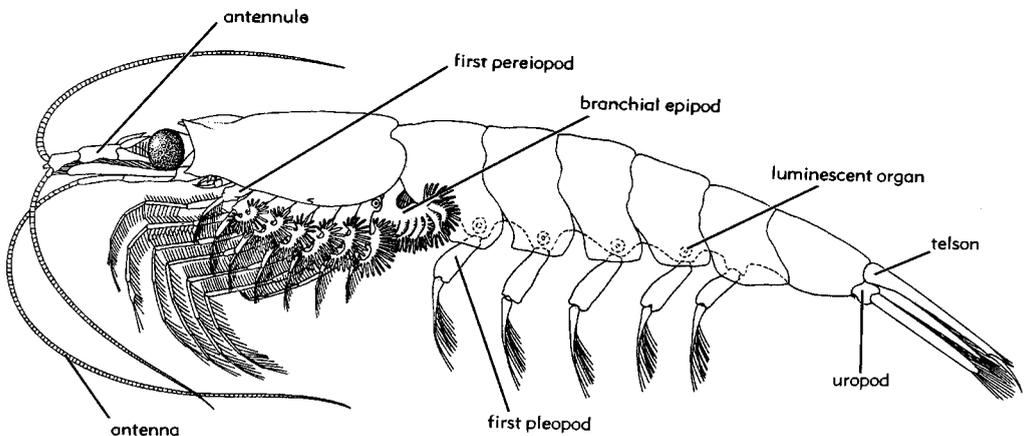


FIG. 212. Morphology of a typical euphausiid, *Meganyctiphanes norvegica* (M. Sars). Lateral view of adult, approx.  $\times 7.8$  (361).

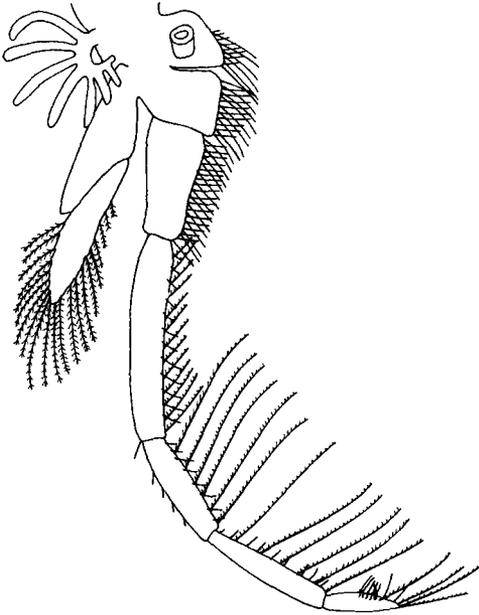


FIG. 213. Typical euphausiid second thoracopod, *Euphausia* sp. (=SARS' *E. pellucida*),  $\times 25$  (377a).

*Stylocheiron*, and both the second and third endopods in *Tessarabrachion*.

In general, all thoracic limbs are provided with branchial epipods. The branchiae are simple on the first thoracopods, but become progressively larger and more complexly ramified posteriorly. On forms having raptorial limbs, branchiae may be absent anteriorly, but posteriorly, even when the rest of the limb is reduced or absent they remain well developed.

The pleopods consist of a two-segmented protopod and flat unjointed exopod and endopod, the latter provided with an appendix interna. In males of all genera except *Bentheuphausia* endopods of the first and second pairs of pleopods bear an additional medial lobe, the appendix masculina, which functions in copulation. The form of this structure may be quite complex, and it figures importantly in systematics of lower categories.

The uropods are composed of an unjointed protopod and two elongate, unjointed rami, except in *Bentheuphausia*, where the exopod is indistinctly two-segmented (Fig. 215).

Luminescent organs are found in all euphausiaceans except *Bentheuphausia*. They are located in stalks of the compound eyes, coxae of the second and seventh thoracopods, and sternites of the first four abdominal somites. In *Stylocheiron* many of these organs have disappeared.

The telson is provided with a pair of pointed, subapical spines (Fig. 215), which, although reminiscent of the caudal rami of the phyllocarids and many lower Crustacea, are actually enlarged marginal setae (Fig. 216).

The paired compound eyes are stalked and movable. In genera in which the second or third thoracic limb, or both of these limbs, has become modified into a raptorial structure, the visual surfaces of the compound eyes are divided into dorsoanterior and lateral portions (Fig. 214).

Euphausiaceans range in length from less than 7 mm. to almost 5 cm.

## DEVELOPMENT

Euphausiacean development (Fig. 216) is divided into six smoothly intergrading stages designated as nauplius, metanauplius, calyptopis, furcilia, cyrtopia, and postlarval.

The oval, unsegmented body of the nauplius (Fig. 216,1) lacks compound eyes or mouth. Antennules, antennae, and mandibles are present, the latter two pairs being biramous and natatory.

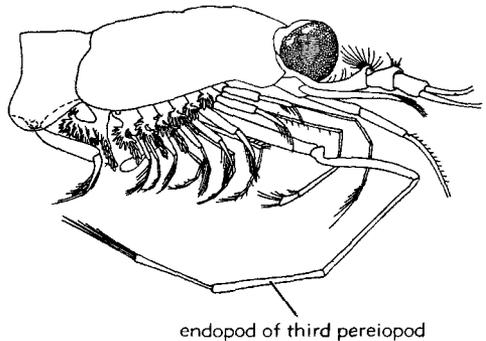


FIG. 214. *Nematobrachion boopis* (CALMAN); lateral view of anterior portion of adult, showing elongation of third pereiopod and subdivision of compound eye, approx.  $\times 5.5$  (348a).

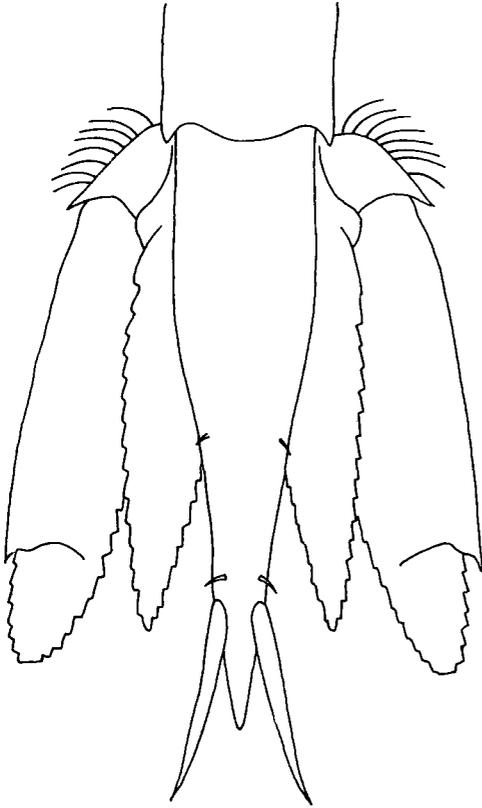


FIG. 215. *Bentheuphausia ambylops* (G. O. Sars), dorsal view of posterior end, showing uropods and telson (note paired subapical spines and compare with Fig. 216),  $\times 25$  (377a).

In the metanauplius (Fig. 216,2) rudiments of the maxillules, maxillae, and first thoracopods appear, while the mandibular palp is lost.

The abdomen becomes distinct from the rest of the body in the calytopis stage (Fig. 216,3,4). Compound eyes develop, but they are immobile and covered by the newly developing carapace. The mandible, maxillules, maxillae, and first thoracopods develop further, and uropods appear.

In the furcilia stage (Fig. 216,5) the compound eyes become movable and project beyond the sides of the carapace, while the anterior thoracic limbs and the pleopods develop.

Up to this point the antennae have retained their naupliar form and natatory

function, but beginning with the cyrtopia stage they assume the basic adult morphology and no longer serve in locomotion. The posterior thoracic limbs develop.

In the postlarval stage further details of adult form are attained gradually.

## MODE OF LIFE

Euphausiaceans invariably are members of the marine zooplankton, where they are second only to copepods in importance as part of the food chain. The vast majority of species are found in the open ocean, but some, particularly species of *Nyctiphanes*, *Meganyctiphanes*, and *Pseudeuphausia*, live in coastal waters. Most species occur at or near the ocean surface, and these usually exhibit diurnal migration. *Bentheuphausia*, on the other hand, is an abyssal form with vestigial eyes.

Temperature is probably the most important physical factor determining distribution. This being so, depth in the water column is as important as latitude as a distributional parameter (87).

Most euphausiaceans are filter-feeders, with detritus, algae, and copepods (?passively captured) making up the bulk of their stomach contents. Where copepods form a significant percent of the diet, such as that of *Meganyctiphanes*, active predation may occur (MACDONALD, 1927). Genera with raptorial limbs are considered to be more wholly predaceous, and with this is correlated specialized eyes and a modified or enlarged stomach (339). However, one representative of this group (*Thysanoessa raschi*) is known to feed on detritus, possibly using its elongate limbs to stir up mud.

## FOSSIL RECORD

PEACH (226) has included the Carboniferous genera *Anthracophausia* and *Crangopsis* in the Euphausiacea. Most subsequent authors have not concurred, although ZIMMER & GRUNER (339) agree that *Anthracophausia* is a euphausiacean. Since PEACH clearly illustrated and described the eighth thoracic somite of *Anthracophausia* as being a complete, sclerotized ring, free from

the carapace, this genus cannot be a euphausiacean, although it may very well be related to a precursor of the order. An additional reason for the exclusion of these genera from the Euphausiacea is their possession of an unjointed sympod (55).

A tabulation of the suprageneric divisions of the Euphausiacea showing their stratigraphic occurrence and numbers of contained genera is given on page R114.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Order EUPHAUSIACEA Dana, 1852

Eucarida retaining primitive caridoid facies, no thoracopods modified as maxillipeds, all with branchial epipodites which are not covered by carapace; exopod present on thoracopods which are not reduced;

luminescent organs nearly always present. Young hatch as nauplii. *Rec.*

### Family BENTHEUPHAUSIIDAE Colosi, 1917

Characters of type genus. *Rec.*

**Bentheuphausia** G. O. SARS, 1885, p. 108 [*\*Thysanopoda(?) ambylops* G. O. SARS, 1883; OD]. Eighth thoracopod reduced but with complete structure; endopods of maxillules 2-segmented, whereas those of maxillae are 3-segmented; 1st and 2nd pleopods not strongly modified for copulation; luminescent organs absent; eyes reduced. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 215. *\*B. ambylops* (G. O. SARS), cosmop.; telson and uropods, dorsal,  $\times 25$  (377a).

### Family EUPHAUSIIDAE Dana, 1850

[*nom. correct.* WILLEMES SUHM, 1875 (pro Euphausiidae DANA, 1850)]

Eighth and commonly seventh thoracopods reduced and simplified; endopods of

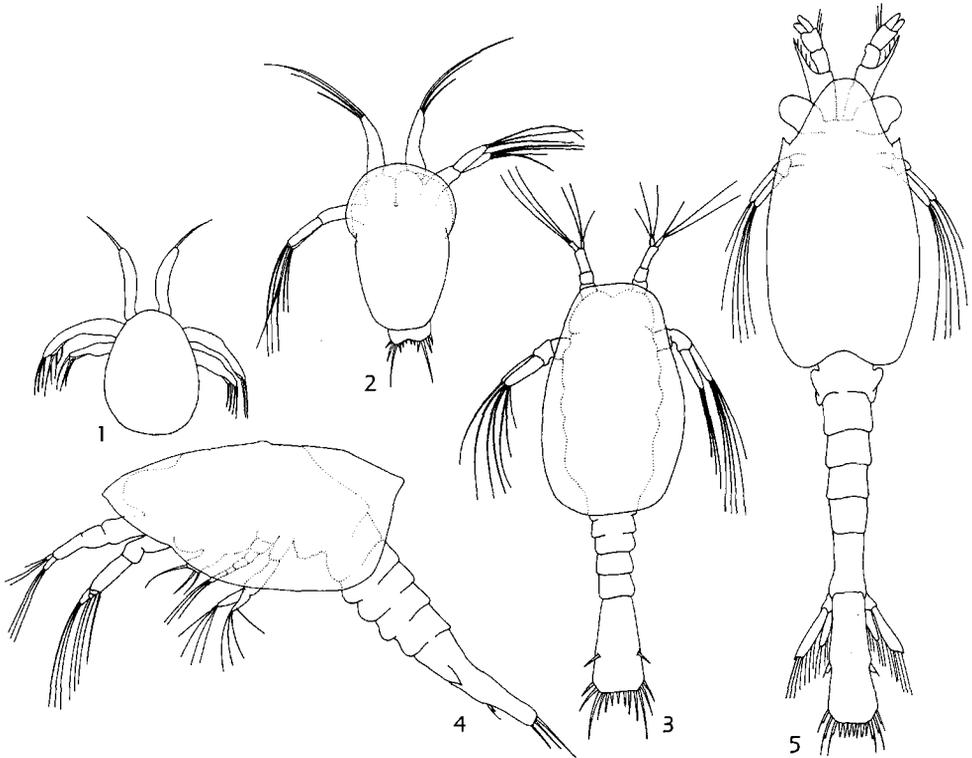


FIG. 216. Developmental stages of larval *Euphausia superba* DANA: 1, first nauplius, dors.,  $\times 25$ ; 2, metanauplius, dors.,  $\times 25$ ; 3, second calyptopis, dors.,  $\times 20$ ; 4, second calyptopis, lat.,  $\times 25$ ; 5, second furcilia, dors.,  $\times 35$  (97).

maxillules and maxillae unjointed; first and second pleopods of male strongly modified for copulation; luminescent organs present; eyes well developed. *Rec.*, cosmop.

Ten genera are recognized in this family, three representative ones being described and figured here.

**Euphausia** DANA, 1850, p. 130 [*\*E. superba*; SD HANSEN, 1905]. First 6 thoracopods approximately equal in length; eyes spherical; 7th and 8th thoracopods rudimentary in both sexes, forming small, unjointed, setose processes; antennular peduncle almost invariably alike in both sexes; first pleopods of male with setae on setiferous lobe of endopod. *Rec.*, cosmop. except high Arctic. —FIG. 213. *E. sp.* (= *E. pellucida* SARS, 1885; see HANSEN, 1905); 2nd thoracopod,  $\times 25$  (377a).

—FIG. 216, 1-5. *\*E. superba* DANA, Antarctic; 1-5, developmental stages (97).

**Meganyctiphanes** HOLT & TATTERSALL, 1905, p. 103 [*\*Thysanopoda norvegica* M. SARS, 1857; OD]. Only 8th thoracopod rudimentary; 6th and 7th thoracopods with exopod in both sexes; both terminal and proximal processes of appendix masculina developed. *Rec.*, N.Atl., Medit. —FIG. 212. *\*M. norvegica* (M. SARS), N.Atl., Medit.; adult showing morphological features, lat., approx.  $\times 5.5$  (361).

**Nematobranchion** CALMAN, 1905, p. 153 [*\*Nematodactylus boöpis* CALMAN, 1896; OD]. Third thoracopod elongate, 7th with 5 endopodal segments; full complement of luminescent organs; branchiae well developed. *Rec.*, trop.-temp. Atl.-Pac.-Ind.O. —FIG. 214. *\*N. boöpis* (CALMAN); anterior half of body, lat., approx.  $\times 5.5$  (348a).

# TREATISE ON INVERTEBRATE PALEONTOLOGY

*Prepared under Sponsorship of  
The Geological Society of America, Inc.*

*The Paleontological Society    The Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists  
The Palaeontographical Society    The Palaeontological Association*

Directed and Edited by  
RAYMOND C. MOORE

Revisions and Supplements Directed and Edited by  
CURT TEICHERT

## Part R ARTHROPODA 4

By H. K. BROOKS, F. M. CARPENTER, M. F. GLAESSNER, GERHARD HAHN, R. R. HESSLER, R. L. HOFFMAN, L. B. HOLTHUIS, R. B. MANNING, S. M. MANTON, LAVON McCORMICK, R. C. MOORE, W. A. NEWMAN, A. R. PALMER, W. D. I. ROLFE, PAUL TASCH, †T. H. WITHERS, and V. A. ZULLO

VOLUME 2

THE GEOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA, INC.  
and  
THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

1969

© 1969 BY THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS  
AND  
THE GEOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA, INC.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

Library of Congress Catalogue Card  
Number: 53-12913

Text Composed by  
THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS PRINTING SERVICE  
Lawrence, Kansas

Illustrations and Offset Lithography  
THE MERIDEN GRAVURE COMPANY  
Meriden, Connecticut

Binding  
RUSSELL RUTTER COMPANY  
New York City

Published 1969

Distributed by The Geological Society of America, Inc., P.O. Box 1719, Boulder, Colo., 80302, to which all communications should be addressed.

# PART R

## ARTHROPODA 4

By H. K. BROOKS, F. M. CARPENTER, M. F. GLAESSNER, GERHARD HAHN, R. R. HESSLER, R. L. HOFFMAN, L. B. HOLTHUIS, R. B. MANNING, S. M. MANTON, LAVON McCORMICK, R. C. MOORE, W. A. NEWMAN, A. R. PALMER, W. D. I. ROLFE, PAUL TASCH, †T. H. WITHERS, and V. A. ZULLO

### VOLUME 2

## DECAPODA

By M. F. GLAESSNER

[University of Adelaide, Australia] [The author wishes to acknowledge with gratitude the generous assistance with problems of nomenclature given by Dr. L. B. HOLTHUIS (Leiden), important information supplied by Professor L. VIA-BOADA (Barcelona), and the valuable help of Miss S. SUMMER (Adelaide) in compilation of data and preparation of the typescript.]

### CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R400
MORPHOLOGY .....	R401
General characters of skeleton .....	R401
Carapace .....	R402
Internal and ventral skeleton .....	R409
Abdomen .....	R413
Appendages .....	R415
Internal anatomy .....	R419
ONTOGENY AND GROWTH .....	R422
Larval and postlarval stages .....	R422
Molting .....	R422
Growth rates .....	R424
PALEOECOLOGY .....	R424
Habitats .....	R424
Adaptations .....	R426
Commensalism, symbiosis, and parasitism .....	R428
Indirect fossil evidence of life activities .....	R429
Fossilization .....	R433
STRATIGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION .....	R434
EVOLUTION .....	R435
Origin of Decapoda .....	R435
Phylogeny of Recent Decapoda .....	R436
Evaluation of paleontological data .....	R437
Revisions of decapod phylogeny .....	R438
CLASSIFICATION .....	R441
Early classifications .....	R441
Classifications by Beurlen and Glaessner .....	R442
Revisions subsequent to 1930 .....	R443
Treatise classification .....	R446
SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R446
Order Decapoda Latreille, 1803 .....	R446
Suborder Dendrobranchiata Bate, 1888 .....	R447
Infraorder Penaeidea de Haan, 1849 .....	R447

Superfamily Penaeoidea Rafinesque, 1815 .....	R447
Superfamily Sergestoidea Dana, 1852 .....	R450
Suborder Pleocyemata Burkenroad, 1963 .....	R451
Infraorder Stenopodidea Huxley, 1879 .....	R451
Infraorder Uncinidea Beurlen, 1930 .....	R451
Infraorder Caridea Dana, 1852 .....	R451
Infraorder Astacidea Latreille, 1803 .....	R455
Infraorder Palinura Latreille, 1803 .....	R463
Superfamily Glypheoidea Winckler, 1883 .....	R463
Superfamily Eryonoidea de Haan, 1841 .....	R468
Superfamily Palinuroidea Latreille, 1803 .....	R471
Infraorder Anomura H. Milne-Edwards, 1832 .....	R475
Superfamily Thalassinoidea Latreille, 1831 .....	R476
Superfamily Paguroidea Latreille, 1803 .....	R479
Superfamily Galatheoidea Samouelle, 1819 .....	R481
Superfamily Hippoidea Latreille, 1825 .....	R483
Infraorder Brachyura Latreille, 1803 .....	R484
Section Dromiacea de Haan, 1833 .....	R484
Superfamily Dromioidea de Haan, 1833 .....	R484
Superfamily Homoloidea White, 1847 .....	R489
Superfamily Dakoticancroidea Rathbun, 1917 .....	R491
Section Oxystomata H. Milne-Edwards, 1834 .....	R491
Superfamily Dorippoidea de Haan, 1841 .....	R492
Superfamily Calappoidea de Haan, 1833 .....	R494
Superfamily Raninoidea de Haan, 1841 .....	R498
Section Oxyrhyncha Latreille, 1803 .....	R502
Section Cancridea Latreille, 1803 .....	R508
Section Brachyrhyncha Borradaile, 1907 .....	R510
Superfamily Portunoidea Rafinesque, 1815 .....	R510
Superfamily Xanthoidea Dana, 1851 .....	R515
Superfamily Ocyppoidea Rafinesque, 1815 .....	R530
Uncertain superfamily .....	R531
Brachyura of uncertain systematic position .....	R532
Decapoda of uncertain systematic position .....	R532

## INTRODUCTION

[By R. C. MOORE]

Decapods are highly organized malacostracan crustaceans having larger average size than other groups and containing the most gigantic representative of the whole superclass—the Japanese spider crab with “wing spread” of its extended limbs attaining nearly four meters. The carapace is fused to all thoracic segments, as in the subclass Eucarida generally. As the name Decapoda indicates, the order is distinguished by the presence of ten thoracic legs, which consist of the five pairs of limbs that follow the three pairs of maxillipeds (modified thoracic limbs) behind the mandibles, maxillules, and maxillae. A char-

acteristic feature of the decapods is the large exopod (scaphognathite) of the maxilla. Distinctive structures of the gills and other morphological attributes are described subsequently.

Exceptional variety of form which is found in the host of decapod crustaceans has inevitably led to numerous difficult problems in classification. These are reviewed in an appropriate chapter of the general discussion which precedes the systematic descriptions. Because reference is made in morphological descriptions to broad taxonomic assemblages (e.g., Natantia, Reptantia, Macrura) formerly adopted

for decapod groups but not recognized in *Treatise* classification, it is useful to explain the older names which are referred to but not now accepted. The Natantia (swimmers) essentially include the prawnlike or shrimplike forms belonging to the Penaeidea, Caridea, and some other decapod groups now distinguished. All natantian decapods are long-tailed forms and on this account they have been included in the Macrura (macrurous decapods or macrurans). The remaining Macrura are Reptantia (crawlers) including Astacidea (lobsters and crayfishes) and Palinura (containing spiny lobsters). The Macrura are distinguished by the development of their abdomen from the Anomura (containing

hermit crabs) and the Brachyura (short-tails). This group, which includes the host of true crabs, is recognized in *Treatise* classification. Except for historical reference, the formal names Natantia, Reptantia, and Macrura are not used in the *Treatise*.

Many fossil decapods are known, even though the remains of many are incomplete. Some species are represented by numerous beautifully preserved specimens, whereas many other species and even genera are known from unique specimens, which may be incomplete and poorly preserved. The known range of the Decapoda is from Permian to Recent. Some of the common species are useful index fossils.

## MORPHOLOGY

### GENERAL CHARACTERS OF SKELETON

The body of the decapod Crustacea, like that of all Eumalacostraca, consists basically of a **cephalothorax**, a segmented **abdomen**, and appendages attached to each of the body segments (**somites**) (Fig. 217). The individual somites in common practice are designated by Roman numerals (I-XIII) in sequence from front to rear.

The **carapace**, a backward extension of the head integument, takes the place of the terga of all thoracic segments, though exceptionally the last one or two may remain free. The lateral portions of the carapace overhang the sides of the thorax to form the **branchiostegite**, which encloses a **branchial chamber**. The anterior margin of the carapace may be medially produced to form a **rostrum** or a broadly truncated or downturned anterior area (**deflexed front**). This may connect medially with the antennal sternum (**epistome**), which may also come into contact anterolaterally with the carapace. The ventral integument of the posterior part of the head and of the thorax is formed by narrow or wide **sternites**, which may be fused to form a **sternal plate**. Attached to it are apodemes forming the endoskeleton. It consists of complex **endosternites** and the lateral **endopleurites**

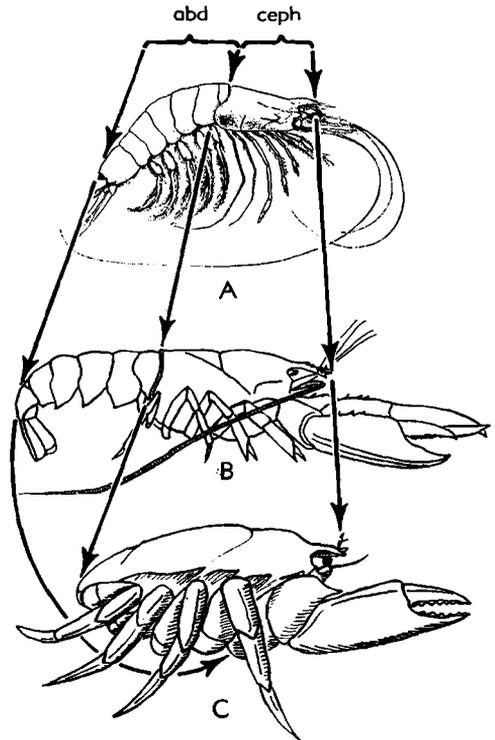


FIG. 217. Main divisions of the body in representative decapods (118).—A. *Penaeopsis*.—B. *Homarus*.—C. *Carcinus*. [EXPLANATION: *abd*, abdomen; *ceph*, cephalothorax (not to scale).]

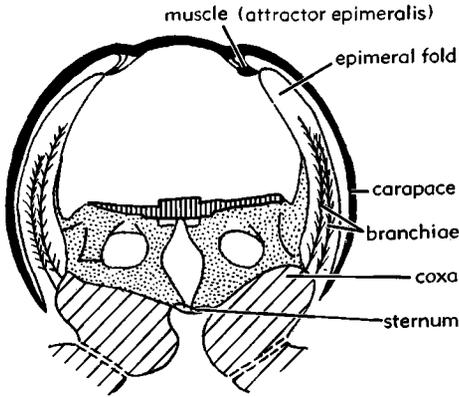


FIG. 218. Diagrammatic cross section of cephalothorax of reptantian decapod (118).

(epimera, BALSS) which connect through a steep fold (epimeral fold) with the margin of the branchiostegite, thus forming the walls and roof of the branchial chamber (Fig. 218). The posterior margin of the carapace overlaps the first somite of the abdomen and may be loosely hinged to it. Fusion of some of the six abdominal somites may occur.

### CARAPACE

The carapace is the most significant part of any fossil decapod, though strongly calcified portions of appendages (e.g., chelae) are more commonly found. It deserves, therefore, more detailed study than it has received in the living Decapoda, where taxonomic characters and more significant functional differences may be observed in weakly calcified appendages and in other organs of the soft body (e.g., gills, which are not normally fossilized).

The carapace consists of an extension of the fused integument of the anterior (cephalic) part of the cephalothorax and reaches backward to the abdomen, overlapping the posterior thoracic somites which have lost their dorsal integument. It is not the product of simple fusion of the dorsal integument of all cephalic and thoracic somites. In macrurans it is basically a cylindrical tubular structure, but in many Brachyura and some Anomura it is modified to cover internal organs arranged in

more or less conical shape. In many it is shieldlike and may be weakened or variously reduced, particularly in the Paguroidea and in various burrowing Decapoda.

The carapace is marked by systems of grooves, elevated areas (regions), spines, keels, and other sculptures (Fig. 219). These were observed by early students of decapod Crustacea (DESMAREST, 1822; H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834), and since then with varying success many attempts have been made to establish homologies of elements of carapace sculpture and to use them in studies of phylogeny and classification. In recent years the value of such studies has been questioned with reference to extremes in closely related Brachyura (e.g., *Carpilius*, in which the carapace is almost perfectly smooth and *Zosimus*, in which the regions are extremely subdivided). The establishment of homologies in the carapace is difficult or impossible where it is weakly calcified, as in many natantian decapods. These difficulties, however, do not rule out the applicability of comparative studies on appropriate objects.

### GROOVES

In Triassic and many Jurassic Decapoda the carapace shows clearly three transverse grooves, termed **cervical**, **postcervical**, and **branchiocardiac**. BOAS (1880) introduced a designation of carapace grooves by letters. A separate set of letters for natantians was later discarded in favor of that introduced for the reptantian forms, which, with modifications, is still widely used (Fig. 219). Though it is inconvenient in its employment of subscripts and lack of sequential order in morphological application of the letters, its continued use helps to keep earlier publications and illustrations readily intelligible and is preferable to introducing a new system. The letters correspond to descriptive names of carapace grooves as follows: *a*, branchiocardiac; *b*, antennar; *b*<sub>1</sub>, hepatic; *c*, postcervical; *d*, gastroorbital (from junction of *e* and *e*<sub>1</sub> toward orbit); *e-e*<sub>1</sub>, cervical; *i*, inferior.

GLAESSNER (118) and SECRETAN (267, 268) considered, simultaneously and independently, the three transverse grooves as remnants of somite boundaries (Fig. 219, 2,3). Earlier authors had recognized the

homology of  $e-e_1$  with the cervical groove of other macrurans. SECRETAN interpreted the three transverse grooves as the somite boundaries  $II/III$  (=mandibular somite),

$III/IV+IV/V$  and  $V/VI$  (=1st maxilliped segment), with an inward displacement of somites  $IV$  and  $VII$ , which do not appear on the surface of the thorax. GLAESSNER

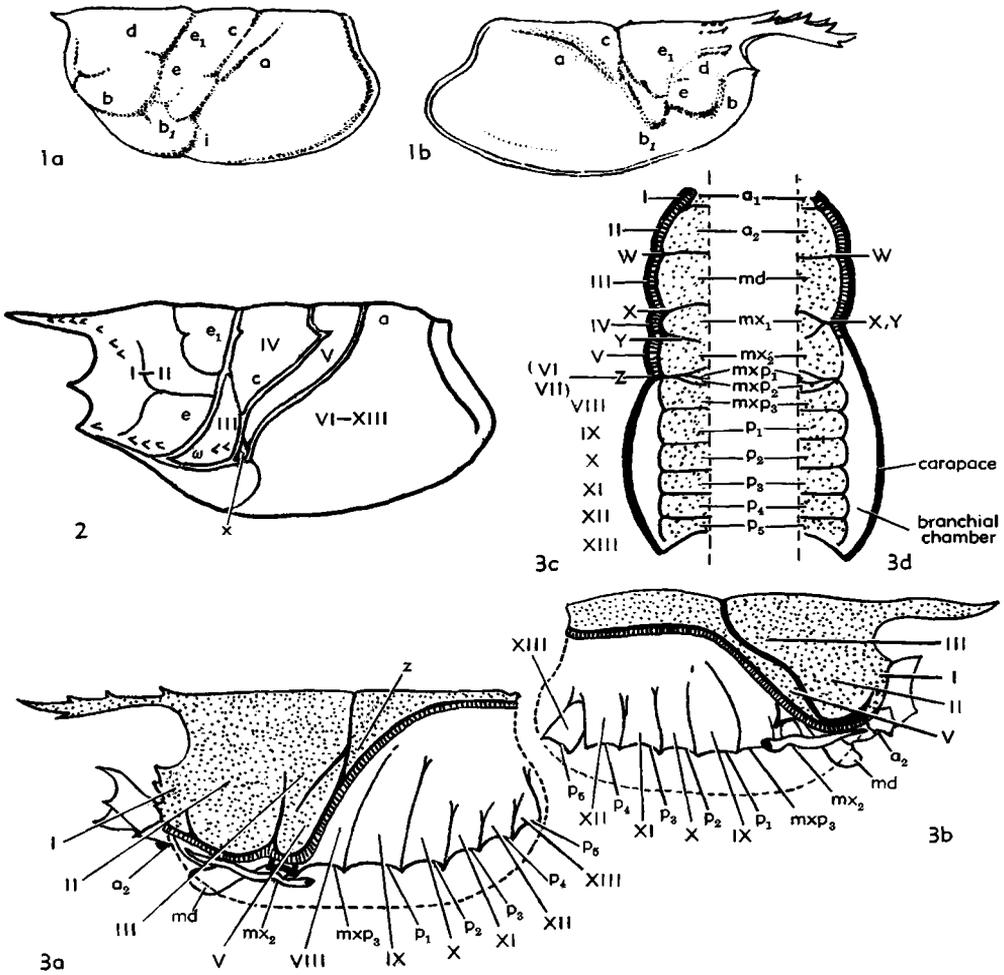


FIG. 219. Morphological features and relations of decapod carapace.

1. Carapace grooves in Nephropsidea according to BOAS & BOUVIER (51); 1a, *Klytia ventrosa* VON MEYER; 1b, *Nephrops norvegicus* (LINNÉ). [EXPLANATION: a, branchiocardiac; b, antennar;  $b_1$ , hepatic; c, postcervical; d, gastroorbital;  $e-e_1$ , cervical; i, inferior.]

2. Triassic decapod carapace showing suggested correspondence of transverse grooves (double lines, lettered as in 1) with segmental boundaries (Glaessner, n). [EXPLANATION:  $\omega$ , known position of mandibular external articulation; x, inferred position of attachment area of "adductor testis" muscle; somites numbered as in 3.]

3. Relation of carapace to cephalothoracic somites as interpreted by SECRETAN; 3a,b, lateral view of *Nephrops* and *Astacus* with branchiostegite removed (carapace stippled); 3c,d, diagrammatic horizontal sections of nephrosid (3c) and astacid (3d) (redrawn from Secretan, 268.) [EXPLANATION: carapace grooves—W, cervical; X-Y, postcervical; Z, branchiocardiac; somites—I, antennular ( $a_1$ ); II, antennar ( $a_2$ ); III, mandibular (md); IV, maxillular ( $mx_1$ ); V, maxillar ( $mx_2$ ); VI-VIII, maxillipedal ( $mxp_1$ ,  $mxp_2$ ,  $mxp_3$ ); IX-XIII, pereopodal ( $p_1$ - $p_5$ ); somites I and II not separately delineated in any decapod; branchiostegite covers thoracic somites VI-XIII.]

suggested that (in this numbering of somites, which is disputed)  $e-e_1$  corresponds to III/III+III/IV,  $c$  to IV/V and  $a$  to V/VI, the tergal part of the mandibular somite being displaced downward rather than inward. The grooves are not boundaries of muscle attachments, nor do they serve for the attachment of membranes, but groove  $a$  corresponds to the boundary of the branchial chamber. The part of the carapace

posterolaterally from this groove is the branchiostegite. Groove  $i$  separates it in many Decapoda from the convex anterior portion of the branchial chamber, of which  $b-b_1$  is the upper margin. This basic system of grooves is also recognizable in many Penaeidea (296). It is modified in many Caridea by the disappearance of  $c$  and in reptant decapods by the reduction of either  $c$  or  $e_1$ , in which case the postcervical groove

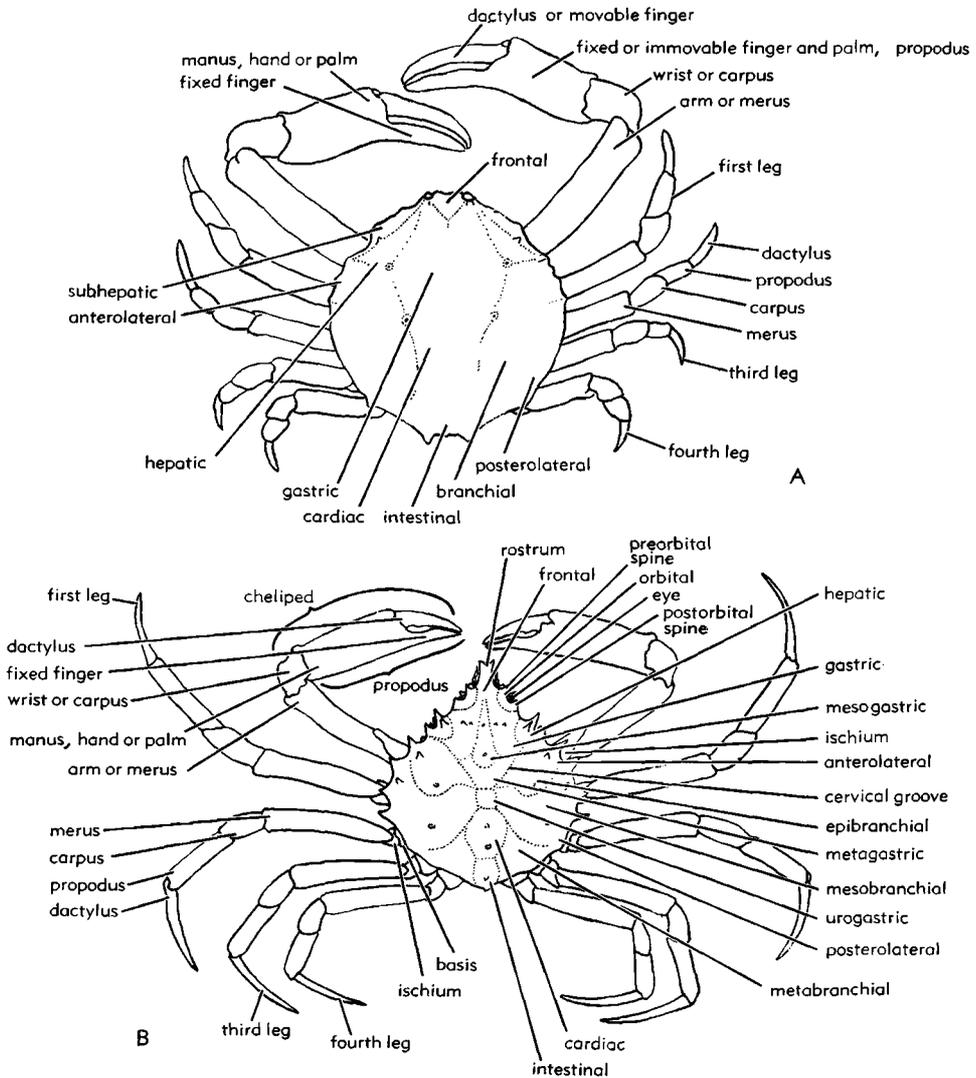


FIG. 220. Descriptive terminology of carapace regions and legs in crabs (redrawn from Rathbun, 234, 237, 243, 245).—A. Oxystomata (Leucosiidae).—B. Oxyrhyncha (Majidae).—C. Brachyrhyncha (Portunidae).—D. Brachyrhyncha (Grapsidae).

takes the place and appearance of the cervical groove in dorsal aspect—a fact misinterpreted by BOUVIER (51) and later by VAN STRAELEN but correctly noted by BOAS (44) and later by BOUVIER (52) and others. In the greatly modified carapace of the Brachyura, *a* and *e-e<sub>1</sub>* are present in the Dromiacea, but groove *a* undergoes a progressive reduction in other crabs.

**REGIONS**

The terminology of the regions of the carapace, unlike that of the transverse grooves, is descriptive or topographic, without necessarily implying homology of the parts described or indicating the position of internal organs from which the names were taken. In the macrurans it is generally sufficient to distinguish anterior and

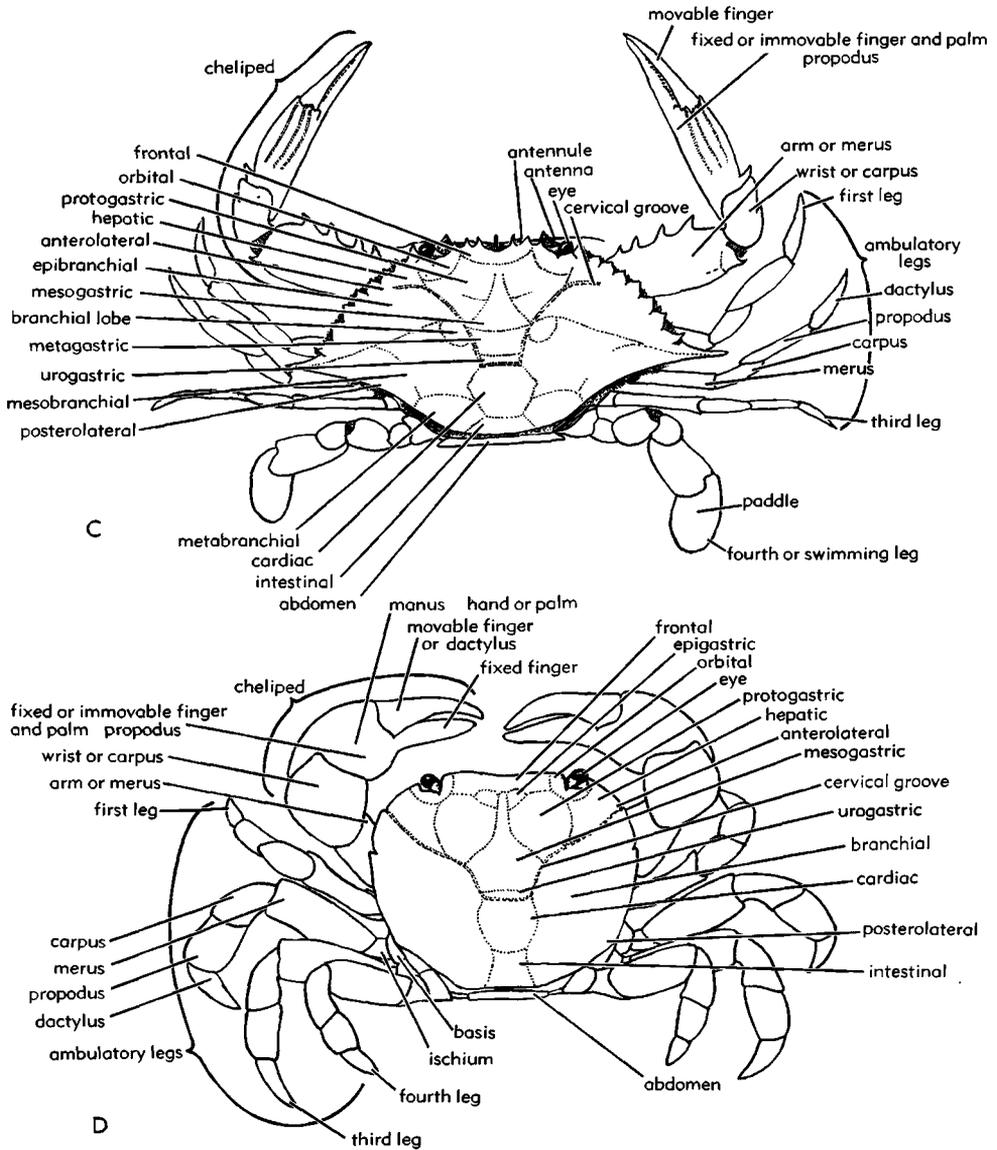


FIG. 220 (continued). See facing page.

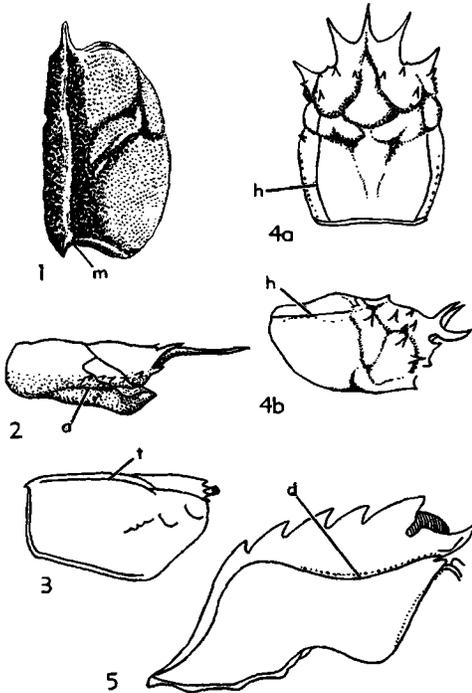


FIG. 221. Positions of lineae on decapod carapace.—1. *Klytia ventrosa* VON MEYER (*m*, median line).—2. *Munida bamfia* PENNANT (*a*, linea anomurica).—3. *Thalassina anomala* (HERBST) (*t*, linea thalassinica).—4. *Paromola cuvieri* (Risso); 4*a*, 4*b*, dorsal and lateral views (*h*, linea homolica).—5. *Macropipus vernalis* (Risso) (*d*, linea dromica = pleural suture) (1, after Oppel, 219; 2-5, after Bouvier, 52).

posterior regions of the carapace, separated by the cervical groove, or in its absence by the postcervical groove, and in the posterior region the dorsal notum from the lateral branchiostegites. A median, usually pointed, anterior projection of the carapace is the rostrum. The posterior margin of the carapace may show a prominent rim delimited by a furrow (**marginal groove**). In many Brachyura the carapace is sculptured into a characteristic pattern of raised areas delimited by smooth grooves. Where these are more highly developed, in an anastomosing pattern, the regions are considered as divided into areoles, to which DANA applied index letters and numbers for descriptive reference. In most crabs a simpler descriptive terminology suffices (Fig. 220). Anteriorly to the cervical groove, the medial

gastric region is distinguished from the frontal region and the anterolaterally placed orbital and hepatic regions. A median triangular area is referred to as **mesogastric** and behind it is the **metagastric area**, bordered laterally by the **protogastric area** and (close to the tip of the mesogastric tongue) the **epigastric area**. Behind the cervical groove are, medially, the **urogastric, cardiac,** and **intestinal regions** and laterally the **branchial regions** divided into **epi-, meso-,** and **metabranial areas** situated between the anterolateral and posterior margins. Not all of these regions and areas (or subregions) are necessarily delimited. The position of the topographic regions is not fixed in relation to the branchiocardiac grooves. The grooves laterally delimiting the cardiac region and in many decapods also uro- and metagastric regions may be described as lateral gastrocardiac. An important evolutionary novelty in the carapace of some advanced macrurans and in many Brachyura is the acquisition of a **lateral margin**. The parts of the carapace placed ventrally from this margin are known, in accordance with the position of the corresponding dorsal regions, as **subbranchial, subhepatic,** and **suborbital**. These ventral regions commonly are delimited medially by a pleural suture (see below) from the **pterygostomial regions** on both sides of the buccal cavity.

A small, smooth protuberance on the carapace of many macrurans was observed by BOAS below the junction of grooves *e*, *b*, and *b*<sub>1</sub>. He designated it as *ω*. It covers the external articulation of the mandible on its endosternum and is a valuable pointer to the homologies of carapace grooves.

### LINEAE

In the living *Homarus* the mid-line of the carapace is weakly calcified and the carapace splits along this line in molting (Fig. 221). This is found also in fossil Astacidea. In the Thalassinoida a longitudinal uncalcified line extends on each side from below the orbital notch on the anterior end to the posterior margin. It was named **linea thalassinica** by BOAS (44). A line in a similar position is found in a

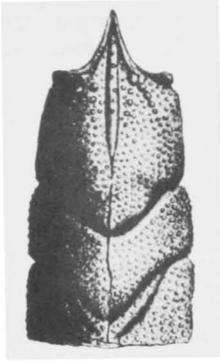


FIG. 222. Dorsal plate of *Klytia greppini* (OPPEL), M. Jur., Ger. (after Oppel, 219).

few living species of Penaeidae (*Parapenaeus*), Palaemonidae, and possibly Crangonidae. This is not, as BALSS surmised, a rudimentary boundary between notum and pleuron, as the lateral portions of the carapace are not homologous to pleura in the abdomen and in other arthropods.

The *linea thalassinica* may be comparable to the *linea anomurica* in Paguroidea, Galatheoidea (where it lies below the lateral margin), and Hippoidea; to the *linea homolica* in the Homolidae (above the lateral margin); and to the *linea dromica*, which is the name given in the Dromiidae to the **pleural suture**. This suture is found in all Brachyura. It opens and separates the pterygostomial regions from the rest of the carapace in molting. Possible homologies between these lines (which would exclude homologies between lateral margins) have been suggested by some and disputed by other authors. Some, if not all, lineae facilitate molting and are therefore comparable to facial sutures of trilobites, suggesting a reappearance of a latent character wherever calcification of the integument becomes strong enough to require it. It needs further investigation also in relation to the occurrence of transverse uncalcified sutures in Thalassinoidea and Paguroidea.

#### DORSAL PLATE

A spindle-shaped plate is intercalated in the median suture of the Erymidae, but not in other Astacidea (Fig. 222). VAN STRAELEN has noted a possible relation of this carapace element to the **dorsal organ** which

appears in Penaeidae, Sergestidae, and Caridea as a depression or projection in a similar position. It was considered by HANSEN as corresponding to the embryonic dorsal organ which may be concerned in the molting process.

#### RIDGES AND SPINES

In some natantian decapods the carapace bears strong longitudinal ridges. A median dorsal keel commonly continues backward from the rostrum. Lateral ridges are named after the adjoining regions of the carapace: gastroorbital or suborbital, antennal, hepatic, branchiocardiac. A sharp lateral margin develops in Eryonoidea, Scyllaridae, Anomura, and in most Brachyura. In the Leucosiidae a secondary anterolateral margin is situated below the pleural suture; the primary lateral margin is here named hepatic in its anterior part and branchial in its posterior part. The anterior margin in many forms is lobate, dentate, or spinose. Stridulating ridges are known on the anteroventral side but have not been described in fossils. The pterygostomial region may be modified by grooves facilitating the flow of water for respiration.

Spines on the anterior part of the carapace have an important function in protecting the eyes and antennules. They may occur on the upper and lower edges of the rostrum and in characteristic supraorbital, suborbital, and antennar positions. In the Brachyura, the first anterolateral spine or tooth is also extraorbital, and in Oxyrhyncha the development of supraorbital (supraocular) spines may be taxonomically important. Spines and tubercles on the dorsal surface of crabs vary greatly in position and are named after the regions. Transverse granulated ridges on the carapace of Portunidae are taxonomically important and are similarly named after the regions on which they occur. The carapace of Galatheididae shows such distinctive transverse ridging that even fragments can be correctly assigned to this family.

#### MUSCLE IMPRESSIONS AND APODEMAL PITS

Muscle attachment areas may be recognizable on the surface of the carapace as

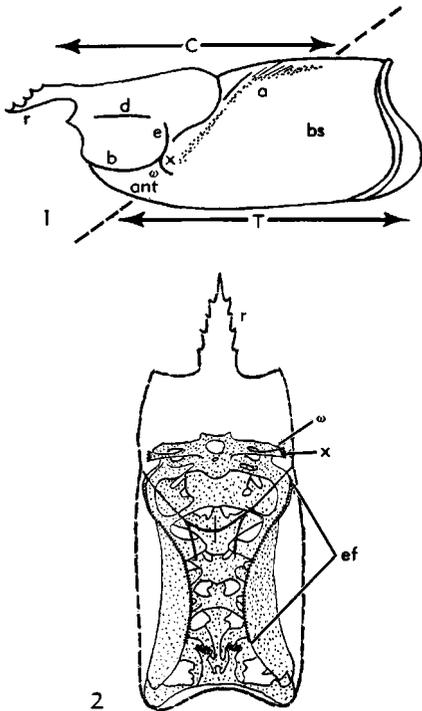


FIG. 223. Relations of carapace and internal skeleton in the lobster (*Homarus vulgaris*) (after Glaessner, 118).—1. Carapace, lateral view.—2. Diagrammatic dorsal view of internal skeleton (outline of carapace shown by broken lines). [EXPLANATION: C, cephalic portion; T, thoracic portion; ant, anterior chamber; bs, branchiostegite; ef, epimeral fold (dorsal edge, attractor epimeralis muscle attachment cross hatched); r, rostrum; other letters as in Fig. 219.]

reticulated or striated areas, but they are more pronounced on internal molds. They deserve more detailed comparative study than they have received in Recent or fossil Decapoda. The most important muscle insertion on the carapace is that of the **attractor epimeralis** muscle (tergoepimeral muscle) which follows the branchiocardiac groove, and leads to the top of the epimeral fold (Fig. 223). The transformation of the cylindrical cephalothorax of the macruran decapods to its conical shape in the brachyurans leads to the shifting forward of the posterior end of this muscle insertion, so that in the Dromiidae it is V-shaped on both sides of the cardiac region. After the loss of the branchiocardiac groove which it follows originally, only the inner arms

of the V remain, forming conspicuous **lateral gastrocardiac markings** (Fig. 224) in most Brachyura (2, 50).

Attachment areas of the stomach muscles are commonly conspicuous but less significant, as the muscles tend to divide into fiber bundles which can vary in position relative to the cervical groove and regions. A pair of these fiber bundles are attached to calcareous apodemes close to the midline of the carapace which are marked on the dorsal side by two small **posterior gastric pits** (Fig. 225).

Muscles moving the mandibles and maxillae are also attached to the inner dorsal and ventral surfaces of the carapace but are mostly not conspicuous. A muscle or tendon connecting the head apodeme with the dorsal side of the carapace (anterior to the large adductor mandibulae) was described in *Astacus* by SCHMIDT as *musculus dorsoventralis anterior* and is also known in natantian decapods. GROBBEN recognized it as the *tensor dorsoventralis maxillaris*. Of greater importance for homology problems is the muscle named *dorsoventralis posterior* by SCHMIDT in *Astacus*. It connects the head apodeme horizontally with the internal

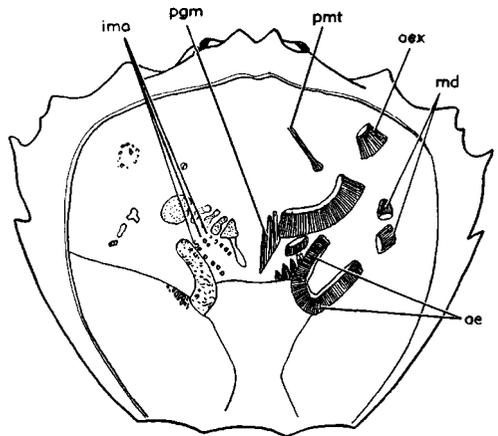


FIG. 224. Carapace of *Dromia personata* (LINNÉ) (middle part drawn as seen from inside, muscle attachments shown in left half, cut muscle in right half) (mod. after Abrahamczik-Scanzoni, 2). [EXPLANATION: ae, attractor epimeralis muscle; aex, antennar extensor muscle; ima, internal mandible adductor muscle; md, median dorsoventral muscle (attached to roof of branchial chamber); pgm, posterior gastric muscles (median part attached to apodeme); pmt, posterior mandible tendon.]

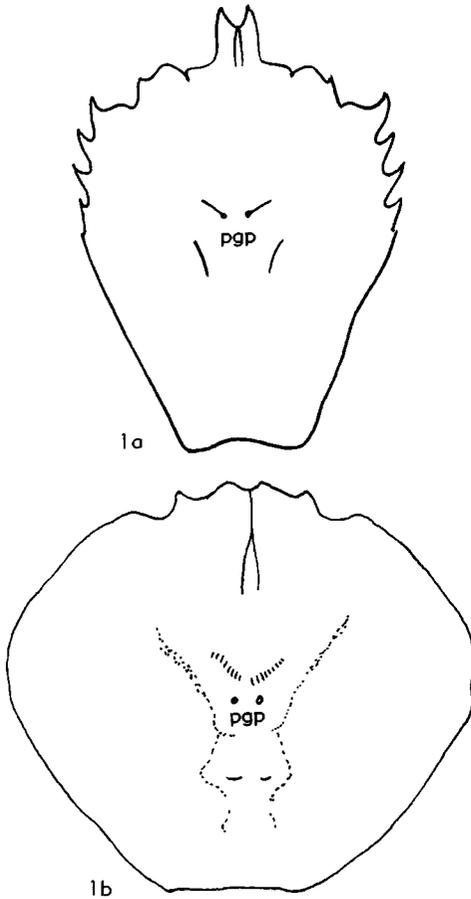


FIG. 225. Dorsal views of carapaces of (1a) *Noto-pocorystes (Cretacorantina) friischi* GLAESSNER and (1b) *Zanthopsis bittneri* LÖRENTHEY showing posterior gastric pits (*pgp*) (109, 184).

carapace surface (Fig. 226), where it is inserted just behind the cervical groove (but in *Astacus* groove *e* fuses with *c*). According to BALSS it is innervated from the maxillary ganglion. GROBBEN (127) recognized the homology of this muscle with the adductor testis in lower Malacostraca. It is also known in the Anomura and Brachyura, where (in *Eriphia*) ABRAHAMCZIK-SCANZONI (2) recognized it as the tensor of the roof of the branchial chamber occupying the same position when the head apodeme of *Astacus* is equated with the endopleurites of body segments 4 and 5 (maxillula and maxilla somites). Its attachment to the carapace lies in *Eriphia* in the ventral extension of

the cervical groove (Fig. 226). In *Homarus* and *Nephrops* it is attached behind the knob  $\omega$  and thus lies anterior to groove *b*<sub>1</sub>, the lateral end of the postcervical groove (Fig. 223). On this basis an attempt was made to establish the homology of this attachment area in relation to transverse carapace grooves in fossil reptantian decapods (118) (Fig. 227).

Some of the strong abductor and adductor muscles of the mandibles are attached to the carapace, the abductor minor and adductor lateralis laterally and the adductor posterior on the dorsal side, lateral from the stomach in Astacidea and on the meta-gastric region in Brachyura (Fig. 226). How large and conspicuous their impressions on the carapace are depends more on division of the muscles into bundles, which can be quite small, than on size of the entire muscle.

## INTERNAL AND VENTRAL SKELETON

The internal (endophragmal) skeleton is very complex, but as it is only weakly calcified, it is rarely or poorly preserved and has not been studied in fossils. It serves

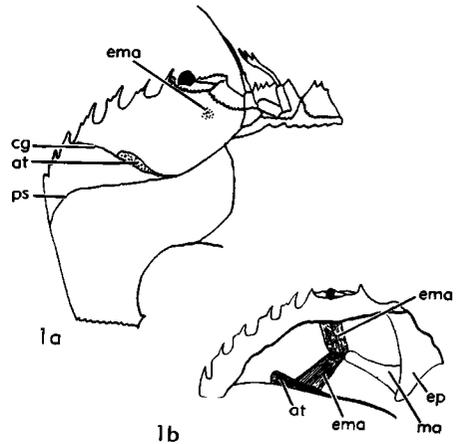
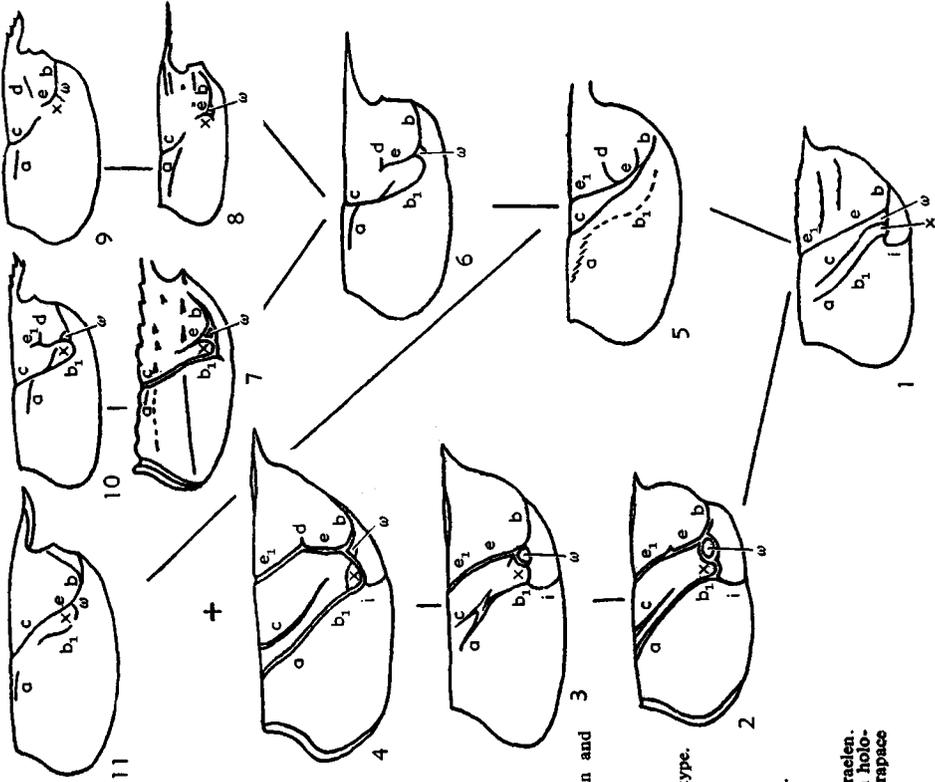


FIG. 226. Muscle insertions on anteroventral portion of carapace of *Eriphia spinifrons* HERBST; 1a, external ventral view; 1b, internal dorsal view with carapace opened (mod. from Abrahamczik-Scanzoni, 2). [EXPLANATION: *at*, adductor testis ("tensor of branchial chamber roof"); *cg*, cervical groove; *ema*, external mandible adductor (lateral); *ep*, epistome; *ma*, mandible apophysis; *ps*, pleural suture.]



**A. Evolution of the carapace in Astacidea.**

1. *Lissocardia silesiaca* H. v. Meyer. Triassic. After Assmann.
  2. *Eryma bedella* (Quenstedt). Jurassic. After Woods.
  3. *Klytia ventrosa* H. v. Meyer. Jurassic. Original drawing.
  4. *Enoploclytia leachi* (Mantell). Cretaceous. After Mertin.
  5. *Palaeophoberus suevicus* (Quenstedt). Jurassic. After Glaessner.
  6. *Hoplaria longimana* (Sowerby). Cretaceous. After Mertin.
  7. *Paraclytia boettcheri* Mertin. Cretaceous. After Mertin.
  8. *Palaeohomarus hemprichi* Mertin. Cretaceous. Original drawing.
  9. *Homarus vulgaris* H. Milne Edwards. Recent. Original drawing.
  10. *Nephrops norvegicus* L. Recent. Original drawing.
  11. *Astacus fluviatilis* Fabricius. Recent. Original drawing.
- Fam. Erymidae: 1-4. Fam. Nephropsidae: 5-10. Fam. Astacidae: 11.

**B. Evolution of the carapace in other reptantian decapods.**

1. *Pseudoglypheo spinosa* (Assmann). Triassic. After Assmann.
2. *Litogaster tiefenbachensis* Assmann. Triassic. After Assmann.
- 3a. *Pseudopempphix albertii* (H. v. Meyer). Triassic. After Assmann.
- 3b. *Pseudopempphix fritschii* Wüst. Triassic. After Schiefen.
- 4a. b. *Pempphix suwari* (H. v. Meyer). Triassic. After Glaessner.
5. *Mecochirus longimanatus* (Schlotheim). Jurassic. Modified after Beurlen and van Straelen.
6. *Meyeria ornata* (Phillips). Cretaceous. After Woods.
7. *Paraglypheo prestwichi* (Carter MS, Woods). Jurassic. After Woods.
8. *Glypheopsis cretacea* (McCoy). Cretaceous. After Woods.
9. *Megala latimana* Oppel. Jurassic. After Oppel.
10. *Schlaetaria tetracheles* Fritsch. Cretaceous. Reconstruction, from holotype.
11. *Gebicaria exigua* Alcock. Recent. After Alcock.
12. *Alpheus malleodigitatus* Bate. Recent. After Coulière.
13. *Coenobita peritata* H. Milne Edwards. Recent.
- 14a. b. *Eocarcinus praecursor* Withers. Jurassic. After Withers.
- 15a. b. *Proscopon mammillatum* H. Woodward. Jurassic. After Withers.
16. *Homolopsis edwardsi* Bell. Cretaceous. Reconstruction, from topotype.
17. *Dromiopsis rugosa* (Schlotheim). Danian. From topotype.
18. *Tetrachela railblana* Glaessner. Triassic. After Glaessner.
19. *Eryon* sp. Jurassic. After Woods.
20. *Polycheles andamanensis* Alcock. Recent. After de Man, from van Straelen type and paratype specimens.
21. *Palaeopallinurus glaessneri* Bachmayer. Jurassic. Reconstruction, from holotype and paratype specimens. The unornamented areas believed to represent carapace furrows are marked by stippling.
- 22a. b. *Pallinurus vulgaris* Latreille. Recent. Original drawings.

FIG. 227. Evolution of carapace in Decapoda (Glaessner, 118). [Explanation as in Fig. 219.]

[For Erymidae, read Erymidae; for *Glypheopsis*, *Trachysoma*; for Nephropsidae, Nephropidae; for *Paraclytia*, *Paraclythia*; for *Paraglypheo*, *Glypheo*.]



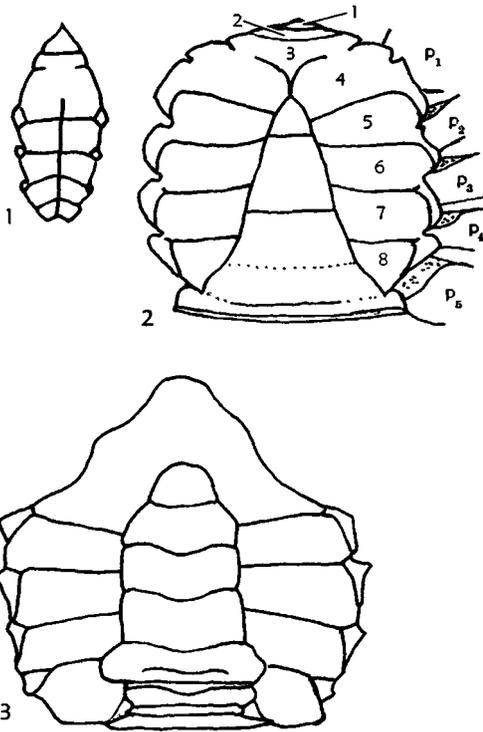


FIG. 228. Sternum and (in part) abdomen of some Recent male decapods.—1. *Corystes cassivelaunus* (PENNANT) (after Bals, 13).—2. *Portunus pelagicus* (LINNÉ) (Glaessner, n).—3. *Macrophthalmus latreillei* (DESMAREST) (after Reuss, 250). [EXPLANATION: 1-8, thoracic sternites; *pr-p<sub>6</sub>*, coxae of successive pereopods.]

as attachment for muscles and gills and as a protection for the nervous system and the intestines. The endophragmal skeleton consists of sternal (ventral) and endopleural or epimeral (lateral) elements of cuticular origin which are folded inward at the site of each somite to form muscle chambers and articulated frames for the coxae of the appendages, so that walls rise at each sternal somite boundary as intersomite apodemes (endosternites). The endopleurites arise from the epimeral walls (inner walls of the epimeral fold). Each of these apodemes divides into three branches (arthrodial branches externally). Considerable differences in the Brachyura are related to the conical shape of the internal skeleton. A median plate arising from the sternum is the mesosternum.

The endophragmal skeleton is simple in Penaeidae and also in Eryonidae, without interconnection of endosternites and endopleurites. It is more complex in Nephropidae and Thalassinidae, some more primitive Paguridae and Galatheidae, and the Homalodromiinae and Homolidae, with sutured connections. Finally, in Palinuridae, Lithodidae, advanced Galatheoidea, and Brachy-

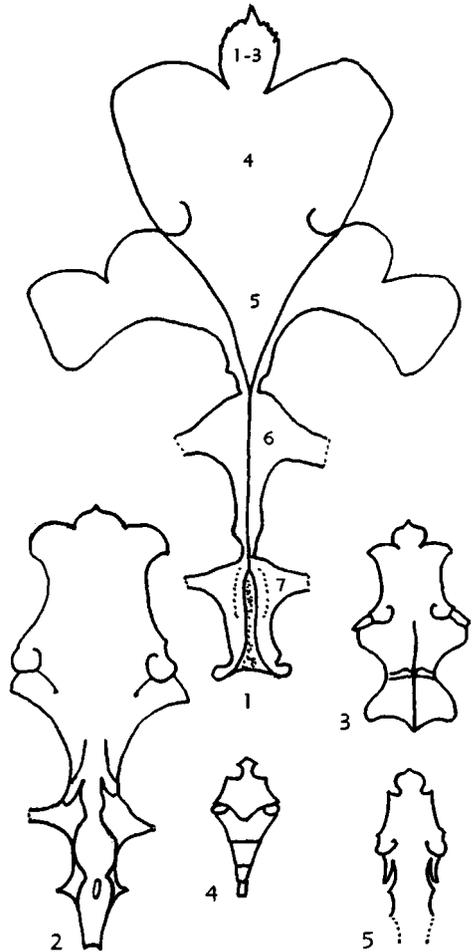


FIG. 229. Form of sternum in Raninidae.—1. *Ranina (Ranina) ranina* (LINNÉ) (after Gordon, 123).—2. *Lyreidus fossor* BENNETT (after Bennett, 20).—3. *Laeviranina ovalis* (RATHBUN) (after Rathbun, 244).—4. *Notopocorystes (Cretacorantina) schloenbachi* (SCHLÜTER) (after Martin, 193).—5. *N. (N.) stokesi* (MANTELL) (Glaessner, n). [EXPLANATION: 1-7, thoracic sternites.]

ura, it is completely fused. According to these stages of evolution, resorption preceding molting becomes localized at specific sites (82).

Fusion of endopleurites and endosternites at the anterior end in Astacidea forms the **head apodeme**, while fusion of the posterior thoracic endosternites in some Brachyura form the *sella turcica*.

The ventral skeleton of the cephalothorax consists of sterna (sternites) of the somites. Difficulties exist in the interpretation of anterior cephalic sterna. BALSS (13) has defined the **epistome** as the sternum of the antennal somite, suggesting the term **propistome** for the interantennular septum and the name **metopon** for the entire preoral area, including also parts of mandibular somite. In the Brachyura the epistome (or the entire metopon) is commonly well calcified and can be seen in fossils. Ventral cephalic skeletal elements have been described in very few fossil macrurans.

The eight thoracic sterna vary greatly in width and in degree of fusion. A median groove, which is conspicuous in crabs, has been interpreted as an indication of fusion of paired sclerites for each somite. In Penaeidea and most Caridea the sternites are narrow and separated from each other. In *Astacus* the last thoracic somite is free, others having a fused triangular sternal plate. A similar condition, but with considerable differences in details, is found in Palinuroidea, Galatheoidea, Paguroidea, and Brachyura. In the Dromiacea great variation in fusion of somites is found and grooves between them are extended anteriorly in connection with reproductive modifications (120). The width and shape of the sternum in higher Brachyura (Fig. 228) is taxonomically important, but comparative studies with the inclusion of fossils are lacking, except in Raninidae (295). In connection with the adaptation to burrowing in sand, the posterior sternites are narrowed progressively while the anterior portion of the plate between the first pereopods becomes shieldlike (Fig. 229). An anteromedian triangular projection of this shield, wrongly named episternum by VAN STRAELLEN, is interpreted as fused thoracic sterna 1 to 3 (corresponding to maxillipeds 1 to 3). The term **episternum** is applied to

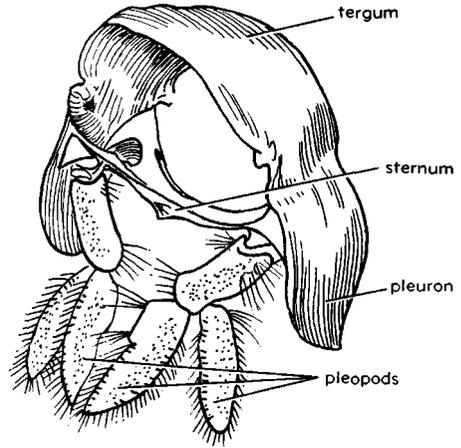


FIG. 230. Abdominal segment and attached appendages in Astacidea (from McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia of Science and Technology, p. 564, Crustacea section, by W. L. Schmidt, by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company).

each of a series of posterolateral projections on all or some of the sterna 4 to 7 which may be separated from them by grooves (Fig. 228,2). They form the ventral supports for articulation of the pereopods (except the last pair). The median portion of the sternal plate is more or less depressed in the Brachyura, in which the abdomen is folded against the thorax.

## ABDOMEN

The **abdomen** (or **pleon**) is simple in structure in the Decapoda. Its reduction in size or calcification and the concurrent changes in its function are the most important events in their evolution. The primitive, as well as various derived, conditions are observable in living Decapoda, which have been classified, accordingly, into macrurans, Anomura, and Brachyura. The morphology of the abdomen is best discussed under these headings.

In macruran decapods (Figs. 217, 230) the abdomen consists of six somites and a telson. In each somite, the convex tergum forms a strong dorsal covering, extending laterally into **pleura**. The ventral sternum is narrow and weakly calcified. In the Penaeidea the segments are of about equal

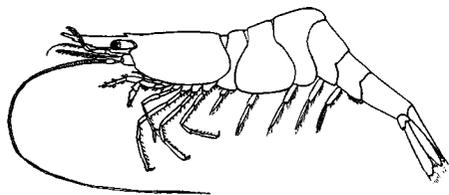


FIG. 231. Side view of caridean, *Hippolyte varians* LEACH, showing expanded second abdominal pleura (after Balss from Beurlen, 27).

length, except the sixth, which commonly is elongate. The posterior margin of each somite overlaps the anterior margin of the following one and they are movable in a vertical plane. The dorsal mid-line may bear a keel. The telson is narrowed posteriorly. In the Caridea (Fig. 231), the pleura of the second segment overlap those of the first and third, and the abdomen is strongly curved downward in normal position, commonly through curvature of the third segment. It is sculptured or spinose, particularly in living deep-water genera. The Stenopodidea resemble the Caridea in the curvature of segments 3 and 4 and the Penaeidea in the pleura 1 and 2.

In reptantian decapods the abdominal appendages do not function as locomotory organs, but a sudden ventral flexion of the abdomen effects a backward flight movement. This is assisted by the development of an anterior smooth portion of each tergum sliding under the posterior margin of the preceding somite and by the reduction of the first somite, which enables the abdomen to be moved more freely against the cephalothorax. The pleura of the second somite commonly are expanded. The terga and pleura are sculptured with ridges and tubercles in many and with spines in a few macruran reptantians. The telson is rectangular in the Astacidea, pointed in most Eryonoidea, and rectangular but only anteriorly calcified in the Palinuroidea.

A progressive reduction of the abdominal pleura is seen in the Thalassinioidea, in connection with their burrowing habit. In advanced Paguroidea the abdomen becomes adapted to concealment in gastropod shells by reduction of the calcified integument and by loss of symmetry and external segmentation. This asymmetry persists in free-

living Paguroidea, which assume a crab-like habit with inflexion of the reduced abdomen against the carapace.

In the Galatheoidea a reduction of the abdomen is achieved in a different manner, through curvature and infolding of the posterior extremity against the anterior somites. The telson is here subdivided by uncalcified sutures. In the crablike Porcellanidae, however, most of the abdomen comes to lie against the ventral side of the thorax. This is also found in the Hippoidea, where in some genera the pleura and the telson are extremely modified.

The higher Brachyura are characterized by the complete infolding of the abdomen against the thoracic sterna, but in Dromia-

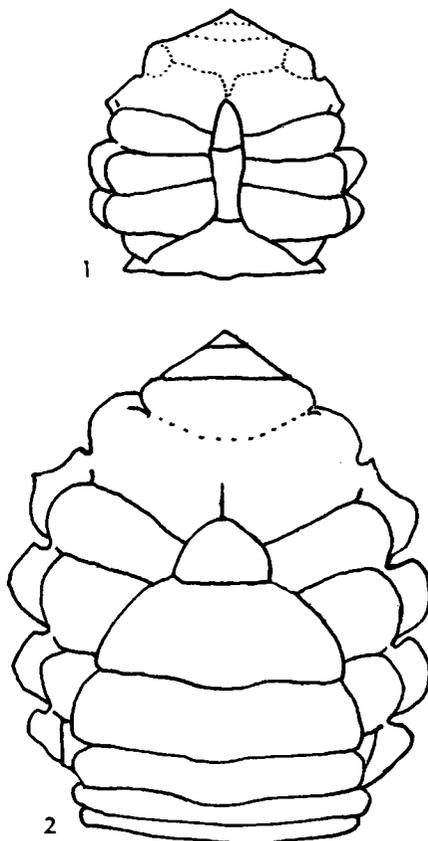


FIG. 232. Ventral views of crab abdomens.—1. *Callinectes sapidus* RATHBUN, male (mod. from Rathbun, 243).—2. *Scylla serrata* (FORSKÅL), female (mod. from A. Milne-Edwards, 198).

cea, Dorippidae, and Raninoidea, part of the abdomen remains visible from the dorsal side. Well-developed pleura are found only in the Homolodromiinae. In higher Brachyura, where some of the abdominal somites become fused, sutures between them may remain visible or disappear, and the shape of somites and degree of fusion may vary between the sexes and with growth. In many Brachyura the male abdomen is narrowly triangular and in some Portunidae (Fig. 232) it is T-shaped, whereas the female abdomen is generally broadly oval for protection of the eggs. It is commonly countersunk into a depression of the sternal plate.

### APPENDAGES

The appendages of fossil Decapoda vary in their preservation, but even those most generally preserved have been neglected in paleontological studies, with exception of the strongly calcified claws of crabs and tail fans of macrurans. In Recent Decapoda the appendages are considered to be of great taxonomic importance. As in all Arthropoda, the appendages are divided into a series of articulating parts which in thoracic legs are collectively known as podomeres (coxa, basis, ischium, merus, carpus, propodus, dactylus), with epipods on the coxa and exopods on the basis (Fig. 233).

### STALKED EYES

The eyes are best discussed separately from other appendages, as their stalks (**ocular peduncles**) are not considered homologous with arthropod limbs. The stalks consist typically of two articulating parts, the shorter proximal **basiophthalmite** and the longer **podophthalmite** which bears the **corneal surface**. In some forms the proximal part of the stalk may be elongated, or there may be three parts. The terminal segment may be thickened or provided with a projecting spine. The eyes are covered by the anterior margin of the carapace in *Alpheus* (Caridea); they are reduced in living deep-sea and burrowing Decapoda but fully developed in their free-living shallow-water ancestors (e.g.,

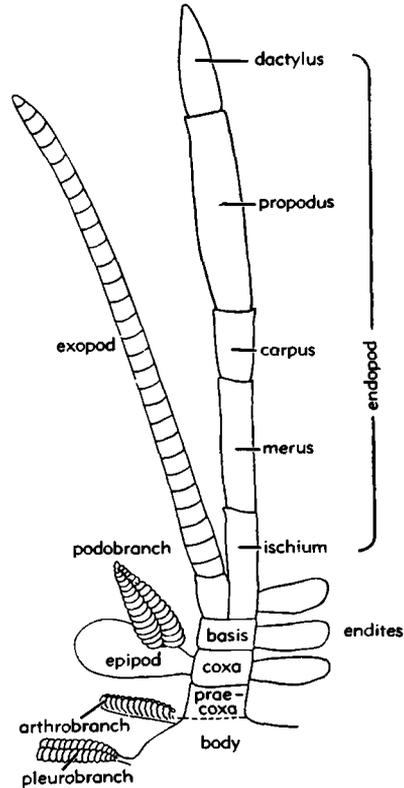


FIG. 233. Thoracopod podomeres in Decapoda, showing relations of exopod, endopod, endites, and gills (podobranch, arthrobranch, pleurobranch) (after Holthuis, 149).

Eryonoidea) and greatly lengthened in several not closely related crabs (e.g., *Podophthalmus*, *Ommatocarcinus*, *Macrophthalmus*). Eye stalks and corneal surfaces are commonly preserved in fossils, but they have not been studied in detail. Important modifications of the carapace arise in response to the need for protection for the eyes. Spines occur in Penaeoidea, Palinuroidea, and oxystomatous crabs; orbital emarginations are particularly noticeable in Eryonoidea and Scyllaridae, and elaborate orbits are found in Brachyura. Their construction involves not only the regularly fissured supra- and infraorbital margins of the carapace and a connecting **ocular bulla** on its inner surface, but also the basal segment of the antenna, which in advanced genera in various families is inserted be-

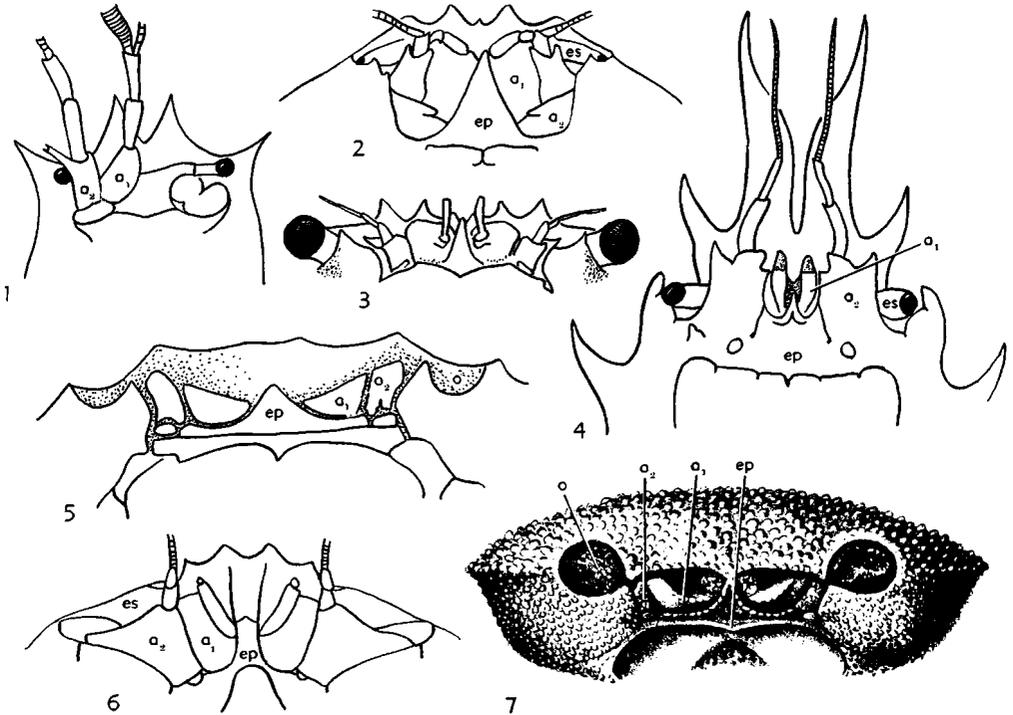


FIG. 234. Antennoorbital region in Brachyura shown in ventral (1-6) and frontal (7) views.—1. *Homolodromia paradoxa* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, with left  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  removed (52).—2. *Dromia* sp. (156).—3. *Portunus pelagicus* (LINNÉ) (15).—4. *Pisa tetraodon* (PENNANT) (52).—5. *Harpactocarcinus punctulatus* (DESMAREST), Eoc. (198).—6. *Calappa gallus* (HERBST) (301).—7. *Caloxanthus formosus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, U.Cret. (198). [EXPLANATION:  $a_1$ , antennula;  $a_2$ , antenna (proximally fused with epistome in *Pisa*); ep, epistome; es, eye stalk; o, orbit.]

tween the infraorbital lobe and ventral projections of the front (Fig. 234).

### ANTENNULES

The antennules (first antennae) are also considered as preoral appendages, not homologous with the biramous arthropod limb. They consist typically of a three-segmented stalk with two annulated flagella on the terminal segment. The basal segment of the stalk contains the **statocyst**, and in Penaeidea and Caridea it has also a pointed or rounded **stylocerite** (antennular scale) which protects the opening of the statocyst. One of the flagella may be divided into two (e.g., most Palaemonidae). In the higher Brachyura the antennules are placed in antennular grooves or cavities, separated by an interantennular septum under the front. They are folded longitudinally, ob-

liquely, or transversely in these grooves, with the short flagella projecting.

### ANTENNAE

The antennae represent the structure of a biramous limb, with a five-segmented stalk consisting of a two-segmented proto-podite (coxa, basis) and a three-segmented endopodite (corresponding to **ischium**, **merus**, **carpus**), ending in an annulated **flagellum**. The first segment of the proto-podite contains ventrally the opening of the excretory antennal gland, commonly in a tubercle. The exopod joined to the second segment is the **scaphocerite** (antennal scale or squama). This becomes reduced in the course of evolution in the Decapoda but functions as a balancing organ in the natantian decapods. In reptantian decapods it is reduced in many to a spine or it is

absent (in the Palinuroidea). It is fixed in the Dromiacea and Raninidae and absent in other Brachyura. The stalk is also reduced by fusion of the coxa with the epistome and of the basis with the ischium in the Palinuroidea and in higher Brachyura, for which the term basis is commonly used instead of basiischium. This becomes incorporated in the orbit. The two remaining segments of the stalk and the flagella are commonly very small, but in burrowing crabs (e.g., Raninidae, *Corystes*) the antennae are modified to assist in directing the respiratory stream of water and their flagella may be long. In the Scyllaridae the flagellum is modified to a broad denticulate plate. The lateral expansion of the annulated flagella of *Cancrimos* is considered a step toward this modification.

### MANDIBLES

The mandibles consist of a strongly calcified body and a palp with no more than three segments. The medial part of the body of the mandible may be divided into an anterior denticulate pars incisiva and a posterior pars molaris with a strongly developed crushing surface, but there is no lacinia mobilis in adult Decapoda. The mandible articulates primarily with its sternum, which commonly is fused with the epistome and secondarily, through a posterolateral extension, with a lateral projection of the head apodeme. This lies in many reptantians under a small convex circular field  $\omega$  of the carapace below the junction of grooves,  $e$ ,  $b$ , and  $b_1$ .

### MAXILLULES AND MAXILLAE

The appendages termed maxillules and maxillae (also known as first and second maxillae) are weakly calcified and have not been described in fossil Decapoda. They consist of several lobate segments carrying bristles which assist in food gathering. Another function is carried out by the exopod of the maxilla (scaphognathite) which is extended anteriorly and posteriorly and which pumps the respiratory stream of water out of the exhalant canal of the branchial cavity.

### MAXILLIPEDS

The three pairs of maxillipeds in many decapods are transitional in form between maxillae and pereopods. Maxillipeds 1 and 2 are rarely preserved in fossils; maxillipeds 3 are mostly seen but rarely have been described in detail.

### PEREIOPODS

The thoracopods 3 to 8 of the Decapoda are known as pereopods ( $p$ ). They may be modified from the basic malacostracan limb by (1) loss of epipods and exopods, (2) fusion of segments, (3) annulation, (4) formation of subchelae and chelae, (5) flattening to paddle shape, and (6) reduction and loss of posterior limbs.

The epipod of the coxa is absent on pereopod 5 in all living forms. It is present on pereopod 4 of some natantians, Palinura, Astacidea, some Thalassinioidea, but absent in all other Anomura and Brachyura. The exopods are found in a rudimentary form in Penaeidea and better developed in some living families of the Caridea and in the Jurassic Udorellidae (13).

The basis and ischium are fused in all first pereopods and most others of reptantian decapods. The ischium and merus can also fuse.

Annulation is known in the carpus of the Cretaceous *Carpopenaeus*, the Jurassic *Blaculla*, and a number of living Caridea; also in other leg segments of Caridea and Stenopodidea and in the dactylus of a living penaeid and a hippid.

Subchelae (Fig. 235,1-3) are formed where a short outgrowth arises from the propodus, commonly at a right angle to its length; the generally long and projecting dactylus can be placed against it. In true chelae the tips of the outgrowth (fixed finger) and the dactylus (movable finger) meet or overlap slightly (Fig. 235,4-6). Chelae are absent in all Palinuridae, Scyllaridae, and Hippidae. Subchelae are found in Glypheoidea, Crangonidae, and Thalassinidae on pereopod 1, commonly on 2, and in other families on other pereopods. In the Penaeidea, Stenopodidea, and Astacidea the first three pereopods are chelate. The

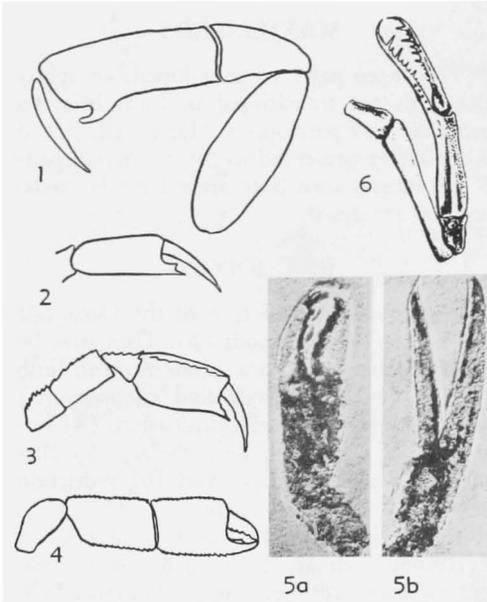


FIG. 235. Subchelae (1-3) and chelae (4-6) of first pereiopod in decapods.—1. *Glyphea udressieri* VON MEYER (34).—2. *Etallonia longimana* (MÜNSTER) (34).—3. *Thalassinia anomala* (HERBST) (34).—4. *Axius* sp. (34).—5. *Homarus hakelensis* (FRAAS); 5a,b, right and left chelae (115, 219).—6. *Palaeopentacheles roetenbacheri* (MÜNSTER), right chela (219).

Eryonoidea can have chelae on all five pereiopods. Other Decapoda have them only on pereiopods 1 (chelipeds) or 1 and 2. The chelae, or at least their fingers, are very strongly calcified. They can grow to enormous size, reaching a maximum in the crabs *Pseudocarcinus* and *Macrocheira* and showing not only taxonomic differences in shape and sculpture but also age and sex differences. Right and left chelae are commonly different in size and shape (**heterochelous**). *Homarus* illustrates the functional difference between a stout crusher claw and a slender finely denticulate nipper claw (Fig. 235,5). This is common in Brachyura. In many Xanthidae and in some other crabs the finger tips of the claws are spoon-shaped. A distinctive elongate prism shape develops in advanced Portunidae. It is correlated with transversely elongate body shape and with fast-swimming and predatory habits.

The last pair or pairs of pereiopods are also commonly differentiated. The fifth

pereiopods are well developed and flattened to form swimming paddles in most Portunoidea.

A reduction of fifth pereiopods is seen in Thalassinioidea and Galattheoidea, where they function as cleaning organs, in Dromiidae, where they are shifted to a dorsal position to hold protective sponges or other camouflage over the carapace, and in Homolidae, Palicidae, and Retroplumidae. In the Hexapodiinae pereiopods 5 are absent and in Dromiidae pereiopods 4 can be reduced. It appears that the reduction of the posterior pereiopods is related to early stages in the reduction of the abdomen and that their change of function from locomotion to cleaning and so forth is secondary.

Insufficient information is available on the articulation of pereiopods. In dorsal view the movable finger of pereiopod 1 is on the inner side of the fixed finger in the Astacidea, whereas in the Eryonoidea it is on the outer side. This is the result of different orientation of the various axes of the joints in the limb rather than a difference in the position of the fingers.

## PLEOPODS

**Pleopods** are biramous appendages of the abdominal segments with a short coxa and longer basis. They are originally swimming organs, but the anterior pleopods may be modified for reproductive functions. An appendix interna (44) or stylamblys (18) is developed on the median side of the endopod, mostly in pleopods 2 to 5, in the Caridea, Palinuroidea, and Axiidae among decapods, as in many other Malacostraca. It connects by means of hooks with the appendix interna of the opposite side, thus facilitating synchronous swimming movements.

In all Decapoda, with exception of the Penaeidea, the eggs are attached to pleopods of the females. The pleopods 1 and 2 of the males are modified as gonopods, except in the Stenopodidea, Palinuroidea, and Hippoidea. In the Brachyura (except Dromiacea) pleopods 3 to 5 of the males and 1 of the females are absent. The second pleopods of male Caridea and Axiidae carry an appendix masculina, which commonly is similar to the appendix interna

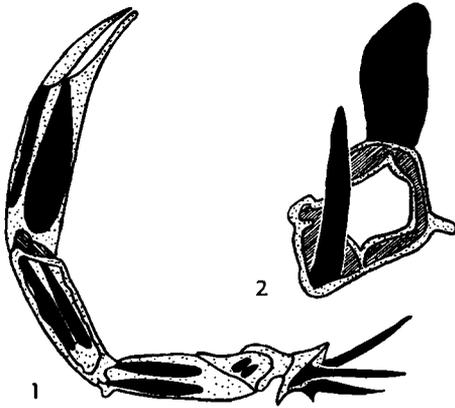


FIG. 236. Cheliped tendons in crab, *Maja verucosa* H. MILNE-EDWARDS; 1, entire cheliped; 2, proximal view of coxa showing flexor (above), extensor (below), articulations appearing as right and left projections, and articulations of basiischium appearing as upper and lower projections of internal outline (after Abrahamczik-Scanzoni, 2).

but without hooks. Where the first pleopods of males are developed as copulatory organs, their form, which is more or less tubular, is important in classification. In Penaeidea their endopods form the *petasma*, a leaf-shaped or tubular structure which is known in some fossils. Its function is transfer of spermatophores to the *thelycum*, a thoracic sternal pocket developed in females. In the Brachyura, modified first and second pleopods introduce the spermatophores into the internal seminal receptacle (*receptaculum seminis*).

### UROPODS

The pleopods of the sixth abdominal somite form a tail fan, together with the telson. Coxa and basis are fused. Endo- and exopod are leaf-shaped. In hermit crabs (Paguroidea) the tail fan loses its swimming function and is used for attachment in the protective gastropod shell. In secondarily free-living Paguroidea and in Brachyura it is absent, except for two small rudiments of the coxa of the uropods in Dromiidae. Where the exopod is well developed, it is commonly divided by a transverse suture (*diaeresis*). In Palinuridae and Scyllaridae the distal parts of the telson and uropods are not calcified.

## INTERNAL ANATOMY

### MUSCLES

In the macrurous Decapoda the trunk muscles are located mainly in the abdomen, where they effect its sudden flexion in backward flight movements. The thorax, being inflexible, contains mainly thoracoabdominal muscles, in addition to those connecting the internal with the external skeleton. The ventral abdominal muscles, which are flexors, exceed the dorsal extensors in strength. They consist of complex longitudinal, transverse, and oblique (intersegmental) systems (13) which are bilaterally symmetrical (except in Paguroidea). The sixth abdominal somite contains the complex muscles of the tail fan. In the Brachyura, flexor and extensor muscles connect the proximal abdominal somites mainly with the internal skeleton and the muscles within the abdominal somites are reduced in number and strength.

The muscles of the decapod appendages are complex (2, 13). Those of the coxa and basis are located in chambers formed by the internal skeleton. The other podomeres have two tendons attached to the proximal margin, corresponding to extensor and flexor muscles which are attached to the inner wall of the preceding podomere (Fig. 236). Muscles attached to the carapace have been mentioned in the description of its morphology (p. R408).

### NERVOUS SYSTEM

The nervous system comprises the supraesophageal ganglion (*syncerebrum*), the

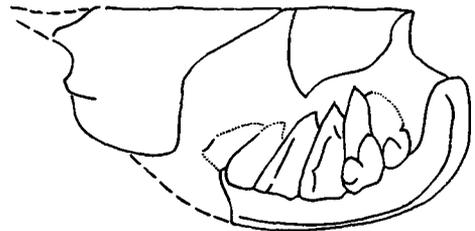


FIG. 237. Broken cephalothorax of *Oncopareia muncki* (PELSENEER) with partly preserved branchiae (podobranchs) in exposed branchial chamber, U.Cret., Belg. (mod. from Pelseeneer, 227).

subesophageal ganglion, and the ventral nerve chain. In most Brachyura (with exception of the Raninidae) the ventral ganglia are fused in a rounded mass from which the nerves radiate outward.

### ALIMENTARY SYSTEM

The alimentary system consists of the stomodeum, mesenteron, and proctodeum. The stomodeum forms the complex stomach. The triturating gastric mill contains calcified ossicles and has a complicated system of muscles some of which are inserted in the exoskeleton. The gastroliths (p. R432) are located in the anterior part of the stomach. Attached to the mesenteron are caeca and the digestive gland (hepatopancreas), consisting of a large mass of ramified tubules spread through the cephalothorax. In the Paguroidea it extends into the abdomen. The proctodeum has strong longitudinal internal ridges.

### HEART

The heart is located under the posterior part of the carapace ("cardiac region"), above the gut. It is polygonal, surrounded by a pericardial sinus, and has generally three pairs of ostia and seven arteries.

### BRANCHIAE

Branchial morphology and pattern (i.e., numbers of differently placed gills present on the thoracic segments and limbs, commonly expressed in branchial formulae) provide important evidence for relationships among Recent Decapoda. Further evidence is obtained from the ontogeny of these patterns (i.e., branchial formulae of larval stages). The branchiae are only exceptionally and never completely preserved in fossils (Fig. 237).

According to their position, a distinction is made between (1) **podobranchs**, arising from the coxal epipods or the coxae, (2)

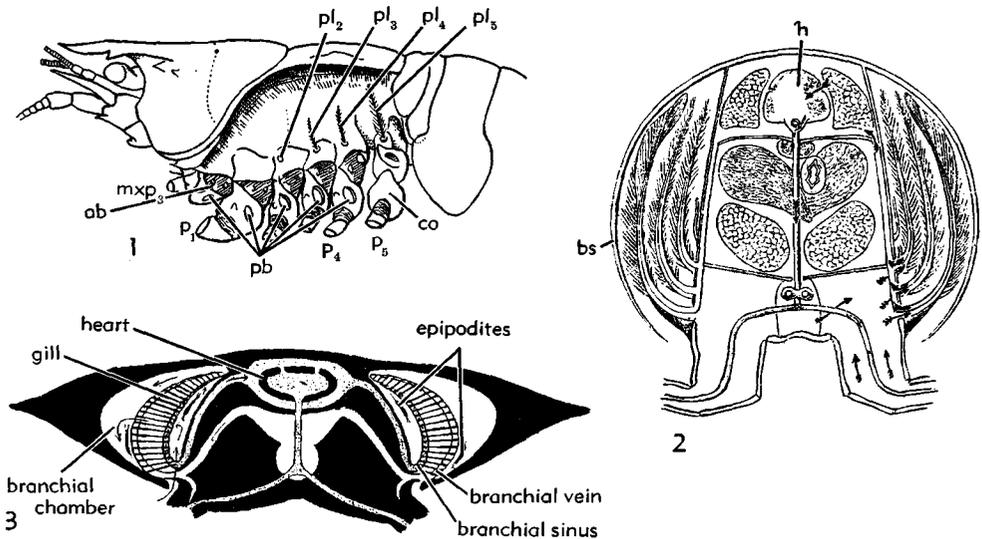


FIG. 238. Gill positions in decapods.—1. *Astacus pallipes* LEREBOULLET, showing left side of cephalothorax (branchiostegite removed) and anterior abdominal somites (mod. from Bouvier, 52).—2. *A. astacus* LINNÉ, diagrammatic cross section, arrows indicating direction of blood flow (mod. from Huxley, 155).—3. *Cancer pagurus* LINNÉ, diagrammatic cross section showing branchial chambers and blood supply of gills, directions of blood flow and water currents indicated by arrows (mod. from Wolvekamp & Waterman, 316). [EXPLANATION: *ab*, arthrobranch insertions, two in each arthrodistal membrane of 3rd maxilliped (*mxp*<sub>3</sub>) and 1st to 4th pereopods (*p*<sub>1</sub> to *p*<sub>4</sub>); *bs*, branchiostegite; *co*, coxae; *h*, heart; *mxp*, maxilliped; *p*, pereopod; *pb*, podobranch insertions, on coxae of 3rd maxilliped and 1st to 4th pereopods; *pl*<sub>2</sub> to *pl*<sub>5</sub>, pleurobranch insertions corresponding to 2nd to 5th pereopods, rudimentary on 2nd pereopod.]

**arthrobranchs**, arising from the articular membranes between coxae and body wall, and (3) **pleurobranchs**, arising from the epimeral wall dorsal of the articular membranes (Fig. 238). The coxal epipods (**mastigobranchs** in some maxillipeds, **laminae** in some pereiopods) can have respiratory functions. The maximum number found on each side (not counting epipods) is one podobranch, two arthrobranchs, and one pleurobranch, which would give a maximum number of 32 for the eight thoracic somites. This does not occur, as there are no podo- or pleurobranchs on any first maxilliped and no podo- or arthrobranchs on any fifth pereiopod. The maximum number is found in the primitive penaeid genus *Benthescymus* (24) and reduction is observed in more advanced Decapoda, with nine in most Brachyura and a minimum number (three) in the crab *Pinnotheres*. The branchial formulae of the larvae are no more complete than those of the adults, so that there is no recapitulation of phylogeny in this respect.

According to their structure, a distinction is made between **trichobranchs**, long thin tubes attached in rows to a shaft, **dendrobranchs**, which have the tube divided into arborescent bundles, and **phyllobranchs**, in which the tubes are expanded into numerous flat leaves (Fig. 239). The trichobranchs appear to be morphologically most primitive. They occur in Stenopodidae, Astacidea, Palinura, Thalassinoidea, primitive Paguroidea, Galattheoidea, and Homolodromiinae. Dendrobranchs characterize the Penaeidea exclusively. Phyllobranchs are found in Caridea, most Paguroidea and Galattheoidea, all Hippoidea, and most Brachyura (13).

### EXCRETORY SYSTEM

The main excretory organ is the **green gland** (antennal gland). Its duct opens to the surface in an elevated **nephropore** on the coxa of the antenna. The Brachyura have a voluminous bladder; in the Paguroidea it is displaced in the abdomen.

### REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

The reproductive organs are generally placed in the thorax, between intestine and

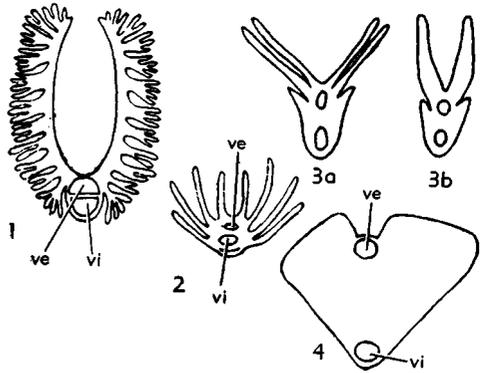


FIG. 239. Types of decapod branchial structures illustrated by cross sections (after Bouvier, 52).—1. *Penaeus*, dendrobranch.—2, 3a, b. *Astacus*, *Dicranodromia*, trichobranch.—4. *Carcinus*, phyllobranch. [EXPLANATION: *ve*, *vi*, blood vessels.]

heart; they may extend into the abdomen. The male genital openings (**gonopores**) usually are located in the coxae of the fifth pereiopods, but in some crabs (e.g., Goneplacidae, Ocypodidae, and others) they are sternal. The oviducts usually end in gonopores on the coxae of the third pereiopods. In the Brachyura this **podotreme** position is maintained in the Dromiacea, Dorippidae (subfamily Tymolinae only), and Raninidae. In all other crabs the female gonopores are located in the sternum of the third pereiopods (sixth thoracic sternum); in the Palicidae they are found in the sternum of the second pereiopods. The **sternotreme** position is related to the widening of the sternum in the Brachyura, in which the male abdomen remains narrow. The male first pleopods (and mostly second also), modified to **gonopods** for transmittal of spermatophores to the females, are closer to the median line than the female coxae of the third pereiopods. The spermatophores may be affixed on the ventral surface of the body of the females or placed in a depression of the thoracic sternum (**spermatheca**, **thelycum** in Penaeidea), which may be connected with the gonopore by sternal furrows on or near the boundary of the seventh and eighth thoracic sterna. In the Raninidae the spermathecal opening is a deep median pit in the seventh thoracic sternum (120). The evolutionary morphology of these structures remains to be studied in fossils.

## ONTOGENY AND GROWTH

### LARVAL AND POSTLARVAL STAGES

The ontogeny of the Decapoda comprises the embryonic, larval, postlarval, and adult periods. In the Penaeidea the eggs are laid in the water and hatch soon at the **nauplius** stage. The nauplius larva is unsegmented, with an externally unsegmented oval body, a median eye, simple antennules, antennae, and mandibles adapted for swimming. In the following **metanauplius** stage, four additional pairs of appendages and the masticatory part of the mandible are developed. In the **protozoa** stage the larva has a carapace, stalked eyes, and an abdomen with forked telson. At the **zoea** stage, the eye stalks become movable, a rostrum develops, and all thoracic appendages and rudimentary abdominal appendages appear. In the **mysis** stage, biramous thoracopods are developed, the rostrum is long, and antennules and antennae approach their adult form. At the **postlarval** stage, the exopods are reduced and the pleopods function in locomotion. GURNEY (133), who has described numerous larvae, has criticized these traditional distinctions and recognized only nauplius, protozoa, and zoea-mysis as "really distinct phases," dividing them further into numbered stages.

Numerous cenogenetic adaptations and evolutionary acceleration and retardation in morphogeny make phylogenetic and taxonomic conclusions from ontogeny in Decapoda extremely difficult and controversial, though by no means irrelevant.

In most Decapoda the nauplius and similar early stages are completed in the eggs, which are carried under the abdomen of the females, and the young animals hatch at the zoea stage. In the Palinuroidea the first postembryonic larva is a disc-shaped, long-legged **phyllosoma**, while the postlarval forms are benthonic and more adult-like. In the living Eryonoidea the early larvae are bathypelagic, with a spiny, globular carapace (e.g., *Eryoneicus*). In pagurids, the postzoea larva is the **glaucothoe**, which

is entirely or almost symmetrical. In the Brachyura the last zoea, which is generally armed with long dorsal spines, metamorphoses into a **megalopa** with ambulatory pereiopods and extended abdomen bearing functional pleopods (but weak muscles), and an elongate carapace which may be prosopon-like.

No decapod larvae have been found as fossils. *Phalangites priscus* MÜNSTER, 1836, from the Upper Jurassic of Solnhofen, Germany, long considered as a phyllosoma larva of a palinurid, has also been assigned to the Pantopoda (?Nymphonidae). A report (254, 255) of "*Eryoneicus*" from the Upper Cretaceous (Senonian) of Lebanon is considered to be erroneous.

The larval stages are further reduced in fresh-water Decapoda. Terrestrial decapods lay their eggs in the sea, where the usual larval stages develop. Embryonic development occupies seven or eight months in *Astacus*, about a year in *Homarus*, but only one to four months in Brachyura. The postembryonic development occupies weeks to months.

### MOLTING

Growth in Decapoda involves periodic molting. This term is being used (PASSANO in WATERMAN, 316) to include the physiological "processes of preparation for withdrawal from the old integument, ecdysis and postecdysis increase in linear size, as well as subsequent tissue growth." The shedding of the old integument (**ecdysis**, **exuviation**) and its paleontological effects are discussed later (p. R431). "There is scarcely a time when all aspects of the crustacean's life processes (feeding, behavior, sensory capabilities, reproductive activity, etc.) are not dominated by its saltatory growth pattern, its recurrent renewal of skeleton, and its material storage metabolism."

Molting is controlled by the molting gland or Y-organ (which in crabs lies at the anterior end of the branchial chamber above the branchiostegite and below the insertion of the external adductor muscle of

the mandible), and inhibited by the neurosecretory activity of the X-organ, situated in the eye stalk. It is also affected by external conditions. It may continue periodically throughout the life of the animal,

occur with decreasing frequency in adults (as in *Homarus*), or cease after a terminal molt. It consists in the withdrawal not only from the old exoskeleton of the carapace and abdomen but also from that of the ap-

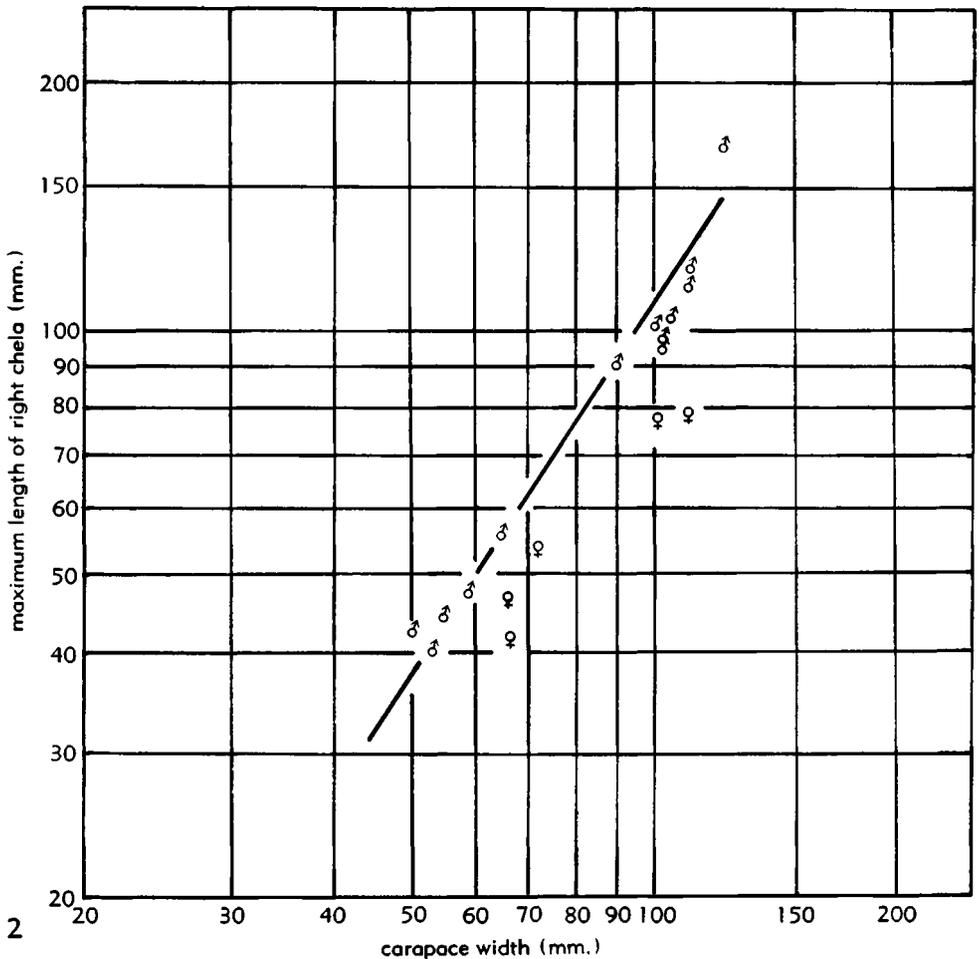
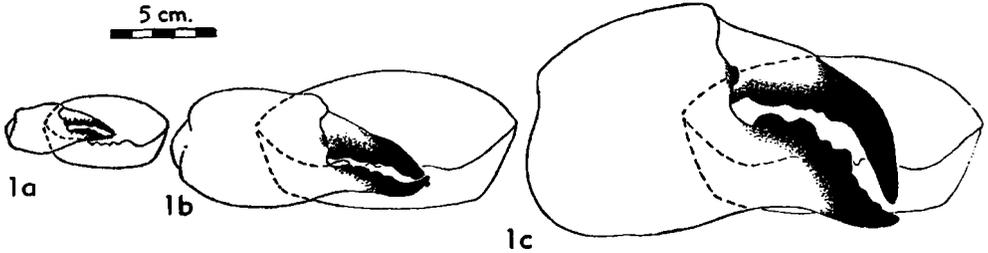


FIG. 240. Allometric growth of right chela of the crab *Tumidocarcinus giganteus* GLAESSNER, Mio., N.Z. (after Fleming, 93).—1a-c. Outlines of carapace and right chela of males.—2. Graph showing positive allometric growth of chela in males (each symbol representing one measured individual).

pendages, including antennae, eye stalks, mouth parts, legs, branchiae, and the lining of the digestive tract. Mineral storage in gastroliths of fresh-water crayfish and remineralization of tissues have been described in detail by TRAVIS (289).

### GROWTH RATES

The different growth rates of various parts of the decapod skeleton have been illustrated by means of deformation of

cartesian coordinates (D'ARCY THOMPSON) and later investigated by biometric studies of allometric growth (references given by TEISSIER in WATERMAN, 316). The relative increase in carapace width in portunid crabs, in width of the female abdomen during growth to maturity, or the size increase of the major claw in heterochelous male crabs are allometric. The last of these examples has also been demonstrated on fossil material (Fig. 240).

## PALEOECOLOGY

### HABITATS

Most Decapoda are marine, some are found in brackish water, few live in fresh water, and only some Paguroidea and Brachyura are adapted to life on land. The ecology of living Decapoda was extensively reviewed by BALS (13). Only points of special paleontological significance will be mentioned here.

### MARINE

The littoral zone is today conspicuously rich in crabs. They are common in Tertiary and Upper Cretaceous shallow-water deposits, but their usually fragmental remains rarely attract attention. In the Lower Cretaceous they occur less commonly, in the Upper Jurassic they are confined to calcareous rocks, and in the Lower Jurassic only one crab, with distinctly ancestral characters, is known. Crabs living on rocky shores have little chance of preservation. Grapsidae, which are common today, are rare fossils probably for this reason. Crabs living on soft sand and clay and others adapted to coral reefs are more common, while burrowers in shifting sands of the tidal zone are rare or entirely unknown as fossils (e.g., Hippoidea). Other burrowers are distinctly favored in preservation, with the result that the picture of fossil littoral and sublittoral communities is biased. A distinctive fauna lives today in the phytal, in algal and other marine plant growths. The Caridea are too weakly calcified to be preserved, but some fossil Oxyrhyncha may indicate this envi-

ronment. Others live on muddy ground below wave base. A distinctive decapod fauna occurs in dark bituminous shales of Oligocene age in the Carpathians and the Caucasus. It consists of small portunids, *Planes*, *Inachinae*, and a *Palaemon*-like caridean shrimp. It resembles the fauna of the Sargasso Sea and lived probably in floating vegetation rather than on the bottom, which was poisoned by H<sub>2</sub>S (euxinic conditions). The fauna of the mangrove swamps is not definitely recognizable as a fossil assemblage, but the common subfossil occurrences along the coasts of southeastern Asia and northern Australia of *Macrophthalmus*, *Scylla serrata*, and other crabs, together with *Thalassinia anomala*, originated probably as concretions in mangrove mud. They are washed out by currents and found on beaches and in estuaries.

Chelae assigned to *Callianassa* and its Mesozoic predecessors *Protocallianassa* and *Protaxius* are among the most common fossil Decapoda because of their burrowing habit in areas of sedimentation, and strong calcification of the claws and fingers which are used in burrowing.

Paguroidea, which also have strongly calcified claws, are fairly common in shallow-water sediments from Jurassic to Recent. They are known not only as skeletal remains (chelae and fingers) but also from their effect on molluscan shells.

Decapoda are found in reef limestones from Jurassic to Tertiary age. The Jurassic reefs of central Europe contain an amazing variety of crabs which all belong to the

Dromiacea. Parallels in carapace shape and sculpture with later Oxystomata, Oxyrhyncha, and Brachyrhyncha can be seen, but complete descriptions of these forms are not yet available. Many Galatheoidea, a few Palinuroidea, and a number of Paguroidea occur with these crabs. During the Cretaceous the coral-reef Decapoda changed only slowly, and in the Danian reefs of Faxø (Denmark) the dynomenid genus *Dromiopsis* dominates. In the Eocene the fauna of similar habitats is more modern, and in the Miocene (of the Vienna Basin) it is close to the present Indopacific fauna, with *Daira* and other xanthoids dominant, associated with *Calappa*, etc. As can be expected, the thin-shelled Trapeziidae, Caridea, and Stenopodidea, which are common among coral reefs today, are not preserved in this environment.

An entirely different association is found in calcareous shales and thin-bedded limestones which are known from the Late Triassic to the Tertiary. Most of them are rich in fish remains. These shales contain benthonic macrurans with flat (depressiform) bodies and short legs, associated with nectonic macrurans, most of which have long legs. Crablike forms join this association only in the Cretaceous. The benthonic forms include some Glyphoidea and Palinuroidea in the Jurassic, and Astacidea. These are very rare in the Lower Jurassic and more common in the Upper Jurassic and in the Cretaceous. The assemblages, though mostly thanatocoenoses, demonstrate "relay evolution," as certain adaptive types are represented by successions of more advanced taxonomic groups. This is illustrated by the following Table 1.

The present bathyal decapod fauna comprises, among others, many Penaeidae, Caridea, all living Eryonoidea, some Nephropidae, Lithodidae, Galatheidae, and crabs belonging to the Homolodromiinae (all), Dorippidae, Majidae, Geryonidae, and Retroplumidae. Many of these taxa have fossil representatives in assemblages which indicate shallow-water conditions, particularly Penaeidae, Eryonoidea, *Palaeophoberus* and *Oncopareia* (related to the bathyal *Neophoberus* and *Thaumastocheles*), Galathei-

TABLE 1. *Assemblages of Decapod Crustacea from Calcareous Shales and Thin-bedded Limestones*

Age	Depressiform benthonic reptantians	Penaeidea	Natantians Caridea
Early Tertiary	<i>Ibacus</i> <i>Palinurus</i> (?)		<i>Palaemon</i>
Late Cretaceous	<i>Eurycarpus</i> <i>Ibacus</i>	<i>Penaeus</i> <i>Benthescymus</i> <i>Acanthochirana</i> <i>Carpopenaeus</i>	" <i>Palaemon</i> " <i>Oplophorus</i>
Middle and Late Jurassic	<i>Eryon</i> <i>Cycleryon</i> <i>Coleia</i> etc.	<i>Antrimpos</i> <i>Aeger</i> <i>Acanthochirana</i> <i>Bombur</i> etc.	<i>Udora</i> <i>Udorella</i> <i>Hefriga</i> <i>Blaculla</i>
Early Jurassic	<i>Coleia</i> <i>Proeryon</i>	<i>Antrimpos</i> <i>Aeger</i>	<i>Uncina</i> (?) Caridea indet.(?)
Late Triassic	<i>Tetrachela</i>	<i>Antrimpos</i> <i>Aeger</i> <i>Bombur</i>	

dae, Prosopidae, Geryonidae, Retroplumidae. BEURLEN (28) has shown convincingly that the Eryonoidea and Prosopidae retreated to deep water at the end of the Jurassic; many Nephropidae followed at the end of the Cretaceous, and Geryonidae in the Tertiary. Later work has added some Nephropidae to the first group, Penaeidae, *Oncopareia*, and Galatheidae to the second, and Retroplumidae to the third. BEURLEN has suggested that the cause of these changes of habitat is extensive regressions at critical times, reducing the extent of the shelf seas in which these decapods had flourished. The regression of the Nephropidae, which are abundant Jurassic and Cretaceous fossils and reduced in numbers during the Tertiary, coincides with the increase of Brachyura in the littoral habitat and was probably the result of competition.

#### BRACKISH-WATER

It is known (13) that at present some marine and some fresh-water Decapoda can tolerate brackish water, but Stenopodidea, Palinura, Galatheoidea, Hippoidea, Dromi-

acea, and Oxyrhyncha are exclusively marine. One of the oldest known decapod faunas, from the upper part of the Lower Triassic of Alsace, comes from a brackish or lagoonal facies. It comprises Penaeidea and primitive Astacidea. No Jurassic brackish-water decapods are known but in the Upper Cretaceous of northern Germany, MERTIN (192) collected *Linuparus*, *Palaeohomarus*, *Protocallianassa*, and *Necrocarcinus* from a bed in a brackish-water facies of Early Senonian age. In the Tertiary, the brackish-water Sarmatian (Upper Miocene) of Austria contains only the crab *Mioplax*, in contrast to the rich decapod fauna of the preceding fully marine stage.

### FRESH-WATER

According to BALSS (13), the only Decapoda living in fresh water are Atyidae and Palaemonidae (Caridea), the genus *Aegla* (Galatheididae), Astacidae, Parastacidae, and Potamidae. The oldest of these are the Astacidae, which date back to the Late Jurassic or Early Cretaceous of Eurasia and the early Eocene of North America. Both families of fresh-water Caridea are known from the Tertiary. *Potamon* appears first in the Late Tertiary of Europe and India. *Aegla* is not known as a fossil.

### TERRESTRIAL

Some tropical marine Decapoda have become adapted to life on land, particularly Paguroidea (Coenobitidae) and crabs (Gecarcinidae). They have developed lungs but lay their eggs in the sea. Both are questionably reported from the Late Tertiary.

### ADAPTATIONS

Decapoda develop extreme adaptations to specialized functions and habitats which are often cited as examples of extreme diversification and specialization on various taxonomic levels. Only selected examples of adaptations for locomotion, respiration, reproduction, and protection (defense and concealment) will be given, particularly from fossil material. Recent reviews by LOCHHEAD of locomotion and by SCHÖNE of

complex behavior in living Crustacea, mainly Decapoda (in WATERMAN, 316) will assist in the functional interpretation of structures in fossil Decapoda.

### LOCOMOTION

Adaptations are developed in adult Decapoda for swimming, walking, and climbing. Most decapod larvae show adaptations for planktonic life.

In macrurous natantian forms the long pleopods are well-developed swimming paddles. In the Brachyura, a flattening and expansion of pereopods, particularly dactyli of the fifth pereopods, produce paddles for propulsion, but it should be noted that similar shapes develop as adaptations for burrowing. Streamlining of the body in connection with fast movement occurs only in macrurous natantian decapods and to some extent in portunid crabs which swim sideways.

Walking legs differ greatly in shape according to the nature of the ground (mud, sand, dry beach, or dry land), still or current-swept water, speed of movement, and whether the body is carried close to or high above the ground. Climbing can be effected either by very long or by very short legs.

SCHÄFER (264) has studied the functions of the chelae in Brachyura in detail. Their shapes are closely related to (1) different modes of locomotion and feeding, and (2) different shapes of the cephalothorax and its anterior margin. This relation is particularly striking in the rapidly swimming Portunidae (e.g., *Portunus pelagicus*), where a greater width of the carapace is related to the great length and reach of the cheliped; the chela is here lightly built but strengthened by longitudinal ridges. This contrasts with the massive chelae in *Dromia* which are used in walking.

### RESPIRATION

Apart from the few terrestrial Decapoda with lungs (respiratory surfaces inside the carapace), respiration requires a stream of water which is moved by the scaphognathites of the maxillae. The water is drawn in from openings between the carapace

margin and the bases of the legs and expelled near the bases of the antennae, but the current direction is reversible, so that all water in the branchial chamber can be kept fresh and clean. This is particularly important in crabs which burrow in sand. Here the reversed stream can continue for long periods. Inhalant respiratory tubes are formed by modified opposed antennules in a penaeid and in Hippoidea, by the antennae of the crab *Corystes*, and between the claws and the pterygostome of *Calappa*. The Oxystomata, which live mostly buried in sand with only the fronto-orbital region projecting, have elaborate pterygostomial grooves for the inhalant respiratory current. They deserve more detailed study in fossils. The branchiae vary greatly in number and position and are important in the taxonomy of living Decapoda. They can be seen occasionally in fossils but are never well preserved.

### REPRODUCTION

The only characters related to reproduction which are observable in fossils are the position of the genital openings (gonopores), and only very rarely other primary sexual characters such as the petasma in male Penaeidea or the copulatory appendages of male Brachyura (appendages of the coxae of the fifth pereopods and first pleopods).

Secondary sexual characters are found more frequently. Differences in the shape of the abdomen were tentatively described in *Hoploparia stokesi* (WELLER) by BALL (10). They are obvious in the Brachyura, where the abdomen is triangular in males and broadly rounded in adult females (Fig. 232). There are also sexual differences in the fusion of abdominal segments. Others occur in the development of the chelae, usually larger in males.

### PROTECTION

The most striking adaptations observable in fossils are related to defense and concealment. The strong calcification of the integument of slow-moving reptantian Decapoda (Palinuroidea, *Pemphix*, many Brachyura) and the weak calcification of swim-

ming forms (natantian Decapoda, most Portunidea) are such adaptations. The characteristic backward flight movement effected by sudden flexure of the abdomen in Caridea and macrurous reptantians is a defense mechanism which leads to further elaborate adaptations in the articulations between abdominal segments, the shortening of the first segment, which increases the mobility of the abdomen against the cephalothorax, the lengthening of the sixth somite, which contains the muscles operating the tail fan, the permanent curvature of the third somite in many Caridea, and a characteristic sculpture which is directed forward on most of the body but backward on the posterior abdominal somites, so as not to impede the backward movement. Distinctive spines and ridges protect the eyes, not only in macrurous forms (283) but also in some Brachyura (*Oxyrhyncha*). Many crabs have frontal, anterolateral, and lateral and a few also posterior protective spines. Many Decapoda defend themselves with their chelae, but they are not primarily defensive adaptations.

Concealment is achieved in various ways, particularly in Brachyura, where it has influenced the shape of the carapace and chelipeds. It is effected by covering the carapace with a sponge or shell (e.g., *Dromia*) or with plant debris fastened to hooked setae (e.g., Majidae), or in the development of mimetic shapes of the body which resemble corals (e.g., *Daira*, *Actaea*), stones, or irregular plant or animal growth (e.g., Parthenopidae, Majidae). Only this type of concealment adaptation can be established in fossils.

It should be understood clearly that burrowing for concealment in Decapoda is often strictly temporary. In these instances no burrow is formed, though lamination of the sediment is disturbed. SCHÄFER (264) has described the process of digging in for many Brachyura and macrurous decapods and the disturbance resulting from this action in *Corystes* and *Carcinus*. In other Decapoda (e.g., Astacidae, Thalassinidea, Grapsidae, *Scylla*, etc.) the burrows are more lasting tunnels of varying shape. Digging of these tunnels is done either with the aid of the chelae of the first and second

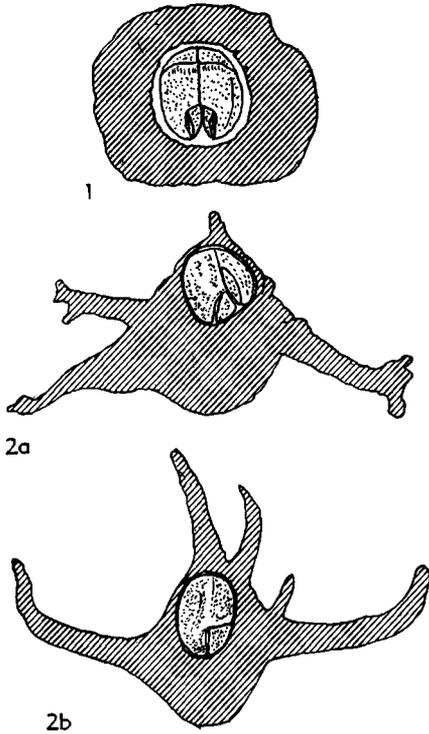


FIG. 241. Adaptation of chelipeds in Paguroidea (various sources).—1. *Pylocheles agassizi* A. MILNE-EDWARDS with 2 symmetrical chelae closing hole in rock.—2. *Pagurus* with chelae closing hole in shell overgrown by bryozoans; 2a, *P. alcocki* (BALSS) with 2 heterochelous chelae; 2b, *P. varians* (BENEDICT), with right chela only. [EXPLANATION: Substance surrounding crab-occupied hole indicated by oblique-ruled pattern.]

pereiopods or with posterior pereiopods. Many of these have sharpened and flattened dactyli, while the chelae may be square and sharp-edged (trowel-shaped).

Outstanding examples of adaptation for concealment are found in the Paguroidea (13, p. 1385-94). The primitive Pylochelidae have elongate symmetrical bodies and live in scaphopod shells or bamboo tubes. The advanced forms live in coiled gastropod shells which are mostly dextrally coiled. The abdomen is uncalcified, the right third to fifth pleopods are lost, the animal attaches itself to the shell by the tail fan and fourth and fifth pereiopods, which also clean the gills. The second and third pereiopods are walking legs. Chelipeds of the first pereiopods

can be used to close the shell in the manner of an operculum and can be accordingly modified in shape (Fig. 241).

### MULTIPLE FUNCTIONS

The fact that single organs in Decapoda may be adapted to multiple functions is particularly important in the functional interpretation of the morphology of extinct forms. Carapace sculpture may be simultaneously a mechanical strengthening and a means of concealment on an irregular background. Spines may be a protection from predators as well as an aid to balancing in locomotion. Chelae may be organs of attack as well as defense, warning, or recognition; they may be used in locomotion, feeding, and burrowing, and also be so shaped as to direct the respiratory stream of water when at rest (263). Locomotive organs may be alternatively used also for cleaning or protection, and the abdomen and its appendages, while still functioning in locomotion, may carry the eggs in fertile females.

Various filtering mechanisms in feeding and respiration depend largely on setae on mouth parts or on the carapace, which are rarely preserved in fossils. Other setae may significantly alter the shape of the surfaces to which they are attached, particularly the limbs of *Natantia* or the bodies of crabs.

The similarity of the mechanics of digging in soft sand and swimming may lead to alternative uses of flattened dactyli in portunid crabs for both purposes. The agility necessary for climbing, which is a slow process, is also used for active protective masking of the body by many *Oxyrhyncha*.

### COMMENSALISM, SYMBIOSIS, AND PARASITISM

Observations which could be interpreted according to one or other of these concepts will be discussed under this heading, without reference to the problem of distinctions between these ecological relationships.

The commensalism of Decapoda with sponges, coelenterates, mollusks, echinoderms, and ascidians, common in living forms, has not been observed in fossils.

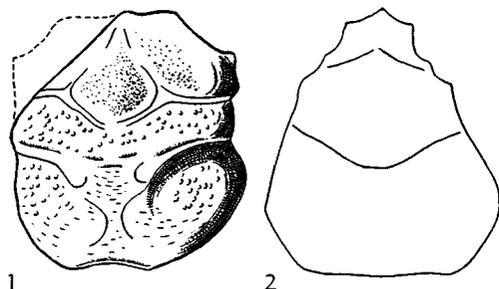


FIG. 242. Distortion of branchial chamber of Jurassic decapods owing to growth of parasites (after Houša, 1953).—1. *Pithonoton marginatum* VON MEYER.—2. *Mesogalthea striata* (REMÉŠ).

Common commensal natantians are Palaeomonidae and other Caridea, Stenopodidae, some Porcellanidae and Thalassinidae, and, among the crabs, some Parthenopidae (Eumedoninae) and Pinnoteridae (13). Specialized living crabs of uncertain systematic position (Hapalocarcinidae) cause growth deformation on hermatypic corals which are potential fossils.

The well-known symbiosis of pagurids and Actinaria cannot be recognized in fossils, as fossil Actinaria are unknown. A distinctive smoothly worn area on the last whorl of suitably shaped gastropod shells inhabited by hermit crabs and overgrown elsewhere by *Hydractinia* has been reported (84) in living and Miocene material. The epizoon growth can consist also of bryozoans and may extend beyond the apertural margin of the gastropod shell. Peculiar outgrowths can extend horizontally and vertically (in the position in which the shell is carried), producing the *Kerunia*-symbiosis (1), originally described as a genus of cephalopods from the upper Eocene of Egypt by MAYER-EYMAR but soon correctly explained by DOUVILLÉ. Not all associations of gastropods and bryozoan epifauna with tubular openings are necessarily to be interpreted as inhabited by pagurids. Tubes with constantly small diameter could have contained sipunculid worms, similar to *Aspidosiphon*, which inhabits solitary corals growing on small gastropods (Miocene to Recent).

Obvious evidence of parasitism is found frequently in Jurassic Decapoda (Galathei-

dae, Dromiacea) (Fig. 242) in which one side of the carapace is strongly inflated in the branchial region (6, 153, 247). This was also observed in Lower Cretaceous *Palaeastacus* ("*Phlyctisoma*") and *Notopocorystes*. Identical effects are produced in living Caridea, Galatheoidea, Paguroidea, and other Decapoda by Bopyridae (Isopoda), which are exclusively parasitic on Decapoda.

Balanid barnacles have been observed on several carapaces of *Leptomithrax atavus* from the Miocene of New Zealand. Other associations of cirripeds with decapods are common in the living fauna, particularly occurrences of the parasitic Rhizocephala, but they have not been found in fossils.

## INDIRECT FOSSIL EVIDENCE OF LIFE ACTIVITIES

### BURROWS

Infilled burrows of decapod Crustacea are fairly common objects. They can be definitely identified when they contain remains of burrowing Decapoda (e.g., *Protocallianassa*, *Callianassa*). Such finds (Fig. 243) have

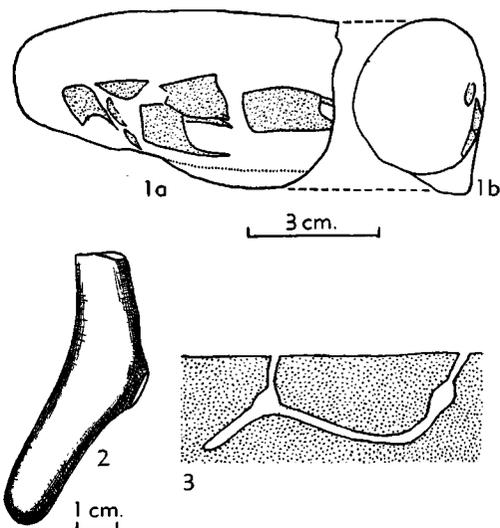


FIG. 243. Burrows of Callianassidae.—1. Burrow cast containing remains of *Protocallianassa* sp., U.Cret., Ger.; 1a,b, side and end views (after Mertin, 193).—2. Burrow cast of *Callianassa* sp., Paleoc., Australia (after Glaessner, 116).—3. Burrow of *C. californiensis* (after MacGinitie from Mertin, 193).

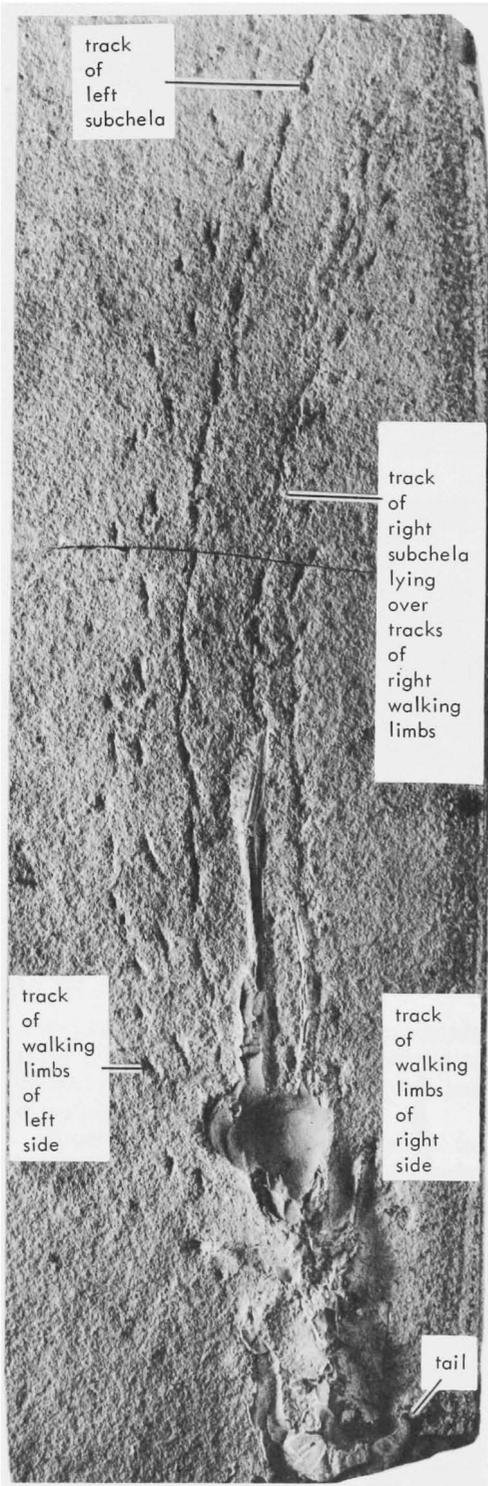


FIG. 243A. *Mecochirus longimanatus* (SCHLOT-HEIM), with walking track, U.Jur., Ger. (343a).

been reported from the Upper Cretaceous of Germany and the Miocene of western and central Europe. Similar infillings with the distinctive features of *Callianassa* burrows (Y-shaped branching, combination of vertical and horizontal or inclined tubes, local widening where the animal can reverse its direction of movement), occurring together with *Callianassa* chelae in the sediments, are also known from the Paleocene of southeastern Australia, the Lower Tertiary of Central Asia, and the Miocene of Japan. The burrows from the Miocene of the Vienna Basin were named *Thalassinoides callianassae* EHRENBERG, 1944. Similar burrows from the Upper Cretaceous had been known as *Spongites saxonicus* GEINITZ, while others, possibly made by Glypheoidea, occur in the Middle Triassic of northwest Germany (e.g., *T. visurgiae* FIEGE, 1944). Another type of burrow from these Triassic sediments is subcylindrical, horizontal, with two terminal vertical tubes. It resembles the burrows of *Cambarus*, was named *Pholeus abomasoformis* FIEGE, 1944, and could have been made by other macrurous reptantians. It must be remembered that similar burrows indicate possibly similar body shape and behavior, not systematic identity of the burrower. The comparison of the flat-lying U-shaped *Rhizocorallium* with crab burrows cannot be generally conclusive, since this type of burrow is well known from Cambrian to Triassic sediments which antedate the first appearance of crabs, as well as from younger Mesozoic rocks. This comparison was based mainly on the imprints of scratches on walls similar to those made by crab dactyli (but probably made by worm bristles or limbs of other arthropods). No definite fossil crab burrows are known. Most burrowing crabs do not make lasting burrows like those of the Thalassinioidea or Astacidae but dig in for concealment or temporary feeding, often in ephemeral beach deposits, and remain more mobile.

The distinctive cylindrical trace fossil *Ophiomorpha* LUNDGREN, 1891, with a diameter of 15 to 25 mm. and a nodular wall, known from Upper Cretaceous through Tertiary deposits of North America, Europe, and Japan, was considered by HÄNTZSCHEL (138) to be a decapod burrow lined with mud pellets.

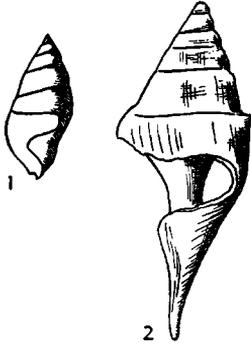


FIG. 244. Fossil gastropod shells damaged by pagurids (after Zapfe in Papp *et al.*, 224).—1. *Euthria intermedia* (regenerated), Mio., Austria. —2. *Clavilites parisiensis*, Eoc., Fr.

### TRAILS

Walking trails of fossil Decapoda have been observed rarely and are identifiable only if the animal is preserved at the end of its trail (Fig. 243A). SCHÄFER (264) has stated that shallow-water crabs make deep stabs in the sediment with their dactyli, which are provided with chemoreceptors indicating buried food.

### FEEDING

Observations on the feeding of Paguridae explain characteristic fractures of the apertural margin of Tertiary gastropods (Fig. 244). If the attack by the pagurid was interrupted, the gastropod could regenerate the fractured shell. Similar damage on the proximal margins of the scaphopod *Dentalium* could have been caused by pagurids or crabs (224).

Coprolites, or fecal pellets, with distinctive straight or transversely curved internal structures have been described from Jurassic to Tertiary shallow-water marine limestones from Europe, Africa, the Middle East, and America (e.g., *Favreina* BRÖNNIMANN, 1955; *Palaxius* BRÖNNIMANN & NORTON, 1960) and are said to be closely comparable with those of living Thalassinoidea (e.g., *Upogebia*, *Axius*).

### MOLTING

Fossil Decapoda are frequently found in molting position (107, 193). Articulated

skeletons of macrurous decapods occur mainly in deposits formed under quiet conditions in which the relative positions of parts of a molted skeleton also remain undisturbed (e.g., Mesozoic bedded aphanitic limestones, Eocene London Clay). In *Homarus* the molting animal rests on its side, the integument opens between the carapace and the first abdominal somite, the carapace splits dorsally along the median line and the molted animal emerges, leaving the carapace displaced from the abdomen, with their axes forming almost a right angle. This occurs also in fresh-water crayfishes (Fig. 245,1). The same displacement and the splitting of the carapace are seen in *Hoploparia* (Fig. 245,2) from the Eocene and Cretaceous, in *Palaeohomarus* and *Oncopareia* from the Upper Cretaceous, and in the Jurassic *Glypha* and *Protaxius*. Not all molts of *Oncopareia* are found lying on their sides; dorsoventrally compressed forms displace their carapaces in a horizontal plane (e.g., *Pemphix*, Triassic).

The molting proceeds differently in Brachyura, which remain standing with their sternal side downward. Here also the first opening occurs between carapace and abdomen, but the abdomen is freed first. The carapace is lifted upward and forward, remaining in hingelike contact with the anterior portion of the ventral skeleton but separating along the pleural suture. This separation is complete in Brachyrhyncha, but in *Maja* (Oxyrhyncha) the lower part of the carapace only moves outward along the pleural suture without separation. It is not known how the decalcified lineae in Homolidae function during molting, but the frequently occurring median parts of homolid carapaces may be molts. Fossil *Ranina*, *Notopocorystes*, *Coeloma*, *Potamon quenstedti* ZITTEL, and subfossil *Macrophthalmus latreillei* DESMAREST (Fig. 245,3) have been found in molting position, the carapace forming approximately a right angle with the sternum and abdomen and with the pleural suture opened. This is clear evidence that the abandoned molted skeleton was held in position in the soft mud during fossilization (SCHÄFER, 1951). Not all molts are recognizable as such; some disintegrate but in others the carapace falls back into normal position. Decalcifica-

tion of the exoskeleton (apart from lineae) is not noticeable, compared with effects of fossilization. The endoskeleton is corroded to facilitate molting, but it is only rarely and incompletely fossilized.

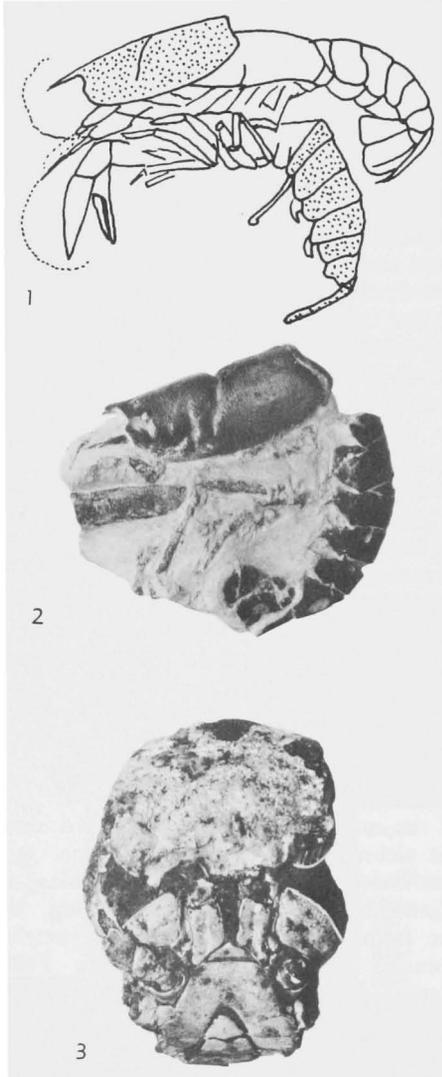


FIG. 245. Molting in decapods.—1. Fresh-water crayfish, *Parachaeraps* (Parastacidae), in process of molting (carapace and abdomen of shed exoskeleton, stippled) (redrawn from Hale, 139).—2. Molting position of *Hoploparia gammaroides* M'COY, L.Eoc., Eng. (after Glaessner, 107).—3. Molting position of *Potamon quenstedtii* (ZITTEL), enclosed in fresh-water limestone, U.Mio., Ger.; frontal view showing opening of pleural suture (from Glaessner, 107).

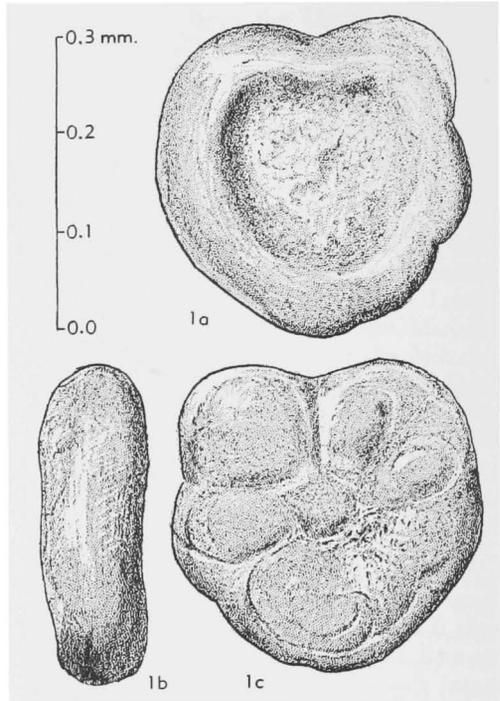


FIG. 246. Presumed gastrolith of larval nephropsidean, *Wechesia pontis* FRIZZELL & EXLINE, M.Eoc., USA (Tex.); 1a-c, int., lat., ext. views (from Frizzell & Exline, 99).

### GASTROLITHS

Calcium carbonate resorbed prior to molting is deposited in the gastroliths of fresh-water Astacidea, but it is uncertain whether they have any significance for the calcification of the new skeleton in adult marine Decapoda, since Ca is abundantly available from sea water (see also PASSANO in WATERMAN, 316, and TRAVIS, 289). Small fossils from the marine middle and upper Eocene sediments of Texas and Louisiana have been described as gastroliths of larval Astacidea (*Wechesia pontis* FRIZZELL & EXLINE, 1958; *W. louisianae* FRIZZELL & HORTON, 1961) (Fig. 246).

### AUTOTOMY AND REGENERATION

Specific instances of these processes have not been recorded in fossils, but it is very likely that they occur and will be observed.

Some Decapoda have the ability to drop an appendage at a preformed breaking

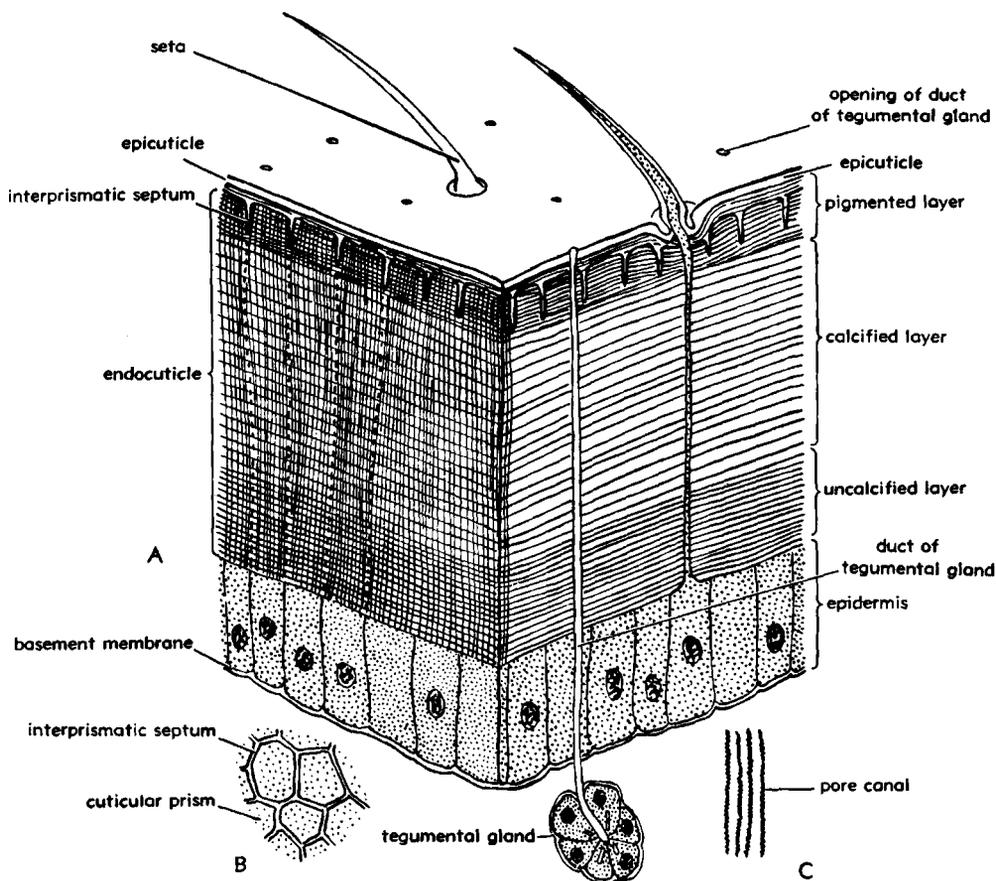


FIG. 247. Structure of decapod cuticle (from Dennell in Waterman, "The Physiology of the Crustacea," 316, by permission of Academic Press, Inc.). *A*. Diagram illustrating structure seen in vertical sections. —*B*. Pigmented layer of endocuticle in horizontal section. —*C*. Pore canals in vertical section of epicuticle seen at magnification higher than those of *A* and *B*.

plane by means of a reflex muscle action. This plane lies in the proximal part of the basiischium. An isolated fossil decapod limb ending proximally with a partial basiischium may have been shed by autotomy. Decapoda regenerate limbs or parts of limbs most readily at or near the preformed breaking plane (BLISS in WATERMAN, 316). The regenerate may differ from the original limb, and extreme instances such as replacement of an eye by an antenna have been described as heteromorphoses. Reversal of regenerated left and right chelae can occur in heterochelous forms. When two injured surfaces occur at the end of a limb, triple dactyls are regenerated (BUDENBROCK in BALSS, 1954, 13).

## FOSSILIZATION

Conditions and effects of fossilization in decapod Crustacea vary greatly and affect morphological interpretations considerably. Few detailed studies have been carried out. Preservation varies from almost complete fossilization of external and internal skeleton, setae, branchiae, and even muscles, to fragmentation, and from almost unchanged composition of the integument to complete decalcification. Formation of concretions around decapod remains occurs frequently. The lamination of the pigmented and calcified layers of the decapod cuticle (Fig. 247) leads to varying degrees of decortication which may produce spurious surface

sculptures. This effect remains often unrecognized in descriptions and can lead to serious taxonomic errors. MERTIN (193) has found that chelae and abdominal terga of *Enoploclytia leachi* are coarsely pitted on their external and internal surfaces, with strong asymmetry of the external pits which have partly raised margins. The internal molds thus appear coarsely granulated. The thick integument of the carapace of this species shows reversal of sculpture compared with the internal mold.

Chitin is subject to slow bacterial decomposition. It may be preserved under conditions of rapid burial, particularly in bituminous sediments rich in organic matter. The completeness of decapod remains in Triassic, Liassic, and Oligocene black shales is due to the absence of scavengers and to anaerobic conditions of sedimentation. The most perfect preservation occurs in the lithographic limestones of the Upper Jurassic of Solnhofen (Bavaria), where even the setae fringing the appendages are preserved.

The preservation of branchiae of a macruran (Fig. 237) in phosphatic chalk was described by PELSENER, and phosphatized bundles of muscles are preserved in macrurans from the Senonian chalk of Lebanon but have not been described.

The frequent occurrence of Decapoda in spheroidal and ellipsoidal concretions in shales and sandstones is probably the result of decomposition of bodies rapidly buried in

sediment. It is not confined to Brachyura and Anomura actively burrowing in sediment and killed *in situ* by rapid sedimentation. The thalassinid remains preserved in infillings of their burrows must be dead bodies rather than molts, since molting does not take place in the burrow (264).

Fossilization is selective in various ways, distorting the record of fossil biocoenoses; (1) weakly calcified forms are at a disadvantage, except when buried in a reducing (and acid) environment; thus natantian forms will be less frequently represented in the fossil record; (2) since the most strongly calcified parts of skeletons will be preserved preferentially, claws and spines are most commonly found; most thalassinids and all pagurids are known from claws only, as their bodies are soft; (3) Decapoda living in areas of quiet sedimentation are favored, occurring commonly in well-bedded aphanitic limestones; (4) Decapoda living in areas of rapid sedimentation are favored; they occur in reef limestones and in bedded sands, silts and shales; (5) Anomura and Brachyura living in the intertidal zone where the sediment is frequently reworked are discriminated against and some (Hippoidea) are missing from the record; (6) decapod skeletons disintegrate rapidly in the water and in transport; only the resistant claws can be transported; (7) decapods are eaten by other decapods, cephalopods, and fishes; shell breccias consisting of decapod remains originating in this way are known but are rare.

## STRATIGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The earliest occurrences of Decapoda are not well documented stratigraphically. One species, *Antrimpos madagascariensis* VAN STRAELLEN, 1933 (301), was found in the "Permotriassic" of northern Madagascar "without any possibility of determining its age precisely." Another, *Protoclytiopsis antiqwa* BIRSHTEYN, 1958 (42), comes from a core from a bore in the north of western Siberia from delta deposits containing Lower Triassic or Upper Permian Conchostraca, plant remains of Permian appearance, Low-

er Triassic insects, and unidentified *Posidonia*-like mollusks. It should be noted that among the Malacostraca found by MALZAHN in the Zechstein limestone (lower Upper Permian) of northwestern Germany, Isopoda, Tanaidacea, and probably Cumacea and Mysidacea were recognized, but no Decapoda.

The Penaeidae and Erymidae are definitely represented in the Lower Triassic, and Glypheidae of that age have been found recently. Middle and Upper Triassic Deca-

poda are more varied. They include *Pemphix sueuri*, the first common fossil representative of this order, but it is geographically restricted to the German Muschelkalk. The first Eryonoidea appear in the Alpine Upper Triassic.

The first great systematic and geographic expansion occurred in the Early Jurassic, but only a few unidentified specimens of Caridea have been found. The Astacidea are represented only by Erymidae; there are a few Palinuroidea, Thalassinoidea, and Paguroidea, and there is only one very primitive brachyuran species. The Lower Jurassic decapod fauna thus consists mainly of Penaeoidea, Erymidae, Glypheoidea, and Eryonoidea.

A further expansion in the Middle and Late Jurassic is at least partly due to adaptation of Decapoda to the reef environment in which primitive but very varied crabs (mainly Prosopidae) flourished. They are known only from Europe but could also be expected elsewhere. Another specially important addition to the Upper Jurassic Decapoda is the result of extremely favorable conditions for preservation in the lithographic limestones of Solnhofen in southern Germany.

The oldest fresh-water crayfishes have been found in Late Jurassic or Early Cretaceous sediments of Mongolia and China. In the Cretaceous the more advanced Nephropsidae began to replace the Erymidae. Similarly, the advanced Palinura (Palinuridae) gradually outnumbered the primitive Glypheoidea. Thalassinoidea resembling *Callianassa* were well established by mid-Cretaceous time. Their claws and the re-

mains of some reptant macrurans (e.g., *Hoploparia*, *Linuparus*) are locally fairly common Late Cretaceous fossils, but they lack general stratigraphic importance. Crabs were still rare in the Early Cretaceous, but they increased in numbers and geographic range at the top of the Lower Cretaceous (Albian) and in the Upper Cretaceous.

The rich crab fauna of the reef facies in the type Danian of Denmark is transitional in composition between the Upper Cretaceous and the Lower Tertiary (*Plagiophthalmus*, *Homolopsis*, *Dromiopsis*, *Necrocarcinus*, *Raninella*, *Caloxanthus*, "Panopeus," *Xanthilithes*).

In the Tertiary a gradual approach to the modern fauna is found, with a rapid advance in numbers and diversification of crabs corresponding to a reduction in reptant macrurans. Recent Indopacific genera and families are widespread in mid-Tertiary sediments, because of the warmer climate of this period. The primitive Dromiacea and Raninidae, however, showed a remarkable reduction during this period, while the Oxyrhyncha appeared for the first time and flourished. The Xanthidae became widespread and varied but their Early Tertiary genera differed significantly from the Late Tertiary representatives, and many Late Tertiary crabs have survived to the present. *Callianassa* chelae are almost ubiquitous in Tertiary sediments. "Crab-beds" filled with carapaces of *Xanthopsis* or *Harpactocarcinus* and other similar genera are widespread in Lower Tertiary warm-water deposits, but the stratigraphic value of fossil decapods in the Tertiary is still very limited. Fresh-water prawns appeared in mid-Tertiary and fresh-water crabs in Late Tertiary time.

## EVOLUTION

### ORIGIN OF DECAPODA

The Decapoda are closely related to the Euphausiacea. These, although in many characters more primitive and presumably at least as ancient as the Decapoda, are unknown as fossils, presumably because of their weak integument. This creates a

major problem in tracing the history of the Decapoda to their origin.

The earliest known Decapoda are rare Permian Triassic Penaeoidea (Natantia) and Astacidea (Reptantia). A genus *Palaeopemphix* GEMMELLARO, 1890, has been described from the mid-Permian Sosio Limestone of Sicily, but its carapace furrows are

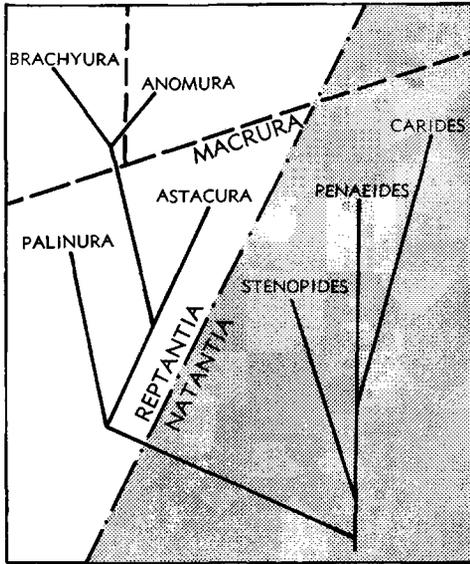


FIG. 248. Phylogeny of Decapoda inferred by BORRADAILE and BOUVIER (after Borradaile, 48, Bouvier, 1917).

unlike those of any known decapod and it requires re-examination before being accepted as an early representative of this order. The rich and well-preserved crustacean fauna of the Zechstein limestone (lower Upper Permian) of northwestern Germany has not so far yielded any eucarid Malacostraca. In a re-examination of Paleozoic Eumalacostraca, BROOKS (226) has suggested that among the pre-decapod Eumalacostraca, the benthonic, superficially eryonid-like, Pennsylvanian *Anthracaris* (order Pygocephalomorpha, which BEURLEN, 1930, had earlier placed in ancestral relationship to Decapoda), or the superficially penaeid-like *Anthracophausia*, now placed in the order Eocaridacea, or both, may be close to decapod ancestors. BURKENROAD (62) has given reasons why these fossils are unlikely to indicate the ancestry of the Decapoda or their polyphyletic origin, expecting that a Carboniferous eucarid will be found which may link the decapods with the Devonian-Lower Mississippian *Palaeopalaemon* (Eocaridacea). There is no evidence on the relations between Dendrobranchiata (Penaeidea) and other Decapoda (Pleocyemata), to indicate which suborder was older or

whether they evolved from a common decapod ancestor belonging to neither of these suborders. BURKENROAD described the hypothetical "stem-decapod" as "probably achelate, petasma-lacking, appendix-internabearing." It is also to be considered as trichobranchiate.

## PHYLOGENY OF RECENT DECAPODA

Until recently, zoologists have been inclined to consider the Penaeidea as the ancestral Decapoda and to assume that early in their history the Stenopodidea and Caridea evolved from them, forming the suborder named Natantia. According to this view, the Palinura and Astacidea branched off later, giving rise to the remaining members of the so-called suborder Reptantia. They were the Anomura and the Brachyura. The main difficulties inherent in this hypothesis are the combination of primitive with advanced characters in the Penaeidea, the numerous ambiguities in the position of the Stenopodidea which have characters in common not only with Penaeidea but also with Caridea, Astacidea, and Thalassinoida, the profound and unbridged differences between Penaeidea and Caridea, and the lack of evidence for a derivation of Palinura and Astacidea from Penaeidea. In contrast, there was little doubt about the phyletic unity of the Reptantia (i.e., the necessity to postulate a common ancestor for Palinura and Astacidea), the derivation of the Anomura from Astacidea with the Thalassinoida nearest to the origin of this branch (48), and the "origine homarienne des crabes" which had been proposed in a brilliant discussion of then-existing knowledge of fossils and comparative anatomy by BOUVIER (51). This simple scheme (Fig. 248) was widely accepted. Suggestions for modifications resulted from work on larval stages, mainly by GURNEY, and on the morphology of Raninidae ("Tribe" Gymnopleura, BOURNE, 1922). This work suggested a separate polyphyletic origin of different brachyuran crabs (Dromiacea, Gymnopleura, Oxystomata, Brachyrhyncha) from Astacidea. The only fossil Decapoda consistently taken into

consideration at that stage of evolutionary study were Jurassic Eryonidae and Mesozoic Erymidae and Prosopidae. All authors noted the controversial character of their phylogenetic hypotheses.

### EVALUATION OF PALEONTOLOGICAL DATA

The work of VAN STRAELEN, WITHERS, BEURLEN, and GLAESSNER during the period from about 1922 to 1932 provided new paleontological data which could be evaluated from the viewpoints of evolution and classification. BEURLEN and GLAESSNER rejected a number of assumptions of the zoological phylogeny and replaced them by the following conclusions, which seemed to be in better agreement with paleontological evidence: (1) Penaeidea, Stenopodidea, and Astacidea, the only Decapoda with three pairs of chelae, have a common origin, probably in a penaeid-like but trichobranchiate form. (2) The origin of all other Decapoda is seen in a glypheid-like benthonic form; this presumably achelate form was considered by BEURLEN as more primitive than the trichelate branch. (3) The fossil Glypheididea and *Pemphix* indicate very clearly the origin of the Thalassinoidea (and Paguroidea), Eryonoidea, and Brachyura through known transitional forms, while the origin of the Palinuroidea and of the remaining Anomura (Galatheoidea, Hippoidea) from different members of the same ancestral complex was inferred. (4) BEURLEN argued strongly in favor of deriving the Caridea from ancestral Thalassinoidea in Jurassic time, since they were absent from Triassic faunas containing natantians and subordinate to and less differentiated than the Penaeidea in the Jurassic; forms with exopodites are to be considered paedomorphic. The presence of phyllobranchiae and the variability of chelae with exclusion of the trichelate condition, as well as the main articulation between merus and carpus in pereiopods and presence of a stylamblys on pleopods, seem to be in agree-

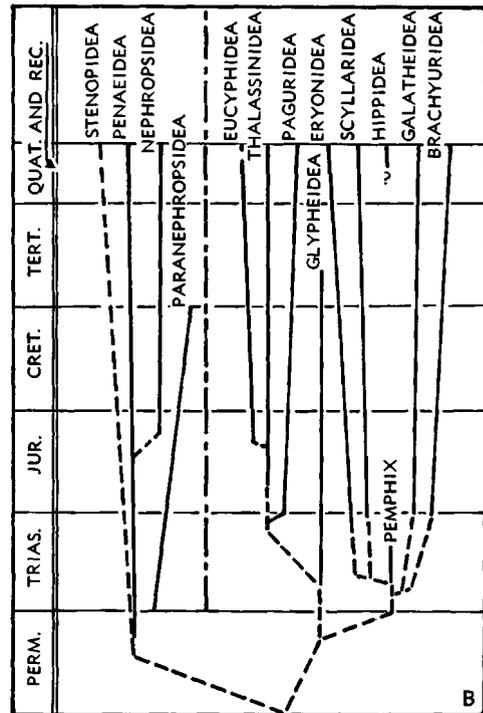
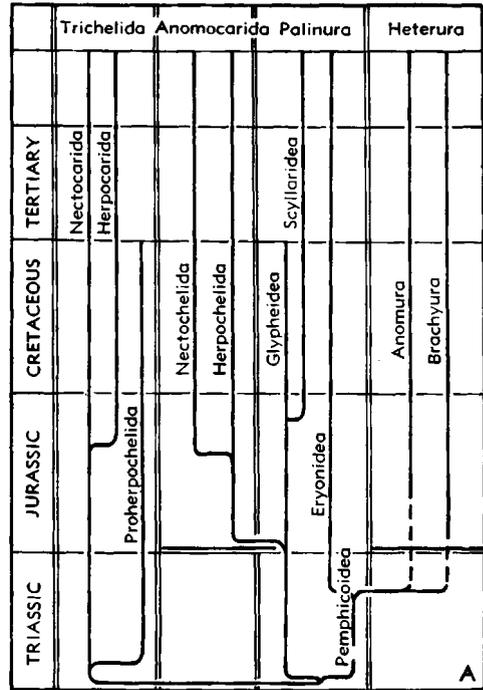


FIG. 249. Phylogeny of Decapoda (A) inferred by BEURLEN (1930) (27) and (B) inferred by BEURLEN & GLAESSNER (1930) (34).

ment with this phylogenetic hypothesis. The carapace furrows, where developed in Caridea, similarly suggest a glypheid-thalassinid rather than a penaeid origin of the Caridea (Fig. 249).

## REVISIONS OF DECAPOD PHYLOGENY

### MAJOR PROBLEMS

The revised phylogeny and the resulting reclassification of the Decapoda have been accepted in most textbooks and handbooks on invertebrate paleontology published after 1930. They were not generally accepted by zoologists and were criticized promptly by GROBBEN and later in detail by BALSS. After a revised summary had been published by GLAESSNER (118) (see Fig. 227, p. R410), a critical survey of the evolution of the eucaurids in relation to the fossil record was undertaken by BURKENROAD (62). A detailed discussion of the contentious questions of decapod phylogeny would be out of place here, but the main points of agreement and disagreement need to be summarized as a basis for discussion of the development of classification.

(1) The close relationship of the Penaeidea (and Stenopodidea) with the Astacidea was not accepted by BURKENROAD, who considered all other Decapoda as derived from Penaeidea in Permian time.

(2) This concept is contrary to the acceptance of the Natantia (Penaeidea, Caridea) as a natural grouping. None of the zoologists, however, has accepted BEURLEN's view that the Caridea originated from Thalassinoidea, entirely independently from the evolutionary line of the Penaeidea. The strictly paleontological evidence, based on rare fossils with thin integument, cannot be considered decisive, and only further investigations and discussion will clarify the important question of the origin of the Caridea.

(3) It is considered that derivation of the Eryonoidea and Palinuroidea from Glypheoidea (including *Pemphix*) rests on clear and at present undisputed evidence.

(4) There is also good evidence for the

derivation of Thalassinoidea from Glypheoidea (though BURKENROAD was inclined to regard the ancestor as thalassinid-like and the Glypheoidea as an offshoot.

(5) The question whether all or any of the Paguroidea, Galattheoidea, and Hippoidea are descendants of the Thalassinoidea, as BALSS believed, is debatable. At present zoological arguments carry more weight than the meager paleontological data.

(6) The origin of the Astacidea is not as problematic as their place in the classification. At first appearance of the Decapoda, the early Astacidea seem to be morphologically equally close to Penaeidea, with which they share three pairs of chelae ("Trichelida") and Glypheoidea which are achelate but benthonic ("Reptantia"). As the ancestral decapods are not known, it is impossible to evaluate fully the phyletic relations of the three different early branches of the order (Penaeidea, Astacidea, Glypheoidea). The last-named, being extinct, are not known in sufficient detail to be compared with the two groups with living representatives as to structure of branchiae and internal organs.

(7) The paleontologists' answer to the question of origin of the Brachyura from the group of *Pemphix* and *Pseudopemphix* among the Glypheoidea is well supported by abundant Jurassic material, including one transitional form (*Eocarcinus*). Zoologists still adhere to BOUVIER's view that the Brachyura originated from Astacidea (BALSS) or Thalassinoidea (GURNEY, BURKENROAD), but this is not supported by paleontological data. This controversy has little, if any, effect on classification.

A tentative phylogenetic scheme representing the views here expressed and conforming with the classification here adopted is shown in Fig. 250.

Serological data have been applied to the study of relationships among Decapoda (180). These data confirm in general current concepts of decapod evolution but occasionally reveal anomalies, some of which are explicable on the basis of paleontological observations similarly at variance with traditional zoological classification. An example is the closer link between *Dromia* and *Palinura* which was observed as early as 1930

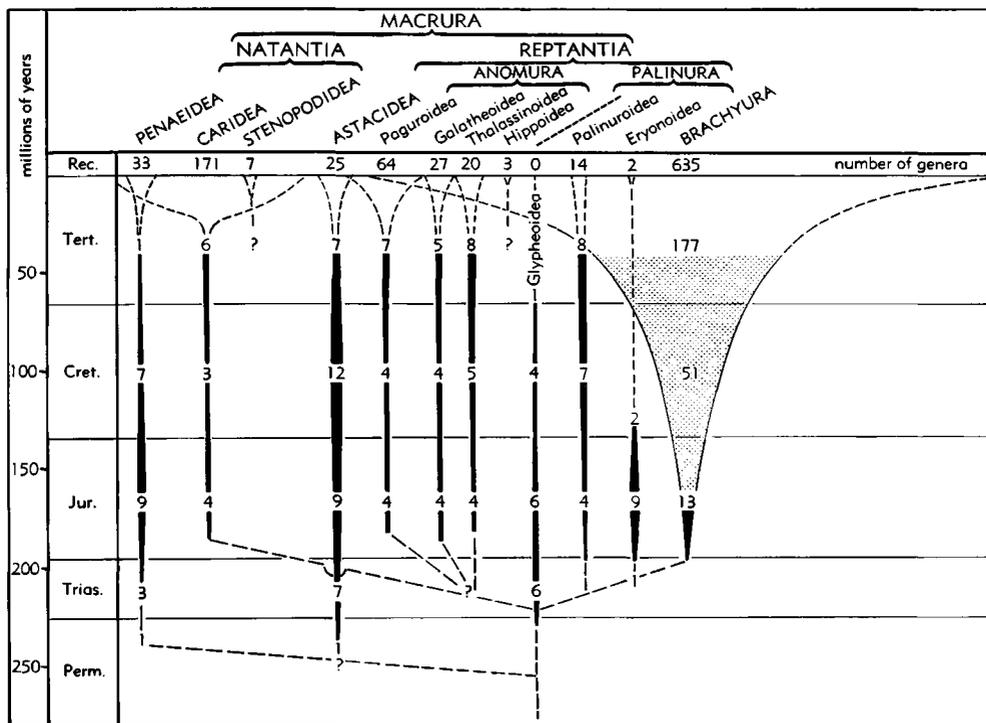


FIG. 250. Phylogeny and stratigraphic distribution of Decapoda. The numbers of pre-Quaternary genera are indicated approximately for each period. Numbers of Recent genera after CHACE (1951) (Glaessner, n).

and again more recently. This conflicts with the traditional views on astacidean ancestry of crabs but agrees with the paleontological data.

### EVOLUTION OF BRACHYURA

The relatively greater abundance of fossil crabs permits more detailed phylogenetic studies compared with those based on fossil macrurous decapods. More precise descriptions of the fossils are required before evolutionary trends and genetic relationships can be reliably established. Present views on the phylogeny of the Brachyura are generally considered tentative.

A polyphyletic origin of the Brachyura which had been proposed by students of larval development in Dromiacea (GURNEY, LÉBOUR) was found unacceptable by BALSS and others who upheld the view that the Dromiacea are primitive Brachyura. BEUR-

LEN (30) turned away from his earlier monophyletic constructions and considered the Dromiacea, Xanthimorpha, and "Oxymorpha" (Cancridea, Oxyrhyncha, Oxystomata, "Gymnopleura") as three parallel and independent phyletic groups. The paleontological basis of his argument is, however, faulty, as the Liassic age of the supposed xanthimorph ancestor "gen. nov. (cf. *Goniodromites*) *liassicus*" BEURLEN is unconfirmed and unlikely. *Oxythyreus* is an aberrant dynomenid resembling Oxystomata only in carapace outline.

BOURNE (50) considered the Raninoidea ("Gymnopleura") not as Oxystomata but as a group derived independently from Astacidea. They retain a number of primitive characters and have an elongate and posterolaterally incomplete carapace, not because of origination directly from macrurous forms but because of early adaptation to burrowing. The Brachyura are derived

monophyletically from extinct *Pseudopemphix*-like Glypheoidea in early Jurassic time. The Recent *Homolodromia* still resembles the earliest crabs. During Jurassic time the Brachyura did not rise above the organizational level of the Dromiacea. The Oxystomata appear in the Lower Cretaceous, but the details of the origination of Dorippoidea and Calappoidea are still obscure. The Raninoidea appear first in the Albian. Except for the elongation of the cephalothorax, the earliest Raninoidea do not differ substantially from contemporaneous Calappoidea.

The relative abundance and diversity of fossil Raninoidea compared with their Recent representatives shows that this group is now in a stage of decline. The family Leucosiidae is known only from the Cenozoic and appears to be derived from Calappidae. It is most strongly diversified in Recent faunas. The Dorippidae were also considered as derived from Calappidae (26), but they may be older; Cretaceous representatives have lately been recognized. An early Cretaceous diversification and later decline of the Oxystomata (except the more recent and more specialized Leucosiidae) is clearly demonstrated. Their ancestors have to be sought among the Dromiacea, but the mouth parts of Late Jurassic and Early Cretaceous crabs are not sufficiently well known to establish the origin of the main character of the Oxystomata.

GORDON (123) has pointed out that whereas most female decapods have genital openings in coxal position, the Brachyura, with exception of the Dromiacea, Raninidae, and Tymolinae, have sternal female gonopores. Therefore, she has suggested the separation of these exceptional groups from the sternitreme true Brachyura. Separation of a group on the basis of an obviously primitive character is an extreme application of "horizontal classification" which is not acceptable, particularly as the steps in the evolution from the primitive peditreme to the advanced sternitreme conditions have not yet been studied on fossil material.

The origin of the Oxyrhyncha is obscure. They appear first in the Eocene, with the families Majidae and Parthenopidae well

differentiated. Oxystomata and Homoloidea (*Latreillia*) have been suggested as ancestors, mainly because of similarities in form and sculpture of the carapace.

The Cancridae, Atelecyclidae, and Corystidae were separated from the Brachyrhyncha because of their rounded carapace bearing characteristic sculpture. These closely related families are not known in deposits older than Eocene, in which primitive Atelecyclidae (*Montezumella*) and also very advanced Cancridae (*Lobocarcinus*) occur. The Corystidae, which combine primitive characters with advanced adaptations for burrowing, are unknown as fossils. A derivation of the Cancridae from a form like the Upper Cretaceous *Avitelmessus* (Dakotiancridae, originally placed in Atelecyclidae) seems possible.

The origin of the highly diversified Brachyrhyncha remains problematical, mainly because of gaps in our knowledge of Cretaceous crabs, not only in general but also in details of the morphology of forms which have been described only superficially.

The origin of the Portunoidea, when considered on the basis of living forms, was sought near the Cancridae because of their resemblance with the Carcininae. These were thought to be primitive compared with the advanced Portuninae and the aberrant Podophthalminae. The available fossils show that the history of crabs adapted for active swimming is more complicated, and they could even be polyphyletic. There are early Tertiary xanthid-like forms (*Portunites*), but also highly specialized genera (*Enoplonorus*). The Cretaceous Carcineretidae are unlike typical xanthids. They have a number of advanced portunoid characters, such as adaptation of the fifth pereopod (where known) for swimming, transverse ridges on the carapace, keeled chelae, and long *Podophthalmus*-like eye stalks. There are also resemblances with the aberrant Palicidae and, according to BEURLEN, with *Necrocarcinus* (Calappidae).

The Xanthoidea are definitely represented in the Upper Cretaceous, the earliest undoubted genus of the Xanthidae being rather featureless *Caloxanthus*, from the Cenomanian. The representation of the

superfamily in the Lower Cretaceous is probable but at present obscure. *Etyus*, which because of its triangular front and small eyes has been placed in the Dynomenidae, conforms closely with *Xanthosia*, which also resembles Xanthidae. The origin of this family cannot be clearly demonstrated without further studies of *Xanthosia*. Another Lower Cretaceous genus, *Actaeopsis*, which was thought to have xanthid relationships, is even less well known. The problem was further confused in the literature by erroneous references to various Tertiary and later specimens as Cretaceous ("*Podopilumnus*," = *Galene*, *Glyphothyreus*). The Xanthidae were well established as a highly differentiated family at the beginning of the Tertiary, together with the related Geryonidae, Goneplacidae, and Pinnotheridae, but the fresh-water Potamidae appear only in the Upper Tertiary. The Grapsidae are generally rare in the Tertiary, possibly because of their littoral habitat. Only one record of Late Tertiary Gecarcinidae is found. The fossil material throws little light on the intricate problems of the relationships between these families. The Geryonidae, which are now insignificant, comprise important extinct Tertiary genera.

BEURLEN (26) established the superfamily Ocyropodoidea, which appears to have developed independently of the other Brachyrhyncha. It is known only from the Cenozoic, where the occurrence of the aberrant *Retropluma* is of particular interest. It resembles in some respects the Eocene *Retrocypoda*, here tentatively and questionably placed in the Palicidae, together with *Actaeopsis* and *Archaeopus*. The relationships of the living Palicidae have been interpreted in widely different ways; they have been placed with the Dorippidae by some authors and with the "Catometopa" (Brachyrhyncha with a square cephalothorax) by others.

BALSS has also drawn attention to characters of the Dromiacea in this enigmatic family. It is possible that the difficulty in placing it in the system results from the status of living Palicidae as relict forms of a group of genera which was more widespread in the Cretaceous and early Tertiary and which linked the early Dorippidae with Portunidae and with Ocyropodoidea. This hypothesis will have to be explored further when some tentatively placed and other as yet undescribed genera are studied in detail.

The evolution of the Brachyura is a striking example of an adaptive radiation of which the starting point is reasonably well established phylogenetically, morphologically, and in geologic time, and which is still going on. The first bursts of morphological differentiation occurred in Late Jurassic time within the limits of the Dromiacea grade of organization and mainly within the diversified family Prosopidae. This grade of organization survived to the present, partly in deep-water habitats, and partly through special adaptations for concealment (*Dromia*). In the Lower Cretaceous, the Oxystomata developed a special trend in the disposition of the mouth parts. The likely recognition of some fossil genera of uncertain relationships as ancestors of Dorippidae and Palicidae is expected to clarify the transition from Dromiacea to Oxystomata and also to Brachyrhyncha, which appear to have branched off in different directions about the same time. Abundant fossil material is available for the study of the evolution of the Raninoidea within the Oxystomata, which is characterized by retention of primitive together with development of adaptively specialized characters. The Oxyrhyncha, Cancridea, Portunoidea, Xanthoidea, and Ocyropodoidea became highly divergent in adaptation and diversified in early Tertiary time and continue to flourish.

## CLASSIFICATION

### EARLY CLASSIFICATIONS

The long history of decapod classification has been reviewed in detail by BALSS (1940, 1957). For the purpose of introducing the

systematic treatment adopted for the *Treatise*, it will suffice to begin with the major classification used in the reports of the Challenger Expedition. BATE (1888) used the following divisions:

*Classification of Bate (1888)*

Suborder MACRURA

Division Trichobranchiata

Group Aberrantia (Galatheidae, Pylochelidae, Thalassinidae, Callianassidae, Axiidae, Thaumastocheilidae)

Group Normalia (tribe Synaxidea—Scyllaridae, Palinuridae; tribe Astacidea—Eryonidae, Homaridae, Astacidae; tribe Stenopidea—Stenopidae [Stenopodidae])

Division Dendrobranchiata (Penaeidea)

Division Phyllobranchiata [including Caridea]

HENDERSON (1888) included in the Anomura the present Dromioidea, Raninoidea, Hippoidea, Paguroidea, and Galatheoidea. MIERS (1886) described some of the crabs, grouped according to H. MILNE-EDWARDS as Oxyrhyncha, Cyclometopa (Cancriidea), Catometopa (Ocyopodoidea), Oxystomata (Leucosiidae).

BOAS (1880), in the first fundamental study on phylogenetic relations of the Decapoda on the basis of their comparative morphology, divided them into the Natantia (comprising the Penaeides, including *Stenopus*, and the Eukyphotes, a new name replacing the older name Carides), and the Reptantia, comprising Nephropidae, Loricata (Palinuridae and Scyllaridae), Eryonidae, Thalassinidae, Anomala (Paguridae, Galatheidae, Hippidae), and Brachyura (Brachyura genuina and Dromiacea). ORTMANN, BOUVIER, and ALCOCK subsequently elaborated and improved this classification in detailed studies on various groups. BOUVIER tried to reconcile H. MILNE-EDWARDS' earlier and BOAS' later major subdivisions, giving them finally (1940) the following form.

*Classification of Bouvier (1940)*

Suborder MACRURA NATANTIA

Suborder REPTANTIA

Section Macrura reptantia (comprising "tribes"

Homaridea, Palinura—including Eryonidea—and Thalassinidea)

Section Anomura

Section Brachyura

This classification found little favor, partly because of the awkwardness involved in the use of the first three names on the list.

In the meantime, BORRADAILE (1907) had published a complete formal classification,

together with hypothetical phylogenetic schemes, which was widely accepted. The following major taxa were used:

*Classification of Borradaile (1907)*

Suborder NATANTIA

Tribe Penaeides

Tribe Carides

Tribe Stenopides

Suborder REPTANTIA

Tribe Palinura (incl. superfamilies Eryonidea, Scyllaridea)

Tribe Astacura

Tribe Anomura (incl. superfamilies Galatheidea, Thalassinidea, Paguridea, Hippidea)

Tribe Brachyura

Subtribe Dromiacea (incl. superfamilies Dromiidea, Homolidea)

Subtribe Brachygnatha (incl. superfamilies Brachyrhyncha, Oxyrhyncha)

Subtribe Oxystomata

The term tribe which plays an important part in this and subsequent classifications is defined in the *International Code of Zoological Nomenclature* (1961) as subordinate to subfamily. The terms infraorder and section are available to replace terms between the rank of suborder and superfamily.

## CLASSIFICATIONS BY BEURLEN AND GLAESSNER

In 1928, BEURLEN criticized the traditional classifications. On the hypothesis that the Decapoda could be divided into two conservative phyletic lines, one nektonic and the other benthonic, with "iterative" sidelines repeatedly and independently evolving similar characters, he divided the order into two groups named Rostralia and Arostralia. This phylogeny and the resulting grouping were soon discarded and the names were not used.

BEURLEN & GLAESSNER (34) and BEURLEN (26) revised current classification so as to express new conclusions and hypotheses on phylogeny based on much more information on fossil Decapoda than had been available to previous systematists. This led to a radical alteration of the traditional system, eliminating the taxa Macrura, Natantia, Reptantia and introducing many new terms. Critical reviews of this classification make

it possible to eliminate now some of these terms which expressed hypothetical phylogenetic concepts without underlying morphological realities. The BEURLEN & GLAESSNER (1930) classification included the following units (newly introduced names are here followed by "B. & G.").

*Classification of Beurlen & Glaessner (1930)*

- Suborder TRICHELIDA B. & G.
  - Division Nectochelida B. & G.
    - Tribe Penaeidea
    - Tribe Stenopidea [Stenopodidea]
  - Division Proherpochelida B. & G.
    - Tribe Paranephropsidea (Erymidae [Erymidae], Stenochiridae)
  - Division Herpochelida B. & G.
    - Tribe Nephropsidea (Nephropsidae, Potamobidae, Parastacidae)
- Suborder HETEROCHELIDA B. & G.
  - Division Anomocarida B. & G.
    - Tribe Thalassinidea
      - Subtribe Axioida B. & G. (Axiidae)
      - Subtribe Thalassinoida B. & G.
    - Tribe Paguridea
    - Tribe Eucyphidea (eight subtribes)
  - Division Glypheocarida B. & G.
    - Tribe Glypheidea (Glypheidae, Mecochiridae)
  - Division Gastralida B. & G.
    - Subdivision Palinura
      - Tribe Pemphicidea B. & G.
      - Tribe Eryonidea
      - Tribe Scyllaridea
    - Subdivision Heterura B. & G.
      - Tribe Galatheidea
      - Tribe Hippidea
      - Tribe Brachyuridea (divided into six "Superfamilies or Subtribes")

At about the same time BEURLEN (27) published another classification which expresses similar views on phylogenetic relationships but gives different taxonomic importance to some of the major taxa.

*Classification of Beurlen (1930)*

- Suborder TRICHELIDA
  - Division Nectochelida
    - Tribe Penaeidea
    - Tribe Stenopidea
    - Tribe Uncinoidea
  - Division Proherpochelida
    - Tribe Paranephropsidea
  - Division Herpochelida
    - Tribe Nephropsidea
- Suborder ANOMOCARIDA
  - Division Nectocarida
    - Tribe Eucyphidea

- Division Herpocarida
  - Tribe Thalassinidea (not divided into subtribes)
  - Tribe Paguridea
- Suborder PALINURA
  - Division Glypheidea
    - Tribe Pemphicoida
    - Tribe Glypheoida
  - Division Eryonidea
  - Division Scyllaridea
- Suborder HETERURA
  - Division Anomura
    - Tribe Galatheidea
    - Tribe Hippidea
  - Division Brachyura
    - Tribe Dromiomorpha (including subtribes Dromiacea, Oxyrhyncha, Ocypodoida, Cancriformia)
    - Tribe Xanthimorpha (including subtribes Portunoida, Xanthoidea)
    - Tribe Oxystomata (including subtribes Gymnopleura, Calappoida)

The main differences between BEURLEN'S system and that published earlier by BEURLEN & GLAESSNER are (1) elevation of divisions of the Heterochelida to the rank of suborders, (2) corresponding elevation of the Eucyphidea [=Caridea] and the Thalassinidea+Paguridea to the rank of divisions under new names, (3) transfer of the Pemphicidea to the Glypheidea and elevation of Eryonidea and Scyllaridea to divisions (all constituting the Palinura *sensu lato*), and (4) placement of the residual Anomura *sensu stricto* (Galatheidea+Hippidea) as a division with the same rank as Brachyura. The brachyuran tribes were reconstituted by the inclusion of several subtribes of Brachyrhyncha in the Dromiomorpha.

## REVISIONS SUBSEQUENT TO 1930

An early correction of the 1930 classifications eliminated the Proherpochelida and Paranephropsidea, as the Erymidae were found (112) to be directly related to early Nephropsidea. The lines of evolution are divergent rather than "iterative," as BEURLEN (25) had claimed. This eliminated, in turn, need for the terms Herpochelida and Nectochelida.

The Pemphicidea were subordinated to the infraorder Glypheocarida, and the Bra-

chyura were restored to the same rank, which was also given to Anomocarida, Palinura, and Anomura (*sensu stricto*), while the "Division Gastralida" was eliminated in a revised synopsis (118) which otherwise followed BEURLEN & GLAESSNER (34).

This left three major contentious innovations of decapod classification: (1) the suborder Trichelida, (2) the infraorder Anomocarida, and (3) the infraorder Anomura (*sensu stricto*). The question whether the Glypheidea should be subordinated to the Palinura or coordinated with them as Glypheocarida is a comparatively minor problem of vertical versus horizontal classification.

The concept of a taxon Natantia is no longer acceptable because of evidence for early separation of the Penaeidea and Caridea and lack of evidence for linkage of these groups. The origin of the Caridea from early Thalassinioidea, on which the taxon Anomocarida was based, cannot be well documented by fossils, because of the weak calcification of the integument of swimming and burrowing forms. BEURLEN's morphological arguments and supporting negative paleontological evidence, which seemed convincing to GLAESSNER, have been rejected by zoologists. The wide divergence of adaptations makes a satisfactory diagnosis of the Anomocarida impossible. Hence, it is a hypothetical phylogenetic rather than a practical taxonomic concept, which will not be included in the *Treatise* classification. Similarly, the separation of the Galatheidea+Hippidea from the Thalassinidea+Paguridea is a phylogenetic hypothesis rather than a convenient taxonomic division and has been rejected by zoologists. BALSS (1954) accepted BORRADAILE's Anomura (*sensu lato*) with all four subdivisions, while BURKENROAD (1963) separated the Thalassinidea from the Anomala, following BOAS. Admittedly, there is no convincing paleontological evidence on these relationships, as fossil Paguroidea are only known from chelae and fossil Hippoidea are unknown. BALSS & GRUNER (13) have given morphological evidence for close relationships between Anomura (*sensu lato*), and this category is here retained. These authors had included the Glypheidea in the

Anomura, but this is an inconvenient application of vertical classification. The Glypheoidea are probable ancestors of the Anomura, and of other phyletic lines as well, so that they are not now included in the Anomura.

The suborder Trichelida was defined (26) as follows: Macrura with well-developed abdomen. Carapace laterally compressed or cylindrical, with well-developed rostrum. Either all pereopods or pereopods 2 to 5 with seven segments; pereopods 1 to 3 chelate, with the dactylus placed medially. Pleopods well developed, without stylamblys. Antennal stalk always with scaphocerite. Mandible undivided. First maxilliped without caridean expansion ("Eucyphidenanhang"); maxilliped 3 mostly seven-jointed, resembling pereopod. Pleura of second abdominal segment not markedly enlarged. Gills consisting of trichobranchiae of dendrobranchiae.

This diagnosis excludes the Caridea and all non-nephropsid Reptantia. It reflects the view of a derivation of Nephropsidea from Penaeidea or of their common origin. [The question of the place of the Stenopodidea will not be discussed here, because of the lack of fossil evidence.] This is generally accepted. The recognition of the suborder Trichelida implies, however, that the Caridea had a different origin. In BEURLEN's view this was within the Glypheidea, which were the ultimate and remote ancestors of the Trichelida (Fig. 249, A). This view is hypothetical and unacceptable to zoologists. As their arguments against relationships being closer among Trichelida than between them and others (e.g., Glypheoidea, Caridea) cannot readily be refuted, it is best to hold the taxon Trichelida in abeyance for the present. This has the practical advantage that the sequence of major taxa in the *Treatise* classification can be kept close to that used in zoological classifications. The content of the taxa Macrura, Natantia, and Reptantia can thus be indicated readily in terms of classification used in a general descriptive sense without giving them formal recognition, which is unwarranted, since they refer to units with common adaptations and habit, rather than origin.



BURKENROAD (62) separated the Penaeidea from all other Decapoda as a suborder Dendrobranchiata. The others are placed in a new suborder Pleocyemata. It is noted that BURKENROAD retained a "supersection Natantia" (Stenopodida+Eukeyphida) and a "supersection Reptantia" with the diagnosis "loss of all pleurobranchs anterior to the 5th thoracic somite, specializations for benthonic life." His revision of the Recent Eucarida has not yet been published.

## TREATISE CLASSIFICATION

The classification adopted for the *Treatise* takes the following form (to the level of superfamilies):

### *Classification Adopted in Treatise*

#### Order DECAPODA

##### Suborder DENDROBRANCHIATA (1)

###### Infraorder Penaeidea (2)

###### Superfamily Penaeoidea (3)

###### Superfamily Sergestoidea (4)

##### Suborder PLEOCYEMATA (5)

###### Infraorder Stenopodidea (6)

###### Infraorder Uncinidea (7)

###### Infraorder Caridea (8)

###### Infraorder Astacidea (9)

###### Infraorder Palinura (10)

###### Superfamily Glypheoidea (11)

###### Superfamily Eryonoidea (12)

###### Superfamily Palinuroidea (13)

###### Infraorder Anomura (14)

###### Superfamily Thalassinoidea (15)

###### Superfamily Paguroidea (16)

###### Superfamily Galatheoidea (17)

###### Superfamily Hippoidea (18)

[Macrura include nos. 1-10; Natantia (*sensu lato*) nos. 1-8, Natantia (*sensu stricto*) nos. 6-8; Reptantia (*sensu lato*) nos. 9-18, Reptantia (*sensu stricto*) nos. 9-13.]

###### Infraorder Brachyura

###### Section Dromioidea

###### Superfamily Dromioidea

###### Superfamily Homoloidea

###### Superfamily Dakoticancroidea

###### Section Oxystomata

###### Superfamily Dorippoidea

###### Superfamily Calappoidea

###### Superfamily Raninoidea

###### Section Oxyrhyncha

###### Section Cancridea

###### Section Brachyrhyncha

###### Superfamily Portunoidea

###### Superfamily Xanthoidea

###### Superfamily Ocypodoidea

The purpose of this *Treatise* is best served by a cautious approach to taxonomy. A systematic review is its main objective and should be meaningful to both zoologists and paleontologists. It should include only such higher taxonomic categories as are necessary for a coherent presentation of our present knowledge of relationships and omit those which were introduced to present particular and subsequently disputed hypotheses of decapod phylogeny. As phylogeny cannot be perfectly represented by any sequential arrangement of taxa, and as such an arrangement is the main part of this *Treatise*, it is not considered desirable that disputed hypotheses which would substantially affect the traditional sequence should dominate it, to the exclusion of more generally acceptable and less hypothetical views. Hence, without prejudice to further discussion and development of phylogenetic views based mainly on paleontological data, these views and their taxonomic expression are partly held in abeyance until they can be more fully discussed. The critical points raised by the zoologists are therefore given full weight as far as they support traditional as against (for zoologists) unfamiliar groupings and sequential order of Decapoda.

A tabulation of suprageneric divisions of the Decapoda showing their stratigraphic occurrence and numbers of contained genera is given on pages R114-116. Stratigraphic and geographic distribution of major taxonomic divisions is shown in Figure 251.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Order DECAPODA Latreille, 1803

Eucarid malacostracans in which the first three pairs of thoracopods are modified as maxillipeds, so that no more than five

pairs are locomotory pereiopods; one or more pairs of pereiopods end in chelae, those of first pair commonly very strong; exopods of pereiopods mostly lost in adults but may be present in larvae. Abdomen is

either fully developed, with locomotory pleopods, or reduced in various ways, finally being incurved under thorax so as to protect gonopods in males and eggs in females. *Permotrias*.-Rec.

## Suborder DENDROBRANCHIATA Bate, 1888

Natantian decapods with dendrobranchiate gills; first three pereopods chelate; eggs not carried by females, hatched as nauplius. *Permotrias*.-Rec.

## Infraorder PENAEIDEA de Haan, 1849

Carapace laterally compressed, thin-walled; rostrum strong; first thoracic somite not shortened, not overlapped by pleura of second somite; abdomen long; antennular stalk long; scaphocerite large, oval; chelae of first three pereopods similar in shape. Males with petasma on first pleopods, females with spermatheca (thelycum) on last thoracic sternum. [Includes at least 30 Recent genera containing more than 300 species. Rare as fossils.] *Permotrias*.-Rec.

## Superfamily PENAEOIDEA Rafinesque, 1815

[*nom. transl. et correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (*ex* family *Pencidia* RAFINESQUE, 1815, =*Penaeidae* RAFINESQUE, 1815, ICZN)]

Third pereopods not stronger than first two pairs, maxillipeds with seven segments; antennules with stylocerite; branchiae numerous, dendrobranchiate; eggs not carried on pleopods. *Permotrias*.-Rec.

## Family PENAEIDAE Rafinesque, 1815

[*nom. correct.* WHITE, 1847 (*pro* family *Pencidia* RAFINESQUE, 1815) (*Penaeidae* on official list, ICZN)] [=*Pencidea* DANA, 1852]

Rostrum laterally compressed and well developed so that it overlaps ocular segment, pereopods four and five not reduced. [This family was divided by BALSS into subfamilies named *Penaeinae*, *Aristaeinae*, and *Sicyoninae*. These are considered families of the superfamily *Penaeoidea* by HOLTHUIS, who divides the *Penaeidae* into *Penaeinae* and *Haliporinae*, the *Aristaeidae*

into *Aristaeinae* and *Benthescyminae*, the *Sicyonidae* being undivided. The distinguishing characters are only rarely and very incompletely preserved in fossils.] *Permotrias*.-Rec.

*Penaeus* FABRICIUS, 1798 [on official list, ICZN] [*\*P. monodon*; SD LATREILLE, 1810] [=*Pseudocrangon* SCHLÜTER, 1862 (type, *Palaemon tenuicauda* VON DER MARCK, 1858); *Machaerophorus* VON DER MARCK, 1863 (type, *M. spectabilis*)]. Rostrum with teeth dorsally and ventrally; antennular flagella short. *U.Cret.*(*Senon.*), Ger.; *L. Tert.*, India; *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 252.4. *P. latesulcatus* (KISHINOUE), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.5$  (139).

*Acanthochirana* STRAND, 1928 [*nom. subst. pro Acanthochirus* OPPEL, 1862 (*non* PETERS, 1861)] [*\*Udora cordata* MÜNSTER, 1839; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace smooth, rostrum with spines; antennules short; antennae twice length of body; 1st pereopod shorter than others, with spinose merus and carpus, 3rd pereopod longest; 3rd maxilliped as in *Aeger*, spinose. *U.Jur.*, Ger.; *U.Cret.*(*Cenoman.*), Lebanon.—FIG. 253.1. *\*A. cordata* (MÜNSTER), *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.;  $\times 0.7$  (219).

*Aeger* MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*Macrowrites tipularius* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1822; SD WOODS, 1925]. Rostrum long, sides granulate; 3rd maxilliped with thin long multiple spines; pereopods 1 to 3 spinose, increasing in length, 3rd one with long chelae; surface of carapace finely granulate; uropods with diaeresis. [A monotypic family (*Aegeridae* BURKENROAD, 1963) has been proposed, but re-examination of other fossil *Penaeoidea* is required before it can be defined adequately.] *U.Trias*.-*U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 252.3. *\*A. tipularius* (SCHLOTHEIM), *U.Jur.*, Ger.; reconstr.,  $\times 0.5$  (11).

*Antrimpos* MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*A. speciosus*; SD WOODS, 1925] [=*Kölga* MÜNSTER, 1839 (no type)]. Antennules very short, antennae twice length of body; rostrum dentate, carapace smooth, thin; length of pereopods increasing from 1 to 3; 6th abdominal somite longest. [According to BALSS (1922, p. 130) a synonym of *Penaeus* FABRICIUS. This is a "collective" genus in which many fossil species not showing diagnostic characters of Recent *Penaeidae* have been placed.] *Permotrias*.-*Cret.*, Eu.-Madagascar.—FIG. 253.6. *\*A. speciosus* (MÜNSTER), *U.Jur.*, Ger.;  $\times 0.7$  (219).—FIG. 252.1. *A. kiliani* (VAN STRAELEN), *U.Jur.*, Fr.; reconstr.,  $\times 1$  (296).

*Benthescymus* BATE, 1881 [*\*B. crenatus*; SD BATE, 1888]. Rostrum short, compressed, forming crest; cervical groove strongly marked; carapace with lateral longitudinal ridges; abdomen compressed; antennular stalk excavated to accommodate eye; pereopods slender, pleopods long. [Deep-water benthos of warm seas.] *U.Cret.*(*Senon.*), Lebanon; *Rec.*—FIG. 253.2. *B. libanensis* (BROCCHI), *U. Cret.*(*Senon.*), Lebanon; reconstr.,  $\times 0.5$  (115).

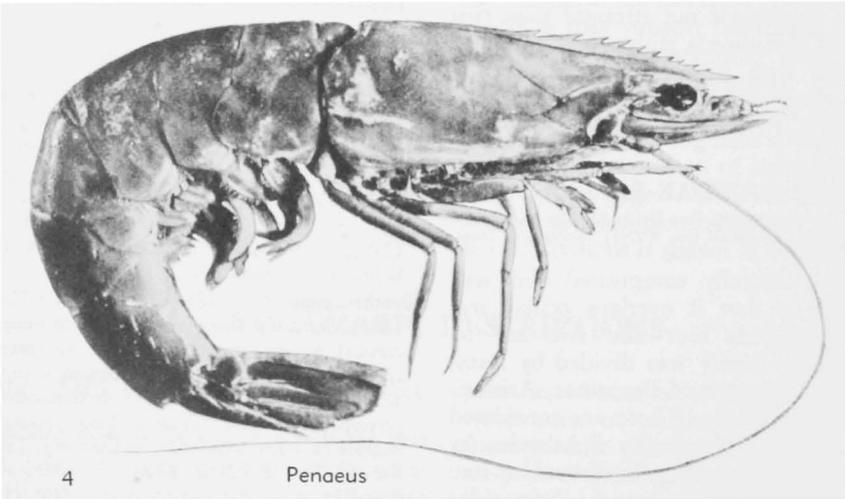
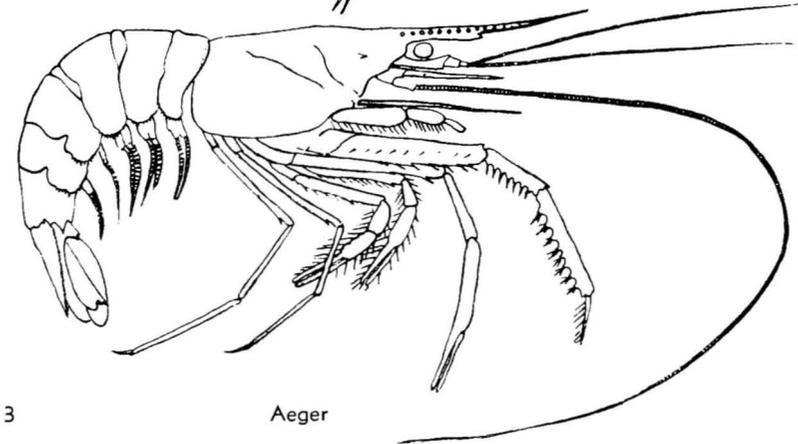
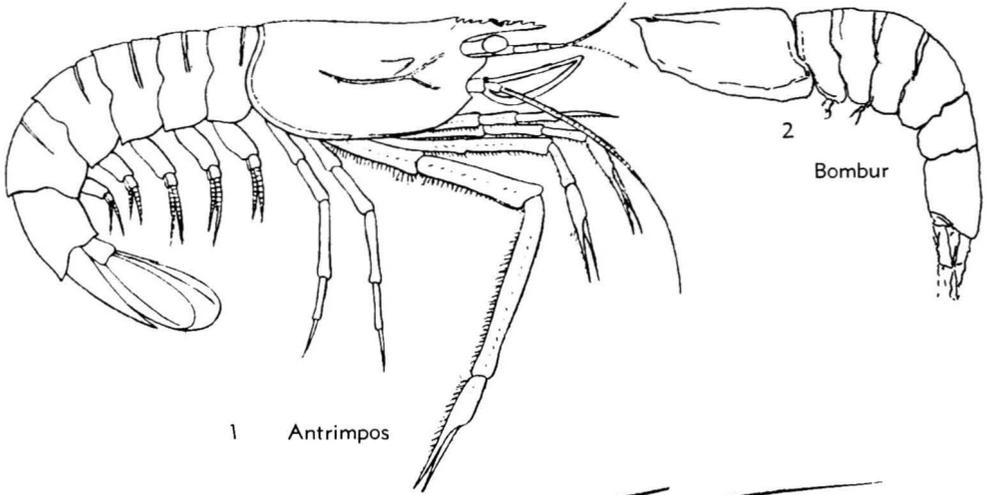


FIG. 252. Penaeidae (p. R447).

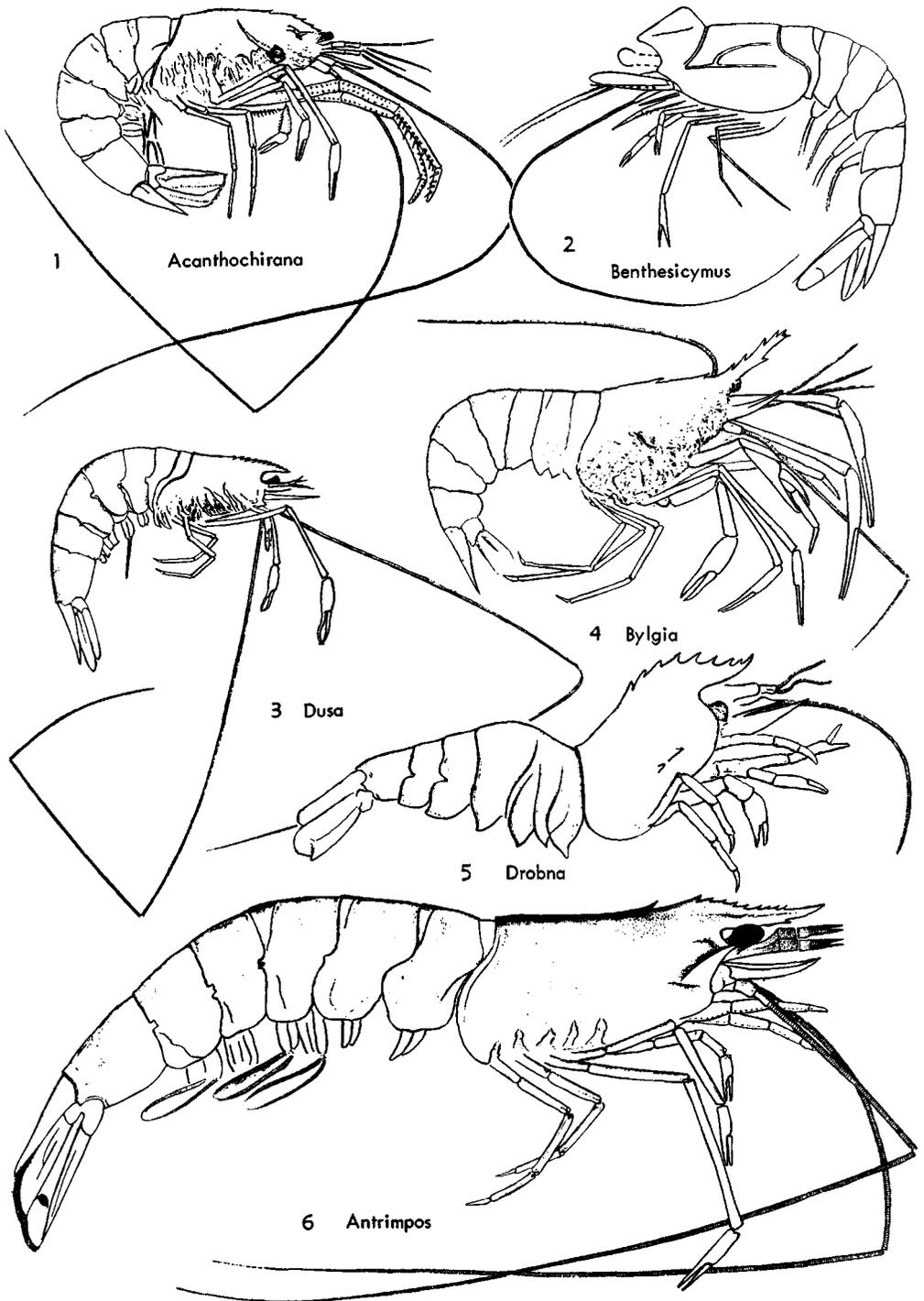


FIG. 253. Penaeidae (p. R447, R450).

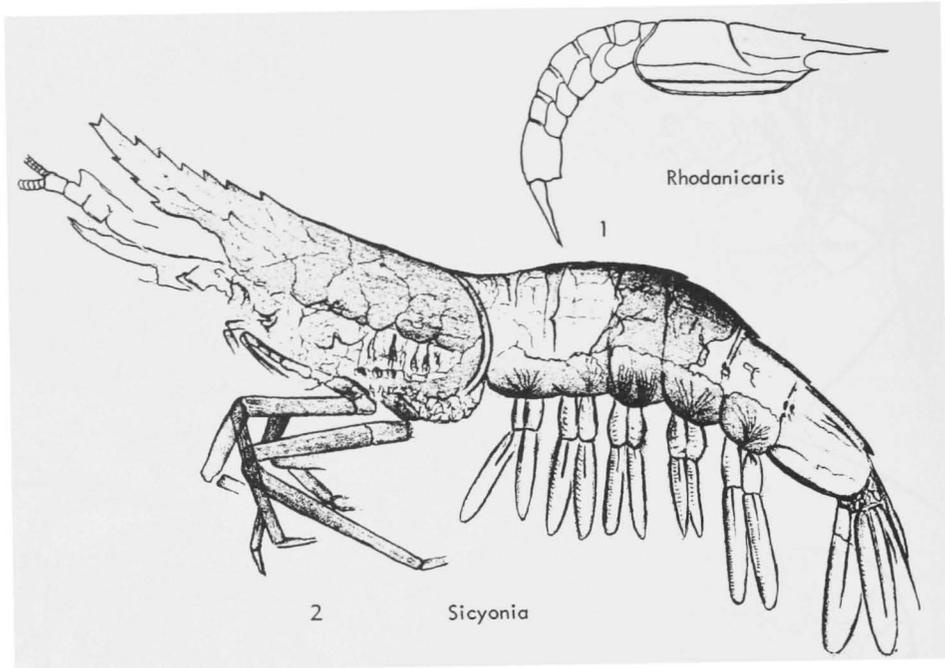


FIG. 254. Penaeidae (p. R450).

**Bombur** MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*B. complicatus*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Small forms with small rostrum, short cephalothorax, bent abdomen and long 6th somite. *U.Trias.-U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 252,2.

*\*B. complicatus*, *U.Jur.*, Ger.;  $\times 0.5$  (Glaessner, n).

**Bylgia** MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*B. spinosa*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Differs from *Penaeus* and *Antrimpos* in shorter cephalothorax, upturned rostrum and more strongly developed pereopods. *U.Jur.*, S. Ger.—FIG. 253,4. *\*B. spinosa*;  $\times 0.7$  (219).

**Drobna** MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*D. deformis*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Antennae long; rostral keel strongly curved and dentate, 3rd maxilliped thick, 1st pereopod short and thick, abdomen curved, 3rd somite large. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 253,5. *\*D. deformis*;  $\times 0.7$  (219).

**Dusa** MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*D. monocera*; OD, M]. Antennae twice length of body, rostrum denticulate, carapace and abdomen finely granulate; chelae of 1st 3 pereopods with wide propodus and curved fingers; abdomen as in *Penaeus* and *Antrimpos*. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 253,3. *\*D. monocera*;  $\times 0.7$  (219).

**Rauna** MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*R. angusta*; OD, M]. Small; carapace smooth, pleopods long. [Poorly preserved.] *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.

**Rhodanicaris** VAN STRAELEN, 1925 [*\*R. depereti*; OD]. Carapace with deep cervical groove and laterally 2 ridges and groove; rostrum long. *M. Jur.*, Fr.—FIG. 254,1. *\*R. depereti*; carapace and abdomen (reconstr.),  $\times 1.3$  (296).

**Sicyonia** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1830 [*nom. conserv.*, ICZN, Op. 382] [*\*S. sculpta*; SD DEMAREST, 1858]. Integument hard, carapace compressed laterally, rostrum short, denticulate dorsally, 1st 3 pereopods short, pleopods very short. [Littoral, warm seas.] *U.Cret.*, Ger.; *Rec.*—FIG. 254,2. *S.?* *roemeri* (VON DER MARCK), Senon., N.Ger.;  $\times 0.7$  (191).

### Family UNCERTAIN

**Tiche** VON DER MARCK, 1863 [*\*T. astaciformis*; OD]. [Based on single incompletely known specimen.] *U.Cret.* (Senon.), N.Ger.—FIG. 255,1. *\*T. astaciformis*;  $\times 1$  (191).

**Carpopenaeus** GLAESSNER, 1945 [*\*C. callirostris*; OD]. Carapace short, with longitudinal fissure; rostrum with 1 ventral and 7 or 8 dorsal teeth; carpus of pereopods 2 and 3 multiarticulate as in some Caridea; telson lanceolate. *U.Cret.* (Cenoman.), Lebanon.—FIG. 255,2. *\*C. callirostris*; reconstr.,  $\times 1$  (115).

### Superfamily SERGESTOIDEA Dana, 1852

[*nom. transl.* HOLTHUIS, herein (ex Sergestidae DANA, 1852)]

Carapace moderately compressed, rostrum shorter than eye stalks, small, lower flagellum of antennule modified; antennal flagellum with bend; chelae on first three

pereiopods, pereiopods 4 and 5 and branchiae all reduced. *Rec.*

#### Family SERGESTIDAE Dana, 1852

Characters of superfamily. [Two subfamilies and seven genera are currently recognized.] *Rec.*

*Sergestes* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1830 [*S. atlanticus*; OD]. Carapace thin, 1st 3 pereiopods elongate, slender, 1st without proper chela. [Pelagic, mainly tropical.] *Rec.*

#### Suborder PLEOCYEMATA Burkenroad, 1963

Decapoda without secondary rami of branchiae; eggs carried by females on pleopods, hatching at zoea stage. *Permotrias-Rec.*

#### Infraorder STENOPODIDEA Huxley, 1879

[*nom. correct.* HOLTHUIS, 1946 (*pro* Stenopidea BATE, 1888)]

Carapace cylindrical, with cervical and branchiocardiac grooves; pleura of second abdominal somite not overlapping first, pereiopods 1 to 3 chelate, one or both third pereiopods considerably longer than first two; no exopodites on pereiopods; females without spermatheca; branchiae numerous, trichobranchiate; first pleopods reduced, others long, carrying eggs in females. *Rec.*

#### Family STENOPODIDAE Huxley, 1879

[*nom. correct.* SMITH & WELDON, 1909 (*pro* Stenopidae HUXLEY, 1879)]

Characters of infraorder. *Rec.*

*Stenopus* LATREILLE, 1819 [*\*Palaemon hispidus* OLIVIER, 1811; OD]. Rostrum long; carapace and abdomen spinose, scaphocerite long and flat; 4th and 5th pereiopods with carpus and propodus multiarticulate. *Rec.*, *Medit.-W.Indies-IndoPac.*

#### Infraorder UNCINIDEA Beurlen, 1930

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (*pro* tribe Uncinoidea BEURLEN, 1930)]

Carapace incompletely preserved; abdomen with small first and large second somite with pleura expanded anteriorly and posteriorly; ?first pereiopod very long,

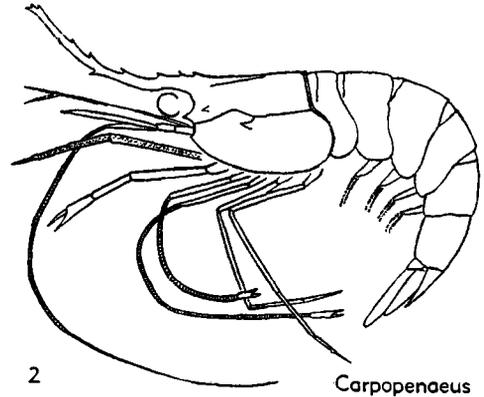
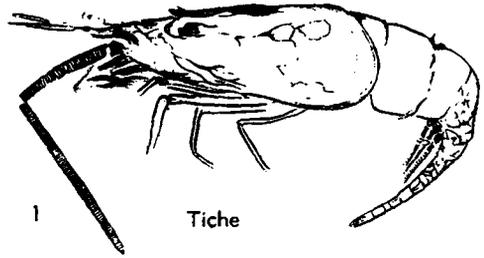


FIG. 255. Family Uncertain (p. R450).

strong and spinose, with elongate carpus and propodus and strong curved fingers; pereiopods 2 and 3 with small chelae; uropods without diaeresis. *L.Jur.*

#### Family UNCINIDAE Beurlen, 1928

Characters of infraorder. *L.Jur.*

*Uncina* QUENSTEDT, 1850 [*\*U. posidoniae*; OD] [= *Leptochirus* KRAUSE, 1891 (no species named)]. Characters of infraorder. *L.Jur.*, *Ger.*—FIG. 255A, 1. *\*U. posidoniae*, *Lias.*, *S.Ger.*;  $\times 0.3$  (360a).

#### Infraorder CARIDEA Dana, 1852

[= *Eukyphotes* BOAS, 1880; *Eucyphidea* ORTMANN, 1890; *Carides* BORRADAILE, 1907]

Carapace cylindrical, laterally or (slightly) dorsoventrally compressed, mostly with well-developed rostrum; third maxilliped with four or five segments, first two pereiopods chelate or subchelate, pereiopod 3 chelate; abdomen well developed, second segment with rounded pleura overlapping those of both adjoining segments, third segment commonly with longitudinal

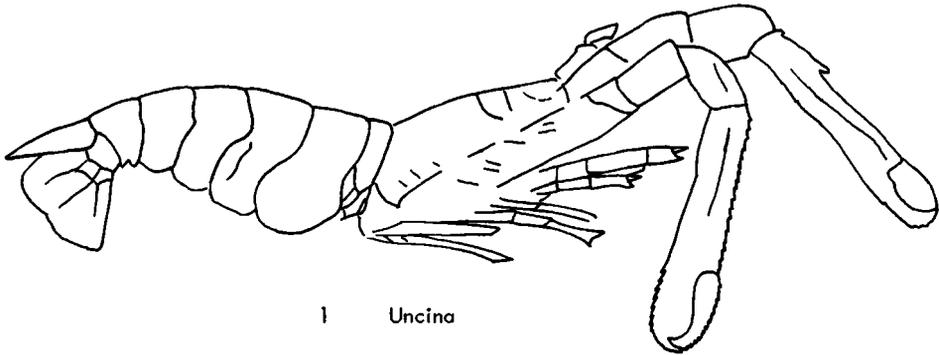


FIG. 255A. Uncinidae (p. R451).

downward bend. [The Recent Caridea were classified in nine superfamilies by HOLTHUIS (1955) and in seven superfamilies by BORRADAILE (1907) and BALSS (1957, with a doubtful additional new superfamily). BALSS considered the subdivision as not altogether satisfactory because of uncertain limits. There are 22 living families with more than 170 genera. In the few known fossils only very few distinctive characters of the living taxa are recognizable and their listing in a work on paleontology would serve no useful purpose.] *M.Jur.-Rec.*

#### Family ATYIDAE de Haan, 1849

[*nom. correct.* DANA, 1852 (*pro* family Atyidea DE HAAN, 1849)]

Rostrum compressed; first two pereopods subequal, chelate, all pereopods may bear exopods. [Fresh-water.] *Tert.-Rec.*

*Atya* LEACH, 1816 [\**Atya scaber* LEACH, 1815; OD] [= *Atyoida* RANDALL, 1839 (type, *A. bisulcata*)]. Rostrum not compressed; carpus of 2nd pereopod very short, anteriorly deeply excavated, chelae divided to base; 3rd pereopod large and long. [Two new species of Tertiary prawns from Brazil were placed in *Atyoida* by BEURLEN (1950), considered close to *A. potimirim* MÜLLER, 1881 (= *Caridina mexicana* DE SAUSSURE, 1857), the type-species of *Potimirim* HOLTHUIS, 1954.] *Rec.*, C.Am.-W.Indies-W.Afr.-IndoPac.-S.Australia. — FIG. 256,5. *A. crassa* (SMITH), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.7$  (149, from Bouvier).

*Caridina* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837 [\**C. typus*; OD]. Rostrum generally compressed, smooth or serrate; carpus of 2nd pereopod hardly excavated anteriorly; no exopods on pereopods. *Oligo.*, Fr.; *Rec.*, Afr.-SE.Asia-Pac.Is.

#### Family OPLOPHORIDAE Dana, 1852

[*nom. transl.* RATHBUN, 1902 (*ex* Oplophorinae DANA, 1852)]

Rostrum compressed, dentate, antennal scale long, third maxilliped long, pediform, first two pereopods chelate. [Marine.] ?*U. Jur.*, ?*U. Cret.*, *Rec.*

*Oplophorus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837 [\**O. typus*; OD] [= *Hoplophorus* AGASSIZ, 1846 (*nom. van.*)]. Abdominal somites 2 to 4 or 3 to 5 with long mediodorsal teeth; telson acutely triangular. ?*U. Jur.*, C.Afr.; ?*U. Cret.* (Senon.), Ger.-Lebanon; *Rec.*, cosmop. — FIG. 256,1. *O. marcki* SCHLÜTER, Senon., Ger.;  $\times 0.7$  (191).

*Notostomus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1881 [\**N. gibbosus*; OD]. Carapace with oblique hepatic and horizontal lateral keel, last 4 abdominal somites keeled; telson truncate. ?*U. Cret.* (Cenoman.-Senon.), Lebanon; *Rec.*, bathypelagic. — FIG. 257,1. *N.? cretaceus* ROGER, Cenoman., Lebanon;  $\times 2$  (255).

#### Family PALAEMONIDAE Rafinesque, 1815

Antennules mostly three-flagellate, chelae of second pereopod stronger than those of first, all pereopods lacking exopods. [Marine and fresh water.] *Tert.-Rec.*

*Palaemon* WEBER, 1795 [\**P. adpersus* RATHKE, 1837; SD ICZN (Opinion 564)]. Carapace with antennal and branchiostegal spines; no hepatic spine; antennules 3-flagellate, telson with 4 apical spines. [Mostly marine.] ?*Oligo.*, Eu.; *Rec.* cosmop. — FIG. 256,2. *P. longirostris* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, *Rec.*;  $\times 0.7$  (149).

*Bechleja* HOUŠA, 1956 [\**B. inopinata*; OD]. Rostrum dentate, pereopod 1 with small chela, pereopod 2 with large chela, pereopods 3 to 5 equal in length; telson little shorter than uropods; an-

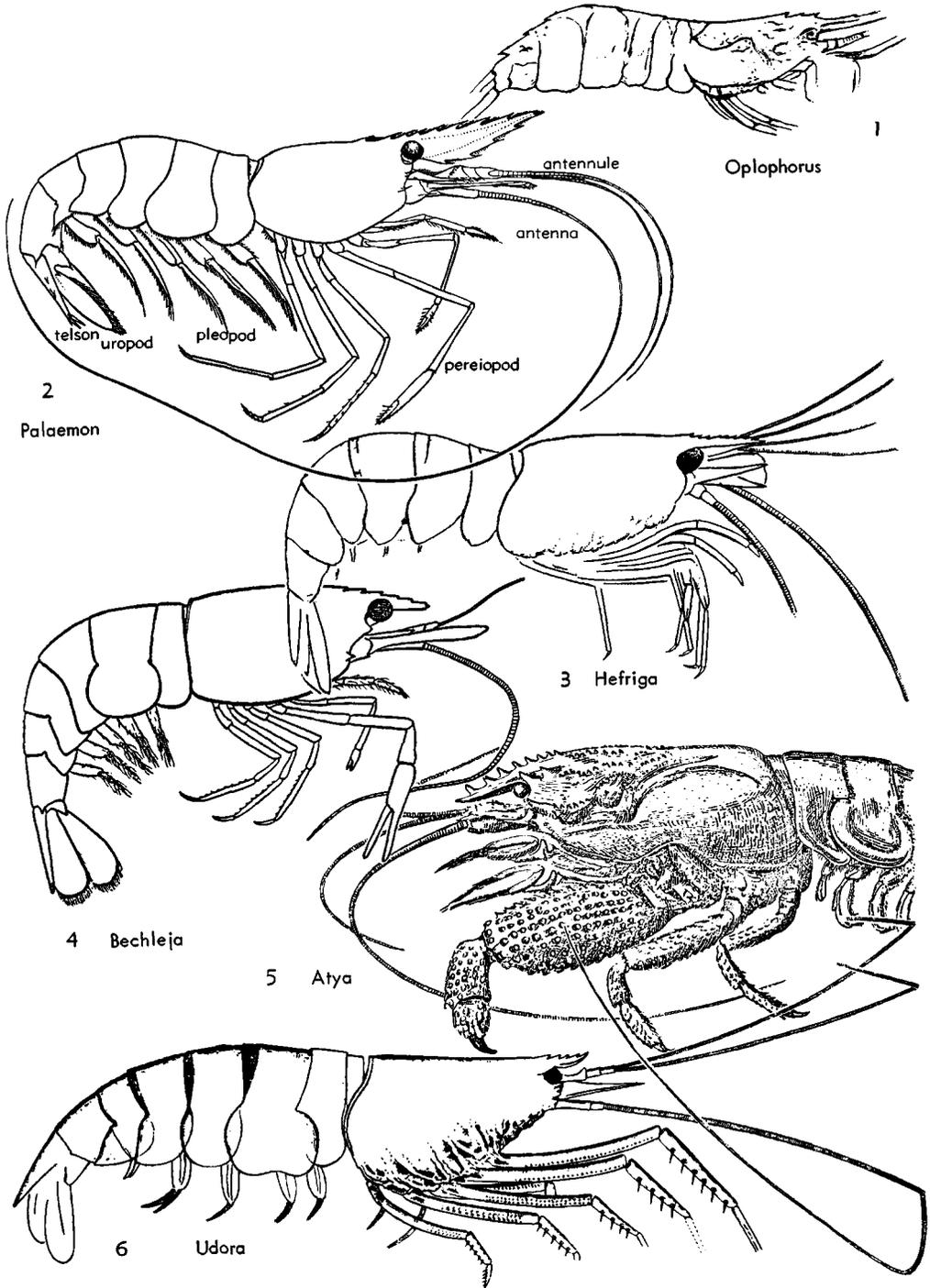


FIG. 256. Atyidae (5); Oplophoridae (1); Palaemonidae (2, 4); Family Uncertain (3, 6) (p. R452, R454-R455).

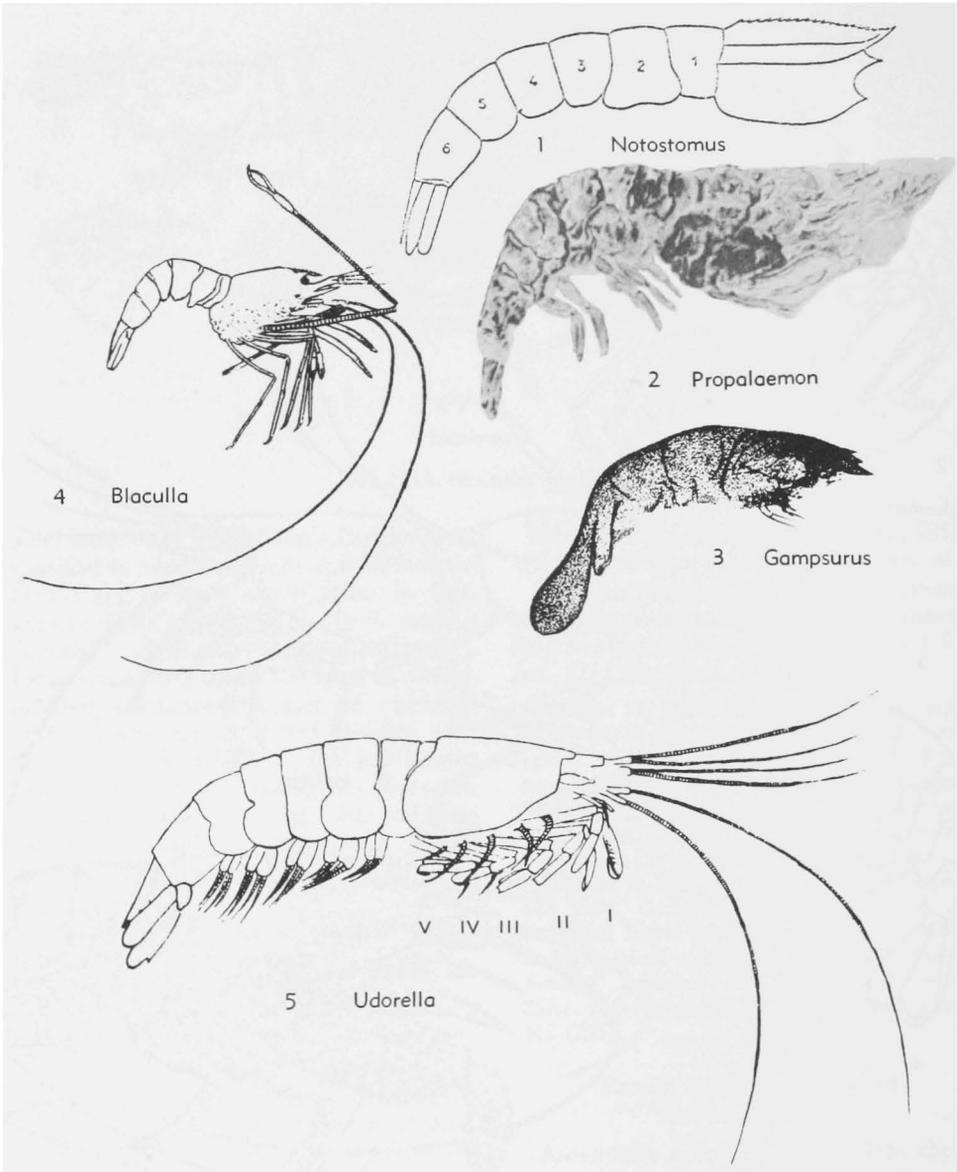


FIG. 257. Oplophoridae (1); Palaemonidae (2); Udorellidae (5); Family Uncertain (3,4) (p. R455).

tennae 1.5 times length of cephalothorax. *U. Oligo.* or *L.Mio.*, Czech.—FIG. 256,4. \**B. inopinata*, reconstr.;  $\times 3$  (152).

?*Homelys* VON MEYER, 1862 [\**H. minor*; OD]. *U.Mio.*, Eu.

?*Micropsalis* VON MEYER, 1859 [\**M. papyracea*; OD]. Rostrum smooth, 1st pereopod with long chelae, antennae 3 times length of cephalothorax. *Oligo.*, Eu.

*Propalaeon* WOODWARD, 1903 [\**P. osborniensis*; SD WOODS, 1925]. Rostrum serrate; pereopods

long and slender, pleopods long. *L.Oligo.*, Eng.—FIG. 257,2. \**P. osborniensis*;  $\times 1$  (326).

#### Family UDORELLIDAE Van Straelen, 1924

Third maxilliped ending in long thin terminal segment and finely spinose; pereopods spinose, subchelate, decreasing in length from first to fifth, with annulated

exopods. [This was made a "subtribe" *Udorellida* BEURLEN & GLAESSNER (1931) =superfamily Udorelloidea, *nom. transl.* BIRSHTEYN (1960).] *U.Jur.*

*Udorella* OPPEL, 1862 [\**U. agassizi*; OD]. Characters of family. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 257,5. \**U. agassizi*; (I-V, pereopods 1 to 5),  $\times 1$  (11).

### Family UNCERTAIN

*Blaculla* MÜNSTER, 1839 [\**B. nicoides*; OD, M]. Rostrum denticulate, 1st pereopod chelate, 2nd annulate, ending in small chela, left much shorter than right, pereopods 3 to 5 without chelae; telson pointed, uropods with diaeresis. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 257,4. *B. sieboldi* OPPEL,  $\times 1$  (219).

*Hefriga* MÜNSTER, 1839 [\**H. serrata*; OD, M]. Rostrum denticulate, 1st 2 pereopods with chelae, 3rd pereopod longest. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 256, 3. \**H. serrata*;  $\times 2$  (219).

*Gampsurus* VON DER MARCK, 1865 [\**Euryurus dubius* VON DER MARCK, 1863; OD]. Carapace short, with short triangular rostrum and 2 or 3 spines near orbit; abdomen with pleura of 2nd somite expanded. [Some confusion exists as to the name of this incompletely known genus. VON DER MARCK stated that he introduced *Gampsurus* to replace his earlier proposed name *Euryurus*, because of prior use of the latter name by KOCH (1864). However, *Euryurus* VON DER MARCK appears to have been published in 1863.] *U.Cret.* (*Senon.*), Ger.—FIG. 257,3. \**G. dubius*;  $\times 1$  (191).

*Udora* MÜNSTER, 1839 [\**U. brevispina*; OD, M]. Antennae long, rostrum denticulate, 2nd abdominal somite largest; 1st pereopod chelate, all pereopods spinose. *M.Jur.-U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 256,6. \**U. brevispina*, *U.Jur.*, Ger.;  $\times 1.3$  (219).

## Infraorder ASTACIDEA

### Latreille, 1803

[=ASTACURA BORRAIDAILE, 1907]

Cephalothorax subcylindrical, rostrum and abdomen well developed; frontal portion of carapace not fused with epistome; antennae with five-segmented stalk and scale; third maxilliped pediform; first three pereopods chelate, chelae of third pereopods largest; abdominal pleura well developed; uropods with diaeresis; genital openings coxal. *Permotrias.-Rec.*

### Family ERYMIDAE Van Straelen, 1924

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, 1929 (*pro* Erymidae VAN STRAELEN, 1924)] [=Paranephropsidae BEURLEN, 1927]

Carapace with well-developed cervical, postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves,

mostly with median suture and small fusiform intercalated plate. *Permotrias.-U.Cret.*, ?*Paleoc.*

[A revision of the Erymidae and related forms by Dr. R. FÖRSTER (Munich) is in the press in "Palaeontographica" (*pers. comm.*, Oct., 1965). His taxonomic conclusions differ from the following treatment of the genera concerned in important points: *Klytia* is placed in the synonymy of *Eryma*. *Palaeastacus* and *Phlyctisoma* are considered valid genera of the Eryminae. Only *Clytiopsis* and doubtfully *Paraclytiopsis* are included in the Clytiopsinae. *Lissocardia* is seen as "intermediate between Erymidae, Glypheidae and Pemphicidae." *Protoclytiopsis* and *Clytiella* are placed in the Eryminae.] (See Addendum to Decapoda, p. R626.)

### Subfamily ERYMINAE Van Straelen, 1924

[*nom. transl. et correct.* BEURLEN, 1927 (*ex* Erymidae VAN STRAELEN, 1924)]

Carapace with median suture and intercalated plate; chelae of first pereopods large. *Jur.-U.Cret.*, ?*Paleoc.*

*Eryma* VON MEYER, 1840 [\**Macrourites modestiformis* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1822; OD] [*?=Aura* MÜNSTER, 1839 (*nom. neg.*)]. Carapace granulate or punctate; cervical groove deep and moderately inclined, not strongly sinuous; postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves nearly parallel, joined near their lower ends; tubercle *w* usually distinct, rostrum short; 1st chelae stout, fingers not much longer than palm; surface of shell granulate to punctate. *L.Jur.-L.Cret.*, Eu.-E.Afr.-Indonesia; *U.Cret.*, N.Am.—FIG. 258,4. \**E. modestiformis* (SCHLOTHEIM), *U.Jur.*, Ger.;  $\times 2$  (219).—FIG. 259,3. *E. bedelta* (QUENSTEDT), *M.Jur.*, Eng.;  $\times 0.7$  (326).

*Enoploclytia* M'COY, 1849 [\**Astacus leachi* MANTELL, 1822; OD]. Carapace and 1st pereopods more coarsely ornamented than in *Eryma*; rostrum strongly dentate. [The distinction of some Jurassic species from *Eryma* is uncertain.] ?*M.Jur.*, Eu.; *U.Jur.-U.Cret.*, Eu.-N.Am.; ?*Paleoc.*, N.Am.(Ala.); *L.Cret.* (*Apt.-Alb.*), E.Australia.

*E.* (*Enoploclytia*). Chelae long and slender, fingers long, without spines. *L.Cret.* (*U.Alb.*)-*U.Cret.*, ?*Paleoc.*, Eu.-W.Afr.-N.Am.; *L.Cret.* (*Apt.-Alb.*), E.Australia.—FIG. 259,1. \**E.* (*E.*) *leachi* (MANTELL), *U.Cret.*, Eng.; chela,  $\times 0.7$  (326).—FIG. 258,2. *E.* (*E.*) *leachi granulicauda* (SCHLÜTER), *U.Cret.*, Ger.; carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (193).

*E.* (*Palaeastacus*) BELL, 1850 [\**P. dixonii* BELL, 1850 (= *Astacus sussexiensis* MANTELL, 1833); OD] [= *Phlyctisoma* BELL, 1862]. Chelae stout, spinose; fingers equal in length to palm. ?*U.Jur.*, *U.Cret.* (*Cenoman.*), Eu., *L.Cret.* (*Alb.*)-*U.Cret.*, N.Am.—FIG. 259,2. \**E.* (*P.*) *sussexiensis* (MANTELL), *U.Cret.*, Eng.; 2a, dorsal view; 2b, cheliped;  $\times 0.5$  (326).

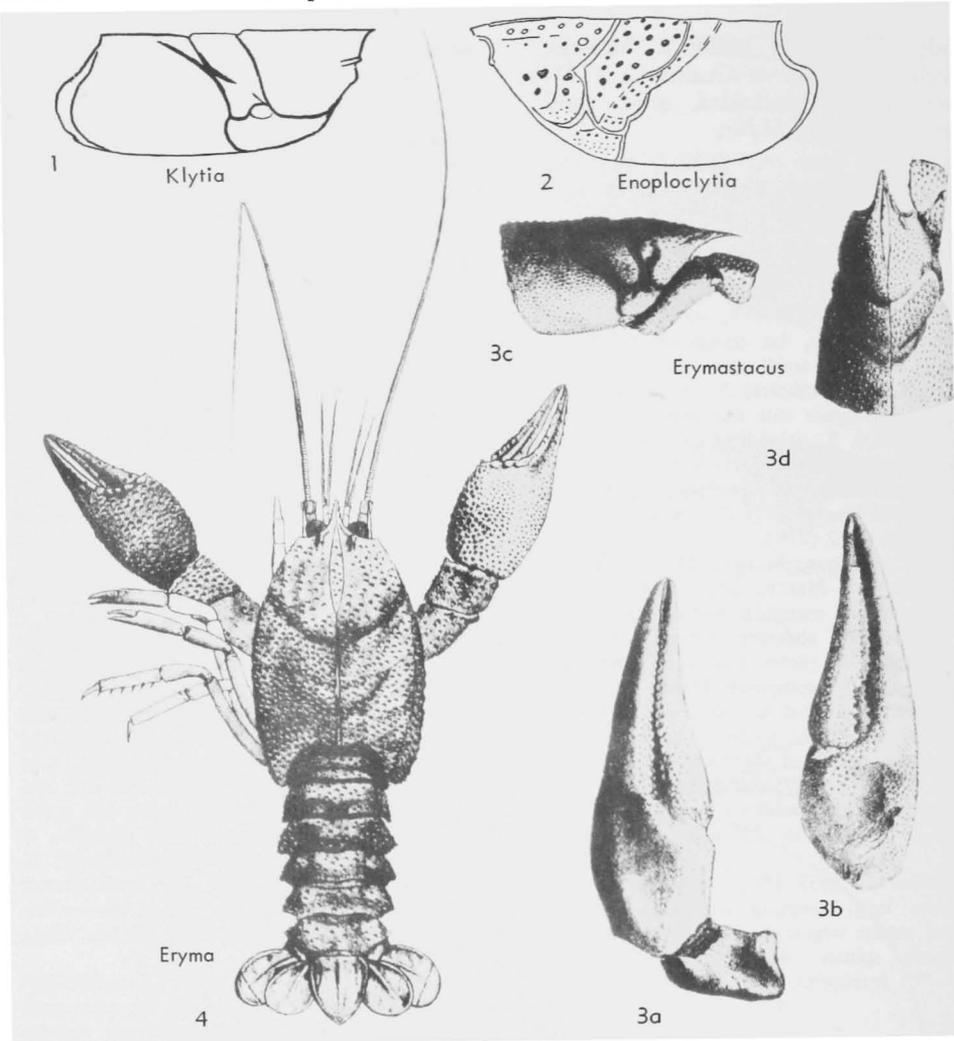


FIG. 258. Erymidae (Eryminae) (p. R455-R456).

**Erymastacus** BEURLEN, 1928 [*\*Glyphea ornati* QUENSTEDT, 1857; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Anterior portion of carapace narrow; cervical groove deep, all 3 transverse grooves straight; 1st chelae with short square palm and long denticulate fingers; dactylus thin, with slight upward curvature. *L.Jur.*, Can.; *L.Jur.-U.Jur.*, Eu.; *M.Jur.-U.Jur.*, E. Afr.—FIG. 258,3. *\*E. ornati* (QUENSTEDT), *U. Jur.*, Ger.; 3a,b, chelae, 3c, carapace, side view, 3d, carapace, dorsal view,  $\times 0.7$  (219).

**Klytia** VON MEYER, 1840 [*\*Glyphea ventrosa* VON MEYER, 1835]. Carapace with cervical groove deep, sinuous, inclined, but less sloping than post-cervical and branchiocardiac grooves, which are fused near middle of flank; 1st chelae long, fingers longer than palm. *Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 258,1. *\*K. ventrosa* (VON MEYER); carapace, lat. view,  $\times 0.7$  (Glaessner, n).

**Stenodactylina** BEURLEN, 1928 [*\*S. liasina*; OD]. Chela with stout, spinose, short palm and very long thin finger. *L.Jur.*, S.Ger.

#### Subfamily CLYTIOPSINAE Beurlen, 1927

Carapace without median intercalated plate; first chelipeds not significantly different from second and third pairs. *?Permotrias.*, *L.Trias.-U.Trias.*

**Clytiopsis** BILL, 1914 [*\*C. argentoratensis*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace thin, with short triangular rostrum and 3 parallel transverse grooves; lateral keels continuing on carapace; chelae weak. *L.Trias.*, Eu.—FIG. 260,1. *\*C. argentoratensis*, Alsace; 1a, dorsal, 1b, lateral,  $\times 2$  (39).

**Clytiella** GLAESSNER, 1931 [*\*C. spinifera*; OD]. Carapace with closely granulate surface and with

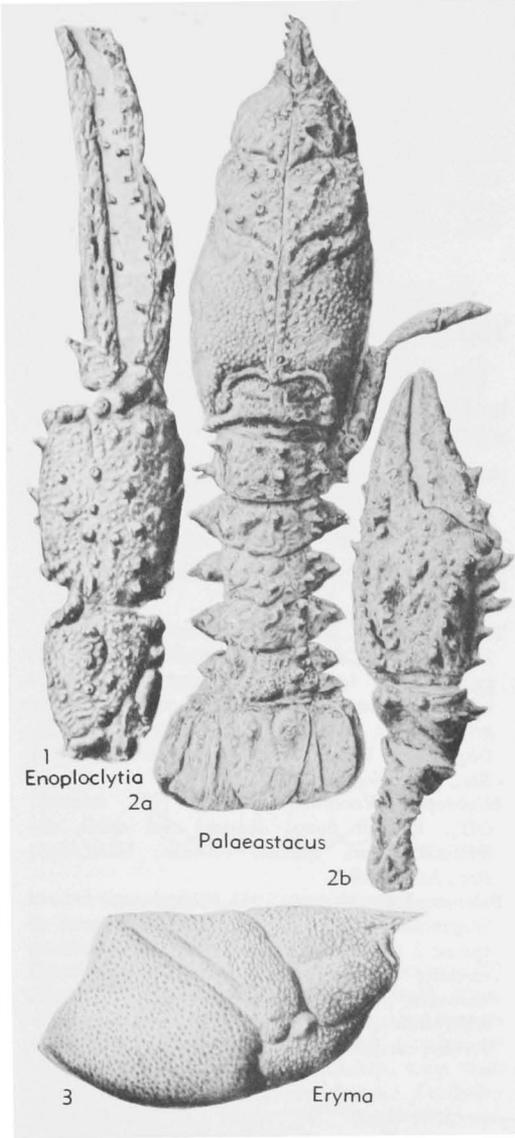


FIG. 259. Erymidae (Eryminae) (p. R455).

median keel bearing row of curved sharp spines; 1st pereopods with massive chelae, fingers short. *U.Trias.*, Aus.—FIG. 261,1. \**C. spinifera*; holotype,  $\times 1$  (111).

?*Piratella* ASSMANN, 1927 [\**P. badensis*; OD]. Carapace thin, median keel with spines as in *Clytiella*, but chelae long and slender; fingers long, with teeth. *M.Trias.*, Ger.—FIG. 261,2. \**P. badensis*; 2a, carapace, 2b, chelae,  $\times 1$  (5).

*Lissocardia* VON MEYER, 1851 [\**L. silesiaca*; SM ASSMANN, 1927]. Carapace thin, with weak

granulated median keel, rostrum short, gastral region with longitudinal ridges, cervical and post-cervical grooves parallel; branchiocardiac groove weak, sigmoidal; chelae long, with long denticulate fingers. *M.Trias.*, Eu.—FIG. 261,3. \**L. silesiaca*; carapace and chela,  $\times 1$  (5).

*Paraclytiopsis* ORAVEC, 1962 [\**P. hungaricus*; OD]. Resembling *Clytiopsis* but cervical groove deep; postcervical groove very weak and close to branchiocardiac; groove *i* near vertical; appendages unknown. *U.Trias.*, Hung.—FIG. 262,1. \**P. hungaricus*; 1a,b, carapace, side, dorsal,  $\times 1.5$  (221).

?*Protoclytiopsis* BIRSHTEYN, 1958 [\**P. antiqua*; OD]. Possibly synonym of *Lissocardia* from which it differs only in apparent absence of anterolateral

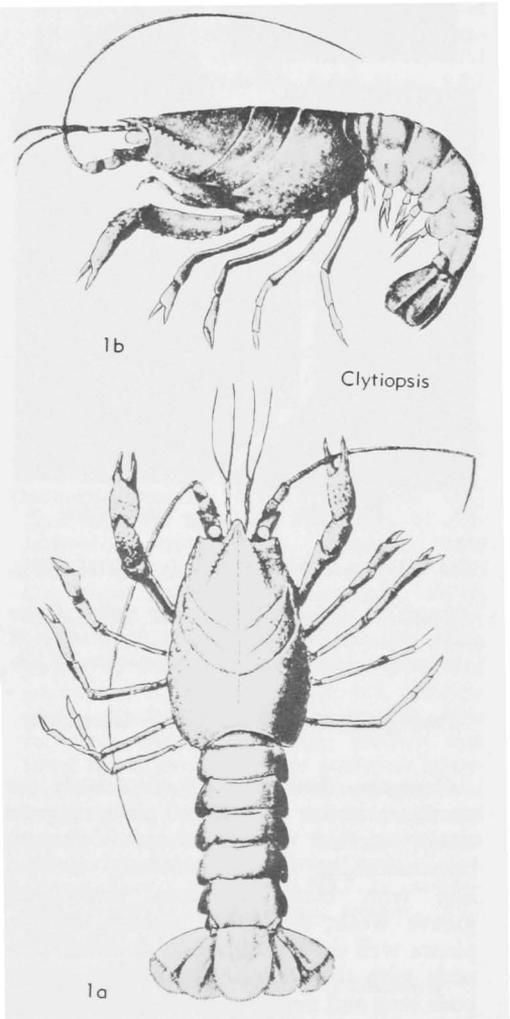


FIG. 260. Erymidae (Clytiopsinae) (p. R456).

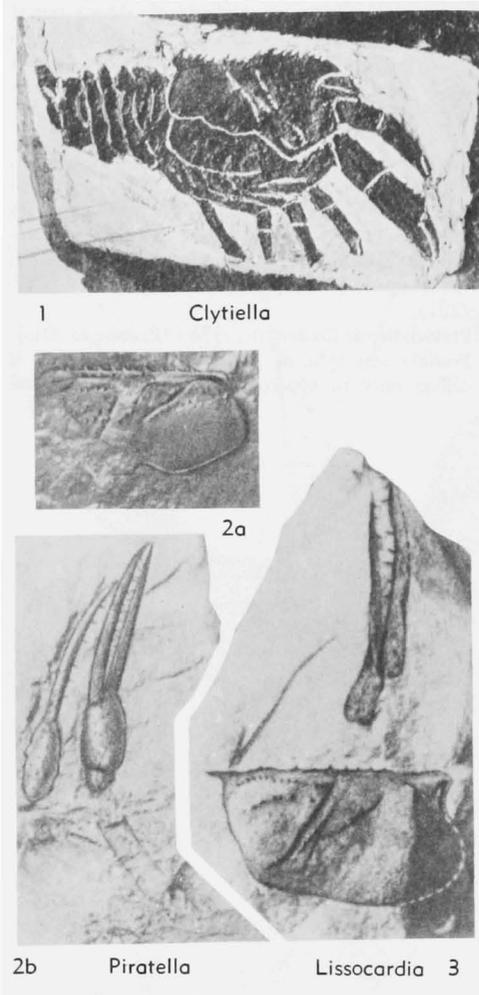


FIG. 261. Erymidae (Clytiopsinae) (p. R456-R458).

(“gastral”) ridges. [The name is spelled *Protoclytiopsis*, obviously by error, in the heading of the generic description only.] *Permotrias.*, W.Sib.

**Family PLATYCHELIDAE** Glaessner, n. fam.

Carapace dorsoventrally depressed; no median suture or intercalated plate; rostrum small; cervical groove deep, V-shaped; branchiocardiac groove crossing median line with backward loop; postcervical groove weak; abdominal somites smooth, pleura well developed, telson rounded, uropods with diaeresis; chelae of first pereopods long and slender, second chelae smaller

by about one-half, third chelae very small. *U.Trias.*

**Platychele** GLAESSNER, 1931 [*\*P. trauthi*; OD]. Characters of family. *U.Trias.*, Aus.—FIG. 263, 1. *\*P. trauthi*; reconstr.,  $\times 0.7$  (111).

?**Platypleon** VAN STRAELEN, 1936 [*\*P. nevadense*; OD]. Fragmentary abdomen resembling *Platychele*; 5th and 6th abdominal somites smooth, with large triangular pleura. *U.Trias.*, Nev.

**Family NEPHROPIDAE** Dana, 1852

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (*pro* Nephropsidae DANA, 1852)] [=Homaridae HUXLEY, 1879; Herpochelida BEURELEN, 1930]

Carapace with mainly postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves; fifth thoracic somite fused. *M.Jur.-Rec.*

**Subfamily NEPHROPINAE** Dana, 1852

[*nom. transl.* MERTIN, 1941 (*ex* Nephropsidae DANA, 1852)]

Carapace with longitudinal keels or rows of spines; abdomen with median keel. *U. Cret.-Rec.*

**Nephrops** LEACH, 1814 [*\*Cancer norvegicus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Carapace with distinct postcervical groove, with long spinose rostrum and longitudinal spinose keels; abdomen with transverse grooves, 1st chelipeds long, slender, keeled. *Oligo.-Mio.*, W.Ind.; *Plio.*, Eng.; *Pleist.*, Panama; *Rec.*, Atl.-IndoPac.

**Nephropsis** WOOD-MASON, 1872 [*\*N. stewarti*; OD]. Rostrum long, dentate, eyes small, abdominal pleura spinose. ?*Paleoc.*, USA (Ala.), *Rec.*, Atl.-IndoPac.

**Palaonephrops** MERTIN, 1941 [*\*Hoploparia browni* WHITFIELD, 1907; OD]. Carapace with rows of spines; 2 transverse grooves, cervical groove almost reaching median line; abdominal somites with transverse grooves and median keel. *U.Cret.*, N. Am.(Mont.).—FIG. 264, 2. *\*P. browni* (WHITFIELD); carapace,  $\times 1$  (193).

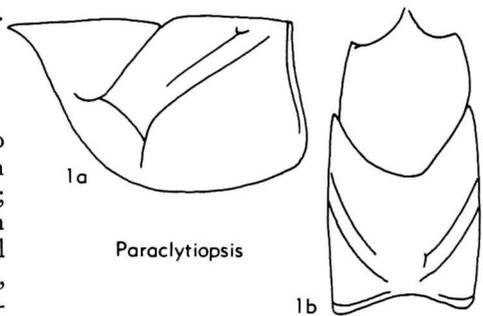


FIG. 262. Erymidae (Clytiopsinae) (p. R457).

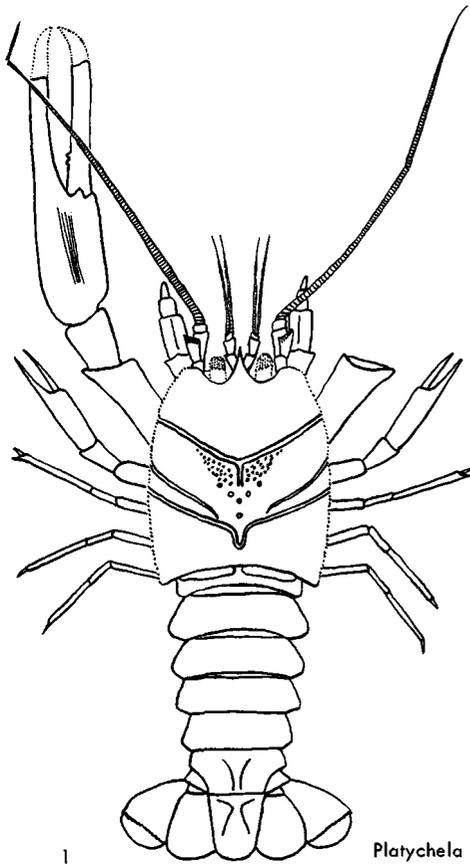


FIG. 263. Platychelidae (p. R458).

**Paraclythia** FRITSCH, 1877 [*\*P. nephropica*; OD] [= *Paraclythia* ZITTEL, 1885 (*nom. van.*)]. Carapace with 4 longitudinal ridges; abdominal somites with deep transverse grooves and longitudinal ridges or bosses; chelae heterochelous, long, with rows of spines. *U.Cret. (Turon.-Senon.)*, Eu. (Boh.-N.Ger.).—FIG. 264, 1. *\*P. nephropica*; reconstr.,  $\times 0.7$  (98).

#### Subfamily HOMARINAE Huxley, 1879

[*nom. transl.* MERTIN, 1941 (*ex Homaridae* HUXLEY, 1879)]

Carapace and abdomen mostly without coarse spines or carinae and only lightly granulated; chelae usually without carinae, heterochelous. *Cret.-Rec.*

**Homarus** WEBER, 1795 [*\*Cancer gammarus* LINNÉ, 1758 (= *H. vulgaris* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837); SD RATHBUN, 1904]. Rostrum rather short and spiny, carapace without ridges or spines behind suborbital spine, cervical groove clearly developed

only below gastro-orbital groove, postcervical groove long and smoothly curved, connecting lowest part of cervical with posterior part of branchiocardiac groove; chelae stout, heterochelous. *Cret.-Rec.*, N.Am.-Eu.

**H. (Homarus)**. Abdomen smooth, palm of 1st chela without median ridge. *Cret.-Rec.*, N.Am.-Eu.-S.Afr.—FIG. 265, 1a. *\*H. gammarus* (LINNÉ), Rec.;  $\times 0.2$  (341a).—FIG. 265, 1b. *H. americanus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, Rec.; carapace ( $r$ , rostrum; 1-3, rostral spines;  $a$ , supra-orbital spine;  $\beta$ , suborbital spine;  $\gamma$ , antennal spine;  $c-e$ , postcervical groove;  $a$ , branchiocardiac groove),  $\times 0.4$  (283).

**H. (Palaeohomarus)** MERTIN, 1941 [*\*H. (P.) hemprichi*; OD]. Differs from *H. (Homarus)* in its longer rostrum, longer postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves, weak lateral ridges on abdomen, median ridge or spines on manus of 1st chela. *L.Cret. (Alb.)-U.Cret. (Senon.)*, Madag.-Eu.-N. Am. (Tex.).—FIG. 265, 3. *\*H. (P.) hemprichi*; 3a, lateral, 3b, dorsal view,  $\times 0.7$  (193).

**Hoploparia** M'COY, 1849 [*\*Astacus longimanus* SOWERBY, 1826; SD RATHBUN, 1926] [= *Palaeno* ROBINEAU-DESVOIDY, 1849 (type, *P. roemeri*)]. Rostrum thin, long, smooth or denticulate, cervical groove clearly developed above and below gastro-orbital groove, postcervical groove distinct, connecting with cervical groove through semicircular arc; chelae strong, long, heterochelous. [The distinction between some species of *Hoploparia* and *Homarus* is difficult and disputed.] *L.Cret.-L.Tert.*, cosmop.—FIG. 265, 4a. *\*H. longimana* (SOWERBY), *U.Cret. (Cenoman.)*, Eng.;  $\times 0.7$  (326).—FIG. 265, 4b, c. *H. stokesi* (WELLER), *U.Cret. (Campan.)*, Antarctic; reconstr., 4b, female, 4c, abdominal somites 2-5 of ?male,  $\times 0.7$  (10).

**Oncopareia** BOSQUET, 1854 [*\*O. bredai*; OD] [= *Nymphaeops* SCHLÜTER, 1862 (type, *N. coesfeldiensis*); ?*Ischnodactylus* PELSENEER, 1886 (type, *Hoploparia macrodactyla* SCHLÜTER, 1862; SD) (*non Ischnodactylus* CHEVROLAT, 1877); ?*Sienocheles* FRITSCH, 1887 (type, *S. esocinus*; SD)]. Rostrum strongly spinose; only ventral portion of cervical groove present; postcervical groove distinct, extensively fused with branchiocardiac groove; several weak longitudinal ridges on anterior portion of carapace; abdomen with lateral ridges, pleura short; 1st pereopods heterochelous, one chela with short stout palm and long, narrow fingers with acicular teeth and strongly curved points; other with longer palm and thicker fingers with shorter teeth. *U.Cret. (Turon.-Senon.)*, Eu.—FIG. 265, 2. *O. coesfeldiensis* (SCHLÜTER), Senon., Ger.; reconstr.,  $\times 0.7$  (orig., after 193).

#### Subfamily NEOPHOBERINAE Glaessner, n. subfam.

[= *Phoberinae* MERTIN, 1941]

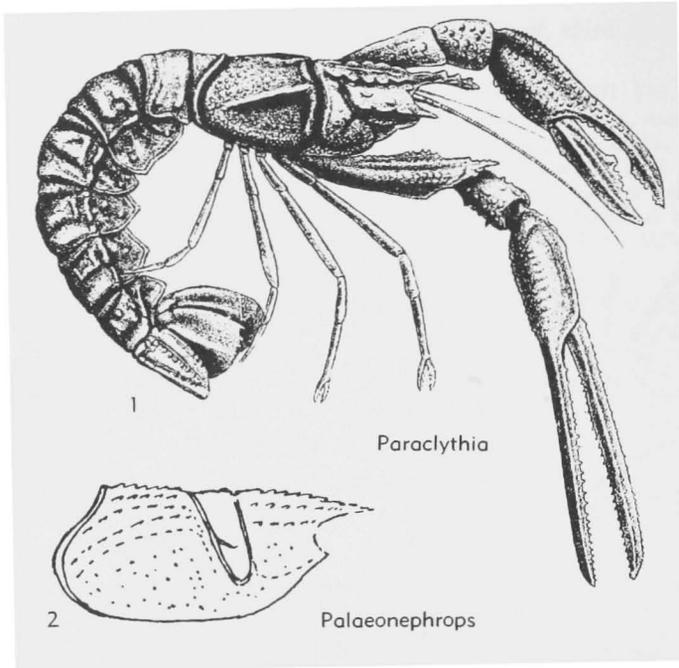


FIG. 264. Nephropidae (Nephropinae) (p. R458-R459).

Carapace spinose, with rows of spines on anterior part. *M.Jur.-Rec.*

**Neophoberus** *nom. subst.* [*pro Phoberus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1881 (*non* MACLEAY, 1819, *nec* KIRSCH, 1873)] [*\*P. caecus*; OD]. Carapace strongly spinose, with long curved denticulate rostrum; postcervical groove joining short lateral portion of cervical groove with semicircular loop; chelae very long and slender, spinose; abdominal pleura pointed. *Rec.*, W.Indies-IndoPac.—FIG. 266,1. *\*P. caecus tenuimanus* BATE, *Rec.*;  $\times 0.2$  (112).

**Palaeophoberus** GLAESSNER, 1932 [*\*Stenochirus suevicus* QUENSTEDT, 1867; OD]. Carapace spinose, with distinct cervical and postcervical grooves, joining laterally with acute angle; abdominal pleura truncate, chelae very long and strong. *M.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 266,2. *\*P. suevicus* (QUENSTEDT), S.Ger.; reconstr.,  $\times 0.2$  (112).

?**Tillocheles** WOODS, 1957 [*\*T. shannonae*; OD]. Rostrum spinose, anterior region of carapace longitudinally carinate, antennal furrow semicircular, cervical groove short, postcervical groove distinct, branchiocardiac groove diverging from it posteriorly high on carapace; branchial region finely spinose; abdomen with median keel; 1st chelipeds heterochelous, palms tuberculate, dactylus keeled. *L.Cret.(Alb.)*, Australia.—FIG. 266,3. *\*T. shannonae*; left side of carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (328).

#### Subfamily UNCERTAIN

**Cardirhynchus** SCHLÜTER, 1862 [*\*C. spinosus*;

OD]. Insufficiently known. *U.Cret.(Senon.)*, N. Ger.

**Pseudastacus** OPPEL, 1861 [*\*Bolina pustulosa* MÜNSTER, 1839; OD] [= *Alvis* MÜNSTER, 1840 (type, *A. octopus*); *Bolina* MÜNSTER, 1839 (type, *B. pustulosa*) (*non* RAFINESQUE, 1815; *nec* MERTENS, 1833)]. Carapace granulate, with deep transverse groove, weak branchiocardiac groove branching off on middle of flank, rostrum triangular, with 3 lateral teeth, antennal stalks long, with pointed scale; 1st chelae long, slender, with straight fingers. ?*M.Jur.*, *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 267,1. *\*P. pustulosus* (MÜNSTER), *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.;  $\times 1$  (219).

?**Stenochirus** OPPEL, 1861 [*\*S. meyeri* OPPEL, 1862; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Small; antennal flagella long, 1st pereopods with long, slender chelae, propodus rectangular, fingers with acicular teeth. [A new subfamily Stenochirinae was proposed by BEURLEN (1928) and later given family rank (BEURLEN, 1930). The type-species of *Stenochirus* is imperfectly preserved; according to BEURLEN nothing is recognizable of the carapace. His definition of the family was largely based on "*S.*" *suevicus* QUENSTEDT, which is the type of *Palaeophoberus* GLAESSNER.] *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 267,2. *\*S. meyeri*;  $\times 1$  (219).

#### Family ASTACIDAE Latreille, 1802

[*nom. correct.* SAMUELLE, 1819 (*pro* Astacini LATREILLE, 1802)] [= Potamobiidae HUXLEY, 1878]

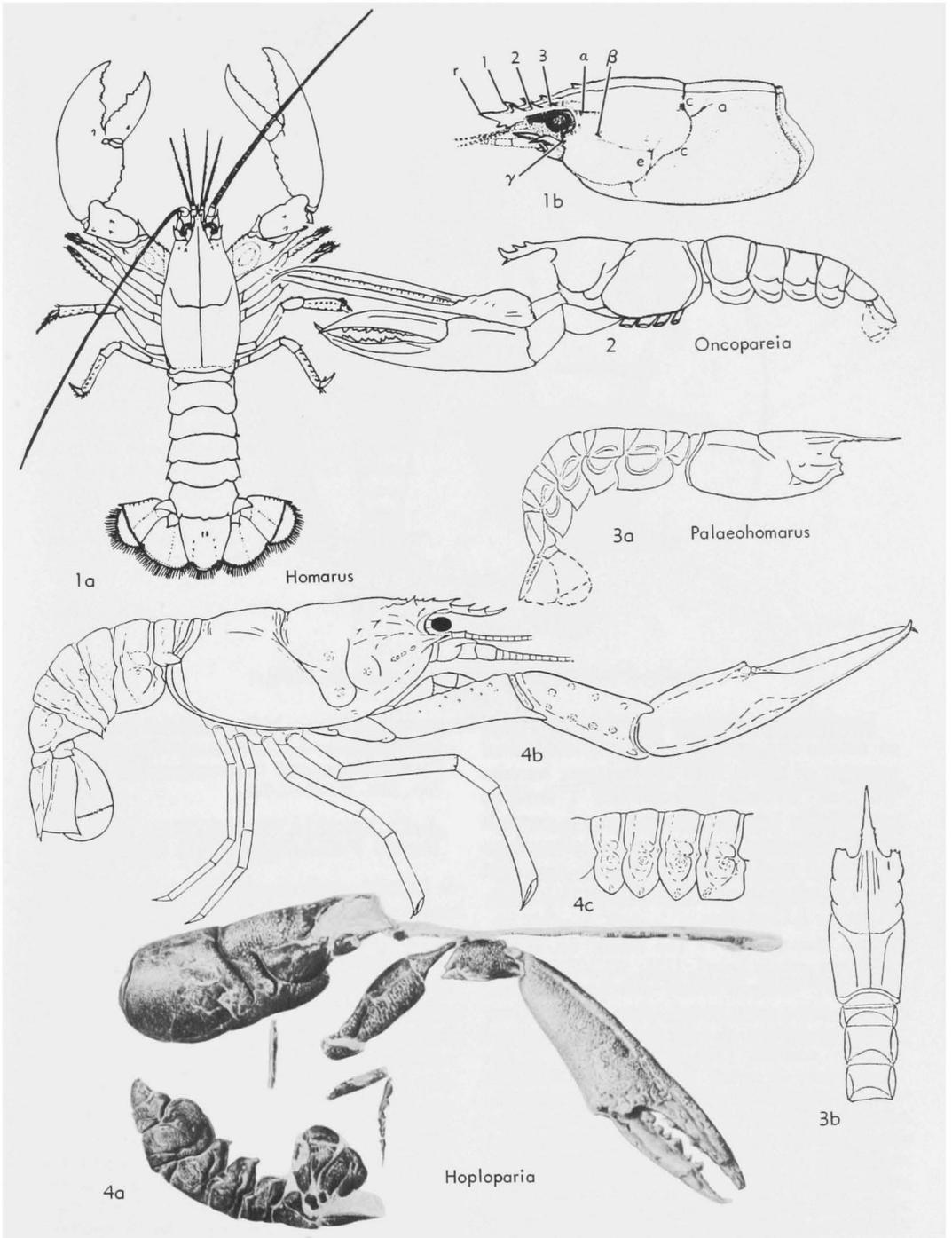


FIG. 265. Nephropidae (Homarinae) (p. R459).

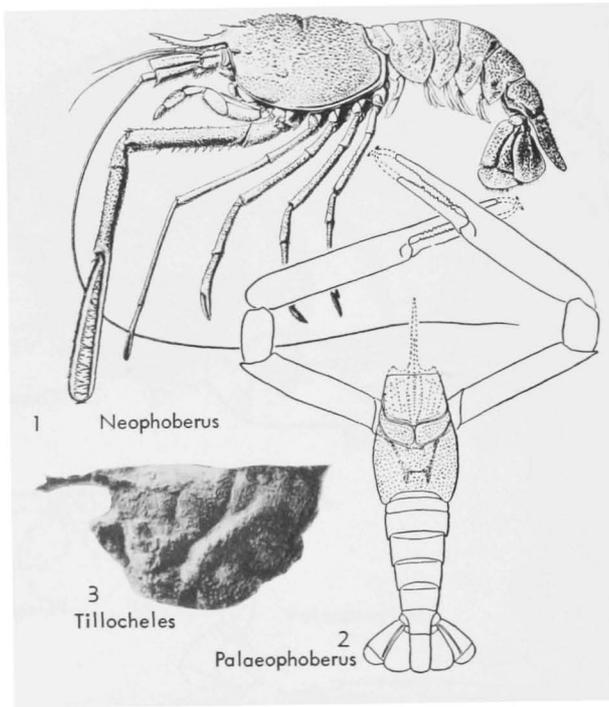


FIG. 266. Nephropidae (Neophoberinae) (p. R460).

Last thoracic segment movable; first rami of antennules subequal in size; abdominal segment of males with appendages; females with or without spermatheca ("annulus ventralis"); telson and exopod of uropods divided by transverse suture; podobranchiae of second and third maxillipeds and first three pereiopods with broad plaited lamina. *U. Jur.* or *L. Cret.-Rec.*

**Astacus** FABRICIUS, 1775 [on official list, ICZN] [*\*Cancer astacus* LINNÉ, 1758; SD ICZN (Direction 12)]. Carapace usually with 2 pairs of post-orbital ridges, one behind other; males without hooks on ischium of pereiopods, females without annulus ventralis. [The generic position of Recent species is mainly determined on characters of first pleopods in males which are unknown in fossils; the generic assignment of some fossils currently placed in this genus requires revision.] *U. Jur.* or *L. Cret.*, E. Mongolia-China (Jehol); *L. Cret.*, Ger.; *Paleoc.*, Fr.; *Plio.*, N. Am.-USSR; *Pleist.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, Eu.-W. Asia-N. Am.—FIG. 268, 1. *\*A. astacus* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.5$  (49).

**Cambarus** ERICHSON, 1846 [*\*Astacus bartonii* FABRICIUS, 1798; SD FAXON, 1898]. Carapace ovate, generally depressed, never with 2 pairs of postorbital ridges, males without hooks on ischium of pereiopods 3 or 3-4, females with annulus

ventralis. [HOBBS, 1942, established a subfamily Cambarinae, and LAGUARDA (1961) recognized Cambaroidinae and Cambarellinae.] *L. Eoc.*, N. Am., *Rec.*, N. Am.-C. Am.

#### Family PARASTACIDAE Huxley, 1878

Last thoracic somite movable, rami of antennules subequal in size, first abdominal somite of males without appendages; females without annulus ventralis; telson usually without transverse suture; exopod of uropods with transverse suture, podobranchiae with rudimentary laminae. [In addition to the genera here listed, one occurs in Madagascar, eight in Australia and one in New Zealand.] *Pleist.-Rec.*

**Parastacus** HUXLEY, 1879 [*\*Astacus pilimanus* VON MARTENS, 1869; SD FAXON, 1898]. Carapace and abdomen comparatively smooth, without prominent spines or tubercles; rostrum never with more than terminal spine and pair of lateral spines or tubercles; telson partially membranous and without transverse suture. *Rec.*, S. Am.

**Astacopsis** HUXLEY, 1879 [*\*Astacus franklinii* GRAY, 1845; OD]. Carapace with numerous small tubercles and punctures; rostrum always with

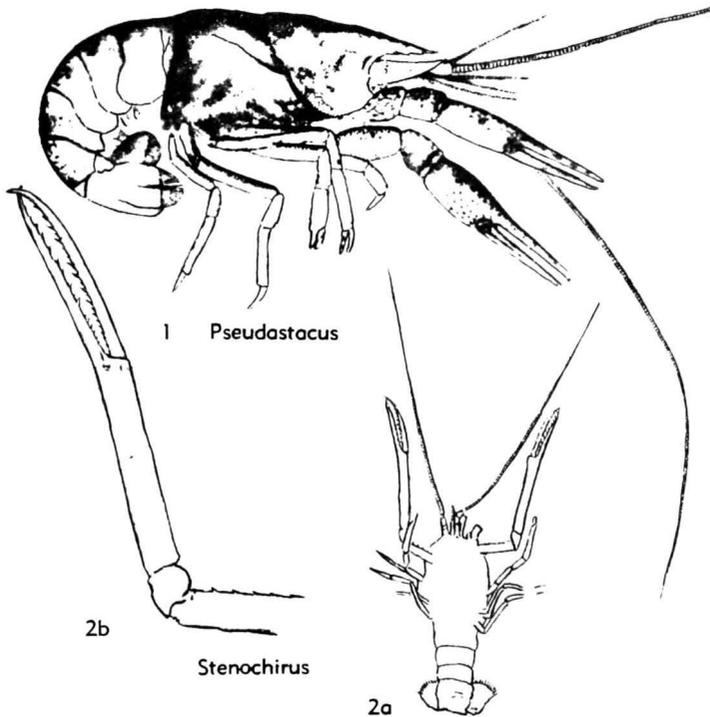


FIG. 267. Nephropidae (Subfamily Uncertain), (p. R460).

more than terminal and 1 pair of lateral spines or tubercles; telson without transverse suture. *Pleist.*, SE.Australia, *Rec.*, Tasmania.

#### Family AUSTRIOASTACIDAE Clark, 1936

Carapace strongly vaulted posteriorly; abdomen small; first somite without lateral lobes; telson and uropods not divided by transverse sutures; antennules with second flagellum small or absent. *Rec.*

**Austroastacus** CLARK, 1936 [*\*Engaeus hemicirratulus* SMITH & SCHUSTER, 1913; OD]. Characters of family. *Rec.*, Australia.

#### Infraorder PALINURA Latreille, 1803

Carapace cylindrical or dorsoventrally compressed, without prominent rostrum (except in *Pemphix*) but commonly spinose, fused laterally with epistome; antennal stalk with five segments; maxilliped pediform; abdomen well developed. ?*L.Trias.*, *M.Trias.-Rec.*

#### Superfamily GLYPHEOIDEA Winckler, 1883

[*nom. transl.* GLAESSNER, herein (ex Glypheidae WINCKLER, 1883)]

Carapace subcylindrical and slightly compressed laterally, with longitudinal ridges on anterior part; rostrum small, triangular; first pereiopods without chelae. ?*L.Trias.*, *M.Trias.-L.Tert.*

#### Family GLYPHEIDAE Winckler, 1883

Cephalothorax and abdomen strongly calcified, first pereiopod strong, flattened. ?*L.Trias.*, *M.Trias.-L.Tert.*

**Glyphea** VON MEYER, 1835 [*\*Palinurus regleyanus* DESMAREST, 1822; OD] [= *Orphnea* MÜNSTER, 1839 (type, *Macrowrites pseudoscyllarus* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1820); *Brisa* MÜNSTER, 1839 (type, *B. lucida*); ?*Selenisca* VON MEYER, 1847 (type, *S. gratiosa*); *Paraglyphea* BEURLIN, 1928 (type, *G. ambigua* FRITSCH, 1870)]. Carapace with short pointed rostrum; tuberculate longitudinal carinae on anterior part; cervical groove deep and steeply inclined in side view, postcervical and branchio-cardiac grooves very oblique, joined medially and laterally and in some species at additional points;

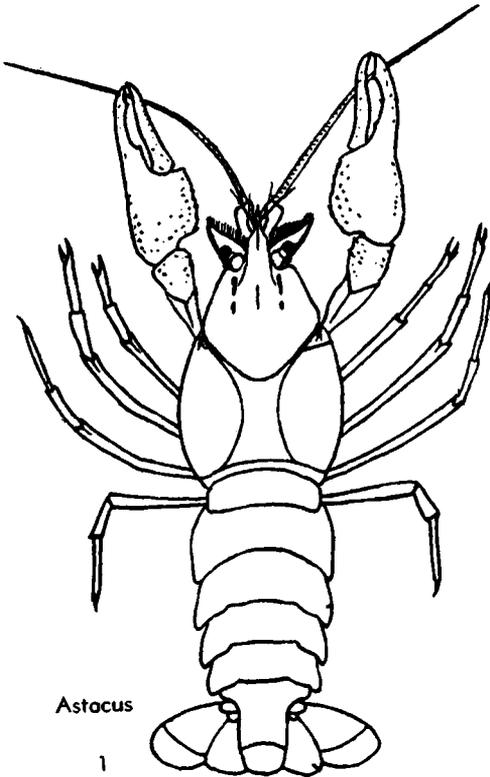


FIG. 268. Astacidae (p. R462).

anterior portion of carapace rectangular in outline in dorsal and lateral views, branchiostegite with long narrow anterior extension; abdominal terga smooth, telson rounded, exopods of uropods with diaeresis; antennal scale pointed; 1st pereopods subchelate. ?*U.Trias.*, *Jur.-Cret.*, Eu.-Greenl.-E.Afr.-Australia-N.Am.

**G. (*Glyphea*)**. Carapace granulose or with granules and pits. ?*U.Trias.*, *Jur.-Cret.*, Eu.-Greenl.-N.Am.-E.Afr.-Australia.—FIG. 269,3a. \**G. (G.) regleyana* (DESMAREST), U.Jur., Fr.;  $\times 1$  (219). —FIG. 269,3b. *G. (G.) prestwichi* WOODS, L. Jur., Eng.;  $\times 1$  (326).

**G. (*Squamosoglyphea*)** BEURLEN, 1930 [\**G. adressieri* VON MEYER, 1840; OD]. Carapace with scalelike sculpture. *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 269,4. \**G. (S.) adressieri* (VON MEYER), Fr.;  $\times 1$  (219).

**Litogaster** VON MEYER, 1847 [*nom. subst. pro Litogaster* VON MEYER, 1844 (*non* PERTY, 1830)] [\**L. obtusa*; OD] [= *Aphthartus* VON MEYER, 1847 (type, *A. ornatus*); *Myrtonius* VON MEYER, 1851, *nom. subst. pro Brachygaster* VON MEYER, 1847 (*non* LEACH, 1817) (type, *M. serratus*); ?*Aspidogaster* ASSMANN, 1927 (*non* BAER, 1826) (type, *Litogaster limicola* KÖNIG, 1920) (doubtfully dis-

tinguishable from *Litogaster*]. Differs from *Glyphea* in thin-shelled carapace, spatulate rostrum, parallel postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves. ?*L.Trias.*, *M.Trias.*, Ger.—FIG. 269,1. *L. ornata* (VON MEYER), *M.Trias.*, Ger.; carapace in side view and 2nd pereopod,  $\times 2$  (5).

**Trachysoma** BELL, 1858 [\**T. scabrum*; OD] [= *Glypheopsis* BEURLEN, 1928 (type, *Orphnea ornata* QUENSTEDT, 1858)]. Carapace long, low and narrow, with deep, straight cervical groove, postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves straight. *Jur.-Cret.*, Eu.; *U.Jur.*, N.Z.; *L.Cret.*, Australia; *L.Eoc.*, Eng.; ?*M.Eoc.*, USSR.—FIG. 269,2. *T. ornatum* (QUENSTEDT), U.Jur., Ger.; 2a, dorsal view of carapace, 2b, lat. view,  $\times 1$  (219, from Quenstedt).

**Triasiglyphea** VAN STRAELEN, 1936 [\**T. mulleri*; OD]. Based on fragment of carapace which resembles *Litogaster*. *U.Trias.*, N.Am.(Nev.). [A "genus *Glypheinarum*" BEURLEN, 1928, does not exist. References to it in the literature are based on a misunderstanding of the author's intentions who gave an indication in Latin (*gen. plur.* of "Glypheinae") that the Triassic *G. tantalus* WÖHRMANN (abdomen and pereopods only) may require a new name.]

#### Family MECOCHIRIDAE Van Straelen, 1925

Carapace thin, with short anterior portion, cervical groove distinct, straight, other transverse grooves weak, first pereopods strongly elongate. *M.Trias.-U.Cret.*

**Mecochirus** GERMAR, 1827 [\**M. locusta* (= *Macrourites longimanatus* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1820; SD WOODS, 1927)] [= *Megachirus* BRONN, 1837 (type, *M. locusta* GERMAR, 1827 = *M. longimanatus*); *Pterochirus* MÜNSTER, 1839 (type, *P. elongatus*, = *M. longimanatus*); *Norna* MÜNSTER, 1840 (type, *N. lithophila*); *Carcinium* VON MEYER, 1841 (type, *C. sociale*) (*non* *Carcinium* BANKS & SOLANDER, 1773; *nec* MEYEN, 1834); *Ammonicolax* PEARCE, 1842 (type, *Mecochirus pearcei* M'COY, 1849); *Eumorphia* VON MEYER, 1847 (type, *Carcinium sociale* VON MEYER, 1841)]. Carapace very thin, anterior portion carinate, cervical groove very oblique, postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves straight and shallow, joining cervical groove through semicircular arc; 1st pereopods very long, slender, subchelate, 2nd pereopods subchelate. *L.Jur.-U.Jur.*, Eu.-N.Z.—FIG. 270,1. \**M. longimanatus* (SCHLOTHEIM), U. Jur., Ger.;  $\times 0.7$  (219).

**Meyeria** M'COY, 1849 [\**Astacus ornatus* PHILLIPS, 1829; OD]. Differs from *Mecochirus* in granulate or spiny sculpture on carapace and abdomen, length of 1st pereopods not exceeding body length, 1st abdominal somites reduced. *L.Cret.-*

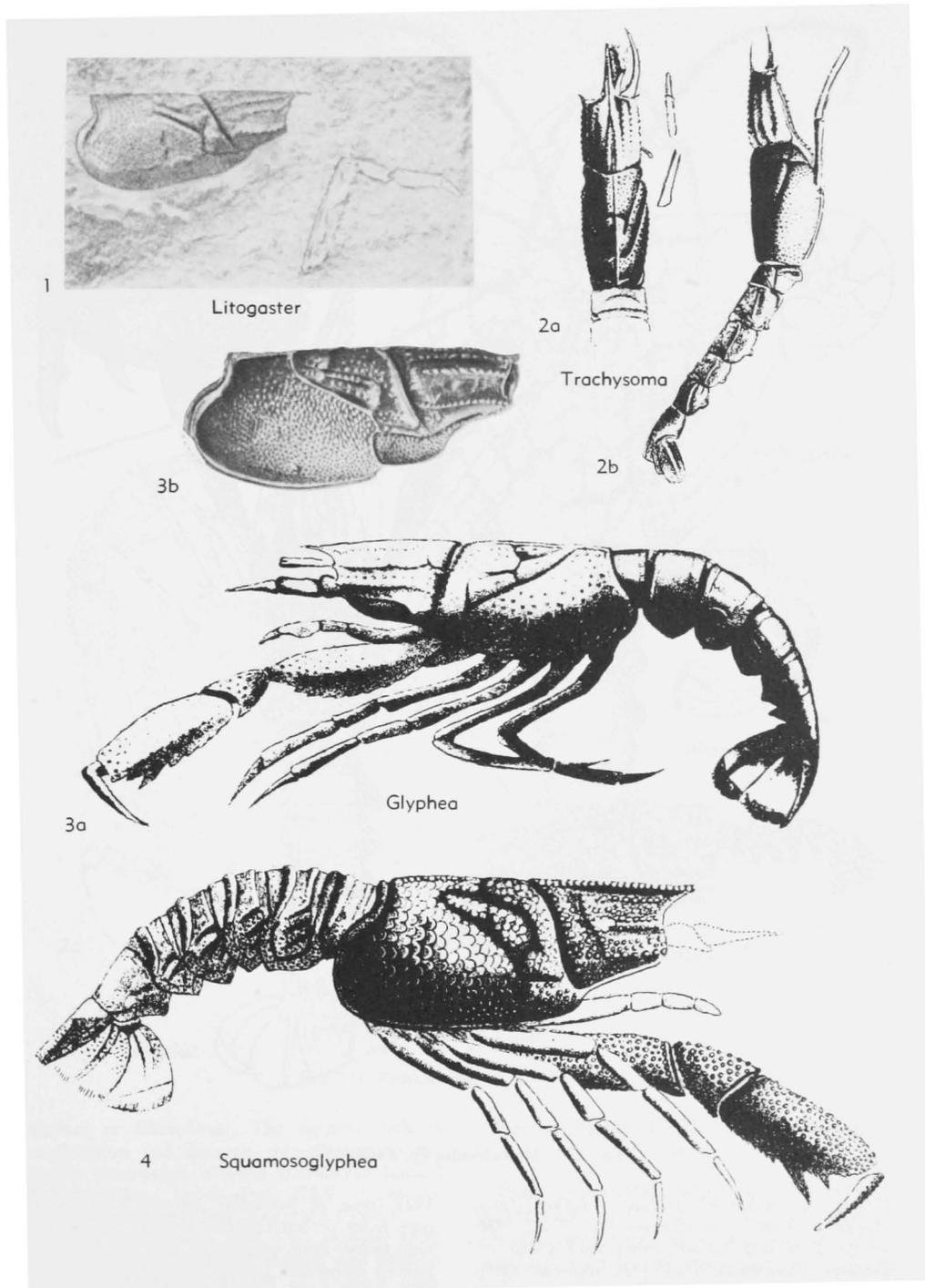


FIG. 269. Glypheidae (p. R463-R464).

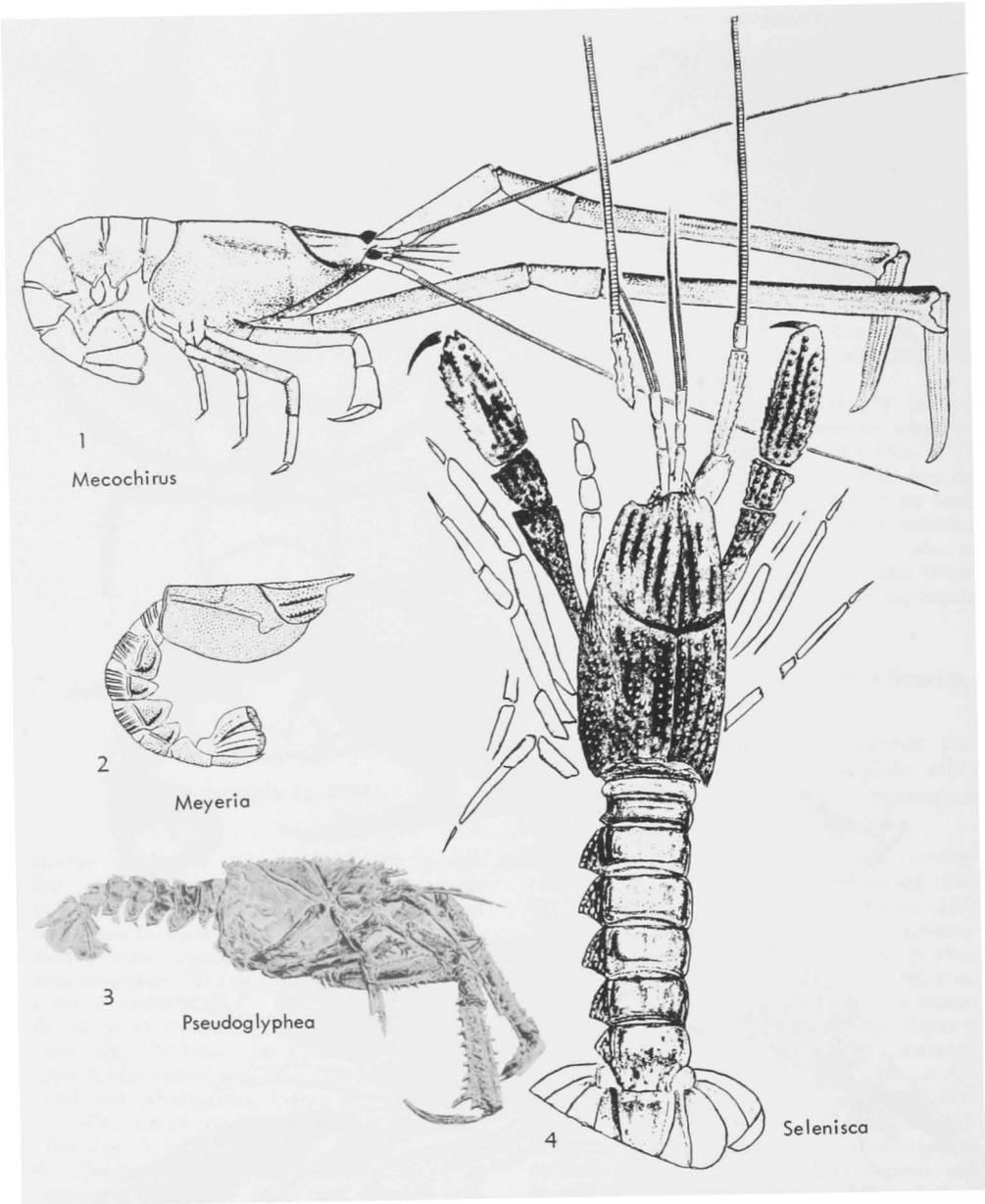


FIG. 270. Mecochiridae (p. R464-R466).

*U.Cret.*, Eu.-N.Am.-W.Afr.-S.Afr.; *L.Cret.*(*Apt.*), Mexico; *U.Cret.*, Antarctic.—FIG. 270,2. \**M. ornata* (PHILLIPS), *L.Cret.*, Eng.;  $\times 0.7$  (326).

?*Pracatya* WOODWARD, 1868 [\**P. scabrosa*; OD]. Carapace with short rostrum, 1st 2 pereiopods not chelate. [Incompletely known.] *L.Jur.*, Eng.

*Pseudoglypheia* OPPEL, 1861 [\**Glypheia grandis* VON MEYER, 1837; OD] [= *Scapheus* WOODWARD, 1863 (type, *S. ancylochelis*); *Heteroglypheia* COLOST,

1921 (type, *H. paronai*)]. Anterior part of carapace more or less carinate, rostrum spinose, cervical groove deep, postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves subparallel, sinuous, joining cervical groove with semicircular connection; inferior groove weak or absent; 1st pereiopods long, uropods with diaeresis. [BEURLIN (1930) reinstated *Eumorphia* VON MEYER, 1847 (type, *E. socialis*) for several species which other authors include in *Pseudo-*

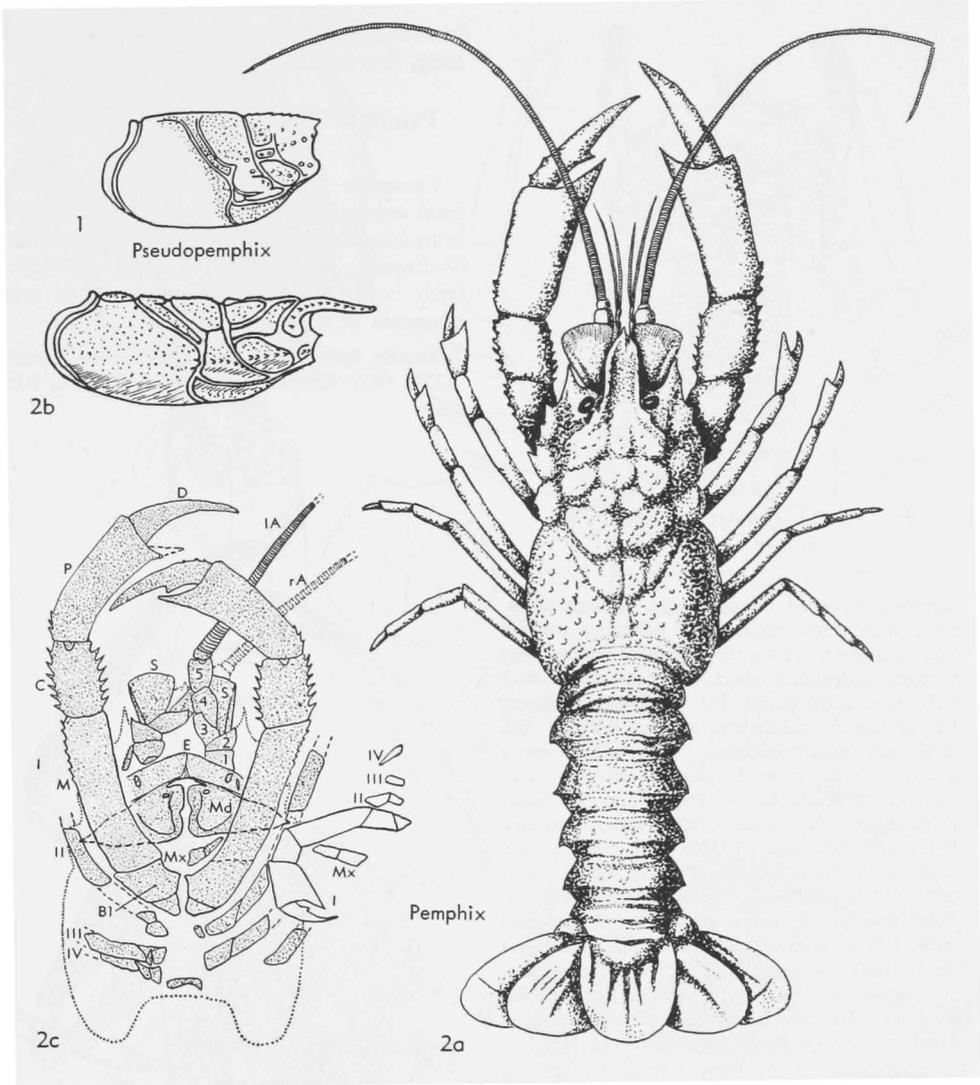


FIG. 271. Pempficidae (p. R467-R468).

*glyphea* or *Mecochirus*. The apparent lack of scaphocerites and diaeresis may be due to imperfect preservation of these thin-shelled forms.] *M.Trias.-M.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 270,3. *P. ancylolichelis* (WOODWARD), *Lias.*, Eng.;  $\times 0.3$  (326).

?*Selenisca* VON MEYER, 1847 [\**S. gratiosa*; OD]. Carapace and 1st pereiopods covered with tubercles in longitudinal rows. [Based on a single specimen which OPPEL and VAN STRAELEN placed in *Glyphea*, whereas BEURLIN included it in the *Mecochiridae*.] *U.Jur.*, Ger.—FIG. 270,4. \**S. gratiosa*;  $\times 2$  (219).

#### Family PEMPHICIDAE Van Straelen, 1928

Body cylindrical, carapace with cervical, postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves equally developed, latter joining on flank; anterior portion of carapace with longitudinal ridges; first three pereiopods subchelate; telson rounded. *M.Trias.*

*Pempfich* VON MEYER, 1840 [\**Palinurus suevii* DESMAREST, 1822; OD]. Carapace cylindrical,

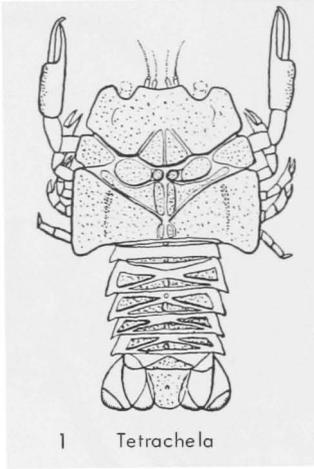


FIG. 272. Tetrachelidae (p. R468-R470).

slightly compressed dorsoventrally, strongly sculptured with crests, spines, and tubercles; rostrum long, spatulate; gastric and hepatic regions well marked; antennules short, antennae long with leaf-shaped scaphocerite; 3rd maxilliped pediform, 1st pereopods subchelate, strong, 2nd to 5th pereopods equal; abdomen strong, transversely grooved, with pointed pleura; uropods with diaeresis. *M.Trias.*, Eu.—FIG. 271,2. \**P. sueuri* (DESMAREST); 2a, reconstr.,  $\times 0.7$  (after Assmann, 1927, and Glaessner, 1932); 2b, carapace, lat. view,  $\times 0.7$  (Glaessner, 1932); 2c, ventral view,  $\times 0.5$  [I-IV, pereopods 1-4; LA, left antenna; RA, right antenna; S, antennal scale; 1-5, antennal stalk; E, epistome; Md, mandible; Mx, maxilliped 3; BI, basis; M, merus; C, carpus; P, propodus; D, dactylus of P1]. First 4 pereopods of another specimen also shown; outline of carapace and flagellum of right antenna reconstructed (112).

**Pseudopemphix** WÜST, 1903 [\**Pemphix albertii* VON MEYER, 1840; OD] [= *Seebachia* WÜST, 1903 (non NEUMAYR, 1882) (type, *Pemphix meyeri* ALBERTI, 1864)]. Differs from *Pemphix* in shorter carapace and rostrum, weaker sculpture, 1st pereopods almost chelate. *M.Trias.*, Eu.—FIG. 271,1. \**P. albertii* (VON MEYER); carapace, lat. view,  $\times 0.7$  (112).

### Superfamily ERYONOIDEA de Haan, 1841

[*nom. transl. et correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (ex family Eryonidae DE HAAN, 1841)]

Carapace dorsoventrally compressed, with sharp lateral margins, front truncated; first to fourth or fifth pereopods chelate, dacty-

lus normally in lateral position; abdomen long, flat, medially keeled. *U.Trias.-Rec.*

### Family TETRACHELIDAE Beurlen, 1930

Carapace almost quadrangular, with orbital emarginations, granulate, cervical and branchiocardiac grooves strongly marked, V-shaped, postcervical groove connected with both; telson rounded, uropods with diaeresis. *U.Trias.*

**Tetrachela** REUSS, 1858 [\**Bolina raiblana* BRONN, 1858; OD]. Characters of family. *U.Trias.*, S.Eu.

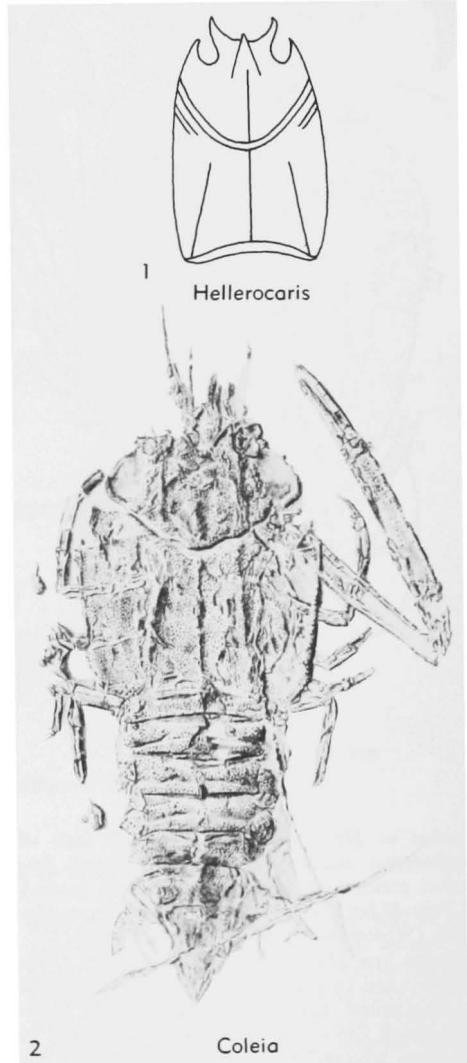


FIG. 273. Coleiidae (p. R470).

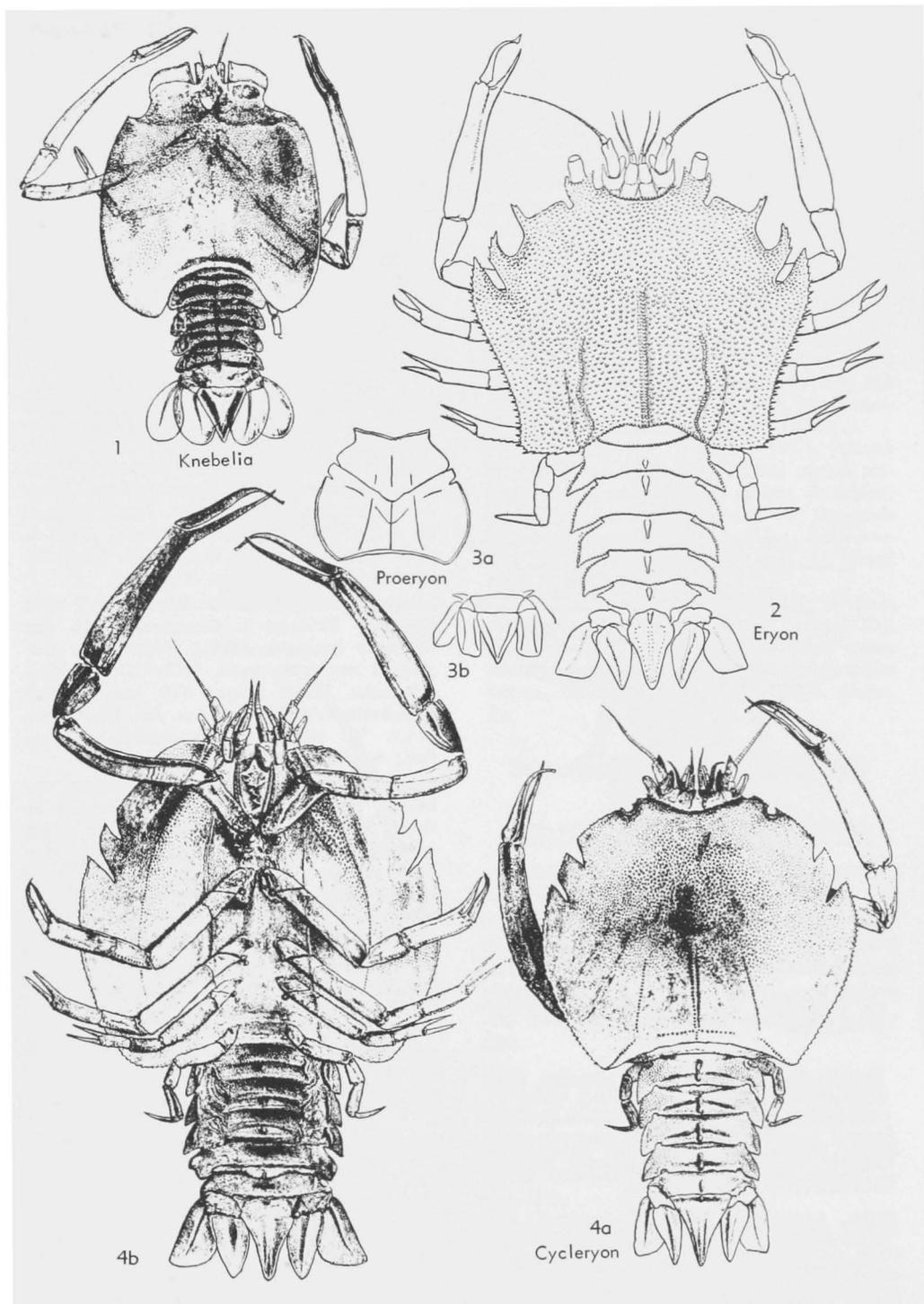


FIG. 274. Eryonidae (p. R470).

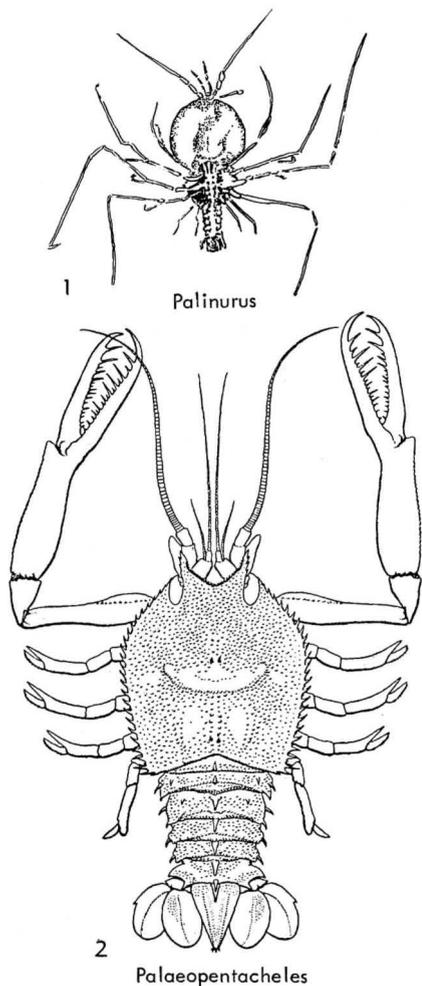


FIG. 275. Polychelidae (2); Palinuridae (1)  
(p. R471, R473).

—FIG. 272,1. \**T. raiblana* (BRONN); reconstr.,  
×1.3 (109).

#### Family COLEIIDAE Van Straelen, 1924

Carapace longer than wide, with indented frontal margin and orbital emarginations, dorsally three longitudinal keels; uropods with diaeresis. *L.Jur.-L.Cret.*

*Coleia* BRODERIP, 1835 [\**C. antiqua*; OD] [= *Archaeoastacus* BATE, 1884 (type, *A. willemoesi*)]. Carapace with distinct cervical and branchiocardiac grooves forming lateral indentations; 1st 4 pereopods chelate. *Jur.*, Eu.-W.Sib.; *L.Cret.*, India.—FIG. 273,2. \**C. antiqua*, L.Lias., Eng.; ×1 (326).

*Hellerocaris* VAN STRAELEN, 1925 [\**Palaeopolycheles falloti* VAN STRAELEN, 1923; OD]. Carapace narrow, with weak rostral spine and deep orbital indentations and supraorbital spines; without lateral indentations, cervical groove distinct. *M.Jur.*, Fr.—FIG. 273,1. \**H. falloti* (VAN STRAELEN); carapace, ×0.7 (296).

#### Family ERYONIDAE de Haan, 1841

[*nom. correct.* DANA, 1852 (pro Eryonidea de HAAN)]

Carapace outline rectangular to subcircular, cervical groove and longitudinal keels short or absent, eyes well developed; first four pereopods chelate, uropods without diaeresis. *L.Jur.-L.Cret.*

*Eryon* DESMAREST, 1822 [\**E. cuvieri* (= *Macrourites arctiformis* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1820); OD]. Carapace angular, with cervical and branchiocardiac grooves indistinct or absent; scaphocerite elongated; uropods pointed. ["*Eryon*" *yehoachi* REMY & AVNIMELECH, 1956, (U.Cret., Israel) is based on a *Squilla*-like stomatopod telson.] *M.Jur.-L.Cret.*, Eu.—FIG. 274,2. *E. arctiformis* (SCHLOTHEIM), U.Jur., Ger.; reconstr., ×0.7 (11).

*Cycleryon* [*nom. subst.* GLAESSNER, 1965 (pro *Cyclocaris* BEURLEN & GLAESSNER, 1930, non *Cyclocaris* STEBBING, 1888)] [\**Macrourites propinquus* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1822; OD]. Carapace subcircular, frontal margin wide, eyes in small semicircular orbital indentations. *Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 274,4. \**C. propinquus* (SCHLOTHEIM), U.Jur., Ger.; 4a, dorsal, 4b, ventral, ×0.7 (219).

*Proeryon* BEURLEN, 1928 [\**Eryon hartmanni* VON MEYER, 1835; OD]. Carapace with broadly V-shaped frontal margin and lateral shallow orbital indentations; lateral margins convex, widest behind middle; V-shaped parallel cervical and branchiocardiac grooves; endopodite of uropods truncated. *L.Jur.*, Eu.-W.Sib.—FIG. 274,3. *P. macrophthalmus* (KRAUSE), Ger.; 3a, carapace, 3b, tail fan, ×0.5 (25).

*Knebelia* VAN STRAELEN, 1922 [\**Eryon bilobatus* MÜNSTER, 1839; OD, M] [= *Muensteria* KNEBEL, 1907 (non STERNBERG, 1838)]. Carapace with oval outline, without marginal indentations; telson large, uropods rounded. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 274,1. \**K. bilobata* (MÜNSTER); ×0.7 (219).

#### Family POLYCHELIDAE Wood-Mason, 1874

Carapace longer than wide, orbital indentations deep, lateral margins denticulate or spinose, median keel strong, cervical groove well marked, not strongly curved, eyes reduced in Recent forms, first four or five pereopods chelate; telson narrow, uropods without diaeresis. *M.Jur.-Rec.*

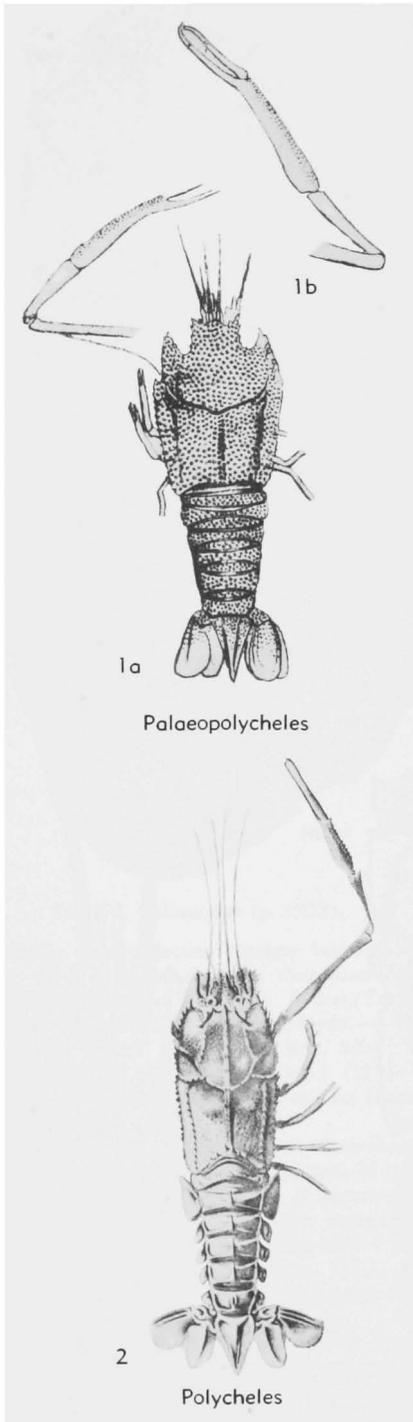


FIG. 276. Polychelidae (p. R471).

**Polycheles** HELLER, 1862 [*\*P. typhlops*; OD] [= *Pentacheles* BATE, 1878 (type, *P. euthrix*; SD FAXON, 1895); *Stereomastis* BATE, 1888 (type, *Pentacheles suhmi* BATE, 1878); SD HOLTHUIS, 1962); *Eryoneicus* BATE, 1882 (post-larval stage) (type, *E. coecus*; OD)]. Anterior margin of carapace with 3 frontal spines and deep oblique orbital indentations; lateral margins almost straight; 1st pereopods slender; uropods rounded; postlarval stage with ovoid inflated carapace. [Abyssal and subabyssal.] *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 276,2. *\*P. typhlops*, *Rec.*;  $\times 0.7$  (52).

**Palaeopentacheles** VON KNEBEL, 1907 [*\*Eryon röttenbacheri* MÜNSTER, 1839; OD]. Carapace with projecting front and oval orbital indentations, lateral margins convex, denticulate, cervical groove and median ridge weak, 1st pereopods long and robust. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 275,2. *\*P. roettenbacheri* (MÜNSTER); reconstr.,  $\times 0.7$  (11).

**Palaeopolycheles** VON KNEBEL, 1907 [*\*Eryon longipes* FRAAS, 1855; OD]. Frontal margin projecting, lateral margins almost straight, denticulate, cervical groove distinct, curved, 1st pereopods with long merus and carpus. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 276,1. *\*P. longipes* (FRAAS); 1a, dorsal view, 1b, cheliped,  $\times 1$  (219).

**Willemoesiocaris** VAN STRAELEN, 1925 [*\*Palaeopentacheles ovalis* VAN STRAELEN, 1923; OD]. Frontal margin with rostrum and lateral spines, orbital emarginations rounded, lateral margins convex, denticulate, no median ridge. *M.Jur.*, Fr.

## Superfamily PALINUROIDEA Latreille, 1803

[*nom. transl.* DE HAAN, 1849 (ex *Palinurini* LATREILLE, 1802)] [= *Loricata* BOAS, 1880; *Synaxidea* BATE, 1888]

Carapace cylindrical or dorsoventrally compressed, mostly without projecting rostrum. Base of antenna fused with epistome and lateral carapace margin, no scaphocerite; first four pereopods without chelae; abdominal pleura well developed; telson and uropods only partly calcified. *L.Jur.-Rec.*

### Family PALINURIDAE Latreille, 1802

[*nom. correct.* GRAY, 1847 (pro *Palinurini* LATREILLE, 1802)]

Carapace subcylindrical, without lateral keels; antennal flagella long and strong. *L.Jur.-Rec.*

**Palinurus** WEBER, 1795 [*\*Astacus elephas* FABRICIUS, 1787 (= *Palinurus vulgaris* LATREILLE, 1804; OD)]. Rostrum very short, supraorbital spines large and obliquely flattened; median portion of

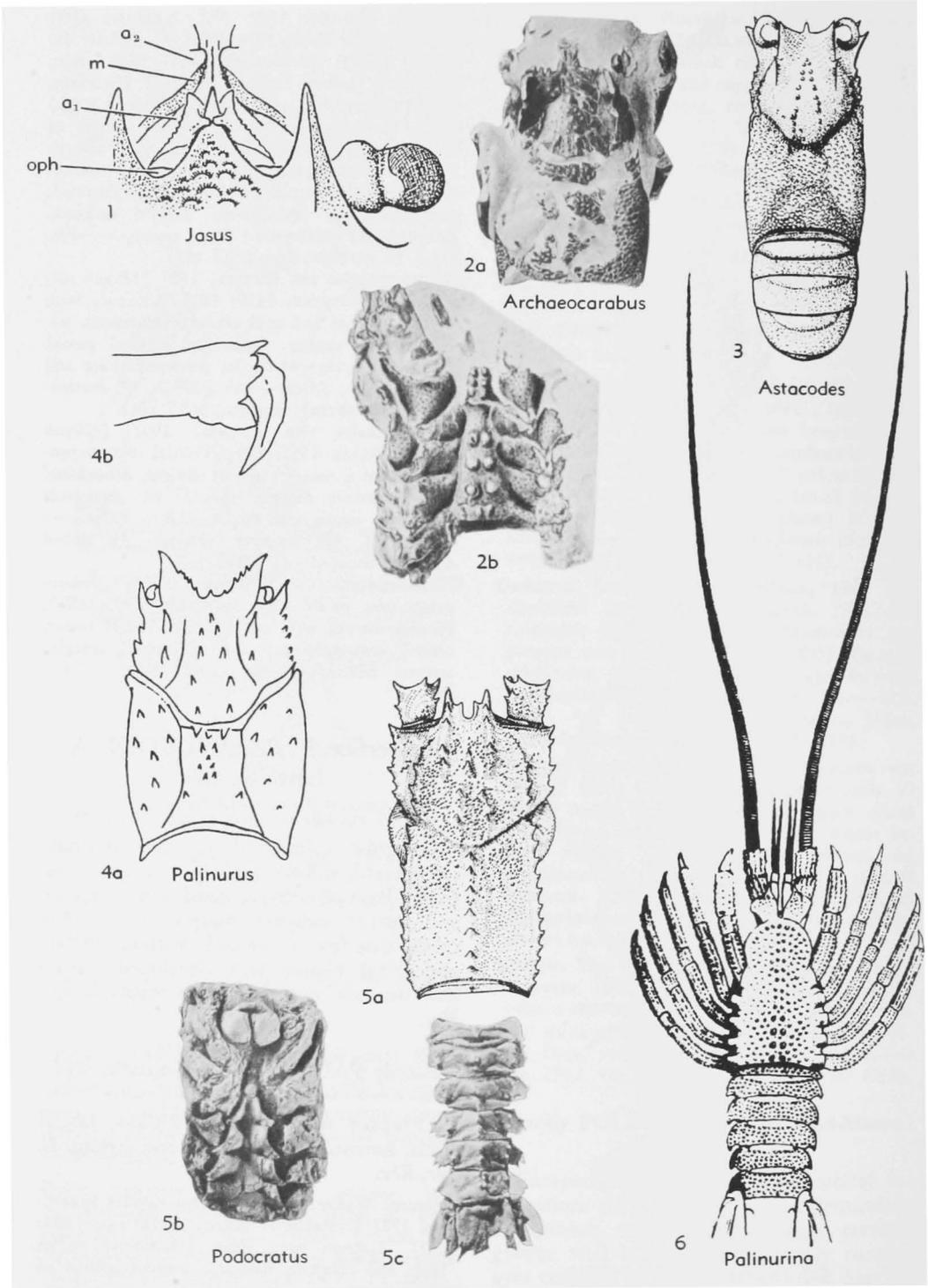


FIG. 277. Palinuridae (p. R471, R473-R474).



FIG. 278. Palinuridae (p. R473).

antennular base projecting strongly between segments 2+3 of antennal stalks; their bases fused medially in front of epistome. *U.Cret.(Turon.-Senon.)*, ?*L.Tert.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, Atl.-Medit.—FIG. 277,4. \**P. elephas* (FABRICIUS), *Rec.*, S.Eu.; 4a, carapace, 4b, end of pereopod 1,  $\times 0.1$  (52).—FIG. 275,1. *Phyllosoma* larva of *P. elephas* (FABRICIUS), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.7$  (52).

**Archaeocarabus** M'COY, 1849 [\**A. bowerbanki*; OD]. Differs from *Palinurus* in rostrum of moderate size which is clasped by 2 processes of ophthalmic somite as in *Jasus*, but supraorbital spines widely separated; sternal plate with 4 pairs of tubercles. *L.Eoc.*, Eng.—FIG. 277,2. \**A. bowerbanki*; 2a, dorsal view,  $\times 1$ , 2b, ventral view,  $\times 1$  (326).

**Astacodes** BELL, 1863 [\**A. falcifer*; OD]. Resembling *Palinurus* but rostrum and supraorbital spines of similar length, abdominal terga without transverse grooves. *U.Jur.*, Czech., *L.Cret.(Hauteriv.)*, Eng.; *U.Cret.(Turon.-Santon.)*, Tex.—FIG. 277,3. *A. maxwelli* STENZEL, *U.Cret.*, Tex.; reconstr.,  $\times 0.5$  (283).

**Eurycarpus** SCHLÜTER, 1868 [\**E. nanodactylus*; OD]. Antennular stalks long, antennal stalks strong and spiny, pereopods long and slender, carapace unknown. *U.Cret.(Senon.)*, Eu.

**Jasus** PARKER, 1883 [\**Palinurus lalandii* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837; SD HOLTHUIS, 1960] [= *Palinostus* BATE, 1888]. Rostrum clasped by 2 processes of ophthalmic somite and projecting almost as far as supraorbital spines; antennular bases not projecting strongly, close-set medially. *Oligo.*, N.Z.; *Rec.*, S.Oceans.—FIG. 277,1. \**J. lalandii* (MILNE-EDWARDS), *Rec.*, S.Afr.; frontal area (a<sub>2</sub>, base of antenna; m, articulating membrane; a<sub>1</sub>, antennular base; oph, eye stalk),  $\times 1$  (15).—FIG. 278, 1. *J. flemingi* GLAESSNER, *Oligo.*, N.Z.;  $\times 0.4$  (118).

**Linuparus** WHITE, 1847 [\**Palinurus trigonus* VON SIEBOLD, 1824; OD]. Carapace with 3 longitudinal keels; no rostrum; supraorbital spines close to median line, fused to form plate or separated by indentation. *L.Cret.-Rec.*

**L. (Linuparus)**. Supraorbital spines dorsoventrally flattened, medially joined; posterolateral ridges on carapace smooth; abdominal pleura with 3 marginal spines. *Rec.*, E.Afr.-E.Asia-Australia.

**L. (Podocratus)** GEINITZ, 1849 [\**P. duelmense*; OD] [= *Thenops* BELL, 1858 (type, *T. scyllariformis*); *Podocrates* SCHLÜTER, 1862 (obj.); *Eolinuparus* MERTIN, 1941 (type, *Linuparus*

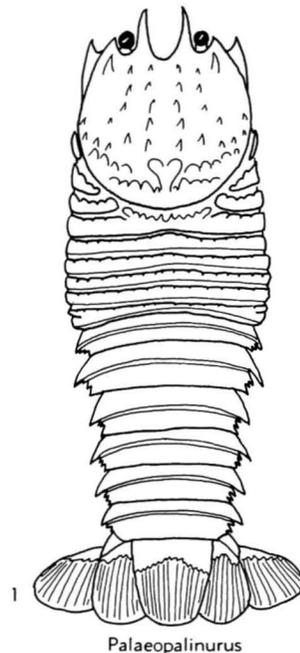


FIG. 279. Palinuridae (p. R474).

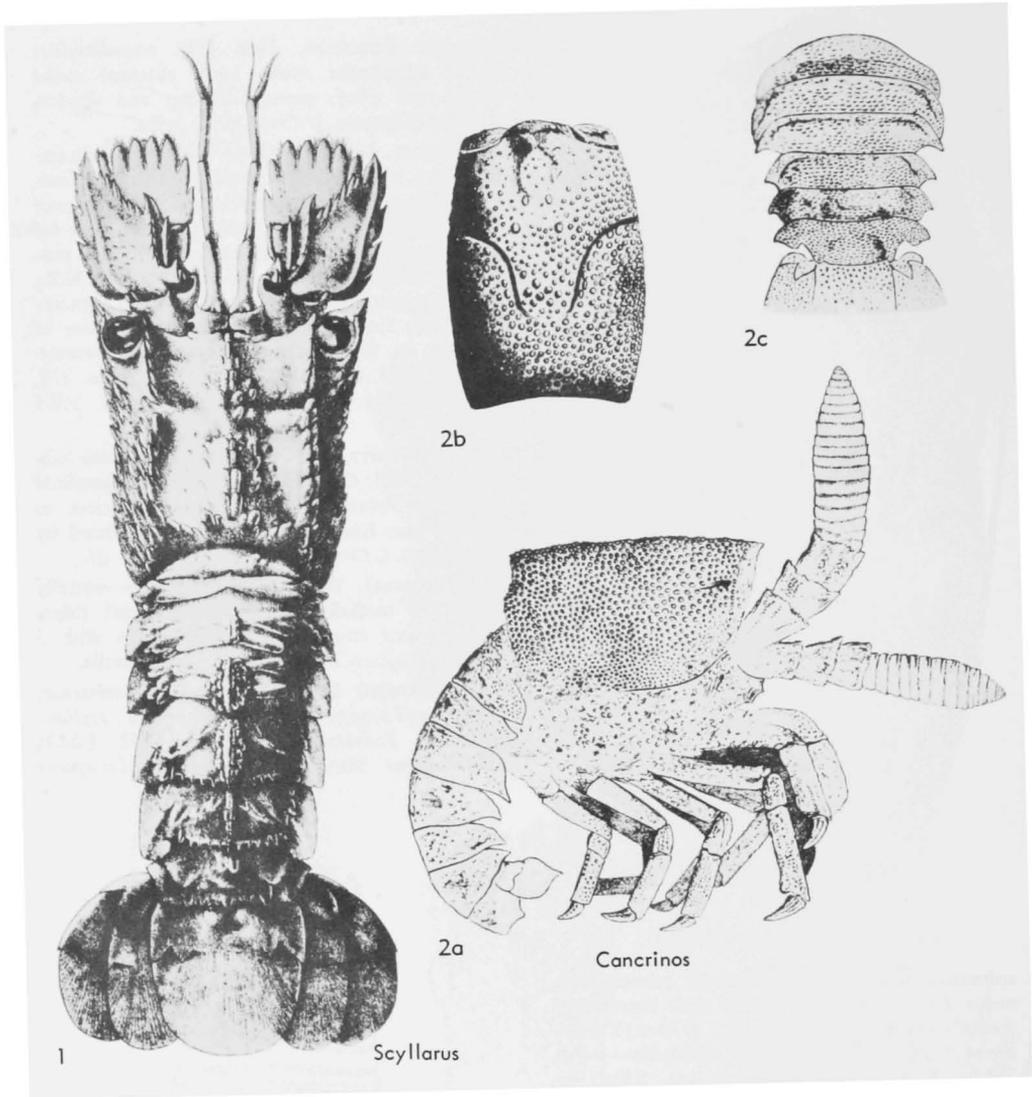


FIG. 280. Cancrinidae (2); Scyllaridae (1) (p. R475).

*carteri* REED, 1911)]. Supraorbital spines separate, carapace with granulate or spinose longitudinal ridges. *L.Cret.-U.Cret.*, N.Am.-Eu.; *U.Cret.*, W.Afr.-Japan-Kamchatka; *L.Tert.(Paleoc.)*, USA (Tex.-Ala.); *L.Tert.*, Eu. [Attempts to subdivide the fossil forms have been made by MERTIN and BIRSHTEYN, but diagnoses do not agree with descriptions of species referred to the subgenera *Podocrates*, *Thenops*, and *Eolinuparus*, which therefore cannot be satisfactorily distinguished.] —FIG. 277,5. *L. (Podocratus) watkinsi* STENZEL, *U.Cret.*, Tex.; 5a, reconstr. of carapace with part of antennae, 5b, sternum, mandibles and

parts of pereopods 1-5, 5c, abdomen,  $\times 1$  (283). **Palaeopalinurus** BACHMAYER, 1954 [*\*P. glaessneri*; OD]. Carapace cylindrical, with distinct post-cervical groove, anterior portion with large supra-orbital and other spines, posterior part transversely grooved and ridged. *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 279,1. *\*P. glaessneri*; reconstr.,  $\times 0.5$  (Glaessner, n). **Palinurina** MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*P. longipes*; SD Woods, 1926]. Antennae thick and long, with setae, on strong short stalks; 1st pereopods shorter than others; carapace and abdomen incompletely known. *L.Jur.*, Eng.; *U.Jur.*, Ger.—FIG. 277,6. *\*P. longipes*, *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.; reconstr.,  $\times 1$  [accord-

ing to OPPEL, "outlines of the body are too definite") (219).

?*Phalangites* MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*P. priscus*] [= *Palpipes* ROTH, 1851 (obj.); *Palaeonymphon* LÉON, 1933 (no species named)]. Considered either as a larva, probably of *Palinurina*, or as belonging to the Pantopoda. *U.Jur.*, Ger.

#### Family CANCRINIDAE Beurlen, 1930

Antennae thick, with short stalks and 13 to 19 rings, widest in middle part, with long setae on inner edge; carapace coarsely, abdomen finely granulate; telson wide; dactyli thick and wide. *U.Jur.*

*Cancrinus* MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*C. claviger*; OD]. Characters of family. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 280, 2. *\*C. claviger*; 2a, lateral view, 2b, dorsal view of carapace; 2c, dorsal view of abdomen,  $\times 0.7$  (219).

#### Family SCYLLARIDAE Latreille, 1825

[*nom. correct.* WHITE, 1847 (*pro* Scyllarides LATREILLE, 1825)]

Carapace dorsoventrally more or less flattened, with sharp lateral margins, orbits in anterior margin, no supra-orbital spines; antennae short, flagella replaced by plates with dentate or lobulate margins. *L.Cret.-Rec.*

*Scyllarus* FABRICIUS, 1775 [*\*Cancer arctus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Carapace convex, not broader than long, rostrum short, exopod of 3rd maxilliped without flagellum, terminal plate of antenna with distinct teeth. *L.Mio.*, Java; *Rec.*, littoral, cosmop.—FIG. 280, 1. *S. rugosus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, *Rec.*;  $\times 2$  (18).

*Ibacus* LEACH, 1815 [*\*I. peronii*; OD]. Carapace much wider than long, dentate lateral margins converging posteriorly, with deep emargination; orbits nearer to median line than to anterolateral angles. ?*U.Cret.*, Lebanon; ?*Oligo.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-W.Pac.-Cape Verde Is.—FIG. 281, 1. *\*I. peronii*, *Rec.*; cephalothorax and antennae,  $\times 0.4$  (15).

*Parribacus* DANA, 1852 [*\*Scyllarus antarcticus* LUND, 1793; SD HOLTHUIS, 1956]. Differs from *Ibacus* in orbits being midway between median line and anterolateral angles. ?*U.Cret.* (*Cenoman.*), Lebanon; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-W.Ind.

*Scyllarella* RATHBUN, 1935 [*\*S. gibbera*; OD]. Carapace broader than long, with sloping sides and very prominent cardiac region; cervical and branchiocardiac grooves deep, lateral margin carinate and dentate. *Paleoc.*, USA (Ala.).—FIG. 281, 2. *\*S. gibbera*; 2a-c, dorsal, ventral, post. views of incomplete carapace,  $\times 1.5$  (244).

*Scyllarides* GILL, 1898 [*\*Scyllarus aequinoctialis* LUND, 1793; OD] [= *Scyllaridia* BELL, 1858

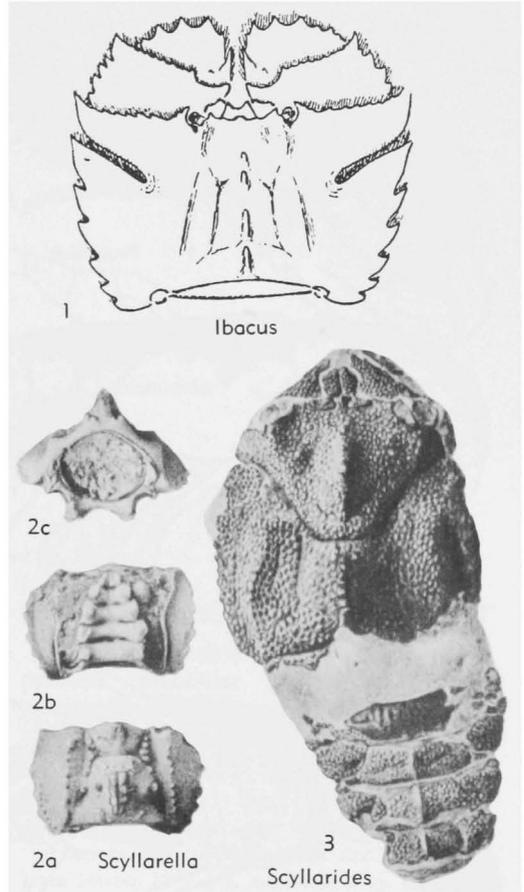


FIG. 281. Scyllaridae (p. R475).

(type, *S. koenigi*; OD)]. This name was suppressed by ICZN (Op. 293). If the fossil is not congeneric with the Recent genus as claimed by WOODS (1926), it must therefore be given a new name.] Eyes near anterolateral angles; lateral margins of carapace without deep fissures, rostrum salient. ?*L.Cret.* (*Alb.*), ?*L.Eoc.*, Eng.; *Rec.*, Medit.-E.Atl.—FIG. 281, 3. *S. ?koenigi* (BELL), *L.Eoc.*, Eng.;  $\times 1$  (326).

#### Infraorder ANOMURA H. Milne-Edwards, 1832

[*nom. transl.* BORRADAILE, 1907]

Carapace not fused with epistome; last thoracic sternite free; third maxilliped narrow, third pereiopods lacking chelae, fifth modified in shape and position; abdomen not strongly calcified, mostly reduced in length. *L.Jur.-Rec.*

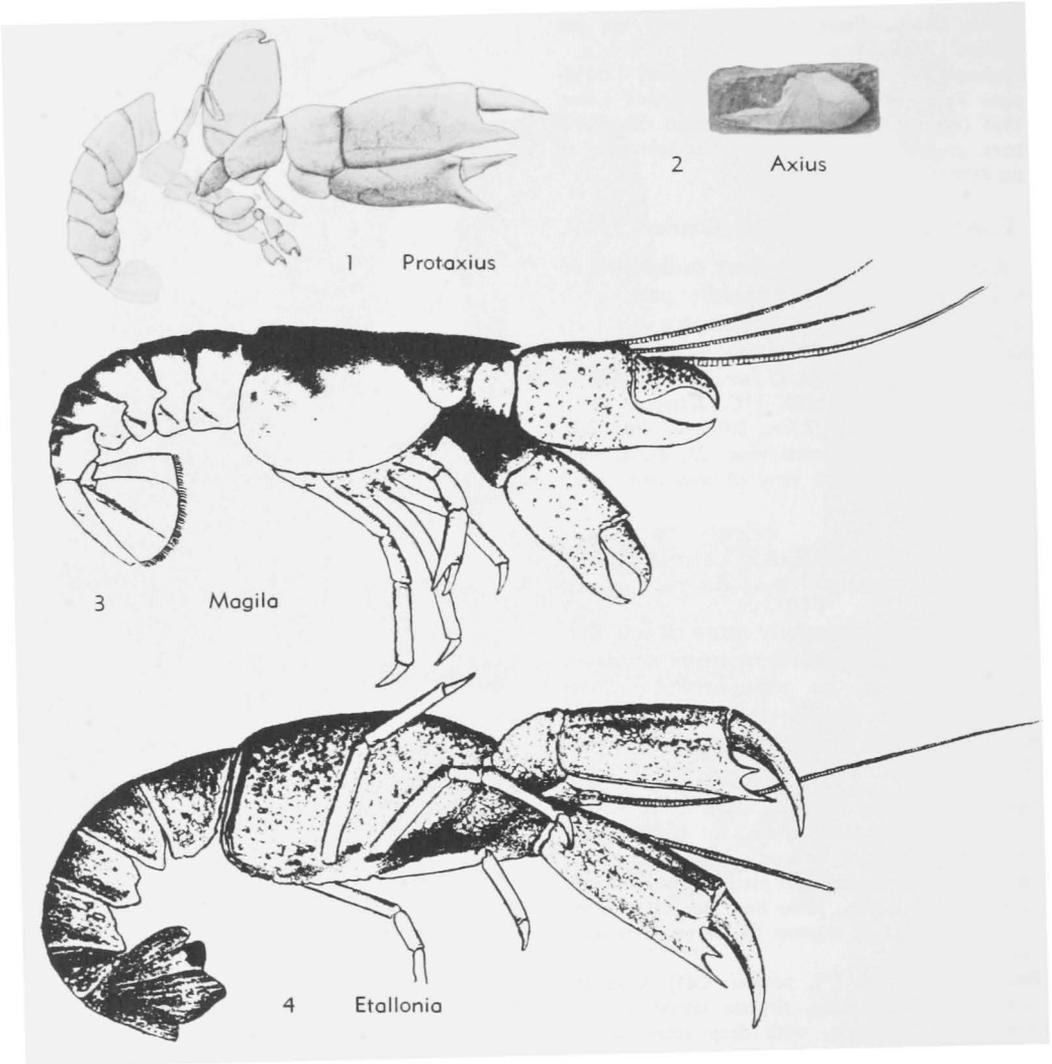


FIG. 282. Axiidae (p. R477).

### Superfamily THALASSINOIDEA Latreille, 1831

[*nom. transl.* DANA, 1852 (*ex* family Thalassinides LATREILLE, 1831)]

Abdomen well developed but pleura more or less reduced; first pereopods mostly chelate. *L. Jur.-Rec.*

### Family THALASSINIDAE Latreille, 1831

[*nom. correct.* WHITE, 1847 (*pro* family Thalassinides LATREILLE, 1831)]

Large, rostrum moderately developed, linea thalassinica present, first and second

pereopods subchelate, pleura reduced, uropods without diaeresis, lanceolate. [Monotypic, with probably only one species.] *?Pleist., Rec.*

**Thalassina** LATREILLE, 1806 [*\*T. scorpionides* LATREILLE, 1806 (= *\*Cancer (Astacus) anomalus* HERBST, 1804); OD]. Characters of family. *?Pleist., Rec.*, IndoPac. [Common in concretions in mangrove mud of undetermined (but probably Holocene) age.]

### Family AXIIDAE Huxley, 1879

Carapace with rostrum and cervical groove, without linea thalassinica; antennu-

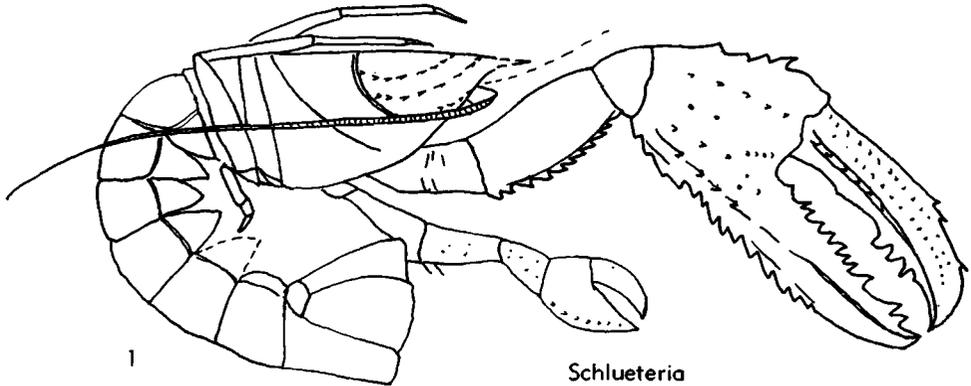


FIG. 283. Axiidae (p. R477).

lar flagella well developed; first pereopods with large chelae, second pereopods with small chelae. *L.Jur.-Rec.*

**Axius** LEACH, 1815 [*\*A. stirhynchus*; OD]. Rostrum dentate, carapace without median keel. *Oligo.*, Panama; *Plio.*, Fr.; *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 282,2. *A. reticulatus* RATHBUN; *Oligo.*, Panama; propodus of left 1st pereopod,  $\times 1.5$  (234).

**Etallonia** OPPEL, 1861 [*\*Magila longimana* MÜNSTER, 1839; OD] 1st pereopods subchelate, with long rectangular manus and curved dactylus; abdominal pleura pointed. *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 282,4. *\*E. longimana* (MÜNSTER);  $\times 3$  (219).

**Magila** MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*M. latimana*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace not strongly calcified, straight keels on short anterior portion; first chelipeds with square manus about equal in length to fingers, abdominal pleura well developed. *L.Jur.-U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 282,3. *\*M. latimana*; *U.Jur.*, S.Ger.; reconstr.,  $\times 3$  (219).

**Protaxius** BEURLEN, 1930 [*\*Callianassa isochela* WOODWARD, 1876; OD]. First pereopods with large chelae differing slightly in size only, with long manus and short dactylus; 2nd pereopods with small symmetrical chelae; first abdominal somite not much reduced, abdominal pleura 2 to 5 well developed. *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 282,1. *\*P. isochelus*, *U.Jur.*, Eng.;  $\times 1.5$  (331).

**Schlueteria** FRITSCH, 1887 [*\*S. tetracheles*; OD]. Carapace with curved longitudinal keels on anterior portion, with cervical and branchiocardiac grooves; abdomen large; 1st pereopods long, with very large spiny chelae; 2nd pereopods flattened, chelate; 3rd and 4th pereopods slender; 5th pereopod reduced. *U.Cret.(Turon.-L.Senon.)*, Eu.—FIG. 283,1. *\*S. tetracheles*, Czech.; reconstr.,  $\times 0.8$  (Glaessner, n. mod. from 98).

### Family LAOMEDIIDAE Borradaile, 1903

Rostrum well developed, linea thalassinica present, antennular flagella short; first pereopods large, chelate or subchelate, isochelous; abdominal pleura well developed. *Mio.-Rec.*

**Laomedia** DE HAAN, 1841 [*\*L. astacina*; OD].

First pereopods with stout chelae, subequal; 2nd pereopods with simple dactylus. *Rec.*, Japan.

**Jaxea** NARDO, 1847 [*\*J. nocturna*; OD]. Chelae of 1st pereopods slender, elongate, with long fingers; 2nd pereopods subchelate. *Mio.*, Aus.; *Rec.*, Medit.-North Sea.—FIG. 284,4. *J. kuemeli* BACHMAYER, *Mio.*, Aus.; 4a, carapace and 3 abdominal somites (compressed); 4b, left chela,  $\times 3$  (8).

### Family CALLIANASSIDAE Dana, 1852

Carapace weakly calcified, mostly with linea thalassinica, with cervical groove; antennular flagella short to medium in length; first pereopods chelate or subchelate, heterochelous; abdominal pleura reduced or absent. *U.Jur.-Rec.*

#### Subfamily CALLIANASSINAE Dana, 1852

Rostrum small or absent, linea thalassinica present; third maxillipeds with exopodite; first pereopods chelate, heterochelous; second pereopods isochelous. *U.Cret.-Rec.*

**Callianassa** LEACH, 1814 [*\*Cancer (Astacus) subterraneus* MONTAGU, 1808; OD]. Carapace with cervical groove extended far back medially; 1st

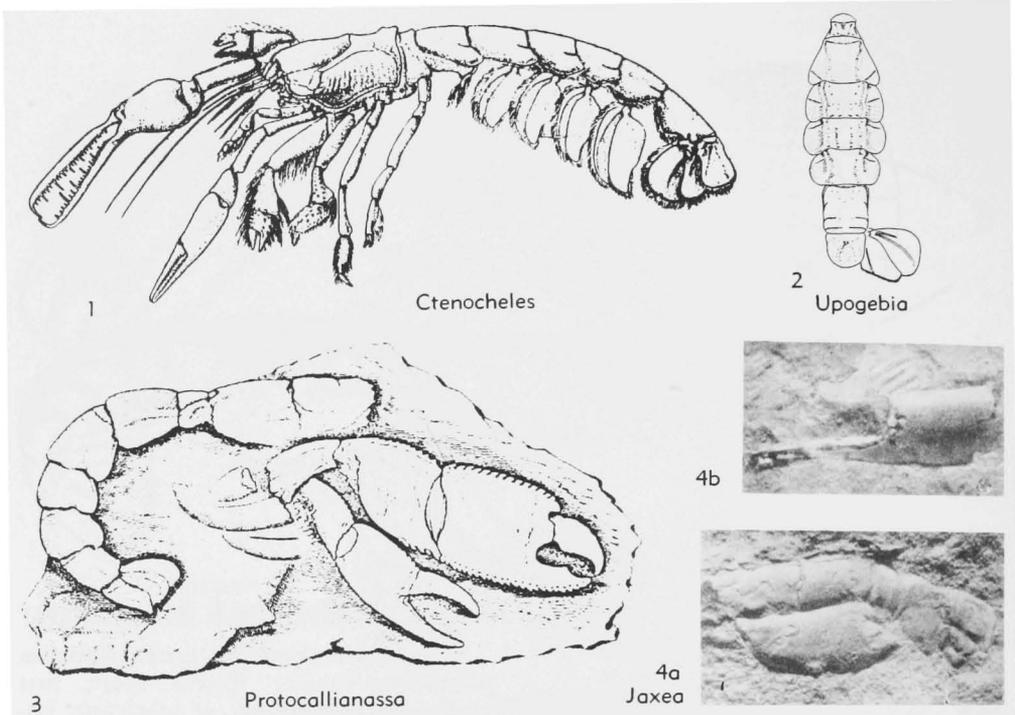


FIG. 284. Laomedidae (4); Callianassidae (Callianassinae) (1), (Protocallianassinae) (3), Upogebinae (2) (p. R477-R479).

peraeopods strongly heterochelous, carpus very narrow proximally, widened abruptly to equal propodus, which is rectangular; fingers short, curved; abdominal pleura rudimentary. [*Callianassa*-like chelae are very common fossil decapod Crustacea, because of strong calcification and because the burrowing habits of these organisms favor fossilization. It is not known how many species based on chelae actually represent the genus *Callianassa* or even the subfamily or family to which it belongs.] *U.Cret.-Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 285, 1. *C. sp.*, Rec., Papua; diagrammatic (LT, linea thalassinica),  $\times 0.7$  (Glaessner, n).

**Ctenocheles** KISHINOUE, 1926 [*\*C. balssi*; OD]. Differs from *Callianassa* in larger chela of 1st pereiopods with inflated palm and very long and slender fingers, with comblike teeth, resembling *Oncopareia*. [It is possible that a chela from the Upper Cretaceous of Holland described by PELSENNEER as *Ischnodactylus* (see p. R459) *inaequidens* belongs to *Ctenocheles*, rather than to *Oncopareia*.] *Paleoc.*, S.Australia-N.Am.(Ala.); *Eoc.*, N.Am.(Miss.)-Japan; *M.Oligo.*, Hung.; *Pleist.*, N.Z.; *Rec.*, Pac.—FIG. 284, 1. *\*C. balssi*, Rec.;  $\times 0.7$  (362a).

**Subfamily PROTOCOLLIANASSINAE** Beurlen, 1930

Carapace with linea thalassinica; first pereiopods with well-developed chelae, heterochelous; abdomen with pleura developed on second to sixth somites; uropods without diaeresis. ?*L.Cret.*, *U.Cret.-Paleoc.*

**Protocallianassa** BEURLEN, 1930 [*\*C. archiaci* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1860; OD]. Characters of subfamily. [Single chelae are hardly distinguishable from those of *Protaxius* or *Callianassa*.] ?*L.Cret.*, *U.Cret.*, Eu.-N.Am.; *Paleoc.*, W.Australia.—FIG. 284, 3. *\*P. archiaci* (A. MILNE-EDWARDS), U. Senon., Neth.;  $\times 1$  (197).

**Subfamily UPOGEBIINAE** Borradaile, 1903

Carapace with well-developed rostrum, cervical and branchiocardiac grooves, and linea thalassinica; first pereiopods chelate or subchelate, subequal. *U.Jur.-Rec.*

**Upogebia** LEACH, 1814 [*\*Cancer (Astacus) stellatus* MONTAGU, 1808; OD]. Rostrum triangular, with marginal ridges extended back on carapace; 1st pereiopods with strong propodus and short fixed finger, dactylus strong, gently curved; telson square, uropods without diaeresis. *U.Jur.*, *U.Cret.*, *U.Tert.*, Eu.; *U.Cret.-L.Tert.*, N.Am.; *Rec.* cosmop.—FIG. 286, 1. *U. littoralis* RISSO, Rec.; 1a, b, dorsal and lateral views of carapace; 1c, claw,

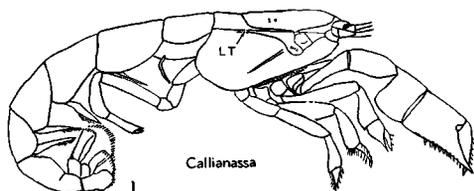


FIG. 285. Callianassidae (Callianassinae)  
(p. R477-R478).

×0.7 (52).—FIG. 284,2. *U. rhacheochir* STENZEL, U.Cret., USA(Tex.); abdomen, ×1 (283).

### Superfamily PAGUROIDEA Latreille, 1803

[*nom. transl.* BORRADAILE, 1907 (*ex* Pagurii LATREILLE, 1802)]

Carapace ovate, with more or less well-defined regions, tending to be weakly calcified behind "cervical groove"; first pereiopods chelate, second and third or second to fourth well developed, fifth reduced; abdomen mostly asymmetrical, soft, or folded under cephalothorax; uropods (where present) adapted for attachment to interior of empty mollusk shells or tubes. *L.Jur.-Rec.*

#### Family PYLOCHELIDAE Bate, 1888

Body straight and symmetrical; rostrum absent; third maxillipeds approximated basally, first pereiopods similar and strong; abdominal terga articulating. *Rec.*

*Pylocheles* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1880 [*\*P. agassizi*; OD]. Characters of family. *Rec.*, W.Indies-Ind.O.

#### Family PAGURIDAE Latreille, 1802

[*nom. correct.* SAMOUELLE, 1819 (*pro* family Pagurii LATREILLE, 1802)]

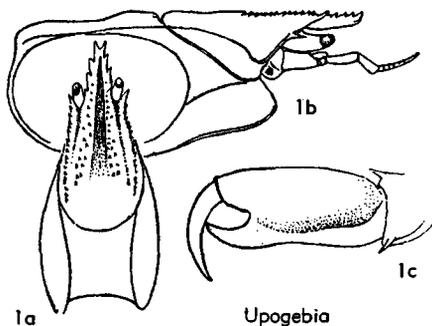


FIG. 286. Callianassidae (Upogebiinae)  
(p. R478-R479).

Carapace elongate, widened and weakly calcified posteriorly, rostrum very short, abdomen uncalcified and coiled or secondarily symmetrical externally; first pereiopods with chelae which are more or less heterochelous; second and third pereiopods elongate and ambulatory, fourth and fifth pereiopods reduced, commonly subchelate; abdominal appendages in many forms on left side only. *Jur.-Rec.*

#### Subfamily PAGURINAE Latreille, 1802

[*nom. transl.* ORTMANN, 1892 (*ex* Paguridae LATREILLE, 1802)] [=Eupagurinae ORTMANN, 1892]

Third maxillipeds distant at base, right chela commonly much larger than left, rarely chelae almost equal. *L.Cret.-Rec.*

*Pagurus* FABRICIUS, 1775 [*\*Cancer bernhardus* LINNÉ, 1758 (on official list, ICZN); SD LATREILLE, 1810 [=Eupagurus BRANDT, 1851 (type, *Cancer bernhardus* LINNÉ, 1758; SD STIMPSON, 1858) (obj.)]. Chelipeds usually dissimilar and unequal, right being much larger than left, very rarely subequal; 4th pereiopods subchelate. *L.Cret. (Alb.)*, USA(Tex.); *Paleoc.*, USA(Ala.); *Plio.*, Eng.; *Pleist.*, USA(Calif.)-Eu.; *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 287,1. *P. longicarpus* SAY, *Rec.*; ant. part, ×4 (229).

*Anapagurus* HENDERSON, 1886 [*\*Pagurus laevis* BELL, 1845; SD HOLTHUIS, 1962]. Chelipeds unequal, right larger than left, finger tips calcareous; ambulatory legs long and slender. ?*Plio.*, *Pleist.*, Neth.; *Rec.*, Atl.-Medit.-IndoPac.

#### Subfamily DIOGENINAE Ortmann, 1892

[=Dardaninae SCHMIDT, 1926; Paguristinae MAKAROV, 1938]

Third maxillipeds approximated basally, chelipeds equal or subequal, or left much larger than right, abdominal tergites not divided into two paired pieces, first somite not fused with last thoracic sternites. *U. Cret.-Rec.*

*Diogenes* DANA, 1851 [*\*Pagurus miles* FABRICIUS, 1787; OD (on official list, ICZN)]. Chelipeds with elongate carpus, manus with fixed finger slightly deflected downward; 2nd and 3rd pereiopods laterally compressed. *Rec.*, E.Hemis.(littoral).

*Eocalcinus* VIA, 1959 [*\*E. eocenicus*; OD]. Left chela robust, plano-convex, with semicircular or circular profile; carpo-propodial articulation markedly oblique. *Eoc.*, Spain.—FIG. 288,2. *\*E. eocenicus*; left chela, ×0.5 (314).

*Clibanarius* DANA, 1852 [*\*Cancer clibanarius* HERBST, 1791; OD]. Chelipeds equal or subequal, tips of fingers corneous and spooned. ?*U.Eoc.*, Egypt; *Rec.*, warm seas (littoral).

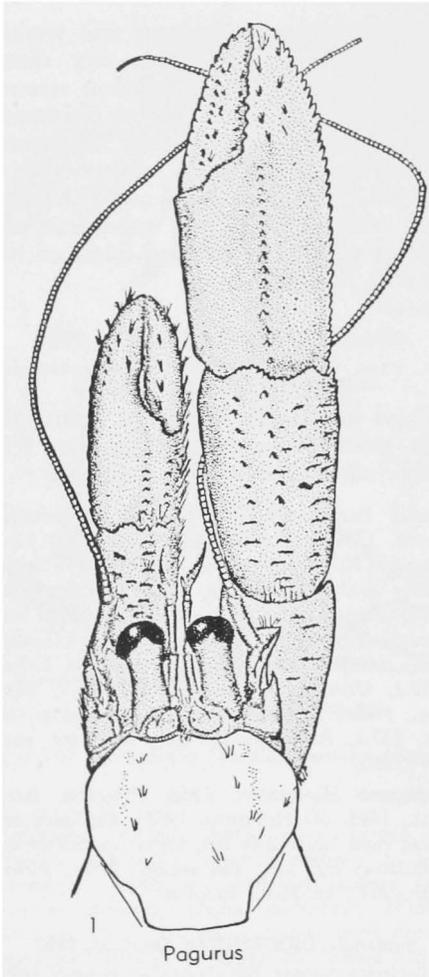


FIG. 287. Paguridae (Pagurinae) (p. R479).

**Dardanus** PAULSON, 1875 [*\*D. hellerii*; OD (on official list, ICZN)] [= *Pagurites* (*Propagurites*) BEURLIN, 1929 (type, *P. hungaricus* LÖRENTHEY, 1929)]. Chelipeds (with few exceptions) dissimilar and unequal, left being much larger than right; finger tips corneous, blackened and somewhat spooned, especially those of smaller chela. *Eoc.*, USA (Calif.)-Egypt; *L.Oligo.*, C.Asia; *Mio.*, Eu.; *Plio.*, Ital.-Fiji; *Pleist.*, USA (Calif.); *Rec.*, littoral in all warm seas.—FIG. 288,6. *\*D. subaequalis* RATHBUN, *Eoc.*, USA (Calif.); left chela,  $\times 1.5$  (238).

**Paguristes** DANA, 1851 [*\*P. hirtus*; SD STIMPSON, 1858] [= *Pagurites* LÖRENTHEY, 1929, erroneous spelling]. Chelipeds similar, equal, subequal, or one (usually left) larger. *U.Cret.* (*U.Senon.*)-*Paleoc.*, USA (Ala.); *Mio.*, USA (Calif.); *Rec.*, warm seas.—FIG. 288,1. *P. johnsoni* RATHBUN;

*Paleoc.*, Ala.; 1a,b, outer views of left and right chelae,  $\times 1.5$  (244).

**Petrochirus** STIMPSON, 1859 [*\*Pagurus granulatus* OLIVIER, 1811 (= *\*Cancer bahamensis* HERBST, 1791); OD]. Chelae large, heterochelous, fingers with calcareous tips, surfaces of chelae covered with clustered granules. *U.Cret.*, USA (Tex.); *Oligo.*, W.Ind.; *Mio.*, Panama-N.Am.-N.Afr.; *Plio.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, E.Atl.-W.Atl. coasts.—FIG. 288,7.

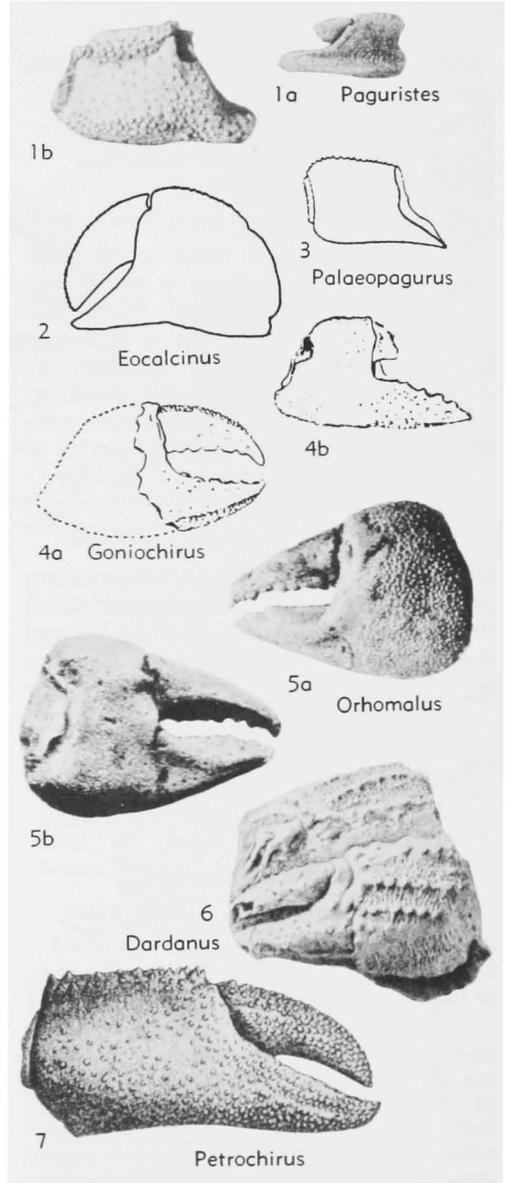


FIG. 288. Paguridae (Diogeninae) (1-2,6,7), (Subfamily Uncertain) (3-5) (p. R479-R481).

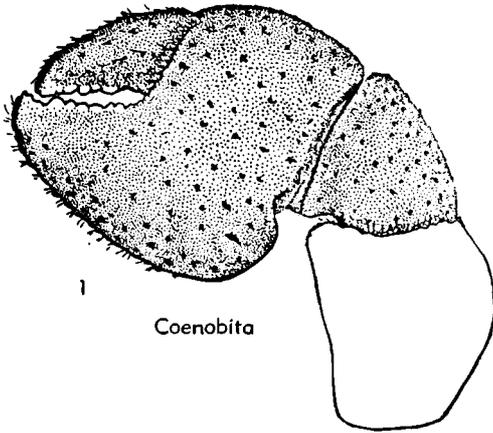


FIG. 289. Coenobitidae (p. R481).

*P. priscus* (BROCCHI), *Mio.*, Hung.; right chela,  $\times 1$  (184).

#### Subfamily UNCERTAIN

*Goniochirus* ÉTALLON, 1861 [*\*G. babeau*; OD]. Chela inflated externally, flat internally, fixed finger short, proximal articulation of propodus strongly oblique. *Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 288,4. *G. cristatus*, U.Jur., Eng.; 4a, right chela, outline restored, 4b, left chela,  $\times 1$  (349a).

*Orhomalus* ÉTALLON, 1861 [*\*O. virgulinus*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Chela wider than long, with convex outer surface, fixed finger short and thick, proximal articulation of propodus straight and placed on inner side; fingers with rounded teeth. *M.Jur.-U.Jur.*, ?*L.Cret.*, Eu.—FIG. 288,5. *O. deslongchamps* HÉE, U.Jur., Fr.; 5a,b, outer and inner sides of left chela,  $\times 1$  (296).

*Palaeopagurus* VAN STRAELLEN, 1925 [*\*P. deslongchamps*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Chela elongate, with rectangular propodus, convex external and flat internal surface, carpo-propodial articulations slightly oblique, dactylus articulation oblique. *L.Jur.*, ?*U.Cret.*, Eu.—FIG. 288,3. *\*P. deslongchamps*, Lias., Fr.; right chela,  $\times 1$  (296).

*Pustulina* QUENSTEDT, 1858 [*\*P. suevica*]. Single small granulous chela. *U.Jur.*, Ger.

#### Family COENOBITIDAE Dana, 1851

Carapace well calcified; third maxillipeds basally approximated, left cheliped larger than right; second and third pereopods long, fourth and fifth shorter, fourth chelate or subchelate, fifth chelate. [Terrestrial.] ?*L.Mio.*, *Rec.*

*Coenobita* LATREILLE, 1829 [*\*Cancer clypeatus* HERBST, 1791; OD]. Left cheliped much shorter

than right, all segments short, broad; legs stout. ?*L.Mio.*, Java; *Rec.*, tropical.—FIG. 289,1. *\*C. clypeatus* (HERBST), *Rec.*;  $\times 1.5$  (229).

#### Family LITHODIDAE Samouelle, 1819

Carapace well calcified, crablike, with projecting rostrum and with lateral edge, linea anomurica, and well-marked regions; last thoracic and first abdominal sternum fused; chela of right first pereopod larger than left, fifth pereopods reduced, in branchial chamber; female abdomen asymmetrical. *Rec.*

*Lithodes* LATREILLE, 1806 [*\*Cancer maja* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Rostrum long, spinose; abdomen with paired calcified plates. *Rec.*, N.Pac.-N.Atl.-E.Atl.-S.Ind.O.

#### Family LOMIDAE Bouvier, 1895

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (pro Lomisidae BOUVIER, 1895)]

Carapace flat, resembling Porcellanidae, well calcified; abdomen wide, turned under cephalothorax; first pereopods with flat chelae, second to fourth ambulatory, fifth reduced, in branchial chamber. *Rec.*

*Lomis* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837 [*\*Porcellana hirta* LAMARCK, 1818; OD]. Characters of family. *Rec.*, S.Australia-Tasmania.

#### Superfamily GALATHEOIDEA

##### Samouelle, 1819

[*nom. transl.* HENDERSON, 1888 (ex Galatheadae SAMOUELLE, 1819)]

Carapace with well-developed rostrum and lateral margin, not fused with epistome. Eye stalks short; antennal stalks with four or five segments; third maxillipeds pediform or slightly flattened; pereopods with six segments, first pereopods with well-developed chelae, fifth pereopods reduced, with small chelae. Abdomen more or less reduced, with well-developed pleura. Telson subdivided by sutures. *M.Jur.-Rec.*

#### Family GALATHEIDAE Samouelle, 1819

[*nom. correct.* WHITE, 1847 (pro Galatheadae SAMOUELLE, 1819)]

Carapace longer than wide, rostrum triangular or styliform, last thoracic sternum free, abdomen curved ventrally under cephalothorax; antennal stalks four-segmented. *M.Jur.-Rec.*

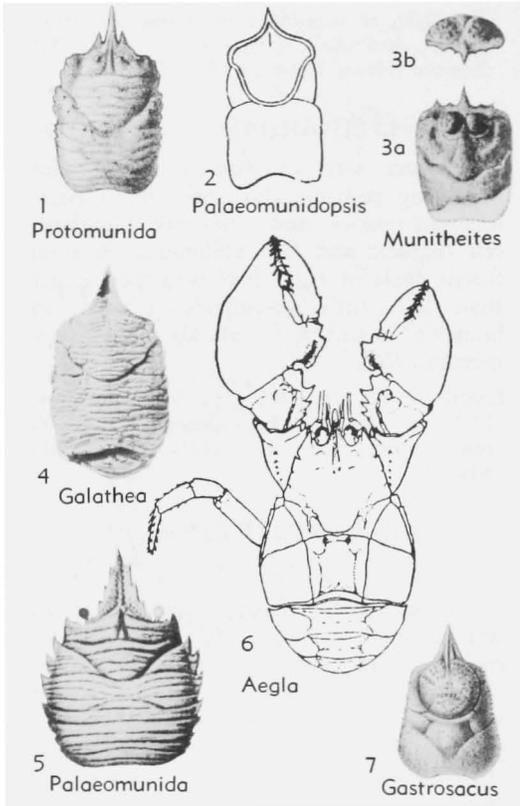


FIG. 290. Galatheidae (Galatheinae) (1,4-5), (Subfamily Uncertain) (2-3,7); Aegliidae (6) (p. R482-R483).

#### Subfamily GALATHEINAE Samouelle, 1819

[*nom. transl.* ORTMANN, 1898 (*ex Galatheidae SAMOUELLE*, 1819)]

Carapace with transverse sculpture, eyes well developed. *L.Cret.-Rec.*

**Galathea** FABRICIUS, 1793 [*\*Cancer strigosus* LINNÉ, 1761; SD LATREILLE, 1810]. Carapace with denticulate curved lateral margins; rostrum triangular, with denticulate sides and without median ridge. *L.Cret.(U.Alb.)*, USA(Tex.); *U. Cret.-Tert.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 290,4. *G. cretacea* STENZEL, U.Alb., USA(Tex.); carapace and first somite of turned-down abdomen,  $\times 3$  (283).

**Munida** LEACH, 1820 [*\*Pagurus rugosus* FABRICIUS, 1775; OD]. Lateral carapace margins dentate, surface transversely ridged; rostrum developed as a long spine with a pair of lateral spines. *Paleoc.(Dan.)*, N.Eu.; *Rec.*, cosmop. (warm and temperate seas).—FIG. 291,1. *M. bamfia tenuimana* SARS, *Rec.*;  $\times 0.7$  (52).

**Palaeomunida** LÖRENTHEY, 1902 [*\*P. defecta*; OD]. Like *Galathea*, but rostrum spiniform, with 2 or

3 pairs of lateral teeth, with median ridge. *M. Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, Hung.-Sicily.—FIG. 290,5. *\*P. defecta*, Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).

**Protomunida** BEURLIN, 1930 [*\*Galathea munidoides* SEGERBERG, 1900; OD]. Rostrum smooth, triangular, with short basal spines. Carapace as in *Galathea*. *Paleoc.(Dan.)-Paleoc.*, Denm.-Sweden-Spitz.—FIG. 290,1. *\*P. munidoides* (SEGERBERG), Dan., Denm.;  $\times 3$  (333).

#### Subfamily MUNDOPSINAE Ortman, 1898

Carapace well calcified, with rectangular outline, mostly without transverse sculpture, rostrum triangular, narrow or wide. Eyes reduced in living forms. [The fossil genus *Gastrosacus* (= *Galatheites*) is close to *Munidopsis*, in which most or all living genera formerly placed in this family are now included. BEURLIN (1930) has conditionally proposed a "subfam. Galatheitinae," as the eyes in the fossil forms were probably not reduced, but information is insufficient to distinguish them definitely as a subfamily. They also resemble the Recent Chirostylidae ORTMANN, 1892.] *Rec.*

**Munidopsis** WHITEAVES, 1874 [*\*M. curvirostra*; OD]. Carapace rugose or spinose, rostrum triangular. *Rec.*, cosmop.

#### Subfamily UNCERTAIN

**Gastrosacus** VON MEYER, 1851 [*\*G. wetzleri* VON MEYER, 1854; OD] [= *Galatheites* BALSS, 1913 (type, *Galathea zitteli* MOERICKE, 1889)]. Carapace elongate, surface with transverse grooves and ridges or lines of granulations, rostrum broadly triangular, with smooth sides, with or without median keel. [The genus was placed in synonymy with *Galathea* by MOERICKE (1889) but re-established under a new name by BALSS. It is not possible, on present evidence, to distinguish *Galatheites* from *Gastrosacus*.] *U.Jur.-L.Cret.*, Eu.—FIG. 290,7. *\*G. wetzleri*, U.Jur., S.Ger.;  $\times 1.5$  (367).

**Mesogalathea** HOUŠA, 1963 [*\*Galathea striata* REMEŠ, 1895]. Lateral margins of carapace without teeth; rostrum broadly triangular, slightly deflexed, without lateral teeth but with lateral angular projections; surface transversely striated; gastric region not delimited. *U.Jur.*, Czech.; *U. Cret.*, Spain.

**Munitheites** LÖRENTHEY, 1929 [*\*M. palfyi*; OD]. Carapace with small, narrowly triangular rostrum and 2 pairs of supraorbital spines. Epigastric regions well marked. *U.Jur.(Tithon.)*, Hung.—FIG. 290,3. *\*M. palfyi*; 3a,b, dorsal and frontal views,  $\times 1$  (184).

**Palaeomunidopsis** VAN STRAELEN, 1925 [*\*Gastrosacus moutieri* VAN STRAELEN, 1923; OD]. Cara-

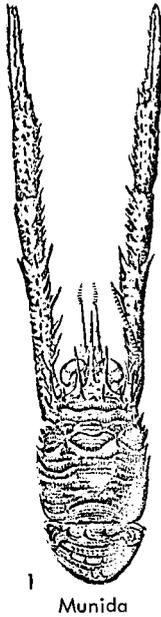


FIG. 291. Galatheidae (Galatheinae) (p. R482).

pace flat, sides parallel, rostrum narrowly triangular, gastric region raised. *M.Jur.*, Fr.—FIG. 290,2. *P. moutieri* (VAN STRAELEN);  $\times 2$  (296).

#### Family AEGLIDAE Dana, 1852

Carapace widened posteriorly, divided by longitudinal and transverse sutures and cervical groove; last thoracic sternum present, telson divided longitudinally, chelae stout, legs short. *Rec.*

*Aegla* LEACH, 1820 [*\*Galathea laevis* LATREILLE, 1818; OD]. Characters of family. [Fresh-water.] *Rec.*, S.Am.—FIG. 290,6. *\*A. laevis* (LATREILLE);  $\times 1$  (266).

#### Family PORCELLANIDAE Haworth, 1825

Carapace crablike, with oval outline, flat, smooth; front wide, short, triangular; antennal stalks with four segments; third maxillipeds with flattened ischium and merus; first pereiopods with flattened chelae. Abdomen thin, turned under cephalothorax. *U.Cret.-Rec.*

*Porcellana* LAMARCK, 1801 [*\*Cancer platycheles* PENNANT, 1777; OD]. Frontal margin prominent, dentate; chelipeds moderately flattened, hetero-

chelous in males. *U.Cret.*(*Cenoman.*), Fr.; *Rec.*, cosmop.

*Petrolisthes* STIMPSON, 1858 [*\*Porcellana violacea* GUÉRIN, 1829; OD]. Front triangular, depressed, undulate but not dentate; first segment of antennal stalk short, cheliped broad and flat. ?*Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, tropical and temperate seas except Medit.

### Superfamily HIPPOIDEA Latreille, 1825

[*nom. transl.* DANA, 1852 (*ex Hippidae* LATREILLE, 1825)]

Cephalothorax subcylindrical, abdomen loosely turned under it, with pleura and uropods; carapace not fused with epistome; first pereiopods with or without chelae, fifth pereiopods reduced. *Tert.-Rec.*

#### Family ALBUNEIDAE Stimpson, 1858

[*nom. correct.* ORTMANN, 1896 (*pro Albuniidae* STIMPSON, 1858)]

Carapace subquadrangular, without posterolateral extensions; first pereiopods subchelate, second to fourth with last segment curved and flattened; telson oval. *Tert.-Rec.*

*Albunea* WEBER, 1795 [*\*Cancer symmysta* LINNÉ, 1758; SD HOLTHUIS, 1956]. Carapace with serrated fronto-orbital border and median notch; antennular and antennal stalks long. *Rec.*, warm seas.

*Blepharipoda* RANDALL, 1840 [*\*B. occidentalis*; OD]. Eye stalks very slender, elongated; 3rd maxillipeds with merus and carpus similar, narrow. *Oligo.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, S.Am. [The fossil record of this genus, and hence of the family and superfamily, rests only on 2 small fragments of a merus and propodus of a cheliped.]

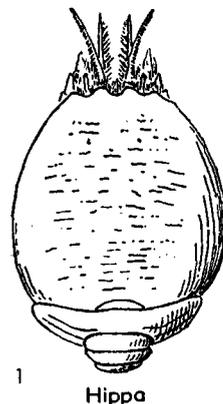


FIG. 292. Hippidae (p. R484).

**Family HIPPIDAE Latreille, 1825**

[*nom. correct.* BORRADAILE, 1907 (*pro* Hippides LATREILLE, 1825)]

Carapace ovoid, with posterolateral extensions covering posterior pereopods, first ones without chelae; telson lanceolate. *Rec.*

**Hippa** FABRICIUS, 1787 [*\*H. adactyla*; SD RATHBUN, 1900] [= *Remipes* LATREILLE, 1804]. Carapace broadly ovoid, with sinuous frontal border. Eye stalks slender and short; 3rd maxillipeds with merus dilated; last thoracic somite free. *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 292,1. *\*H. adactyla*;  $\times 1$  (15).

### Infraorder BRACHYURA Latreille, 1803

[= Brachyuridea GLAESSNER, 1929]

Carapace progressively shortened and widened, developing lateral margin; fused with epistome; last thoracic sternite fused with anterior sternites; first pereopods invariably chelate, third ones never chelate. Abdomen short, flattened, symmetrical, without complete uropods, turned under sternum, commonly with some somites fused. *L.Jur.-Rec.*

### Section DROMIACEA de Haan, 1833

Carapace elongate to subcircular, front narrow, triangular, either without orbits and antennular grooves or with orbito-antennular grooves; antennal stalk with four movable segments; buccal frame quadrangular, commonly widened anteriorly; first pereopods chelate, fifth ones in dorsal position and tending to be reduced, fourth and fifth pereopods commonly similar. Abdomen wide in both sexes, commonly with seven somites. Seminal ducts perforate coxa of fifth pereopods, oviducts open in coxa of third pereopods. *L.Jur.-Rec.*

### Superfamily DROMIOIDEA de Haan, 1833

[*nom. transl.* GLAESSNER, herein (*pro* Dromiidea, *nom. transl.* ALCOCK, 1899, *ex* Dromiidae DE HAAN, 1883)]

Carapace with elongate or rounded outline, without dorsal lineae, without or with orbits; fourth and fifth pereopods or only fifth ones dorsal. *L.Jur.-Rec.*

**Family EOCARCINIDAE Withers, 1932**

Characters of type-genus. *L.Jur.*

**Eocarcinus** WITHERS, 1932 [*\*E. praecursor*; OD]. Carapace elongate, no orbits, no lateral margin, cervical and branchiocardiac furrows well developed, latter extending to posterior margin; abdomen 0.7 length of carapace, not folded under sternum, with pleura and small 7th somite; 1st pereopods with long chelae, 4th and 5th pereopods probably elevated on back. *L.Lias.*, Eng.—FIG. 293,7. *\*E. praecursor*; 7a,b, dorsal and side views of carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (321).

**Family PROSOPIDAE von Meyer, 1860**

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (*pro* Prosoponidae VON MEYER, 1860)]

Carapace mostly cylindrical, elongate, without or with incompletable lateral margin; without orbits but commonly with elongate orbital grooves; strong cervical and branchiocardiac grooves. *M.Jur.-Cret.*, *Rec.*

**Subfamily PROSOPINAE von Meyer, 1860**

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (*pro* Prosoponidae, *nom. transl.* GLAESSNER, 1933, *ex* Prosoponidae VON MEYER, 1860)]

Carapace with strong surface sculpture, without sharp lateral margin, rostrum projecting. *M.Jur.-L.Cret.*

**Prosopon** VON MEYER, 1835 [*\*P. tuberosum* VON MEYER, 1840; SD BEURLEN, 1928] [= *Protocarcinus* WOODWARD, 1865 (type, *P. longipes* = *Homolus auduini* EUDES-DESLONGCHAMPS, 1835); *Palaeinachus* WOODWARD, 1866 (obj. syn. of *Protocarcinus*); *Avihomola* VAN STRAELEN, 1925 (obj. syn. of *Protocarcinus*)]. Carapace strongly convex, front sloping, no orbital grooves, posterior margin wide, branchiocardiac groove strong. *M. Jur.-L.Cret.*, Eu.—FIG. 294,1. *\*P. tuberosum* VON MEYER, Neocom., Fr.;  $\times 1.3$  (367).—FIG. 293,1. *P. mamillatum* H. WOODWARD; 1a, female abdomen,  $\times 0.5$ ; 1b-d, dorsal, lat., and frontal views of carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (324).

**Laeviprosopon** GLAESSNER, 1933 [*\*Prosopon laeve* VON MEYER, 1860; OD]. Carapace outline rectangular, front bilobed, regions smoothly convex; orbital grooves shallow, semicircular. *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 294,2. *L. laeve punctatum* (VON MEYER), Ger.;  $\times 2$  (367).

**Lecythocaris** VON MEYER, 1860 [*\*Prosopon paradoxum* VON MEYER, 1860; OD]. Carapace small, hexagonal, wider than long, greatest width across branchial regions; front large, bilobed. *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 294,4. *\*L. paradoxa* (VON MEYER), Ger.;  $\times 3$  (367).

**Nodoprosopon** BEURLEN, 1928 [*\*Prosopon ornatum* VON MEYER, 1860; OD]. Carapace elongate, rostrum bilobed, branchial regions inflated, posterior

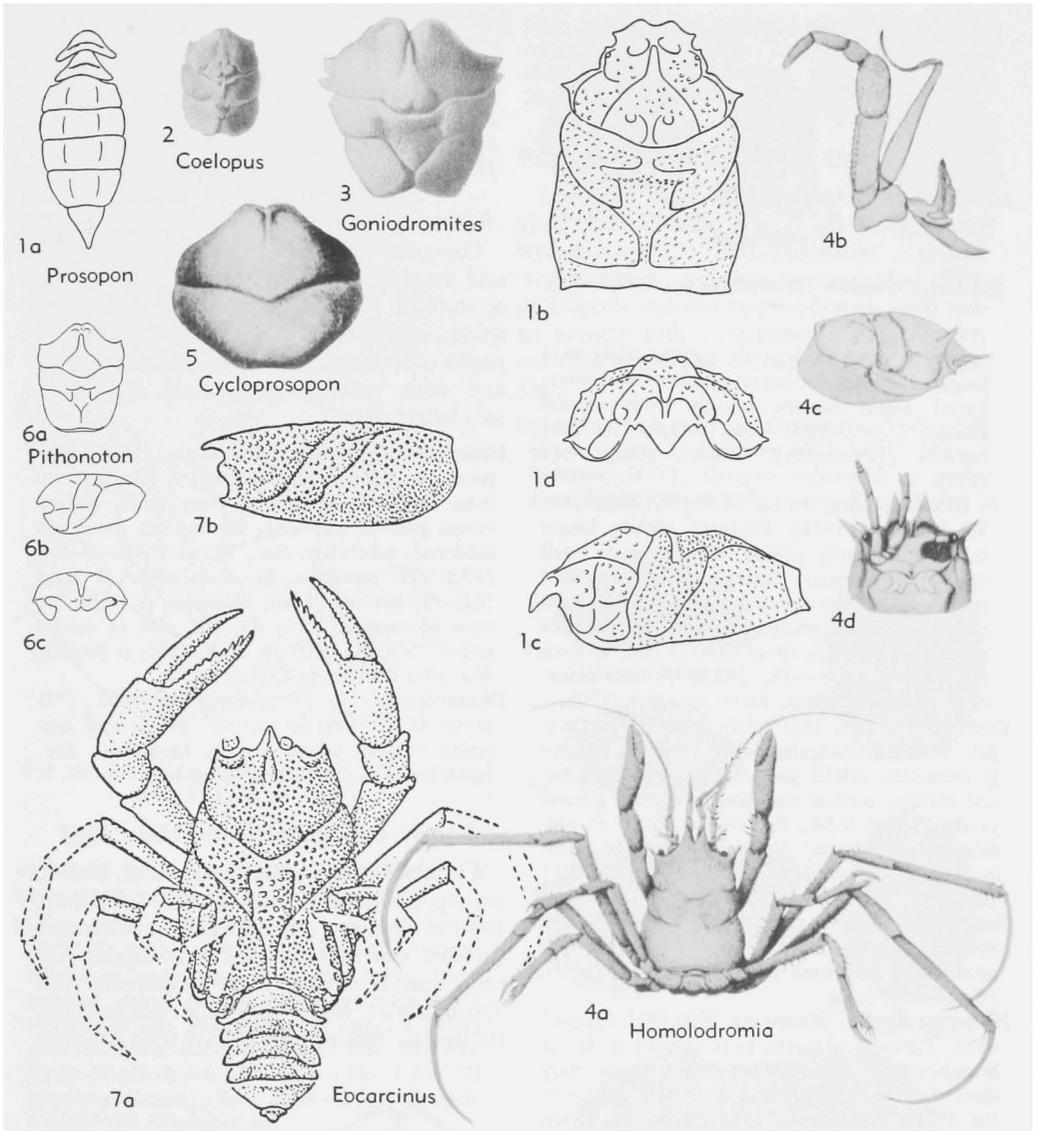


FIG. 293. Eocarcinidae (7); Prosopidae (Prosopinae) (1), (Pithonotinae) (2-3,5-6), (Homolodromiinae) (4) p. R484-R486.

margin narrow. *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 294,3. \**N. ornatum* (VON MEYER), Ger.;  $\times 2$  (367).

**Subfamily PITHONOTINAE** Glaessner, 1933

Carapace smooth, in some forms with partial lateral margin, fronto-orbital margin wide. *M.Jur.-U.Cret.* [See Addendum, p. R627.]

**Pithonoton** VON MEYER, 1842 [*P. marginatum*; SD BEURLEN, 1928]. Carapace convex transversely and longitudinally; cervical and branchio-cardiac grooves equally strong; front wide, orbital

grooves well developed. [*Ogydromites* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1865 (type, *O. nitidus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1865) was considered by GLAESSNER (1929) to be a synonym of *Pithonoton* but as a different genus by VAN STRAELEN (1936). *Ogydromites* has not been clearly diagnosed.] *M.Jur.-U.Cret.*, Eu.

**P. (Pithonoton)**. Carapace longer than wide, convex, lateral margins weak; cervical and branchio-cardiac furrows equally strong. *M.Jur.-U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 293,6. \**P. (P.) marginatum*, Tithon., Moravia; 6a-c, dorsal, lat., and frontal views,  $\times 1$  (324).

**P. (Cycloprosopon)** LÖRENTHEY, 1928 [*\*C. typi-*

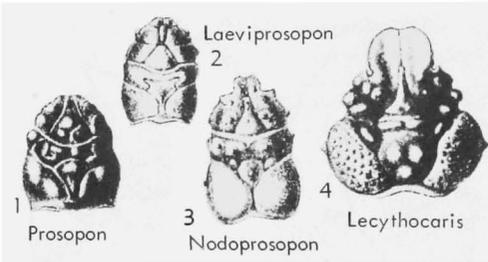


FIG. 294. Prosopidae (Prosopinae) (p. R484-R485).

*cum*; OD]. Carapace gently convex, wider than long, well-developed lateral margins, no antero-lateral angle. Surface smooth, with cervical groove. *U. Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 293,5. \**P. (C.) typicum* (LÖRENTHEY), Tithon., Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).

**P. (Goniodromites)** REUSS, 1859 [\**G. bidentatus*; SD BEURLEN, 1928]. Carapace slightly longer than wide, gently convex, lateral margin well developed, commonly denticulate; cervical groove stronger than branchiocardiac; front wide, straight or bilobed, orbital grooves long and deep; surface granulate. *U. Jur.-L. Cret. (?Apt.-L. Alb.)-U. Cret. (Cenoman.)*, Eu.—FIG. 293,3. \**P. (G.) bidentatus* (REUSS), Tithon., Moravia;  $\times 1.5$  (250).

**Coelopus** ÉTALLON, 1861 [\**C. jolyi*; OD]. Carapace with subrectangular outline, rostrum narrowly triangular, orbital grooves deep, no sharp lateral margin, cervical and branchiocardiac grooves parallel. *M. Jur.-U. Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 293,2. *C. pustulosus* (VON MEYER) [incorrectly cited by REUSS as *Pithonoton rostratum*], Tithon., Moravia;  $\times 1$  (250).

**Iberihomola** VAN STRAELLEN, 1940 [\**I. laevis*; OD]. Possibly differing from *Plagiophthalmus* in less ovoid shape and weak transverse sutures. *U. Cret. (Cenoman.)*, Spain.

?**Mesodromilites** H. WOODWARD, 1900 [\**M. birleyae*; OD]. Carapace elongate, sides parallel as far as branchiocardiac groove, branchial region very short. *L. Cret. (Alb.)-U. Cret. (Cenoman.)*, Eng.—FIG. 297,1. \**M. birleyae*; 1a,b, dorsal and lat. views,  $\times 1.5$  (332).

**Microcrystes** FRITSCH, 1893 [\**M. parvulus*; OD]. Carapace small, with parallel sides, large orbits, raised mesogastric and cardiac bosses. *U. Cret. (Coniac.)*, Boh.—FIG. 296,2. \**M. parvulus*;  $\times 3$  (96).

**Plagiophthalmus** BELL, 1863 [\**P. oviformis*; OD]. Carapace elongate, strongly convex transversely and longitudinally; lateral margins complete and distinct, rostrum bilobed, orbital grooves deep, cervical and branchiocardiac grooves equal. *Cret. (L. Alb.-Cenoman.-Dan.)*, Eu.—FIG. 295,1. \**P. oviformis*, Cenoman., Eng.; 1a-c, dorsal, frontal and lat. views of internal mold,  $\times 1.5$  (335).

?**Vectis** WITHERS, 1945 [\**V. wrighti*; OD]. Carapace ovoid, widening posteriorly, lateral margin marked by tubercles, orbits deep. [This genus was placed by its author in the Prosoponidae (Prosopidae) but transferred by BALS to the Dromiidae.] *L. Cret. (L. Apt.)*, Eng.—FIG. 296,1. \**V. wrighti*; 1a-c, dorsal, frontal, and lat. views,  $\times 6$  (323).

#### Subfamily HOMOLODROMIINAE Alcock, 1899

Carapace elongate, convex transversely and longitudinally, without lateral margins or orbital grooves, front with two long spines, cervical and branchiocardiac grooves present; abdomen with weak pleura; fourth and fifth pereopods reduced, subdorsal, subchelate. *Rec.*

**Homolodromia** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1880 [\**H. paradoxa*; OD]. Carapace narrow, antennae inserted below eye stalk, eyes very small, without orbital grooves; legs long, 4th and 5th pereopods subdorsal, subchelate. *Rec.*, W. Ind.-E. Afr.—FIG. 293,4. \**H. paradoxa*; 4a, dorsal view of male,  $\times 1$ ; 4b, left maxilliped, enlarged; 4c, right lat. view of carapace,  $\times 1$ ; 4d, ant. part of ventral surface,  $\times 3$  (4a, after A. M. Edwards & Bouvier, 4b,c, after Bouvier, 4a-d, from 245).

**Dicranodromia** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1880 [\**D. ovata*; OD]. Carapace narrow, ovoid, eyes concealed in deep orbital cavities. Legs short. *Rec.*, Japan-Ind. O.-E. Atl.-W. Indies-deep seas.

#### Family DROMIIDAE de Haan, 1833

Carapace convex, outline circular, oval to pentagonal, lateral margins well developed; front with three teeth, median weaker and directed downward; third maxillipeds covering buccal cavity. First pereopods with strong chelae, fourth and fifth ones reduced, subdorsal. Sternum of female with grooves;

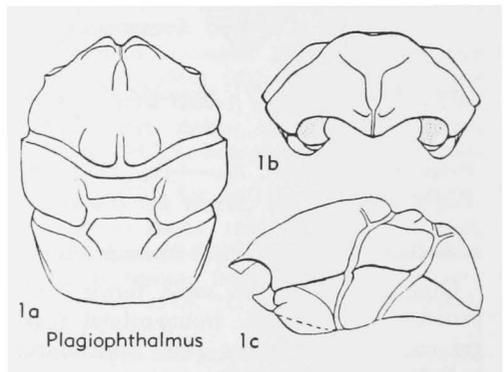


FIG. 295. Prosopidae (Pithonotinae) (p. R486).

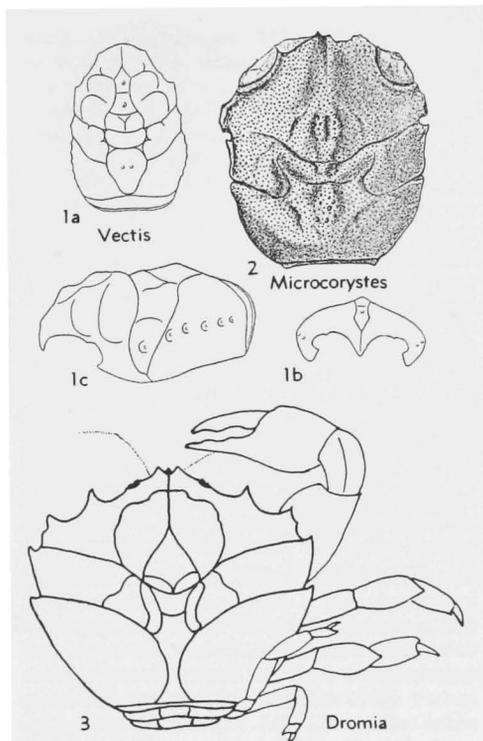


FIG. 296. Prosopidae (Pithonotinae) (1,2); Dromiidae (3) (p. R486-R487).

abdomen with seven somites, mostly with basal remnants of uropods. *Paleoc.-Rec.*

**Dromia** WEBER, 1795 [*Cancer personatus* LINNÉ, 1758; SD ICZN, 1964 (Opinion 688)]. Carapace subglobose, wider than long, with dentate lateral margins, sternal grooves in females extending to segment of 2nd pereopods, 4th and 5th pereopods subchelate. *Eoc.*, *Pleist.*, Eu.; *Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, *Medit.-W.Afr.-W.Atl.-IndoPac.*—FIG. 296,3. \**D. personata* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*, *E.Atl.-Medit.*; diagrammatic,  $\times 0.5$  (Glaessner, n).

**Dromilites** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837 [*Dromia bucklandi*; OD] [= *Pseudodromilites* BEURLÉN, 1928 (*Pseudodromilitis*, error) (type, *Dromia hilarionis* BITTNER, 1883); *Basinotopus* M'COY, 1849 (type, *Inachus lamarckii* DESMAREST, 1822)]. Carapace with dentate or spiny margins, regions distinct, branchial regions larger than in *Dromia*, branchiocardiac and cervical grooves well marked. *Paleoc.*, N.Am.(Gulf Coast); *L.Eoc.-M.Eoc.*, Eu.; *Mio.*, Aus.—FIG. 297,3. \**D. bucklandi*, L.Eoc., Eng.; 3a,b, dorsal and frontal views,  $\times 1$  (19).

**Noetlingia** BEURLÉN, 1928 [*Dromia claudiopolitana* BITTNER, 1893; OD]. Carapace ovoid, strongly inflated, median rostral spine more prominent

than lateral, lateral margin rounded, marked by tubercles. *U.Eoc.-L.Oligo.*, Eu.—FIG. 297,2. \**N. claudiopolitana* (BITTNER), *U.Eoc.*, Rumania; 2a,b, dorsal, lat.,  $\times 1$  (184, after Bittner, 1893).

#### Family DYNOMENIDAE Ortmann, 1892

Carapace with well-defined lateral margins, front broadly triangular, short; orbits well-developed, branchiocardiac groove weak; third maxillipeds opercular, fifth pereopods rudimentary; abdomen with seven somites with intercalated lateral platelets between sixth and seventh somites. *U.Jur.-Rec.*

**Dynomene** LATREILLE in DESMAREST, 1825 [\**D. hispida* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837; SD H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837]. Carapace subcircular to pentagonal, slightly broader than long. *Rec.*, *Atl.-Indo-*

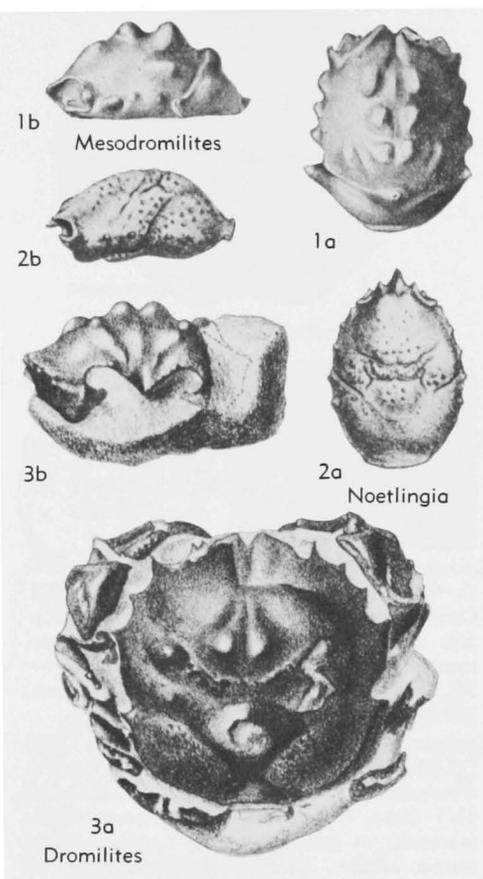


FIG. 297. Prosopidae (Pithonotinae) (1); Dromiidae (2, 3) (p. R486-R487).

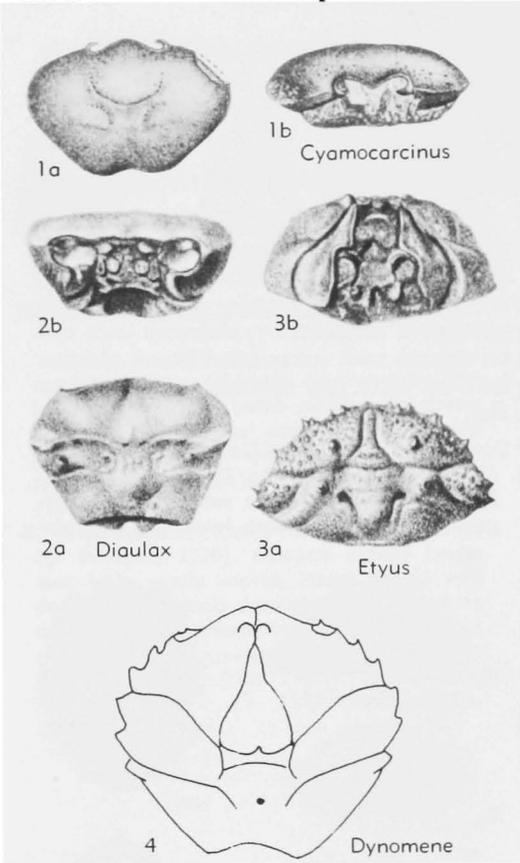


FIG. 298. Dynomenidae (p. R487-R488).

Pac.-N.Am.(W.coast).—FIG. 298,4. *D. filholi* BOUVIER, Pac. (tropic); carapace,  $\times 2$  (345a).

**Cyamocarcinus** BITTNER, 1883 [*\*C. angustifrons*; OD]. Carapace wider than long; lateral margins smooth, outline rounded. *U.Eoc.*, Eu.—FIG. 298, 1. *\*C. angustifrons*; 1a,b, dorsal, frontal,  $\times 1$  (183).

**Cylothreus** REMEŠ, 1895 [*\*C. strambergensis* (= *\*Prosopon reussi* GEMMELLARO, 1870); OD]. Carapace outline subcircular, rostrum steeply sloping, lateral margin sharp to posterior margin, mesogastric region not delimited. *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 299,2. *\*C. reussi* (GEMMELLARO), Tithon., Moravia; carapace,  $\times 1$  (375a).

**Cyphonotus** BELL, 1863 [*\*C. incertus*; OD] [= *Distefania* CHECCHIA-RISPOLI, 1917 (type, *D. himeraensis*); *Palaeodromites* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1865 (type, *P. octodentatus*)]. Carapace outline subcircular to pentagonal, front truncated, lateral margin lobulate, mesogastric region distinct. *U. Jur.-Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Eu.—FIG. 299,1. *\*C. incertus*, Cenoman., Eng.; 1a,b, dorsal, frontal,  $\times 1.5$  (335).

**Diaulax** BELL, 1863 [*\*D. carteriana*; OD]. Carapace wider than long, greatest width in front of cervical groove, branchiocardiac groove transverse, weak, orbits large. *U.Jur.-Cret.(Alb.-Cenoman.)*, Eu.—FIG. 298,2. *\*D. carteriana*, Cenoman., Eng.; 2a,b, dorsal, frontal,  $\times 1$  (344).

**Dromiopsis** REUSS, 1859 [*\*Brachyurites rugosus* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1820; SD BEURLEN, 1928]. Carapace pentagonal, convex, front forming large triangular lobe, lateral margins tuberculate, transverse grooves strong. *U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Eu.; *Paleoc.(Dan.)*, Eu.-N.Am.(N.J.).—FIG. 300,1. *\*D. rugosa* (SCHLOTHEIM), Dan., Denm.; 1a,b, dorsal, frontal,  $\times 1.3$  (Glaessner, n).

**Etyus** MANTELL, 1822 [*\*E. martini* MANTELL, 1844; SM MANTELL, 1844] [= *Reussia* M'COY, 1854 (type, *R. granosa*)]. Carapace about twice as wide as long, margins and surface tuberculate, cervical groove transverse, branchiocardiac groove curving back posterolaterally. *L.Cret.(Alb.)*, Eng.-Fr.—FIG. 298,3. *\*E. martini*; 3a,b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 1.3$  (Glaessner, n).

**Gemmellarcarcinus** CHECCHIA-RISPOLI, 1905 [*\*G. loerentheyi*; OD]. Differs from *Cyamocarcinus* in well-marked gastric regions and transverse grooves on carapace. *M.Eoc.*, Sicily.

**Glyptodynomene** VAN STRAELEN, 1944 [*\*G. alsasuensis*; OD]. Carapace small, wider than long, widest across branchial regions, strongly sculptured, with anterolateral and posterolateral spines. *U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Spain.—FIG. 301,6. *\*G. alsasuensis*; dorsal,  $\times 2$  (311).

**Graptocarcinus** ROEMER, 1887 [*\*G. texanus*; OD]. Carapace transversely oval in outline, with narrow posterior margins and raised lateral margin; surface granulate, with posterior mesogastric and lateral cardiac grooves only. *L.Cret.(Alb.)*, Mexico; *Cret.(Alb.-Cenoman.)*, USA (Tex.); *U. Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Eng.—FIG. 301,4. *\*G. texanus*, Cenoman., Tex.; carapace, dorsal view,  $\times 3$  (282).

### Family UNCERTAIN

**Mithracites** GOULD, 1859 [*\*M. vectensis*; OD]. Carapace elongate, lateral margins distinct, diverg-

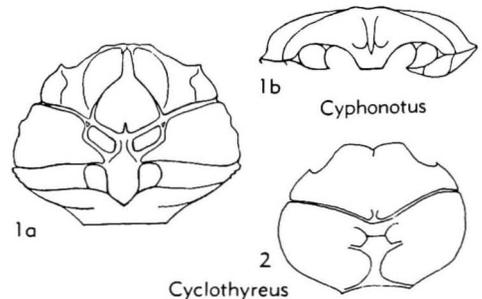


FIG. 299. Dynomenidae (p. R488).

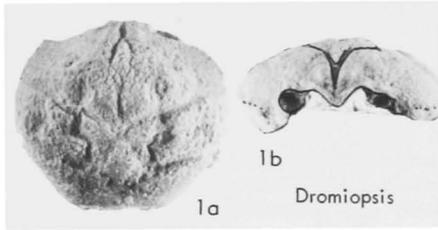


FIG. 300. Dromioidae (p. R488).

ing, posterior margin wide, orbits large; 5th pereopods reduced, dorsal. *L.Cret.(Apt.)*, Eng.—FIG. 301,7. \**M. vectensis*; carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (324).

**Oxythreus** REUSS, 1858 [\**O. gibbus*; OD]. Carapace ovoid, strongly convex longitudinally, widest in posterior third, front turned downward, grooved medially, posterior margin narrowly semicircular, lateral margin lobate, cervical groove more distinct than branchiocardiac groove. *U.Jur.*, Eu.—FIG. 301,2. \**O. gibbus*, Tithon., Moravia; dorsal,  $\times 2$  (250).

**Rathbunopon** STENZEL, 1945 [\**R. polyakron*; OD]. Carapace ovoid, slightly longer than wide, orbits distinct, lateral margin indistinct, posterior margin long, cervical and branchiocardiac grooves deep. *U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, USA(Tex.); *Cret.(Alb.-Cenoman.)*, Eng.—FIG. 301,5. \**R. polyakron*, Cenoman., Tex.;  $\times 2$  (283).

**Stephanometopon** BOSQUET, 1854 [\**S. granulatum*; OD]. Anteromedian portion of carapace resembling *Cyphonotus*, chela short, stout. [Incompletely known.] *U.Cret.(U.Senon.)*, Neth.

**Trachynotus** BELL, 1863 [\**T. sulcatus*; OD]. Carapace ovoid, differing from *Cyphonotus* in rounded outline and transversely ridged branchial regions. *U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Eng.—FIG. 301,3. \**T. sulcatus*;  $\times 1$  (344).

**Xanthosia** BELL, 1863 [\**X. gibbosa*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace wider than long, wide fronto-orbital and denticulate anterolateral margins; orbits large, otherwise close to *Etyus*. *Cret.(Alb.-Cenoman.)*, Eu.; *L.Cret.(Alb.)*, USA(Tex.); *U.Cret.(Campan.)*, USA(N.J.-Del.); ?*Paleoc.*, W. Afr.—FIG. 301,1a,b. \**X. gibbosa*, Cenoman., Eng.; 1a,b, dorsal, frontal,  $\times 1$  (344).—FIG. 301,1c. *X. wintoni* RATHBUN, Alb., Tex.; ant. view showing antennular bases,  $\times 2$  (244).

### Superfamily HOMOLOIDEA

White, 1847

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (*pro Homolidae* ALCOCK, 1899, *nom. transl. ex Homolidae* WHITE, 1847)] [= *Thelxiopeidae* RATHBUN, 1937]

Carapace longer than broad, with longitudinal lineae, without orbits, eye stalks

jointed, fifth pereopods dorsal, reduced. *U.Jur.-Rec.*

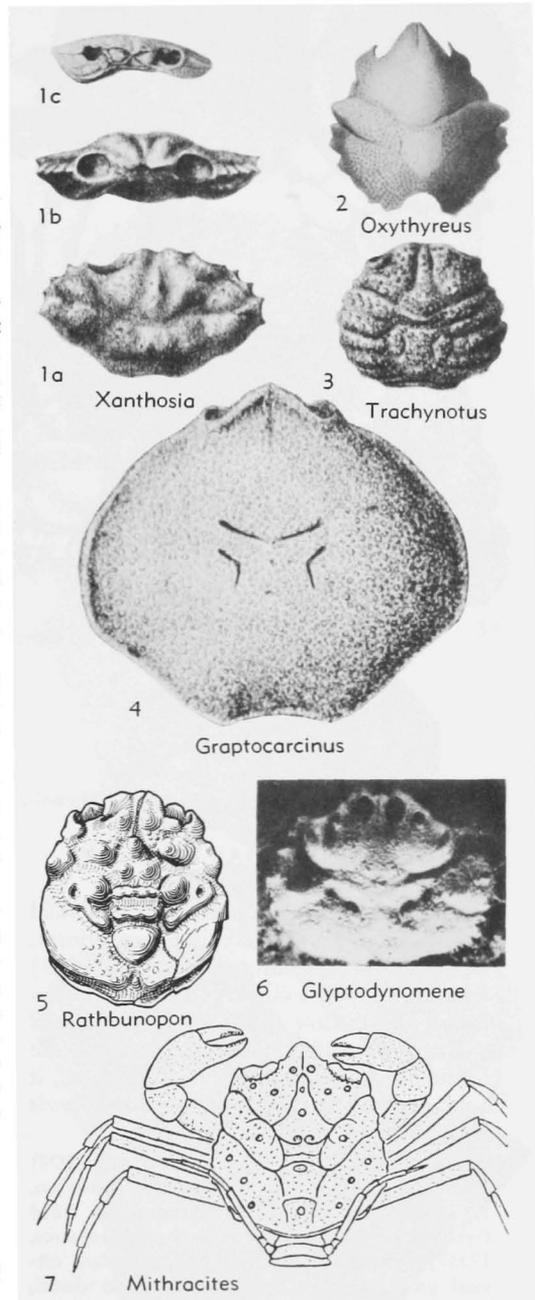


FIG. 301. Dromioidae (4,6); Family Uncertain (1-3,5,7) (p. R488-R489).

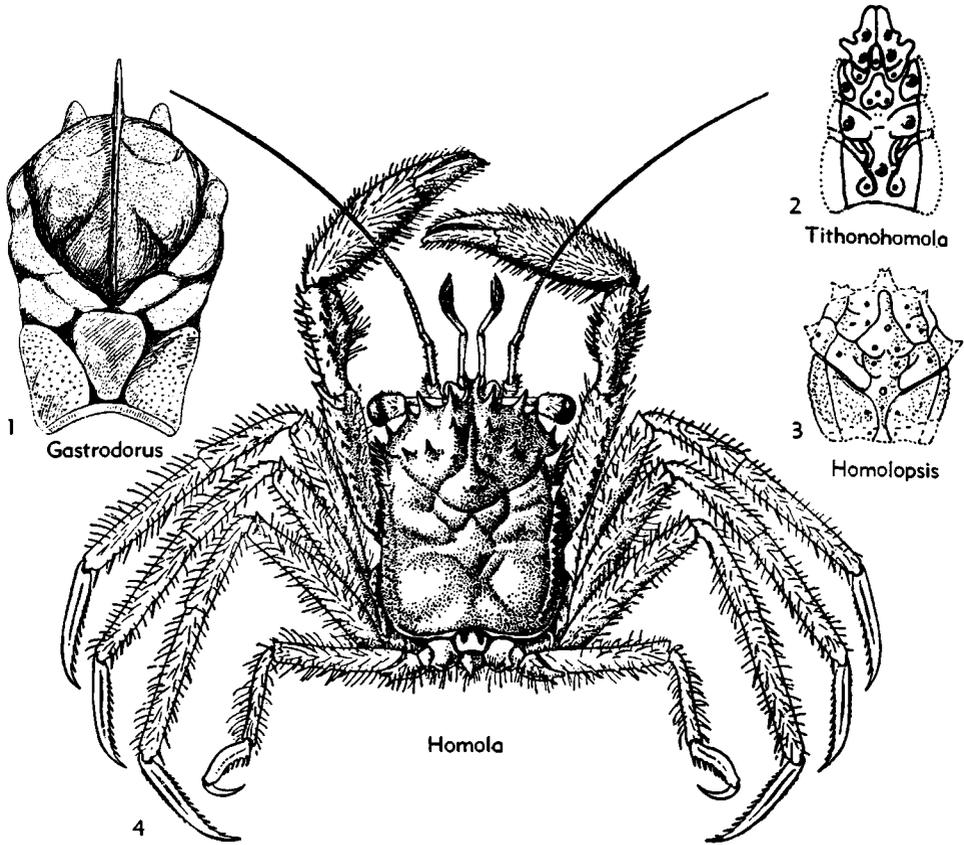


FIG. 302. Homolidae (p. R490-R491).

**Family HOMOLIDAE White, 1847**

[=Thelxiopidae RATHBUN, 1937]

Carapace elongate or ovoid, antennal flagella long. Third maxillipeds pediform. [The family Latreilliidae ALCOCK (1899) including *Latreillia* ROUX (1830) and *Latreillopsis* HENDERSON (1888) was recognized by RATHBUN (1937) but included in the Homolidae by BALSS (1957). If accepted, it could include the fossil forms *Palehomola* and *Tithonohomola*.] *U. Jur.-Rec.*

**Homola** LEACH, 1815 [nom. conserv., ICZN] [*\*H. spinifrons* (= *\*Cancer barbatus* FABRICIUS, 1793); OD] [= *Thelxiop* RAFINESQUE, 1814 (type, *T. palpigera*, = *Cancer barbatus* FABRICIUS, 1793)]. Carapace elongate, subrectangular, cervical groove distinct, lineae distinct and dorsal, 5th pereopods subchelate. *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Medit.-W.Afr.-N.Am. (E. coast-W. coast).—FIG. 302, 4. *\*H. barbata* (FABRICIUS); dorsal view of male,  $\times 1$  (245, after Smith).

**Gastrodorus** VON MEYER, 1864 [*\*Prosopon* (*Gastrodorus*) *neuhausense*; OD] [= *Eopagurus* BEURLEN, 1925 (obj.)]. Carapace small, elongate; rostrum with median spine continued as ridge, lateral parts outside lineae unknown, posterior margin rounded, gastric region inflated. *U. Jur.*, Ger.—FIG. 302, 1. *\*G. neuhausensis* (VON MEYER); median part of carapace, dorsal view,  $\times 7.5$  (24).

**Homolopsis** BELL, 1863 [*\*H. edwardsi*; OD] [= *Hoplitocarcinus* BEURLEN, 1928 (type, *H. joh-boehmi*)]. Carapace longer than wide, anterior regions spinose, strongly subdivided branchial regions well delimited by branchiocardiac groove, granulate; lineae distinct. *Cret. (Alb.-Senon.-Dan.)*, Eu.; *U. Cret.*, W. Can.-USA (S. Dak.-N. J.); *Cret. (Alb.-Cenoman.)*, Australia.—FIG. 302, 3. *\*H. edwardsi*, Alb., Eng.; carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (Glaessner, n).

?**Palehomola** RATHBUN, 1926 [*\*P. gorrelli*; OD]. Carapace broadly ovate, narrowing anteriorly, with 2-horned rostrum. Chelipeds very long and strong. *Oligo.*, N. Am.

?*Tithonohomola* GLAESSNER, 1933 [\**Oxythyreus armatus* BLASCHKE, 1911; OD]. Carapace elongate, lateral parts outside lineae unknown, rostrum flattened, triangular, with supraorbital projections; anterior regions strongly inflated and tuberculate; cervical and branchiocardiac grooves distinct. *U.Jur.*, Moravia.—FIG. 302,2. *T. longa* (MOERICKE); carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 2$  (Glaessner, n).

### Superfamily DAKOTICAN-CROIDEA Rathbun, 1917

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (*pro* Dakoticancroideae RATHBUN, 1917)]

Carapace rectangular to transversely ovoid, front narrow; orbits well developed, median part of cardiac groove weak, branchiocardiac groove strong, no lineae; third maxillipeds elongate; sternum of female without longitudinal grooves, fifth pereopods subdorsal, small. *U.Cret.*

### Family DAKOTICANCRIDAE Rathbun, 1917

Characters of superfamily. *U.Cret.*

*Dakoticancer* RATHBUN, 1917 [\**D. overanus*; OD]. Carapace wider than long, strongly grooved, eyes small, gastric regions hardly separated from cardiac. *U.Cret.*, N.Am.—FIG. 303,2a. \**D. overanus*, USA (S.Dak.); ventral side,  $\times 1.5$  (Rathbun, 1917).—FIG. 303,2b. *D. overanus australis* RATHBUN, SENON., USA (Miss.); dorsal side,  $\times 1.5$  (244).

*Avitelmessus* RATHBUN, 1923 [\**A. grapsoides*; OD]. Carapace with rounded outline, not strongly grooved, orbits wide, second to fourth pereopods flattened. *U.Cret.* (Senon.), N.Am. (N.Car.-Tenn.-Ala.-Miss.).—FIG. 303,3. \**A. grapsoides*, U.Senon., Tenn.; 3a,b, dorsal and ventral surface of male; 3c, left chela, 3d, female abdomen; all  $\times 0.7$  (239).

*Tetracarcinus* WELLER, 1905 [\**T. subquadratus*; OD]. Carapace small, subquadrate, grooves well marked, weak transverse groove separating gastric and cardiac regions; eyes small. *U.Cret.* (Senon.), N.Am. (N.J.-Wyo.).—FIG. 303,1. \**T. subquadratus*, USA (N.J.);  $\times 2$  (244).

### Section OXYSTOMATA H. Milne-Edwards, 1834

Buccal cavity elongate, subtriangular, antennules folded mostly longitudinally or obliquely; gonoducts coxal or sternal, fourth pereopods normal or subdorsal. *L.Cret.* (*Alb.*)-*Rec.*

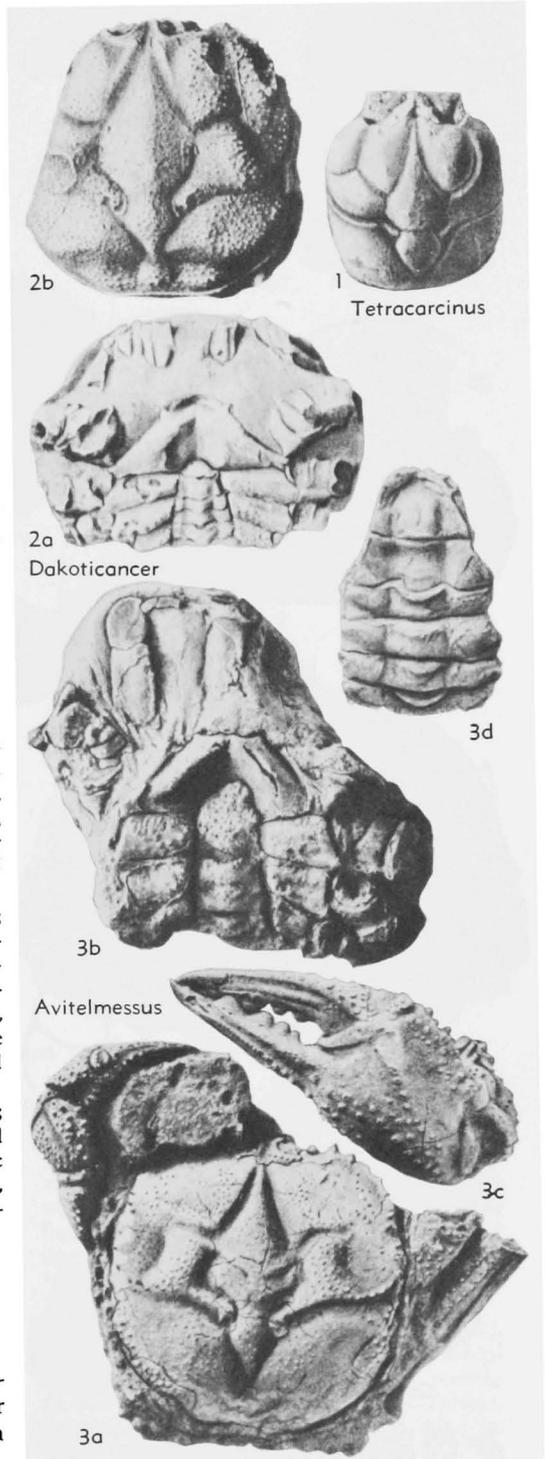


FIG. 303. Dakoticancridae (p. R491).

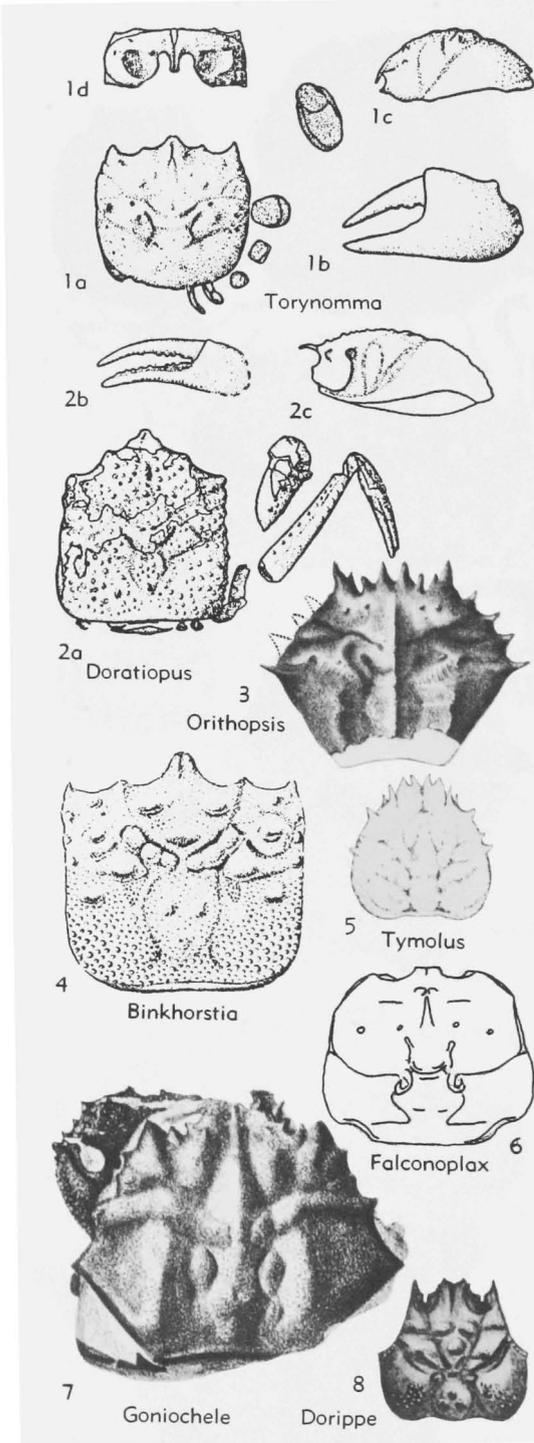


FIG. 304. Dorippidae (Dorippinae) (3,7-8), (Tymolinidae) (1-2,4-6) (p. R492-R493).

## Superfamily DORIPPOIDEA de Haan, 1841

[*nom. transl.* GLAESSNER, herein (ex Dorippidae DE HAAN, 1841)]

Carapace short, not covering the first two or three abdominal somites; fourth and fifth pereopods reduced, dorsal. *L.Cret. (Alb.)-Rec.*

### Family DORIPPIDAE de Haan, 1841

Characters of superfamily. *L.Cret. (Alb.)-Rec.*

#### Subfamily DORIPPINAE de Haan, 1841

[*nom. transl.* ALCOCK, 1896 (ex Dorippidae DE HAAN, 1841)]

Carapace with lateral margins converging anteriorly; third maxillipeds not covering entire buccal area; oviducts opening on sternum. *L.Cret. (Alb.)-Rec.*

**Dorippe** WEBER, 1795 [*\*Cancer quadridens* FABRICIUS, 1793 (= *\*C. frasco* HERBST, 1785); SD LATREILLE, 1810]. Carapace flat, with anterolateral spines, widest in posterior 3rd, regions well marked, chelae small, 2nd and 3rd pereopods large, 4th and 5th ones small, subchelate. *Mio.-Pleist.*, Eu.; ?*Pleist.*, IndoPac.; *Rec.*, Medit.-W.Afr.-IndoPac.—FIG. 304,8. *D. margaretha* (LÖRENTHEY), *Mio.*, Hung.; dorsal,  $\times 1$  (184).

**Goniochele** BELL, 1858 [*\*G. angulata*; OD]. Carapace hexagonal, wider than long, anterior margin spinose, chelae large, compressed. *L.Eoc.*, Eu.; *Oligo.*, Panama.—FIG. 304,7. *\*G. angulata*, L. Eoc., Eng.;  $\times 1$  (19).

**Orithopsis** CARTER, 1872 [*\*O. bonneyi*]. Carapace wider than long, outline hexagonal, surface flattened, granulated, with transverse grooves and metabranchial longitudinal ridges, rostrum bifid, orbits with 2 supraorbital lobes, anterolateral border spinose. *Cret. (Alb.-Cenoman.)*, Eng.—FIG. 304,3. *\*O. bonneyi*, Cenoman., Eng.; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (69).

#### Subfamily TYMOLINAE Alcock, 1896

Third maxillipeds covering buccal area completely. Oviducts opening in coxa of third pereopods. Sixth and seventh abdominal somites fused. *L.Cret. (Alb.)-Rec.*

**Tymolus** STIMPSON, 1858 [*\*T. japonicus*; OD]. Carapace inflated, front with 4 teeth, supraorbital margin deeply notched. ?*Mio.*, *Rec.*, Japan.—FIG. 304,5. *\*T. japonicus*, *Rec.*; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 1$  (157, after Sakai).

**Binkhorstia** NOETLING, 1881 [*\*Dromilites ubaghsi* BINKHORST, 1857; OD]. Carapace outline square, orbital margins long, transverse. *U.Cret. (U.Senon.)*,

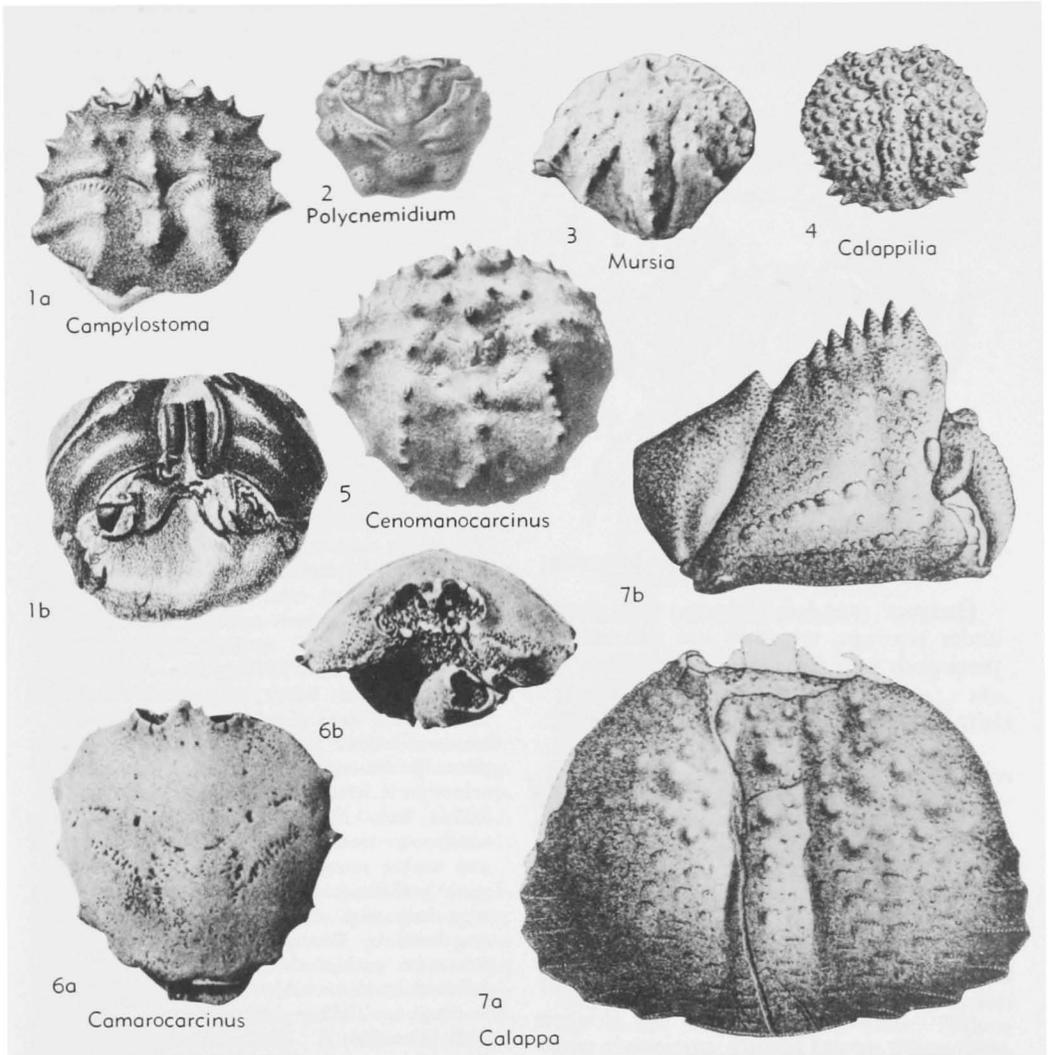


FIG. 305. Calappidae (Calappinae) (p. R494-R495).

Eu.—FIG. 304,4. \**B. ubaghsi* (BINKHORST), Neth.; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 2$  (214).

**Doratiopus** WOODS, 1953 [\**D. salebrosus*; OD]. Carapace pentagonal, orbital margins long, diverging backward. *Cret.(Alb.-Cenoman.)*, Australia.—FIG. 304,2. \**D. salebrosus*, Alb.; 2a, dorsal view of holotype, 2b, right chela, 2c, left side of carapace,  $\times 1$  (327).

**Falconoplax** VAN STRAELEN, 1933 [\**F. kugleri*; OD]. Carapace transversely oval, convex longitudinally, front narrow, deflected, orbits small, fronto-orbital margin less than 0.5 width of carapace, anterolateral angles rounded, lateral margins diverging posteriorly, lateral gastrocardiac

grooves deep, with faint groove and ridge extending across branchial regions; sternal plate wide, with deep sternal grooves leading medially from 5th pereopod coxae of females, abdominal depression deep. *U.Eoc.*, Venez.—FIG. 304,6. \**F. kugleri*; carapace drawn from int. mold,  $\times 1$  (Glaessner, n).

**Torynomma** WOODS, 1953 [\**T. quadrata*; OD]. Carapace subquadrate, widest anteriorly, orbital grooves large, rostrum narrow, oviduct opening on coxa of 3rd pereopods. *Cret.(Alb.-L.Turon.)*, Australia.—FIG. 304,1. \**T. quadrata*, Alb.; 1a, dorsal view of holotype, 1b, left chela, 1c,d, left and ant. sides of carapace,  $\times 1$  (327).

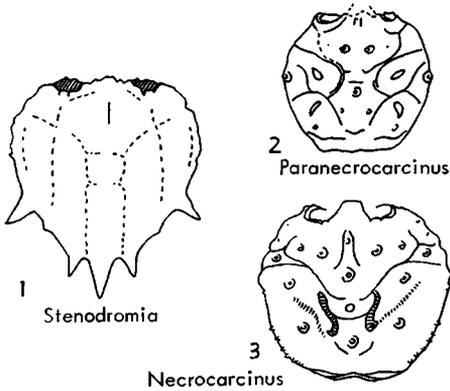


FIG. 306. Calappidae (Calappinae) (p. R495).

### Superfamily CALAPPOIDEA de Haan, 1833

[*nom. transl.* BEURLEN, 1930 (*ex* Calappidea DE HAAN, 1833)]  
[="subtribe" Calappoida BEURLEN, 1930]

Carapace rounded, abdomen fully turned under sternum, which is not reduced; all pereiopods well developed. *L.Cret.-Rec.*

#### Family CALAPPIDAE de Haan, 1833

[*nom. correct.* DANA, 1852 (*ex* Calappidea DE HAAN, 1833)]

Carapace with rounded outline and spinose or lobate margin; front and orbits of equal width; chelae large; male third to fifth abdominal somites fused; oviducts opening on sternum. *L.Cret.-Rec.*

##### Subfamily CALAPPINAE de Haan, 1833

[*nom. transl.* ALCOCK, 1896 (*ex* Calappidae DE HAAN, 1833)]

Merus of third maxillipeds not elongate and acute, second to fifth pereiopods walking legs. *L.Cret.-Rec.*

*Calappa* WEBER, 1795 [*\*Cancer granulatus* LINNÉ, 1758; SD LATREILLE, 1810]. Carapace strongly convex, expanded to maximum width posterolaterally, front and orbits small, chelipeds very large, fitting front of carapace, dactylus of one hand with strong curved basal tooth. ?*M.Eoc.*, *Oligo.* - *Pleist.*, Eu.-N. Am.-C. Am.-Egypt-Burma-E. Indies; *Rec.*, W. Eu.-Atl.-Pac.-Ind. O.—FIG. 305,7. *C. heberti* (BROCCHI), Mio., Hung.; 7a, carapace; 7b, right chela,  $\times 1$  (184). [= *Aparnondylus* ROSS, LEWIS, & SCOLARO, 1964 (type, *A. ocalanus*)]

*Acanthocarpus* STIMPSON, 1871 [*\*A. alexandri*; OD]. Carapace ovate, convex, as broad as long,

with posterolateral spines. Chelipeds with long spine on merus, pointing outward. *Oligo.*, Panama; *U.Oligo.* or *L.Mio.*, Brazil; *Rec.*, N.Am.(W.coast). *Calappella* RATHBUN, 1919 [*\*C. quadrispina*; OD]. Resembling *Calappa* but with long spines on anterior and posterior ends of posterolateral borders. *Oligo.*, C.Am.-W.Indies.

*Calappilia* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1873 [*\*C. verrucosa*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929] [= *Paracyclois* MIERS, 1886 (type, *P. milne-edwardsi*)]. Greatest width of carapace in anterior or middle portion, rostrum narrow, surface tuberculated, sternum longer than wide. *M.Eoc.-U.Oligo.*, Eu.-N.Am.(Tex.)-Mex.-E. Indies; *Rec.*, Australia-Pac.-W.Indies.—FIG. 305,4. *C. dacica* (BITTNER), U.Eoc., Rumania; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (184).

*Camarocarcinus* HOLLAND & CVANCARA, 1958 [*\*C. arnesoni*; OD]. Differs from *Campylostoma* in absence of dorsal tubercles and in having greatest width of carapace between anterolateral margins. *Paleoc.*, N.Am.(N.Dak.)—FIG. 305,6. *\*C. arnesoni*; 6a,b, dorsal and ant. views of carapace,  $\times 1$  (148).

*Campylostoma* BELL, 1858 [*\*C. matutiforme*; OD]. Carapace rounded, with very strong lateral and several weaker antero- and posterolateral spines; surface with tubercles on longitudinal and transverse ridges. *L.Eoc.*, ?*U.Eoc.*, Eu.—FIG. 305,1. *\*C. matutiforme*, L.Eoc., Eng.; 1a,b, dorsal and anteroventral views of carapace,  $\times 1$  (19).

*Cenomanocarcinus* VAN STRAELEN, 1936 [*\*C. inflatus* (= *Neocarcinus inflatus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS in A. GUILLIER, 1886, *nom. nud.*); OD]. Differs from *Neocarcinus* in having strong continuous median and branchial longitudinal and weaker anterior, median and posterior transverse granulated ridges on the carapace. [The type designation and validity of the genus were questioned by STENZEL (1945). However, VAN STRAELEN established the genus as monotypic, followed by the remark that it is fitting to refer to this genus another species.] *Cret.(Alb.-Turon.)*, USA (Tex.-Okla.); *U.Cret.(Cenoman.-Turon.)*, Fr.; *U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Palest.—FIG. 305,5. *\*C. inflatus* (VAN STRAELEN), Cenoman., Fr.; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 0.5$  (306).

*Cycloes* DE HAAN, 1837 [*\*C. granulosa*; OD] [= *Cryptosoma* BRULLE in H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837 (*non* BERTHOLD, 1827)]. Carapace elongate to subcircular, orbits as in *Mursia*, chelipeds as in *Calappa* or *Mursia*, legs shorter than chelipeds. *Mio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, At.-IndoPac.-E.Pac.

*Mursia* DESMAREST, 1823 [*\*M. cristata* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837; SD H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837]. Carapace transversely oval, rounded anteriorly, contracted posteriorly, with long lateral spines; orbits rather large; chelipeds similar to those of *Calappa* but chelae more elongate, legs large. *Oligo.*, N.Am.-Panama; *Mio.*, Japan; *Rec.*, Pac.

—FIG. 305,3. *M. marcusana* (RATHBUN), Oligo., USA (Wash.); dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 1.3$  (238).

**Mursilia** RATHBUN, 1919 [*\*M. ecristata*; OD]. Based on manus of cheliped which resembles that of *Mursia* but lacks ridge on inferior margin. Mio., Panama.

**Mursiopsis** RISTORI, 1889 [*\*M. pustulosus*; OD]. *U.Oligo.*, N.Italy.

**Necrocarcinus** BELL, 1863 [*\*Orithya labeschei* DESLONGCHAMPS, 1835; SD GLAESSNER, 1929] [= *Neocarcinus* STOLICZKA, 1873 (erroneous spelling)]. Carapace convex dorsally with subcircular to polygonal outline, wider than long, with weak transverse grooves; regions marked by strong tubercles arranged medially, and also along curved longitudinal lines on branchial region and transverse lines on gastric and hepatic regions. Orbits turned obliquely upward, with 2 supraorbital fissures. Lateral margins granulate to denticulate. *Cret.(Alb.-Senon.)-Eoc.*, Eu.-N.Am.-W.Afr.-India.

—FIG. 306,3. *\*N. labeschei* (DESLONGCHAMPS), Alb., Eng.; carapace,  $\times 1$  (Glaessner, n).

**Paranecrocarcinus** VAN STRAELEN, 1936 [*\*P. hexagonalis*; OD]. Differs from typical *Necrocarcinus* in hexagonal outline of carapace and reduced ornamentation. *L.Cret.*, Fr.; *U.Cret.(Campan.)*, USA (N.J.). —FIG. 306,2. *\*P. hexagonalis*, L. Cret. (Neocom.), Fr.; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 2$  (after 306).

**Polyncemidium** REUSS, 1859 [*\*Dromilites pustulosus* REUSS, 1845; OD]. Carapace wider than long, orbits large, front grooved, lateral margin sharp, surface pustulose and granulated. *U.Cret.(Coniac.)*, Boh. —FIG. 305,2. *\*P. pustulosum* (REUSS); 305,2, dorsal view,  $\times 1.5$ .

**Stenodromia** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1873 [*\*S. gibbosa*; OD]. Carapace pyriform, long, narrow, very convex, with or without weak posterior gastric grooves; front short and narrow; orbits large, surface smooth, with medial and branchial longitudinal tuberculated ridges. *M.Eoc.*, Spain; *M. Oligo.*, Fr. —FIG. 306,1. *S. calasanctii* (VIA), Eoc., Spain; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 2$  (314).

#### Subfamily MATUTINAE McLeay, 1838

Merus of third maxillipeds elongate and acute, covering palp. Pereiopods are swimming legs. ?*L.Cret.*, *M.Tert.-Rec.*

**Matuta** FABRICIUS, 1798 [*\*Cancer victor* FABRICIUS, 1786 (*\*=Cancer lunaris* FORSKÅL, 1775); SD LATREILLE, 1810]. Carapace depressed, slightly wider than long, anterolateral margin with spines, last spine slightly or considerably larger than others. Posterolateral margins strongly convergent. Chelae strongly ridged and tuberculate. *Mio.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-W.Afr. —FIG. 307,2. *M. brocchii* [*nom. nov.* GLAESSNER, herein, *pro M. inermis*

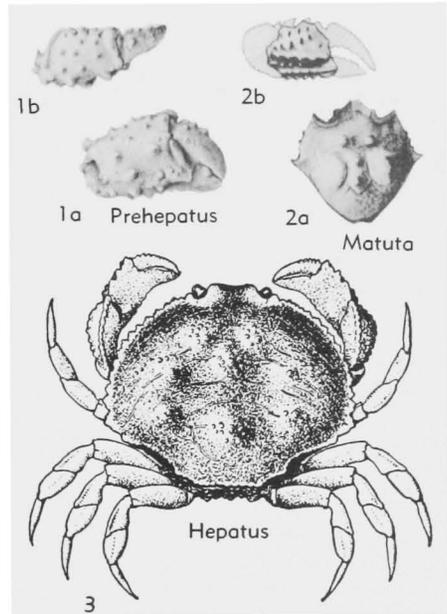


FIG. 307. Calappidae (Matutinae) (p. R495).

(BROCCI), 1883 (*non* MIERS, 1882)], Mio., Hung.; 2a, dorsal view of carapace; 2b, right chela,  $\times 0.7$  (184).

**Hepatella** SMITH, 1869 [*\*H. amica*; OD]. Differs from *Hepatus* in subrectangular carapace, prominent fronto-orbital border, lateral regions concave above. *U.Oligo.* or *L.Mio.*, Brazil; *Rec.*, W. coast of Mexico to Peru.

**Hepatus** LATREILLE, 1802 [*\*Calappa angustata* FABRICIUS, 1798; OD] [= *Hepatoides* BALSS, 1957 (obj.)]. Carapace broad, convex, outline arcuate in front, strongly narrowed behind; fronto-orbital margin narrow, elevated; chelipeds strong, keeled; legs smooth. ?*Oligo.*, Panama; *Pleist.*, Panama-USA (Calif.); *Rec.*, N.Am. (E.coast-W.coast). —FIG. 307,3. *H. lineatus* (RATHBUN), *Rec.*; dorsal view,  $\times 1$  (245).

?**Prehepatus** RATHBUN, 1935 [*\*P. cretaceus*; OD]. Chelae only, which differ from those of other Calappidae in being flattened above to form horizontal face instead of crest. *Cret.(Alb.-Campan.)*, USA (Tex.-N.J.). —FIG. 307,1. *\*P. cretaceus*, Alb., Tex.; 1a,b, ext. and aboral views,  $\times 2$  (244).

#### Family LEUCOSIIDAE Samouelle, 1819

[*nom. correct.* MIERS, 1886 (*pro* Leucosidae SAMOUELLE, 1819)]

Carapace round, oval or polygonal. Eyes and orbits very small, front narrow but

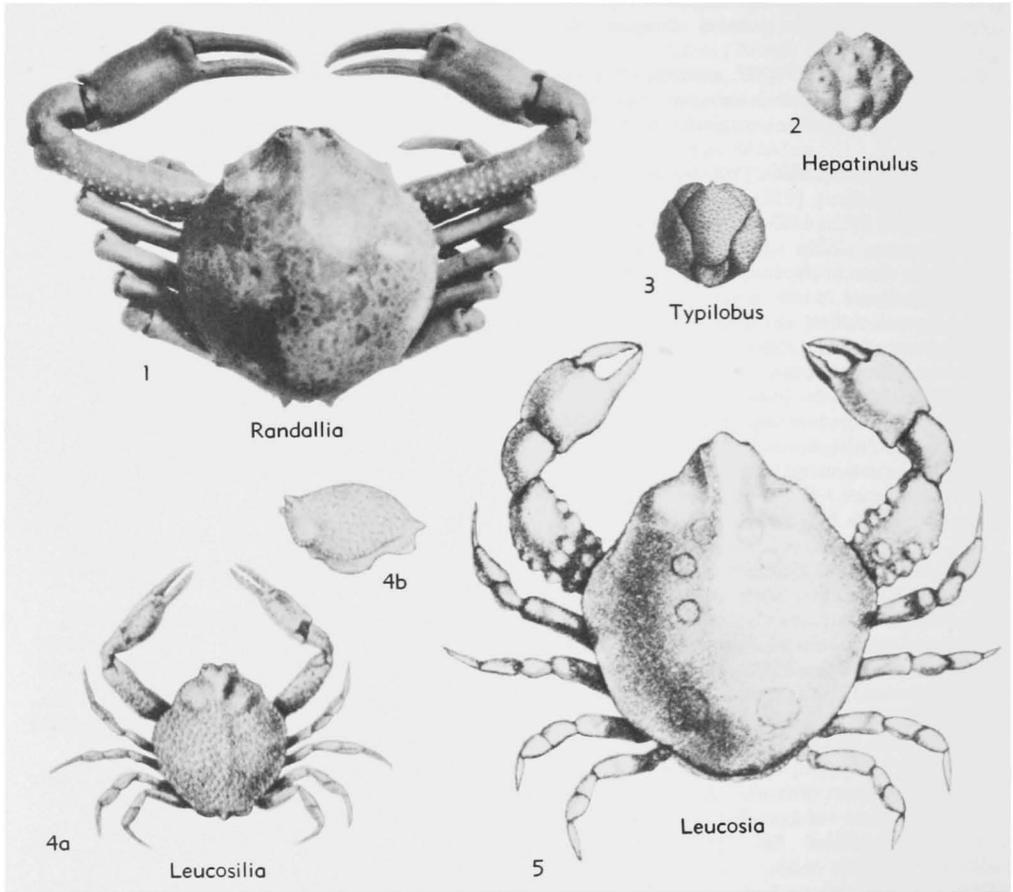


FIG. 308. Leucosiidae (p. R496-R498).

wider than orbits, antennules infolded obliquely, antennae small, third maxillipeds covering buccal area, inhalant canals covered by their wide exopods; abdominal terga 3 to 5 or 6 commonly fused; chelipeds symmetrical. [This family is commonly divided into subfamilies which are constituted and defined differently by different authors (MIERS, ALCOCK, IHLE, RATHBUN, BALSS) and are not considered helpful to paleontologists at the present stage of our knowledge of the family.] ?*L.Eoc.*, *M. Eoc.-Rec.*

**Leucosia** WEBER, 1795 [*\*Cancer craniolaris* LINNÉ, 1758; SD HOLTHUIS, 1959] [= *Leucosides* RATHBUN, 1897 (obj.)]. Carapace porcelaneous, convex, smooth, narrow frontal region projecting (snoutlike), "thoracic sinus" in side walls under epibranchial angles; chelipeds massive. *Mio.-Rec.*,

IndoPac.—FIG. 308,5. *L. australiensis* (MIERS), *Rec.*;  $\times 2.25$  (139, after Miers).

**Ebalia** LEACH, 1817 [*\*Cancer tuberosus* PENNANT, 1777; SD RATHBUN, 1922]. Carapace convex, rhomboidal to hexagonal, with tumid regions, nodose, granulate, front narrow, truncate, chelipeds moderately developed. *Mio.-Pleist.*, Eu-Burma; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Atl.-Medit.-W.N.Am.—FIG. 309,2. *E. tuberculosa* (H. MILNE-EDWARDS), *Rec.*;  $\times 2$  (139).

**Hepatinulus** RISTORI, 1886 [*\*H. seguenzai*; OD]. Carapace finely granulated, convex, rhomboidal, length equal to width, regions marked by tubercles and faint grooves; 2 rounded posterior lobes. *Mio.-Plio.*, Italy.—FIG. 308,2. *\*H. seguenzai*, *Plio.*;  $\times 3$  (253).

**Ilia** LEACH, 1817 [*\*Cancer nucleus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Carapace globular, 4 spines on posterior and posterolateral margins, front narrow with median indentation; chelipeds long, with long, thin fingers, 2nd to 5th pereopods much shorter

and decreasing in length. ?*Eoc.*, *Plio.*, Italy; *Rec.*, *Medit.-W.Afr.*—FIG. 310.2. \**I. nucleus* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*, *Medit.*;  $\times 0.7$  (redrawn from 13, after 259).

**Ixa** LEACH, 1815 [\**Cancer cylindrus* FABRICIUS, 1777; OD]. Sides of carapace produced transversely into 2 large cylindrical processes; median regions separated from lateral by broad channels. *Pleist.-Rec.*, IndoPac.

**Ixoides** M'GILCHRIST, 1905 [\**I. cornutus*; OD]. Cephalothorax subglobular, with pair of large conical lateral spines. *Plio.-Rec.*, IndoPac.

**Leucosilia** BELL, 1855 [\**Guaia (Ilia) jurinei* DE SAUSSURE, 1853; OD]. Carapace orbicular, granu-

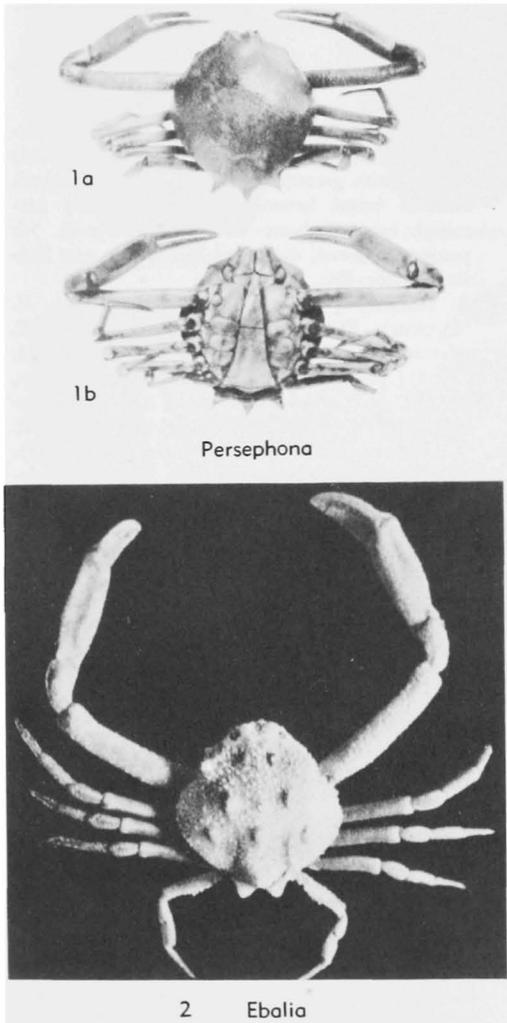


FIG. 309. Leucosiidae (p. R496, R498).

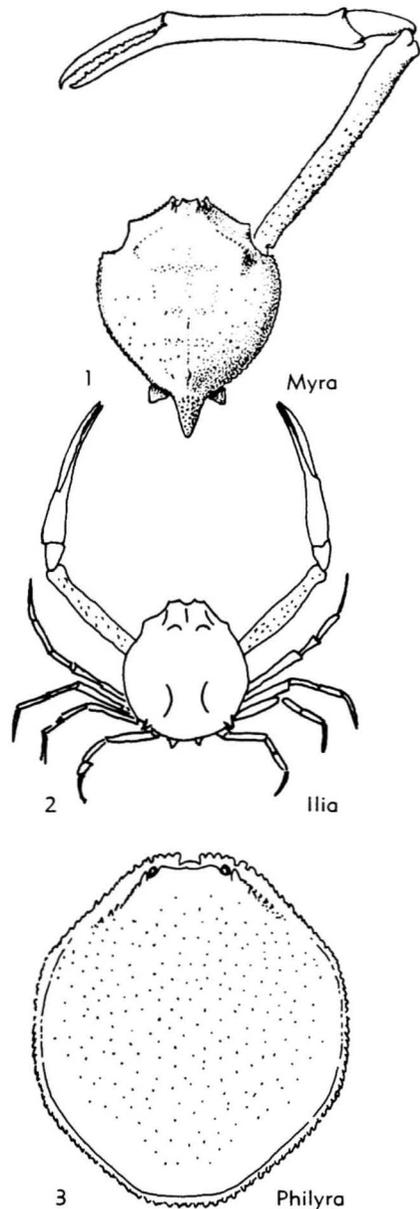


FIG. 310. Leucosiidae (p. R496-R498).

late, front narrow with median indentation, single posterior spine. *Mio.-Pleist.*, Panama; *Rec.*, Panama-Peru.—FIG. 308.4. \**L. jurinei* (SAUSSURE), *Rec.*; 4*a,b*, dorsal and lat. views of carapace,  $\times 1$  (245).

**Myra** LEACH, 1817 [\**Leucosia fugax* FABRICIUS, 1798; OD]. Carapace ovoid, front narrow with

- median indentation, 3 spines on posterior margin, surface smooth and granulate, regions scarcely marked, chelipeds elongate, slender. *Mio.*, Eu.-India-Fiji; *Mio.-Plio.*, Java; *Pleist.*, Celebes; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Hawaii-Gulf Calif.-Panama.—FIG. 310, 1. \**M. fugax* (FABRICIUS), *Rec.*;  $\times 1$  (15).
- Nucia DANA, 1852 [\**N. speciosa*; OD]. Carapace convex, broader than long, lateral margins spinose, chelipeds short, legs stout. *L.Mio.*, Java; *Rec.*, IndoPac.
- Palaeomyra A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1861 [\**P. bispinosa*; OD]. *M.Mio.*, N.Italy.
- Pariphiculus ALCOCK, 1896 [\**Randallia coronata* ALCOCK & ANDERSON, 1894; SD RATHBUN, 1922]. Carapace subglobular, margins spinose, surface vesiculose; intestinal region distinctly isolated; front narrow, orbits obliquely elongate. Chelipeds about 1.5 times length of carapace, fingers long. *L.Mio.*, E.Indies; *Rec.*, IndoPac.
- Persephona LEACH, 1817 [\**P. latreillii* (= \**Cancer punctatus* LINNÉ, 1758); SD RATHBUN, 1922]. Close to *Myra*, distinguished by bidentate, not tridentate, anterior margin of pterygostomal groove (BARNARD, 1950). *Plio.-Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, Am.(E.coast-W.coast).—FIG. 309, 1. \**P. punctata punctata* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*; 7a,b, dorsal and ventral views,  $\times 0.7$  (245).
- Philyra LEACH, 1817 [\**Cancer globus* FABRICIUS, 1775; SD H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837]. Carapace circular, smooth to finely granulate, surrounded by beaded margin, edges of pterygostome extending beyond front, regions scarcely defined, chelipeds elongate and slender. *Plio.-Rec.*, IndoPac.; *Rec.*, W.Afr.—FIG. 310, 3. *P. punctata* BELL, *Rec.*;  $\times 1$  (15).
- Randallia STIMPSON, 1857 [\**ilia ornata* RANDALL, 1840; OD]. Carapace almost globular, granulate, front narrow, with front edge of buccal cavity projecting beyond it; regions usually marked by grooves, chelipeds stout. *Mio.*, Aus.-?Brazil; *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, Indo Pac.-N. Am.(E. coast-W. coast).—FIG. 308, 1. \**R. ornata* (RANDALL), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.7$  (245).
- Typilobus STOLICZKA, 1871 [\**T. granulosus*; OD]. Carapace small, ovoid, rostrum pointed, gastric, cardiac, hepatic and branchial regions well marked by grooves; female abdomen not greatly expanded. *M.Eoc.-L.Oligo.*, *L.Mio.-M.Mio.*, Eu.-Egypt-India.—FIG. 308, 3. *T. semseyanus* LÖRENTHEY, U. Eoc., Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).
- posteriorly, chelae flat, with fixed finger more or less deflected; oviducts opening in coxae of third pereopods, fifth ones subdorsal. *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*
- BOURNE (1922) distinguished the Raninidae as a "subtribe Gymnopleura" of the "tribe" Brachyura. BALSS (1957) retained them in the "tribe" Oxystomata as a family. BEURLEN (1930) separated a family Raninellidae but based this distinction only on the degree of reduction of the posterior sternites.

### Family RANINIDAE de Haan, 1841

[*nom. correct.* ALCOCK, 1896 (pro Raninoidea DE HAAN, 1841)]

Characters of superfamily. *L.Cret.(Alb.)-Rec.*

Ranina LAMARCK, 1801 [\**R. serrata* (= \**Cancer raninus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD)]. Carapace evenly convex, with granulated surface, rostrum pointed, sternum broad between chelipeds, rapidly narrowed between bases of 2nd pereopods, 5th pereopods dorsal, dactyli of 2nd to 5th ones leaf-shaped. *Eoc.-Rec.*, IndoPac.

R. (Ranina) [= *Hela* MÜNSTER, 1840 (type, *H. speciosa*); *Eteroranina* FABIANI, 1910 (type, *R. dentata* LATREILLE = \**Cancer raninus* LINNÉ, 1758)]. Carapace with granulated surface. *Eoc.*, N.Am.-?Eu.; *Oligo.*, Eu.-N.Am.; *Mio.-Plio.*, Alg.-Malta-Italy-Fiji; *Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 311, 8. \**R. (R.) ranina* (LINNÉ); adult male,  $\times 0.3$  (137).

R. (Lophoranina) FABIANI, 1910 [\**Ranina marestiana* KÖNIG, 1825; OD] [= *Palaeonotopus* BROCCHI, 1877 (type, *Ranina barroisi*; name, based on incomplete, wrongly described specimen, has not been used and therefore should be set aside by ICZN)]. Carapace with parallel transverse granulated ridges. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, Eu.-Egypt-Iran-India-W. Pac.-W. Indies, *Oligo.*, USA (Ala.)-Borneo-W.Indies.—FIG. 311, 6. \**R. (L.) marestiana* (KÖNIG), ?N.Italy; fragmentary carapace (holotype) showing sculpture,  $\times 1$  (322).

Eumorphocorystes BINKHORST, 1857 [\**E. sculptus*; OD]. Carapace with strong anteriorly directed anterolateral spines. Surface covered with longitudinal and oblique granulated ridges. *U.Cret.(U. Senon.)*, Neth. [Also recorded, probably wrongly, from *Oligo.*, USA(Ore.)].—FIG. 311, 2. \**E. sculptus*; dorsal view,  $\times 1$  (41). [According to PELSENER, 1886, the drawing is incorrect in that it should show a ridged rostrum 4 mm. long.]

Hemioon BELL, 1863 [\**H. cunningtoni*; OD]. Carapace ovoid, strongly convex transversely, rostrum small, orbits sloping; surface smooth, sternites of 1st and 2nd pereopods equally wide. *U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Eng.—FIG. 311, 4. \**H. cunningtoni*; frontal view,  $\times 1$  (344).

### Superfamily RANINOIDEA de Haan, 1841

[*nom. trans.* DANA, 1852 (ex Raninoidea DE HAAN, 1841)]  
[=Gymnopleura BOURNE, 1922]

Carapace elongate, not covering proximal abdominal terga or posterior thoracal epimera; sternum broad anteriorly, narrow

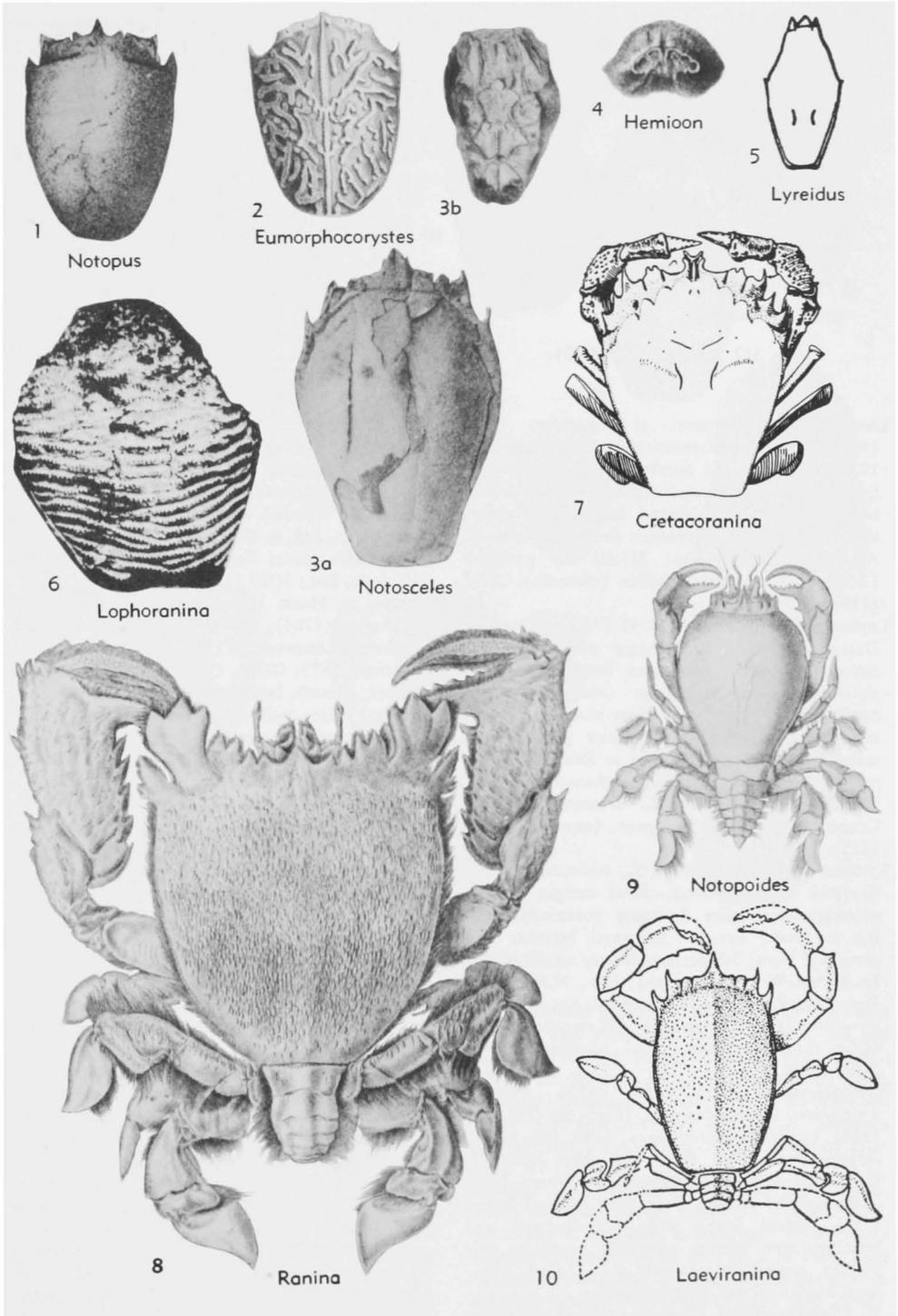


FIG. 311. Raninidae (p. R498, R500).

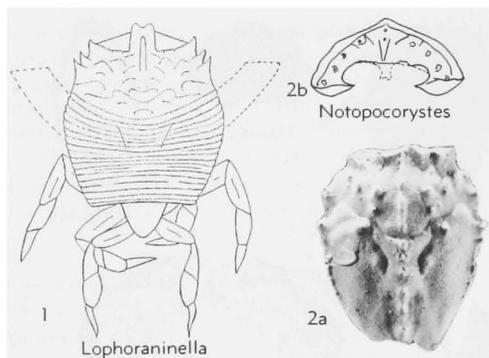


FIG. 312. Raninidae (p. R500).

**Laeviranina** LÖRENTHEY & BEURLEN, 1929 [\**Ranina* (L.) *budapestinensis*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Differs from *Raninoides* in greater relative width of carapace, narrower fronto-orbital border, and more advanced anterolateral spine; sternal plate as in *Raninoides*. *Eoc.*, Eu.-N.Am.-S. Am.-W.Afr.-N.Z.—FIG. 311,10. *L. gottschei* (BÖHM), *L.Eoc.*, Eu.; carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 1.7$  (119).

**Lophoraninella** GLAESSNER, 1945 [\**Ranina cretacea* DAMES, 1886; OD]. Carapace ovoid; rostrum, extraorbital, anterolateral and lateral teeth well developed; anterior portion ornamented with curved, short, granulated ridges marking regions, or uniformly granulated, posterior portion with transverse granulated ridges as in *Ranina* (*Lophoranina*). *U.Cret.*(*Cenoman.*), Lebanon; ?*Paleoc.*, W.Afr.—FIG. 312,1. \**L. cretacea* (DAMES), *Cenoman.*, Lebanon; carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (115).

**Lyreidus** DE HAAN, 1841 [\**L. tridentatus*; OD]. Carapace elongate, fronto-orbital margin narrow, anterolateral margins diverging posteriorly, ending in tooth; sternum narrowed between 2nd pereopod bases; 5th pereopods very small. *Oligo.*, Eu.-N.Am.-W.Indies-Australia; *Mio.*, N.Italy-N.Z.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-N. Am.(E. coast)-C. Am.(E. coast).—FIG. 311,5. *L. elegans* (GLAESSNER), *Mio.*, N.Z.; carapace, fronto-orbital margin restored,  $\times 0.7$  (118).

**Notopocorystes** M'COY, 1849 [\**N. mantelli* (= *Corystes stokesi* MANTELL, 1844); SD WITHERS, 1928] [= *Palaeocorystes* BELL, 1863 (obj.); *Eucorystes* BELL, 1863 (type, *N. carteri* M'COY)]. Carapace ovoid to shield-shaped; front narrow, bifid, 2 supraorbital fissures, 2 or more pairs of lateral spines; buccal frame wide, pterygostome and branchiostegite narrow. Sternites gradually narrowing posteriorly. *L.Cret.*(*Alb.*)-*U.Cret.*, Eu.-Syria-Madag.-N.Am.-Japan-Australia.

**N. (Notopocorystes)**. Carapace ovoid, with median

ridge, regions at least partly marked by grooves and tubercles or ridges, posterolateral margins straight; 5th pereopods dorsal, with short, broad and flat segments and leaf-shaped dactylus. *Cret.* (*Alb.-Cenoman.*), Eu.-Syria-N.Am.-Japan-Australia.—FIG. 312,2. \**N. (N.) stokesi* (MANTELL), *Alb.*, *Eng.*; 2a,b, carapace, dorsal and frontal,  $\times 1$  (Glaessner, n).

**N. (Cretacorantina)** MERTIN, 1941 [\**Raninella? schloenbachi* SCHLÜTER, 1879; OD]. Carapace finely granulate or smooth, shield-shaped, posterior part narrowed, with concave posterolateral margins; fronto-orbital and anterolateral margins dentate, only median parts of cervical and branchiocardiac grooves marked. *U.Cret.*, Eu.-N. Am.-W.Indies.—FIG. 311,7. *N. (C.) dichrous* STENZEL, Turon., USA(Tex.); carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (283).

**Notopoides** HENDERSON, 1888 [\**N. latus*; OD]. Carapace ovate, convex; fronto-orbital border 0.5 width of carapace, which widens abruptly behind it; sternum narrowed between bases of 2nd pereopods and widened again towards bases of 3rd pereopods, 3rd to 5th ones similar in size and shape. *Mio.*, Java; *Rec.*, E.Indies.—FIG. 311,9. \**N. latus*, *Rec.*;  $\times 0.7$  (145).

**Notopus** DE HAAN, 1841 [\**Cancer dorsipes* LINNÉ, 1758 (non 1764); SD (ICZN pend.)] [= *Notoporanina* LÖRENTHEY, 1929 (type, *N. beyrichi* BITTNER, 1875; OD)]. Carapace oval, transversely convex, smooth, but with lateral spines joined by serrated ridge; wide straight fronto-orbital margin with narrowly triangular, prominent rostrum and supraorbital spines and fissures; sternum narrowed behind chelipeds; not strongly reduced. *M.Eoc.-U. Eoc.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 311,1. *N. beyrichi* BITTNER, *Eoc.*, Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).

**Notosceles** BOURNE, 1922 [\**N. chimmonis*; SD RATHBUN, 1928]. Carapace ovate, smooth, with postfrontal ridge, fronto-orbital border about 0.5 width of carapace, rostrum pointed, with 2 basal lateral teeth; 1 pair of curved lateral spines; abdomen wide, 5th pereopods raised. *U.Cret.*, USA (Tex.); *Paleoc.*, USA (Tex.-Ark.-Ala.); *Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 311,3. *N. bournei* (RATHBUN), *Paleoc.*, Tex.; 3a, carapace,  $\times 2$ ; 3b, ventral view,  $\times 1$  (240).

**Pseudoraninella** BEURLEN, 1929 [\**Notopocorystes muelleri* BINKHORST, 1857; SD GLAESSNER, herein]. Carapace small, ovoid, with spinose rostrum, 2 pairs of supraorbital, 1 pair each of extra-orbital and lateral teeth; anterior part of carapace granulated, otherwise smooth, buccal frame narrow. [Other species formerly placed in *Raninella* and included by BEURLEN in his new genus are now separated as *Notopocorystes* (*Cretacorantina*).] *U.Cret.*(*Senon.*), Eu.; ?*Eoc.*, Borneo.—FIG. 313, 4. \**P. muelleri* (BINKHORST), *U.Senon.*, Neth.; 4a, carapace, dorsal view,  $\times 1$  [according to PEL-

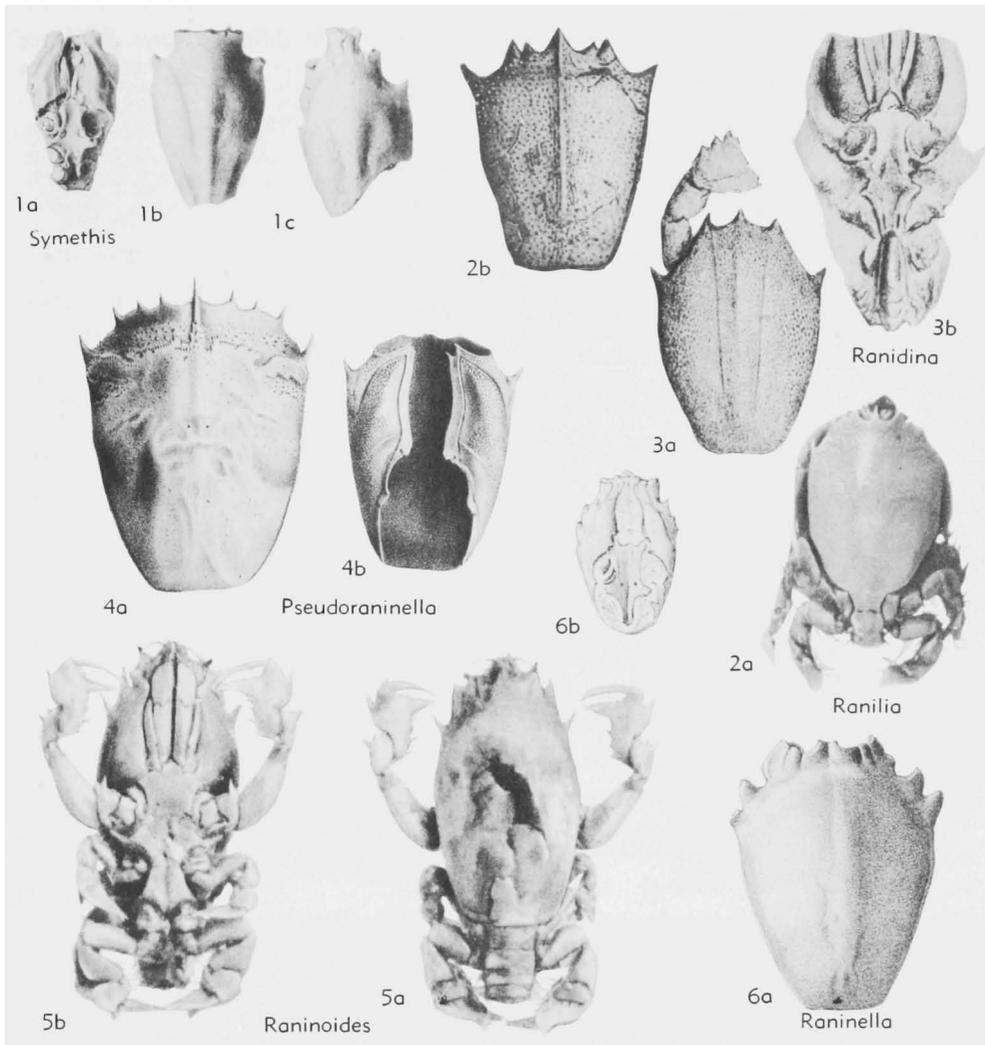


FIG. 313. Raninidae (p. R501).

SENEER (1886) the drawing is incorrect since the spines are flattened teeth, those nearest the rostrum being longer than outer ones], 4b, ventral view,  $\times 1.5$  (41).

**Ranidina** BITTNER, 1893 [*\*R. rosaliae*; OD]. Like *Ranilia*, fronto-orbital margin narrow, one pair of extraorbital spines between rostrum and lateral spines; sternum not very narrow between 2nd pereopods. *Oligo.*, N.Am.; *Mio.*, Aus.-Hung.—FIG. 313,3. *\*R. rosaliae*, *Mio.*, Aus.; 3a,b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 1$  (184, after Bittner).

**Ranilia** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837 [*\*R. muricata*; OD] [= *Notopella* LÖRENTHEY, 1929 (type, *N. vareolata*)]. Carapace ovoid, strongly granulated anteriorly, rostrum triangular; 2 or 3 pairs of spines between rostrum and strong lateral spines;

orbits inclined downward-outward; sternum linear between 2nd pereopods, wider between 3rd and 4th ones, 5th not strongly reduced. *Eoc.*, Hung.; *Tert.*, Eu.-N.Am.; *Rec.*, W.Atl.(tropical)-E.Pac. (tropical)-IndoPac.—FIG. 313,2a. *\*R. muricata*, *Rec.*;  $\times 1$  (245).—FIG. 313,2b. *R. vareolata* (LÖRENTHEY), *Eoc.*, Hung.; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 1$  (184).

**Raninella** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1862 [*\*R. trigeri*; OD]. Carapace ovoid, widest in anterior third, posterolateral margins converging, fronto-orbital margin with supraorbital fissures, 1 or more pairs of anterolateral spines. Only lateral cardiac grooves marked; sternum narrowed between 2nd pereopods; buccal frame long and narrow. *U.Cret.*, Eu.; *?Paleoc.*, USA (Ala.).—FIG. 313,6. *\*R. trigeri*,

Cenoman., Fr.; 6a, dorsal,  $\times 0.7$  (53); 6b, ventral view of smaller specimen (described as *R. elongata*),  $\times 1$  (53).

**Raninoides** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837 [*\*Ranina laevis* LATREILLE, 1825; OD] [= *Symnista* PHILIPPI, 1887 (non RAFINESQUE, 1815) (type, *S. araucana*); *Raninellopsis* BÖHM, 1922 (type, *R. javana*)]. Carapace elongate, greatest width behind middle part, transversely convex, surface smooth, fronto-orbital border less than greatest width of carapace, sternum broad between chelipeds and between bases of 2nd pereopods, narrow between bases of 3rd pereopods, 5th ones short and slender. *Oligo-Mio.*, NW.N.Am.-Chile-E.Indies; *Rec.*, Indo-Pac.-W.Afr.-C.Am.—FIG. 313,5. *\*R. laevis* (LATREILLE); *Rec.*, Colombia; 5a,b, dorsal and ventral views,  $\times 1$  (after 245).

**Symethis** WEBER, 1795 [*\*Hippra variolosa* FABRICIUS, 1793; OD] [= *Zanclifera* HENDERSON, 1888 (type, *Eryon caribensis* DE FREMINVILLE, 1832)]. Fronto-orbital margin very narrow, front trilobate, produced; sternum linear between 2nd pereopods, chelae long, inflated. *Paleoc.*, USA(Ala.); *Rec.*, C.Am.—FIG. 313,1. *S. johnsoni* (RATHBUN), *Paleoc.*, USA(Ala.); 1a,b, ventral and dorsal views of carapace (holotype); 1c, dorsal view of carapace with rostrum,  $\times 1$  (244).

**Tribolocephalus** RISTORI, 1886 [*\*T. laevis*; OD]. Differs from *Lyreidus* in greater length of fronto-orbital spines and absence of lateral teeth. *Plio.*, Italy.

## Section OXYRHYNCHA

### Latreille, 1803

Carapace narrowed anteriorly, with rostrum; branchial regions well developed, inflated; epistome wide, buccal frame square; antennules infolded longitudinally, second segment of antennae mostly completely fused with epistome. ?*U.Cret.*, *Eoc.-Rec.*

### Family MAJIDAE Samouelle, 1819

[*nom. correct.* ALCOCK, 1895 (pro *Majidae* SAMOUELLE, 1819)]

Chelipeds not much longer than second and third pereopods; second segment of antenna well developed. Orbits more or less incomplete. ?*U.Cret.*, *Eoc.-Rec.*

#### Subfamily MAJINAE Samouelle, 1819

[*nom. transl.* ALCOCK, 1895 (ex *Majidae* SAMOUELLE, 1819)]

Basal segment of antenna very wide, orbits developed sufficiently to cover long eye stalks and eyes, with orbital spine. [ALCOCK (1895) and BALSS (1929) divided

this subfamily in different ways. Evidence is lacking for grouping of fossil genera below subfamily level.] ?*U.Cret.*, *Eoc.-Rec.*

**Maja** LAMARCK, 1801 [*\*Cancer squinado* HERBST, 1788 (on official list, ICZN)] [= *Mamaja* STEBBING, 1904]. Carapace pear-shaped, granular or spinose, with spinose lateral margins, rostrum with 2 straight, divergent horns; interantennular and intermediate spines present; chelipeds slender, fingers straight. *Mio.-Pleist.*, Eu.-N.Afr.; *Mio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-E.Atl.-Medit.—FIG. 314,9. *M. arambourgi* VAN STRAELEN, *Plio.*, Alg.;  $\times 1$  (303).

**Leptomithrax** MIERS, 1876 [*\*Paramithrax* (*Leptomithrax*) *longimanus* MIERS, 1876; SD MIERS, 1879]. Postorbital spine excavated, close to intercalary supraorbital spine; carpus of cheliped without ridges, commonly granular. *U.Mio.-L.Plio.*, N.Z.; *Rec.*, W.Pac.—FIG. 314,7. *L. uruti* GLAESSNER, *U.Mio.*, N.Z.;  $\times 1$  (118).

**Micromithrax** NOETTLING, 1881 [*\*M. holsaticus*; OD]. Differs from *Maja* in frontal horns not diverging, extraorbital spines small, few anterolateral spines. *Mio.*, N.Ger.—FIG. 315,1. *\*M. holsaticus*;  $\times 0.7$  (214).

**Periicanthus** BITTNER, 1875 [*\*P. horridus*; OD]. Carapace triangular, with long spines on lateral and posterior margins, orbital roof an obliquely projecting convex plate. [BEURLEN (1929) proposed a monotypic family Periicanthidae, but withdrew it later (1930). BALSS (1957) placed the genus in the Majinae or (“possibly”) Acanthonychinae.] *M.Eoc.*, Italy-Spain; *U.Eoc.*, Hung.—FIG. 314,8. *\*P. horridus*, *U.Eoc.*, Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).

**Stenocionops** DESMAREST, 1823 [*\*Maja taurus* LAMARCK, 1818 (= *\*Cancer furcatus* OLIVIER, 1791); SD RATHBUN, 1925]. Orbits tubular, not strongly projecting, postorbital spine of moderate size, triangular; chelipeds well developed in adult males, chelae elongate. [Only fragmentary claws have been reported as fossil representatives of this genus. The otherwise unrecognized occurrence of Majidae in the Cretaceous cannot be deduced from such material.] ?*U.Cret.*, USA(Ark.); *U.Eoc.*, USA(Fla.); *Rec.*, N.Am.(coasts).

**Thoe** BELL, 1836 [*\*T. erosa*; OD]. Carapace moderately wide, lobulate; rostrum small; no pre-orbital spine; chelipeds long; fingers spoon-shaped, gaping in adult. ?*Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, USA(Fla.)-Mexico-Panama.

#### Subfamily MICROMAJINAE Beurlen, 1930

[*nom. correct.* GLAESSNER, herein (pro *Micromajinae* BEURLEN, 1930)]

Second segment of antennae free; carapace as in Majinae, orbits as in Inachinae. [Considered by BEURLEN (1930) as provisional.] *Eoc.-Oligo.*

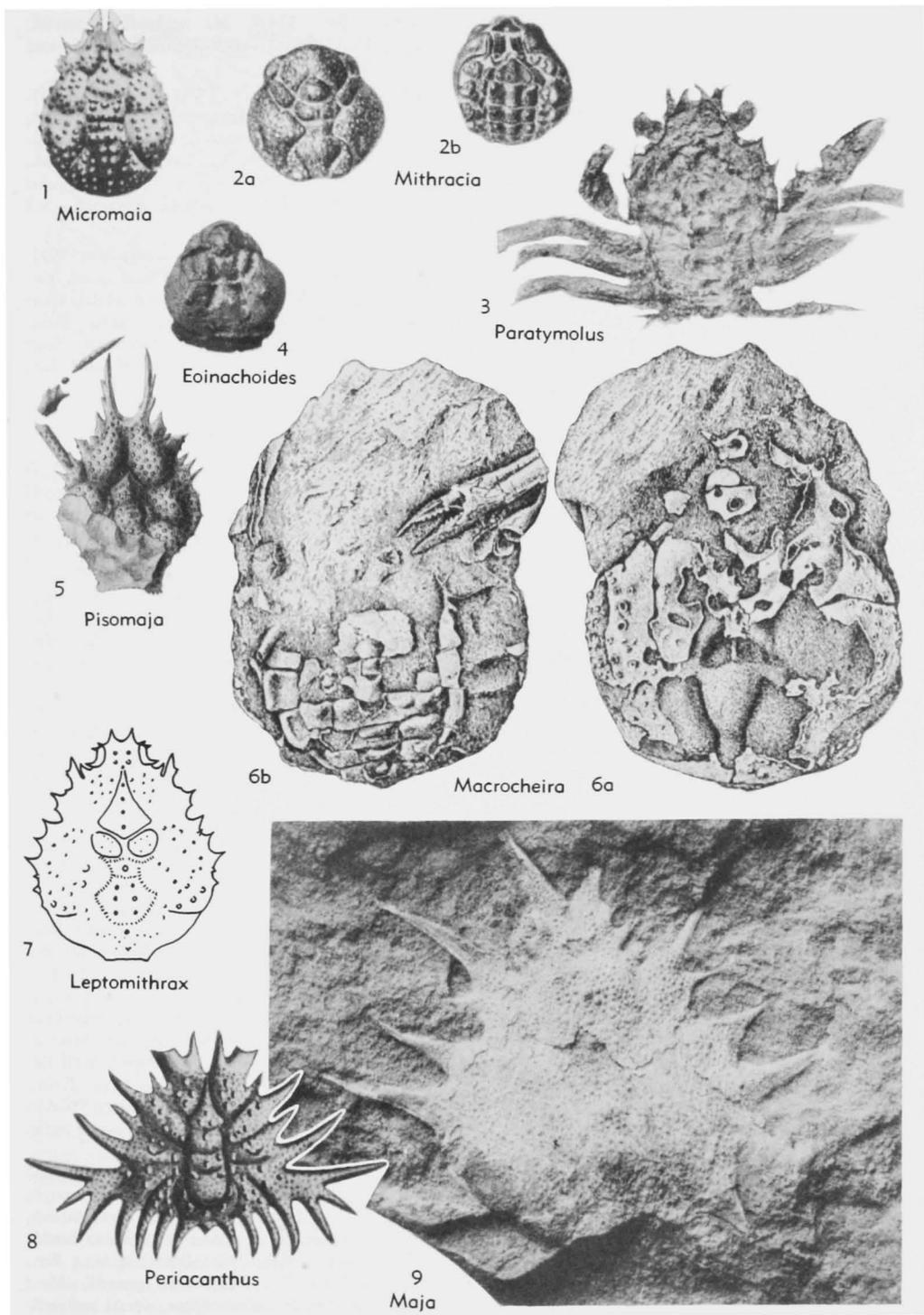


FIG. 314. Majidae (Majinae) (7-9), (Micromaiinae) (1-2, 5), (Inachinae) (3-4, 6) (p. R502-R504).

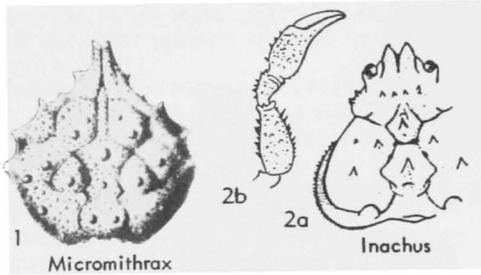


FIG. 315. Majidae (Majinae) (1), (Inachinae) (2) (p. R502, R504).

**Micromaia** BITTNER, 1875 [*\*M. tuberculata*; OD] [= *Micromaja* BITTNER, 1883]. Carapace ovoid, rostrum bilobed, orbits incomplete, postorbital spine separated. *M.Eoc.-L.Oligo.*, Eu.-Egypt; *M.Eoc.*, W.Afr.—FIG. 314,1. *\*M. tuberculata*, *U.Eoc.*, Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).

**Mithracia** BELL, 1858 [*\*M. libinoides*; OD]. Carapace subglobular, with grooved rostrum and clearly defined regions. *L.Eoc.*, Eng.—FIG. 314,2. *\*M. libinoides*; 2a,b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 1$  (19).

**Pisomaja** LÖRENTHEY, 1929 [*\*P. tuberculata*; OD]. Carapace broadest across middle, with long rostral spines and spinous margins, posterolateral margins concave. *U.Eoc.*, Hung.—FIG. 314,5. *\*P. tuberculata*;  $\times 1$  (184).

#### Subfamily INACHINAE McLeay, 1838

Basal segment of antenna long and slender, no orbits, pointed postorbital spine. *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Inachus** WEBER, 1795 [*\*Cancer scorpio* FABRICIUS, 1779 (= *\*Cancer dorsettensis* PENNANT, 1777); SD H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837]. Carapace widened posteriorly, rostrum short, 4 main tubercles on gastric, cardiac and branchial regions; chelipeds much stronger in males, 2nd pereopods long. *Oligo.*, Eu.(USSR); *Plio.*, Eng.; *Rec.*, E.Atl.-Medit.—FIG. 315,2. *\*I. dorsettensis* (PENNANT), *Rec.*; 2a, left part of carapace,  $\times 1$ , 2b, male right cheliped,  $\times 1$  (52).

**Eoinachoides** VAN STRAELEN, 1933 [*\*E. senni*; OD]. Carapace with branchial, cardiac and gastric regions inflated; cardiac region with 2 tubercles. *U.Eoc.*, Venezuela.—FIG. 314,4. *\*E. senni*;  $\times 1.5$  (300).

**Euprogna** STIMPSON, 1871 [*\*E. rastellifera*; OD]. Carapace pyriform, rostrum short, with 2 small teeth; chelipeds with palms dilated, 2nd pereopods longest. *U.Mio.*, USA(Fla.); *Rec.*, N. Am. (E. coast-W. coast).

**Macrocheira** DE HAAN, 1839 [*\*Maja kaempferi* TEMMINCK, 1836; OD]. Carapace subtriangular, rostrum long, with 2 divergent spines, inner orbital spine small, legs very long. *Oligo.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*,

Japan.—FIG. 314,6. *M. teglandi* RATHBUN, *Oligo.*, USA(Wash.); 6a,b, female, dorsal and ventral,  $\times 1$  (238).

**Paratymolus** MIERS, 1879 [*\*P. pubescens*; OD]. Carapace elongate-subpentagonal, rostrum short, no orbits or pre- or postocular spines, basal segment of antenna short, legs not elongate. *Mio.*, Japan; *Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 314,3. *P. yabei* IMAIZUMI, *Mio.*, Japan; crushed specimen,  $\times 3$  (158).

**Pyromaia** STIMPSON, 1871 [*\*P. cuspidata*; OD]. Carapace pyriform, with tubercles and spines, rostrum simple, well developed, supraorbital spine usually present, postorbital spine large, basal article of antenna long, chelipeds moderately long; 2nd to 5th pereopods long. *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, N.Am. (E. coast-W. coast).

#### Subfamily PISINAE Dana, 1852

Eyes with commencing orbits, with large, cupped, postocular process into which eyes can be partly retracted; basal segment of antenna broad; rostrum with two spines or teeth, legs usually very long. *Mio.-Rec.*

**Pisa** LEACH, 1814 [*\*Cancer biaculeatus* MONTAGU, 1813 (= *\*Maja armata* LATREILLE, 1802); OD]. Carapace with raised sculpture, preocular spine long, basal segment of antenna uniformly wide. *Pleist.*, Italy; *Rec.*, E.Atl.-Medit.

**Chorilia** DANA, 1851 [*\*C. longipes*; OD]. Carapace subpyriform, convex, spinous or tuberculate, rostral spines long, divergent, basal segment of antenna long and narrow; chelipeds large, manus compressed. *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, N.Pac.

**Hyas** LEACH, 1814 [*\*Cancer araneus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Carapace broad, shield-shaped, tuberculate, rostrum triangular, bifid, incomplete orbits with fissures above and below, chelipeds stout, chelae compressed, pereopods subcylindrical. *Mio.*, Eu.-Japan; *Plio.*, N.Afr.; *Pleist.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, N.Pac.-N.Atl.—FIG. 316,1. *\*H. araneus* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*; male, dorsal view,  $\times 0.7$  (237).

**Libinia** LEACH, 1815 [*\*L. emarginata*; OD]. Carapace convex, tuberculate or spinous, triangular with rounded posterior margin, rostrum bifid at apex, incomplete orbits small, chelipeds well developed, with elongate palms. ?*Plio.*, Fiji; *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, N.Am. (E. coast-W. coast)-?W.Afr.—FIG. 316,2. *\*L. emarginata*, *Rec.*; young male,  $\times 0.7$  (237).

**Loxorhynchus** STIMPSON, 1857 [*\*L. grandis*; SD MIERS, 1879]. Carapace large, pyriform, rough, rostrum bifid, deflexed, preorbital tooth strong, postorbital acute; basal segment of antenna broad; chelipeds of male large. *Plio.-Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, USA(Calif.).—FIG. 316,3. *\*L. grandis*, *Plio.*, Calif.; 3a,b, female cephalothorax, dorsal and ventral,  $\times 0.5$  (238).

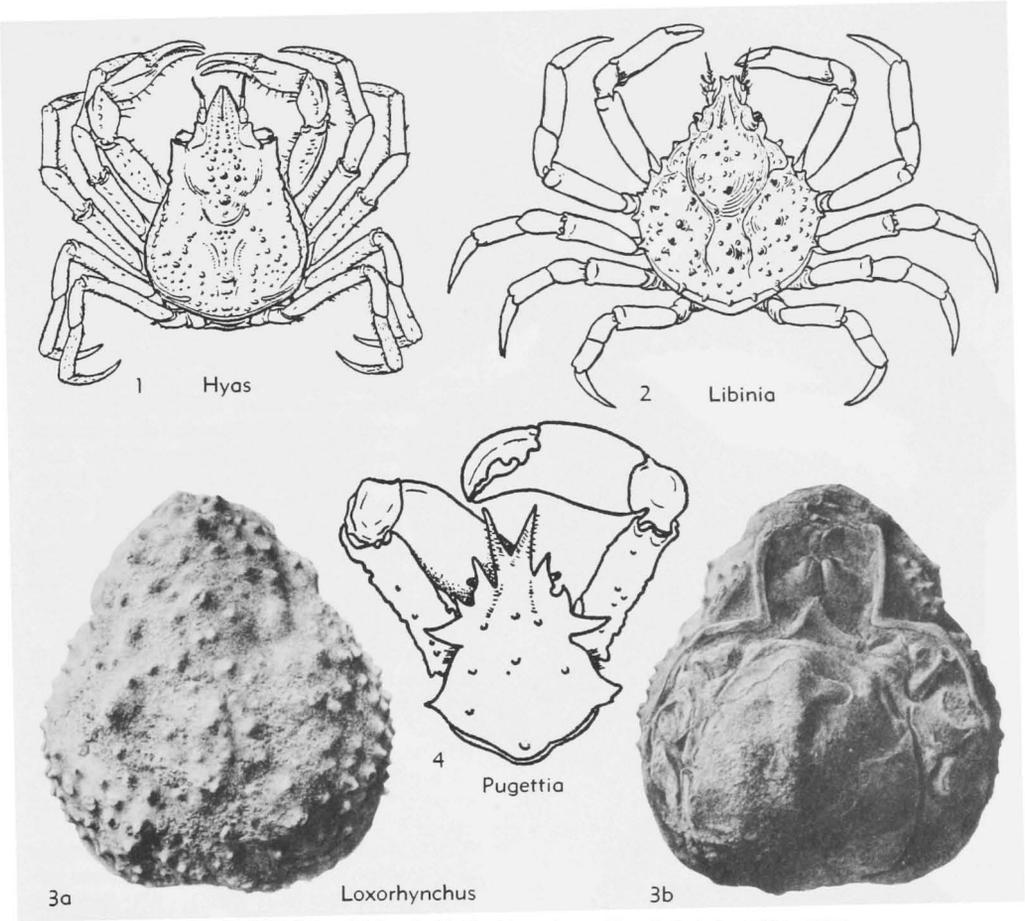


FIG. 316. Majidae (Pisinae) (1-3), (Acanthonychinae) (4) (p. R504-R505).

**Scyra** DANA, 1851 [*\*S. acutifrons*; OD]. Carapace subpyriform, with few or no spines; rostral horns flattened, sharp-pointed; orbits small, manus compressed, carinate above. *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, N. Pac.

**Subfamily ACANTHONYCHINAE Stimpson, 1870**

[*nom. transl.* ALCOCK, 1895 (ex Acanthonychidae STIMPSON, 1870)]

Carapace mostly with parallel lateral margins, without orbits, eye stalks short, rostrum simple or bifid, basal segment of antenna triangular. *Plio.-Rec.*

**Acanthonyx** LATREILLE, 1827 [*\*Maia lunulata* RISSO, 1816; OD]. Anterolateral angles prominent; all pereiopods short and strong. *Rec.*, N.Am.(E. coast-W. coast).-IndoPac.-E.Atl.-Medit.

**Epialtus** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834 [*\*E. bituberculatus*; SD]. Carapace broad, oblong, smooth, with

2 lateral laminate projections on each side; rostrum broadly triangular or oblong; male chelipeds strong. *Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, S.Calif. to Chile-Fla.-Brazil.

**Pugettia** DANA, 1851 [*\*P. gracilis* DANA, 1852; SD MIERS, 1879]. Carapace oblong, with 2 prominent lateral extensions, supraorbital cave forming preocular tooth; palm dilated and compressed. *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, N.Pac.-Ind.O.-Australia.—FIG. 316,4. *P. richii* DANA, *Rec.*; carapace and chelipeds,  $\times 0.6$  (237).

**Family PARTHENOPIDAE Macleay, 1838**

[*nom. correct.* MIERS, 1879 (pro Parthenopina MACLEAY, 1838)] [=Lambridae ALCOCK, 1895]

Chelipeds longer and stronger than second to fifth pereiopods, with fingers short, fixed finger inflexed, dactylus curved; antennal segment short, not fused with epi-

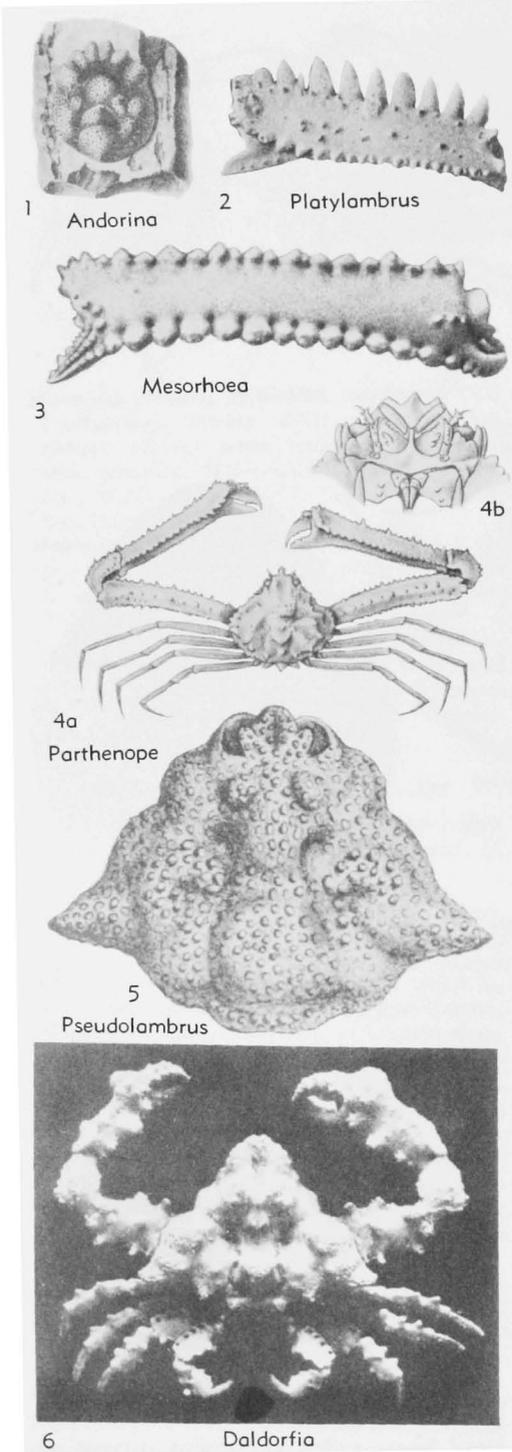


FIG. 317. Parthenopidae (Parthenopinae) (2-6); Family Uncertain (1) (p. R506, R508).

stome or front, orbits well developed. Male genital openings coxal. *Eoc.-Rec.*

**Subfamily PARTHENOPINAE** Macleay, 1838

[*nom. transl.* MIERS, 1879 (*ex* Parthenopidae MACLEAY, 1838)]

Carapace mostly triangular to pentagonal in outline, gastro-cardiac regions clearly delimited laterally, rostrum simple or obscurely trilobed, first pereiopods very long and strong. *M.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Parthenope** WEBER, 1795 [*\*Cancer longimanus* LINNÉ, 1758; SD RATHBUN, 1904] [= *Lambrus* LEACH, 1815 (*obj.*)]. Carapace granular, tubercular, or spiny, front short, infraorbital gap filled by 2nd segment of antennal stalk; short antennal basal segment wedged between antennular fossa and infraorbital lobe; chelipeds very long, 2nd to 5th pereiopods very short and slender. [The assignment of some fossil species to this genus and its subgenera is doubtful because of long-standing confusion between *Parthenope* and *Daldorfia* and insufficient data.] *M.Eoc.-Pleist.*, Eu.-Venezuela-Panama-W.Indies; *Rec.*, Atl.-Pac.-Medit.

**P. (Parthenope)**. Carapace ovate-pentagonal or subcircular, surface granular or pustulate, without strong carinae, rostrum very short. *U.Eoc.-Pleist.*, Eu.-Venezuela-Panama-W.Indies; *Rec.*, Atl.-Pac.-Medit.—FIG. 317,4. *P. (P.) agonus* (STIMPSON), *Rec.*; 4a, dorsal view,  $\times 1$ ; 4b, ventral view of anterior part,  $\times 3$  (237, after A. Milne-Edwards).

**P. (Platylambrus)** STIMPSON, 1870 [*\*Lambrus crenulatus* DE SAUSSURE, 1858 (= *\*Lambrus serratus* MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834); SD RATHBUN, 1924]. Carapace carinate or tuberculate, broadly triangular, rostrum broad, acute, projecting; chelipeds with strongly serrate edges. ?*Mio.*, Brazil-Venezuela; *Plio.*, USA (Fla.); *Rec.*, warm seas.—FIG. 317,2. *P. (P.) charlottensis* RATHBUN, *Plio.*, Fla.; propodus of left cheliped,  $\times 1$  (244).

**P. (Pseudolambrus)** PAULSON, 1875 [*\*Lambrus calappoides* ADAMS & WHITE, 1848; OD] [= *Parthenolambrus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1878 (type, *Lambrus tarpeius* ADAMS & WHITE, 1850); = *Phrynotlambrus* BITTNER, 1893 (type, *P. corallinus*)]. Carapace with nearly straight posterior margin, posterolateral angles strongly produced; rostrum medially grooved, deflexed, orbits deep; chelipeds not very long, not sharply serrate, contorted. *U.Eoc.*, ?*Mio.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Australia-Atl.-C.Am.-Medit.—FIG. 317,5. *\*P. (P.) corallinus* (BITTNER), *U.Eoc.*, Rumania;  $\times 1$  (184, after Bittner).

**Daldorfia** RATHBUN, 1904 [*\*Cancer horridus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Carapace with rough surface, but not deeply grooved; basal segment of antenna strongly developed, separating base of antennula from infraorbital gap; rostrum very short, turned down-

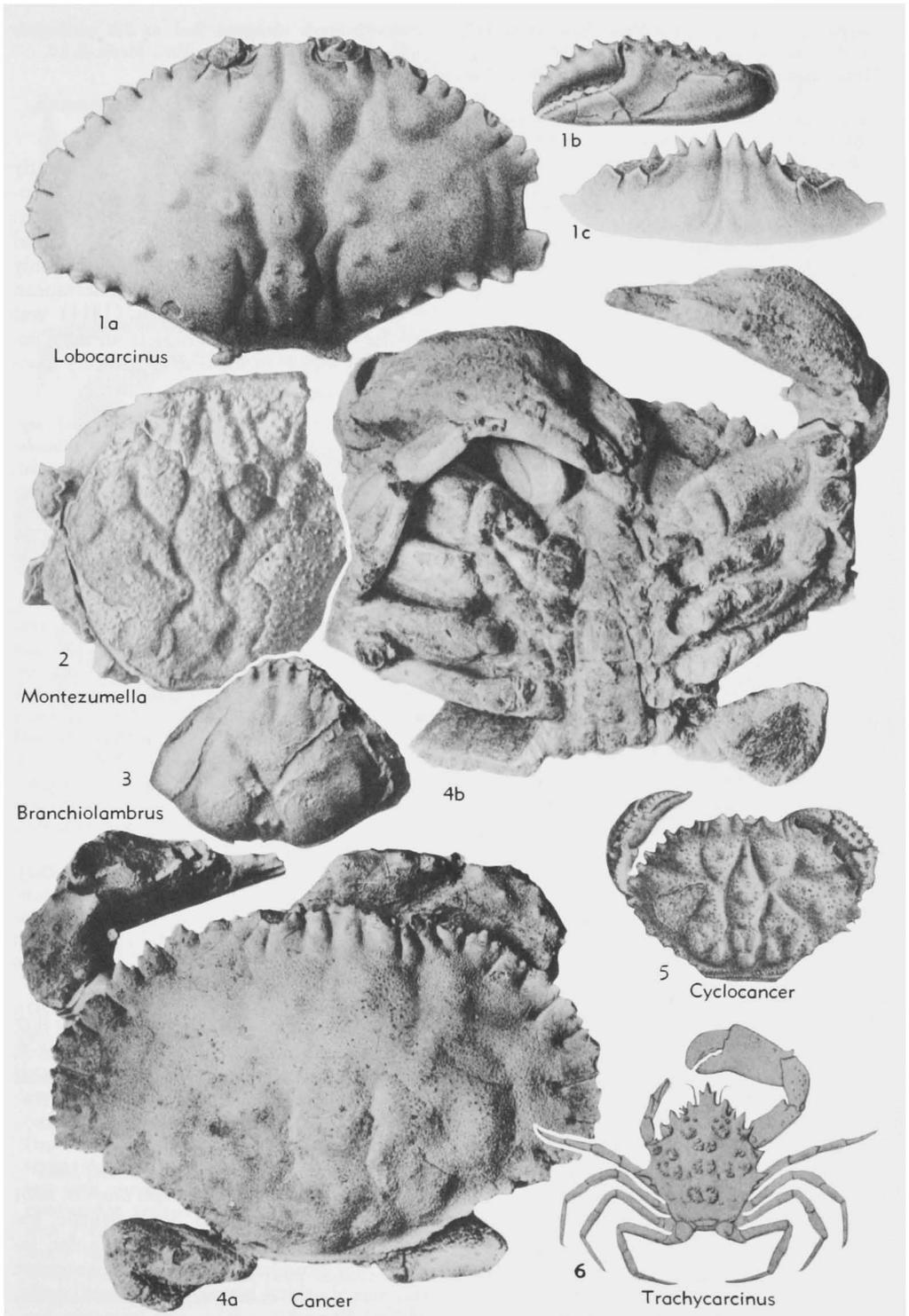


FIG. 318. Atelecyclidae (2,5-6); Cancridae (Cancrinae) (3-4), (Lobocarcininae) (1) (p. R508-R510).

ward. *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Cape Verde Is.—FIG. 317, 6. \**D. horrida* (LINNÉ), male,  $\times 1$  (232).

**Heterocrypta** STIMPSON, 1871 [\**Cryptopodia granulata* GIBBES, 1850; OD]. Carapace broadly triangular but not covering legs, with posteriorly divergent dorsal and ventral granular ridges. *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, Atl.-Medit.-IndoPac.-N.Am. (E. coast-W. coast).

**Mesorhoca** STIMPSON, 1871 [\**M. sexspinosa*; OD]. Carapace pentagonal, broader than long, posterior margin short, eyes very small, cheliped with very short fingers. *Oligo.*, W.Indies; *Pleist.*, N.Am., *Rec.*, N. Am. (E. coast-W. coast).—FIG. 317,3. *M. idae* RATHBUN, *Pleist.*, USA (Calif.); propodus of left cheliped,  $\times 1$  (238).

#### Subfamily EUMEDONINAE Miers, 1879

Carapace pentagonal or rhomboidal, front two- or four-lobed, first pereopods moderately long, branchial and cardiac regions not sharply separated. *Rec.*

**Eumedonus** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834 [\**E. niger*; OD]. Carapace pentagonal, rostrum large, projecting, bifid, antennules folded obliquely, basal segment of antennal stalk partly filling infra-orbital hiatus. *Rec.*, IndoPac.

#### Family UNCERTAIN

**Andorina** LÖRENTHEY, 1901 [\**A. elegans*; OD]. Carapace oval, granulate, frontal margin lobate, hepatic regions projecting, lateral and posterior margins convex. *Mio.*, Hung.—FIG. 317,1. \**A. elegans*;  $\times 2$  (184).

#### Section CANCRIDEA Latreille, 1803

[*nom. transl.* DANA, 1852 (*ex* Cancridae LATREILLE, 1802) [=Cancriformia GLAESSNER, 1929]

Carapace elongate to transversely oval, front narrow, mostly with median and lateral teeth, orbits with two supraorbital fissures; lateral margins dentate; gastric and cardiac regions not clearly separated; antennules infolded longitudinally or obliquely; male gonoducts opening on coxae. *Eoc.-Rec.*

#### Family CORYSTIDAE Samouelle, 1819

Carapace elongate, suboval, convex, without sharp lateral margin, front with two or three teeth, antennulae infolded longitudinally, antennae long. *Rec.*

**Corystes** LATREILLE, 1802 [\**Hippa dentata* FABRICIUS, 1793 (= \**Cancer cassivelaunus* PENNANT, 1777); OD]. Carapace convex, with convex, dentate, lateral margin, gastrocardiac regions marked,

male chelipeds elongate; 2nd to 5th pereopods with pointed short dactyls. *Rec.*, Medit.-E.Atl.

#### Family ATELECYCLIDAE Ortman, 1893

Carapace suboval to pentagonal, slightly elongate, front dentate, buccal frame elongate; antennulae infolded longitudinally. [Subfamilies Thiinae ALCOCK (1899) and Acanthocyclusinae ALCOCK (1899) are only Recent. The Atlantic and Mediterranean monotypic genus *Thia* LEACH (1814) was reported by RATHBUN (1945) from the Pliocene of Fiji, on insufficient evidence.] *Eoc.-Rec.*

**Atelecyclus** LEACH, 1814 [\**Cancer (Hippa) septemdentatus* MONTAGU, 1813 (= \**Cancer rotundatus* OLIVI, 1792); OD]. Carapace subcircular, lateral margins dentate, front with 3 teeth, gastrocardiac regions well marked, chelipeds strong, with longitudinal granulations externally on manus. ?*M. Eoc.*, W.Afr.; *Mio.-Pleist.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, Medit.-E. Atl.

?**Cyclocancer** BEURLEN, 1958 [\**C. tuberculatus*]. Carapace transversely oval, width moderate, front and orbits small, anterolateral and anterior part of posterolateral margins lobulate; concave posterolateral and straight posterior margins with granulate ridges; regions well marked, inflated, granulate. [Transitional between *Atelecyclus* and *Cancer*, therefore the position of *Cyclocancer* in the Atelecyclidae, assigned by BEURLEN, is questionable.] *U.Oligo.* or *L.Mio.*, Brazil; *Mio.*, Eu.—FIG. 318,5. *C. szontaghi* (LÖRENTHEY), *Mio.*, Hung.;  $\times 0.7$  (184).

**Montezumella** RATHBUN, 1930 [\**M. tubulata*; OD]. Carapace elongate to subcircular, anterolateral margins dentate, front with 2 or 4 teeth, orbit tubular. *Eoc.*, Mex.-USA (Calif.)-W.Indies-Egypt-Spain; *M.Tert.*, Panama.—FIG. 318,2. \**M. tubulata*, U.Eoc., USA-Mex.;  $\times 1$  (242).

**Trachycarcinus** FAXON, 1893 [\**T. corallinus*; OD]. Carapace pentagonal, convex, anterolateral margins long, dentate, front projecting, with 3 teeth, orbits large. *Mio.*, Japan; *Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, Gulf Mexico-Panama-IndoPac.—FIG. 318,6. \**T. corallinus*, *Rec.*;  $\times 0.7$  (243, after Faxon).

#### Family CANCRIDAE Latreille, 1803

[*nom. correct.* DANA, 1852 (*pro* Cancridae LATREILLE, 1803)]

Carapace broadly oval, front dentate, anterolateral margins dentate, antennulae infolded longitudinally or obliquely, antennae in internal orbital hiatus, with short flagella. *M.Eoc.-Rec.*

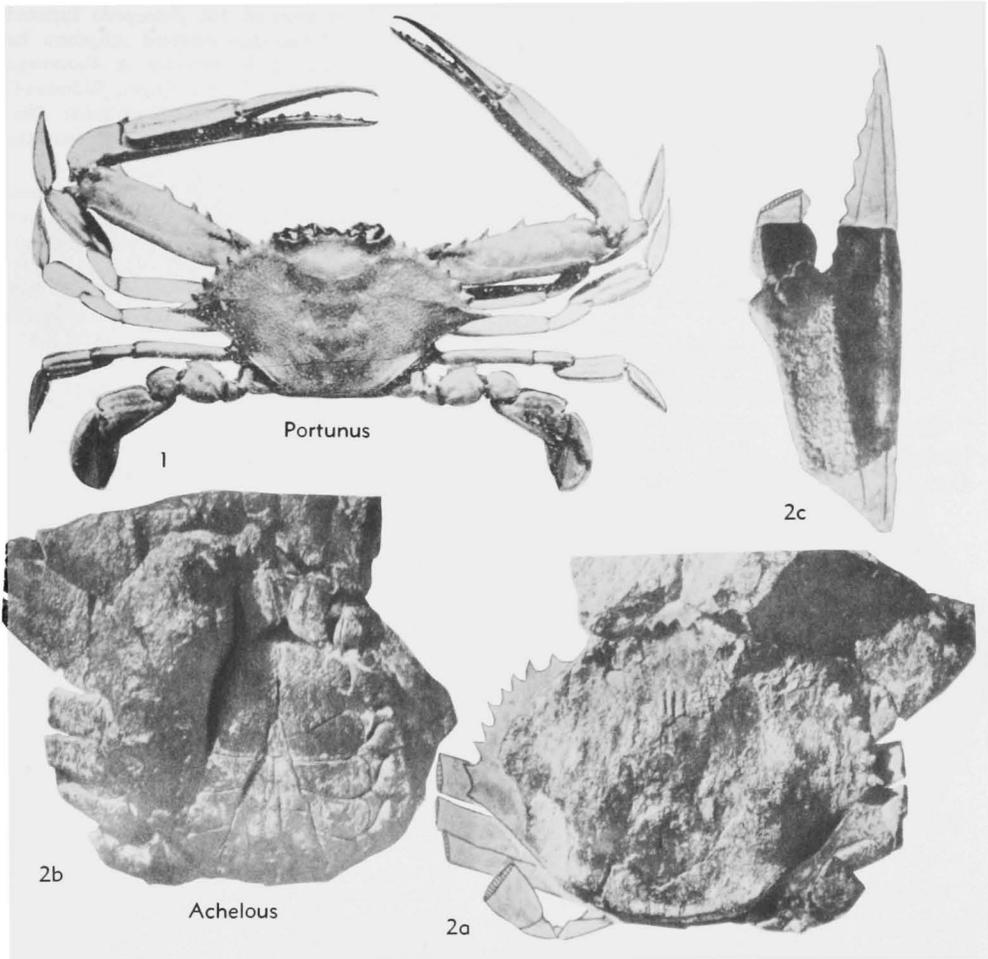


FIG. 319. Portunidae (Portuninae) (p. R510).

**Subfamily CANCRINAE Latreille, 1803**[*nom. transl.* ALCOCK, 1899 (*ex* Cancridae LATREILLE, 1803)]

Front with median and lateral teeth, lateral angles of carapace distinct, chelae stout. *Mio.-Rec.*

**Cancer** LINNÉ, 1758 [*\*C. pagurus*; SD LATREILLE, 1810] [= *Platycarcinus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834 (*obj.*); *Metacarcinus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1862 (*type*, *Cancer magister* DANA, 1852)]. Carapace very wide, finely granulate, anterolateral margins very long, curved, with about 10 denticulate lobes; gastroducardic regions marked; orbits small, deep, with 2 fissures; front narrow, with 3 teeth, epistome narrow, chelae subequal, with 5 longitudinal blunt ridges on their outer surfaces. *Mio.-Pleist.*, Eu.-N.Afr.-Burma-Japan-N.Am.; *Rec.*, cold and temperate seas.—FIG. 318,4. *C. deshayesi*

A. MILNE-EDWARDS, *Mio.*, Spain; 4*a,b*, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 0.7$  (297).

**Branchiolambrus** RATHBUN, 1909 [*\*B. altus*; OD]. Carapace rhomboidal, with widely divergent, straight, dentate anterolateral margins; posterolateral margins sinuous; branchial regions nearly touching medially. *Mio.*, USA (Calif.).—FIG. 318,3. *\*B. altus*; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 1.5$  (238).

**Parapirimela** VAN STRAELEN, 1937 [*\*P. angolensis*; OD]. Carapace wider than long, front with median and 2 lateral teeth, orbits large and deep, anterolateral margin with 4 teeth, regions well marked, chelae stout. *Mio.*, W.Afr.

**Subfamily LOBOCARCININAE Beurlen, 1930**[*nom. transl.* GLAESSNER, *herein* (*ex* Lobocarcinidae BEURLEN, 1930)]

Front with four to six teeth, carapace very wide, with lobulate and dentate anterolateral and dentate posterolateral margins, with oblique posterolateral projections, chelae elongate. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*

**Lobocarcinus** REUSS, 1857 [*\*Cancer paulinowurtembergensis* VON MEYER, 1847; OD]. Characters of subfamily. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, Egypt-Eu.-India.—FIG. 318, 1. *\*L. paulinowurtembergensis* (VON MEYER), Egypt; 1a, dorsal view,  $\times 0.7$ ; 1b, chela,  $\times 0.7$ ; 1c, fronto-orbital margin,  $\times 1$  (198).

## Section BRACHYRHYNCHA Borradaile, 1907

Carapace wide anteriorly, without projecting rostrum; orbits mostly complete. *Cret.-Rec.*

## Superfamily PORTUNOIDEA Rafinesque, 1815

[*nom. transl.* GLAESSNER, herein (ex Portunidae RAFINESQUE, 1815)] [=subtribe Portunoidea BEURLÉN, 1930]

Carapace flat, square or oval, with front narrow or wide, dentate or lobed; surface mostly with transverse ridges; chelae ridged; fifth pereopods flattened, commonly with oval dactylus. *U.Cret.-Rec.*

## Family PORTUNIDAE Rafinesque, 1815

[*nom. correct.* DANA, 1852 (pro family Portunidia RAFINESQUE, 1815)]

Carapace broad and flat, greatest width commonly marked by lateral spine; front dentate or lobate, orbits and eye stalks moderately large or elongate, anterolateral margin dentate; antennules infolded obliquely or transversely, fifth pereopods mostly flattened, with leaf-shaped dactylus. *Eoc.-Rec.*

### Subfamily PORTUNINAE Rafinesque, 1815

[*nom. transl.* ALCOCK, 1899 (ex Portunidae RAFINESQUE, 1815)]

Carapace broad, anterolateral margin with up to nine teeth, chelipeds very long, fifth pereopods flattened, paddle-shaped. *Eoc.-Rec.*

**Portunus** WEBER, 1795 [*\*Cancer pelagicus* LINNÉ, 1758; SD RATHBUN, 1926 (ICZN Opinion 394, v. 12, no. 17, p. 315-316, 1956)] [= *Lupa* LEACH, 1814 (obj.); *Neptunus* DE HAAN, 1833 (obj.)]. Carapace usually very broad, front with 3 to 6 teeth, anterolateral margin mostly with 9 teeth, basal antennal segment very short, chelipeds with dentate merus, carpus and propodus and costate

palms; all segments of 5th pereopods flattened. [The value of currently accepted subgenera has been questioned by STEPHENSON & CAMPBELL, 1959.] *Eoc.-Mio.*, Eu.-Egypt; *Oligo.*, W.Indies-C. Am.; *Mio.*, ?Brazil-E.Afr.-Java-India; *Plio.-Pleist.*, IndoPac.; *Rec.*, all warm and temperate seas.

**P. (Portunus)**. Carapace wide, anterolateral margin approximating arc of circle with center near posterior margin; lateral spine long, produced laterally. *Eoc.-Mio.*, Eu.-Egypt-W.Afr.; *Oligo.*, W.Indies-C.Am.; *L.Mio.*, ?Brazil-E.Afr.-Java; *Pleist.*, IndoPac.; *Rec.*, all warm and temperate seas.—FIG. 319, 1. *\*P. (P.) pelagicus* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*, S.Australia,  $\times 0.25$  (139).

**P. (Achelus)** DE HAAN, 1833 [*\*Portunus spinimanus* LATREILLE, 1819; OD]. Carapace relatively narrow, anterolateral margins approaching arc of circle with center near center of cardiac region; lateral tooth not much larger than others. [This subgenus is based on a Recent American species. Indo-Pacific species are distinguished by the antero-external angle of the merus of 3rd maxillipeds being strongly produced laterally and are now mostly placed in *Cycloachelus* WARD (1942). Fossil species from *Oligo.-Mio.* of Eu.-Iran require re-examination; others belong to *Scylla*.] *Oligo.*, W.Indies; *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, N. Am. coasts-Galapagos-?IndoPac.—FIG. 319, 2. *P. (Achelus) withersi* GLAESSNER, *Mio.*, Iran; 2a, b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 0.7$ ; 2c, right chela,  $\times 0.7$  (113).

**P. (Lupocycloporus)** ALCOCK, 1899; **P. (Monomia)** GISTEL, 1848 (= *Amphitrite* DE HAAN, 1833, non A. MUELLER, 1771); **P. (Xiphonectes)** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1873 (= *Hellenus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1879), are all *Rec.* subgenera not known as fossils.

**Callinectes** STIMPSON, 1860 [*\*C. sapidus* RATHBUN, 1896; SD RATHBUN, 1896]. Differs from *Portunus* in T-shaped male abdomen; front with 2 or 4 teeth; manus of cheliped with 5 external costae and no more than 2 spines. *Eoc.-Mio.*, Brazil-C. Am.-W.Indies; *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, C.Am.-W. Afr.-IndoPac.

**Charybdis** DE HAAN, 1833 [*\*Cancer feriatus* LINNÉ, 1758 (= *C. sexdentatus* HERBST, 1783); SD GLAESSNER, 1929] [= *Goniosoma* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1860 (obj.)]. Carapace hexagonal, with transverse granular ridges, front with about 6 lobes or teeth, anterolateral margins with 5 to 7 teeth, usually 6; chelipeds long and massive, spinose, propodus costate. *Oligo.*, Eu.; *Mio.*, Arabia; *Plio.-Rec.*, IndoPac.

**Colneptunus** LÖRENTHEY, 1929 [*\*Neptunus hungaricus* LÖRENTHEY, 1898; SD GLAESSNER, herein] [= *Allogoneplax* VAN STRAELEN, 1930 (*nom. nud.*), 1934 (type, *A. dallonii*); *Gonioneptunites* VIA, 1959 (obj.)]. Carapace subhexagonal, wider

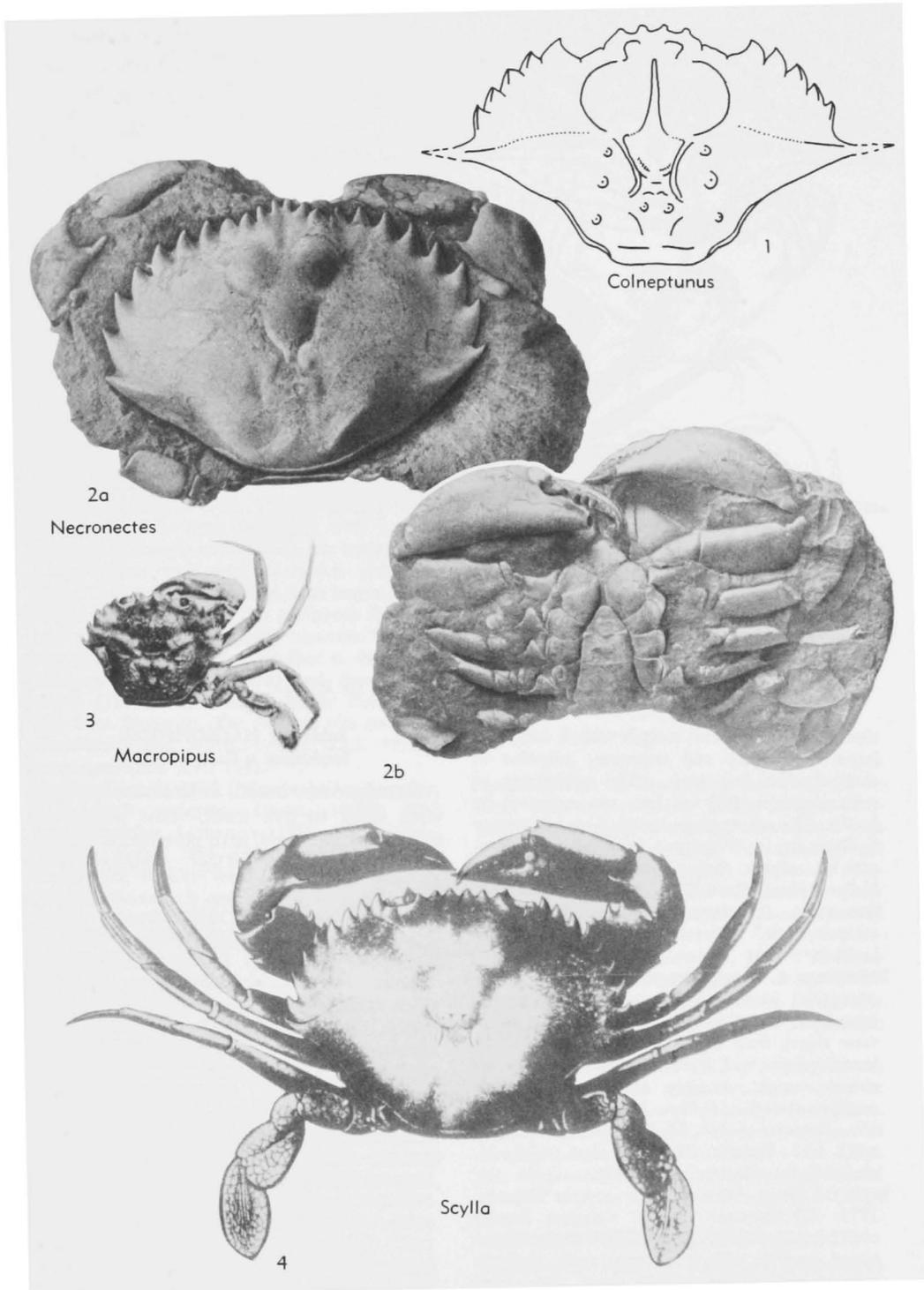


FIG. 320. Portunidae (Portuninae) (1-2,4), (Macropipinae) (3) (p. R510, R512).

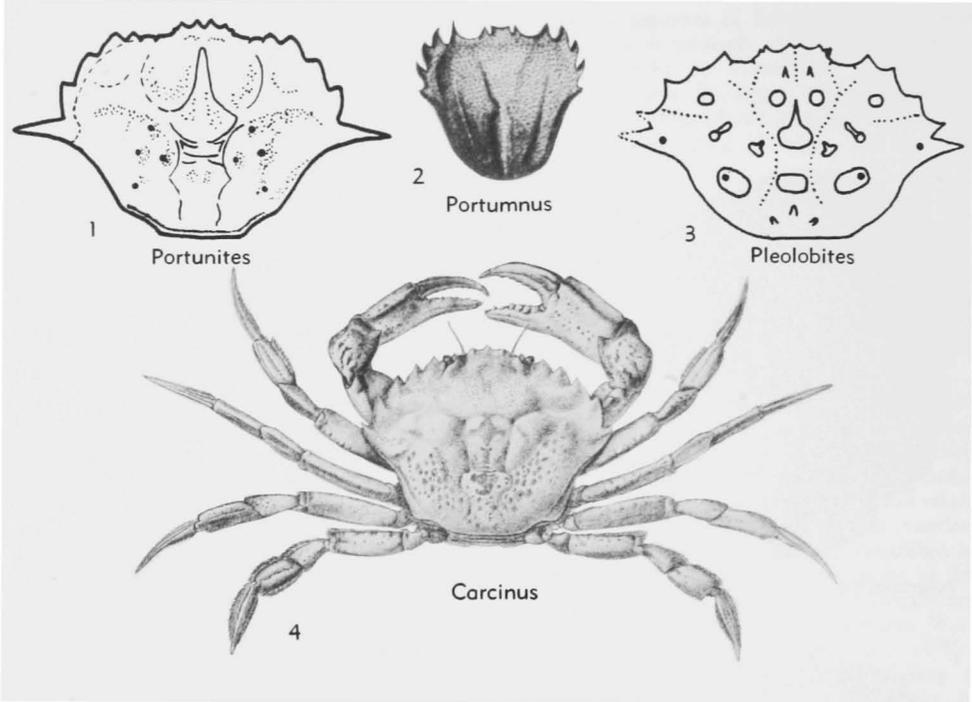


FIG. 321. Portunidae (Carcininae) (p. R513).

than long, anterolateral margin with 6 teeth, last larger than others and transverse; propodus of cheliped with few keels. [The adjustment of nomenclature carried out here was suggested by L. VIA. The other species included by LÖRENTHEY & BEURLEN in "*Neptunus (Colneptunus)*" cannot be reliably distinguished from *Portunus*.] *M.Eoc.*, Hung.-Spain-W.Afr.—FIG. 320,1. \**C. hungaricus* (LÖRENTHEY), Spain; diagram of carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (Glaessner, n, from photos by L. VIA).

**Necronectes** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1881 [\**N. vidalianus*; OD] [= *Gatunia* RATHBUN, 1919 (type, *G. proavita*)]. Carapace broadly oval, without transverse ridges, front dentate, orbits narrow, anterolateral margins with 8 teeth, posterolateral margins almost straight, strongly convergent; chelipeds massive, smooth. ?*U.Eoc.*, *M.Oligo.*, *Mio.*, Eu.; *Mio.*, Panama.—FIG. 320,2. *N. proavitus* (RATHBUN), *Mio.*, Panama; 2a, dorsal view,  $\times 0.5$ ; 2b, chelipeds, frontal view,  $\times 0.5$  (235).

**Scylla** DE HAAN, 1833 [\**Cancer serratus* FORSKÅL, 1775; SD RATHBUN, 1922]. Carapace broadly oval, almost smooth. Front with 4 teeth, anterolateral margins with 9 subequal teeth, chelipeds massive, with spines, without costae. *Eoc.*, Java-Eu.; *Oligo.*, Eu.-?W.Indies; *Mio.*, Eu.-Madag.-India; *Pleist.*, *Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 320,4. \**S. serrata* (FORSKÅL), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.5$  (198).

#### Subfamily MACROPIPINAE Stephenson & Campbell, 1960

Carapace not broad, anterolateral margin with three to five teeth, some pereiopods as long as chelipeds, fifth pereiopods paddle-shaped. *Oligo.-Rec.* [See Addendum, p. R627.]

**Macropipus** PRESTANDREA, 1833 [\**Portunus macropipus* PRESTANDREA, 1833; OD] [= *Portunus* FABRICIUS, 1798 (non WEBER, 1795)] [ICZN Opinion 394]; *Liocarcinus* STIMPSON & POURTALÉS, 1870 (type, *Portunus holsatus* FABRICIUS, 1798; OD)]. Carapace with transverse striations, front simple or 3-lobed, anterolateral margin with 5 teeth, chelae with 5 longitudinal costae on external surface of propodus. *Oligo.-Pleist.*, Eu.; *Mio.*, Celebes; *Rec.*, E.Atl.-Medit.-IndoPac.—FIG. 320, 3. *M. depurator* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.5$  (52).

**Ovalipes** RATHBUN, 1898 [\**Cancer ocellatus* HERBST, 1799; OD] [= *Platyonichus* LATREILLE, 1825 (non LATREILLE, 1818); *Anisopus* DE HAAN, 1833 (non MEIGEN, 1803); *Aenaeacancer* WARD, 1933 (type, *A. molleri*; OD)]. Carapace little broader than long, front with 3 or 4 teeth, anterolateral margins with 5 subequal teeth, chelipeds keeled, granulated and spinose, dactylus of 5th pereiopods oval. *Plio.-Pleist.*, N.Z.; *Rec.*, N.Am. (E. coast)-IndoPac.-N.Z.-Australia.

## Subfamily CARCININAE Macleay, 1838

Carapace not very broad, with four or five anterolateral teeth; basal segment of antenna fixed, elongate, in longitudinal position; chelae not much elongated; second to fifth pereopods similar, rather stout, fifth pereopods with lanceolate dactylus. *L. Eoc.-Rec.*

**Carcinus** LEACH, 1814 [*\*Cancer maenas* LINNÉ, 1758; OD] [= *Carcinides* RATHBUN, 1897 (type, *C. maenas*) (non *Carcinus* LATREILLE, 1796) (on official list, ICZN)]. Carapace hexagonal, broader than long, regions well defined, no transverse ridges; front 3-lobed; 1 supraorbital notch, 5 anterolateral teeth; chelipeds massive, slightly heterochelous; abdominal terga 3 to 5 fused. *Eoc.*, USA (Wash.); *Mio.-Plio.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, N.Am.(coasts)-S. Am.(coasts)-Eu.-S. Afr.-E. Asia-Australia-N. Z. —FIG. 321,4. *\*C. maenas* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.5$  (243).

?**Pleolobites** REMY, 1960 [*\*P. erinaceus*; OD]. Carapace broader than long, front with 4 teeth, anterolateral margin with 5 teeth, last most prominent; regions well marked, surface granulate; chelipeds slightly heterochelous, with longitudinally keeled propodus; 2nd to 5th pereopods flattened, said to be without "palette nataoire." [This monotypic genus is said to be close to the Recent *Bathynectes* STIMPSON (1871) and *Parathranites* MIERS (1886), but it seems hardly distinguishable from *Portunites*. The carapace also resembles *Xanthilites*.] *Eoc.*, W.Afr. —FIG. 321,3. *\*P. erinaceus*; carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (48).

**Portumnus** LEACH, 1814 [*\*Cancer latipes* PENNANT, 1777 (= *P. variegatus* LEACH, 1815); OD] [= *Platyonichus* LATREILLE, 1818 (obj.); *Platyonychus* VOIGT, 1836 (*nom. van.*)]. Carapace elongate or slightly wider than long, front 3-lobed, projecting, 5 anterolateral teeth, male abdomen narrow. *Mio.*, Hung.; *Rec.*, Eu.-Azores. —FIG. 321,2. *P. tricarinatus* LÖRENTHEY, *Mio.*, Hung.; carapace with incompletely preserved rostrum,  $\times 1$  (184).

**Portunites** BELL, 1858 [*\*P. incertus*; OD] [= *Leiochilus* REUSS, 1859 (type, *L. morrisi*)]. Carapace hexagonal, not much broader than long, front with 4 teeth, anterolateral margin with 4 or 5 teeth, last one longest, posterolateral margin straight or slightly concave; gastroducardiac regions well marked; arcuate ridge extending from lateral teeth to their sides; 5th pereopods not flattened. *Eoc.*, Eu.-N.Am.-N.Z.; *Oligo.*, N.Am.; *Mio.*, Japan-Chile. —FIG. 321,1. *P. grimaldifer* GLAESSNER, *Eoc.*, N.Z.; carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 0.7$  (118).

## Subfamily PSAMMOCARCININAE Beurlen, 1930

Carapace subhexagonal, with anterolateral teeth, last being greatly elongated and modified. *L.Eoc.-L.Oligo.*

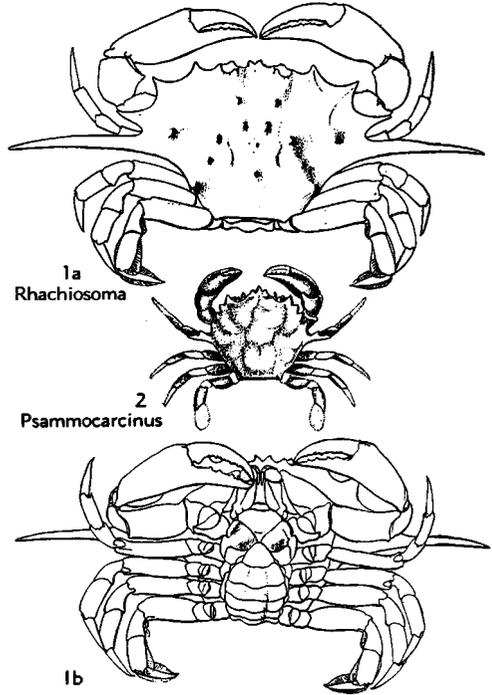


FIG. 322. Portunidae (Psammocarcininae) (p. R513).

**Psammocarcinus** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1860 [*\*Portunus hericarti* DESMAREST, 1822]. Carapace hexagonal, length equal to width, 5 anterolateral teeth including large lateral spine with accessory anterior denticle; 5th pereopods compressed. *Eoc.-L.Oligo.*, Eu. —FIG. 322,2. *\*P. hericarti* (DESMAREST), *Eoc.*, Fr.; carapace (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (196).

**Enoplnotus** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1860 [*\*E. armatus*; OD]. Carapace with greatly elongated lateral spines bearing sawlike denticles on anterior edge. *M.Eoc.*, N.Italy. —FIG. 323,2. *\*E. armatus*; dorsal,  $\times 1$  (196).

**Rhachiosoma** WOODWARD, 1871 [*\*R. bispinosum*; SD]. Carapace much wider than long, with 2 or 3 anterolateral and long, pointed, lateral spines, with or without accessory denticles; surface of carapace tuberculate. *L.Eoc.*, Eng. —FIG. 322,1. *\*R. bispinosum*, S.Eng.; 1a,b, dorsal and ventral views of carapace ( $\varnothing$ ) (reconstr.),  $\times 0.5$  (330).

## Subfamily PODOPHTHALMINAE Miers, 1886

Front very narrow, T-shaped, orbits very long, occupying entire anterior border of carapace. Chelipeds elongate. *Oligo.-Rec.*

**Podophthalmus** LAMARCK, 1801 [*\*P. spinosus*

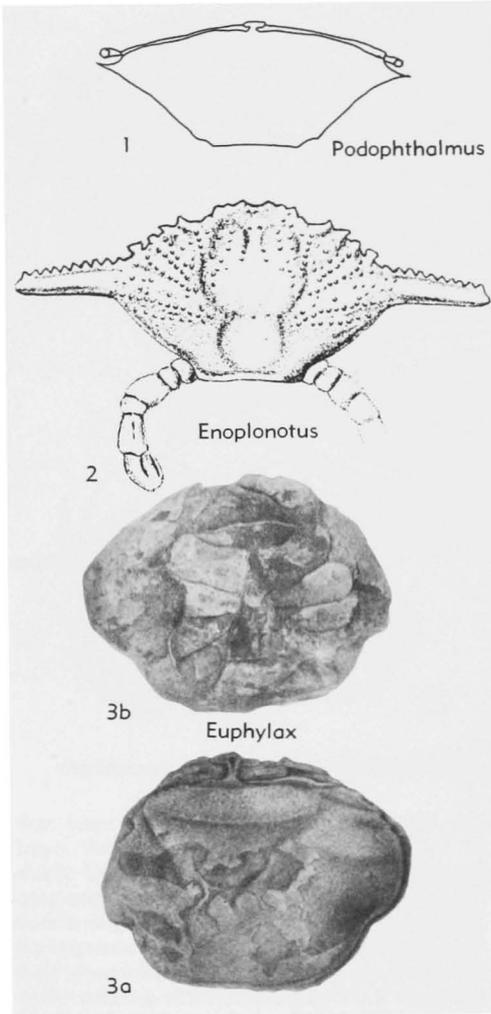


FIG 323. Portunidae (Psammocarininae) (2), (Podophthalminae) (1-3) (p. R513-R514).

(=*Portunus vigil* FABRICIUS, 1798; OD)]. Length of carapace less than 0.5 of width, with strong extraorbital spine directed outward and followed by smaller tooth on strongly converging lateral margins. *Pleist.-Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 323, 1. \**P. vigil* (FABRICIUS), *Rec.*, Australia; outline of carapace and eyestalks,  $\times 0.5$  (after 379a).

**Euphyllax** STIMPSON, 1860 [*E. dovii*; OD]. Carapace transversely oval, with short, dentate, anterolateral margins and longer, straight, posterolateral margins. *Oligo.*, W.Indies; *U.Oligo.-L.Mio.*, Brazil-Panama; *Rec.*, C.Am.—FIG. 323, 3. *E. callinectias* RATHBUN, *Mio.*, Panama; 3a, b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 0.7$  (235).

### Family CARCINERETIDAE Beurlen, 1930

Carapace square or transversely extended, flat to convex longitudinally, with straight lateral margins converging posteriorly, supraorbital margin long, ending in forward pointing spines; regions well marked by grooves and transverse ridges. *U.Cret.*

**Carcineretes** WITHERS, 1922 [*C. woolacotti*; OD]. Supraorbital margins with 2 fissures, front deflected, protogastric lobes with transverse ridge; sternal plate narrow. Chelipeds massive, heterochelous, with keels on upper and lower edges of propodus; 5th pereopods with flattened propodus and oval dactylus. *U.Cret.*, Jamaica.—FIG. 324, 3. \**C. woolacotti*; dorsal,  $\times 1.6$  (319).

**Cancrixantho** VAN STRAELEN, 1934 [*C. pyrenaicus*; OD] [= *Cancrixantho* VAN STRAELEN, 1930 (*nom. nud.*)]. Carapace rectangular, wider than long; front very narrow, spiniform; orbits and eye stalks very long; supraorbital margin divided into 3 lobes; proto- and mesogastric regions large, clearly marked; transverse ridges on both and also on epi-, meso-, and metabranchial regions, former 2 ridges directed posterolaterally on either side; differing from *Carcineretes* in narrow front and distinct mesogastric region, from *Lithophylax* in supraorbital lobes and smoother anterolateral carapace surface. *U.Cret.(Campan.)*, Spain.—FIG. 325, 1. \**C. pyrenaicus*; carapace and eye stalks,  $\times 2.5$  (Via in 17).

?**Lithophylax** A. MILNE-EDWARDS & BROCCHI, 1879 [*L. trigeri*; OD] [= *Petrocarcinus* GUILLIER, 1886 (*obj.*)]. Carapace subhexagonal, width almost twice length, with transverse ridges on protogastric, cardiac and mesobranchial regions; front very narrow, orbits very long, sternal plate subcircular, chelae long and keeled; pereopods long and strong. [VAN STRAELEN (1936) proposed a monotypic family Lithophylacidae but on present evidence the only distinctive character of *Lithophylax* are its wide carapace and narrow front, comparable with the distinction of Podophthalminae among Portunidae.] *U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Fr.

**Ophthalmoplax** RATHBUN, 1935 [*O. stephensoni*; OD]. Carapace square, front about 0.25 of anterior margin, with median fissure, orbits long, with supraorbital fissure and prominent extraorbital spine; few lateral spines; dorsal surface with transverse ridges and tubercles; chelipeds with spinous keels; 5th pereopods with flat and wide propodus and dactylus (portunoid). *U.Cret.(Maastricht.)*, USA(Gulf Coast)-Brazil.—FIG. 324, 1. \**O. stephensoni*, USA(Tex.); carapace,  $\times 0.4$  (284).

**Woodbinax** STENZEL, 1953 [*W. texanus*; OD]. Front with 4 teeth, equal in width to orbits;

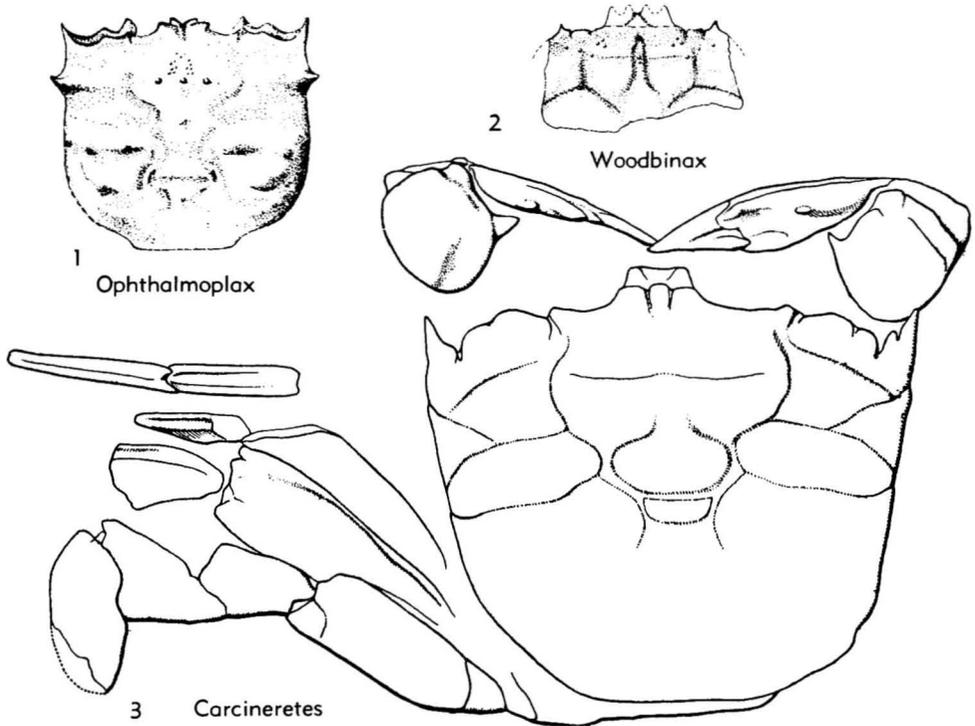


FIG. 324. Carcineretidae (p. R514-R515).

regions well marked, protogastric region with transverse ridge. *U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, USA(Tex.). —FIG. 324,2. \**W. texanus*; anteromedian part of carapace,  $\times 1.2$  (284).

**Superfamily XANTHOIDEA**  
**Dana, 1851**

[*nom. transl.* BEURLEN, 1930 (*ex* Xanthidae DANA, 1851)]

Carapace transversely oval or square; front wide, notched; orbits well developed, margin commonly dentate; antennules in-folded obliquely or transversely; antennal flagella short; second to fifth pereiopods ambulatory, male gonoducts opening on coxae or sternum. *U.Cret.-Rec.*

**Family XANTHIDAE Dana, 1851**

Carapace almost invariably broader than long, transversely oval, hexagonal, subrec-tangular, rarely subcircular, anterior mar-gin of buccal frame not covered by third maxillipeds; male genital openings coxal. [Many authors have attempted to divide this large family into subfamilies, most

recently BALSS (1957), who also placed in them some fossil genera, following BEURLEN (1930). It is generally recognized that definitions of these subfamilies are not sat-isfactory, particularly for the placing of ex-tinct genera on which further studies are required.] *U.Cret.-Rec.*

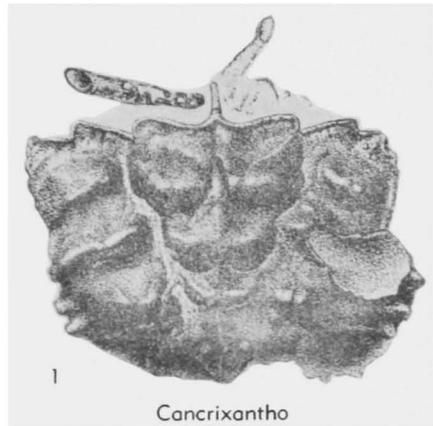


FIG. 325. Carcineretidae (p. R514).

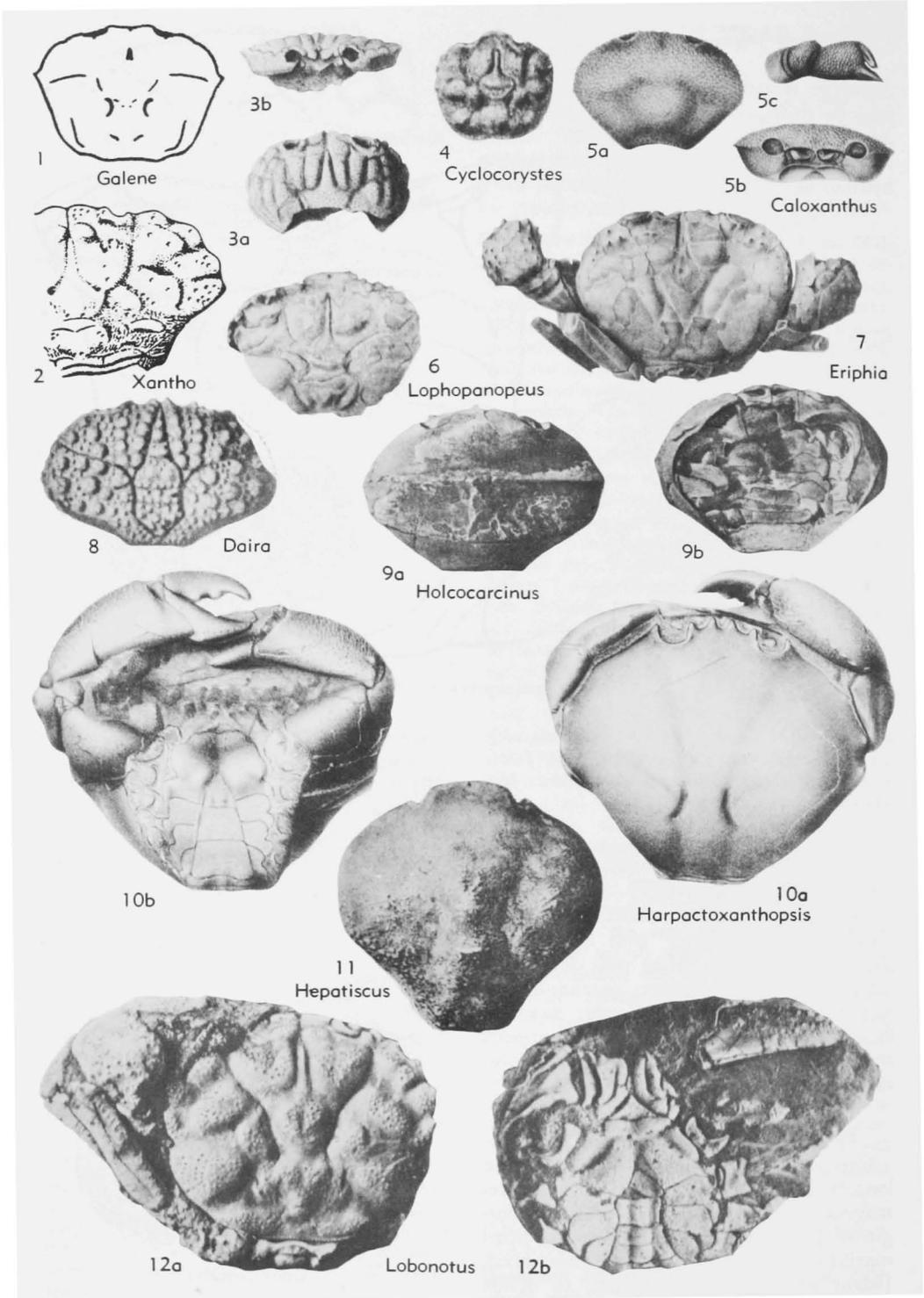


FIG. 326. Xanthidae (p. R517-R518, R520).

- Xantho** LEACH, 1804 [*\*Cancer incisus* (= *C. floridus* MONTAGU, 1808); OD]. Carapace broad, moderately convex anteriorly, flat posteriorly, regions well defined, anterolateral margin lobed or dentate, posterolateral margin not strongly concave, fronto-orbital width not more than 0.5 of carapace width; male abdomen with 2nd to 5th somites fused. *Mio.-Pleist.*, Eu.-Fiji; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Medit.-E.Atl.—FIG. 326,2. *X. impressus* (LAMARCK), *Rec.*; right half of carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (15).
- Actaea** DE HAAN, 1833 [*\*Cancer (Actaea) granulatus* (non *C. granulatus* LINNÉ, 1758) (= *\*C. savignyi* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834); SD RATHBUN, 1922]. Carapace convex, transversely oval, regions well marked, granulate, anterolateral margin usually shallowly 4-lobed, posterolateral margin usually concave, chelipeds isochelous. ?*Pleist.*, Iran; *Rec.*, cosmop. in warm seas.—FIG. 326,3. *A. persica* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, ?*Pleist.*, Iran; 3*a,b*, dorsal, frontal,  $\times 0.7$  (198).
- Atergatis** DE HAAN, 1833 [*\*Cancer integerrimus* LAMARCK, 1818]. Carapace wider than long, smooth, with smooth marginal ridge; orbits small, front wide. *Oligo.*, Fr.; *Plio.-Rec.*, IndoPac.
- Caloxanthus** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1864 [*\*C. formosus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1863; OD] [= *Carpiliopsis* FISCHER-BENZON, 1866 (type, *C. ornata*); *Creticarcinus* WITHERS, 1928 (type, *C. purleyensis*)]. Carapace wide, convex, anterior margin entire, smoothly convex; front wide, steeply sloping, straight; orbits rounded, without supra-orbital fissures, lateral angles rounded, entire surface of carapace and chelipeds granulated. *U.Cret.* (*Cenoman.-Santon.*), Fr.-Eng.; *Paleoc.* (*Dan.*), Denm.—FIG. 326,5. *\*C. formosus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, *Cenoman.*, Fr.; 5*a,b*, dorsal, frontal,  $\times 2$ ; 5*c*, cheliped,  $\times 2$  (198).
- Carpilius** DESMAREST, 1823 [*\*Cancer maculatus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Carapace broadly oval, convex, smooth, anterolateral margin entire, ending in lateral blunt tooth; front 4-lobed, chelipeds massive, heterochelous, with large blunt tooth on fixed finger of larger chela. *Mio.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.
- Carpilodes** DANA, 1851 [*\*C. tristis* DANA, 1852; SD]. Carapace very broad, convex, regions well marked; anterolateral margins with 4 rounded lobes; front deflexed, slightly notched medially; orbits small; posterior margin narrow; chelipeds equal or subequal; male abdominal somites 3 to 5 fused. *Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-C.Am. (E. coast-W. coast).
- Chlinocephalus** RISTORI, 1886 [*\*C. demissifrons*; OD]. Carapace slightly wider than long, front wide, projecting, orbits large, placed at anterolateral angles, main regions delimited by shallow grooves; with 2 parallel transverse ridges, one across middle and other across cardiac region; male abdomen with 7 somites. *Plio.*, Italy.
- Chlorodiella** RATHBUN, 1897 [*nom. subst. pro Chlorodius* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834 (*nom. van.*) (non *Chlorodius* LEACH in DESMAREST, 1823)] (non *Chlorodius* RUEPPEL, 1830; nec AGASSIZ, 1846) [*\*Cancer niger* FORSKÅL, 1775; OD]. Carapace depressed, hexagonal, regions faintly or not demarcated; front broad, anterolateral margin 4-lobed; chelae heterochelous, finger tips spooned. *Mio.*, Java-Fiji; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-W.Indies.
- Cyclocorystes** BELL, 1858 [*\*C. pulchellus*] [= *Necrozisus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1863 (type, *N. bow-erbankii*)]. Carapace small, subcircular, front projecting, horizontal, wide, wavy; orbits round, without fissures; anterolateral margin with few small teeth; regions well marked, granulate. *L. Eoc.*, Eng.—FIG. 326,4. *\*C. pulchellus*; carapace,  $\times 1$  (19).
- Cycloxanthops** RATHBUN, 1897 [*nom. subst. pro Cycloxanthus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1863 (non H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1850)] [*\*Xantho sexdecimdentatus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS & LUCAS, 1844; OD]. Carapace ovoid, front horizontal, prominent, medially notched; orbits small; anterolateral borders long, curved, with denticulation extending far backward; chelipeds moderately heterochelous, fingers pointed. *Plio.*, Fiji; *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-N.Am. (W. coast).
- Daira** DE HAAN, 1833 [*\*Cancer perlatus* HERBST, 1790; OD] [= *Phymatocarcinus* REUSS, 1871 (type, *P. speciosus*)]. Carapace broad, convex, regions well delimited and subdivided; anterolateral margins strongly arched, crenulated; posterolateral margins concave, short; front deflexed, 2-lobed; orbital margin thickened, chelae heterochelous, finger tips blunt, hollowed. *U.Eoc.-Mio.*, Eu., *Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-C.Am. (W. coast).—FIG. 326,8. *D. speciosa* (REUSS), *Mio.*, Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).
- Eriphia** LATREILLE, 1817 [*\*Cancer spinifrons* HERBST, 1785 (= *\*Cancer verrucosus* FORSKÅL, 1775); SD H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837]. Carapace subquadrilateral, not highly convex, only gastric region well defined; lateral margins convex, fronto-orbital margin wide, front deflexed, in contact with infraorbital lobe, closing orbit; chelipeds massive, heterochelous. Male abdomen with 7 somites. *Oligo.-Pleist.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Medit.-Atl.-C. Am. (W. coast)-S. Am. (W. coast).—FIG. 326,7. *E. cocchii* RISTORI, *Plio.*, Italy;  $\times 0.3$  (283).
- Etisus** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834 [*\*Cancer dentatus* HERBST, 1785; SD GLAESSNER, 1929] [= *Etisus* LEACH in DESMAREST, 1825 (*nom. nud.*); *Etisodes* DANA, 1852 (type, *E. frontalis*)]. Carapace broad, regions moderately well marked, anterolateral margins with 4 to 8 lobes or spines, antennules folded obliquely, antennal base fused with front, orbit closed, chelae heterochelous with spoon-shaped ends of fingers; male abdominal somites 3 to 5 fused. ?*U.Eoc.*, Fr.; *Plio.-Rec.*, IndoPac.
- Eumorphactaea** BITTNER, 1875 [*\*E. scissifrons*; OD]. Carapace rounded, slightly wider than

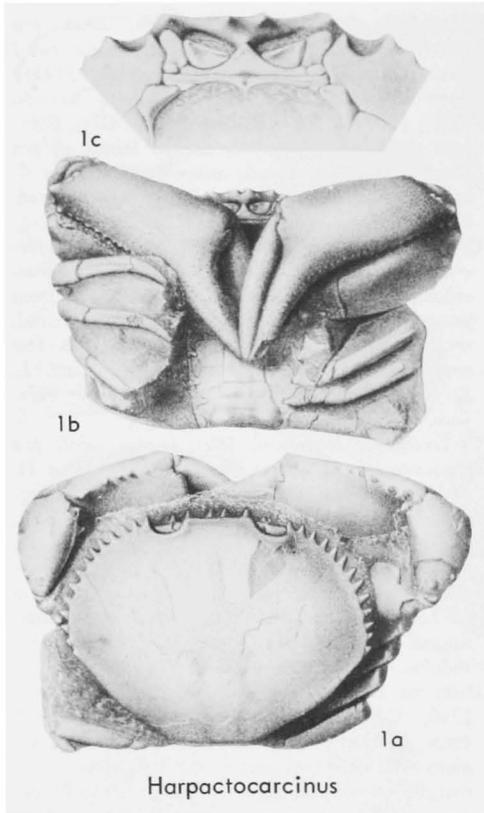


FIG. 327. Xanthidae (p. R518).

long, convex, front deflected, wide, deeply incised medially, granulated; orbits 0.5 width of front; anterolateral margin with 4 blunt lobes; mesogastric lobe strong. *L.Tert.*, S.Eu.(Italy-Fr.).

**Eurytium** STIMPSON, 1859 [*\*Cancer limosa* SAY, 1818; OD]. Carapace very broad, convex, regions slightly marked; anterolateral margins with 5 short teeth, 1st and 2nd fused; front deflexed, almost 0.3 width of carapace; chelipeds massive. *Pleist.*, Panama; *Rec.*, N.Am.(E.coast-W.coast).

**Galene** DE HAAN, 1833 [*\*Cancer bispinosus* HERBST, 1783; OD] [= *Podopilumnus* M'COY, 1849 (type, *P. fitonii*, = *Gecarcinus trispinosus* DESMAREST, 1822)]. Carapace subquadrate, wider than long, smooth, with branchiocardiac grooves; front sloping, medially grooved, with 4 lobes, anterolateral margins with 2 lobes or teeth, branchial regions posteriorly inflated and ridged longitudinally; chela robust. *Mio.*, Formosa-N.Z.; *Plio.*, E.Indies; *Pleist.-Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 326, 1. *G. proavita* GLAESSNER, *Mio.*, N.Z.; carapace (with damaged front),  $\times 0.7$  (118).

**Harpactocarcinus** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1862 [*\*Cancer punctulatus* DESMAREST, 1822; SD RATHBUN,

1928]. Carapace wider than long, with rounded outline, flatly convex dorsally, punctate; front and anterolateral margins denticulate; regions not marked, chelae heterochelous, propodus cylindrical, dorsal margin denticulate. *L.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, Eu.-N. Am.(Tex.)-E.Afr.—FIG. 327, 1. *\*H. punctulatus* (DESMAREST), *Eoc.*, Italy; 1a,b, dorsal and ventral views of adult male,  $\times 0.5$ ; 1c, fronto-orbital region, ventral view,  $\times 0.8$  (198).

**Harpactoxanthopsis** VIA, 1959 [*\*Cancer quadrilobatus* DESMAREST, 1822; OD]. Carapace convex, front with 4 teeth, anterolateral margins with about 5 blunt teeth, surface with regions more or less faint, branchiocardiac grooves deep; chelae heterochelous, massive. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, ?*M.Oligo.*, Eu.—FIG. 326, 10. *\*H. quadrilobatus* (DESMAREST), *Eoc.*, Fr.; 10a,b, dorsal and ventral views of male,  $\times 0.5$  (198).

**Hepaticus** BITTNER, 1875 [*\*H. neumayri*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace with wide, slightly bilobed front, lateral margins convex to level of cardiac region, then concave to straight, narrow, posterior margin; main regions separated by shallow grooves, convex or tuberculate; chelipeds short, stout, granulate. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, Eu.-Egypt-Java.—FIG. 326, 11. *\*H. neumayri*, *M.Eoc.*, Italy;  $\times 2$  (355).

**Heteractaea** LOCKINGTON, 1877 [*\*H. pilosa* (= *Pilumnus lunatus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS & LUCAS, 1843); OD]. Carapace as in *Xantho*, fronto-orbital borders thick; carpus of 2nd to 5th pereopods with raised crests and spines. *Plio.*, Panama; *Rec.*, C.Am.(coasts).

**Heteropanope** STIMPSON, 1858 [*\*H. glabra*; SD BALSS, 1933]. Carapace moderately broad, flattish, regions hardly marked; anterolateral margins short, with 4 lobes or teeth, posterior margin rather long; front bilobed; chelae heterochelous, with short, pointed fingers. ?*Mio.*, Iran; *Rec.*, IndoPac.

**Holcocarcinus** WITHERS, 1924 [*\*H. sulcatus*; OD]. Carapace transversely oval, smooth but with 2 prominent subparallel transverse ridges across middle; front notched medially; posterior margin short, straight. *U.Eoc.*, W.Afr.—FIG. 326, 9. *\*H. sulcatus*, Nigeria; 9a,b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 2$  (320).

**Lipaesthusius** RATHBUN, 1898 [*\*L. leeanus*; OD]. Anterior portion of carapace very broad, posterior fourth very narrow; anterolateral margin arcuate, front deflexed, medially grooved; orbits small, sub-circular; chelipeds concave on inner side; surface granulate. ?*Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, W.Pac.

**Lobonotus** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1864 [*\*L. sculptus*; OD] [= *Archaeopilumnus* RATHBUN, 1919 (type, *A. caelatus*)]. Carapace flat, as wide as long, regions well marked, anterolateral margins short, denticulate, orbits large, with 2 supra-orbital fissures, antennal base joined to front, antennular fossa transversely elongate. ?*Eoc.*,

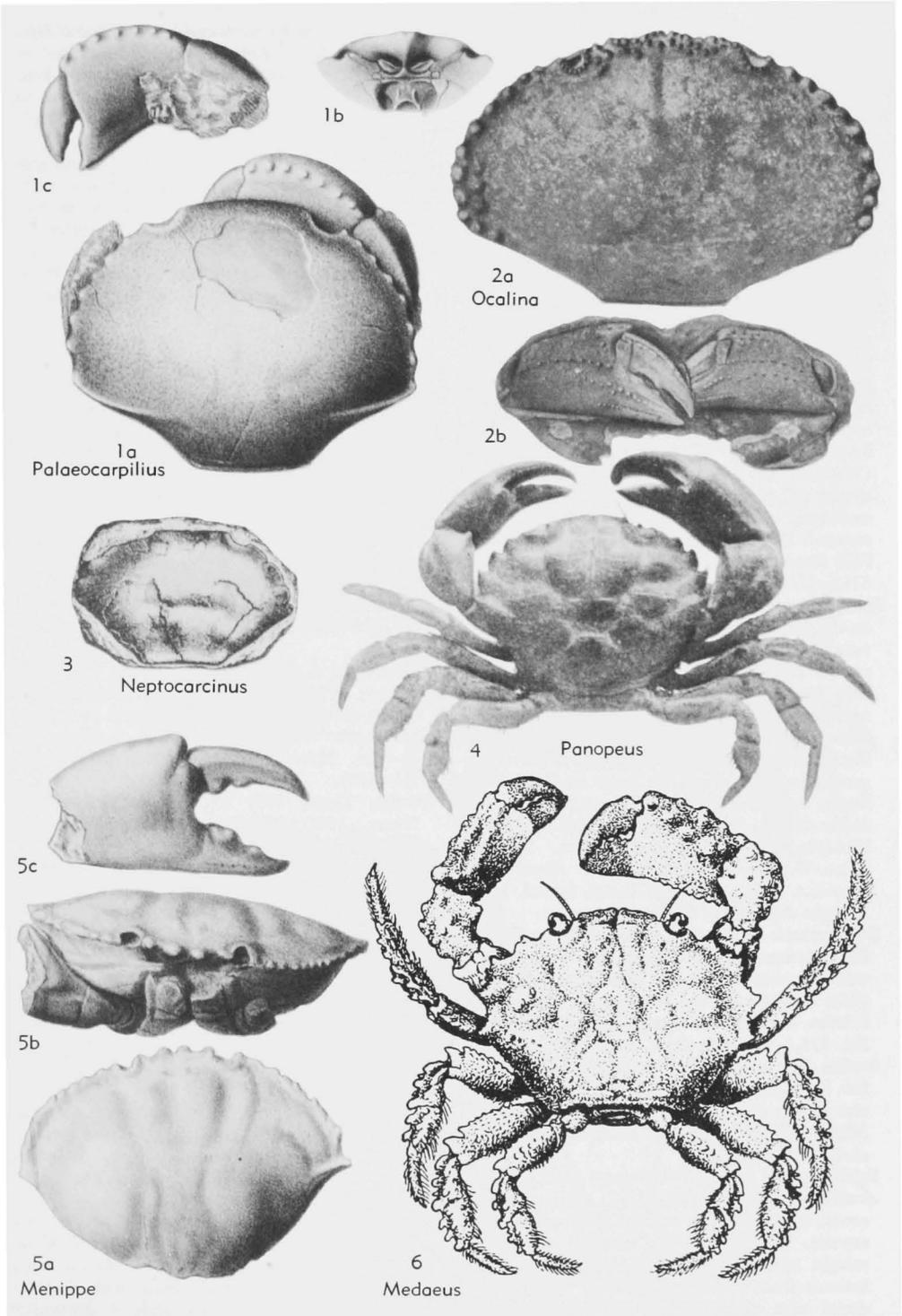


FIG. 328. Xanthidae (p. R520).

- Borneo; *M.Eoc.*, USA (Tex.); *U.Eoc.*, Mex.; *Oligo.*, W. Indies.—FIG. 326, 12. *L. mexicanus* RATHBUN, *U.Eoc.*, Mex.; 12*a, b*, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 1$  (242).
- Lophopanopeus** RATHBUN, 1898 [*\*Xantho bella* STIMPSON, 1860; OD]. Carapace hexagonal, front short, divided into 2 sinuous lobes, postorbital tooth small, followed by 3 prominent teeth; chelae short. *Oligo.*, Alaska; *Pleist.*, USA (Calif.), *Rec.*, N. Am. (W. coast)—W. Indies—W. Afr.—FIG. 326, 6. *L. olearis* RATHBUN, *Oligo.*, Alaska;  $\times 1$  (238).
- Medaeus** DANA, 1851 [*\*M. ornatus* DANA, 1852; SM DANA, 1852]. Carapace not very broad, hexagonal, regions well defined and areolated; anterolateral border with 4 thick tuberculiform teeth; front prominent, notched, chelae covered with nodules; fingers pointed. [A specimen from the upper Pliocene of Java was assigned by VAN STRAELEN (1938) to "*Lophoxanthus scaberrimus* (WALKER, 1887)," following ALCOCK, 1896, a species not now placed in this American Recent monotypic genus but in the synonymy of *M. reynaudi* H. MILNE-EDWARDS.] *Mio.*, Java; *Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, IndoPac.—Medit.—W. Afr.—W. Pac.—FIG. 328, 6. *M. lobipes* RATHBUN, *Rec.*;  $\times 1.5$  (243).
- Menippe** DE HAAN, 1833 [*\*Cancer rumphii* FABRICIUS, 1798; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace transversely oval, moderately convex longitudinally; regions little defined; anterolateral margins long, with broad teeth; posterior margin short; front narrow, bilobed; orbits small; antennules infolded transversely; antennal base not reaching front, flagellum in orbital hiatus; chelipeds massive, fingers stout, with large flat basal tooth on fixed finger, male abdomen broad, segments not fused. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, Eu.—W. Afr.; *Oligo.*, N.Z.; *U.Mio.*, USA (Fla.)—Fiji; *Pleist.*, N. Am.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.—C. Am.—W. Afr.—FIG. 328, 5. *M. chauvini* DE BERVILLE, *M.Eoc.*, Fr.; 5*a, b*, dorsal, frontal,  $\times 0.5$ ; 5*c*, right chela,  $\times 0.5$  (198).
- Neptocarcinus** LÖRENTHEY, 1898 [*\*N. millenaris*; OD]. Carapace small, broader than long, smooth, with gastrocardiac region faintly marked; front wide, medially sulcate; anterolateral margin with 4 lobes, last most prominent. *U.Eoc.*, Hung.—FIG. 328, 3. *\*N. millenaris*;  $\times 0.7$  (184).
- Ocalina** RATHBUN, 1929 [*\*O. floridana*; OD]. Differs from *Phlyctenodes* in lobate front and irregular surface tubercles. *U.Eoc.*, USA (Fla.).—FIG. 328, 2. *\*O. floridana*; 2*a*, carapace,  $\times 0.5$ ; 2*b*, chelae,  $\times 0.3$  (241).
- Palaeocarpius** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1862 [*\*Cancer macrochelus* DESMAREST, 1822; SD]. Carapace ovoid, smooth, highly convex, front wide, subtriangular, deflected, orbits narrow, anterolateral margin tuberculate, antennal base long, inserted between front and suborbital lobe, chelae plump, dorsal edge tuberculate. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.-Oligo.-?L. Mio.*, Eu.; *M.Eoc.*, Somaliland—India; *U.Eoc.*, Egypt; *L.Mio.*, Zanzibar—India—Java—Saipan.—FIG. 328, 1. *\*P. macrochelus* (DESMAREST), *Eoc.*, Italy; 1*a*, dorsal view,  $\times 0.7$ ; 1*b*, ventral view of frontal region,  $\times 0.7$ ; 1*c*, internal view of right cheliped,  $\times 0.7$  (198).
- Palaeoxanthopsis** BEURLEN, 1958 [*\*Xanthopsis cretacea* RATHBUN, 1902; OD]. Carapace wider than long; anterolateral margin arcuate, dentate, ending in long spines directed obliquely backward; front notched, supraorbital margins with 2 fissures; surface with rounded and granulated bosses on major regions; chelae carinate and spinose. *U.Cret. (Maastricht.)*, Brazil.—FIG. 329, 5. *\*P. cretacea*; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 1$  (32).
- Panopeus** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834 [*\*P. herbstii*; SD FOWLER, 1912]. Carapace moderately wide, moderately convex, regions distinct, marked by raised transverse lines on anterior half; anterolateral margins with 5 teeth, shorter than posterolateral; front 0.2 to 0.3 width of carapace, laminar, notched medially; orbital margin with 2 fissures; chelipeds heterochelous, fingers pointed, dactylus of larger chela with large basal tooth; male abdomen 5-segmented. *Paleoc. (Dan.)-Eoc.*, Eu.—USA (N.J.); *?Plio.*, Fiji; *Oligo.*, *Pleist.*, W. Indies—Panama; *Rec.*, N. Am. (E. coast—W. coast)—W. Afr.—Pac.—FIG. 328, 4. *\*P. herbstii*, *Rec.*;  $\times 1$  (243).
- Phlyctenodes** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1862 [*\*P. tuberculatus*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace with convex surface with tubercles arranged in more or less regular rows. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, *L.Oligo.*, Eu.—FIG. 329, 4. *\*P. tuberculatus*; L. Tert., Fr.;  $\times 1$  (198).
- Pilodius** DANA, 1852 [*\*Chlorodius pilumnoides* WHITE, 1847; SD FOREST & GUINOT, 1961]. [= *Chlorodopsis* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1873 (type, *C. melanochirus*)]. Differs from *Chlorodiella* in its well-defined regions and areoles and granulation of carapace; basal joint of antennae extending between front and suborbital tooth, its outer angle projecting into orbit. *?Mio.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, IndoPac.
- Pilumnus** LEACH, 1815 [*\*Cancer hirtellus* LINNÉ, 1761; OD]. Carapace transversely oval, not much broader than long, anterolateral border with spini-form teeth; front 1.3 or more of width of carapace, bilobed; orbital borders with notches; antennules folded transversely; chelipeds and legs stout, chelae tuberculate, fingers short and pointed; male abdomen 7-segmented. *Oligo.*, W. Indies; *Mio.*, *Pleist.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 329, 3. *P. sayi* RATHBUN, *Rec.*;  $\times 1$  (243).
- Pseudocarcinus** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834 [*\*Cancer gigas* LAMARCK, 1818; SD MIERS, 1886]. Carapace up to 50 cm. wide and nearly 30 cm. long, transversely oval, inflated, front with 4 short teeth, anterolateral margins with 4 denticulate

lobes, chelipeds massive, strongly heterochelous in males, with long, curved strongly dentate fingers. *Mio.-Plio.*, Australia-N.Z.; *Rec.*, S.Australia. *Simonella* VINASSA DE REGNY, 1897 [*\*S. quiri-*

*censis*; OD]. Carapace oval, slightly wider than long, flat and smooth; front short, wide; anterolateral margins with single tooth; lateral margins convex, posterior margin wide; sternal plate wide;

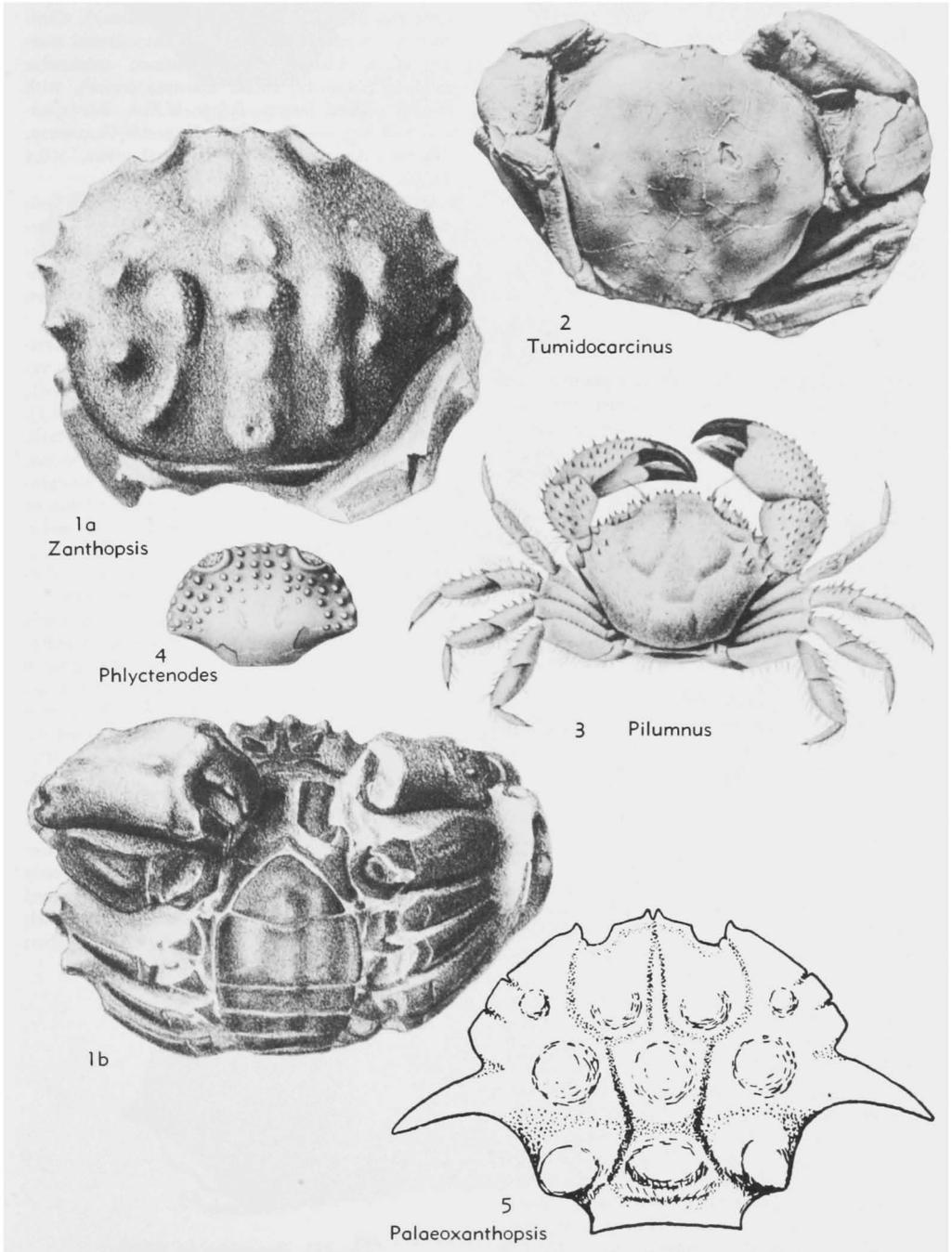


FIG. 329. Xanthidae (p. R520-R522).

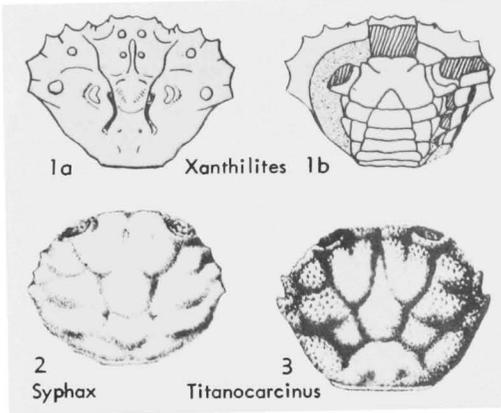


FIG. 330. Xanthidae (p. R522).

male abdomen triangular, narrowly pointed; right cheliped large, with long dactylus; pereopods long, compressed. Differs from *Chlinocephalus* in flat smooth carapace, shape of sternum, and abdomen, from Recent *Quadrella* in shorter anterolateral margins and front. *Plio.*, Italy.

**Syphax** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1863 [*\*S. crassus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1864; OD]. Carapace ovoid, front wide, orbits small, anterolateral margins with 4 blunt teeth, regions distinct, surface smooth. *L.Tert.*, S.Fr.—FIG. 330,2. *\*S. crassus* (MILNE-EDWARDS); carapace,  $\times 1.3$  (198).

**Thelecarcinus** BÖHM, 1891 [*\*T. gümbeli*; OD]. *U. Cret. (Senon.)*, S.Ger.

**Titanocarcinus** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1863 [*\*T. serratifrons*; SD]. Carapace hexagonal, slightly wider than long, flattened, front straight, medially notched, orbital margins with 2 fissures, anterolateral margins dentate or denticulate, posterior margin about equal in length to posterolateral margin; regions well marked, surface granulate. *U.Cret. (U.Senon.)-Eoc.*, *Mio.*, Eu.—FIG. 330,3. *\*T. serratifrons*, *U.Cret.*, Belg.;  $\times 2$  (198).

**Tumidocarcinus** GLAESSNER, 1960 [*\*Harpactocarcinus tumidus* WOODWARD, 1876; OD]. Differing from *Harpactocarcinus* in inflated carapace, weak or absent anterolateral spines, smooth dorsal edge of chela; carapace finely granulated and pitted, cardiac and branchial regions faintly marked. *?M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, *L.Oligo.*, *M.Mio.-U.Mio.*, N.Z.; *L.Mio.*, Australia.—FIG. 329,2 *\*T. tumidus* (WOODWARD), *U.Eoc.-L.Oligo.*, N.Z.;  $\times 0.5$  (118).

**Xanthias** RATHBUN, 1897 [*\*Xanthodes granosomanus* DANA, 1852 (= *Xantho lamarckii* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834); OD] [= *Xanthodes* DANA, May, 1852 (non GUÉNEE, Jan., 1852)]. Carapace transversely oval, front wide, bilobed, anterolateral margins with 4 lobes or teeth, chelae isochelous, propodus tuberculate. *?U. Cret.*

(*Campan.*), USA(N.J.); *Rec.*, IndoPac.-W.Indies-Brazil.

**Xanthilites** BELL, 1858 [*\*X. bowerbanki*; OD] [= *Pseuderiphia* REUSS, 1859 (type, *P. maccoyi*, = *Xanthilites bowerbanki* BELL, 1858); *Colpocaris* VON MEYER, 1862 (type, *C. bullata*)]. Carapace not much wider than long, anterolateral margin short, 4-lobed; regions distinct; antennulae infolded obliquely; chelae massive, smooth, with strong, pointed fingers. *Paleoc.-M.Eoc.*, Eu.-Japan-C.Am.-S.Am.—FIG. 330,1. *X. gerthi* GLAESSNER, *?Paleoc.*, Arg.; *1a,b*, dorsal, ventral views,  $\times 0.4$  (110).

**Xanthodius** STIMPSON, 1859 [*\*X. sternbergii*; OD]. Carapace broadly oval; anterolateral margin lobate or dentate, with rim continuing behind widest part of carapace; orbits small, subcircular; regions well marked; chelae heterochelous. *Mio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, N.Am. (E.coast-W.coast)-Pac.

**Zanthopsis** M'COY, 1849 [*\*Cancer leachi* DESMAREST, 1822; OD] [= *Cycloxanthus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS in D'ARCHIAC, 1850 (type, *C. dufourii*); *Xanthopsis* BELL, 1858 (obj.) (*nom. van.*)]. Carapace oval, convex, front 4-lobed, orbits small, with prominent extra- and infraorbital spines, anterolateral margin without fissures; margins arcuate, with few more or less indistinct lobes or teeth; posterior margin short; surface with nodular bosses; antennulae infolded obliquely; chelae massive, heterochelous, propodus tuberculate dorsally and exteriorly; male abdominal somites 3 to 5 fused. [VIA (1959) proposed a subfamily Xanthopsinae for this genus together with *Harpactocarcinus* and *Harpactoxanthopsis*. Recognition of subfamilies of the Xanthidae seems premature, but if accepted, this subfamily must be named Zanthopsinae and should also include *Tumidocarcinus*.] *Paleoc.-Oligo.*, Eu.-W. Afr.-N. Am.-Panama-W. Indies. — FIG. 329,1. *\*Z. leachi* (DESMAREST), *L.Eoc.*, Eng.; *1a,b*, dorsal view ♂ and ventral view ♀,  $\times 1$  (19).

**Zosimus** LEACH in DESMAREST, 1823 [*\*Cancer aeneus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Carapace moderately broad, moderately convex, regions well delimited and areolated, front sloping, medially grooved; orbits large, anterolateral margin with 4 lobes;

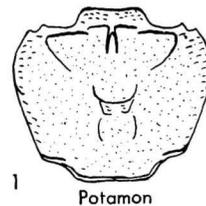


FIG. 331. Potamidae (p. R524).

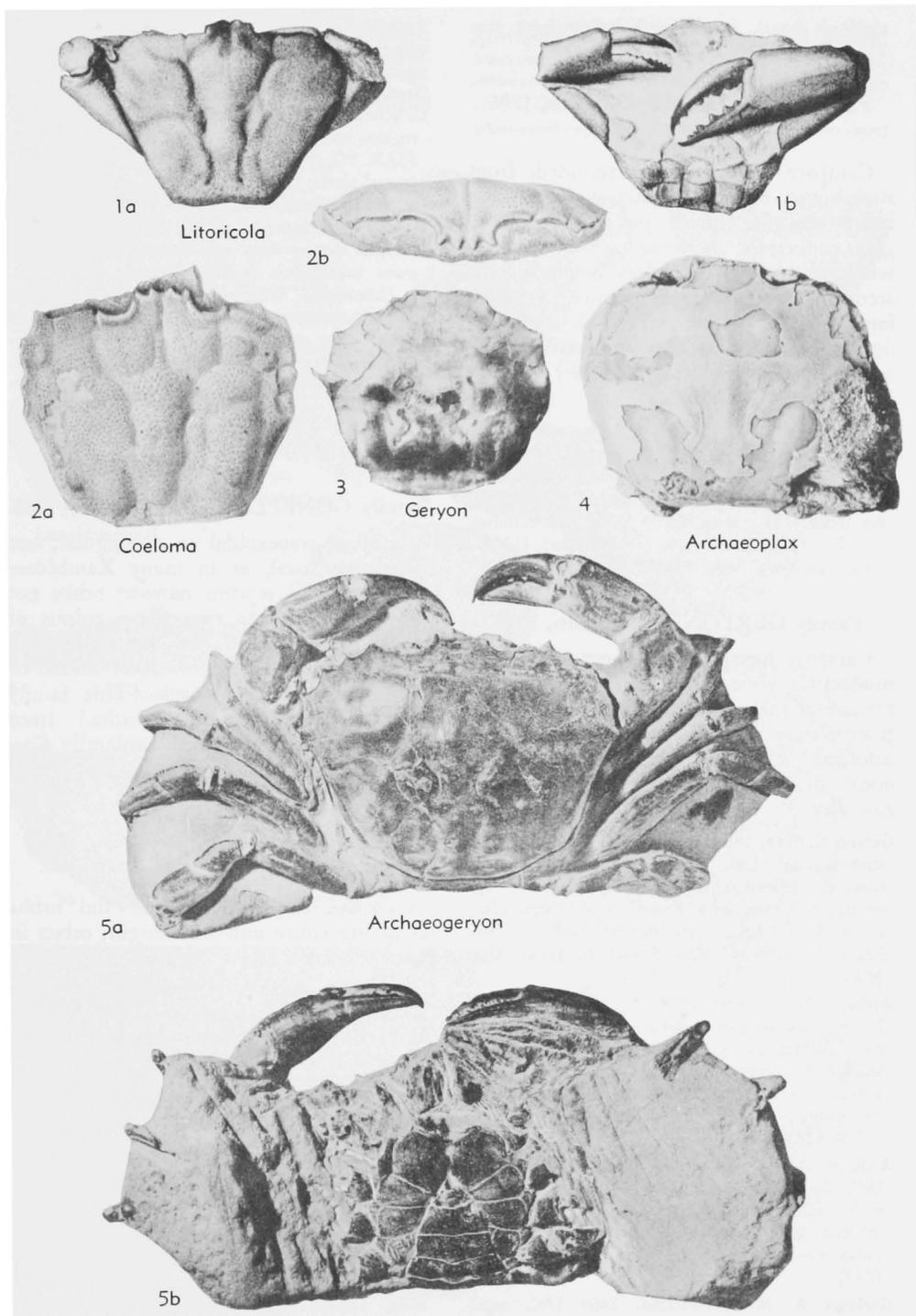


FIG. 332. Geryonidae (p. R524).

chelipeds equal, fingers with hollowed-out tips. ?*Mio.*, Hung., *Rec.*, IndoPac.

### Family POTAMIDAE Ortmann, 1896

[*nom. correct.* ICZN, 1964, Op. 712, p. 342 (*pro* Potamonidae ORTMANN, 1896)]

Carapace rectangular to rounded, front straight or bilobed, mostly wide; anterolateral margins convex, posterolateral margins converging posteriorly; sternal plate wide; chelae more or less heterochelous; second to fifth pereopods ambulatory. [This family of freshwater crabs is divided into four subfamilies but known fossils represent only the nominate subfamily.] *U.Tert.-Rec.*

**Potamon** SAVIGNY, 1816 [\**P. fluviatilis*; OD] [= *Telphusa* LATREILLE, 1819 (obj.)]. Front large, carapace with epigastric and proto gastric lobes ending anteriorly in ridges. *U.Mio.-Plio.*, Eu.-India; *Rec.*, S.Eu.-Afr.-S.Asia-E.Asia-E.Indies. —FIG. 331,1. *P. speciosus* (VON MEYER), *U.Mio.*, S.Ger.; carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (241).

### Family GERYONIDAE Colosi, 1924

Carapace hexagonal to trapezoidal, front moderately wide, dentate, orbits large, anterolateral margin with three to five teeth, posterolateral margins straight; antennulae infolded obliquely, antennae well developed; male abdomen broadly triangular. *Eoc.-Rec.*

**Geryon** KRÖYER, 1837 [\**G. tridens*; OD]. Carapace subhexagonal, little broader than long, regions obscurely defined; chelipeds subequal, strong; legs strong; abdomen with 7 somites. *U.Oligo.-Plio.*, Eu.-N. Afr.; *Rec.*, Atl.-IndoPac.-Medit. —FIG. 332,3. *G. latifrons* VAN STRAELEN, *Plio.*, Alg.;  $\times 0.7$  (303).

**Archaeogeryon** COLOSI, 1924 [\**A. juegianus*; OD]. Differs from *Geryon* in flattened carpus, propodus, and dactylus of 5th pereopods and in greater width of carapace and orbital margins. *Mio.*, S.Am. —FIG. 332,5. *A. peruvianus* (D'ORBIGNY), Arg.; 5*a,b*, dorsal and ventral views of male,  $\times 0.5$  (113).

**Archaeoplax** STIMPSON, 1863 [\**A. signifera*; OD]. Differs from *Geryon* in subquadrilateral carapace, wide orbits, short anterolateral margin, strongly marked branchiocardiac grooves. *U.Mio.*, USA (Mass.). —FIG. 332,4. *A. signifera*;  $\times 0.7$  (244).

**Coeloma** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1865 [\**C. vigil*; OD]. Carapace flat, trapezoidal, with projecting

4-toothed front, supraorbital margin with 2 fissures; anterolateral margin short, with 4 teeth; regions well marked, surface granulate. *L.Eoc.*, Greenl.-USA (Calif.)-Eng.; *M.Eoc.-L.Mio.*, Eu.

**C. (Coeloma)**. Supraorbital margin long; branchial regions subdivided. *U.Eoc.-M.Oligo.*, Eu. —FIG. 332,2. \**C. vigil*; *Oligo.*, Italy; 2*a,b*, dorsal and frontal views,  $\times 0.7$  (198).

**C. (Paracoeloma)** BEURLEN, 1929 [\**Coeloma rupeliense* STAINIER, 1886; OD]. Supraorbital margin shorter than anterolateral, branchial regions subdivided. ?*L.Eoc.*, Greenl.; *Oligo.*, Eu.

**C. (Litoricola)** WOODWARD, 1873 [\**L. dentata*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Supraorbital margin shorter than anterolateral, sinuous; carapace nearly smooth, branchial regions not subdivided. *L.Eoc.*, Eng.-USA (Calif.); *M.Eoc.*, S.Ger. —FIG. 332,1. \**C. (L.) dentata*, *L.Eoc.*, S.Eng.; 1*a*, dorsal and ant. view of front, 1*b*, ventral view,  $\times 1$  (330).

### Family GONEPLACIDAE Macleay, 1838

Carapace trapezoidal to rectangular, not transversely oval, as in many Xanthidae; interantennular septum narrow; orbits not clearly divided into two parts; palpus of maxillipeds inserted on antero-internal angle of merus; male gonoducts sternal or coxal with sternal grooves. [This family cannot be sharply distinguished from Xanthidae, particularly the subfamily Carcinoplacinae, which is transitional.] ?*U. Cret.*, *Paleoc.-Rec.*

#### Subfamily GONEPLACINAE Macleay, 1838

[*nom. transl.* MIERS, 1886 (*ex* Goneplacidae MACLEAY, 1938)]

Carapace trapezoidal; front and orbits occupying entire anterior margin; orbits in form of long narrow grooves. *Eoc.-Rec.*

**Goneplax** LEACH, 1814 [\**Ocypoda bispinosa* LAMARCK, 1801 (= *Cancer rhomboides* LINNÉ, 1758); OD] [= *Gonoplax* LEACH, 1816 (obj.)]. Carapace with extraorbital teeth at points of greatest width; lateral margins straight, converging; front deflected, truncate, about 0.25 of anterior margin in width. Chelipeds very long. *M.Mio.-Plio.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, Medit.-Atl.-IndoPac. —FIG. 333,5. *G. formosa* RISTORI, *Plio.*, Italy; 5*a*, dorsal view, 5*b*, right chela,  $\times 1$  (253).

**Mioplax** BITTNER, 1883 [\**M. socialis*; OD]. Carapace flat, square, only cardiac region marked; front wide, straight, anterolateral teeth directed forward; chelae with deflected fingers; legs long. *Mio.*, Yugosl.-Aus. —FIG. 333,1. \**M. socialis*;  $\times 1$  (184).

**Ommatocarcinus** WHITE, 1852 [*O. macgillivrayi*; OD]. Differing from *Goneplax* in narrow front, very long anterior margin, strong, laterally directed extraorbital spines; posterolateral margins

converging. *Eoc.*, Spain; *Oligo.-Mio.*, N.Z.; *M.Mio.*, Australia; *Rec.*, IndoPac.-N.Z.—FIG. 334, 1. *O. corioensis* WHITE, *M.Mio.*, Australia; carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (118).

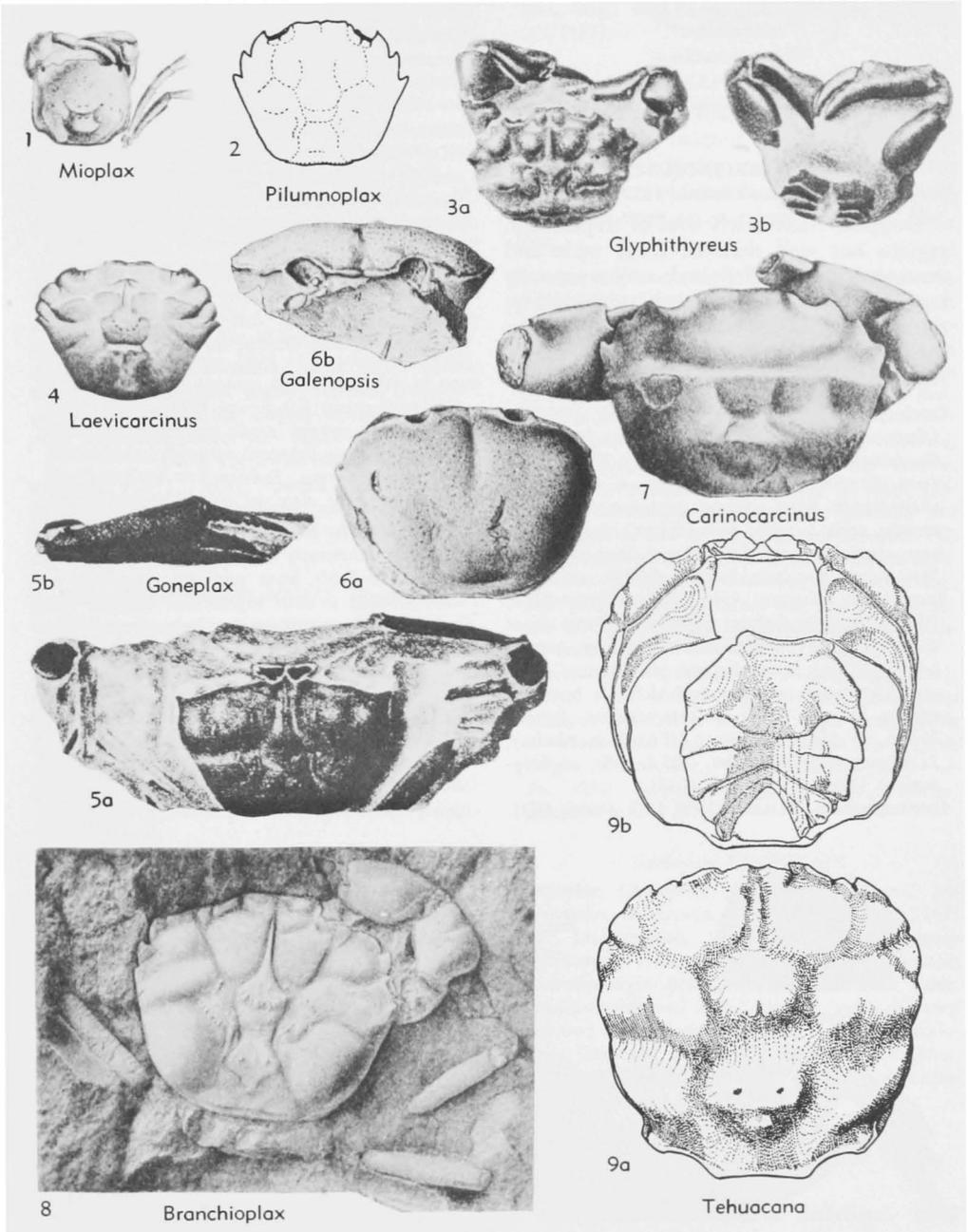


FIG. 333. Goneplacidae (Goneplacinae) (1-5), (Carcinoplacinae) (2-4,6-9) (p. R524, R526-R527).

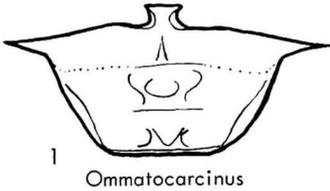


FIG. 334. Goneplacidae (Goneplacinae) (p. R525).

Subfamily CARCINOPLACINAE  
H. Milne-Edwards, 1852

Carapace transversely oval to trapezoidal, regions not well defined; front wide and truncated, slightly deflected; orbits not very long; antennulae infolded transversely; third male abdominal segment covering entire space between pereopods. *Paleoc.-Rec.*

**Carcinoplax** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1852 [*\*Cancer (Curtonotus) longimanus* DE HAAN, 1833; SD GLAESSNER, 1929] [= *Curtonotus* DE HAAN, 1833 (non STEPHENS, 1828)]. Carapace transversely oval, convex, front straight, anterolateral margins arcuate, with 3 teeth, posterolateral margins convex; chelipeds heterochelous, very long in males. *Mio.*, Japan; *Rec.*, trop. IndoPac.-W.Afr.

**Branchioplax** RATHBUN, 1916 [*\*B. washingtoniana*; OD]. Carapace slightly wider than long; front straight, orbital margins moderately long; anterolateral margins short, dentate; posterolateral margins convergent; regions well defined, branchial regions inflated; chelipeds heterochelous. *Paleoc.*, *M.Eoc.*, W.Afr.; *Eoc.-Oligo.*, USA (Wash.-Alaska), ?*L.Oligo.*, C.Asia.—FIG. 333,8. *\*B. washingtoniana*, *Oligo.*, Alaska;  $\times 1$  (238).

**Carcinoplaoides** KESLING, 1958 [*\*C. flottei*; OD].

Carapace transversely oval, convex, smooth, differing from *Carcinoplax* in absence of anterolateral teeth. ?*Pleist.*, Guam.

**Carinocarcinus** LÖRENTHEY, 1898 [*\*C. zitteli*; OD]. Carapace transversely oval, convex longitudinally, front wide, orbits rather small, anterolateral margin with 4 teeth; straight transverse smooth ridge connecting lateral teeth across middle of carapace; chelae massive, heterochelous. *M.Eoc.*, S.Ger.—FIG. 333,7. *\*C. zitteli*;  $\times 1$  (182).

**Eucrate** DE HAAN, 1835 [*\*Cancer (E.) crenatus*; OD]. Carapace subquadrilateral, convex; front straight, fronto-orbital margin nearly as wide as carapace; anterolateral borders dentate, slightly arched; chelipeds massive. ?*Oligo.*, USA (Ore.); *Rec.*, IndoPac.

**Galenopsis** A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1865 [*\*G. typica*; SD]. Carapace transversely oval, smooth, moderately convex, front deflexed, medially sulcate, orbits small; anterolateral margins curved, short, with weak teeth; posterolateral margin long, straight, posterior margin long; branchial regions inflated. *M.Eoc.-Oligo.*, Eu.-E.Afr.-India; *Plio.*, Fiji.—FIG. 333,6. *\*G. typica*, *Eoc.*, Fr.; 6a,b, dorsal and frontal views,  $\times 1$  (198).

**Glyphithyreus** REUSS, 1859 [*\*G. formosus* (= *\*Plagiolophus wetherelli* BELL, 1858); OD] [= *Plagiolophus* BELL, 1858 (non POMEL, 1847)]. Carapace transversely oval, wider than long, longitudinally convex; front projecting, medially sulcate, as wide as each supraorbital margin, which has 2 fissures; anterolateral margins short, tuberculate; regions well marked by wide, smooth grooves, strongly elevated and granulate; base of antennae closing orbital gap; chelae massive, propodus with external blunt ridge; male abdominal somites 3 to 5 fused. *L.Eoc.-M.Eoc.*, Eu.; *M.Eoc.*, USA (Calif.); *U.Eoc.*, Egypt.—FIG. 333,3. *\*G. wetherelli* (BELL), *L.Eoc.*, Eng.; 3a,b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 1$  (19).

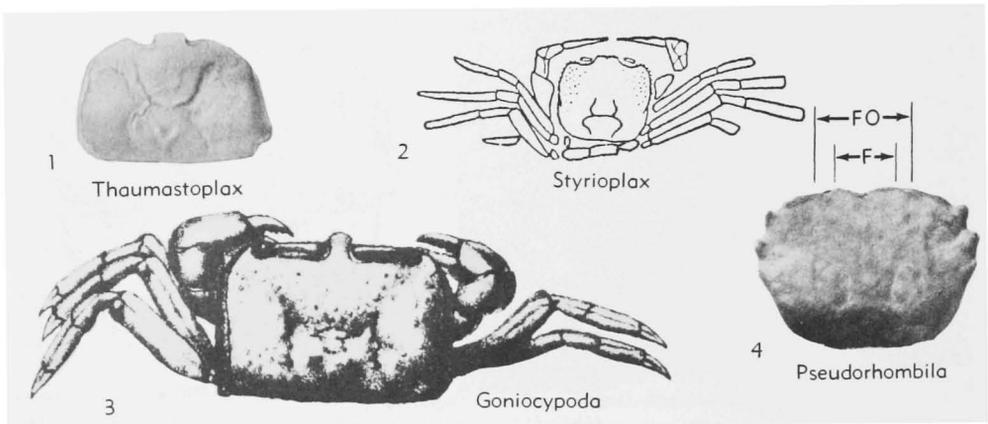


FIG. 335. Goneplacidae (Prionoplacinae) (4), (Hexapodinae) (1,3), (Subfamily Uncertain) (2) (p. R527).

**Laevicarcinus** LÖRENTHEY & BEURLEN, 1929 [\**L. egerensis*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace wider than long, flat; front medially notched, antero-lateral margin arcuate, 4-lobed, shorter than posterolateral, posterior margin long; anterior regions well marked; surface of carapace and legs smooth. *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc., Mio.-Plio., Eu.*—FIG. 333,4. \**L. egerensis*, U.Eoc., Hung.;  $\times 0.7$  (184).

**Martinezicancer** VAN STRAELLEN, 1939 [\**M. schenki*; OD]. Carapace 0.3 wider than long, front narrow, supraorbital margin with 1 small spine; 2 antero- and 2 posterolateral teeth; regions well marked and tuberculated. *Paleoc., USA*(Calif.).

**Pilumnoplax** STIMPSON, 1858 [\**P. sulcatifrons*; SD RATHBUN, 1918]. Carapace hexagonal, depressed; front straight; fronto-orbital border 0.7 width of carapace; anterolateral margin dentate; chelipeds massive; legs slender. *Eoc.-Oligo., W.N.Am.; Eoc., Spain; Rec., IndoPac.-W.Afr.-W.Indies.*—FIG. 333,2. *P. urpiniana* VIA, *M.Eoc., Spain*;  $\times 1$  (314).

?**Tehuacana** STENZEL, 1944 [\**T. tehuacana*; OD]. Carapace square, convex, front 0.3 width of carapace, fronto-orbital border 0.7 width of carapace, anterolateral margin short, arcuate, with 4 teeth, posterolateral margins converging, orbits medium-sized; regions well marked; sternum narrow, 5th somite almost hidden by male abdomen. *Paleoc., USA*(Tex.)—FIG. 333,9. \**T. tehuacana*; *9a,b*, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 3$  (281).

#### Subfamily PRIONOPLACINAE Alcock, 1900

Differs from Carcinoplacinae in third abdominal segment of males not filling space between fifth pereopods; greatest width of carapace not between extraorbital teeth. [According to BALSS (1957), this subfamily includes *Pseudorhombila*, the nominate genus of a subfamily which ALCOCK substituted for Carcinoplacinae MIERS.] *Oligo.-Rec.*

**Prionoplax** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1852 [\**P. spinicarpus*; OD]. Carapace broadly trapezoidal, front about 0.3 width of carapace, anterolateral margins dentate, continuous with converging posterolateral margins; antennary flagellum in orbital hiatus; chelipeds subequal; somites 3 to 5 of male abdomen fused. *Rec., W.Indies.-Panama-Ecuador.*

**Euryplax** STIMPSON, 1859 [\**E. nitida*; OD]. Carapace broadly trapezoidal, front nearly 0.5 width of carapace, anterolateral margin short, dentate, chelae massive, almost isochelous, propodus short; all somites of male abdomen distinct. *Oligo., Panama; Rec., Gulf Mexico-W.Indies.-Panama.*

**Pseudorhombila** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1834 [\**Melia quadridentata* LATREILLE, 1828; OD]. Carapace wider than long, convex longitudinally, fronto-orbital margin 0.5 width of carapace, anterolateral borders arcuate, dentate, front straight, notched;

supraorbital margin with 2 fissures; regions partially indicated; antennules folded transversely; chelipeds massive, heterochelous; male abdominal somites 3 to 5 fused. *Mio., S.Am.*(Arg.); *Rec., W. Indies.*—FIG. 335,4. *P. patagonica* GLAESSNER, *Mio., Arg.; FO*, fronto-orbital margin; *F*, front,  $\times 1$  (113).

#### Subfamily HEXAPODINAE Miers, 1886

Carapace wider than long, lateral margins rounded, front narrow, fifth pereopods absent; male abdomen not filling space between bases of fourth pereopods, male gonoducts open on sternum. ?*U.Cret., Eoc.-Rec.*

**Hexapus** DE HAAN, 1833 [\**Cancer sexpes* FABRICIUS, 1798; OD]. Carapace small, smooth, quadrilateral, widening posteriorly, front 0.25 width of carapace, deflexed, notched; orbits small, anterolateral angles rounded, chelipeds small, 2nd to 4th pereopods nearly equal in size. *Mio., Japan; Rec., IndoPac.*

**Gonicypoda** H. WOODWARD, 1867 [\**G. edwardsi*; OD]. Carapace subrectangular, front narrow, supraorbital margins long, ending in small projecting extraorbital teeth; regions generally not well marked; 2nd to 4th pereopods subequal. ?*U.Cret.*(Maastricht.), *W.Afr.; Eoc., Eu.-Egypt-India.*—FIG. 335,3. \**G. edwardsi*, *L.Eoc., S.Eng.*;  $\times 2$  (329); published figure has "outlines of absent limbs," including 5th pereopod, added without justification).

**Thaumastoplax** MIERS, 1881 [\**T. anomalipes*; OD]. Differs from *Hexapus* in 3rd pereopods being stronger than 2nd to 4th ones, from *Gonicypoda* in wider front and smaller orbits. *Eoc., Peru; Oligo., Panama; Rec., W.Afr.-Thailand-Japan.*—FIG. 335,1. *T. prima* RATHBUN, *Oligo., Panama*; carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (234).

#### Subfamily UNCERTAIN

**Styrioplax** GLAESSNER, herein [*nom. nov. pro Microplax* GLAESSNER, 1928 (*non* FIEBER, 1861; *nec* LILLJENBORG, 1865)] [\**Microplax exiguus* GLAESSNER, 1928; OD]. Carapace small, square; frontal margin straight, deflexed, notched; orbits small; anterolateral angles rounded; male abdomen narrow; chelae heterochelous, 2nd to 5th pereopods long and slender, 5th being longest. *Mio., Eu.*(Aus.)—FIG. 335,2. \**S. exiguus* (GLAESSNER);  $\times 2$  (106).

#### Family PINNOTHERIDAE de Haan, 1833

Carapace soft, regions indistinct, front and orbits small; buccal cavity wide; merus of third maxillipeds wide, with rounded

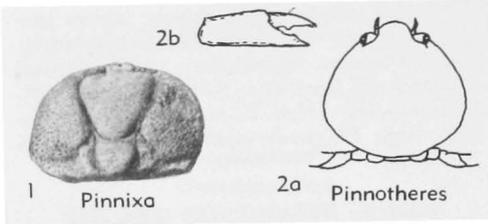


FIG. 336. Pinnotheridae (p. R528).

**Parapinnixa** HOLMES, 1894 [*\*Pinnixa? nitida* LOCKINGTON, 1877; OD]. Carapace calcified, much broader than long, anterior margin straight; orbits nearly round; 2nd pereiopod largest, 5th very small. *Mio.*, USA (Calif.); *Rec.*, Japan-N.Am.-(W. coast)-W.Indies.

**Pinnixa** WHITE, 1846 [*\*Pinnotheres cylindricum* SAY, 1818; OD]. Carapace much wider than long, calcified; front narrow, medially grooved; orbits broadly ovate to circular; chelipeds of moderate size, 4th pereiopods larger than 2nd and 3rd and much larger than 5th pereiopod; abdomen narrow. *Eoc.*, USA (Wash.); *Oligo.*, C.Asia; *Mio.*, USA (Calif.); *Rec.*, N.Am.(coasts)-S.Am.(coasts)-Japan-China.—FIG. 336,1. *P. eocenica* RATHBUN, *Eoc.*, USA (Wash.); carapace,  $\times 2$  (238).

angles and palp not at antero-internal angle; male abdomen very narrow. [Five subfamilies are currently recognized.] *Eoc.-Rec.*

**Pinnotheres** BOSCH, 1802 [*\*Cancer pisum* LINNÉ, 1767; SD LATREILLE, 1810]. Carapace transversely oval to circular, smooth; chelipeds isochelous; pereiopods stout, of moderate length. *?Mio.*, Eu.-S.Am.; *Rec.*, cosmop. in warm seas.—FIG. 336,2. *\*P. pisum* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*; 2a, carapace and part of sternum (*st5*) and last legs (*coxa-co5*); 2b, right chela,  $\times 3$  (52).

**Family GRAPSIDAE Macleay, 1838**

Carapace quadrangular, with straight or convex lateral margins; orbits at or near anterolateral angles; front wide; interantennular septum very wide; buccal frame

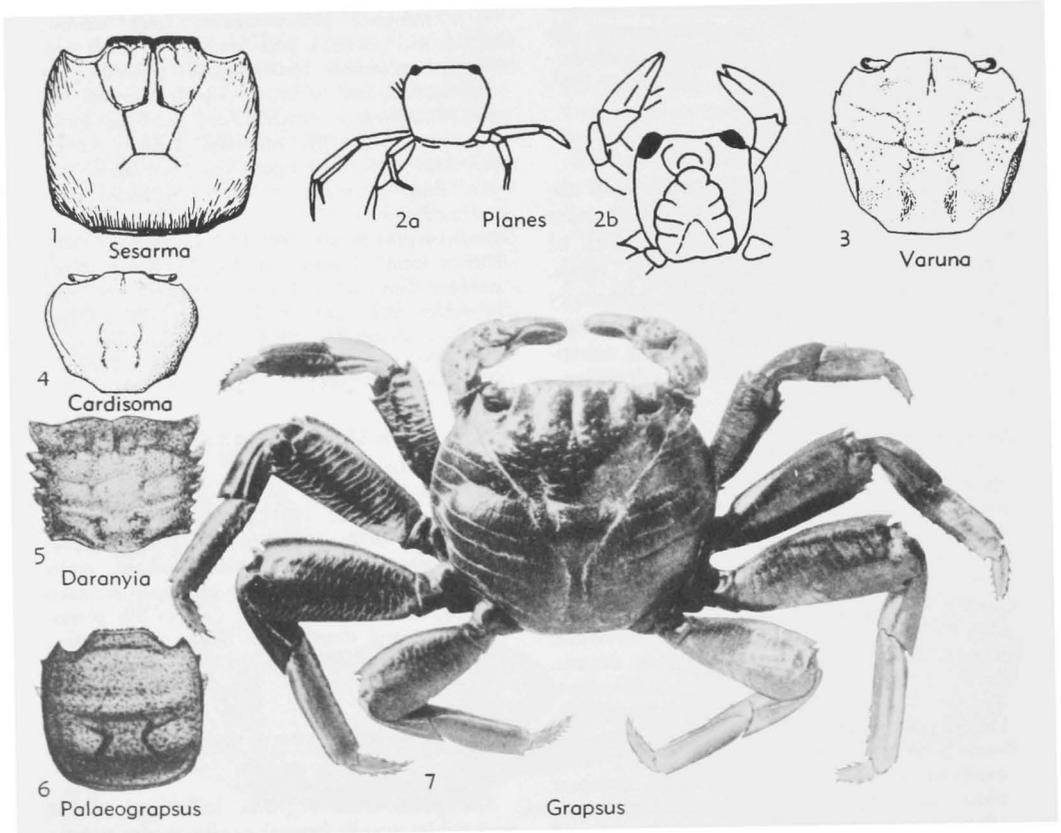


FIG. 337. Grapsidae (Grapsinae) (2,7), (Varuninae) (3), (Sesarminae) (1), (Subfamily Uncertain) (5,6); Gecarcinidae (4) (p. R529-R530).

square; mandibular palp articulating on external angle of merus or in middle of its anterior margin; male gonoducts open sternally. [The subfamily Plagusiinae, with deeply lobed front, is not represented by fossils.] *M.Eoc.-Rec.*

#### Subfamily GRAPSINAE Macleay, 1838

Front deflected; wide space between third maxillipeds; male abdomen filling entire space between fifth pereopods. *Oligo.-Rec.*

**Grapsus** LAMARCK, 1801 [*\*Cancer grapsus* LINNÉ, 1758; OD]. Carapace little broader than long, flat; regions well defined, branchial regions with parallel, oblique ridges; front strongly deflexed; orbits deep; chelipeds subequal, legs broad and compressed. *Rec.*, cosmop. in warm seas.—FIG. 337,7. *\*G. grapsus* (LINNÉ); male, dorsal view,  $\times 0.5$  (234).

**Planes** BOWDITCH, 1825 [*\*P. clypeatus*; OD] [= *Nautilograpsus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837 (obj.); *Nautilograpsoides* SMIRNOV, 1929 (no type-species)]. Carapace quadrate to oval, as long as wide, convex; anterolateral angle sharp, with notch behind; front about 0.5 width of carapace, gently deflected; legs flattened. *Oligo.*, N.Caucasus; *Rec.*, cosmop.—FIG. 337,2. *P. prior* (SMIRNOV), *Oligo.*, N.Caucasus; 2a,b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 0.7$  (277, re-drawn).

#### Subfamily VARUNINAE H. Milne-Edwards, 1852

Front not deflected or not strongly so; space between third maxillipeds moderately wide; abdomen rarely covering entire space between fifth pereopods. ?*M.Eoc.*, *U.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Varuna** H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1830 [*\*Cancer litteratus* FABRICIUS, 1798; OD] [= *Telphusograpsus* LÖRENTHEY, 1902 (type, *T. laevis*)]. Carapace about as wide as long, flat, with sharp edges; front slightly more than 0.3 of its width, straight, little deflected; orbits small, supraorbital margin notched; lateral margins convex, with 3 anterolateral teeth (including extraorbital); branchio- and gastrocardiac grooves marked; chelipeds equal, massive in males; 2nd to 5th pereopods with last segments flattened; abdomen with 7 somites. ?*M.Eoc.*, C.Am.; *U.Eoc.*, Rumania; *Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 337,3. *\*V. litterata* (FABRICIUS), *Rec.*; carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (15).

**Brachynotus** DE HAAN, 1833 [*\*Goneplax sexdentatus* RISSO, 1827] [= *Hemigrapsus* DANA, 1857 (type, *H. crassimanus*)]. Carapace broader than long, with 3 anterolateral teeth (including extraorbital); front less than 0.5 width of carapace, little deflected, mesogastric region marked anteriorly and posteriorly; chelipeds subequal; 2nd to 5th

pereopods not strongly compressed, smooth. ?*Plio.*, *Pleist.*, N.Am.; *Rec.*, coasts of Atl.-Pac.-Medit.

**Utica** WHITE, 1847 [*\*U. gracilipes*; OD]. Carapace octagonal, flat, frontal margin straight, anterolateral margins divergent, with 3 teeth; posterolateral margin straight; strong ridge transversely crossing cardiac and branchial regions; chelipeds small, 2nd to 5th pereopods long. *Pleist.* (*Sub-recent*), Australia; *Rec.*, W.Pac.-SW.Pac.

#### Subfamily SESARMINAE Dana, 1852

Front strongly deflected; third maxillipeds widely separated and with oblique ridge across ischium and merus; male abdomen filling space between fifth pereopods completely or almost completely. *U.Oligo.* or *L.Mio.-Rec.*

**Sesarma** SAY, 1817 [*\*Ocylope reticulatus*; OD]. Carapace square, sides straight and parallel or convex, surface flattened, gastric region well marked and subdivided; front 0.5 length of anterior margin or more, deflected; orbits deep, oval; chelipeds subequal, 2nd to 5th pereopods subequal in length; abdomen with 7 somites. *U. Oligo.* or *L.Mio.*, Brazil; *Pleist.* (*Sub-recent*), Australia; *Rec.*, cosmop. in warm waters.—FIG. 337,1. *S. paraensis* BEURLEN, *U.Oligo.* or *L.Mio.*, Brazil; carapace,  $\times 1$  (32).

#### Subfamily UNCERTAIN

**Daranyia** LÖRENTHEY, 1901 [*\*D. granulata*; OD]. Lateral margins of carapace converging posteriorly, with teeth decreasing in size; gastro- and cardio-branchial grooves weakly marked; fronto-orbital margin wide, sinuous, with median sulcus; orbits large. *M.Eoc.*, Sicily; *U.Eoc.*, Hung.—FIG. 337,5. *\*D. granulata*, *U.Eoc.*, Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).

**Palaeograpsus** BITTNER, 1875 [*\*P. inflatus*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace rectangular, about as wide as long, convex, finely granulate; front wide, lateral margins convex, with small teeth. *M.Eoc.*, Egypt; *M.Eoc.-U.Eoc.*, ?*Oligo.*, Eu.—FIG. 337,6. *\*P. inflatus*, *U.Eoc.*, Hung.;  $\times 1$  (184).

#### Family GECARCINIDAE Macleay, 1838

Carapace transversely oval, anterolateral margins strongly arcuate; fronto-orbital margin much shorter than greatest width of carapace; front moderately wide, deflected; antennular grooves narrow; male gonoducts opening sternally. *Plio.-Rec.*

**Gecarcinus** LEACH, 1814 [*\*Cancer ruricola* LINNÉ, 1758; SD H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837]. Carapace convex, heart-shaped; fronto-orbital margin 0.5 greatest width of carapace or less, 0.12 to 0.2 of carapace width; chelipeds massive, legs stout. *Rec.*, C.Am.-Mex.-Colombia-W.Afr., Ascension Is.

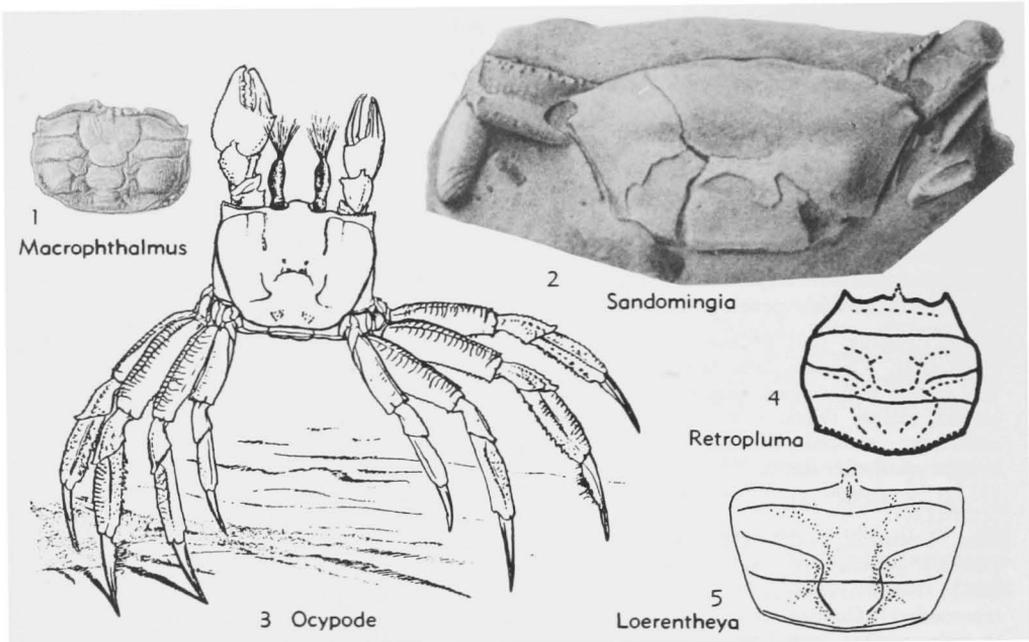


FIG. 338. Ocypodidae (Ocypodinae) (3), (Macrophthalminae) (1), (Subfamily Uncertain) (2,5); Retroplumidae (4) (p. R530-R531).

*Cardisoma* LATREILLE, 1825 [*C. guanhumi*; SD H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837]. Differing from *Gecarcinus* in fronto-orbital margin being much wider than 0.5 of greatest width of carapace and straight front about 0.25 of same; chelipeds unequal. *Plio.*, Fiji; *Rec.*, Gulf Mex.-Brazil-W. Mex.-Peru-W. Afr.-IndoPac.—FIG. 337,4. *C. carnifex* (HERBST), *Rec.*;  $\times 0.5$  (15).

### Superfamily OCYPODOIDEA Rafinesque, 1815

[*nom. transl.* GLAESSNER, herein (ex Ocypodidae RAFINESQUE, 1815)] [=subtribe Ocypodoida BEURLEN, 1930]

Carapace rectangular, wider than long; front small, projecting; orbits (where present) developed as long grooves for elongate eye stalks; antennules without fossae, small; antennae small; sternal plate wide; gonoducts open on sternum. *M.Eoc.-Rec.*

#### Family OCYPODIDAE Rafinesque, 1815

Carapace quadrilateral, convex longitudinally, front narrow, eye stalks long, fronto-orbital margin long, buccal frame narrowed anteriorly; male gonoducts opening sternally, male abdomen narrow. *M. Eoc., Mio.-Rec.*

#### Subfamily OCYPODINAE Rafinesque, 1815

[*nom. transl.* DANA, 1852 (ex Ocypodidae RAFINESQUE, 1815)]

Carapace with regions indistinct; front narrow, deflexed; antennules infolded obliquely or longitudinally; chelipeds heterochelous at least in males. *Plio.-Rec.*

*Ocyopode* WEBER, 1795 [*Cancer ceratophthalmus* PALLAS, 1772; SD] [= *Ocyopoda* LAMARCK, 1801 (obj.)]. Carapace square, little broader than long, convex, granulate; orbits large, shallow; chelae heterochelous, 2nd to 4th pereiopods long, 5th shorter; male abdomen narrow. *Pleist.*, USA (Fla.); *Rec.*, IndoPac.-Medit.-W. Afr.-N. Am. (coasts)-S. Am. (coasts).—FIG. 338,3. *O. cursor* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*; in running position,  $\times 0.7$  (52, after Gravier).

*Uca* LEACH, 1814 [*Cancer vocans major* HERBST, 1782; OD] [= *Gelasimus* LATREILLE, 1817 (type, *Ocyopoda maracoani* LATREILLE, 1802)]. Carapace subquadrilateral, broader than long, with anterolateral angles produced and acute; lateral margins converging; female chelipeds equal, short; male chelipeds extremely heterochelous, one with manus commonly as big as rest of animal; legs stout. *Plio.-Pleist.*, N. Am.-Panama-E. Indies; *Rec.*, cosmop. on coasts of warm seas.

#### Subfamily MACROPHTHALMINAE Dana, 1852

Carapace rectangular, wider than long, regions well marked; front not very wide; eye stalks long; antennules infolded transversely. *Mio.-Rec.*

*Macrophthalmus* DESMAREST, 1823 [*Gonoplax transversus* LATREILLE, 1817; SD H. MILNE-ED-

WARDS, 1837]. Carapace moderately convex, front narrow, orbits and eye stalks very long, chelae long and slender. *Mio.*, Eu.; *Pleist.-Rec.*, Indo-Pac.—FIG. 338,1. *M. vindobonensis* GLAESSNER, *Mio.*, Austria; carapace,  $\times 1$  (357a).

**Hemiplax** HELLER, 1865 [*\*Metaplax hirtipes* HELLER, 1862; OD (=?*Cleistostoma hirtipes* JACQUINOT & LUCAS, 1853)]. Differs from *Macrophthalmus* in wider front which equals 0.25 width of carapace; fixed fingers of chelae deflected. ?*Plio.*, N.Z.; *Pleist.-Rec.*, Australia-N.Z.

#### Subfamily UNCERTAIN

**Loerentheyia** BEURLEN, 1929 [*\*L. carinata*; OD]. Carapace trapezoidal, wider than long, front very narrow, supraorbital margins long, lateral margins convergent, posterior margin long, slightly convex; surface with gastrocervical grooves, 2 transverse keels and pair of oblique sinuous ridges. *M.Eoc.*, Hung.—FIG. 338,5. *\*L. carinata*;  $\times 0.7$  (184).

**Sandomingia** RATHBUN, 1919 [*\*S. yaquiensis*; OD]. Carapace wide, anterior margin arcuate, anterolateral angle with extraorbital and lateral teeth, lateral margins converging; orbits long, shallow, extending whole width of carapace from front which is 0.85 width of carapace; chelipeds large, equal. *L.Mio.*, W.Indies.—FIG. 338,2. *\*S. yaquiensis*, San Domingo; dorsal,  $\times 1$  (236).

#### Family RETROPLUMIDAE Gill, 1894

[=Ptenoplacidae ALCOCK, 1900]

Carapace transversely oval, flat, with two transverse crests, front narrow, little deflected; interantennular septum thin, no

distinct antennular fossae; orbits incomplete below; antennal flagella long; third maxillipeds slender, subpediform; sternal plate wide, male abdomen narrow, male gonoducts open on coxae of fifth pereopods, with sternal ducts; female gonoducts open on sternum of third pereopods; sternum of fifth pereopod reduced, and this pereopod rudimentary, close-set, subdorsal. *M.Eoc.-Rec.*

**Retropluma** GILL, 1894 [*\*Archaeoplax notopus* ALCOCK & ANDERSON, 1894; OD] [=*Archaeoplax* ALCOCK & ANDERSON, 1894 (*non* STIMPSON, 1863); *Ptenoplax* ALCOCK & ANDERSON, 1895 (type, *Archaeoplax notopus* ALCOCK & ANDERSON, 1894)]. Characters of family. *M.Eoc.*, Spain; *Plio.*, Italy; *Rec.*, IndoPac.—FIG. 338,4. *R. eocenica* VIA, *M.Eoc.*, Spain; carapace,  $\times 1.5$  (314).

#### Superfamily UNCERTAIN

##### Family PALICIDAE Bouvier, 1898

[=Cymopoliidae FAXON, 1895]

Carapace subquadrilateral, wider than long, front notched, dentate, orbits and eyes large; anterolateral margins dentate, diverging posteriorly, buccal cavity quadrate, third maxillipeds not covering it; chelipeds moderate in size; second to fourth pereopods long, slender, fifth commonly short, subdorsal. Female genital openings between coxae of second pereopods, male openings sternal; sternal plate wide, abdomen narrow. [Family placed near Dorippidae by FAXON (1895) and BOUVIER (1897).] ?*L. Cret.-?U.Cret.*, ?*M.Eoc.*, *Rec.*

**Palicus** PHILIPPI, 1838 [*\*P. granulatus* (=Cymopolia *caronii* ROUX, 1828); OD] [=Cymopolia ROUX, 1828 (type, *C. caronii*) (*non* Cymopolia LAMOUROUX, 1816, subsequently transferred to plants)]. Carapace depressed, with 3 to 5 anterolateral teeth, surface granulate and tuberculate with pronounced transverse sculpture; supra- and infraorbital margins with fissures; antennules transverse; interantennular septum narrow; basal segment of antenna enlarged, in orbital hiatus; cheliped short, 5th pereopods subdorsal, may be filiform. *Rec.*, Medit.-Atl.-Pac.—FIG. 339,3. *P. cristatipes* (A. MILNE-EDWARDS);  $\times 1.5$  (234).

?**Actaeopsis** CARTER, 1898 [*\*A. wiltshirei*; OD]. Carapace subhexagonal, slightly convex, wider than long, orbitofrontal margin 0.5 width of carapace, anterolateral margins arcuate, dentate; front large, sulcate, supraorbital margins with 2 fissures; cer-

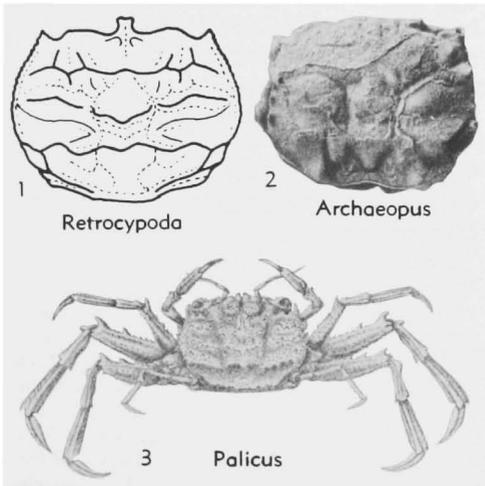


FIG. 339. Palicidae (p. R531-R532).

vical groove and gastric regions well marked, regions granulate. [This incompletely known and poorly figured genus seems to resemble also *Polycnemidium* REUSS.] *L.Cret.* (*Alb.*), Eng.

?*Archaeopus* RATHBUN, 1908 [*\*A. antennatus*; OD]. Carapace subrectangular, wider than long, flat; front straight, each orbit 0.25 length of anterior margin, with supraorbital, infraorbital, and strong extraorbital teeth; lateral margins slightly diverging posteriorly, denticulate; cervical groove distinct, regions well marked, tuberculated and granulated; basal segment of antennules large; buccal cavity and sternal plate wide; chelae slender, fingers ridged; 5th pereopods probably subdorsal. [Placed by RATHBUN in the Ocypodidae, by GLAESSNER (1929) in the "Cymopoliidae," and by BEURLEN in the Retroplumidae. Similarities with *Actaeopsis* CARTER, *Ophthalmoplax* RATHBUN, and *Retrocypoda* VIA need evaluation.] *U. Cret.*, USA (Calif.).—FIG. 339,2. *\*A. antennatus*; dorsal view of carapace,  $\times 1$  (328).

?*Retrocypoda* VIA, 1957 [*\*R. almelai*; OD]. Carapace subquadrilateral, wider than long; front narrow, bilobed, deflexed; orbits long, deep; supraorbital margin sinuous, with extraorbital tooth; lateral margins convex, denticulate anteriorly; regions highly differentiated, with transverse gastrohepatic, gastrobranchial, and cardiobranchial crests; sternal plate and abdomen ridged, abdomen covering last sternite; chelae heterochelous, large in males; 5th pereopods subdorsal, reduced. *M.Eoc.*, Spain.—FIG. 339,1. *\*R. almelai*; carapace,  $\times 0.7$  (314).

## BRACHYURA

### of uncertain systematic position or status

*Anaglyptus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1873 [*\*A. delfortrei*; OD] [*non* MULSANT, 1839]. An insufficiently described unfigured leucosiid. *Oligo.*, SW. Fr.

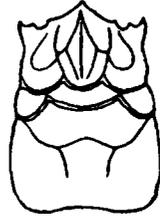
*Cyphoplax* HAIME, 1855 [*\*Goneplax impressa* DESMAREST, 1822; OD]. Based on a poorly preserved specimen said to be from Pliocene of Italy and on an unlabeled specimen believed to be from the Mio.-Plio. of the Balearic Islands, both resembling Ocypodidae, subfam. Macropluminae.

*Lambropsis* LÖRENTHEY, 1909 [*\*L. wanneri*; OD]. Carapace small, oval; front projecting, orbits with 2 supraorbital fissures, fronto-orbital margin more than 0.5 width of carapace; regions well marked, cardiac and branchial regions with transverse sculpture. [Assigned by LÖRENTHEY to Parthenopidae, by BEURLEN to Xanthidae; also resembling *Pseudodromilites* BEURLEN.] *M.Eoc.*, Egypt.

*Lissopsis* FRITSCH, 1887 [*\*L. transiens*; OD]. *U. Cret.*, Czech.

*Martinocarcinus* BÖHM, 1922 [*\*M. ickeae*; OD]. *U.Eoc.*, Java.

*Microcorystes* LÖRENTHEY, 1928 [*non* FRITSCH,



Charassocarcinus

FIG. 340. Family Uncertain (p. R532).

1893] [*\*M. latifrons*; OD]. Based on a single, small, incomplete carapace which was lost. *U. Mio.*, Hung.

*Oedisoma* BELL, 1858 [*\*O. ambiguum*; OD]. Carapace small, ovoid, convex, smooth, with rounded lateral margins, posterior margin deeply concave; orbits large, gastric regions distinct, branchial regions inflated. *L.Eoc.*, Eng.

*Palaeoplax* A. MILNE-EDWARDS & BROCCHI, 1879 [*\*Goneplax incerta* DESMAREST, 1822; OD]. Based on single worn specimen. *Subrec.*, IndoPac.

*Psammograpsus* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1860 (*nom. nud.*) [*\*P. parisiensis* (*nom. nud.*)]. *U.Eoc.*, N. Fr.

*Pseudomicippe* PELSENEER, 1886 (*non* HELLER, 1861) [*\*P. granulosa*; OD]. Unrecognizable fragment. *U.Senon.*, Neth.

*Semiranina* BACHMAYER, 1954 [*\*S. oroszyi*; OD]. Described as small raninid carapace; affinities uncertain. *U.Mio.*, Aus.

*Vanua* RATHBUN, 1945 [*\*V. linearius*; OD]. *Plio.*, Fiji.

## DECAPODA

### of uncertain systematic position or validity

*Brome* VON MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*B. ventrosa*; SD GLAESSNER, herein]. Unrecognizable. *U.Jur.*, Ger.

*Charassocarcinus*<sup>1</sup> VAN STRAELEN, 1925 [*\*Stenochirus? mayalis* E. EUDES-DESLONGCHAMPS, 1877]. Carapace elongate, widening posteriorly; rostrum broadly triangular, with median keel at its base; orbits semicircular, with extraorbital teeth; cervical, postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves well developed, with additional furrows joining the branchiocardiac grooves, and also on anterior part; surface tuberculate. [Considered by EUDES-DESLONGCHAMPS as a macruran, by VAN STRAELEN provisionally as a brachyuran of the Homolodromiidae, by GLAESSNER (1933) as a galatheid. It is insufficiently known but appears to have either galatheid or palinurid affinities.] *M.Jur.* (*Bajoc.*), N.Fr.—FIG. 340,1. *\*C. mayalis* (EUDES-DESLONGCHAMPS); carapace, dorsal,  $\times 1$  (re-drawn from 296). [This genus now is judged to belong in Tanaidacea.]

<sup>1</sup> See page R628.

**Lupeites** FRITSCH, 1887 [*\*L. granulatus*; OD]. Unrecognizable fragment. *U.Cret.*, Czech.

**Olinacaris** VAN STRAELEN, 1925 [*\*O. carinatus*; OD]. Carapace small, with median ridge anteriorly; rostrum wide at base, medially grooved; cervical and branchiocardiac grooves V-shaped; posterior margin concave. [Placed by its author in the Erymidae, by GLAESSNER (1929) in the Galatheidae. Also resembles *Gastrodorus*.] *M.Jur.* (*Bajoc.*), Fr.

### GENERA QUESTIONABLY

#### ASSIGNED TO THE DECAPODA

**Liocaris** VAN STRAELEN, 1925 [*\*L. quadratus*; OD]. Carapace smooth, convex, 2 mm. long, with small

rostrum, median groove, and transverse groove behind first  $\frac{1}{3}$  of its length. *M.Jur.* (*Bajoc.*), Fr.

**Tropifer** GOULD, 1857 [*\*T. laevis*; OD]. Carapace smooth, elongate, 6 mm. long, lateral margins carinate, parallel; posterior margins concave; rostrum short, blunt, eyes at anterolateral angles, large; surface with median and lateral longitudinal carinae; these cross cervical groove; abdomen medially keeled, with pleura. [WOODS (1925) placed this genus in the Eryonidea but it could belong to the Mysidacea (Lophogastridae).] *U. Trias.* (*Rhaet.*), Eng.

#### ADDENDUM TO DECAPODA

Information received too late for placement here is given on page R626.

## HOPLOCARIDA

By R. C. MOORE

### Superorder HOPLOCARIDA Calman, 1904

[Diagnosis (mainly based on CALMAN, 1909, p. 149)]

Head with two movable anterior somites bearing pedunculate eyes and triramous antennules; antennae with protopod of two segments; mandible without lacinia mobilis. Cephalothorax partly covered by well-developed carapace, at least four thoracic somites distinctly visible behind it; first five pairs of thoracopods subchelate, second to fifth pairs subequal or with second pair developed as powerful raptorial claws and distinctly larger than others, posterior thoracopods with protopod of three segments (relation of anterior thoracopod segments to those of other limbs doubtful). Abdomen bearing pleopods with appendix interna; telson with fixed median spine, and with or without styliform furca or broad carinate tailpiece lacking fixed spine and furca. Heart much elongated, extend-

ing through thoracic and abdominal regions; hepatic caeca highly ramified; spermatozoa spherical; development with metamorphosis, free-swimming nauplius stage not present. [Marine.] *L.Carb.-Rec.*

The Hoplocarida are represented mainly by the Stomatopoda, known from Jurassic to Recent, but they include also a small antecedent group of much importance named Palaeostomatopoda, which are known from late Paleozoic (Carboniferous) fossils. The palaeostomatopods are less specialized than the stomatopods and are inferred to be the ancestral stock of the Hoplocarida, or at least a closely related derivative of it.

The Hoplocarida differ especially from the Peracarida in better development of the carapace and in various features of their appendages. The Eucarida differ in having a large carapace fused to the cephalothorax and covering all this part of the body.

## PALAEOSTOMATOPODA

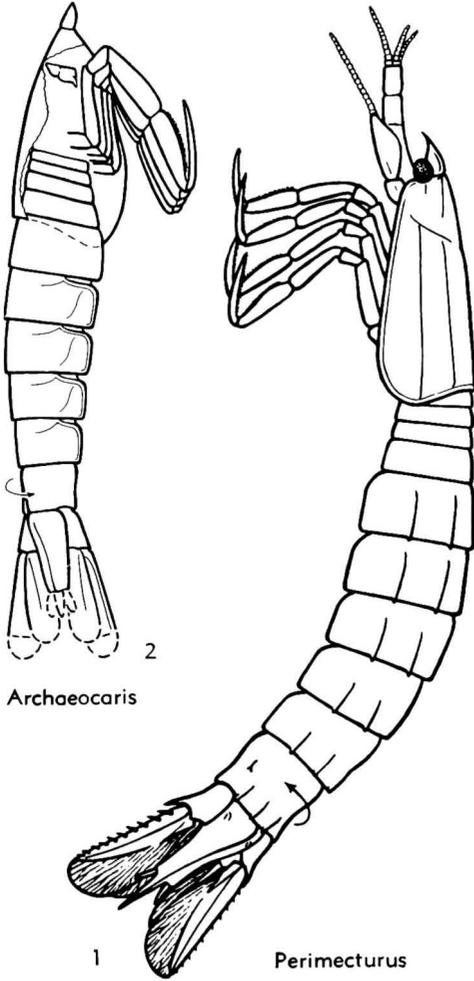
By H. K. BROOKS

[University of Florida]  
[Chapter submitted August, 1964]

Extinct hoplocarids grouped in the order Palaeostomatopoda are distinguished by having the subchelate thoracic appendages (second to fifth pairs) of subequal size and

the telson with a fixed median spine and styliform furca.

These forms originally were classified by PEACH (1908) with the Mysidacea on the



absence of a marsupium and the presence of triramous antennules. Thus these fossils actually belong to the ancestral hoplocarid stock.

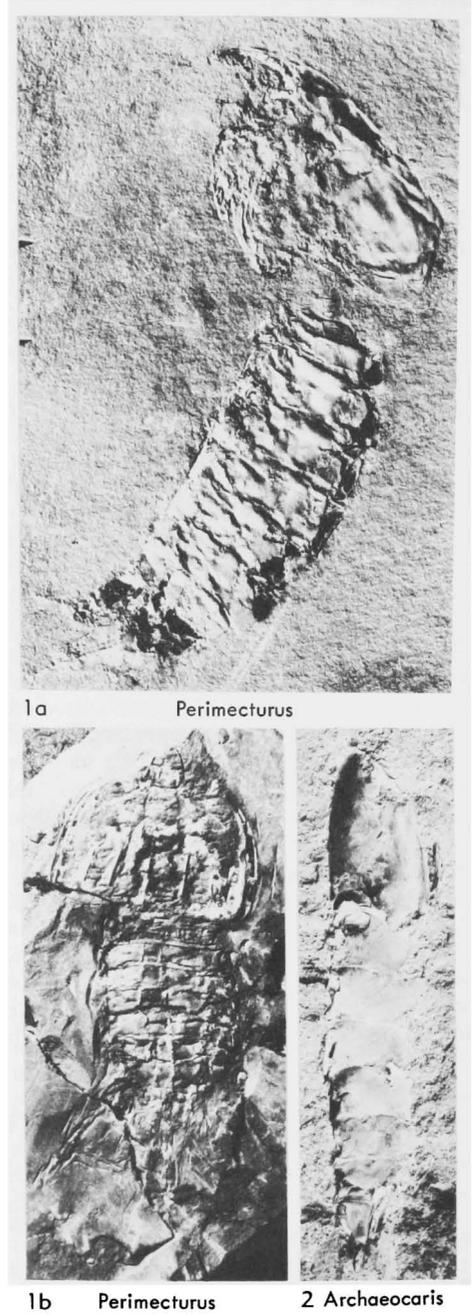


FIG. 341. Reconstruction of Palaeostomatopoda.—  
 1. *Perimecturus elegans* PEACH, L.Carb., Scot.;  $\times 1.3$ .  
 —2. *Archaeocaris vermiformis* MEEK, Miss., USA  
 (Ky.);  $\times 3$ .

presumption that *Perimecturus* possessed a marsupium. Subchelate appendages were discovered (BROOKS, 1962) on *Archaeocaris* (Fig. 341,2) and subsequently have been seen on specimens of *Perimecturus* (Fig. 341,1) (e.g., *P. fraiponti* VAN STRAELEN, 1922).

The questionable marsupium and the biramous antennules portrayed by PEACH (226) led BROOKS (55) to refer these fossils to the superorder Eocarida. Restudy of European specimens by him has proved the

FIG. 342. Palaeostomatopoda, Perimecturidae (p. R534).

## Order PALAEOSTOMATOPODA Brooks, 1962

Thoracopods subchelate, second to fifth pairs subequal, telson with fixed median spine and styliform furca. *L.Carb.(Miss.)-U.Carb.*

### Family PERIMECTURIDAE Peach, 1908

Characters of order. *L.Carb.(Miss.)-U.Carb.*

*Perimecturus* PEACH, 1908, p. 39 [*\*Anthrapalaemon parki* PEACH, 1882, p. 78; OD] [= *Anthracomyia*

VAN STRAELEN, 1922, p. 39 (type, *A. rostrata*; OD, = *Anthrapalaemon parki*) (obj.)]. Carapace not covering last 4 thoracic somites; protopod of uropod with strong lateral spine; exopod with heavily chitinized outer margin and inner lobe membranous, with reticulate pattern; endopod of uropod reduced. *L.Carb.-U.Carb.*, Eu. (Scot.-Belg.). —FIG. 342,1a. *P. elegans* PEACH, *L.Carb.*, Scot.;  $\times 1.3$  (55). —FIG. 342,1b. *\*P. parki* (PEACH), *L.Carb.*, Scot.;  $\times 0.7$  (55).

*Archaeocaris* MEEK, 1872, p. 335 [*\*A. vermiformis*; OD]. Carapace smooth, covering all thoracic somites; uropods with lobate rami. *Miss.*, N.Am. (Ky.-Okla.). —FIG. 342,2. *\*A. vermiformis*, USA(Ky.);  $\times 3$  (55).

## STOMATOPODA

By L. B. HOLTHUIS<sup>1</sup> and RAYMOND B. MANNING<sup>2</sup>

[<sup>1</sup>Rijksmuseum van Natuurlijke Historie, Leiden; <sup>2</sup>United States National Museum (Contribution from The Marine Laboratory, Institute of Marine Science, University of Miami; stomatopod studies supported by NSF Grants G-11235 and GB-389)]  
[Chapter submitted September, 1963]

### MORPHOLOGY

#### BODY

The body of the Stomatopoda, like that of most Malacostraca, is divided into three sections: cephalon, thorax, and abdomen. The cephalon consists of an acron and five body somites; the thorax is formed of eight somites and the abdomen of six somites and a telson (Fig. 343).

Each somite is enclosed in a chitinous calcified exoskeleton. The dorsal part of

the exoskeleton of each somite is named tergite, the two lateral parts pleurites, and the ventral part sternite. The tergites of all somites together form the tergum and the sternites together comprise the sternum. The pleurites are usually indicated with the name pleura (sing., pleuron). Usually no distinct lines of separation are visible between the tergite, sternite, and pleurites of one somite.

Each somite bears one pair of appendages which are implanted between the pleurite

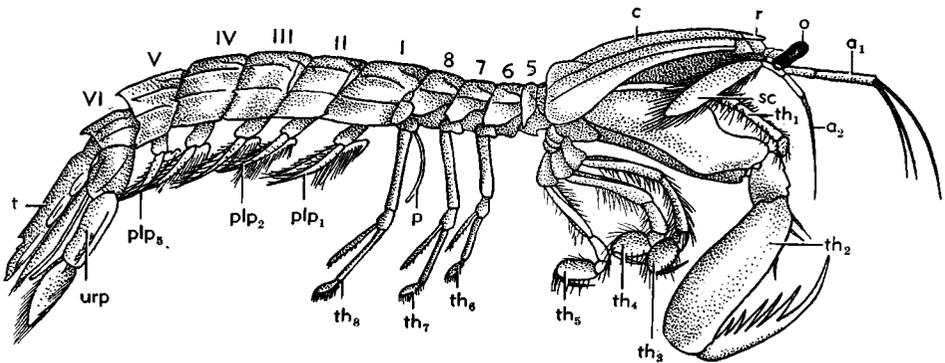


FIG. 343. *Squilla mantis*, ♂, Rec., Medit. (65). [Explanation: 5-8, fifth to eighth thoracic somites; I-VI, first to sixth abdominal somites; *a*<sub>1</sub>, antennule; *a*<sub>2</sub>, antenna; *c*, carapace; *o*, eye; *p*, penis; *plp*<sub>1-3</sub>, first to fifth pleopods; *r*, rostrum; *sc*, scaphocerite; *t*, telson; *th*<sub>1-8</sub>, first to eighth thoracopods; *urp*, uropod.]

and the sternite. The appendages consist of a single **protopod**, which bifurcates distally in branches termed **exopod** and **endopod** (Fig. 344,C). The protopod is composed of three segments (precoxa, coxa, and

basis, the first being mostly fused with the body). The endopod is formed by five segments (ischium, merus, carpus, propodus, dactylus) (Fig. 344,B). The exopod may consist of a number of segments, but

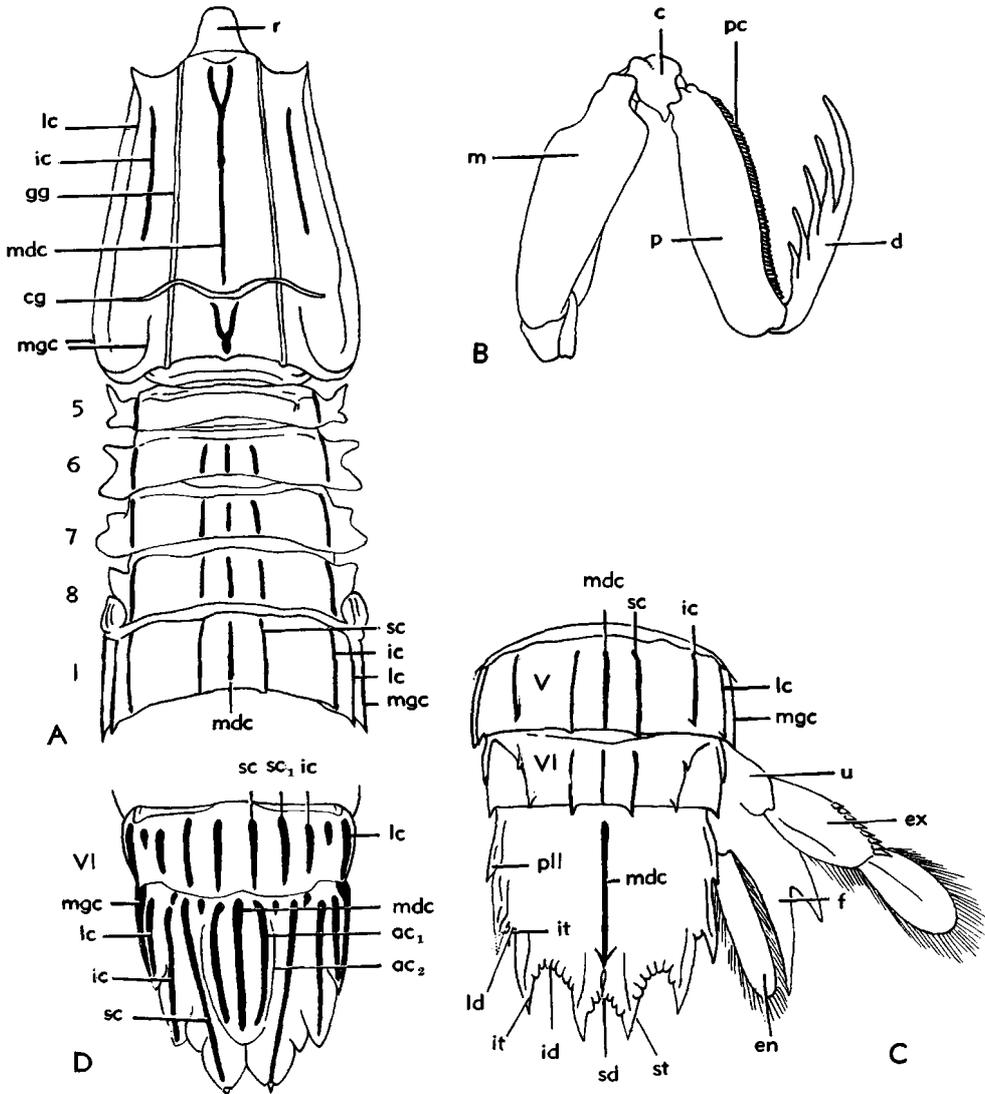


FIG. 344. *Squilla* sp. (A-C); *Odontodactylus* sp. (D).—A, thorax and first abdominal somite, dorsal; B, raptorial claw (second thoracopod); C, telson and last two abdominal somites, dorsal; D, telson and sixth abdominal somite (45). [Explanation: 5-8, fifth to eighth thoracic somites; I, V, VI, first, fifth and sixth abdominal somites; ac<sub>1</sub>-ac<sub>2</sub>, first and second accessory median carinae; c, carpus; cg, cervical groove; d, dactylus; en, endopod; ex, exopod; f, forked process; gg, gastric groove; ic, intermediate carina; id, intermediate denticle; it, intermediate tooth; lc, lateral carina; ld, lateral denticle; lt, lateral tooth; m, (ischio-) merus; mdc, median carina; mgc, marginal carina; p, propodus; pc, pectination of propodus; pll, prelateral lobe; r, rostrum; sc, submedian carina; sc<sub>1</sub>, accessory submedian carina; sd, submedian denticle; st, submedian tooth; u, uropod (164).

commonly is reduced or entirely absent. The coxa may be provided on its outer margin with an appendage (**epipod**). **Endites** may be present on the inner margin of the coxa, basis, and ischium.

The acron (also named ophthalmic somite) and the antennular (=first cephalic) somite are not covered by the carapace. The other cephalic somites (second to fifth) and the first four thoracic somites are more or less distinctly fused and covered by the carapace. The carapace is a large unsegmented dorsal shield which covers the above-mentioned fused somites and overhangs (but does not enclose) the bases of the first five thoracopods (Fig. 343). Anteriorly it bears a flattened median rostrum, with which it is articulated. The rostrum is a small, usually triangular plate, which partly or entirely covers the ophthalmic and antennular somites; in some forms it ends in one or more spines.

The outer surface of the carapace is marked by two distinct longitudinal grooves (gastric grooves) which start on either side of the base of the rostrum and extend to the posterior margin of the carapace. A usually very distinct transverse **cervical groove** is visible in the posterior half of the carapace. Apart from these grooves, the upper surface of the carapace may be ornamented with a number of longitudinal **carinae**: a median carina, which may bifurcate anteriorly, before and behind the cervical groove; two lateral carinae, which extend backward from the anterolateral angle of the carapace nearly to the posterior margin; two intermediate carinae in the anterior part of the carapace between the **gastric groove** and the lateral carinae; and two marginal carinae which extend along the lateral margin of the carapace and may curve inward and forward near their posterior end, forming a loop around the end of the lateral carina (Fig. 344, *A*). Gastric grooves are present in all Stomatopoda but the cervical groove and carinae may be indistinct or even partly or entirely absent.

The last four thoracic somites (fifth to eighth) are free and not covered by the carapace; in some, parts of the fused thoracic somites are also visible behind the carapace. All six abdominal somites are free and well developed (Fig. 343). The

free thoracic and the first five abdominal somites may show eight longitudinal carinae (two submedian, two intermediate, two lateral, and two marginal); the sixth abdominal somite usually has but six carinae (Fig. 344, *D*). These carinae may end in posterior spines. Part or all of the carinae may be absent, while in some species secondary ridges are placed between the original eight carinae.

The telson is well developed; in some it is fused with the sixth abdominal somite. As a rule it shows six large teeth along its margin (two submedian, two intermediate, and two lateral); anterior to each lateral tooth the margin may show a prelateral lobe. Some forms possess denticles between the marginal large teeth; those between the submedian teeth are called submedian denticles; intermediate denticles are placed between the submedian and intermediate teeth; usually a single lateral denticle is found between the intermediate and lateral teeth (Fig. 344, *D*). The tips of the submedian teeth may bear a movable spinule. In the genus *Scudda* the margin of the telson is provided with movable spines. The telson may show several longitudinal carinae (one median, one or more pairs of submedians, one pair of intermediates, one pair of laterals, and one pair of marginals); additional longitudinal or irregular carinae may be present. In some forms the telson is ornamented with spines, bosses, or grooves, or may have a quite aberrant form.

## APPENDAGES

The eyes, which are placed on the acron (ophthalmic somite) are well developed and stalked; their cornea may be very wide, so that the eyes are T-shaped, but also they may be strongly reduced.

The antennules consist of a three-segmented peduncle and two flagella, the ventral one of which is deeply cleft and divided into two slender branches, so that three flagella actually occur (Fig. 343).

The antennae have a two-segmented peduncle and a two-segmented exopod; the first segment of the exopod is short, the second large, flat and oval, forming the so-called antennal scale or scaphocerite. The

endopod consists of a peduncle of three segments and a many-jointed flagellum.

The mandibles are borne by the third cephalic somite. They are heavy and calcareous and consist of a basal pars molaris and a toothed pars incisiva; a palp may be present or absent.

The maxillules (also known as first maxillae) are carried by the fourth cephalic somite. They consist of two segments (coxa and basis), each with a distinct endite; an exopod is absent, while the endopod is visible as an unsegmented short palp.

The appendages of the fifth cephalic somite are the maxillae (or second maxillae). They consist of four segments, the first of which is more or less cylindrical and the others flattened; the first and second segments are each provided with an endite, that of the second segment being bilobed.

Appendages of the first five thoracic somites are commonly named maxillipeds, but it seems better to use the term thoracopods in order to avoid confusion. The thoracopods consist of seven segments designated as precoxa, coxa, basis, ischimerus (fused ischium and merus forming a single segment usually named merus), carpus, propodus, and dactylus. No exopod occurs, except in some early larvae. An epipod may be present at the outside of the base of these legs. In all first five thoracopods the dactylus and propodus together form a subchela.

The first thoracopods are very slender and their subchelae very short and small.

The second thoracopods are the strongest of all, forming powerful raptorial claws which are the main offensive and defensive weapons of the animal (Fig. 343). Their dactylus is elongate, commonly armed with teeth on the side that closes against the propodus, which is heavy and may also be provided with spines or teeth on the side turned toward the dactylus. The teeth of the propodus may be of two kinds—well-spaced, slender and sharp, or short and blunt, placed so close together that no interspaces are left. Strong and sharp movable spines may be present also on the basal part of the inner surface of the pro-

podus. Prey is caught between the dactylus and propodus, which come together like a pocket-knife (similar to the raptorial claw of a praying-mantis); the teeth and spines help to get a better hold of the captured animal. The carpus is short but the ischimerus is elongate and heavy.

The third, fourth, and fifth pairs of thoracopods are very similar, being more robust than the first but very much shorter and less powerful than the second. They are used for breaking up food and for bringing it to the mouth.

The last three thoracopods (sixth to eighth) are of an entirely different shape and completely lack subchelae. Their protopod consists of three cylindrical segments, of which the second is longer and more slender than the other two; the exopod consists of two segments and the endopod of one or two segments. The segments of the exopod are elongate, being stronger and longer than those of the endopod, the first of which is very short, the second narrow and slender or oval in shape.

In males a long tube-shaped copulatory organ protrudes from the inner side of the basal segment of the protopod of the last thoracopod.

The appendages of the first five abdominal somites (pleopods) are laminar (Fig. 343). Their protopod consists of a single segment, while the exo- and endopods also consist of a single flat segment. The endopod bears an appendix on the inner margin (appendix interna or stylamblys); at the end of this appendix are some retinacula with which the left appendix can attach itself to the right. The exopods bear the branchiae, which are implanted in the basal part of their anterior surface.

In males the endopod of the first pleopods is somewhat modified for copulation. Its modifications include a large appendix interna with retinacula, a hook-shaped process and a tube-shaped process. The exopod of the second pleopod of the males shows an incision in the distal margin, while a strong rib extends from this incision proximally.

The appendages of the sixth abdominal somite, termed uropods, together with the

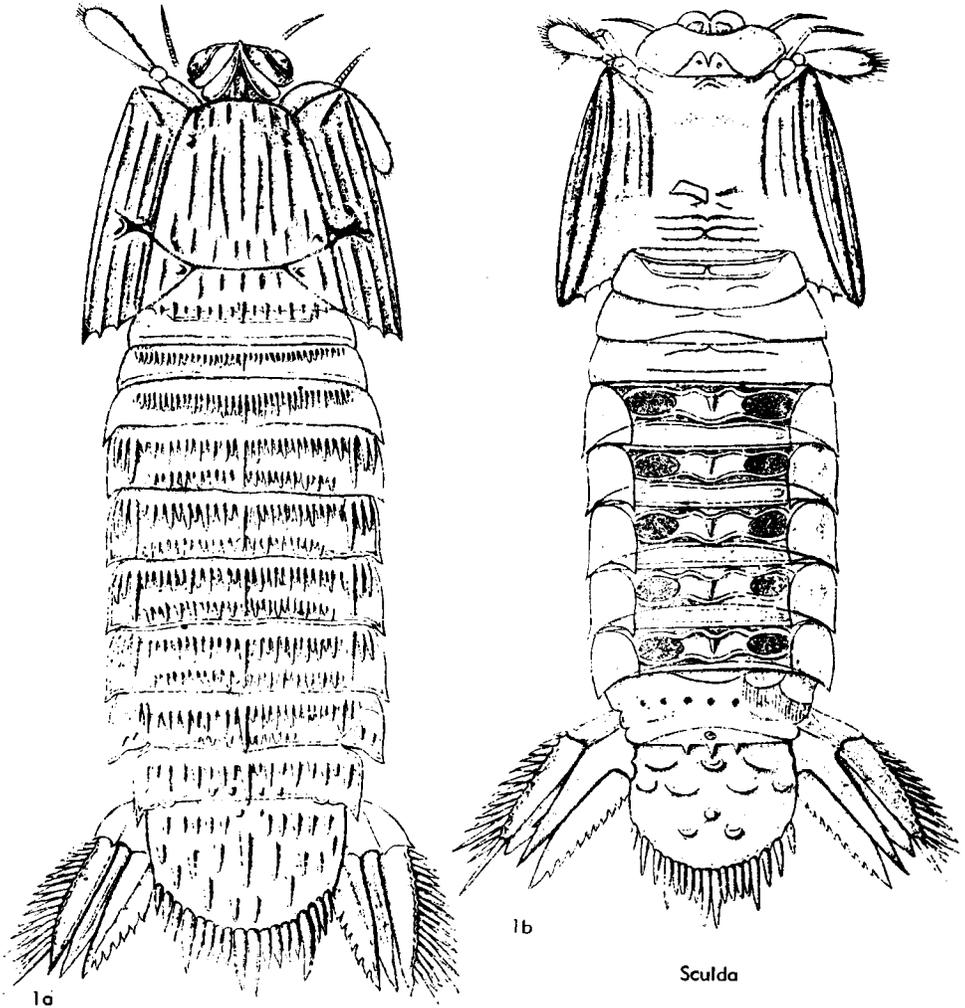


FIG. 345. Sculdidae (p. R546).

telson form the tail fan (Fig. 343; 344,C,D). The protopod consists of one segment and the endopod also is one-segmented; the exopod is formed of one (Sculdidae) or two segments (Squillidae). The protopod is ventrally prolonged between the bases of the exo- and endopod into a process which may end in two sharp teeth, but may also have a different shape. The basal segment of the exopod is armed on its outer margin with movable teeth, which may be blunt; the second segment of the exopod, as well as the endopod, are unarmed.

#### SIZE

Representatives of the fossil family Sculdidae are small to medium-sized. Species of *Sculda* may attain a length of 46 mm. and specimens of *Pseudosculda* 55 mm. in length are known; the "larval" genera *Pseuderichthus* and *Clausia* are respectively up to 24 and 50 mm. long. The smallest squillid is *Hoplosquilla acanthurus* (TATTERSALL), which is 10 to 11.5 mm. long, and the largest are species of *Harpiosquilla* and *Lysiosquilla*, which may become more than 300 mm. in length.

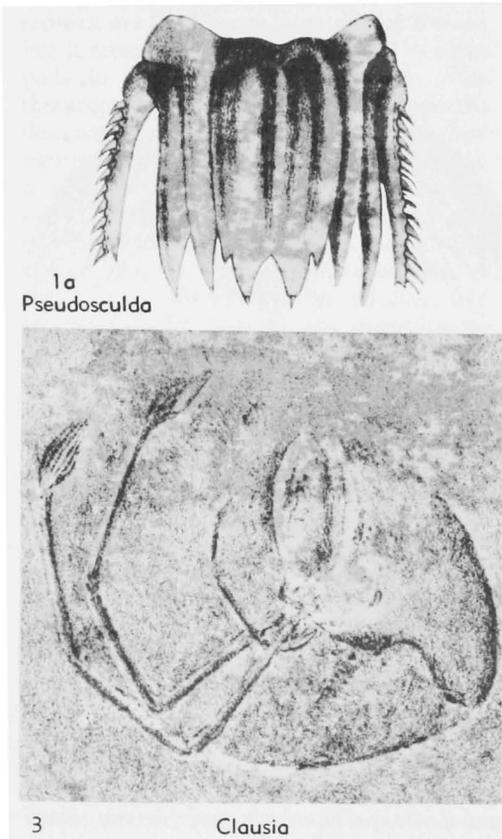
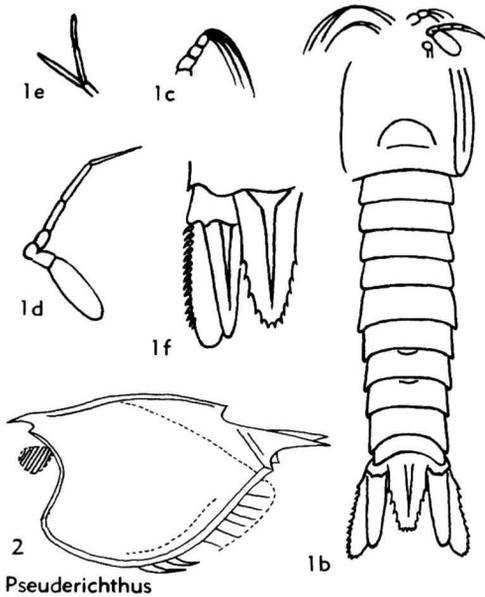


FIG. 346. Scudidae (p. R546).

## ONTOGENY

The Stomatopoda are oviparous. The eggs, which are carried between the third and fifth thoracopods, hatch either in the antizoea or in the pseudozoea stages, and pass through a number of pelagic stages before attaining the first postlarval (or littoral) stage. The larvae are of various types and so strongly different from the adults that they have been described as distinct genera (*Erichthus*, *Alima*, *Smerdis*, etc.) and even considered to represent a distinct family (Erichthidae). The entire development is known for only a few species of stomatopods; most described "larval species" have not yet been assigned to corresponding adult species. Some fossils have been interpreted as stomatopod larvae (*Protozoea*, *Clausia*, *Pseuderichthus*), but their status remains doubtful. VAN STRAELEN (1938) has reported on fossils from the Upper Cretaceous of Lebanon identified only as stomatopod larvae.

## HABITAT AND DISTRIBUTION

Stomatopods are almost exclusively marine. A few species have been reported from brackish water, but these are exceptions. Most of them inhabit shallow water, but deep-sea forms are known; the greatest known depth from which a living stomatopod has been taken is 500-520 fathoms (900-936 m.), viz., *Bathysquilla microps*.

Stomatopods are practically restricted to tropical and subtropical seas, in which they are found all over the world. A few species extend into temperate seas (*Squilla desmarestii*, found northward into the southern North Sea; *S. empusa* and *Nannosquilla grayi* north to Massachusetts, USA; *S. oratoria*, as far north as Hokkaido, Japan; *Pseudosquillopsis lessonii* and *Hemisquilla ensigera*, as far north as southern California). Southward the range of the Stomatopoda extends to South Australia, South Africa, and the Cape Horn region.

## GEOLOGICAL DISTRIBUTION

Fossil remains of stomatopods are scarce and usually very imperfectly preserved. The oldest finds which can be identified with

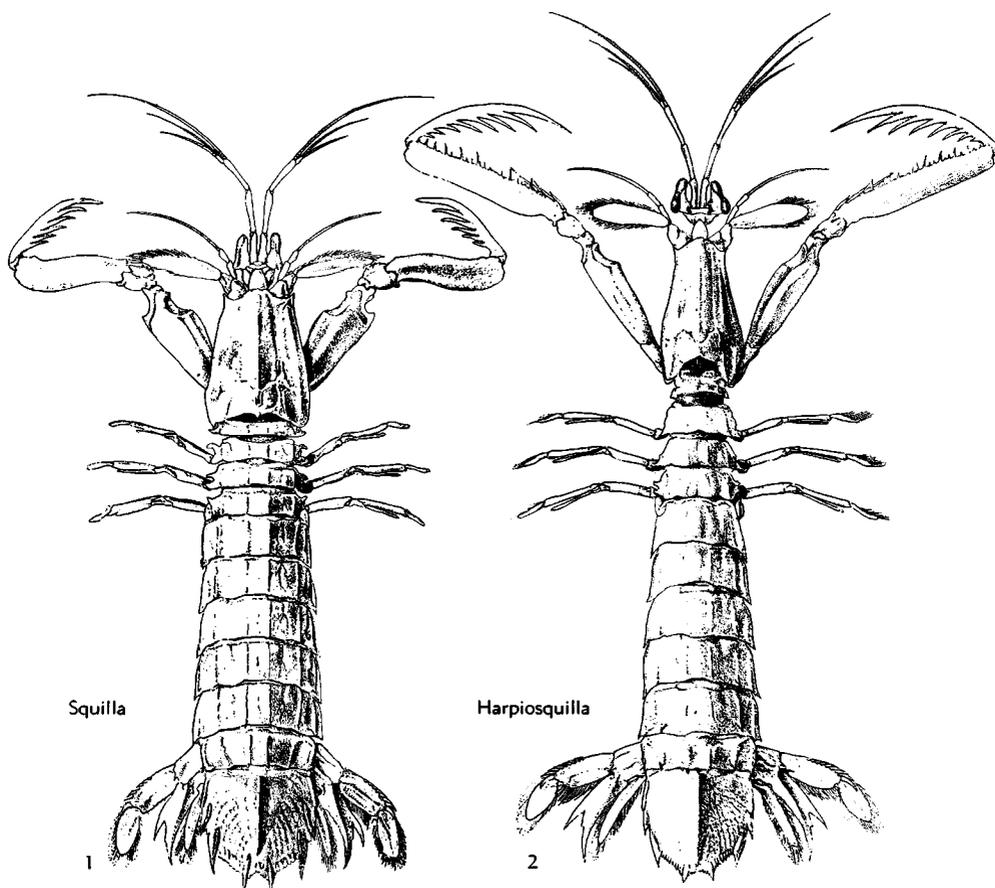


FIG. 347. Squillidae (p. R546-R549).

certainty as belonging to this group are from the Upper Jurassic, three species of *Sculda* having been found in the lithographic limestone of Solenhofen, Bavaria. The genus *Sculda* is found in the Cretaceous, where *Pseudosculda* also made appearance. True Squillidae also are known from the Upper Cretaceous, for BERRY (22) has described from beds of this age in Angola a squillid named *Chloridella angolia*, which may belong to the genus *Squilla*. REMY & AVNIMELECH (249) described a new species, *Eryon yehoachi*, from the Upper Cretaceous (Campanian) of Israel. As pointed out by Dr. M. F. GLAESSNER (in litt.), the figure shows that the specimen is not an eryonid but a stomatopod, of which only the telson and part of the sixth abdominal somite are preserved. The specimen may well belong

to the genus *Squilla*, but it is too incomplete for certain identification.

Fossils described as *Squilla cretacea* (SCHLÜTER, 1868), from the Cretaceous of West Germany, and *S. antiqua* (MÜNSTER, 1842), from the Eocene of northern Italy, certainly do not represent *Squilla* but may belong to the Sculdidae; the available evidence is insufficient to decide this with certainty. *Squilla wetherelli* (WOODWARD, 1879), from the Eocene of England, and *Chloridella sonomana* (RATHBUN, 1926), probably from the Pliocene of California, may belong to *Squilla*. *Squilla*, *Hemisqueilla*, and *Gonodactylus*, all of which contain extant species, are represented by Tertiary fossils. As stated above, the true identity of *Squilla antiqua* MÜNSTER from the Eocene is unknown. *Squilla miocenica*

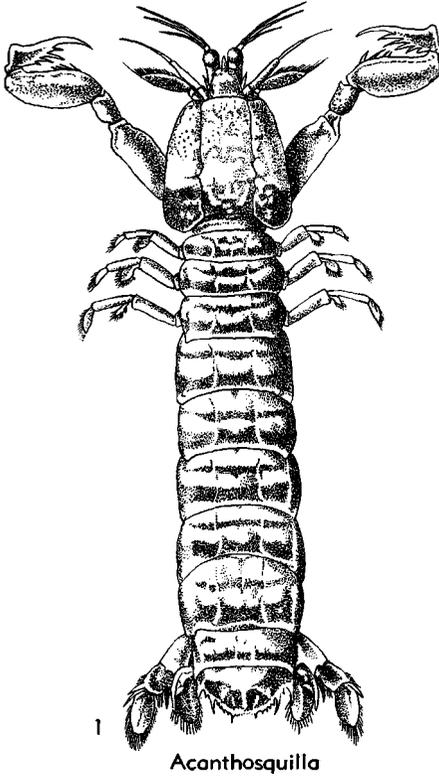


FIG. 348. Squillidae (p. R548).

LOVISATO, 1894, from the Miocene of Sardinia and Catalonia (Spain), is only known from raptorial dactyli and its generic identity is uncertain.

### CLASSIFICATION

LINNÉ (1758) placed the Stomatopoda, together with the Decapoda and some other groups, in the genus *Cancer*. FABRICIUS (1775) first removed them, together with the macrurous Decapoda, to the genus *Astacus* and later (1781) erected the genus *Squilla* to contain all stomatopods known at that time. LATREILLE (1802-03) was the first to separate the Stomatopoda from the Decapoda as a distinct group; he divided the Malacostraca into two orders, which he designated as Decapoda and Branchiogastra. The latter contained families named Squillares [Stomatopoda, Mysidacea] and

Gammarinae [Amphipoda]. In 1817 LATREILLE erected the order Stomatopodes which he restricted essentially to Stomatopoda as recognized today, for he transferred the mysids to his section Schizopodes of the order Decapoda. In 1819 LATREILLE also placed the genus *Phyllosoma* in the Stomatopoda [sic] and in 1825 divided this order into two families, Unipeltata [containing true Stomatopoda] and Bipeltata [*Phyllosoma*]. H. MILNE-EDWARDS (1837) divided the "famille des Unicuirassés" (=Unipeltata) in tribes named Erichthiens (containing three genera of larval stomatopods—*Squillerichthus*, *Alima*, *Erichthus*) and Squilliens (containing three genera of adult

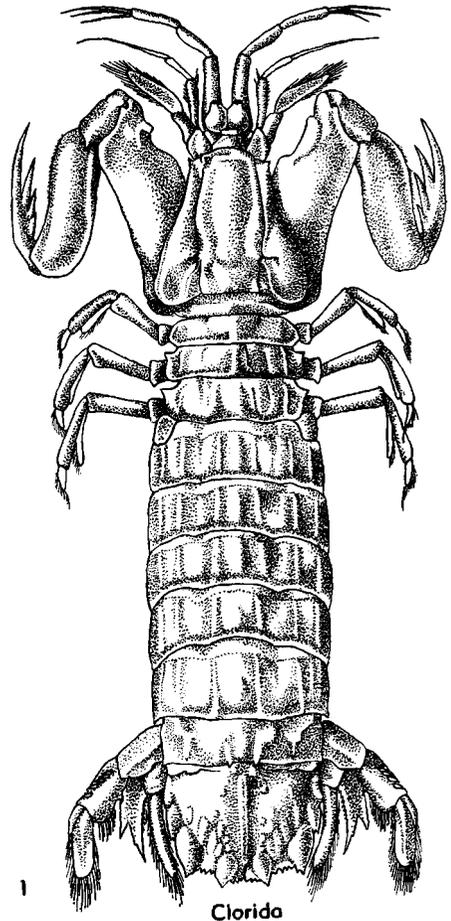


FIG. 349. Squillidae (p. R548).

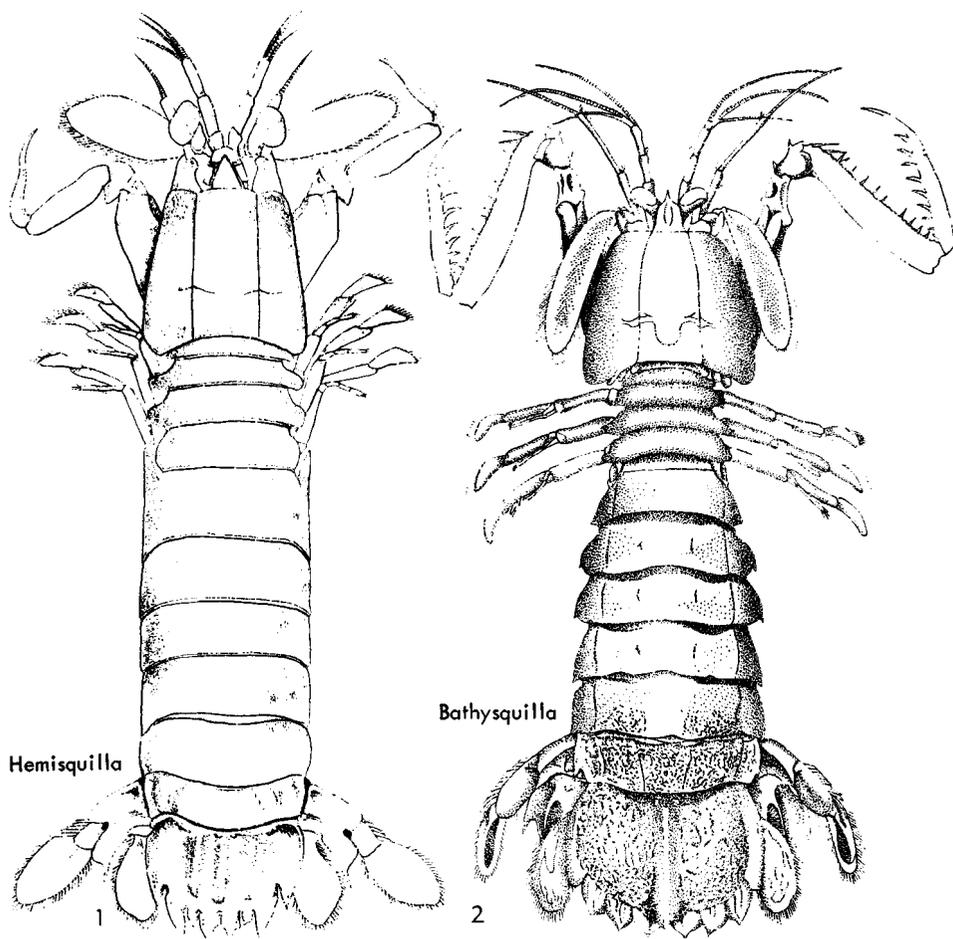


FIG. 350. Squillidae (p. R548-R550).

stomatopods—*Squilla*, *Gonodactylus*, *Coronis*). Later MILNE-EDWARDS (1852) restricted the order Stomatopoda [*sic*] to the true stomatopods. Since that time the order has been recognized by most carcinologists in its modern sense (i.e., as a separate taxon equal in rank to the Decapoda). In 1904 CALMAN divided the crustacean “series” Eumalacostraca into four “divisions,” one of which he named Hoplocarida, which contained the Stomatopoda as its only order; in this way CALMAN quite correctly emphasized the independence of the order and its great difference from the other crustacean orders.

Recent studies on the embryology (SHIHO, 1942) and internal morphology (SIEWING,

1956) of the Stomatopoda seem to indicate that they arose as an offshoot of the main malacostracan line sometime after the Nebaliacea.

Classification of the Stomatopoda is rather simple. The first attempt to divide the group was made by H. MILNE-EDWARDS (1837) when he recognized the tribes called Erichthiens and Squilliens. When it was found that the Erichthiens were merely the larvae of Squilliens, only one family, Squillidae, was recognized among Recent stomatopods, a situation which exists at present. DAMES (1886) erected the families Sculdidae and Pseudosculdidae for fossil stomatopods. KEMP (1913), in his important monograph of the Indo-West Pacific stomatopods,

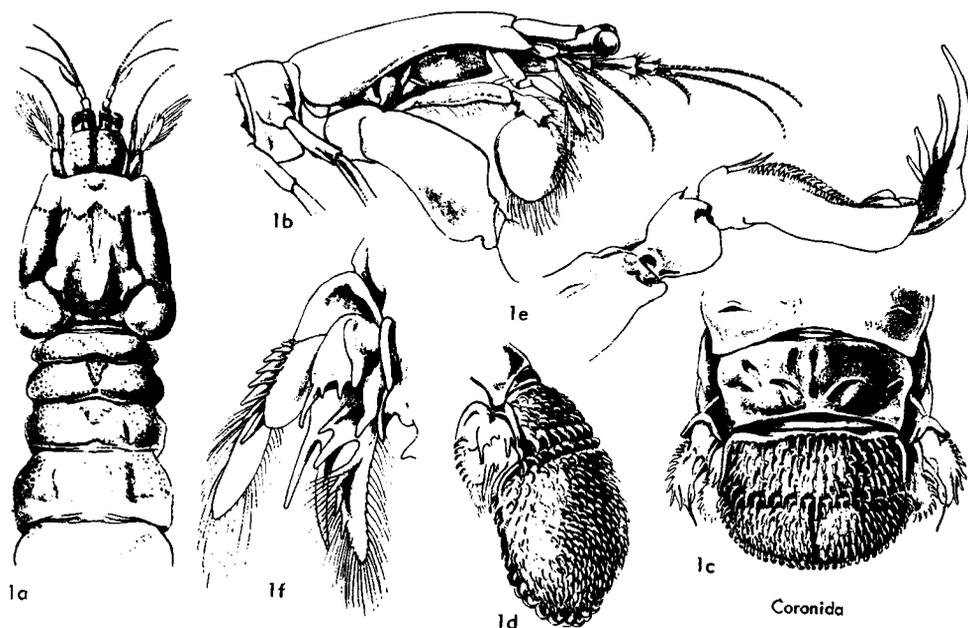


FIG. 351. Squillidae (p. R548).

recognized the Squillidae and Sculdidae, but ignored the Pseudosculdidae. Differences considered by some to distinguish the Sculdidae and Pseudosculdidae now are thought to be based on misinterpretation of fossil material, and thus evidence for keeping these families separate is insufficient.

The number of genera of Stomatopoda is limited. In all, only eight genera of fossil Stomatopoda have been proposed—*Sculda* (MÜNSTER, 1840), *Buria* (GIEBEL, 1857), *Necroscilla* (WOODWARD, 1879), *Pseudosculda* (DAMES, 1886), *Pseuderichthus* (DAMES, 1886), *Protozoa* (DAMES, 1886), *Clausia* (OPPENHEIM, 1888), and *Squillites* (SCOTT, 1938). Three of these have been removed subsequently from the Stomatopoda. GLAESSNER (1957, p. 178) and H. K. BROOKS (1962) have shown that *Necroscilla* is a synonym of *Pygocephalus* (HUXLEY, 1857), and BROOKS has demonstrated that *Squillites* is a syncarid. ROGER (1946) indicated that *Protozoa* (spelled by him incorrectly as *Protozoe*) is not a stomatopod but a branchiopod. *Buria* is a synonym of

*Sculda*. *Pseuderichthus* is of uncertain status and may be the larva of either *Sculda* or *Pseudosculda*, or for that matter, of another genus. *Clausia* is considered by some authors as possibly a sculdid larva, while others refuse to recognize it as a stomatopod; its status is highly dubious.

As to Recent Stomatopoda, 17 genera have been described on larval forms and 29 on adults. Until very lately the number of stomatopod genera recognized by carcinologists was about eight, but there is now a tendency to split the old, rather unwieldy genera, which often are assemblages of several not very closely related groups (SERÈNE, 269; MANNING, 190). In this chapter of the *Treatise* the most recent taxonomic partitions have been taken into account, and a total of 24 genera (including fossil and Recent) are recognized.

A tabulation of suprageneric divisions of the Stomatopoda showing their stratigraphic occurrence and numbers of contained genera is given on page R116.

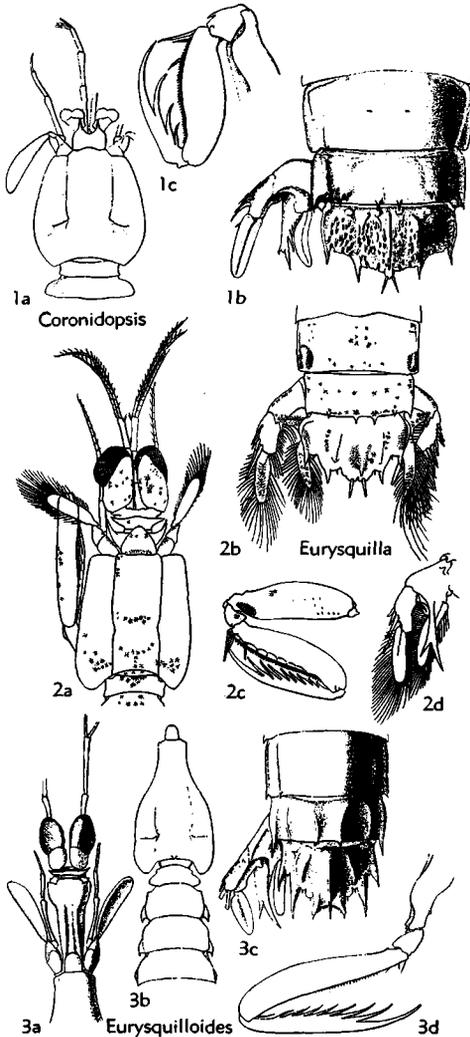


FIG. 352. Squillidae (p. R548-R549).

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

## Order STOMATOPODA

Latreille, 1817

[*nom. correct.* VOIGT, 1836, p. 188 (*pro* Stomapodes LATREILLE, 1817, p. 40)] [=Unipeltata LATREILLE, 1825, p. 283; Squilloidea DANA, 1852, p. 614; Squillacea, BOAS, 1883, p. 488]

Cephalothorax partly covered by well-developed carapace, both acron and antennular somite as well as four posterior thoracic somites being free, not covered by carapace; movable rostrum present; eyes

stalked. Protopods of antennae each composed of two segments and exopods likewise two-segmented; first five thoracopods subchelate, uniramous, second very strong, forming powerful raptorial claw, last three biramous and not chelate; thoracopods with protopod consisting of three segments. First five abdominal somites each bearing pair of pleopods which carry branchiae; each pleopod provided with appendix interna. [Stomatopods are oviparous. After oviposition the eggs are not fastened to the body, but carried between the third to fifth thoracopods or deposited in burrows made by these animals. Larval development includes a number of pelagic stages.] *Jur.-Rec.*

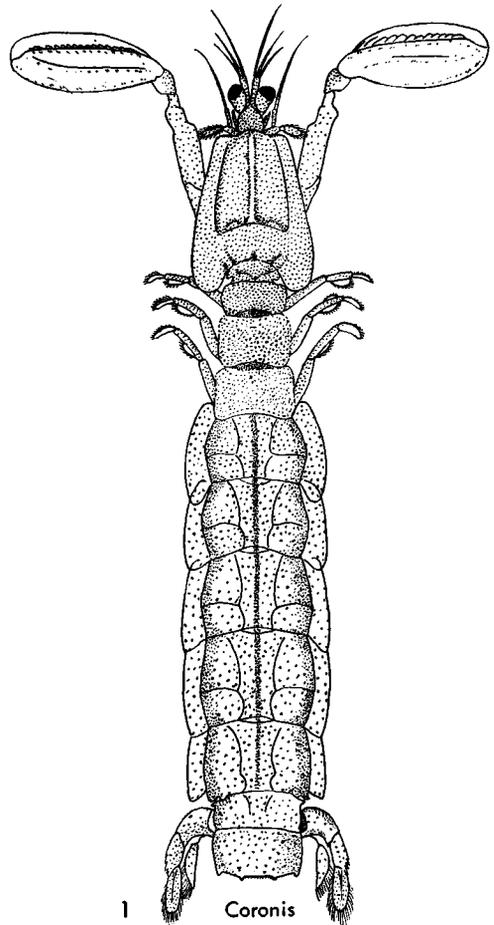
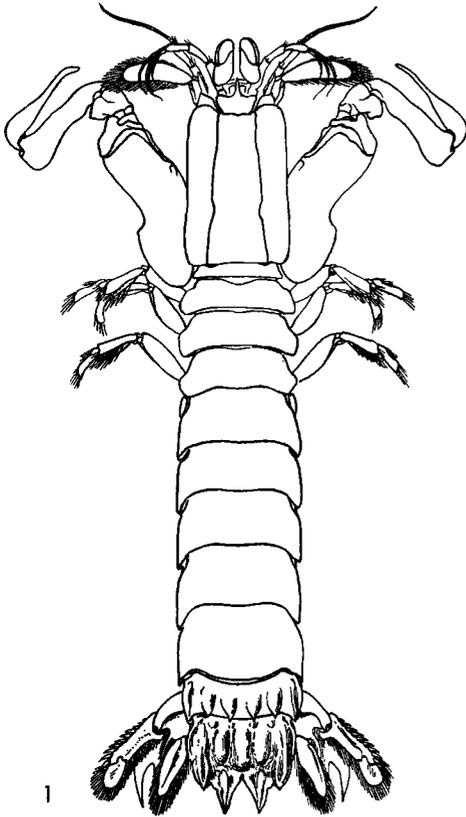


FIG. 353. Squillidae (p. R548).



Gonodactylus

FIG. 354. Squillidae (p. R549).

Family SCULDIDAE Dames, 1886

[Sculdidae DAMES, 1886, p. 565] [=Pseudosculdidae DAMES, 1886, p. 567]

Exopod of uropod consisting of single segment, with numerous movable spines on outer margin. *Jur.-Cret.*

*Sculda* MÜNSTER, 1840, p. 19 [\**S. pennata*; OD, M] [=*Buria* GIEBEL, 1857, p. 382 (type, *B. rugosa*)]. Telson wider than long, margin lacking teeth but with numerous movable spines; inner margin of uropodal exopod with teeth. *U. Jur.-U.Cret.*, Bavaria-Lebanon.—FIG. 345, *I*. \**S. pennata*, *U. Jur.*, Bavaria; *1a, b*, dorsal, ventral, approx.  $\times 3$  (169).

?*Clausia* OPPENHEIM, 1888, p. 713 [non *Clausia* CLAPARÈDE, 1863] [\**C. lithographica*; OD, M]. Larval stage of uncertain status. [Possibly not even a stomatopod.] *U. Jur.*, Bavaria.—FIG. 346, *3*. \**C. lithographica*; side view, approx.  $\times 2$  (220).

*Pseudericthus* DAMES, 1886, p. 571 [non *Pseu-*

*derichthus* BROOKS, 1886 (which has priority)] [\**P. cretaceus*; OD, M]. Larval stage, probably of one of foregoing genera. *U. Cret.*, Lebanon.—FIG. 346, *2*. \**P. cretaceus*; side view,  $\times 1.3$  (255). *Pseudosculda* DAMES, 1886, p. 566 [\**Sculda laevis* SCHLÜTER, 1872, p. 195; OD, M]. Telson longer than wide, with fixed teeth; inner margin of uropodal exopod without teeth. *Cret.*, Lebanon.—FIG. 346, *1*. \**P. laevis* (SCHLÜTER); *1a, f*, tail fan, enl. (255, 265); *1b*, animal, dorsal view, enl. (255); *1c*, antennule, enl. (255); *1d*, antenna, enl. (255); *1e*, 6th thoracopod, enl. (255).

Family SQUILLIDAE Latreille, 1803

[*nom. correct.* WHITE, 1847, p. 83 (pro *Squillares* LATREILLE, 1803, p. 36)] [=Saonides BILLBERG, 1820, p. 13; Erichthidae WHITE, 1847, p. 82; Chloridellidae RATHBUN, 1900, p. 155; Squillinae + Lysiosquillinae + Gonodactylinae GIESBRECHT, 1910, p. 148; Saoidae POULSEN, 1956, p. 133]

Exopod of uropod consisting of two segments, basal one bearing movable spines on outer margin. *Cret.-Rec.*

*Squilla* FABRICIUS, 1787, p. 333 [non *Squilla* GRONOVIVS, 1760; O. F. MÜLLER, 1776; SCOPOLI, 1777; O. FABRICIUS, 1780 (all suppressed by ICZN)] [\**Cancer mantis* LINNÉ, 1758, p. 633; SD LATREILLE, 1810, p. 422 (ICZN Official List, no. 619)] [=*Squilla* FABRICIUS, 1781, p. 514 (*nom.*

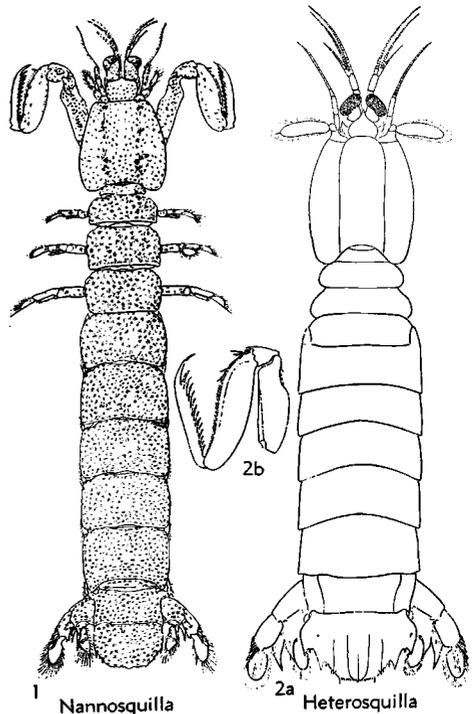


FIG. 355. Squillidae (p. R550-R551).

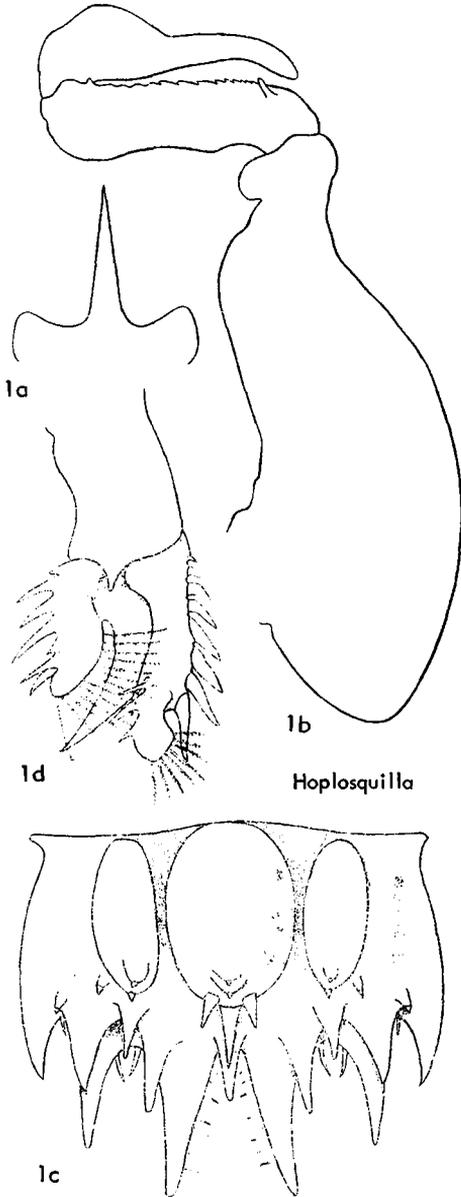


FIG. 356. Squillidae (p. R550-R551).

*nud.*) (obj.); *Entomon* LATREILLE, 1796, p. 197 (obj.); *Alima* LEACH in TUCKEY, 1817, unnumbered plate (type, *A. hyalina*); *Sao* BILLBERG, 1820, p. 135 (obj.); *Squillerichthus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837, p. 497 (type, *S. typus*); *Halimonectes* GUÉRIN in SAGRA, 1855, pl. 3, fig. 11 (type, *H. souleyetii*); *Hyalopelta* GUÉRIN in SAGRA, 1857, p. lxiv (type, *Alima tetracanthura* GUÉRIN,

1830, pl. 4; SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, herein); *Pterygosquilla* HILGENDORF, 1890, p. 172 (type, *P. laicauda*)]. Cornea broader than eye stalk; rostrum trapezoidal or triangular, without spines; cervical groove distinct; abdomen with longitudinal carinae; telson with sharp median carina; tips of submedian teeth movable or fixed; submedian denticles present, usually more than 4 intermediate denticles present; dactylus of raptorial claw with more than 3 teeth (including terminal one), upper margin of propodus with even pectination of closely placed, short, blunt spinules. ?*Cret.*, *Rec.*, cosmop. (tropical-temperate).—FIG. 343. \**S. mantis* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*, E.Atl.; lat. view, entire

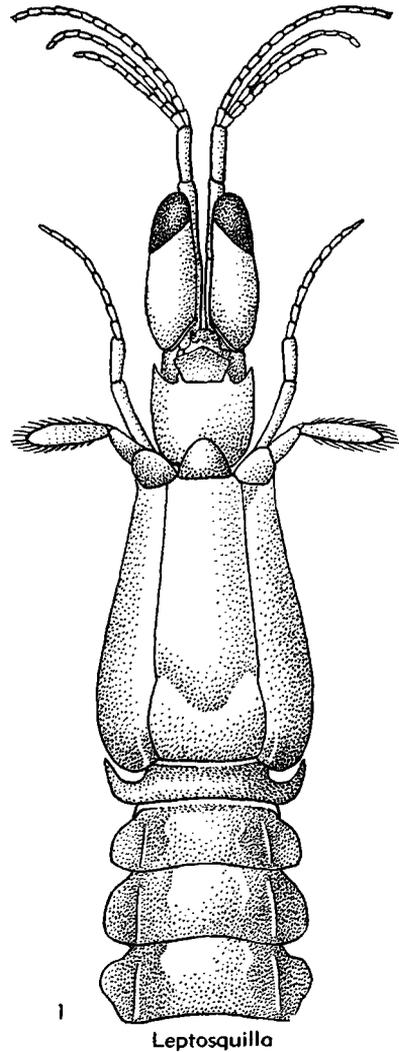


FIG. 357. Squillidae (p. R551).

animal, approx  $\times 1$  (65).—FIG. 347, *I. S. oratoria* DE HAAN, Rec., Japan; dorsal, approx.  $\times 1$  (137).

**Acanthosquilla** MANNING, 1963, p. 319 [*\*Lysiosquilla multifasciata* WOOD-MASON, 1895, p. 1; OD]. Similar to *Nannosquilla* but telson with dorsal row of 5 or more spines above posterior margin. Rec., circumtropic.—FIG. 348, *I. \*A. multifasciata* (WOOD-MASON), India; dorsal,  $\times 2$  (325).

**Bathysquilla** MANNING, 1963, p. 323 [*\*Lysiosquilla microps* MANNING, 1961, p. 693; OD]. Position uncertain; telson with blunt median carina and all 4 pairs of marginal teeth with movable apices. Rec., W.Atl.-Indo-W.Pac.—FIG. 350, *2. B. crassispinosa* (FUKUDA), Japan; dorsal,  $\times 0.45$  (102).

**Clorida** EYDOUX & SOULEYET, 1842, p. 264 [*\*C. latreillii*; SD FOWLER, 1912, p. 302] [= *Chloridus* DANA, 1852, p. 615 (*nom. null.*); *Chlorida* MIERS, 1880, p. 13 (*non* AUDINET-SERVILLE, 1834) (*nom. null.*); *Chloridella* MIERS, 1880, p. 13 (*nom. van.*) (obj.)]. Related to *Squilla* but distinguished by having eyes with stalk broader than cornea in combination with movable apices of submedian teeth of telson. Rec., Indo.-W.Pac.—FIG. 349, *1. \*C. latreillii* EYDOUX & SOULEYET, India; dorsal,  $\times 1.5$  (325).

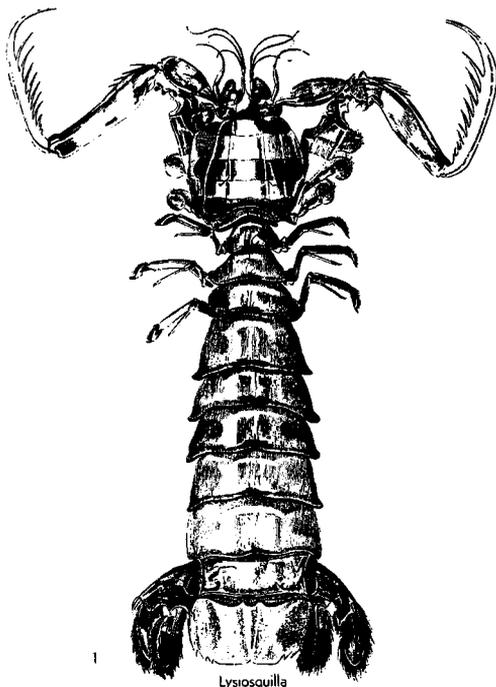


FIG. 358. Squillidae (p. R551).

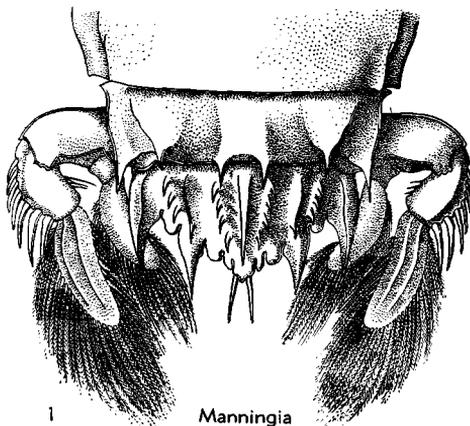


FIG. 359. Squillidae (p. R551).

**Coronida** BROOKS, 1886a, p. 84 [*\*Squilla bradyi* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1869, p. 137; SD BALSS, 1938, p. 130] [= *Coroniderichthus* HANSEN, 1895, p. 81 (obj.), SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, herein]. Similar to *Lysiosquilla*, but with 4 teeth on raptorial claw and telson armed with spinules, tubercles, or irregular carinae. Rec., circumtropic except W.Atl.—FIG. 351, *1. \*C. bradyi* (A. MILNE-EDWARDS), Cape Verde Is.; *1a, b*, ant. part of body, dorsal, lat.,  $\times 8$ ; *1c, d*, post. part of abdomen, dorsal, lat.,  $\times 8$ ; *1e*, raptorial claw,  $\times 10$ ; *1f*, uropod, ventral,  $\times 13$  (125).

**Coronidopsis** HANSEN, 1926, p. 19 [*\*C. bicuspis*; OD, M]. Similar to *Manningia* but rostrum with 2 apical spines. Rec., Indonesia.—FIG. 352, *1. \*C. bicuspis*; *1a*, ant. part of body,  $\times 3.5$ ; *1b*, post. part of abdomen,  $\times 4.5$ ; *1c*, raptorial claw,  $\times 4$  (143).

**Coronis** DESMAREST, 1823, p. 345 [*\*C. scolopendra* LATREILLE, 1828, p. 474; SM LATREILLE, 1828, p. 474]. As in *Nannosquilla* but telson without posterior false eave. Rec., W.Atl.—FIG. 353, *1. C. excavatrix* (BROOKS), off USA (N. Car.); dorsal,  $\times 2$  (60).

?**Erichthalima** BROOKS, 1886, p. 83 [*\*E. synthetica* BROOKS, 1886, p. 111; SM]. Based on larval stage of doubtful affinity. Rec., Atl.

**Eurysquilla** MANNING, 1963, p. 314 [*\*Lysiosquilla plumata* BIGELOW, 1901, p. 156; OD]. Like *Squilla* in having sharp median carina on telson but with less than 4 intermediate marginal denticles; also similar to *Manningia* but rostrum with at most single apical spine and dactylus of raptorial claw with more than 7 teeth. Rec., W.Atl.-E.Pac.-Gulf of Aden.—FIG. 352, *2. \*E. plumata* (BIGELOW), Puerto Rico; *2a*, ant. part of body,  $\times 11$ ; *2b*, post. part of abdomen, dorsal,  $\times 11$ ; *2c*, raptorial claw,  $\times 11$ ; *2d*, uropod,  $\times 11$  (37).

**Eurysquilloides** MANNING, 1963, p. 315 [*\*Squilla*

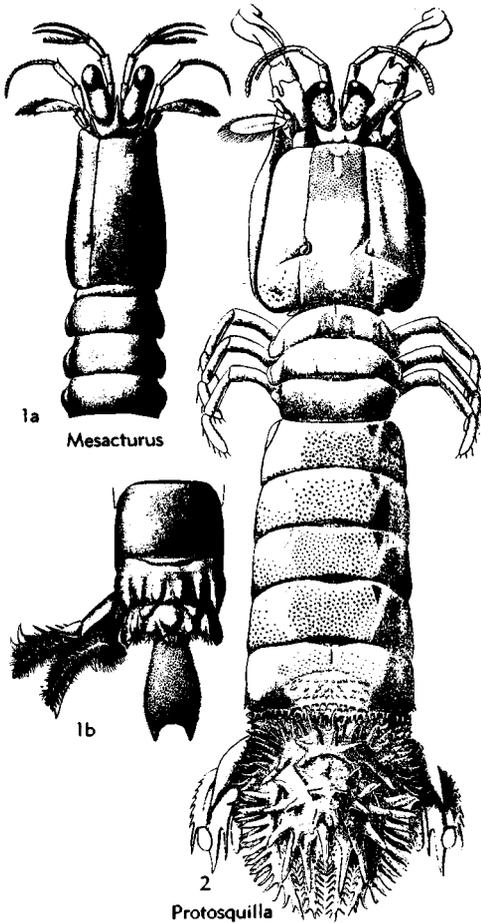


FIG. 360. Squillidae (p. R551-R552).

*sibogae* HANSEN, 1926, p. 15; OD, M]. Similar to *Eurysquilla* but with abdomen partially carinate and antennular somite very elongate. *Rec.*, Indonesia.—FIG. 352,3. \**E. sibogae* (HANSEN); 3a, ant. part of body, dorsal,  $\times 5$ ; 3b, thorax, dorsal,  $\times 4$ ; 3c, post. part of abdomen, dorsal,  $\times 4.2$ ; 3d, raptorial claw,  $\times 4.5$  (143).

*Gonodactylus* BERTHOLD, 1827, p. 271 [\**Squilla chiragra* FABRICIUS, 1781, p. 515; SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, ICZN pend.] [= *Gonerichthys* BROOKS, 1886, p. 83 (type, *Squilla chiragra* FABRICIUS, 1781; SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, herein) (obj.)]. Related to *Mesacturus*, *Protosquilla*, and *Hoplosquilla*, previously classed as "groups" within *Gonodactylus*; cornea cylindrical or somewhat rounded; anterolateral angles of carapace in advance of rostral base; 6th abdominal somite not fused with telson, which has median carina

and 1 or 2 pairs of additional carinae; uropodal endopod laminate; dactylus of raptorial claw basally swollen, unarmed on inner margin. *U.Mio.*, USA (N.Car.); *Rec.*, W.Atl.-E.Pac.-Indo-W.Pac.—FIG. 354,1. *G. oerstedii* HANSEN, *Rec.*, Puerto Rico; dorsal,  $\times 2$  (37).

*Harpiosquilla* HOLTHUIS, 1964, p. 140 [\**Squilla harpax* DE HAAN, 1844, atlas, pl. li, fig. 1; OD] [= *Alimerichthys* CLAUS, 1871, p. 146 (non *Alimerichthys* GUÉRIN in SAGRA, 1855) (type, *A. pyramidalis* LANCHESTER in GARDINER, 1903, p. 457; SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, herein)]. Closely resembling *Squilla* but distinguished by presence of triangular lobes in front of postero-lateral angles of carapace and spaced, spiniform teeth on upper margin of propodus of raptorial claw. *Rec.*, Indo.-W.Pac.—FIG. 347,2. \**H. harpax* (DE HAAN), Japan; dorsal, approx.  $\times 1$  (137). *Hemisquilla* HANSEN, 1895, p. 72 [\**Gonodactylus styliferus* H. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1837, p. 530 (= *Gonodactylus ensiger* OWEN, 1832, p. 6); OD, M]. Probably related to *Odontodactylus* and *Gonodactylus*; cornea subglobular; telson with

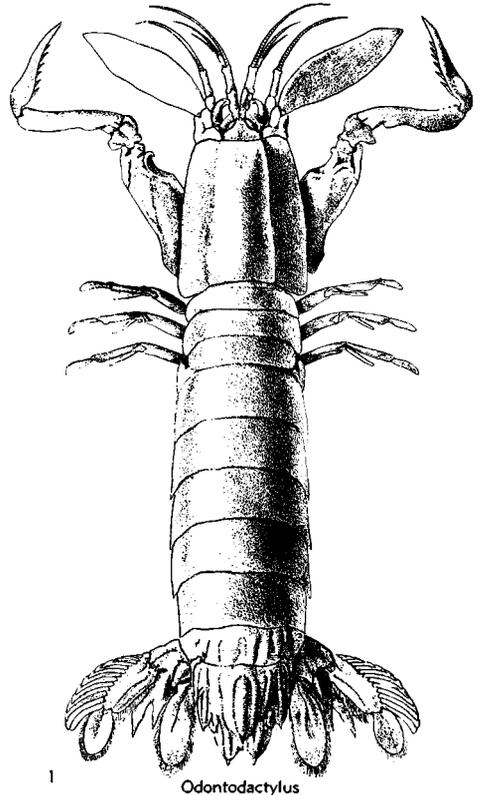


FIG. 361. Squillidae (p. R551-R552).

median carina and pair of additional carinae; dactylus of raptorial claw unarmed. *M.Mio.*, USA (Calif.); *Rec.*, W. Atl.-E. Pac.-Australia. — FIG. 349, 1. *H. braziliensis* (MOREIRA), *Rec.*, Brazil; dorsal,  $\times 1$  (208).

*Heterosquilla* MANNING, 1963, p. 320 [\**Lysiosquilla platensis* BERG, 1900, p. 230; OD]. Closely re-

sembling *Lysiosquilla* but telson with elevated median projection, variously armed. *Rec.*, circumtropic-subtropic. — FIG. 355, 2. \**H. platensis* (BERG), off Arg.; 2a, dorsal,  $\times 1.3$ ; 2b, raptorial claw,  $\times 1.5$  (225).

*Hoplosquilla* HOLTHUIS, 1964, p. 141 [\**Gonodactylus acanthurus* TATTERSALL, 1906, p. 171; OD,

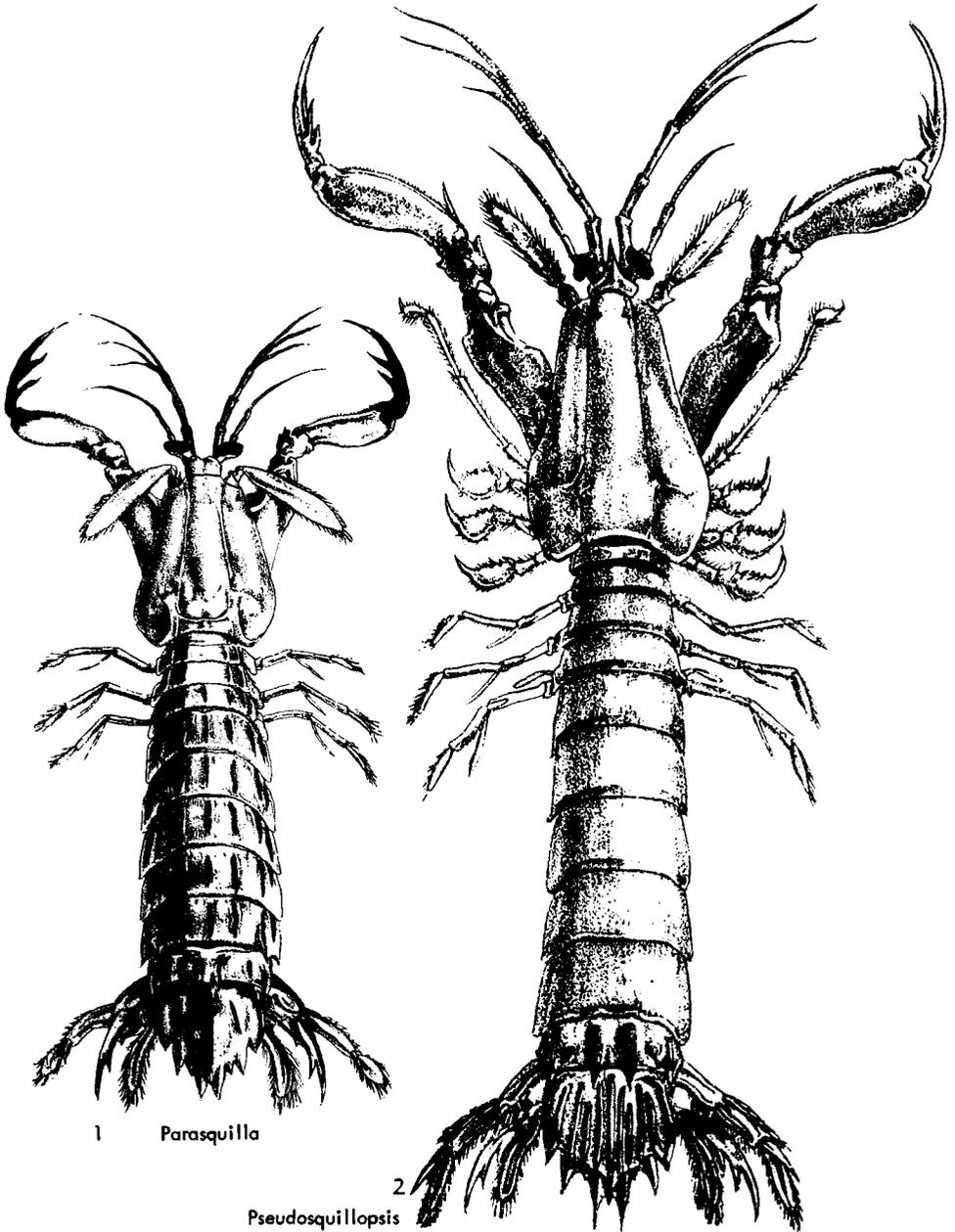


FIG. 362. Squillidae (p. R552).

M]. Resembling *Gonodactylus*, in which formerly it was included as "group"; anterolateral angles of carapace in advance of rostral base; uropods with inner margin of endopod and terminal segment of exopod with spines. *Rec.*, Ceylon.—FIG. 356, 1. \**H. acanthurus* (TATTERSALL); 1a, rostrum, mag. unknown; 1b, raptorial claw, mag. unknown; 1c, telson, dorsal, mag. unknown; 1d, uropod, dorsal, mag. unknown (286).

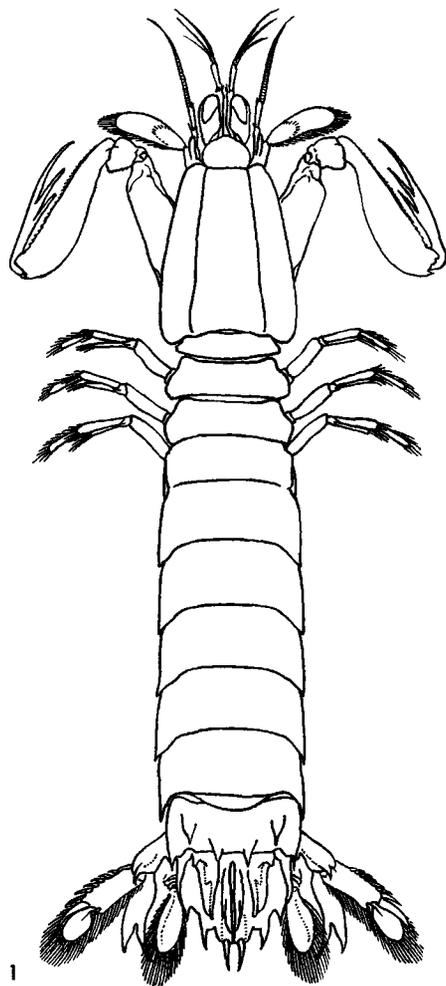
?*Lampropelta* GUÉRIN in SAGRA, 1857, p. lxvi [\**L. duvaucellii* GUÉRIN in SAGRA, 1857, p. lxvi; OD, M]. Based on larval form of doubtful affinity. *Rec.*, Atl.

*Leptosquilla* MIERS, 1880, p. 12 [\**Squilla schmeltzii* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1873, p. 87; OD, M]. Related to *Squilla* but distinguished by presence of cylindrical eyes, with cornea narrower than stalk, and elongate antennular somite. *Rec.*, Indo-W.Pac.—FIG. 357, 1. \**L. schmeltzii* (A. MILNE-EDWARDS), India; ant. part of body, dorsal,  $\times 16$  (164).

*Lysiosquilla* DANA, 1852, p. 615 [\**L. inornata*; SD FOWLER, 1912, p. 539 (ICZN Official List, no. 730)] [= *Erichthus* LATREILLE, 1817, p. 43 (type, *Astacus vitreus* FABRICIUS, 1775, p. 417; suppressed by ICZN, Official Index, no. 121); *Smerdis* LEACH in TUCKEY, 1817, unnumbered plate (type, *S. vulgaris*; SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, herein, suppression by ICZN pend.); *Pontioebius* GUÉRIN in SAGRA, 1857, p. lxiv (type, *Erichthus latreillii* GUÉRIN, 1830, p. 42; SD GURNEY, 1946, p. 166); *Erichthoidina* CLAUS, 1871, p. 120 (type, *E. armata*; SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, herein); *Lysioerichthus* BROOKS, 1886, p. 83 [type, *Erichthus duvaucellii* GUÉRIN, 1844, pl. 24, fig. 3; SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, herein]. Related to *Coronida*, *Coronis*, *Nannosquilla*, *Acanthosquilla*, and *Heterosquilla* but size much larger; telson without prominent dorsal elevation, posterior teeth and denticles usually fused. *Rec.*, circumtropic.—FIG. 358, 1. *L. maculata* (FABRICIUS), Indo-W.Pac.; dorsal, approx.  $\times 1$  (175).

*Manningia* SERÈNE, 1962, p. 20 [\**Pseudosquilla pilaensis* DE MAN, 1888, p. 296; OD, M]. Like *Squilla* in having sharp median carina on telson but with 5 pairs of additional carinae and less than 4 intermediate marginal denticles; body depressed; dactylus of raptorial claw with 4 teeth. *Rec.*, Indo-W.Pac.—FIG. 359, 1. \**M. pilaensis* (DE MAN), Indo-China; post. part of abdomen, dorsal,  $\times 14$  (126).

*Mesacturus* MIERS, 1880, p. 124 [\**Gonodactylus furcicaudatus* MIERS, 1880, p. 124; OD, M]. Like *Gonodactylus*, in which it was formerly included as "group," in having anterolateral angles of carapace in advance of rostral base; telson with up to 5 pairs of carinae in addition to median; uropodal endopod not laminate, usually solid, curved, and covered with stiff hairs. *Rec.*, Indo-W.Pac.—



*Pseudosquilla*

FIG. 363. Squillidae (p. R552).

FIG. 360, 1. *M. kempfi* (ODHNER), Ellice Is.; 1a, ant. part of body, dorsal, mag. unknown; 1b, post. part of abdomen, mag. unknown (218).  
*Nannosquilla* MANNING, 1963, p. 318 [\**Lysiosquilla grayi* CHACE, 1958, p. 141; OD]. Size small; telson without median dorsal elevation but with marginal false cove under which true posterior armature is placed. *Rec.*, circumtropic-subtropic.—FIG. 355, 1. \**N. grayi* (CHACE), off USA (Mass.); dorsal,  $\times 3.75$  (70).

*Odontodactylus* BIGELOW, 1893, p. 100 [\**Cancer scyllarus* LINNÉ, 1758, p. 633; SD BIGELOW, 1931, p. 144 (ICZN Official List, no. 731)] [= *Gammaris* H. S. (initials only), 1876, p. 275 (obj.; sup-

pressed by ICZN, Official Index, no. 122); *Odon-toerichthus* BIGELOW, 1894, p. 543 (type, *O. tenuicornis* JURICH, 1904, p. 396; SM JURICH, 1904, p. 396)]. Cornea globular; telson with median carina and 1 to 3 pairs of additional carinae; dactylus of raptorial claw basally swollen, with 2 to 9 small, triangular teeth. *Rec.*, W. Atl.-Indo-W.Pac.—FIG. 361,1. *O. japonicus* (DE HAAN), Japan; dorsal, approx.  $\times 2$  (137).

**Parasquilla** MANNING, 1961, p. 7 [\**P. meridionalis*; OD] [= *Faughnia* SERÈNE, 1962, p. 17 (type, *Pseudosquilla haani* HOLTHUIS, 1959, p. 179; OD)]. Like *Squilla* in having sharp median carina on telson but with less than 4 intermediate marginal denticles; most closely related to *Pseudosquilla* and *Pseudosquillopsis* but differing from them in having cervical groove on carapace and carinae on abdomen. *Rec.*, E.Atl.-W.Atl.-Indo-W.Pac.—FIG. 362,1. *P. ferussacii* (ROUX), Sicily, dorsal,  $\times 1.25$  (259).

**Protosquilla** BROOKS, 1886, p. 84 [\**Gonodactylus folinii* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1868, p. 65; SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, herein]. Anterolateral angles of carapace not in advance of rostral base; 6th abdominal somite fused with telson; telson

dorsally ornamented with carinae, bosses, or spines, or combinations of these. *Rec.*, W.Afr.-Indo-W.Pac.—FIG. 360,2. *P. guerinii* (WHITE), Hawaii; dorsal,  $\times 7.5$  (60).

**Pseudosquilla** DANA, 1852, p. 615 [\**Squilla ciliata* FABRICIUS, 1787, p. 333 (SD HOLTHUIS & MANNING, ICZN pend.)] [= *Alimerichthus* GUÉRIN, 1855, pl. 3, fig. 12 (type, *A. cylindricus*; OD,M); *Pseuderichthus* BROOKS, 1886a, p. 83 (obj.; SD MANNING, 1963, p. 310)]. Resembles both *Parasquilla* and *Pseudosquillopsis* in that body is semicylindrical but differs from both in lacking complete pectination of raptorial claw. [*Manningia*, *Coronidopsis*, *Eurysquilla*, and *Eurysquilloides*, are related but have depressed body and raptorial claw armed with more than 3 teeth.] *Rec.*, circumtropic.—FIG. 363,1. \**P. ciliata* (FABRICIUS), Puerto Rico; dorsal,  $\times 2$  (37).

**Pseudosquillopsis** SERÈNE, 1962, p. 12 [\**Squilla cerisii* ROUX, 1828, p. unnumbered, pl. 5; OD]. Related to *Pseudosquilla* but with 5 pairs of carinae on telson in addition to median carina and with pectinate propodus on raptorial claw. *Rec.*, E.Atl.-E.Pac.-Japan.—FIG. 362,2. \**P. cerisii* (ROUX), Corsica; dorsal, approx.  $\times 2$  (259).

## SUBCLASS, ORDER, AND FAMILY UNCERTAIN

**Tesnusocaris** BROOKS, 1955 [\**T. goldichi*; OD]. Cephalon elongate (25 mm.) subtrapezoidal, chitinous, with large elliptical compound eyes near front edge, pair of long tapering antenniform appendages besides other short ones; elongate body

(50 mm.+) of nearly identical short somites, each bearing pair of limbs which widen distally. *L.Penn.(Tesusus F.)*, USA(W.Tex.) (*Jour. Paleont.*, v. 29, p. 852-856, fig. 1-2, pl. 85-86). [MOORE]

## REFERENCES FOR MALACOSTRACA

The list of references given here relates to all parts of the class Malacostraca, both morphologic text and systematic descriptions.

### Abel, Othenio

- (1) 1935, *Vorzeitliche Lebensspuren*: 664 p., 530 text fig., Gustav Fischer (Jena).

### Abrahamczik-Scanzoni, H.

- (2) 1942, *Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Muskulatur und des Innenskelets der Krabben*: Zool. Jahrb. Abt. Anat. & Ontog., v. 67, p. 293-380.

### Andreeva, O. N.

- (3) 1957, *Novye nakhodki chlenistonogikh v vostochnoy Sibiri*: Ezhegodnik Vsesoy. Paleont., Obshch., v. 16, p. 236-245, 1 pl. [*New discoveries of arthropods in eastern Siberia.*]

### Andrussow, N. J.

- (4) 1886, *Ueber zwei neue Isopodenformen aus neogenen Ablagerungen*: Neues Jahrb. Mineral., Geol., & Paläont., v. 2, p. 155-174, pl. 7, 3 text fig.

### Assmann, P.

- (5) 1927, *Die Decapodenkrabbe des deutschen Muschelkalks*: K. Preuss. Geol. Landesanst., Jahrb., v. 48, p. 332-356, pl. 8-13.

**Bachmayer, Friedrich**

- (6) 1948, *Pathogene Wucherungen bei jurassischen Dekapoden*: Österreich. Akad. Wiss., Sitzungsber., Math.-Naturwiss. Kl., Abt. 1, v. 157, p. 263-266, 4 text fig.
- (7) 1949, *Zwei neue Asseln dem Oberjurakalk von Ernstbrunn, Niederrösterreich*: Same, Abt. 1, v. 158, p. 263-270, 1 pl., 7 text fig.
- (8) 1954, *Zwei bemerkenswerte Crustaceen-Funde aus dem Jungtertiär des Wiener Beckens*: Same, Abt. 1, v. 163, no. 1 and 2, p. 63-70.
- (9) 1960, *Eine fossile Cumaceenart (Crustacea, Malacostraca) aus dem Callovien von La Voulte-sur-Rhône (Ardèche)*: *Eclogae Geol. Helv.*, v. 53, p. 422-426, pl. 1-2, 2 text fig.

**Ball, H. W.**

- (10) 1960, *Upper Cretaceous Decapoda and Serpulidae from James Ross Island, Graham Land*: Falkland Is. Dependencies Survey, Sci. Rept. no. 24, 30 p.

**Balss, H.**

- (11) 1922-24, *Studien an fossilen Decapoden*: *Paläont. Zeitschr.*, v. 5 (1922), p. 123-147; v. 6 (1924), p. 174-184.
- (12) 1938, *Stomatopoda*: in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, v. 5, sec. 1, pt. 6, no. 2, p. 1-173, text fig. 1-114, Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft (Leipzig).

———, **Buddenbrock, W., Gruner, H. E., & Korschelt, E.**

- (13) 1940-61, *Decapoda*: in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, v. 5, pt. 1, *Crustacea*, 2nd edit., Bk. 7, 2169 p., 1217 text fig., Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft (Leipzig).

**Barker, D.**

- (14) 1962, *A study of *Thermosbaena mirabilis* (Malacostraca, Peracarida) and its reproduction*: *Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci.*, v. 103, pt. 2, p. 261-286, text fig. 1-8.

**Barnard, K. H.**

- (15) 1950, *Descriptive catalogue of South African Decapoda Crustacea*: *South Afr. Museum, Ann.* v. 38, p. 1-837.

**Bartok, Pál**

- (16) 1944, *Die morphologische Entwicklung von *Bathynella chappuisi**: *Acta Sci. Math. Nat. Kolozswar.*, v. 21, p. 1-46.

**Battaler, J. R.**

- (17) 1959, *Primer suplemento a la sinopsis de las especies nuevas del Cretáceo de España*: *Inst. Geol. Min. España, Bol.*, v. 70, p. 1-77.

**Bate, C. S.**

- (18) 1888, *Report on the Crustacea *Macrura* collected by H. M. S. Challenger during the*

*years 1873-1876*: *Rept. Scientific Results Voyage HMS Challenger, Zoology*, v. 24, 942 p.

**Bell, Th.**

- (19) 1858, *A monograph of the fossil malacostracous Crustacea of Great Britain. Pt. 1, Crustacea of the London Clay*: *Palaeontograph. Soc. London*, 44 p.

**Bennett, E. W.**

- (20) 1964, *The marine fauna of New Zealand: Crustacea *Brachyura**: *New Zealand Dept. Sci. Industr. Res., Bull.* 153 [N.Z. Oceanogr. Inst., Mem. 22], 120 p.

**Berg, C.**

- (21) 1900, *Datos sobre algunos crustáceos nuevos para la fauna Argentina*: *Museo Nac. Buenos Aires, Comun.*, v. 1, no. 7, p. 225-235, 1 text fig.

**Berry, C. T.**

- (22) 1939, *A summary of the fossil Crustacea of the order Stomatopoda, and a description of a new species from Angola*: *Am. Midland Naturalist*, v. 21, p. 461-471, text fig. 1.

**Berthold, A. A.**

- (23) 1827, *Latreille's Natürliche Familien des Tierreichs, aus dem Französischen mit Anmerkungen und Zusätzen*: x+606 p. (Weimar).

**Beurlen, Karl**

- (24) 1925, *Ueber Brachyuren- und Anomurenreste des schwäbischen Jura*: *Neues Jahrb. Mineral., Geol., & Paläont.*, v. 3, v. 52, p. 464-532.
- (25) 1928, *Die Decapoden des schwäbischen Jura mit Ausnahme der aus den oberjurassischen Plattenkalken stammenden*: *Palaeontographica*, v. 70, p. 115-278, pl. 6-8.
- (26) 1930, *Nachträge zur Decapoden-fauna des schwäbischen Jura*: *Neues Jahrb. Mineral., Geol., & Paläont., Beil.-Bd.* 64, ser. B, p. 219-34, pl. 15.
- (27) 1930, *Vergleichende Stammesgeschichte Grundlagen, Methoden, Probleme unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der höheren Krebse*: *Fortschr. Geologie u. Palaeontologie*, v. 8, p. 317-586.
- (28) 1931, *Die Besiedelung der Tiefsee*: *Natur u. Museum*, v. 61, p. 269-279.
- (29) 1931, *Crustaceenreste aus den Mesosaurierschichten (Unterperm) von Brasilien (São Paulo)*: *Paläont. Zeitschr.*, v. 13, p. 35-50, 7 text fig.
- (30) 1932, *Brachyurenreste aus dem Lias von Bornholm mit Beiträgen zur Phylogenie und Systematik der Brachyuren Dekapoden*: Same, v. 14, p. 52-66, 2 text fig.
- (31) 1934, *Die Pygaspiden, eine neue Crustaceen*

- (Entomostracen) Gruppe aus den Mesosaurierführenden Iraty-Schichten Brasiliens: Same, v. 16, p. 122-138, 4 text fig.
- (32) 1958, *Dois crustáceos do Cretáceo superior do Nordeste de Brasil (Decapoda, Brachyura)*: Museu Nac. Rio de Janeiro, Bol., Geol., no. 26, 23 p.
- (33) 1958, *Contribuição à paleontologia do estado do Pará. Crustáceos decápodos da Formação Pirabas: 1-(Arthropoda-Crustacea)*: Museu Goeldi (Paraense), Bol., new ser., Geol., no. 5, 48 p.
- , & Glaessner, M. F.
- (34) 1930, *Systematik der Crustacea Decapoda auf stammesgeschichtlicher Grundlage*: Zool. Jahrb., v. 60, p. 49-84.
- Bigelow, R. P.**
- (35) 1893, *Preliminary notes on the Stomatopoda of the "Albatross" collections and on other specimens in the National Museum*: Johns Hopkins Univ. Circ., v. 12, no. 106, p. 100-102.
- (36) 1894, *Report upon the Crustacea of the order Stomatopoda collected by the steamer "Albatross" between 1885 and 1891, and on other specimens in the U. S. National Museum*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 17, p. 489-550, pl. 20-22, text fig 1-28.
- (37) 1901, *The Stomatopoda of Porto Rico*: U. S. Fish Comm., Bull., v. 20, pt. 2, p. 151-160, text fig. 1-13.
- (38) 1931, *Stomatopoda of the southern and eastern Pacific Ocean and the Hawaiian Islands*: Harvard Univ., Museum Comp. Zoology, Bull., v. 72, no. 4, p. 105-191, pl. 1-2, text fig. 1-10.
- Bill, Ph. C.**
- (39) 1914, *Ueber Crustaceen aus dem Voltziansandstein des Elsass*: Mitteil., Geol. Landesanst. Elsass-Loth., v. 8, p. 289-338, pl. 10-16.
- Billberg, G. J.**
- (40) 1820, *Enumeratio insectorum in Museo Gust. Joh. Billberg*: 138 p. (Holmiae).
- Binkhorst, J. T. van**
- (41) 1861, *Monographie des gastéropodes et des céphalopodes de la Craie supérieure du Limbourg*: 2 pt. (Bruxelles, Maastricht).
- Birshteyn, Ya. A. [Birstein, J. A.]**
- (42) 1958, *Dreuneshy predstavitel' otryada desyatinogikh raķoobraznykh Protoclytiopsis antiqua gen. nov. sp. nov. iz Permskikh otlozheniy zapadnoy Sibiri*: Akad. Nauk SSSR Leningrad, Doklady, v. 122, no. 3, p. 477-480. [The oldest specimen of decapod crustacean Protoclytiopsis antiqua, gen. nov., sp. nov., from Permian deposits of western Siberia.]
- (43) 1962, *Palaeophreatoicus sojanensis gen. et sp. nov. i nekotorye voprosy filogenii i zoogeografii ravnonogikh raķoobraznykh (Isopoda)*: Paleont. Zhurnal, no. 3, p. 65-80, 7 text fig. [Palaeophreatoicus sojanensis gen. et sp. nov., and some problems of phylogeny and distribution of Isopoda.]
- Boas, J. E. V.**
- (44) 1880, *Studier over Decapodernes Slaegtskabsforhold*: Vidensk. Selsk. Kristiania, Skrifter, 6 ser., v. 1, II, 188 p.
- (45) 1883, *Studien über die Verwandtschaftsbeziehungen des Malakostraken*: Morphol. Jahrb., v. 8, p. 485-579, pl. 21-24.
- Boden, B., Johnson, P., & Brinton, E.**
- (46) 1954, *The Euphausiacea (Crustacea) of the North Pacific*: California Univ. Scripps Inst. Oceanography, Bull., tech. ser., v. 6, p. 287-399, 55 text fig.
- Böhm, J.**
- (47) 1891, *Die Kreidebildungen des Fürbergs und Sulzbergs bei Siegsdorf in Oberbayern*: Palaeontographica, v. 38, p. 1-106, pl. 1-5.
- Borradaile, L. A.**
- (48) 1907, *On the classification of the Decapoda*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 7, v. 19, p. 457-486.
- Bott, R.**
- (49) 1950, *Die Flusskrebse Europas (Decapoda, Astacidae)*: Senckenberg. Naturf. Gesell., Abhandl., v. 483, p. 1-36.
- Bourne, G. C.**
- (50) 1922, *The Raninidae, a study in carcinology*: Linnean Soc. London, Jour., v. 35, Zoology, p. 25-78, pl. 4-7.
- Bouvier, E. L.**
- (51) 1896, *Sur l'origine homarienne des crabes, étude comparative des dromiacées vivants et fossiles*: Soc. Philomath. Paris, Bull., ser. 8, v. 8, p. 34-110.
- (52) 1940, *Décapodes marcheurs*: Faune de France, v. 37, 404 p.
- Brocchi, P.**
- (53) 1877, *Description de quelques crustacés fossiles appartenant à la tribu des raniniens*: Ann. Sci. Géol., v. 8, Art. 2, t. 29.
- Broili, Ferdinand**
- (54) 1928, *Beobachtungen an Nahecaris*: Bayer. Akad. Wiss., Math.-Nat. Kl., Sitzungsber., Abt. 1927-28, p. 1-18, 1 pl.
- Brooks, H. K.**
- (55) 1962, *The Paleozoic Eumalacostraca of North America*: Bull. Am. Paleontology, v. 44, no. 202, p. 163-338, pl. 29-66, text fig. 1-16.
- (56) 1962, *On the fossil Anaspidacea, with a revision of the classification of the Syncarida*: Crustaceana, v. 4, p. 229-242, pl. 5-6, text fig. 1-2.

- (57) 1962, *Devonian Eumalacostraca*: Arkiv Zoologi, ser. 2, v. 15, p. 307-315.
- , & Caster, K. E.
- (58) 1956, *Pseudoarctolepis sharpi*, n. gen., n. sp. (Phyllocarida), from the Wheeler Shale (Middle Cambrian) of Utah: Jour. Paleontology, v. 30, p. 9-14, pl. 2, 6 text fig.
- Brooks, J. L.**
- (59) 1950, *Speciation in ancient lakes*: Quart. Review Biology, v. 25, p. 30-60, 131-176, 8 text fig., 12 tables.
- Brooks, W. K.**
- (60) 1886, *Report on the Stomatopoda collected by H. M. S. Challenger during the years 1873-76*: Rept. Scientific Results Explor. Voyage HMS Challenger, Zoology, v. 16, pt. 2, p. 1-116, pl. 1-16, H.M.S. Stationery Office (London).
- (61) 1886, *The Stomatopoda of the "Challenger" collection*: Johns Hopkins Univ. Circ., v. 5, no. 49, p. 83-85.
- Burkenroad, M. D.**
- (62) 1963, *The evolution of the Eucarida (Crustacea, Eumalacostraca), in relation to the fossil record*: Tulane Studies in Geology, v. 2, no. 1, p. 3-16.
- Calman, W. T.**
- (63) 1896, *On the genus Anaspides and its affinities with certain fossil Crustacea*: Royal Soc. Edinburgh, Trans., v. 38, p. 787-802, 2 pl.
- (64) 1904, *On the classification of the Crustacea Malacostraca*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 7, v. 13, p. 144-158.
- (65) 1909, *Crustacea*: in E. Ray Lankester (ed.), *A treatise on zoology*, v. 7, Appendiculata, pt. 3, viii+346 p., 194 text fig., A. & C. Black (London).
- (66) 1932, *On Anthracocaris scotica (Peach), a fossil crustacean from the Lower Carboniferous*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 10, v. 10, p. 562-565, text fig. 1-2.
- (67) 1934, *Notes on Uronectes fimbriatus (Jordan), a fossil crustacean of the division Syncarida*: Same, ser. 10, v. 13, p. 321-330, pl. 11-12.
- Cannon, H. G.**
- (68) 1960, *Leptostraca*: in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, v. 5, Abt. 1, Buch 4, 1 Teil, 81 p., 46 text fig., Akad. Verlag. (Leipzig).
- Carter, James**
- (69) 1872, *On Orithopsis Bonneyi, a new fossil crustacean*: Geol. Mag., v. 9, p. 529-532.
- Chace, F. A., Jr.**
- (70) 1958, *A new stomatopod crustacean of the genus Lysiosquilla from Cape Cod, Massachusetts*: Biol. Bull. Woods Hole, v. 114, p. 141-145, pl. 1.
- Chappuis, P. A.**
- (71) 1915, *Bathynella natans und ihre Stellung im System*: Zool. Jahrb., v. 40, p. 147-176, text fig. 1-18.
- Checchia-Rispoli, Giuseppe**
- (72) 1905, *I crostacei dell'Eocene dei dintorni di Monreale in provincia di Palermo*: Giornale Soc. Sci., Nat. & Econ. Palermo, v. 25, p. 309-325.
- Chlupáč, Ivó**
- (73) 1960, *Die Gattung Montecaris Jux (Crustacea Phyllocarida) im älteren Paläozoikum der Tschechoslowakei*: Geologie, Jahrg. 9, p. 638-649, 3 pl., 4 text fig.
- (74) 1963, *Phyllocarid crustaceans from the Silurian and Devonian of Czechoslovakia*: Palaeontology, v. 6, p. 97-118, pl. 12-16, 7 text fig.
- Claus, Carl**
- (75) 1871, *Die Metamorphose der Squilliden*: Gesell. Wiss. Göttingen, Abhandl. v. 16, pt. 1, p. 111-163, pl. 1-8.
- Cockerell, T. D. A.**
- (76) 1916, *The uropods of Acanthotelson stimpsoni*: Washington Acad. Sci., Jour., v. 6, p. 234-236, text fig. 1.
- Copeland, M. J.**
- (77) 1960, *New occurrences of Ceratiocaris and Psychocaris (Phyllocarida) from the Canadian Arctic*: Canada Geol. Survey, Bull., v. 60, p. 49-54, pl. 10, text fig. 9.
- Dames, W. B.**
- (78) 1886, *Ueber einige Crustaceen aus den Kreideablagerungen des Libanon*: Deutsch. Geol. Gesell., Zeitschr. v. 38, p. 551-575, pl. 13-15.
- Dana, J. D.**
- (79) 1852, *Crustacea. United States exploring expedition during the years 1838, 1839, 1840, 1841, 1842 under the command of Charles Wilkes, U. S. N.*: v. 13, p. 1-1620; Atlas, 1855, v. 13, p. 1-27, pl. 1-96, C. Sherman (Philadelphia).
- Desmarest, A. G.**
- (80) 1823, *Malacostracés*: Dictionnaire des sciences naturelles, v. 28, p. 138-425, F. G. Levrault (Paris, Strasbourg).
- (81) 1825, *Considérations générales sur la classe des crustacés, et description des espèces de ces animaux, qui vivent dans la mer, sur les côtes ou dans les eaux douces de la France*: xix+446 p., 56 pl., F. G. Levrault (Paris, Strasbourg).

**Drach, P.**

- (82) 1950, *Les étapes évolutives de l'endosquelette chez les crustacés décapodes*: Acad. Sci. Paris, Comptes Rendus, v. 231, no. 25, p. 1563-1565.

**Duarte, Lélia, & Santos, R. da S.**

- (83) 1962, *Fósseis do Arenito Aqu.*: Acad. Brasil. Ciências, Anñ., v. 34, p. 57-68, 3 pl., 3 text fig.

**Ehrenberg, Kurt**

- (84) 1931, *Über Lebensspuren von Einsiedlerkrebsen*: Palaeobiologica, v. 4, p. 137-174.
- (85) 1938, *Bauten von Decapoden (Callianassa sp.) aus dem Miozän (Burdigal) von Burgschleinitz bei Eggenburg im Gau Niederdonau (Niederösterreich)*: Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 20, p. 263-284.
- (86) 1944, *Ergänzende Bemerkungen zu den seinerzeit aus dem Miozän von Burgschleinitz beschriebenen Gangkernen und Bauten dekapoder Krebse*: Same, v. 23, no. 3-4, p. 354-59.

**Einarsson, H.**

- (87) 1945, *Euphausiacea. 1. Northern Atlantic species*: Dana Rept., no. 27, 185 p., 84 text fig. (København).

**Eydoux, A. M., & Souleyet, L.**

- (88) 1842, *Crustacés: Voyage autour du monde exécuté pendant les années 1836 et 1837 sur la corvette La Bonite commandée par M. Vaillant, Capitaine de Vaisseau, Zoologie*: v. 1, p. 219-272, pl. 5, Arthus Bertrand (Paris).

**Fabricius, J. C.**

- (89) 1775, *Systema entomologiae, sistens insectorum classes, ordines, genera, species, adiectis synonymis, locis, descriptionibus, observationibus*: 832 p., Libraria Kortii (Flensburgi & Lipsiae).
- (90) 1781, *Species insectorum exhibentes eorum differentias specificas, synonyma auctorum, loca natalia, metamorphosis adjectis observationibus, descriptionibus*: v. 1, viii+552 p., Carol. Ernest Bohnii (Hamburgi & Kolonii).
- (91) 1787, *Mantissa insectorum sistens eorum species nuper detectas adjectis characteribus generis, differentiis specificis, emendationibus, observationibus*: v. 1, xx+348 p., Christ. Gottl. Proft (Hafniae).

**Fiège, Kurt**

- (92) 1944, *Lebensspuren aus dem Muschelkalk Nordwestdeutschlands*: Neues Jahrb. Mineral., Geol., & Paläont., Abhandl. Abt. B, v. 88, p. 401-426, 6 text fig.

**Fleming, C. A.**

- (93) 1962, *A Miocene crab-bed in Wairarapa District, New Zealand, and notes on allo-*

*metry in Tumidocarcinus giganteus Glaesner*: Royal Soc. New Zealand, Trans., Geol., v. 1, no. 14, p. 207-213, 1 pl., 2 text fig.

**Fowler, H. W.**

- (94) 1912, *The Crustacea of New Jersey*: New Jersey State Museum, Ann. Rept. 1911, p. 29-650, pl. 1-150.

**Fraser, F. C.**

- (95) 1936, *On the development and distribution of the young stages of krill (Euphausia superba)*: Discovery Repts., v. 14, 192 p., 76 text fig.

**Fritsch [Frič], Anton**

- (96) 1893, *Studien im Gebiete der böhmischen Kreideformation: Paläont. Untersuchungen der einzelnen Schichten: V. Priesener Schichten*: Archiv Naturwiss. Landesdurchf. Böhmen, v. 9, no. 1, p. 1-135.
- (97) 1901, *Fauna der Gasköhle und der Kalksteine der Permformation Böhmens*: p. 65-75 (F. Rivnáč) (Praha).

**———, & Kafka, J.**

- (98) 1887, *Die Crustaceen der böhmischen Kreideformation*: 53 p., Selbstverlag (Praha).

**Frizzell, D. L., & Exline, Harriet**

- (99) 1958, *Crustacean gastroliths from the Claiborne Eocene of Texas*: Micropaleontology, v. 4, no. 3, p. 273-280, text fig. 1-10.

**———, & Horton, W. C.**

- (100) 1961, *Crustacean gastroliths from the Jackson Eocene of Louisiana*: Missouri, Univ. School Mines & Metallurgy, Bull., Tech. Ser. no. 99, p. 3-6.

**Fryer, G.**

- (101) 1964, *Studies on the functional morphology and feeding mechanism of Monodella argentinarii Stella (Crustacea: Thermosbaenacea)*: Royal Soc. Edinburgh, Trans., v. 64, p. 49-90, 26 text fig.

**Fukuda, T.**

- (102) 1910, *Report on Japanese Stomatopoda with descriptions of two new species*: Annot. Zool. Japon., v. 7, p. 139-152, pl. 4.

**Gemmellaro, G. G.**

- (103) 1890, *Crostacei dei calcari con Fusulina della Valle del Fiume Sosio, nella Provincia di Palermo in Sicilia*: Soc. Italiana Sci. Nat., Mem., ser. 3, v. 8, 40 p., 5 pl.

**Giebel, C. G.**

- (104) 1857, *Zur Fauna des lithographischen Schiefers von Solenhofen*: Zeitschr. Ges. Naturwiss., v. 9, p. 373-388, pl. 5-6.

**Giesbrecht, W.**

- (105) 1910, *Stomatopoden Erster Theil: Fauna u. Flora d. Golfes von Neapel*, Mon. 33, vii+239 p., pl. 1-11, R. Friedländer (Berlin).

**Glaessner, M. F.**

- (106) 1928, *Die Dekapodenfauna des österreichischen Jungtertiärs*: [K.K.] Geol. Bundesanst. Wien, Jahrb. v. 78, no. 12, p. 161-219, pl. 3-4.
- (107) 1929, *Zur Kenntnis der Häutung bei fossilen Krebsen*: Palaeobiologica, v. 2, p. 49-56, pl. 4.
- (108) 1929, *Crustacea Decapoda*: Fossilium Catalogus, pt. 41, 464 p., W. Junk (Berlin).
- (109) 1929, *Dekapodenstudien*: Neues Jahrb. Mineral., Geol., & Paläont., Beil.-Bd. 63, p. 137-176.
- (110) 1930, *Neue Krebsreste aus der Kreide*: K. Preuss. Geol. Landesanst., Jahrb., v. 51, p. 1-7, pl. 1.
- (111) 1931, *Eine Crustaceenfauna aus den Lunter Schichten Niederösterreichs*: K.K. Geol. Bundesanst. Wien, Jahrb., v. 81, p. 467-486, pl. 15-17.
- (112) 1932, *Zwei ungenügend bekannte mesozoische Dekapodenkrebse. Pemphix suevici (Desm.) und Palaeophoberus suevicus (Quenstedt)*: Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 14, p. 108-121.
- (113) 1933, *New Tertiary crabs in the collection of the British Museum*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 10, v. 12, p. 1-28, pl. 1-6.
- (114) 1933, *Die Krabben der Juraformation*: Zentralbl. Mineral., Geol., & Paläont., Abt. B, no. 3, p. 178-191.
- (115) 1945, *Cretaceous Crustacea from Mount Lebanon, Syria*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, v. 12, ser. 11, p. 694-707.
- (116) 1948, *Decapod Crustacea (Callianassidae) from the Eocene of Victoria*: Royal Soc. Victoria, Proc., new ser., v. 59, p. 1-7.
- (117) 1957, *Evolutionary trends in Crustacea (Malacostraca)*: Evolution, v. 11, p. 178-184, text fig. 1.
- (118) 1960, *The fossil decapod Crustacea of New Zealand and the evolution of the order Decapoda*: New Zealand Geol. Survey, Paleont. Bull., v. 31, 63 p., 7 pl.

**—, & Withers, T. H.**

- (119) 1931, *On London Clay crabs of the family Raminidae*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 10, v. 8, p. 484-493.

**Gordon, Isabella**

- (120) 1950, *Crustacea Dromiacea*: John Murray Exped. Sci. Rept., v. 9, p. 201-253, 1 pl.
- (121) 1957, *On Spelaeogriphus, a new cavernicolous crustacean from South Africa*: British Museum (Nat. History), Bull., Zoology, v. 5, p. 31-47, 26 text fig.
- (122) 1958, *A thermophilous shrimp from Tunisia*: Nature, v. 182, p. 1186.
- (123) 1963, *On the relationship of Dromiacea, Tymolinae and Raminidae to the Brachyura*:

in Phylogeny and evolution of Crustacea, H. B. Whittington & W. D. I. Rolfe (eds.), Harvard Univ., Museum Comp. Zoology, Spec. Publ., p. 51-57.

**Gorodiski, Alexandre, & Remy, J. M.**

- (124) 1959, *Sur les décapodes éocènes du Sénégal occidental*: Soc. Géol. France, Bull., 7<sup>e</sup> sér., v. 1, no. 3, p. 315-319.

**Gravier, C.**

- (125) 1927, *Stomatopodes*: Expéditions scientifiques du "Travailleur" et du "Talisman" pendant les années 1880, 1881, 1882, 1883, v. 9 (Malacostracés, suite), p. 29-37, pl. 1, Masson (Paris).
- (126) 1937, *Stomatopodes des côtes d'Indo-Chine*: Ann. Inst. Océanographique Paris, v. 17, p. 175-211, text fig. 1-23.

**Grobben, C.**

- (127) 1915, *Der Schalenmuskel der Dekapoden. Zugleich ein Beitrag zur Kenntnis ihrer Kopfmskulatur*: Akad. Wiss. Wien, Sitzungsber., v. 126, pt. I, p. 473-495, 1 pl.

**Gürich, Georg**

- (128) 1929, *Silesicaris von Leipe und die Phyllokariden überhaupt*: Mitteil. Mineral.-geol. Staatsinst. Hamburg, no. 11, p. 21-90, 1 pl., 15 text fig.

**Guérin-Ménéville, F. E.**

- (129) 1829-1844, *Iconographie du règne animal de G. Cuvier, ou représentation d'après nature de l'une des espèces les plus remarquables et souvent non encore figurées, de chaque genre d'animaux. Avec une texte descriptif mis au courant de la science. Ouvrage pour servir d'atlas à tous les traités de zoologie*: v. 2 (Crustacés), pl. 24 [pl. 1-104 issued 1829-44], J. B. Baillière (Paris).
- (130) 1830-38, *Crustacés arachnides, et insectes*: in L. I. Duperrey, Voyage autour du monde exécuté par ordre du Roi, sur la Corvette de Sa Majesté, "La Coquille," pendant les années 1822, 1823, 1824, et 1825, Zoologie, v. 2, pt. 2, sec. 1, p. 1-319, pl. 1-5, 1-21, A. Bertrand (Paris).
- (131) 1855, *Articulata*: in Ramon de la Sagra, Historia fisica politica y natural de la Isla de Cuba, Historia Natural, v. 8 (atlas), pl. 1-3, Arthus Bertrand (Paris).
- (132) 1857, *Crustacés*: in Ramon de la Sagra, Histoire physique et naturelle de l'île de Cuba, p. i-lxxxvii, pl. 2, Arthus Bertrand (Paris).

**Gurney, R.**

- (133) 1942, *Larvae of decapod Crustacea*: 306 p., Ray Society (London).
- (134) 1946, *Notes on stomatopod larvae*: Zool. Soc. London, Proc., v. 116, pt. 1, p. 133-175, text fig. 1-14.

- H. S.** [initials only]  
 (135) 1876, *Ceylon. A general description of the island, historical, physical, statistical. Containing the most recent information:* v. 2, viii+432 p., Chapman & Hall (London).
- Haack, W.**  
 (136) 1918, *Ueber einen Isopoden aus dem Serpulit des westlichen Osmings (Archaeoniscus Brodiei Milne-Edwards):* [K.] Preuss. Geol. Landesanst., Jahrb., v. 39, p. 73-102, pl. 4.
- Haan, W. de**  
 (137) 1833-50, *Crustacea:* in P. F. de Siebold, *Fauna Japonica sive descriptio animalium, quae in itinere per Japoniam, jussu et auspiciis superiorum, qui summum in India Batava Imperium tenent, suscepto, annis 1823-1830 collegit, notis, observationibus et adumbrationibus illustravit,* ix-xvi, i-xxxii, vii-xvii, +243 p., pl. A-Q, 1-55, circ. 2, A. Arnz (Lugdunum Batavorum).
- Häntzschel, Walter**  
 (138) 1952, *Die Lebensspur Ophiomorpha Lundgren im Miozän bei Hamburg, ihre weltweite Verbreitung und Synonymie:* Mitteil. Mineral.-geol. Staatsinst. Hamburg, no. 21, p. 142-153.
- Hahn, Gerhard**  
 (138a) 1967, *Zur Stellung von Bostrichopus:* Neues Jahrbuch Geologie, Paläontologie, Abhandl., v. 127, p. 264-287, fig. 1-12, pl. 27-28.
- Hale, H. M.**  
 (139) 1927, *The crustaceans of South Australia:* Handbook flora and fauna of South Australia, pt. 1, 201 p., Government Printer (Adelaide).
- Hall, James, & Clarke, J. M.**  
 (140) 1888, *Trilobites and other Crustacea of the Oriskany, Upper Helderberg, Hamilton, Portage, Chemung and Catskill groups:* N. Y. State Geol. Survey, Nat. History New York, Palaeontology, v. 7, 64+236 p., 36 pl.
- Hansen, H. J.**  
 (141) 1895, *Isopoden, Cumaceen und Stomatopoden der Plankton-Expedition:* Ergebnisse Plankton-Exped. Humboldt-Stiftung, v. 2, pt. Gc, p. 1-105, pl. 1-8, Lipsius & Tischer (Kiel, Leipzig).  
 (142) 1905, *On the propagation, structure and classification of the family Sphaeromidae:* Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., new ser., v. 49, p. 69-135, pl. 7.  
 (143) 1926, *The Stomatopoda of the Siboga Expedition:* Siboga Exped., Mon. 35, p. 1-48, pl. 1-2, E. J. Brill (Leiden).
- Heldt, J. H.**  
 (144) 1954, *Waptia fieldensis Walcott et les stades larvaires des Peneides:* Soc. Sci. Nat. Tunisie, Bull., v. 6, p. 177.
- Henderson, J. R.**  
 (145) 1888, *Report on the Anomura collected by H. M. S. Challenger during the years 1873-76:* Rept. Scientific Results Explor. Voyage HMS Challenger, Zoology, v. 27, no. 1, p. 1-221.
- Hickman, V. V.**  
 (146) 1937, *The embryology of the syncarid crustacean, Anaspides tasmaniae:* Royal Soc. Tasmania, Papers and Proc., 1937, p. 1-35, pl. 1-7.
- Hilgendorf, Franz**  
 (147) 1890, *Eine neue Stomatopodengattung Pterygosquilla:* Gesell. Naturforsch. Freunde, Sitzungsber., p. 172-177, text fig. 1.
- Holland, F. D., & Cvancara, A. M.**  
 (148) 1958, *Crabs from the Cannonball Formation (Paleocene) of North Dakota:* Jour. Paleontology, v. 32, no. 3, p. 495-505, pl. 74, 3 text fig.
- Holthuis, L. B.**  
 (149) 1955, *The Recent genera of the Caridean and Stenopodidean shrimps (class Crustacea, order Decapoda, supersection Nantantia) with keys for their determination:* Zool. Verhandl. Leiden, no. 26, p. 1-157.  
 (150) 1959, *Stomatopod Crustacea of Suriname:* Stud. Fauna Suriname, v. 3, no. 10, p. 173-191, pl. 8-9, text fig. 76.  
 (151) 1964, *Preliminary note on two new genera of Stomatopoda:* Crustaceana, v. 7, no. 2, p. 140-141.
- Houša, V.**  
 (152) 1956, *Bechleja inopinata n.g., n.sp., ein neuer Krebs aus dem böhmischen Tertiär (Decapoda, Palaemonidae):* Ústřed. Ústavu Geol., Sborník (Odd. Paleont.), v. 23, p. 365-377.  
 (153) 1963, *Parasites of Tithonian decapod crustaceans (Štramberk, Moravia):* Same, v. 28, p. 101-114, pl. 1-2.
- Huxley, T. H.**  
 (154) 1857, *Description of a new crustacean (Pygocephalus cooperi Huxley) from the Coal-measures:* Geol. Soc. London, v. 13, p. 363-369, 1 pl.  
 (155) 1880, *The crayfish:* 371 p., C. Kegan Paul & Co. (London).
- Ihle, J. E. W.**  
 (156) 1916, *Die Decapoda Brachyura der Siboga Expedition. II. Oxystomata, Dorippidae:* Siboga Exped., Uitkomsten, v. 39b (livr. 78), p. 97-158.

**Imaizumi, Rikizo**

- (157) 1952, *A Miocene crab, Tymolus kamadai n. sp. from the Numanouchi Formation of the Joban coal field*: Palaeont. Soc. Japan, Trans. & Proc., new ser., no. 7, p. 201-204.
- (158) 1957, *A Miocene fossil crab, Paratymolus yabei n. sp. from Nagano Prefecture*: Same, no. 25, p. 26-30.

**Jakobi, Hans**

- (159) 1958, *Brasilibathynella florianopolis n. gen. n. sp.*: Dusenya, v. 8, p. 25-36, text fig. 1-2.

**Jones, T. R., & Woodward, Henry**

- (160) 1888-1899, *A monograph of the British Palaeozoic Phyllopoda (Phyllocarida, Packard)*: Palaeontograph. Soc. London, Mon., p. 1-72, pl. 1-12, text fig. 1-3 (1888); p. 73-124, pl. 13-17, text fig. 4-10 (1892); p. 125-176, pl. 18-25 (1898); p. 177-211, pl. 26-31, text fig. 11-16 (1899).

**Jurich, B.**

- (161) 1904, *Die Stomatopoden der deutschen Tiefsee-Expedition*: Ergebnisse Deutsch. Tiefsee-Expedition 1898-99, "Valdivia," v. 7, p. 361-408, pl. 25-30, Gustav Fischer (Jena).

**Jux, Ulrich**

- (162) 1960, *Montecaris lehmanni, a new crustacean from the Rhenish Devonian and the problem of its systematic position*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 34, p. 1129-1152, pl. 142-143, 11 text fig.

**Karaman, S.**

- (163) 1953, *Ueber einen Vertreter der Ordnung Thermosbaenacea (Crustacea Peracarida) aus Jugoslawien, Monodella halophila n. sp.*: Acta Adriatica, v. 5, p. 55-74, 24 text fig.

**Kemp, S.**

- (164) 1913, *An account of the Crustacea Stomatopoda of the Indo-Pacific region based on the collection in the Indian Museum*: Indian Museum, Mem., v. 4, p. 1-217, pl. 1-10, 12 text fig.

**Kesling, R. V.**

- (165) 1958, *Fossil crabs from Guam*: Michigan Univ., Museum Paleontology, Contrib., v. 14, no. 14, p. 207-263, 12 pl.

**———, & Reimann, I. G.**

- (166) 1957, *An Upper Cretaceous crab, Avitelmessus grapsoides Rathbun*: Michigan Univ., Museum Paleontology, Contrib., v. 14, no. 1, p. 1-15.

**Krestovnikov, V. N.**

- (167) 1960, *Nadotryad Phyllocarida*: Trilobitobraznye i rakoobraznye, N. E. Chernysheva (ed.), in Osnovy Paleontologii, Yu. A. Orlov (ed.), p. 425-429, text fig. 1242-1271 [all Russian] (Moskva). [*Superorder Phyllocarida.*]

- (168) 1961, *Novyye rakoobraznye fillokaridy Paleozoya Russkoi platformy, Urala, Timana i Donbassa*: Akad. Nauk SSSR, Trudy, Geol. Inst., no. 52, p. 1-67, 5 text fig., 5 pl. [all Russian]. [*New phyllocarid crustaceans from the Paleozoic of the Russian Platform, the Urals, Timan, and Donetz Basin.*]

**Kunth, A.**

- (169) 1870, *Ueber wenig bekannte Crustaceen von Solenhofen*: Deutsch. Geol. Gesell., Zeitschr., v. 22, p. 771-802, pl. 17-18.

**Lanchester, W. F.**

- (170) 1903, *Marine crustaceans. VIII. Stomatopoda, with an account of the varieties of Gonodactylus chiragra*: in J. S. Gardiner, The fauna and geography of the Maldive and Laccadive Archipelagoes, being the account of the work carried on and of the collections made by an expedition during the years 1899 and 1900, v. 1, p. 444-459, pl. 23, C. J. Clay & Sons (London).

**Latreille, P. A.**

- (171) 1796, *Précis des caractères généraux des insectes, disposés dans un ordre naturel*: xiii+201 p., F. Bourdeaux (Brive).
- (172) 1802-03, *Histoire naturelle, générale et particulière, des crustacés et des insectes*: v. 3, 468 p., F. Dufart (Paris).
- (173) 1810, *Considérations générales sur l'ordre naturel des animaux composant les classes des crustacés, des arachnides et des insectes; avec un tableau méthodique de leurs genres, disposés en familles*: 444 p., F. Schoell (Paris).
- (174) 1817, *Les crustacés, les arachnides et les insectes*: in G. Cuvier, Le règne animal distribué d'après son organisation, pour servir de base à l'histoire naturelle des animaux et d'introduction à l'anatomie comparée, edit. 1, v. 3, xxix+653 p., Déterville (Paris).
- (175) 1818, *Crustacés, arachnides et insectes*: Tableau encyclopédique et méthodique des trois règnes de la nature, v. 24, p. 1-38, pl. 268-397, Agasse (Paris).
- (176) 1819, *Stomatopodes, Stomatopoda*: Nouveau dictionnaire d'histoire naturelle, v. 32, p. 199, Déterville (Paris).
- (177) 1825, *Familles naturelles du règne animal, exposées succinctement et dans un ordre analytique, avec l'indication de leurs genres*: 570 p., Baillière (Paris).
- (178) 1828, *Squille, Squilla*: Encyclopédie méthodique histoire naturelle, Insectes, v. 10, p. 467-475, Agasse (Paris).

**Leach, W. E.**

- (179) 1817-18, *A general notice of the animals taken by Mr. John Cranch, during the ex-*

- pedition to explore the source of the River Zaire: in J. K. Tuckey, Narrative of an expedition to explore the River Zaire, usually called the Congo, in South Africa, in 1816, under the direction of Captain J. K. Tuckey, R. N., to which is added, the journal of Professor Smith; some general observations on the country and its inhabitants; and an appendix: containing the natural history of that part of the Kingdom of Congo through which the Zaire flows, p. 407-419 [1818], 1 pl. [1817]. John Murray (London).
- Leone, C. A.**  
(180) 1954, *Further serological data on the relationships of some decapod Crustacea*: Evolution, v. 8, p. 192-205.
- Linné, Carl von [Linnaeus, Carolus]**  
(181) 1758, *Systema naturae per regna tria naturae, secundum classes, ordines, genera, species, cum characteribus, differentiis, synonymis, locis*: edit. 10, v. 1, iii+824 p., Laurentii Salvii (Holmiae).
- Lörenthey, Emerich**  
(182) 1898, *Über die Brachyuren der paläontologischen Sammlung des bayerischen Staates*: Termész. Füzetek, v. 21, p. 134-152, pl. 10-11.
- , & **Beurlen, Karl**  
(183) 1909, *Beiträge zur Kenntnis der eozänen Decapodenfauna Aegyptens*: Math.-Naturw. Berichte Ungarn, v. 25, p. 106-152, pl. 1, 2.  
(184) 1929, *Die fossilen Dekapoden der Länder der ungarischen Krone*: Same, pt. 3, p. 1-420, pl. 1-16.
- Maïkovsky, Vinceslav**  
(185) 1941, *Contribution à l'étude paléontologique et stratigraphique du bassin potassique d'Alsace*: Serv. Carte Géol. Alsace Lorraine, Mem., v. 6, p. 1-193, 14 pl.
- Malzahn, Erich**  
(186) 1962, *Beschreibung der Arten, Teil 1*: in M. F. Glaessner, & Erich Malzahn, *Neue Crustaceen aus dem niederrheinischen Zechstein*, Fortschr. Geol. Rheinl. u. Westfal., v. 6, p. 245-264, 4 pl., 4 text fig.
- Man, J. G. de**  
(187) 1887-88, *Report on the podophthalmous Crustacea of the Mergui Archipelago, collected for the Trustees of the Indian Museum, Calcutta, by Dr. John Anderson, F. R. S., Superintendent of the Museum*: Linnæan Soc. London, Jour., Zool., v. 22, p. 1-120, pl. 1-8 (1887); p. 129-312, pl. 9-19 (1888).
- Manning, R. B.**  
(188) 1961, *Stomatopod Crustacea from the Atlantic coast of northern South America*: Allan Hancock Atlantic Exped., Rept. no. 9, p. 1-46, pl. 1-11.  
(189) 1961, *A new deep-water species of Lysiosquilla (Crustacea, Stomatopoda) from the Gulf of Mexico*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 13, v. 3, p. 693-697, pl. 1-2, text fig. 5.  
(190) 1963, *Preliminary revision of the genera Pseudosquilla and Lysiosquilla with descriptions of six new genera*: Marine Sci. Gulf & Carib., Bull., v. 13, no. 2, p. 308-328.
- Marck, Wilhelm von der**  
(191) 1863, *Fossile Fische, Krebse und Pflanzen aus dem Plattenkalke der jüngsten Kreide in Westphalen*: Palaeontographica, v. 11, p. 1-83, pl. 1-14.
- Mertin, Hans**  
(192) 1939, *Über Brackwasserbildungen in der Oberen Kreide des Harzvorlandes*: Nova Acta Leopoldina, new ser., v. 7, p. 143-263, pl. 14-22.  
(193) 1941, *Decapode Krebse aus dem subhercynen und Braunschweiger Emscher und Untersenon, sowie Bemerkungen über einige verwandte Formen in der Oberkreide*: Same (Abhandl. Kaiserl. Leopold.-Carolin. Deutsch. Akad. Naturforsch.), new ser., v. 10, no. 68, p. 152-257, 8 pl., 30 text fig.
- Miers, E. J.**  
(194) 1880, *On the Squillidae*: Ann. & Mag. Nat. History, ser. 5, v. 5, p. 1-30, 108-127, pl. 1-3.  
(195) 1886, *Report on the Brachyura collected by H. M. S. Challenger during the years 1873-76*: Rept. Scientific Results Explor. Voyage HMS Challenger, v. 17, no. 2 (pt. 49), L+362 p., 29 pl.
- Milne-Edwards, Alphonse**  
(196) 1860, *Histoire des crustacés podophthalmiques fossiles*: Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, ser. 4, v. 14, p. 129-293, pl. 1-10.  
(197) 1860, *Monographie des décapodes macrures fossiles de la famille des thalassiniens*: Same, ser. 4, v. 14, p. 294-357, pl. 11-16.  
(198) 1862-65, *Monographie des crustacés de la famille des cancériens*: Same, ser. 4, v. 18 (1862), p. 31-85, pl. 1-10; v. 20 (1863), p. 273-324, pl. 5-12; ser. 5, v. 1 (1864), p. 31-88, pl. 3-9; v. 3 (1865), p. 297-351, pl. 5-13.  
(199) 1868, *Observations sur la faune carcinologique des îles du Cap Vert*: Muséum Histoire Nat. Paris, Nouv. Arch., v. 4, p. 49-68, pl. 16-18.  
(200) 1869, *Squilla Bradyi*: in L. de Folin, & L. Périer, *Les fonds de la mer*, v. 1, p. 137-138, pl. 17, fig. 11, Savy (Paris).  
(201) 1873, *Descriptions des quelques crustacés nouveaux ou peu connus provenant du*

- Musée de M. C. Godeffroy*: Jour. Museum Godeffroy, v. 1, p. 77-88, pl. 12-13.
- Milne-Edwards, Henri**  
 (202) 1837, *Histoire naturelle des crustacés, comprenant l'anatomie, la physiologie et la classification de ces animaux*: v. 2, 532 p., Roret (Paris).  
 (203) 1837, *Histoire naturelle des crustacés*: in L'Institut, Paris 1834-40; v. 5, p. 255.  
 (204) 1852, *Observations sur les affinités zoologiques et la classification naturelle des crustacés*: Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, ser. 3, v. 18, p. 109-166, pl. 3-4.
- Monod, Th.**  
 (205) 1926, *Les Gnathiidae, essai monographique (morphologie, biologie, systématique)*: Soc. Sci. Nat. Maroc, Mém., no. 13, 667 p., 1 pl., 277 text fig.  
 (206) 1940, *Thermosbaenacea*: in H. G. Bronn, Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs, v. 5, Abt. 1, Buch 4, 24 p., 32 text fig., Akad. Verlag. (Leipzig).
- Moreira, C.**  
 (207) 1903, *Crustaceos. Estudos preliminares. Campanhas de pesca do hiato "Annie" dos Srs. Bandeira e Bravo*: Lavoura, v. 7, no. 1-3, p. 60-67.  
 (208) 1905, *Crustaceos. Campanhas de pesca do "Annie"*: Arch. Museu Nac. Rio de Janeiro, v. 13, p. 121-145, pl. 1-5, 2 text fig.
- Münster, Georg Graf zu**  
 (209) 1840, *Über einige Isopoden in den Kalkschiefern von Bayern*: Beitr. Petrefactenkunde, pt. 3, p. 19-23, pl. 1, fig. 1-8, pl. 314, fig. 9.
- Nicholls, G. E.**  
 (210) 1929, *Notes on freshwater Crustacea of Australia*: Victorian Nat. Jour. & Mag., v. 45, p. 285-295, text fig. 1-8.  
 (211) 1943, *The Phreatoicoidea. Part I—The Amphisopidae*: Royal Soc. Tasmania, Papers & Proc., 1942, p. 1-145, 34 text fig.  
 (212) 1944, *The Phreatoicoidea. Part II—The Phreatoicidae*: Same, 1943, p. 1-157, text fig. 35-80.  
 (213) 1947, *On the Tasmanian Syncarida*: Rec. Queen Victoria Museum, v. 2, p. 9-16.
- Noetling, Fritz**  
 (214) 1881, *Ueber einige Brachyuren aus dem Senon v. Maestricht und dem Tertiär Norddeutschlands*: Deutsch. Geol. Gesell., Zeitschr., v. 33, p. 357-371, pl. 20.
- Noodt, Wolfram**  
 (215) 1962, *Anaspidacea (Crustacea, Syncarida) in der südlichen Neotropis*: Deutsch. Zool. Gesell. Wien, Verhandl., 1962, p. 568-578, text fig. 1-6.
- (216) 1965, *Natürliches System und Biogeographie der Syncarida (Crustacea Malacostraca)*: Gewässer und Abwässer, v. 37, p. 77-186.
- Novozhilov, N. I.**  
 (217) 1960, *Podklass Pseudocrustacea: Trilobitobraznye i rakoobraznye*, N. E. Chernysheva (ed.), in Osnovy Paleontologii, Yu. A. Orlov (ed.), p. 199, text fig. 442 (Moskva). [Subclass Pseudocrustacea.]
- Odhner, T.**  
 (218) 1923, *Indopazifische Stomatopoden*: Göteborg Vetensk. Samh. Handl., ser. 4, v. 27, pt. 4, p. 1-16, 1 pl.
- Oppel, Albert**  
 (219) 1862, *Ueber jurassische Crustaceen*: Museum [K.] Bayer. Staates, Paläont. Mitteil., v. 1, p. 1-120, pl. 1-38.
- Oppenheim, L. P.**  
 (220) 1888, *Neue Crustaceenlarven aus dem lithographischen Schiefer Bayerns*: Deutsch. Geol. Gesell. Zeitschr., v. 40, p. 709-719, pl. 31.
- Oravec, J.**  
 (221) 1962, *Új Ráktelek a hazai triászából*: Földtani Közlemény, v. 92, no. 3, p. 324-329, pl. 45, text fig. 1-6.
- Owen, Richard**  
 (222) 1832, *Characters of some new species of stomapodous Crustacea, collected by Mr. Cuming*: Zool. Soc. London, Proc., v. 2, p. 5-6.
- Packard, A. S.**  
 (223) 1885, *The Syncarida, a group of Carboniferous Crustacea*: Am. Naturalist, v. 19, p. 700-703.
- Papp, A., Zapfe, H., Bachmayer, F., & Tauber, A. F.**  
 (224) 1947, *Lebensspuren mariner Krebse*: Akad. Wiss. Wien, Math. -naturwiss., Kl., Sitzungsber., Abt. 1, v. 155, no. 8-10, p. 281-317.
- Parisi, B.**  
 (225) 1922, *Elenco degli Stomatopodi del Museo di Milano*: Soc. Italiana Sci. Nat., Atti, v. 61, p. 91-114, text fig. 1-7.
- Peach, B. N.**  
 (226) 1908, *Monograph on the higher Crustacea of the Carboniferous rocks of Scotland: Great Britain*, Geol. Survey, Palaeont., Mem., v. 1 (1908), 82 p., 12 pl.
- Pelseneer, P.**  
 (227) 1886, *Notice sur un Crustacé de la Craie brune des environs de Mons*: Musée Royal Histoire Nat. Belgique, Bull., v. 4, no. 1, p. 37-46, text fig. 1-3.

**Poulsen, Christian**

- (228) 1956, *Proposed validation under the plenary powers of the generic name "Sao" Barbrande, 1846 (Class Trilobita)*: Bull. Zool. Nomenclature, v. 12, no. 5, p. 131-135.

**Provenzano, A. J.**

- (229) 1959, *The shallow-water hermit crabs of Florida*: Marine Sci. Gulf & Carib., Bull., v. 9, p. 349-420, 21 text fig.

**Racovitza, E.-G., & Sevastos, R.**

- (230) 1910, *Proidotea Haugi n. g. n. sp., Isopode oligocène de Roumanie et les Mesidoteini, nouvelle sous-famille des Idotheidae*: Arch. Zoologie Expér. Gén., ser. 5, v. 6, p. 175-200, pl. 9, 10, 18 text fig.

**Rathbun, M. J.**

- (231) 1900, *The decapod and stomatopod Crustacea: Results of the Branner-Agassiz Expedition to Brazil, I.*: Washington Acad. Sci., v. 2, p. 133-156, pl. 8.
- (232) 1906, *The Brachyura and Macrura of the Hawaiian Islands*: U.S. Fish. Comm., Bull., v. 23, pt. 3, p. 827-930.
- (233) 1917, *New species of South Dakota Cretaceous crabs*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 52, p. 385-391.
- (234) 1918, *The grapsoid crabs of America*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Bull. 97, 461 p.
- (235) 1919, *Decapod crustaceans from the Panama Region*: Same, Bull. 103, p. 123-184, pl. 54-66.
- (236) 1919, *West India Tertiary decapod crustaceans*: Carnegie Inst., Washington, Publ. no. 291, p. 157-182, pl. 1-9.
- (237) 1925, *The spider crabs of America*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Bull., v. 129, p. 1-613.
- (238) 1926, *The fossil stalk-eyed Crustacea of the Pacific slope of North America*: Same, Bull. 138, 155 p., 39 pl., 6 text fig.
- (239) 1926, *The fauna of the Ripley Formation of Coon Creek, Tennessee. Decapoda*: U. S. Geol. Survey, Prof. Paper, v. 137, p. 184-191.
- (240) 1928, *Two new crabs from the Eocene of Texas*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 73, p. 1-6.
- (241) 1929, *A new crab from the Eocene of Florida*: Same, Bull. 75, Art. 15, 4 p.
- (242) 1930, *Fossil decapod crustaceans from Mexico*: Same, Bull. 78, Art. 8, 10 p.
- (243) 1930, *The cancrivora crabs of America of the families Euryalidae, Portunidae, Atelecyclidae, Cancridae, and Xanthidae*: Same, Bull., v. 152, p. 1-609.
- (244) 1935, *Fossil Crustacea of the Atlantic and Gulf Coastal Plain*: Geol. Soc. America, Spec. Paper, no. 2, 160 p.
- (245) 1937, *The oxystomatous and allied crabs of America*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Bull., v. 166, p. 1-278.

- (246) 1945, *Decapod Crustacea*: in H. S. Ladd & J. E. Hoffmeister, Geology of Lau, Fiji, Bernice Pauahi Bishop Museum, Bull. 181, p. 373-383.

**Remes, M.**

- (247) 1923, *Excroissance des crustacés du Tithonique de Stramberk*: Internatl. Acad. Sci. de Bohême, Bull., v. 23, p. 36-37, pl. 1.

**Rémy, J. M.**

- (248) 1960, *Études paléontologiques et géologiques sur les Falaises de Fresco (Côte d'Ivoire). II. Crustacés*: Ann. Fac. Sci. Univ. Dakar, Extr., v. 5, p. 55-64, 1 pl.

**\_\_\_\_\_, & Avnimelech, M.**

- (249) 1955, *Eryon yehoachi nov. sp. et Cenomanocarcinus cf. vanstraeleni Stenzel, crustacés décapodes du Crétacé supérieur de l'état d'Israël*: Soc. Géol. France, Bull., ser. 6, v. 5, p. 311-314, pl. 19a.

**Reuss, A. E.**

- (250) 1859, *Zur Kenntnis fossiler Krabben*: Akad. Wiss. Wien, Denkschr., v. 17, p. 1-90, pl. 1-24.

**Richardson, H.**

- (251) 1905, *A monograph of the isopods of North America*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Bull., v. 54, 727 p., 740 text fig.

**Richter, Reinhard**

- (252) 1848, *Beitrag zur Paläontologie des Thüringerwaldes*: 100 p., Kaiserlich-königlichen Hof- und Staatsdruckei (Wien).

**Ristori, Giuseppe**

- (253) 1886, *I crostacei brachiuri ed anomuri del Pliocene Italiano*: Soc. Geol. Italiana, Boll., v. 5, p. 93-129.

**Roger, Jean**

- (254) 1944, *Eryoneicus? sahel-almæ n. sp., crustacé décapode du Sénonien du Liban*: Muséum Natl. Histoire Nat., Bull., 2<sup>e</sup> ser., v. 16, pt. 3, p. 191-194, 2 text fig.
- (255) 1946, *Les invertébrés des couches à poissons du Crétacé Supérieur du Liban. Etude paléobiologique des gisements. Résultats scientifiques de la Mission C. Arambourg en Syrie et en Iran (1938-1939). I.*: Soc. Geol. France, Mém., new ser., v. 23, p. 1-92, pl. 1-10, text fig. 1-53.
- (256) 1953, *Leptostraca*: in Jean Piveteau (ed.), *Traité de paléontologie*, v. 3, p. 310-316, 17 text fig., Masson (Paris).

**Rolfe, W. D. I.**

- (257) 1962, *The cuticle of some Middle Silurian ceratiocaridid Crustacea from Lanarkshire, Scotland*: Palaeontology, v. 5, p. 30-51, pl. 7-8, 5 text fig.
- (258) 1962, *Grosser morphology of the Scottish Silurian phyllocarid crustacean, Ceratio-*

- caris papilio* Salter in Murchison: Jour. Paleontology, v. 36, p. 912-932, pl. 129-132, 10 text fig.
- Roux, P.**  
(259) 1828-30, *Crustacés de la Méditerranée et de son littoral*: 45 pl., Levraut et al. (Paris), P. Roux (Marseille).
- Sanders, H. L.**  
(260) 1957, *The Cephalocarida and crustacean phylogeny*: Syst. Zoology, v. 6, p. 112-129.
- Sars, G. O.**  
(261) 1893-1919 [1895-1921], *An account of the Crustacea of Norway*: (a) v. 1, pt. 1, Amphipoda, viii+711 p. (1893) [1895]; pt. 2, plates, 240 pl.+suppl. pl. 1-8 (1895); (b) v. 2, Isopoda, x+270 p., 100 pl., suppl. pl. 1-4 (1896) [1899]; (c) v. 3, Cumacea, x+115 p., 72 pl. (1899) [1900]; (d) v. 4, Copepoda, Calanoida, xiii+225 p., 102 pl., suppl. pl. 1-4 (1901) [1903]; (e) v. 5, pt. 1, Copepoda, Harpacticoida, xiv+449 p. (1903) [1911]; pt. 2, plates, 230 pl.+suppl. pl. 1-54 (1911); (f) v. 6, Copepoda, Cyclopoida, xiii+172 p., 118 pl. (1913) [1918]; (g) v. 7, Copepoda, Supplement, 121 p.+76 pl. (1919) [1921], Alb. Cammermeyers Forlag and Bergen Museum (Christiania and Copenhagen).
- Schäfer, Wilhelm**  
(262) 1951, *Fossilisations-Bedingungen brachyurer Krebse*: Senckenberg. Naturf. Gesell., Abhandl., v. 485, p. 221-238, pl. 53-54.  
(263) 1954, *Form und Funktion der Brachyuren-Schere*: Same, v. 489, p. 1-65.  
(264) 1962, *Aktuo-paläontologie nach studien in der Nordsee*: 666 p., Verl. W. Kramer (Frankfurt).
- Schlüter, Clemens**  
(265) 1872, *Ein fossiler Stomatopode vom Libanon*: Naturhist. Ver. Preuss. Rheinl. Westfal., Verhandl., v. 29, Sitzungsber., p. 194-195.
- Schmitt, W. L.**  
(266) 1942, *The species of Aegla, endemic South American fresh-water crustaceans*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 91, p. 431-520.
- Secretan, Sylvie**  
(267) 1960, *Essai d'interprétation des sillons des crustacés décapodes astacoures*: Acad. Sci. Paris, Comptes Rendus, v. 250, no. 1, p. 168-169.  
(268) 1960, *Observations relatives au processus d'évolution des sillons chez les crustacés décapodes macroures*: Same, v. 251, p. 1551-1553.
- Serène, R.**  
(269) 1962, *Révision du genre Pseudosquilla (Stomatopoda) et définition de genres nouveaux*: Inst. Océanogr. Monaco, Bull., no. 1241, p. 1-27, text fig. 1-5.
- Shiino, S. M.**  
(270) 1942, *Studies on the embryology of Squilla oratoria de Haan*: Kyoto Imp. Univ., Mem. Coll. Sci., ser. B, v. 17, no. 1, p. 77-174, pl. 4-14.
- Siewing, Rolf**  
(271) 1956, *Untersuchungen zur Morphologie der Malacostraca (Crustacea)*: Zool. Jahrb., Abt. Anat. & Ontog. Tiere, v. 75, p. 39-176, text fig. 1-72.  
(272) 1957, *Anatomie und Histologie von Thermosbaena mirabilis. Ein Beitrag zur Phylogenie der Reihe Pancarida (Thermosbaenacea)*: Akad. Wiss. & Lit. Mainz, Math.-Naturwiss. Kl., Abhandl., no. 7, p. 197-270, 43 text fig.  
(273) 1959, *Syncarida*: in H. G. Bronn, Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs, v. 5, pt. 1, 121 p., 65 text fig., Akad. Verlag. (Leipzig).  
(274) 1959-60, *Neuere Ergebnisse der Verwandtschaftsforschung bei den Crustaceen*: Rostock Univ., Wiss. Zeitschr., Math.-Naturwiss. Reihe, Jahrg. 9, no. 3, p. 343-358, 20 text fig.  
(275) 1963, *Studies in malacostracan morphology: results and problems*: in H. B. Whittington & W. D. I. Rolfe (eds.), Phylogeny and evolution of Crustacea, Harvard Univ., Museum Comp. Zoology, Spec. Publ., p. 85-103, text fig. 26-42.
- Simionescu, I.**  
(276) 1934, *Sur quelques isopodes du Sarmatien de Roumanie*: Acad. Roumaine, Bull. Sec. Sci., v. 16, p. 159-166, 14 text fig.
- Smirnov, W. P.**  
(277) 1929, *Decapoda der Fisch-Schichten am Schwarzen Fluss in der Nähe von Wladikawkas*: Arbeit. Nord-Kaukas. Assoz. Wiss. Inst., no. 29, 48 p., 14 pl.
- Smith, Geoffrey**  
(278) 1909, *On the Anaspidacea, living and fossil*: Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci., v. 53, p. 489-578, text fig. 1-62.
- Stebbing, T. R. R.**  
(279) 1906, *Amphipoda I. Gammaridea*: Tierreich, v. 21, 806 p., 127 text fig.
- Stella, E.**  
(280) 1953, *Sur Monodella argentarii Stella, espèce de crustacé thermosbenacé des eaux d'une grotte de l'Italie central*: Hydrobiologia, v. 5, p. 226-234, 2 pl.
- Stenzel, H. B.**  
(281) 1944, *A new Paleocene catometope crab from Texas, Tehuacana tehuacana*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 18, p. 546-549.

- (282) 1944, *A new Cretaceous crab, Graptocarcinus muiri, from Mexico*: Same, v. 18, no. 6, p. 550-552, pl. 93.
- (283) 1945, *Decapod Crustacea from the Cretaceous of Texas*: Texas Univ., Publ. no. 4401, p. 401-476.
- (284) 1953, *Decapod crustaceans from the Woodbine Formation of Texas*: U. S. Geol. Survey, Prof. Paper 242, p. 212-217.
- Stolley, E.**  
(285) 1910, *Ueber zwei neue Isopoden aus nord-deutschem Mesozoikum*: Niedersäch. Geol. Vereins, Jahresber., p. 191-216, pl. 6.
- Tattersall, W. M.**  
(286) 1906, *Report on the Leptostraca, Schizopoda and Stomatopoda collected by Professor Herdman, at Ceylon, in 1902*: in W. A. Herdman, Report to the government of Ceylon on the pearl oyster fisheries of the Gulf of Manaar: v. 5, p. 157-188, pl. 1-3, Royal Society (London).
- , & **Tattersall, O. S.**  
(287) 1951, *The British Mysidacea*: 460 p., 118 text fig., Ray Soc. Publ. (London).
- Tiegs, O. W., & Manton, S. M.**  
(288) 1958, *The evolution of the Arthropoda*: Biol. Reviews, v. 33, p. 255-337, 18 text fig.
- Travis, D. F.**  
(289) 1963, *Structural features of mineralization from tissue to macromolecular levels of organization in the decapod Crustacea*: N. Y. Acad. Sci., Ann., v. 109, art. 1, p. 177-245, text fig. 1-59.
- Uéno, Masuzo**  
(290) 1957, *Observations on the taxonomy of the bathynellid genera*: Hokkaido Univ., Fac. Sci., Jour., ser. 4, v. 13, p. 133-138, text fig. 1-2.
- Vandel, Albert**  
(291) 1960, *Isopodes terrestres (première partie)*: Faune de France, v. 64, p. 1-416, text fig. 1-205 (Paris).  
(292) 1962, *Isopodes terrestres (deuxième partie)*: Faune de France, v. 66, p. 417-931, text fig. 206-409 (Paris).
- Vandenberghé, André**  
(293) 1960, *Un arthropode du terrain houiller de la Loire Eileticus pruvosti nov. sp.*: Soc. Géol. France, Bull., ser. 7, v. 2, p. 690-692, text fig. 1-2.
- Van Straelen, Victor**  
(294) 1922, *Quelques eumalacostracés nouveaux du Westphalien inférieur d'Argenteau près Liège*: Ann. Soc. Géol. Belgique, v. 45, p. m35-m40.
- (295) 1923, *Note sur la position systématique de quelques crustacés décapodes de l'époque crétacée*: Acad. Royale Belgique, Bull., p. 116-125, text fig. 1-6.  
(296) 1925, *Contribution à l'étude des crustacés décapodes de la période jurassique*: Acad. Royale Belgique, Cl. Sci., Mém., Coll. in 4°, ser. 2, v. 7, p. 1-462, pl. 1-10.  
(297) 1927, *Contribution à l'étude des crustacés décapodes fossiles de la Péninsule Ibérique*: Eos, Rev. Espán. Entomologia, v. 3, p. 79-94.  
(298) 1928, *Contribution à l'étude des isopodes méso- et cénozoïques*: Acad. Royale Belgique, Cl. Sci., Mém., ser. 2, v. 9, no. 5, 66 p., 1 pl., 5 text fig.  
(299) 1931, *Crustacea Eumalacostraca (crustaceis decapodis exclusis)*: in W. Quenstedt, Fossilium Catalogus, I, Animalia, v. 48, p. 1-98, W. Junk (Berlin).  
(300) 1933, *Sur des crustacés décapodes cénozoïques du Venezuela*: Musée Royal Histoire Nat. Belgique, Bull., v. 9, no. 10, 14 p., 6 text fig.  
(301) 1933, *Antrimpos madagascariensis, crustacé décapode du Permotrias de Madagascar*: Same, v. 9, no. 15, p. 1-3, text fig. 1-2.  
(302) 1934, *Contribution à l'étude des crustacés décapodes fossiles de la Catalogne*: Géol. Pays Catalans, v. 3, no. 25, p. 1-6.  
(303) 1936, *Sur quelques crabes du Sahélien moyen des environs d'Oran (Algérie)*: Soc. Géol. France, Bull., v. 6, p. 473-480.  
(304) 1936, *L'ancienneté et la régression du genre Homarus*: Musée Royal Histoire Nat. Belgique, Mém., v. 3, no. 2, p. 469-479.  
(305) 1936, *Sur les crustacés décapodes triassiques du Nevada*: Musée Royal Histoire Nat. Belgique, Bull., v. 12, no. 29, p. 1-7, 2 text fig.  
(306) 1936, *Crustacés nouveaux ou peu connus de l'époque crétacique*: Same, v. 12, no. 45, p. 1-50, 4 pl., 2 text fig.  
(307) 1937, *Parapirimela angolensis, brachyure nouveau du Miocène de l'Angola*: Same, v. 13, no. 5, 4 p.  
(308) 1938, *Sur une forme larvaire nouvelle de stomatopodes du Cénomaniens du Liban*: Palaeobiologica, v. 6, p. 394-400, pl. 24.  
(309) 1939, *Martinezicancer schencki brachyure nouveau du Paléocène de Californie*: Musée Royal Histoire Nat. Belgique, Bull., v. 15, no. 63, p. 1-3.  
(310) 1940, *Crustacés décapodes nouveaux du Crétacique de la Navarre*: Same, v. 16, no. 4, 5 p., 1 pl.  
(311) 1944, *Anomoure et brachyures du Cénomaniens de la Navarre*: Same, v. 20, no. 25, p. 1-2, 1 pl.

———, & Schmitz, Gaspar

- (312) 1934, *Crustacea Phyllocarida* (= *Archaeostraca*): in W. Quenstedt (ed.), *Fossilium Catalogus 1, Animalia*, pt. 64, 246 p., W. Junk (Berlin).

Vía [Vía Boada], Luis

- (313) 1957, *Contribution à l'étude paléontologique du Ocyropodoidea*, *Beurlen*: Acad. Sci. Paris, *Comptes Rendus*, v. 245, no. 5, p. 553-554.
- (314) 1959, *Decápodos fósiles del Eoceno español*: *Inst. Geol. & Min. España, Bol.*, v. 70, p. 333-395.

Voigt, F. S.

- (315) 1836, *Die Anneliden, Crustaceen, Arachniden und die ungeflügelten Insekten*: in G. Cuvier, *Das Thierreich geordnet nach seiner Organisation als Grundlage der Naturgeschichte der Thiere und Einleitung in die vergleichende Anatomie*; v. 4, xiv+516 p., F. A. Brockhaus (Leipzig).

Waterman, T. H.

- (316) 1960-61, *The physiology of the Crustacea*: v. 1-2, Academic Press, 670 p. (v. 1); 681 p. (v. 2) (New York & London).

Weigelt, Johannes

- (317) 1929, *Fossile Grabschächte brachyurer Dekapoden als Lokalgeschiebe in Pommern und das Rhizocoralliumproblem*; *Zeitschr. Geschiebeforsch.*, v. 5, p. 1-42.

White, A.

- (318) 1847, *List of the specimens of Crustacea in the collection of the British Museum*: viii+143 p., British Museum (London).

Withers, T. H.

- (319) 1922, *On a new brachyurous crustacean from the Upper Cretaceous of Jamaica*: *Ann. & Mag. Nat. History*, ser. 9, v. 10, p. 534-541, pl. 16-17.
- (320) 1924, *Eocene brachyurous decapod Crustacea from Nigeria*: Same, ser. 9, v. 13, p. 94-97.
- (321) 1932, *A Liassic crab, and the origin of the Brachyura*: Same, ser. 10, v. 9, p. 313-323, pl. 9-10.
- (322) 1932, *Some Eocene crabs from Persia and India*: Same, ser. 10, v. 9, p. 467-472, pl. 13.
- (323) 1945, *New Cretaceous cirripedes and crab*: Same, ser. 11, v. 12, p. 552-561, pl. 2.
- (324) 1951, *Some Jurassic and Cretaceous crabs (Prosoptonidae)*: *British Museum Nat. History, Bull.*, v. 1, p. 173-186.

Wood-Mason, J.

- (325) 1895, *Figures and descriptions of nine species of Squillidae from the collection in the Indian Museum*: *Indian Museum*, p. 1-11, pl. 1-4.

Woods, Henry

- (326) 1922-29 (1925-31), *A monograph of the fossil macrurous Crustacea of England*: *Palaeontograph Soc. London, Mon.*, v. 76, 1922 (1925), p. 1-16; v. 77, 1923 (1925), p. 17-40; v. 78, 1924 (1926), p. 41-48; v. 79, 1925 (1927), p. 49-64; v. 80, 1926 (1928), p. 65-72; v. 82, 1928 (1930), p. 73-88; p.83, 1929 (1931), p. 89-122.

Woods, J. T.

- (327) 1953, *Brachyura from the Cretaceous of central Queensland*: *Queensland Museum, Mem.*, v. 13, pt. 1, p. 50-57.
- (328) 1957, *Macrurous decapods from the Cretaceous of Queensland*: Same, v. 13, pt. 3, p. 155-175.

Woodward, Henry

- (329) 1867, *On a new genus of shore-crab, Gonio-cypoda Edwardsi, from the lower Eocene of Hampshire*: *Geol. Mag.*, v. 4, p. 529-531.
- (330) 1873, *Further notes on Eocene Crustacea from Portsmouth*: *Geol. Soc. London, Quart. Jour.*, v. 29, p. 25-31, pl. 1-2.
- (331) 1876, *On some new macrurous Crustacea from the Kimmeridge Clay of the sub-Wealden boring, Sussex, and from Boulogne-sur-Mer*: Same, v. 32, p. 47-50.
- (332) 1900, *Notes on a crustacean Mesodromilites birleyi gen. et sp. nov. from the Gault of Folkestone, Kent*: *Geol. Mag.*, new ser., v. 7, p. 61-64.
- (333) 1901, *On some Crustacea collected by Miss Caroline Birley and Miss L. Copland from the upper Cretaceous of Faxø, Denmark*: Same, v. 8, p. 486-501.
- (334) 1907, *On the genus Pygocephalus (Huxley), a primitive crustacean from the Coal-measures*: Same, dec. 5, v. 4, p. 400-407, pl. 18.

Wright, C. W., & Wright, E. V.

- (335) 1950, *Some dromiacean crabs from the English Cretaceous*: *Geologists' Assoc., Proc.*, v. 61, p. 13-17.

Wüst, Ewald

- (336) 1903, *Untersuchungen über die decapoden Krebse der germanischen Trias*: 20 p., Gustav Fischer (Jena).

Zimmer, C.

- (337) 1927, *Mysidacea, Cumacea, Tanaidacea, and Isopoda*: in W. Kükenthal, & T. Krumbach (eds.), *Handbuch der Zoologie*, v. 3, pt. 1, p. 607-766, text fig. 592-808 (Berlin & Leipzig).
- (338) 1941, *Cumacea*: in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, v. 5, pt. 1, bk. 4, 222 p., 266 text fig., Akad. Verlag. (Leipzig).

- , & Gruner, H.-E.  
 (339) 1956, *Euphausiacea*: in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, v. 5, pt. 1, bk. 6, pt. 3, 286 p., 204 text fig., Akad. Verlag. (Leipzig).

#### ADDITIONAL SOURCES OF ILLUSTRATIONS

- (340) Ammon, L. von, 1882  
 (341) Bachmayer, Friedrich, a, 1947; b, 1955  
 (341a) Balss, H., 1933  
 (342) Barcena, M., 1876  
 (343) Barrande, Joachim, 1872  
 (343a) Bather, F. A., 1914  
 (344) Bell, Th., 1863  
 (345) Birshteyn, J. A., 1960  
 (345a) Bouvier, E. L., 1898  
 (346) Broili, Ferdinand, a, 1917; b, 1929  
 (347) Bruun, A., 1940  
 (348) Calman, W. T., a, 1905; b, 1933  
 (349) Cannon, H. G., 1931  
 (349a) Carter, J., 1886  
 (350) Caster, K. E., & Brooks, H. K., 1956  
 (351) Clarke, J. M., a, 1893; b, 1898  
 (352) Claus, Carl, 1888  
 (353) Derjavin, A. N., 1927  
 (354) Dollfus, A., 1904  
 (355) Fabiani, Ramiro, 1910  
 (356) Geinitz, H. B., 1863  
 (357) Glaessner, M. F., a, 1924; b, 1931  
 (358) Gordon, Isabella, 1960  
 (359) Gurjanova, E., 1929  
 (360) Hansen, H. J., 1903  
 (360a) Hauff, B., 1960  
 (361) Holt, E. W. L., & Tattersall, W. M., 1905  
 (362) Kirkby, J. W., 1857  
 (362a) Kishinouye, K., 1925  
 (363) Kunth, A., 1870  
 (364) Lehmann, W. M., unpubl. photograph  
 (365) Lucks, R., 1928  
 (366) Manton, S. M., 1934  
 (367) Meyer, H. von, 1860  
 (368) Milne-Edwards, Alphonse, & Bouvier, E. L., 1902  
 (369) Münster, Georg Graf zu, 1839  
 (370) Novak, Ottomar, a, 1872; b, 1885 (1886)  
 (371) Peach, B. N., 1881  
 (372) Perner, Jaroslav, 1919 (1916)  
 (373) Picard, E., 1858  
 (374) Quenstedt, F. A., 1885  
 (375) Reiff, E., 1936  
 (375a) Remés, M., 1895  
 (376) Rolfe, W. D. I., a, 1962; b, 1963  
 (377) Sars, G. O., a, 1885; b, 1887; c, 1896; d, 1900  
 (378) Sheppard, E. M., 1933  
 (379) Snodgrass, R. E., 1958  
 (379a) Stephenson, W., & Campbell, B., 1960  
 (380) Strouhal, H., 1954  
 (381) Tauber, A. F., 1950  
 (382) Thiele, Johannes, a, 1904; b, 1905  
 (383) Van Straelen, Victor, 1923  
 (384) Walcott, C. D., a, 1886; b, 1890; c, 1912  
 (385) Wells, J. W., 1944  
 (386) Woodward, Henry, a, 1866; b, 1890

## CYCLOIDEA

By M. F. GLAESSNER

[University of Adelaide, Adelaide, Australia] [Chapter submitted to editor November, 1965]

## MORPHOLOGY

Carapace small, shieldlike, hemispherical, or helmet-shaped, truncated anteriorly; rounded, pointed or slightly indented posteriorly, calcified in many genera. Surface generally with a narrow median region delimited by grooves which converge posteriorly; one median and two or more lateral bosses in the frontal region; often with curved longitudinal or radial ridges and rows of granules on the surface.

The ventral surface is preserved only in Paleozoic forms. It shows a large triangular median plate which tapers posteriorly to a point about two-thirds of the length from the anterior end. Seven pairs of narrow, elongate, trapezoidal plates radiate from its sides (Fig. 363A, A, C). It has been assumed that the trapezoidal plates represent the protopods of biramous legs (Fig. 363A, A). A pair of indistinct anteroventral structures or organs may correspond in subcircular shape and in position to a pair of bosses on the dorsal side. One pair of antennae (Fig. 363A, B) arises from the anterolateral angles of a truncated frontal margin. There is a lateral doublure of the carapace. No abdomen is known but short posteromedian appendages are interpreted as a telson and a pair of ovate furcal plates. Anterolateral circular orbits or compound eyes are found on some convex carapaces. In the shield-like *Halicynne* an emargination of the anterior margin on either side of the frontal lobe may indicate the position of the eyes. The position of the mouth is not definitely known. According to HOPWOOD (1925) it was in front of the anterior edge of the large ventral median triangular plate and he interpreted a small anterior structure as a labrum and metastome.

Other authors consider the large plate as a labrum, and the small fusiform shield so interpreted by HOPWOOD could have been a rostral plate. PACKARD and HOPWOOD refer

to a mud-infilled longitudinal tubular structure as possibly the alimentary canal.

The main distinctive characteristics are the small carapace which covers a head with one pair of antennae and in some forms sessile eyes; it is fused to a thorax with seven segments bearing legs which were probably biramous. Where present, the abdomen was reduced to a telson and a pair of furcal plates. The carapace is variously sculptured, mainly in the anterior re-

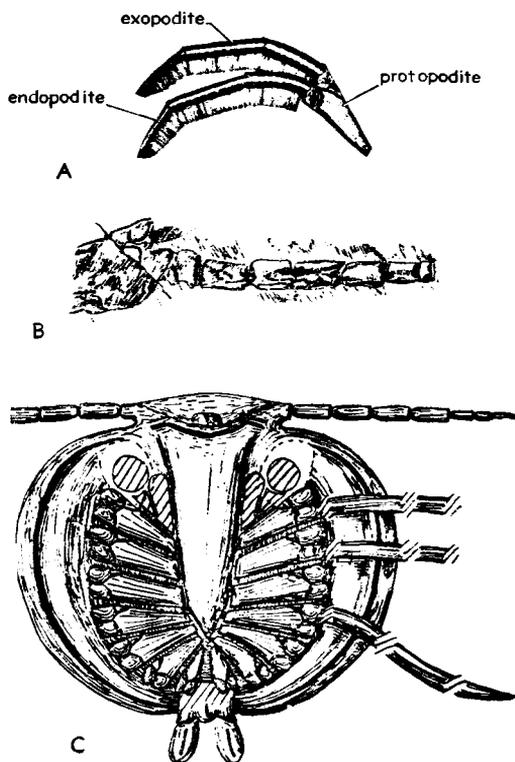


FIG. 363A. Morphology of Cycloidea.—A. Enlarged restoration of limb of Cycloidea,  $\times 2.5(4)$ .—B. *Cycylus (?) johnsoni* WOODWARD, base of antenna,  $\times 2.5(4)$ .—C. Reconstruction of the ventral side of Cycloidea,  $\times 2$  (referred to *Halicynne* by HOPWOOD) (4).

gion, and with the exception of a few almost evenly granulated forms, bears a median elevated region which tapers posteriorly.

### AFFINITIES

The presence of antennae and the structure of the legs and caudal appendages (if interpreted correctly by Hopwood) suggest crustacean affinities but these small fossils cannot be assigned to any known group of Crustacea. Earlier investigators considered affinities with larval or adult Xiphosura or

Eurypterida, which were suggested mainly by the radial arrangement of the ventral structures. Comparisons with trilobite larvae were also made and find some support in the presence of the glabella-like median elevation and the antennae, but fail in details. Hopwood concluded that *Cyclus* was to be included in the Branchiura but the resemblance of some of the flatter Cycloidea to the parasitic Branchiura is quite superficial and the presence of suction cups in the species described by him is unlikely. Closely related forms have a highly vaulted calcified carapace which does not suggest attached or parasitic habits. Trauth (1918) described Permian and Triassic forms as Decapoda Brachyura but they are clearly related to Cycloidea. Glaessner (1928) considered the possibility of their derivation from Phyllocarida as a result of benthonic (crablike) adaptation of these Malacostraca but the morphological similarities are only superficial. An origin from primitive swimming (possibly copepod-like) Crustacea through adaptation to benthonic life is perhaps more likely but fossil Copepoda of this age are unknown. The Cycloidea seem to have no known living or extinct relatives and their systematic position is uncertain.

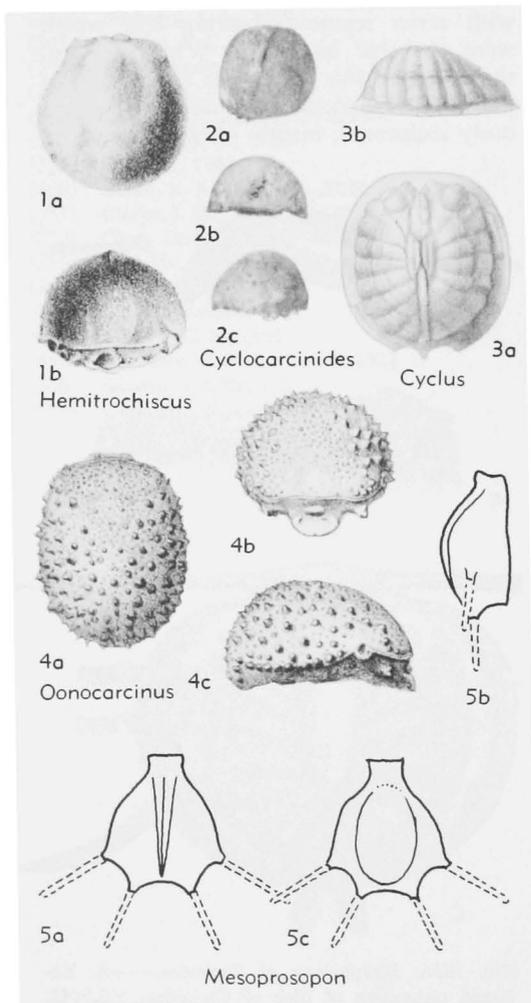


FIG. 363B. Cycloidea (3); Hemitrochiscidae (1-2,4); Mesoprosopidae (5) (p. R568-R569).

### STRATIGRAPHIC AND GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The Cycloidea range from Lower Carboniferous to Upper Triassic. They are known from North America, Europe, and central Asia. They occur in marine and brackish-water sediments.

### SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

#### Class and Order UNCERTAIN

#### Superfamily CYCLOIDEA Glaessner, 1928

[non WHITEHOUSE, 1941]  
[=Cyclina RICHTER, 1933 in DITTLER *et al.*]

#### Family CYCLIDAE Packard, 1885

Carapace small, outline circular or oval, dorsal surface shieldlike or highly convex,

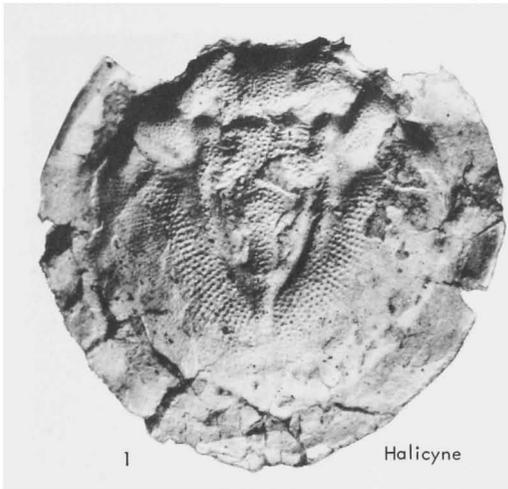


FIG. 363C. Cyclidae (p. R569).

with the highest point behind the center. A median region narrowed posteriorly, anteriorly there are a number of rounded bosses. Margin entire or denticulate. Lateral regions smooth, longitudinally keeled, or radially grooved. A single pair of transverse antennae attached laterally to the frontal region. Ventral side of cephalothorax with about seven radiating plates grouped around a large central plate which tapers posteriorly. [This is known only in few species]. *L.Carb.-U.Trias.*

**Cyclus** DE KONINCK, 1841 [*\*Agnostus ?radialis* PHILLIPS, 1836; OD] [*non* LEACH, 1815 (*err. pro Cyclas* LATREILLE, 1802), *nec* JURINE, 1817 *nec* ANTON, 1837 (*err. pro Cyclas* LAMARCK, 1798), *nec* BARRANDE, 1879] [= *Paraprosopon* GEMMELLARO, 1890 (type, *P. reussi*)]. Carapace small, with oval or circular outline, cap- or helmet-shaped, with elevated median ridge narrowing posteriorly, and anterior and anterolateral bosses; with or without concentric and radial lateral ridges; surface finely granulated or smooth, margin smooth. Antennae attached laterally to frontal margin. Ventral side of cephalothorax with large median shield which tapers posteriorly, and ?7 pairs of radiating structures which may be bases of ?biramous legs. Small telson with lobate furcal appendages known in one species. [The flattened species formerly known as *Cyclus* were placed in *Halicyne* by HOPWOOD (1925); they do not conform with it and may have to be placed in a new genus.] *L.Carb.*, N.Eu. (Belg.-Eng.-Ire.-Ural)-C. Asia; *U.Carb.*, USA (Ill.-Kans.)-Eng.; *L.Perm.*, Eu. (Ural-Sicily).—FIG. 363B,3. *\*C. radialis*

(PHILLIPS), *L.Carb.*, Belg.; 3a-b, dorsal, lat. view,  $\times 2$  (8).

**Carcinaspides** GLAESSNER, herein [*nom. subst. pro Carcinaspis* SCHAFFHÄUTL, 1863 (*non* STIMPSON, 1858)] [*\*Carcinaspis pustulosus* SCHAFFHÄUTL, 1863; OD]. Differing from *Halicyne* in pustulated surface and finely lobulate lateral and posterior margins of carapace. *U.Trias.*, Eu. (Alps).

**Halicyne** VON MEYER, 1844 [*\*Limulus agnotus* VON MEYER, 1838; OD]. Carapace moderately convex, shield- to helmet-shaped, outline truncated anteriorly and rounded posteriorly, with a postero-median projecting point. Anterior part and median ridge with elevated bosses; surface smooth or granulated. Front truncated. Lateral margins sharp, smooth. *L.Trias.-U.Trias.*, C.Eu.-USA (Utah).—FIG. 363C,1. *H. ornata* TRÜMPY, *M.Trias.*, Ger.;  $\times 2$  (7).

### Family HEMITROCHISCIDAE Trauth, 1918

Carapace convex, with orbits and deflexed rostral plate. Surface sculpture consisting of granulation and denticulation, particularly on lateral margins, and weak grooves. *Perm.-Trias.*

**Hemitrochiscus** SCHAUROTH, 1854 [*\*H. paradoxus*; OD]. Carapace very small, hemispherical, surface finely granulate, with weak median keel and demarcation of anterior regions. Frontal region marked off by transverse orbitofrontal line. Line of fine pointed granules follows lower margin. *U.Perm.*, Eu. (Ger.).—FIG. 363B,1. *\*H. paradoxus*, *U.Perm.*, Ger.; 1a,b,  $\times 1$  (1).

**Cyclocarcinides** GLAESSNER, herein [*nom. subst. pro Cyclocarcinus* STOLLEY, 1914 (*non* GUÉRIN-MÉNEVILLE in DUPERRY, 1838)] [*\*Cyclocarcinus serratus* STOLLEY, 1914; OD]. Carapace small, hemispherical, surface finely granulate, regions not or very faintly marked. Front and orbits as in related genera. Lateral and posterior margins denticulate. *U.Trias.*, Eu. (Alps-Carpath.-Bosnia).—FIG. 363B,2. *\*C. serratus* (STOLLEY), *U. Trias.*, Alps; 2a-c, dorsal, ant., left lat. view,  $\times 2$  (6).

**Oonocarcinus** GEMMELLARO, 1890 [*\*O. insignis*; SD GLAESSNER, herein]. Carapace up to 33 mm. long, ovoid. Surface with weakly delimited median and anterior regions and granulated sculpture. Orbitofrontal line and lateral denticulate keels well developed. Front deflexed, with lateral projections, orbits circular. *Perm.*, Eu. (Sicily); *U. Trias.*, Eu. (Alps-Carpath.).—FIG. 363B,4. *\*O. insignis*, *Perm.*, Sicily; 4a-c, dors., ant., right lat. view,  $\times 1$  (2).

### Family MESOPROSOPIDAE Glaessner, 1928

[*nom. correct.* Glaessner, herein (*pro Mesoprosopidae* GLAESSNER, 1928)]

Carapace pear-shaped in outline, narrow in front, widening posteriorly, with paired posterior and posterolateral spines. *Trias*.

Mesoprosopon STOLLEY, 1914 [*\*M. triasinum*; OD]. Characters of family. *U.Trias*.(Nor.), Eu.(Aus.). —FIG. 363B,5. *\*M. triasinum*, U.Trias., Aus.; 5a-c, dorsal, right lat., ventral view,  $\times 2$  (6).

## REFERENCES

### Geinitz, H. B.

(1) 1861, *Dyas oder die Zechsteinformation und das Rothliegende. Heft 1. Die animalischen Ueberreste der Dyas*: 130 p., 23 pl., Engelmann (Leipzig).

### Gemmellaro, G. G.

(2) 1890, *I crostacei dei Calcari con Fusulina della Valle del Fiume Sosio nella Provincia di Palermo in Sicilia*: Soc. Italiana Sci. Nat., Mem., v. 8, 40 p., 5 pl.

### Glaessner, M. F.

(3) 1928, *Zur Frage der ältesten fossilen Krabben*: Centralbl. f. Mineralogie, Geologie, Paläontologie, Abt. B, no. 6, p. 388-398.

### Goldring, R.

(3a) 1967, *Cyclus martinensis sp. nov. (Crustacea) from the Upper Viséan of the Mendip Hills*,

*England: Palaeontology*, v. 10, p. 317-321, pl. 51.

### Hopwood, A. T.

(4) 1925, *On the family Cyclidae Packard*: Geol. Mag., v. 62, p. 289-309.

### Kramarenko, N. N.

(5) 1961, *Predstavitel Cyclidae (Crustacea) iz nizhnepermskikh otlozheniy Priuralya*: Akad. Nauk SSSR Leningrad, Paleont. Zhurnal, no. 2, p. 86-89, pl. 12. [*A representative of Cyclidae (Crustacea) from the Lower Permian of Cisuralia.*]

### Trauth, Friedrich

(6) 1918, *Über einige Krustaceenreste aus der alpinmediterranen Trias*: K. K. Naturhist. Hofmuseums Wien, Ann., v. 32, p. 172-192, pl. 1.

### Trümpy, Rudolf

(7) 1957, *Ein Fund von Halicyne (Crustacea incertae sedis) im mittleren Muschelkalk des Wutachtals*: Eclogae Geol. Helv., v. 50, p. 544-553, 2 text fig.

### Woodward, Henry

(8) 1878, *A monograph of the British fossil Crustacea, belonging to the order Merostomata, Pt. 5*: Palaeontograph. Soc. London, Mon., p. 181-236, pl. 31-36.

See Addendum to Cycloidea (p. R629).

## BOSTRICHOPODIDA

By GERHARD HAHN

[Freie Universität, Berlin, West Germany] [Materials for this order prepared by GERHARD HAHN, submitted December, 1965, revised October, 1967]

### Class and Order UNCERTAIN

### Order BOSTRICHOPODIDA Hahn, 1967

[*nom. correct.* HAHN, herein (*pro* Bostrichopoda HAHN, 1967)] [=Mastigomyrii STEINMANN, 1929 (*partim*)]

*Bostrichopus* (the only known genus) shows the features of a metanauplius larva: body divided in a nonsegmented cephalon with three pairs of appendages (antennules,

antennae, mandibles), and a short segmented pereion without observed appendages. Cephalon with large triangular, apically situated, serrate-edged rostrum, two deep, crescentic grooves unknown as to function, and insertions of paired appendages. Antennules (visible only on negative impression of single known specimen) short, uniramous, with paired, leaflike terminal segments. Antennae biramous, with medium-sized pro-

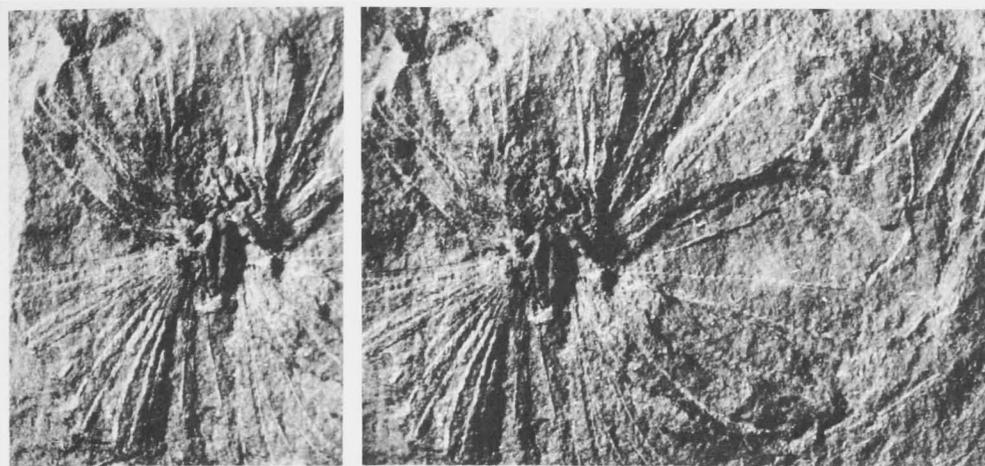


FIG. 363D. Bostrichopodidae (p. R571).

topodite, long forward-bent exopodite, and short endopodite; exopodite with about ten long, segmented, whiplike appendages (three times as long as body), which are attached serially; endopodite with two similarly constructed appendages. Mandibles with stout base (possibly divided into exopodite and endopodite) and bearing about 20 appendages, which are attached side by side. Pereion with five or six somites, interpreted to be first thoracomeres split off by the nauplius-body. [Only the ventral side of *Bostrichopus* is known.] *L.Carb.*

*Bostrichopus antiquus* is a very unique little arthropod (length of body, 3.3 mm.; total length with appendages, 13.0 mm.). Its long, flexible appendages separate this arthropod from most other known crustaceans; its short, scarcely segmented body accentuates this exceptional position. Therefore, in the first-published description (GOLDFUSS, 1838) *Bostrichopus* was interpreted as a crustacean of unknown systematic position, perhaps belonging to the Cirripedia. In decades subsequent to 1838 many authors discussed the systematic placement of the genus, postulating its inclusion among crustaceans, chelicerates, annelids, or representing an entirely new class of arthropods. All used the old, partly incorrect figures given by GOLDFUSS.

In 1929 STEINMANN revised *Bostrichopus* and gave a new interpretation of it as a forerunner of some myriapods. He classified it with Notostigmophora in the "Stamm

Mastigomyrii," which is a complete misinterpretation. *Bostrichopus* shows no affinities with any myriapods and the group "Mastigomyrii" is an unnatural unit which cannot be used in systematics. The revision by HAHN (1967) showed that *Bostrichopus* can be understood best as a larval crustacean. It is either a real metanauplius larva of an unknown adult or a neotenic form which failed to complete its transformation. Placement among the Malacostraca is indicated by the divided terminal segments of the antennules, for such divided antennules are found in some other malacostracan groups.

Comparable fossils are *Marria* RUEDEMANN, 1931, and *Paramarria* WELLS, 1944, the first tending to be a metanauplius and the second a nauplius. Other than the common metanauplius features no close relations between *Bostrichopus* and *Marria* can be discerned, because *Marria* shows neither antennules nor rostrum, nor crescentic grooves, and the appendages are differently constructed in the two genera. A detailed description and interpretation of *Bostrichopus* has been given by HAHN (1967).

#### Family BOSTRICHOPODIDAE Hahn, 1967

[*nom. correct.* HAHN, herein (*pro* Bostrichopidae HAHN, 1967)]

Characters of order. *L.Carb.*

*Bostrichopus* GOLDFUSS, 1838, p. 27 [\**B. antiquus*; M]. Characters of family. [*Bostrichopus* is known only from the type species and from a single specimen of it which shows the ventral side of the

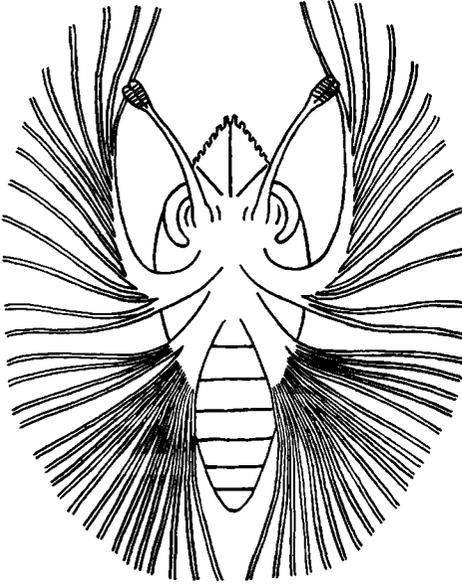


FIG. 363E. Bostrichopodidae (p. R572).

animal in positive and negative impressions, produced by splitting the slab. The specimen is kept in the Paleontological Institute at the University of Bonn, Germany.]—FIG. 363D-E. \**B. antiquus*; 363D, stereoscopic view of ventral side, positive slab,  $\times 7$ ; 363E, ventral view of body and proximal part of appendages (reconstr.),  $\times 15$  (both Hahn, 1967).

## REFERENCES

### Goldfuss, A. G.

- (1) 1838, *Beiträge zur Petrefactenkunde. B. Beiträge zur Familie der fossilen Crustaceen. 1. Bostrichopus antiquus*: Nova Acta Acad. Caes. Leop. Carol. Nat. Cur. (Halle-Leipzig), v. 19, pt. 1, p. 27-29, pl. 32, fig. 6a-b.

### Hahn, Gerhard

- (2) 1967, *Zur Stellung von Bostrichopus*: Neues Jahrb. Geol. Paläont. Abh. v. 127, pt. 3, p. 264-287, text fig. 1-12, 1 tab. (Stuttgart).

### Steinmann, Gustav

- (3) 1929, *Bostrichopus und die Scutigeriden*: Paläont. Zeitschr. v. 11, pt. 1, p. 18-50, text fig. 1-6, pl. 1-2 (Berlin).

## MYRIAPODA, EXCLUSIVE OF INSECTA

By RICHARD L. HOFFMAN

[Radford College, Radford, Virginia]  
[Chapter submitted July, 1965]

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R573
GENERAL CHARACTERS OF MYRIAPODA .....	R575
CLASSIFICATION .....	R576
SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R576
Superclass Myriapoda Latreille, 1796 .....	R576
Class Archipolypoda Scudder, 1882 .....	R577
Order Euphoberiida Hoffman, new order .....	R577
Class Diplopoda Gervais, 1844 .....	R578
Subclass Penicillata Latreille, 1827 .....	R583
Order Polyxenida Chamberlin & Hoffman, 1958 .....	R583
Subclass Pentazonia Brandt, 1833 .....	R584
Order Glomeridesmida Cook, 1895 .....	R584
Order Glomerida Cook, 1895 .....	R584
Order Amynilyspedida Hoffman, new order .....	R585

Subclass Helminthomorpha Pocock, 1887 .....	R586
Order Spirobolida Cook, 1895 .....	R587
Order Stemmulida Cook, 1895 .....	R588
Order Polyzoniida Cook, 1895 .....	R589
Order Siphonophorida Cook, 1895 .....	R590
Order Julida Brandt, 1833 .....	R590
Order Spirostreptida Cook, 1895 .....	R592
Order Callipodida Bollman, 1893 .....	R592
Order Platydesmida Cook, 1895 .....	R593
Order Chordeumida Cook, 1895 .....	R593
Order Polydesmida Pocock, 1887 .....	R594
Order and family uncertain .....	R595
Class Pauropoda Lubbock, 1866 .....	R596
Order Pauropodida Lubbock, 1866 .....	R597
Class Symphyla Ryder, 1880 .....	R597
Order Scolopendrellida Hoffman, new order .....	R597
Class Chilopoda Latreille, 1817 .....	R598
Subclass Anamorpha Haase, 1880 .....	R601
Order Scutigera Pocock, 1895 .....	R602
Order Lithobiida Pocock, 1895 .....	R602
Subclass Epimorpha Haase, 1880 .....	R603
Order Geophilida Pocock, 1895 .....	R603
Order Scolopendrida Pocock, 1895 .....	R604
Class, order, and family uncertain .....	R604

## INTRODUCTION

Species of the group Myriapoda are terrestrial, in part fossorial arthropods, and are only rarely recovered as recognizable fossils. Moreover, since modern systems of classification rely heavily upon configuration of the mouth parts and sperm transfer apparatus of the males, it is not surprising that our knowledge of extinct forms (particularly those of the Paleozoic) is unusually deficient. The following account of the myriapods can be represented only as an introduction to the state of our ignorance of the subject.

Even Recent species are perhaps less known than any other group of animals of comparable size. Most myriapods are of little or no economic importance; they tend to be cryptic in habits and are rarely seen; and most of them adhere closely to a few basic characteristic plans of body form. Taxonomic characters in all of the groups are subtle and subjective. For these reasons, only a handful of systematists have worked extensively on myriapods, with the result

that the classification, even of higher categories, is far from satisfactorily arranged.

Numerous classifications of the Arthropoda proposed in recent years offer arrangements of the various classes to suit almost any taste. The first "modern" system of myriapodous forms was published by R. I. Pocock in 1893, and has not been much improved upon subsequently. Prior to Pocock's time (and again more recently) the name Myriapoda was used as a category of rank equal to the Insecta, Crustacea, and Arachnida, and was therefore involved in an unwarranted separation of the myriapodous and hexapodous arthropods. Pocock recognized five classes of these animals grouped in two higher-rank assemblages, as follows:

### *Major Divisions of Myriapoda according to Pocock, 1893*

#### PROGONEATA

- Class Pauropoda
- Class Diplopoda
- Class Symphyla

OPISTHOGONEATA  
Class Chilopoda  
Class Insecta

The primary basis for this dichotomy, which was the nature of the opening of the reproductive system, has come under attack in recent decades, chiefly in papers by TIEGS and SNODGRASS, who consider this character to have only secondary importance. Although much of the disagreement is well justified, it should not be overlooked that the Progoneata and Opisthogeneata of Pocock do associate classes that appear to be closely related on grounds of overall basic morphological similarity. [Few well-informed students of the arthropods will deny that chilopods are more similar to primitive insects than either is to diplopods, and I can find no justification for recognition of a group Myriapoda that excludes the six-legged forms.]

On the basis of his studies of the embryogeny of pauropods, symphylans, and insects, TIEGS (1947) proposed that myriapodous arthropods be grouped on the basis of mouthpart structures, particularly the number of gnathal segments involved in the head. His arrangement of assemblages is as follows.

*Major Divisions of Myriapoda  
according to Tiegs, 1947*

MONOGNATHA [hypothetical grade  
(no known representatives)]  
DIGNATHA  
Pauropoda  
Diplopoda  
TRIGNATHA  
Chilopoda  
Labiata (Symphyla+Insecta)

Aside from altered position of the Symphyla, this grouping does not differ radically from that of Pocock, and may seem to be satisfactory in its inclusion of Chilopoda and Insecta in a common group. However, other varieties of arrangement can be achieved by the selection of other characters for primary emphasis. A recent paper by HUBERT FECHTER (1963) advocates the following dichotomy based on characters of the preoral (buccal) cavity.

Clearly, a satisfactory arrangement of the various myriapod classes cannot be based

upon the evaluation of a single character, but needs to take account of all structural features considered collectively.

*Major Divisions of Myriapoda  
according to Fechter, 1963*

PREORAL CAVITY WITH SINGLE PAIR OF MOUTH PARTS  
Diplopoda  
Pauropoda  
Chilopoda  
PREORAL CAVITY WITH TWO PAIRS OF MOUTH PARTS  
Symphyla  
Insecta

The two groups named Diplopoda and Chilopoda have long been known. Members of both were included by LINNÉ (1758) in his "order" Insecta aptera. The name Myriapoda was proposed by LATREILLE (1796) as an order of the Insecta, and it included not only myriapods as currently known, but also isopod crustaceans that bear a superficial resemblance to various Diplopoda. In 1800, CUVIER divided the previously distinguished group of "Insecta" into Insecta and Crustacea; in the following year LAMARCK added the class Arachnida, of correlative rank. LATREILLE in 1802 recognized the Myriapoda as a subclass which included the orders Chilognatha (=Diplopoda) and Syngnatha (=Chilopoda), as well as the Crustacea. In 1814, W. E. LEACH elevated the Myriapoda to the rank of class, corresponding to the assemblages called Crustacea, Arachnida, and Insecta by earlier French specialists, and this concept of the myriapods persisted until 1887, when it was dismembered by Pocock.

Symphylids were known scientifically as early as 1839, but they suffered a long obscurity in the status of aberrant chilopods and were not accorded ordinal rank until 1880, by J. A. RYDER. Pauropods were quite unknown until 1865, and were given ordinal status (by implication at least) by their discoverer, Sir John LUBBOCK, in 1866. Members of these two groups are among the smallest of the Arthropoda and are known so far only from Recent species.

As the fossil records of all myriapod groups are still so deficient, any speculation concerning their mutual phylogenies must be based upon knowledge of living forms.

This area has provided a fertile field for investigation, and is treated elsewhere in this volume (MANTON, p. R42). For present purposes it seems sufficient to remark that two main groups can be recognized—one progoneate, with members basically vegetarian, and the other mostly opisthogoneate, with more primitive members at least tending to be carnivorous. Of the latter group, the similarity of symphylans to japygid insects is notable, and the mouth parts of all chilopods, symphylans, and primitive insects are formed upon a basically similar plan. The evolution of these myriapodous groups must have occurred with astonishing rapidity during the Early Devonian, probably contemporaneously with development of the primitive land plants.

Virtually the sum of our present knowledge of fossil myriapods stems from the early work of S. H. SCUDDER during the 1880's and of ANTON FRITSCH about a decade later. Both of these workers were competent paleontologists; SCUDDER, in addition, was an authority on many orders of extant insects. Neither, however, can be considered very conversant with the classification of Recent myriapods. Many reconstructions of fossil forms published by SCUDDER and FRITSCH are more conjectural, in my opinion, than the material available to them can justify. An attempt has been made by VERHOEFF (1926) to integrate the work of FRITSCH into classification of Recent forms, but VERHOEFF did not restudy any fossil material, and his new names and groups are therefore no better than accounts in the original literature. Clearly nothing very satisfactory will ever be done until some specialists on living forms can restudy the old collections and also a large amount of new specimens in better condition than usual. Most of the known fossil species derive from Upper Carboniferous beds of Late Pennsylvanian age, but a fair number have been found also in the Baltic amber. So far as I know, no discoveries of Mesozoic myriapod species have been reported. The scattering of Devonian specimens suggests diplopod-like creatures at that age, but they are so poorly preserved that it is difficult to determine any critical characters.

Generic names incorrectly referred to the Myriapoda and invalidly proposed family-group names for myriapods are cited at the end of this chapter.

## GENERAL CHARACTERS OF MYRIAPODA

The myriapods are exclusively terrestrial arthropods distinguished by division of the body into a head and trunk, with the head bearing a single pair of antennae and the trunk showing apparent gradation of components from a series of similar metameres at one extreme to a well-separated trisegmented thorax and multisegmented abdomen. The appendages are uniramous at all stages of growth and evolution, primitive forms generally having coxae with endite lobes. Respiration is by means of trachea or in small forms by exchange of gas directly through the body wall.

Specialists concerned with study of the Arthropoda now are mostly agreed that members of this assemblage are divisible into two divergent groups. This is now evident enough to lead to an attack on the homogeneity of the so-called phylum and renewal of spirited controversy such as occurred in the late 1890's. There is indeed reason to suspect that the so-called "chelicerates" and "mandibulates" may not have had a common arthropodan ancestral form, and those who insist upon phylogenetic purity may wish to dismember the arthropods into two phyla of similar features but separate ancestry. The proposal and acceptance of such an arrangement would of course affect the grades of classification within each phylum to some extent. My own inclination at the present is to regard the myriapodous arthropods as a superclass of the subphylum Mandibulata equivalent in rank to the Crustacea, giving the following arrangement of major categories.

### *Major Divisions of Arthropoda*

- Subphylum MANDIBULATA
  - Superclass Crustacea (or Branchiata)
  - Superclass Myriapoda
    - Class Archipolypoda
    - Class Diplopoda
    - Class Pauropoda

Class Symphyla  
 Class Chilopoda  
 Class Insecta (or Hexapoda)

Subphylum CHELICERATA (accorded this rank in  
*Treatise Part P*)

The occasion is taken here to express disagreement with a recently published propo-

posal (VANDEL, 1949) to combine all of the nonhexapodous groups into a single class Myriapoda, the Insecta being regarded as a separate group of equivalent rank.

Restoration of an Upper Carboniferous assemblage of myriapods from Bohemia is given in Figure 385, p. R605.

## CLASSIFICATION

In the systematic treatment to follow, only groupings having pre-Pleistocene representation are included. Although considerable disagreement currently exists among specialists concerning Recent orders and their limits, I offer an overall classification of the main groups of myriapods carried as far as orders. This shows an arrangement of the Diplopoda that differs from earlier classifications in placing greater emphasis on certain groups and considerably less weight on others.

A discussion of various ordinal classification of the Diplopoda has recently been published by CHAMBERLIN & HOFFMAN (1958), who introduced a new set of names. So many different ordinal names have been proposed for the same groups of animals that adoption of a uniform ending seemed to be the best solution. In general, the proposal of “-ida” endings for diplopod orders has been accepted by the majority of students of this class. Extension of the arrangement into the Chilopoda has met with less approval, partly because of a smaller multiplicity of alternative names applied to orders of this class.

The following list is noteworthy for its lack of such categories as suborders, superfamilies, and the like. Study of the classification of “myriapods” is yet in its infancy, and many years will pass before an adequate system can be worked out.

### Major Divisions of Myriapoda

- MYRIAPODA (*superclass*). *U.Sil.-Rec.*
- ARCHIPOLYPODA (*class*). *U.Sil.-Penn.*
- Euphoberiida (*order*). *U.Sil.-Penn.*
- DIPLOPODA (*class*). *Penn.-Rec.*
- Penicillata (*subclass*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Polyxenida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Pentazonia (*subclass*). *Penn.-Rec.*
- Glomeridesmida (*order*). *Rec.*
- Glomerida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Amynilyspedida (*order*). *Penn.*
- Helminthomorpha (*subclass*). *U.Penn.-Rec.*
- Spirobolida (*order*). *U.Penn.-Rec.*
- Stemmiulida (*order*). *Rec.*
- Polyzoniida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Siphonophorida (*order*). *Rec.*
- Julida (*order*). *?Eoc., Oligo.-Rec.*
- Spirostreptida (*order*). *?Penn., Rec.*
- Callipodida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Platydesmida (*order*). *Rec.*
- Chordeumida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Polydesmida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- PAUROPODA (*class*). *Rec.*
- Pauropodida (*order*). *Rec.*
- SYMPHYLA (*class*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Scolopendrellida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- CHILOPODA (*class*). *Cret.-Rec.*
- Anamorpha (*subclass*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Scutigera (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Lithobiida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- Epimorpha (*subclass*). *Cret.-Rec.*
- Geophilida (*order*). *Cret.-Rec.*
- Scolopendrida (*order*). *Oligo.-Rec.*
- INSECTA (*class*).

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Superclass MYRIAPODA Latreille, 1796

Mandibulate terrestrial arthropods with body divided into head and trunk, latter showing all gradations from series of similar metameres to distinction into triseg-

mented thorax and multisegmented abdomen. Single pair of antennae; appendages uniramous at all stages, usually with coxal endite lobes in the primitive forms. Gas exchange by trachea or in small forms directly through the body wall. *U.Sil.-Rec.*

## Class ARCHIPOLYPODA Scudder, 1882

[=Macrosterini FRITSCH, 1899; Palaeocoxopleura VERHOEFF, 1928]

Extinct Paleozoic myriapods apparently similar to Diplopoda but with segmental elements much less coalesced, prozonites retaining medially divided sternum with pair of legs. Head apparently larger than body segments, and provided with large compound eyes. Characters of mouth parts and location of gonopore unknown. *U.Sil.-Penn.*

Our knowledge of the morphology of this group is very deficient, yet collectively the scraps of information seem to indicate animals of a nature quite different from the Diplopoda. There is some reason to suspect that at least several of the species may have been aquatic or semiaquatic. The larger forms of *Acantherpestes* are commonly used in textbooks to illustrate "giant, spined, Paleozoic myriapods" and in his 1882 monograph, SCUDDER provided an impressive, if conjectural, life-size reconstruction of a specimen crawling up a plant stem. Most if not all of the American material comes from ironstone nodules of the Mazon Creek beds (M. Penn.) of Illinois. I have re-examined many of SCUDDER's original specimens (now in the Harvard University Museum of Comparative Zoology), and have been unable to see very much in the way of detailed structure. FRITSCH's specimens in carbonaceous shale apparently are in much better condition and should be restudied. In proposing the name *Palaeocoxopleura* for this group, VERHOEFF (1928) suggested that the broad sterna might be due to a fusion of the sternites with pleurites. It seems equally reasonable to postulate fusion of pleurites with tergites, a common condition among diplopods.

Probably more than one family should be recognized for genera referred here to this class and order. There is some doubt that the genus *Palaeosoma* belongs here, for the allocation merely follows the original placement of its type-species in *Acantherpestes*.

SCUDDER originally included three families (Archidesmidae, Euphoberidae, Archijulidae) in the Archipolypoda. Of these, I cannot allocate the Archidesmidae with con-

fidence to either to Archipolypoda or Diplopoda, and prefer temporarily a status of "incertae sedis" for its two genera. The Archijulidae (the type genus of which was spelled "*Archiulus*") seems to me to represent perfectly typical juliform Diplopoda. Finally, a part of SCUDDER's original Euphoberiidae has been removed to the diploped subclass Pentazonia, making up there the order Amynilyspedida.

Unquestionably, thorough revision of the Archipolypoda is one of the most urgently needed tasks remaining in arthropod paleontology, as these forms stand at the base of the radiation of terrestrial mandibulates.

## Order EUPHOBERIIDA Hoffman, new order

[*nom. correct.* HOFFMAN, herein (*pro* Euphoberidae SCUDDER, 1882)]

Characters of class. *U.Sil.-Penn.*

### Family EUPHOBERIIDAE Scudder, 1882

Head wide, with large oval ocellaria composed of many small ocelli; collum segment presumably present; first three body segments very short, each with single pair of legs; following segments seemingly diplosomites with single dorsal tergite, but with separate pleural and sternal elements on prozonites and metazonites, both subsegments with pair of legs; tergites with prominent erect spines, commonly forked. *U.Carb.(Penn.)*

*Euphoberia* MEEK & WORTHEN, 1868, p. 26 [\**E. armigera*; OD]. Metatergal spines slender, curved, simple or irregularly forked; sternal spines simple; legs not distally compressed; prosterna short, without stigmata, metasterna longer and with stigmata present; coxae apparently without exsertile coxal sacs. *U.Carb., Eu.(Czech.); Penn., N.Am.*—FIG. 364,1. *E. hystrix* FRITSCH, Czech.; diplosegment (reconstr.),  $\times 4$  (after Fritsch).

*Acantherpestes* MEEK & WORTHEN, 1868, p. 559 [\**A. major*; OD, M]. Terga with 2 or 3 rows of stout, regularly forked spines; exsertile coxal sacs apparently present; some posterior legs said to be strongly compressed and laminate. *Penn., N.Am.-Eu.*—FIG. 365,1. \**A. major*, USA (Ill.); 1a, entire animal,  $\times 0.5$ ; 1b,c, ventral side of segmental fragment and spine,  $\times 2$  (after Scudder).—FIG. 365,2. *A. gigas* FRITSCH, Czech.; head and anterior segments, dorsal view (reconstr.),  $\times 1$  (after Fritsch).

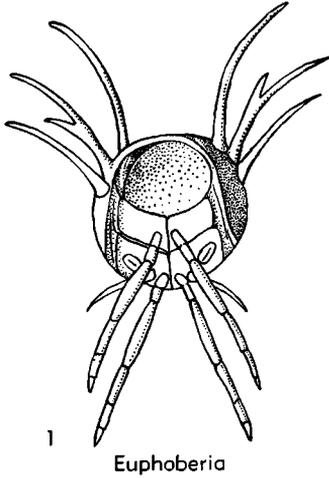


FIG. 364. Euphoberiidae (p. R577).

*Chonionotus* JORDAN, 1854, p. 12 [\**C. lithanthraca*; OD, M]. [Apparently similar to *Acantherpestes*, but I have been unable to consult the original description and can give no diagnosis. If SCUDDER (1885, p. 729) is correct in suspecting the names to be synonyms, *Chonionotus* has 14 years priority over *Acantherpestes*.] Penn., N.Am.

*Palaeosoma* JACKSON & BRADE-BIRKS, 1919, p. 410 [\**Acantherpestes giganteus* BALDWIN, 1911; OD]. Segments numerous, flattened dorsally, with lateral expansions and bearing lateral spines; sternites large, prozonite distinctly shorter element; 2 pleurites on each side of segments. *U.Carb.*, Eu.

Family UNCERTAIN

The following four genera, all but one described by PEACH from Upper Silurian and Lower Devonian strata of Scotland, are presumably referable to the Archipoly-poda. PEACH (1882) set up a family Archidesmidae for *Archidesmus* and *Kampecaris*, which, if correctly founded, may include also the somewhat later *Anthracosdesmus*. *Pattonia* appears to be distinctly different, but the structural details of all these nominal genera are not very well preserved and revision of the available material is much needed.

*Anthracosdesmus* PEACH, 1898, p. 121 [\**A. macconochiei*; OD, M]. *L.Dev.*, Eu.(Scot.).

*Archidesmus* PEACH, 1882, p. 182 [\**A. macnicoli*; OD, M]. *U.Sil.-L.Dev.*, Eu.(Scot.).

*Kampecaris* PAGE, 1856, p. 135 [\**K. forjarensis*; OD, M]. *L.Dev.*, Eu.(Scot.).  
*Pattonia* PEACH, 1898, p. 115 [\**P. couttsi*; OD, M]. *L.Dev.*, Eu.(Scot.).

Class DIPLOPODA Gervais, 1844

[=Chilognatha LATREILLE, 1802]

Terrestrial, tracheate, oviparous, anamorphic Arthropoda characterized by development of compact head with pair of short, simple, eight-jointed antennae, powerful mandibles, and subbuccal gnathochilarium formed from embryonic maxillary elements. Head followed by variable number of post-cephalic segments, without distinct separation into thorax and abdomen, each segment appearing to be an anatomical diplosomite, composed of two embryonic somites almost completely fused during ontogeny, most diplosomites retaining two pairs of seg-

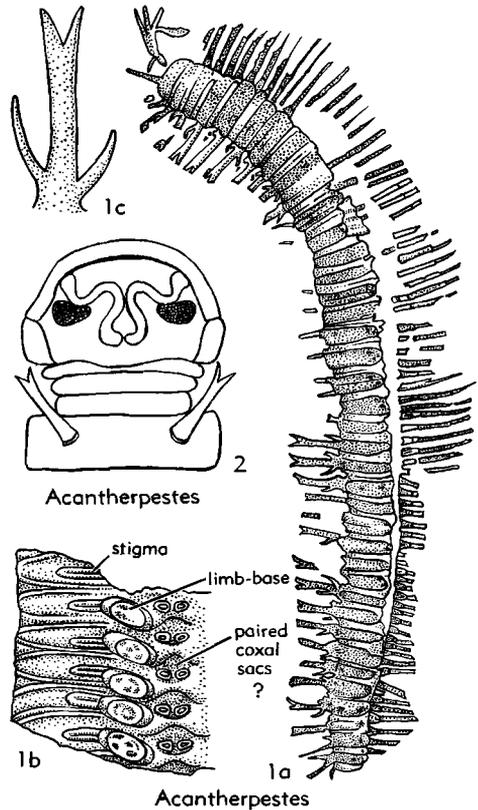


FIG. 365. Euphoberiidae (p. R577-R578).

mented appendages, except for those immediately behind head where anterior pair of each segment may be completely suppressed except for remnants of its internal musculature. Body wall typically impregnated with calcium carbonate, except during and following molting; segments composed of variable number and arrangement of sclerites (tergites, pleurites, sternites) as discussed below, primitive condition marked by retention of sclerites separated by flexible sutures or open membranous areas. Most species adapted for rolling into spiral or flat coil or compact sphere, dorsal areas of segments therefore almost universally much longer than ventral; anterior third or half of each segment normally telescoped into posterior part of preceding segment. Typically each abdominal segment containing pair of complex glands that secrete volatile poisonous liquid. *Penn.-Rec.*

Respiration in the Diplopoda occurs by means of a system of profuse fine tracheae opening through stigmata near bases of the legs.

Nutrition basically is by the ingestion of dead vegetable material, but rarely animal food may be taken. The digestive tube is essentially straight and unmodified, beginning with a preoral buccal cavity, followed by an esophagus opening into the mid-gut, into which the Malpighian tubules discharge. The hind-gut is set off by a prominent sphincter-type valve and consists of two subdivisions with highly convoluted linings. The mid-gut alone is derived from endoderm, the esophagus and pharynx being stomodeal in origin and the hind-gut proctodeal. In species of the subclass Pentazonia the gut may be looped into an S- or N-shaped coil. The anal opening is located in the terminal segment and closed by two tightly fitting anal valves or periprocts.

Reproduction is by external development of internally fertilized eggs. The sexes are separate and the opening of the reproductive systems is located in or just behind the coxae of the second pair of legs in both males and females. Mating is achieved by prolonged clasping of the female, and apparently no courtship behavior has been developed in the class. Spermatic masses are extruded beforehand from the male seminal

openings onto the gonopods (modified appendages from the seventh segment) from which spermatic material is then transferred into seminal receptacles in the cyphopods (specialized structures terminating outer ends of the oviducts). In pentazonoid forms, the gonopods are not developed, and the male achieves spermatophore transfer with his mouth parts. Eggs vary greatly in size and number, and are accorded different treatment in various groups; they may be laid in clusters and brooded by one of the parents, scattered singly in humus environments, or enclosed in an igloo-shaped mud nest built by the mother. The young usually hatch with three pairs of legs, and pass through anamorphic growth stages (usually seven), with segments and legs added at each molt (number depending upon the species). Segmentation is teloblastic, the proliferation zone being located in the penultimate segment. Development is gradual, hemimetabolous in nature, without major changes in structure or appearance, and may require a year or more for maturity. Mating usually takes place shortly after the final molt into sexual maturity. Neoteny is unknown, and seems improbable in the group, although males of several families alternate mature, reproductive phases with periods of apparent regression into an immature condition.

### EXTERNAL CHARACTERS

In Diplopoda the head is normally a solid, compact capsule composed of five or six embryonic somites (the number still not finally established) closed laterally by large and powerful mandibles and ventrally by a **gnathochilarium** formed by the fusion of various maxillary elements. The head contains a pair of simple antennae and usually photoreceptor structures in the form of ocelli that may be single or grouped into an ocellarium on each side of the head. The rear of the head capsule usually is partly closed on each side by occipital processes for muscle attachment. Diplopods are normally hypognathous, with the head directed ventrally.

Usually no definite subdivisions of the cranium can be distinguished, but topographically a number of regions are referred

to (Fig. 366,1). The ventralmost front edge, called the labrum, usually is notched medially and provided with a submarginal

row of labral setae; in some species the labrum may be elevated or of a different texture from the remainder of the head. Also, in some forms a median vertical suture in the labral region is the external reflection of the epipharynx within. Just dorsal to the labrum a surface referred to as the clypeus extends upward as far as the antennal sockets in front and laterally from the labrum one can distinguish the subantennal genae. Some writers set off the upper half of the clypeus as the frons, but the division is highly subjective. The topmost area of the head, termed the epicranium, normally carries a definite median epicranial suture that extends down to a point between the antennae; this suture is the external reflection of a median internal septum upon which the mandibular muscles originate.

The lateral edges of the cranium are notched on each side next to the antennal sockets for reception of outer ends of the suspensors of the internal "tentorium." In the order Polydesmida, these notches are very deep and the suspensors are thus isolated from the cranial margin; for many years they have been misinterpreted as sensory organs. In some orders, just behind the suspensorial notch is a distinctly marked element named the parietal sclerite which perhaps may represent a pleural remnant of one of the cranial somites. In most diplopods the parietal sclerite is present only as a lateral lobe of the surface.

True sensory organs occur in several orders (Chordeumida, Callipodida, Stemmiulida) as distinct, convex, pearl-like structures located near the true ocelli. In the Pentazonia, a prominent, deep, horseshoe-shaped sensory organ typically occurs lateral to the antennal sockets (Fig. 366, 1, 5); both of the described types have been identified as the "Tömösvary organ," such as occurs also in chilopods, but the structure seems so utterly different that I doubt the homology to be a correct one.

In diplopods generally, the antennae are composed of eight segments or antennomeres, which are generally similar in appearance except for differences in relative length and width. The seventh usually is shortest and the eighth is sunk into its distal end. The eighth antennomere bears a vari-

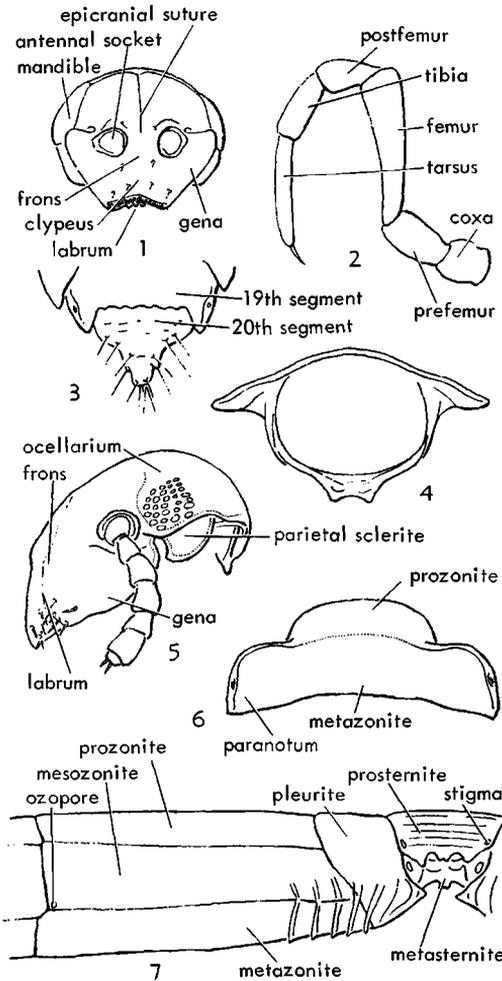


FIG. 366. External structural features used in classification of Diplopoda (Hoffman, n).—1. Head of generalized polydesmoid, anterior aspect,  $\times 7$ .—2. Ambulatory leg of generalized polydesmoid,  $\times 7$ .—3. Ultimate and penultimate segments of polydesmoid, dorsal aspect, showing modification of 20th segment into triangular epiproct,  $\times 7$ .—4. Mid-body segment of polydesmoid, posterior aspect, legs omitted, showing lateral projection of pleurotergite into paranota,  $\times 8$ .—5. Cranium of spiroboloid, appendages removed, oblique anterior-lateral aspect,  $\times 8$ .—6. Mid-body segment of polydesmoid, dorsal aspect,  $\times 8$ .—7. Mid-body segment of spiroboloid, tergal sclerites represented as flattened, showing characteristic arrangement of 3 tergal bands with a single pleurite on each side and 2 imbricate sternites,  $\times 5$ .

able number of small conical sensory structures, presumably olfactory in nature, the customary number being four but in some 20 or more. In cursorial, quick-moving forms the antennae are always much longer and more slender than in fossorial or slow-moving species. In many the distalmost antennomeres may be specially thickened or provided with sensory trichobothria or sensory pits or both.

Light-sensitive structures are limited to simple convex or nearly flat ocelli, usually pigmented, located on the sides of the epicranium. Ocelli are present in most diplopod orders but are absent altogether from the largest (Polydesmida) and may be randomly suppressed in cavernicolous or subterranean species in other orders. When present, they may be arranged in a single row or in a cluster of variable size and shape (but usually ovoid or subreniform) containing up to 50 or 60 ocelli; for such a composite feature the name "ocellarium" has been proposed as a substitute for the incorrect but transition "eye." Whether such structures are capable of forming an image is doubtful, although in certain quick-moving Chordeumida the ocellarium is very prominently convex and perhaps is able to detect motion.

The mouth parts are dominated by the normally large, robust mandibles, originating from the second postoral cephalic somite. In the majority of Diplopoda the mandibles are superficially three-jointed; actually, the large basal segment (coxopodite of SNODGRASS) is divided into a proximal cardine and a distal stipe by a rigid suture. The distalmost segment (*Praemandibel* of ATTEMS, lacinia of SNODGRASS) attached by a movable hinge joint bears at its distal end one or more strong rasping "teeth" subtended on the inner surface by several rows of pectinate lamellae; still more proximally on the inner side may be an area modified by ridges or flutings into a grinding surface. Basally, the premandible is produced into a long apodeme to which flexor muscles are attached; these muscles originate on the epicranium or on the internal epicranial septum. The mandibles may be drastically suppressed in various groups, particularly the subclass Pselaphog-

natha and the helminthomorph orders Polyzooniida and Siphonophorida, the last two groups suspected of being suctorial in feeding behavior.

The ventral side of the head capsule in Diplopoda is closed by a flattened plate, the gnathochilarium, formed from the first maxillae and therefore an appendage of the third postoral cephalic somite. Essentially, this plate consists of a median basal element, the mentum, which commonly is divided transversely to set off an anterior or distal promentum. Proximal from the mentum are the elongated lingual lamellae, each of which bears a distal olfactory cone; laterally from the lamellae and commonly from the mentum also are the stipes, each of which carries two distal sensory cones. The stipes may be subtended basally by smaller random cardines and the mentum may rest upon a thin transverse sclerite, the prementum. Located at the base of the gnathochilarium is a large transverse plate, the gula (hypostoma of LATZEL), which is the sternal remnant of the second maxillary elements and thus not a part of the gnathochilarium in the strict sense.

The gnathochilarium tends to be characteristic in form and shape for each order of the Diplopoda. In some orders it is invariable, whereas in others random subdivision, fusion, or suppression of the various parts may occur, or even sexual dimorphism within a single species. In older literature the form of the structure is accorded pre-eminence in schemes of classification.

The size of the first body segment is strongly reduced in accordance with the adaptation for recurving the head and anterior segments, and it consists chiefly of a transverse tergite commonly called the collum. The form of the collum varies greatly. Normally it is smaller than the head or the second tergite and in some it may be flabellately broadened to cover the head completely like a broad-brimmed hat, or it may be strongly depressed laterally to form a sort of hood over all or most of the head capsule. In some diplopod orders the collum has no appendages, but in others the first pair of legs is clearly attached by muscles to the inside of the collum.

The composition of the body segments is extremely varied (as discussed under the heading "Subclass Helminthomorpha"). Each segment is composed of two fused somites, and in some forms the external sclerites reflect this relationship. In many orders we can distinguish two subsegments, the prozonite and metazonite, which may be separated only by a suture or by a distinct waistlike constriction, the stricture, that usually includes the suture or lies just behind it (Fig. 366,6). In some orders, notably the juliform groups, three transverse sclerites are discriminated, but there are only two sternites and one pleurite on each side (Fig. 366,7); obviously some secondary division, perhaps of the metazonite, has occurred here. In the extinct order *Amynilyspedida*, some fossils show the presence of two pleurites on each side, corresponding with two tergites, and this condition may still be observed in newly molted specimens of the orders *Polydesmida* and *Chordeumida*; clearly this is the primitive arrangement. In many groups the tergites are divided into two halves by a mid-dorsal longitudinal suture, the orders so represented forming a natural group on the basis of other characters and perhaps worthy of a superordinal rank. The surface of the body segments may be entirely smooth, coriaceously wrinkled, granulose, tuberculate, spinose, or showing various combinations of these conditions. In many forms the metazonites are produced laterally into paranota that impart a broad compact appearance. The paranota, when present, may be strongly depressed (common in forms which roll into a ball) or horizontal or even strongly elevated; their edges may be entire or deeply notched or strongly dentate. The metazonites of most diplopods carry a pair of defensive glands opening laterally, in some on all segments from the fifth to the penultimate (primitive condition), but in many orders an abbreviated sequence is common and in several groups there are no glands whatever. In most Recent species the glands open to the exterior through small ozopores, usually flush with the segmental surface but in a few on special elevated areas or through elongated erect

stalks. Even in fossil imprints on a fine-grained matrix (black carboniferous shale) I could not be sure of the presence of ozopores in Upper Pennsylvanian specimens of *Xyloius* recently studied. Drawings of Paleozoic millipeds with large, prominent pits indicated as "repugnatorial pores" must be regarded with some skepticism.

The terminal segment of the body is composed of a dorsal tergite, the telson (or epiproct), anal valves (periprocts), and a sternite (or hypoproct) (Fig. 366,3). Sometimes, as in *Pentazonia*, these elements are found attached to each other by connective tissue only; more usually the last segment is a solid ring enclosing the two periprocts. The epiproct may or may not be extended as a caudal projection.

The configuration of the sternal elements varies greatly among the different orders. Basically, the generalized sternum is a broad, flat plate with coxal sockets, a pair of stigmata, and internal projections of the latter that function for muscle attachment. Probably a wide sternum is the primitive condition from which most diplopods have departed, but within the single family *Platydesmidae* one finds genera with widely separated legs closely related in other respects to those in which the coxae are in contact. Such taxonomic names as "Macrosterni" and "Eurysterna" seem grossly to overemphasize the relative systematic importance of sternal width. Normally the sterna in diplopods are associated with the metazonites, where both pairs of appendages are localized, and the prozonites are thus either open ventrally (*Chordeumida*) or closed by the ventral fusion of the pleurotergites. In primitive groups the sterna remain essentially free from the pleurotergites; the gradual fusion of these, as well as other segmental elements, is clearly an evolutionary adaptation to a burrowing mode of life. In all groups the sterna of the first pair of appendages remain free and movable at least. In the *Pentazonia*, the sterna are medially divided into two halves widely separated by the coxae between them. This appears to be a secondary or derived condition associated in some way with ability to roll into a sphere.

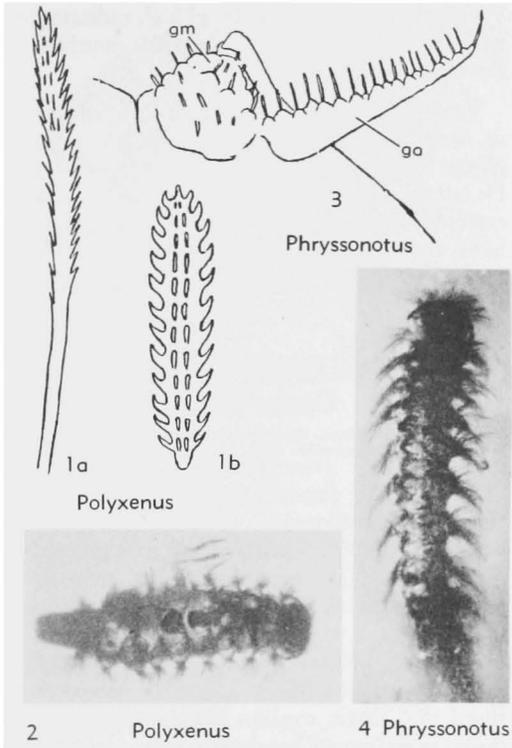


FIG. 367. Synxenidae (3, 4); Polyxenidae (1, 2)  
(p. R583-R584).

### Subclass PENICILLATA Latreille, 1827

[=Pselaphognatha LATZEL, 1884]

Minute, highly disjunct diplopods probably worthy of separate class status. Body wall soft, without carbonate impregnation, with lateral clusters of modified trichomes and transverse rows of clavate setae; head followed by 11 to 13 body segments, with 13 to 17 pairs of legs, none modified for sperm transfer or for clasping. Head with transverse suture between antennae and ocellus clusters; mouth parts reduced from normal diplopod form, particularly gnathochilarium in which mental elements are not evident, but stipital palps are hypertrophied. *Oligo.-Rec.*

Members of this group are essentially tropical or subtropical in their distribution; they appear to be definitely colonial and partial to dry situations. At first glance they are strikingly similar to the larvae of dermestid beetles, and are capable of very agile

movement. Several dozen Recent species are known, and two forms have been recorded from Oligocene amber deposits. Penicillates are separated on the basis of extremely subtle chaetotactic characters, requiring high magnification.

### Order POLYXENIDA Chamberlin & Hoffman, 1958

[=Ancyrotricha COOK, 1895; Schizocephala VERHOEFF, 1928]

Characters of subclass. *Oligo.-Rec.*

#### Family SYNXENIDAE Silvestri, 1923

Adults with 12 body segments and 17 pairs of legs; tarsal claws of last 2 pairs of legs modified into pubescent laminae; tergites with 2 transverse rows of clavate setae. *Oligo.-Rec.*

*Phryssonotus* SCUDDER, 1885, p. 73 [*Lophonotus hystrix* MENGE, 1854, p. 12; OD, M] [= *Lophonotus* MENGE, 1854 (*non* STEPHENS, 1829)]; *Synxenus* SILVESTRI, 1900, p. 114; *Schindalmonotus* ATTEMS, 1926, p. 113; *Kubanus* ATTEMS, 1926, p. 113; *Koubanus* ATTEMS, 1928, p. 198]. Characters of family. *Oligo.*, Eu.-Burma; *Rec.*, S.Afr. —FIG. 367,3,4. *P. hystrix* (ATTEMS), 3, *Rec.*, S.Afr., gnathochilarium (ga, outer feeler; gm, middle feeler), X? (not stated) (Attems); 4, *Oligo.*, Baltic amber, whole animal, X7 (Bachofen von Echt).

[Some recent investigators have suggested that *Schindalmonotus hystrix* ATTEMS, 1928, from South Africa, is congeneric with the Oligocene species *Lophonotus hystrix* MENGE for which SCUDDER proposed the new generic name *Phryssonotus*. If this synonymy is proved correct, it will result in the anomaly of two synonymous generic names having been based upon an identical specific name, and it is likewise possible that ATTEMS' name *hystrix* is even a homonymous synonym of MENGE'S! But considering the extremely subtle microscopic characters now utilized in the definition of polyxenoid species, it seems unlikely that such a synonymy can be easily proved.]

#### Family POLYXENIDAE Gray, 1842

Adults with 11 segments and 13 pairs of legs; tarsal claws of various form but not modified as in Synxenidae; tergites with 2 rows of setae, terminal segment with two tufts of long, white, sericeous setae. [Numerous Recent genera, of which one is recorded from the Baltic amber.] *Oligo.-Rec.*

*Polyxenus* LATREILLE, 1802, p. 45 [*Scolopendra lagura* LINNÉ, 1758, p. 637; OD, M] [*nom. correct.* GOLDFUSS, 1820 (*pro Pollyxenus* LATREILLE, 1802)]. Ocelli present, terminal antennal segment smaller than penultimate; tarsal claws trilobed; tergites with 2 transverse rows of short, broad,

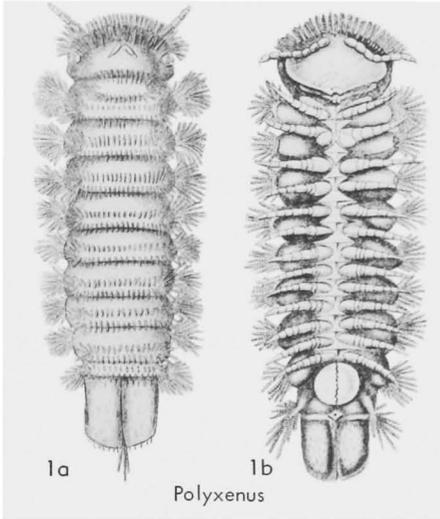


FIG. 368. Polyxenidae (p. R583-R584).

clavate setae along posterior border. *Oligo.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am.—FIG. 367,1; 368,1. \**P. lagurus* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*, Eu.; 367,1a,b, tactile hairs of dorsal side,  $\times$ ? (not stated); 368,1a,b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times$ 2 (Attems).—FIG. 367,2. *P.* sp., *Oligo.*, Baltic amber,  $\times$ 9 (Bachofen von Echt).

[The validity of GOLDFUSS' emendation of LATREILLE's original orthography of this name has recently come under challenge by at least one worker who believes that the double "l" was not a *lapsus*. Those who follow this line of reasoning will prefer to alter the spelling of the family name also to Polyxenidae. In my opinion, *Polyxenus* is a good Greek proper name signifying "stranger," and so entirely appropriate, whereas "Pollyxenus" is a misspelling in any language.]

### Subclass PENTAZONIA Brandt, 1833

[=Oniscomorpha Pocock, 1887; Opisthandria VERHOEFF, 1894]

Body form typically short and robust, segmental elements consisting of arched dorsal tergum, two ventrolateral pleura, and two paramedian sterna (latter separated by coxae), these sclerites joined by flexible sutures or by membrane (Fig. 369,6). None of anterior legs modified by sperm transfer, but last two pairs of legs of males form large forcipate clasping appendages (telopods) used to hold female during copulation. Head transversely broadened, with prominent horseshoe-shaped or rounded-oval sensory pit on each side lateral to antennae (Fig. 369,5). Head without epicranial suture; gnathochilarium modified from usual diplopod form by fusion of sclerites. Digestive tract looped or coiled.

Tracheae dichotomously branched, radiating from internally enlarged stigmal pouches. *Penn.-Rec.*

Two Recent orders, somewhat dissimilar in external form, but united by the foregoing diagnosis, are represented in the Holarctic region, Indoaustralian area, and extreme South Africa. A third order, perhaps the ancestral group, is known only from the Upper Carboniferous of central Europe.

### Order GLOMERIDESMIDA

Cook, 1895

[*nom. transl. et correct.* CHAMBERLIN & HOFFMAN, 1958 (ex suborder Glomeridesmoidea COOK, 1895) [=Limacomorpha Pocock, 1894]

Body small, slender, flattened, somewhat elongated, composed of head and 22 body segments, not capable of rolling into sphere; ocelli absent; antennae short and slender, antennomeres similar in size and proportion. Females with enormously protrusible ovipositors, half as long as body. Sensory pit on head rounded. Lamellae linguales fused into single median plate, mentum reduced to transverse basal strip. *Rec.*

### Order GLOMERIDA Cook, 1895

[*nom. correct.* CHAMBERLIN & HOFFMAN, 1958 (pro Glomeroidesma COOK, 1895)] [=Oniscomorpha Pocock, 1894; Plesio-cerata VERHOEFF, 1910]

Small (6 mm.) to large (more than 120 mm.) forms capable of rolling into tight sphere; body composed of 14 to 16 segments covered with 11 to 13 tergites, some posterior segments having coalesced to form enlarged prominent pygidium. Females with 17 to 21 pairs of appendages, males with 19 to 23 pairs, of which last two or three are modified to serve in clasping female. Body form very broad and robust, terga highly arched, second very much enlarged laterally and usually with marginal groove into which fit tips of other tergites when animal is rolled up. Sensory pit on head large, horseshoe-shaped, located between the ocelli and antennal sockets. Gnathochilarium basically similar to that of Glomeridesmida in that fused lingual lamellae are dominant elements, with mentum reduced and displaced basally. In suborder Glomerididea (Fig. 369,3), stipes are sub-

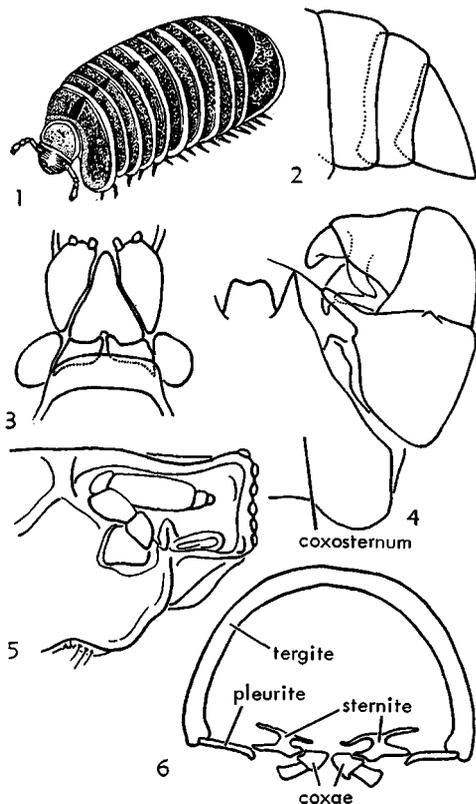


FIG. 369. External structural features used in classification of pentazoniate Diplopoda.—1. *Glomeris conspersa* (Koch), lateral aspect of entire animal,  $\times 3$  (Koch).—2. Posterior segments of glomeroid, lateral aspect,  $\times 10$ .—3. Generalized glomeroid gnathochilarium,  $\times 18$ .—4. Pair of legs (18th) of *Onomeris australora* HOFFMAN, modified into telopods, anterior aspect, left side,  $\times 30$ .—5. Front of head of *O. australora*, left side,  $\times 25$ .—6. Generalized mid-body segment of pentazoniate diplopod showing paired sternites and pleurites and single tergite characteristic of this subclass, enl. (2-6, Hoffman, n).

tended by large and distinct cardines; in Sphaerotheridea latter elements are missing and stipes are considerably displaced distally. Oviducts terminate just behind coxae of second pair of legs and through cyphopod composed of three or four small sclerites. [Two suborders have been proposed—Sphaerotheridea with moderate to large species restricted to South Africa, India and Indo-Australian region and lacking fossil representation, and Glomerididea, which is widespread in Palearctic regions and extends

also into the Malayan archipelago. It is represented by a few fossil forms in northern Europe.] *Oligo.-Rec.*

### Family GLOMERIDIDAE Leach, 1815

[*nom. correct.* COOK, 1896 (pro Glomeridae LEACH, 1815)]

Body composed of collum, enlarged second tergite, and nine or ten more tergites, usually smooth and polished; females with 17 pairs of legs, males with last two or three pairs of legs modified as claspers. First tergite small, reniform, smaller than head; antennae moderately long, geniculate between third and fourth segments, sixth segment usually largest. *Oligo.-Rec.*

*Glomeris* LATREILLE, 1802, p. 44 [*\*Oniscus marginatus* VILLIERS, 1789; OD]. Genera of this family (only one here cited) are distinguished by technical characters of telopods, exposition of which would be too lengthy to be justifiable in this account. *Oligo.-Rec.*, Eu.—FIG. 369, 1. *G. conspersa* KOCH, Rec.; entire animal,  $\times 3$  (after Koch).—FIG. 369, 2-6. *G. australora* HOFFMAN, Rec.; 2, posterior segments,  $\times 10$ ; 3, gnathochilarium,  $\times 18$ ; 4, telopods,  $\times 30$ ; 5, front of head,  $\times 25$ ; 6, midbody segment, diagrammatic,  $\times 10$  (Hoffman, n).

## Order AMYNILYSPEDIDA

### Hoffman, new order

[=Palacomorpha VERHOEFF, 1928]

Pentazonia of apparently primitive status, superficially resembling Recent Glomerida but differing in lacking terminal pygidium, in having two pairs of pleurites to each body segment at least in some forms, and in presence of erect spines upon segments. *Penn.*

The taxonomy and nomenclature of this group is in a state of particular confusion. Almost certainly several families are involved, but perhaps are best undefined until a restudy can be made. For the present I combine three genera under a single family name.

### Family AMYNILYSPEDIDAE Hoffman, new name

[New name is replacement for invalid family-group names published by FRITSCH (1899) as follows: Proglomeridae (incl. only *Archiscudderia* FRITSCH, 1899), Sphaerherpestidae (incl. only *Glomeropsis* FRITSCH, 1899), Acroglomeridae (incl. only *Amynilyspes* SCUDDER, 1882)]

Characters of order. [A heterogeneous "family" with characters of the order. Prob-

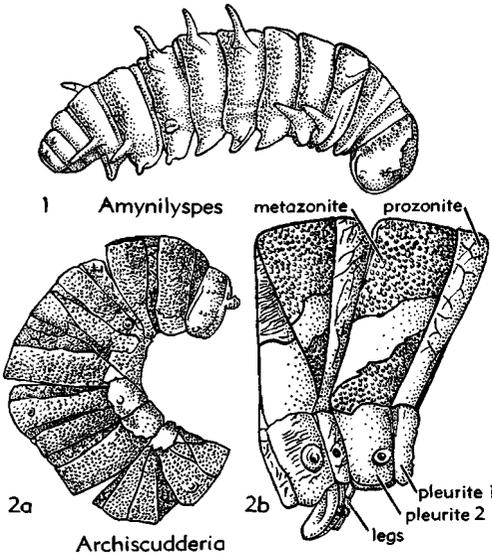


FIG. 370. Amynilyspedidae (p. R586).

ably each of the included genera represents a distinct family.] *Penn.*

**Amynilyspes** SCUDDER, 1882 [*\*A. wortheni*; OD, M]. Head large, rounded, with small "eyes"; trunk composed of 13 segments with lateral rows of erect spines. *U. Carb.*, N.Am.-Eu.—FIG. 370, 1. *A. typicus* FRITSCH, Czech.; side view of entire animal,  $\times 3$  (after Fritsch). [= *Amynilyspes* FRITSCH, 1901, p. 33 (*nom. null.*)]

**Archiscudderia** FRITSCH, 1899, p. 35 [*\*A. paupera*; SD HOFFMAN, herein]. Head with small, indistinct, laterally placed "eyes"; trunk segments about 15, with well-developed pleurites; dorsal spines not evident. *U. Carb.*, Eu.—FIG. 370, 2. *\*A. paupera*, Czech.; 2a, side view of animal,  $\times 2$ ; 2b, 2 segments in lateral view showing details,  $\times 6$  (after Fritsch).

**Glomeropsis** FRITSCH, 1899, p. 38 [*\*G. ovalis*; OD, M]. Trunk with about 16 segments with well-developed pleurites and sternites; dorsal spines absent; "eyes" with up to about 600 ocelli. *U. Carb.*, Eu. (Czech.).

### Subclass HELMINTHOMORPHA Pocock, 1887

[= *Proterandria* VERHOEFF, 1894; *Eugnatha* + *Colobognatha* ATTEMPS, 1898]

Typical diplopods of elongate, usually slender body form. Body segments clearly diplosomatic in composition but somewhat variable in degree of sclerite fusion. Nor-

mally individual segments can be regarded as composed of anterior, telescoping prozomite that does not bear legs, and posterior larger metazonite which carries two pairs of legs and which may be variously extended laterally or surficially ornamented. In nearly all helminthomorphous diplopods pleural elements are associated with leg-bearing metazonites in varying degrees of coalescence, forming so-called "pleurotergites."

[In a few primitive forms the pleurites may be attached to the sternite and metazonite only by a flexible membranous articulation, in others they may be firmly fused to the metatergite but remain loosely attached to the sternum. In the most advanced condition (*Polydesmida*) all of the metatergal elements are, in the adults, completely fused into a complete ring with no visible trace of the original sutures (the immature stages, particularly during molting, usually reflect the ancestral multiscleritic condition (Fig. 366, 4). In some forms, especially the *Juliformia*, each segment appears to be formed of three subequal transverse rings, divided by longitudinal sutures at the mid-dorsal and mid-lateral lines, which share a common elongate pleurite on each side and a pair of imbricate sterna (Fig. 366, 7). At least one pair of legs on seventh segment of males is modified into sperm-transfer organs (gonopods), in some both leg pairs of this segment so modified, few with adjoining legs on segments six and eight becoming involved in some way. *Vasa deferentia* open through coxae of second pair of legs in primitive forms, or they may open through paired or single sclerotized structures located just behind these coxae in more specialized members of subclass. Ambulatory legs essentially homogeneous in construction through group, consisting of coxa, prefemur, femur, postfemur, tibia, and tarsus, latter normally provided with acute distal pretarsus or claw (Fig. 366, 2). [In a few Recent species an accessory false podomere is inserted between the coxa and prefemur, such an intercalary segment having no muscle origins or insertions. Eversible coxal sacs are frequent, particularly in more primitive groups, and in many forms the more distal podomeres (postfemora, tibiae,



1 Xyloiolulus

FIG. 371. Xyloiolulidae (p. R587).

tarsi) may develop eversible cushions in the male sex.] Spiracular openings (stigmata) occur always in sterna, usually just lateral to coxal sockets; internal extensions of stigmal pouches usually elongated apodemes providing origins for many leg muscles. *U.Penn.-Rec.*

The number of orders referable to this subclass is currently still unsettled, as noted in the preceding remarks on classification. The fossils known from Tertiary formations are easily assignable to well-known Recent orders; those from the Paleozoic beds remain somewhat enigmatic since the characters required for a precise ordinal allocation seem rarely to be fossilized. Many Pennsylvanian species from coal beds of the Northern Hemisphere appear to be quite typically helminthomorph in external structure.

### Order SPIROBOLIDA Cook, 1895

[*nom. transl. et correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1938 (ex suborder Spiroboloidea COOK, 1895)] [=Spiroboloidea COOK, 1895; Anocheta COOK, 1895; ATTEMS, 1926]

Elongate, cylindrical Diplopoda with stipites of gnathochilarium widely separated proximally by large undivided triangular mentum; segments 1 to 5 each bearing single pair of legs, sixth with two pairs; vasa deferentia opening through simple median eversible membrane tube behind coxae of second pair of legs; gonopods consisting of anterior pair of coleopods that completely enclose smaller posterior phallopods; both pairs are completely retracted within the body. *U.Penn.-Rec.*

### Family SPIROBOLIDAE Bollman, 1893

Moderate to large-sized spiroboloids characterized particularly by configuration of male genitalia; externally family can be recognized by shape of first body segment (collum) which is laterally acutely angular and subtended by anteriorly projecting ventral part of following pleurotergite. *Pleist.-Rec.*

**Hiltonius** CHAMBERLIN, 1918, p. 166 [*\*H. pulcherrus*; OD]. Distinguishable from other genera of the family only by characters of the male genitalia. [*Spirobolus australis* GRINNELL, Pleist., USA (Calif.), probably belongs here as a senior synonym of one of the several species of *Hiltonius* known to occur in southern California.] *Pleist., N.Am.; Rec., N.Am.*

### Family XYLOIULIDAE Cook, 1895

Paleozoic ?Spirobolida characterized by the ornamentation of the pleurotergites with fine longitudinal or oblique ridges and grooves. Metazonites at most only slightly greater in diameter than prozonites. Body about ten times as long as broad. Length of legs about half body diameter. *U.Penn.*

**Xyloiolulus** COOK, 1895, p. 3 [*\*Xylobius sigillariae* DAWSON, 1860, p. 271; OD] [=*Xylobius* DAWSON, 1860 (*non* LATREILLE, 1834; GUÉRIN, 1841); *Pylojulus* FRITSCH, 1899, p. 46]. Segments not distinctly divided into prozonite and metazonite of different diameters; longitudinal grooves numerous, mostly parallel to main body axis, continuous along entire length of segment. *U.Penn., N.Am.-Eu.*—FIG. 371, I. X. *bairdi* HOFFMAN; USA (Ohio); external mold of ventral surface,  $\times 3$  (Hoffman, 1963).

### Family NYRANIIDAE Hoffman, new family

Large (diameter up to 10 mm.) xyloioloids in which diameter of metazonites is distinctly greater than that of prozonites and ornamentation of two subsegments is different; grooving of prozonite finer and more closely spaced, that of metazonite larger and farther apart. *U.Carb.*

**Nyranus** HOFFMAN, 1963, p. 172 [*\*Julus costulatus* FRITSCH, 1883; OD]. Characters of family. [Two known species from the Gaskohle Formation of Nyran, Czechoslovakia.] *U.Penn., Eu.*—FIG. 372, I. *\*N. costulatus* (FRITSCH); side view of entire specimen,  $\times 1$  (after Fritsch, 1899).

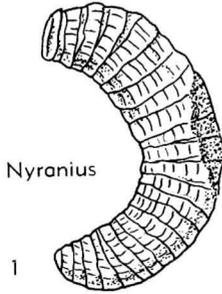


FIG. 372. Nyraniidae (p. R587-R588).

**Family PLAGIASCETIDAE Hoffman,  
new family**

Small xyloiolids in which longitudinal grooving is distinctly oblique and restricted to ventrolateral surfaces of the metazonite of each segment; prozonite smooth and unmodified. *U.Penn.*

**Plagiascetus** HOFFMAN, 1963, p. 172 [*\*P. lateralis*, OD]. Characters of family. [One species known from the Allegheny Series just below the Freeport Coal beds.] *U.Penn.*, N.Am.—FIG. 373, 1. *\*P. lateralis* HOFFMAN, USA (Ohio); mold of lateral surface, anterior third of body,  $\times 5$  (Hoffman, 1963).

**Family ANTHRACOJULIDAE Hoffman,  
new family**

Spiroboloid? diplopods apparently similar in segmental form to Recent species in that segments appear to be composed of three transverse pleurotergal sclerites and rectangular pleurite on each side, but differing by broadened sterna, which are as wide as half of leg length. *U.Carb.*

**Anthracojulus** FRITSCH, 1899, p. 29 [*\*A. pictus*; OD, M] [= *Anthracoiulus* VERHOEFF, 1928 (obj.)]. With characters of family. *U.Carb.*, Eu.—FIG. 374, 1. *\*A. pictus*, Czech.; mid-body segment (reconstr.), anterior aspect,  $\times 1.3$  (after Fritsch).

**Order STEMMIULIDA Cook, 1895**

[*nom. correct. et transl.* CHAMBERLIN & HOFFMAN, 1958 (ex suborder Stemmatouloidea COOK, 1895)] [= Monocheta COOK, 1895 (*partim*)]

Disjunct tropical cursorial millipeds of small to moderate size, combining facies of juloid and chordeumoid forms. Body fusiform, laterally compressed, with prominent mid-dorsal longitudinal suture on each segment; sides of segments obliquely striate; sternites entirely free from pleurites and of two different shapes. Antennae long and slender, one or two large convex ocelli on each side of head; gnathochilarium basically of typical helminthomorph structure but may be sexually dimorphic, lingual lamellae much longer in males than in females of same species and almost completely obliterating mentum. Anterior legs commonly enlarged, almost invariably with plumose setae, pencils of long hairs, or other modifications; vasa deferentia opening through eversible median projection just behind second pair of legs; anterior gonopods well developed and complex, posterior gonopods wanting or represented only by minute rudiments. Telson small, distally truncate, with several pairs of spinnerets. Ozopores present in continuous sequence. *Rec.*

This singular order, despite the occurrence of spinnerets on the last segment and

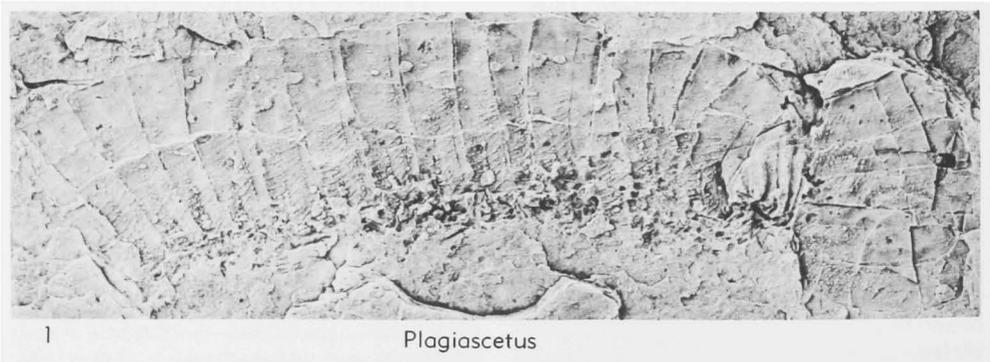
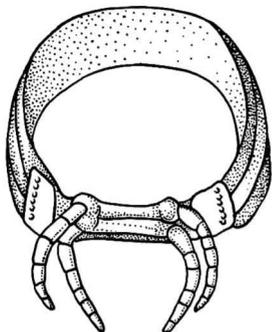


FIG. 373. Plagiascetidae (p. R588).



1 Anthracojulus

FIG. 374. Anthracojulidae (p. R588).

mid-dorsal segmental sutures, appears to be only distantly related to the chordeumoids, with which group it has often been united as a suborder. I judge the stemmiulids to represent survivors of a very primitive milliped stock which probably had most in common with ancestral spiroboloids. The living species are of course highly specialized in several characters, such as sexual dimorphism and modification of the male anterior legs.

O. F. COOK discovered that the young of *Diopsiulus bellus*, a West African species, emerge from the egg with as many as 35 body segments, in contrast to the seven-segmented condition of the first instar of all other helminthomorphs.

The group is known from the single family Stemmiulidae with five genera occurring in the neotropical region, western Africa, Kenya, and southern India. COOK believed that the Pennsylvanian xyloiulids were closely related to stemmiulids and groups both forms in a single order "Monocheta." I have recently published (HOFFMAN, 1963) an alternative suggestion that xyloiulids are perhaps more related to the spiroboloids.

### Order POLYZONIIDA Cook, 1895

[*nom. transl. et correct.* CHAMBERLIN & HOFFMAN, 1958 (*ex suborder* Polyzonoidea COOK, 1895) [=Ommatophora BRANDT, 1841; Orthozonia VERHOEFF, 1940]

Small diplopods with reduced mouth parts, mandibles very small, probably not used for chewing; gnathochilarial elements reduced and fused, mostly no longer recog-

nizable; head small and usually conical, with two or three pairs of ocelli; antennae short and thick. Segments composed of broad tergites lacking median dorsal suture, separate pleurites on each side, and usually narrow sternites. Gonopore of males opening behind coxae of second pair of legs, usually through two membraneous penes; eight pairs of legs in front of gonopods; latter still evidently leglike, small, incurved, consisting of a normal sternum and six or seven jointed appendages. *Oligo.-Rec.*

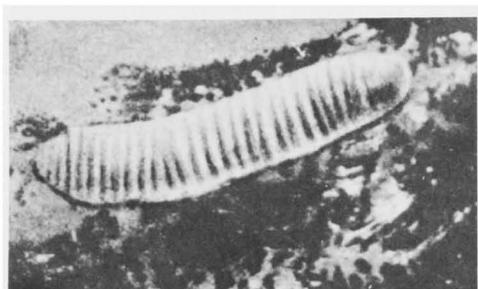
A basically Holarctic group most abundant today in western North America and east Asia; one family (Siphonotidae), however, is confined to the southern Hemisphere. One genus is known from the Baltic amber; this genus and probably the same species is still found in the same part of northern Europe.

### Family POLYZONIIDAE Gervais, 1844

[*nom. correct.* WOOD, 1865 (*pro* Polyzoniidae GERVAIS, 1844)]

Characters of order. [Distinguishable from other polyzonioid families only by microscopic characters of the male genitalia, mouth parts, gonopore opening, and related subtle characters.] *Oligo.-Rec.*

**Polyzonium** BRANDT, 1837 [*\*P. germanicum*; OD, M]. Small, compact polished diplopods with small, largely concealed head and short antennae, body relatively broad and concealing the legs. *Oligo.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am.—FIG. 375, 1. *P. sp.* (probably *germanicum*), Baltic amber, entire animal, dorsal aspect,  $\times 8$  (after Bachofen von Echt).



1 Polyzonium

FIG. 375. Polyzoniidae (p. R589).

## Order SIPHONOPHORIDA

Cook, 1895

[*nom. transl.* CHAMBERLIN & HOFFMAN, 1958 (*ex suborder* Siphonophoridae COOK, 1895)] [=Heterozonia VERHOEFF, 1940]

Minute to small tropical millipeds with two pairs of leglike gonopods similar to those of Polyzoniida, but characterized by striking reduction of head and mouth parts, elongation of body, and difference between diameters of prozonites and metazonites. Head small, conic in outline, commonly prolonged into long slender "beak"; ocelli absent; antennae enlarged and clavate, with two articles bearing distinct sensory pits; gnathochilarium reduced to single elongate triangular plate without evidence of normal sclerites; mandibles acicular, possibly non-functional. Sternites free from pleurotergites, latter either smooth and polished or densely hirsute, without median dorsal suture; commonly produced into moderate paranota; ozopores present in continuous sequence from fifth to penultimate segments; gonopods small, leglike, with four to seven segments, anterior gonopods typically shorter and stouter, posterior ones usually with terminal article greatly elongated. *Rec.*

This order contains the large family Siphonophoridae and perhaps also the poorly known group Siphoniulidae. Owing to the basic similarity of the gonopods in most of the known forms, classification below the level of family is presently chaotic, with a large number of clearly superfluous generic names in existence. Siphonophorids are basically tropical animals, although extending northward in the Sonoran region of southwestern North America. They appear to be specialized members of a basically primitive group of millipeds.

## Order JULIDA Brandt, 1833

[*nom. correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1938 (*pro* Julidea BRANDT, 1833)] [=Zygochaeta COOK, 1896; Symphyognatha VERHOEFF, 1900]

Body composed of large and variable number of cylindrical segments (30 or more), sternites, pleurites, and tergites immovably fused except in few species; coxae of legs without eversible sacs; telson without spinnerets; vasa deferentia open through simple or double penis located medially in intersegmental membrane behind second

pair of legs. Gnathochilarium of characteristic form, mentum being divided into small elongate promentum located between lingual lamellae, and transverse, medially divided secondary mentum at base of gnathochilarium, these two mental elements widely separated by stipes which are broadly in contact medially over basal half of structure. In several families gnathochilarium may be somewhat different in form between sexes. Gonopods composed of two highly modified pairs of appendages of seventh segment, entirely or partially retracted into body cylinder; first and commonly also second pair of legs modified in males for clasping females. ?*Eoc.*, *Oligo.-Rec.*

Members of this order are at present almost exclusively Holarctic in distribution (a few species spill over into the upper part of the Oriental Region). The number of valid families is somewhat uncertain, but four now are recognized. Of these, one family (Pacromopodidae) is endemic in western United States and has no known fossil representation. The Julidae are exclusively Palearctic in distribution and occur also in Oligocene amber. The Parajulidae are now restricted to North America and eastern Asia, and without doubt the various records of "*Julus*" from the American Tertiary can be placed in this family. Finally, the ancient and now somewhat relict family Nemasomatidae has most of its species in Europe, a few being on record from Asia and North America. One member of the group has been reported from the Baltic amber.

Typical members of these four families are fairly characteristic in size and proportions, but all grades of intermediate forms exist, and the family characters are drawn largely from details of the mouth parts and secondary sexual characteristics of the males.

## Family JULIDAE Meinert, 1868

Gonopods entirely concealed within body, posterior pair usually larger and with large prominent mesomerite lobe; telopod of anterior gonopods mostly absent or rudimentary; first pair of legs of males reduced in size, commonly to small uncate processes. ?*Oligo.*, *Mio.-Rec.*

A large number of genera are known from the Palearctic region, chiefly distinguishable by minutiae of the male genitalia. It is presently impossible to allocate any of the fossil records for "*Julus*" to the correct genus; in its current restricted sense *Julus* is a small genus of three or four species confined to northern Europe; it may have been present during the Oligocene or earlier. Insofar as I can determine, only one generic name has been based upon a fossil referable to this family: this name was obscurely proposed and was omitted from Neave's *Nomenclator Zoologicus*.

**Bertkaupolypus** VERHOEFF, 1926, p. 334 [*nom. subst. pro Pseudojulus* VERHOEFF, 1897 (non BOLLMAN, 1893)] [*\*Julus antiquus* BERTKAU, 1878; OD]. In the original description of this form, BERTKAU cites the name as "*Julus antiquus* v. Heyd. *i.l.*" suggesting that VON HEYDEN was the describer of the species, as subsequently has been assumed. However, it is by no means clear whether VON HEYDEN provided BERTKAU with the name or description, or both, and it seems preferable to settle for a certainty and credit the species to BERTKAU's authorship. The species certainly seems referable to the Julidae, but shows no specific characters whatever, and the generic name seems to have been based solely upon the geological age of the fossil. *Mio.*, Eu.(Ger.).

#### Family NEMASOMATIDAE Bollman, 1893

[*nom. correct.* HOFFMAN, 1961 (pro Nemasomidae SILVESTRI, 1896, *nom. transl. ex Nemasominae* BOLLMAN, 1893) [= Blaniulidae SINCLAIR, 1895; Isobatidae COOK, 1895; Protojulidae VERHOEFF, 1896]

Small, slender juliform diplopods; gonopods partially exposed, usually composed of two separate pairs of appendages, telopods of at least anterior pair usually present and movable; first pair of legs of male usually reduced in size, strongly uncate in some forms, leglike in others. *Oligo.-Rec.*

The majority of the known nemasomatids occur in southern Europe, chiefly in the Pyrenees and Balkans; several other genera occur in eastern Asia. A few are found in central Asia, Europe, and western United States. The majority are at least partially cavernicolous; the surface forms are subboreal relict forms of an earlier Holarctic distribution. Clearly the family is now in a state of decline. One species recorded

from the Baltic amber by MENGE is probably correctly allocated to the genus, since MENGE was reasonably competent in this group.

**Blaniulus** GERVAIS, 1836 [*\*Julus guttulatus* Bosc, 1791; OD, M]. Small, slender species (about 20 times as long as wide); ocelli absent; pleurotergites with transverse row of short setae on caudal margin; gonopods large and prominently projecting from body; first leg pair of males reduced but distally clavate. *Oligo.*, Eu.(Baltic region); *Rec.*, Eu.

#### Family PARAJULIDAE Bollman, 1893

[*nom. transl. et correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1921 (ex Parajulinae BOLLMAN, 1893)] [=Parajulidae COOK, 1895]

Small to moderate-sized julids; the male gonopods at least distally exposed, normally made up of two separate pairs of appendages; anterior gonopods with distinct, movable telopods; mandibles with ten pectinate lamellae; first pair of legs of males hypertrophied, prominently clavate; second pair reduced. *?Eoc.*, *Mio.-Rec.*

The distribution of this family is exclusively Holarctic, the great majority of known genera and species occurring in North America. Two genera extend south into Mexico and Guatemala; several occur in Japan and adjacent Asia. Almost certainly all of the various Tertiary fossils described under the name "*Julus*" are in fact referable to this family instead of the Julidae. Since genera, as well as species, are distinguished almost exclusively upon details of the male genitalia, it seems unlikely that the collocation of fossil parajulids to a Recent genus can be made with any degree of certainty.

**Parajulus** HUMBERT & SAUSSURE, 1869 [*\*P. olmeus*; SD POCOCK, 1895] [In recent years this genus has been divided into about 15 genera on the basis of small details of the gonopods. The species *Parajulus cockerelli* MINER, from the Florissant Shales (Oligo., Colo.) is remarkably well preserved and shows an indication of gonopod form, but must be restudied before its correct position can be determined. It clearly is not congeneric with the Mexican species of *Parajulus* in the modern restricted sense. The still older form "*Julus telluster*" SCUDDER, from the Green River shales, is probably also referable to the Parajulidae.] *?Eoc.*, N.Am.; *Mio.*, N.Am.; *Pleist.-Rec.*, N.Am.-Asia.—FIG. 376, *1a,b*. *P. cockerelli*

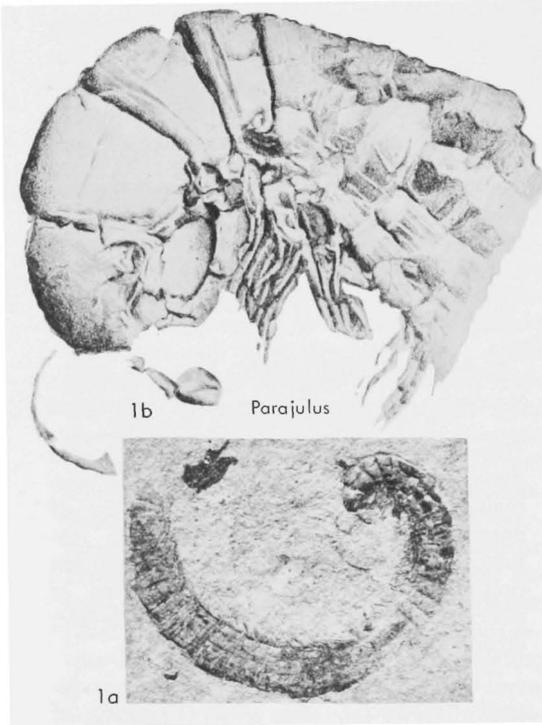


FIG. 376. Parajulidae (p. R591-R592).

MINER, Mio., USA (Colo.); *1a*, entire fossil, lat. view,  $\times 2.5$ , *1b*, ant. end of fossil, lat. view, enl. (Miner, 1926).

## Order SPIROSTREPTIDA Cook, 1895

[*nom. correct.* CHAMBERLAIN, 1943 (ex Spirostreptoidea COOK, 1895)] [=Diplocheta COOK, 1895 (in part); Chorizognatha VERHOEFF, 1900 (in part)]

Large and diverse group of chiefly tropical millipeds, including some of largest known Recent members of the class. Pleurotergites and sternites firmly fused, latter typically quite small and obscured by coxae; no median longitudinal tergal suture. Body typically smooth and polished, although longitudinal carinae or crests occur sporadically among several subgroups. Head convex, elongate, with prominent transverse suture between frons and epicranium (usually visible between internal angles of characteristically subtriangular ocellaria). Antennae moderately long, distalmost articles often shorter and subovoid in outline, one or two with distinct sensory organ on outer surface. Collum large, ex-

tending downward and forward covering base of head and often also much of antennae and mouth parts, often sexually dimorphic and more strongly produced in males. Legs moderate to elongate, animals often capable of rapid crawling and considerable migration, in larger species many of the anterior legs of males are provided with permanent or eversible ventral pads presumably useful in copulation. Gonopods variable in form, one or two pairs may be developed, normally completely concealed within body or only apices visible. Vasa deferentia open through median, bilobed "pseudopenis" located behind coxosternum of second pair of legs. First pair of legs of males with prefemora often modified into small hooks that engage hypostomal plate of gnathochilarium. ?*Penn., Rec.*

Spirostreptoids are at present divisible into three major subgroups although whether all are coordinate is disputed. The typical group contains three chiefly tropical families in which the anterior pair of gonopods is highly modified by elongation of the coxal elements into tubular structures sheathing the bases of the greatly attenuated, flagelliform telopodites; the posterior gonopods are rudimentary or wanting. A second group, likewise tropical, has the gonopods much less modified, and the posterior elements may be relatively conspicuous. The last group, at one time recognized as a separate order Cambalida, has two pairs of fully formed gonopods and a slightly different gnathochilarium pattern; its genera are somewhat more restricted to the temperate parts of the world at the present.

O. F. COOK (1895) has proposed that the genus *Archicambala* (based by him on the Pennsylvanian fossil *Xylobius dawsoni* SCUDDER) is referable to this third and last suborder of the Spirostreptida. This allocation must be verified by a restudy of the original material: SCUDDER's illustrations do not appear to be adequate for making such a placement.

## Order CALLIPODIDA Bollman, 1893

[=Monozonina BRANDT, 1833 (*partim*); Lysipetaloidea CHAMBERLIN, 1943]

Small to large helminthomorph diplopods allied to Chordeumida and Polydesmida,

pleurotergites commonly with elevated longitudinal ridges. Gonopores in males perforating coxae of second pair of legs; gonopods formed from only anterior pair of legs of seventh segment; epiproct with marginal row of six spinnerets. Antennae long and slender, epicranium of males commonly prominently impressed or concave; collum small, reniform, with prominent internal apodeme on anterior edge for attachment of head muscles. *Oligo-Rec.*

The so-called "crested millipeds" are mostly active foragers well adapted for life in semiarid situations; many are often found in caves, several genera being troglobionts. Although basically vegetarian in habits, some species are carnivorous. The present-day stronghold of the order is in the eastern Mediterranean area, chiefly in the southern half of the Balkan peninsula; a second area of concentration is in southwestern United States, particularly in California. Three families are distinguished in the European fauna and apparently a fourth is isolated in northern Iran. The exact family status of the Nearctic forms has not yet been determined.

One callipodoid form has been recovered from Oligocene strata in France. This specimen, in relatively good condition, has been allocated to the family Dorypetalidae, but without examination of the gonopods any such family placement is only speculative.

#### ?Family DORYPETALIDAE Verhoeff, 1900

*Protosylvestria* HANDSCHIN, 1944, p. 4 [*\*P. sculpia*; OD, M]. Metazonites with prominent and distinct longitudinal parallel ridges; gnathochilarium typical of order. *Oligo.*

#### Order PLATYDESMIDA Cook, 1895

[*nom. transl.* CHAMBERLIN & HOFFMAN, 1958 (*ex suborder* Platydesmoidea COOK, 1895)]

Small to moderate-sized helminthomorph diplopods of generalized structure; sternites entirely free and movable, either broad and flattened or narrow and having prominent median apophysis; pleurites also free in few genera, more commonly fused with tergites, in which case posterior half of resulting pleurotergite may be prominently extended laterally into paranota, all tergal elements having distinct longitudinal median suture.

Gonopores in males perforate coxae of second pair of legs; eight pairs of legs in front of gonopods, which are small, with five to seven segments and scarcely modified from normal leg construction, their sterna identical with those of adjacent walking legs. Epiproct typically broadened, with up to six small conical projections of the caudal edge; pleurotergites of penultimate segment typically coalesced into complete ring; hypoproct may be present or absent; ozopores in continuous sequence from fifth to penultimate segment. Antennae typically rather short and robust; head small, usually with reduced mouth parts; ocellaria not developed. *Rec.*

Platydesmids at the present time constitute a small, basically subtropical group of primitive millipeds dispersed into three or four families. Most of the known species occur in the Mediterranean region, North America, and southeastern Asia. It seems likely that they represent a grade of organization approximating the common ancestor of the chordeumoid and polydesmoid groups.

#### Order CHORDEUMIDA Cook, 1895

[*nom. transl. et correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1943 (*ex suborder* Chordeumoidea COOK, 1895)] [=Coelochaeta COOK, 1895; Ascospermophora VERHOEFF, 1913]

Small to moderate-sized helminthomorph diplopods; all of sterna free from pleurotergites, which lack ozopores and internal scent glands, but show median longitudinal suture in adults; gonopores of males opening through coxae of second pair of legs; epiproct with three pairs of marginal spinnerets. Collum small, ovoid, fitting usually into depression on rear side of head. Gonopods formed from appendages of seventh segment; commonly adjacent pairs of legs may be partially modified to aid in sperm transfer. Antennae usually long and slender. Agile, quick-moving forms in general; partial to cool climates and now virtually restricted to the Northern Hemisphere. *Oligo-Rec.*

#### ?Family CRASPEDOSOMATIDAE Cook, 1895

[=Craspedosomidae VERHOEFF, 1899]

Antennae long and slender; pleurotergites smooth, shining, metazonites produced lat-

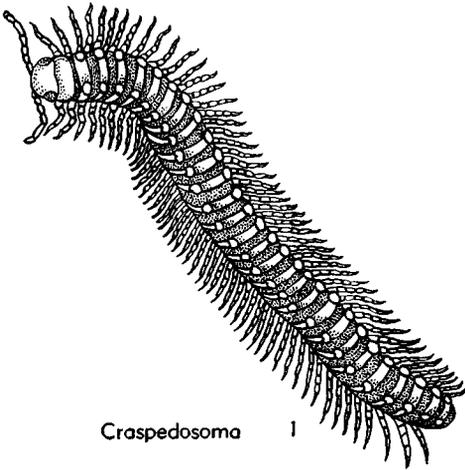


FIG. 377. Craspedosomatidae (p. R594).

erally into short paranotal swellings. Two pairs of legs behind gonopods with eversible coxal sacs. Peltogonopods without flagellum, but with "cheirite" formed by fusion of telopod with tracheal apodeme. *Oligo.-Rec.*

?*Craspedosoma* LEACH, 1815, p. 380 [\**C. Rawlinsii*; OD]. Body with 30 segments; paranota represented as rounded lateral knobs; ocellaria large and prominent, subtriangular; front of head impressed in males, slightly convex in females; 1st and 2nd pairs of legs of males reduced in size, 3rd to 7th pairs larger than those following. Peltogonopods with prominent cheirites; gonopods reduced to broad, flattened sternum, with 6 erect conical processes, neither pair of gonopods with flagella. *Oligo.-Rec.*, Eu.—FIG. 377, 1. ?*C. angulatum* KOCH & BERENDT, *Oligo.* (Baltic amber), Baltoscandia; entire animal,  $\times 4.5$  (after Koch & Berendt).

[The foregoing allocation is made on the basis of external appearance only, as the form of the gonopods in *C. angulatum* are unknown. Placement of the species in *Craspedosoma* was, however, apparently acceptable to VERHOEFF, an outstanding authority on Palearctic diplopods.]

*Atractosoma* FANZAGO, 1876, p. 70 [\**A. meridionale*; OD, M]. Metazonites with unusually broad paranota, giving animal polydesmoid appearance; collum wider than head; antennae about as long as greatest width of body; ocellaria prominent, each with about 25 to 30 ocelli. [If MENGE'S identification of this genus in the Baltic amber is correct, it possibly provides an example of glacial displacement, since *Atractosoma* no longer occurs north of southern Germany.] *Oligo.*, Eu. (Baltic region); *Rec.*, Eu. (Italy-Aus.-Ger.).

*Euzonus* MENGE, 1854, p. 14 [\**E. collulum*; OD, M]. Body fusiform, without paranota; antennae

twice as long as width of body, its 3rd and 5th articles longest (*vide* SCUDDER, probably in fact 2nd and 4th); ocellaria semicircular, with about 20 ocelli in each. [The family position of this genus is not clear, but it may be retained provisionally in the Craspedosomatidae pending later study.] *Oligo.*, Eu.

## Order POLYDESMIDA Pocock, 1887

[*nom. correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1938 (*pro* order Polydesmoidea Pocock, 1887)] [=Merochaeta COOK, 1896; Proterospermophora VERHOEFF, 1900]

Helminthomorpha with 18 to 22 segments in adults, all segmental sclerites fused into compact rings that lack even sutures when fully calcified; ocelli absent from all species. Male genitalia formed from eighth pair of legs only, and in form of two prominent gonopods located in oval aperture in metasternum of seventh body segment. Gonopores of males open through small knobs on coxae of second pair of legs, and of females through modified bivalvate cyphopods located just behind sternum of second legs. *Oligo.-Rec.*

The Polydesmida is the largest order of diplopods and the most variable in body form. The size ranges from about two mm. to more than 120 mm. in length; in most species the metazonites are produced into broad paranota that are modified highly in different families; in some forms the paranota are secondarily suppressed. Gonopods usually consist of an enlarged coxa, commonly with a distinct sternal remnant attached, and a more slender distal telopod set usually at a right angle to the coxal axis; the telopod may be a single unjointed piece or in some groups may be divided by more or less distinct sutures into regions essentially homologous with the podomeres of ambulatory legs. In random specimens a genetic accident may result in the occurrence of a complex gonopod on one side of the body and a perfectly normal leg on the other.

The gnathochilarium is constant in form throughout the order, elongate rectangular in outline with a basal mentum and with no pronotum set off; the lingual lamellae are in contact for most of their length.

Polydesmoids are most diverse and abundant in tropical regions; in many respects



1 Polydesmus

FIG. 378. Polydesmidae (p. R595).

they appear to be a very old group and it is surprising that so far none have been discovered in Pennsylvanian coal bed deposits. At the present time some 30 to 40 families are recognized, but many of them will probably be degraded to subfamily status when better known. The species of the Oligocene Baltic amber appear to be about the same as those currently living in northern Europe. So far apparently only one family is known from fossils older than the Pleistocene.

#### Family POLYDESMIDAE Leach, 1815

Small to moderate-sized polydesmoids in which gonopod coxae are enlarged and in

contact along their median edge, partly fused to each and each with prominent depression on ventral side into which telopod can be retracted; no sternal remnant between coxae. Telopod usually arcuate, with large internal chamber into which seminal groove discharges. Dorsum usually flattened, with several transverse rows of slightly raised polygonal areas. *Oligo.-Rec.*

**Polydesmus** LATREILLE, 1802 [*\*Julus complanatus* LINNÉ; OD, M]. Distinguishable from other genera of this family only by details of gonopod structure. Both sexes with 20 body segments. *Oligo.-Rec.*, Eu.—FIG. 378, I. *P. lauræ* Pocock, *Rec.*; entire animal, dorsal aspect,  $\times 4.5$  (after Attems).

#### Order and Family UNCERTAIN

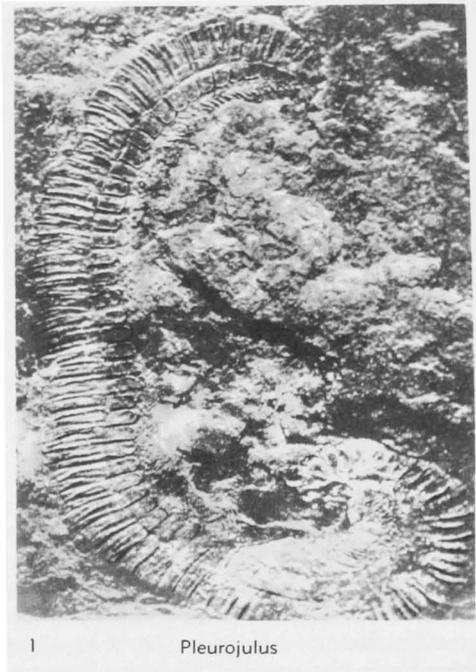
The following generic names have been based upon fossil diplopods, apparently referable to the subclass Helminthomorpha, but at the present time they cannot be allocated to a particular order with any degree of certainty. All appear, however, to be referable to the so-called "juliform" group, comprising the orders Julida, Spirobolida, and Spirostreptida.

**Archicambala** COOK, 1895, p. 6 [*\*Xylobius dawsoni* SCUDDER; OD]. Genus proposed by COOK without diagnosis and placed by him with *Archiulus* SCUDDER in family *Archulidae*. This family-group in turn was aligned with several other families that make up the present suborder Cambalidea of the order Spirostreptida. Whether this placement is anywhere near being correct cannot even be guessed at present. *Oligo.*, N.Am.

**Archiulus** SCUDDER, 1868, p. 496 [*\*A. xylobioides*; OD, M]. The genus was based upon several species from the Pennsylvanian beds of North America, and subsequently recorded by FRITSCHE from the Gaskohle of Bohemia. Probably this is a composite genus, and may go into the vicinity of the Xyloidiulidae when better known. *Penn.*, N.Am.

**Isojulus** FRITSCHE, 1899, p. 25 [*\*Julus constans* FRITSCHE, 1879 (= *Archiulus constans* FRITSCHE, 1894); SD HOFFMAN, herein]. *U.Carb.*, Eu. (Czech.).

**Pleurojulus** FRITSCHE, 1899, p. 27 [*\*P. biornatus* FRITSCHE; SD HOFFMAN, herein] [= *Pleuroiulus* VERHOEFF, 1928]. Juliform group with rounded ocellaria and antennae similar to those of Recent spirobolids. So-called "pleurites" are clearly nothing more than fractured lower ends of pleurotergites broken when animal was flattened, not an uncommon occurrence.] *U.Carb.*, Eu.—FIG. 379, I. *P. levis* FRITSCHE, Czech.; entire animal,  $\times 1.4$  (from Müller).



1 Pleurojulus

FIG. 379. Order and Family Uncertain (p. R595).

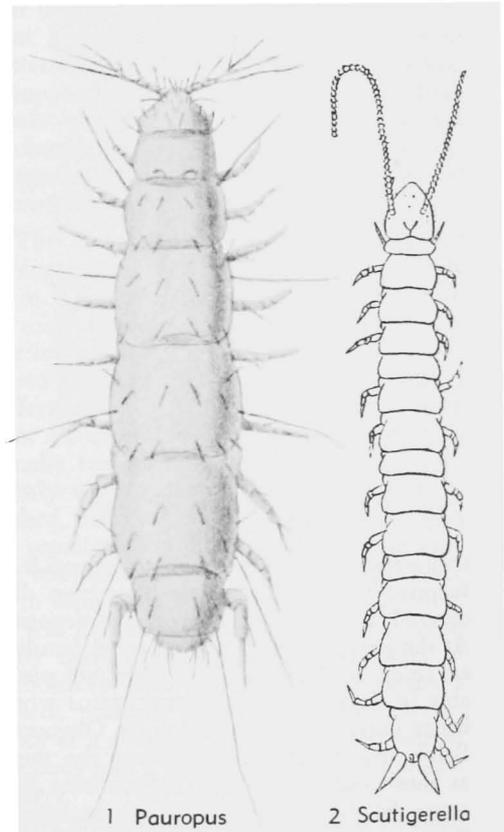
### Class PAUROPODA Lubbock, 1866

[*nom. transl.* Pocock, 1893 (*ex* order Pauropoda LUBBOCK, 1866)] [=Monopoda BOLLMAN, 1893; Heterognathes HUMBERT & SAUSSURE, 1872]

Minute progoneate myriapods with single pair of mandibles and pair of maxillae fused into subbuccal structure with poorly defined parts. Antennae singular in form, composed of basal four-jointed stalk that gives rise to two branches, one with long slender basal article and multiannulate flagellum composed of many tiny articles, other branch shorter and distally bearing two flagella and spherical sensory organ. Body composed of 11 segments and pygidium, bearing nine pairs of legs. Dorsum may have six to ten tergites. First pair of legs rudimentary. Gonopores open behind base of second pair of legs. Testes located on dorsal side of enteron, ovaries on ventral side. Body without tracheal and circulatory systems. Maximum size about two mm. No known fossil record (Fig. 380,1). *Rec.*

Since the first scientific record of this group was published in 1868, the pauropods have been studied by only a few competent

students, particularly F. SILVESTRI and H. J. HANSEN in the last century and more recently PAUL REMY. So far little attempt has been made to define suprafamilial categories within the class; most workers heretofore have been content to recognize a single order bearing the same name and definition as the class. In 1896, the perspicacious O. F. COOK set up three orders—Cinona, Monona, and Lepona, each with a single family, but these names were never subsequently accepted (probably for the reason that each was monotypic). Since COOK's time a number of additional families have been defined and it will probably become desirable to arrange these groups in either ordinal or subordinal series. Since



1 Pauropus

2 Scutigerelella

FIG. 380. Representatives of Pauropoda and Symphyla (Attems).—1. Pauropoda, Pauropodida, Pauropodidae, *Pauropus huxleyi* LUBBOCK, dorsal view of specimen,  $\times 50$ .—2. Symphyla, Scolopendrellida, Scutigerelellidae, *Scutigerelella immaculata* (NEWPORT), dorsal view of specimen,  $\times 15$ .

this type of work is best done by a specialist on the group, I here restrict my attention to the alteration of the existing ordinal name to conform with those used in other myriapod groups for the sake of uniformity.

**Order PAUROPODIDA**

**Lubbock, 1866**

[*nom. correct.* HOFFMAN, herein (*ex* order Pauropoda LUBBOCK, 1866)]

Characters of class. *Rec.*

**Class SYMPHYLA Ryder, 1880**

[*nom. transl.* ПОСОК, 1893 (*ex* order Symphyla RYDER, 1880)]

Small, fragile, pigmentless cryptic arthropods with prognathous head, bearing two simple multisegmented moniliform antennae, pair of mandibles, and two pairs of maxillae similar to those of insects, second pair fused into labium. Body with 12 leg-bearing segments, dorsally with 15 or 22 tergites (higher number apparently due to occurrence of intercalary tergites possibly corresponding to legless embryonic somites), and terminal segment behind last pair of legs giving rise to pair of large trichobothria and two large "cerci" (these last two pairs of appendages probably homologous to legs). Legs similar in shape, composed of five podomeres of which the basalmost (coxae), tend to form syncoxites or coxosternites by median fusion; this coxal region on all legs except first pair carries small lateral stylus and more median ever-sible coxal sac, presumably homologous to similar structures occurring in abdominal appendages of Thysanura. Legs terminate in paired claws. Body wall thin, flexible, without calcium carbonate impregnation or pigmentation cells. Tracheal system present, opening through two stigmata located just behind antennae. Dorsal circulatory vessel present. Gonads located ventral to gut, basically pair of organs but broadly fused or anastomosed, gametic ducts running anteriorly and fusing to common duct inside median, single gonopore located between second and third pairs of legs. No external sperm transfer appendages. Sexes always separate; females oviparous. Size ranging from about two to ten mm. (Fig. 380,2). [Symphylids live in moist locali-

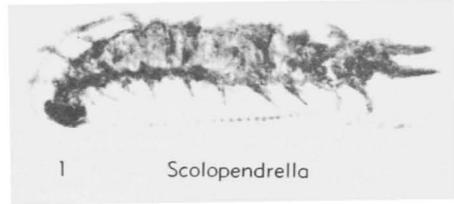


FIG. 381. Scolopendrellidae (p. R597-R598).

ties, chiefly in forests, under stones or in humus. At the present time species of this class are known from all of the continents.] *Oligo.-Rec.*

So far only a single order has been recognized within this group, having the same name and characteristics. Of the three present families, two are somewhat closely related and the third is more disjunct. Perhaps at some future time it will become desirable to distinguish two orders. For the present I only alter the ordinal name into conformity with those of other myriapod classes. The symphylids are perhaps the least-studied of myriapods, and practically no systematic work has been done on the group since the early part of the present century.

**Order SCOLOPENDRELLIDA**

**Hoffman, new order**

Characters of class. *Oligo.-Rec.*

Of the three currently recognized families, one has been recorded from Baltic amber of Oligocene age.

**Family SCOLOPENDRELLIDAE**

**Newport, 1845**

Body with 15 tergites (thin intercalary tergite between each two primary tergites). Legs of first pair usually less than half as long as those of second pair. Coxal styli weak or indistinct. Caudolateral corners of tergites produced into triangular projections. Dorsal surface of last pair of legs with only few setae. Cerci usually with circularly set-off terminal area. *Oligo., Rec.*

*Scolopendrella* GERVAIS, 1836 [\**S. notacantha*; OD, M]. First pair of legs about 0.7 as long as 2nd; posterior margin of each tergite with longitudinally striated groove between caudolateral pro-

jections; epicranial suture interrupted in front of middle and shortly branched. *Oligo., Rec., cosmop.*—FIG. 381, 1. ?*Scolopendrella* sp., *Oligo.* (Baltic amber), NW.Eu.;  $\times 12$  (after Bachofen von Echt, 1942).

## Class CHILOPODA Latreille, 1817

[*nom. transl.* Pocock, 1887 (ex order Chilopoda LATREILLE, 1817)] [=Syngnatha LATREILLE, 1802; BOLLMAN, 1893]

Terrestrial, tracheate, mandibulate, opisthognate arthropods characterized by numerous trunk segments, each with single pair of appendages (hence corresponding to embryonic somites), by modification of appendages of first trunk segment into pair of forcipulate poisonous prehensors; and by presence of pair of mandibles followed by two pairs of maxillae. Antennae simple, filiform, unbranched, composed of variable number of short unmodified articles; head strongly compressed dorsoventrally and covered by single cephalic plate. Photoreceptors absent, or present as small lateral cluster of ocelli on each side, or in form of large convex multifaceted "eyes" similar to those of insects. Body typically elongate, more or less flattened, body wall chitinous and flexible, without carbonate impregnation, each segment composed of tergite, sternite, and variable number of small pleural sclerites that vary in number and arrangement from one group to another. Trunk homonomous, no evidence of any distinction into thorax and abdomen. Growth either epimorphic and completed in egg stage or anamorphic and completed in series of postembryonic molts. In the latter condition, growth is teloblastic, with somite blocks originating in penultimate segment. *Cret.-Rec.*

So far as known, chilopods are exclusively carnivorous, as indicated by the universal presence of poison fangs and glands. The sexes are separate, although usually indistinguishable externally (in some forms the posteriormost legs of the males may be enlarged or modified); fertilization is internal, presumably by spermatophore introduction, and all species are oviparous. In the subclass Epimorpha, the females usually remain coiled around the egg cluster and afford some measure of protection to both eggs and the young chilopods after hatching.

To an even greater extent than in diplopods, members of this group are remarkably similar through the extent of a family or even an order; the distinction of genera and species is made on the basis of a number of cryptic features collectively. Formation of the mouth parts, number and dispersion of the pleurites, location and form of epidermal glands, and chaetotaxy of the limbs are all involved. Since there is considerable variation (ontogenetic, individual phenotypic, sexual, and geographic) within most species, the systematics of chilopods are exceptionally difficult, and only a few workers have ever achieved authoritative status concerning the Recent species.

Fossil chilopods extend back definitely to the Cretaceous, but the great majority of fossil records are from the Oligocene Baltic amber. A number of generic and specific names have been based upon upper Paleozoic "chilopods" but owing to the typically execrable preservation, it is very difficult to be sure that even the class has been accurately determined. The subtlety of most taxonomic characters utilized in the study of this group renders it unlikely that we will ever gain much insight into the morphology and diversity of pre-Tertiary chilopods.

## CLASSIFICATION

It is generally agreed that four orders of living Chilopoda can be recognized. The arrangement of these orders into subclasses, however, is a matter of much dispute and hinges upon whether primary importance is attached to the method of body growth or construction of the tracheal system. The arrangement adopted here was proposed by ERICH HAASE in 1880 and subsequently accepted by the celebrated Viennese authority CARL ATTEMES. This system recognizes two subclasses, Epimorpha and Anamorpha, based upon details of embryonic metamorphism; the first contains the scolopendrid and geophilid centipedes and the second the lithobiid and scutigrid forms.

In 1895 SILVESTRI set up a system of four groups defined on the basis of stigmal characters: (1) Pantastigmata, geophiloids; (2) Oligostigmata, scolopendroids; (3) Artio-stigmata, lithobioids; (4) Anartio-stigmata, scutigroids. Later in the same year, R. I.

Pocock, giving more emphasis to the form of the tracheal system, recognized two subclasses: Anartiostigmata, for the new order Scutigermorpha, and Artiostigmata, to include the new ordinal names Lithobio-morpha, Geophilomorpha, and Scolopendromorpha.

VERHOEFF (1901) used the Pocock arrangement but altered the names of the subclasses to Notostigmophora (=Anartiostigmata) and Pleurostigmophora (=Artiostigmata). More recently, WANG (1951) changed the subclass names of VERHOEFF to Notostomata and Pleurostomata.

From the standpoint of priority, the earliest available names for the two subclasses of the Pocock-Verhoeff system are Schizotarsia and Holotarsia, first used by BRANDT in 1841. The still earlier names Inaequipedes and Aequipedes of LATREILLE (1827) are probably vernacular in nature, so that from the standpoint of priority alone, we should probably revert to BRANDT's terminology, if this subclass dichotomy should ever be generally accepted by students of the Chilopoda. As an impartial observer I incline toward the Epimorpha-Anamorpha division of HAASE.

The ordinal terminations "-omorpha" introduced by Pocock have been in vogue ever since 1895, and there is understandable reluctance on the part of current specialists to part with them. The newer endings "-ida" are employed here chiefly in order to achieve ordinal uniformity with the Diplopoda, in which group arbitrary "-ida" endings have served a long-needed purpose.

### EXTERNAL CHARACTERS

To a very considerable extent, genera and families of chilopods are distinguished by the formation of the mouth parts, particularly the number and arrangement of the mandibular lamellae, the degree of coalescence of the several labral elements, and the configuration of the two pairs of maxillae. As it is extremely unlikely that such characters will be readily available even in well-preserved amber material, the following brief account of taxonomic characters is restricted largely to external features. It must be emphasized that in general chilopods are perhaps more variable than other

kinds of myriapods, and the investigator must be alert for ontogenetic, sexual, geographic, and individual phenotypic variability within a single species. Sexual dimorphism is more pronounced in the specialized groups (Lithobiida, Geophilida); variation in meristic characters increases proportionately with the actual numerical status of the features involved (species with large number of body segments are more variable in this respect than those with reduced numbers). It must be recalled that chilopods are soft-bodied, muscular, and flexible animals, their proportions are thus a function of body condition; considerable telescoping usually accompanies preservation after death.

In general, each of the four orders has a definite and characteristic body form permitting instant recognition. Even body fragments may be identified as to order with considerable confidence. Beyond this, however, allocation of a specimen to family is more difficult. Within the Geophilida, particularly, families are difficult to distinguish externally, but a few details of body form are helpful: the Himantariidae include species in which the body is noticeably flattened and ribbon-like, with a rather small head; the Dignathodontidae are made up chiefly of attenuated creatures with unusually small heads, the body size becoming larger back to the posterior two-thirds of the length. In the Geophilidae, and many other related families, the head is the broadest part of the body, which tapers evenly back to the ultimate segment.

The antennae vary considerably and are useful in identification. In the Geophilidae the number of articles is fixed at 14, but the individual articles may be elongated, or very short, the terminal articles may be enlarged to form a distal club, or the entire structure may be compressed. In other orders the number of articles varies greatly, and is usually only a generic character, or in some only a specific one.

In earlier work the size and shape of the head plate was given much importance and provided the original basis for such names as *Mecistocephalus*, but the character is one subject to ontogenetic variability and has no real basic systematic value. The sides of the head may be set off by distinct submar-

ginal rims or not, and paramedian sutures may be evident. Ocelli may be absent (all Geophilida, some Scolopendrida, random Lithobiida), or present as small lateral clusters behind the antennal sockets (most Scolopendrida and Lithobiida), or there may be two large, multifaceted "eyes" similar to those of insects (Scutigera). The

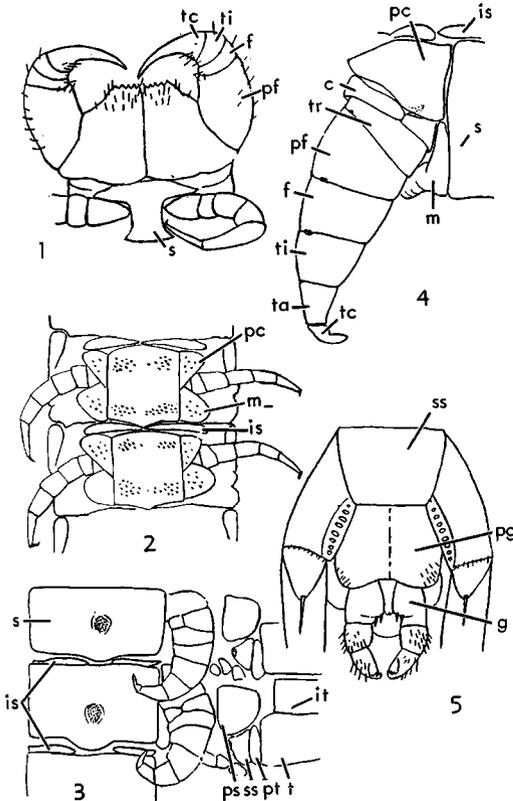


FIG. 382. External structural features used in classification of Chilopoda (Attems).—1. *Lithobius forficatus* (LINNÉ), prehensors and legs of 2nd body segment, ventral aspect,  $\times 10$ .—2. *Pachymerium kervillei* ATTEMs, mid-body segments, ventral aspect,  $\times 12$ .—3. *Himantarium gabrielis* (LINNÉ), mid-body segments cut mid-dorsally and flattened showing numerous pleural sclerites characteristic of most Geophilida,  $\times 10$ .—4. *Meinertophilus superbus* (MEINERT), walking leg from middle of body,  $\times 30$ .—5. *Lithobius forficatus* (LINNÉ), posterior end of body of female, ventral aspect, showing triarticulate female gonopods,  $\times 10$ . [Explanation: c, coxa; f, femur; g, gonopod; is, intercalary sternite; it, intercalary tergite; m, metacoxa; pc, procoxa; pf, prefemur; pg, pregonopodal sternite; ps, prescutellar sclerite; pt, paratergite; s, sternite; ss, stigmal sclerite; t, tergite; ta, tarsus; tc, tarsal claw; ti, tibia; tr, trochanter.]

ventral side of the head is covered by large prehensors (modified appendages of the first body segment) that may extend well in front of the head, or may be visible beyond its sides when seen in dorsal aspect. These appendages (Fig. 382,1) consist of a large homogeneous coxosternum, the front edge of which may be medially diastemate, commonly with paramedian sets of acute projections; the prehensors themselves represent the telopods of the appendages and are usually heavy and powerful, with a prominent distal "claw" perforated for the release of venom produced in a basal gland located either within the prehensor itself or further back inside the body. The number of segments in the prehensor is variable owing to a general tendency for reduction and many of the segments are provided with a projection on the inner margin.

The body segments are composed of primary leg-bearing segments with alternating, much smaller, intercalary segments. The usual arrangement of sclerites is that of a single dorsal tergite, a variable number of smaller lateral pleurites and subcoxal elements, and a single sternite. The tergites are of variable form; some are appreciably larger than their neighbors, some may be strongly margined laterally, or produced into lateral expansions, and commonly median or paramedian sutures are evident. In the Lithobiida the caudolateral corners of many tergites are produced into triangular projections, providing what are commonly used as combinations to distinguish genera or subgenera.

The arrangement of pleural sclerites (Fig. 382,2,3) is different for each order, and within the Geophilida this provides differences between families and genera, or even specific differences. Basically there appear to be three rows of pleurites, as well as a dorsal row of "paratergites." Usually one of the pleurites contains the stigmal opening. In geophiloids most or all of the body segments carry a stigma on each side, but in the scolopendroids a reduction in number of stigmata is observed, and a count of the stigmatiferous segments provides formulas characteristic for certain genera. This reduction is considered to be a specializa-

tion of some sort, a departure from the primitive homonomous condition.

The sterna in most forms are provided with fields or areas of cuticular pores, capable often of secreting luminescent material. The shape and distribution of pore fields provides generic and specific characters. In geophiloids the anterior edge of many sternites is provided with a median paxilla that may or may not project into a depression (sacculus) on the rear of the preceding sternum.

The legs are typically composed of seven podomeres (Fig. 382,4); the coxa may be distinct and easily recognizable or partially involved in the pleural structure and difficult to distinguish clearly. The telopodal segments are the trochanter, prefemur, femur, postfemur, tibia, tarsus, and tarsal claw (or pretarsus). The tarsus may be divided into two segments, or, in the Scutigera, into a great number of very small pseudotarsi. Aside from length and proportions, leg structure is essentially homogeneous within a given order. The terminal legs are commonly modified. In some scolopendroids they are enormously thickened and modified into a pair of pincers used in defense and perhaps also in the capture and holding of prey. In many geophiloids the ultimate pair of legs of the males are clavately enlarged and glandular; the same is often true in the Lithobiida where some of the podomeres are enlarged, or ornamented, or provided with deep cavities. In many of the latter order, the penultimate legs are involved in sexual modification, and in both sexes the two last pairs are normally much longer than others and usually carried above the ground when the animal is running. These legs have recently been distinguished as "tenacipeds" from the other 13 pairs of "cursipeds." In lithobioids and scutigeroids, the ultimate legs produce a type of viscid secretion that forms thin threads handled by the tenacipeds to entangle captured prey. In the Scutigera a generic name *Lassophora* has been set up in recognition of this peculiarity. In some groups of chilopods, particularly geophiloids, the last pair of legs may be reduced in size and number of podomeres, and the terminal claw may be lost entirely.

The terminal end of the body, beyond the last pair of ambulatory legs, apparently derives from three embryonic somites; in the adult it forms a rather compact genitoanal region composed of two apparent segments with separate sternites and tergites. The genital segment is provided with small appendages composed of two or three segments and presumably homologous to the regular legs. These so-called gonopods are more prominent in the females (Fig. 382, 5), and in the Lithobiida their form and basal spines provide specific characters.

The corresponding male structures are either small styliform remnants or absent; the penis is small, poorly sclerotized, and contained entirely within the body; it provides little in the way of systematic characters.

Chaetotaxy plays a very important role in the classification of many centipede groups, especially in the Lithobiida where the legs are provided with serially homologous, movable spurs on most or all segments. Several methods of presenting and evaluating variation in the leg spurs have been devised; probably the best is the so-called "Ribaut system." By this approach, each spur may be given a code designation that indicates its location on the leg; thus "VPA" means a spur on the ventral, anterior side of the prefemur. This spur can then be localized by providing the number of the legs on which it is found; thus "VPA 13-15." A complete presentation of spur distribution can be achieved by the use of a table such as shown below in abbreviated form (dorsal setae only; for leg pairs 1, 2, 14, and 15. C=coxa; P=prefemur; F=femur; Ti=tibia; a, m, and p=anterior, median, and posterior):

*Spur Distribution on Legs of Chilopoda*

	C	P	F	Ti
1		p	a	a
2		p	ap	a
14	a	mp	p	
14	a	amp	p	

**Subclass ANAMORPHA Haase, 1880**

Development hemianamorphic, young with only seven pairs of legs when hatched from egg, then passing through four or

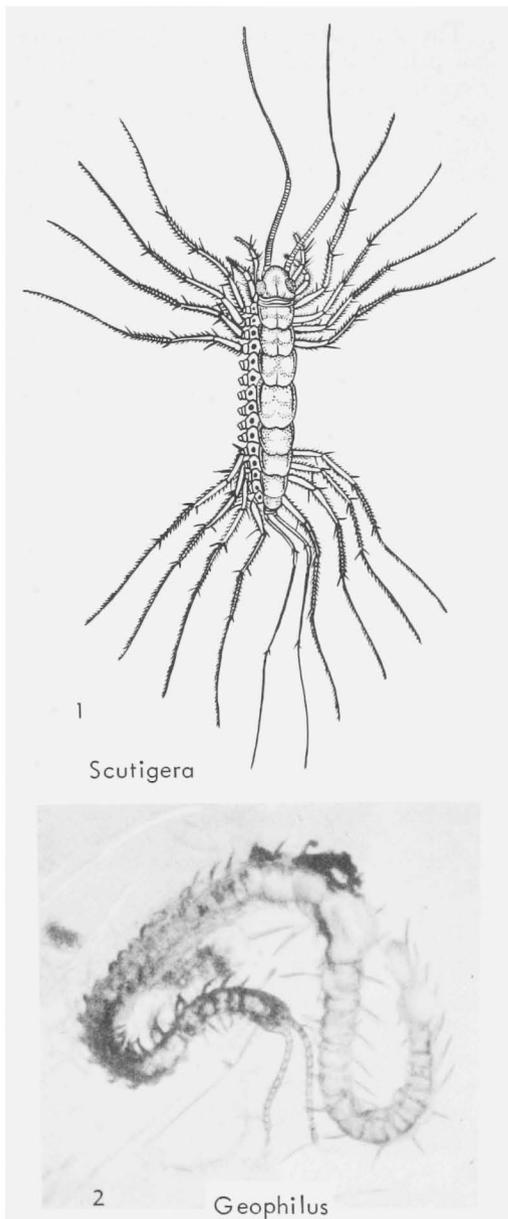


FIG. 383. Scutigeraid (1); Geophilidae (2)  
(p. R602-R603).

five anamorphic stages in which body segments and legs are added and finally through several additional anamorphic stages to achieve maturity; eggs laid singly by female and never brooded. Body with 19 segments and 15 pairs of legs, segments

usually displaying distinct alternation of large and small tergal plates; stigmata opening on segments 2, 4, 6, 9, 11, 13, and 15, but may be missing from one or more of them. *Oligo.-Rec.*

### Order SCUTIGERIDA Pocock, 1895

[*nom. correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1941 (*pro* Scutigeraforma Pocock, 1895)] [=Schizotarsia BRANDT, 1841; Anartiostigmata SILVESTRI, 1895]

Body composed of 15 leg-bearing segments, covered dorsally with eight distinct tergites that correspond to larger tergites of Lithobiida; tracheal system opening through dorsal, median, unpaired stomata located on posterior edge of tergites. Antennae extremely elongated, with as many as 400 tiny articles. First maxillae small and short, with prominent coxa, setose coxal lobe, and two-pointed telopod; second maxillae very long and slender, having greatly reduced sternum fused with coxa on each side, prefemur and femur with long slender macrosetae or bristles. Prehensors large, prominent, their sternum reduced or absent, coxae large, medially in contact but not fused, each with several long stout spurs on distal edge. Legs long, their basal articles with several long acicular setae, tarsi divided into great number of small secondary segments. Tergites usually invested by various spicules, setae, hairs, cones, and other modifications. [A highly specialized group of chilopods, now chiefly tropical in distribution, often placed in a subclass of its own. Several species of southeast Asia attain a body length of two or three inches.] *Oligo.-Rec.*

### Family SCUTIGERIDAE Newport, 1844

Characters of order. [Two subfamilies and about 18 genera are recognized.] *Oligo.-Rec.*

**Scutigera** LAMARCK, 1801 [*\*Scolopendra coleoptrata* LINNÉ, 1758; OD, M] [=Cermatia ILLIGER, 1807; *Selista* RAFINESQUE, 1820; *Cryptomera* RAFINESQUE, 1820]. Basal podomeres with longitudinal keels or crests; antennal articles broader than long; tarsi of 6th to 14th pairs of legs with 2 distal spines; tergites with acute spinules. *Oligo.-Rec.*, Eu.-N.Afr.-Asia-C.Am.—FIG. 383, 1. *S. leachi* KOCH & BERENDT, Oligo. (Baltic amber), NW.Eu.; entire animal, except legs of mid-region,  $\times 3.6$  (after Koch & Berendt).

**Order LITHOBIIDA Pocock, 1895**

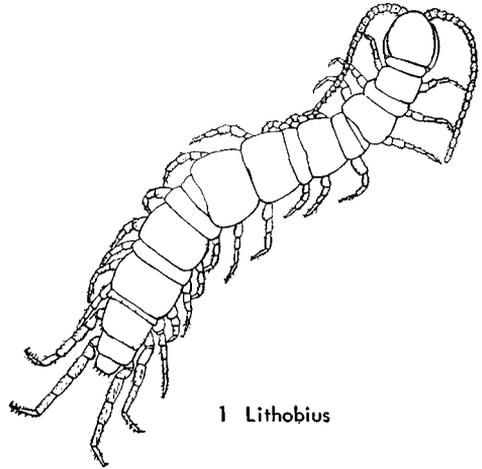
[*nom. correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1941 (*pro* Lithobiomorpha Pocock, 1895)] [=Artiostigmata SILVESTRI, 1895; Unguipalpi BOLLMAN, 1893]

Body composed of 15 segments having alternate large and small tergites (those of segments 1, 3, 5, 7, 10, 12, 14, and 16 much smaller than others); stigmata on segments 2, 4, 6, 9, 11, 13, and 15 or on reduced number of this series down to minimum of two segments. Antennae undifferentiated, filiform, with 13 to more than 100 articles. Ocelli present or absent. Mandible terminating in several strong teeth and accessory plumose setae. Sternum of first maxillae small, coxae essentially separated, telopods biarticulate; coxae and sterna of second maxillae fused, telopods with three or four segments, no palps present, terminal claws simple. Prehensors with large medially suturate coxosternum, its anterior edge dentate; telopod robust, uncate, with large distal segment. Coxae of ambulatory legs divided into four subsegments, each subtended by pleural procoxal sclerite; telopods normally with six podomeres, tarsus commonly divided into two or three subsegments. Legs of first to 13th pairs short and used for locomotion (*cursipeds*), last two pairs (14th, 15th) elongate and apparently used for mating or capture of prey or both (*tenacipeds*); podomeres of most legs provided with macrosetae or movable spurs in regular, serially homologous sequences. *Oligo.-Rec.*

The order is divided into several families with essentially separate present distributions. The Lithobiidae are basically Holarctic; the Gosibiidae are represented in Central America, southern United States, and eastern Asia; the Cermatobiidae and Henicopidae are chiefly confined to the Southern Hemisphere, although a few henicopid genera occur in North America. Undisputed fossils are known so far only from Baltic amber, the nominate genus (*Lithobius*) being still abundant in the same region at the present time.

**Family LITHOBIIDAE Leach, 1814**

Several posterior legs with coxal glands, most legs with macrosetae or spurs; pleura of prehensorial segments not in contact ventrally behind coxosternum; tibiae of legs



1 Lithobius

FIG. 384. Lithobiidae (p. R603).

without terminal triangular projection. Ocelli, when present, close to edge of cephalic plate. *Oligo.-Rec.*

*Lithobius* LEACH, 1814, p. 408 [*Scolopendra forficata* LINNÉ, 1758; OD, M]. Coxae of last 4 or 5 pairs of legs with only single row of gland pores on ventral side, 1st segment of female gonopods not modified along its inner margin. Antennae with more than 25 articles. All tarsi divided into 2 subsegments; tenacipeds of males unmodified; prosternum of prehensors with 2 or 3 marginal teeth. *Oligo.*, Eu.; *Rec.*, N.Am.-Eu.—FIG. 384, 1. *L. tricalcaratus* (ATTEMPS, *Rec.*, N.Am.; entire animal, dorsal aspect,  $\times 10$  (Attems).—FIG. 382, 1, 5. \**L. forficatus* (LINNÉ), *Rec.*, Eu.; 1, prehensors, ventral aspect, enl.; 5, post. end of body of female, ventral aspect (Attems).

**Subclass EPIMORPHA Haase, 1880**

Postembryonic development epimorphic, young leaving egg with complete complement of legs and segments; body with at least 25 segments, up to maximum of nearly 200. Eggs brooded by female parent. *Cret.-Rec.*

**Order GEOPHILIDA Pocock, 1895**

[*nom. correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1941 (*pro* Geophilomorpha Pocock, 1895)] [=Pantastigmata SILVESTRI, 1895]

Body very elongate, vermiform, with short legs and antennae; body segments ranging from 31 to nearly 200 (number rarely constant for given species); stigmata present on all segments from second to

penultimate. Antennae with 14 articles, ocelli never present. Sterna commonly with pore fields; pleural sclerites may be numerous and in several longitudinal series. Legs short, never beset with stout movable spurs. *Cret.-Rec.*

This order of superficially very similar animals is divided into nearly a dozen families on the basis of mouth-part structure. The characters utilized are extremely subtle, and in the case of small species, must be determined from microscope-slide preparations studied with an oil-immersion lens. The family position of some individuals can be determined on the basis of their external form, but usually only by a specialist who is very familiar with the group. It is possible that specimens in amber can be identified correctly, but other fossils cannot be determined reliably.

#### Family GEOPHILIDAE Newport, 1844

Mandibles without dentate lamella, their margins with pectinate fringe; one or two clypeal areas behind bases of antennae, which are threadlike and only rarely thickened distally. Paratergites absent. Terminal legs six- or seven-jointed, usually with distal clawlike pretarsus. *Oligo.-Rec.*

*Geophilus* LEACH, 1814 [*\*Scolopendra electrica* LINNÉ, 1758; OD, M]. Body usually widest at head; no clypeal areas present. Coxae of 2nd maxillae fused into syncoxite; telopods of prehensors composed of 4 segments, prehensors usually not extending in front of the head. *Oligo.*, Eu. (Baltic Region); *Rec.*, Eu.-N.Am.—FIG. 383, 2. G. sp., *Oligo.*, Baltic amber; whole animal,  $\times 12$  (Bachofen von Echt).

#### Family UNCERTAIN

*Calciphilus* CHAMBERLIN, 1949 [*\*C. abboti*; OD]. *Cret.*, USA (Ariz.).

### Order SCOLOPENDRIDA Pocock, 1895

[*nom. correct.* CHAMBERLIN, 1941 (*pro Scolopendromorpha* POCKOCK, 1895)] [=Oligostigmata SILVESTRI, 1895]

Small to huge chilopods which are voracious predatory animals. Body usually robust, with 25 or 27 segments bearing long legs and antennae; stigmata present on only about half of body segments. Antennae usually with 17 to 34 articles (number

usually constant for species at lower end of range). Ocelli usually present, sporadically absent. Last pair of legs usually longest, commonly greatly modified (thickened, compressed), and minimally with stout spines on some or all podomeres. *Rec.*

The smallest species of this order are about 15 mm. in length, whereas the largest (*Scolopendra gigantea*) is nearly 270 mm. long, exceeding nearly all other terrestrial arthropods. The order is predominantly tropical or subtropical in its present distribution.

#### Family SCOLOPENDRIDAE Newport, 1844

Ocelli present, usually four on each side of head. Sternites with two paramedian longitudinal sutures or none, never with transverse sutures; each half of intercalary sternites divided, intercalary tergites usually poorly developed, often not visible. Tarsi always divided into two segments. [One species, of very dubious generic position, has been described from the Baltic amber. The following generic diagnosis applies to Recent species, and not necessarily to the single known fossil.] *Oligo.-Rec.*

*Scolopendra* LINNÉ, 1758 [*\*S. forficata*; OD, M (but see CRABILL, 1954, Bull. Zool. Nomencl., v. 11; p. 134, for proposed designation of *S. morsitans* LINNÉ as type species in harmony with accustomed usage)]. With 21 pairs of legs, all tarsi triarticulate; 9 pairs of spiracles; claw of maxillary palp dentate on inner edge. [One fossil species (*S. proavita* MENGE) is assigned to this now dominantly tropical genus.] *Oligo.*, Eu. (Baltic region); *Rec.*, tropical and subtropical areas of all continents.

#### Class, Order, and Family UNCERTAIN

The following generic names have been based upon presumptive myriapod remains of late Paleozoic age, but in such condition as to make their reference to a particular class virtually impossible. The authors of the names referred them to the Chilopoda or Archipolypoda.

*Eileticus* SCUDDER, 1882, p. 178 [*\*E. anthracinus*; OD, M]. *Penn.*, USA (Ill.).

*Hemiphoberia* FRITSCH, 1899, p. 40 [*\*H. alternans*; OD, M]. *U. Carb.*, Eu. (Czech.).

*Heterovorhoeffia* FRITSCH, 1899, p. 42 [*\*H. crassa*; OD, M]. *U. Carb.*, Eu. (Czech.).

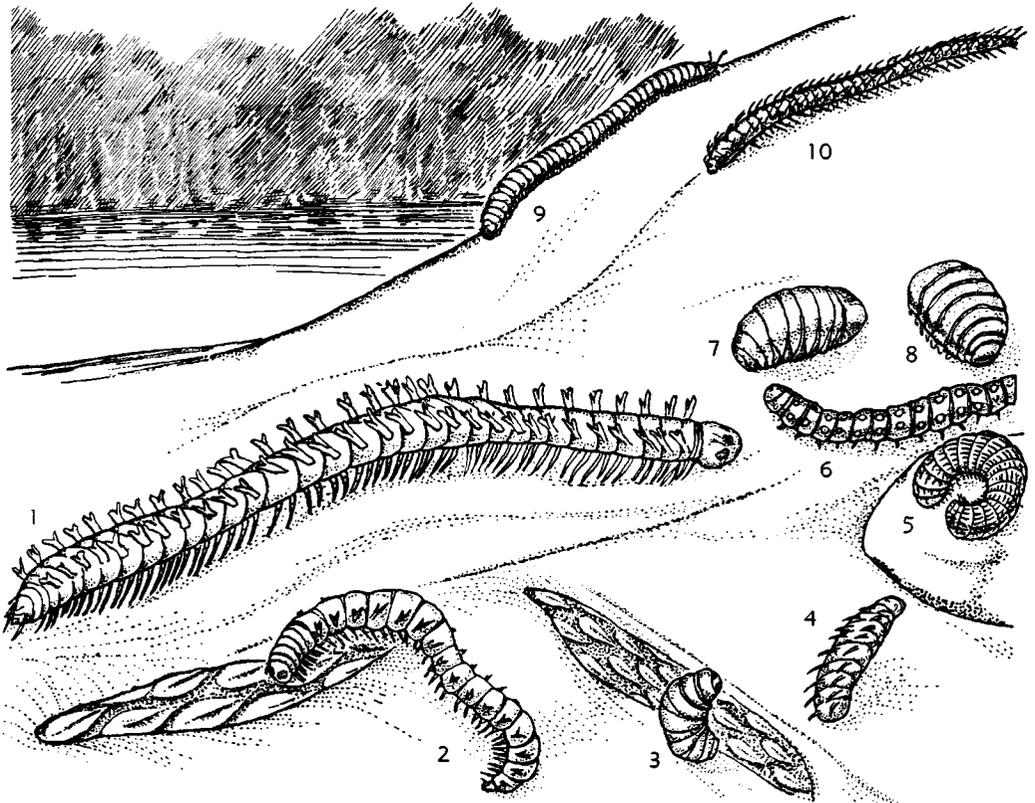


FIG. 385. Upper Carboniferous myriapod fauna from Bohemia (reconstr.), animals,  $\times 0.7$ ; (1) *Acantherpestes gigas*; (2) *Acantherpestes ornatus*; (3) *Archiscudderia paupera*; (4) *Amynilyspes typicus*; (5) *Xyloiolus pstrossi*; (6) *Sandtneria gemmata*; (7) *Glomeropsis ovalis*; (8) *Archiscudderia problematica*; (9) *Pleurojulus biornatus*; (10) *Euphoberia hystrix* (after Fritsch).

- Ilyodes* SCUDDER, 1890, p. 442 [\**I. divisa*; SD HOFFMAN, herein]. *Penn.*, USA (Ill.).  
*Latzelia* SCUDDER, 1890, p. 418 [\**L. primordialis*; OD, M]. *Penn.*, USA (Ill.).  
*Palenarthrus* SCUDDER, 1890, p. 421 [\**P. impressus*; OD, M]. *Penn.*, USA (Ill.).  
*Purkynia* FRITSCH, 1899, p. 41 [\**P. lata*; OD, M]. *U.Carb.*, Eu. (Czech.).  
*Sandtneria* FRITSCH, 1899, p. 42 [\**S. gemmata*; OD, M]. *U.Carb.*, Eu. (Czech.).

**GENERIC NAMES INCORRECTLY REFERRED TO MYRIAPODA**

- Palaeocampa* MEEK & WORTHEN, 1865, p. 52 [\**P. anthrax*; OD, M]. This nominal genus was made the type of an order Protosyngnatha by SCUDDER, 1882; more recently *P. anthrax* has been regarded as a polychaete annelid. Whatever its correct position, *Palaeocampa* does not seem to be a myriapod.  
*Julopsis* HEER, 1874, p. 120 [\**J. cretacea*; OD, M].

The status of this form has not been challenged hitherto, but close examination by me of HEER's original figures (K. Svenska Vetenskaps. Akad., Handl., v. 12, no. 6, 1874) has failed to provide basis for distinguishing *J. cretacea* from any of the fern frond remains with which HEER's paper is concerned. *Julopsis* then may be construed as an available occupied generic name in botany.  
*Palaeojulus* GEINITZ, 1873 [\**P. dyadicus*; OD, M]. Based upon a fern frond, *Scolecoperis elegans*.  
*Trichiulus* SCUDDER, 1884, p. 291 [\**T. villosus*; SD HOFFMAN, herein]. This generic name was later discarded by SCUDDER himself as based upon a plant fragment.

**INVALIDLY PROPOSED FAMILY-GROUP NAMES FOR MYRIAPODS**

A number of family-group names were set up by FRITSCH (1899) for myriapods

described from the Nyrany coal beds of Czechoslovakia and several by SCUDDER (1890) for American forms of similar age. Some of these names (listed below) are invalid, as they are not derived from the stem of any generic name originally assigned to them.

**Acroglomeridae** FRITSCH, 1899, p. 33. Name proposed for the single genus *Archiscudderia* FRITSCH, 1899 (pentazoniate diplopod now placed in *Amynilyspedidae*, order *Amynilyspedida*).

**Eoscolopendridae** SCUDDER, 1890, p. 419. Name proposed for the genera *Eileticus* SCUDDER, 1882, *Palenarthrus* SCUDDER, 1890, and *Ilyodes* SCUDDER, 1890 (myriapods of uncertain class, order and family).

**Gerascutigeridae** SCUDDER, 1890, p. 418. Name proposed for the genus *Latzelia* SCUDDER, 1890 (myriapods of uncertain class, order and family).

**Proglomeridae** FRITSCH, 1899, p. 35. Name proposed for the genus *Amynilyspes* SCUDDER, 1882 (pentazoniate diplopod, *Amynilyspedidae*).

**Projuloidae** FRITSCH, 1901, p. 25. Invalid name based on nonexistent genus proposed to include polydesmids *Isojulus* and *Pleurojulus* and spirobolids *Anthracojulus* and *Xylobius* (= *Xyloijulus*).

**Sphaerherpestidae** FRITSCH, 1899, p. 38. Name proposed for the genus *Glomeropsis* FRITSCH, 1899 (pentazoniate diplopod, *Amynilyspedidae*).

## RESTORATION OF CARBONIFEROUS MYRIAPODS

In the nature of an afterthought summarizing features of various sorts of fossil myriapods, it seems appropriate to reproduce an assemblage of Upper Carboniferous fossils of this group as reconstructed by FRITSCH (Fig. 385).

## REFERENCES

### Attems, Carl

- (1) 1926, *Myriopoda*: in W. G. Kükenthal & Thilo Krumbach, *Handbuch der Zoologie*, v. 4, 402 p., 477 text fig., De Gruyter (Leipzig).

### Bachofen von Echt, Adolf

- (2) 1942, *Über die Myriapoden des Bernsteins*: *Palaeobiologica*, v. 7, p. 394-403, pl. 1-4.

### Cook, O. F.

- (3) 1895, *Introductory note on the families of Diplopoda*: in O. F. Cook & G. N. Collins, *The Craspedosomatidae of North America*, *New York Acad. Sci., Ann.*, v. 9, p. 1-9.

### Fritsch [Frič], Anton

- (4) 1883-1901, *Fauna der Gaskohle und der Kalksteine der Permformation Böhmens*: v. 1-4, pl. 1-152 (Prague).

### Hoffman, R. L.

- (5) 1963, *New genera and species of upper Paleozoic Diplopoda*: *Jour. Paleontology*, v. 37, p. 167-174, pl. 24.

### Koch, C. L., & Berendt, G. C.

- (6) 1854, *Die im Bernstein befindlichen Crustaceen, Myriapoden, Arachniden, und Aptereren der Vorwelt*: 124 p., 17 pl., Nicolaischen Buchhandlung (Berlin).

### Miner, R. W.

- (7) 1926, *A fossil myriapod of the genus Parajulus from Florissant, Colorado (Parajulus cockerelli, new species)*: *Am. Museum Nat. History, Novitates*, no. 219, p. 1-5.

### Müller, A. H.

- (8) 1963, *Lehrbuch der Paläozoologie*: v. 2, pt. 3, 698 p., 854 text fig., Gustav Fischer (Jena).

### Scudder, S. H.

- (9) 1882, *Archipolypoda, a subordinal type of spined myriapods from the Carboniferous formation*: *Boston Soc. Nat. History, Mem.*, v. 3, p. 143-182, pl. 10-13, text fig. 1-8.
- (10) 1885, *Myriapoda*: in K. A. Zittel, *Handbuch der Palaeontologie*, v. 2, abt. 1, p. 721-731, text fig. 894-905, R. Oldenbourg (München & Leipzig).
- (11) 1890, *New Carboniferous Myriapoda from Illinois*: *Boston Soc. Nat. History, Mem.*, v. 4, p. 417-440, pl. 33-37.

### Verhoeff, K. W.

- (12) 1926-1932, *Diplopoda*: in H. G. Bronn, *Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs*, v. 5, pt. 2, bk. 2, Lief. 1-13, 2084 p., 1048 text fig., Akad. Verlag. (Leipzig).

## ARTHROPLEURIDA

By W. D. IAN ROLFE

[Hunterian Museum, University of Glasgow] [The writer is indebted to Dr. S. M. MANTON, F.R.S., for helpful discussion of *Arthropleura* and living myriapods, and to Dr. J. K. INGHAM for much assistance in reconstructing *Arthropleura*]  
 [Chapter submitted June, 1966]

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	R607
MORPHOLOGY .....	R607
PALEOECOLOGY .....	R614
AFFINITIES AND CLASSIFICATION .....	R616
SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS .....	R617
Class Arthropleurida Waterlot, 1934 .....	R617
Taxa doubtfully classifiable as Arthropleurida .....	R618
REFERENCES .....	R619

## INTRODUCTION

The arthropleurids are an extinct group of rare gigantic centipede-like arthropods which inhabited coal swamps during Late Carboniferous times. The group, as here interpreted, is known with certainty to contain only the eponymous genus *Arthropleura*, although two other genera may be related, one of them even ancestral.

There has been much discussion of the affinities of *Arthropleura*: it has been referred to Chelicerata, Trilobitomorpha, Crustacea, Myriapoda, and Arthropoda *incertae sedis*. The Arthropleurida is here tentatively regarded as a unique class of myriapods, showing parallel evolutionary trends to the polydesmid diplopods, but differing from them in the number of segments in and structure of the limb, and in the gigantic length attained. Although arthropleurids are rare, their huge size makes them suitable for detailed study and the limb is as well known as that of any fossil arthropod. In terms of body size, *Arthropleura* can claim to be the largest terrestrial arthropod known.

## MORPHOLOGY

The most striking feature of *Arthropleura* is its colossal size. The largest most complete specimen known (7) is two feet

eight inches long (80 cm.), yet isolated segments and paratergal folds which have been found indicate that animals up to six feet (180 cm.) in length must have existed (9). Small individuals representing young instars are also known, however, and the most complete of these (described as the separate species *A. moyseyi* by CALMAN but subsequently regarded as a juvenile *A. armata*) is 65 mm. long (Fig. 386).

The cuticle seems to have been relatively thin for such a large arthropod: WATERLOT states that its maximum thickness is 2 mm. Over the large rosette plate (shown on Figure 391,C) the space between internal and external molds measures less than 0.12 mm., indicating a cuticle of this thickness. In flattened, carbonized limbs, details of the morphology of one surface are commonly impressed through onto the other (*see* Fig. 389,C), as may also be details of the venation of underlying plant fragments. There is no indication that the cuticle was mineralized during life and it was probably only toughened by sclerotization.

The juvenile *Arthropleura armata* referred to above (Fig. 386) has the course of the intestine indicated in the hind two-thirds of the body by a zone of darker ironstone packed with plant fragments. It occupies just more than half the width of the axis and is confined to it, although secondarily pressed through the tergites.

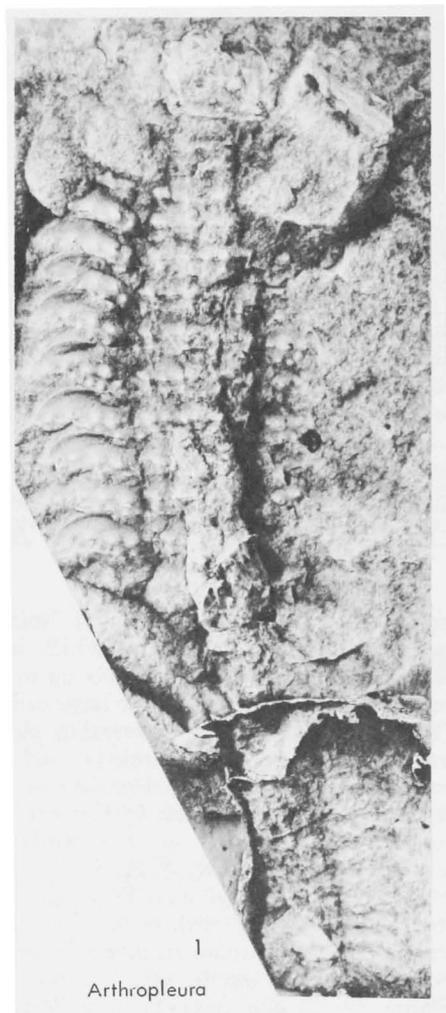


FIG. 386. Rubber cast from external mold of almost complete juvenile *Arthropleura armata* JORDAN & MEYER (holotype of *A. moyseyi* CALMAN), head slightly displaced, dorsal, U.Carb., Eng.,  $\times 2$  (Rolfe, n).

### HEAD

The head is known from only one specimen (Fig. 386). It is poorly preserved, but can be seen to be broader than long and approximately one-third the greatest width of the body. The specimen shows the ventral surface of the head, with an anteriorly fimbriated, curved appendage forming the side of the head and thus resembling the myriapod mandible in position.

### BODY

The body is elongate and of almost uniform width but tapers anteriorly and posteriorly (Fig. 387). It is longitudinally trilobed dorsally, forming a median axis with lateral **paratergal folds**. The tergites are dorsoventrally depressed and there is no reason to believe that they were much more convex in life.

The number of body somites is unknown; the two almost complete specimens described have 27 and 23 postcephalic somites preserved, but both specimens are somewhat disarticulated and these numbers are minimal. No telson has yet been observed.

Tergites of the somites vary in shape, size, and ornament according to their position on the body and according to the age of the individual. Anterior tergites are narrower, show more anteriorly oriented paratergal folds and bear fewer tubercles and spines than those in the central region of the body (Fig. 388); the first three tergites are also shorter than succeeding ones. Posteriorly the tergites gradually diminish in breadth and have the paratergal folds increasingly directed rearward. Each tergite overlaps the next somite behind by approximately one quarter of its length. This region of the tergite is only finely tuberculate and bears a transverse rib and furrow marking it off from the main area of the tergite.

The axial region of each tergite is rectangular and separated from the two lateral triangular paratergal folds by furrows. From this furrow and the frequent occurrence of paratergal folds isolated from axes most authors have deduced that the paratergal folds were movably articulated with the axis, and indeed the name *Arthropleura* refers to this feature. It is possible, however, that the split sometimes seen separating paratergal folds from the axis is due to flattening of the originally more convex segment and not to any original hinge structure.

Both axis and paratergal folds commonly bear all sizes of tubercles, grading from large, posteriorly directed, blunt conical spines to fine granules. Each paratergal fold also bears two recurved keels, the crests of which are serrate-tuberculate distally. The tuberculation pattern and direction of the prominent, main paratergal keel have been

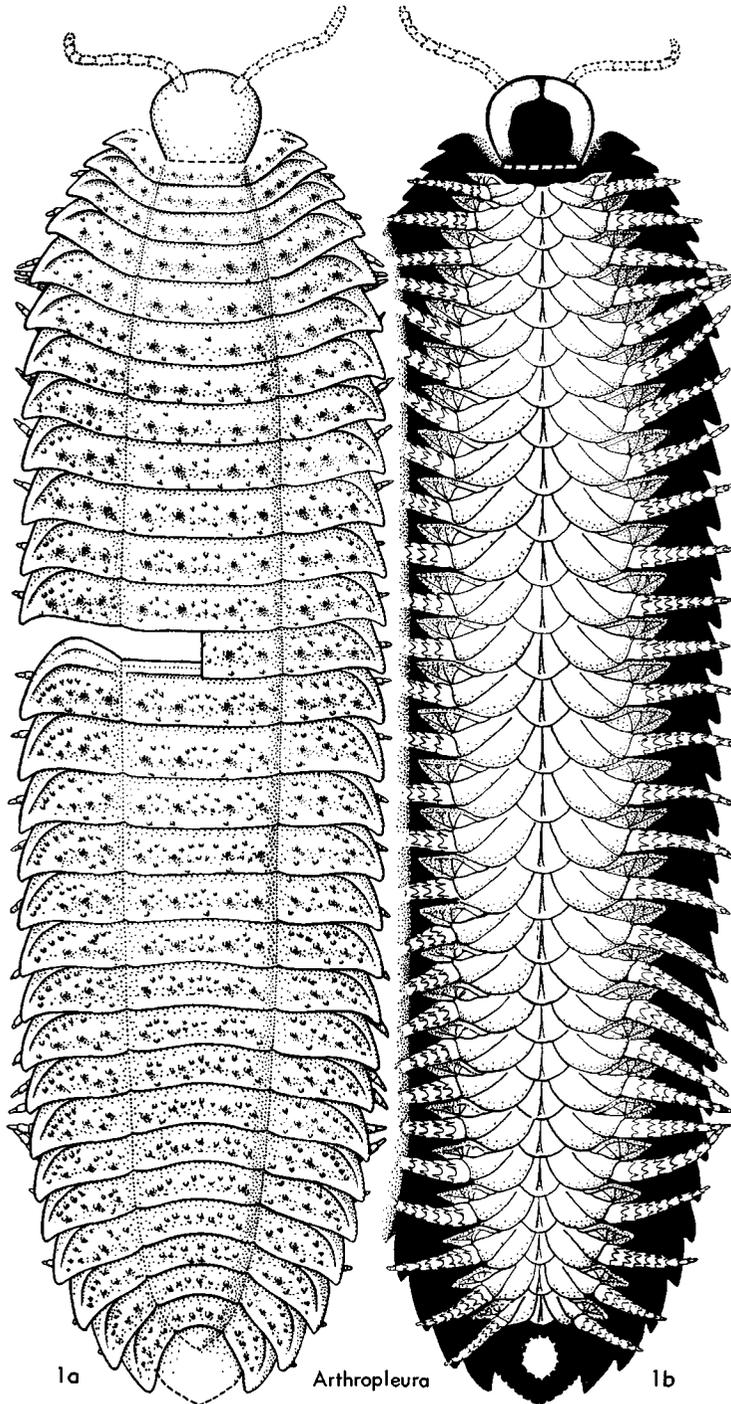


FIG. 387. Reconstruction of *Arthropleura armata* JORDAN & MEYER, dorsal, ventral. Half of one tergite removed to show anterior border of underlying tergite; no limbs shown on first trunk somite. Interrupted lines indicate restored regions of body, approx.  $\times 0.1$  (16).

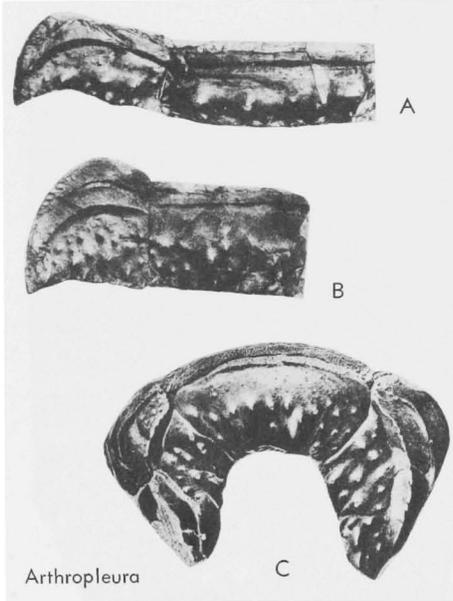


FIG. 388. Isolated tergites of *Arthropleura armata* JORDAN & MEYER, dorsal, Carb., Saar,  $\times 0.5$ .—A. Axis and left paratergal fold from anterior body somite showing anteriorly directed paratergal fold and sparse tuberculation (19).—B. Axis and left paratergal fold from middle body somite (19).—C. Complete last body somite (pretelson) (1).

the two chief characters used in differentiating species of *Arthropleura*, although no statistical study of these highly variable characters is yet available.

The sternite is only seen preserved as a triangular area between the bases of the ventral limbs. It bears a shallow median longitudinal sulcus and has a convex posterior margin. According to WATERLOT (19), the integument is either smooth or finely granulose. The pleuron immediately underneath the paratergal folds is finely pitted (or granulose?) and wrinkled, but otherwise featureless. Other structures which probably comprise the pleuron are dealt with in the following section.

### LIMBS AND ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES

Each segment bears one pair of limbs ventrally inserted almost halfway between the mid-ventral line and tips of the paratergal folds. Prior to 1934 all authorities agreed that the limb of *Arthropleura* was uniramous. After a most exhaustive study

of the available material WATERLOT (19) concluded that the limb was biramous, comparable to that of the trilobite in basic structure yet even more primitive in that the two rami were identical in form. This interpretation was challenged by STØRMER (1944), and subsequent study by ROLFE and INGHAM (16) of largely uncrushed material (Fig. 389) vindicated STØRMER's view that the limb is uniramous. A reconstruction of the limb is shown in Figure 390.

It is not yet known whether the limb comprises eight, nine or ten segments. The clawlike pretarsus numbered 10 may not be an independent segment and the posterior, incompletely preserved segment 1 may not be a limb segment but a subcoxal sclerite. Thus either it, or segment 2, represents the coxa. Each segment bears distally a pair of stout outwardly and downwardly directed spines. Segment 8 is consistently longer than other segments, although one specimen (Fig. 389,B) is known in which a more proximal segment is longest, suggesting either that this limb is abnormal owing to regeneration after an injury, or that the segment number is not constant for all limbs. The anterior surface of the limb is smooth, whereas the posterior face bears tubercles, some of which show a terminal pore suggesting the original presence of a seta. Both surfaces of the limb show sharp linear invaginations of the cuticle, which on the proximal regions of the limb run obliquely across the segments. These form ridges on the inside of the limb, probably analogous to the *costae coxales* of Recent centipedes, and doubtless served both to strengthen the leg joints and to provide sites for the attachment of limb muscles. It was these ridges, and especially that on the proximal region of the posterior face of the limb, that WATERLOT misinterpreted as the dorsal edge of one ramus of a biramous limb overlapping the other ramus. On the posterior face of the limb, the invaginations of segments 1, 2, and 3 have a radial disposition (Fig. 390) and when found isolated these segments may be mistaken for a rosette plate and its associated anterior face of segment 2.

The more proximal structures associated with the limb may be referred to as the **rosette plate**, **B plate** and **K plate**. The two

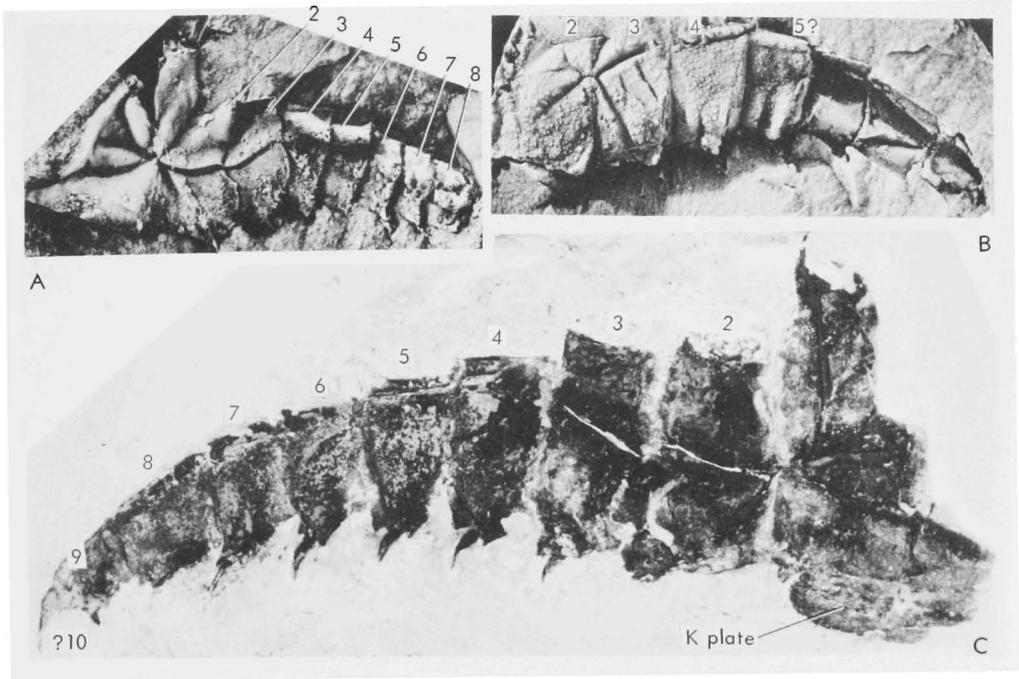


FIG. 389. Limbs of *Arthropleura*.—A. Rubber cast from external mold of anterior face of left leg of young individual showing *B* and rosette plates and segments 2-8, Carb., Eng.,  $\times 2.3$ .—B. Right leg, showing internal mold of posterior face of segments 2-5? and external mold of anterior and dorsal surface of distal segments (one segment lacking in this individual, possibly due to regeneration), Carb., Eng.,  $\times 2.3$ .—C. Complete flattened right leg, anterior view, but with features of posterior face of limb impressed through. Shows *K*, *B*, and rosette plates and segments 2-10, Carb., Neth.,  $\times 1.1$  (16).

latter terms were introduced by KLIVER (1884) and ANDRÉE (1) to signify the basal segment and supposed gill lamella (*Kiemenblätter*) of the limb. All three structures are here interpreted as sclerotized regions of the body wall (*i.e.*, pleurites or subcoxal sclerites), as in living centipedes (MANTON 1965; SNODGRASS 1952), rather than true limb segments, although there must still be debate on this point as outlined below. Since the function of the rosette plate is only a passive one, therefore, it is suggested that the hitherto used term "rosette organ" be abandoned.

The rosette plate is an elongate, convex plate, bounded anteriorly and posteriorly by convex borders, and divided into a number of lobes by deep subradial sulci. WATERLOT (19) devised the notation given in Figure 390 for these lobes. Most of the lobes shown usually are present but in older individuals the number of adventitious lobes is greater and the lobes tend to be more irregular in

form (Fig. 391). Several of the lobes bear mammiform tubercles with central pores which were originally setiferous. Young individuals lack this tuberculation, however (Fig. 389,A).

The *B* plate is a triangular convex posterior extension of the rosette plate, from which it is separated by a deep sulcus oriented almost perpendicular to the sagittal plane of the body (Fig. 392). Such a huge terrestrial creature as *Arthropleura* would need massive buttressing of the limb bases at their insertion on the body wall to enable limb movement to take place. It seems likely that the rosette and *B* plates provided such reinforcement of the pleuron, and their situation in front of the limb suggests that the limbs thrust backward and downward in normal locomotion.

In an attempted analogy with *Limulus*, WATERLOT (19, 21) regarded the *C* lobe of the rosette plate (Fig. 390) as a precoxal segment, which attached the limb to the

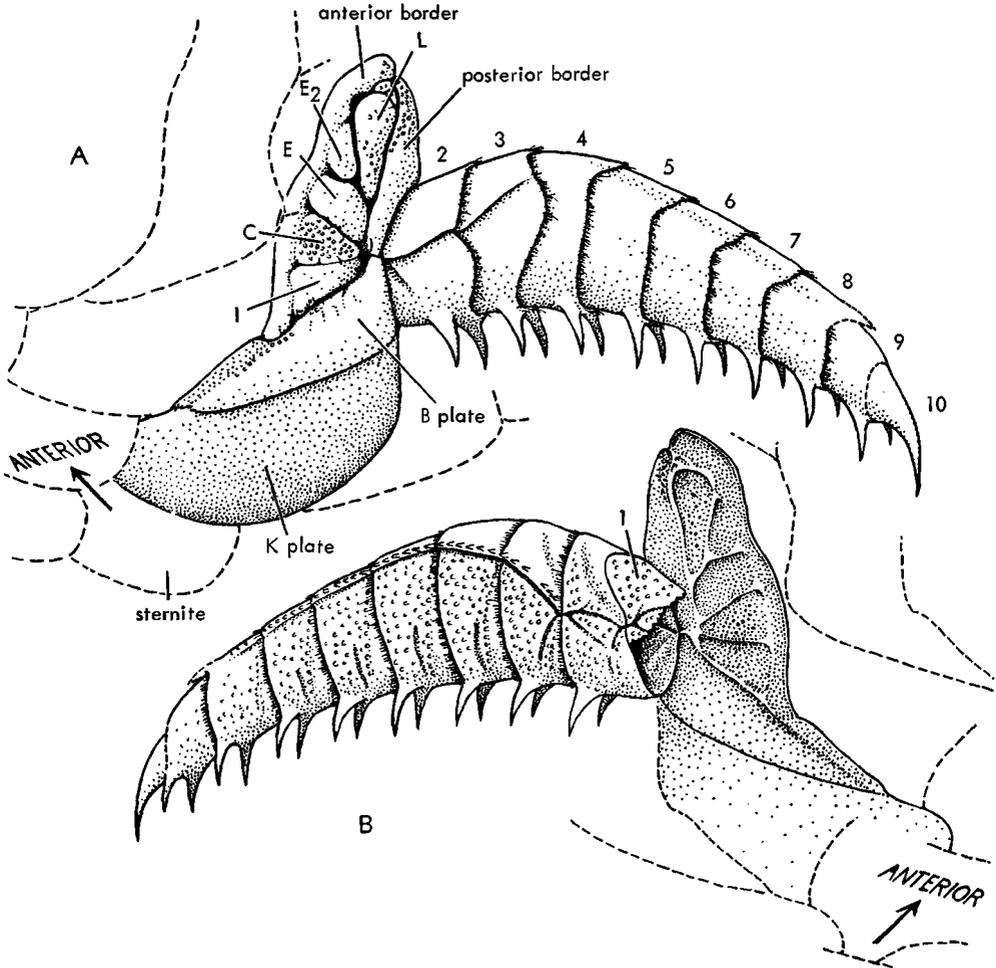


FIG. 390. Reconstruction of left leg of medium-sized adult *Arthropleura*. Both views are taken obliquely to emphasize the morphology and the limb is thus slightly foreshortened. Interrupted lines indicate most of sternite, K, B, and rosette plates of body somite immediately in front and posterior edge of B plate of somite immediately behind, and serve to orient the limb relative to the body wall. The letters show WATERLOT's notation for lobes of the rosette plate—A. Anteroventral view.—B. Posterodorsal view.  $\times 1$  (16).

body wall and articulated with it by the insertion of the C lobe between the I and E lobes (supposedly evaginations of the sternum). As RICHARDSON (14) has pointed out, however, WATERLOT's schematic cross section of a limb-bearing somite (19, fig. 27; 21, fig. 4) is misleading in showing a leg suspended wholly outside the body, with no provision for the passage of leg muscles into the body. Furthermore, to separate off the C lobe as a distinct limb segment is clearly unjustifiable. It is difficult to accept

WATERLOT's interpretation of the homologies of the other basal limb structures which followed from his view. For example, it would be impossible to recognize as such a precoxa which articulated with the basis and yet not with the coxa, as WATERLOT's latest reconstruction (21) implies.

The frequent occurrence of isolated well-preserved rosette plates with their B plates attached implies that the surrounding pleuron consisted of unsclerotized integument, as must also the intersegmental mem-

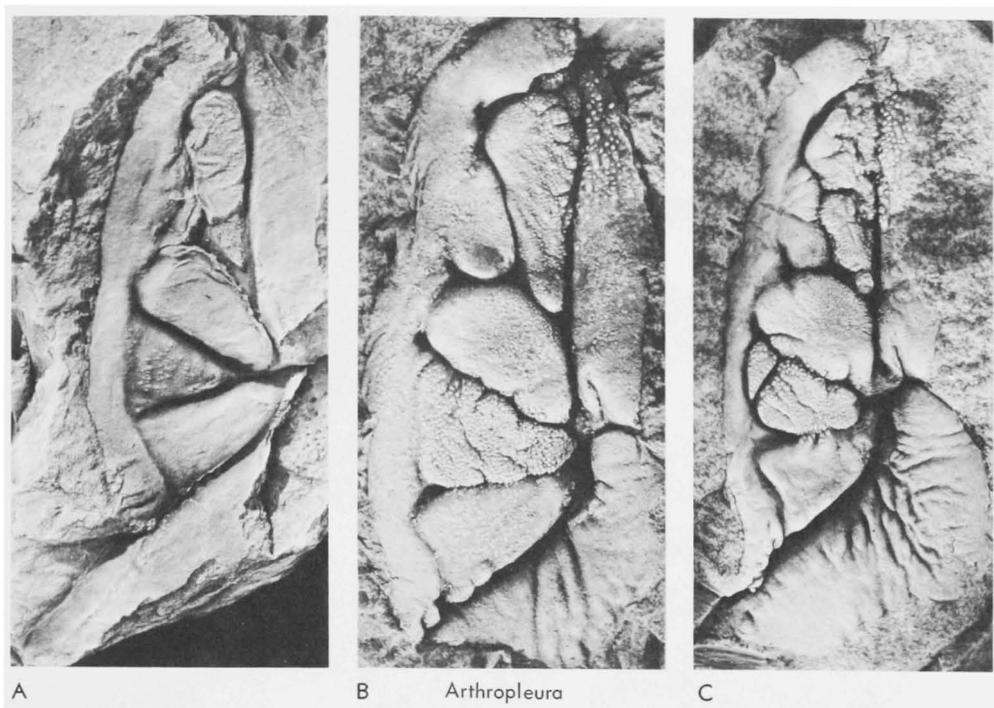


FIG. 391. Left rosette plates with portion of *B* plate attached of *Arthropleura* to show increase in tuberculation and number of adventitious lobes with size (i.e., age).—*A.* Westphal., Neth.,  $\times 1.8$ .—*B.* Penn., USA (Ill.),  $\times 1.5$ .—*C.* Penn., USA (Ill.),  $\times 1$  (Rolfe, n).

brane between these plates and limb segment 2.

The *K* plate ("ventral lobe" of STØRMER, 1944; "epipodite" or "gill plate" of other authors) is a thin plate, usually oval and irregularly wrinkled. In isolated limbs and limb fragments this plate appears pitted and commonly occurs with its anterior edge tucked under the incurved posterior edge of the *B* plate, but it may also overlap the same plate and WATERLOT has suggested that it is only attached by a small tongue to the "distal" end of the *B* plate; the variable position of the plate suggests that it is only attached by unsclerotized integument. The original position of the plate is therefore doubtful. If the pitting is regarded as the internal expression of tuberculation, then this plate would seem to be part of the posterior face of the limb, only secondarily shifted into an anterior position. The consistent position of the overlapping *K* plates preserved *in situ* on the flattened specimen shown in Figure 392 argues against this,

however. Differences in appearance between *K* plates on isolated limbs and those *in situ* probably reflect their different attitudes during flattening. The *K* plate has only one surface and it is therefore difficult to interpret it as a lamellar gill, as originally suggested by KLIVER and accepted by subsequent authors. If the *K* plate could be shown to be a gill plate it would imply that the *B* and rosette plates were coxal structures. ANDRÉE (1) and PRUVOST (1919) thought that the *K* plates might represent oostegites. The *K* plate is here interpreted as a convex, less sclerotized area of the ventral integument. The function of the plate, if it is not just an intercalated sclerite, must remain doubtful until its structure and position on (or even within) the body are better known. It is tempting to regard it as homologous with either the coxal sac or eversible vesicle of modern myriapods; VERHOEFF suggested that the supposed coxal sacs of the Myriapoda Archipolypoda enabled their owner to respire on land and

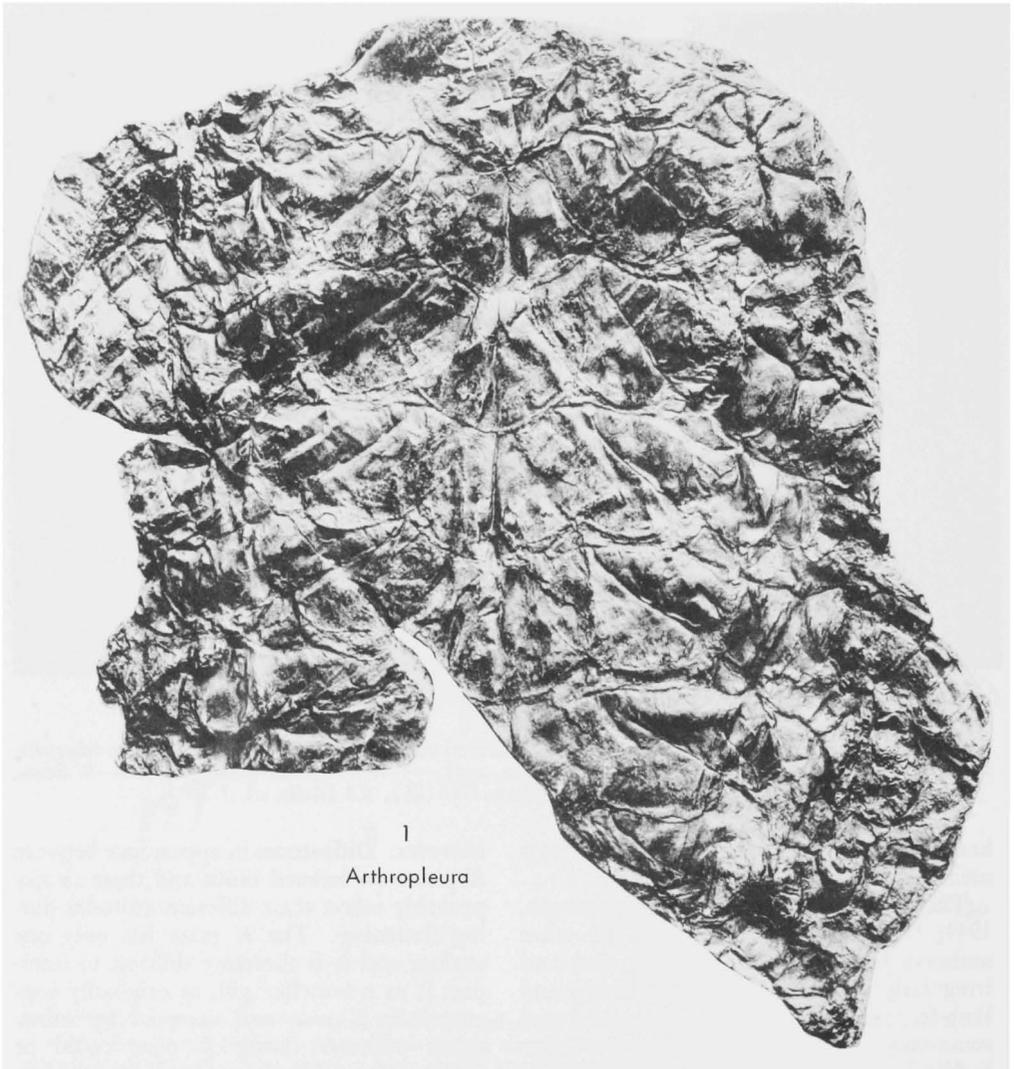


FIG. 392. Pedigerous ventral surface of small specimen of *Arthropleura armata* JORDAN & MEYER. This specimen, which is only half of an originally larger specimen, shows 7 pairs of limbs flattened *in situ* onto 6 sternites. Most of the rosette plates are concealed beneath limbs of the somite immediately in front, but one can be seen at the top right, Carb., Saar,  $\times 1$  (19).

could be everted to function as gills when in water.

In 1947 WATERLOT (20) described two limb segments which he suggested belonged to a gnathobasic cephalic limb. Additional evidence is required before this view can be confirmed or denied.

### PALEOECOLOGY

Most specimens of *Arthropleura* have been found either in nonmarine shales or

clay ironstone concretions of the Coal Measures. The few which have been found in undoubted marine strata were probably washed in from nonmarine sources. Finds are characteristically associated with plants, the delicate fronds of which are so well preserved that WATERLOT (19) inferred that they could not have drifted far. This association with abundant plants, commonly in roofs of coal seams, suggests that both *Arthropleura* and vegetation were drowned by the submergence of the forest swamp at

the initiation of another cyclothem. Furthermore, the most abundant finds of *Arthropleura* have been made in the limnic basin of the Saar, where there is a complete absence of marine fauna, the associated forms being chiefly insects and chelicerates, with a few nonmarine ostracodes, branchiopods, bivalves, fishes, *Spirorbis*, and a myriapod (19). The largest most complete specimens known come also from such intermontane limnic basins, whereas specimens from paralic deposits usually occur as detached paratergal folds, axes, sternites, limbs, limb fragments, or rosette plates (8). The ever-present problem of selective diagenesis must not be overlooked, however, and it is possible that any originally calcareous shelly fauna would be dissolved during the production of humic acids in peat formation. Similarly, the tenuous condition of the *Arthropleura* cuticle may only be a reflection of these conditions, mineralized layers in the cuticle being readily dissolved under these conditions and only sclerotized tissues remaining unattacked.

From their occurrence and morphology, WATERLOT (19, 21) deduced that *Arthropleura* was amphibious. He suggested that it was predominantly a lacustrine creature, which moved slowly over the surface of marshy lake floors breathing by gill lamellae. He also envisaged that *Arthropleura* could climb out onto land and live in the undergrowth where the necessary humidity would be maintained to enable the gill plates to function. From the nature of the supposed cephalic limb, WATERLOT (20) inferred that *Arthropleura* was carnivorous and fed on small prey such as worms. Even if this limb is a gnathobasic maxilla, however, this need not imply a carnivorous owner, for such a large creature, if herbivorous, would also need powerful mouth parts to break and shred the large amount of vegetation required for sustenance. VAN DER HEIDE (10; 1956) questioned the aquatic habit, suggesting that the development of legs with pointed claws indicated that *Arthropleura* clambered among the plant debris of the boggy ground of the coal swamp.

Until the nature of the *K* plates is elucidated or spiracles are discovered, the exact way in which *Arthropleura* respired, and

hence its habit, must remain obscure. However, comparison with the form and function of modern myriapods is fruitful, thanks to the valuable body of knowledge published by MANTON (1950-65). As KOMAREK (17) has pointed out, *Arthropleura* resembles such Recent diplopods as the Polydesmida in its general habitus. According to MANTON (11, 12):

These "flat-backed" millipedes live under dead leaves and loose damp material. The lateral projection of their legs restricts their burrowing, and they cannot force their way through soil as can the juliform types. Both spines and wings will direct flattish objects away from the body, so leaving an unimpeded space in which the legs may move. The animals are thus well suited to push into crevices which give way predominantly in one plane, as does the damp layered mass of semi-decayed leaves on a woodland floor, or the bark and wood of decaying logs. The push is applied mainly by the dorsal surface or "flat back," the keels when present providing both protection for the legs and a surface of application for the force.

Such a description might well be of the habit of *Arthropleura* which may be envisaged plowing through the surface layers of the forest peat of the typical coal swamp. It is therefore improbable that *Arthropleura* could burrow, as GARSTANG (5) seems to have been the first to suggest in his verse "The trilobites and after." *Arthropleura* probably had a sluggish but powerful gait, and it would have readily fallen prey to contemporary amphibians and reptiles, doubtless *Arthropleura's* only enemies.

The gut infilling preserved in the juvenile *Arthropleura armata* previously mentioned is packed with vegetable debris. Carbonized wood tracheids with scalariform pitting are visible and fragments of epidermis are recognizable. Mr. D. BRETT, of Glasgow University Botany Department, who kindly determined these elements, states that the fragments are of lycopods. This is direct evidence that *Arthropleura* was herbivorous, and not predominantly carnivorous as WATERLOT suggested, although it does not prevent it from being an omnivore (16).

In characters such as body shape, lateral projection of the paratergal folds, lateral insertion of limbs on the body wall, and herbivorous diet, *Arthropleura* does indeed resemble the polydesmid diplopods. It is suggested that these resemblances have

been acquired by these two separate classes of myriapods as a result of parallel evolution.

The great size attained by *Arthropleura* was explained by ANDRÉE (1913) on HANDLIRSCH's theory for the giant size of Coal Measure insects. This theory suggests a correlation of such gigantism with tropical or subtropical climates, where growth is not interrupted by a pause during a cold season. MANTON (12) has stated that factors such as difficulties of molting and of tracheal respiration limit large size in arthropods, "but the power which can be put out by the legs is alone sufficient to restrict size increase in millipedes." These problems would doubtless be acute for *Arthropleura* but they can only be answered when the nature of the respiratory organs is known.

These giant arthropods were completely dependent upon the unusual environment of the Coal Measures swamp for their survival and their range in time and space coincides with that of the Euramerian floral belt, with the exception of one undescribed record from the west of the Angaran floral province (13). Thus *Arthropleura* ranges from Westphalian A to Stephanian C; PŘIBYL (1960) has figured specimens from the Namurian A of Czechoslovakia but these are not certainly *Arthropleura*.

## AFFINITIES AND CLASSIFICATION

In view of the conflicting opinions on the affinities of *Arthropleura*, a brief history of these views is desirable.

Prior to KLIVER's (1884) description of a specimen bearing 13 pedigerous sternites (Fig. 392), interpretations of the systematic position were understandably diverse. Thus JORDAN & MEYER (1853) originally suggested that *Arthropleura* was a decapod crustacean and later (1854) made comparisons with eurypterids and trilobites. KLIVER dissociated this arthropod from insects and arachnids and stated that it could not be a myriapod, although he presented no argument in support of this view. He regarded *Arthropleura* as a nondecapod crustacean and compared the appendages with those of the Branchiopoda. ZIRTEL (1885) established the family Arthropleuridae and

pointed out that the lack of tagmosis and nature of the ventral surface differentiated the family from Isopoda and Amphipoda. Since he could not classify the Arthropleuridae with any other crustacean group, however, he suggested that it formed a connecting link between Isopoda and Amphipoda. ANDRÉE (1910) suggested that this lack of tagmosis was primitive. He inferred that since gill plates were present on at least 11 segments, but only on the fewer somites of either thorax or abdomen of Recent amphipods or isopods, respectively, *Arthropleura* is closely related to the common ancestor of the Edriophthalma (*i.e.*, Amphipoda, Tanaidacea, and Isopoda). Later (1913) he concluded that it also formed a link between the Isopoda and Schizopoda (Euphausiacea and Mysidacea). The first to have listed *Arthropleura* among the myriapods were MOYSEY & WOODWARD (in MOYSEY, 1911).

CALMAN (1913, in BROILL, 1932) concluded that *Arthropleura* is "certainly not an isopod" and criticized ANDRÉE's views. If *Arthropleura* is a crustacean, in the view of CALMAN it is "of a type hitherto unknown," but it might "even be a very generalized and primitive kind of myriapod"; CALMAN therefore referred it to Arthropoda *incertae sedis*.

The next major change in the systematic position of the group was made by WATERLOT (1934) who founded the order Arthropleurida, ranked by him as having taxonomic status equal to the Trilobita within the crustacean subclass Archaeocrustacea (later, 1949, within the Trilobitomorpha). STØRMER (1944) challenged WATERLOT's reconstruction of a biramous trilobite-like limb for *Arthropleura*. He concluded that the limb was uniramous, having "little in common with the trilobite appendage," and judged that the only trilobitan feature of *Arthropleura* was the trilobation of the tergites. STØRMER therefore only referred the genus with doubt to the Arachnomorpha.

A posthumous note on KOMAREK's views of the systematic position of *Arthropleura* was published by SHAROV (1960), who denied that *Arthropleura* is related to the Trilobita and stated, without foundation, that it is a typical representative of the

diplopod myriapod family Polydesmidae, both in leg morphology and in its paleoecology. NOVOZHILOV (1962) accordingly referred the Arthropleuridae to the Diplopoda, *Ordo incertae sedis*, in the Russian "Osnovy paleontologii."

The present writer provisionally regards the Arthropleurida as a distinct class of myriapods. Evidence for this attribution to the Myriapoda is slender, and only amounts to the lack of tagmosis of the large number of somites, presence of uniramous limbs on all known somites, and the inferred terrestrial habit. The Arthropleurida differ from other myriapod classes in the large number of their leg segments and in the presence of the rosette plate. [The coxosternopleurites of the Archipolypoda probably served to strengthen the leg bases of these large myriapods and in this respect resemble the arthropleurid rosette plate. Details of the two plates are quite different, however, and such similarity of function is to be expected in both such unusually large arthropods. If the paratergal folds of *Arthropleura* are articulated with the axis, as has been suggested, then this would suggest comparison with the "Eurysterna."] Further details of the morphology of *Arthropleura* are needed to verify its true position within the Arthropoda, and, if the current attribution proves to be correct, to deduce its relationship to other myriapod classes. Data are needed on such critical points as: nature of the respiratory structures (tracheal or branchial), number of antennae, nature and number of mouth parts, and position of genital openings. Should *Arthropleura* prove to have gill plates and lack spiracles, then of course it could not be a myriapod, and the Arthropleurida would need to be elevated to super-class rank. *Arthropleura* would then strikingly resemble SNODGRASS' (1956, fig. 1C) hypothetical primitive walking arthropod, his "protarthropod" or even "protomandibulate." Such a gill plate would provide the only criterion for regarding *Arthropleura* as a crustacean. Although a similarly large number of trunk segments is found in the Branchiopoda, such numerous limb segments are unknown in the Crustacea, or indeed in any other arthropod group except Pycnogonida. There is thus little support at

present for GUTHÖRL's (9) view that *Arthropleura* occupied a position intermediate between the Crustacea and Myriapoda.

It is unwise to seek any fundamental phylogenetic significance in either the trilobed or onisciform habitus, since these features recur in widely separate arthropod groups and are clearly highly adaptive.

## SYSTEMATIC DESCRIPTIONS

### Class ARTHROPLEURIDA

#### Waterlot, 1934

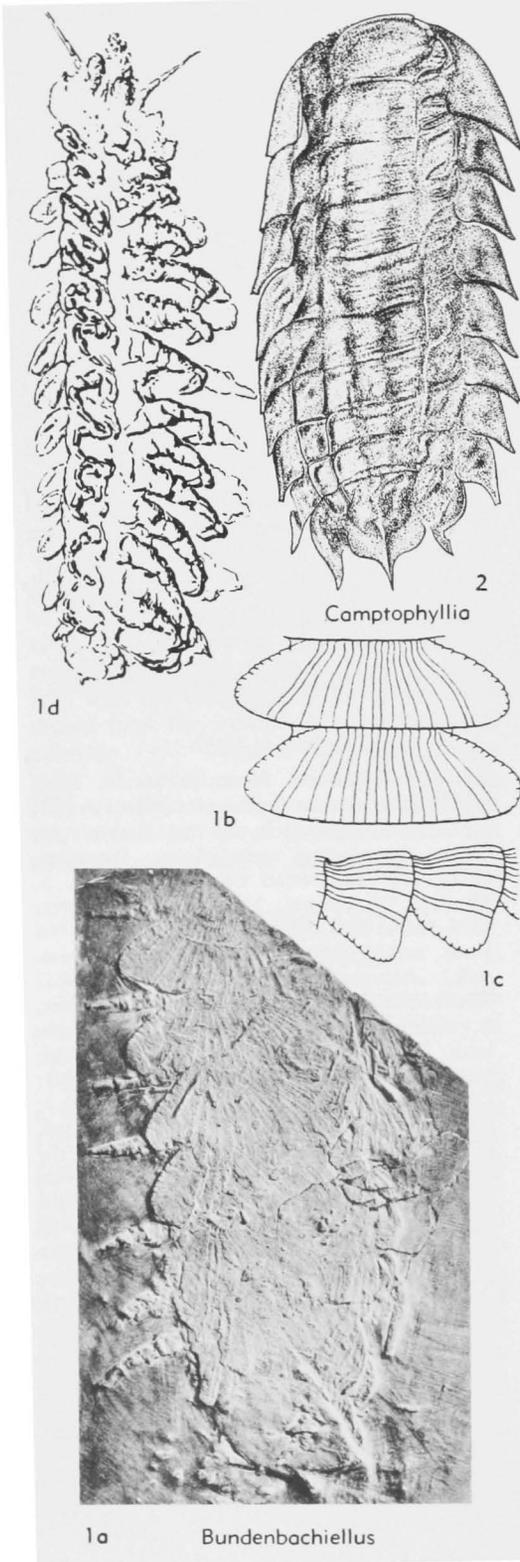
[*nom. transl.* STÖRMER, 1944 (*ex order* Arthropleurida WATERLOT, 1934)] [=Gigantopleurida GUTHÖRL, 1934]

Gigantic myriapods? with long body of more or less uniform width. Single pair of multiarticulate uniramous limbs borne by each somite, limbs characterized by numerous (8 to 10—number uncertain) of segments. Large, radially lobed subcoxal? sclerite (rosette plate) situated anterior to base of each limb. *U.Carb.*

#### Family ARTHROPLEURIDAE Zittel, 1885

Characters of class. *U.Carb.*

*Arthropleura* JORDAN & MEYER in MEYER, 1853, p. 161 [\**A. armata* (= *Halonina irregularis* GEINITZ, 1855; *Macropterus punctata* GOLDENBERG, 1885; *Amynilyspes springhillensis* COPELAND, 1957); M] [= ?*Troxites* GOLDENBERG, 1854, p. 36 (type, *T. germari*; M); ?*Troxitis* SCUDDER, 1879 (*nom. null.*); *Arthropleura* GEINITZ, 1866 (*nom. null.*); *Arthropleuria* BOULE, 1893 (*nom. null.*); *Athropleura* GUTHÖRL, 1934 (*nom. null.*); ?*Branchipusites* GOLDENBERG, 1875, p. 23 (type, *B. anthracinus*; M); ?*Branchiopusites* GOLDENBERG, 1877 (*nom. null.*); ?*Arthropleurion* GOLDENBERG, 1877, p. 48 (type, *A. inermis*; M); ?*Athropleurion* GOLDENBERG, 1877 (*nom. neg.*); ?*Carcinochelus* GOLDENBERG, 1877, p. 34 (type, *C. anthracophilus*; M)]. Tergites dorsoventrally depressed, divided by 2 longitudinal axial furrows into 3 lobes, comprising central rectangular axis and 2 lateral subtriangular paratergal folds, all bearing prominent spines and tubercles. Probably 29 posteriorly imbricating postcephalic somites, excluding telson. Paratergal folds directed forward in anterior region of body and backward in posterior region. Head small, obovate, broader than long (poorly known). Telson unknown. Limbs inserted midway between ventral mid-line and tips of paratergal folds and separated by sternite. Each limb segment except 1st with pair of long distal spines; last segment? a claw; proximal segments with prominent ridges and grooves, anterior



face smooth, posterior tuberculate. Rosette plate separated from posterior triangular *B* plate by sulcus. *K* plate thin, variable in position. *U. Carb.*, C. Eu.-NW. Eu.-USSR (Kazakh.)-N. Am. (Can.-Ill.). —FIG. 386, 1; 387, 1. \**A. armata*, Eng.; 386, 1, dorsal,  $\times 2$  (Rolfé, n); 387, 1a, b, dorsal, ventral,  $\times 0.1$  (16). [See also Fig. 388-392.]

### TAXA DOUBTFULLY CLASSIFIABLE AS ARTHROPLEURIDA

The following two rare genera show certain similarities to *Arthropleura* but are not known in sufficient detail to be more closely compared. *Camprophyllia* is known from six specimens in Coal Measure clay-ironstone concretions like those containing *Arthropleura* itself, whereas *Bundenbachiellus*, a possibly ancestral form, is known from two specimens from the marine Hunsrück Shale. From the intact preservation of the latter BROILI (3) concluded that *Bundenbachiellus* was an amphibious form. **Bundenbachiellus** BROILI, 1930, p. 219 [*nom. subst. pro Megadactylus* BROILI, 1929, p. 141 (*non* FITZINGER, 1843, *nec* HITCHCOCK, 1865)] [*\*Megadactylus giganteus* BROILI, 1929; M]. Body elongate, with at least 8 somites; tergites broad, with longitudinal, posteriorly diverging, spined ridges; anterolateral edges of paratergal folds notched and setose; ?telson subcircular. At least 7 pairs of uniramous limbs emerging between somites, 1 pair per somite; limbs with at least 6 segments distally, last a claw. [Compared with Myriapoda, Isopoda and Syncarida by BROILI (2,3) who concluded that if it was not a myriapod, then it represented an undescribed group of Crustacea. Prior to this, HENNIG (1922, p. 144-145) had suggested a comparison with *Arthropleura*. Another specimen, described as *B? minor* by BROILI (3), is even more myriapod-like in showing the head with a single pair of antennae (although a 2nd pair might also be present according to BROILI), 12 body somites with large paratergal expansions, 1st 2 body somites smaller, 3rd and 4th larger than other somites; single pair of uniramous limbs per somite, 6- or 7-segmented, last digit clawlike. ?Telson semicircular.] *L. Dev.* (Siegen.), Eu. (Ger.). —FIG. 393, 1a-c. \**B. giganteus* (BROILI), Hunsrück Sh.; 1a, holotype, dors.,  $\times 0.5$ ; 1b, c, 2 tergites, dorsal, lat., spinules on longitudinal ridges not shown (2). —FIG. 393, 1d. *B? minor* BROILI, Hunsrück Sh.; holotype, ventral,  $\times 2.0$  (3).

FIG. 393. Doubtful taxa, Arthropleurida (p. R618-R619).

**Camptophyllia** GILL, 1924, p. 466 [\**C. eltringhami*; OD]. Body elongate, approximately twice as long as greatest breadth; slightly depressed, onisciform; of 10 posteriorly imbricating somites (telson excluded), bearing low, elongate granules; somites divided by 2 longitudinal axial furrows into 3 lobes, each somite with median axis and 2 lateral, posteriorly directed paratergal folds; 1st somite semicircular, paratergal folds extending posteriorly to cover 2nd somite laterally?; axis one-third width of body at center, narrowing anteriorly and more so posteriorly; with 1 median and 2 lateral, longitudinal, low ridges. Head unknown (probably concealed beneath 1st segment). Telson oval, posteriorly acuminate, with prominent dorsal keel or tubercle. [Originally described as *Arthropoda incertae sedis* and compared with Isopoda; PEACH regarded it as an "aberrant millipede." Referred conditionally to *Arthropleurida* by Brooks (1962).] *U. Carb. (Westphal. B, similis-pulchra Zone)*, Eng. (Durham-S.Staffs.).—FIG. 393.2. \**C. eltringhami*, Durham; holotype, dorsal, post. border of 10th segment not shown,  $\times 2$  (6).

## REFERENCES

**Andrée, Karl**

- (1) 1910, *Zur Kenntniss der Crustaceen-Gattung Arthropleura Jordan und deren systematischer Stellung*: *Palaeontographica*, v. 57, p. 67-104, text fig. 1-4, pl. 4-5.

**Broili, Ferdinand**

- (2) 1929, *Ein neuer Arthropode aus dem rheinischen Unterdevon*: *Akad. Wiss. München, Math.-Nat. Abt., Sitzungsber., Jahrg. 1929*, p. 135-142, 3 text fig., 2 pl.  
 (3) 1930, *Ein neuer Fund von ?"Megadactylus"*: Same, *Jahrg. 1930*, p. 215-222, 1 text fig., 1 pl.

**Calman, W. T.**

- (4) 1914, *On Arthropleura moyseyi, n. sp., from the Coal-measures of Derbyshire*: *Geol. Mag.*, v. 51, p. 541-544, pl. 38.

**Garstang, Walter**

- (5) 1951, *Larval forms, with other zoological verses*: 77 p., 1 pl., Basil Blackwell (Oxford).

**Gill, E. L.**

- (6) 1924, *Fossil arthropods from the Tyne coal-field*: *Geol. Mag.*, v. 61, p. 455-471, text fig. 1-7.

**Guthörl, Paul**

- (7) 1935, *Entdeckung und Bergung des grössten, bis jetzt bekanntesten Exemplars von Arthropleura armata Jordan & v. Meyer in Grube Maybach-Saar*: *Deutsch. Geol. Gesell., Zeitschr.*, v. 87, p. 687-692, text fig. 1-4, pl. 36.

- (8) 1936, *Arthropleura, der Riesengliederfüssler des Oberkarbons, und seine Verbreitung in den europäischen Steinkohlenbecken*: Glückauf, v. 72, p. 965-975, text fig. 1-12.  
 (9) 1938, *Arthropleura, ein Riese der Steinkohlzeit*: *Umschau*, v. 42, p. 353-355, text fig. 1-5.

**Heide, S. van der**

- (10) 1951, *Les arthropodes du terrain houiller du Limbourg méridional (excepté les scorpions et les insectes)*: *Geol. Sticht., Meded., ser. C-IV-3*, v. 5, 84 p., 1 text fig., 10 pl.

**Manton, S. M.**

- (11) 1953, *Locomotory habits and the evolution of the larger arthropodan groups*: *Soc. Exper. Biology, Symposia*, v. 7, p. 339-376, text fig. 1-11.  
 (12) 1954, *The evolution of arthropodan locomotory mechanisms—Part 4. The structure, habits and evolution of the Diplopoda*: *Linnean Soc. London (Zoology), Jour.*, v. 42, p. 299-368, text fig. 1-8, pl. 52-55.

**Novozhilov, Nestor**

- (13) 1962, *Semeystvo Arthropleuridae Zittel, 1848*: in *Osnovy Paleontologii, Chlenistonogiye, trakheyneyye i khelitserovyye*, Yu. A. Orlov (ed.), p. 25, text fig. 12, *Izdatel. Akad. Nauk SSSR (Moskva)*. [Family *Arthropleuridae Zittel, 1848*.]

**Richardson, E. S.**

- (14) 1956, *Pennsylvanian invertebrates of the Mazon Creek area, Illinois. Trilobitomorpha, Arthropleurida*: *Fieldiana, Geol.*, v. 12, p. 69-76, text fig. 38-41.  
 (15) 1959, *Pennsylvanian invertebrates of the Mazon Creek area, Illinois. Trilobitomorpha, Arthropleurida, II*: Same, v. 12, p. 77-82, text fig. 42-43.

**Rolfe, W. D. I., & Ingham, J. K.**

- (16) 1967, *Limb structure, affinity and diet of the Carboniferous "centipede" Arthropleura*: *Scot. Jour. Geol.*, v. 3, p. 118-124, 2 text fig., 1 pl.

**Sharov, A. G.**

- (17) 1960, *Yu. Komarek o sistematicheskoy polo-zhenii Arthropleura*: *Paleont. Zhurnal*, p. 140. [Y. Komarek on the systematic position of *Arthropleura*.]

**Van Straelen, Victor**

- (18) 1931, *Crustacea Eumalacostraca (Crustacei decapodis exclusis)*: *Fossilium Catalogus 1, Animalia*, pt. 48, 98 p., W. Junk (Berlin).

**Waterlot, Gérard**

- (19) 1934, *Etude de la faune continentale du terrain houiller sarro-lorrain*: *Études des Gites minéraux de la France. Bassin houiller de la Sarre et de la Lorraine*, v. 2, *Faune fossile*, 7+320 p., 65 text fig., 25 pl.

- (20) 1947, *Découverte de deux fragments de patte-mâchoire d'Arthropleura (Archéocrustacé) du terrain houiller sarroloirain*: Soc. Géol. Nord, Ann., v. 67, p. 183-195, text fig. 1-5, pl. 6.
- (21) 1953, *Proarthropodes d'affinités incertaines, Ordre des Arthropleurida Waterlot 1934*: in *Traité de Paléontologie*, J. Piveteau (ed.), v. 3, p. 247-254, 7 text fig., Masson et Cie (Paris).

## ARTHROPODA INCERTAE SEDIS

By W. D. IAN ROLFE

[Hunterian Museum, University of Glasgow]

This section deals with three categories of doubtful arthropods, but it does not claim to treat all *Arthropoda incertae sedis*. Although many of these taxa are based on inadequate material, it is probable that some represent unique extinct higher-rank

groups. The problem of their classification is particularly difficult since the diagnostic morphological features required for comparison with extant *Arthropoda* are so frequently not seen in fossil arthropods.

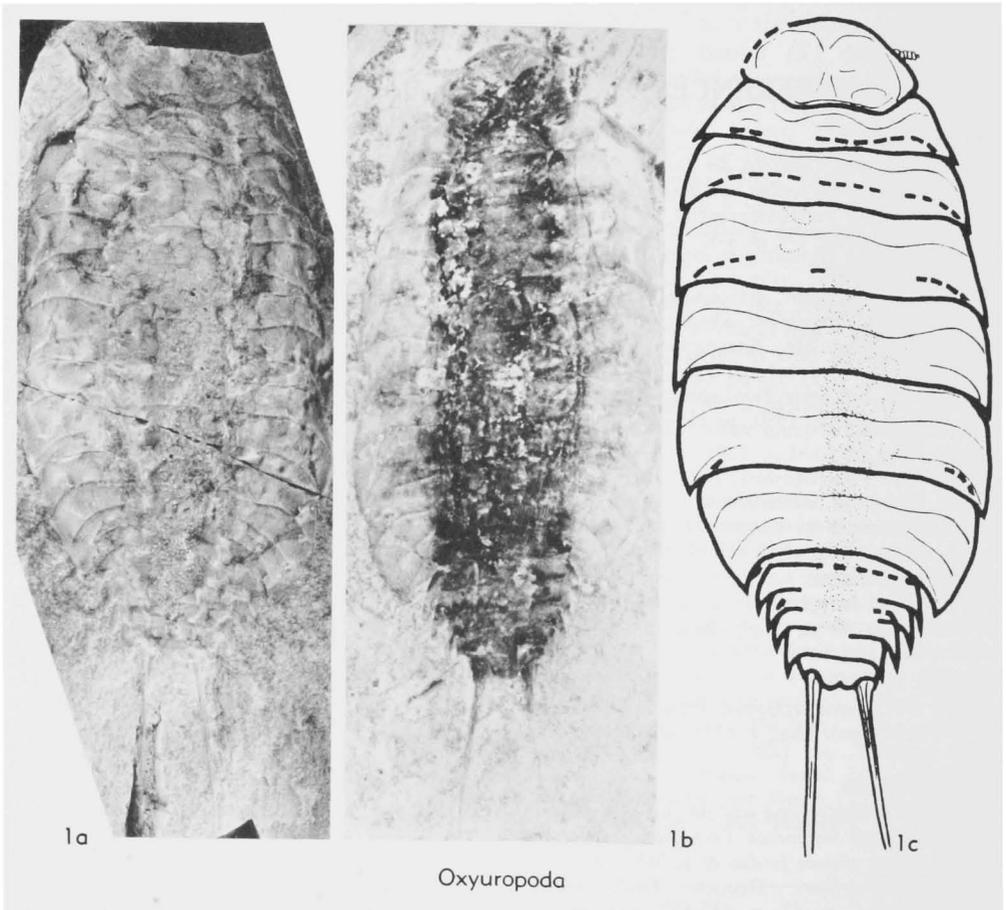


FIG. 394. Doubtful taxa formerly attributed to *Arthropleurida* (p. R621).

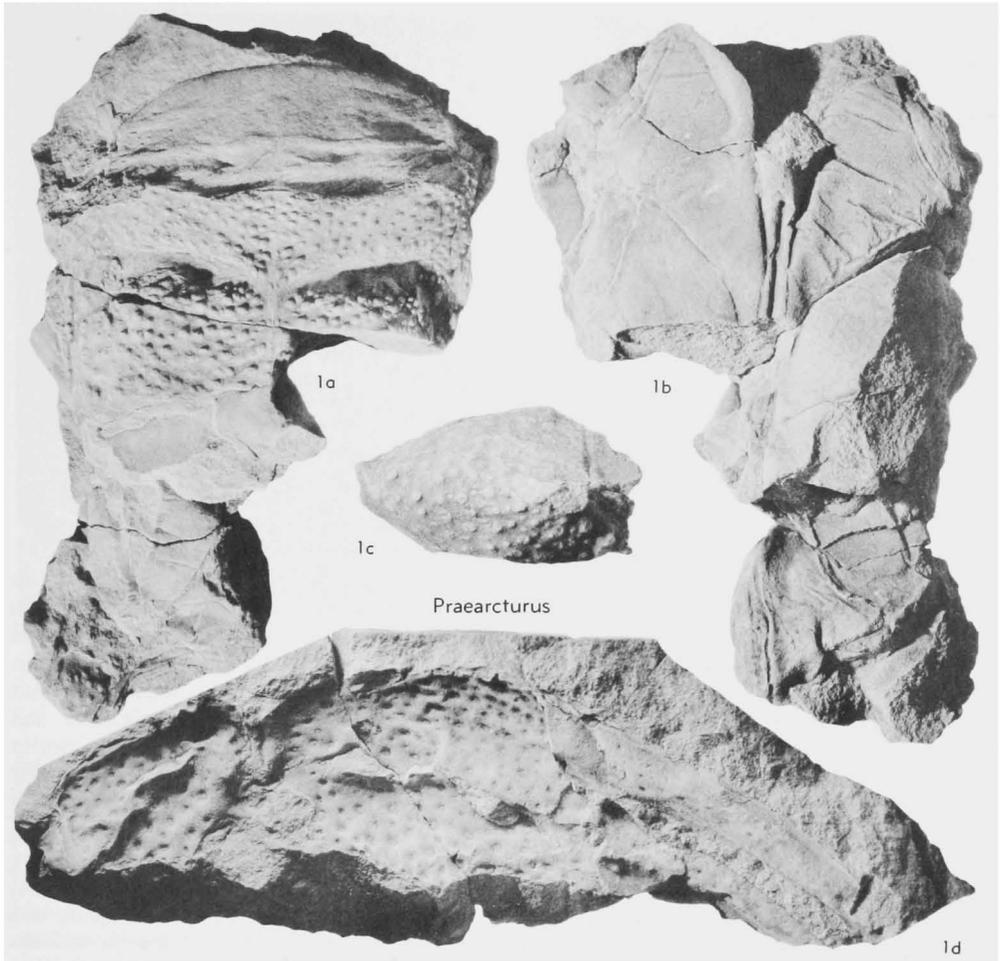


FIG. 395. Doubtful taxa formerly attributed to Arthropleurida (p. R622).

### DOUBTFUL TAXA FORMERLY ATTRIBUTED TO ARTHROPLEURIDA

**Oxyuropoda** CARPENTER & SWAIN, 1908, p. 63 [*\*O. ligioides*; OD]. Body onisciform. Head small, broader than long, with antennae? Thorax long, of 6 somites, with longitudinal trilobation; somites with single transverse rib on anterior 3, 2 on 4th, and 3 on last 2 somites. Abdomen small, of 4 or 5 somites, paratergal folds produced into posteriorly directed processes. Telson small, posteriorly emarginate; caudal rami (or uropods?) long, slender, with 2 longitudinal ridges. [Cuticle preserved in green apatite. The "antenna" reported by CARPENTER & SWAIN is a plant fragment typical of many which lie on the slab; features supposed by them to be appendages could not be seen on the holotype, although an antenna may be present.

Thought by original authors to have affinity with Tanaidacea and to link them with various sub-orders of Isopoda. They also compared *Oxyuropoda* with *Arthropleura*, a suggestion tentatively accepted by BROOKS (1962), but which, in view of the tagmosis of the former, seems improbable. A relationship to the Tanaidacea-Isopoda would still appear to be the best assignation, although critical features are lacking. CALMAN (1909) stated this form is an isopod although after study of *Arthropleura* he later (in BROILI, 1932) rejected this view and in agreement with BROILI associated it rather with *Cheloniellon*. Referred to Arachnomorpha by SCHULZE (1939); STØRMER (1944) accepted this with reservation and established for it the subclass? *Oxyuropodida*. There is no foundation for suggesting that *Oxyuropoda* is a phyllocarid, as by ROGER (in PIVETEAU, 1953).] *U. Dev. (Famenn.)*, Ire. (Co. Kilkenny).—FIG. 394,1. *\*O. ligioides*, holotype; 1a, part, whitened,

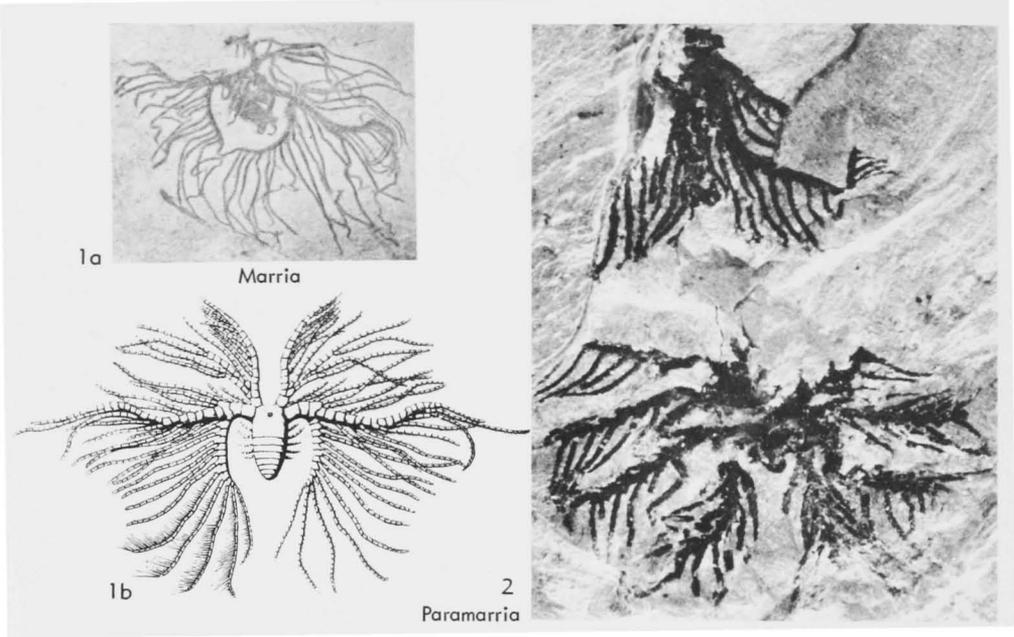


FIG. 396. "Marriocarida" (p. R622-R623).

×1.25; *1b*, counterpart, immersed in alcohol, ×1.25; *1c*, outline combining features seen on *1a* and *1b*, stippling marks area of mineral particles originally filling gut (interrupted lines indicate anterior edge of somites, impressed through adjacent cuticle, or restored boundaries; dotted lines mark cuticle-free areas which may represent sites of limb insertion), ×1.3 (Rolfé, n).

**Praearcturus** WOODWARD, 1871, p. 266 [*\*P. gigas*; M]. Tergite large; smooth anterior? semicircular articulating half ring; low median keel and pair of transverse lateral furrows, each furrow deepening to a pit under halfway from median keel to edge of tergite; covered with large rounded tubercles except in furrow. Limb bases deeply inserted on ventral surface, anteriorly? directed, separated by median, longitudinally grooved sternite. Each limb with subtriangular basal segment and up to 2 short segments preserved distally; dorsal surface tuberculate, ventral smooth. [Known only from specimen preserving one tergite with 2 pairs of ventral limb bases and from a number of isolated cheliform appendages. Supposed chelation of appendages may be due to fracture along deep invaginations of cuticle. Referred by WOODWARD to Isopoda and by ZITTEL (1885) to Arthropleuridae, although presence of 2 pairs of limbs per somite excludes it from either of these groups.] *L.Dev. (Gedinn.)*, Eng.—FIG. 395, 1. *\*P. gigas*, Ditton. (10), Hereford (Rowlstone); *1a, b*, lectotype, dorsal, ventral, ×0.54; *1c, d*, paralectotypes, fragments of supposed chelate appendages, ×0.54 (10).

## "MARRIOCARIDA"

**Marria** RUEDEMANN, 1931, p. 4 [*\*M. walcotti*; M]. Ovoid "body" (?attachment disc or float) with 3 main branches (?stipes), each forking dichotomously to produce 6 main branches fringed with many lateral, denticulate (?thecae) branches. Dendroid graptolite or hydroid? [Described by RUEDEMANN (5) as a crustacean nauplius, with segmented body, antennae and mandibular limbs. SIMONETTA (6) compared features of the holotype and one paratype with those of Cambrian dendroid graptolites and suggested that 4 of the remaining 5 paratypes were poorly preserved sponge spicules, as WALCOTT had originally identified them. Prof. O. M. B. BULMAN has studied these 5 paratypes and confirms that they "afford no acceptable demonstration of the existence of graptolites or graptolite-like organisms in the Eldon Formation" (*in litt.* 26 April 1966). The "segmentation" resulted from splintery fracture of the Burgess Shale matrix. Features of the holotype as described by SIMONETTA correspond best with those of dendroid graptolites, and it is unfortunate that this author concluded by referring *Marria* to the Graptoloidea Dichograptidae, an Ordovician family. Type of Marriocaridae (*recte* Marriocarididae) RUEDEMANN, 1931, and suborder Marriocarida RUEDEMANN, 1931.] *M. Cam., Can. (B.C.)*.—FIG. 396, 1. *\*M. walcotti*, Burgess Sh.; *1a*, holotype, ×1.3 (5); *1b*, RUEDEMANN'S "restoration" as a crustacean nauplius, ×1.3 (11).

*Paramarria* WELLS, 1944, p. 437 [\**P. galenensis*; M] [= *Paramarria* SHAROV, 1965 (*nom. null.*)]. Central "body" (?attachment disc or float) with at least 8 branches (?stipes). Each main branch zigzagged owing to regularly alternate disposition of lateral branches. Possibly a hydroid or dendroid graptolite resembling *Ptilograptus*. [Referred by WELLS (9) to Marriocarida Marriocaridae. No segmentation visible. Dr. D. SKEVINGTON, who has examined the holotype, noticed notching of minor branches suggestive of thecae, and agreed that *Paramarria* might possibly be a hydroid or dendroid similar to *Ptilograptus*, although it is impossible to be certain of the affinity of this fossil until better-preserved material is available.] *U.Ord.* (*Maquoketa Sh.*), USA (Ill.). —FIG. 396.2. \**P. galenensis*; holotype (below) and associated fragment,  $\times 5$  (Rolf, n).

## MIMETASTER

This remarkable arthropod was originally thought by ABEL and BROILI not to be a single animal but to comprise two symbionts. The six-rayed dorsal headshield has suggested a starfish body to all workers, and the name *Mimetaster* was given in the belief that this was an arthropod which mimetically resembled a starfish. Although the organism partly satisfies the conditions of protective mimicry in resembling its model (the starfish *Loriolaster mirabilis* according to LEHMANN) and in being much less common than the model, the resemblance does not seem sufficiently striking to constitute true mimicry.

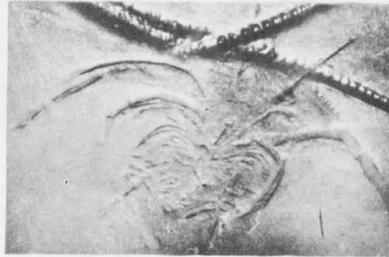
From the frequent occurrence of *Mimetaster* on slabs with the starfish *Furcaster* and from the presence of one specimen overlapping a *Furcaster* arm, GÜRICH (1b) argued that *Mimetaster* preyed on starfish. He claimed that the starfish was in an "agonized" position and that both creatures were obviously fighting before death. As OPITZ (3, 4) pointed out, however, these attitudes resulted from shifting of the specimens by postdepositional current action.

Although GÜRICH (1b) knew of the significance of prominently developed spines as an aid to floating in planktonic arthropods such as crustacean larvae, he preferred to regard *Mimetaster* as a benthonic form. The headshield of *Mimetaster* strikingly resembles that of the planktonic acanthosoma larva of sergestid decapods and the pelagic larvae of stomatopods. BEURLEN, STØRMER,

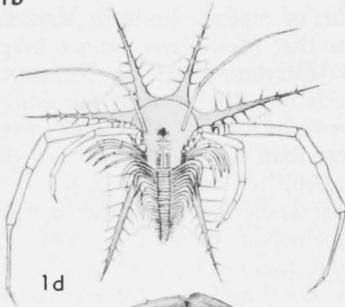
and SHAROV emphasized that the small size, relatively expanded headshield and presence of large anterior swimming appendages (antennae?) indicate that *Mimetaster* was a planktonic creature. This being so, it is difficult to envisage *Mimetaster* preying upon starfish living in or on the sea floor and to see any significance in the supposed resemblance to a starfish. For the same reason, it is impossible to accept LEHMANN'S (2) view that *Mimetaster* fed off the body fluids of starfish prey. The occurrence of both starfish and *Mimetaster* on the same slab may be explained by the sinking of dead *Mimetaster* to the sea floor to be buried along with the benthos.

The systematic position of *Mimetaster* is still problematic. All authors have noticed the similarity between *Mimetaster* and the Middle Cambrian trilobitoid *Marrella*. The presence of biramous limbs and of only two pairs of cephalic limbs in *Marrella* (7) suggests that *Mimetaster* cannot be placed in the Marrellomorpha, as BEURLEN suggested. It may well be that the similarities of *Mimetaster* (and of *Marrella*?) to larvae are more than homeomorphic. On this interpretation, the large number of trunk segments would indicate either a trilobitan or branchiopod crustacean metanauplius. Although the head shield recalls such a trilobite as *Olenelloides*, the metamorphosis required to transform *Mimetaster* from such a "late meraspis" form into an adult of any of the five trilobite genera known from the Hunsrück Shale would be prohibitive, and necessitate a hitherto unknown diminution in the number of somites. The most likely crustacean in the Hunsrück fauna to regard as a suitable parent would be the branchiopod *Vachonisia*. This arthropod has five cephalic appendages, about 50 moniliform trunk appendages and lacks a caudal furca. Thus, during the metamorphosis from larva to adult, *Mimetaster* would need to lose one cephalic appendage and gain a large number of trunk appendages. LEHMANN (2) has already noted the striking resemblance between the abdomina of both genera.

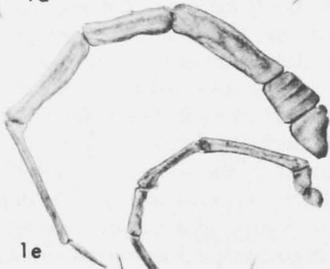
*Mimetaster* GÜRICH, 1932, p. 136 [*nom. subst. pro Mimaster* GÜRICH, 1931 (*non* SLADEN, 1882)] [\**Mimaster hexagonalis* GÜRICH, 1931, p. 236; M] [= *Mimeaster* STØRMER, 1939 (*nom. null.*)].



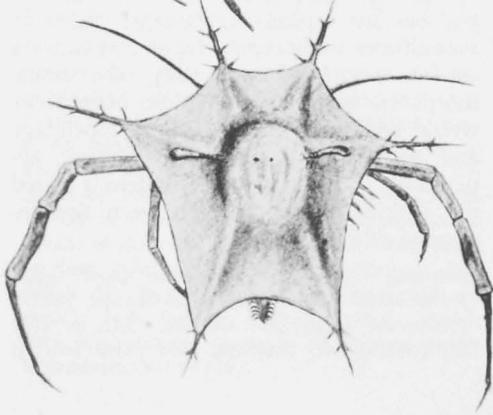
1b



1d



1e



Head shield flat, bilaterally symmetrical, with central, concave-sided thin disc (? of unsclerotized cuticle) produced distally into 6 prominent sub-radial processes, each process bearing several cross bars. Pair of widely spaced, dorsal, club-shaped prominences (?stalked eyes or dorsal organ) separated by pair of pits (?sessile eyes). Small subcentral mouth on ventral surface, bordered laterally by 2 crescentic elevations. Flat longitudinal ridge between posterior border of mouth and posterior border of ?cephalon, with 6 short transverse ridges, ?indicating segmentation; 7 pairs of uniramous ?cephalic appendages; preoral appendage (?antennule) long and slender; 1st postoral appendage (?antenna) large, longer than body, posteriorly recurved, of 7 segments; 2nd postoral appendage half length of 1st, of 7 segments; 4 remaining pairs of postoral ?cephalic appendages short. Trunk triangular, of approximately 24 somites, becoming smaller posteriorly, with longitudinal axis bounded by axial furrows; each somite with pair of small moniliform, uniramous, setose? appendages. Telson a small discoidal plate; furca absent. [Type of order Mimetasterida BEURLEN, 1934 (*nom. transl. et correct.* STØRMER, 1944, *ex* suborder Mimetasterida BEURLEN, 1934).] *L.Dev.*(Siegen.), Eu.(Ger.).—FIG. 397,1. \**M. hexagonalis* (GÜRICH), Hunsrück Sh.; 1a, dors.,  $\times 1$  (1b); 1b, ventral, 2 arms of starfish *Furcaster* also visible,  $\times 1$ ; 1c,d, dorsal, ventral views (reconstr.),  $\times 1$ ,  $\times 0.7$ ; 1e, 1st (?antenna) and 2nd postoral cephalic? appendages,  $\times 2$  (2).

## KABLIKIA

**Kablikia** GEINITZ, 1862, p. 138 [\**K. dyadica* (= *K. silurica* GEINITZ, 1863, obj.); M]. Elongate, longitudinally trilobed, posteriorly tapering body comprising poorly preserved head followed by at least ?31 somites. Anterior 18 somites with pointed, anteriorly curved, paratergal folds; posterior somites ?lacking such folds. *L.Ord.*(Llandeil.), Eu. (Czech.).

[The unique specimen occurs on a slab with the equally unique *Dalmaniopsis kablíkæ* GEINITZ (p. 0525); both specimens were destroyed in Dresden during the war on 13/14 February 1945. The slab did not come from the Semily Formation, Stephanian, Upper Carboniferous of Dolní Stépanice, near Vrchlabí, Czechoslovakia, as originally recorded and subsequently cited (Richter & Richter, 1955; *Treatise*, p. 0525), but from the Dobrotivá Shales, Osek and Kvan Beds, Llandeilian, Ordovician, as corrected by GEINITZ in 1863. *D. kablíkæ* was shown by GEINITZ (1863) (*cf.* Richter & Richter, 1955) to be a synonym of *Placoparia zippei* (BOECK). In the absence of any specimens, it is impossible to be sure of the affinities of *Kablikiá*, but it may be a poorly preserved dalmanitid trilobite, possibly even *Ormathops* which is known from these beds.]

FIG. 397,1. *Mimetaster hexagonalis* (GÜRICH), *L.Dev.* (Hunsrück Sh.), Ger.; 1a-c,  $\times 1$ ; 1d,  $\times 0.7$ ; 1e,  $\times 2$  (1a, 1b; 1b-e, 2) (p. R623-R624).

## REFERENCES

**Geinitz, H. B.**

- (1) 1862, *Ueber Thierfährten und Crustaceen-Reste in der unteren Dyas, oder dem unteren Rothliegenden, der Gegend von Hoheneibe*: Naturwiss. Gesell. Isis Dresden, Sitzungsber., Jahrg. (1862), p. 136-139, 2 pl.
- (1a) 1863, *Ueber Dalmanites Kablikæ und Kablikia dyadica Gein.*: Same, Jahrg. (1863), p. 50 [=Neues Jahrb. Mineralogie, Geologie, & Paläontologie, Jahrg. 1863, p. 85].

**Gürich, Georg**

- (1b) 1931, *Mimetaster hexagonalis, ein neuer Kruster aus dem unterdevonischen Bundenbacher Dachschiefer*: Paläont. Zeitschr., v. 13, p. 204-238, 315, text fig. 1-12.

**Lehmann, W. M.**

- (2) 1949, *Mimetaster hexagonalis Gürich*: Neues Jahrb. Mineralogie Geologie Paläontologie, Abhandl., Abt. B, v. 91, p. 101-120, text fig. 1-16.

**Opitz, Rudolf**

- (3) 1932, *Bilder aus der Erdgeschichte des Nahe-Hunsrück-Landes Birkenfeld*: 223 p., 170 text fig., Hugo Enke (Birkenfeld).
- (4) 1932, *Seestern oder Krebs? Ein merkwürdiges Gliedertier (Mimetaster) aus den Dachschiefern von Bundenbach*: Natur u. Museum, v. 62, p. 150-155, text fig. 1-4.

**Richter, Rudolf, & Richter, Emma**

- (4b) 1955, *Dalmaniopsis Geinitz 1862 kein Trilobit*: Senckenberg. Lethaea, v. 36, p. 294.

**Ruedemann, Rudolf**

- (5) 1931, *Some new Middle Cambrian fossils from British Columbia*: U. S. Natl. Museum, Proc., v. 79, art. 27, 18 p., 6 text fig, 7 pl.

**Simonetta, A. M.**

- (6) 1961, *Osservazioni su Marria Walcott Ruedemann: un graptolite e non un Artropodo*: Boll. Zoologia, v. 28, fasc. 2, p. 569-572, fig. 1-2.
- (7) 1962, *Note sugli artropodi non trilobiti della Burgess Shale, Cambriano Medio della Columbia Britannica (Canada)*. 1° contributo: *Il genere Marrella Walcott 1912*: Monitore Zool. Ital., v. 69, p. 172-185, pl. 14-17, fig. 1-2.

**Van Straelen, Victor**

- (8) 1931, *Crustacea Eumalacostraca (Crustaceis decapodis exclusis)*: Fossilium Catalogus 1, Animalia, pt. 48, 98 p., W. Junk (Berlin).

**Wells, J. W.**

- (9) 1944, *Two new planktonic crustaceans from the Maquoketa shale (Ordovician) of Illinois*: Am. Jour. Sci., v. 242, p. 436-441, pl. 1.

## ADDITIONAL SOURCES OF ILLUSTRATIONS

- (10) British Museum (Natural History)
- (11) Ruedemann, R., 1934

## ADDENDUM TO DECAPODA

By M. F. GLAESSNER

Since the *Treatise* chapter on decapods was submitted for publication (1964) and set in type (precluding significant alterations), major work on fossil Decapoda has been published by FÖRSTER and SECRETAN, and C. W. WRIGHT has forwarded information on a revision of all British Cretaceous crabs which is in preparation.

FÖRSTER (1966, 1967) and SECRETAN (1964) have made noteworthy contributions to knowledge of general morphology and phylogeny of decapods, particularly of the Astacidea. They have clarified problems which are reviewed in the relevant paragraphs of this chapter, but these matters cannot be further discussed here. The most important taxonomic revisions made by the authors mentioned are listed below, in systematic order. Resulting revised diagnoses and diagnoses of new taxa recently proposed by other workers are included, and a correction is made to an entry under "Decapoda of uncertain systematic position or validity." A number of recent contributions to the knowledge of fossil burrows, some of which were probably made by decapod crustaceans are not included in the following list of additional references.

## Infraorder CARIDEA Dana, 1852

## Family UNCERTAIN

*Hefriga* MÜNSTER, 1839 [*\*H. serrata*; M] [= *Bombur* MÜNSTER, 1839 (type, *B. complicatus*, according to FÖRSTER (1967,4), but other specimens assigned to *Bombur* (Fig. 252,2), and particularly "*B.*" *aonis* BRONN (*U.Trias.*, Eu.), may be young *Antrimpos*].

## Infraorder ASTACIDEA Latreille, 1802

## Family ERYMIDAE Van Straelen, 1924

## Subfamily ERYMINAE Van Straelen, 1924

*Protoclytiopsis* BIRSHTEYN, 1958, which is not a synonym of *Lissocardia* as revised by FÖRSTER (1967), and *Clytiella* GLAESSNER are included in the Eryminae by FÖRSTER (1967).

*Eryma* VON MEYER, 1840 [*\*Macrourites modestiformis* VON SCHLOTHEIM, 1922; OD] [= *Erymastacus* BEURLEN, 1928; *Klytia* VON MEYER, 1840]. Rostrum moderately long, denticulate; cervical groove deep; gastro-orbital groove weak; postcervical and branchiocardiac grooves variably developed, subparallel or joined; sculpture weak; abdomen smooth; chelae stout or slender; fingers longer than propodus. *L.Jur.-L.Cret.*, Eu.; *M.Jur.-U.Jur.*, E.Afr.-Madag.-Indonesia. (Förster, 1966).

*Enoploclytia* M'COY, 1849 [*\*Astacus leachi* MANTSELL, 1822; OD]. Gastro-orbital groove wide, deep, short; postcervical groove deep, joining groove *i*; branchiocardiac groove short; tubercle  $\omega$  distinct; gastric and cardiac regions sculptured; chelae slender, fingers long. *L.Cret.(U.Alb.)-U.Cret.*, ?Paleoc., Eu.-W.Afr.-Madag.-N.Am.; *L.Cret.(Apt.)*, E.Australia. (Förster, 1966).

*Palaeastacus* BELL, 1850 [*\*P. dixonii* (= *Astacus sussexiensis* MANTSELL, 1833); OD]. Gastro-orbital groove weak; postcervical groove stronger than and separate from branchiocardiac groove; chelae short, spinose, with short fingers. *L.Jur.-U.Cret.(Cenoman.)*, Eu.; *L.Cret.(Alb.)-U.Cret.*, N.Am.; *L.Cret.(Alb.)*, E.Australia (Förster, 1966).

*Phlyctisoma* BELL, 1862 [*\*P. tuberculatum*; SD GLAESSNER, 1929]. Carapace inflated, gastro-orbital groove deep; postcervical groove joins *i*; branchiocardiac groove weak and short; sculpture coarse; chelae massive. *L.Jur.-L.Cret.(U.Alb.)*, Eu.-Madag. (Förster, 1966).

Family PLATYCHELIDAE Glaessner  
(see p. R458)

Work by FÖRSTER (1967) has shown that *Lissocardia* VON MEYER, 1851, does not belong to the Clytiopsinae. FÖRSTER considered *Platychele* and *Lissocardia* as of uncertain position in the classification. They could be tentatively included in one family. *Lissocardia* is considered as possibly close to a common origin of Pemphicidae, Glypheidae, and Erymidae.

## Infraorder PALINURA Latreille, 1802

## Family GLYPHEIDAE Winckler, 1883

*Paralitogaster* GLAESSNER, herein [*nom. subst. pro Aspidogaster* ASSMANN, 1927 (*non* BAER, 1826)] [*\*Litogaster limicola* KÖNIG, 1920; OD]. Resembles *Litogaster* but gastro-orbital groove weak, postcervical stronger than branchiocardiac groove;

gastral ridges strong, spinose, separated by smooth areas; spines on cardiac and dorsal branchial regions. *L.Trias.-M.Trias.*, Eu. [According to FÖRSTER (1967), *Pemphix meyeri* ALBERTI, the type species of *Seebachia* WÜST, 1903 (non NEUMAYR, 1882) belongs here rather than to *Pseudopemphix*.]

**Family MECOCHIRIDAE Van Straelen, 1925**

According to FÖRSTER (1967), *Triasiglyphea* VAN STRAELEN, 1936, is a synonym of *Pseudoglyphea* OPPEL, 1861. *Platypleon* VAN STRAELEN, 1936, is also tentatively included here.

**Infraorder BRACHYURA  
Latreille, 1802**

**Superfamily DROMIOIDEA  
de Haan, 1833**

**Family PROSOPIDAE von Meyer, 1860**

**Subfamily GONIODROMITINAE Beurlen, 1932**

[*nom. transl.* GLAESSNER herein (ex *Goniodromitidae* BEURLEN, 1932)] [=Pithonotinae GLAESSNER, 1933]

**Subfamily PROSOPINAE von Meyer, 1860**

WRIGHT & COLLINS (1968) place here *Mithracites* GOULD, 1859, *Rathbunopon* STENZEL, 1945, and *Vectis* WITHERS, 1945.

**Family DROMIIDAE de Haan, 1833**

WRIGHT & COLLINS (1968) place here *Mesodromilites* H. WOODWARD, 1900.

*Kierionopsis* DAVIDSON, 1966 [\**K. nodosa*; OD]. Carapace subrectangular, inflated, with blunt pustule-bearing marginal spines, 4 median and several dorsolateral bosses and granulate postero-branchial regions. *Paleoc.*, USA(Tex.).

**Family DYNOMENIDAE Ortmann, 1892**

WRIGHT & COLLINS (1968) place here *Trachynotus* BELL, 1893, and *Xanthosia* BELL, 1863. This genus was also discussed by SECRETAN (1964).

**Superfamily DORIPPOIDEA  
de Haan, 1841**

**Family CYMONOMIDAE Ihle, 1916**

[*nom. correct.* WRIGHT & COLLINS, 1968 (pro *Cymonomae* IHLE, 1916); *nom. transl.* WRIGHT & COLLINS, 1968 (ex *Cymonominae* IHLE, 1916) (GORDON, 1963)]

WRIGHT & COLLINS (1968) place here *Doratiopus* WOODS, 1953, and *Torynomma* WOODS, 1953.

**Superfamily CALAPPOIDEA  
de Haan, 1833**

**Family CALAPPIDAE de Haan, 1833**

*Necrocarcinus* BELL, 1863 [\**Orithya labeschei* DESLONGCHAMPS, 1835; SD GLAESSNER, 1929] [= *Orithopsis* CARTER, 1872 (type, *O. bonneyi*); *Neocarcinus* STOLICZKA, 1873 (erroneous spelling)]. [WRIGHT & COLLINS (1968) found *O. bonneyi* based on an insufficiently cleaned and erroneously figured specimen of *N. tricarinatus* BELL, 1863.]

**Superfamily RANINOIDEA  
de Haan, 1841**

**Family RANINIDAE de Haan, 1841**

*Lophoranina* FABIANI, 1910 [\**Ranina marestiana* KÖNIG, 1825; OD]. [This is recognized as a genus by VIA BOADA, 1966.]

*Raninella* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, 1862 [\**R. trigeri*; OD] [= *Hemioon* BELL, 1863 (type, *H. cunningtoni*) which is based on young specimens of *R. elongata* A. MILNE-EDWARDS, according to WRIGHT & COLLINS.]

**Superfamily PORTUNOIDEA  
Rafinesque, 1815**

**Family PORTUNIDAE Rafinesque, 1815**

**Subfamily POLYBIINAE Ortmann, 1893**

[=Macropipinac STEPHENSON & CAMPBELL, 1960]

*Polybius* LEACH, 1820 [\**P. henslowii*; M]. *Rec.*, Eu.

**Superfamily XANTHOIDEA  
Dana, 1851**

**Family PINNOTHERIDAE de Haan, 1833**

*Pinnixa* WHITE, 1846 [\**Pinnotheres cylindricum* SAX, 1818; OD]. *Eoc.-Rec.*, N.Am.-Eu.-C.Asia-Indonesia.

**P.** (*Pinnixa*). Carapace much wider than long. *Oligo.*, C.Asia; *Mio.*, USA(Calif.); *Rec.*, N.Am.-Indonesia.

**P.** (*Palaeopinnixa*) VIA BOADA, 1966 [\**Pinnixa eocenica* RATHBUN, 1926; OD]. Carapace not much wider than long, outline semicircular, lateral borders of gastric and cardiac regions distinct. *Eoc.*, USA(Wash.); *Mio.*, Spain; ?*Rec.*, Eu.

## DECAPODA

## of uncertain systematic position or validity

New discoveries of Mesozoic Tanaidacea have made it clear that the little-known genus *Charassocarcinus* VAN STRAELEN, 1925 (p. R532), belongs to this order and not to the Decapoda.

## REFERENCES

## Davidson, E.

- (1) 1966, *A new Paleocene crab from Texas*: Jour. Paleontology, v. 40, p. 211-213, fig. 1-2.

## Förster, R.

- (2) 1966, *Über die Erymiden, eine konservative Familie der mesozoischen Dekapoden*: Palaeontographica, Abt. A, v. 125, p. 61-175, pl. 13-20, 37 text fig.
- (3) 1967, *Die reptanten Dekapoden der Trias*: Neues Jahrb., Geologie u. Paläontologie, Abhandl., v. 128, p. 136-194, pl. 9-12.

- (4) 1967, *Zur Kenntnis natanter Jura-Dekapoden*: Bayer. Staatssammlung Paläont. hist. Geol., Mitteil., v. 7, p. 157-174.

## Secretan, Sylvie

- (5) 1964, *Les crustacés décapodes du Jurassique Supérieur et du Crétacé de Madagascar*: Muséum Natl. Histoire Nat., Mém. (Sci. Terre), n. ser., v. 14, 226 p., 22 pl.
- (6) 1966, *Transformations squelettiques liées à la céphalisation chez les crustacés décapodes*: Acad. Sci. Paris, Comptes Rendus, v. 262, ser. D, no. 10, p. 1062-1065.

## Vía [Vía Boada], Luis

- (7) 1966, *Raninidos fósiles de España. Contribución al estudio paleontológico de la familia "Raninidae" (crustáceos decápodos)*: Inst. Geol. y Min. España, Bol., v. 86, p. 233-275, 4 pl., 8 fig.
- (8) 1966, *Pinnixa (Palaeopinnixa) mytilicola, nuevo braquiuro fósil, en el mioceno marino del Vallés (Barcelona)*: Acta Geol. Hispan., v. 1, no. 4, 4 p.

## Wright, C. W., &amp; Collins, J. S.

- (9) ?1968, *A revision of British Cretaceous crabs*: (in preparation).

## ADDENDUM TO CIRRIPIEDIA

By W. A. NEWMAN and V. A. ZULLO

## MORPHOLOGY OF THORACICA

(see p. R217)

In the only balanid with complemental males so far described, *Balanus masignotus* (52), an external pocket often forms below the sheath of the rostrum in which the males reside (Fig. 118). This pocket would be detectable in fossil material. It is not always developed in this species, however, and other Recent balanids known to have males display no obvious structural changes in the shell. Therefore, on the basis of this criterion, the existence of males in fossil forms might go undetected.

## ADDITIONAL RHIZOCEPHALAN GENERA

(see p. R272)

## PELTOGASTRIDAE

*Angulosaccus*, *Boschmaia*, *Briarosaccus*, *Cyphosaccus*, *Dipterosaccus*, *Galatheascus*, *Peltogasterella*

(=*Gemmosaccus*, *Chlorogaster*, *Ligella*), *Pterogaster*, *Septosaccus*, *Temnascus*, *Tortugaster*, *Trachelosaccus*.

## SACCULINIDAE

*Drepanorchis*, *Heterosaccus*, *Loxothylacus*, *Ptychascus*, *Sesarmaxenos*.

## LERNAEODISCIDAE

*Parthenopea*, *Septodiscus*, *Triangulopsis*, *Triangulus*.

## ADDITIONAL THORACICAN SUBGENUS (BALANIDAE)

(see p. R285)

*Balanus (Actinobalanus)* MORONI, 1967, p. 923 [*\*B. (Hesperibalanus?) actinomorphus* MORONI, 1952, p. 73; SD MORONI, 1967, p. 919]. *Balanus* with solid wall and porous basis. Primary denticles of basal margin of wall without secondary denticles. *Plio.-low.Pleist.*, N.Eu.-Medit. [Moroni, N. A., 1967, *Classificazione sottogenerica ed affinità di Balanus actinomorphus* Moroni, 1952: Rivista Italiana Paleont., v. 73, no. 3, p. 919-928].

## ADDENDUM TO CYCLOIDEA

By M. F. GLAESSNER

A recent paper by GALL & GRAUVOGEL (*Faune du Buntsandstein. II.-Les Halicynes: Ann. Paléontologie, v. 53, pt. 1, 14 p., 7 pl., 5 fig., 1967, Paris*) adds significantly to the knowledge of *Halicyne* and the Cycloidea but still leaves much doubt on the morphology and affinities of *Halicyne*. A semicircular anteromedian plate seen in one specimen and designated as rostral is not easily explicable in terms of crustacean morphology. The presence of compound eyes in the anterolateral emarginations is confirmed; they are considered as stalked. Paired triangular "frontal horns" anterior to the eyes are unexplained; they may be appendages. This form has five pairs of stout, spinose, five-segmented legs, each with a strong, curved, anteriorly directed dactylus, giving the animal a chelicerate-like (rather than crustacean) habit.

If the legs are biramous they are not similar to the limbs shown in HOPWOOD's reconstruction (Fig. 363A,A); annulated appendages interpreted as exopods now have been found in *Halicyne* but apparently only in positions behind the other legs. What has been termed endoskeleton could well be homologous to the ventral plates known in Paleozoic specimens; the presence of a carbonized alimentary canal is confirmed. Numerous close-set posterolateral vertical lamellae under the carapace may be gills, resembling those of some chelicerates.

*Halicyne* is still considered to represent Crustacea of unknown affinities. GALL & GRAUVOGEL (1967) propose a family Halicynae [*recte* Halicynidae] and a subclass Halicyna. Both taxa seem premature, pending a restudy of related Paleozoic fossils.



## INDEX

Italicized names in the following index are considered to be invalid; those printed in roman type, including morphological terms, are accepted as valid. Suprafamilial names are distinguished by the use of full capitals and author's names are set in small capitals with an initial large capital. Page references having chief importance are in boldface type (as **R327**).

- abdomen, R59, R81, **R90**, R333, R336, R347, R401, R413, R535  
 abdominal limb, **R90**  
*ABDOMINALIA*, R247, R249, R271  
 abdominal process, **R90**  
 abdominal somite, **R90**  
 ABEL, R623  
*ABERRANTIA*, R442  
 ABRAHAMCZIK-SCANZONI, R409  
 abreptor, **R90**  
 Acadiocaris, R338, R347, **R393**  
*ACAMPTOSOMATA*, R249  
 Acantherpestes, **R577**, R605  
*Acanthocaris*, R327  
 Acanthocarpus, **R494**  
 Acanthochirana, R425, **R447**  
*Acanthochirus*, R447  
 Acanthocyclus, R508  
 Acantholeberis, R167  
*Acanthonychidae*, R505  
 Acanthonychinae, R115, R505  
 Acanthonyx, **R505**  
 acanthopod, **R90**  
 acanthopod cirri, R235  
 Acanthosquilla, R548  
 Acanthotelson, R348, R349, R351-R354, R355  
 Acanthotelsonidae, R114, **R355**, R363  
*Acantocaris*, R328  
 Acasta, R234, R286-R287  
 ACERCOSTRACA, R112, R140  
 Achelous, **R510**  
*Acroglomeridae*, R585, R606  
 acron, **R90**, R535  
 Acroperus, R168, **R171**  
 ACROTHORACICA, R111, R113, R208, R210, R229-R231, R234, R236, R240, R247, R253, R271  
 Actaea, R427, **R517**  
 Actaeopsis, R441, **R531**-R532  
 Actinobalanus, R628  
 Aculestheria, R163  
 adaptation, crustaceans, R107; decapods, R426  
 adductor muscle, **R90**  
 adductor pit, **R90**  
 adductor ridge, **R90**  
 Aega, R380  
 Aeger, R425, **R447**  
*Aegeridae*, R447  
 Aegidae, R372, R380  
*Aegites*, R380  
 Aegla, R426, **R483**  
 Aegliidae, R115, R445, **R483**  
*Aenaecancer*, R512  
*AEQUIPEDES*, R599  
 aesthetasc, **R90**  
*aesthete*, **R90**  
 afferent channels, **R90**  
 Afrograpta, **R157**  
*Agenor*, R205  
 AKENTROGONIDA, R113, R248, R273  
*Akentrogonidae*, R273  
*AKENTROGONIDEA*, R273  
 ala, **R90**, R226  
 Albunea, **R483**  
 Albuneidae, R115, R445, **R483**  
*Albuniidae*, R483  
*Alcippe*, R247  
*Alcippidae*, R272  
 ALCOCK, R442, R502, R520, R527  
*Alepadinae*, R250  
 Alepas, R250, R263, R267, R279  
 ALESSANDRI, DE, R207, R237  
 aliform apophyses, **R90**  
*Alima*, R540, R542, R547  
*Alimerichthus*, R549, R552  
 Allobathynella, R347, **R358**  
*Allogoneplax*, R510  
*Allolepicthys*, R317  
*Allolepis*, R317  
 Almatium, R137-R138  
 Alona, R165, R168, R171, R173  
 Alonella, R166, R168, **R173**  
 Alonopsis, R168, **R173**  
 Alpheidae, R415, R429  
 Alpheus, R72, R108, R410  
 Altiverruca, R266, **R282**  
*Alvis*, R460  
 ambulatory leg, **R90**  
*Ammonicolax*, R464  
 ammonoid anaptychi, R328  
 ammonoid diaptychi, R328  
*Amphikoilidae*, R157  
 Amphikoilum, **R159**  
 Amphipeltis, R393  
 AMPHIPODA, R61, R75, R114, R362-R363, R386-R387, R542, R616  
 Amphisopidae, R114, R385  
 Amphithoe, R65  
*Amphitrite*, R510  
 AMYNILYSPEDIDA, R576-R577, R582, R585  
 Amynilyspedidae, R585  
 Amynilyspes, R585-R586, R605-R606  
 Anaglyptus, **R532**  
 anal spines, **R90**  
 ANAMORPHIA, R45, R47, R576, R598, **R601**  
 Anapagurus, **R479**  
*ANARTIOSTIGMATA*, R598, R602  
 ANASPIDACEA, R114, R354-R356  
 Anaspides, R18, R22, R24, R26, R31, R62, R81, R304, R346, R348-R350, R352-R354, **R356**  
 Anaspidae, R114, **R356**  
 Anaspidites, R351, R353, **R357**  
 Anatifopsis, **R329**  
*ANCEIDEA*, R387  
 Anchistrophus, R168, **R173**  
*ANCYROTRICHA*, R583  
 ANDERSON, R16  
 Andorina, R508  
 ANDRÉE, R611, R613, R616  
 Andrussovia, **R390**  
 Anelasma, R250, R259, **R279**  
*Angolestheriella*, R157  
 Angulosaccus, R628  
 Anhelkocephalon, **R379**  
*ANISOPODA*, R369  
*Anisopus*, R512  
 ANNANDALE, R207, R250  
*ANOCHEA*, R587  
*ANOMALA*, R442, R444  
 Anomalocaris, R21, **R323**  
 Anomalonema, **R157**  
*ANOMOCARIDA*, R443-R444  
*Anomolocaris*, R323  
*Anomopoda*, R171  
*ANOMOSTRAKA*, R355  
 ANOMURA, R115, R401, R409, R413, R417, R434, R436-R437, R442-R446, **R475**  
*Anormalocaris*, R323  
 ANOSTRACA, R85, R113, **R176**  
 antenna, R81, **R90**, R333, R347, R405, R416  
 antennal carapace groove, **R92**  
 antennal carapace region, **R92**  
 antennal carapace spine, **R92**  
 antennal carina, **R90**-**R91**  
 antennal glands, R87, **R90**  
 antennal groove, **R90**, R402  
 antennal region, **R90**  
 antennal scale, **R90**, R333  
 antennal spine, **R90**  
 antennula, **R90**  
 antennular scale, **R90**  
 antennule, R81, **R90**, R333, R347-R348, R405, R416  
 anterior tubercle, **R90**, R302  
 anterolateral region (crab carapace), **R90**, R92, R404  
 Anthracaris, R58, R334-R337, **R345**, R436  
 ANTHRACOCARIDACEA, R114, R392  
 Anthracocarididae, R114, **R392**  
 Anthracocaris, R338, R347, **R392**  
 Anthracodesmus, **R578**  
*Anthracoiulus*, R588  
 Anthracojulidae, R588  
 Anthracojulus, R588  
*Anthracomysis*, R340, R535  
 Anthracophausia, R336-R337, R340, **R342**, R396, R436  
 Anthracophausiidae, R114, **R342**  
*Anthrapalaemon*, R341, R344  
*Anthropleura*, R617

- Anthropodontoides*, R321  
 ANTHURIDEA, R114, R372-  
 R373  
 Antrimpos, R339, R425, R434,  
 R447  
 Anurida, R30  
 aperture, R90  
 apex, R90  
*Aphrograptidae*, R157  
*Aphthartus*, R464  
 apical angle, R223  
 apicobasal furrow, R90  
 apicobasal ridge, R90  
 APODA, R209, R213, R249,  
 R251, R290  
 apodeme, R84, R90  
*Apodidae*, R135  
 Aporolepas, R275  
 appendages, cephalocarids, R122;  
 crustaceans, R83; mystaco-  
 carids, R192; phyllocarids,  
 R304; stomatopods, R537  
 appendix interna, R90, R339  
 appendix masculina, R90, R339  
 Apseudes, R61, R63, R370  
 Apsseudidae, R370  
*Aphychopsis*, R329  
*Aptichopsis*, R329  
*Aptychoides*, R329  
 Aptychopsis, R329  
*Aptychosis*, R329  
*Apus*, R134-R135  
 APYGOPHORA, R113, R271  
*Aquilonoglypta*, R151  
*Aquilonoglyptidae*, R151  
 ARACHNIDA, R11, R13, R573-  
 R574  
 ARACHNOMORPHA, R621  
*Archaeoastacus*, R470  
*Archaeocarabus*, R473  
 ARCHAEOCARIDA, R315  
*Archaeocaris*, R341, R534-R535  
*Archaeogeryon*, R524  
*Archaeolepas*, R220-R221, R223,  
 R261, R264, R276  
*Archaeoniscidae*, R114, R379  
*Archaeoniscus*, R379  
*Archaeopilumnus*, R518  
*Archaeoplax*, R524  
*Archaeoplax*, R531  
*Archaeopus*, R441, R532  
*Archaeosphaeroma*, R377  
 ARCHAEOSTRACA, R113, R297,  
 R303, R308-R311, R315  
 ARCHAEOSTRAKA, R315  
 ARCHAEOSTRAKEN, R315  
*Archicambala*, R592, R595  
*Archidesmidae*, R577-R578  
*Archidesmus*, R578  
*Archijulidae*, R577  
 ARCHIPOLYPODA, R13, R575-  
 R577, R604  
*Archiscudderia*, R585-R586,  
 R605-R606  
*Archiulidae*, R595  
*Archiulus*, R577, R595  
*Arcoscalpellum*, R215-R217, R220-  
 R221, R223-R225, R232, R234,  
 R250, R261, R264, R276  
*Arcturidae*, R372  
*Arcturus*, R71  
*Argas*, R321  
*Arges*, R321  
*Argulidae*, R113, R205  
 ARGULOIDA, R113, R205  
*Argulus*, R108, R204-R205  
*Argus*, R321  
*Aristaeinae*, R447  
*Aristeus*, R72  
*Aristocaris*, R330  
*Aristoscaris*, R330  
*Aristozoe*, R303, R308, R320  
*Aristozoidae*, R113, R303, R310,  
 R319  
*Ariztozoe*, R320  
 arm, R90  
*Armadillidiidae*, R114, R384  
*Armadillidium*, R384  
*Armadillo*, R384  
*Armatobalanus*, R234, R270,  
 R285  
*Artemia*, R106, R177, R180-R181,  
 R241  
 Artemiidae, R113, R181  
 arthrobranch, R90, R421  
 arthrobranchia, R90  
 arthropod, R90  
*Arthropleura*, R607-R613, R615-  
 R617, R618, R621  
*Arthropleuria*, R617  
 ARTHROPLEURIDA, R607,  
 R617  
*Arthropleuridae*, R616-R617  
*Arthropleurion*, R617  
 ARTHROPODA, R3, R13, R16,  
 R575  
 ARTHROSTRACA, R361-R362  
 article, R90  
 articular furrow, R90  
 articular ridge, R90  
 ARTIOSTIGMATA, R598-R599,  
 R603  
 ASCOSPERMOPHORA, R593  
 ASCOTHORACICA, R111, R113,  
 R209, R211, R230-R231, R236,  
 R249, R252-R253, R273  
 ASCOTHORACIDA, R273  
 Ascothorax, R230, R273  
 ASELOTA, R114, R372-R373,  
 R381  
 Asellus, R382  
*Asemus*, R287  
 Asmussia, R154  
*Asmussidae*, R154  
*Asmussiella*, R155  
 Asmussiidae, R112, R154  
 Asmussiinae, R112, R154  
*Aspidocaris*, R329  
*Aspidogaster*, R464, R626  
 Astacidae, R115, R410, R426-  
 R427, R437, R442, R445, R460  
 ASTACIDEA, R114, R401, R407,  
 R409-R410, R413, R417-R418,  
 R425-R426, R432, R435-R439,  
 R442, R445-R446, R455, R626  
*Astacini*, R460  
*Astacoderma*, R315  
*Astacodes*, R473  
*Astacopsis*, R462  
 ASTACURA, R442, R455  
*Astacus*, R61, R81, R84, R403,  
 R408-R410, R413, R420-R422,  
 R462, R542  
*Atelecyclidae*, R115, R440, R445,  
 R508  
*Atelecyclus*, R508  
*Atergatis*, R517  
*Athropleura*, R617  
*Athropleurion*, R617  
*Atractosoma*, R594  
 atrium oris, R90, R120  
 ATTEMES, R581, R598  
 attractor epimeralis muscle, R91,  
 R408  
*Atya*, R452  
*Atyadea*, R452  
*Atyidae*, R114, R426, R445, R452  
*Atyoida*, R452  
*Aura*, R455  
 AURIVILLIUS, R207  
 Australicythere, R65  
*Australoleaia*, R159  
*Austriacaridae*, R317  
*Austriocoridae*, R317  
*Austriocarididae*, R113, R317  
*Austriocaris*, R317  
 Austroastacidae, R115, R445,  
 R463  
 Austroastacus, R463  
 Austrobalanus, R229, R270, R285  
 autotomy, crustaceans, R107;  
 decapods, R432  
*Avihomola*, R484  
*Avitelmessus*, R440, R491  
 Axidae, R115, R418, R442-  
 R443, R445, R476  
 AXIOIDA, R443  
 Axius, R418, R431, R477  
 Aysheia, R41  
  
 B plate, R610  
*Baccalaureus*, R229, R274  
*Bactropus*, R320  
 BAIRD, R144, R330  
*Bairdetheria*, R151  
*Bairdetheriidae*, R151  
 Bairdia, R78  
*Baituganocaris*, R323  
 Balanidae, R113, R228, R235,  
 R250, R269, R284  
 Balaninae, R113, R250, R284  
 Balanodytes, R271  
*Balanodytidae*, R271  
 BALANOMORPHA, R113, R213,  
 R215, R226, R229, R231, R235-  
 R236, R241, R246, R250, R255,  
 R269, R283  
 Balanus, R68, R213-R214, R228-  
 R229, R231-R232, R234-R236,  
 R245, R249, R270, R284, R628  
 BALFOUR, R15  
 BALSS, R407, R409, R413, R424,  
 R426, R438-R439, R441, R447,  
 R452, R498, R502, R515, R527  
 BARKER, 366  
 basal margin, R91  
 basicarinal angle, R91

- basicerite, **R91**  
 basidorsal point, **R229**  
 basilateral angle, **R91**  
*Basinotopus*, **R487**  
 basicoccludent angle, **R91**  
 basiophthalmite, **R91**, **R415**  
 basipod (ite), **R91**  
 basis, **R83**, **R91**, **R217**, **R404**-**R405**  
 basiscutal angle, **R91**  
 basitergal angle, **R91**, **R223**  
 BATE, **R441**  
 Bathybalanus, **R228**, **R270**, **R287**  
 Bathynectes, **R513**  
 Bathyrella, **R352**, **R358**  
 BATHYNELLACEA, **R114**, **R338**, **R347**, **R351**-**R354**, **R358**  
 Bathyrellidae, **R114**, **R358**  
 Bathyromus, **R374**-**R375**  
 Bathyrsquilla, **R540**, **R548**  
 beaked apex, **R91**  
 Bechleja, **R452**  
 BEECHER, **R300**  
 BEER, DE, **R52**  
 Belgolimnadiopsis, **R162**  
 Beligum, **R154**  
 Belotelson, **R343**  
 BELZHANKIN, **R137**  
*Benthescyminae*, **R447**  
 Benthescyminus, **R421**, **R425**, **R447**  
 Bentheuphausia, **R394**-**R397**  
 Bentheuphausiidae, **R114**, **R397**  
 BERNARD, **R132**, **R311**  
 BERNDT, **R248**  
 Berndtia, **R209**, **R211**, **R271**  
*Berndtiidae*, **R271**  
 BERTKAU, **R591**  
 Bertkaupolyypus, **R591**  
 BERRY, **R541**  
 BEURLLEN, **R340**, **R425**, **R437**, **R439**, **R443**, **R452**, **R466**, **R482**, **R498**, **R500**, **R502**, **R515**, **R532**  
 BEURLLEN & GLAESSNER, **R442**  
 Beyrichia, **R88**  
 bifurmes, **R91**  
*Bileia*, **R163**  
 Bilimnadia, **R150**  
*Bilobus*, **R135**  
*Binoculus*, **R205**  
*Binkhorstia*, **R492**  
*Bipeltata*, **R542**  
 biramous, **R91**  
 biramous limbs, **R7**  
 BIRSHTEYN, **R363**, **R386**, **R474**  
 Blaculla, **R417**, **R425**, **R455**  
*Blaniulidae*, **R591**  
*Blaniulus*, **R591**  
 Blepharipoda, **R483**  
 blood rooms, **R91**  
 Boas, **R362**, **R402**, **R405**-**R406**, **R442**  
 body chamber, **R91**  
 body of mandible, **R91**  
 body ring, **R91**  
 body somite, **R91**  
*Bolina*, **R460**  
 Bombur, **R425**, **R450**, **R626**  
 Bopyridae, **R387**, **R429**  
*BOPYROIDEA*, **R386**  
 BORRADAILE, **R442**, **R452**  
 BOSCHMA, **R211**  
 Boschmaia, **R628**  
 Bosmina, **R166**, **R168**, **R174**  
 Bosminidae, **R113**, **R174**  
 BOSQUET, **R207**  
*BOSTRICHOPIDA*, **R570**  
*Bostrichopidae*, **R571**  
*BOSTRICHOPODIDA*, **R116**, **R570**  
*Bostrichopodidae*, **R116**, **R571**  
*Bostrichopus*, **R570**-**R571**  
 BOURNE, **R439**, **R498**  
 BOUSFIELD, **R390**  
 BOUŠKA, **R331**  
 BOUVIER, **R405**, **R436**, **R442**, **R531**  
*Brachiroleaia*, **R159**  
*Brachiorhynchia*, **R159**  
*Brachygaster*, **R464**  
*BRACHYGNATHA*, **R442**  
*Brachyorapta*, **R151**  
*Brachylepadidae*, **R113**, **R250**, **R280**, **R283**  
*BRACHYLEPADOMORPHA*, **R113**, **R225**-**R226**, **R255**, **R268**, **R283**  
*Brachylepas*, **R226**, **R268**-**R269**, **R283**  
*Brachynotus*, **R529**  
*BRACHYPODA*, **R112**, **R127**  
*BRACHYRHYNCHA*, **R115**, **R404**, **R425**, **R431**, **R436**, **R441**-**R442**, **R445**-**R446**, **R510**  
*Brachysteria*, **R155**  
*BRACHYURA*, **R115**, **R401**-**R402**, **R405**-**R407**, **R413**-**R420**, **R422**, **R424**, **R426**-**R427**, **R434**, **R436**-**R443**, **R445**-**R446**, **R484**, **R498**, **R627**  
*BRACHYURA GENUINA*, **R442**  
*BRACHYURIDEA*, **R443**, **R484**  
*Brachyzapfes*, **R252**, **R272**  
*Bractropus*, **R320**  
*branchia*, **R85**, **R91**, **R333**, **R420**  
*branchial carina*, **R91**  
*branchial cavity*, **R91**  
*branchial chamber*, **R85**, **R91**, **R333**, **R401**  
*branchial gland*, **R91**  
*branchial lobe (crab carapace)*, **R405**  
*branchial region (crab carapace)*, **R91**-**R92**, **R404**-**R406**  
*BRANCHIATA*, **R575**  
*Branchinecta*, **R86**, **R88**, **R177**, **R181**  
*Branchinectidae*, **R113**, **R181**  
*Branchinella*, **R177**  
*branchiocardiac carina*, **R91**  
*branchiocardiac groove*, **R91**-**R92**, **R402**  
*BRANCHIOGASTRA*, **R542**  
*Branchiolambrus*, **R509**  
*Branchioplax*, **R526**  
*BRANCHIOPODA*, **R13**, **R23**, **R51**, **R109**, **R112**, **R128**, **R131**, **R616**  
*Branchiopusites*, **R617**  
*branchiostegal area*, **R91**, **R333**  
*branchiostegal spine*, **R91**-**R92**  
*branchiostegite*, **R91**, **R401**  
*Branchiopodidae*, **R113**, **R181**  
*Branchiopodites*, **R180**-**R181**  
*Branchiopodopsis*, **R181**  
*Branchipus*, **R86**, **R178**, **R181**  
*Branchipusites*, **R181**, **R617**  
*BRANCHIURA*, **R13**, **R23**, **R68**, **R113**, **R203**, **R205**, **R252**, **R568**  
 BRANDT, **R599**  
 BRATTSTROM, **R213**  
*Brazilibathynella*, **R358**  
 BRETT, **R615**  
*Briarosaccus*, **R628**  
*Brisa*, **R463**  
 BROCH, **R207**, **R247**, **R261**  
 BROILI, **R337**, **R365**, **R618**, **R623**  
 Brome, **R532**  
 BROOKS, **R130**, **R169**, **R332**, **R364**, **R392**, **R544**  
*buccal cavity (crab carapace)*, **R91**, **R406**  
*buccal frame*, **R91**  
*Bundenbachiellus*, **R618**  
*Buria*, **R544**, **R546**  
 BURKENROAD, **R333**, **R337**, **R339**, **R436**, **R438**, **R446**  
 BURMEISTER, **R361**-**R362**  
*burrows (decapods)*, **R429**  
*Bylgia*, **R450**  
*Bythotrephes*, **R168**, **R175**  
*Caanarvonia*, **R324**  
*Caenestheria*, **R144**, **R151**  
*Caenestheriella*, **R142**-**R144**, **R151**  
*Caenestheriellidae*, **R151**  
*CALANOIDA*, **R113**, **R200**, **R202**  
*Calantica*, **R215**, **R220**-**R221**, **R224**-**R225**, **R250**, **R264**, **R266**-**R267**, **R269**, **R277**  
*Calanus*, **R52**, **R66**, **R80**, **R212**  
*Calappa*, **R416**, **R425**, **R427**, **R494**  
*Calappella*, **R494**  
*Calappidae*, **R115**, **R440**, **R445**, **R494**, **R627**  
*Calappidea*, **R494**  
*Calappilia*, **R494**  
*Calappinae*, **R115**, **R494**  
*CALAPPOIDA*, **R443**, **R494**  
*Calappoidea*, **R115**, **R440**, **R445**-**R446**, **R494**, **R627**  
*Calathura*, **R374**  
*calceolus*, **R91**  
*Calciphilus*, **R604**  
*CALIGOIDA*, **R113**, **R200**  
*Caligus*, **R66**  
*Calizoe*, **R318**  
*Callianassa*, **R108**, **R424**, **R429**-**R430**, **R435**, **R477**  
*Callianassidae*, **R115**, **R429**, **R442**, **R445**, **R477**  
*Callianassinae*, **R115**, **R477**  
*Callianidea*, **R74**  
*Callinectes*, **R414**, **R510**

- CALLIPODIDA**, R576, R580, **R592**  
 Callizoe, R308, R310, **R318**  
*Callozoe*, R318  
**CALMAN**, R177, R311, R337-  
 R338, R349, R353-R354, R362,  
 R543, R607, R616, R621  
**CALMANOSTRACA**, R112,  
 R131  
*Calocalanus*, R107  
*Caloxanthus*, R416, R435, R440,  
 R517  
*Calyptocaris*, R315  
 calyptopis stage, **R91**  
*Camarocarcinus*, **R494**  
**CAMBALIDA**, R592  
**CAMBALIDEA**, R595  
*Cambarus*, R430, **R462**  
*Cameraverruca*, **R282**  
*Camerunograptus*, R157  
*Camptocera*, R32, R48  
*Camptocercus*, R168, **R173**  
*Camptophyllia*, R393, R618-**R619**  
**CAMPYLOSOMATA**, R249  
*Campylostoma*, **R494**  
*Canadaspidae*, R324  
*Canadaspis*, R303-R305, R310,  
 R323  
*Cancer*, R77, R311, R420, **R509**,  
 R542  
*Cancerides*, R508  
*Cancridae*, R115, R440, R445,  
 R508  
**CANCRIDEA**, R115, R439-R441,  
 R445-R446, **R508**  
**CANCRIFORMIA**, R443, R508  
*Cancrinae*, R115, **R509**  
*Cancrinidae*, R115, R445, **R475**  
*Cancrinus*, R417, **R475**  
*Cancrixantho*, **R514**  
*Cancroidea*, R442  
**CANNON**, R51-R52  
 capitulum, **R91**, R217  
*Caprella*, R391  
*Caprellidae*, R114, R388  
**CAPRELLIDEA**, R114, R388,  
 R390  
 carapace, R59, R81, **R91**, R333,  
 R401-R402  
 carapace adductor muscle, **R91**,  
 R300  
 carapace angles, **R91**  
 carapace area, **R92**  
 carapace carina, **R91**  
 carapace costae, **R92**  
 carapace costellae, **R92**  
 carapace groove, **R92**  
 carapace growth line, **R92**  
 carapace horn, **R92**, R303  
 carapace lirae, **R92**  
 carapace region, **R92**, R405  
 carapace spine, **R92**  
 carapace tooth, **R93**  
*Ceratiocaris*, R315  
*Carcinaspides*, **R569**  
*Carcinaspis*, R569  
*Carcineretes*, **R514**  
*Carcineretidae*, R115, R440,  
 R445, **R514**  
*Carcinides*, R513  
*Carcininae*, R115, R440, **R513**  
*Carcinium*, R464  
*Carcinochelus*, R617  
*Carcinoplacinae*, R115, **R526**-  
 R527  
*Carcinoplacoides*, **R526**  
*Carcinoplax*, **R526**  
*Carcinosoma*, R331  
*Carcinurus*, R355  
*Carcinus*, R78, R401, R421,  
 R427, **R513**  
 cardiac incision, **R93**  
 cardiac notch, **R93**  
 cardiac region (crab carapace),  
 R92-**R93**, R404-R406  
 cardiac tooth, **R93**  
*Cardiolites*, R330  
*Cardiolites*, R330  
*Cardirhynchus*, **R460**  
*Cardisoma*, **R530**  
*cardo*, **R93**  
**CARIDEA**, R114, R401, R407,  
 R413-R414, R416-R418, R421,  
 R424-R427, R429, R431, R435-  
 R436, R438, R442, R444-R446,  
 R451, R626  
 caridean lobe, **R93**  
**CARIDES**, R442, R451  
*Caridina*, **R452**  
 caridoid facies, **R93**  
*Caridolites*, R330  
*Caridolites*, R330  
 carina, **R93**, R219-R220, **R537**  
 carinal, **R93**, R217  
 carinal latus, **R93**, **R97**, R220  
 carinal margin, **R93**, R224  
 carinate, **R93**  
*Carinocarcinus*, **R526**  
 carinolateral, **R93**  
*Carnarvonia*, R303, **R324**  
**CARPENTER & SWAIN**, R621  
**CARPENTIER**, R312  
*Carpiliopsis*, R517  
*Carpilius*, R402, **R517**  
*Carpilodes*, **R517**  
 carpocerite, **R93**  
*Carpopenaeus*, R417, R425, **R450**  
 carpopod (ite), **R93**  
 carpus, R83, **R93**, R404-R405,  
 R416  
*Caryocaridae*, R315  
*Caryocarididae*, R315  
*Caryocaris*, R109, R303, R306-  
 R308, **R316**  
*Caryocarus*, R316  
**CASTER**, R305  
*Catomerus*, R220, **R284**  
**CATOMETOPA**, R441-R442  
*Catophragmus*, R220, R227-  
 R228, R269, **R283**  
*Catopterus*, R330  
 caudal appendage, **R93**  
 caudal fan, **R93**, R336, R347  
 caudal filament, **R93**  
 caudal furca, R81, **R93**  
 caudal ramus, **R93**  
 caudal style, **R93**  
**CAVOLINI**, R248  
**CEARTIOCARINA**, R315  
 cement gland, R87, **R93**  
*Cenomanocarcinus*, **R494**  
 cephalic flexure, **R93**  
 cephalic shield, **R93**  
 cephalic somite, **R93**  
**CEPHALOCARIDA**, R13, R51,  
 R61, R112, R120, **R127**  
 cephalomere, **R93**  
 cephalon, **R93**, R535  
 cephalosome, **R93**  
 cephalothorax, R81, **R93**, R333,  
 R401  
*Cerathiocaris*, R315  
**CERATIOCARIDA**, R315  
*Ceratiocaridae*, R315  
*Ceratiocarididae*, R113, **R315**  
*Ceratiocaris*, R315  
**CERATIOCARINA**, R113, R310,  
 R315  
**CERATIOCARINAE**, R315  
*Ceratiocaris*, R297-R298, R300,  
 R302-R306, R308, R311, **R315**,  
 R330  
*Ceratioceras*, R315  
*Ceratocarida*, R315  
**CERATOCARINA**, R315  
*Ceratocaris*, R315  
 cercopod, **R94**  
 cercus, **R94**  
*Ceriatocaris*, R315  
*Ceriodaphnia*, R165-R166  
*Cermatia*, R602  
*Ceratiocaris*, R315  
 cervical furrow, **R94**  
 cervical groove (crab carapace),  
 R92, **R94**, R333, R402, R404-  
 R405; (stomatopods), **R537**  
 cervical incision, **R94**  
 cervical notch, **R94**  
 cervical sinus, **R94**  
 cervical suture, **R94**  
*Ceteopirus*, R289  
*Cetopirus*, **R289**  
*Cetopirus*, R289  
*Chaenocaris*, R321  
*Chaetolepas*, R250  
*Chamaesipho*, R228, R270, **R289**  
**CHAMBERLIN & HOFFMAN**, R576  
**CHAPPUIS**, R354  
*Charassocarcinus*, R371, **R532**,  
 R628  
*Charybdis*, **R510**  
**CHAVE**, R218  
 chela, R83, **R94**  
 chelate, **R94**  
**CHELICERATA**, R5, R8-R9,  
 R13, R576, R607  
**CHELIFERA**, R369  
 cheliped (crab), R83, **R94**,  
 R404-R405, R418  
*Chelonibia*, R228, R236, R250,  
 R263, R268, R270, **R289**  
*Chelonibiinae*, R113, R250, **R288**  
*Cheloniellon*, R621  
**CHERNYSHEV**, R134, R137, R208  
**CHILOGNATHA**, R574, R578  
**CHILOPODA**, R9-R10, R12-R13,

- R27, R29, R32, R37, R40, R42, R44, R47, R53, R574, R576, R598, R601, R604
- Chionelasmus, R228, R270, R284
- Chirocephalidae, R113, R181
- Chirocephalus, R20, R22, R24, R36, R81, R178, R181
- Chirona, R232, R270, R285
- Chirostylidae, R482
- Chlinocephalus, R517
- Chlorida, R548
- Chloridella, R541, R548
- Chloridellidae, R546
- Chloridus, R548
- Chlorodiella, R517
- Chlorodius, R517
- Chlorodopsis, R520
- Chlorogaster, R628
- CHLUPÁČ, R308, R331
- Chonionotus, R578
- Chonopeltis, R205
- CHORDEUMIDA, R576, R580-R582, R592-R593
- CHORDEUMOIDEA, R593
- Chorilia, R504
- Chorizognatha, R592
- Chthamalidae, R113, R229, R231, R235, R250, R269, R283
- Chthamalinae, R250, R283
- Chthamalophilus, R249, R259, R273
- Chthamalus, R228, R231-R232, R234-R236, R250, R268-R269, R283
- Chydoridae, R113, R165, R171
- Chydorinae, R113, R171
- Chydoroidea, R171
- Chydorus, R166, R168, R171
- Chytraeidae, R271
- cincinnulus, R94
- CINONA, R596
- circulatory system (crustacean), R85
- Cirolanidae, R114, R374, R380
- Cirravidae, R275
- CIRRIPIEDIA, R13, R51, R61, R68, R85, R87, R109, R111, R113, R207, R271, R311, R386-R387, R628
- cirrus, R83, R94
- CLADOCERA, R112, R163
- CLARKE, R328-R329
- CLARKE & WHEELER, R218
- Clarkecarididae, R114, R354-R355, R358
- Clarkecaris, R350-R354, R358
- clasper, R94
- classification, arthropleurids, R616; cirripeds, R247, R251; copepods, R200; crustaceans, R111; decapods, R441; eocarids, R340; myriapods, R576; phyllocarids, R311; stomatopods, R542; syn-carids, R354
- CLAUS, R298, R311, R362
- Clausia, R310, R539-R540, R544, R546
- Clavilithes, R431
- Cletocamptus, R202
- Cletodidae, R113, R202
- Clibanarius, R479
- Clistosaccidae, R113, R272
- Clistosaccus, R272
- Clorida, R548
- Clorodius, R517
- clypeus, R94
- Clytiella, R456, R626
- Clytiopsinae, R115, R456, R626
- Clytiopsis, R456
- COCKERELL, R354
- COELOCHAETA, R593
- Coeloma, R431, R524
- Coelopus, R486
- Coenobita, R410, R481
- Coenobitidae, R115, R426, R445, R481
- Coleia, R425, R470
- Coleiidae, R115, R445, R470
- COLLEMBOLA, R12-R13, R31, R48-R50
- colleteric gland, R94
- Colneptunus, R510
- COLOBOGNATHA, R44
- COLOBOGNATHA, R586
- Colpocaris, R317, R522
- Columellina, R289
- comb collar, R94
- commensalism, crustaceans, R111; decapods, R428
- compartment, R94
- compartment plate, R94
- complemental male, R217
- compound eye, R8, R94, R131, R352
- compound rostrum, R94
- Concavicularis, R317
- Concherisma, R151
- Conchoderma, R68, R225, R236, R250, R263, R279
- Conchophylla, R141
- CONCHOSTRACA, R112, R141
- conchostracan carapace inter-space, R94
- conchostracan carapace interval, R94
- conchostracan carapace ribs, R94
- conchostracan eggs, R146
- CONGER, R168
- Congestheriella, R157
- Conia, R287
- Conopea, R270, R285
- Cook, R588, R592, R596
- COPEPODA, R13, R23, R51, R61, R67, R109, R113, R200-R201, R252, R386, R567
- copepodid, R94
- Corallanidae, R380
- Coreocaris, R304, R325
- cormopod (ite), R94
- cormus, R94
- cornea, R94
- corneal surface, R415
- Cornia, R160
- CORNWALL, R237
- Coronida, R548
- Coroniderichthus, R548
- Coronidopsis, R548, R552
- Coronis, R543, R548
- Coronula, R68, R250, R289, R311
- Coronuladae, R289
- Coronulinae, R113, R250, R289
- Coronulites, R289
- corpus mandibulae, R94
- Corystes, R412, R417, R427, R508
- Corystidae, R115, R440, R445, R508
- costae coxales, R610
- COSTLOW, R247
- COUTIÈRE, R248
- coxa, R83, R94
- coxal plate, R94
- coxepipod (ite), R94
- coxite, R94
- coxopod (ite), R94
- Crangon, R108
- Crangonidae, R407, R417
- Crangonyx, R390
- Crangopsis, R58, R334, R336, R338, R343, R364, R396
- Craspedosoma, R594
- Craspedosomatidae, R593
- Craspedosomidae, R593
- Craterostigmus, R9
- Cretacorantina, R409, R412, R500
- Cretaspis, R278
- Creticarcinus, R517
- Cretiscapellum, R220, R224-R225, R264, R277
- Creusia, R228, R287
- CREVETTINA, R388
- CREVETTINES, R388
- CRUSTACEA, R5, R7-R9, R11, R13, R52, R57, R112, R573, R575, R607
- Cryptolepas, R289
- Cryptomera, R602
- Cryptoniseidae, R387
- Cryptophialidae, R113, R271
- Cryptophialus, R247, R271-R272
- Cryptops, R40, R45
- Cryptosoma, R494
- Cryptozoa, R330
- Cryptozoc, R330
- Ctenolepisma, R28
- ctenopod, R94
- ctenopod cirri, R235
- Ctenopoda, R170
- Culampaia, R329
- Culampla, R329
- CUMACEA, R61, R73, R85, R109, R114, R361-R363, R368, R387, R434
- Curtonotus, R526
- Curvacornutus, R161
- CUVIER, R574
- Cyamidae, R114, R388, R391
- Cyamocarcinus, R488
- Cyamus, R391
- Cyathaspis, R329
- cycladiformes, R94
- Cyclas, R569
- Cycleryon, R425, R470
- Cyclestheria, R150
- Cyclestheriidae, R112, R150
- Cyclestherioides, R155
- Cyclestherioidinae, R154



- Dunhevedia, R164  
 Duplorbis, R249, R273  
 Dusa, R450  
 dwarf male, R217  
 Dynomene, R487  
 Dynomenidae, R115, R441, R445, R487, R627  
*Dyoxycaris*, R325  
*Dythyrocaris*, R321
- Ebalia, R496  
 ecdysis, R422  
 Echinestheria, R161  
*Echinocaridae*, R317-R318  
*Echinocarididae*, R113, R303, R310, R317  
*Echinocaridinae*, R113, R318  
*Echinocaris*, R305, R318  
*Echinocarys*, R318  
 ecology, anostracans, R178; cladocerans, R167; conchostracans, R146; copepods, R200; euthycarcinoids, R198; notostracans, R133; stomatopods, R540; syncarids, R352  
*EDRIOPHTHALMA*, R361, R616  
 efferent channels, R95  
 eggs and larval stages, R103  
*Eileticidae*, R355  
 Eileticus, R604, R606  
 Elder, R366  
 Eleutherocaris, R319  
*Elimocaris*, R322  
*Ellipsiocaris*, R329  
*Ellipsocaris*, R329  
 Ellipsograpt, R154  
 Elminius, R270, R287  
 Elymocar, R302, R322  
 Emerita, R75  
 Emersoniinae, R113, R290  
*Emersoninae*, R290  
 Emersonius, R290  
 Emmelezoe, R302, R315  
*Emmelezoe*, R315  
 endite, R95, R350, R537  
 endognath, R95  
 endophragm, R95  
 endophragmal skeleton, R95, R409  
 endopleurite, R95, R401  
 endopod (ite), R83, R95, R333, R350, R536  
 Endosacculus, R252, R275  
 endoskeleton, R95  
 endosternite, R95, R401  
 endostome, R95  
 Enoploclytia, R410, R434, R455, R626  
 Enoplonotus, R440, R513  
 entognath, R8  
*Entomocaris*, R315, R325  
*Entomon*, R547  
*ENTOMOSTRACA*, R60  
 Eoarmadillidium, R384  
*Eoasmusia*, R163  
*Eobalanus*, R208  
 Eocalcinus, R479  
 Eocarcinidae, R115, R445, R484  
 Eocarcinus, R410, R438, R484  
 EOCARIDA, R69, R114, R332, R337-R338, R340-R341, R354, R534  
 EOCARIDACEA, R114, R333, R337-R338, R340, R342  
 Eocarididae, R114, R342  
 Eocaris, R61, R336, R342  
*Eocyzicinae*, R151  
 Eocyzicus, R144, R153  
*Eohepatica*, R325  
 Eoinachoides, R504  
*Eoleaia*, R159  
 Eolepas, R220-R223, R225, R261, R264, R277  
*Eolinuparus*, R473-R474  
*Eopagurus*, R490  
*Eopollipipes*, R208  
*Eoscolopendridae*, R606  
 Eosphaeroma, R378  
 Eoeverruca, R225, R266-R267, R283  
 ephippium, R95  
 Epialtus, R505  
 epibranchial area, R95, R406  
 epibranchial lobe, R95  
 epibranchial region (crab carapace), R404-R405  
 epibranchial space, R95  
 EPICARIDEA, R114, R372, R386  
 epigastric area, R95, R406  
 epigastric lobe, R95  
 epigastric region (crab carapace), 405-406  
 epimeral fold, R95, R402  
 epimere, R95, R360  
 epimeron, R95  
 Epimorpha, R47, R576, R598, R603  
*Epinebalia*, R313  
 epipod (ite), R95, R350, R537  
 episternum, R95, R413  
 epistome, R95, R401, R413  
 Eremograpt, R155  
 Eriethalima, R548  
*Erichthidae*, R540, R546  
*ERICHTHIENS*, R542  
*Erichthoidina*, R551  
*Erichthus*, R540, R542, R551  
 Eriphia, R409, R517  
*Erisopsis*, R154  
 Eryma, R410, R455, R626  
*Erymidae*, R410, R443, R455  
 Erymastacus, R456  
 Erymidae, R115, R410, R434-R435, R443, R445, R455, R533, R626  
 Eryminae, R114, R455, R626  
 Eryon, R410, R425, R470, R541  
*Eryoneicus*, R422, R471  
 Eryonidae, R115, R412, R442, R445, R470  
*ERYONIDEA*, R442-R443  
 Eryonoidea, R115, R407, R414-R415, R418, R422, R425, R435, R437-R438, R445-R446, R468  
 esophagus, R95  
*Estheria*, R151, R154-R155  
 Estheridium, R156  
 Estheriella, R157  
 Estheriellidae, R112, R157  
 Estheriellinae, R112, R157  
*Estheriellites*, R151  
 Estherielloidea, R112, R157  
*Estheriidae*, R151  
 Estheriina, R150  
*Estheriimidae*, R150  
 Estheriuninae, R112, R150  
*Estheriopsis*, R163  
*Estherites*, R151  
 esthetasc, R95  
 esthete, R95  
 Etallonia, R418, R477  
*Eteroranina*, R498  
*Etisodes*, R517  
 Etisus, R517  
 Etyus, R441, R488  
 Eubranchipus, R182  
 EUCARIDA, R52, R61, R75, R114, R340, R347, R354, R363, R393  
 EUCLADOCERA, R112, R170  
*Eucorystes*, R500  
 Eucrate, R526  
*EUCYPHIDEA*, R443, R451  
 EUDES-DESLONGCHAMPS, R532  
 Euestheria, R151  
*EUGNATHA*, R586  
*EUKYPHOTES*, R442, R451  
 Eulimnadia, R143-R144, R150  
 EUMALACOSTRACA, R114, R310, R332, R337, R345, R543  
 Eumedoninae, R115, R429, R508  
 Eumedonus, R508  
 Eumorphactaea, R517  
*Eumorphia*, R464, R466  
 Eumorphocorvstes, R498  
*Eupagurinae*, R479  
*Eupagurus*, R479  
 Euphausia, R395, R397-R398  
 EUPHAUSIACEA, R75, R109, R114, R336, R362, R364, R386, R394, R397, R616  
 Euphausiidae, R114, R397  
 Euphoberia, R577, R605  
 Euphoberidae, R577  
 EUPHOBERIIDA, R576-R577  
 Euphyllax, R514  
 Euprognatha, R504  
 Euryalona, R166, R473  
 Eurycarpus, R425  
 Eurycercinae, R113, R173  
 Eurycercus, R168, R173  
 Eurypanopeus, R77  
 Euryplax, R527  
 EURYPTERIDA, R568  
 Eurysquilla, R548, R552  
 Eurysquilloides, R548, R552  
*EURYSTERNA*, R582  
 Eurytium, R518  
*Euryurus*, R455  
 Euscalpellum, R215-R216, R250, R264, R277  
 EUTHYCARCINIDA, R113, R199  
 Euthycarcinidae, R113, R199  
 EUTHYCARCINOIDEA, R13, R66, R113, R196, R198  
 Euthycarcinus, R197, R199  
 Euthria, R431  
*Euverruca*, R281  
 Euzonus, R594  
 Evadne, R167  
 Evansula, R66  
 evolution (decapods), R435

- exhalant passage, **R95**  
 exite, **R95**  
 Exocorallanidae, **R380**  
 exognath, **R95**  
 exopod (ite), **R83, R95, R333,**  
     **R350, R536**  
 exoskeleton, **R59, R95**  
 exuviation, **R422**  
 eye, **R95, R415**  
 eyestalk, **R95**
- FABRICIUS, R311, R542**  
**Falconoplax, R493**  
*Falsirostria*, **F159**  
*Faughnia*, **R552**  
 Favreina, **R431**  
**FAXON, R531**  
**FECHTER, R574**  
 feeding (decapods), **R431**  
*Fernandoalmeidiinae*, **R163**  
*Fernandoalmeidium*, **R163**  
 Fieldia, **R325**  
 filamentary appendage, **R95**  
 filter chamber, **R95, R308**  
 finger, **R95**  
 first antenna, **R95**  
 first maxilla, **R95**  
 fixed finger, **R95, R417**  
*Flabelcorona*, **R289**  
**FLABELLIFERA, R114, R371-**  
     **R373, R387**  
 flabellum, **R95**  
 flagellum, **R95, R333, R348, R350,**  
     **R416**  
**FÖRSTER, R626**  
 foregut, **R85, R96**  
 fossil traces (cirripeds), **R251**  
 fossilization (decapods), **R433**  
*Francocaris*, **R365**  
*frena*, **R96, R99**  
**FREY, R164, R166, R168**  
**FRITSCH, R352-R353, R575, R577,**  
     **R605**  
 front, **R96**  
 frontal appendage, **R96**  
 frontal band, **R96**  
 frontal organs, **R96**  
 frontal plate, **R96**  
 frontal region (crab carapace), **R92,**  
     **R96, R404-R406**  
 frontolateral horn, **R96, R244**  
**FRYER, R366**  
*furca*, **R96, R336, R347**  
 furcal ramus, **R96, R303**  
 furcilia stage, **R96**
- Gabonestheria*, **R161**  
*Galathea*, **R386, R482**  
*Galatheadae*, **R481**  
*Galatheascus*, **R628**  
*Galatheidae*, **R115, R407, R412,**  
     **R425-R426, R429, R442, R445,**  
     **R481, R533**  
*Galatheidea*, **R442-R444**  
*Galatheinae*, **R115, R482**  
*Galatheites*, **R482**  
*Galatheoidea*, **R115, R407, R413-**  
     **R414, R418, R421, R425, R429,**  
     **R437-R438, R442, R445-R446,**  
     **R481**  
*galea*, **R96**  
*Galene*, **R441, R518**  
*Galenopsis*, **R526**  
**GALL & GRAUVOGEL, R196**  
*Gamaris*, **R551**  
*Gammaridae*, **R114, R389**  
**GAMMARIDEA, R114, R361, R388**  
*Gammarinae*, **R542**  
*Gammarus*, **R61, R63, R390**  
*Gampsonychidae*, **R355**  
*Gampsonychus*, **R355**  
*Gampsonyx*, **R355**  
*Gampsurus*, **R455**  
**GARSTANG, R52, R615**  
*Gasocaris*, **R355**  
**GASTRALIDA, R443-R444**  
*gastric groove*, **R92, R96, R537**  
*gastric mill*, **R96**  
*gastric region (crab carapace)*, **R92-**  
     **R93, R96, R404-R406**  
*gastric tooth*, **R93, R96**  
*Gastrodorus*, **R490, R533**  
*gastrolith*, **R96, R432**  
*gastroorbital carina*, **R91, R96**  
*gastroorbital groove (decapods)*,  
     **R92, R96, R402**  
*Gastrosacus*, **R482**  
*Gatunia*, **R512**  
*Gebicula*, **R410**  
*Gecarcinidae*, **R116, R426, R441,**  
     **R445, R529**  
*Gecarcinus*, **R529**  
*Gelasimus*, **R530**  
*Gemmellarocarcinus*, **R488**  
*Gemmosaccus*, **R628**  
*genital region*, **R96**  
*geographic distribution, cycloids,*  
     **R569; mystacocarids, R194;**  
     **stomatopods, R540**  
*geologic occurrence, kazacharth-*  
     **rans, R137; lipostracans, R185;**  
     **notostracans, R134**  
**GEOPHILIDA, R576, R599-R600,**  
     **R603**  
*Geophilidae*, **R599, R604**  
**GEOPHILOMORPHA, R45, R48**  
**GEOPHILOMORPHA, R599, R603**  
*Geophilus*, **R604**  
*Gerascutigeridae*, **R606**  
**GERSTAECKER, R249**  
*Geryon*, **R524**  
*Geryonidae*, **R115, R425, R441,**  
     **R445, R524**  
**GIARD, R248**  
**GIGANTOPLEURIDA, R617**  
*gill*, **R85, R96**  
*gill chamber*, **R96**  
*Gilsonicaridae*, **R183**  
*Gilsoncarididae*, **R113, R183**  
*Gilsonicaris*, **R183**  
*Gitocrangon*, **R340, R393**  
**GLAESSNER, R311, R333, R346,**  
     **R353, R363, R386, R402,**  
     **R437-R438, R532-R533, R541,**  
     **R544, R568**  
*glandular system (crustacean)*, **R87**  
*glaucothoe stage*, **R96, R422**  
**GLOMERIDA, R576, R584**  
*Glomeridae*, **R585**  
**GLOMERIDESMIDA, R576, R584**  
**GLOMERIDESMOIDEA, R584**  
**GLOMERIDIDAE, R585**  
**GLOMERIDIDEA, R584**  
*Glomeris*, **R585**  
**GLOMEROIDEA, R584**  
*Glomeropsis*, **R585-R586, R605-**  
     **R606**  
*Glyphea*, **R410, R418, R431, R463**  
*Glypheidae*, **R115, R434, R443-**  
     **R445, R463, R626**  
**GLYPHEIDEA, R443-R444**  
**GLYPHEOCARIDA, R443**  
**GLYPHEOIDA, R443**  
*Glypheoidea*, **R115, R417, R425,**  
     **R430, R435, R437-R438, R444-**  
     **R446, R463**  
*Glypheopsis*, **R410, R464**  
*Glyphithyreus*, **R526**  
*Glyphithyreus*, **R441**  
*Glyptelasma*, **R251, R280**  
*Glyptoasmussia*, **R154**  
*Glyptoasmussiidae*, **R154**  
*Glyptodynemene*, **R488**  
*gnathal lobe*, **R96, R304, R349**  
*Gnathia*, **R373**  
*Gnathiidae*, **R373, R387**  
**GNATHIIDEA, R114, R372-R373**  
*gnathobases*, **R83, R96**  
*gnathochilarium*, **R579**  
*Gnatholana*, **R387**  
*Gnathopausia*, **R62, R363-R364,**  
     **R366**  
*gnathopod*, **R96**  
*gnathothorax*, **R96**  
**GOLDFUSS, R571, R584**  
*gonad*, **R96**  
*gonapophysis*, **R96**  
*Gonatocaris*, **R316**  
*Goneplacidae*, **R115, R421, R441,**  
     **R445, R524**  
*Goneplacinae*, **R115, R524**  
*Goneplax*, **R524**  
*Gonerichthus*, **R549**  
*Goniochele*, **R492**  
*Goniochirus*, **R481**  
*Goniocypoda*, **R527**  
*Goniodromites*, **R439, R486**  
*Goniodromitidae*, **R627**  
*Goniodromitinae*, **R627**  
*Gonioleia*, **R159**  
*Gonioneptunites*, **R510**  
*Goniosoma*, **R510**  
*Gonodactylinae*, **R546**  
*Gonodactylus*, **R541, R543, R549**  
*Gonoplax*, **R524**  
*gonopod*, **R96, R421**  
*gonopore*, **R96, R333, R421**  
**GORDON, R366-R367, R440**  
*Gorgonolaureus*, **R274**  
*Granirostris*, **R159**  
*Grapsidae*, **R116, R404, R424,**  
     **R427, R441, R445, R528**  
*Grapsinae*, **R116, R529**  
*Grapsus*, **R529**  
*Graptocarcinus*, **R488**  
*Graptoleberis*, **R168, R173**

- GRAVIER & MATHIAS, R142  
 GRAY, R249  
 green gland, **R96**, R421  
 GROBBEN, R408  
 groove (decapod carapace), **R96**, R402  
 GROSCHOPF, R166, R168  
 GRUVEL, R207, R247, R249-R250  
 GÜRICH, R623  
 Guericaricaris, **R325**  
*Guerichocaris*, R326  
 GURNEY, R422, R436  
 GUTHÖRL, R617  
 Gwyneddocaris, **R330**  
*Gymnophylla*, R176  
 GYMNOPLA, R200  
 GYMNOPLAURA, R436, R439, R443, R498  
*Gymnota*, R176  
*Gypopeltis*, R205
- HAASE, R598  
 habitat (stomatopod), R540  
 HAECKEL, R15  
 HÄFELE, R248  
 HÄNTZCHEL, R430  
 haft organ, **R96**  
*Halicyna*, R629  
*Halicynae*, R629  
*Halicyne*, R567-R569, R629  
*Halicynidae*, R629  
*Halimonectes*, R547  
*Haliporinae*, R447  
 HALL & CLARKE, R312  
 HANDLIRSCH, R15, R196, R616  
 HANSEN, R213, R251, R350, R362, R407, R596  
 Hapalocarcinidae, R429  
 HAPLOPODA, R113, R176  
 HARPACTICOIDA, R113, R200, R202  
*Harpactocarcinus*, R416, R435, R518, R522  
*Harpactoxanthopsis*, R518, R522  
*Harpiosquilla*, R539, R549  
*Haustorius*, R52  
 head, R57, R79, **R96**, R333, R347, R608  
 head apodeme, **R96**, R413  
*Hefriga*, R425, **R455**, R626  
 HEIDE, VAN DER, R615  
*Hela*, R498  
*Hellenis*, R390  
*Hellenus*, R510  
*Hellerocaris*, R470  
 HELMINTHOMORPHA, R576, R586  
*Hemicycloleia*, R159  
*Hemigrapsus*, R529  
 HEMIMETABOLA, R51  
*Hemioon*, R498, R627  
*Hemiphoberia*, R604  
*Hemiplax*, R531  
*Hemisquilla*, R540-R541, R549  
*Hemitrochiscidae*, R116, R569  
*Hemitrochiscus*, R569  
 hemocoel, **R96**  
 hemocyanin, **R96**  
 hemoglobin, **R96**
- HENDERSON, R442  
 HENNIG, R618  
*Hepatella*, R495  
 hepatic caeca, **R96**  
 hepatic groove (crab carapace), **R92**, **R96**, R402  
 hepatic region (crab carapace), **R92**, **R96**, R404-R406  
 hepatic spine, **R92**, **R96**  
*Hepatinulus*, **R496**  
*Hepaticus*, **R518**  
*Hepatoides*, R495  
 hepatopancreas, **R96**  
*Hepatus*, **R495**  
*Heroldia*, R317  
*Heroldina*, R297, **R317**  
*HERPOCARIDA*, R443  
*HERPOCHELIDA*, R443, R458  
*Heteribalanus*, R270, R285  
*Heteractaea*, R518  
*Heteralepadidae*, R113, R250, R278  
*Heteralepas*, R213, R236-R237, R250, R278  
*Heterocarpus*, R72  
 heterochelate, **R96**  
*HETEROCHELIDA*, R443  
 heterochelous, R418  
*Heterocrypta*, R508  
*Heteroglyphea*, R466  
*HETEROGNATHES*, R596  
*Heteropanope*, R518  
*Heterosaccus*, R628  
*Heterosphaeroma*, R378  
*Heterosquilla*, **R550**  
*Heterotanais*, R71  
*Heteroverhoeffia*, **R604**  
*HETEROZONIA*, R590  
*HETERURA*, R443  
 Hexacreusia, R285  
 HEXAPODA, R5, R8-R9, R11-R13, R48, R576  
 Hexapodinae, R116, R418, **R527**  
 Hexapus, **R527**  
 Hexelasma, R228, R269, R284  
 HEYDEN, VON, R591  
*Hiltonius*, **R587**  
 Himantariidae, R599  
 Himantarium, R600  
 hindgut, R85, **R96**  
 hinge line, **R96**, R300  
 hinge nodes, **R96**, R300  
*Hippa*, R484  
 Hippidae, R115, R417, R442, R445, R483-R484  
*Hippidea*, R442-R444  
*Hippides*, R484  
 Hippoidea, R115, R407, R418, R421, R424-R425, R427, R434, R437-R438, R442, R445-R446, R483  
*Hippolyte*, R414  
 HOEK, R250  
*Holocarcinus*, R518  
*Holopedium*, R167  
*Holoscappellum*, R250, R277  
*Holostraca*, R141  
*HOLOTARSIA*, R599  
 HOLTUIS, R447, R452  
*Homaridae*, R458-R459
- HOMARIDEA*, R414, R442  
 Homarinae, R115, R459  
*Homarus*, R36, R86-R87, R401, R406, R408-R410, R418, R422-R423, R431, R459  
*Homelys*, R454  
*Homola*, **R490**  
 Homolidae, R115, R407, R412, R418, R431, R445, R490  
*Homolidea*, R442, R489  
*Homolodromia*, R416, R440, R486  
*Homolodromiidae*, R532  
*Homolodromiinae*, R115, R412, R415, R421, R425, R486  
*Homoloidea*, R115, R440, R445-R446, R489  
*Homolopsis*, R410, R435, **R490**  
*Hoplitocarcinus*, R490  
 HOPLOCARIDA, R79, R116, R340, R360, R363, **R533**, R543  
*Hoploparia*, R410, R427, R431-R432, R435, **R459**  
*Hoplophorus*, R452  
*Hoplosquilla*, R539, **R550**  
 Hopwood, R567, R568  
 Houghtonites, R393  
*Howellisaura*, R151  
*Huargulus*, R205  
*Hurdia*, **R326**  
*Hutchinsoniella*, R36, R51, R61, R63, R65, R82, R120, R122, R124, R127, R333, 340  
*Hutchinsoniellidae*, R112, **R127**  
*Huxley*, R332  
*Hyalolepas*, **R279**  
*Hyalopelta*, R547  
*Hyas*, **R504**  
*Hymenocaris*, R314  
*Hymenocaridae*, R314  
*Hymenocarididae*, R113, R314  
*HYMENOCARINA*, R314  
*Hymenocaris*, R304, R311, **R315**, R330  
*Hymenocarys*, R315  
 HYMENOSTRACA, R113, R311, R314  
*Hyperia*, R392  
 HYPERIIDEA, R114, R388, **R391**  
 hypobranchial space, **R96**  
 hypopharynx, **R96**  
 hypostome, **R96**  
 hypostoma, **R96**
- Ibacus*, R425, **R475**  
*Iberihomola*, R486  
*Ibla*, R216, R233, R235, R241, R250, R278  
*Iblidae*, R113, R241, R250, R278  
*Iblinae*, R250  
 ICHIKAWA & YANAGIMACHI, R248  
*Idotea*, R380-R381  
*Idoteidae*, R114, R372, R381  
*Igorvarentsoviinae*, R159  
*Igorvarentsoviinae*, R157  
*Ilia*, R496  
*Iliella*, R138  
*Ilyocyptus*, R166-R167  
*Ilyodes*, R605-R606  
 IMAIZUMI, R374

- imbricate plates, **R96**  
 Inachinae, **R115, R504**  
 Inachus, **R504**  
**INAEQUIPEDES**, **R599**  
 incisor process, **R96, R349**  
*Indoestheria*, **R151**  
 inferior groove (crab carapace),  
     **R92, R96, R402**  
 inframedian lateral, **R96**  
 inframedian latus, **R96-R97, R220**  
 infraorbital spine, **R92, R96**  
 Ingolfiella, **R392**  
**INGOLFIELLIDEA**, **R114, R391**  
*Inkus*, **R159**  
 inner lamina, **R97, R226**  
*Innocentium*, **R163**  
**INSECTA**, **R13, R23, R39, R573-  
     R574, R576**  
**INSECTA APTERA**, **R574**  
 interantennular septum, **R97**  
 interlaminar figure, **R97, R237**  
 intestinal region (crab carapace),  
     **R92, R97, R404-R406**  
 intestine, **R97**  
 intraparies, **R97, R222**  
*Ipsilon*, **R163**  
*Ipsiloniidae*, **R112, R162**  
*Isaura*, **R145, R151**  
*Isauridae*, **R151**  
 ischiocerite, **R97**  
 ischiopod (ite), **R97**  
 ischium (crab), **R83, R97, R404,  
     R416**  
*Ischnodactylus*, **R459**  
*Isobatidae*, **R591**  
*Isojulus*, **R595**  
**ISOPODA**, **R61, R73, R114, R353,  
     R362-R363, R371-R373, R386-  
     R387, R434, R616, R622**  
 Isopodites, **R378**  
*Isoxis*, **R326**  
*Isoxyidae*, **R328**  
 Isoxys, **R326**  
**IULIFORMIA**, **R44**  
*Ixa*, **R497**  
*Ixoides*, **R497**
- Janira, **R71**  
*Japanolea*, **R159**  
*Jasus*, **R473**  
*Jaxartus*, **R159**  
*Jaxea*, **R477**  
*Jeanrogerium*, **R138**  
 joint, **R97**  
**JONES**, **R331, R369**  
**JONES & WOODARD**, **R312**  
**JORDAN & MEYER**, **R616**  
*Jsoxis*, **R326**  
 jugal region, **R92, R97**  
**JULIDA**, **R576, R590, R595**  
 Julidae, **R590**  
**JULIDEA**, **R590**  
*Julopsis*, **R605**  
*Julus*, **R590-R591**
- K plate, **R610**  
*Kablikia*, **R624**  
*Kaltanleia*, **R159**  
*Kampecaris*, **R578**
- Karagandiinae*, **R157**  
**KARAMAN**, **R366**  
*Kargalia*, **R159**  
*Kathpalmeria*, **R270, R287**  
**KAZACHARTHRA**, **R112, R135**  
**KELLEY**, **R146**  
**KEMP**, **R543**  
**KENNEL**, **R15**  
 kentrogen, **R97**  
**KENTROGONIDA**, **R113, R248,  
     R272**  
*Kentrogonidae*, **R272**  
**KENTROGONIDEA**, **R272**  
*Keratestheria*, **R163**  
*Keratestheridae*, **R162**  
*Ketmenia*, **R137-R138**  
*Ketmeniidae*, **R112, R138**  
*Kiemenblätter*, **R611**  
*Kierionopsis*, **R627**  
*Kilianicaris*, **R366**  
**KLIVER**, **R611**  
*Klytia*, **R403, R406-R407, R410,  
     R456**  
*Knebelia*, **R470**  
 knee, **R97**  
**KOBAYASHI**, **R143**  
**KOBAYASHI & KUSUMI**, **R144**  
**KOCH**, **R455**  
*Kochlorine*, **R232, R271**  
*Kochlorinidae*, **R271**  
*Kochlorinopsis*, **R271**  
*Kölgä*, **R447**  
*Koleolepadidae*, **R113, R278**  
*Koleolepas*, **R250, R278**  
**KOLOSVARY**, **R208**  
**KOMAREK**, **R615-R616**  
*Kontikia*, **R153**  
*Kontikiidae*, **R151**  
*Koonunga*, **R62, R352-R353, R357**  
*Koonungidae*, **R114, R357**  
**KOSSMANN**, **R248**  
*Koubanus*, **R583**  
**KRESTOVNIKOV**, **R308, R313**  
**KRÜGER**, **R207, R237, R249-R250**  
*Kubanus*, **R583**  
**KUMMEROW**, **R311**  
*Kungeja*, **R138**  
**KUNTH**, **R387**  
*Kysyltamia*, **R140**
- LABIATA**, **R574**  
 labium, **R97**  
 labrum, **R97, R120**  
**LACAZE-DUTHIERS**, **R249**  
 lacinia, **R97**  
*lacinia mobilis*, **R97**  
**LADD**, **R208**  
**LAEMODIPODA**, **R390**  
*Laevicarcinus*, **R527**  
*Laeviprosopon*, **R484**  
*Laeviranina*, **R412, R500**  
**LAEVISCUDA**, **R112, R149**  
*Lambridae*, **R505**  
*Lambropsis*, **R532**  
*lambrus*, **R506**  
 laminae, **R421**  
*Lamprocaris*, **R316**  
*Lampropelta*, **R551**  
**LANG**, **R200**
- LANKESTER**, **R15, R19**  
*Laomedia*, **R477**  
*Laomediidae*, **R125, R445, R477**  
 lappet, **R97, R333**  
*lasiopod*, **R97**  
*lasiopod cirri*, **R235**  
*Lassophora*, **R601**  
 lateral, **R93, R97**  
 lateral bar, **R97**  
 lateral carina, **R91, R97**  
 lateral depressor pit, **R97**  
 lateral gastrocardiac markings, **R97,  
     R408**  
 lateral margin, **R97, R223, R406**  
 lateral tooth, **R93, R97**  
*Latona*, **R165**  
**LATREILLE**, **R361, R542, R574,  
     R599**  
*Latreilia*, **R440, R490**  
*Latreilliidae*, **R490**  
*Latreillopsis*, **R490**  
 latus, **R97, R220**  
**LATZEL**, **R581**  
*Latzelia*, **R605-R606**  
*Laura*, **R249, R274**  
*Lauridae*, **R113, R273**  
**LEACH**, **R249, R361, R574**  
*Leaia*, **R147, R159**  
*Leaiadidae*, **R157**  
*Leaianella*, **R159**  
*Leaiidae*, **R112, R157**  
*Leaiodea*, **R112, R157**  
*Leander*, **R107**  
*Lebesconteia*, **R326**  
*Lebescontia*, **R326**  
*Lecythocaris*, **R484**  
**LEHMANN**, **R140**  
*Leiochilus*, **R513**  
**Lepadidae**, **R113, R220, R222,  
     R225, R248, R250, R261,  
     R267, R278**  
*Lepadinae*, **R250**  
**LEPADOMORPHA**, **R113, R213,  
     R215, R218-R219, R225, R229-  
     R231, R235-R236, R245, R250,  
     R261, R275**  
*Lepas*, **R61, R67, R214, R218,  
     R221-R223, R233, R236, R243,  
     R245, R249-R250, R263, R267,  
     R278**  
*Lepidocarididae*, **R113, R185**  
*Lepidocaris*, **R185**  
*Lepidocoleidae*, **R250**  
*Lepidurus*, **R64, R131, R133, R135,  
     R137, R176**  
**LEPONA**, **R596**  
*Leptestheria*, **R144-R145, R151**  
*Leptestheriidae*, **R112, R151**  
**LEPTOCARIDA**, **R312**  
*Leptocheirus*, **R361**  
*Leptocheles*, **R315**  
*Leptochirus*, **R451**  
*Leptodora*, **R164, R168, R176**  
*Leptodoridae*, **R113, R176**  
*Leptognathia*, **R372**  
*Leptolimnadia*, **R150**  
*Leptomithrax*, **R429, R502**  
*Leptonotus*, **R315**  
*Leptosquilla*, **R551**

- LEPTOSTRACA, R51, R109,  
R113, R303, R309, R311-R312  
*Leratiocaris*, R315  
Lernaediscidae, R113, R272, R628  
Lernaediscus, R272  
LERNAEOPODOIDA, R113  
LERNAEOPOIDA, R200  
Leucosia, R496  
*Leucosidae*, R495  
*Leucosides*, R496  
Leucosiidae, R115, R404, R407,  
R440, R442, R445, R495  
Leucosilia, R497  
*Levenkia*, R154  
Leydigia, R168, R173  
Libinia, R504  
*Ligella*, R628  
Lightiella, R124, R128  
Lightiellidae, R112, R128  
Ligia, R22  
Ligidium, R61, R70, R80  
Ligyda, R362  
LILLJEBORG, R248  
LIMACOMORPHA, R584  
Limnadia, R130, R142-R143, R150  
*Limnadiadae*, R149  
Limnadiidae, R112, R149  
limnadiiformes, R97, R149  
Limnadiinae, R112, R150  
Limnadioidea, R112, R149  
*Limnadiopseidae*, R162  
*Limnadiopseites*, R162  
*Limnadiopseoidea*, R160  
Limnadiopsileia, R162  
*Limnadiopsis*, R162  
*Limnadiopsium*, R162  
Limnadopsidae, R112, R162  
Limnadopsis, R144, R147, R162  
Limnesteria, R145  
*Limnetis*, R149  
Limnadiiidae, R149, R372  
*Limnocaris*, R302, R315  
Limnoriidae, R372  
Limulus, R31-R32, R53, R611  
LINDER, R130, R132  
linea, R97  
linea anomurica, R97, R407  
linea branchiostegalis, R97  
linea dromica, R97, R407  
linea dromiida, R97  
linea homolica, R97, R407  
linea lateralis, R97  
linea thalassinica, R97, R406  
Lingulocaris, R330  
*Lingulocarys*, R330  
*Lingulocasis*, R330  
LINNÉ, R249, R542, R574  
Linuparus, R426, R435, R473  
*Liocarcinus*, R512  
Liocaris, R345, R533  
liosteria, R151  
*Lioestheriidae*, R151  
*Liogaster*, R464  
*Liograpta*, R151  
*Lioleaia*, R159  
*Lioleaiaina*, R159  
*Lioleaiainae*, R157  
Lipaesthesia, R518  
LIPOSTRACA, R113, R183  
Lissocardia, R410, R457, R626  
Lissopsis, R532  
LITHOBIIDA, R576, R599, R600-  
R603  
Lithobiidae, R603  
LITHOBIOMORPHA, R37, R45  
LITHOBIOMORPHA, R599, R603  
Lithobius, R18, R23, R39, R46,  
R600, R603  
Lithodes, R75, R481  
Lithodidae, R115, R412, R425,  
R445, R481  
Lithoglyptes, R231-R233, R235,  
R271  
Lithoglyptidae, R113, R271  
Lithophylax, R514  
Lithotrya, R241, R250, R261, R277  
Litogaster, R410, R464  
Litoricola, R574  
*Lobocarcinidae*, R509  
Lobocarcininae, R115, R509  
Lobocarcinus, R440, R510  
Lobonotus, R518  
LOCHHEAD, R426  
Locomotion (decapods), R426  
LÖRENTHEY, R532  
LÖRENTHEY & BEURLEN, R510  
Loerentheya, R531  
Lomida, R115, R445, R481  
Lomis, R481  
*Lomisidae*, R481  
LONGHURST, R132-R133  
Longipedia, R253  
longitudinal septum, R97, R226  
longitudinal tubes, R226  
LOPHOGASTRIDA, R114, R364-  
R365  
Lophogastridae, R365, R533  
Lophonotus, R583  
Lophopanopeus, R520  
Lophoranina, R498, R627  
Lophoraninella, R500  
*Lophoxanthus*, R520  
LORICATA, R442, R471  
*Loricula*, R281  
*Loriculidae*, R250, R281  
Loriculina, R281  
lower latera, R220  
lower lateral, R97  
lower latus, R97  
lower lip, R97  
*Loxomegaglypta*, R154  
*Loxomegaglyptinae*, R154  
*Loxomicroglypta*, R154  
*Loxopolygrapta*, R154  
Loxrhynchus, R504  
Loxothylacus, R628  
LUBBOCK, R574  
LUNDQUIST, R168  
*Lupa*, R510  
Lupeites, R533  
Lupocyclus, R510  
Lynceidae, R112, R149  
*Lynceites*, R135  
*Lynceiidae*, R135  
*Lynceoida*, R119  
Lynceus, R144, R147, R149, R168  
Lyreidus, R412, R500  
*Lysioerichthus*, R551  
*LYSIOPETALOIDEA*, R592  
Lysiosquilla, R539, R551  
*Lysiosquillinae*, R546  
*Machaerophorus*, R447  
Mackenzia, R331  
Macrobrachium, R72  
*Macrocaris*, R315, R322  
Macrocheira, R418, R504  
*Macrolimnadiopsis*, R162  
Macrophthalminae, R116, R530  
Macrophthalmus, R412, R415,  
R424, R431, R530-R531  
*Macropipinae*, R115, R512, R627  
Macropipus, R406, R512  
MACROSTERNI, R577, R582  
MACRURA, R400-R401, R425,  
R435, R442, R444  
MACRURA NATANTIA, R442  
MACRURA REPTANTIA, R442  
MADSEN & WOLFF, R213  
Maerothrix, R64  
Magila, R410, R477  
*Maiadae*, R502  
MAIKOVSKY, R39  
Maja, R419, R431, R502  
Majidae, R115, R404, R425, R427,  
R440, R445, R502  
Majinae, R115, R502  
Malacolepadidac, R113, R279  
Malacolepas, R279  
MALACOSTRACA, R13, R23,  
R51, R60, R69, R109, R113,  
R252, R295-R296, R361, R542,  
R567-R568, R571  
male-cell receptacle, R98  
Malpighian tubules, R9  
MALZAHN, R308, R312, R369  
*Mamaja*, R502  
Mamayocaris, R335, R345  
manca, R98  
mancoid stages, R98, R307  
mandible, R8, R98, R333, R347,  
R417  
mandible body, R98, R304  
mandibular foramen, R98  
mandibular palp, R98  
MANDIBULATA, R575  
Manningia, R551-R552  
mantle, R98  
mantle cavity, R98  
MANTON, R19, R51, R310, R615  
manus, R98, R404-R405  
MARCK, VON DER, R455  
marginal groove, R92, R98, R406  
Marria, R571, R622  
*Marriocarida*, R622  
*Marriocaridae*, R622  
*Marriocarididae*, R622  
marsupium, R98, R335  
MARTIN, R205  
Martinezicancer, R527  
Martinocarcinus, R532  
Massagetes, R159  
masticatory process, R98  
mastigobranch, R98, R421  
MASTIGOMYRIL, R570  
mastigopus stage, R98  
MATERN, R329

- MATHIAS, R134  
 MATTOX, R143, R145  
 MATTOX & VELARDO, R146  
 Matuta, R495  
 Matutinae, R115, R495  
 maxilla, R98, R333, R347, R417  
 maxillary gland, R87, R98  
 maxilliped, R83, R98, R350, R417  
*maxillipede*, R98  
*maxillipes*, R98  
 MAXILLOPODA, R208, R229, R234, R252  
 maxillule, R98, R347, R417  
 Mecistocephalus, R599  
 Mecochiridae, R115, R443, R445, R464, R627  
 Mecochirus, R410, R430, R464, R466  
 Medaeus, R520  
 median articulated spine, R98, R336  
 median dorsal plate, R98, R300  
 median eye, R98, R131  
 median lateral, R98  
 median latus, R98, R220  
 Megabalanus, R228-R229, R238, R270, R285  
*Megachirus*, R464  
*Megadactylus*, R618  
 Megalasma, R230, R236, R250, R279  
 megalopa, R422  
 megalopa stage, R98  
 megalops stage, R98  
 Meganyctiphanes, R72, R394, R396, R398  
 Meinertophilus, R600  
 Melita, R390  
 Membranobalanus, R270, R286  
 Mendocaris, R326  
 MENGE, R59  
 Menippe, R77, R520  
 MENZIES, R387  
 MEROCHAETA, R594  
 meropod (ite), R98  
 MEROSTOMATA, R5, R11, R13, R23, R53  
 MERTIN, R434  
 merus, R83, R98, R404-R405, R416  
 Mesacturus, R551  
 mesenteron, R98  
 Mesidotea, R381  
 Mesidoteinae, R114, R381  
*Mesidoteini*, R381  
 mesobranchial area, R98, R406  
 mesobranchial lobe, R98  
 mesobranchial region (crab carapace), R404, R406  
 mesocerebrum, R98  
 Mesodromilites, R486, R627  
 Mesogalatheia, R406, R429, R482  
 mesogastric area, R98, R406  
 mesogastric lobe, R98  
 mesogastric region (crab carapace), R404, R406  
*Mesoleaia*, R157  
 Mesoprosopidae, R116, R569  
 Mesoprosopon, R570  
*Mesoprosoponidae*, R569  
 Mesorhoa, R508  
 Mesoscalpellum, R216, R224-R225, R250, R265, R277  
 mesosome, R98  
 mesosternum, R98, R412  
*Mesothyra*, R321  
*Mesothyris*, R321  
 MESSIATZEV, R168  
 Metabalanus, R270, R286  
 metabranchial area, R98, R406  
 metabranchial lobe, R98  
 metabranchial region (crab carapace), R404-R406  
*Metacarcinus*, R509  
 metacerebrum, R98  
 metagastric area, R98, R406  
 metagastric lobe, R98  
 metagastric region (crab carapace), R404-R405  
*Metaleaia*, R159  
 metanauplius, R98, R422  
 Metarhabdostichia, R154  
 metasoma, R98  
 metasome, R98  
 metastoma, R98  
 Metaverruca, R283  
 metazoea, R98  
 METCHNIKOV, R311  
 metopon, R98, R413  
 Meyeria, R410, R464  
 Micraspides, R357  
 Microcorystes, R486, R532  
 Microgaster, R273  
 Microlepas, R250, R281  
 Micromaia, R504  
 Micromaiinae, R115, R502  
*Micromaja*, R504  
*Micromajinae*, R502  
 Micromithrax, R502  
*Microplax*, R527  
 Micropsalis, R454  
 midgut, R85, R98  
 MIERS, R442  
 MILNE-EDWARDS, R311, R442, R542  
*Mimaster*, R623  
*Mimeaster*, R623  
 Mimetaster, R623  
*Mimoleaia*, R159  
 Mioplax, R426, R524  
 Miskoia, R331  
*Mitella*, R220  
 Mithracia, R504  
 Mithracites, R488, R627  
 Mithrax, R77  
 mode of life (euphausiaceans), R396  
*Modiolocaris*, R330  
 Moina, R166-R167  
 molar process, R98, R349  
*Mollisonia*, R393  
 molting, R422, crustaceans, R105; decapods, R431  
 MONOCHETA, R588-R589  
 MONOD, R366, R387  
 Monodella, R63, R367  
 MONOGNATHA, R11-R12, R574  
 MONOKONOPHORA, R114, R370-R371  
 Monoleaia, R157  
 Monoleiophinae, R112, R157  
 Monoleiopholus, R157  
*Monoleiopholus*, R157  
 Monomia, R510  
 MONONA, R596  
 MONOPODA, R596  
 Monospilus, R166-R167  
 MONOSTRACA, R131  
 MONOZONIA, R592  
 Monstrilla, R66  
 MONSTRILLOIDA, R113, R200  
 Montecaridinae, R113, R318  
 Montecaris, R303, R312, R319  
 Montezumella, R440, R508  
 MONURA, R50  
*Moreiriella*, R206  
 morphology, arthropleurids, R607; branchiurans, R203; cephalocarids, R120; cirripeds, R213; crustaceans, R79; cycloids, R567; decapods, R401; eocarids, R333; euphausiaceans, R394; euthycarcinoids, R196; phyllocarids, R297; stomatopods, R535; syncarids, R347  
 movable finger, R98, R417  
 MOYSEY & WOODWARD, R616  
 mucro, R98  
 MÜNSTER, R387  
*Muensteria*, R470  
 MÜLLER, R248  
 Munida, R74, R406, R482  
 Munidopsinae, R115, R482  
 Munidopsis, R482  
 Munitheites, R482  
 Munnopsidae, R372  
 Munnopsis, R382  
 Mursia, R494  
 Mursilia, R495  
 Mursiopsis, R495  
 musculature (crustacean), R84  
 Mycetomorpha, R249, R273  
 Myocaris, R331  
 Myra, R497  
 MYRIAPODA, R5, R8-R9, R11-R13, R23, R27, R38-R39, R572-R573, R575-R576, R607, R617  
 Myriocladus, R275  
 MYRIOPODA, R574  
*Myrtonius*, R464  
 MYSIDA, R114, R365  
 MYSIDACEA, R61, R71, R88, R109, R114, R336, R362-R363, R364, R386-R387, R434, R533, R542, R616  
 Mysis, R61-R62, R81, R393, R422  
 mysis stage, R98  
 MYSTACOCARIDA, R13, R51, R61, R113, R192, R195, R252  
 MYSTACOCARIDIDA, R113, R195  
*Mytilocaris*, R330  
 NAHECARIDA, R315, R321  
 NAHECARINA, R321  
 Nahecaris, R303-R305, R309-R310, R315, R322, R337  
 Nannosquilla, R540, R551

- NATANTIA*, R400-R401, R435, R438, R442, R444, R446  
 naupliar eye, 99  
 nauplius, R81, R98, R103, R244, R422  
*Nautilograpsoides*, R529  
*Nautilograpsus*, R529  
*Nebalia*, R61, R65, R81, R87, R297, R300, R302-R303, R305-R306, R308, R310-R313, R337  
*NEBALIACEA*, R312, R543  
*NEBALIADAE*, R312  
*Nebalida*, R312  
*Nebaliidae*, R312  
*Nebaliella*, R302-R303, R307-R308, R312-R313  
*Nebaliidae*, R113, R311-R312  
*NEBALIINA*, R312  
*Nebaliopsis*, R52, R297, R302-R303, R305, R307-R309, R312, R314  
 neck organ, R99  
*Necrocarcinus*, R426, R435, R440, R495, R627  
*Necrogammarus*, R393  
*Necronectes*, R512  
*Necroscilla*, R344, R544  
*Necrozius*, R517  
*NECTOCARIDA*, R443  
*NECTOCHELIDA*, R443  
*Nectotelson*, R355  
*Nectotelsonides*, R355  
*Nehecaris*, R322  
*Nemasomatidae*, R591  
*Nemasomidae*, R591  
*Nemasominae*, R591  
*Nematobranchion*, R395, R398  
*Nematoscelis*, R394  
*Neocarcinus*, R495, R627  
*Neomysis*, R62  
*Neonebalia*, R313  
*Neophoberinae*, R115, R459  
*Neophoberus*, R425, R460  
*Neoscalpellum*, R250  
*Neosoma*, R387  
 nephropore, R99, R348, R421  
*Nephropidae*, R115, R410, R412, R425, R442, R445, R458  
*Nephropinae*, R115, R458  
*Nephrops*, R81, R403, R409-R410, R458  
*Nephropsidae*, R410, R443, R458  
*NEPHROPSIDEA*, R403, R443-R444  
*Nephropsis*, R458  
*Neptocarcinus*, R520  
*Neptunus*, R510  
 nervous system (crustacean), R85  
*Neurocaris*, R328  
 NICHOLLS, R353  
 NILSSON-CANTELL, R207, R250  
*Nodoprosopon*, R484  
*Noetlingia*, R487  
 NOODT, R349, R354-R355  
*NORMALLA*, R442  
*Norna*, R393, R464  
*Nothozoe*, R326  
*Notocarididae*, R114, R345  
*Notocaris*, R336-R337, R345  
*Notocrypta*, R150  
*NOTODELPHYOIDA*, R113, R200  
*Notodelphys*, R66  
*Notopella*, R501  
*NOTOPHYLLA*, R131  
*Notopocorystes*, R412, R429, R431, R500  
*Notopoides*, R500  
*Notoporanina*, R500  
*Notopus*, R500  
*Notosceles*, R500  
*NOTOSTIGMOPHORA*, R599  
*NOTOSTOMATA*, R599  
*Notostomus*, R452  
*Notostraca*, R61, R112, R131  
*Nototanais*, R71  
 notum, R99, R406  
 Novozhukov, R137, R617  
 nuchal organ, R99, R131  
*Nucia*, R498  
*Nyasetheriella*, R157  
*Nyctiphanes*, R396  
*Nymphacops*, R459  
*Nyraniidae*, R587  
*Nyranius*, R587  
*Ocalina*, R520  
 occipital notch, R99  
 occludent margin, R99, R222, R224  
 occludent teeth, R99  
 ocellus, R99  
 octolasmis, R225, R235, R237, R250-R251, R266, R281  
*Octomeris*, R227, R269, R284  
 ocular bulla, R99, R415  
 ocular papilla, R99, R352  
 ocular peduncle, R99, R415  
*Ocypoda*, R530  
*Ocypode*, R530  
*Ocypodidae*, R116, R421, R445, R530, R532  
*Ocypodinae*, R116, R530  
*OCYPODOIDA*, R443, R530  
*Ocypodoidea*, R116, R441-R442, R445-R446, R530  
*Odaraia*, R326  
*Odaria*, R326  
*Odontodactylus*, R536, R551  
*Odontoerichthus*, R551  
*Odria*, R326  
*Oedisoma*, R532  
*oesophagus*, R99  
 Ogydromites, R485  
*Ohiocarididae*, R114, R323  
*Ohiocaris*, R304, R323  
 olfactory hair, R99  
*OLIGOSTIGMATA*, R598, R604  
*Olinaecaris*, R533  
 ommatidium, R99  
*Ommatocarcinus*, R415, R525  
*OMMATOPHORA*, R589  
*Onchypoda*, R175  
*ONCHYURA*, R141  
*Oncopareia*, R419, R425, R431, R459  
*Oniscidae*, R114, R382  
*Oniscinae*, R114, R384  
*ONISCOIDEA*, R114, R361, R371-R373, R381  
*ONISCOMORPHA*, R584  
*Oniscus*, R384  
*Onomeris*, R585  
 ontogeny, cirripeds, R243; conchostracan, R146; crustaceans, R103; decapods, R422; eocarids, R336; euphauciaceans, R395; euthycarcinoids, R198; phyllocarids, R307; stomatopods, R540; syncarids, R352  
*ONYCHOPHORA*, R5, R8-R9, R12-R13, R23, R39, R50, R53  
*Oonocarcinus*, R569  
 oostegite, R83, R99, R333  
 oostegopod, R99  
 opercular valve, R99, R226  
*OPERCULATA*, R249  
 operculum, R99  
*Ophiomorpha*, R430  
*Ophthalmapseudes*, R370-R371  
 ophthalmic somite, R99  
*Ophthalmoplax*, R514, R532  
*OPISTHANDRIA*, R584  
*OPISTHOGONEATA*, R574  
 OPITZ, R623  
*Oplophoridae*, R114, R445, R452  
*Oplophorinae*, R452  
*Oplophorus*, R425, R452  
 OPPEL, R475  
*Opsipeden*, R393  
*Opsipolygrapta*, R151  
 optic lobe, R99  
 orbit, R99  
 orbital carina, R91, R99  
 orbital hiatus, R99  
 orbital region (crab carapace), R92, R99, R404, R406  
 orbital tooth, R93, R99  
*Orconectes*, R75  
*Orhomalus*, R481  
 orifice, R99, R226  
*Orithopsis*, R492  
*Orithopsis*, R627  
*Orozoe*, R308, R320  
*Orphnea*, R463  
*Orthothemos*, R154  
*ORTHOZONIA*, R589  
 ORTMANN, R442  
 ostium, R99  
*OSTRACODA*, R13, R51, R61, R195, R386-R387  
 outer lamina, R226  
*Ovalipes*, R104, R512  
 oviduct, R99  
 ovigerous frena, R99, R244  
 ovigerous lamella, R99, R243  
 Ovurium, R153  
*Oxlosia*, R328  
*OXYMORPHA*, R439  
*Oxynaspidae*, R250  
*Oxynaspididae*, R113, R222, R224, R225, R263, R279  
*Oxynaspidinae*, R250  
*Oxynaspis*, R221-R225, R250, R261, R263, R279, R350  
*OXYRHYNCHA*, R115, R404, R407, R424-R427, R431, R435, R439-R443, R445-R446, R502  
*OXYSTOMATA*, R115, R404,

- R425, R427, R436, R439-R443, R446, **R491**, R498  
*Oxythureus*, R439, **R489**  
*Oxyuropoda*, R393, **R621**  
*OXYUROPODIDA*, R621  
*Ozolus*, R205
- Pachydiadema*, R269, **R284**  
*Pachylasma*, R228, R269, **R284**  
*Pachymerium*, R600  
 PACKARD, R15, R311, R346, R353-R354, R567  
*Paeomopodidae*, R590  
*Paguridae*, R115, R412-R442, R445, **R479**  
*Paguridea*, R442-R444  
*Pagurii*, R479  
*Pagurinae*, R115, **R479**  
*Paguristes*, **R480**  
*Paguristinae*, R479  
*Paguroidea*, R115, R407, R413-R414, R419, R421, R424-R426, R428-R429, R435, R437-R438, R442, R445-R446, **R479**  
*Pagurolepas*, **R281**  
*Pagurus*, R106, R110, R428, **R479**  
*Palacarides*, R315  
*Palaeastacus*, R429, **R455**, R626  
*Palaeestheria*, R151  
*Palaeaga*, R374, **R380**  
*Palaeinachus*, R484  
*Palaeamon*, R425, **R452**  
*Palaeamonidae*, R114, R407, R416, R426, R429, R445, **R452**  
*Palaeemysis*, R340, R342  
*Palaeo*, R459  
*Palaeocampa*, R605  
*Palaeocarabus*, R344  
*PALAEOCARIDA*, R315  
 PALAEOCARIDACEA, R114, R354-R355  
*Palaeocaridae*, R355  
*Palaeocarididae*, R114, **R355**  
*Palaeocaris*, R61, R348-R355  
*Palaeocarpilius*, **R520**  
*Palaeocorystes*, R500  
*PALAEOCOXPLEURA*, R577  
*Palaeocrangon*, **R386**  
*Palaeocreusia*, R208  
*Palaeocuma*, **R369**  
*Palaeodromites*, R488  
*Palaeogammarus*, **R390**  
*Palaeograpsus*, **R529**  
*Palaeohomarus*, R410, R426, R431, **R459**  
*Palaeoisopus*, R393  
*Palaeojulus*, R605  
*Palaeolimnadia*, **R150**  
*Palaeolimnadiopsis*, **R162**  
*PALAEOMORPHA*, R585  
*Palaeomunida*, **R482**  
*Palaeomunidopsis*, **R482**  
*Palaeomyra*, **R498**  
*Palaeonephrops*, **R458**  
*Palaeoniscus*, R378  
*Palaeonotopus*, R498  
*Palaeoorchestia*, R355  
*Palaeoorthothemos*, R151  
*Palaeopagurus*, **R481**  
*Palaeopalaemon*, R333, R336-R338, **R342**, R436  
*Palaeopalaemonidae*, R114, **R342**  
*Palaeopalinurus*, R410, **R474**  
*Palaeopemphix*, R339, R435  
*Palaeopentacheles*, R418, **R471**  
*Palaeophoberus*, R410, R425  
*Palaeophreatoicidae*, R114, **R386**  
*Palaeophreatoicus*, **R386**  
*Palaeopinnixa*, R627  
*Palaeoplax*, **R532**  
*Palaeopolychcles*, **R471**  
*Palaeopseudobalanus*, R208  
*Palaeosoma*, R577-R578  
*Palaeosphaeroma*, R377  
 PALAEOSTOMATOPODA, R116, R333, R341, R533-R534, R535  
*Palaeosyncaris*, R351, R353, **R355**  
*Palaeotanais*, **R371**  
*Palaeoxanthopsis*, **R520**  
 palate, **R99**  
*Palaxius*, R431  
*Palahomola*, **R490**  
*Palenarthrus*, **R605**-R606  
 paleoecology, arthropleurids, R614;  
 cephalocarids, R125; copepods, R200; decapods, R424; eocarids, R336; phyllocarids, R308; syncarids, R352  
*Paleoleptestheria*, R151  
*Paleolimnadia*, R150  
*Paleolimnadiinae*, R150  
*Paleolimnadiopsis*, R162  
*Paleolynceinae*, R149  
 PALEOSTRACÉS, R315  
*Palermisca*, R163  
 Palicidae, R116, R418, R421, R440-R441, R445, **R531**  
*Palicus*, **R531**  
*Palinostus*, R473  
 PALINURA, R115, R401, R417, R421, R425, R435-R436, R438, R442-R446, **R463**  
*Palinuridae*, R115, R412, R417, R419, R435, R442, R445, **R471**  
*Palinurina*, **R474**  
*Palinurini*, R471  
*Palinuroidea*, R115, R413-R415, R417-R418, R422, R425, R427, R435, R437-R438, R446, **R471**  
*Palinurus*, R75, R410, **R471**, R425  
 palm, **R99**  
 palp, **R99**, R305  
 palp foramen, **R99**, R305  
*Palpipes*, R474  
 palpus, **R99**  
*Panacanthocaris*, R137, **R140**  
*PANCARIDA*, R366  
*Pandalus*, R81  
*Panopeus*, R435, **R520**  
*PANTASTIGMATA*, R598, R603  
 PANTIN, R19  
*Parabathynella*, R358  
*Paracalantica*, R267, **R277**  
*Parachaeraps*, R432  
*Paraclythia*, R410, **R459**  
*Paraclytia*, R410, R459  
*Paraclytiopsis*, **R457**  
*Paracoeloma*, **R524**  
 paracopulatory organ, **R99**  
*Paracyamus*, R108  
*Paracyclois*, R494  
*Paraglyphea*, R410, R463  
 paragnath, **R99**  
*Paraulidae*, R591  
*Parajulidae*, R591  
*Parajulinae*, R591  
*Parajulus*, **R591**  
*Paraleaia*, **R159**  
*Paralepas*, R231-R232, R234, R250, **R278**  
*Paralithodes*, R107  
*Paralitogaster*, **R626**  
*Paramarria*, R571, **R623**  
*Paranaspides*, R339, R353, **R356**  
*Paranebalia*, R36, R302, R305-R306, R310, R312-R314  
*Paranecrocarcinus*, **R495**  
*Paranephropsidae*, **R455**  
 PARANEPHROPSIDEA, R443  
*Parapenaeus*, R407  
*Parapinnixa*, **R528**  
*Parapirimela*, **R509**  
*Paraprosopon*, R569  
 PARASELLOIDEA, R372  
 parasitism, crustaceans, R111;  
 decapods, R428  
*Parasothorax*, **R273**  
*Parasquilla*, **R552**  
*Parastacidae*, R115, R426, R443, R445, **R462**  
*Parastacus*, **R462**  
*Parastygocaris*, R347, R349, **R358**  
*Paratanaidae*, R370  
*Parathranites*, R513  
*Paratriopsidae*, R138  
*Paratymolus*, R504  
*paries*, **R99**, R222, R226  
 parietal septum, **R99**  
 parietal tube, **R99**  
 parietal valve, **R99**  
*Pariphiculus*, **R498**  
*Paromola*, R406  
*Parribacus*, **R475**  
*Parthenolambrus*, R506  
*Parthenope*, R506  
*Parthenopea*, R628  
*Parthenopidae*, R115, R427, R429, R440, R445, **R505**, R532  
*Parthenopina*, R505  
*Parthenopinae*, R115, **R506**  
 pars ampullaris, **R99**  
 pars incisiva, **R99**  
 pars molaris, **R99**  
 PASSANO, R422  
 pathology (phyllocarids), R306  
*Pattonia*, **R578**  
 parva stage, **R99**  
*Paulocaris*, **R345**  
 PAUROPODA, R9-R10, R12-R13, R32, R39, R42-R43, R573-R576, **R596**-R597  
 PAUROPODIDA, R576, **R597**  
*Pauropus*, R39, R43, R596  
 PEACH, R330, R332-R333, R336, R338, R340-R341, R534, R578, R619  
 PEARSE, R134

- peduncle, R99, R217, R333  
*PEDUNCULATA*, R249  
 PELSENER, R434  
*Peltocaridae*, R329  
*Peltocariden*, R329  
*Peltocarididae*, R114, R329  
*Peltocaris*, R329  
*Peltocharis*, R329  
*Peltogaster*, R110, R210, R248, R272  
*Peltogasterella*, R244, R628  
*Peltogastridae*, R113, R272, R628  
*Pemphicidae*, R115, R445, R467, R626  
*PEMPHICIDEA*, R443  
*PEMPHICOIDA*, R443  
*Pemphicyclus*, R160-R161  
*Pemphilimnadiopsidac*, R112, R162  
*Pemphilimnadiopsis*, R162  
*Pemphix*, R410, R427, R431, R435, R437-R438, R467  
*Penaeidae*, R114, R407, R412, R425, R434, R445, R447  
 PENAEIDEA, R114, R401, R413-R417, R421, R425, R427, R436-R438, R442-R447  
*PENAEIDES*, R442  
*Penaeinae*, R447  
*Penaeoidea*, R114, R435, R445-R447  
*Penaeopsis*, R401  
*Penaeus*, R72, R425, R447  
*Peneidea*, R447  
*Peneidia*, R447  
 PENICILLATA, R576, R583  
*penicillus*, R99  
*Penilia*, R167  
*penis*, R99  
 PENNAK, R130, R147, R165  
*Pentacheles*, R471  
 PENTASTOMIDA, R13  
 PENTAZONIA, R576-R577, R580, R582, R584  
*Pentidotea*, R65, R108  
*Pephracaridae*, R319  
*Pephracarididae*, R113, R319  
*Pephracaris*, R303, R319  
*Pephracaris*, R319  
*Peracantha*, R168  
 PERACARIDA, R52, R71, R109, R114, R340-R341, R354, R360, R362, R366  
*peraeopod*, R99  
*Percantha*, R173  
*pereion*, R99  
*pereionite*, R99  
*pereiopod*, R83, R100, R333, R347, R417  
*pereon*, R100  
*pereopod*, R100  
*Periacanthidae*, R502  
*Periacanthus*, R502  
*pericardium*, R100  
*Perimecturidae*, R116, R535  
*Perimecturus*, R340-R341, R533-R535  
*Peripatopsis*, R30, R38-R39  
*Peripatus*, R30, R45  
*peritrophic membrane*, R100  
*Persephona*, R76, R498  
*petasma*, R100, R419  
*Petrarca*, R275  
*Petrarcidae*, R113, R274  
*Petrobius*, R25, R28, R49-R50  
*Petrocarcinus*, R514  
*Petrochirus*, R480  
*Petrolisthes*, R76-R77, R483  
*Phalangites*, R422, R474  
*pharynx*, R100  
*Phasganocaris*, R320  
*Phasgonocaris*, R320  
*PHILLOCARIDA*, R312  
*Philyra*, R498  
*Phinocaris*, R321  
*Phlyctenodes*, R520  
*Phlyctisoma*, R429, R455, R626  
*Phoberinae*, R459  
*Phoberus*, R460  
*Pholeus*, R430  
*photophore*, R88  
*photosphere*, R100  
 PHREATOICIDEA, R71, R114, R371, R373, R384  
*Phreatoicus*, R71  
*Phrynotambrus*, R506  
*Phryssonotus*, R583  
*phyllobranch*, R100, R421  
*phyllobranchia*, R100  
*PHYLLOBRANCHIATA*, R442  
*PHYLLOCARDIA*, R312  
 PHYLLOCARIDA, R61, R69, R109, R113, R296, R309, R311-R312, R567-R568  
*PHYLLODARIDA*, R312  
*PHYLLOPODA*, R131, R141, R176  
*PHYLLOPODA ANOSTRACA*, R176  
*PHYLLOPODA PISCIFORMIS*, R176  
*phyllopodium*, R83, R100  
*Phyllosoma*, R422, R542  
*phyllosoma stage*, R100  
*PHYLOSTRACA*, R312  
*phylogeny, cirripeds*, 252; *decapods*, R436; *coocarids*, R337; *phyllocarids*, R309; *syncarids*, R353  
*Phymatocarcinus*, R517  
*Physocaris*, R315  
*Phytocaris*, R315  
*Pierrepruvostia*, R157  
*Pilodius*, R520  
 PILSBRY, R207, R225, R235, R250, R265  
*Pilumnoplax*, R527  
*Pilumnus*, R520  
*Pinacariidae*, R321  
*Pinnicaridae*, R321  
*Pinnixa*, R528, R627  
*Pinnocaris*, R331  
*Pinnoteridae*, R429  
*Pinnotheres*, R421, R528  
*Pinnotheridae*, R116, R441, R445, R527, R627  
*Piratella*, R457  
*Pisa*, R416, R504  
*Pisinae*, R115, R504  
*Pisiscapellum*, R278  
*Pisomaja*, R504  
*Pithonotinae*, R115, R485, R627  
*Pithonoton*, R429, R485  
*Plagiascetidae*, R588  
*Plagiascetus*, R588  
*Plagiolophus*, R526  
*Plagiophthalmus*, R435, R486  
*Planes*, R424, R529  
*Platycarcinus*, R509  
*Platycheila*, R458, R626  
*Platychelidae*, R115, R445, R458, R626  
 PLATYDESMIDA, R576, R593  
 PLATYDESMOIDEA, R593  
*Platylambrus*, R506  
*Platypleon*, R458, R626  
*Platyonichus*, R512-R513  
*Platyonychus*, R513  
*Platypleon*, R458, R627  
*Pleistosphacroma*, R378  
 PLEOCYEMATA, R114, R436, R445-R446, R451  
*Pleolobites*, R513  
*pleomere*, R100  
*pleon*, R100  
*pleonite*, R100  
*pleopod (ite)*, R83, R100, R336, R347, R418  
*pleotelson*, R100  
 PLESIOCERATA, R584  
*pleura*, R100, R413  
*pleural lobe*, R100, R336  
*pleural suture*, R100, R407  
*pleurepimere*, R100  
*pleurite*, R100, R535  
*pleurobranch*, R100, R421  
*pleurobranchia*, R100  
*Pleurocaridae*, R355  
*Pleurocarididae*, R114, R355  
*Pleurocaris*, R351, R355  
*Pleurocrypta*, R386  
*Pleuroiulus*, R595  
*Pleurojulus*, R595, R605  
*pleuron*, R79, R100, R535  
*pleuropod*, R100  
 PLEUROSTIGMOPHORA, R599  
*Pleurostomata*, R599  
*Pleuroxus*, R166, R168, R173  
 PLYLLOCARIDA, R312  
*Pocock*, R573, R599  
*podobranh*, R100, R420  
*podobranhchia*, R100  
*Podocrates*, R473-R474  
*Podocratus*, R473  
*podomere*, R100  
*Podon*, R167  
 PODOPHTHALMA, R361  
*Podophthalminae*, R115, R440, R513  
*podophthalmite*, R100, R415  
*Podophthalmus*, R415, R440, R513  
*Podopilumnus*, R441, R517  
 PODOPLEA, R200  
*podotreme*, R421  
*Poecilasma*, R232, R251, R279  
*Poecilasmatidae*, R113, R225, R250, R264, R279  
*Poecilasmatinae*, R250  
*pollex*, R100

- Pollicipedidae*, R250  
*Pollicipes*, R214, R219-R220, R225-R226, R236, R241, R245, R250, R261, R268, R278  
*Polyxenus*, R583  
*Polyartemia*, R183  
*Polyartemiidae*, R113, R182  
*Polybiinae*, R627  
*Polybius*, R627  
*Polycheles*, R75, R410, R471  
*Polychelidae*, R115, R445, R470  
*Polycnemidium*, R495  
 POLYDESMIDA, R576, R580-R582, R592, R594, R615  
*Polydesmidae*, R595, R617  
 POLYDESMOIDEA, R44, R594  
*Polydesmus*, R16, R595  
*Polygrapta*, R151  
*Polylepas*, R289  
*Polyphemidae*, R113, R175  
*Polyphemoidea*, R113, R175  
*Polyphemus*, R175  
*Polystomurum*, R315  
*Polytrema*, R287  
 POLYXENIDA, R576, R583  
*Polyxenidae*, R583  
*Polyxenus*, R583  
*Polyzoniidae*, R589  
 POLYZONIIDA, R576, R581, R589  
*Polyzoniidae*, R589  
*Polyzonium*, R589  
 POLYZONOIDEA, R589  
*Pontobius*, R551  
*Pontiinae*, R429  
 POPE, R250  
*Poratophilus*, R34  
*Porcellana*, R52, R483  
*Porcellanidae*, R115, R414, R429, R445, R483  
*Porcellio*, R70, R384  
*Porcellionidae*, R114, R384  
*Portalia*, R331  
*Portumnus*, R513  
*Portunidae*, R115, R404, R407, R415, R418, R445, R510, R627  
 PORTUNIDEA, R427  
*Portunidia*, R510  
*Portuninae*, R115, R440, R510  
*Portunites*, R440, R513  
*Portunoidea*, R115, R440-R441, R443, R445-R446, R510, R627  
*Portunus*, R77, R412, R416, R426, R510  
*Portunus*, R512  
*Posidonomya*, R154  
 postabdomen, R100  
 postcephalic groove, R92, R100  
 postcervical groove (decapods), R92, R100, R402  
 postcervical incision, R100  
 postcervical notch, R100  
 posterior cardiac lobe, R100  
 posterior carina, R91, R100  
 posterior gastric pit, R100, R408  
 posterior tooth, R93, R100  
 posterolateral region (crab carapace), R404-R405  
 postlarval stage, R100, R422  
 postorbital carina, R92, R100  
 postorbital spine (crab carapace), R92, R100, R404  
 postrostral carina, R92, R100  
 postrostral spine, R92, R100  
 postsegmental region, R100  
*Potamidae*, R115, R426, R441, R445, R524  
*Potamobüdae*, R443, R460  
*Potamon*, R426, R431-R432, R524  
*Potamonidae*, R524  
*Potimirim*, R452  
 POTTS, R248  
*Praeanaspides*, R355  
*Praearcturus*, R393, R622  
*Praeatya*, R466  
*Praegmelina*, R390  
*Praeleaia*, R159  
*Praeleaiainae*, R157  
*Praelepadiidae*, R113, R205, R221  
*Praelepaspis*, R220, R262, R275  
*precoxa*, R100  
 pre-epipod (ite), R100  
 pregastric tooth, R93, R100  
*Prehepatus*, R495  
 preorbital spine (crab carapace), R404  
 presgmental region, R100  
 prozoa stage, R100  
 PŘIBYL, R616  
 primary denticle, R100  
 primordial plates, R218  
 primordial valve, R100  
*Prionchelius*, R390  
*Prionoplacinae*, R116, R527  
*Prionoplax*, R527  
*Probopyrus*, R88  
*Proboscicaris*, R327  
*Procaris*, R331  
 proctodaeum, R100  
 proctodeum, R100  
 propistome, R100, R413  
*Proerion*, R470, R425  
*Proglomeridae*, R585, R606  
 PROGONEATA, R573  
 progoneate condition, R9  
 PROGYMNOPLEA, R200  
 PROHERPOCHELIDA, R443  
*Proidea*, R381  
*Projulidae*, R606  
*Projulus*, R606  
*Prolepidurus*, R135  
*Propagurites*, R480  
*Propalaeon*, R454  
 PROPODOPLEA, R200  
 propodus, R83, R404-R405  
*Proreacaris*, R331  
*Proreacaris*, R331  
 prosartheta, R100  
 prosoma, R100  
 prosome, R100, R200  
*Prosopidae*, R115, R425, R435, R441, R445, R484, R627  
*Prosopinae*, R115, R484, R627  
*Prosopon*, R410, R484  
*Prosoponidae*, R484  
*Prosoponinae*, R484  
*Prosoponiscus*, R386  
*Protamphisopus*, R385  
*Protaxius*, R424, R431, R477-R478  
 protection (decapods), R427  
*Proteolepas*, R213, R215, R251, R290  
 PROTERANDRIA, R586  
 PROTOSPERMOPHORA, R594  
*Protobalanus*, R208  
*Protocallianassa*, R424, R426, R429, R478  
*Protocallianassinae*, R115, R478  
*Protocarcinus*, R484  
*Protocaris*, R331  
 protocephalon, R100  
 protocerebrum, R100  
*Protoclytiopsis*, R339, R434, R457, R626  
 protogastric area, R406  
 protogastric lobe, R100  
 protogastric region (crab carapace), R405-R406  
*Protoiulidae*, R591  
*Protomitella*, R278  
*Protomonocaris*, R161  
*Protomonida*, R482  
 protopod (ite), R83, R100, R333, R348, R536  
*Protosphaeroma*, R379  
*Protosquilla*, R552  
*Protosyllvestria*, R593  
 PROTOSYNGNATHA, R605  
*Protozoa*, R310, R540, R544  
 protozoa stage, R101, R422  
*Prottracheoniscus*, R384  
 PROTURA, R12-R13, R50  
 proventriculus, R101  
*Proverruca*, R225, R266-R267, R283  
 proximal, R101  
 PRUVOST, R613  
*Psalidopus*, R58  
*Psammocarcininae*, R115, R513  
*Psammocarcinus*, R513  
*Psammograpsus*, R532  
 PSELAPHOGNATHA, R581, R583  
*Pseudacasta*, R287  
*Pseudastacus*, R460  
 pseudopod (ite), R101  
*Pseuderichthus*, R539-R540, R544, R546, R552  
*Pseuderiphia*, R522  
*Pseudestheria*, R151  
*Pseudeuphausia*, R396  
*Pseudoarctolepis*, R307, R327  
*Pseudoasmissia*, R151  
*Pseudocarcinus*, R418, R520  
*Pseudocrangon*, R447  
 PSEUDOCRUSTACEA, R336  
*Pseudocyclograpta*, R154  
*Pseudodontichthyidae*, R321  
*Pseudodontichthys*, R321  
*Pseudodromilites*, R487, R532  
*Pseudoestheriella*, R157  
*Pseudogalatheia*, R344  
*Pseudoglypheia*, R410, R466, R627  
*Pseudoiulus*, R591  
*Pseudolambrus*, R506  
*Pseudoleaia*, R159  
*Pseudolimnadia*, R150  
*Pseudomicippe*, R532

- Pseudonebalia*, R313  
*Pseudopemphix*, R410, R438, R440, R468, R626  
*Pseudopolygrapta*, R151  
*Pseudoranimella*, R500  
*Pseudorhombila*, R527  
*pseudorostrum*, R101  
*Pseudosculda*, R539, R541, R544, R546  
*Pseudosculdidae*, R544, R546  
*Pseudosquilla*, R552  
*Pseudosquillopsis*, R540, R552  
*Pseudoteallicaris*, R345  
*pseudotrachea*, R101  
*Ptenoplacidae*, R531  
*Ptenoplax*, R531  
*Pteriograptia*, R157  
*Pterocaris*, R331  
*Pterochirus*, R464  
*Pterogaster*, R628  
*Pteroleaia*, R159  
*Pteroleperditia*, R307  
*Pterygosquilla*, R547  
*pterygostome*, R101  
*pterygostomial region* (crab carapace), R101, R406  
*pterygostomial spine*, R92, R101  
*PTERYGOTA*, R12, R25, R49-R50  
*Ptychocaris*, R318  
*Ptychascus*, R628  
*Ptychocaris*, R310, R318  
*Putgia*, R505  
*Purkynia*, R605  
*Pustulina*, R481  
*PUTZER*, R392  
*PYCNOGONIDA*, R13  
*Pycnolepas*, R226, R262, R268, R283  
*Pygaspis*, R345  
*Pygocaris*, R302, R320  
*Pygocephalidae*, R114, R344  
*PYGOCEPHALOMORPHA*, R114, R333, R336-R337, R340, R344, R363, R436  
*Pygocephalus*, R332-R333, R335-R336, R338, R341, R344, R364, R544  
*PYGOPHORA*, R113, R248, R271  
*Pylocheles*, R428, R479  
*Pylochelidae*, R115, R428, R442, R445, R479  
*Pyloiulus*, R587  
*Pyrgoma*, R228, R287, R504  
*Pyrgopsella*, R287  
*Pyrgopsis*, R287  
*Pyromaia*, R504
- Quadriasmussia*, R155  
*Quadrileia*, R159  
*Quasicaris*, R331  
*QUENSTEDT*, R371
- Rachura*, R321  
*radius*, R101, R226  
*Raehura*, R321  
*Ragozinia*, R153  
*ramus*, R101  
*Randallia*, R77, R498  
*Ranidina*, R501  
*Ranilia*, R501  
*Ranina*, R412, R431, R498  
*Raninella*, R435, R500-R501, R627  
*Raninellidae*, R498  
*Raninellopsis*, R502  
*Raninidae*, R115, R412-R413, R417, R420-R421, R435-R436, R440, R445, R498, R627  
*Raninoidea*, R115, R415, R439-R442, R445-R446, R498, R627  
*Raninoides*, R77, R502  
*raptorial claw*, R101  
*RATHBUN*, R490, R508, R532  
*Rathbunopon*, R489, R627  
*Rauna*, R450  
*RAYMOND*, R311  
*RCHINOCARINA*, R321  
*receptaculum seminalis*, R101, R419  
*Reckur*, R387  
*regeneration*, crustacean, 107; decapods, R432  
*REIBISCH*, R362  
*REIFF*, R371, R380  
*REINHARD*, R248  
*Reinocaridae*, R321  
*REMES*, R387  
*Remipes*, R484  
*REMY*, R596  
*REMY & AVNIMELECH*, R541  
*reproductive system*, crustaceans, R89; decapods, R427; notostracans, R132  
*REPTANTIA*, R400-R401, R435-R436, R438, R442, R444  
*respiration* (decapods), 426  
*respiratory system* (crustaceans), R85  
*RESSER*, R331  
*retinaculum*, R101  
*Retrocypoda*, R441, R532  
*Retropluma*, R441, R531  
*Retroplumidae*, R116, R418, R425, R445, R531-R532  
*Reussia*, R488  
*Rhabdostichidae*, R154  
*Rhabdostichus*, R155  
*Rhachiosoma*, R513  
*Rhachura*, R321  
*Rhinocardidae*, R321  
*Rhinocaridae*, R321  
*Rhinocarididae*, R113, R300, R309, R321  
*RHINOCARINA*, R113, R310, R321  
*Rhinocarinae*, R321  
*Rhinocaris*, R302-R304, R321  
*Rhinopteroicaris*, R316  
*Rhinopteroicaris*, R316  
*RHIZOCEPHALA*, R113, R209, R211, R248, R259, R272  
*Rhizolepas*, R259, R281  
*RHIZOTHORACIDA*, R249, R273  
*Rhodanicaris*, R450  
*Rhombograptia*, R151  
*Rhynchotalona*, R168, R173  
*Rhynocaris*, R321  
*Ribaut system*, R601  
*RICHARDSON*, R112  
*Rochdalia*, R183  
*RODDA & FISHER*, R272  
*Rodgerella*, R252, R272  
*Rodgerellidae*, R113, R252, R272  
*ROELLIG*, R330  
*ROGER*, R544  
*rosette plate*, R610  
*Rossoestheria*, R151  
*Rossokontikia*, R153  
*Rossolimnadiopsis*, R162  
*rostral*, R217  
*rostral angle*, R101, R223  
*rostral carina*, R92, R101  
*rostral latus*, R97, R220  
*rostral plate*, R101, R227, R303  
*rostral tooth*, R93, R101  
*Rostratoverruca*, R283  
*rostrolateral*, R101  
*Rostroleaia*, R160  
*Rostroleaiinae*, R157  
*rostrum*, R81, R101, R219-R220, R401, R404  
*RÜCKLIN*, R392  
*RUEDEMANN*, R134, R311, R328, R331, R622  
*RUNNSTRÖM*, R247  
*RYDER*, R574
- Saccocaris*, R327  
*Sacculina*, R110, R248, R272  
*Sacculinidae*, R113, R272, R628  
*Sacocaris*, R327  
*Saga*, R366  
*Sairocaris*, R298, R327  
*Sajania*, R163  
*Salterella*, R331  
*Salterina*, R331  
*Sandomia*, R531  
*Sandtneria*, R605  
*Sao*, R547  
*Saoidae*, R546  
*Saonides*, R546  
*SARS*, R130, R144, R200, R362  
*SARSOSTRACA*, R113, R176  
*saw bristles*, R101  
*scale*, R101  
*Scalpellidae*, R113, R218, R221, R224-R225, R241, R250, R261, R264, R267, R275  
*Scalpellinae*, R250  
*Scalpellopsis*, R264, R267, R278  
*Scalpellum*, R215, R217, R224-R225, R230, R250, R261, R263, R265, R275  
*Scapheus*, R466  
*scaphocerite*, R101, R348, R416  
*scaphognath(ite)*, R101, R417  
*Scapholeberis*, R165  
*SCHÄFER*, R426-R427  
*Schafferia*, R328  
*SCHIMPER*, R134  
*Schimperella*, R364-R365  
*Schindalmonotus*, R583  
*SCHIZOCEPHALA*, R583  
*Schizodiscus*, R331  
*schizopod larva*, R101  
*SCHIZOPODA*, R361, R616

- SCHIZOPODES*, R542  
*SCHIZOTARSLA*, R599, R602  
 Schlueteria, R410, **R477**  
 SCHMIDT, R408  
 SCHÖNE, R426  
 SCHÖPF, R330  
*Schopfia*, R330  
 Schugurocaris, **R328**  
 SCHULTZ, R138  
 SCHULZE, R621  
 Scillaelepas, R220, R225, R250,  
 R267, **R277**  
 Scleropactes, R70  
 Scolopendra, R46, **R604**  
 Scolopendrella, **R597**  
 SCOLOPENDRELIDA, R576,  
**R597**  
 Scolopendrellidae, **R597**  
 SCOLOPENDRIDA, R576, R600,  
**R604**  
 Scolopendridae, **R604**  
 SCOLOPENDROMORPHA, R37,  
 R45  
*SCOLOPENDROMORPHA*,  
 R599, R604  
 SCOULER, R311  
 SCOURFIELD, R166, R168  
 SCUDDER, R575, R577, R606  
 Sculda, R537, R539, R541, R544,  
 R546  
 Sculdidae, R116, R539, **R546**  
 scutal margin, **R101**, R224  
 Scutigera, R45-R47, **R602**  
 Scutigella, **R596**  
 SCUTIGERIDA, R576, R600,  
**R602**  
 Scutigeridae, **R602**  
 SCUTIGEROMORPHA, R23, R37-  
 R38, R45  
*SCUTIGEROMORPHA*, R599,  
 R602  
 scutum, **R101**, R219, R226  
 Scylla, R414, R424, R427, R512  
 Scyllarella, **R475**  
 Scyllaridae, R115, R407, R415,  
 R417, R419, R442, R445, **R475**  
*SCYLLARIDEA*, R442-R443  
*Scyllarides*, R475  
 Scyllaridia, R74, **R475**  
 Scyllarus, **R475**  
 Scyra, **R505**  
 second antenna, **R101**  
 second maxilla, **R101**  
 secondary denticle, **R101**  
 SECRETAN, R402, R626  
 SEDGWICK, R15, R50  
 Sedovia, **R153**  
*Seebachia*, R468, R626  
 segment, **R101**  
 SEGUENZA, R207  
 Selenisca, **R467**  
*Selenisca*, R463  
*Selista*, R602  
 Semibalanus, R245, R270, **R287**  
 seminal receptacle, R89, **R101**,  
 R335  
 seminal vesicle, **R101**  
 Semionotus, R330  
 Semiranina, R532  
 Septodiscus, R628  
 Septosaccus, R628  
 Sergestes, R451  
 Sergestidae, R114, R407, R445,  
**R451**  
 Sergestoidea, R114, R445-R446,  
**R450**  
 Serolidae, R114, R372, **R379**  
 Serolis, R379  
 serration, **R101**  
 Sesarma, **R529**  
 Sesarmaxenos, R628  
 Sesarminae, R116, **R529**  
 seta, **R101**  
 sexual dimorphism, cladocerans,  
 R167; phyllocarids, R305  
 sexual pore, **R101**  
 Shafferia, **R328**  
 SHAROV, R9, R51, R137, R616  
 sheath, **R101**  
 shell, **R101**  
 shell fold, **R101**  
 shell gland, **R101**  
 SHIHO, R543  
*Siberoleaia*, R159  
 Sicyonia, **R450**  
*Sicyonidae*, R447  
*Sicyoninae*, R447  
 Sida, R168, R171  
 Sidetes, R328-R329  
 Sididae, R113, R171  
 Sidoidea, R113, **R170**  
 SIEBOLD, VON, R15  
 SIEBORD, R145  
 SIEWING, R310, R337, R352-R354,  
 R362-R363, R366, R370, R543  
 Silesicaris, R299, **R328**  
*Silesiocaris*, R328  
 SILVESTRI, R596, R598  
 Simonellia, **R521**  
 SIMONETTA, R622  
 Simonizaptes, R252, **R272**  
*SIMPLICIPODA*, R355  
 Sinocaris, **R331**  
*Sinoestheria*, R150  
 Sinokontikia, **R153**  
 sinus gland, R88  
*Siphonicella*, R289  
 Siphoniulidae, R590  
 Siphonophora, R44  
 SIPHONOPHORIDA, R576,  
 R581, **R590**  
*SIPHONOPHOROIDAE*, R590  
 Siphonotidae, R589  
 skeletal duplicature, **R101**  
*Smerdis*, R540, R551  
 Smilium, R215, R221, R250,  
**R278**  
 SMITH, R248, R352  
 SNODGRASS, R15, R574, R581  
*Solenocaris*, R331  
 Solidobalanus, R232, R270, **R287**  
 somite, R79, **R102**, R401  
 SPANDL, R145  
*Spathiocaris*, R329  
*Spathiocaris*, R329  
*Spathiogar*, R329  
*Spathocaris*, R329  
*Spathyocaris*, R329  
*Spatiocaris*, R329  
*SPELAEOGRIPHACEA*, R71,  
 R114, R348, R363, **R367**  
 Spelaeogriphus, R367-R368  
 spermatheca, **R102**, R421  
 spermatophore, R89, **R102**  
 Sphaerestheria, **R156**  
*Sphaerherpestidae*, R585, R606  
*Sphaerograpt*, R151  
 Sphaeroma, R374, **R377**, R387  
 Sphaeromidae, R114, **R374**  
 Sphaeromidae Hemibranchiatae,  
 R114, **R375**  
 Sphaeromini, **R377**  
*Sphaerorhothemos*, R151  
*SPHAEROTHERIDEA*, R585  
 Sphaerothylacus, **R273**  
*Spiloniscus*, R382  
 SPINICAUDATA, R112, R149  
 SPIROBOLIDA, R576, **R587**,  
 R595  
 Spirobolidae, **R587**  
*SPIROBOLOIDEA*, R587  
 Spirobolus, R587  
 SPIROSTREPTIDA, R576, **R592**,  
 R595  
*SPIROSTREPTOIDEA*, R592  
 spur, **R102**  
 spur fasciole, **R102**  
 spur furrow, **R102**  
 Squama, **R281**  
 squama, **R102**  
 Squamosoglyphea, **R464**  
 Squilla, R53, R75, R82, R535,  
 R540, R542-R543, **R546**  
*SQUILLACEA*, R545  
*Squillares*, R542, R546  
 Squillerichthus, R542, R547  
 Squillidae, R116, R539, R543,  
 R546  
*SQUILLIENS*, R542  
*Squillinae*, R546  
 Squillites, R351, R353, **R355**,  
 R544  
*SQUILLOIDEA*, R545  
 statocyst, R87, **R102**, R348, R416  
 STEINMANN, R571  
 STELLA, R366  
 Stemmatouloidea, R588  
 STEMMIULIDA, R576, R580,  
 R588  
 Stemmiulidae, R589  
*Stenochel*, R459  
*Stenochiridae*, R443  
 Stenochirus, **R460**  
 Stenocionops, **R502**  
 Stenodactylina, **R456**  
 Stenodromia, **R495**  
*Stenopidae*, R442, R451  
*STENOPIDEA*, R442-R443, R451  
*STENOPIDES*, R442  
 Stenopodidae, R114, R429, R442,  
 R445, **R451**  
 STENOPODIDEA, R114, R414,  
 R417-R418, R421, R425, R436-  
 R438, R443-R446, **R451**  
 stenopodium, R83, **R102**  
 Stenopus, R72, R442, **R451**  
 Stephanolepas, **R289**

- Stephanometopon, **R489**  
*Steriomas*, **R471**  
 sternal canal, **R102**  
 sternal plastron, **R102**  
 sternal plate, **R401**  
 sternal process, **R102, R333**  
 sternite, **R102, R401, R535**  
 sternotreme, **R421**  
 sternum, **R79, R102, R535**  
 STEUER, **R213**  
 stipe, **R102, R333, R350**  
 STØRMER, **R31, R53, R331, R610, R616, R621**  
 STOLLEY, **R387**  
 stomach, **R85**  
*Stomapoda*, **R542**  
*STOMAPODES*, **R542, R545**  
*Stomatolepas*, **R289**  
*STOMATOPODA*, **R79, R116, R341, R352, R354, R533, R535, R542, R545**  
 stomodaecum, **R102**  
 stomodeum, **R85, R102**  
 Stramentidae, **R113, R250, R281**  
 Stramentum, **R222, R281**  
 stratigraphic distribution, cirripeds, **R252**; cycloids, **R568**; decapods, **R434**; cocarids, **R336**; syncarids, **R353**  
 Streblocerus, **R166-R167**  
 Streptocephalidae, **R113, R183**  
 Streptocephalus, **R178, R183**  
 stridulating organ, **R102**  
 Strigocaris, **R331**  
*Stringocaris*, **R331**  
*Strobilepas*, **R208**  
*STYGOCARIDACEA*, **R114, R353-R355, R358**  
*Stygocaridae*, **R358**  
 Stygocarididae, **R114, R338, R347, R354, R358**  
 Stygocaris, **R349, R358**  
 stylamblys, **R102**  
 style, **R102**  
 stylet, **R102**  
 stylocerite, **R102, R416**  
 Stylocheiron, **R395**  
 Styrioplax, **R527**  
 subbranchial region (crab carapace), **R102, R406**  
 subcarina, **R102, R220**  
 subchela, **R102, R417**  
 subchelate, **R102**  
 subesophageal ganglion, **R102**  
 subhepatic carina, **R92, R102**  
 subhepatic region (crab carapace), **R92, R102, R404, R406**  
 submedian carina, **R92, R102**  
 submedian groove, **R92, R102**  
 suborbital region (crab carapace), **R102, R406**  
 suborbital spine, **R93, R102**  
 subrostrum, **R102**  
*SUCTORIA*, **R249, R272**  
 suctorial structures, **R102**  
 supra-anal plate, **R102**  
 supra-esophageal ganglion, **R102**  
 supraorbital carina, **R92, R102**  
 supraorbital spine, **R93, R102**  
 sutural edge, **R102**  
 suture, **R102**  
 SWAIN, **R168**  
 swimmeret, **R102**  
 Sylon, **R273**  
 Sylonidae, **R113, R273**  
 symbiosis (decapods), **R428**  
 Symethis, **R502**  
*Symmetroleaia*, **R159**  
*Symnista*, **R502**  
 SYMPHYLA, **R9-R10, R12-R13, R27, R32, R39, R42, R48, R50, R57, R574, R576, R597**  
*SYMPHYOGNATHA*, **R590**  
*SYMPODA*, **R368**  
 sympod (ite), **R102**  
 Synagoga, **R209, R212, R233, R273**  
 Synagogidae, **R113, R273**  
 Synaustus, **R199**  
*SYNTAXIDEA*, **R442, R471**  
 SYNCARIDA, **R52, R61-R62, R69, R109, R114, R338, R340, R345, R355, R366**  
 syncerebrum, **R102**  
*SYNGNATHA*, **R574, R598**  
 Synidotea, **R71**  
 Synxenidae, **R583**  
*Synxenus*, **R583**  
 Syphax, **R522**  
 Tachypleus, **R27**  
 tagma, **R79, R102**  
 tail fan, **R102**  
 Taimyrites, **R157**  
*Talaus*, **R206**  
*TANAIDACEA*, **R61, R73, R114, R348, R361-R363, R369-R370, R434, R616**  
*Tancrediella*, **R157**  
 TARAMELLI, **R366**  
 TARDIGRADA, **R13**  
*Tataroleaia*, **R159**  
 TATTERSALL, **R112**  
 TATTERSALL & TATTERSALL, **R112**  
 Teallicarididae, **R114, R344**  
 Teallicaris, **R333, R335-R336, R338, R344, R364**  
 tectum, **R102, R222**  
 Tehucana, **R527**  
*Teichium*, **R159**  
*Teixeiriinae*, **R163**  
*Teixeirium*, **R163**  
 telepod, **R102**  
*Telphusa*, **R524**  
*Telphusograpsus*, **R529**  
 telson, **R102, R131, R333, R336, R347, R535**  
 telson head, **R102, R303**  
 Temnascus, **R628**  
 Temnaspis, **R234, R251, R266, R279**  
 tergal fold, **R102**  
 tergal margin, **R102, R223**  
 tergal slip, **R223**  
 tergite, **R102, R535**  
 tergotalateral margin, **R103**  
 tergum, **R79, R102-R103, R219, R226, R535**  
 terminal claw spines, **R103**  
 Tesnusocaris, **R552**  
 Tessarabrachion, **R395**  
 Tessarelasma, **R228, R269, R284**  
 Tesseropora, **R288**  
 Tetrabalanus, **R270, R287**  
 Tetracarinus, **R491**  
 Tetrachela, **R410, R425, R468**  
 Tetrachelidae, **R115, R445, R468**  
*Tetrachelius*, **R390**  
 Tetrachthamalus, **R284**  
 Tetracrita, **R228, R270, R287**  
 Tetracritella, **R288**  
 Tetracritinae, **R113, R287**  
 Thalassina, **R406, R418, R424, R476**  
 Thalassinidae, **R115, R412, R417, R429, R442, R445, R476**  
*THALASSINIDEA*, **R442-R444**  
*Thalassinides*, **R476**  
*THALASSINOIDA*, **R443**  
 Thalassinoida, **R115, R406-R407, R414, R417-R418, R421, R427, R430-R431, R435-R438, R445-R446, R476**  
 Thalassinoides, **R430**  
*Thallossia*, **R325**  
 Thamnocephalidae, **R113, R183**  
 Thamnocephalus, **R178, R183**  
 Thaumastocheles, **R425**  
 Thaumastocheleidae, **R442**  
 Thaumastoplax, **R527**  
 Thelecarcinus, **R522**  
 thelycum, **R103, R419, R421**  
*Thelxioppe*, **R490**  
*Thelxioppeidae*, **R490**  
*Thelxioppeida*, **R489**  
*Thenops*, **R473-R474**  
 Thermobathynella, **R352, R358**  
 Thermobia, **R28**  
 Thermosbaena, **R63, R366-R367**  
 THERMOSBAENACEA, **R71, R363, R366**  
 Thermosbaenidae, **R367**  
 Thia, **R508**  
 Thiinae, **R508**  
 Thoe, **R502**  
 THOMPSON, **R248, R311**  
 Thompsonia, **R248-R249, R273**  
 thoracic limb, **R103**  
 THORACICA, **R113, R209, R213, R230-R231, R236, R249, R253, R261, R275**  
 thoracomere, **R103**  
 thoracopod (ite), **R103**  
*THORACOSTRACA*, **R361**  
 thorax, **R59, R81, R103, R131, R333, R347, R535**  
*Thriops*, **R135**  
 thumb, **R103**  
*Thylacoplethus*, **R248, R273**  
 Thysanoessa, **R394, R396**  
 THYSANURA, **R12-R13, R25, R48-R49, R597**  
 Tiche, **R450**  
 TIEGS, **R15, R39, R574**  
 TIEGS & MANTON, **R4, R363**  
 Tigjanium, **R153**  
 Tillocheles, **R460**

- Titanocarcinus, R522  
 Titanolepas, R223-R224, R277  
 Tithonohomola, R491  
 TOMLINSON, R208, R248, R252  
 Tömösvary organ, R580  
 Torgalykia, R155  
 Torgalykiinae, R112, R155  
 Tortugaster, R628  
 Torynomma, R493, R627  
 TOTTON, R263  
 tracheal system, R9  
 Trachelosaccus, R628  
 Trachycarcinus, R508  
 Trachynotus, R489, R627  
 Trachysoma, R410, R464  
 trails (decapods), R431  
 transverse septum, R103, R226  
 Trapezidae, R425  
*Trapidocaris*, R322  
 TRAUTH, R568  
 TRAVIS, R424  
 Triangulopsis, R628  
 Triangulus, R628  
 Triasiglyphea, R464, R627  
 Triasocaris, R353, R358  
 Triboloecephalus, R502  
 Trichelida, R438, R443-R444  
*Trichiulus*, R605  
 trichobranch, R103, R421  
 trichobranchia, R103  
 TRICHOBRANCHIATA, R442  
 Trichoniscidae, R114, R381  
 Trichoniscinae, R114, R382  
 Trichoniscus, R382  
 TRIGNATHA, R12, R574  
*Trigonestheria*, R151  
 Trigonlimnadia, R150  
*Trigonocaris*, R328  
*Trigonocarys*, R328  
*Trigononorassaia*, R151  
*Trilasmatidae*, R279  
 Trilasmis, R254, R266, R279  
 Trileiaia, R160  
 TRILOBITA, R7-R8, R13, R23, R53  
 TRILOBITOIDEA, R13, R607  
 TRILOBITOMORPHA, R13  
*Trilobocaris*, R331  
 Triops, R61, R80, R81, R131-R133, R135, R147, R178  
 Triopsidae, R112, R135  
 tritocerebrum, R103  
*Troisleaia*, R159  
 trophi, R103  
*Tropicodaris*, R322  
*Tropidocarinatus*, R322  
*Tropidocaris*, R300, R303, R322  
 Tropifer, R533  
*Tropocaris*, R322  
*Tropodicaris*, R322  
*Tropodocaris*, R322  
*Troxites*, R617  
*Troxitis*, R617  
 trunk, R103  
 TRUSHEIM, R134  
 Trypetesa, R210, R212, R236, R247, R252, R272  
 Trypetesidac, R113, R252, R272  
 Tubicinella, R289  
 Tumidocarcinus, R423, R522  
 Turfanograptia, R153  
*Turrilepadidae*, R250  
 TURRILEPADOMORPHA, R250  
*Tusoia*, R328  
*Tuzoia*, R328  
*Tuzoïdae*, R328  
 Tymolinae, R115, R421, R440, R492  
 Tymolus, R492  
 Typilobus, R498  
 Ubsanuria, R153  
 Uca, R76, R530  
 Udora, R425, R455  
 Udorella, R425, R455  
*Udorellida*, R455  
 Udorellidae, R114, R417, R445, R454  
*Udorelloidea*, R455  
 Ujgurokontikia, R153  
 Ulophysema, R252, R275  
 Ulugkemia, R155  
 umbo, R103  
 umbonal spine, R103  
 Uncina, R425, R451  
 Uncinidae, R114, R445, R451  
 UNCINIDEA, R114, R445-R446, R451  
 UNCINOIDEA, R443, R451  
 UNGUIPALPI, R603  
 Unicuirassés, R542  
 UNIPELTATA, R542, R545  
 Unusuropode, R379  
 upcurved growth lines, R103  
 Upogebia, R431, R478  
 Upogebiinae, R115, R478  
 upper latus, R97, R220  
 upper lateral, R103  
 upper lip, R103  
 Urda, R387  
 Urdidae, R114, R380, R387  
 uric acid excretion, R9  
 urogastric area, R103  
 urogastric lobe, R103  
 urogastric region (crab carapace), R404-R406  
 Uronectes, R348, R351-R353, R355  
 Uronectidae, R114, R355  
 uropod (ite), R83, R103, R336, R347, R419  
*Uropodias*, R384  
 urosoma, R103  
 urosome, R103, R200  
 Utica, R529  
 UTINOMI, R207  
*Utinomia*, R271  
*Utinomiidae*, R271  
*Vachonia*, R141  
 Vachonisia, R141  
 Vachonisiidae, R112, R141  
 valve, R103  
 VALVIFERA, R114, R372-R373, R380  
 VAN NAME, R112  
 VAN STRAELEN, R353, R366, R378-

- R380, R387, R390, R405, R407, R413, R520, R532, R540  
 VANDENBERGHE, R354  
 Vanua, R532  
 Varuna, R529  
 Varuninae, R116, R529  
 vas deferens, R103  
 Vectis, R487, R627  
 VEILLET, R248  
 ventral nerve chain, R103  
 ventral platform, R103, R303  
 VERHOEFF, R575, R577, R599, R613  
 Verruca, R210, R219, R225, R266-R267, R281  
 Verrucidae, R113, R250, R267, R281  
 VERRUCOMORPHA, R113, R218, R225, R229, R231, R241, R250, R255, R267, R281  
 vertex, R103  
 Vertexia, R160  
 Vertexiidae, R112, R160  
*Vertexiinae*, R160  
 Vertexioidea, R112, R160  
 vesicle, R89  
 vesicula seminalis, R103  
 Vía BOADA, R522  
 Vilegina, R153  
 Virgiscalpellum, R221-R224, R262, R264-R265, R278  
 VOIGHT, R213  
 WAGIN, R213, R249  
 WALCOTT, R331  
 walking leg, R103  
 WANG, R599  
 WATERLOT, R607, R610  
 Wechesia, R432  
 WEISS, R392  
 WELLS, R353, R623  
 WELTNER, R207  
 Weltneria, R210, R236, R247, R271  
 Wetlugites, R155  
 WHITFIELD, R311  
 Willemoesiocaris, R471  
 WILLS, R208  
 WITHERS, R207, R225, R250, R262, R264-R265  
 Woodbinax, R514  
 Woods, R475, R533  
 WOODWARD, R15, R332  
 WRIGHT, R626  
 wrist, R103  
 X-organ, R423  
 Xanthias, R522  
 Xanthidae, R115, R418, R435, R440-R441, R445, R515, R532  
 Xanthilites, R513, R522  
 Xanthilithes, R435  
 XANTHIMORPHA, R439, R443  
 Xantho, R517  
*Xanthodes*, R522  
 Xanthodius, R522  
 Xanthoidea, R115, R440-R441, R443, R445-R446, R515, R627  
*Xanthopsinae*, R522

- Xanthopsis, R435, **R522**  
Xanthosia, R441, **R489**, R627  
Xenobalanus, **R289**  
Xiphidiocaris, **R331**  
*Xiphocaris*, R331  
Xiphonectes, **R510**  
XIPHOSURA, R11, R27, R568  
*Xylobius*, R587, R592  
Xyloiulidae, **R587**
- Xyloiulus, R582, **R587**, R605  
*Xyphocaris*, R331
- Y-larvae, R251, **R290**  
Y-organ, R422  
YANAGIMACHI & FUJIMAKI, R248
- Zanclifer*, R502  
*Zanthopsinae*, **R522**
- Zanthopsis, R409, **R522**  
Zapfella, R252, **R272**  
Zapfelliidae, R113, R252, **R272**  
Zeugmatolepas, R220, R223-R224,  
R262, R264, **R278**  
ZIMMER, R369, R372  
ZITTEL, R616  
zoeca stage, **R103**, R422  
Zosimus, R402, **R522**  
*ZYGCHAETA*, R590